

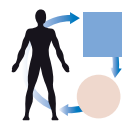
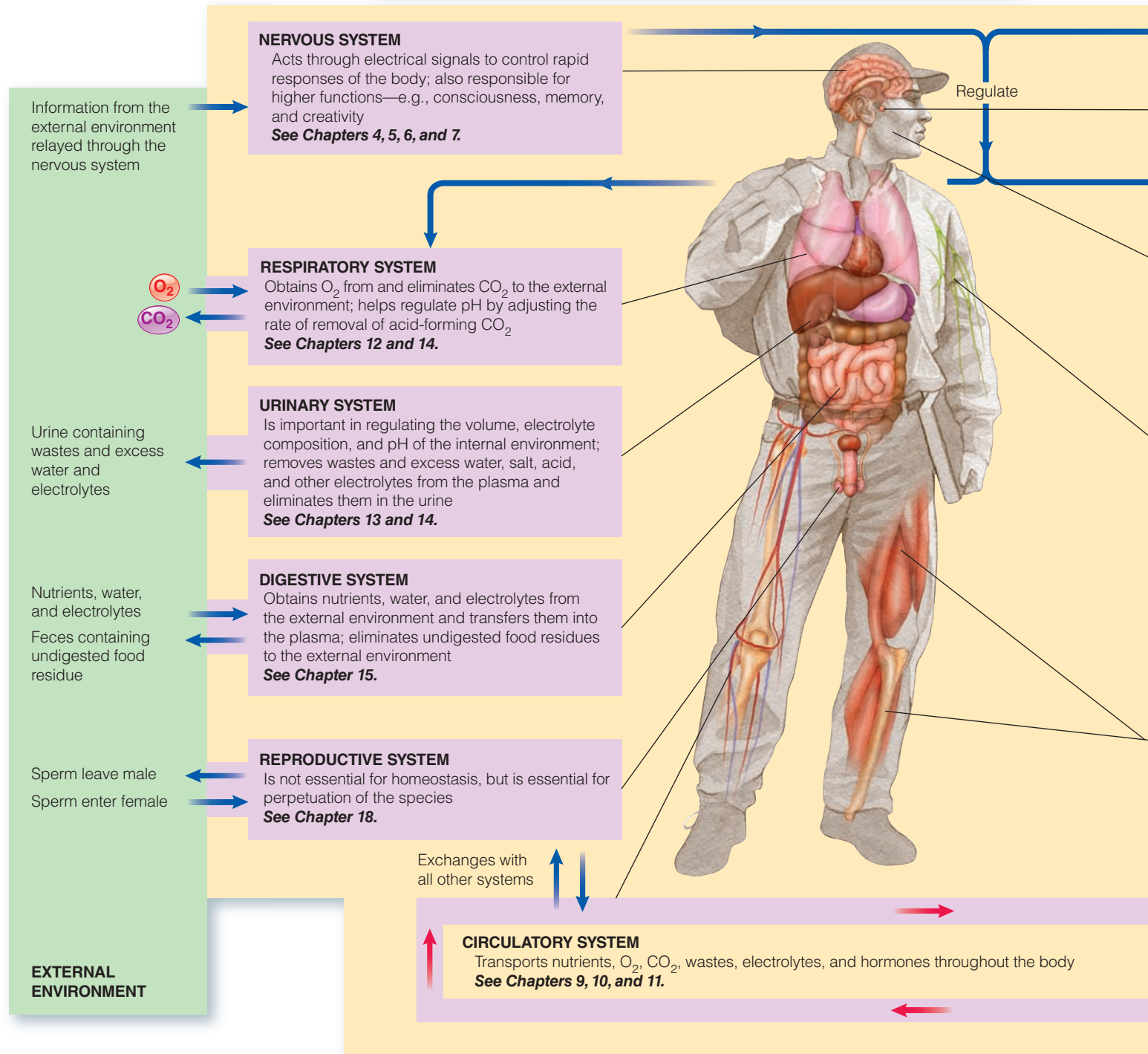


# **Fundamentals of Human Physiology** 4E

Lauralee Sherwood

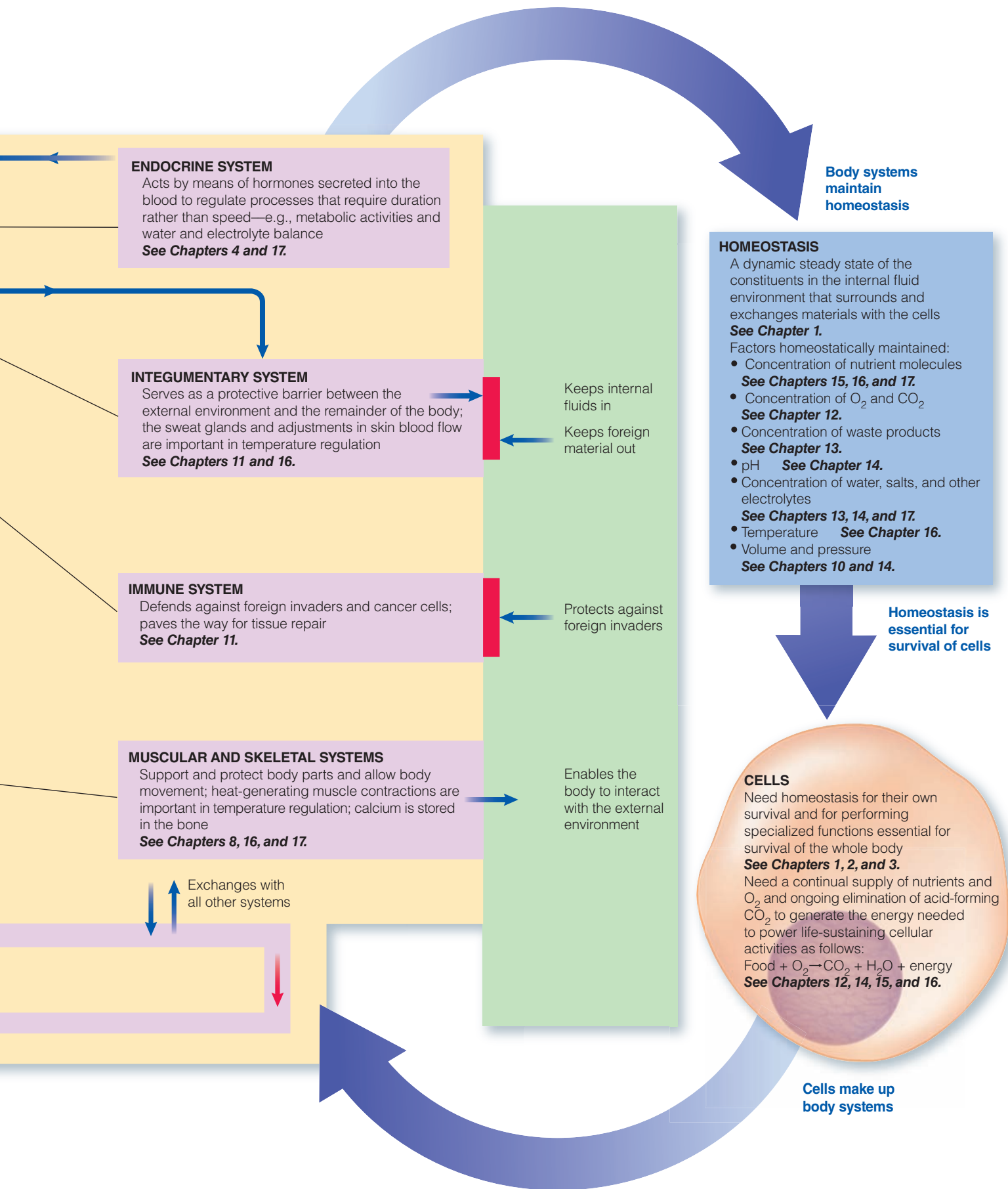
## BODY SYSTEMS

Made up of cells organized according to specialization to maintain homeostasis  
See Chapter 1.



Each chapter begins with a system-specific version of the pictorial homeostatic model above that depicts how the body system discussed in the chapter functions within the body as a whole. The accompanying icon marks a special section at each chapter's end that focuses on how the system contributes to homeostasis.

Together these features will give you a better perspective on homeostasis and the interdependency of body systems.



# SUCCEED in your course with these easy-to-use online tools

Save time, learn more, and improve your grade



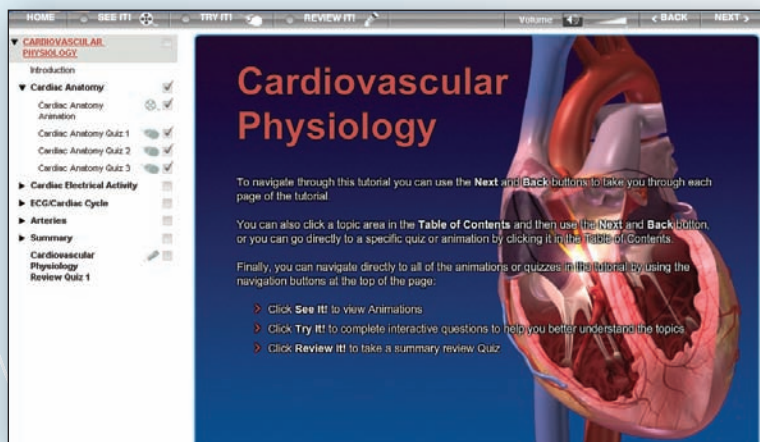
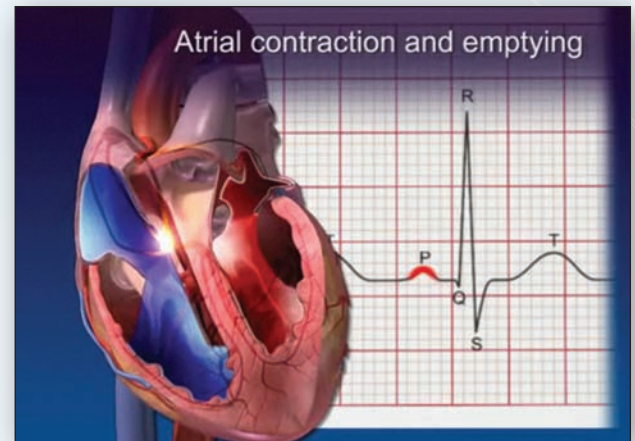
## CengageNOW™

Get the grade you want and study in less time NOW. This easy-to-use online resource helps you learn difficult physiology concepts through self-paced learning modules that include tutorials, interactive quizzes, and animations. *Personalized Study Plans*, generated by pre- and post-tests, help you focus on the topics you still need to master. Also included are an interactive eBook and easy-to-navigate online physiology tutorials that guide you through realistic and technologically sophisticated two- and three-dimensional animations. (See below.) To purchase, enter ISBN: 978-1-111-47393-8 at [www.cengagebrain.com](http://www.cengagebrain.com).

AVAILABLE WITHIN CENGAGENOW:

## Master key concepts and prepare for exams Online Physiology Tutorials™

Easy-to-navigate and visually exciting, these online physiology tutorials help you understand various body functions including secretion, synapses and neuronal integration, heart, respiratory mechanics, and swallowing. These dynamic tutorials guide you through two- and three-dimensional animations, images, interactive exercises, and quizzing to help you master difficult-to-visualize physiology processes.



# Fundamentals of Human Physiology

FOURTH EDITION

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed.

Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience.

The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats,  
please visit [www.cengage.com/highered](http://www.cengage.com/highered) to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.



# Fundamentals of Human Physiology

FOURTH EDITION

**Lauralee Sherwood**

Department of Physiology and Pharmacology  
School of Medicine  
West Virginia University



---

Australia • Brazil • Japan • Korea • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States



***Fundamentals of Human Physiology,***  
**Fourth Edition**

**Lauralee Sherwood**

Publisher: Yolanda Cossio

Acquisitions Editor: Yolanda Cossio

Developmental Editor: Suzannah Alexander

Assistant Editor: Alexis Glubka

Editorial Assistant: Joshua Taylor

Media Editor: Alexandria Brady

Marketing Manager: Tom Ziolkowski

Marketing Assistant: Elizabeth Wong

Marketing Communications Manager: Linda Yip

Content Project Manager: Michelle Clark

Design Director: Rob Hugel

Art Director: John Walker

Print Buyer: Paula Vang

Rights Acquisitions Specialist: Don Schlotman

Production Service: Graphic World, Inc.

Text Designer: Jeanne Calabrese

Photo Researcher: Bill Smith Group

Text Researcher: Sarah D'Stair

Copy Editor: Graphic World, Inc.

Illustrator: Graphic World, Inc.

Cover Designer: Jeanne Calabrese

Cover Image: Patrik Giardino/Getty Images

Compositor: Graphic World, Inc.

© 2012, 2006 Brooks/Cole, Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means, graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at  
**Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706**

For permission to use material from this text or product,  
submit all requests online at **www.cengage.com/permissions**

Further permissions questions can be e-mailed to  
**permissionrequest@cengage.com**

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010932981

ISBN-13: 978-0-8400-6225-3

ISBN-10: 0-8400-6225-7

**Brooks/Cole**

20 Davis Drive  
Belmont, CA 94002-3098  
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate your local office at:  
**www.cengage.com/global**

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

To learn more about Brooks/Cole, visit **www.cengage.com/brookscole**

Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store **www.CengageBrain.com**.

Printed in Canada  
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 14 13 12 11 10

*To my family,  
in celebration of the continuity of life,  
with memories of the past,  
joys of the present,  
and expectations of the future:*

*My parents,  
Larry (in memoriam) and Lee Sherwood*

*My husband,  
Peter Marshall*

*My daughters and “sons,”  
Melinda and Mark Marple  
Allison Tadros and Bill Krantz*

*My grandchildren,  
Lindsay Marple  
Emily Marple  
Alexander Tadros  
Lauren Krantz*

# Brief Contents

- 1** Introduction to Physiology and Homeostasis 1
  - 2** Cell Physiology 18
  - 3** The Plasma Membrane and Membrane Potential 42
  - 4** Principles of Neural and Hormonal Communication 70
  - 5** The Central Nervous System 106
  - 6** The Peripheral Nervous System: Afferent Division and Special Senses 140
  - 7** The Peripheral Nervous System: Efferent Division 178
  - 8** Muscle Physiology 194
  - 9** Cardiac Physiology 228
  - 10** The Blood Vessels and Blood Pressure 260
  - 11** The Blood and Body Defenses 296
  - 12** The Respiratory System 344
  - 13** The Urinary System 380
  - 14** Fluid and Acid–Base Balance 416
  - 15** The Digestive System 436
  - 16** Energy Balance and Temperature Regulation 478
  - 17** The Endocrine System 494
  - 18** The Reproductive System 544
- Appendix A**  
The Metric System A-1
- Appendix B**  
A Review of Chemical Principles A-3
- Appendix C**  
Storage, Replication, and Expression of Genetic Information A-18
- Appendix D**  
The Chemistry of Acid-Base Balance A-30
- Appendix E**  
Answers to End-of-Chapter Objective Questions, Points to Ponder, and Clinical Considerations A-38
- Glossary** G-1
- Index** I-1

# Contents

## 1 Introduction to Physiology and Homeostasis 1

### Introduction to Physiology 1

Physiology focuses on mechanisms of action. 1

Structure and function are inseparable. 1

### Levels of Organization in the Body 1

The chemical level: Various atoms and molecules make up the body. 2

The cellular level: Cells are the basic units of life. 2

The tissue level: Tissues are groups of cells of similar specialization. 3

The organ level: An organ is a unit made up of several tissue types. 4

The body system level: A body system is a collection of related organs. 5

The organism level: The body systems are packaged together into a functional whole body. 5

### Concept of Homeostasis 5

Body cells are in contact with a privately maintained internal environment. 5

Body systems maintain homeostasis, a dynamic steady state in the internal environment. 7

### BEYOND THE BASICS

**Stem-Cell Science and Tissue Engineering: The Quest to Make Defective Body Parts Like New Again 8**

### Homeostatic Control Systems 11

Homeostatic control systems may operate locally or bodywide. 11

Negative feedback opposes an initial change and is widely used to maintain homeostasis. 11

Positive feedback amplifies an initial change. 14

Disruptions in homeostasis can lead to illness and death. 15

### Chapter in Perspective:

### Focus on Homeostasis 15

Review Exercises 15

Objective Questions 15

Essay Questions 16

Points to Ponder 16

Clinical Consideration 17

## 2 Cell Physiology 18

### Observations of Cells 19

#### An Overview of Cell Structure 19

The plasma membrane bounds the cell. 20

The nucleus contains the DNA. 20

The cytoplasm consists of various organelles, the cytoskeleton, and the cytosol. 21

#### Endoplasmic Reticulum and Segregated Synthesis 21

The rough ER synthesizes proteins for secretion and membrane construction. 21

The smooth ER packages new proteins in transport vesicles. 21

#### Golgi Complex and Exocytosis 22

Transport vesicles carry their cargo to the Golgi complex for further processing. 22

The Golgi complex packages secretory vesicles for release by exocytosis. 23

#### Lysosomes and Endocytosis 24

Lysosomes digest extracellular material brought into the cell by phagocytosis. 24

Lysosomes remove worn out organelles. 25

#### Peroxisomes and Detoxification 25

Peroxisomes house oxidative enzymes that detoxify various wastes. 25

#### Mitochondria and ATP Production 26

Mitochondria are enclosed by two membranes. 27

Mitochondria play a major role in generating ATP. 27

The cell generates more energy in aerobic than in anaerobic conditions. 30

The energy stored within ATP is used for synthesis, transport, and mechanical work. 33

#### Cytosol: Cell Gel 33

### BEYOND THE BASICS

#### Aerobic Exercise: What For and How Much? 34

The cytosol is important in intermediary metabolism, ribosomal protein synthesis, and nutrient storage. 34

#### Cytoskeleton: Cell “Bone and Muscle” 35

Microtubules help maintain asymmetric cell shapes and play a role in complex cell movements. 35

Microfilaments are important to cellular contractile systems and as mechanical stiffeners. **37**  
Intermediate filaments are important in cell regions subject to mechanical stress. **39**

**Chapter in Perspective:**  
**Focus on Homeostasis 39**

Review Exercises **40**  
Objective Questions **40**  
Essay Questions **40**  
Points to Ponder **41**  
Clinical Consideration **41**

### **3 The Plasma Membrane and Membrane Potential 42**

#### **Membrane Structure and Functions 43**

The plasma membrane is a fluid lipid bilayer embedded with proteins. **43**  
The lipid bilayer forms the basic structural barrier that encloses the cell. **45**  
The membrane proteins perform various specific membrane functions. **45**

#### **BEYOND THE BASICS**

#### **Cystic Fibrosis: A Fatal Defect in Membrane Transport 46**

The membrane carbohydrates serve as self-identity markers. **47**

#### **Cell-to-Cell Adhesions 47**

The extracellular matrix serves as biological “glue.” **47**  
Some cells are directly linked by specialized cell junctions. **48**

#### **Overview of Membrane Transport 50**

Lipid-soluble substances of any size and small water-soluble substances can permeate the plasma membrane without assistance. **50**

Active forces use energy to move particles across the membrane but passive forces do not. **50**

#### **Unassisted Membrane Transport 50**

Particles that can permeate the membrane diffuse passively down their concentration gradient. **50**

Ions that can permeate the membrane also move passively along their electrical gradient. **52**

Osmosis is the net diffusion of water down its own concentration gradient. **52**

Tonicity refers to the effect the concentration of nonpenetrating solutes in a solution has on cell volume. **54**

#### **Assisted Membrane Transport 55**

Carrier-mediated transport is accomplished by a membrane carrier changing its shape. **56**

Facilitated diffusion is passive carrier-mediated transport. **58**

Active transport is carrier-mediated and uses energy to move a substance against its concentration gradient. **58**

With vesicular transport, material is moved into or out of the cell wrapped in membrane. **60**

#### **Membrane Potential 62**

Membrane potential is a separation of opposite charges across the plasma membrane. **62**

Membrane potential is due to differences in the concentration and permeability of key ions. **62**

**Chapter in Perspective:**  
**Focus on Homeostasis 67**

Review Exercises **68**  
Objective Questions **68**  
Essay Questions **69**  
Points to Ponder **69**  
Clinical Consideration **69**

### **4 Principles of Neural and Hormonal Communication 70**

#### **Introduction to Neural Communication 71**

Nerve and muscle are excitable tissues. **71**  
Membrane potential becomes less negative during depolarization and more negative during hyperpolarization. **71**

Electrical signals are produced by changes in ion movement across the plasma membrane. **72**

#### **Graded Potentials 72**

The stronger a triggering event, the larger the resultant graded potential. **72**

Graded potentials spread by passive current flow. **73**

Graded potentials die out over short distances. **74**

#### **Action Potentials 74**

During an action potential, the membrane potential rapidly, transiently reverses. **75**

Marked changes in membrane permeability and ion movement lead to an action potential. **75**

The  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump gradually restores the concentration gradients disrupted by action potentials. **78**

Action potentials are propagated from the axon hillock to the axon terminals. **78**

Once initiated, action potentials are conducted throughout a nerve fiber. **80**

The refractory period ensures one-way propagation of action potential. **81**

Action potentials occur in all-or-none fashion. **83**

The strength of a stimulus is coded by the frequency of action potentials. **83**

Myelination increases the speed of conduction of action potentials. **83**

#### **Synapses and Neuronal Integration 85**

Synapses are junctions between presynaptic and postsynaptic neurons. **85**

A neurotransmitter carries the signal across a synapse. **86**

Some synapses excite, whereas others inhibit, the postsynaptic neuron. **86**

Each neurotransmitter–receptor combination always produces the same response. **87**

Neurotransmitters are quickly removed from the synaptic cleft. **88**

The grand postsynaptic potential depends on the sum of the activities of all presynaptic inputs. **88**

Some neurons secrete neuromodulators in addition to neurotransmitters. **90**

Drugs and diseases can modify synaptic transmission. **90**

Neurons are linked through complex converging and diverging pathways. **91**

### **Intercellular Communication and Signal Transduction 91**

Communication among cells is largely orchestrated by extracellular chemical messengers. **91**

Extracellular chemical messengers bring about cell responses primarily by signal transduction. **93**

Some extracellular chemical messengers open chemically gated receptor-channels. **93**

Most extracellular chemical messengers activate second-messenger pathways via G-protein-coupled receptors. **93**

### **Introduction to Hormonal Communication 94**

Hormones are classified chemically as hydrophilic or lipophilic. **94**

The mechanisms of synthesis, storage, and secretion of hormones vary according to their chemical differences. **94**

Hydrophilic hormones dissolve in the plasma; lipophilic hormones are transported by plasma proteins. **96**

Hormones generally produce their effect by altering intracellular proteins. **96**

Hydrophilic hormones alter preexisting proteins via second-messenger systems. **96**

#### **BEYOND THE BASICS**

#### **Programmed Cell Suicide: A Surprising Example of a Signal Transduction Pathway 98**

By stimulating genes, lipophilic hormones promote synthesis of new proteins. **100**

### **Comparison of the Nervous and Endocrine Systems 100**

The nervous system is “wired,” and the endocrine system is “wireless.” **101**

Neural specificity is due to anatomic proximity, and endocrine specificity is due to receptor specialization. **101**

The nervous and endocrine systems have their own realms of authority but interact functionally. **102**

### **Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis 102**

Review Exercises **103**

Objective Questions **103**

Essay Questions **103**

Points to Ponder **104**

Clinical Consideration **105**

## **5 The Central Nervous System 106**

### **Organization and Cells of the Nervous System 107**

The nervous system is organized into the central nervous system and the peripheral nervous system. **107**

The three functional classes of neurons are afferent neurons, efferent neurons, and interneurons. **108**

Glial cells support the interneurons physically, metabolically, and functionally. **109**

### **Protection and Nourishment of the Brain 111**

The delicate CNS is well protected. **112**

The brain depends on constant delivery of oxygen and glucose by the blood. **112**

### **Overview of the Central Nervous System 112**

#### **BEYOND THE BASICS**

#### **Strokes: A Deadly Domino Effect 113**

### **Cerebral Cortex 114**

The cerebral cortex is an outer shell of gray matter covering an inner core of white matter. **115**

The four pairs of lobes in the cerebral cortex are specialized for different activities. **115**

The parietal lobes accomplish somatosensory processing. **115**

The primary motor cortex located in the frontal lobes controls the skeletal muscles. **117**

The higher motor areas are also important in motor control. **119**

Different regions of the cortex control different aspects of language. **119**

The association areas of the cortex are involved in many higher functions. **120**

The cerebral hemispheres have some degree of specialization. **121**

An electroencephalogram is a record of postsynaptic activity in cortical neurons. **121**

### **Basal Nuclei, Thalamus, and Hypothalamus 122**

The basal nuclei play an important inhibitory role in motor control. **123**

The thalamus is a sensory relay station and is important in motor control. **123**

The hypothalamus regulates many homeostatic functions. **124**

### **Emotion, Behavior, and Motivation 124**

The limbic system plays a key role in emotion. **124**

The limbic system and higher cortex participate in controlling basic behavioral patterns. **124**

Motivated behaviors are goal directed. **125**

Norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin are neurotransmitters in pathways for emotions and behavior. **125**

### **Learning and Memory 126**

Learning is the acquisition of knowledge as a result of experiences. **126**

Memory is laid down in stages. **126**

Short-term memory and long-term memory involve different molecular mechanisms. **127**

Memory traces are present in multiple regions of the brain. **127**

## Cerebellum 128

The cerebellum is important in balance and in planning and executing voluntary movement. 128

## Brain Stem 130

The brain stem is a vital link between the spinal cord and the higher brain regions. 130

Sleep is an active process consisting of alternating periods of slow-wave and paradoxical sleep. 130

The sleep-wake cycle is controlled by interactions among three neural systems. 132

The function of sleep is unclear. 132

## Spinal Cord 132

The spinal cord extends through the vertebral canal and is connected to the spinal nerves. 132

The white matter of the spinal cord is organized into tracts. 132

Spinal nerves carry both afferent and efferent fibers. 133

The spinal cord is responsible for the integration of many basic reflexes. 133

## Chapter in Perspective:

### Focus on Homeostasis 137

Review Exercises 137

Objective Questions 137

Essay Questions 138

Points to Ponder 138

Clinical Consideration 139

## 6 The Peripheral Nervous System: Afferent Division and Special Senses 140

### Receptor Physiology 141

Receptors have differential sensitivities to various stimuli. 141

A stimulus alters the receptor's permeability, leading to a graded receptor potential. 142

Receptor potentials may initiate action potentials in the afferent neuron. 142

Receptors may adapt slowly or rapidly to sustained stimulation. 143

Visceral afferents carry subconscious input, whereas sensory afferents carry conscious input. 143

Each somatosensory pathway is "labeled" according to modality and location. 144

Acuity is influenced by receptive field size. 144

Perception is the conscious awareness of surroundings derived from interpretation of sensory input. 145

### Pain 145

Stimulation of nociceptors elicits the perception of pain plus motivational and emotional responses. 145

The brain has a built-in analgesic system. 146

### Eye: Vision 146

The eye is a fluid-filled sphere enclosed by three specialized tissue layers. 146

## BEYOND THE BASICS

### Acupuncture: Is It for Real? 147

The amount of light entering the eye is controlled by the iris. 147

The eye refracts the entering light to focus the image on the retina. 148

Accommodation increases the strength of the lens for near vision. 150

Light must pass through several retinal layers before reaching the photoreceptors. 152

Phototransduction by retinal cells converts light stimuli into neural signals. 152

Rods provide indistinct gray vision at night, whereas cones provide sharp color vision during the day. 157

Color vision depends on the ratios of stimulation of the three cone types. 157

The sensitivity of the eyes can vary markedly through dark and light adaptation. 158

Visual information is separated before reaching the visual cortex. 158

The thalamus and visual cortex elaborate the visual message. 159

Visual input goes to other areas of the brain not involved in vision perception. 161

### Ear: Hearing and Equilibrium 161

Sound waves consist of alternate regions of compression and rarefaction of air molecules. 161

The external ear plays a role in sound localization. 163

The tympanic membrane vibrates in unison with sound waves in the external ear. 163

The middle ear bones convert tympanic membrane vibrations into fluid movements in the inner ear. 163

The cochlea contains the organ of Corti, the sense organ for hearing. 164

Hair cells in the organ of Corti transduce fluid movements into neural signals. 165

Pitch discrimination depends on the region of the basilar membrane that vibrates. 165

Loudness discrimination depends on the amplitude of vibration. 167

Deafness is caused by defects in either conduction or neural processing of sound waves. 168

The vestibular apparatus is important for equilibrium by detecting position and motion of the head. 168

### Chemical Senses: Taste and Smell 171

Taste receptor cells are located primarily within tongue taste buds. 171

Taste discrimination is coded by patterns of activity in various taste bud receptors. 173

The olfactory receptors in the nose are specialized endings of renewable afferent neurons. 173

Various parts of an odor are detected by different olfactory receptors and sorted into "smell files." 173

Odor discrimination is coded by patterns of activity in the olfactory bulb glomeruli. 175

The olfactory system adapts quickly. 175

**Chapter in Perspective:**  
**Focus on Homeostasis 175**

Review Exercises 176  
Objective Questions 176  
Essay Questions 176  
Points to Ponder 177  
Clinical Consideration 177

## 7 The Peripheral Nervous System: Efferent Division 178

### Autonomic Nervous System 179

An autonomic nerve pathway consists of a two-neuron chain. 179

Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers release acetylcholine; sympathetic ones release norepinephrine. 180

The sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems dually innervate most visceral organs. 180

The adrenal medulla is a modified part of the sympathetic nervous system. 184

Several receptor types are available for each autonomic neurotransmitter. 184

Many regions of the CNS are involved in the control of autonomic activities. 185

### Somatic Nervous System 185

Motor neurons supply skeletal muscle. 185

Motor neurons are influenced by many areas of the CNS involved in motor control. 185

### Neuromuscular Junction 186

Motor neurons and skeletal muscle fibers are chemically linked at neuromuscular junctions. 186

ACh is the neuromuscular junction neurotransmitter. 186

Acetylcholinesterase ends ACh activity at the neuromuscular junction. 188

The neuromuscular junction is vulnerable to several chemical agents and diseases. 189

### BEYOND THE BASICS

**Botulinum Toxin's Reputation Gets a Facelift 191**

**Chapter in Perspective:**  
**Focus on Homeostasis 192**

Review Exercises 192  
Objective Questions 192  
Essay Questions 193  
Points to Ponder 193  
Clinical Consideration 193

## 8 Muscle Physiology 194

### Structure of Skeletal Muscle 195

Skeletal muscle fibers are striated by a highly organized internal arrangement. 195

Myosin forms the thick filaments. 196

Actin is the main structural component of the thin filaments. 196

### Molecular Basis of Skeletal Muscle

#### Contraction 198

During contraction, cycles of cross-bridge binding and bending pull the thin filaments inward. 198

Ca<sup>2+</sup> is the link between excitation and contraction. 199

Contractile activity far outlasts the electrical activity that initiated it. 204

#### Skeletal Muscle Mechanics 204

Whole muscles are groups of muscle fibers bundled together and attached to bones. 204

Muscle tension is transmitted to bone as the contractile component tightens the series-elastic component. 205

The two primary types of contraction are isotonic and isometric. 205

The velocity of shortening is related to the load. 206

Contractions of a whole muscle can be of varying strength. 206

The number of fibers contracting within a muscle depends on the extent of motor unit recruitment. 206

The frequency of stimulation can influence the tension developed by each muscle fiber. 207

Twitch summation results from a sustained elevation in cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup>. 208

There is an optimal muscle length at which maximal tension can be developed. 209

#### Skeletal Muscle Metabolism and Fiber Types 210

Muscle fibers have alternate pathways for forming ATP. 210

Increased O<sub>2</sub> consumption is necessary to recover from exercise. 211

There are three types of skeletal muscle fibers, based on differences in ATP splitting and synthesis. 211

Muscle fibers adapt considerably in response to the demands placed on them. 212

### BEYOND THE BASICS

**Are Athletes Who Use Steroids to Gain Competitive Advantage Really Winners or Losers? 213**

#### Control of Motor Movement 214

Multiple neural inputs influence motor unit output. 214

Muscle receptors provide afferent information needed to control skeletal muscle activity. 215

#### Smooth and Cardiac Muscle 217

Smooth muscle cells are small and unstriated. 217

Smooth muscle cells are turned on by Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent phosphorylation of myosin. 220

Multunit smooth muscle is neurogenic. 221

Single-unit smooth muscle cells form functional syncytia. 222

Single-unit smooth muscle is myogenic. 222

Gradation of single-unit smooth muscle contraction differs from that of skeletal muscle. 223

Smooth muscle can still develop tension when stretched. 224

Smooth muscle is slow and economical. 225

Cardiac muscle blends features of both skeletal and smooth muscle. 225



**Chapter in Perspective:**  
**Focus on Homeostasis 225**

Review Exercises 226  
Objective Questions 226  
Essay Questions 226  
Points to Ponder 227  
Clinical Consideration 227

## 9 Cardiac Physiology 228

### Anatomy of the Heart 229

The heart is positioned in the middle of the thoracic cavity. 229

The heart is a dual pump. 230

Pressure-operated heart valves ensure that blood flows in the right direction through the heart. 232

The heart walls are composed primarily of cardiac muscle fibers. 233

Cardiac muscle fibers are interconnected by intercalated discs and form functional syncytia. 233

### Electrical Activity of the Heart 234

Cardiac autorhythmic cells display pacemaker activity. 234

The sinoatrial node is the normal pacemaker of the heart. 235

The spread of cardiac excitation is coordinated to ensure efficient pumping. 236

The action potential of cardiac contractile cells shows a characteristic plateau. 238

Ca<sup>2+</sup> entry from the ECF induces a larger Ca<sup>2+</sup> release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. 239

A long refractory period prevents tetanus of cardiac muscle. 240

The ECG is a record of the overall spread of electrical activity through the heart. 240

Different parts of the ECG record can be correlated to specific cardiac events. 241

The ECG can be used to diagnose abnormal heart rates, arrhythmias, and damage of heart muscle. 243

### Mechanical Events of the Cardiac Cycle 243

The heart alternately contracts to empty and relaxes to fill. 244

Two normal heart sounds are associated with valve closures. 246

Turbulent blood flow produces heart murmurs. 246

### Cardiac Output and Its Control 247

Cardiac output depends on the heart rate and the stroke volume. 247

Heart rate is determined primarily by autonomic influences on the SA node. 247

Stroke volume is determined by the extent of venous return and by sympathetic activity. 249

Increased end-diastolic volume results in increased stroke volume. 249

Sympathetic stimulation increases the contractility of the heart. 250

In heart failure, the contractility of the heart decreases. 251

### Nourishing the Heart Muscle 252

The heart receives most of its own blood supply through the coronary circulation during diastole. 252

Atherosclerotic coronary artery disease can deprive the heart of essential oxygen. 253

### BEYOND THE BASICS

**Atherosclerosis: Cholesterol and Beyond 256**

### Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis 257

Review Exercises 258  
Objective Questions 258  
Essay Questions 258  
Points to Ponder 259  
Clinical Consideration 259

## 10 The Blood Vessels and Blood Pressure 260

### Patterns and Physics of Blood Flow 261

To maintain homeostasis, reconditioning organs receive blood flow in excess of their own needs. 261

Blood flow through a vessel depends on the pressure gradient and vascular resistance. 262

The vascular tree consists of arteries, arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins. 264

### Arteries 264

Arteries serve as rapid-transit passageways to the organs and as a pressure reservoir. 264

### BEYOND THE BASICS

**From Humors to Harvey: Historical Highlights in Circulation 265**

Arterial pressure fluctuates in relation to ventricular systole and diastole. 266

Blood pressure can be measured indirectly by using a sphygmomanometer. 267

Mean arterial pressure is the main driving force for blood flow. 269

### Arterioles 269

Arterioles are the major resistance vessels. 269

Local control of arteriolar radius is important in determining the distribution of cardiac output. 271

Local metabolic influences on arteriolar radius help match blood flow with the organs' needs. 271

Local histamine release pathologically dilates arterioles. 272

The myogenic response of arterioles to stretch helps tissues autoregulate their blood flow. 272

Local heat application dilates arterioles and cold application constricts them. 273

Extrinsic sympathetic control of arteriolar radius is important in regulating blood pressure. 273

The medullary cardiovascular control center and several hormones regulate blood pressure. 274

## Capillaries 274

Capillaries are ideally suited to serve as sites of exchange. 274

Water-filled capillary pores permit passage of small, water-soluble substances. 277

Interstitial fluid is a passive intermediary between blood and cells. 277

Diffusion across the capillary walls is important in solute exchange. 278

Bulk flow across the capillary walls is important in extracellular fluid distribution. 279

The lymphatic system is an accessory route by which interstitial fluid can be returned to the blood. 281

Edema occurs when too much interstitial fluid accumulates. 282

## Veins 283

Veins serve as a blood reservoir, as well as passageways back to the heart. 283

Venous return is enhanced by several extrinsic factors. 284

## Blood Pressure 287

Blood pressure is regulated by controlling cardiac output, total peripheral resistance, and blood volume. 288

The baroreceptor reflex is an important short-term mechanism for regulating blood pressure through immediate effects on the heart and blood vessels. 289

Hypertension is a serious national public-health problem, but its causes are largely unknown. 290

Orthostatic hypotension results from transient inadequate sympathetic activity. 292

Circulatory shock can become irreversible. 292

## Chapter in Perspective:

### Focus on Homeostasis 293

Review Exercises 294

Objective Questions 294

Essay Questions 294

Points to Ponder 295

Clinical Consideration 295

# 11 The Blood and Body Defenses 296

## Plasma 297

The hematocrit represents the packed cell volume; plasma accounts for the rest of the volume. 297

Plasma water is a transport medium for many inorganic and organic substances. 297

Many of the functions of plasma are carried out by plasma proteins. 298

## Erythrocytes 299

The structure of erythrocytes is well suited to their main function of O<sub>2</sub> transport in the blood. 299

The bone marrow continuously replaces worn-out erythrocytes. 300

Erythropoiesis is controlled by erythropoietin from the kidneys. 300

Anemia can be caused by a variety of disorders. 301

Polycythemia is an excess of circulating erythrocytes. 302

Blood types depend on surface antigens on erythrocytes. 302

## Platelets and Hemostasis 304

Platelets are cell fragments shed from megakaryocytes. 304

Hemostasis prevents blood loss from damaged small vessels. 304

Vascular spasm reduces blood flow through an injured vessel. 304

Platelets aggregate to form a plug at a vessel tear or cut. 305

Clot formation results from a triggered chain reaction involving plasma clotting factors. 306

Fibrinolytic plasmin dissolves clots. 308

Inappropriate clotting produces thromboembolism. 308

Hemophilia is the primary condition that produces excessive bleeding. 309

## Leukocytes 309

Leukocytes primarily function as defense agents outside the blood. 309

Pathogenic bacteria and viruses are the major targets of the immune system. 309

There are five types of leukocytes. 309

Leukocytes are produced at varying rates depending on the changing needs of the body. 311

Immune responses may be either innate and nonspecific or adaptive and specific. 312

## Innate Immunity 313

Inflammation is a nonspecific response to foreign invasion or tissue damage. 313

Inflammation is an underlying culprit in many common, chronic illnesses. 316

Nonsteroidal and anti-inflammatory drugs and glucocorticoids suppress the inflammation response. 317

Interferon transiently inhibits multiplication of viruses in most cells. 317

Natural killer cells destroy virus-infected cells and cancer cells on first exposure to them. 317

The complement system punches holes in microorganisms. 317

## Adaptive Immunity: General Concepts 319

Adaptive immune responses include antibody-mediated immunity and cell-mediated immunity. 319

An antigen induces an immune response against itself. 319

## B Lymphocytes: Antibody-Mediated Immunity 320

Antigens stimulate B cells to convert into plasma cells that produce antibodies. 320

Antibodies are Y shaped and classified according to properties of their tail portion. 320

Antibodies largely amplify innate immune responses to promote antigen destruction. 321

Clonal selection accounts for the specificity of antibody production. 322

Selected clones differentiate into active plasma cells and dormant memory cells. 323

## BEYOND THE BASICS

### Vaccination: A Victory Over Many Dreaded

Diseases 325

### T Lymphocytes: Cell-Mediated Immunity 325

T cells bind directly with their targets. 325

The three types of T cells are cytotoxic, helper, and regulatory. 326

Cytotoxic T cells secrete chemicals that destroy target cells. 326

Helper T cells secrete chemicals that amplify the activity of other immune cells. 327

T lymphocytes respond only to antigens presented to them by antigen-presenting cells. 328

The major histocompatibility complex is the code for self-antigens. 329

The immune system is normally tolerant of self-antigens. 331

Immune surveillance against cancer cells involves an interplay among immune cells and interferon. 332

### Immune Diseases 334

Immunodeficiency diseases result from insufficient immune responses. 334

Allergies are inappropriate immune attacks against harmless environmental substances. 334

### External Defenses 337

The skin consists of an outer protective epidermis and an inner, connective tissue dermis. 338

Specialized cells in the epidermis produce keratin and melanin and participate in immune defense. 339

Protective measures within body cavities discourage pathogen invasion into the body. 339

### Chapter in Perspective:

#### Focus on Homeostasis 340

Review Exercises 341

Objective Questions 341

Essay Questions 342

Points to Ponder 342

Clinical Consideration 343

## 12 The Respiratory System 344

### Respiratory Anatomy 345

The respiratory system does not participate in all steps of respiration. 345

The respiratory airways conduct air between the atmosphere and the alveoli. 346

The gas-exchanging alveoli are thin-walled, inflatable air sacs encircled by pulmonary capillaries. 347

The lungs occupy much of the thoracic cavity. 349

A pleural sac separates each lung from the thoracic wall. 349

### Respiratory Mechanics 349

Interrelationships among pressures inside and outside the lungs are important in ventilation. 349

The transmural pressure gradient normally stretches the lungs to fill the larger thoracic cavity. 350

Flow of air into and out of the lungs occurs because of cyclic changes in intra-alveolar pressure. 351

Airway resistance influences airflow rates. 353

Airway resistance is abnormally increased with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. 354

Elastic behavior of the lungs is a result of elastic connective tissue and alveolar surface tension. 357

Pulmonary surfactant decreases surface tension and contributes to lung stability. 357

The lungs normally operate about “half full.” 358

Alveolar ventilation is less than pulmonary ventilation because of dead space. 360

### Gas Exchange 362

Gases move down partial pressure gradients. 362

Oxygen enters and CO<sub>2</sub> leaves the blood in the lungs passively down partial pressure gradients. 362

Factors other than the partial pressure gradient influence the rate of gas transfer. 363

Gas exchange across the systemic capillaries also occurs down partial pressure gradients. 364

### Gas Transport 365

Most O<sub>2</sub> in the blood is transported bound to hemoglobin. 365

The  $P_{O_2}$  is the primary factor determining the percent hemoglobin saturation. 366

Hemoglobin promotes the net transfer of O<sub>2</sub> at both the alveolar and the tissue levels. 367

Factors at the tissue level promote the unloading of O<sub>2</sub> from hemoglobin. 368

Hemoglobin has a higher affinity for carbon monoxide than for O<sub>2</sub>. 369

Most CO<sub>2</sub> is transported in the blood as bicarbonate. 370

Various respiratory states are characterized by abnormal blood-gas levels. 371

## BEYOND THE BASICS

### Effects of Heights and Depths on the Body 372

#### Control of Respiration 373

Respiratory centers in the brain stem establish a rhythmic breathing pattern. 373

The magnitude of ventilation is adjusted in response to three chemical factors:  $P_{O_2}$ ,  $P_{CO_2}$ , and H<sup>+</sup>. 374

Decreased arterial  $P_{O_2}$  increases ventilation only as an emergency mechanism. 375

Carbon dioxide-generated H<sup>+</sup> in the brain is normally the main regulator of ventilation. 376

Adjustments in ventilation in response to changes in arterial H<sup>+</sup> are important in acid-base balance. 377

During apnea, a person “forgets to breathe.” 377

#### Chapter in Perspective:

#### Focus on Homeostasis 378

Review Exercises 378

Objective Questions 378

Essay Questions 378

Points to Ponder 379

Clinical Consideration 379

## 13 The Urinary System 380

### Kidneys: Functions, Anatomy, and Basic Processes 381

The kidneys perform a variety of functions aimed at maintaining homeostasis. 381

The kidneys form the urine; the rest of the urinary system carries the urine to the outside. 382

The nephron is the functional unit of the kidney. 382

The three basic renal processes are glomerular filtration, tubular reabsorption, and tubular secretion. 384

### Glomerular Filtration 386

Glomerular capillary blood pressure is the major force that causes glomerular filtration. 387

Changes in the GFR result primarily from changes in glomerular capillary blood pressure. 388

The kidneys normally receive 20% to 25% of the cardiac output. 389

### Tubular Reabsorption 390

Tubular reabsorption is tremendous, highly selective, and variable. 390

Tubular reabsorption involves transepithelial transport. 390

An active  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase pump in the basolateral membrane is essential for  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption. 391

Aldosterone stimulates  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption in the distal and collecting tubules. 392

Atrial natriuretic peptide inhibits  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption. 394

Glucose and amino acids are reabsorbed by  $\text{Na}^+$ -dependent secondary active transport. 395

In general, actively reabsorbed substances exhibit a tubular maximum. 395

Glucose is an example of an actively reabsorbed substance that is not regulated by the kidneys. 395

Phosphate is an example of an actively reabsorbed substance that is regulated by the kidneys. 397

Active  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption is responsible for the passive reabsorption of  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and urea. 397

In general, unwanted waste products are not reabsorbed. 398

### Tubular Secretion 398

Hydrogen ion secretion is important in acid–base balance. 398

Potassium ion secretion is controlled by aldosterone. 398

Organic anion and cation secretion helps efficiently eliminate foreign compounds from the body. 399

### Urine Excretion and Plasma Clearance 400

Plasma clearance is the volume of plasma cleared of a particular substance per minute. 401

If a substance is filtered but not reabsorbed or secreted, its plasma clearance rate equals the GFR. 401

If a substance is filtered and reabsorbed but not secreted, its plasma clearance rate is always less than the GFR. 401

If a substance is filtered and secreted but not reabsorbed, its plasma clearance rate is always greater than the GFR. 401

The kidneys can excrete urine of varying concentrations depending on the body's state of hydration. 403

The medullary vertical osmotic gradient is established by countercurrent multiplication. 404

Vasopressin-controlled, variable  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption occurs in the final tubular segments. 405

Renal failure has wide-ranging consequences. 410

Urine is temporarily stored in the bladder, from which it is emptied by micturition. 410

### BEYOND THE BASICS

**Dialysis: Cellophane Tubing or Abdominal Lining as an Artificial Kidney 412**

### Chapter in Perspective:

**Focus on Homeostasis 413**

Review Exercises 414

Objective Questions 414

Essay Questions 415

Points to Ponder 415

Clinical Consideration 415

## 14 Fluid and Acid–Base Balance 416

### Balance Concept 417

The internal pool of a substance is the amount of that substance in the ECF. 417

To maintain stable balance of an ECF constituent, its input must equal its output. 417

### Fluid Balance 418

Body water is distributed between the ICF and the ECF compartments. 418

The plasma and interstitial fluid are similar in composition, but the ECF and ICF differ markedly. 418

Fluid balance is maintained by regulating ECF volume and osmolarity. 419

Control of ECF volume is important in the long-term regulation of blood pressure. 419

Control of salt balance is primarily important in regulating ECF volume. 420

Controlling ECF osmolarity prevents changes in ICF volume. 421

### BEYOND THE BASICS

**A Potentially Fatal Clash: When Exercising Muscles and Cooling Mechanisms Compete for an Inadequate Plasma Volume 422**

During ECF hypertonicity, the cells shrink as  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  leaves them. 423

During ECF hypotonicity, the cells swell as  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  enters them. 423

No water moves into or out of cells during an ECF isotonic fluid gain or loss. 424

Control of water balance by means of vasopressin is important in regulating ECF osmolarity. 424

Vasopressin secretion and thirst are largely triggered simultaneously. 425

## Acid–Base Balance 426

Acids liberate free hydrogen ions, whereas bases accept them. 426

The pH designation is used to express  $[H^+]$ . 427

Fluctuations in  $[H^+]$  alter nerve, enzyme, and  $K^+$  activity. 428

Hydrogen ions are continually added to the body fluids as a result of metabolic activities. 428

Chemical buffer systems minimize changes in pH by binding with or yielding free  $H^+$ . 430

Chemical buffer systems act as the first line of defense against changes in  $[H^+]$ . 431

The respiratory system regulates  $[H^+]$  by controlling the rate of  $CO_2$  removal. 431

The respiratory system serves as the second line of defense against changes in  $[H^+]$ . 431

The kidneys help maintain acid–base balance by adjusting their rate of  $H^+$  excretion,  $HCO_3^-$  excretion, and  $NH_3$  secretion. 432

The kidneys are a powerful third line of defense against changes in  $[H^+]$ . 433

Acid–base imbalances can arise from either respiratory dysfunction or metabolic disturbances. 433

## Chapter in Perspective:

### Focus on Homeostasis 434

Review Exercises 435

Objective Questions 435

Essay Questions 435

Points to Ponder 435

Clinical Consideration 435

# 15 The Digestive System 436

## General Aspects of Digestion 437

The digestive system performs four basic digestive processes. 437

The digestive tract and accessory digestive organs make up the digestive system. 438

The digestive tract wall has four layers. 439

Regulation of digestive function is complex and synergistic. 439

Receptor activation alters digestive activity through neural reflexes and hormonal pathways. 442

## Mouth 443

The oral cavity is the entrance to the digestive tract. 443

The teeth are responsible for chewing. 443

Saliva begins carbohydrate digestion, is important in oral hygiene, and facilitates speech. 444

Salivary secretion is continuous and can be reflexly increased. 444

Digestion in the mouth is minimal; no absorption of nutrients occurs. 445

## Pharynx and Esophagus 445

Swallowing is a sequentially programmed all-or-none reflex. 445

During the oropharyngeal stage of swallowing, food is prevented from entering the wrong passageways. 445

The pharyngoesophageal sphincter keeps air from entering the digestive tract during breathing. 445

Peristaltic waves push food through the esophagus. 446

The gastroesophageal sphincter prevents reflux of gastric contents. 446

Esophageal secretion is entirely protective. 447

## Stomach 447

The stomach stores food and begins protein digestion. 447

Gastric filling involves receptive relaxation. 447

Gastric storage takes place in the body of the stomach. 448

Gastric mixing takes place in the antrum of the stomach. 448

Gastric emptying is controlled by factors in the duodenum. 448

Emotions can influence gastric motility. 449

The stomach does not actively participate in vomiting. 449

Gastric digestive juice is secreted by glands located at the base of gastric pits. 450

Hydrochloric acid activates pepsinogen. 450

Pepsinogen is activated to pepsin, which initiates protein digestion. 452

Mucus is protective. 452

Intrinsic factor is essential for absorption of vitamin  $B_{12}$ . 452

Multiple regulatory pathways influence the parietal and chief cells. 453

Control of gastric secretion involves three phases. 453

Gastric secretion gradually decreases as food empties from the stomach into the intestine. 454

The gastric mucosal barrier protects the stomach lining from gastric secretions. 454

Carbohydrate digestion continues in the body of the stomach; protein digestion begins in the antrum. 455

The stomach absorbs alcohol and aspirin but no food. 455

## BEYOND THE BASICS

### Ulcers: When Bugs Break the Barrier 456

### Pancreatic and Biliary Secretions 457

The pancreas is a mixture of exocrine and endocrine tissue. 457

The exocrine pancreas secretes digestive enzymes and an aqueous alkaline fluid. 457

Pancreatic exocrine secretion is regulated by secretin and CCK. 458

The liver performs various important functions, including bile production. 459

Bile is continuously secreted by the liver and is diverted to the gallbladder between meals. 460

Bile salts are recycled through the enterohepatic circulation. 460

Bile salts aid fat digestion and absorption. 461

Bile salts are the most potent stimulus for increased bile secretion; CCK promotes gallbladder emptying. 462

Bilirubin is a waste product excreted in the bile. 462

### Small Intestine 463

Segmentation contractions mix and slowly propel the chyme. 463

The migrating motility complex sweeps the intestine clean between meals. **464**

The ileocecal juncture prevents contamination of the small intestine by colonic bacteria. **465**

Small-intestine secretions do not contain any digestive enzymes. **465**

The small-intestine enzymes complete digestion within the brush-border membrane. **465**

The small intestine is remarkably well adapted for its primary role in absorption. **466**

The mucosal lining experiences rapid turnover. **468**

Energy-dependent Na<sup>+</sup> absorption drives passive H<sub>2</sub>O absorption. **468**

Digested carbohydrates and proteins are both absorbed by secondary active transport and enter the blood. **469**

Digested fat is absorbed passively and enters the lymph. **469**

Vitamin absorption is largely passive. **471**

Iron and calcium absorption is regulated. **471**

Most absorbed nutrients immediately pass through the liver for processing. **471**

Extensive absorption by the small intestine keeps pace with secretion. **471**

Diarrhea results in loss of fluid and electrolytes. **471**

**Large Intestine 472**

The large intestine is primarily a drying and storage organ. **472**

Haustral contractions slowly shuffle the colonic contents back and forth. **472**

Mass movements propel feces long distances. **472**

Feces are eliminated by the defecation reflex. **472**

Constipation occurs when the feces become too dry. **473**

Large-intestine secretion is entirely protective. **473**

The colon contains myriad beneficial bacteria. **473**

The large intestine absorbs salt and water, converting the luminal contents into feces. **473**

Intestinal gases are absorbed or expelled. **473**

**Overview of the Gastrointestinal Hormones 474**

**Chapter in Perspective:  
Focus on Homeostasis 474**

Review Exercises **475**  
Objective Questions **475**  
Essay Questions **476**  
Points to Ponder **476**  
Clinical Consideration **477**

**16 Energy Balance and Temperature Regulation 478**

**Energy Balance 479**

Most food energy is converted into heat in the body. **479**

The metabolic rate is the rate of energy use. **480**

Energy input must equal energy output to maintain a neutral energy balance. **481**

Food intake is controlled primarily by the hypothalamus. **481**

Obesity occurs when more kilocalories are consumed than are burned up. **485**

People suffering from anorexia nervosa have a pathological fear of gaining weight. **486**

**Temperature Regulation 486**

Internal core temperature is homeostatically maintained at 100°F (37.8°C). **486**

Heat input must balance heat output to maintain a stable core temperature. **487**

Heat exchange takes place by radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation. **487**

Sweating is a regulated evaporative heat-loss process. **488**

The hypothalamus integrates a multitude of thermosensory inputs. **488**

Shivering is the primary involuntary means of increasing heat production. **489**

The magnitude of heat loss can be adjusted by varying the flow of blood through the skin. **489**

The hypothalamus simultaneously coordinates heat-production and heat-loss mechanisms. **490**

During a fever, the hypothalamic thermostat is “reset” at an elevated temperature. **490**

**BEYOND THE BASICS  
The Extremes of Cold and Heat Can Be Fatal 491**

**Chapter in Perspective:  
Focus on Homeostasis 492**

Review Exercises **492**  
Objective Questions **492**  
Essay Questions **493**  
Points to Ponder **493**  
Clinical Consideration **493**

**17 The Endocrine System 494**

**General Principles of Endocrinology 495**

Hormones exert a variety of regulatory effects throughout the body. **495**

The effective plasma concentration of a hormone is normally regulated by changes in its rate of secretion. **496**

The plasma concentration of a hormone is influenced by its rate of excretion. **497**

Endocrine disorders result from hormone excess or deficiency or decreased target-cell responsiveness. **498**

The responsiveness of a target cell can be varied by regulating the number of hormone-specific receptors. **498**

**Hypothalamus and Pituitary 499**

The pituitary gland consists of anterior and posterior lobes. **499**

The hypothalamus and posterior pituitary act as a unit to secrete vasopressin and oxytocin. **499**

Most anterior pituitary hormones are tropic. **502**

Hypothalamic releasing and inhibiting hormones help regulate anterior pituitary hormone secretion. **504**

Target-gland hormones inhibit hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormone secretion via negative feedback. **506**

### **Endocrine Control of Growth 506**

Growth depends on GH but is influenced by other factors. **507**

GH is essential for growth, but it also directly exerts metabolic effects not related to growth. **507**

GH exerts its growth-promoting effects indirectly by stimulating insulin-like growth factor. **507**

GH, through IGF, promotes growth of soft tissues by stimulating hyperplasia and hypertrophy. **507**

Bone grows in thickness and in length by different mechanisms, both stimulated by GH. **508**

GH secretion is regulated by two hypophysiotropic hormones. **508**

Abnormal GH secretion results in aberrant growth patterns. **510**

### **Pineal Gland and Circadian Rhythms 510**

The suprachiasmatic nucleus is the master biological clock. **510**

Melatonin helps keep the body's circadian rhythm in time with the light–dark cycle. **511**

## **BEYOND THE BASICS**

### **Tinkering with Our Biological Clocks 512**

#### **Thyroid Gland 513**

The major cells that secrete thyroid hormone are organized into colloid-filled follicles. **513**

Thyroid hormone is synthesized and stored on the thyroglobulin molecule. **513**

To secrete thyroid hormone, the follicular cells phagocytize thyroglobulin-laden colloid. **515**

Most of the secreted  $T_4$  is converted into  $T_3$  outside the thyroid. **515**

Thyroid hormone is the main determinant of the basal metabolic rate and exerts other effects. **515**

Thyroid hormone is regulated by the hypothalamus–pituitary–thyroid axis. **515**

Abnormalities of thyroid function include both hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism. **516**

A goiter develops when the thyroid gland is overstimulated. **517**

#### **Adrenal Glands 517**

Each adrenal gland consists of a steroid-secreting cortex and a catecholamine-secreting medulla. **518**

The adrenal cortex secretes mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, and sex hormones. **518**

The major effects of mineralocorticoids are on  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  balance and blood pressure homeostasis. **519**

Glucocorticoids exert metabolic effects and play a key role in adaptation to stress. **519**

Cortisol secretion is regulated by the hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal cortex axis. **520**

The adrenal cortex secretes both male and female sex hormones in both sexes. **520**

The adrenal cortex may secrete too much or too little of any of its hormones. **521**

The adrenal medulla consists of modified sympathetic postganglionic neurons. **522**

Epinephrine reinforces the sympathetic nervous system and exerts additional metabolic effects. **523**

### **Integrated Stress Response 523**

The stress response is a generalized pattern of reactions to any situation that threatens homeostasis. **523**

The multifaceted stress response is coordinated by the hypothalamus. **525**

Activation of the stress response by chronic psychosocial stressors may be harmful. **525**

### **Endocrine Pancreas and Control of Fuel Metabolism 525**

Fuel metabolism includes anabolism, catabolism, and interconversions among energy-rich organic molecules. **525**

Because food intake is intermittent, nutrients must be stored for use between meals. **526**

The brain must be continuously supplied with glucose. **526**

Metabolic fuels are stored during the absorptive state and mobilized during the postabsorptive state. **528**

The pancreatic hormones, insulin and glucagon, are most important in regulating fuel metabolism. **529**

Insulin lowers blood glucose, fatty acid, and amino acid levels and promotes their storage. **530**

The primary stimulus for increased insulin secretion is an increase in blood glucose concentration. **531**

The symptoms of diabetes mellitus are characteristic of an exaggerated postabsorptive state. **532**

Insulin excess causes brain-starving hypoglycemia. **534**

Glucagon in general opposes the actions of insulin. **535**

Glucagon secretion is increased during the postabsorptive state. **535**

Insulin and glucagon work as a team to maintain blood glucose and fatty acid levels. **535**

Epinephrine, cortisol, and GH also exert direct metabolic effects. **535**

### **Parathyroid Gland and Control of Calcium Metabolism 536**

Plasma  $Ca^{2+}$  must be closely regulated to prevent changes in neuromuscular excitability. **536**

Parathyroid hormone raises free plasma  $Ca^{2+}$  levels by its effects on bone, kidneys, and intestine. **537**

Bone continuously undergoes remodeling. **537**

Mechanical stress favors bone deposition. **537**

PTH raises plasma  $Ca^{2+}$  by withdrawing  $Ca^{2+}$  from the bone bank. **538**

PTH acts on the kidneys to conserve  $Ca^{2+}$  and eliminate  $PO_4^{3-}$ . **538**

PTH indirectly promotes absorption of  $Ca^{2+}$  and  $PO_4^{3-}$  by the intestine. **539**

The primary regulator of PTH secretion is plasma concentration of free  $Ca^{2+}$ . **539**

Calcitonin lowers plasma  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration but is not important in the normal control of  $Ca^{2+}$  metabolism. **539**

Vitamin D is actually a hormone that increases calcium absorption in the intestine. **539**

Disorders in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  metabolism may arise from abnormal levels of PTH or vitamin D. 540

**Chapter in Perspective:**  
**Focus on Homeostasis** 541

Review Exercises 542  
Objective Questions 542  
Essay Questions 542  
Points to Ponder 543  
Clinical Consideration 543

## 18 The Reproductive System 544

### Uniqueness of the Reproductive System 545

Unique among body systems, the reproductive system does not contribute to homeostasis but exerts other important effects. 545

The reproductive system includes the gonads, reproductive tract, and accessory sex glands, all of which are different in males and females. 545

Reproductive cells each contain a half set of chromosomes. 546

Gametogenesis is accomplished by meiosis, resulting in genetically unique sperm and ova. 547

The sex of an individual is determined by the combination of sex chromosomes. 549

Sexual differentiation along male or female lines depends on the presence or absence of masculinizing determinants. 549

### Male Reproductive Physiology 551

The scrotal location of the testes provides a cooler environment essential for spermatogenesis. 551

The testicular Leydig cells secrete masculinizing testosterone. 551

Spermatogenesis yields an abundance of highly specialized, mobile sperm. 553

Throughout their development, sperm remain intimately associated with Sertoli cells. 555

LH and FSH from the anterior pituitary control testosterone secretion and spermatogenesis. 555

GnRH activity increases at puberty. 556

The reproductive tract stores and concentrates sperm and increases their fertility. 557

The accessory sex glands contribute the bulk of the semen. 557

Prostaglandins are ubiquitous, locally acting chemical messengers. 558

### Sexual Intercourse Between Males and Females 559

The male sex act is characterized by erection and ejaculation. 559

Erection is accomplished by penis vasocongestion. 559

Ejaculation includes emission and expulsion. 561

Orgasm and resolution complete the sexual response cycle. 561

Volume and sperm content of the ejaculate vary. 561

The female sexual cycle is similar to the male cycle. 561

### BEYOND THE BASICS

### Environmental “Estrogens”: Bad News for the Reproductive System 562

### Female Reproductive Physiology 563

Complex cycling characterizes female reproductive physiology. 563

The steps of gametogenesis are the same in both sexes, but the timing and outcome differ sharply. 564

The ovarian cycle consists of alternating follicular and luteal phases. 565

The follicular phase is characterized by the development of maturing follicles. 567

The luteal phase is characterized by the presence of a corpus luteum. 567

The ovarian cycle is regulated by complex hormonal interactions. 569

Cyclic uterine changes are caused by hormonal changes during the ovarian cycle. 573

Oral contraceptives prevent ovulation. 574

Pubertal changes in females are similar to those in males. 574

Menopause is unique to females. 574

The oviduct is the site of fertilization. 575

The blastocyst implants in the endometrium through the action of its trophoblastic enzymes. 576

The placenta is the organ of exchange between maternal and fetal blood. 578

Hormones secreted by the placenta play a critical role in maintaining pregnancy. 580

Maternal body systems respond to the increased demands of gestation. 582

Changes during late gestation prepare for parturition. 582

Scientists are closing in on the factors that trigger the onset of parturition. 582

Parturition is accomplished by a positive-feedback cycle. 584

Lactation requires multiple hormonal inputs. 586

Breast-feeding is advantageous to both the infant and the mother. 587

The end is a new beginning. 588

### Chapter in Perspective:

### Focus on Homeostasis 589

Review Exercises 589  
Objective Questions 589  
Essay Questions 590  
Points to Ponder 590  
Clinical Consideration 590



## A The Metric System A-1

## B A Review of Chemical Principles A-3

### Chemical Level of Organization in the Body A-3

Atoms A-3

Elements and atomic symbols A-3

Compounds and molecules A-3

Atomic number A-3

Atomic weight A-4

### Chemical Bonds A-4

Electron shells A-4

Bonding characteristics of an atom and valence A-4

Ions; ionic bonds A-5

Covalent bonds A-5

Nonpolar and polar molecules A-6

Hydrogen bonds A-7

### Chemical Reactions A-7

Balanced equations A-7

Reversible and irreversible reactions A-7

Catalysts; enzymes A-8

### Molecular and Formula Weight and the Mole A-8

### Solutions, Colloids, and Suspensions A-8

Solutions A-9

Electrolytes versus nonelectrolytes A-9

Measures of concentration A-9

Colloids and suspensions A-9

### Inorganic and Organic Chemicals A-10

Distinction between inorganic and organic chemicals A-10

Monomers and polymers A-10

### Acids, Bases, and Salts A-10

Acids and bases A-10

Salts; neutralization reactions A-11

### Functional Groups of Organic Molecules A-11

### Carbohydrates A-11

Chemical composition of carbohydrates A-11

Types of carbohydrates A-11

### Lipids A-12

Simple lipids A-12

Complex lipids A-13

### Proteins A-13

Chemical composition of proteins A-13

Peptide bonds A-14

Levels of protein structure A-14

Hydrolysis and denaturation A-16

### Nucleic Acids A-16

### High-Energy Biomolecules A-17

## C Storage, Replication, and Expression of Genetic Information A-18

### Deoxyribonucleic Acid and Chromosomes A-18

Functions of DNA A-18

Structure of DNA A-18

Genes in DNA A-18

Packaging of DNA into chromosomes A-18

### Complementary Base Pairing, Replication, and Transcription A-19

DNA replication A-19

DNA transcription and messenger ribonucleic acid A-20

### Translation and Protein Synthesis A-22

Triplet code; codon A-22

Ribosomes A-23

tRNA and anticodons A-24

Steps of protein synthesis A-24

Energy cost of protein synthesis A-24

Polyribosomes A-24

Control of gene activity and protein transcription A-24

### Cell Division A-26

Mitosis A-26

Meiosis A-27

Mutations A-27

## D The Chemistry of Acid–Base Balance A-30

Dissociation Constants for Acids A-30

The Logarithmic Nature of pH A-30

Chemical Buffer Systems A-30

Henderson–Hasselbalch Equation A-31

Respiratory Regulation of Hydrogen Ion Concentration A-31

Renal Regulation of Hydrogen Ion Concentration A-32

Acid–Base Imbalances A-34

## E Answers to End-of-Chapter Objective Questions, Points to Ponder, and Clinical Considerations A-38

## Glossary G-1

## Index I-1

# Preface

## Goals, Philosophy, and Theme

Even though I started teaching physiology in the mid-1960s, today I still am awestruck at the miraculous intricacies and efficiency of body function. No machine can perform even a portion of natural body function as effectively. My goal in writing physiology textbooks is not only to help students learn about how the body works but also to share my enthusiasm for the subject matter. Most of us, even infants, have a natural curiosity about how our bodies work. When a baby first discovers it can control its own hands, it is fascinated and spends many hours manipulating them in front of its face. By capitalizing on students' natural curiosity about themselves, I try to make physiology a subject they can enjoy learning.

Even the most tantalizing subject can be difficult to comprehend if not effectively presented, however. Therefore, this book has a logical, understandable format with an emphasis on how each concept is an integral part of the entire subject. Too often, students view the components of a physiology course as isolated entities; by understanding how each component depends on the others, a student can appreciate the integrated functioning of the human body. The text focuses on the mechanisms of body function from cells to systems and is organized around the central theme of homeostasis—how the body meets changing demands while maintaining the internal constancy necessary for all cells and organs to function.

*Fundamentals of Human Physiology* is a carefully condensed version of my *Human Physiology: From Cells to Systems*. This new fourth edition of *Fundamentals of Human Physiology* is of manageable length and depth while providing scientifically sound coverage of the fundamental concepts of physiology and incorporating pedagogical features that make it interesting and comprehensible.

Because this book is intended as an introduction and, for most students, may be their only exposure to a formal physiology text, all aspects of physiology receive broad coverage. Materials were selected for inclusion on a “need-to-know” basis, so the book is not cluttered with unnecessary detail. Instead, content is restricted to relevant information needed to understand basic physiologic concepts.

No assumptions regarding prerequisite courses have been made. Since anatomy is not a prerequisite course, enough relevant anatomy is integrated within the text to make the inseparable relation between structure and function meaningful. Fur-

thermore, new pedagogical features have been added to make this fourth edition even more approachable by students with limited background.

New information based on recent discoveries has been included in all chapters. Students can be assured of the timeliness and accuracy of the material presented. This edition is the most extensive revision yet, taking into account new discoveries in the field as well as clarifying, modifying, and simplifying as needed. Some controversial ideas and hypotheses are presented to illustrate that physiology is a dynamic, changing discipline.

This text is designed to promote understanding of the basic principles and concepts of physiology rather than memorization of details. The text is written in simple, straightforward language, and every effort has been made to ensure smooth reading through good transitions, logical reasoning, and integration of ideas throughout the text.

## Text Features and Learning Aids

### Implementing the homeostasis theme

A unique, easy-to-follow, pictorial homeostatic model showing the relationship among cells, systems, and homeostasis is developed in the introductory chapter and presented on the inside front cover as a quick reference. Each chapter begins with a specially tailored version of this model, accompanied by a brief description emphasizing how the body system considered in the chapter functionally fits in with the body as a whole. This opening feature orients students to the homeostatic aspects of the material that follows. At the close of each chapter, **Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis** helps students put into perspective how the part of the body just discussed contributes to homeostasis. This closing feature, the opening homeostatic model, and the introductory comments work together to facilitate students' comprehension of the interactions and interdependency of body systems, even though each system is discussed separately.

### Pedagogical illustrations

Anatomic illustrations, schematic representations, step-by-step descriptions within process-oriented figures, photographs, tables, and graphs complement and reinforce the written material. Flow diagrams are used extensively to help students inte-

grate the written information. In the flow diagrams, lighter and darker shades of the same color denote a decrease or increase in a controlled variable, such as blood pressure or the concentration of blood glucose. Physical entities, such as body structures and chemicals, are distinguished visually from actions. Icons of physical entities are incorporated into the flow diagrams.

Also, integrated color-coded combinations of a figure with a table help students better visualize what part of the body is responsible for what activities. For example, anatomic depiction of the brain is integrated with a table of the functions of the major brain components, with each component shown in the same color in the figure and the table.

A unique feature of this book is that people depicted in the various illustrations are realistic representatives of a cross-section of humanity (they were drawn from photographs of real people). Sensitivity to various races, sexes, and ages should enable all students to identify with the material being presented.

### Analogies

Many analogies and frequent references to everyday experiences are included to help students relate to the physiology concepts presented. These useful tools have been drawn in large part from my over four decades of teaching experience. Knowing which areas are likely to give students the most difficulty, I have tried to develop links that help them relate the new material to something with which they are already familiar.



### Pathophysiology and clinical coverage

Another effective way to keep students' interest is to help them realize they are learning worthwhile and applicable material. Because many students using this text will have health-related careers, frequent references to pathophysiology and clinical physiology demonstrate the content's relevance to their professional goals. Clinical Note icons flag clinically relevant material, which is integrated throughout the text.

### Boxed feature

An in-depth boxed feature, **Beyond the Basics**, is incorporated within each chapter. These boxes expose students to high-interest information on such diverse topics as stem cell research, acupuncture, exercise physiology, new discoveries regarding common diseases such as strokes, historical perspectives, and body responses to new environments such as those encountered in deep-sea diving.

### Feedforward statements as subsection titles

Instead of traditional short topic titles for each major subsection (for example, "Heart valves"), feedforward statements alert students to the main point of the subsection to come (for example, "Pressure-operated heart valves ensure that blood flows in the right direction through the heart"). These headings also break up large concepts into smaller, more manageable pieces for the student, and as an added bonus, the listing of these

headings in the **Contents** at the beginning of the book serves as a set of objectives for each chapter.

### Key terms and word derivations

Key terms are defined as they appear in the text. Because physiology is laden with new vocabulary words, many of which are rather intimidating at first glance, word derivations are provided to enhance understanding of new words.

## Review and Self-Evaluation Tools in the Text

**NEW!** Tear-out **Study Cards** are available for each chapter. Students can carry these handy chapter summaries instead of the book to conveniently review key concepts for exams. The study cards present the major points of each chapter in concise, section-by-section bulleted lists, including cross-references for page numbers, figures, and tables. The tear-out design lets students more efficiently review material even with the book in hand because they can see the written summary and visual information side-by-side without having to flip pages back and forth. This feature enables students to easily review main concepts before moving on.

The **Review Exercises** at the end of each chapter include a variety of question formats for students to self-test their knowledge and application of the facts and concepts presented. A **Points to Ponder** section features thought-provoking problems that encourage students to analyze what they have learned, and the **Clinical Consideration**, a mini case history, challenges them to apply their knowledge to a patient's specific symptoms. Answers and explanations for these exercises are found in Appendix E and online, as described in the following sections.

### Appendixes and glossary

The appendixes are designed for the most part to help students who need to brush up on some foundation materials or who need additional resources.

- **Appendix A, The Metric System**, is a conversion table between metric measures and their English equivalents.
- Most undergraduate physiology texts have a chapter on chemistry, yet physiology instructors rarely teach basic chemistry concepts. Knowledge of chemistry beyond that introduced in secondary schools is not required for understanding this text. Therefore, I provide instead **Appendix B, A Review of Chemical Principles**, as a handy reference for students who need an introduction or a brief review of basic chemistry concepts that apply to physiology.
- Likewise, **Appendix C, Storage, Replication, and Expression of Genetic Information**, serves as a reference for students or as assigned material if the instructor deems appropriate. It includes a discussion of DNA and chromosomes, protein synthesis, cell division, and mutations.
- The chemical details of acid–base balance are omitted from the text proper but are included in **Appendix D, The Chemistry**

of **Acid–Base Balance**, for those students who have the background and need for a more chemically oriented approach to this topic.

■ **Appendix E, Answers to End-of-Chapter Objective Questions, Points to Ponder, and Clinical Considerations**, provides answers to all objective learning activities and explanations for the Points to Ponder and Clinical Consideration.

Answers to all essay questions are available online at [www.cengage.com/biology/sherwood](http://www.cengage.com/biology/sherwood)

■ The **Glossary**, which offers a way to review the meaning of key terminology, includes phonetic pronunciations of the entries.

## New to the Fourth Edition

This edition has undergone numerous revisions to make the book as current, relevant, and accessible to students as possible. Every aspect of the text has been upgraded as the following examples illustrate. For a detailed list of all changes, contact your Cengage Learning sales representative.

### Extensive new art

Over 90% of the art has been upgraded in this edition, with more three-dimensional art; many conceptually redesigned new figures to enhance student understanding; brighter, more contemporary, and more visually appealing colors; and more consistent style throughout. New to this edition, icons of physical entities are incorporated into flow diagrams to aid students in learning what structures are involved in specific actions. Also, more process-oriented figures with integrated step-by-step descriptions are provided, allowing visually oriented students to review processes through figures.

New figures to this edition include the following examples:

- Figure 5-10, p. 120, Cortical pathway for speaking a word seen or heard
- Figure 6-2, p. 143, Magnitude of receptor potential, frequency of action potentials in afferent fiber, and rate of neurotransmitter release at afferent terminals as a function of stimulus strength
- Figure 8-22, p. 221, Arrangement of thick and thin filaments in a smooth muscle cell in relaxed and contracted states (including cellular blow ups of filament arrangement and sliding), and Figure 8-23, p. 221, Activated myosin cross bridge in smooth muscle
- Figure 17-24, p. 529, Location and structure of the pancreas and cell types in the islets of Langerhans
- Figure 18-10, p. 566, Comparison of mitotic and meiotic divisions producing spermatozoa and eggs from germ cells

Examples of extensively revised, newly conceptualized figures to enhance understanding include the following:

- Figure 2-12, p. 31, Oxidative phosphorylation at the mitochondrial inner membrane
- Figure 3-17, p. 61, Symport of glucose

■ Figure 4-7, p. 77, Permeability changes and ion fluxes during an action potential

■ Figure 6-19, p. 156, Phototransduction, further retinal processing, and initiation of action potentials in the visual pathway

■ Figure 9-13, p. 242, Electrocardiogram waveforms in lead II and electrical status of the heart associated with each waveform

Following are examples of a new and a revised table:

■ Table 7-2, p. 184, Properties of Autonomic Receptor Types (new)

■ Table 10-1, p. 266, Features of Blood Vessels (now with new art comparing the structure of blood vessel types incorporated into the table)

### Updated content

Timely material has been incorporated throughout as the following examples illustrate:

■ Added current information to the boxed feature *Stem Cell Science and Tissue Engineering: The Quest to Make Defective Body Parts Like New Again* regarding induced pluripotent stem cells, organ printing, and new federal policy regarding use of embryonic stem cells (Chapter 1, pp. 8-9)

■ Updated the ionic mechanism for the cardiac pacemaker potential, including the role of funny channels (Chapter 9, pp. 234-235)

■ Expanded coverage of adipokines and introduced distinction between visceral fat and subcutaneous fat (Chapter 16, p. 482)

■ Revised discussion of pro-opiomelanocortin to reflect new understanding of differential processing of this molecule by anterior pituitary corticotropes, skin keratinocytes, hypothalamic appetite-suppressing neurons, and brain endorphin-producing neurons (Chapter 17, pp. 502 and 504)

■ Expanded and updated presentation of the acrosome reaction and penetration of sperm through the corona radiata and zona pellucida, including the role of ZP3. Added the underlying molecular mechanism for block to polyspermy (Chapter 18, p. 576)

### Clearer, more concise coverage

I look at every edition with fresh eyes for opportunities to make the writing as clear, concise, and relevant for the readers as possible, as the following changes in one chapter (Chapter 3) exemplify:

■ Mentioned that some drugs target ion channels, for example,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  blockers, and noted that more than 60 genetic mutations in channels have been linked to human diseases (pp. 45–46)

■ Added definitions of solution, solvent, solute, and concentration immediately prior to coverage of diffusion down concentration gradients (p. 50)

■ Reworked the section on osmosis, osmotic pressure, and tonicity for improved clarity and flow. Added a new figure for tonicity and osmotic water movement (pp. 52–56)

■ Compared the similarities and differences between channels and carriers (p. 56)

■ Further distinguished between primary and secondary active transport, moved coverage of secondary active transport from a later chapter to this chapter and expanded the discussion to include symport (cotransport) and antiport (countertransport or exchange), and extensively revised all accompanying figures (pp. 58–61)

### Enhanced technology

**NEW!** Tutorials with more visuals and interactions than ever are available online to help students succeed. Students are guided through 2- and 3-dimensional animated images, interactive exercises, and quizzes that complement the textbook to help them understand physiology concepts. The most technologically sophisticated new animations are more anatomically realistic, and, more importantly, they integrate multiple components of complex sequences of events to help students tie material together. These high-tech animations include:

- synthesis, packaging, storage, and release of secretory products
- synapses and integration of excitatory signals
- electrical and mechanical events in the cardiac cycle
- respiratory muscle activity, pressure changes, and air movement during ventilation
- oropharyngeal and esophageal stages of swallowing

## Organization

There is no ideal organization of physiologic processes into a logical sequence. In the sequence I chose, most chapters build on material presented in immediately preceding chapters, yet each chapter is designed to stand on its own, allowing the instructor flexibility in curriculum design. This flexibility is facilitated by cross-references to related material in other chapters. The cross-references let students quickly refresh their memory of material already learned or proceed, if desired, to a more in-depth coverage of a particular topic.

The general flow is from introductory background information to cells to excitable tissue (nerve and muscle) to organ systems, with logical transitions from one chapter to the next. For example, Chapter 8, “Muscle Physiology,” ends with a discussion of cardiac (heart) muscle, which is carried forward in Chapter 9, “Cardiac Physiology.” Even topics that seem unrelated in sequence, such as Chapter 11, “Blood and Body Defenses,” and Chapter 12, “The Respiratory System,” are linked together, in this case by ending Chapter 11 with a discussion of respiratory defense mechanisms.

Several organizational features warrant specific mention. The most difficult decision in organizing this text was placement of the endocrine material. There is merit in placing the chapters on the nervous and the endocrine (hormone-secreting) systems in close proximity because they are the body’s two major regulatory systems. However, discussing details of the endocrine system immediately after the nervous system would disrupt the logical flow of material related to excitable tissue. In addition, the endocrine system cannot be covered in the depth

its importance warrants if it is discussed before students have the background to understand this system’s roles in maintaining homeostasis.

My solution to this dilemma is Chapter 4, “Principles of Neural and Hormonal Communication.” This chapter introduces the underlying mechanisms of neural and hormonal action before the nervous system and specific hormones are mentioned in later chapters. It contrasts how nerve cells and endocrine cells communicate with other cells in carrying out their regulatory actions. Building on the different modes of action of nerve and endocrine cells, the last section of this chapter compares, in a general way, how the nervous and endocrine systems differ as regulatory systems. Chapter 5 then begins with the nervous system, providing a good link between Chapters 4 and 5. Chapters 5, 6, and 7 are devoted to the nervous system. Specific hormones are introduced in appropriate chapters, such as hormonal control of the heart and blood vessels in maintaining blood pressure in Chapters 9 and 10 and hormonal control of the kidneys in maintaining fluid balance in Chapters 13 and 14. The body’s processing of absorbed energy-rich nutrient molecules is largely under endocrine control, providing a link from digestion (Chapter 15) and energy balance (Chapter 16) to the endocrine system (Chapter 17). The endocrine chapter pulls together the source, functions, and control of specific endocrine secretions and serves as a summarizing and unifying capstone for homeostatic body function. Finally, building on the hormones that control the gonads (testes and ovaries) introduced in the endocrine chapter, the last chapter, Chapter 18, diverges from the theme of homeostasis to focus on reproductive physiology.

Besides the novel handling of hormones and the endocrine system, other organizational features are unique to this book. For example, unlike other physiology texts, the skin is covered in the chapter on defense mechanisms of the body (Chapter 11), in consideration of the skin’s recently recognized immune functions. Departure from traditional groupings of material in several important instances has permitted more independent and more integrated coverage of topics that are frequently omitted or buried within chapters concerned with other subject matter. For example, a separate chapter (Chapter 14) is devoted to fluid balance and acid–base regulation, topics often tucked within the kidney chapter. Another example is the grouping of the autonomic nervous system, motor neurons, and the neuromuscular junction in an independent chapter (Chapter 7) on the efferent division of the peripheral nervous system, which serves as a link between the nervous system chapters and the muscle chapter (Chapter 8). Energy balance and temperature regulation are also grouped into an independent chapter (Chapter 16).

Although there is a rationale for covering the various aspects of physiology in the order given here, it is by no means the only logical way of presenting the topics. Because each chapter is able to stand on its own, especially with the cross-references provided, instructors can vary the sequence of presentation at their discretion. Some chapters may even be omitted, depending on the students’ needs and interests and the time constraints of the course.

## Ancillaries for Instructors

### CourseMate™

Interested in a simple way to complement your text and course content with study and practice materials? Cengage Learning's *Fundamentals of Human Physiology* CourseMate brings course concepts to life with interactive learning, study, and exam preparation tools that support the printed textbook. Watch student comprehension soar as your class works with the printed textbook and the textbook-specific website. *Fundamentals of Human Physiology* CourseMate goes beyond the book to deliver what you need!

### PowerLecture™

This one-stop digital library and presentation tool includes all the media resources you need with preassembled Microsoft® PowerPoint® lecture slides, Instructor's Manual and Test Bank, active figures, video clips, and stunning new animations. ExamView® testing software is also included, with all the test items from the printed Test Bank in electronic format, enabling you to create customized tests in print or online.

### CengageNOW™

CengageNOW is an online teaching and learning resource that gives you more control in less time and delivers better outcomes—NOW. CengageNOW offers all of your teaching and learning resources in one intuitive program organized around the essential activities you perform for class—lecturing, creating assignments, grading, quizzing, and tracking student progress and performance. CengageNOW provides students access to an integrated e-book, interactive tutorials, active figures, videos, stunning new animations (including 3D), and other multimedia tools that help students to get the most out of your course.

### WebTutor™

Jumpstart your course with customizable, rich, text-specific content within your Course Management System. Whether you want to Web-enable your class or put an entire course online, WebTutor™ delivers. WebTutor™ offers a wide array of resources including interactive tutorials, active figures, videos, stunning new animations (including 3D), and more. Visit [webtutor.cengage.com](http://webtutor.cengage.com) to learn more.

### Online Instructor's Manual

The Instructor's Manual—available online—contains suggestions for using all components available with the text, in addition to source lists of learning aids, film and software resources, relevant websites, and additional organization guidance for instructors.

### Electronic Test Bank

The Test Bank includes thousands of questions in a variety of formats for each text chapter. Also available on PowerLecture and in ExamView®.

## Ancillaries for Students

### CengageNOW™

CengageNOW is an easy-to-use online resource that helps students study in less time to get the grade they want—NOW. Class-tested and student-praised, CengageNOW offers a variety of features that support course objectives and interactive learning. Helping students to be better prepared for class and learn difficult physiology concepts, this web-based resource offers self-paced learning modules with tutorials, interactive quizzes, and animations. With a Personalized Study Plan including pre- and post-tests, animations, and interactive exercises, students can focus on difficult topics in which they need help most.

The animations help bring to life some of the physiologic processes most difficult to visualize, enhancing the understanding of complex sequences of events. Better than ever, the collection of animations has been expanded to include some new, more integrative, realistic, and technologically sophisticated animations.

### Study Guide

Each chapter of this student-oriented supplementary manual, which is correlated with the corresponding chapter in *Fundamentals of Human Physiology*, Fourth Edition, contains a chapter overview, a detailed chapter outline, a list of Key Terms, and Review Exercises (multiple-choice, modified true/false, fill-in-the-blanks, and matching). This learning resource also offers Points to Ponder, questions that stimulate use of material in the chapter as a starting point to critical thinking and further learning. Clinical Perspectives (common applications of the physiology under consideration), Experiments of the Day, and simple hands-on activities enhance the learning process. Answers to the Review Questions are provided at the back of the Study Guide.

### Coloring Book

This helpful study tool contains key pieces of art from the book and provides opportunities for students to interact with the material and explain the processes associated with the figures in their own words.

### Photo Atlas for Anatomy and Physiology

This full-color atlas (with more than 600 photographs) depicts structures in the same colors as they would appear in real life or in a slide. Labels as well as color differentiations within each structure are employed to facilitate identification of the structure's various components. The atlas includes photographs of tissue and organ slides, the human skeleton, commonly used models, cat dissections, cadavers, some fetal pig dissections, and some physiology materials.

### Fundamentals of Physiology Laboratory Manual

This manual, which may be required by the instructor in courses that have a laboratory component, contains a variety of exercises that reinforce concepts covered in *Fundamentals of*

*Human Physiology*, Fourth Edition. These laboratory experiences increase students' understanding of the subject matter in a straightforward manner, with thorough directions to guide them through the process and relevant questions for reviewing, explaining, and applying results.

## Acknowledgments

I gratefully acknowledge the many people who helped with the first three editions of the *Fundamentals of Human Physiology* textbook as well as with the seven editions of the Sherwood, *Human Physiology: From Cells to Systems* textbook on which the *Fundamentals* version is based.

In addition to the 162 reviewers who carefully evaluated the forerunner books for accuracy, clarity, and relevance, I express sincere appreciation to the following individuals who served as reviewers for this edition:

Ahmed Ally, Massachusetts College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences

Deborah Barry, Mountwest Community & Technical College

Linda Collins, University of Tennessee at Chattanooga

Gibril O. Fadika, Hampton University

Michael S. Finkler, Indiana University–Kokomo

Eric Hall, Rhode Island College

Dean Lauritzen, City College of San Francisco

David Thomson, Brigham Young University

Also, I am grateful to the users of the textbook who have taken time to send helpful comments.

I have been fortunate to work with a highly competent, dedicated team from Brooks/Cole. It has been a source of comfort and inspiration to know that so many people have been working diligently in so many ways to bring this book to fruition.

Yolanda Cossio, Publisher, deserves warm thanks for her vision, creative ideas, leadership, and ongoing helpfulness. Yolanda was a strong advocate for making this the best edition yet. Yolanda's decisions were guided by what is best for the instructors and students who will use the textbook and ancillary package. On a personal note, I appreciated her concern and caring when I had surgery during the development process of the book. Thanks also to Editorial Assistants Brandusa Radoias, Kristina Chiapella, and Joshua Taylor who trafficked paperwork and coordinated many tasks for Yolanda during the development process.

I appreciate the efforts of Developmental Editor Suzannah Alexander for facilitating the development process, which proceeded on schedule with no problems or surprises. I am especially grateful for the time she spent talking me through the steps I needed to take to submit the art manuscript entirely electronically for the first time in my over 20 years of authorship.

I am grateful for the creative insight of Brooks/Cole Senior Art Director John Walker, who oversaw the overall artistic design of the text and found the dynamic cover image that simultaneously depicts motion, strength, grace, and agility. The new art style for this edition was developed by Suzannah Alexander to ensure that the visual aspects of the text are aesthetically pleasing, consistent, contemporary, and meaningful.

The technology-enhanced learning tools in the media package were updated under the guidance of Managing Media Editor Shelley Ryan and Technology Project Manager Alex Brady. These include the online interactive tutorials, media exercises, and other learning opportunities in CengageNOW. Assistant Editor Alexis Glubka oversaw the development of the multiple hard-copy components of the ancillary package, making sure it was a cohesive whole. A hearty note of gratitude is extended to all of them for the high-quality multimedia package that accompanies this edition.

On the production side, I would like to thank Content Project Manager Michelle Clark, who closely monitored every step of the production process while simultaneously overseeing the complex production process of multiple books. I felt confident knowing that she was making sure that everything was going according to plan. I also thank Rights Acquisitions Specialist Don Schlotman for tracking down permissions for the art and other copyrighted materials incorporated in the text, an absolutely essential task. With everything finally coming together, Print Buyer Paula Vang oversaw the manufacturing process, coordinating the actual printing of the book.

No matter how well a book is conceived, produced, and printed, it would not reach its full potential as an educational tool without being efficiently and effectively marketed. Marketing Manager Tom Ziolkowski, Marketing Assistant Elizabeth Wong, and Marketing Communications Manager Linda Yip played the lead roles in marketing this text, for which I am most appreciative.

Brooks/Cole also did an outstanding job in selecting highly skilled vendors to carry out particular production tasks. First and foremost, it has been my personal and professional pleasure to work with two very capable Production Editors at Graphic World: Carol O'Connell, who smoothed out the inevitable bumps in the beginning of the production process, and Laura Sullivan, who took over midstream when Carol moved to another position and helped bring the book to conclusion without missing a beat. In their competent hands lay the responsibility of seeing that all art, typesetting, page layout, and other related details got done right and in a timely fashion.

Finally, my love and gratitude go to my family for the sacrifices in family life as this edition was being developed and produced. I want to thank my husband, children, grandchildren, and mother for their patience and understanding during the times I was working on the book instead of being there with them or for them. My husband, Peter Marshall, deserves special appreciation and recognition for assuming extra responsibilities while I was working on the book. I could not have done this, or any of the preceding books, without his help, support, and encouragement.

Thanks to all!

Lauralee Sherwood

# Fundamentals of Human Physiology

FOURTH EDITION



**During the minute that it will take you to read this page:**

Your eyes will convert the image from this page into electrical signals (nerve impulses) that will transmit the information to your brain for processing.

Your heart will beat 70 times, pumping 5 liters (about 5 quarts) of blood to your lungs and another 5 liters to the rest of your body.

Approximately 150 million old red blood cells will die and be replaced by newly produced ones.

More than 1 liter of blood will flow through your kidneys, which will act on the blood to conserve the "wanted" materials and eliminate the "unwanted" materials in the urine. Your kidneys will produce 1 ml (about a thimbleful) of urine.

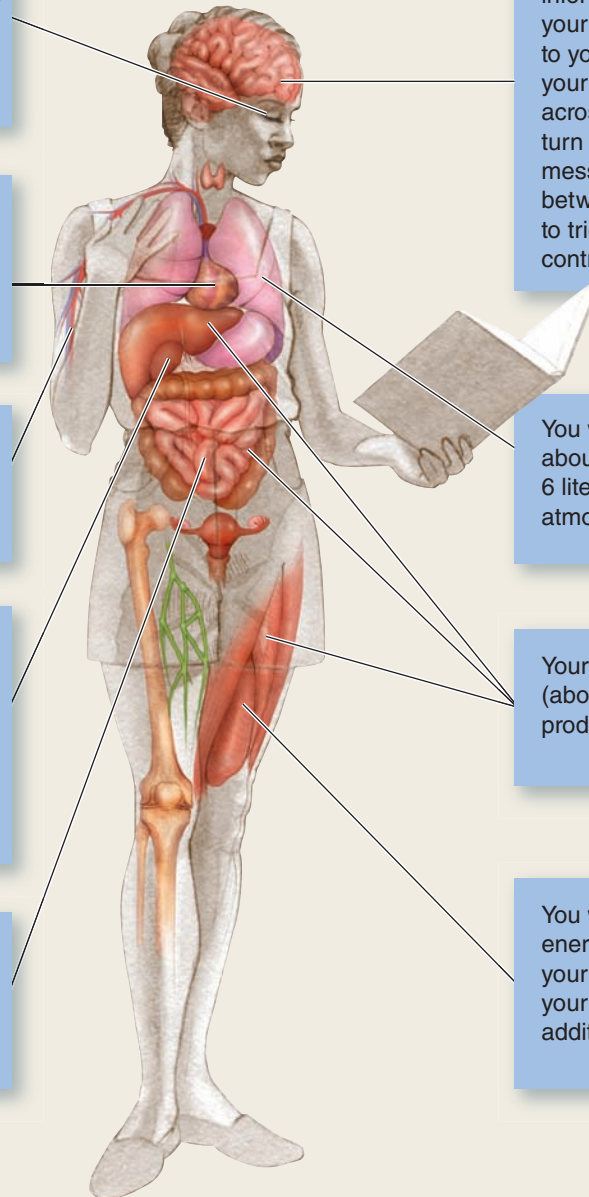
Your digestive system will be processing your last meal for transfer into your bloodstream for delivery to your cells.

Besides receiving and processing information such as visual input, your brain will provide output to your muscles to help maintain your posture, move your eyes across the page as you read, and turn the page as needed. Chemical messengers will carry signals between your nerves and muscles to trigger appropriate muscle contraction.

You will breathe in and out about 12 times, exchanging 6 liters of air between the atmosphere and your lungs.

Your cells will consume 250 ml (about a cup) of oxygen and produce 200 ml of carbon dioxide.

You will use about 2 calories of energy derived from food to support your body's "cost of living," and your contracting muscles will burn additional calories.



## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

### Introduction to Physiology

Definition of physiology

Relationship between structure and function

### Levels of Organization in the Body

Cells as the basic units of life

Organizational levels of tissues, organs, systems, and organisms

### Concept of Homeostasis

Significance of the internal environment

Necessity of homeostasis

Factors that are homeostatically maintained

Contributions of each body system to homeostasis

### Homeostatic Control Systems

Components of a homeostatic control system

# Introduction to Physiology and Homeostasis

## Introduction to Physiology

The activities described on the preceding page are a sampling of the processes that occur in our bodies all the time just to keep us alive. We usually take these life-sustaining activities for granted and do not really think about “what makes us tick,” but that’s what physiology is about. **Physiology** is the study of the functions of living things. Here, we focus on how the human body works.

### Physiology focuses on mechanisms of action.

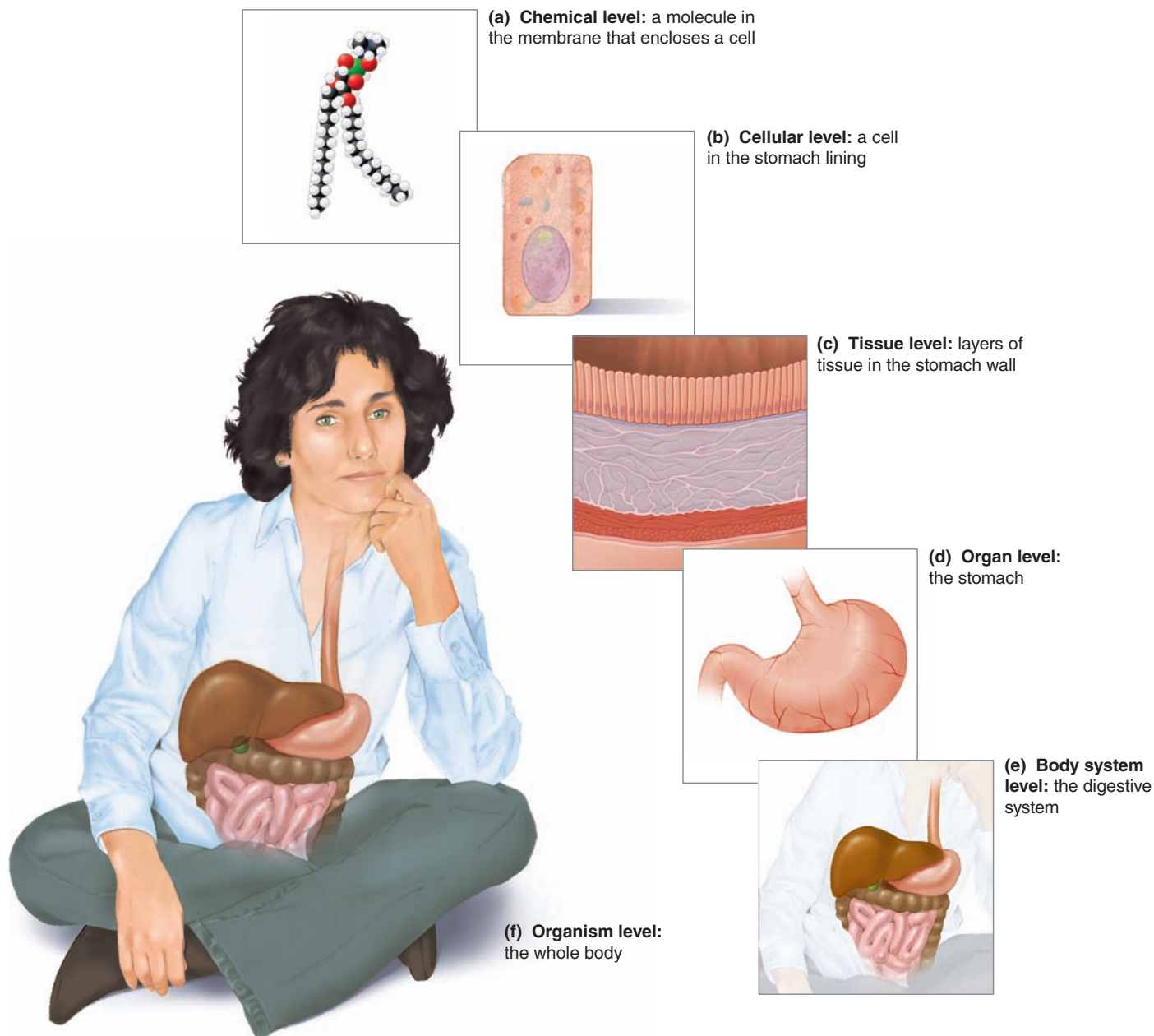
Two approaches are used to explain events that occur in the body: one emphasizing the *purpose* of a body process and the other the underlying *mechanism* by which this process occurs. In response to the question “Why do I shiver when I am cold?” one answer would be “to help my body warm up, because shivering generates heat.” This approach, which explains body functions in terms of meeting a bodily need, emphasizes *why* body processes occur. Physiologists, however, explain *how* processes occur in the body. They view the body as a machine whose mechanisms of action can be explained in terms of cause-and-effect sequences of physical and chemical processes—the same types of processes that occur throughout the universe. A physiologist’s explanation of shivering is that when temperature-sensitive nerve cells detect a fall in body temperature, they signal the area in the brain responsible for temperature regulation. In response, this brain area activates nerve pathways that ultimately bring about involuntary, oscillating muscle contractions (that is, shivering).

### Structure and function are inseparable.

Physiology is closely related to **anatomy**, the study of the structure of the body. Physiological mechanisms are made possible by the structural design and relationships of the various body parts that carry out each of these functions. Just as the functioning of an automobile depends on the shapes, organization, and interactions of its various parts, the structure and function of the human body are inseparable. Therefore, as we tell the story of how the body works, we provide sufficient anatomic background for you to understand the function of the body part being discussed.

## Levels of Organization in the Body

We now turn to how the body is structurally organized into a total functional unit, from the chemical level to the whole body (● Figure 1-1). These levels of organization make possible life as we know it.



● **FIGURE 1-1** Levels of organization in the body, showing an example for each level.

### The chemical level: Various atoms and molecules make up the body.

Like all matter, both living and nonliving, the human body is a combination of specific *atoms*, which are the smallest building blocks of matter. The most common atoms in the body—oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>), carbon, hydrogen, and nitrogen—make up approximately 96% of the total body chemistry. These common atoms and a few others combine to form the *molecules* of life, such as proteins, carbohydrates, fats, and nucleic acids (genetic material, such as deoxyribonucleic acid, or DNA). These important atoms and molecules are the inanimate raw ingredients from which all living things arise. (See Appendix B for a review of this chemical level.)

### The cellular level: Cells are the basic units of life.

The mere presence of a particular collection of atoms and molecules does not confer the unique characteristics of life. Instead, these nonliving chemical components must be arranged and packaged in precise ways to form a living entity. The **cell**, the fundamental unit of both structure and function in a living being, is the smallest unit capable of carrying out the processes associated with life. Cell physiology is the focus of Chapter 2.

An extremely thin, oily barrier, the *plasma membrane*, encloses the contents of each cell and controls movement of materials into and out of the cell. Thus, the cell's interior contains a combination of atoms and molecules that differs from the mixture of chemicals in the environment surrounding the cell.

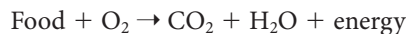
Given the importance of the plasma membrane and its associated functions for carrying out life processes, Chapter 3 is devoted entirely to this structure.

**Organisms** are independent living entities. The simplest forms of independent life are single-celled organisms such as bacteria and amoebas. Complex multicellular organisms, such as trees and humans, are structural and functional aggregates of trillions of cells (*multi* means “many”). In the simpler multicellular forms of life—for example, a sponge—the cells of the organism are all similar. However, more complex organisms, such as humans, have many kinds of cells, such as muscle cells, nerve cells, and gland cells.

Each human organism begins when an egg and sperm unite to form a single new cell, which multiplies and forms a growing mass through myriad cell divisions. If cell multiplication were the only process involved in development, all the body cells would be essentially identical, as in the simplest multicellular life-forms. However, during development of complex multicellular organisms such as humans, each cell also **differentiates**, or becomes specialized to carry out a particular function. As a result of cell differentiation, your body is made up of about 200 specialized types of cells.

**BASIC CELL FUNCTIONS** All cells, whether they exist as solitary cells or as part of a multicellular organism, perform certain basic functions essential for their own survival. These basic cell functions include the following:

1. Obtaining food (nutrients) and O<sub>2</sub> from the environment surrounding the cell.
2. Performing chemical reactions that use nutrients and O<sub>2</sub> to provide energy for the cells, as follows:



3. Eliminating to the cell’s surrounding environment carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) and other by-products, or wastes, produced during these chemical reactions.
4. Synthesizing proteins and other components needed for cell structure, for growth, and for carrying out particular cell functions.
5. Largely controlling the exchange of materials between the cell and its surrounding environment.
6. Moving materials internally from one part of the cell to another, with some cells also being able to move themselves through their surrounding environment.
7. Being sensitive and responsive to changes in the surrounding environment.
8. In the case of most cells, reproducing. Some body cells, most notably nerve cells and muscle cells, lose the ability to reproduce soon after they are formed. This is the reason strokes, which result in lost nerve cells in the brain, and heart attacks, which bring about death of heart muscle cells, can be so devastating.

Cells are remarkably similar in the ways they carry out these basic functions. Thus, all cells share many common characteristics.

**SPECIALIZED CELL FUNCTIONS** In multicellular organisms, each cell also performs a specialized function, which is usually a modification or elaboration of a basic cell function. For example, by taking special advantage of their protein-synthesizing ability, the gland cells of the digestive system secrete digestive enzymes that break down ingested food; **enzymes** are specialized proteins that speed up particular chemical reactions in the body.

Each cell performs these specialized activities in addition to carrying on the unceasing, fundamental activities required of all cells. The basic cell functions are essential for survival of individual cells, whereas the specialized contributions and interactions among the cells of a multicellular organism are essential for survival of the whole body.

Just as a machine does not function unless all its parts are properly assembled, the cells of the body must be specifically organized to carry out the life-sustaining processes of the body as a whole, such as digestion, respiration, and circulation. Cells are progressively organized into tissues, organs, body systems, and finally the whole body.

### The tissue level: Tissues are groups of cells of similar specialization.

Cells of similar structure and specialized function combine to form **tissues**, of which there are four *primary types*: muscle, nervous, epithelial, and connective (● Figure 1-2). Each tissue consists of cells of a single specialized type, along with varying amounts of extracellular material (*extra* means “outside of”).

■ **Muscle tissue** consists of cells specialized for contracting, which generates tension and produces movement. There are three types of muscle tissue: *skeletal muscle*, which moves the skeleton; *cardiac muscle*, which pumps blood out of the heart; and *smooth muscle*, which controls movement of contents through hollow tubes and organs, such as movement of food through the digestive tract.

■ **Nervous tissue** consists of cells specialized for initiating and transmitting electrical impulses, sometimes over long distances. These electrical impulses act as signals that relay information from one part of the body to another. Such signals are important in communication, coordination, and control in the body. Nervous tissue is found in the brain, spinal cord, nerves, and special sense organs.

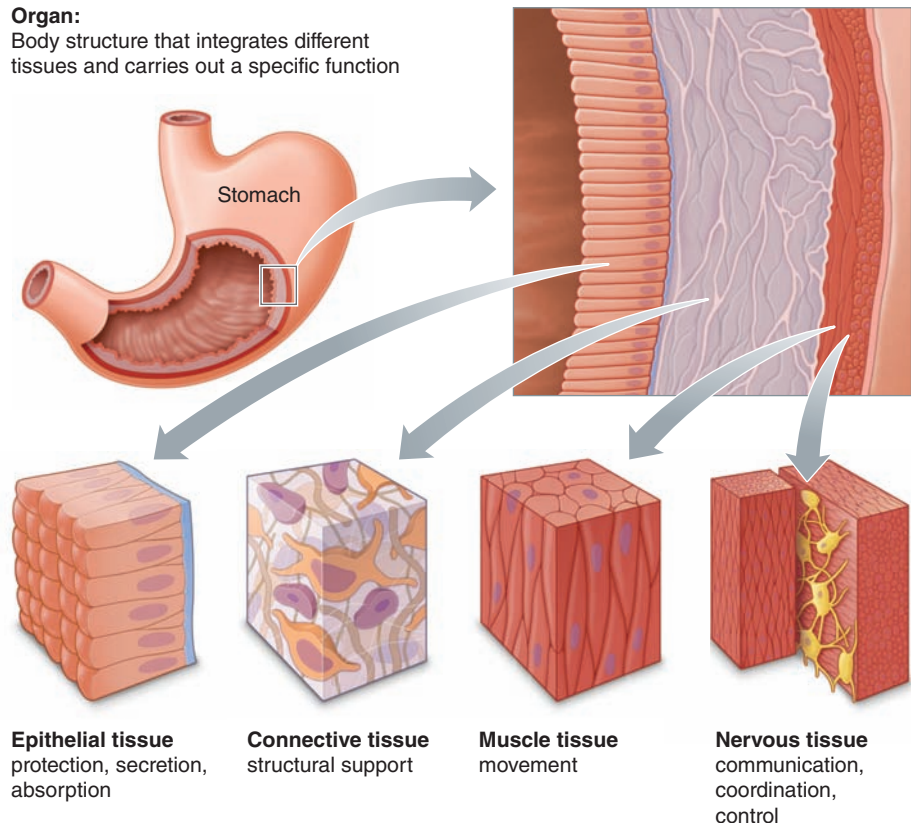
■ **Epithelial tissue** consists of cells specialized for exchanging materials between the cell and its environment. Any substance that enters or leaves the body proper must cross an epithelial barrier. Epithelial tissue is organized into two general types of structures: epithelial sheets and secretory glands. *Epithelial sheets* are layers of tightly joined cells that cover and line various parts of the body. For example, the outer layer of the skin is epithelial tissue, as is the lining of the digestive tract. In general, epithelial sheets serve as boundaries that separate the body from its surroundings and from the contents of cavities that open to the outside, such as the digestive tract lumen. (A **lumen** is the cavity within a hollow organ or tube.) Only selective transfer of materials is possible between regions separated by an epithelial barrier. The type and extent of controlled exchange vary, depending on the location and function of the epithelial tissue. For example, the skin can ex-

change little between the body and the surrounding environment, making it a protective barrier. By contrast, the epithelial cells lining the small intestine of the digestive tract are specialized for absorbing nutrients that have come from outside the body.

**Glands** are epithelial tissue derivatives specialized for secreting. **Secretion** is the release from a cell, in response to appropriate stimulation, of specific products that have been produced by the cell. There are two categories of glands: exocrine and endocrine (● Figure 1-3). **Exocrine glands** secrete through ducts to the outside of the body (or into a cavity that opens to the outside) (*exo* means “external”; *crine* means “secretion”). Examples are sweat glands and glands that secrete digestive juices. **Endocrine glands** lack ducts and release their secretory products, known as *hormones*, internally into the blood (*endo* means “internal”). For example, the pancreas secretes insulin into the blood, which transports this hormone to its sites of action throughout the body. Most cell types depend on insulin for taking up glucose (sugar).

■ **Connective tissue** is distinguished by having relatively few cells dispersed within an abundance of extracellular material. As its name implies, connective tissue connects, supports, and anchors various body parts. It includes such diverse structures as the loose connective tissue that attaches epithelial tissue to underlying structures; tendons, which attach skeletal muscles to bones; bone, which gives the body shape, support, and protection; and blood, which transports materials from one part of the body to another. Except for blood, the cells within connective tissue produce specific structural molecules that they release into the extracellular spaces between the cells. One such molecule is the rubber band-like protein fiber *elastin*; its presence facilitates the stretching and recoiling of structures such as the lungs, which alternately inflate and deflate during breathing.

**Organ:**  
Body structure that integrates different tissues and carries out a specific function



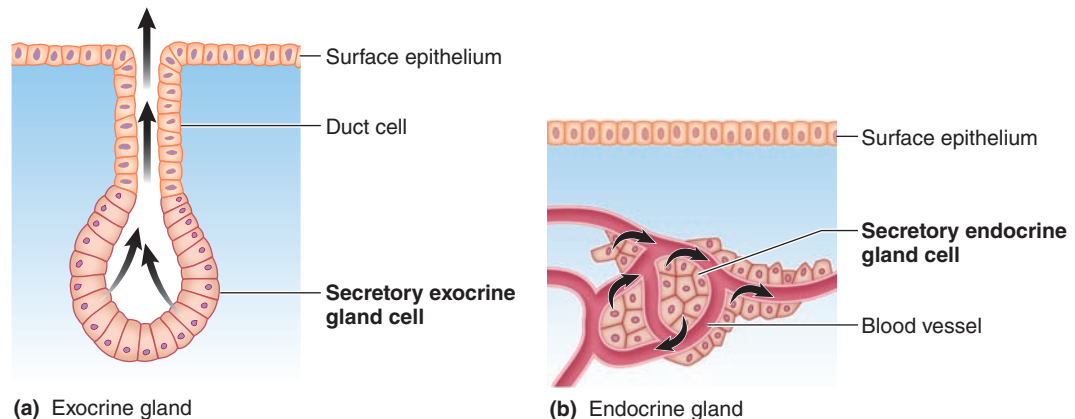
● **FIGURE 1-2** The stomach as an organ made up of all four primary tissue types.

Muscle, nervous, epithelial, and connective tissue are the primary tissues in a classical sense; that is, each is an integrated collection of cells with the same specialized structure and function. The term *tissue* is also often used, as in clinical medicine, to mean the aggregate of various cellular and extracellular components that make up a particular organ (for example, lung tissue or liver tissue).

**The organ level: An organ is a unit made up of several tissue types.**

**Organs** consist of two or more types of primary tissue organized together to perform a particular function or functions. The stomach is an example of an organ made up of all four pri-

● **FIGURE 1-3 Exocrine and endocrine glands.** (a) Exocrine gland cells release their secretory product through a duct to the outside of the body (or to a cavity in communication with the outside). (b) Endocrine gland cells release their secretory product (a hormone) into the blood.



many tissue types (see ● Figure 1-2). The tissues of the stomach function collectively to store ingested food, move it forward into the rest of the digestive tract, and begin the digestion of protein. The stomach is lined with epithelial tissue that restricts the transfer of harsh digestive chemicals and undigested food from the stomach lumen into the blood. Epithelial gland cells in the stomach include exocrine cells, which secrete protein-digesting juices into the lumen, and endocrine cells, which secrete a hormone that helps regulate the stomach's exocrine secretion and muscle contraction. The wall of the stomach contains smooth muscle tissue, whose contractions mix ingested food with the digestive juices and push the mixture out of the stomach and into the intestine. The stomach wall also contains nervous tissue, which, along with hormones, controls muscle contraction and gland secretion. Connective tissue binds together all these various tissues.

### The body system level: A body system is a collection of related organs.

Groups of organs are further organized into **body systems**. Each system is a collection of organs that perform related functions and interact to accomplish a common activity essential for survival of the whole body. For example, the digestive system consists of the mouth, pharynx (throat), esophagus, stomach, small intestine, large intestine, salivary glands, exocrine pancreas, liver, and gallbladder. These digestive organs cooperate to break food down into small nutrient molecules that can be absorbed into the blood for distribution to all cells.

The human body has 11 systems: circulatory, digestive, respiratory, urinary, skeletal, muscular, integumentary, immune, nervous, endocrine, and reproductive (● Figure 1-4). Chapters 4 through 18 cover the details of these systems.

### The organism level: The body systems are packaged together into a functional whole body.

Each body system depends on the proper functioning of other systems to carry out its specific responsibilities. The whole body of a multicellular organism—a single, independently living individual—consists of the various body systems structurally and functionally linked as an entity that is separate from its surrounding environment. Thus, the body is made up of living cells organized into life-sustaining systems.

Currently, researchers are hotly pursuing several approaches for repairing or replacing tissues or organs that can no longer adequately perform vital functions because of disease, trauma, or age-related changes. (See the boxed feature on pp. 8–9, ► Beyond the Basics. Each chapter has a similar boxed feature that explores in greater depth high-interest, tangential information on such diverse topics as environmental impact on the body, benefits of exercise, ethical issues, discoveries regarding common diseases, and historical perspectives.)

We next focus on how the different body systems normally work together to maintain the internal conditions necessary for life.

## Concept of Homeostasis

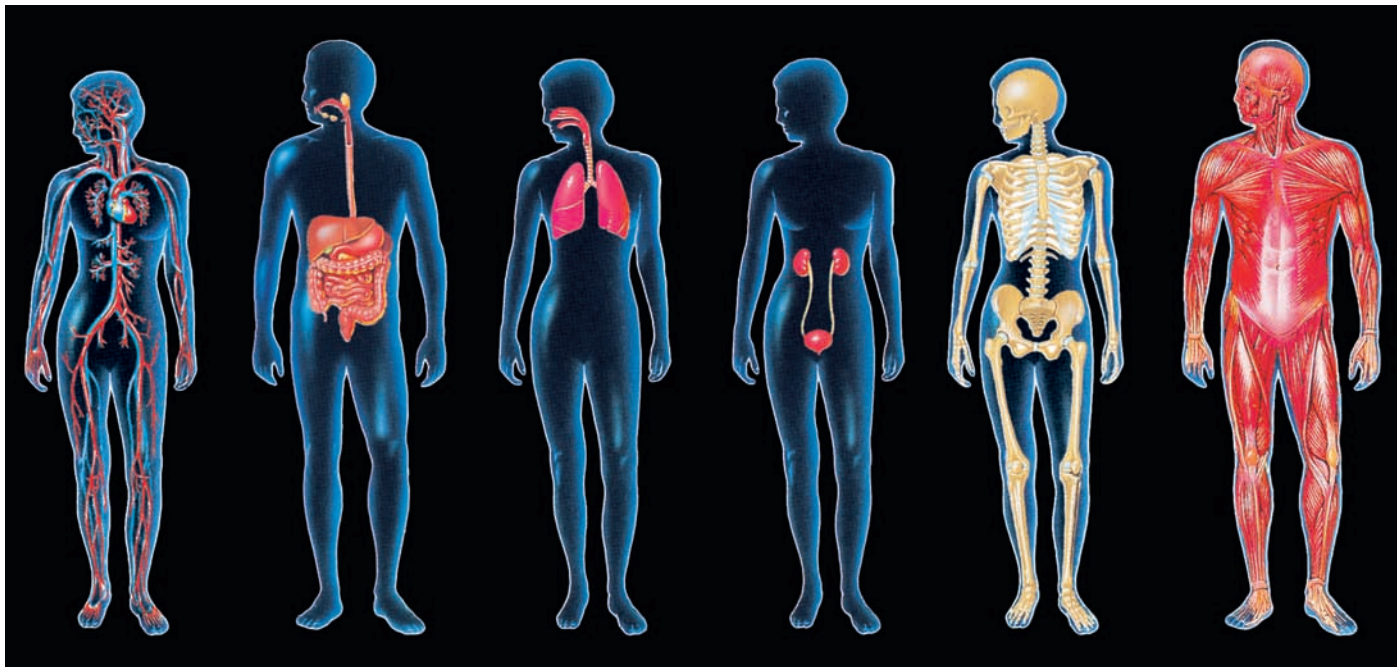
If each cell has basic survival skills, why can't the body cells live without performing specialized tasks and being organized according to specialization into systems that accomplish functions essential for the whole organism's survival? The cells in a multicellular organism cannot live and function without contributions from the other body cells because most cells are not in direct contact with the external environment. The **external environment** is the surrounding environment in which an organism lives. A single-celled organism such as an amoeba obtains nutrients and O<sub>2</sub> directly from its immediate external surroundings and eliminates wastes back into those surroundings. A muscle cell or any other cell in a multicellular organism has the same need for life-supporting nutrient and O<sub>2</sub> uptake and waste elimination, yet the muscle cell is isolated from the external environment surrounding the body. How can it make vital exchanges with the external environment with which it has no contact? The key is the presence of a watery **internal environment**. The internal environment is the fluid that surrounds the cells and through which they make life-sustaining exchanges.

### Body cells are in contact with a privately maintained internal environment.

The fluid collectively contained within all body cells is called **intracellular fluid (ICF)**. The fluid outside the cells is called **extracellular fluid (ECF)**. Note that the ECF is outside the cells but inside the body. Thus, the ECF is the internal environment of the body: You live in the external environment; your cells live within the body's internal environment.

ECF is made up of two components: the **plasma**, the fluid portion of the blood, and the **interstitial fluid**, which surrounds and bathes the cells (*inter* means “between”; *stitial* means “that which stands”) (● Figure 1-5).

No matter how remote a cell is from the external environment, it can make life-sustaining exchanges with its own surrounding fluid. In turn, particular body systems accomplish the transfer of materials between the external environment and the internal environment so that the composition of the internal environment is appropriately maintained to support the life and functioning of the cells. For example, the digestive system transfers the nutrients required by all body cells from the external environment into the plasma. Likewise, the respiratory system transfers O<sub>2</sub> from the external environment into the plasma. The circulatory system distributes these nutrients and O<sub>2</sub> throughout the body. Materials are thoroughly mixed and exchanged between the plasma and the interstitial fluid across the capillaries, the smallest and thinnest of the blood vessels. As a result, the nutrients and O<sub>2</sub> originally obtained from the external environment are delivered to the interstitial fluid, from which the body cells pick up these needed supplies. Similarly, wastes produced by the cells are released into the interstitial fluid, picked up by the plasma, and transported to the organs that specialize in eliminating these wastes from the internal environment to the external environment. The lungs remove CO<sub>2</sub> from the plasma, and the kidneys remove other wastes for elimination in the urine.



**Circulatory system**  
heart, blood vessels,  
blood

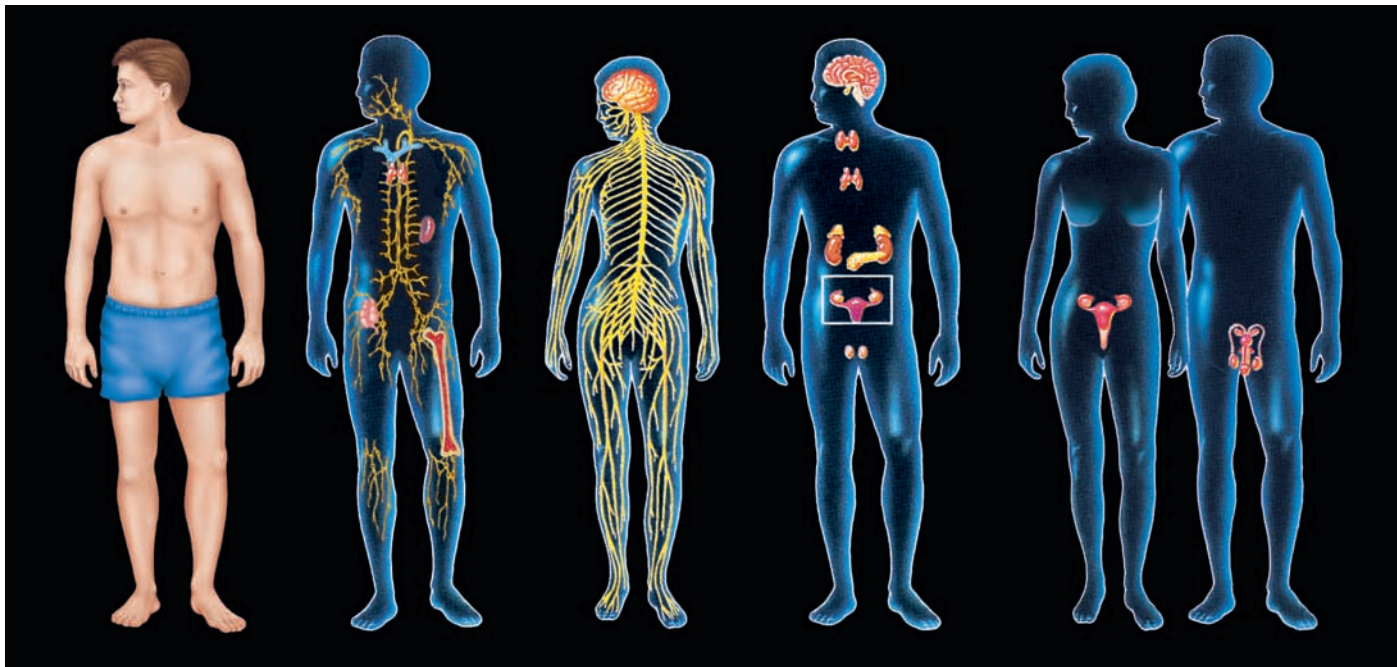
**Digestive system**  
mouth, pharynx,  
esophagus, stomach,  
small intestine, large  
intestine, salivary  
glands, exocrine  
pancreas, liver,  
gallbladder

**Respiratory system**  
nose, pharynx, larynx,  
trachea, bronchi, lungs

**Urinary system**  
kidneys, ureters,  
urinary bladder,  
urethra

**Skeletal system**  
bones, cartilage,  
joints

**Muscular system**  
skeletal muscles



**Integumentary system**  
skin, hair, nails

**Immune system**  
lymph nodes, thymus,  
bone marrow, tonsils,  
adenoids, spleen,  
appendix, and,  
not shown, white  
blood cells,  
gut-associated  
lymphoid tissue

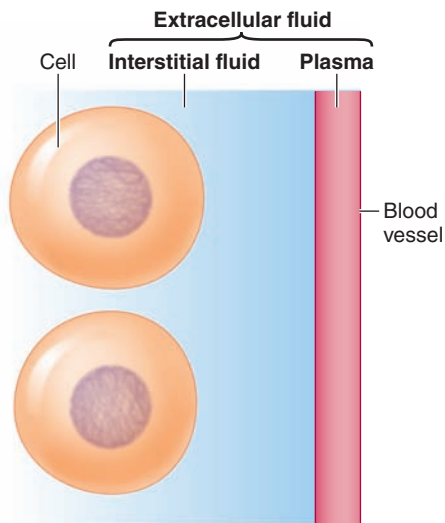
**Nervous system**  
brain, spinal cord,  
peripheral nerves,  
and, not shown,  
special sense organs

**Endocrine system**  
all hormone-secreting  
tissues, including  
hypothalamus, pituitary,  
thyroid, adrenals, endocrine  
pancreas, gonads, kidneys,  
pineal, thymus, and,  
not shown, parathyroids,  
intestine, heart, skin,  
adipose tissue

**Reproductive system**  
*Male:* testes, penis, prostate  
gland, seminal vesicles,  
bulbourethral glands,  
associated ducts

*Female:* ovaries, oviducts,  
uterus, vagina, breasts

● **FIGURE 1-4** Components of the body systems.



● **FIGURE 1-5** Components of the extracellular fluid (internal environment).

Thus, a body cell takes in essential nutrients from its watery surroundings and eliminates wastes into these same surroundings, just as an amoeba does. The main difference is that each body cell must help maintain the composition of the internal environment so that this fluid continuously remains suitable to support the existence of all body cells. In contrast, an amoeba does nothing to regulate its surroundings.

### Body systems maintain homeostasis, a dynamic steady state in the internal environment.

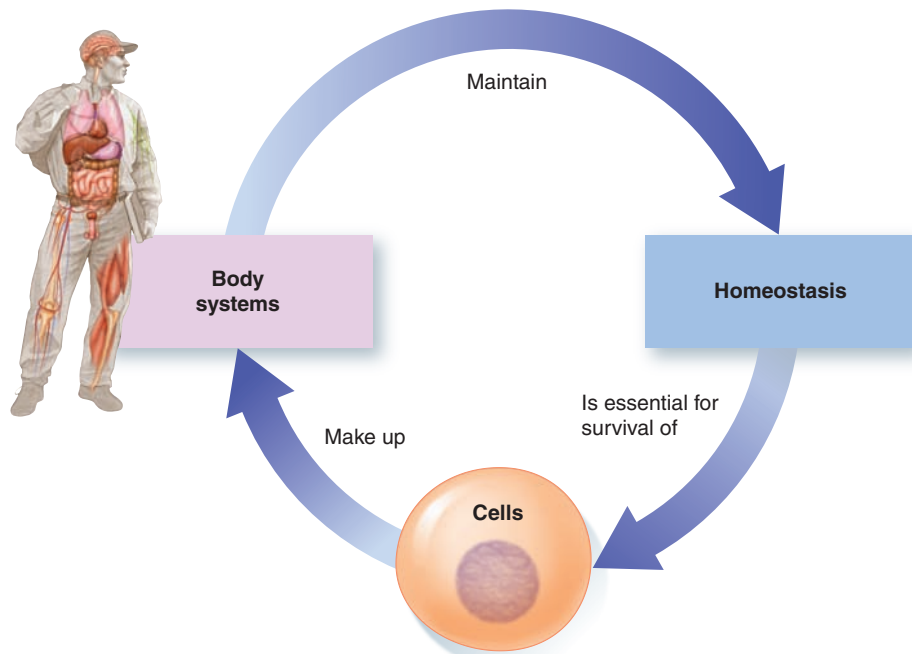
Body cells can live and function only when the ECF is compatible with their survival; thus, the chemical composition and physical state of this internal environment must be maintained within narrow limits. As cells take up nutrients and O<sub>2</sub> from the internal environment, these essential materials must constantly be replenished. Likewise, wastes must constantly be removed from the internal environment so that they do not reach toxic levels. Other aspects of the internal environment important for maintaining life, such as temperature, also must be kept relatively constant. Maintenance of a relatively stable internal environment is termed **homeostasis** (*homeo* means “the same”; *stasis* means “to stand or stay”).

The functions performed by each body system contribute to homeostasis, thereby maintaining within the body the environment required for the survival and function of all cells. Cells, in turn, make up body systems. This is the central theme of physiology

and of this book: *Homeostasis is essential for the survival of each cell, and each cell, through its specialized activities as part of a body system, helps maintain the internal environment shared by all cells* (● Figure 1-6).

The internal environment must be kept relatively stable, but this does not mean that its composition, temperature, and other characteristics are absolutely unchanging. Both external and internal factors continuously threaten to disrupt homeostasis. When any factor starts to move the internal environment away from optimal conditions, the body systems initiate appropriate counterreactions to minimize the change. For example, exposure to a cold environmental temperature (an external factor) tends to reduce the body’s internal temperature. In response, the temperature control center in the brain initiates compensatory measures, such as shivering, to raise body temperature to normal. By contrast, production of extra heat by working muscles during exercise (an internal factor) tends to raise the body’s internal temperature. In response, the temperature control center brings about sweating and other compensatory measures to reduce body temperature to normal.

Thus, homeostasis is not a rigid, fixed state but a dynamic steady state in which the changes that do occur are minimized by compensatory physiological responses. The term *dynamic* refers to each homeostatically regulated factor being marked by continuous change, whereas *steady state* implies that these changes do not deviate far from a constant, or steady, level. This situation is comparable to the minor steering adjustments you make as you drive a car along a straight stretch of highway. Small fluctuations around the optimal level for each factor in the internal environment are normally kept, by carefully regulated mechanisms, within the narrow limits compatible with life.



● **FIGURE 1-6** Interdependent relationship of cells, body systems, and homeostasis. Homeostasis is essential for the survival of cells, cells make up body systems, and body systems maintain homeostasis. This relationship serves as the foundation for modern-day physiology.



## Beyond the Basics

Liver failure, stroke, paralyzing spinal-cord injury, diabetes mellitus, damaged heart muscle, arthritis, extensive burns, a cancerous breast, an arm mangled in an accident: Although our bodies are remarkable and normally serve us well, sometimes a body part is defective, injured beyond repair, or lost in such situations. In addition to the loss of quality of life for affected individuals, the cost of treating patients with lost, permanently damaged, or failing organs accounts for about half of the total health-care expenditures in the United States. Ideally, when the body suffers an irreparable loss, new, permanent replacement parts would be substituted to restore normal function and appearance. Fortunately, this possibility is moving rapidly from the realm of science fiction to the reality of scientific progress.

### The Medical Promise of Stem Cells

Stem cells offer exciting medical promise for repairing or replacing organs that are diseased, damaged, or worn out. **Stem cells** are versatile cells that are not specialized for a specific function but can divide to give rise to highly specialized cells while maintaining a supply of new stem cells. Two categories of stem cells are being explored: embryonic stem cells and tissue-specific stem cells from adults. **Embryonic stem cells (ESCs)** result from the early divisions of a fertilized egg. These undifferentiated cells ultimately give rise to all mature, specialized cells of the body, while simultaneously self-renewing. ESCs are *pluripotent*, meaning they have the potential to generate any cell type in the body if given the appropriate cues.

During development, the undifferentiated ESCs give rise to many partially differentiated **tissue-specific stem cells**, each of which becomes committed to generating the highly differentiated, specialized cell types that compose a particular tissue. For example, tissue-specific muscle stem cells give rise to

## Stem-Cell Science and Tissue Engineering: The Quest to Make Defective Body Parts Like New Again

specialized muscle cells. Some tissue-specific stem cells remain in adult tissues, where they serve as a continual source of new specialized cells to maintain or repair structure and function in that particular tissue. Tissue-specific stem cells have even been found in adult brain and muscle tissue. Even though mature nerve and muscle cells cannot reproduce themselves, to a limited extent, adult brains and muscles can grow new cells throughout life by means of these persisting stem cells. However, this process is too slow to keep pace with major losses, as in a stroke or heart attack. Some investigators are searching for drugs that might spur a person's own tissue-specific stem cells into increased action to make up for damage or loss of that tissue—a feat that is not currently feasible.

More hope is pinned on nurturing stem cells outside the body for possible transplant into the body. In 1998, for the first time, researchers succeeded in isolating ESCs and maintaining them indefinitely in an undifferentiated state in culture. With **cell culture**, cells isolated from a living organism continue to thrive and reproduce in laboratory dishes when supplied with appropriate nutrients and supportive materials.

The medical promise of ESCs lies in their potential to serve as an all-purpose material that can be coaxed into whatever cell types are needed to patch up the body. Studies in the last decade demonstrate that these cells have the ability to differentiate into particular cells when exposed to the appropriate chemical signals. As scientists gradually learn to prepare the right cocktail of chemical signals to direct the undifferentiated cells into the desired cell types, they will have the potential to fill deficits in damaged or dead tissue with healthy cells. Scientists even foresee the ability to grow customized tissues and eventually whole, made-

to-order replacement organs, a process known as **tissue engineering**.

### The Medical Promise of Tissue Engineering

The era of tissue engineering is being ushered in by advances in cell biology, plastic manufacturing, and computer graphics. Using computer-aided designs, pure, biodegradable plastics are shaped into three-dimensional molds or scaffoldings that mimic the structure of a particular tissue or organ. The plastic mold is then “seeded” with the desired cell types, which are coaxed, by applying appropriate nourishing and stimulatory chemicals, into multiplying and assembling into the desired body part. After the plastic scaffolding dissolves, only the newly generated tissue remains, ready to be implanted into a patient as a permanent, living replacement part.

More recently, some investigators are experimenting with *organ printing*. Based on the principle used in desktop printers, organ printing involves computer-aided layer-by-layer deposition of “biological ink.” Biological ink consists of cells, scaffold materials, and supportive growth factors that are simultaneously printed in thin layers in a highly organized pattern based on the anatomy of the organ under construction. Fusion of these living layers forms a three-dimensional structure that mimics the body part the printed organ is designed to replace.

What about the source of cells to seed the plastic mold or print the organ? The immune system is programmed to attack foreign cells, such as invading bacteria or cells transplanted into the body from another individual. Such an attack brings about rejection of transplanted cells unless the transplant recipient is treated with *immunosuppressive drugs* (drugs that suppress the immune system's attack on the transplanted material). An unfortunate side effect of these drugs is the

**HOMEOSTATICALLY REGULATED FACTORS** Many factors of the internal environment must be homeostatically maintained. They include the following:

1. *Concentration of nutrients.* Cells need a constant supply of nutrient molecules for energy production. Energy, in turn,

is needed to support life-sustaining and specialized cell activities.

2. *Concentration of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub>.* Cells need O<sub>2</sub> to carry out energy-yielding chemical reactions. The CO<sub>2</sub> produced during these reactions must be removed so that acid-forming CO<sub>2</sub> does not increase the acidity of the internal environment.

reduced ability of the patient's immune system to defend against potential disease-causing bacteria and viruses. To prevent rejection by the immune system and avoid the necessity of lifelong immunosuppressive drugs, tissue engineers could use appropriate specialized cells harvested from the recipient if these cells were available. However, because of the very need for a replacement part, the patient often does not have any appropriate cells for seeding or printing the replacement. This is what makes ESCs potentially so exciting. Through genetic engineering, these stem cells could be converted into "universal" seed cells that would be immunologically acceptable to any recipient; that is, they could be genetically programmed to not be rejected by any body.

Here are some of the tissue engineers' early accomplishments and future predictions:

- Engineered skin patches are being used to treat victims of severe burns.
- Laboratory-grown cartilage and bone graft substitutes are already in use.
- Lab-grown bladders were the first organs successfully implanted in humans.
- Heart-muscle patches are being developed for repairing damaged hearts.
- Progress has been made on building artificial heart valves and teeth.
- Tissue-engineered scaffolding to promote nerve regeneration is being tested in animals.
- Progress has been made on growing two complicated organs, the liver and the pancreas.
- Engineered joints will be used as living, more satisfactory alternatives to the plastic and metal devices used as replacements today.
- Ultimately, complex body parts such as arms and hands will be produced in the laboratory for attachment as needed.

Tissue engineering thus holds the promise that damaged body parts can be replaced with the best alternative, a laboratory-grown version of "the real thing."

### Ethical Concerns and Political Issues

Despite this potential, ESC research is fraught with controversy because of the source of these cells: They are isolated from discarded embryos from abortion clinics and in-vitro fertility ("test-tube baby") clinics. Opponents of using ESCs are morally and ethically concerned because embryos are destroyed in the process of harvesting these cells. Proponents argue that these embryos were destined to be destroyed anyway—a decision already made by the parents of the embryos—and that these stem cells have great potential for alleviating human suffering. Thus, ESC science has become inextricably linked with stem-cell politics as public policy makers, scientists, and bioethicists attempt to balance a host of ethical issues against the tremendous potential clinical application of ESC research.

Until U.S. President Barack Obama took office, federal policy prohibited use of public funding to support research involving human embryos, so the scientists who isolated cultured ESCs relied on private money. During the 2009 election, where a candidate stood on ESC science became a hot campaign issue. One of the first directives newly elected President Obama made was to permit federal support for ESC research.

### The Search for Noncontroversial Stem Cells

Some researchers have been searching for alternative ways to obtain stem cells. Some are exploring the possibility of using tissue-specific stem cells from adult tissues as a substitute for pluripotent ESCs. Until recently, most investigators believed these adult stem cells could give rise only to the specialized cells of a particular tissue. However, although these partially differentiated adult stem cells do not have the complete developmental potential of ESCs, they have been coaxed into producing a wider variety of cells than originally thought possible. To name a few examples, provided the right supportive envi-

ronment, stem cells from the brain have given rise to blood cells, bone-marrow stem cells to liver and nerve cells, and fat-tissue stem cells to bone, cartilage, and muscle cells. Thus, researchers may be able to tap into the more limited but still versatile developmental potential of adult tissue-specific stem cells. Although ESCs hold greater potential for developing treatments for a broader range of diseases, adult stem cells are more accessible than ESCs, and their use is not controversial. For example, researchers dream of being able to take fat stem cells from a person and transform them into a needed replacement knee joint. However, interest in these cells is dwindling because they have failed to live up to expectations in recent scientific studies.

Long-running political setbacks have inspired still other scientists to search for new ways to obtain the more versatile ESCs for culturing new cell lines without destroying embryos. For example, one group of researchers has successfully turned back the clock on adult mouse skin cells, converting them to their embryonic state, by inserting key regulatory genes active only in early embryos. These reprogrammed cells, called **induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs)**, have the potential to differentiate into any cell type in the body. By using iPSCs from a person's own body, scientists could manipulate these patient-specific, genetically matched cells for treating the individual, thus avoiding the issue of transplant rejection. Currently one big problem precluding the use of iPSCs is that the viruses used to insert the genes can cause cancer. Researchers are now looking for safer ways to shunt adult cells back to their embryonic state.

Whatever the source of the cells, stem-cell research promises to revolutionize medicine. According to the Centers for Disease Control's National Center for Health Statistics, an estimated 3000 Americans die every day from conditions that may in the future be treatable with stem cell derivatives.

3. *Concentration of waste products.* The end products of some chemical reactions have a toxic effect on body cells if these wastes are allowed to accumulate.

4. *pH.* Changes in the pH (relative amount of acid; see pp. 427 and A-30) of the ECF adversely affect nerve cell function and wreak havoc with the enzyme activity of all cells.

5. *Concentrations of water, salt, and other electrolytes.* Because the relative concentrations of salt (NaCl) and water in the ECF influence how much water enters or leaves the cells, these concentrations are carefully regulated to maintain the proper volume of the cells. Cells do not function normally when they are swollen or shrunken. Other electrolytes (chemicals that form

ions in solution and conduct electricity; see pp. A-5 and A-9) perform a variety of vital functions. For example, the rhythmic beating of the heart depends on a relatively constant concentration of potassium ( $K^+$ ) in the ECF.

6. *Volume and pressure.* The circulating component of the internal environment, the plasma, must be maintained at adequate volume and blood pressure to ensure bodywide distribution of this important link between the external environment and the cells.

7. *Temperature.* Body cells function best within a narrow temperature range. If cells are too cold, their functions slow down too much; if they get too hot, their structural and enzymatic proteins are impaired or destroyed.

**BODY SYSTEM CONTRIBUTIONS TO HOMEOSTASIS** The 11 body systems contribute to homeostasis in the following important ways (● Figure 1-7):

1. The *circulatory system* (heart, blood vessels, and blood) transports materials such as nutrients,  $O_2$ ,  $CO_2$ , wastes, electrolytes, and hormones from one part of the body to another.

2. The *digestive system* (mouth, esophagus, stomach, intestines, and related organs) breaks down dietary food into small nutrient molecules that can be absorbed into the plasma for distribution to the body cells. It also transfers water and electrolytes from the external environment into the internal environment. It eliminates undigested food residues to the external environment in the feces.

3. The *respiratory system* (lungs and major airways) gets  $O_2$  from and eliminates  $CO_2$  to the external environment. By adjusting the rate of removal of acid-forming  $CO_2$ , the respiratory system is also important in maintaining the proper pH of the internal environment.

4. The *urinary system* (kidneys and associated “plumbing”) removes excess water, salt, acid, and other electrolytes from the plasma and eliminates them in the urine, along with waste products other than  $CO_2$ .

5. The *skeletal system* (bones and joints) provides support and protection for the soft tissues and organs. It also serves as a storage reservoir for calcium ( $Ca^{2+}$ ), an electrolyte whose plasma concentration must be maintained within narrow limits. Together with the muscular system, the skeletal system enables the body and its parts to move. Furthermore, the bone marrow—the soft interior portion of some types of bone—is the ultimate source of all blood cells.

6. The *muscular system* (skeletal muscles) moves the bones to which the skeletal muscles are attached. From a purely homeostatic view, this system enables a person to move toward food or away from harm. Furthermore, the heat generated by muscle contraction helps maintain body temperature. In addition, because skeletal muscles are under voluntary control, a person can use them to accomplish myriad other movements by choice. These movements, which range from the fine motor skills required for delicate needlework to the powerful movements involved in weight lifting, are not necessarily directed toward maintaining homeostasis.

7. The *integumentary system* (skin and related structures) serves as an outer protective barrier that prevents internal fluid from being lost from the body and foreign microorganisms from entering. This system is also important in regulating body temperature. The amount of heat lost from the body surface to the external environment can be adjusted by controlling sweat production and by regulating the flow of warm blood through the skin.

8. The *immune system* (white blood cells and lymphoid organs) defends against foreign invaders such as bacteria and viruses and against body cells that have become cancerous. It also paves the way for repairing or replacing injured or worn-out cells.

9. The *nervous system* (brain, spinal cord, nerves, and sense organs) is one of the body’s two major regulatory systems. In general, it controls and coordinates body activities that require swift responses. It is especially important in detecting changes in the external environment and initiating reactions to them. Furthermore, it is responsible for higher functions that are not entirely directed toward maintaining homeostasis, such as consciousness, memory, and creativity.

10. The *endocrine system* (all hormone-secreting glands) is the other major regulatory system. In contrast to the nervous system, the endocrine system in general regulates activities that require duration rather than speed, such as growth. It is especially important in controlling the blood concentration of nutrients and, by adjusting kidney function, controlling the volume and electrolyte composition of the ECF.

11. The *reproductive system* (male and female gonads and related organs) is not essential for homeostasis and therefore is not essential for survival of the individual. It is essential, however, for perpetuating the species.

As we examine each of these systems in greater detail, always keep in mind that the body is a coordinated whole even though each system provides its own special contributions. It is easy to forget that all body parts actually fit together into a functioning, interdependent whole body. Accordingly, each chapter begins with a figure and discussion that focus on how the body system to be described fits into the body as a whole. In addition, each chapter ends with a brief review of the homeostatic contributions of the body system. As a further tool to help you keep track of how all the pieces fit together, ● Figure 1-7 is duplicated on the inside front cover as a handy reference.

Also be aware that the functioning whole is greater than the sum of its separate parts. Through specialization, cooperation, and interdependence, cells combine to form an integrated, unique, single living organism with more diverse and complex capabilities than are possessed by any of the cells that make it up. For humans, these capabilities go far beyond the processes needed to maintain life. A cell, or even a random combination of cells, obviously cannot create an artistic masterpiece or design a spacecraft, but body cells working together permit those capabilities in an individual.

Now that you have learned what homeostasis is and how the functions of different body systems maintain it, let us look at the regulatory mechanisms by which the body reacts to changes and controls the internal environment.

# Homeostatic Control Systems

A **homeostatic control system** is a functionally interconnected network of body components that operate to maintain a given factor in the internal environment relatively constant around an optimal level. To maintain homeostasis, the control system must be able to (1) detect deviations from normal in the internal environmental factor that needs to be held within narrow limits, (2) integrate this information with any other relevant information, and (3) make appropriate adjustments in the activity of the body parts responsible for restoring this factor to its desired value.

## Homeostatic control systems may operate locally or bodywide.

Homeostatic control systems can be grouped into two classes—**intrinsic** and **extrinsic** controls. **Intrinsic**, or **local**, **controls** are built into or are inherent in an organ (*intrinsic* means “within”). For example, as an exercising skeletal muscle rapidly uses up  $O_2$  to generate energy to support its contractile activity, the  $O_2$  concentration within the muscle falls. This local chemical change acts directly on the smooth muscle in the walls of the blood vessels supplying the exercising muscle, causing the smooth muscle to relax so that the vessels dilate, or open widely. As a result, increased blood flows through the dilated vessels into the exercising muscle, bringing in more  $O_2$ . This local mechanism helps maintain an optimal level of  $O_2$  in the fluid immediately around the exercising muscle’s cells.

Most factors in the internal environment are maintained, however, by **extrinsic**, or **systemic**, **controls**, which are regulatory mechanisms initiated outside an organ to alter the organ’s activity (*extrinsic* means “outside of”). Extrinsic control of the organs and body systems is accomplished by the nervous and endocrine systems, the two major regulatory systems. Extrinsic control permits coordinated regulation of several organs toward a common goal; in contrast, intrinsic controls serve only the organ in which they occur. Coordinated, overall regulatory mechanisms are crucial for maintaining the dynamic steady state in the internal environment as a whole. For example, to restore blood pressure to the proper level when it falls too low, the nervous system acts simultaneously on the heart and blood vessels throughout the body to increase blood pressure to normal.

## Negative feedback opposes an initial change and is widely used to maintain homeostasis.

To stabilize physiological factors being regulated, homeostatic control mechanisms operate primarily on the principle of negative feedback to resist change. In **negative feedback**, a change in a homeostatically controlled factor triggers a response that seeks to restore the factor to normal by moving the factor in the opposite direction of its initial change. That is, a corrective adjustment opposes the original deviation from the normal desired level.

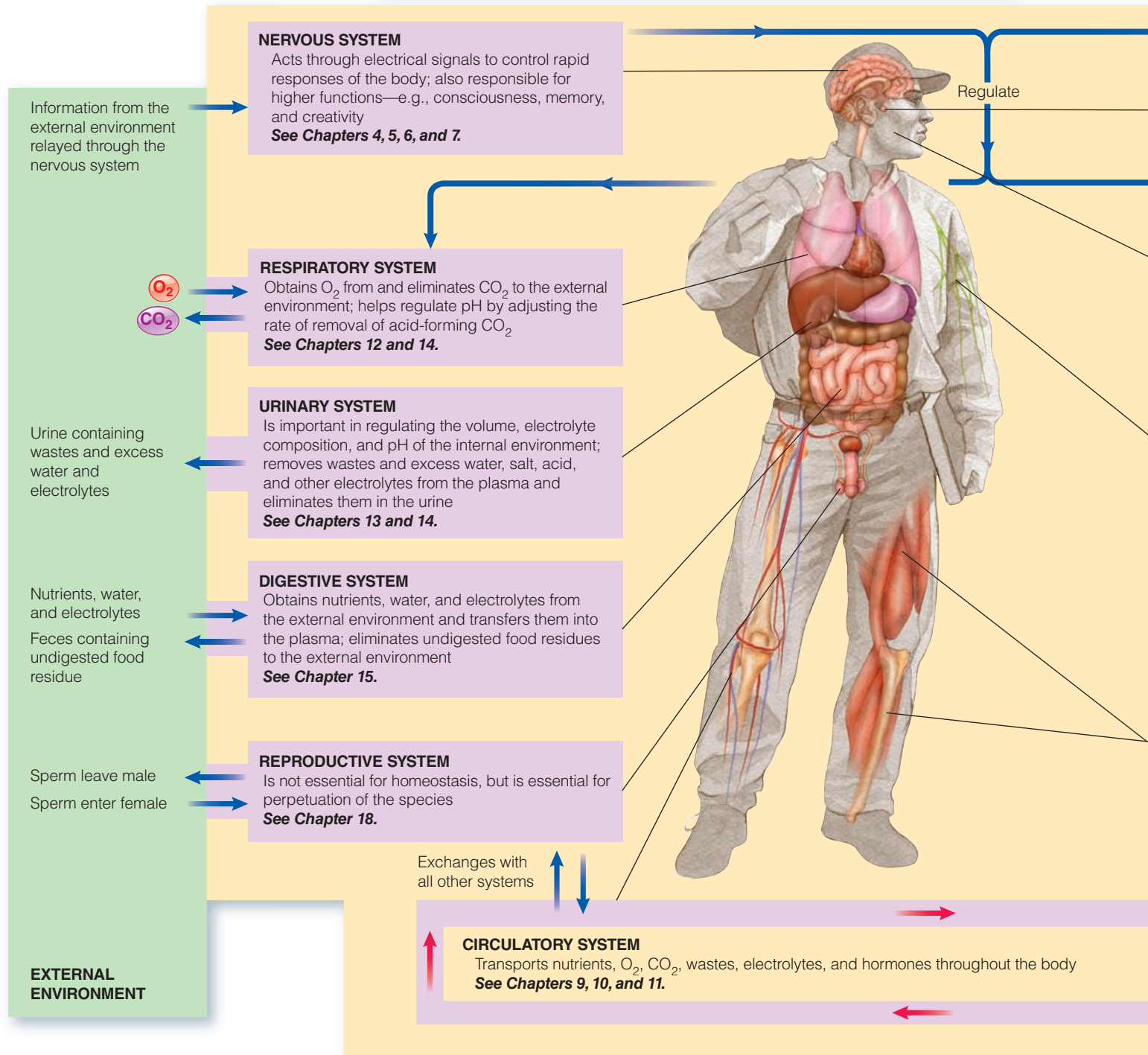
A common example of negative feedback is control of room temperature. Room temperature is a **controlled variable**, a factor that can vary but is held within a narrow range by a control system. In our example, the control system includes a thermostat, a furnace, and all their electrical connections. The room temperature is determined by the activity of the furnace, a heat source that can be turned on or off. To switch on or off appropriately, the control system as a whole must “know” what the *actual* room temperature is, “compare” it with the *desired* room temperature, and “adjust” the output of the furnace to bring the actual temperature to the desired level. A thermometer in the thermostat provides information about the actual room temperature. The thermometer is the **sensor**, which monitors the magnitude of the controlled variable. The sensor typically converts the original information regarding a change into a “language” the control system can “understand.” For example, the thermometer converts the magnitude of the air temperature into electrical impulses. This message serves as the input into the control system. The thermostat setting provides the desired temperature level, or **set point**. The thermostat acts as an **integrator**, or **control center**: It compares the sensor’s input with the set point and adjusts the heat output of the furnace to bring about the appropriate response to oppose a deviation from the set point. The furnace is the **effector**, the component of the control system commanded to bring about the desired effect. These general components of a negative-feedback control system are summarized in ● Figure 1-8a. Carefully examine this figure and its key; the symbols and conventions introduced here are used in comparable flow diagrams throughout the text.

Let us look at a typical negative-feedback loop. For example, if the room temperature falls below the set point because it is cold outside, the thermostat, through connecting circuitry, activates the furnace, which produces heat to raise the room temperature (● Figure 1-8b). Once the room temperature reaches the set point, the thermometer no longer detects a deviation from that point. As a result, the activating mechanism in the thermostat and the furnace are switched off. Thus, the heat from the furnace counteracts, or is “negative” to, the original fall in temperature. If the heat-generating pathway were not shut off once the target temperature was reached, heat production would continue and the room would get hotter and hotter. Overshooting the set point does not occur, because the heat “feeds back” to shut off the thermostat that triggered its output. Thus, a negative-feedback control system detects a change away from the ideal value in a controlled variable, initiates mechanisms to correct the situation, and then shuts itself off. In this way, the controlled variable does not drift too far above or below the set point.

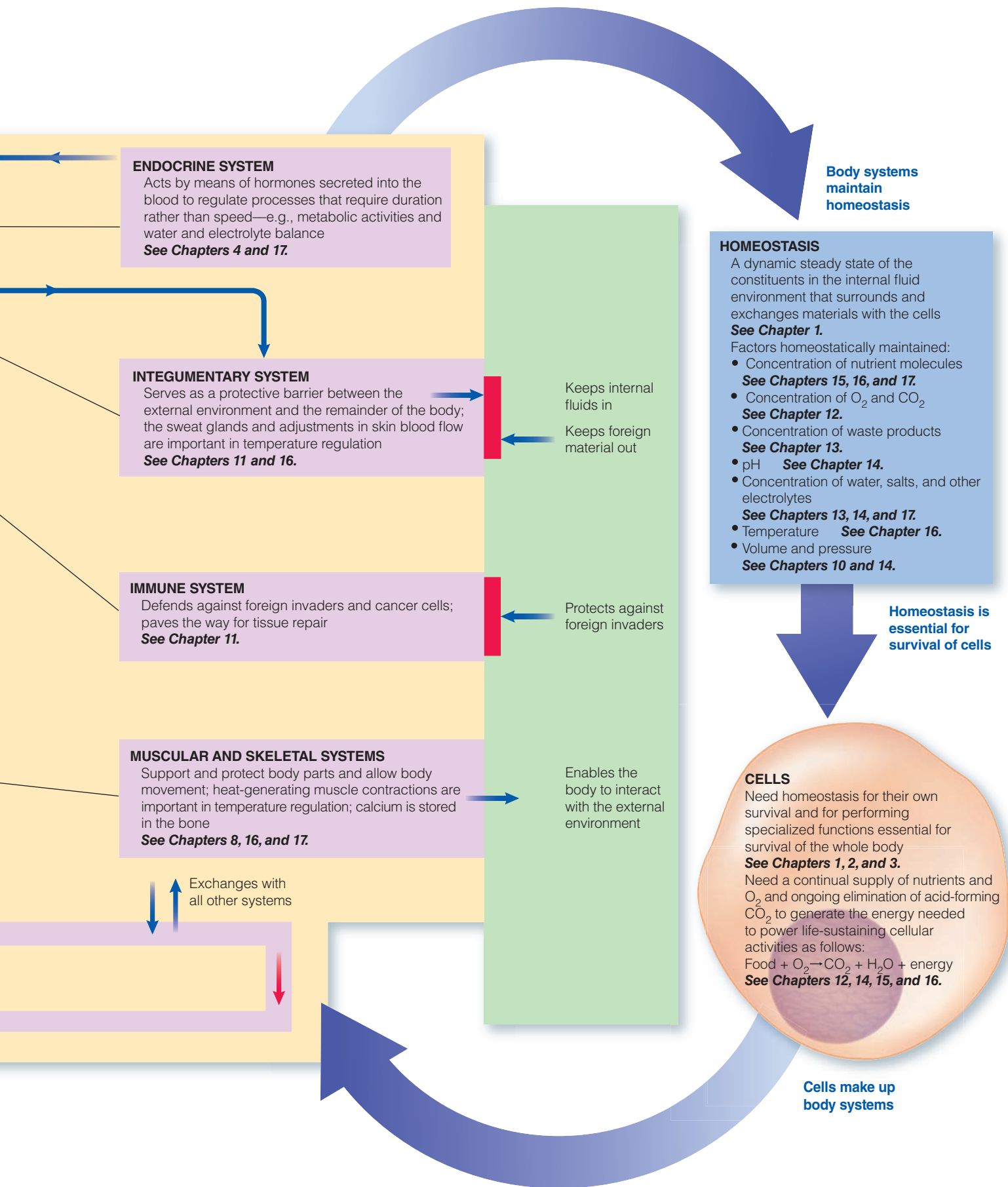
What if the original deviation is a rise in room temperature above the set point because it is hot outside? A heat-producing furnace is of no use in returning the room temperature to the desired level. An opposing control system involving an air conditioner is needed to reduce the room temperature. In this case, the thermostat, through connecting circuitry, activates the air conditioner, which cools the room air, the opposite effect from that of the furnace. In negative-feedback fashion, once the set

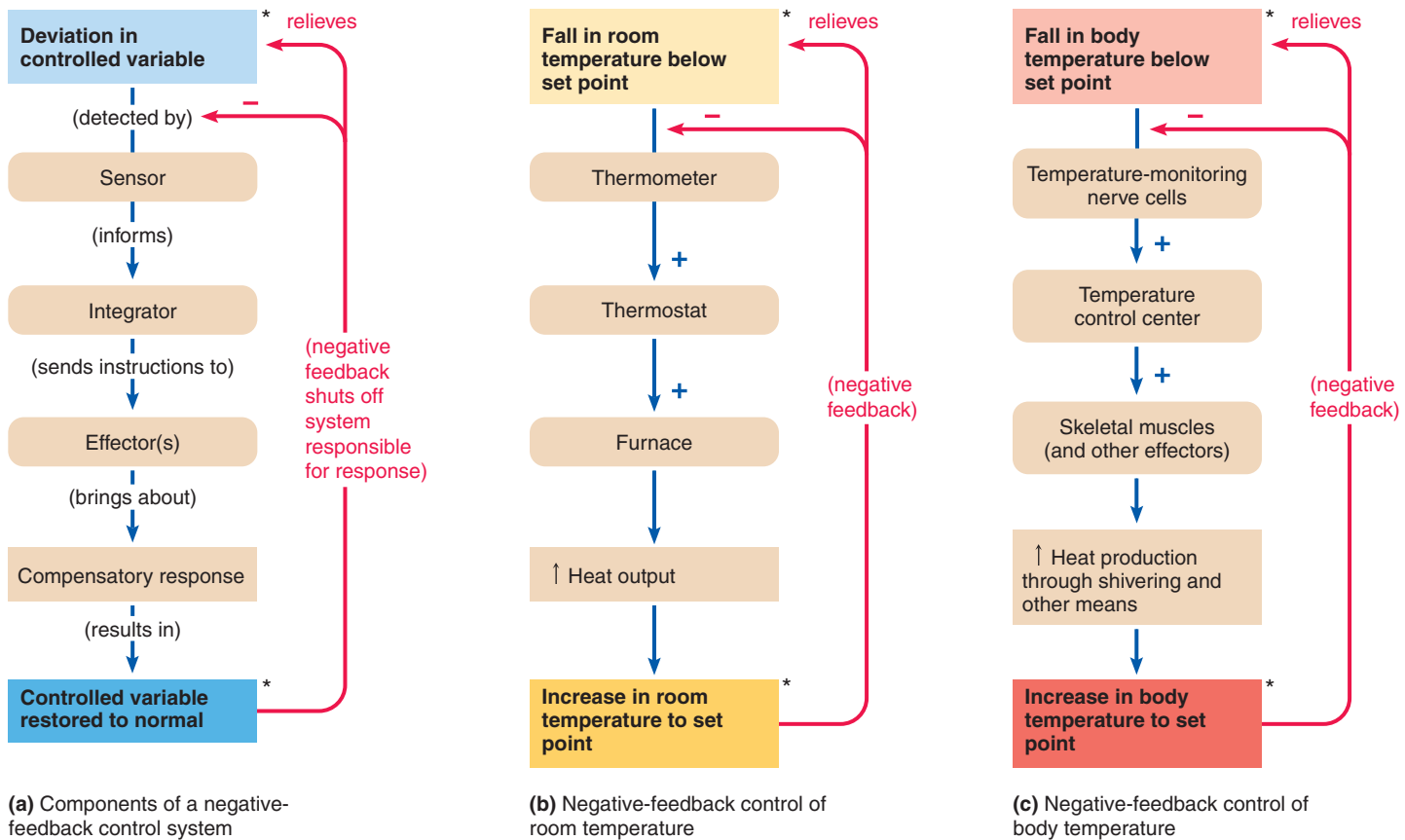
## BODY SYSTEMS

Made up of cells organized according to specialization to maintain homeostasis  
See Chapter 1.



● **FIGURE 1-7** Role of the body systems in maintaining homeostasis.





**KEY**

**Flow diagrams throughout the text**

- + = Stimulates or activates
- = Inhibits or shuts off
- = Physical entity, such as body structure or a chemical
- = Actions
- | = Compensatory pathway
- ! = Turning off of compensatory pathway (negative feedback)
- \* Note that lighter and darker shades of the same color are used to denote, respectively, a decrease or an increase in a controlled variable.

● **FIGURE 1-8 Negative feedback.**

point is reached, the air conditioner is turned off to prevent the room from becoming too cold. Note that if the controlled variable can be deliberately adjusted to oppose a change in one direction only, the variable can move in an uncontrolled fashion in the opposite direction. For example, if the house is equipped only with a furnace that produces heat to oppose a fall in room temperature, no mechanism is available to prevent the house from getting too hot in warm weather. However, the room temperature can be kept relatively constant through two opposing mechanisms, one that heats and one that cools the room, despite wide variations in the temperature of the external environment.

Homeostatic negative-feedback systems in the human body operate in the same way. For example, when temperature-monitoring nerve cells detect a decrease in body temperature below the desired level, these sensors signal the temperature control center in the brain, which begins a sequence of events that ends in responses, such as shivering, that generate heat and

raise the temperature to the proper level (● Figure 1-8c). When the body temperature reaches the set point, the temperature-monitoring nerve cells turn off the stimulatory signal to the skeletal muscles. As a result, the body temperature does not continue to increase above the set point. Conversely, when the temperature-monitoring nerve cells detect a rise in body temperature above normal, cooling mechanisms such as sweating are called into play to lower the temperature to normal. When the temperature reaches the set point, the cooling mechanisms are shut off. As with body temperature, opposing mechanisms can move most homeostatically controlled variables in either direction as needed.

**Positive feedback amplifies an initial change.**

In negative feedback, a control system's output is regulated to resist change so that the controlled variable is kept at a relatively steady set point. With **positive feedback**, by contrast, the output

enhances or amplifies a change so that the controlled variable continues to move in the direction of the initial change. Such action is comparable to the heat generated by a furnace triggering the thermostat to call for even *more* heat output from the furnace so that the room temperature would continuously rise.

Because the major goal in the body is to maintain stable, homeostatic conditions, positive feedback does not occur nearly as often as negative feedback. Positive feedback does play an important role in certain instances, however, as in the birth of a baby. The hormone oxytocin causes powerful contractions of the uterus (womb). As the contractions push the baby against the cervix (the exit from the uterus), the resultant stretching of the cervix triggers a sequence of events that brings about the release of even more oxytocin, which causes even stronger uterine contractions, triggering the release of more oxytocin, and so on. This positive-feedback cycle does not stop until the baby is finally born. Likewise, all other normal instances of positive-feedback cycles in the body include some mechanism for stopping the cycle.

### Disruptions in homeostasis can lead to illness and death.

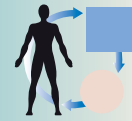


Despite control mechanisms, when one or more of the body's systems malfunction, homeostasis is disrupted, and all cells suffer because they no longer have an optimal environment in which to live and function.

Various pathophysiological states develop, depending on the type and extent of the disruption. The term **pathophysiology**

refers to the abnormal functioning of the body (altered physiology) associated with disease. When a homeostatic disruption becomes so severe that it is no longer compatible with survival, death results.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



In this chapter, you learned what homeostasis is: a dynamic steady state of the constituents in the internal fluid environment (the extracellular fluid) that surrounds and exchanges materials with the cells. Maintenance of homeostasis is essential for survival and normal functioning of cells. Each cell, through its specialized activities, contributes as part of a body system to the maintenance of homeostasis.

This relationship is the foundation of physiology and the central theme of this book. We have described how cells are organized according to specialization into body systems. How homeostasis is essential for cell survival and how body systems maintain this internal constancy are the topics covered in the rest of this book. Each chapter concludes with this capstone feature to facilitate your understanding of how the system under discussion contributes to homeostasis, as well as of the interactions and interdependency of the body systems.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-38)

- Which of the following activities is *not* carried out by every cell in the body?
  - obtaining oxygen and nutrients
  - performing chemical reactions to acquire energy for the cell's use
  - eliminating wastes
  - largely controlling exchange of materials between the cell and its external environment
  - reproducing
- Which of the following is the proper progression of the levels of organization in the body?
  - chemicals, cells, organs, tissues, body systems, whole body
  - chemicals, cells, tissues, organs, body systems, whole body
  - cells, chemicals, tissues, organs, whole body, body systems
  - cells, chemicals, organs, tissues, whole body, body systems
  - chemicals, cells, tissues, body systems, organs, whole body
- Cells in a multicellular organism have specialized to such an extent that they have little in common with single-celled organisms. (*True or false?*)
- Cell specializations are usually a modification or elaboration of one of the basic cell functions. (*True or false?*)
- The four primary types of tissue are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- The term \_\_\_\_ refers to the release from a cell, in response to appropriate stimulation, of specific products that have been synthesized largely by the cell.
- \_\_\_\_\_ glands secrete through ducts to the outside of the body, whereas \_\_\_\_\_ glands release their secretory products, known as \_\_\_\_\_, internally into the blood.
- \_\_\_\_\_ controls are inherent to an organ, whereas \_\_\_\_\_ controls are regulatory mechanisms initiated outside an organ that alter the activity of the organ.



9. Match the following:
- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| ___ 1. circulatory system            | (a) obtains oxygen and eliminates carbon dioxide                          |
| ___ 2. digestive system              | (b) supports, protects, and moves body parts                              |
| ___ 3. respiratory system            | (c) controls, via hormones it secretes, processes that require duration   |
| ___ 4. urinary system                | (d) acts as the transport system  |
| ___ 5. muscular and skeletal systems | (e) removes wastes and excess water, salt, and other electrolytes         |
| ___ 6. integumentary system          | (f) perpetuates the species   |
| ___ 7. immune system                 | (g) obtains nutrients, water, and electrolytes                            |
| ___ 8. nervous system                | (h) defends against foreign invaders and cancer                           |
| ___ 9. endocrine system              | (i) acts through electrical signals to control the body's rapid responses |
| ___ 10. reproductive system          | (j) serves as an outer protective barrier                                 |

### Essay Questions

1. Define physiology.
2. What are the basic cell functions?
3. Distinguish between the external environment and the internal environment. Distinguish between the intracellular fluid (ICF) and the extracellular fluid (ECF). Discuss the relationship between the internal environment and the ECF. What fluid compartments make up the ECF?
4. Define homeostasis.
5. Describe the interrelationships among cells, body systems, and homeostasis.
6. What factors must be homeostatically maintained?
7. Define and describe the components of a homeostatic control system.
8. Compare negative and positive feedback.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-38)

1. Considering the nature of negative-feedback control and the function of the respiratory system, what effect do you predict that a decrease in carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ ) in the internal environment would have on how rapidly and deeply a person breathes?
2. Would the oxygen ( $\text{O}_2$ ) levels in the blood be (a) normal, (b) below normal, or (c) elevated in a patient with severe pneumonia, resulting in impaired exchange of  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  between the air and blood in the lungs? Would the  $\text{CO}_2$  levels in the same patient's blood be (a) normal, (b) below normal, or (c) elevated? Because  $\text{CO}_2$  reacts with water to form carbonic acid, would the patient's blood (a) have a normal pH, (b) be too acidic, or (c) not be acidic enough (that is, be too alkaline), assuming that other compensatory measures have not yet had time to act?
3. The hormone insulin enhances the transport of glucose (sugar) from the blood into most body cells. Its secretion is controlled by a negative-feedback system between the concentration of glucose in the blood and the insulin-secreting cells. Therefore, which of the following statements is correct?
  - a. A decrease in blood glucose concentration stimulates insulin secretion, which in turn further lowers blood glucose concentration.
  - b. An increase in blood glucose concentration stimulates insulin secretion, which in turn lowers blood glucose concentration.
  - c. A decrease in blood glucose concentration stimulates insulin secretion, which in turn increases blood glucose concentration.
  - d. An increase in blood glucose concentration stimulates insulin secretion, which in turn further increases blood glucose concentration.
  - e. None of the preceding is correct.
4. Given that most AIDS victims die from overwhelming infections or rare types of cancer, what body system do you think HIV (the AIDS virus) impairs?
5. Body temperature is homeostatically regulated around a set point. Given your knowledge of negative feedback and homeostatic control systems, predict whether narrowing or widening of the blood vessels of the skin will occur when a person exercises strenuously. (*Hints:* Muscle contraction generates heat. Narrowing of the vessels supplying an organ decreases blood flow through the organ, whereas vessel widening increases blood flow through the organ. The more warm blood flowing through the skin, the greater is the loss of heat from the skin to the surrounding environment.)

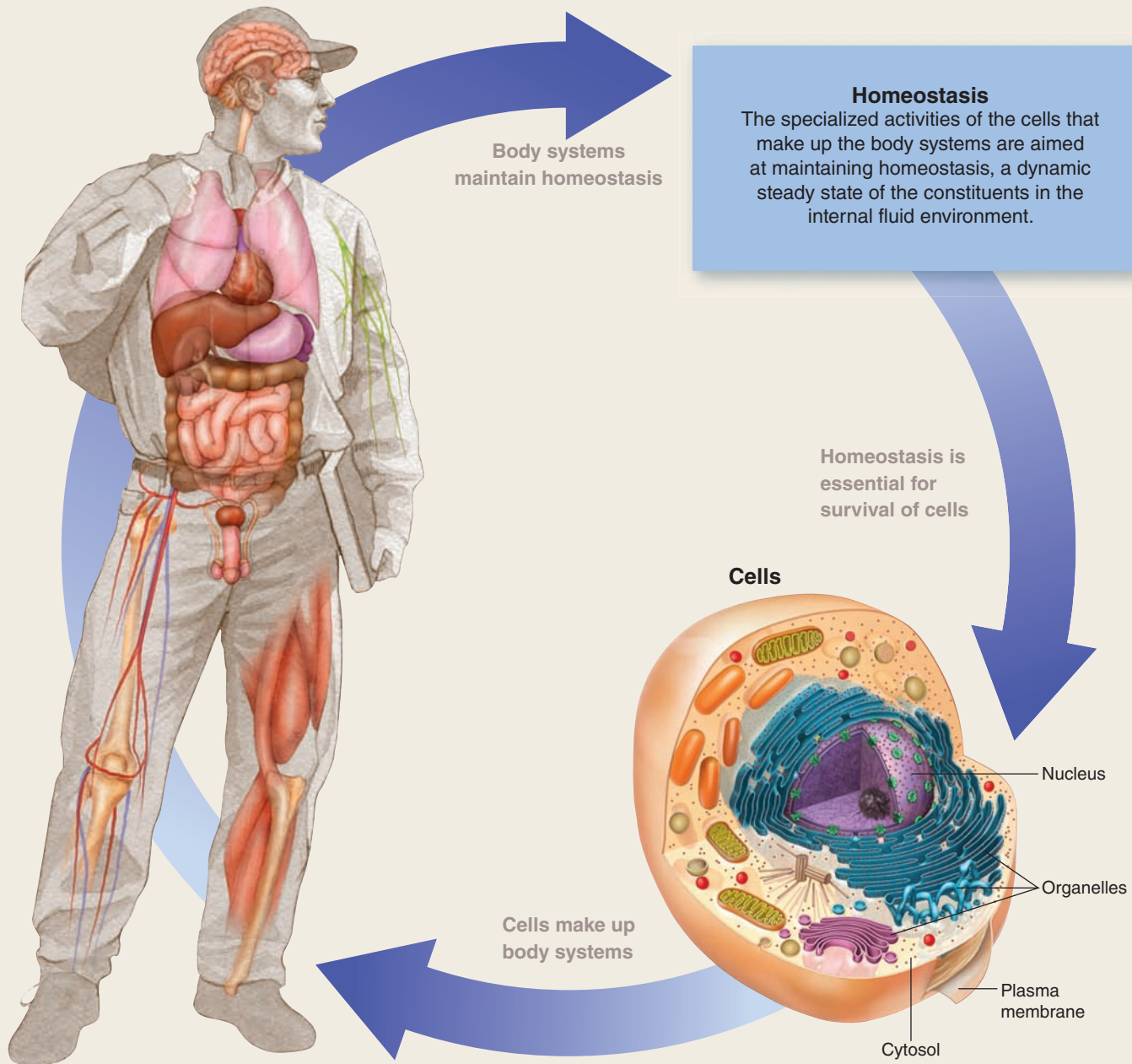
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-38)

Jennifer R. has the “stomach flu” that is going around campus and has been vomiting profusely for the past 24 hours. Not only has she been unable to keep down fluids or food, but she has also lost the acidic digestive juices secreted by the stomach that are normally reabsorbed back into the

blood farther down the digestive tract. In what ways might this condition threaten to disrupt homeostasis in Jennifer’s internal environment? That is, what homeostatically maintained factors are moved away from normal by her profuse vomiting? What body systems respond to resist these changes?

## Body Systems



Cells are the highly organized, living building blocks of the body. A cell has three major parts: the **plasma membrane**, which encloses the cell; the **nucleus**, which houses the cell's genetic material; and the **cytoplasm**. The cytoplasm consists of the cytosol, organelles, and cytoskeleton. The **cytosol** is a gel-like liquid within which the organelles and cytoskeleton are suspended. **Organelles** are discrete, well-organized structures that carry out specialized functions. The **cytoskeleton** is protein scaffolding that extends throughout the cell and serves as the cell's "bone and muscle."

Through the coordinated action of these components, every cell performs certain basic functions essential to its own survival and a specialized task that helps maintain homeostasis. Cells are organized according to their specialization into body systems that maintain the stable internal environment essential for the whole body's survival. All body functions ultimately depend on the activities of the individual cells that make up the body.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

## Observations of Cells

## An Overview of Cell Structure

## Endoplasmic Reticulum and Segregated Synthesis

Rough endoplasmic reticulum

Smooth endoplasmic reticulum

## Golgi Complex and Exocytosis

Role of the Golgi complex

Secretion by exocytosis

## Lysosomes and Endocytosis

Role of lysosomes

Endocytosis

## Peroxisomes and Detoxification

## Mitochondria and ATP Production

Glycolysis

Role of mitochondria: citric acid cycle and oxidative phosphorylation

Generation of ATP in aerobic and anaerobic conditions

Uses of ATP

## Cytosol: Cell Gel

Importance of cytosol

## Cytoskeleton: Cell “Bone and Muscle”

Role of microtubules, microfilaments, and intermediate filaments

## Cell Physiology

## Observations of Cells

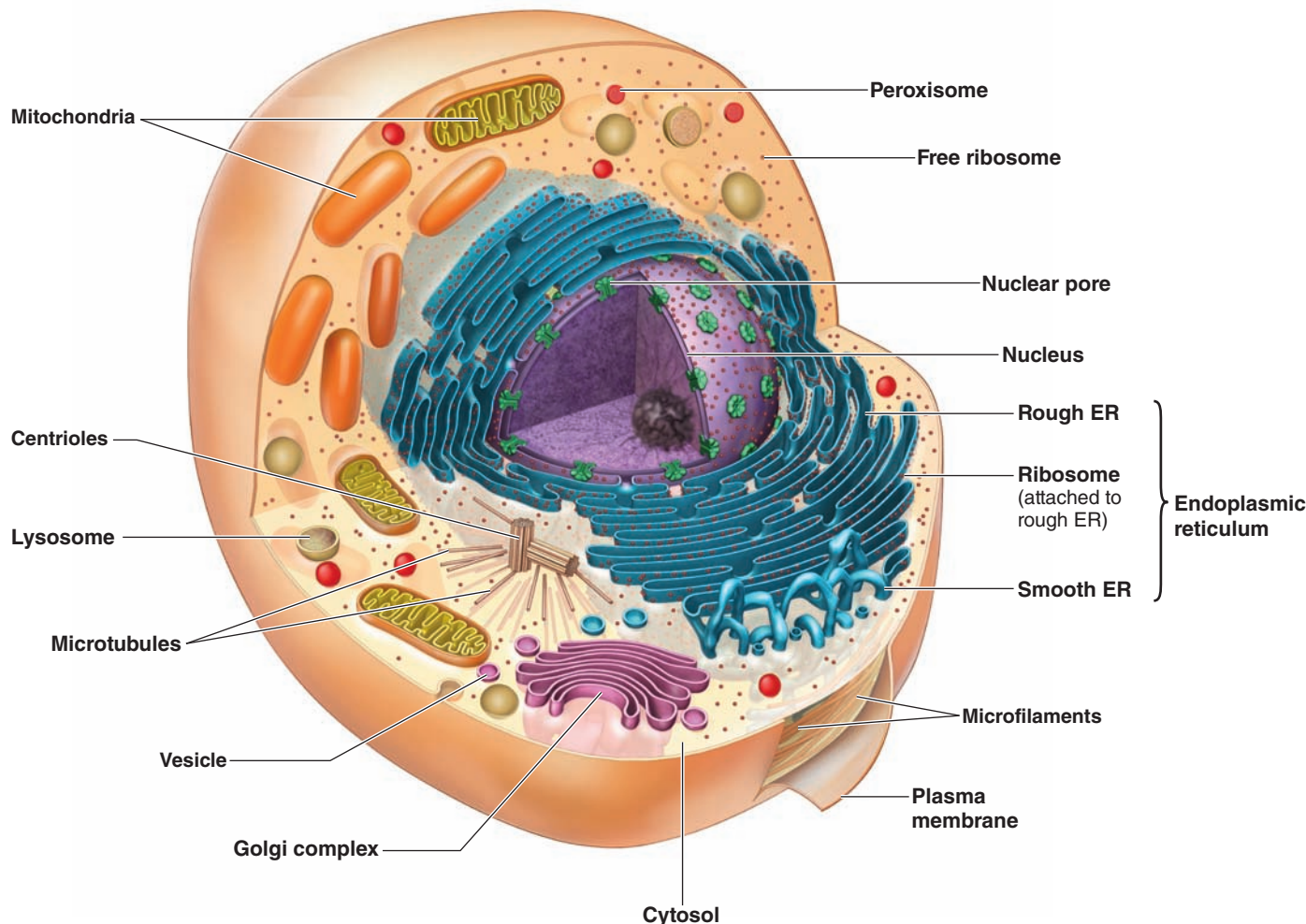
Although the same chemicals that make up living cells are found in nonliving matter, researchers have not been able to organize these chemicals into living cells in a laboratory. Life stems from the unique and complex organization and interactions of these inanimate chemicals within the cell. Cells, the smallest living entities, are the living building blocks for the immensely complicated whole body. Thus, cells are the bridge between chemicals and humans (and all other living organisms). By probing deeper into the molecular structure and organization of the cells that make up the body, modern physiologists are unraveling many of the broader mysteries of how the body works.

The cells that make up the human body are so small they cannot be seen by the unaided eye. The smallest visible particle is 5 to 10 times larger than a typical human cell, which averages about 10 to 20 micrometers ( $\mu\text{m}$ ) in diameter ( $1 \mu\text{m} = 1$  millionth of a meter). About 100 average-sized cells lined up side by side would stretch a distance of only 1 mm ( $1 \text{ mm} =$  one-thousandth of a meter;  $1 \text{ m} = 39.37 \text{ in.}$ ). (See Appendix A for a comparison of metric units and their English equivalents. This appendix also provides a visual comparison of the size of cells in relation to selected structures.)

Until the microscope was invented in the middle of the 17th century, scientists did not know that cells existed. With the development of better light microscopes in the early 19th century, they learned that all plant and animal tissues consist of individual cells. The cells of a hummingbird, a human, and a whale are all about the same size. Larger species have more cells, not larger cells. These early investigators also discovered that cells are filled with a fluid that, given the microscopic capabilities of the time, appeared to be a rather uniform, soupy mixture believed to be the elusive “stuff of life.” In the 1940s, when researchers first employed electron microscopes to observe living matter, they began to realize the great diversity and complexity of the internal structure of cells. (Electron microscopes are about 100 times more powerful than light microscopes.) Now that scientists have even more sophisticated microscopes, biochemical techniques, cell culture technology, and genetic engineering, the concept of the cell as a microscopic bag of formless fluid has given way to our current understanding of the cell as a complex, highly organized, compartmentalized structure.

## An Overview of Cell Structure

The trillions of cells in a human body are classified into about 200 types based on specific variations in structure and function. Yet despite their diverse structural and functional specializations, different cells share many features. Most human cells have three major subdivisions: the *plasma membrane*, which encloses the cells; the *nucleus*, which contains the cell's genetic material; and the *cytoplasm*, the portion of the cell's interior not occupied by the nucleus (● Figure 2-1). Here, we provide an overview of each subdivision, and then we focus primarily on the cytoplasm in this chapter. The plasma membrane and nucleus are described in further detail later.



● **FIGURE 2-1** Diagram of cell structures visible under an electron microscope.

### The plasma membrane bounds the cell.

The **plasma membrane** is a thin membranous structure that encloses each cell and is composed mostly of lipid (fat) molecules and studded with proteins. This barrier separates the cell's contents from its surroundings; it keeps the *intracellular fluid (ICF)* within the cells from mingling with the *extracellular fluid (ECF)* outside the cells. The plasma membrane is not simply a mechanical barrier to hold in the contents of a cell; its proteins selectively control movement of molecules between the ICF and the ECF. The plasma membrane can be likened to the gated walls that enclosed ancient cities. Through this structure, the cell controls the entry of nutrients and other needed supplies and the export of products manufactured within, while at the same time guarding against unwanted traffic into or out of the cell. The plasma membrane is discussed thoroughly in Chapter 3.

### The nucleus contains the DNA.

The two major parts of the cell's interior are the nucleus and the cytoplasm. The **nucleus**, which is typically the largest single organized cell component, can be seen as a distinct spherical structure, usually located near the center of the cell. It is surrounded by a double-layered membrane, the **nuclear envelope**, which

separates the nucleus from the rest of the cell. The nuclear envelope is pierced by many **nuclear pores** that allow necessary traffic to move between the nucleus and the cytoplasm.

The nucleus houses the cell's genetic material, **deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)**, which has two important functions: (1) directing protein synthesis and (2) serving as a genetic blueprint during cell replication. DNA provides codes, or instructions, for directing synthesis of specific structural and enzymatic proteins within the cell. By specifying the kinds and amounts of proteins that are produced, the nucleus indirectly governs most cell activities and serves as the cell's control center.

Three types of **ribonucleic acid (RNA)** play roles in protein synthesis. First, DNA's genetic code for a particular protein is transcribed into a **messenger RNA (mRNA)** molecule, which exits the nucleus through the nuclear pores. Within the cytoplasm, mRNA delivers the coded message to *ribosomes*, which "read" the code and translate it into the appropriate amino acid sequence for the designated protein being synthesized. **Ribosomal RNA (rRNA)** is an essential component of ribosomes. **Transfer RNA (tRNA)** delivers the appropriate amino acids within the cytoplasm to their designated site in the protein under construction.

Besides providing codes for protein synthesis, DNA serves as a genetic blueprint during cell replication to ensure that the cell

produces additional cells just like itself, thus continuing the identical type of cell line within the body. Furthermore, in the reproductive cells (eggs and sperm), the DNA blueprint passes on genetic characteristics to future generations. (See Appendix C for further details of DNA and RNA function and protein synthesis.)

### The cytoplasm consists of various organelles, the cytoskeleton, and the cytosol.

The **cytoplasm** is that portion of the cell interior not occupied by the nucleus. It contains a number of discrete, specialized *organelles* (the cell's "little organs") and the *cytoskeleton* (a scaffolding of proteins that serve as the cell's "bone and muscle") dispersed within the *cytosol* (a complex, gel-like liquid).

**Organelles** are distinct, highly organized structures that perform specialized functions within the cell. On average, nearly half of the total cell volume is occupied by organelles. Each organelle is a separate compartment within the cell that is enclosed by a membrane similar to the plasma membrane. Thus, the contents of an organelle are separated from the surrounding cytosol and from the contents of other organelles. Nearly all human cells contain five main types of organelles—the *endoplasmic reticulum*, *Golgi complex*, *lysosomes*, *peroxisomes*, and *mitochondria*. Organelles are like intracellular "specialty shops." Each is a separate internal compartment that contains a specific set of chemicals for carrying out a particular cellular function. This compartmentalization permits chemical activities that would not be compatible with one another to occur simultaneously within the cell. For example, the enzymes that destroy unwanted proteins in the cell operate within the protective confines of the lysosomes without the risk of destroying essential cell proteins. Organelles are similar in all cells, although some variations occur depending on the specialized capabilities of each cell type. Just as each organ plays a role essential for survival of the whole body, each organelle performs a specialized activity necessary for survival of the whole cell.

The **cytoskeleton** is an interconnected system of protein fibers and tubes that extends throughout the cytosol. This elaborate protein network gives the cell its shape, provides for its internal organization, and regulates its various movements.

The remainder of the cytoplasm not occupied by organelles and cytoskeleton consists of the **cytosol** ("cell liquid"). The cytosol is a semiliquid, gel-like mass. Many of the chemical reactions that are compatible with one another are conducted in the cytosol. (For clarification, the ICF encompasses all fluid inside the cell, including that within the cytosol, the organelles, and the nucleus.)

In this chapter, we examine each of the cytoplasmic components in more detail, concentrating first on the organelles.

## Endoplasmic Reticulum and Segregated Synthesis

The **endoplasmic reticulum (ER)** is an elaborate fluid-filled membranous system distributed extensively throughout the cytosol. It is primarily a protein- and lipid-producing factory.

Two distinct types of ER—rough and smooth—can be distinguished. The **rough ER** consists of stacks of relatively flattened interconnected sacs, whereas the **smooth ER** is a meshwork of tiny interconnected tubules (● Figure 2-2). Even though these two regions differ considerably in appearance and function, they are connected to each other. In other words, the ER is one continuous organelle with many interconnected channels. The relative amount of rough and smooth ER varies among cells, depending on the activity of the cell.

### The rough ER synthesizes proteins for secretion and membrane construction.

The outer surface of the rough ER membrane is studded with small particles that give it a "rough" or granular appearance under a light microscope. These particles are **ribosomes**, which are rRNA-protein complexes that synthesize proteins under the direction of nuclear DNA (see ● Figure C-7, p. A-25). The mRNA carries the genetic message from the nucleus to the ribosome "workbenches" where protein synthesis takes place (see p. A-23). Not all ribosomes in the cell are attached to the rough ER. Unattached or "free" ribosomes are dispersed throughout the cytosol.

The rough ER, in association with its ribosomes, synthesizes and releases various new proteins into the ER lumen, the fluid-filled space enclosed by the ER membrane. These proteins serve one of two purposes: (1) Some proteins are destined for export to the cell's exterior as secretory products, such as protein hormones or enzymes, and (2) other proteins are used in constructing new plasma membrane or other cell structures, such as lysosomes. The plasma membrane consists mostly of proteins and lipids (fats). The membranous wall of the ER also contains enzymes essential for the synthesis of the lipids needed to produce new membrane.

After being released into the ER lumen, a new protein cannot pass out through the ER membrane and therefore becomes permanently separated from the cytosol as soon as it has been synthesized. In contrast to the rough ER ribosomes, free ribosomes synthesize proteins that are used within the cytosol. In this way, newly produced molecules that are destined for export out of the cell or for synthesis of new membrane or other cell components (those synthesized by the ER) are physically separated from those that belong in the cytosol (those produced by the free ribosomes).

How do the molecules newly synthesized within the ER lumen get to their destinations if they cannot pass out through the ER membrane? They do so through the action of the smooth ER.

### The smooth ER packages new proteins in transport vesicles.

The smooth ER does not contain ribosomes, so it is "smooth." Lacking ribosomes, it is not involved in protein synthesis. Instead, it serves other purposes that vary in different cell types.

In most cells, the smooth ER is rather sparse and serves primarily as a central packaging and discharge site for molecules to be transported from the ER. Newly synthesized pro-

## Golgi Complex and Exocytosis

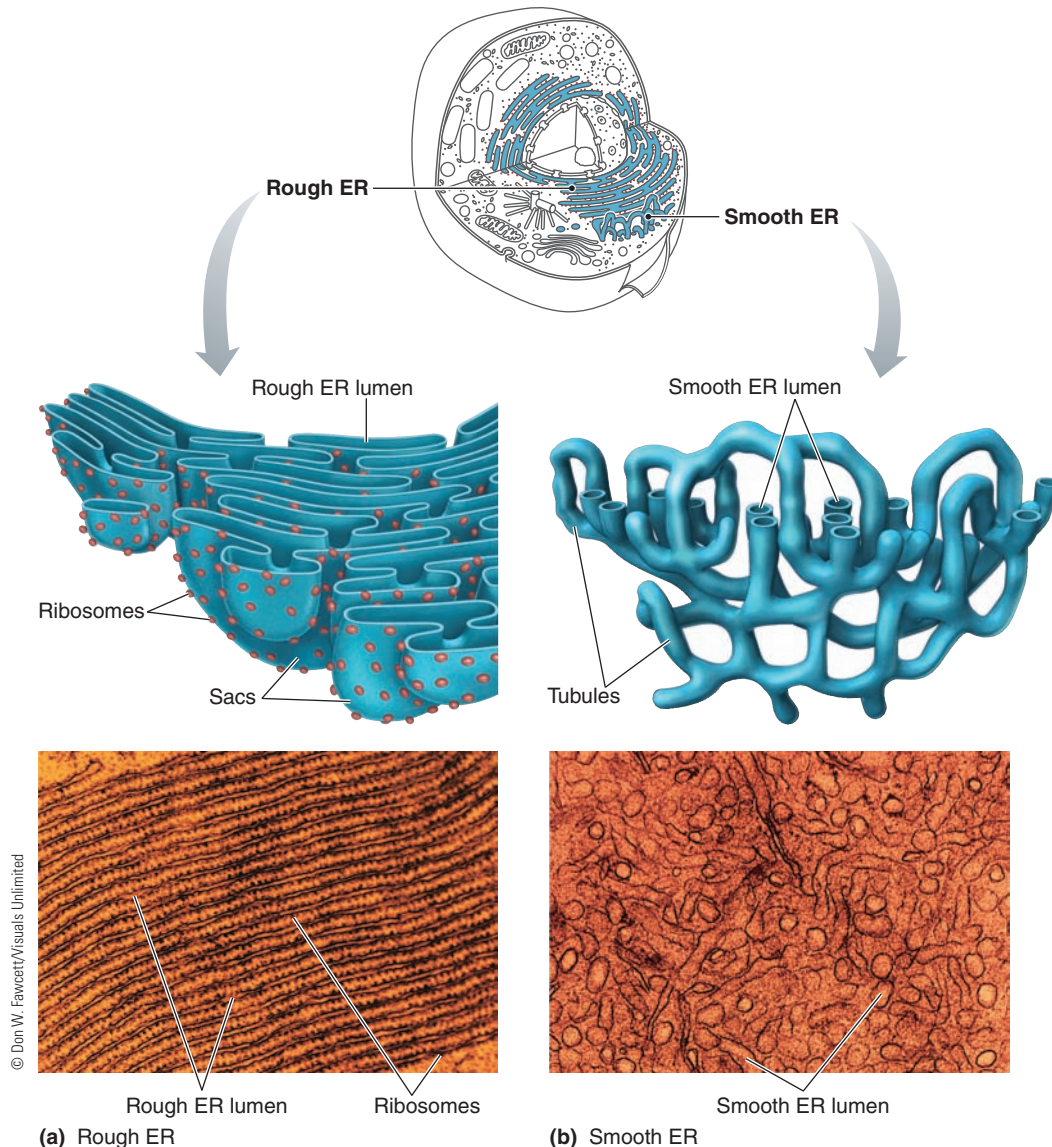
The **Golgi complex** is closely associated with the ER. Each Golgi complex consists of a stack of flattened, slightly curved, membrane-enclosed sacs (● Figure 2-4). Note that the flattened sacs are thin in the middle but have dilated, or bulging, edges. The number of Golgi complexes varies, depending on the cell type. Some cells have only one Golgi stack, whereas cells highly specialized for protein secretion may have hundreds of stacks.

**Transport vesicles carry their cargo to the Golgi complex for further processing.**

Most newly synthesized molecules that have just budded off from the smooth ER enter a Golgi stack. When a transport vesicle reaches a Golgi stack, the vesicle membrane fuses with the membrane of the sac closest to the center of the cell. The vesicle membrane opens up and becomes integrated into the Golgi membrane, and the contents of the vesicle are released to the interior of the sac (see ● Figure 2-3).

These newly synthesized raw materials from the ER travel by means of vesicle formation through the layers of the Golgi stack, from the innermost sac closest to the ER to the outermost sac near the plasma membrane. During this transit, two important, interrelated functions take place:

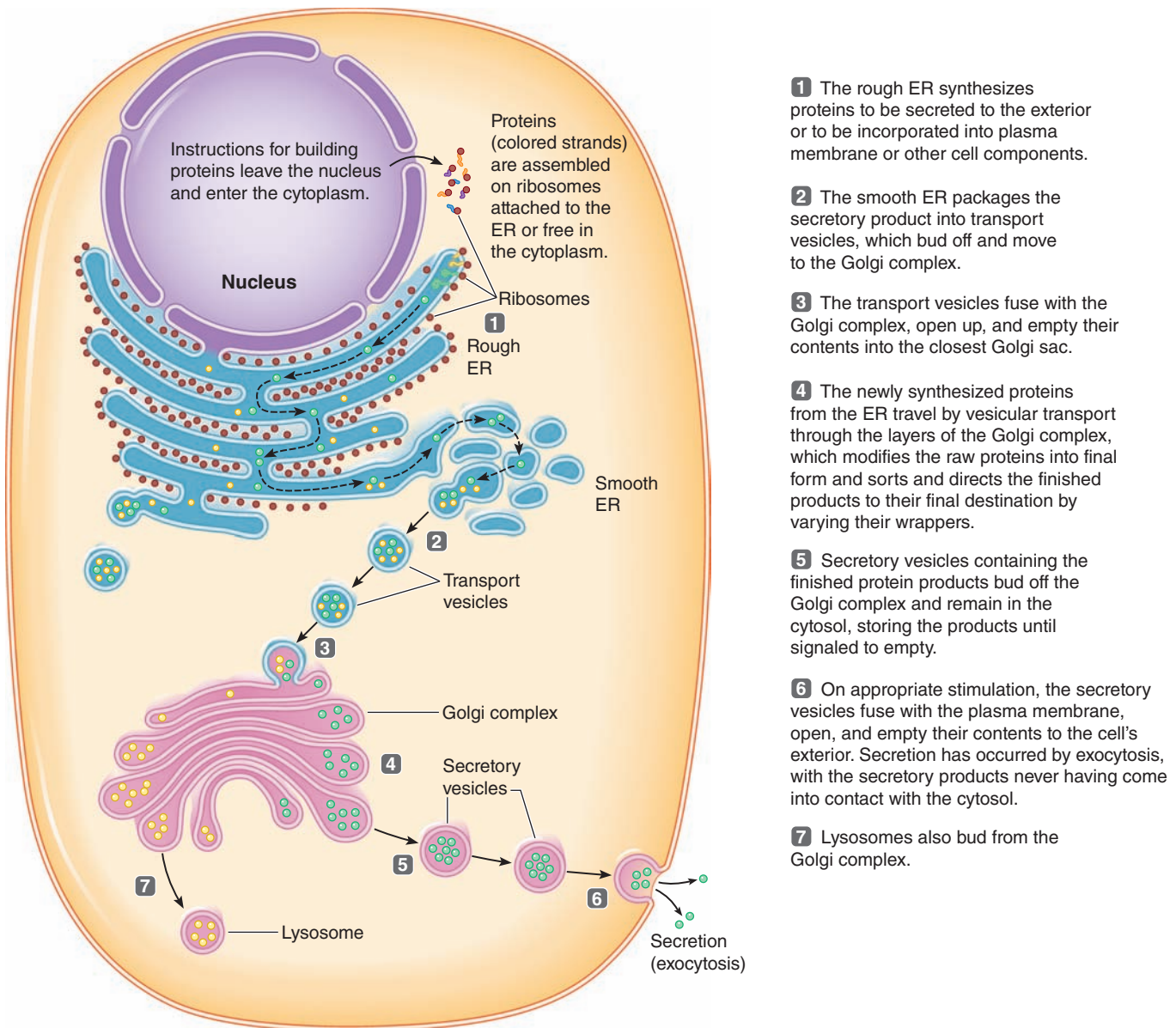
1. *Processing the raw materials into finished products.* Within the Golgi complex, the “raw” proteins from the ER are modified into their final form, for example, by having a carbohydrate attached.
2. *Sorting and directing the finished products to their final destinations.* The Golgi complex is responsible for sorting and segregating products according to their function and destination, such as products to be secreted to the cell’s exterior or to be used for constructing new cell components.



● **FIGURE 2-2 Endoplasmic reticulum (ER).** (a) Diagram and electron micrograph of the rough ER, which consists of stacks of relatively flattened interconnected sacs studded with ribosomes. (b) Diagram and electron micrograph of the smooth ER, which is a meshwork of tiny interconnected tubules. The rough ER and smooth ER are connected, making one continuous organelle.

teins and lipids move within the continuous lumen from the rough ER to gather in the smooth ER. Portions of the smooth ER then “bud off” (that is, balloon outward on the surface and then are pinched off), forming **transport vesicles** that enclose the new molecules in a spherical capsule derived from the smooth ER membrane (● Figure 2-3). (A **vesicle** is a fluid-filled, membrane-enclosed intracellular cargo container.) Transport vesicles move to the Golgi complex, described in the next section, for further processing of their cargo.

In contrast to the sparseness of the smooth ER in most cells, some specialized types of cells have an extensive smooth ER, which has additional responsibilities. For example, muscle cells have an elaborate, modified smooth ER known as the *sarcoplasmic reticulum*, which stores calcium used in the process of muscle contraction (see p. 200).



● **FIGURE 2-3 Overview of the secretion process for proteins synthesized by the endoplasmic reticulum.** Note that the secretory product never comes into contact with the cytosol.

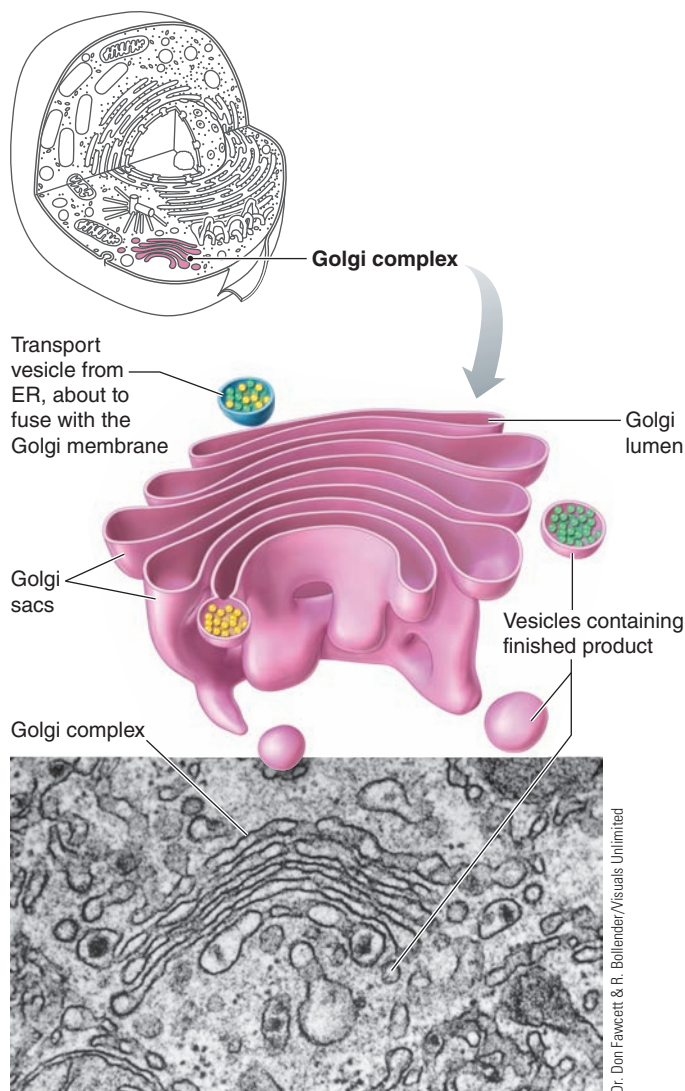
### The Golgi complex packages secretory vesicles for release by exocytosis.

How does the Golgi complex sort and direct finished proteins to the proper destinations? Finished products collect within the dilated edges of the Golgi complex's sacs. The edge of the outermost sac then pinches off to form a membrane-enclosed vesicle containing a selected product. For each type of product to reach its appropriate site of function, each distinct type of vesicle takes up a specific product before budding off (like a particular piece of mail being placed in an envelope). Vesicles with their selected cargo destined for different sites are wrapped in membranes containing different surface proteins (like addresses on envelopes) that can "dock" lock-and-key fashion and unload their cargo only at the proper destinations within the cell (similar to being delivered only to the appropriate house address). Once a vesicle has docked at the targeted membrane, the

two membranes completely fuse; then the vesicle opens up and empties its contents at this designated site.

As an example, let us look at secretory cells. Secretion refers to release to the cell's exterior, on appropriate stimulation, of a product produced by the cell (see p. 4). Specialized secretory cells include endocrine cells that secrete protein hormones, and digestive gland cells, which secrete digestive enzymes. In secretory cells, numerous large **secretory vesicles**, which contain proteins to be secreted, bud off from the Golgi stacks. Secretory vesicles store the secretory proteins until the cell is stimulated by a specific signal that indicates a need for release of that particular secretory product. On the appropriate signal, a vesicle moves to the cell's periphery, fuses with the plasma membrane, opens, and empties its contents to the outside (● Figures 2-3 and 2-5a). This mechanism—release to the exterior of substances originating within the cell—is referred to as





● **FIGURE 2-4 Golgi complex.** Diagram and electron micrograph of a Golgi complex, which consists of a stack of slightly curved, membrane-enclosed sacs. The vesicles at the dilated edges of the sacs contain finished protein products packaged for distribution to their final destination.

**exocytosis** (*exo* means “out of”; *cyto* means “cell”). Exocytosis is the primary mechanism for accomplishing secretion. Secretory vesicles fuse only with the plasma membrane and not with any of the internal membranes that enclose organelles, thereby preventing fruitless or even dangerous discharge of secretory products into the organelles.

## Lysosomes and Endocytosis

**Lysosomes** are small, membrane-enclosed organelles that break down organic molecules (*lys* means “breakdown”; *some* means “body”). Instead of having a uniform structure, as is characteristic of all other organelles, lysosomes vary in size and shape, depending on the contents they are digesting. Most commonly, lysosomes are small oval or spherical bodies (● Figure 2-6). On average, a cell contains about 300 lysosomes.

### Lysosomes digest extracellular material brought into the cell by phagocytosis.

A lysosome contains about 40 different powerful **hydrolytic enzymes**, which catalyze **hydrolysis**, reactions that break down organic molecules by the addition of water ( $H_2O$ ) at a bond site (*hydrolysis* means “splitting with water”; see p. A-16). In lysosomes, the organic molecules are cell debris and foreign material, such as bacteria, that have been brought into the cell. Lysosomal enzymes are similar to the hydrolytic enzymes that the digestive system secretes to digest food. Thus, lysosomes serve as the intracellular “digestive system.”

Extracellular material to be attacked by lysosomal enzymes is brought into the cell through the process of phagocytosis, a type of endocytosis. **Endocytosis**, the reverse of exocytosis, refers to the internalization of extracellular material within a cell (*endo* means “within”) (see ● Figure 2-5b). Endocytosis can be accomplished in three ways—*pinocytosis*, *receptor-mediated endocytosis*, and *phagocytosis*—depending on the contents of the internalized material.

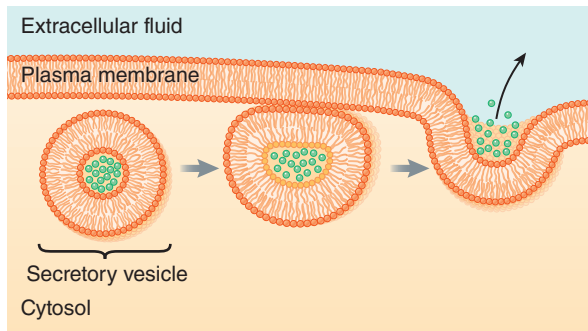
**PINOCYTOSIS** In **pinocytosis** (“cell drinking”), a droplet of ECF is taken up nonselectively. First, the plasma membrane dips inward, forming a pouch that contains a small bit of ECF (● Figure 2-7a). The plasma membrane then seals at the surface of the pouch, trapping the contents in a small, intracellular **endocytic vesicle**. Besides bringing ECF into a cell, pinocytosis provides a means to retrieve extra plasma membrane that has been added to the cell surface during exocytosis.

**RECEPTOR-MEDIATED ENDOCYTOSIS** Unlike pinocytosis, which involves the nonselective uptake of the surrounding fluid, **receptor-mediated endocytosis** is a highly selective process that enables cells to import specific large molecules that it needs from its environment. Receptor-mediated endocytosis is triggered by the binding of a specific target molecule such as a protein to a surface membrane receptor specific for that molecule (● Figure 2-7b). This binding causes the plasma membrane at that site to pocket inward and then seal at the surface, trapping the bound molecule inside the cell. Cholesterol complexes, vitamin  $B_{12}$ , the hormone insulin, and iron are examples of substances selectively taken into cells by receptor-mediated endocytosis.

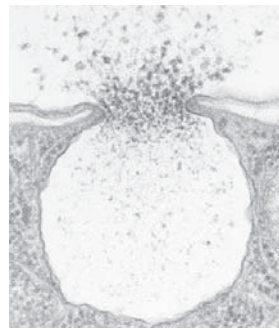


Unfortunately, some viruses can sneak into cells by exploiting this mechanism. For instance, flu viruses and HIV, the virus that causes AIDS (see p. 328), gain entry to cells via receptor-mediated endocytosis. They do so by binding with membrane receptors normally designed to trigger the internalization of a needed molecule.

**PHAGOCYTOSIS** During **phagocytosis** (“cell eating”), large multimolecular particles are internalized. Most body cells perform pinocytosis, many carry out receptor-mediated endocytosis, but only a few specialized cells are capable of phagocytosis, the most notable being certain types of white blood cells that play an important role in the body’s defense mechanisms. When a white blood cell encounters a large particle, such as a bacterium or tissue debris, it extends surface projections known as **pseu-**



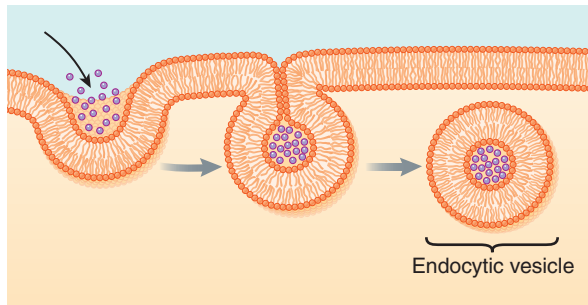
(a) **Exocytosis:** A secretory vesicle fuses with the plasma membrane, releasing the vesicle contents to the cell exterior. The vesicle membrane becomes part of the plasma membrane.



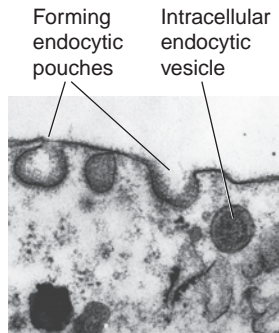
(a) Dr. Brigit Saitir, Albert Einstein College of Medicine

## Peroxisomes and Detoxification

**Peroxisomes** are membranous organelles that produce and decompose hydrogen peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ ) in the process of degrading potentially toxic molecules (*peroxi* refers to hydrogen peroxide). Typically, several hundred small peroxisomes about one-third to one-half the average size of lysosomes are present in a cell (see ● Figure 2-6).



(b) **Endocytosis:** Materials from the cell exterior are enclosed in a segment of the plasma membrane that pockets inward and pinches off as an endocytic vesicle.



(b) © Don W. Fawcett/Photo Researchers, Inc.

### Peroxisomes house oxidative enzymes that detoxify various wastes.

Peroxisomes are similar to lysosomes in that they are membrane-enclosed sacs containing enzymes. However, unlike the lysosomes, which contain hydrolytic enzymes, peroxisomes house several powerful oxidative enzymes. **Oxidative enzymes**, as the name implies, use oxygen ( $O_2$ ), in this case to strip hydrogen from certain organic molecules. This reaction helps detoxify various wastes produced within the cell or foreign toxic compounds that have entered the cell, such as alcohol consumed in beverages. Peroxisomes form  $H_2O_2$  from molecular  $O_2$

● **FIGURE 2-5 Exocytosis and endocytosis.** Diagram and electron micrographs of (a) exocytosis and (b) endocytosis.

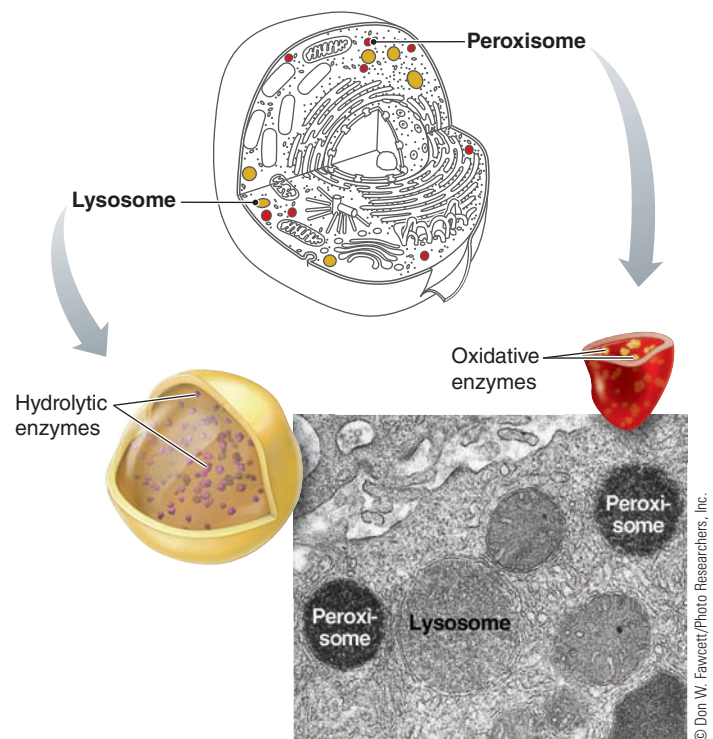
**podops** (“false feet”) that surround or engulf the particle and trap it within an internalized vesicle (● Figure 2-7c). A lysosome fuses with the membrane of the phagocytic vesicle and releases its hydrolytic enzymes into the vesicle, where they safely attack the bacterium or other trapped material without damaging the remainder of the cell. The enzymes largely break down the engulfed material into raw ingredients, such as amino acids, glucose, and fatty acids, that the cell can use.

### Lysosomes remove worn out organelles.

Lysosomes can also fuse with aged or damaged organelles to remove these useless parts of the cell. This selective self-digestion makes way for new replacement parts. In most cells, all organelles are renewable.

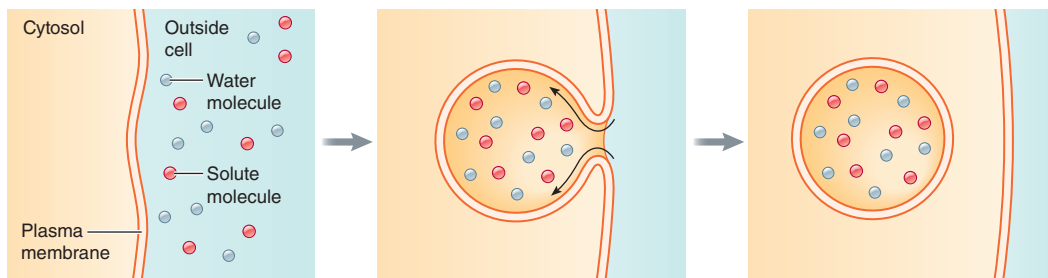


Some individuals lack the ability to synthesize one or more of the lysosomal enzymes. The result is massive accumulation within the lysosomes of the compound normally digested by the missing enzyme. Clinical manifestations often accompany such disorders, because the engorged lysosomes interfere with normal cell activity. The nature and severity of the symptoms depend on the type of substance accumulating, which in turn depends on what lysosomal enzyme is missing. Among these so-called *storage diseases* is **Tay-Sachs disease**, which is characterized by abnormal accumulation of complex molecules found in nerve cells. As the accumulation continues, profound symptoms of progressive nervous-system degeneration result.



© Don W. Fawcett/Photo Researchers, Inc.

● **FIGURE 2-6 Lysosomes and peroxisomes.** Diagram and electron micrograph of lysosomes, which contain hydrolytic enzymes, and peroxisomes, which contain oxidative enzymes.

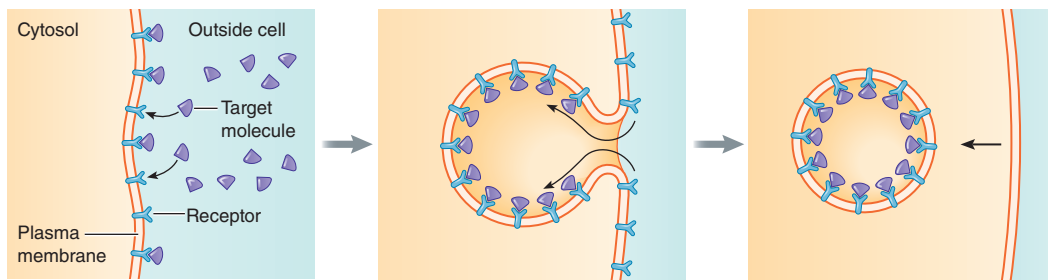


1 Solute molecules and water molecules are outside the plasma membrane.

2 Membrane pockets inward, enclosing solute molecules and water molecules.

3 Pocket pinches off as endocytic vesicle containing sample of ECF.

**(a) Pinocytosis**

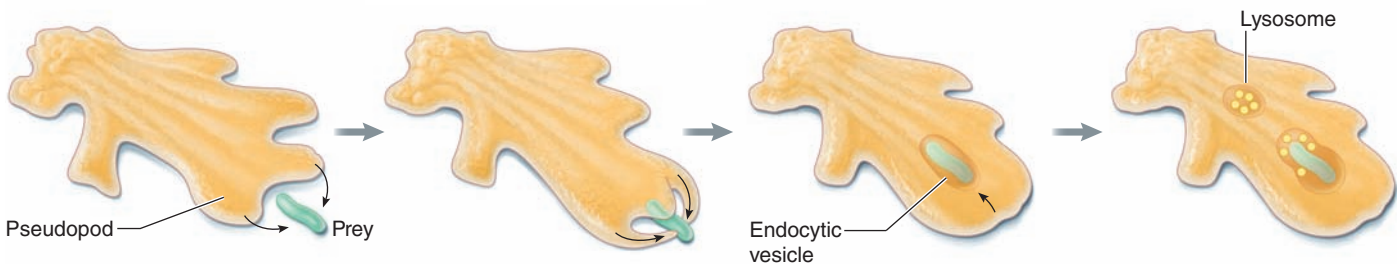


1 Substances attach to membrane receptors.

2 Membrane pockets inward.

3 Pocket pinches off as endocytic vesicle containing target molecule.

**(b) Receptor-mediated endocytosis**



1 Pseudopods begin to surround prey.

2 Pseudopods close around prey.

3 Prey is enclosed in endocytic vesicle that sinks into cytoplasm.

4 Lysosome fuses with vesicle, releasing enzymes that attack material inside vesicle.

**(c) Phagocytosis**

● **FIGURE 2-7 Forms of endocytosis.** (a) Pinocytosis: The surface membrane dips inward to form a pouch and then seals the surface, forming an intracellular endocytic vesicle that nonselectively internalizes a bit of extracellular fluid. (b) Receptor-mediated endocytosis: When a large molecule such as a protein attaches to a specific surface receptor, the membrane pockets inward and then pinches off to selectively internalize the molecule in an endocytic vesicle. (c) Phagocytosis: White blood cells internalize multimolecular particles such as bacteria or old red blood cells by extending pseudopods that wrap around and seal in the targeted material. A lysosome fuses with and degrades the vesicle contents.

and the hydrogen atoms stripped from the toxic molecule.  $H_2O_2$  is destructive if allowed to accumulate, but peroxisomes contain an enzyme that decomposes potent  $H_2O_2$  into harmless  $H_2O$  and  $O_2$ .

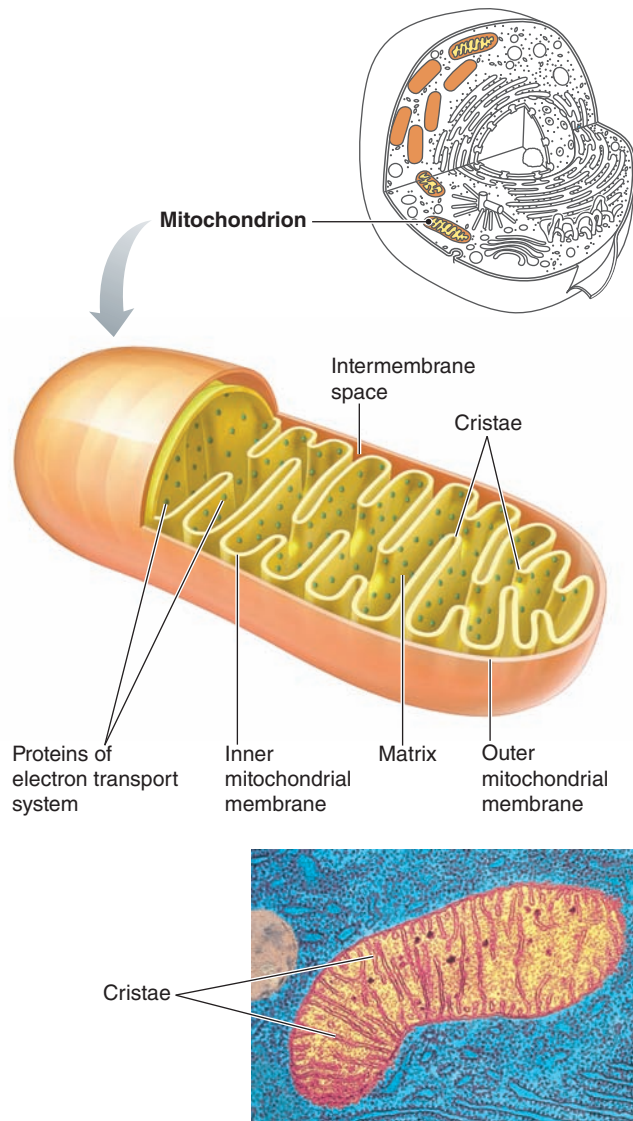
## Mitochondria and ATP Production

**Mitochondria** are the energy organelles, or “power plants,” of the cell; they extract energy from the nutrients in food and

transform it into a usable form for cell activities. Mitochondria generate about 90% of the energy that cells—and, accordingly, the whole body—need to survive and function. A single cell may contain as few as a hundred or as many as several thousand mitochondria, depending on the energy needs of each particular cell type. In some cell types, the mitochondria are densely compacted into the regions of the cell that use the most energy. For example, mitochondria are packed between the contractile units in the muscle cells of the heart.

## Mitochondria are enclosed by two membranes.

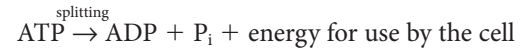
Mitochondria are rod-shaped or oval structures. Each mitochondrion is enclosed by a double membrane—a smooth outer membrane that surrounds the mitochondrion itself, and an inner membrane that forms a series of infoldings or shelves called **cristae**, which project into an inner cavity filled with a gel-like solution known as the **matrix** (● Figure 2-8). The two membranes are separated by a narrow intermembrane space. The cristae contain proteins that ultimately are responsible for converting much of the energy in food into a usable form. The generous folds of the inner membrane greatly increase the surface area available for housing these important proteins. The matrix consists of a concentrated mixture of hundreds of different dissolved enzymes that prepare nutrient molecules for the final extraction of usable energy by the cristae proteins.



● **FIGURE 2-8 Mitochondrion.** Diagram and electron micrograph of a mitochondrion. Note that the outer membrane is smooth while the inner membrane forms folds known as cristae that extend into the matrix. An intermembrane space separates the outer and inner membranes. The electron transport proteins embedded in the cristae are ultimately responsible for converting much of the energy of food into a usable form.

## Mitochondria play a major role in generating ATP.

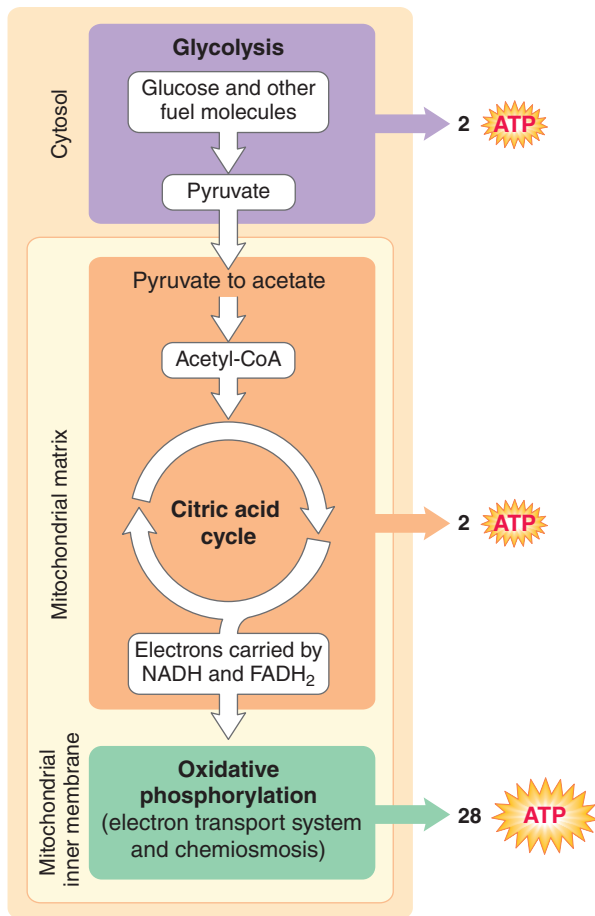
The source of energy for the body is the chemical energy stored in the carbon bonds of ingested food. Body cells are not equipped to use this energy directly. Instead, the cells must extract energy from food nutrients and convert it into a form they can use—namely, the high-energy phosphate bonds of **adenosine triphosphate (ATP)**, which consists of adenosine with three phosphate groups attached (*tri* means “three”; see p. A-17). When a high-energy bond such as that binding the terminal phosphate to adenosine is split, a substantial amount of energy is released. ATP is the universal energy carrier—the common energy “currency” of the body. Cells can “cash in” ATP to pay the energy “price” for running the cell machinery. To obtain immediate usable energy, cells split the terminal phosphate bond of ATP, which yields adenosine diphosphate (ADP)—adenosine with two phosphate groups attached (*di* means “two”)—plus inorganic phosphate ( $P_i$ ) plus energy:



In this energy scheme, food can be thought of as the “crude fuel” and ATP as the “refined fuel” for operating the body’s machinery. The food is digested, or broken down by the digestive system into smaller absorbable units that can be transferred from the digestive tract lumen into the blood (see Chapter 15). For example, dietary carbohydrates are broken down primarily into glucose, which is absorbed into the blood. No usable energy is released during the digestion of food. When delivered to the cells by the blood, the nutrient molecules are transported across the plasma membrane into the cytosol. (Details of how materials cross the membrane are covered in Chapter 3.)

We now turn attention to the steps involved in ATP production within the cell and the role of the mitochondria in these steps. **Cellular respiration** refers collectively to the intracellular reactions in which energy-rich molecules are broken down to form ATP, using  $O_2$  and producing carbon dioxide ( $CO_2$ ) in the process. In most cells, ATP is generated from the sequential dismantling of absorbed nutrient molecules in three stages: *glycolysis* in the cytosol, the *citric acid cycle* in the mitochondrial matrix, and *oxidative phosphorylation* at the mitochondrial inner membrane (● Figure 2-9). (Muscle cells use an additional cytosolic pathway for immediately generating energy at the onset of exercise; see p. 210.) We use glucose as an example to describe these stages.

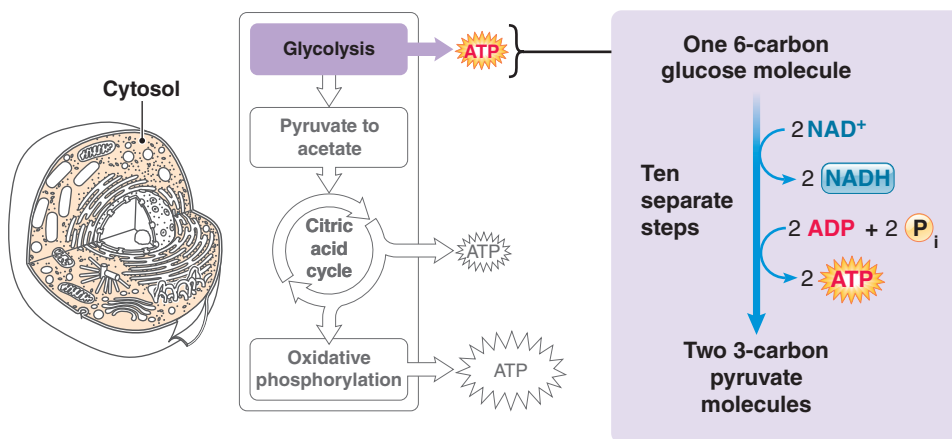
**GLYCOLYSIS** Among the thousands of enzymes in the cytosol are the those responsible for **glycolysis**, a chemical process involving 10 sequential reactions that break down a six-carbon sugar molecule, glucose, into two pyruvate molecules, each with three carbons (*glyc* means “sweet”; *lysis* means “break-down”) (● Figure 2-10). During this process, two hydrogens are released and transferred to two NADH molecules for later use. (You will learn more about NADH shortly.) Some energy from the broken chemical bonds of glucose is used directly to convert ADP into ATP. However, glycolysis is not efficient in terms of energy extraction: The net yield is only two molecules of ATP per glucose molecule processed. Much of the energy originally contained in the glucose molecule is still locked in the chemical



● **FIGURE 2-9 Stages of cellular respiration.** The three stages of cellular respiration are glycolysis, the citric acid cycle, and oxidative phosphorylation.

bonds of the pyruvate molecules. The low-energy yield of glycolysis is not enough to support the body's demand for ATP. This is where the mitochondria come into play.

**CITRIC ACID CYCLE** The pyruvate produced by glycolysis in the cytosol is selectively transported into the mitochondrial matrix.



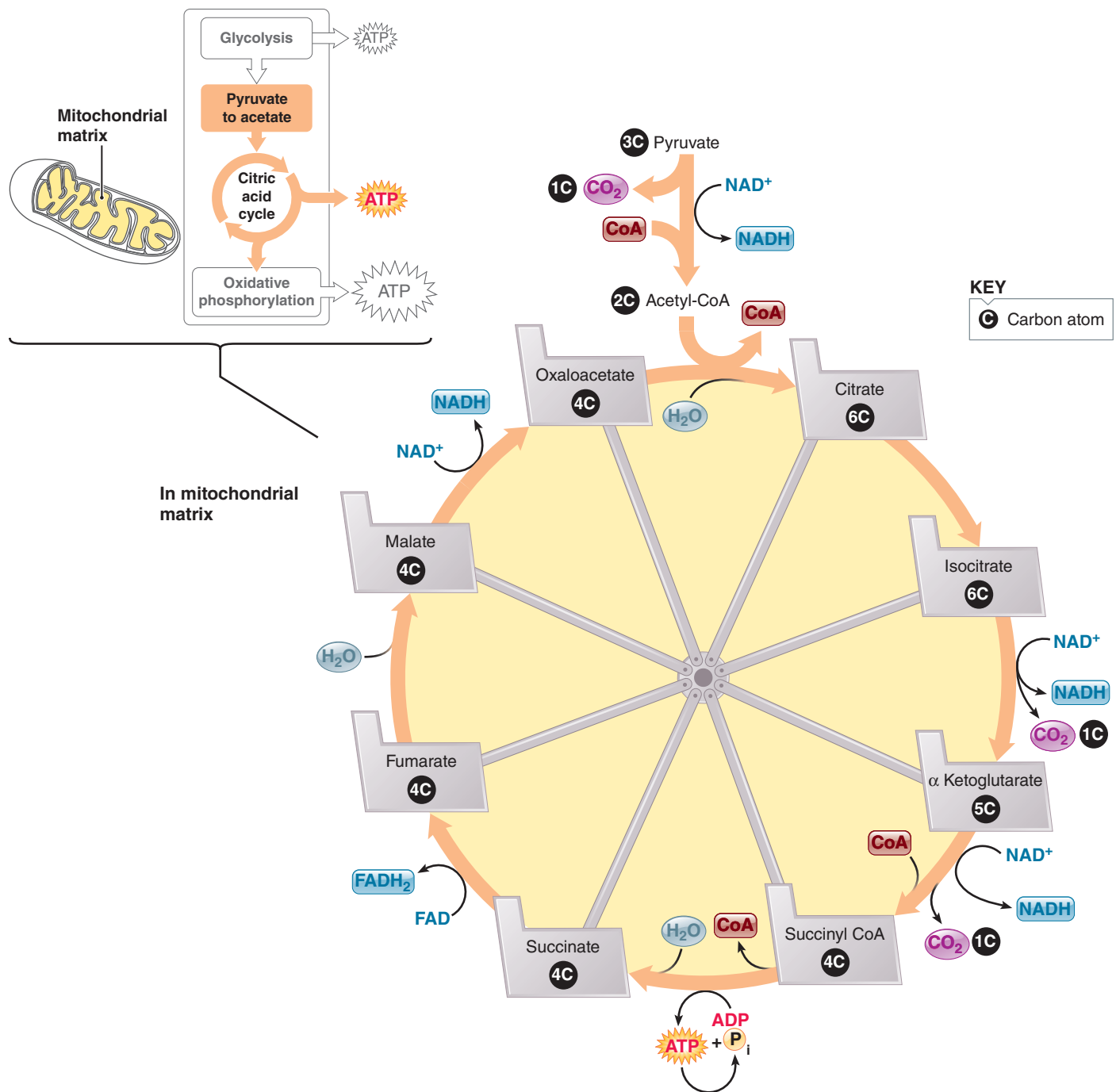
● **FIGURE 2-10 Glycolysis in the cytosol.** Glycolysis splits glucose (six carbons) into two pyruvate molecules (three carbons each), with a net yield of two ATP plus two NADH (available for further energy extraction by the electron transport system).

Here, one of its carbons is enzymatically removed in the form of  $\text{CO}_2$  and later eliminated from the body as an end product, or waste (● Figure 2-11). Also, another hydrogen is released and transferred to another NADH. The two-carbon molecule remaining after the breakdown process, acetate, combines with coenzyme A (CoA), a derivative of pantothenic acid (a B vitamin), to produce the compound acetyl-CoA.

Acetyl-CoA then enters the **citric acid cycle**, a cyclical series of eight biochemical reactions that are catalyzed by the enzymes of the mitochondrial matrix. This cycle of reactions can be compared to one revolution around a Ferris wheel, except that the molecules themselves are not physically moved around in a cycle. On the top of the Ferris wheel, acetyl-CoA, a two-carbon molecule, enters a seat already occupied by oxaloacetate, which has four carbons. These two molecules link to form a six-carbon citrate molecule (at intracellular pH, citric acid exists in an ionized form, citrate), and the trip around the citric acid cycle begins. (This cycle is alternatively known as the **Krebs cycle**, in honor of its principal discoverer, or the **tricarboxylic acid cycle**, because citrate contains three carboxylic acid groups.) At each step in the cycle, matrix enzymes modify the passenger molecule to form a slightly different molecule (shown in ● Figure 2-11). These molecular alterations have the following important consequences:

1. Two carbons are “kicked off the ride”—released one at a time from six-carbon citrate, converting it back into four-carbon oxaloacetate, which is now available at the top of the cycle to pick up another acetyl-CoA for another revolution through the cycle.
2. The released carbon atoms, which were originally present in the acetyl-CoA that entered the cycle, are converted into two molecules of  $\text{CO}_2$ . Note that two carbon atoms enter the cycle in the form of acetyl-CoA and two carbon atoms leave the cycle in the form of two  $\text{CO}_2$  molecules. This  $\text{CO}_2$ , as well as the  $\text{CO}_2$  produced during the formation of acetate from pyruvate, passes out of the mitochondrial matrix and subsequently out of the cell to enter the blood. The blood carries the  $\text{CO}_2$  to the lungs, where it is eliminated to the atmosphere through breathing. The oxygen used to make  $\text{CO}_2$  from these released carbons is derived from the molecules involved in the reactions, not from free molecular oxygen supplied by breathing.

3. Hydrogens are also “bumped off” during the cycle at four of the chemical conversion steps. The key purpose of the citric acid cycle is to produce these hydrogens for entry into the electron transport system in the inner mitochondrial membrane. The hydrogens are transferred to two different hydrogen carrier molecules—**nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD<sup>+</sup>)**, a derivative of the B vitamin niacin, and **flavine adenine dinucleotide (FAD)**, a derivative of the B vitamin riboflavin. The transfer of hydrogen converts these compounds



● **FIGURE 2-11 Citric acid cycle in the mitochondrial matrix.** The two carbons entering the cycle by means of acetyl-CoA are eventually converted to  $\text{CO}_2$ , with oxaloacetate, which accepts acetyl-CoA, being regenerated at the end of the cyclical pathway. The hydrogens released at specific points along the pathway bind to the hydrogen carrier molecules  $\text{NAD}^+$  and  $\text{FAD}$  for further processing by the electron transport system. One molecule of ATP is generated for each molecule of acetyl-CoA that enters the citric acid cycle, for a total of two molecules of ATP for each molecule of processed glucose.

to  $\text{NADH}$  and  $\text{FADH}_2$ , respectively. Three  $\text{NADH}$  and one  $\text{FADH}_2$  are produced for each turn of the citric acid cycle.

4. One more molecule of ATP is produced for each molecule of acetyl-CoA processed. Because each glucose molecule is converted into two acetate molecules, fueling two turns of the

citric acid cycle, two more ATP molecules are produced from each glucose molecule.

So far, the cell still does not have much of an energy profit. However, the citric acid cycle is important in preparing the hydrogen carrier molecules for their entry into the final stage,

oxidative phosphorylation, which produces far more energy than the sparse amount of ATP produced by the cycle itself.

**OXIDATIVE PHOSPHORYLATION** Considerable untapped energy is still stored in the released hydrogens, which contain electrons at high energy levels. **Oxidative phosphorylation** refers to the process by which ATP is synthesized using the energy released by electrons as they are transferred to  $O_2$ . This process involves two groups of proteins, both located at the inner mitochondrial membrane: the *electron transport system* and *ATP synthase*.

The “big payoff” in energy capture begins when NADH and  $FADH_2$  enter the electron transport system. The **electron transport system** consists of a series of protein complexes that contain electron carriers (● Figure 2-12). As the electron transport system begins, the high-energy electrons are extracted from the hydrogens held in NADH and  $FADH_2$  and are transferred through a series of steps from one electron-carrier molecule to another in an assembly line (step 1). As a result of giving up hydrogen ions ( $H^+$ ) and electrons within the electron transport system, NADH and  $FADH_2$  are converted back to  $NAD^+$  and FAD (step 2), freeing them to pick up more hydrogen atoms released during glycolysis and the citric acid cycle. Thus,  $NAD^+$  and FAD link the citric acid cycle and the electron transport system. The electron carriers are arranged in a specific order in the inner membrane so that the high-energy electrons fall to successively lower energy levels as they are transferred from carrier to carrier through a chain of reactions (step 3). Ultimately, when they are in their lowest energy state, the electrons are bound to molecular oxygen ( $O_2$ ) derived from the air we breathe. Oxygen enters the mitochondria to serve as the final electron acceptor of the electron transport system. This negatively charged oxygen (negative because it has acquired additional electrons) then combines with the positively charged hydrogen ions (positive because they have donated electrons at the beginning of the electron transport system) to form water,  $H_2O$  (step 4).

As electrons move through this chain of reactions, they release free energy. Part of the released energy is lost as heat, but some is harnessed by the mitochondrion to synthesize ATP. Energy released during the transfer of electrons is used to transport hydrogen ions ( $H^+$ ) across the inner mitochondrial membrane from the matrix to the space between the inner and the outer mitochondrial membranes, known as the *intermembrane space* (step 5). As a result, hydrogen ions are more heavily concentrated in the intermembrane space than in the matrix. This  $H^+$  gradient generated by the electron transport system (step 6) supplies the energy that drives ATP synthesis by the membrane-bound mitochondrial enzyme ATP synthase.

**ATP synthase** consists of several connected components, including a headpiece located in the matrix and other components embedded in the inner membrane. Because  $H^+$  ions are more heavily concentrated in the intermembrane space than in the matrix, they have a strong tendency to flow back into the matrix through the inner membrane via channels located within the ATP synthase complexes (step 7). This flow of  $H^+$  ions activates ATP synthase and powers ATP synthesis by the headpiece, a process called **chemiosmosis**. Passage of  $H^+$  ions through the channel makes the headpiece spin like a top (step 8), similar to the flow of water making a waterwheel turn.

As a result of the changes in its shape and position as it turns, the headpiece is able to sequentially pick up ADP and  $P_i$ , combine them, and release the ATP product (step 9).

Oxidative phosphorylation encompasses the entire process by which ATP synthase synthesizes ATP by phosphorylating (adding a phosphate to) ADP using the energy released by electrons as they are transferred to  $O_2$  by the electron transport system. The harnessing of energy into a useful form as the electrons tumble from a high-energy state to a low-energy state can be likened to a power plant converting the energy of water tumbling down a waterfall into electricity.

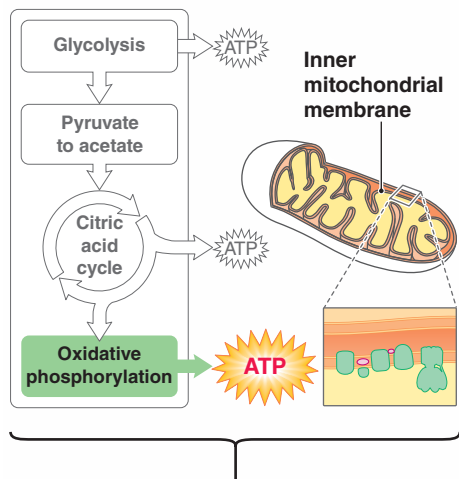
When activated, ATP synthase provides a rich yield of 28 more ATP molecules for each glucose molecule processed (● Figure 2-13). Approximately 2.5 ATP are synthesized as a pair of electrons released by NADH travels through the entire electron transport system to oxygen. The shorter pathway followed by an electron pair released from  $FADH_2$  (see ● Figure 2-12) synthesizes about 1.5 ATP. This means a total of 32 molecules of ATP are produced when a glucose molecule is completely dismantled in cellular respiration: 2 during glycolysis, 2 during the citric acid cycle, and 28 during oxidative phosphorylation. The ATP is transported out of the mitochondrion into the cytosol for use as the cell’s energy source.

The steps leading to oxidative phosphorylation might at first seem an unnecessary complication. Why not just directly oxidize, or “burn,” food molecules to release their energy? When this process occurs outside the body, all energy stored in a food molecule is released explosively in the form of heat (● Figure 2-14). Think about what happens when a marshmallow you’re roasting accidentally catches on fire. The burning marshmallow gets hot quickly as a result of the rapid oxidation of sugar. In the body, food molecules are oxidized within the mitochondria in many small, controlled steps so that their chemical energy is gradually released in small quantities that can be more efficiently captured in ATP bonds and stored in a form that is useful to the cell. In this way, much less of the energy is converted to heat. The heat that is produced is not completely wasted energy; it is used to help maintain body temperature, with any excess heat being eliminated to the environment.

### The cell generates more energy in aerobic than in anaerobic conditions.

The cell is a more efficient energy converter when  $O_2$  is available (● Figure 2-15). In an **anaerobic** (“lack of air,” specifically “lack of  $O_2$ ”) condition, the degradation of glucose cannot proceed beyond glycolysis, which takes place in the cytosol and yields only two molecules of ATP per molecule of glucose. The untapped energy of the glucose molecule remains locked in the bonds of the pyruvate molecules, which are eventually converted to lactate if they do not enter the pathway that ultimately leads to oxidative phosphorylation.

When sufficient  $O_2$  is present—an **aerobic** (“with air” or “with  $O_2$ ”) condition—mitochondrial processing (that is, the citric acid cycle in the matrix and the electron transport system and ATP synthase at the inner membrane) harnesses enough energy to generate 30 more molecules of ATP, for a total net yield of 32 ATPs per molecule of glucose processed. (For a description



**1** The high-energy electrons extracted from the hydrogens in NADH and  $\text{FADH}_2$  are transferred from one electron-carrier molecule to another.

**2** The NADH and  $\text{FADH}_2$  are converted to  $\text{NAD}^+$  and FAD, which frees them to pick up more hydrogen atoms released during glycolysis and the citric acid cycle.

**3** The high-energy electrons fall to successively lower energy levels as they are transferred from carrier to carrier through the electron transport system.

**4** The electrons are passed to  $\text{O}_2$ , the final electron acceptor of the electron transport system. This oxygen, now negatively charged because it has acquired additional electrons, combines with  $\text{H}^+$  ions, which are positively charged because they donated electrons at the beginning of the electron transport system, to form  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

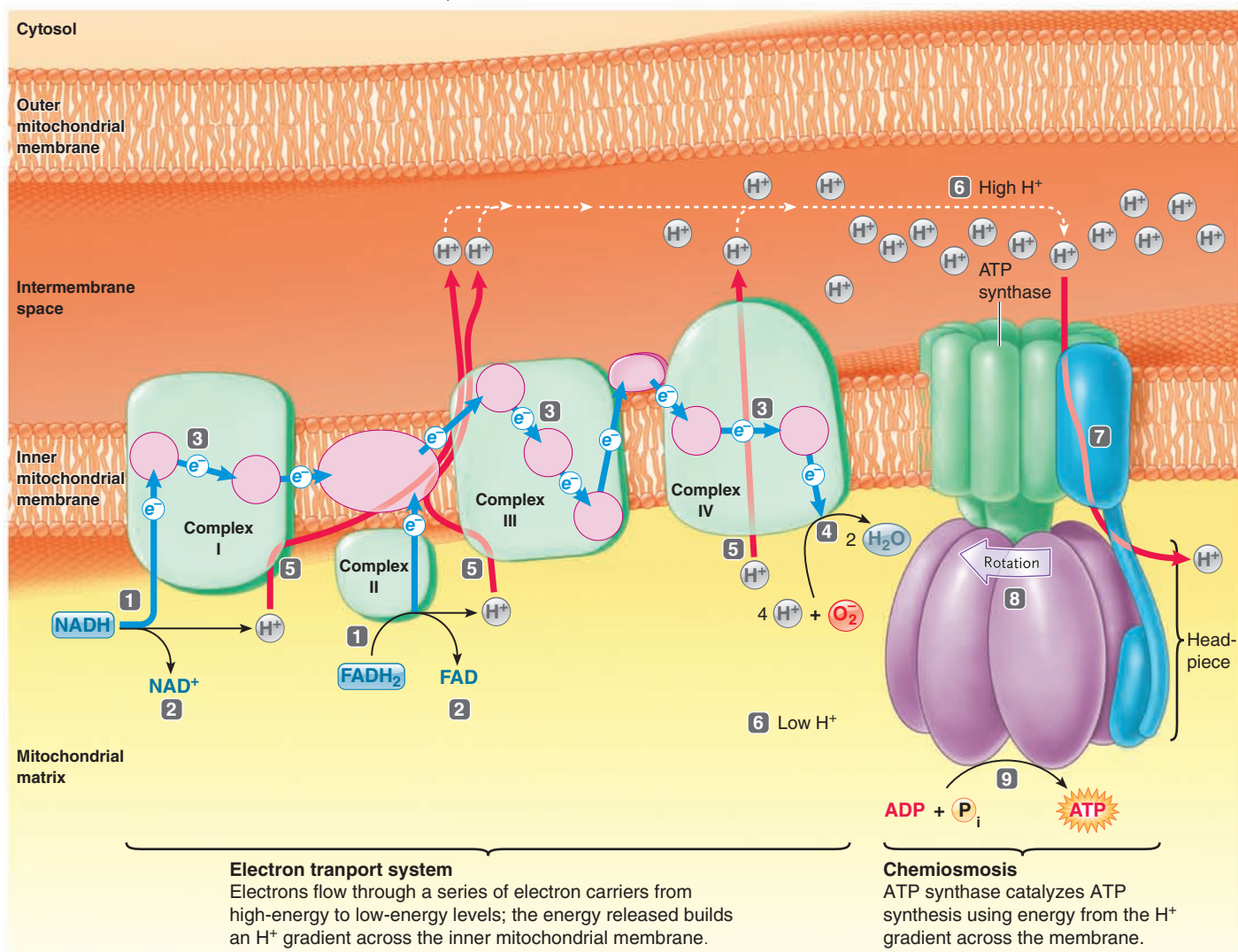
**5** As electrons move through the electron transport system, they release free energy. Part of the released energy is lost as heat, but some is harnessed by the mitochondrion to transport  $\text{H}^+$  across the inner mitochondrial membrane from the matrix to the intermembrane space at Complexes I, III, and IV.

**6** As a result,  $\text{H}^+$  ions are more heavily concentrated in the intermembrane space than in the matrix. This  $\text{H}^+$  gradient supplies the energy that drives ATP synthesis by ATP synthase.

**7** Because of this gradient,  $\text{H}^+$  ions have a strong tendency to flow into the matrix across the inner membrane via channels within the ATP synthase complexes.

**8** This flow of  $\text{H}^+$  ions activates ATP synthase and powers ATP synthesis by the headpiece, a process called **chemiosmosis**. Passage of  $\text{H}^+$  ions through the channel makes the headpiece spin like a top.

**9** As a result of changes in its shape and position as it turns, the headpiece picks up ADP and  $\text{P}_i$ , combines them, and releases the ATP product.



#### Electron transport system

Electrons flow through a series of electron carriers from high-energy to low-energy levels; the energy released builds an  $\text{H}^+$  gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane.

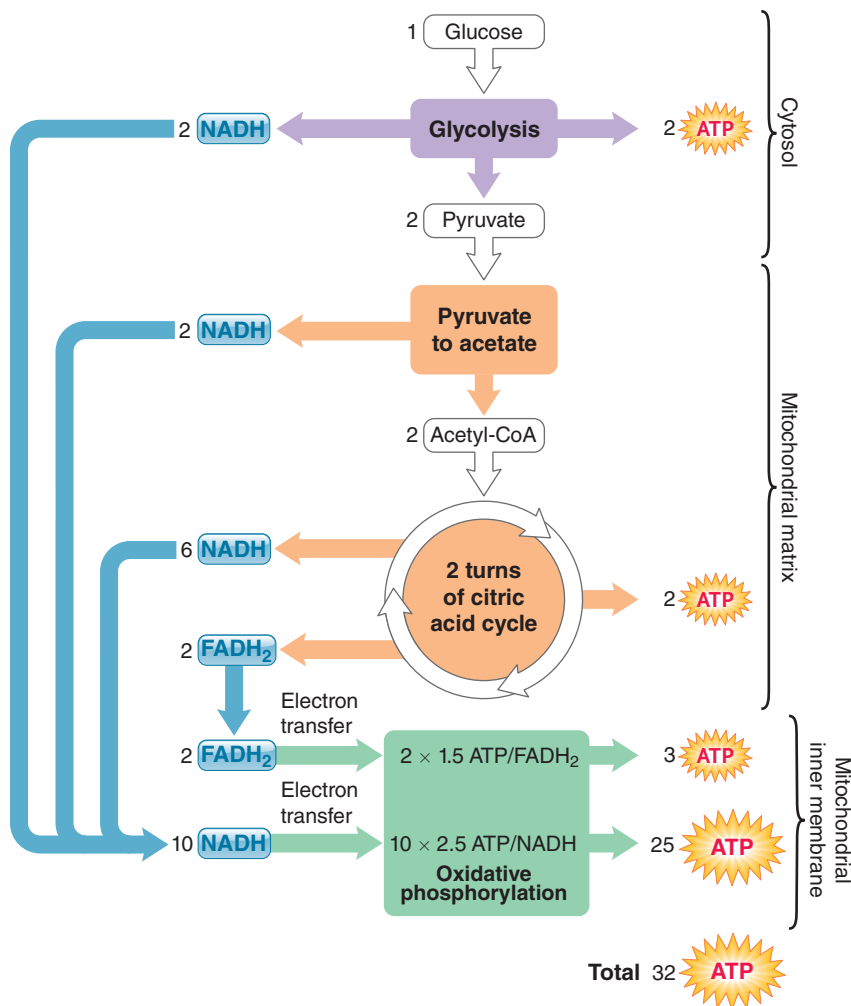
#### Chemiosmosis

ATP synthase catalyzes ATP synthesis using energy from the  $\text{H}^+$  gradient across the membrane.

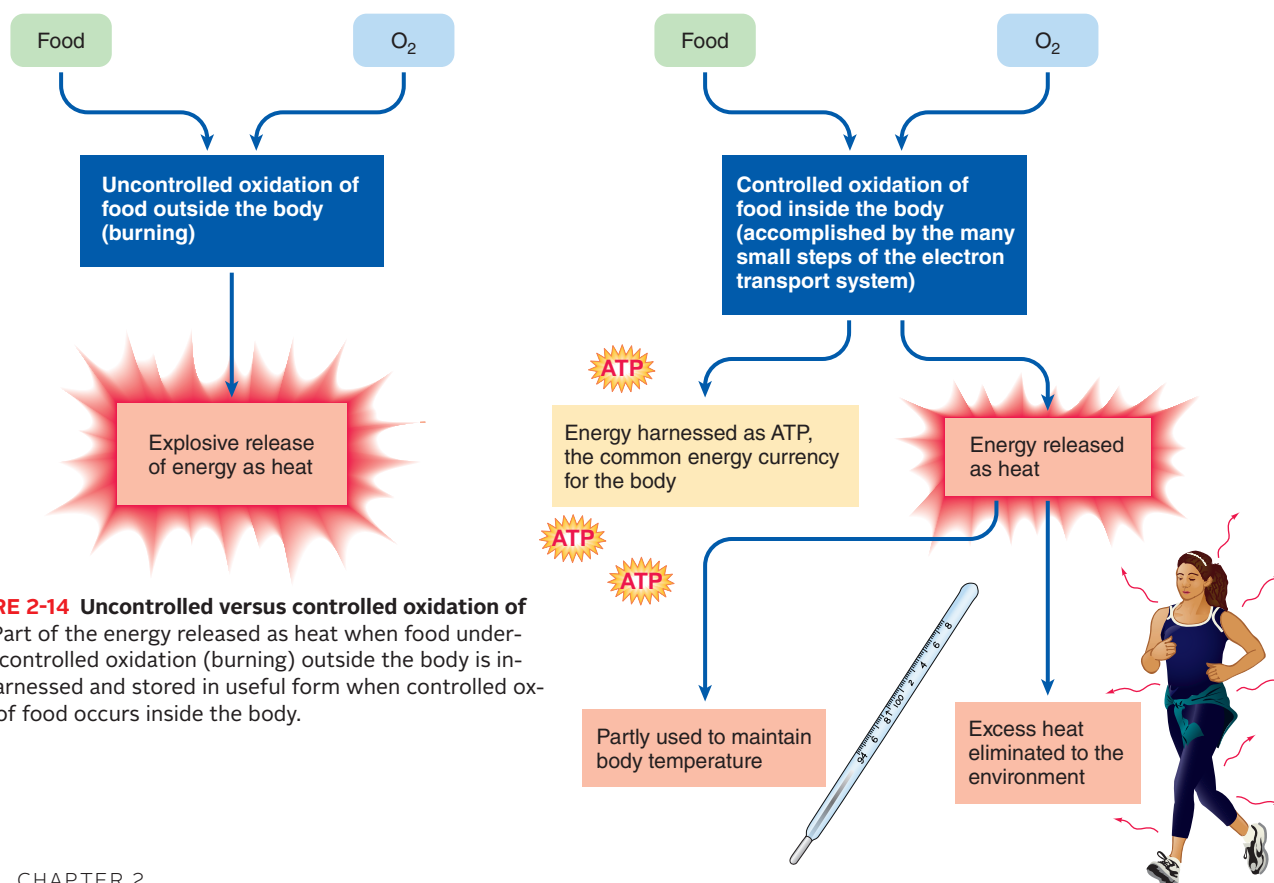
#### Oxidative phosphorylation

● **FIGURE 2-12** Oxidative phosphorylation at the mitochondrial inner membrane. Oxidative phosphorylation involves the electron transport system (steps 1–6) and chemiosmosis by ATP synthase (steps 7–9). The electron transport system consists of a series of electron carriers (pink circles) associated with four large protein complexes (in light green).

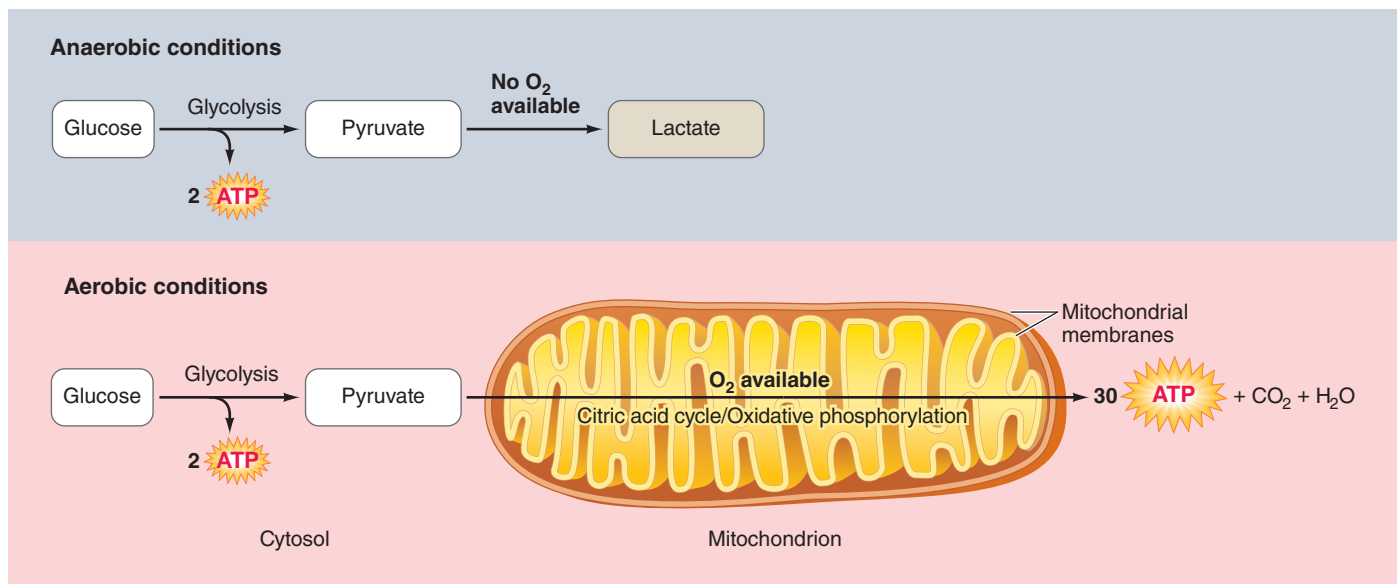




● **FIGURE 2-13** Summary of ATP production from the complete oxidation of one molecule of glucose. The total of 32 ATP assumes that electrons carried by each NADH yield 2.5 ATP and those carried by each FADH<sub>2</sub> yield 1.5 ATP during oxidative phosphorylation.

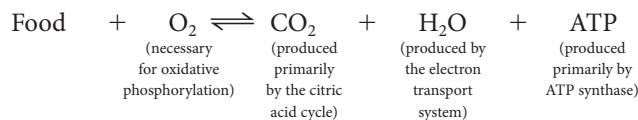


● **FIGURE 2-14** Uncontrolled versus controlled oxidation of food. Part of the energy released as heat when food undergoes uncontrolled oxidation (burning) outside the body is instead harnessed and stored in useful form when controlled oxidation of food occurs inside the body.



● **FIGURE 2-15 Comparison of energy yield and products under anaerobic and aerobic conditions.** In anaerobic conditions, only 2 ATP are produced for every glucose molecule processed, but in aerobic conditions a total of 32 ATP are produced per glucose molecule.

of aerobic exercise, see the boxed feature on p. 34, Beyond the Basics.) The overall reaction for the oxidation of food molecules to yield energy during cellular respiration is as follows:



Glucose, the principal nutrient derived from dietary carbohydrates, is the fuel preference of most cells. However, nutrient molecules derived from fats (fatty acids) and, if necessary, from proteins (amino acids) can also participate at specific points in this overall chemical reaction to eventually produce energy. Amino acids are usually used for protein synthesis rather than energy production, but they can be used as fuel if insufficient glucose and fat are available (see Chapter 16).

Note that the oxidative reactions within the mitochondria generate energy, unlike the oxidative reactions controlled by the peroxisome enzymes. Both organelles use O<sub>2</sub>, but they do so for different purposes.

### The energy stored within ATP is used for synthesis, transport, and mechanical work.

Once formed, ATP is transported out of the mitochondria and is then available as an energy source in the cell. Cell activities that require energy expenditure fall into three main categories:

1. *Synthesis of new chemical compounds*, such as protein synthesis by the ER. Some cells, especially cells with a high rate of secretion and cells in the growth phase, use up to 75% of the ATP they generate just to synthesize new chemical compounds.
2. *Membrane transport*, such as the selective transport of molecules across the kidney tubules during the process of urine formation. Kidney cells can expend as much as 80%

of their ATP currency to operate their selective membrane-transport mechanisms.

3. *Mechanical work*, such as contraction of the heart muscle to pump blood or contraction of skeletal muscles to lift an object. These activities require tremendous quantities of ATP.

As a result of cell energy expenditure to support these various activities, large quantities of ADP are produced. These energy-depleted molecules enter the mitochondria for “recharging” and then cycle back into the cytosol as energy-rich ATP molecules after participating in oxidative phosphorylation. In this recharging–expenditure cycle, a single ADP/ATP molecule may shuttle between mitochondria and cytosol thousands of times per day. On average a person recycles the equivalent of his or her body weight of ATP every day.

The high demands for ATP make glycolysis alone an insufficient, as well as inefficient, supplier of power for most cells. Were it not for the mitochondria, which house the metabolic machinery for oxidative phosphorylation, the body’s energy capability would be limited. However, glycolysis does provide cells with a sustenance mechanism that can produce at least some ATP under anaerobic conditions. Skeletal muscle cells in particular take advantage of this ability during short bursts of strenuous exercise, when energy demands for contractile activity outstrip the body’s ability to bring adequate O<sub>2</sub> to the exercising muscles to support oxidative phosphorylation.

Having completed our discussion of the organelles, we now turn to the cytosol.

## Cytosol: Cell Gel

Occupying about 55% of the total cell volume, the cytosol is the semiliquid portion of the cytoplasm that surrounds the organelles. Its nondescript appearance under an electron microscope

## Beyond the Basics

**Aerobic** (“with  $O_2$ ”) **exercise** involves large muscle groups and is performed at a low enough intensity and for a long enough period that fuel sources can be converted to ATP by using the citric acid cycle and oxidative phosphorylation as the predominant metabolic pathway. Aerobic exercise can be sustained from 15 to 20 minutes to several hours at a time. Short-duration, high-intensity activities, such as weight training and the 100-meter dash, which last for a matter of seconds and rely solely on energy stored in the muscles and on glycolysis, are forms of **anaerobic** (“without  $O_2$ ”) **exercise**.

Inactivity is associated with increased risk of developing both hypertension (high blood pressure) and coronary artery disease (blockage of the arteries that supply

## Aerobic Exercise: What For and How Much?

the heart). The American College of Sports Medicine recommends that an individual participate in aerobic exercise a minimum of three times per week for 20 to 60 minutes to reduce the risk of hypertension and coronary artery disease and to improve physical work capacity. Recent studies have shown the same health benefits are derived whether the exercise is accomplished in one long stretch or is broken into multiple shorter stints. This is good news, because many individuals find it easier to stick with brief bouts of exercise sprinkled throughout the day.

The intensity of the exercise should be based on a percentage of the individual's maximal capacity to work. The easi-

est way to establish the proper intensity of exercise and to monitor intensity levels is by checking the heart rate. The estimated maximal heart rate is determined by subtracting the person's age from 220. Significant benefits can be derived from aerobic exercise performed between 70% and 80% of maximal heart rate. For example, the estimated maximal heart rate for a 20-year-old is 200 beats per minute. If this person exercised three times per week for 20 to 60 minutes at an intensity that increased the heart rate to 140 to 160 beats per minute, the participant should significantly improve his or her aerobic work capacity and reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease.

gives the false impression that the cytosol is a liquid mixture of uniform consistency, but it is actually a highly organized, gel-like mass with differences in composition and consistency from one part of the cell to another.

### The cytosol is important in intermediary metabolism, ribosomal protein synthesis, and nutrient storage.

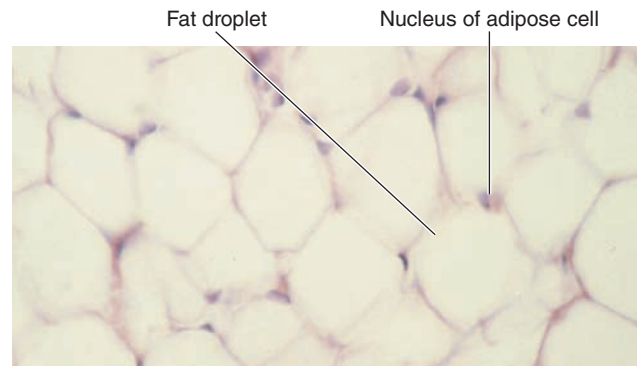
Three general categories of activities are associated with the cytosol: (1) enzymatic regulation of intermediary metabolism, (2) ribosomal protein synthesis, and (3) storage of fat, carbohydrate, and secretory vesicles.

**ENZYMATIC REGULATION OF INTERMEDIARY METABOLISM** The term **intermediary metabolism** refers collectively to the large set of chemical reactions inside the cell that involve the degradation, synthesis, and transformation of small organic molecules such as simple sugars, amino acids, and fatty acids. These reactions are critical for ultimately capturing the energy used for cell activities and for providing the raw materials needed to maintain the cell's structure, function, and growth. Intermediary metabolism occurs in the cytoplasm, with most of it being accomplished in the cytosol. The cytosol contains thousands of enzymes involved in intermediary biochemical reactions.

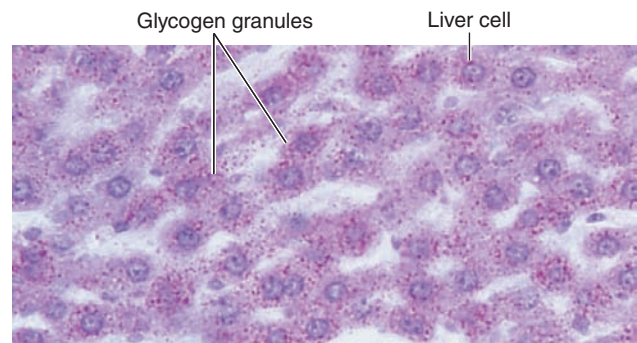
**RIBOSOMAL PROTEIN SYNTHESIS** Also dispersed throughout the cytosol are the free ribosomes, which synthesize proteins for use in the cytosol itself. In contrast, recall that the rough ER ribosomes synthesize proteins for secretion and for construction of new cell components.

**STORAGE OF FAT, GLYCOGEN, AND SECRETORY VESICLES** Excess nutrients not immediately used for ATP production are converted in the cytosol into storage forms that are readily visible under a light microscope. Such nonpermanent masses of stored

material are known as **inclusions**. Inclusions are not surrounded by membrane, and they may or may not be present, depending on the type of cell and the circumstances. The largest and most important storage product is fat. Small fat droplets are



(a) Fat storage in adipose cells



(b) Glycogen storage in liver cells

● **FIGURE 2-16 Inclusions.** (a) Light micrograph showing fat storage in adipose cells. A fat droplet occupies almost the entire cytosol of each cell. (b) Light micrograph showing glycogen storage in liver cells. The red-stained granules throughout the cytosol of each liver cell are glycogen deposits.

Elizabeth R. Walker, Ph.D., and Dennis O. Overman, Ph.D., Department of Neurobiology and Anatomy, School of Medicine, West Virginia University

present within the cytosol in various cells. In **adipose tissue**, the tissue specialized for fat storage, stored fat molecules can occupy almost the entire cytosol, where they merge to form one large fat droplet (● Figure 2-16a). The other visible storage product is **glycogen**, the storage form of glucose, which appears as clusters or granules dispersed throughout the cell (● Figure 2-16b). Cells vary in their ability to store glycogen, with liver and muscle cells having the greatest stores. When food is not available to provide fuel for the citric acid cycle and electron transport system, stored glycogen and fat are broken down to release glucose and fatty acids, respectively, which can feed the mitochondrial energy-producing machinery. An average adult human stores enough glycogen to provide energy for about a day of normal activities and typically has enough fat stored to provide energy for two months.

Secretory vesicles that have been processed and packaged by the ER and Golgi complex also remain in the cytosol, where they are stored until signaled to empty their contents to the outside. In addition, transport and endocytic vesicles move through the cytosol.

## Cytoskeleton: Cell “Bone and Muscle”

Different cell types in the body have distinct shapes, structural complexities, and functional specializations. These unique characteristics are maintained by the cytoskeleton, an elaborate protein scaffolding dispersed throughout the cytosol that acts as the “bone and muscle” of the cell by supporting and organizing the cell components and controlling their movements.

The cytoskeleton has three distinct elements: (1) *microtubules*, (2) *microfilaments*, and (3) *intermediate filaments* (● Figure 2-17). These elements are structurally linked and functionally coordinated to provide certain integrated functions for the cell. These functions, along with the functions of all other components of the cytoplasm, are summarized in ▲ Table 2-1.

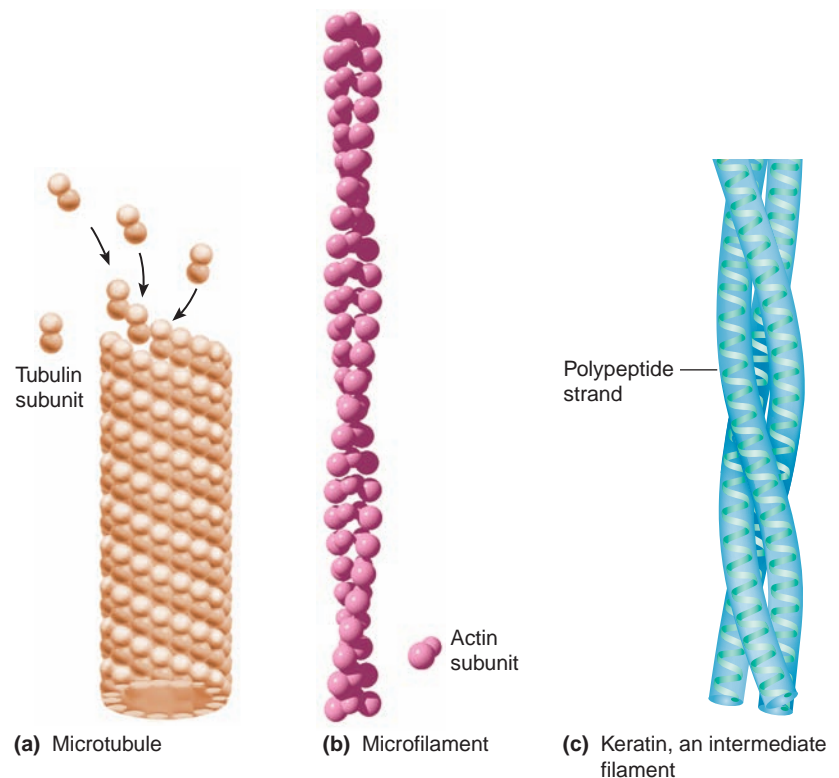
### Microtubules help maintain asymmetric cell shapes and play a role in complex cell movements.

**Microtubules** are the largest of the cytoskeletal elements. They are slender, long, hollow, unbranched tubes composed primarily of **tubulin**, a small, globular, protein molecule (see ● Figure 2-17a). Microtubules position many of the cytoplasmic organelles, such as the ER, Golgi complex, lysosomes, and mitochondria. They are also essential for maintaining the shape of asymmetric cells, such as nerve cells, whose elongated axons may extend up to a meter in length from where the cell body originates in the spinal cord to where

the axon ends at a muscle (● Figure 2-18a). Along with specialized intermediate filaments, microtubules stabilize this asymmetric axonal extension.

Microtubules also play an important role in some complex cell movements, including (1) transport of secretory vesicles or other materials from one region of the cell to another, (2) movement of specialized cell projections such as cilia and flagella, and (3) distribution of chromosomes during cell division through formation of a mitotic spindle. Let us examine each of these roles.

**VESICLE TRANSPORT** Axonal transport provides a good example of the importance of an organized system for moving secretory vesicles. In a nerve cell, specific chemicals are released from the terminal end of the elongated axon to influence a muscle or another structure that the nerve cell controls. These chemicals are largely produced within the cell body where the nuclear DNA blueprint, endoplasmic reticular factory, and Golgi packaging and distribution outlet are located. If they had to diffuse on their own from the cell body to a distant axon terminal, it would take the chemicals about 50 years to get there—obviously an impractical solution. Instead, the microtubules that extend from the beginning to the end of the axon provide a “highway” for vesicular traffic along the axon.



● **FIGURE 2-17 Components of the cytoskeleton.** (a) A microtubule, the largest of the cytoskeletal elements, is a long, hollow tube formed by two slightly different variants of globular-shaped tubulin molecules. (b) Most microfilaments, the smallest of the cytoskeletal elements, consist of two chains of actin molecules wrapped around each other. (c) The intermediate filament keratin, found in skin, is made of three polypeptide strands wound around one another. The composition of intermediate filaments, which are intermediate in size between microtubules and microfilaments, varies among cell types.

## ▲ Table 2-1 Summary of Cytoplasm Components

Cytoplasm Component	Structure	Function
<b>Organelles</b>		
<i>Endoplasmic reticulum</i>	Extensive, continuous membranous network of fluid-filled tubules and flattened sacs, partially studded with ribosomes	Manufactures products for secretion and forms new plasma membrane and other cell components
<i>Golgi complex</i>	Sets of stacked, flattened membranous sacs	Modifies, packages, and distributes newly synthesized proteins
<i>Lysosomes</i>	Membranous sacs containing hydrolytic enzymes	Serve as cell's "digestive system," destroying foreign substances and cellular debris
<i>Peroxisomes</i>	Membranous sacs containing oxidative enzymes	Perform detoxification activities
<i>Mitochondria</i>	Rod- or oval-shaped bodies enclosed by two membranes, with the inner membrane folded into cristae that project into an interior matrix	Act as energy organelles; are a major site of ATP production; contain enzymes for the citric acid cycle, proteins of the electron transport system, and ATP synthase
<b>Cytosol</b>		
<i>Intermediary metabolism enzymes</i>	Enzymes dispersed within the cytosol	Facilitate intracellular reactions involving degradation, synthesis, and transformation of small organic molecules
<i>Transport, secretory, and endocytic vesicles</i>	Transiently formed, membrane-enclosed products synthesized within or engulfed by the cell	Transport or store products being moved within, out of, or into the cell, respectively
<i>Inclusions</i>	Glycogen granules, fat droplets	Store excess nutrients
<b>Cytoskeleton</b>		
<i>Microtubules</i>	Long, slender, hollow tubes composed of tubulin molecules	As an integrated whole, the cell's "bone and muscle" Maintain asymmetric cell shapes and coordinate complex cell movements, specifically serving as highways for transport of secretory vesicles within a cell, serving as the main structural and functional component of cilia and flagella, and forming a mitotic spindle during cell division
<i>Microfilaments</i>	Intertwined helical chains of actin molecules; microfilaments composed of myosin molecules are also present in muscle cells	Play a vital role in various cellular contractile systems, including muscle contraction and amoeboid movement; serve as mechanical stiffeners for microvilli
<i>Intermediate filaments</i>	Irregular, threadlike proteins	Help resist mechanical stress

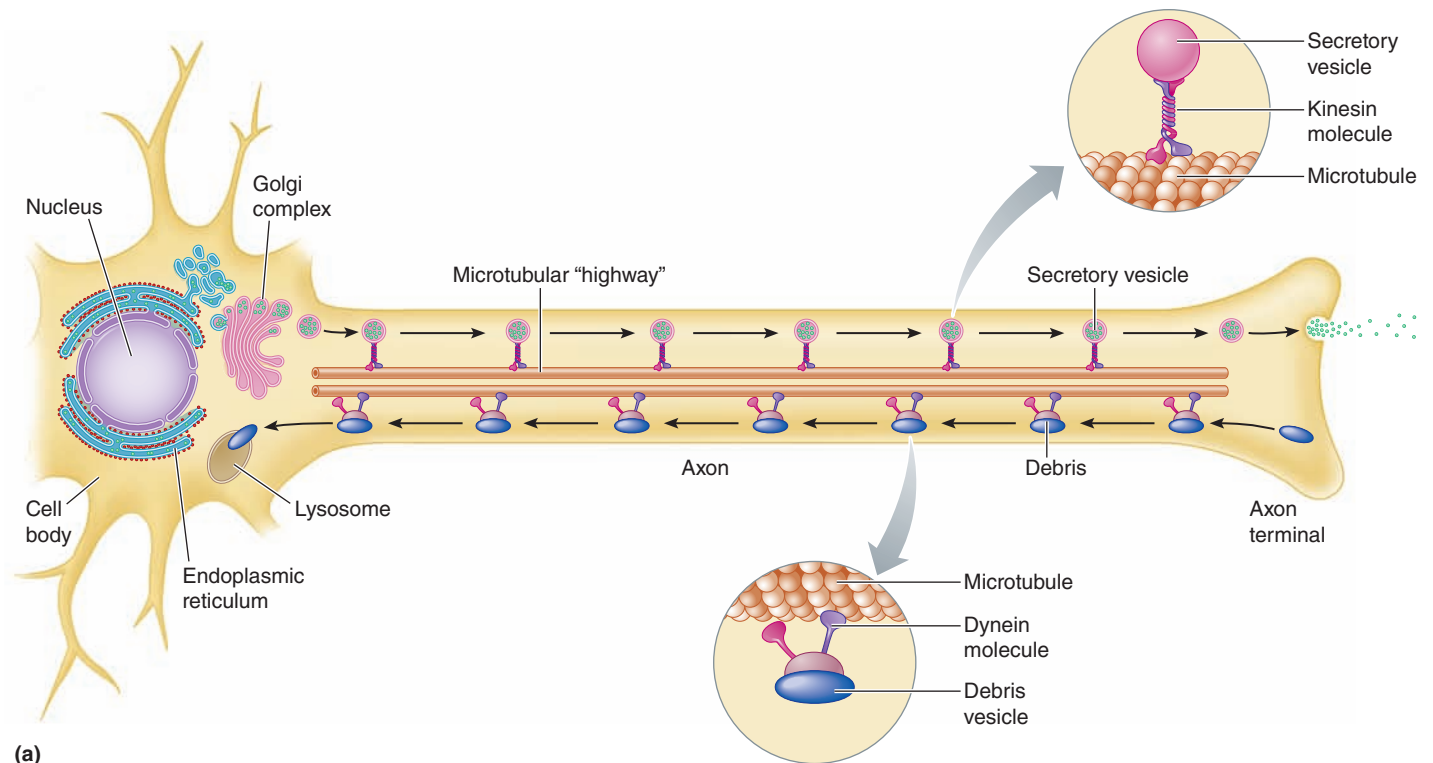
**Molecular motors** are the transporters. A molecular motor is a protein that attaches to the particle to be transported and then uses energy harnessed from ATP to "walk" along the microtubule, with the particle riding "piggyback" (*motor* means "movement"). *Kinesin*, the molecular motor that carries secretory vesicles to the end of the axon, consists of two "feet," a stalk, and a fanlike tail (see ● Figure 2-18a). The tail binds to the secretory vesicle to be moved, and the feet swing forward one at a time, as if walking, using the tubulin molecules as stepping-stones (see ● Figure 2-18b).

A different molecular motor, *dynein*, carries vesicles containing debris in the opposite direction up the microtubule for degradation by lysosomes in the nerve cell body.

**MOVEMENT OF CILIA AND FLAGELLA** Microtubules are also the dominant structural and functional components of cilia and flagella. These specialized motile protrusions from the cell surface

allow a cell to move materials across its surface (in the case of a stationary cell) or to propel itself through its environment (in the case of a motile cell). **Cilia** (meaning "eyelashes"; singular, *cilium*) are short, tiny, hairlike protrusions usually found in large numbers on the surface of a ciliated cell. **Flagella** (meaning "whips"; singular, *flagellum*) are long, whiplike appendages; typically, a cell has one or a few flagella at most. Even though they project from the surface of the cell, cilia and flagella are both intracellular structures—they are covered by the plasma membrane.

Cilia beat or stroke in unison in a given direction, much like the coordinated efforts of a rowing team. In humans, ciliated cells line the respiratory tract and the oviduct of the female reproductive tract. The coordinated stroking of the thousands of respiratory cilia help keep foreign particles out of the lungs by sweeping outward dust and other inspired (breathed-in) particles (● Figure 2-19). In the female reproductive tract, the



(a)

● **FIGURE 2-18 Two-way vesicular axonal transport along the microtubular “highway” in a nerve cell facilitated by molecular motors.** (a) Secretory vesicles are transported from the site of production in the cell body along a microtubular “highway” to the terminal end for secretion. Vesicles containing debris are transported in the opposite direction for degradation in the cell body. The top enlargement depicts kinesin, a molecular motor, carrying a secretory vesicle down the microtubule by using its “feet” to “step” on one tubulin molecule after another. The bottom enlargement depicts another molecular motor, dynein, transporting debris up the microtubule. (b) How a kinesin molecule “walks” by alternately attaching and releasing its “feet” as it cyclically swings the rear foot ahead of the front foot.

sweeping action of the cilia lining the oviduct draws the egg (ovum), released from the ovary during ovulation, into the oviduct and then guides it toward the uterus (womb). The only human cells that have a flagellum are sperm (see ● Figure 18-6, p. 555). The whiplike motion of the flagellum or “tail” enables a sperm to move through its environment, which is crucial for maneuvering into position to fertilize the female ovum.

**FORMATION OF THE MITOTIC SPINDLE** Cell division involves two discrete but related activities: *mitosis* (nuclear division), which depends on microtubules, and *cytokinesis* (cytoplasmic division), which depends on microfilaments and is described in the next section. During **mitosis**, the DNA-containing chromosomes of the nucleus are replicated, resulting in two identical sets. These duplicate sets of chromosomes are separated and drawn apart to opposite sides of the cell so that the genetic material is evenly distributed in the two halves of the cell (see p. A-26).

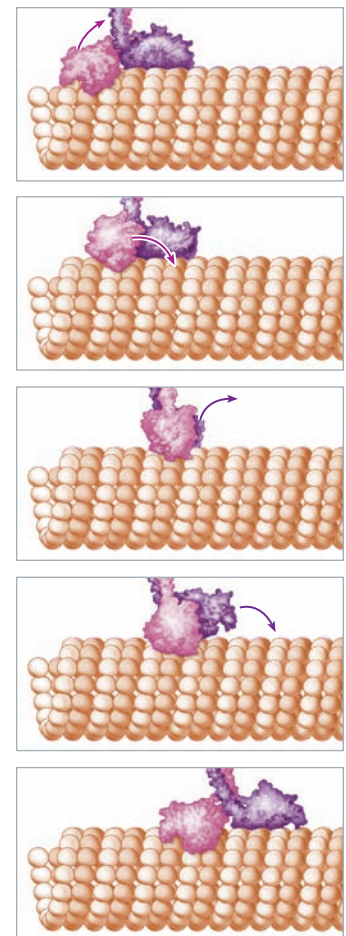
The replicated chromosomes are pulled apart by a cellular apparatus called the **mitotic spindle**, which is transiently assembled from microtubules only during cell division (see ● Figure C-10, p. A-28). The microtubules of the mitotic spindle are formed by the **centrioles**, a pair of short cylindrical structures that lie at right angles to each other near the nucleus (see ● Figure 2-1). As part of cell division, the centrioles first dupli-

cate themselves; then, the new centriole pairs move to opposite ends of the cell and form the spindle apparatus between them through a precisely organized assemblage of microtubules.

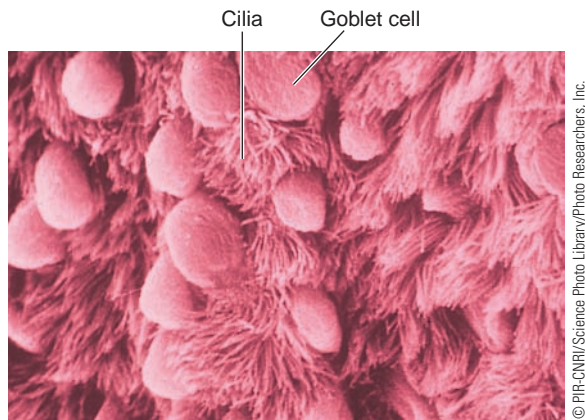
Some anticancer drugs prevent cancer cells from reproducing by interfering with the microtubules that ordinarily pull the chromosomes to opposite poles during cell division.

**Microfilaments are important to cellular contractile systems and as mechanical stiffeners.**

**Microfilaments** are the smallest elements of the cytoskeleton. The most obvious microfilaments in most cells are those composed of **actin**, a protein



(b)



● **FIGURE 2-19 Cilia in the respiratory tract.** Scanning electron micrograph of cilia on cells lining the human respiratory tract. The respiratory airways are lined by goblet cells, which secrete a sticky mucus that traps inspired particles, and epithelial cells that bear numerous hairlike cilia. The cilia all beat in the same direction to sweep inspired particles up and out of the airways.

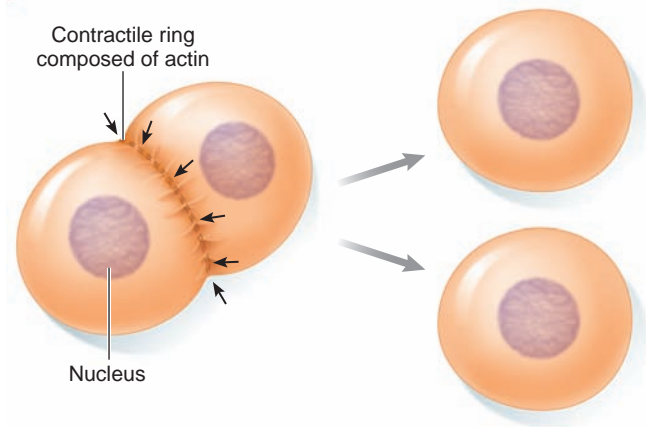
molecule that has a globular shape similar to that of tubulin. Unlike tubulin, which forms a hollow tube, actin assembles into two strands, which twist around each other to form a microfilament (see ● Figure 2-17b). In muscle cells, the protein **myosin** forms a different kind of microfilament (see ● Figure 8-4, p. 198). In most cells, myosin is not as abundant and does not form such distinct filaments.

Microfilaments serve two functions: (1) They play a vital role in various cell contractile systems, and (2) they act as mechanical stiffeners for several specific cell projections.

**MICROFILAMENTS IN CELL CONTRACTILE SYSTEMS** The most obvious, best-organized, and most clearly understood cell contractile system is that found in muscle. Muscle contains an abundance of actin and myosin microfilaments, which bring about muscle contraction through the ATP-powered sliding of actin microfilaments in relation to stationary myosin microfilaments. Myosin is a molecular motor that has heads that walk along the actin microfilaments, pulling them inward between the myosin microfilaments. Microfilament sliding and force development are triggered by a complex sequence of electrical, biochemical, and mechanical events initiated when the muscle cell is stimulated to contract (see Chapter 8 for details).

Nonmuscle cells may also contain musclelike assemblies. Some of these microfilament contractile systems are transiently assembled to perform a specific function when needed. A good example is the contractile ring that forms during **cytokinesis**, the process by which the two halves of a dividing cell separate into two new daughter cells, each with a full complement of chromosomes. The ring consists of a beltlike bundle of actin filaments located just beneath the plasma membrane in the middle of the dividing cell. When this ring of fibers contracts and tightens, it pinches the cell in two (● Figure 2-20).

Complex actin-based assemblies are also responsible for most cell locomotion. Four types of human cells are capable of moving on their own—sperm, white blood cells, fibroblasts

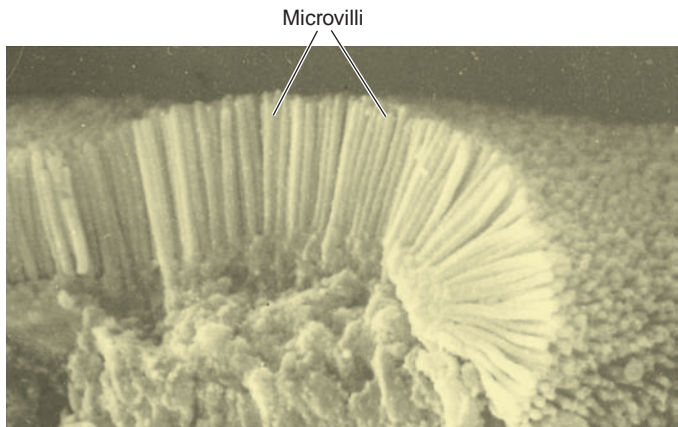


● **FIGURE 2-20 Cytokinesis.** During cytokinesis, a contractile ring composed of actin filaments tightens, squeezing apart the two duplicate cell halves formed by mitosis.

(connective tissue cells that form scars), and skin cells. Flagella propel sperm. The other motile cells move via **amoeboid movement**, a cell-crawling process that depends on the activity of their actin filaments, in a mechanism similar to that used by amoebas to maneuver through their environment. When crawling, the motile cell forms fingerlike pseudopods at the “front” or leading edge of the cell in the direction of the target. For example, the target that triggers amoeboid movement might be the proximity of food in the case of an amoeba or a bacterium in the case of a white blood cell (see ● Figure 2-7c, p. 26). Pseudopods are formed as a result of the organized assembly and disassembly of branching actin networks. During amoeboid movement, actin filaments continuously grow at the cell’s leading edge through the addition of actin molecules at the front of the actin chain. This filament growth pushes that portion of the cell forward as a pseudopod protrusion. Simultaneously, actin molecules at the rear of the filament are being disassembled and transferred to the front of the line. Thus, the filament does not get any longer; it stays the same length but moves forward through the continuous transfer of actin molecules from the rear to the front of the filament in what is termed a *treadmilling* fashion. The cell attaches the advancing pseudopod to surrounding connective tissue and at the same time detaches from its older adhesion site at the rear. The cell uses the new adhesion site at the leading edge as a point of traction to pull the bulk of its body forward through cytoskeletal contraction.

White blood cells are the most active crawlers in the body. These cells leave the circulatory system and travel by amoeboid movement to areas of infection or inflammation, where they engulf and destroy microorganisms and cellular debris. Amazingly, it is estimated that the total distance traveled collectively per day by all your white blood cells while they roam the tissues in their search-and-destroy tactic would circle Earth twice.

**MICROFILAMENTS AS MECHANICAL STIFFENERS** Besides their role in cellular contractile systems, actin filaments serve as mechanical supports or stiffeners for several cellular extensions, of which the most common are microvilli. **Microvilli** are micro-



Dr. R. G. Kessel & Dr. H. Kardony/Visuals Unlimited

● **FIGURE 2-21 Microvilli in the small intestine.** Scanning electron micrograph showing microvilli on the surface of a small-intestine epithelial cell.

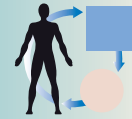
scopic, nonmotile, hairlike projections from the surface of epithelial cells lining the small intestine and kidney tubules (● Figure 2-21). Their presence greatly increases the surface area available for transferring material across the plasma membrane. In the small intestine, the microvilli increase the area available for absorbing digested nutrients. In the kidney tubules, microvilli enlarge the absorptive surface that salvages useful substances passing through the kidney so that these materials are saved for the body instead of being eliminated in the urine. Within each microvillus, a core consisting of parallel linked actin filaments forms a rigid mechanical stiffener that keeps these valuable surface projections intact.

### Intermediate filaments are important in cell regions subject to mechanical stress.

**Intermediate filaments** are intermediate in size between microtubules and microfilaments—hence their name. The proteins that compose the intermediate filaments vary among cell types, but in general they appear as irregular, threadlike molecules. These proteins form tough, durable fibers that play a central role in maintaining the structural integrity of a cell and in resisting mechanical stresses externally applied to a cell.

Intermediate filaments are tailored to suit their structural or tension-bearing role in specific cell types. For example, skin cells contain irregular networks of intermediate filaments made of the protein **keratin** (see ● Figure 2-17c). These intracellular filaments connect with the extracellular filaments that tie adjacent cells together, creating a continuous filamentous network that extends throughout the skin and gives it strength. When surface skin cells die, their tough keratin skeletons persist, forming a protective, waterproof outer layer. Hair and nails are also keratin structures.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



The ability of cells to perform functions essential for their own survival, as well as specialized tasks that help maintain homeostasis within the body, ultimately depends on the successful, cooperative operation of the intracellular components. For example, to support life-sustaining activities, all cells must generate energy, in a usable form, from nutrient molecules. Energy is generated intracellularly by chemical reactions in the cytosol and mitochondria.

In addition to being essential for basic cell survival, the organelles and cytoskeleton participate in many cells' specialized tasks that contribute to homeostasis. Here are several examples:

- Both nerve and endocrine cells release protein chemical messengers (neurotransmitters in nerve cells and hormones in endocrine cells) that are important in regulatory activities aimed at maintaining homeostasis. For example, neurotransmitters stimulate the respiratory muscles, which accomplish life-sustaining exchanges of oxygen and carbon dioxide between the body and the atmosphere through breathing. These protein chemical messengers are all produced by the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi complex and are released by exocytosis from the cell when needed.
- The ability of muscle cells to contract depends on their highly developed cytoskeletal microfilaments sliding past one another. Muscle contraction is responsible for many homeostatic activities, including (1) contracting the heart muscle, which pumps life-supporting blood throughout the body; (2) contracting the muscles attached to bones, which enables the body to procure food; and (3) contracting the muscle in the walls of the stomach and intestine, which moves the food along the digestive tract so that ingested nutrients can be progressively broken down into a form that can be absorbed into the blood for delivery to the cells.
- White blood cells help the body resist infection by making extensive use of lysosomal destruction of engulfed particles as they police the body for microbial invaders. These white blood cells are able to roam the body by means of amoeboid movement, a cell-crawling process accomplished by coordinated assembly and disassembly of actin, one of their cytoskeletal components.

As we begin to examine the various organs and systems, keep in mind that proper cell functioning is the foundation of all organ activities.



## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-38)

1. The barrier that separates and controls movement between the cell contents and the extracellular fluid is the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The chemical that directs protein synthesis and serves as a genetic blueprint is \_\_\_\_\_, which is found in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the cell.
3. The cytoplasm consists of \_\_\_\_\_, which are discrete specialized, intracellular compartments, a gel-like mass known as \_\_\_\_\_, and an elaborate protein scaffolding called the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Transport vesicles from the \_\_\_\_\_ fuse with and enter the \_\_\_\_\_ for modification and sorting.
5. The (*what kind of*) \_\_\_\_\_ enzymes within the peroxisomes primarily detoxify various wastes produced within the cell or foreign compounds that have entered the cell.
6. The universal energy carrier of the body is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The largest cells in the human body can be seen by the unaided eye. (*True or false?*)
8. Amoeboid movement is accomplished by the coordinated assembly and disassembly of microtubules. (*True or false?*)
9. Using the answer code on the right, indicate which type of ribosome is being described:  
\_\_\_ 1. synthesizes proteins used to construct new cell membrane  
\_\_\_ 2. synthesizes proteins used intracellularly within the cytosol  
\_\_\_ 3. synthesizes secretory proteins such as enzymes or hormones
10. Using the answer code on the right, indicate which form of energy production is being described:  
\_\_\_ 1. takes place in the mitochondrial matrix  
\_\_\_ 2. produces H<sub>2</sub>O as a by-product

- \_\_\_ 3. results in a rich yield of ATP
- \_\_\_ 4. takes place in the cytosol
- \_\_\_ 5. processes acetyl CoA
- \_\_\_ 6. takes place in the mitochondrial inner-membrane cristae
- \_\_\_ 7. converts glucose into two pyruvate molecules
- \_\_\_ 8. uses molecular oxygen
- \_\_\_ 9. is accomplished by the electron transport system and ATP synthase

### Essay Questions

1. What are a cell's three major subdivisions?
2. State an advantage of organelle compartmentalization.
3. List the five major types of organelles.
4. Describe the structure of the endoplasmic reticulum, distinguishing between rough and smooth. What is the function of each?
5. Compare exocytosis and endocytosis. Define *secretion*, *pinocytosis*, *receptor-mediated endocytosis*, and *phagocytosis*.
6. Which organelles serve as the intracellular "digestive system"? What type of enzymes do they contain? What functions do these organelles serve?
7. Compare lysosomes with peroxisomes.
8. Distinguish among *cellular respiration*, *oxidative phosphorylation*, and *chemiosmosis*.
9. Describe the structure of mitochondria, and explain their role in cellular respiration.
10. Distinguish between the oxidative enzymes found in peroxisomes and those found in mitochondria.
11. Cells expend energy on what three categories of activities?
12. List and describe the functions of each component of the cytoskeleton.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-39)

1. Let's consider how much ATP you synthesize in a day. Assume that you consume 1 mole of  $O_2$  per hour or 24 moles per day (a mole is the number of grams of a chemical equal to its molecular weight; see p. A-00). About 6 moles of ATP are produced per mole of  $O_2$  consumed. The molecular weight of ATP is 507. How many grams of ATP do you produce per day at this rate? Given that 1000 g equal 2.2 pounds, how many pounds of ATP do you produce per day at this rate? (This is under relatively inactive conditions!)
2. The stomach has two types of exocrine secretory cells: *chief cells*, which secrete an inactive form of the protein-digesting enzyme *pepsinogen*, and *parietal cells*, which secrete *hydrochloric acid (HCl)* that activates pepsinogen. Both cell types have an abundance of mitochondria for ATP production—the chief cells need energy to synthesize pepsinogen, and the parietal cells need energy to transport hydrogen ions ( $H^+$ ) and chloride ions ( $Cl^-$ ) from the blood into the stomach lumen. Only one of these cell types also has an extensive rough endoplasmic reticulum and abundant Golgi stacks. Would this type be the chief cells or the parietal cells? Why?
3. The poison *cyanide* acts by binding irreversibly to one component of the electron transport system, blocking its action. As a result, the entire electron transport process comes to a screeching halt, and the cells lose more than 94% of their ATP-producing capacity. Considering the types of cell activities that depend on energy expenditure, what would be the consequences of cyanide poisoning?
4. Why do you think a person is able to perform anaerobic exercise (such as lifting and holding a heavy weight) only briefly but can sustain aerobic exercise (such as walking or swimming) for long periods? (*Hint*: Muscles have limited energy stores.)
5. One type of the affliction *epidermolysis bullosa* is caused by a genetic defect that results in production of abnormally weak keratin. Based on your knowledge of the role of keratin, what part of the body do you think would be affected by this condition?

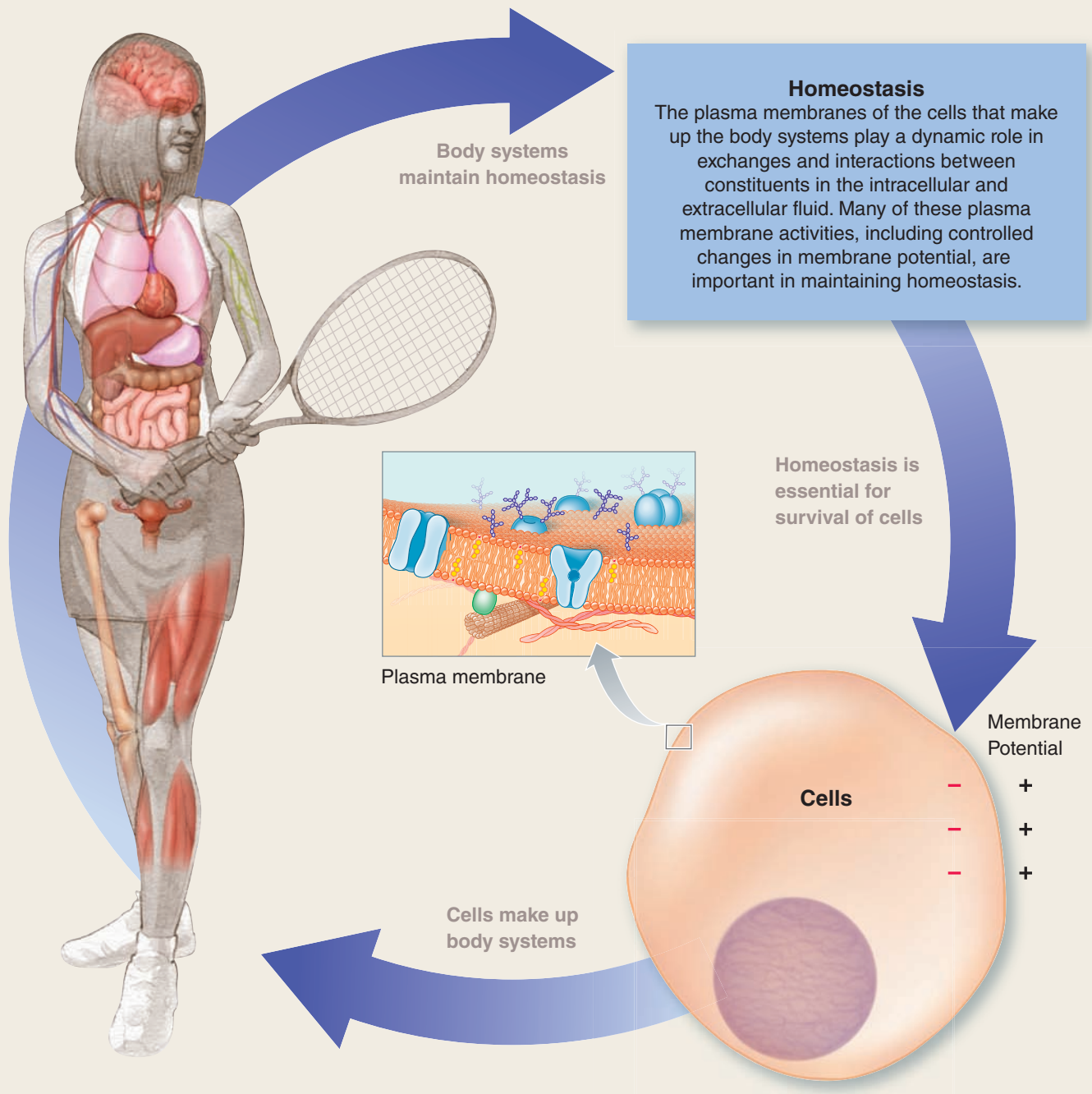
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-39)

Kevin S. and his wife have been trying to have a baby for the past three years. On seeking the help of a fertility specialist, Kevin learned that he has a hereditary form of male sterility involving nonmotile sperm. His condition can be traced to defects in the cytoskeletal components of the sperm's flagella. As a result of this finding, the physician suspected

that Kevin also has a long history of recurrent respiratory tract disease. Kevin confirmed that indeed he has had colds, bronchitis, and influenza more frequently than his friends. Why would the physician suspect that Kevin probably had a history of frequent respiratory disease based on his diagnosis of sterility due to nonmotile sperm?

## Body Systems



All cells are enveloped by a **plasma membrane**, a thin, flexible, lipid barrier that separates the contents of the cell from its surroundings. To carry on life-sustaining and specialized activities, each cell must exchange materials across this membrane with the homeostatically maintained internal fluid environment that surrounds it. This discriminating barrier contains specific proteins, some of which enable selective passage of materials. Other membrane proteins are receptor sites for interaction with specific

chemical messengers in the cell's environment. These messengers control many cell activities crucial to homeostasis.

Cells have a **membrane potential**, a slight excess of negative charges lined up along the inside of the membrane and a slight excess of positive charges on the outside. The specialization of nerve and muscle cells depends on the ability of these cells to alter their potential on appropriate stimulation.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Membrane Structure and Functions**

Trilaminar appearance

Membrane composition; fluid mosaic model

Functions of membrane components

**Cell-to-Cell Adhesions**

Extracellular matrix

Specialized cell junctions: desmosomes, tight junctions, and gap junctions

**Overview of Membrane Transport**

Influence of lipid solubility and size of particle

Active versus passive transport

**Unassisted Membrane Transport**

Diffusion down concentration gradients

Movement along electrical gradients

Osmosis; tonicity

**Assisted Membrane Transport**

Carrier-mediated transport

Vesicular transport

**Membrane Potential**

Definition of potential

Ionic basis of resting membrane potential

# The Plasma Membrane and Membrane Potential

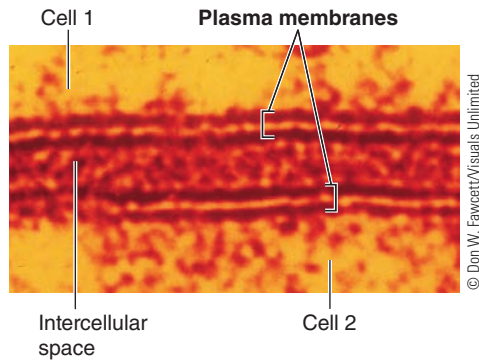
## Membrane Structure and Functions

To survive, every cell must maintain a specific composition of its contents unique for that cell type despite the remarkably different composition of the extracellular fluid (ECF) surrounding it. This difference in fluid composition inside and outside a cell is maintained by the **plasma membrane**, the extremely thin layer of lipids and proteins that forms the outer boundary of every cell and encloses the intracellular contents. Besides acting as a mechanical barrier that traps needed molecules within the cell, the plasma membrane helps determine the cell's composition by selectively permitting specific substances to pass between the cell and its environment. The plasma membrane controls the entry of nutrient molecules and the exit of secretory and waste products. In addition, it maintains differences in ion concentrations inside and outside the cell, which are important in the membrane's electrical activity. The plasma membrane also participates in the joining of cells to form tissues and organs. Finally, it plays a key role in enabling a cell to respond to changes, or signals, in the cell's environment; this ability is important in communication among cells. No matter what the cell type, these common membrane functions are crucial to the cell's survival, to its ability to perform specialized homeostatic activities, and to its ability to coordinate its functions with those of other cells. Many of the functional differences among cell types are due to subtle variations in the composition of their plasma membranes, which in turn enable different cells to interact in different ways with essentially the same ECF environment.

### The plasma membrane is a fluid lipid bilayer embedded with proteins.

The plasma membrane of every cell consists mostly of lipids and proteins plus small amounts of carbohydrate. It is too thin to be seen under an ordinary light microscope, but with an electron microscope it appears as a trilaminar structure consisting of two dark layers separated by a light middle layer (*tri* means “three”; *lamina* means “layer”) (● Figure 3-1). The specific arrangement of the molecules that make up the plasma membrane is responsible for this “sandwich” appearance.

The most abundant membrane lipids are phospholipids, with lesser amounts of cholesterol. An estimated 1 billion phospholipid molecules are present in the plasma membrane of a typical human cell. **Phospholipids** have a polar (electrically charged; see p. A-6) head containing a negatively charged phosphate group and two nonpolar (electrically neutral) fatty acid chain tails (● Figure 3-2a). The polar end is hydrophilic (meaning “water loving”) because it can interact with water molecules, which are also polar; the nonpolar end is hydrophobic (meaning “water fearing”) and will not mix with water. In water, phospholipids self-assemble into a **lipid bilayer**, a double layer of lipid molecules (*bi* means “two”) (● Figure 3-2b). The hydrophobic tails bury themselves in the center of the bilayer away from the water, and the hydrophilic heads line up on both sides in contact with the water. The outer surface of the bilayer is exposed



● **FIGURE 3-1** Trilaminar appearance of a plasma membrane in an electron micrograph. Depicted are the plasma membranes of two adjacent cells. Note that each membrane appears as two dark layers separated by a light middle layer.

to ECF, whereas the inner surface is in contact with the intracellular fluid (ICF) (● Figure 3-2c).

The lipid bilayer is fluid, not rigid, with a consistency more like liquid cooking oil than solid shortening. The phospholipids, which are not held together by strong chemical bonds, are constantly moving. They can twirl, vibrate, and move around within their own half of the bilayer, exchanging places millions of times a second. This phospholipid movement largely accounts for membrane fluidity.

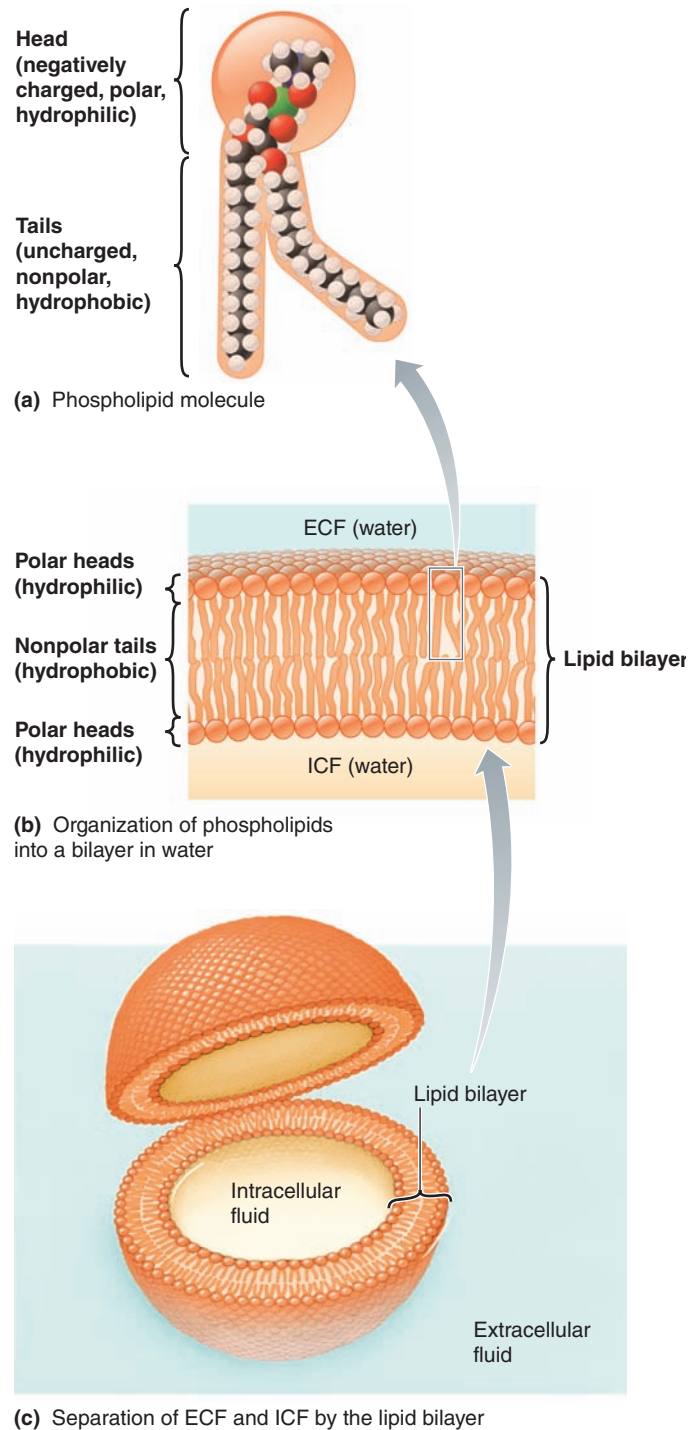
**Cholesterol** contributes to both the fluidity and the stability of the membrane. Cholesterol molecules are tucked between the phospholipid molecules, where they prevent the fatty acid chains from packing together and crystallizing, a process that would drastically reduce membrane fluidity. Through their spatial relationship with phospholipid molecules, cholesterol molecules also help stabilize the phospholipids' position.

Because of its fluidity, the plasma membrane has structural integrity but at the same time is flexible, enabling the cell to change shape. For example, muscle cells change shape as they contract, and red blood cells must change shape considerably as they squeeze their way single file through the capillaries, the narrowest blood vessels.

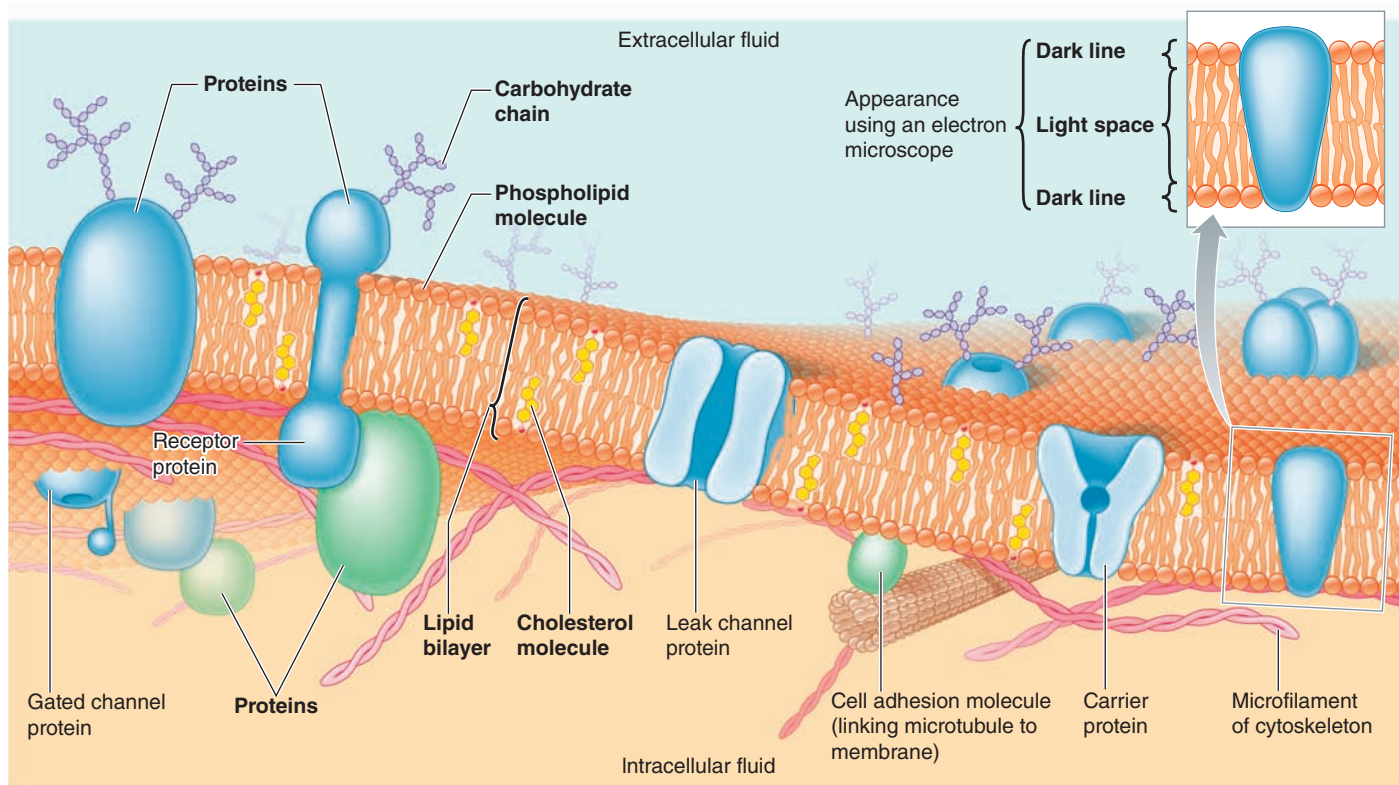
**Membrane proteins** are inserted within or attached to the lipid bilayer (● Figure 3-3). Some of these proteins extend through the entire thickness of the membrane, whereas others stud only the outer or inner surface. The plasma membrane has about 50 times more lipid molecules than protein molecules. However, proteins account for nearly half of the membrane's mass because they are much larger than lipids. The fluidity of the lipid bilayer enables many membrane proteins to float freely like "icebergs" in a moving "sea" of lipid. This view of membrane structure is known as the **fluid mosaic model**, in reference to the membrane fluidity and the ever-changing mosaic pattern of the proteins embedded in the lipid bilayer. (A mosaic is a surface decoration made by inlaying small pieces of variously colored tiles to form patterns or pictures.)

A small amount of **membrane carbohydrate** is located on the outer surface of cells, "sugar coating" them. Short carbohydrate chains protrude like tiny antennas from the outer surface, bound primarily to membrane proteins and, to a lesser extent, to lipids (● Figure 3-3).

This proposed structure accounts for the trilaminar appearance of the plasma membrane. When stains are used to help visualize the plasma membrane under an electron microscope (as in ● Figure 3-1), the two dark lines represent the hydrophilic polar regions of the lipid and protein molecules that



● **FIGURE 3-2** Structure and organization of phospholipid molecules in a lipid bilayer. (a) Phospholipid molecule. (b) In water, phospholipid molecules organize themselves into a lipid bilayer with the polar heads interacting with the polar water molecules at each surface and the nonpolar tails all facing the interior of the bilayer. (c) An exaggerated view of the plasma membrane enclosing a cell, separating the ICF from the ECF.



● **FIGURE 3-3 Fluid mosaic model of plasma membrane structure.** The plasma membrane is composed of a lipid bilayer embedded with proteins. Some proteins extend through the thickness of the membrane or are partially submerged in the membrane, while others are loosely attached to the surface of the membrane. Short carbohydrate chains attach to proteins or lipids on the outer surface only.

have taken up the stain. The light space between corresponds to the poorly stained hydrophobic core formed by the nonpolar regions of these molecules.

The different components of the plasma membrane carry out a variety of functions. The lipid bilayer forms the primary barrier to diffusion, the proteins perform most of the specific membrane functions, and the carbohydrates play an important role in “self-recognition” processes and cell-to-cell interactions. We now examine the functions of these membrane components in more detail.

### The lipid bilayer forms the basic structural barrier that encloses the cell.

The lipid bilayer serves three important functions:

1. It forms the basic structure of the membrane. The phospholipids can be visualized as the “pickets” that form the “fence” around the cell.
2. Its hydrophobic interior is a barrier to passage of water-soluble substances between the ICF and the ECF. Water-soluble substances cannot dissolve in and pass through the lipid bilayer. By means of this barrier, the cell can maintain different mixtures and concentrations of solutes (dissolved substances) inside and outside the cell.
3. It is responsible for the fluidity of the membrane.

### The membrane proteins perform various specific membrane functions.

Different types of membrane proteins serve the following specialized functions:

1. Some proteins span the membrane to form water-filled pathways, or **channels**, through the lipid bilayer (● Figure 3-3). Water-soluble substances small enough to enter a channel can pass through the membrane by this means without coming into direct contact with the hydrophobic lipid interior. Channels are highly selective. The small diameter of channels prevents particles larger than 0.8 nm (40-billionths of an inch) in diameter from entering. Only small ions can fit through channels. Furthermore, a given channel selectively admits particular ions. For example, only sodium ions ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) can pass through  $\text{Na}^+$  channels, and only potassium ions ( $\text{K}^+$ ) can pass through  $\text{K}^+$  channels. This channel selectivity is due to specific arrangements of chemical groups on the interior surfaces of the channels. Some channels are **leak channels** that are always open, thus permitting unregulated passage of their selected ion. Others are **gated channels** that may be open or closed to their specific ion as a result of changes in channel shape (that is, opening or closing of gates) in response to controlling mechanisms, described later. Therefore, passage through a gated channel is regulated. Cells vary in the number, kind, and activity of channels they have. Some drugs target channels, such as *calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) channel blockers* that are

## Beyond the Basics

**Cystic fibrosis (CF)**, the most common fatal genetic disease in the United States, strikes 1 in every 2000 Caucasian children. It is characterized by the production of abnormally thick, sticky mucus. Most dramatically affected are the respiratory airways and the pancreas.

### Respiratory Problems

The presence of thick, sticky mucus in the respiratory airways makes it difficult to get adequate air in and out of the lungs. Also, because bacteria thrive in the accumulated mucus, CF patients suffer from repeated respiratory infections. They are especially susceptible to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, an “opportunistic” bacterium that is often present in the environment but usually causes infection only when some underlying problem handicaps the body’s defenses. Gradually, the involved lung tissue becomes scarred (fibrotic), making the lungs harder to inflate. This complication increases the work of breathing beyond the extra effort required to move air through the clogged airways.

### Underlying Cause

CF is caused by one of several genetic defects that lead to production of a flawed version of a protein known as *cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR)*. CFTR normally forms the chloride ( $\text{Cl}^-$ ) channels in the plasma membrane. With CF, the defective CFTR gets “stuck” in the endoplasmic reticulum–Golgi system, which normally manufactures and processes this product and then ships it to the plasma membrane (see pp. 21–22). That is, in CF patients, the mutated version of CFTR is only partially processed and never makes it to the cell surface. The resultant absence of CFTR protein in the plasma membrane makes the membrane impermeable to  $\text{Cl}^-$ . Because  $\text{Cl}^-$  transport across the membrane is closely linked to  $\text{Na}^+$  transport, cells lining the respiratory airways cannot absorb  $\text{NaCl}$  (salt) prop-

## Cystic Fibrosis: A Fatal Defect in Membrane Transport

erly. As a result, salt accumulates in the fluid lining the airways.

What puzzles researchers is how this  $\text{Cl}^-$  channel defect and resultant salt accumulation lead to the excess mucus problem. Two recent discoveries may provide an answer, although these proposals remain to be proven and research into other possible mechanisms continues to be pursued. One group of investigators found that the airway cells produce a natural antibiotic, *defensin*, which normally kills most inhaled airborne bacteria. It turns out that defensin cannot function properly in a salty environment. Bathed in the excess salt associated with CF, the disabled antibiotic cannot rid the lungs of inhaled bacteria. This leads to repeated infections. One of the outcomes of the body’s response to these infections is production of excess mucus, which serves as a breeding ground for more bacterial growth. The cycle continues as the lung-clogging mucus accumulates and lung infections become more frequent. To make matters worse, the excess mucus is especially thick and sticky, making it difficult for the normal ciliary defense mechanisms of the lungs to sweep up the bacteria-laden mucus (see pp. 36 and 339). The mucus is thick and sticky because it is underhydrated (has too little water), a problem linked to the defective salt transport.

The second study found an additional complicating factor in the CF story. These researchers demonstrated that CFTR appears to serve a dual role as a  $\text{Cl}^-$  channel and as a membrane receptor that binds to and destroys *P. aeruginosa* (and perhaps other bacteria). Because CFTR is absent from the airway cell membranes of CF patients, *P. aeruginosa* is not cleared from the airways as usual. Besides causing infection, these bacteria trigger the airway cells to produce unusually large amounts of abnormal, thick, sticky mucus. This mucus promotes more

bacterial growth as the vicious cycle continues.

### Pancreatic Problems

In CF patients, the pancreatic duct, which carries secretions from the pancreas to the small intestine, becomes plugged with thick mucus. Because the pancreas produces enzymes important in the digestion of food, malnourishment eventually results. In addition, as the pancreatic digestive secretions accumulate behind the blocked duct, fluid-filled cysts form in the pancreas, with the affected pancreatic tissue gradually degenerating and becoming fibrotic. The name *cystic fibrosis* aptly describes long-term changes that occur in the pancreas and lungs as the result of a single genetic flaw in CFTR.

### Treatment and New Research Directions

Treatment consists of physical therapy to help clear the airways of the excess mucus and antibiotic therapy to combat respiratory infections, plus special diets and administration of supplemental pancreatic enzymes to maintain adequate nutrition. Despite this supportive treatment, most CF victims do not survive beyond their 30s, with most dying from lung complications.

Having identified the genetic defect responsible for most CF cases, investigators are hopeful of developing a means to correct or compensate for the defective gene. Another potential cure being studied is development of drugs that induce the mutated CFTR to be “finished off” and inserted in the plasma membrane. Furthermore, several promising new drug therapies, such as a mucus-thinning aerosol drug that can be inhaled, offer hope of reducing the number of lung infections and extending the life span of CF victims until a cure can be found.

widely used in the management of high blood pressure and abnormal heart rhythms. More than 60 genetic mutations in channels have been linked to human diseases. (To learn how a specific channel defect can lead to a devastating disease, see the accompanying boxed feature, **Beyond the Basics**.)

2. Other proteins that span the membrane are **carrier**, or **transport, molecules**; they transfer across the membrane specific substances that are unable to cross on their own. The means by which carriers accomplish this transport is described later. Each carrier can transport only a particular

molecule (or ion) or group of closely related molecules. Cells of different types have different kinds of carriers. As a result, they vary as to which substances they can selectively transport across their membranes. For example, thyroid gland cells are the only cells to use iodine. Appropriately, only the plasma membranes of thyroid gland cells have carriers for iodine, so only these cells can transport iodine from the blood into the cell interior.

3. Other proteins, located on the inner membrane surface, serve as **docking marker acceptors**; they bind lock-and-key fashion with the docking marker proteins of secretory vesicles (see p. 23). Secretion is initiated as stimulatory signals trigger fusion of the secretory vesicle membrane with the inner surface of the plasma membrane through interactions between these matching labels. The secretory vesicle subsequently opens up and empties its contents to the outside by exocytosis.

4. Some proteins located on either the inner or the outer cell surface function as **membrane-bound enzymes** that control specific chemical reactions. Cells are specialized in the types of membrane-bound enzymes they have. For example, a specialized area of the outer plasma membrane surface of skeletal muscle cells contains an enzyme that destroys the chemical messenger responsible for triggering muscle contraction, thus allowing the muscle to relax.

5. Many proteins on the outer surface are **receptors**, sites that “recognize” and bind with specific molecules in the cell’s environment. This binding initiates a series of membrane and intracellular events (to be described later) that alter the activity of the particular cell. In this way, chemical messengers in the blood, such as water-soluble hormones, influence only the specific cells that have receptors for a given messenger. Even though every cell is exposed to the same messenger via the circulating blood, a given messenger has no effect on cells lacking receptors for this specific messenger. To illustrate, the anterior pituitary gland secretes into the blood thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), which attaches only to the surface of thyroid gland cells to stimulate secretion of thyroid hormone. No other cells have receptors for TSH, so only thyroid cells are influenced by TSH despite its widespread distribution.

6. Still other proteins are **cell adhesion molecules (CAMs)**. Many CAMs protrude from the outer membrane surface and form loops or hooks by which cells grip one another or grasp the connective tissue fibers between cells. Thus, these molecules help hold the cells within tissues and organs together. Other CAMs protrude from the inner membrane surface and connect to the intracellular cytoskeletal scaffolding.

7. Finally, still other proteins on the outer membrane surface, especially in conjunction with carbohydrates, are important in the cells’ ability to recognize “self” (that is, cells of the same type).

### The membrane carbohydrates serve as self-identity markers.

The short carbohydrate chains on the outer membrane surface serve as self-identity markers that enable cells to identify and interact with one another in the following ways:

1. Different cell types have different markers. The unique combination of sugar chains projecting from the surface membrane proteins serves as the “trademark” of a particular cell type, enabling a cell to recognize others of its own kind. These carbohydrate chains play an important role in recognition of “self” and in cell-to-cell interactions. Cells can recognize other cells of the same type and join to form tissues. This is especially important during embryonic development. If cultures of embryonic cells of two different types, such as nerve cells and muscle cells, are mixed, the cells sort themselves into separate aggregates of nerve cells and muscle cells.

2. Carbohydrate-containing surface markers are also involved in tissue growth, which is normally held within certain limits of cell density. Cells do not “trespass” across the boundaries of neighboring tissues; that is, they do not overgrow their own territory. The exception is the uncontrolled spread of cancer cells, which have been shown to bear abnormal surface carbohydrate markers.

## Cell-to-Cell Adhesions

In multicellular organisms such as humans, the plasma membrane not only is the outer boundary of all cells but also participates in cell-to-cell adhesions. These adhesions bind groups of cells together into tissues and package them further into organs. The life-sustaining activities of the body systems depend not only on the functions of the individual cells of which they are made but also on how these cells live and work together in tissue and organ communities.

At least in part, similar cells organize into appropriate groupings by means of the carbohydrate markers on the membrane surface. Once arranged, cells are held together by three different means: (1) CAMs, (2) the extracellular matrix, and (3) specialized cell junctions. You’re already familiar with CAMs. We now examine the extracellular matrix and then specialized junctions.

### The extracellular matrix serves as biological “glue.”

Tissues are not made up solely of cells, and many cells within a tissue are not in direct physical contact with neighboring cells. Instead, they are held together by a biological “glue” called the **extracellular matrix (ECM)**. The ECM is an intricate meshwork of fibrous proteins embedded in a watery, gel-like substance composed of complex carbohydrates. The watery gel, usually called the interstitial fluid (see p. 5), provides a pathway for diffusion of nutrients, wastes, and other water-soluble traffic between the blood and the tissue cells. The three major types of



protein fibers woven through the gel are collagen, elastin, and fibronectin.

1. **Collagen** forms flexible but nonelastic fibers or sheets that provide tensile strength (resistance to longitudinal stress). Collagen is the most abundant protein in the body, making up nearly half of the total body protein by weight.

2. **Elastin** is a rubbery protein fiber most plentiful in tissues that must easily stretch and then recoil after the stretching force is removed. It is found, for example, in the lungs, which stretch and recoil as air moves in and out of them.

3. **Fibronectin** promotes cell adhesion and holds cells in position. Reduced amounts of this protein have been found within certain types of cancerous tissue, possibly accounting for cancer cells' inability to adhere well to one another; instead, they tend to break loose and metastasize (spread elsewhere in the body).

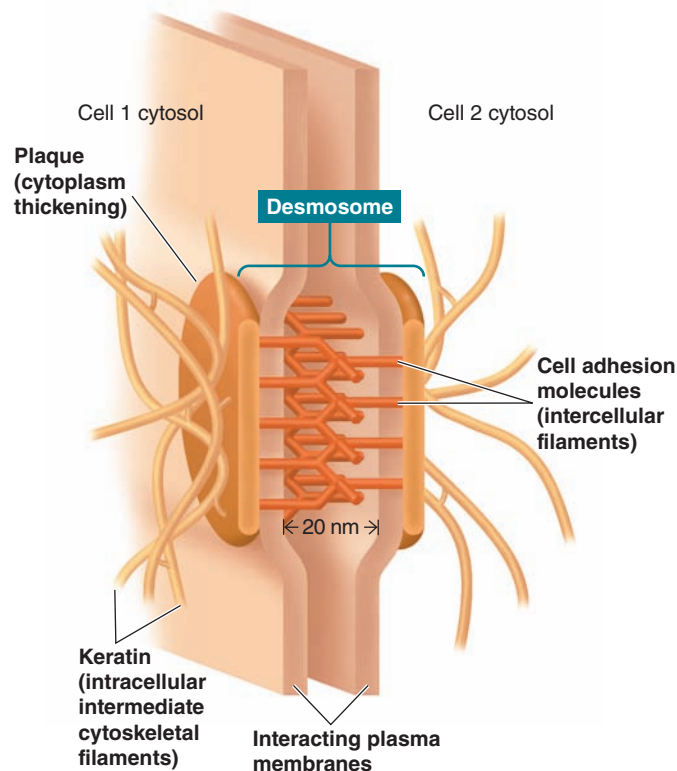
The ECM is secreted by local cells present in the matrix. The relative amount of ECM compared to cells varies greatly among tissues. For example, the ECM is scant in epithelial tissue but is the predominant component of connective tissue. Most of this abundant matrix in connective tissue is secreted by **fibroblasts** ("fiber formers"). The exact composition of the ECM also varies for different tissues, thus providing distinct local environments for the various cell types in the body. In some tissues, the matrix becomes highly specialized to form such structures as cartilage or tendons or, on appropriate calcification, the hardened structures of bones and teeth.

### Some cells are directly linked by specialized cell junctions.

In tissues where the cells lie close to one another, CAMs provide some tissue cohesion as they "Velcro" adjacent cells together. In addition, some cells within given types of tissues are directly linked by one of three types of specialized cell junctions: (1) *desmosomes* (adhering junctions), (2) *tight junctions* (impermeable junctions), or (3) *gap junctions* (communicating junctions).

**DES MOSOMES** Desmosomes act like "spot rivets" that anchor together two adjacent but nontouching cells. A desmosome consists of two components: (1) a pair of dense, buttonlike cytoplasmic thickenings known as *plaques* located on the inner surface of each of the two adjacent cells; and (2) strong filaments that contain a type of CAM, extend across the space between the two cells, and attach to the plaque on both sides (● Figure 3-4). These intercellular filaments bind adjacent plasma membranes together so that they resist being pulled apart. Thus, desmosomes are adhering junctions. They are the strongest cell-to-cell connections and are most abundant in tissues that are subject to considerable stretching, such as those found in the skin, the heart, and the uterus.

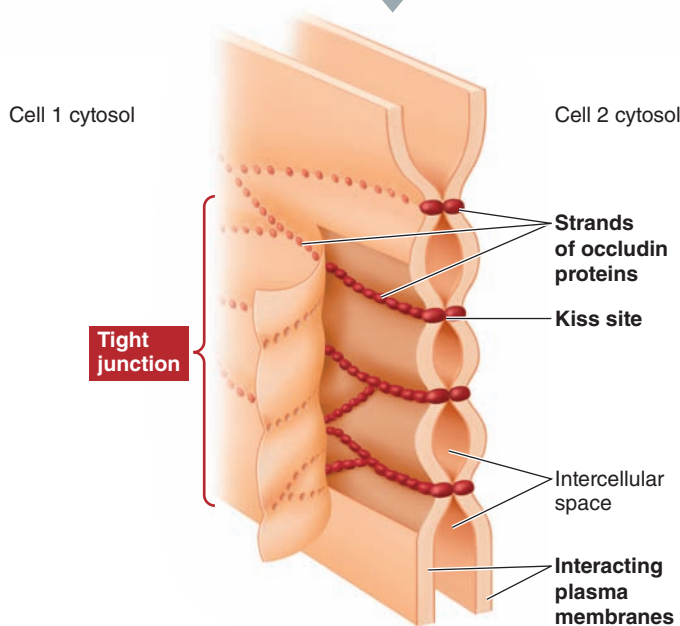
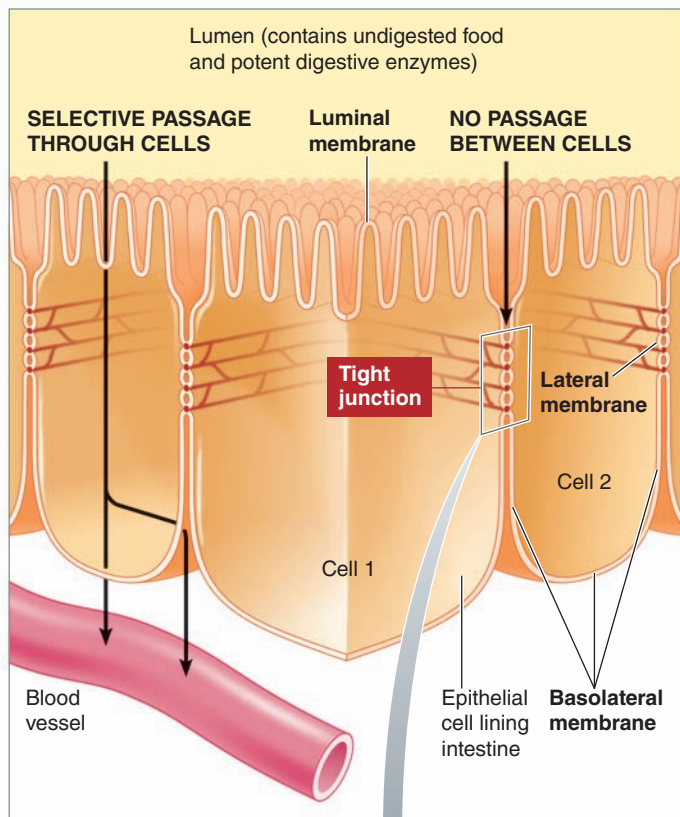
Furthermore, intermediate cytoskeletal filaments, such as tough keratin filaments in the skin (see p. 39), stretch across the interior of these cells and attach to the desmosome plaques located on opposite sides of the cells' interior. This arrangement forms a continuous network of strong fibers throughout the tis-



● **FIGURE 3-4 Desmosome.** Desmosomes are adhering junctions that spot-rivet cells, anchoring them together in tissues subject to considerable stretching.

sue, both through and between cells, much like a continuous line of people firmly holding hands. This interlinking fibrous network reduces the chances of the tissue being torn when stretched.

**TIGHT JUNCTIONS** At **tight junctions**, adjacent cells bind firmly with each other at points of direct contact to seal off the passageway between the two cells. Tight junctions are found primarily in sheets of epithelial tissue, which cover the surface of the body and line its internal cavities. All epithelial sheets are highly selective barriers between two compartments with considerably different chemical compositions. For example, the epithelial sheet lining the digestive tract separates the food and potent digestive juices within the inner cavity (lumen) from the blood vessels on the other side. It is important that only completely digested food particles and not undigested food particles or digestive juices move across the epithelial sheet from the lumen to the blood. Accordingly, the lateral (side) edges of adjacent cells in the epithelial sheet are joined in a tight seal near their luminal border by "kiss" sites, at which strands of proteins known as *occludins* on the outer surfaces of the two interacting plasma membranes fuse directly (● Figure 3-5). These tight junctions are impermeable and thus prevent materials from passing between the cells. Passage across the epithelial barrier, therefore, must take place *through* the cells, not *between* them. This traffic across the cell is regulated by channel and carrier



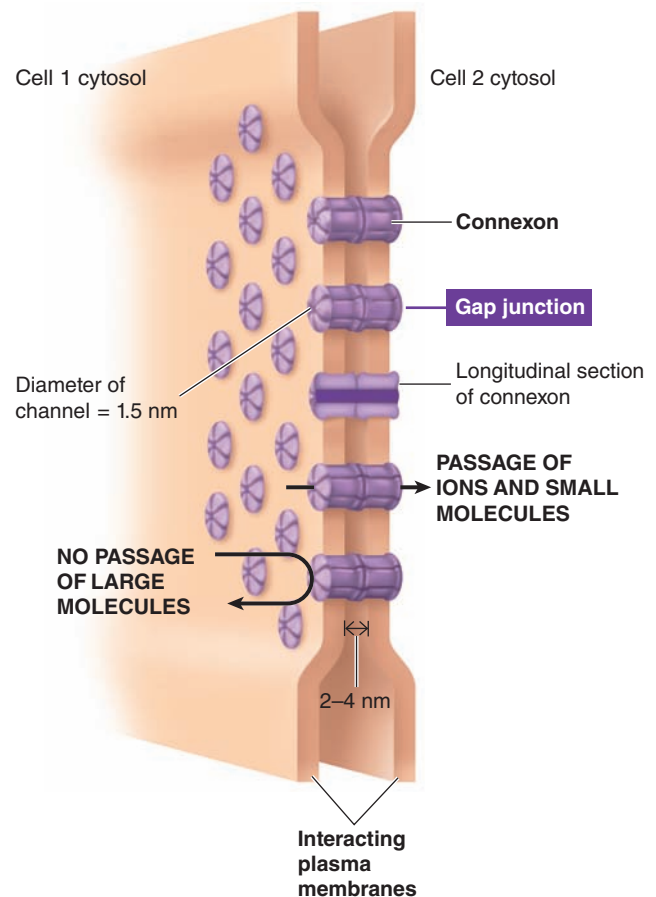
● **FIGURE 3-5 Tight junction.** Tight junctions are impermeable junctions that join the lateral edges of epithelial cells near their luminal borders, thus preventing movement of materials between the cells. Only regulated passage of materials can occur through these cells, which form highly selective barriers that separate two compartments of highly different chemical composition.

proteins. If the cells were not joined by tight junctions, uncontrolled exchange of molecules could take place between the compartments by means of unpoliced traffic through the spaces between adjacent cells. Tight junctions thus prevent undesirable leaks within epithelial sheets.

**GAP JUNCTIONS** At a **gap junction**, as the name implies, a gap exists between adjacent cells, which are linked by small, connecting tunnels formed by connexons. A **connexon** is made up of six protein subunits (called *connexins*) arranged in a hollow tubelike structure that extends through the thickness of the plasma membrane. Two connexons, one from each of the plasma membranes of two adjacent cells, extend outward and join end to end to form a connecting tunnel between the two cells (● Figure 3-6). Gap junctions are communicating junctions. The small diameter of the tunnels permits small, water-soluble particles to pass between the connected cells but precludes passage of large molecules, such as vital intracellular proteins. Ions and small molecules can be directly exchanged between interacting cells through gap junctions without ever entering the ECF.

Gap junctions are especially abundant in cardiac muscle and smooth muscle. In these tissues, movement of ions (charge-carrying particles) through gap junctions transmits electrical activity throughout an entire muscle mass. Because this electrical activity brings about contraction, the presence of gap junctions enables synchronized contraction of a whole muscle mass, such as the pumping chamber of the heart.

Gap junctions are also found in some nonmuscle tissues, where they permit unrestricted passage of small nutrient mol-



● **FIGURE 3-6 Gap junction.** Gap junctions are communicating junctions made up of connexons, which form tunnels that permit movement of charge-carrying ions and small molecules between two adjacent cells.

ecules between cells. For example, glucose, amino acids, and other nutrients pass through gap junctions to a developing egg cell from surrounding cells within the ovary, thus helping the egg stockpile these essential nutrients.

Gap junctions also are avenues for the direct transfer of small signaling molecules from one cell to the next. Such transfer permits cells connected by gap junctions to communicate with each other directly. This communication provides one mechanism by which cooperative cell activity is coordinated. In the next chapter, we examine other means by which cells “talk to each other.”

We now turn to the topic of membrane transport, focusing on how the plasma membrane selectively controls what enters and exits the cell.

## Overview of Membrane Transport

Anything that passes between a cell and the surrounding ECF must be able to penetrate the plasma membrane. If a substance can cross the membrane, the membrane is **permeable** to that substance; if a substance cannot pass, the membrane is **impermeable** to it. The plasma membrane is **selectively permeable**: It permits some particles to pass through while excluding others.

### Lipid-soluble substances of any size and small water-soluble substances can permeate the plasma membrane without assistance.

Two properties of particles influence whether they can permeate the plasma membrane without assistance: (1) the relative solubility of the particle in lipid and (2) the size of the particle. Highly lipid-soluble particles can dissolve in the lipid bilayer and pass through the membrane. Uncharged or nonpolar molecules, such as oxygen ( $O_2$ ), carbon dioxide ( $CO_2$ ), and fatty acids, are highly lipid soluble and readily permeate the membrane. Charged particles (ions such as  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$ ) and polar molecules (such as glucose and proteins) have low lipid solubility but are very soluble in water. The lipid bilayer is an impermeable barrier to particles poorly soluble in lipid. For water-soluble (and thus lipid-insoluble) ions less than 0.8 nm in diameter, the protein channels are an alternative route for passage across the membrane. Only ions for which specific channels are available and open can permeate the membrane.

Particles that have low lipid solubility and are too large for channels cannot permeate the membrane on their own. Yet some of these particles, for example, glucose, must cross the membrane for the cell to survive and function. (Most cells use glucose as their fuel of choice to produce adenosine triphosphate, or ATP.) Cells have several means of assisted transport to move particles across the membrane that must enter or leave the cell but cannot do so unaided, as you will learn shortly.

### Active forces use energy to move particles across the membrane but passive forces do not.

Even if a particle can permeate the membrane because of its lipid solubility or its ability to fit through a channel, some force is needed to move it across the membrane. Two general types of

forces accomplish transport of substances across the membrane: (1) **passive forces**, which do not require the cell to expend energy to produce movement, and (2) **active forces**, which do require the cell to expend energy (ATP) in transporting a substance across the membrane.

We now examine the various methods of membrane transport, indicating whether each is an unassisted or assisted means of transport and whether each is a passive- or active-transport mechanism.

## Unassisted Membrane Transport

Particles that can penetrate the plasma membrane on their own are passively driven across the membrane by one or both of two forces: diffusion down a concentration gradient or movement along an electrical gradient. We first examine diffusion down a concentration gradient.

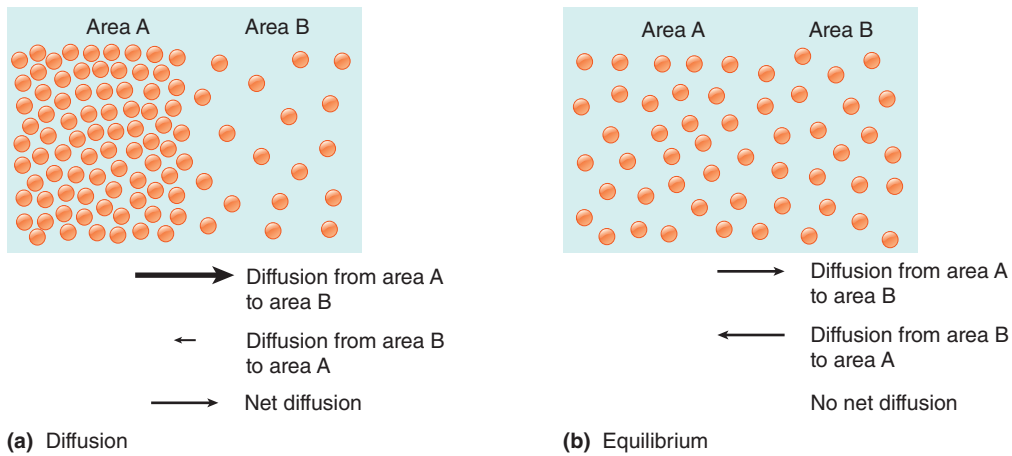
### Particles that can permeate the membrane diffuse passively down their concentration gradient.

All molecules and ions are in continuous random motion at temperatures above absolute zero as a result of thermal (heat) energy. This motion is most evident in liquids and gases, where the individual molecules (or ions) have more room to move before colliding with another molecule. Each molecule moves separately and randomly in any direction. As a consequence of this haphazard movement, the molecules often collide, bouncing off one another in different directions like billiard balls striking.

**SIMPLE DIFFUSION** **Solutions** are homogeneous mixtures containing a relatively large amount of one substance called the **solvent** (the dissolving medium, which in the body is water) and smaller amounts of one or more dissolved substances called **solutes**. The **concentration** of a solution refers to the amount of solute dissolved in a specific amount of solution. The greater the concentration of solute molecules (or ions), the greater the likelihood of collisions. Consequently, molecules within a particular space tend to become evenly distributed over time. Such uniform spreading out of molecules due to their random intermingling is known as **simple diffusion**, or **diffusion** for short (*diffusere* means “to spread out”).

To illustrate simple diffusion, in ● Figure 3-7a, the concentration of the solute in a solution differs between area A and area B. Such a difference in concentration between two adjacent areas is called a **concentration gradient** (or **chemical gradient**). Random molecular collisions will occur more frequently in area A because of its greater concentration of solute molecules. For this reason, more molecules will bounce from area A into area B than in the opposite direction. In both areas, individual molecules will move randomly and in all directions, but the net movement of molecules by diffusion will be from the area of higher concentration to the area of lower concentration.

**NET DIFFUSION** The term **net diffusion** refers to the difference between two opposing movements. If 10 molecules move from area A to area B while 2 molecules simultaneously move from B



**KEY**

● = Solute molecule

Net diffusion = Diffusion from area A to area B minus diffusion from area B to area A

→ : Differences in arrow length, thickness, and direction represent the relative magnitude of molecular movement in a given direction

● **FIGURE 3-7 Diffusion.** (a) Diffusion down a concentration gradient. (b) No concentration gradient and no net diffusion.

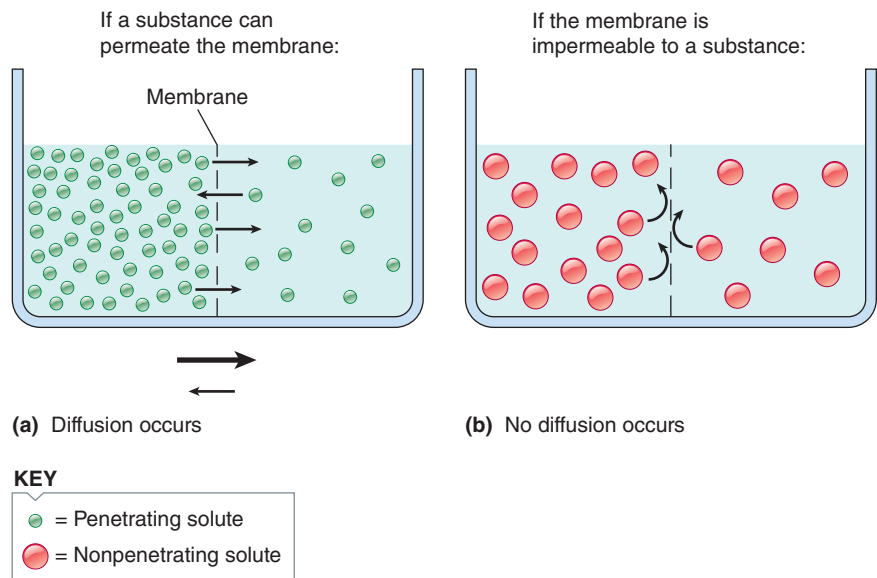
to A, the net diffusion is 8 molecules moving from A to B. Molecules will spread in this way until the substance is uniformly distributed between the two areas and a concentration gradient no longer exists (● Figure 3-7b). At this point, even though movement is still taking place, no net diffusion is occurring because the opposing movements exactly counterbalance each other; that is, they are in **equilibrium**. Movement of molecules from area A to area B will be exactly matched by movement of molecules from B to A.

What happens if a plasma membrane separates different concentrations of a substance? If the substance can permeate the membrane, net diffusion of the substance will occur through the membrane down its concentration gradient from the area of high concentration to the area of low concentration until the concentration gradient is abolished, unless there's some opposing force (● Figure 3-8a). No energy is required for this movement, so it is a passive means of membrane transport. The process of diffusion is crucial to the survival of every cell and plays an important role in many specialized homeostatic activities. As an example, O<sub>2</sub> is transferred across the lung membrane by diffusion. The blood carried to the lungs is low in O<sub>2</sub>, having given up O<sub>2</sub> to the body tissues for cell metabolism. The air in the lungs, in contrast, is high in O<sub>2</sub> because it is continuously exchanged with fresh air during breathing. Because of this concentration gradient, net diffusion of O<sub>2</sub> occurs from the lungs into the blood as blood flows through the lungs. Thus, as blood leaves the lungs for delivery to the tissues, it is high in O<sub>2</sub>.

If the membrane is impermeable to the substance, no diffusion can take place across the membrane, even though a concentration gradient may exist (● Figure 3-8b). For example, because the plasma membrane is impermeable to the vital intracellular proteins, they are unable to escape from the cell, even though they are in greater concentration in the ICF than in the ECF.

**FICK'S LAW OF DIFFUSION** Several factors, in addition to the concentration gradient, influence the rate of net diffusion across a membrane. The effects of these factors collectively make up Fick's law of diffusion (▲ Table 3-1). Note that the larger the surface area available, the greater the rate of diffusion it can accommodate. Various

strategies are used throughout the body for increasing the membrane surface area across which diffusion and other types of transport take place. For example, absorption of nutrients in the small intestine is enhanced by the presence of microvilli, which greatly increase the available absorptive surface in contact with the nutrient-rich contents of the small intestine lumen (see p. 38). Conversely, abnormal loss of membrane surface area decreases the rate of net diffusion. For example, in *emphysema*, O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> exchange between air and blood in the lungs is reduced because the walls of the air sacs break down, resulting in less surface area available for diffusion of these gases.



● **FIGURE 3-8 Diffusion through a membrane.** (a) Net diffusion of a penetrating solute across the membrane down a concentration gradient. (b) No diffusion of a nonpenetrating solute through the membrane despite the presence of a concentration gradient.

### ▲ Table 3-1 Factors Influencing the Rate of Net Diffusion of a Substance across a Membrane (Fick's Law of Diffusion)

Factor	Effect on Rate of Net Diffusion
↑ Concentration gradient of substance	↑
↑ Surface area of membrane	↑
↑ Lipid solubility	↑
↑ Molecular weight of substance	↓
↑ Distance (thickness)	↓

Also note that the greater the distance, the slower the rate of diffusion. Accordingly, membranes across which diffusing particles must travel are normally relatively thin, such as the membranes separating air and blood in the lungs. Thickening of this air–blood interface (as in *pneumonia*, for example) slows exchange of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$ . Furthermore, diffusion is efficient only for short distances between cells and their surroundings. It becomes an inappropriately slow process for distances of more than a few millimeters. To illustrate, it would take months or even years for  $O_2$  to diffuse from the surface of the body to the cells in the interior. Instead, the circulatory system provides a network of tiny vessels that deliver and pick up materials at every “block” of a few cells, with diffusion accomplishing short local exchanges between blood and surrounding cells.

#### Ions that can permeate the membrane also move passively along their electrical gradient.

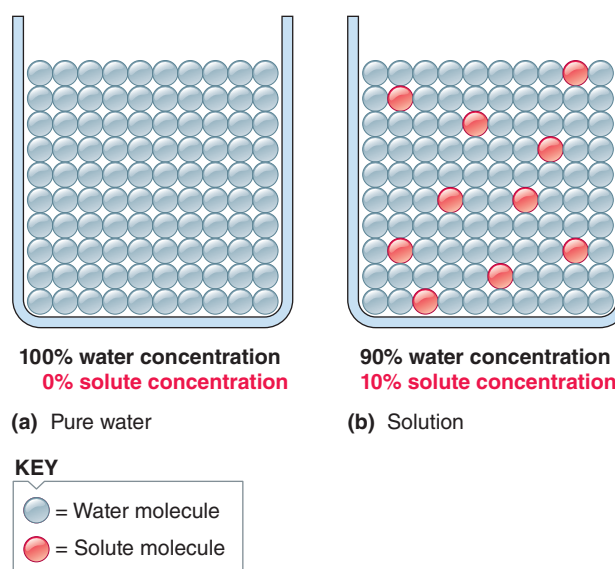
In addition to their concentration gradient, movement of ions (electrically charged particles that have either lost or gained an electron; see p. A-5) is affected by their electrical charge. Ions with like charges (those with the same kind of charge) repel each other, and ions with opposite charges attract each other. If a relative difference in charge exists between two adjacent areas, positively charged ions (*cations*) tend to move toward the more negatively charged area and negatively charged ions (*anions*) tend to move toward the more positively charged area. A difference in charge between two adjacent areas thus produces an **electrical gradient** that promotes movement of ions toward the area of opposite charge. Because a cell does not have to expend energy for ions to move into or out of it along an electrical gradient, this method of membrane transport is passive. When an electrical gradient exists between the ICF and the ECF, only ions that can permeate the plasma membrane can move along this gradient.

Both an electrical and a concentration (chemical) gradient may be acting on a particular ion at the same time. The net effect of simultaneous electrical and concentration gradients on this ion is called an **electrochemical gradient**. Later in this chapter, you will learn how electrochemical gradients contribute to the electrical properties of the plasma membrane.

#### Osmosis is the net diffusion of water down its own concentration gradient.

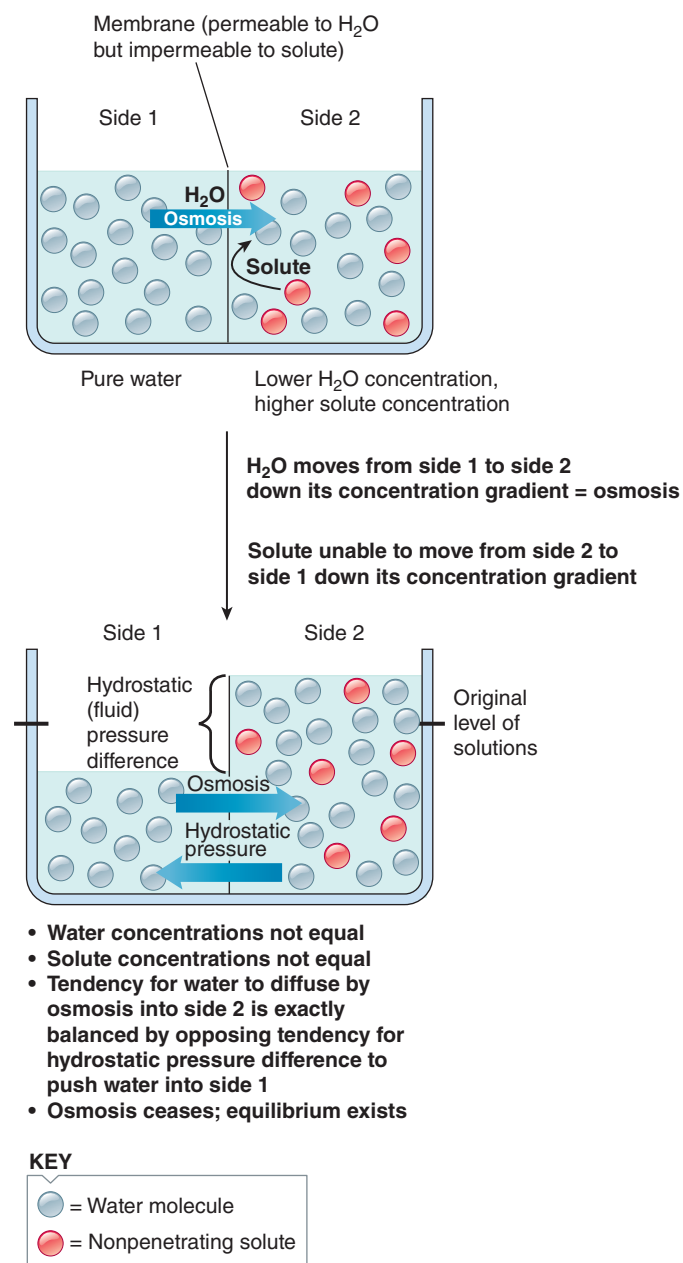
Water molecules can readily permeate the plasma membrane. Even though water molecules are strongly polar, they are small enough to slip through momentary spaces created between the phospholipid molecules' tails as they sway and move within the lipid bilayer. However, this type of water movement across the membrane is relatively slow. In many cell types, membrane proteins form **aquaporins**, which are channels specific for the passage of water (*aqua* means “water”). This avenue greatly increases membrane permeability to water. Different cell types vary in their density of aquaporins and thus in their water permeability. About a billion water molecules can pass in single file through an aquaporin channel in a second. The driving force for net movement of water across the membrane is the same as for any other diffusing molecule, namely, its concentration gradient. The term *concentration* usually refers to the density of the solute in a given volume of water. It is important to recognize, however, that adding a solute to pure water in essence decreases the water concentration. In general, one molecule of a solute displaces one molecule of water.

Compare the water and solute concentrations in the two containers in ● Figure 3-9. The container in Figure 3-9a is full of pure water, so the water concentration is 100% and the solute concentration is 0%. In Figure 3-9b, solute has replaced 10% of the water molecules. The water concentration is now 90%, and the solute concentration is 10%—a lower water concentration and a higher solute concentration than in Figure 3-9a. Note that as the solute concentration increases, the water concentration decreases correspondingly. We now examine what happens if pure water is separated from a solution by a membrane permeable to water but not to the solute.



● FIGURE 3-9 Relationship between solute and water concentration in a solution.

**MOVEMENT OF WATER WHEN A SELECTIVELY PERMEABLE MEMBRANE SEPARATES PURE WATER FROM A SOLUTION OF A NON-PENETRATING SOLUTE** If as in ● Figure 3-10 pure water (side 1) and a solution containing a nonpenetrating solute (side 2) are separated by a selectively permeable membrane that permits passage of water but not of solute, water will move passively down its own concentration gradient from the area of higher water concentration (lower solute concentration) to the area of lower water concentration (higher solute concentration). This net diffusion of water down its concentration gradient through a selectively permeable membrane is known as **osmosis**. Because solutions are always referred to in terms of concentration of solute, *water moves by osmosis to the area of higher solute concentration*. Despite the impression that the solutes are “pull-



● **FIGURE 3-10** Osmosis when pure water is separated from a solution containing a nonpenetrating solute.

ing,” or attracting, water, osmosis is nothing more than diffusion of water down its own concentration gradient across the membrane.

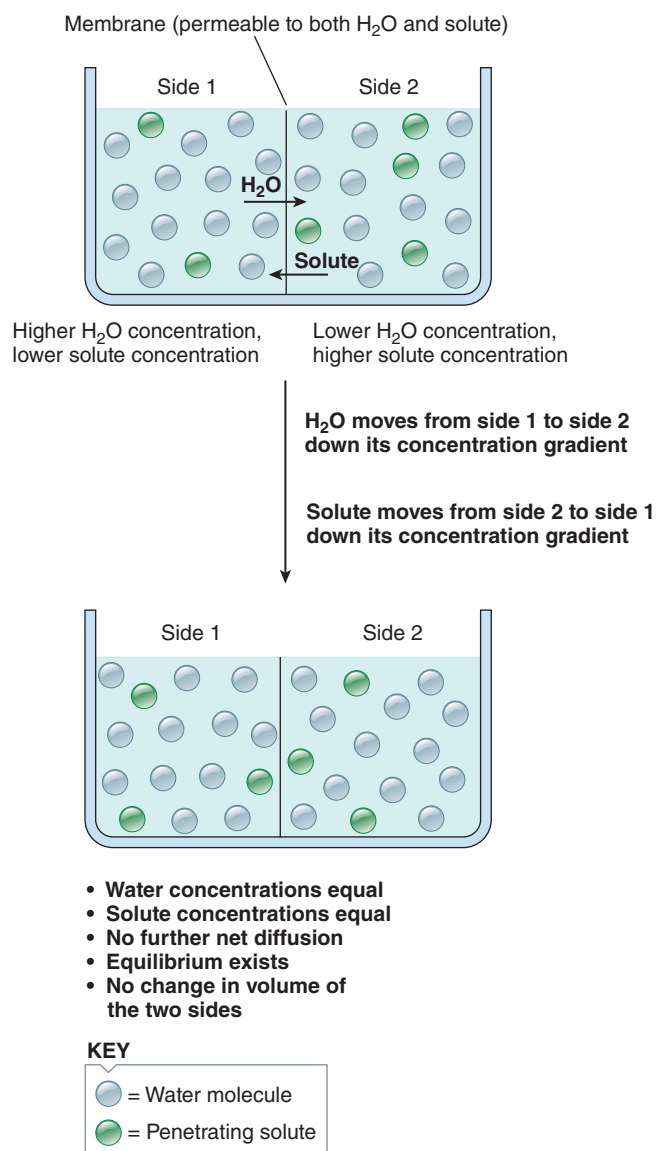
Osmosis occurs from side 1 to side 2, but the concentrations between the two compartments can never become equal. No matter how dilute side 2 becomes because of water diffusing into it, it can never become pure water, nor can side 1 ever acquire any solute. Therefore, does net diffusion of water (osmosis) continue until all the water has left side 1? No. As the volume expands in side 2, a difference in hydrostatic pressure between the two sides is created, and it opposes osmosis. **Hydrostatic (fluid) pressure** is the pressure exerted by a standing, or stationary, fluid on an object—in this case, the membrane (*hydro* means “fluid”; *static* means “standing”). The hydrostatic pressure exerted by the larger volume of fluid on side 2 is greater than the hydrostatic pressure exerted on side 1. This difference in hydrostatic pressure tends to push fluid from side 2 to side 1.

The **osmotic pressure** of a solution (a “pulling” pressure) is a measure of the tendency for osmotic flow of water into that solution because of its relative concentration of nonpenetrating solutes and water. Net movement of water by osmosis continues until the opposing hydrostatic pressure (a “pushing” pressure) exactly counterbalances the osmotic pressure. The magnitude of the osmotic pressure is equal to the magnitude of the opposing hydrostatic pressure necessary to completely stop osmosis. The greater the concentration of nonpenetrating solute → the lower the concentration of water → the greater the drive for water to move by osmosis from pure water into the solution → the greater the opposing pressure required to stop the osmotic flow → the greater the osmotic pressure of the solution. Therefore, a solution with a high concentration of nonpenetrating solute exerts greater osmotic pressure than a solution with a lower concentration of nonpenetrating solute does.

Osmotic pressure is an indirect measure of solute concentration, expressed in units of pressure. A more direct means of expressing solute concentration is the **osmolarity** of a solution, which is a measure of its total solute concentration given in terms of the *number* of particles (molecules or ions). Osmolarity is expressed in *osmoles per liter* (or *Osm*), the number of moles of solute particles in 1 L of solution (see p. A-9). The osmolarity of body fluids is typically expressed in *milliosmoles per liter* (*mOsm*; 1/1000 of an osmole) because the solutes in body fluids are too dilute to conveniently use the osmole unit. Because osmolarity depends on the number, not the nature, of particles, any mixture of particles can contribute to the osmolarity of a solution. The normal osmolarity of body fluids is 300 mOsm.

Thus far in our discussion of osmosis, we have considered movement of water when pure water is separated from a solution by a membrane permeable to water but not to nonpenetrating solutes. However, in the body, the plasma membrane separates the ICF and the ECF, and both of these contain solutes, some that can and others that cannot penetrate the membrane. Let us compare the results of water movement when solutions of differing osmolarities are separated by a selectively permeable membrane that permits movement of water and only some solutes.

**MOVEMENT OF WATER AND SOLUTE WHEN A MEMBRANE SEPARATES UNEQUAL SOLUTIONS OF A PENETRATING SOLUTE** Assume that solutions of *unequal* concentration of *penetrating* solute (differing osmolarities) are separated by a membrane that is permeable to both water and solute (● Figure 3-11). In this situation, the solute moves down its own concentration gradient in the opposite direction of the net water movement. The movement continues until both solute and water are evenly distributed across the membrane. With all concentration gradients gone, net movement ceases. The final volume of each side when no further net movement occurs is the same as at the onset. Water and solute molecules merely exchange places between the two sides until their distributions are equalized; that is, an equal number of water molecules move from side 1 to side 2 as solute molecules move from side 2 to side 1. Therefore, solutes that can penetrate the plasma membrane do not contribute to osmotic differences between the ICF and the ECF and do not affect cell volume.



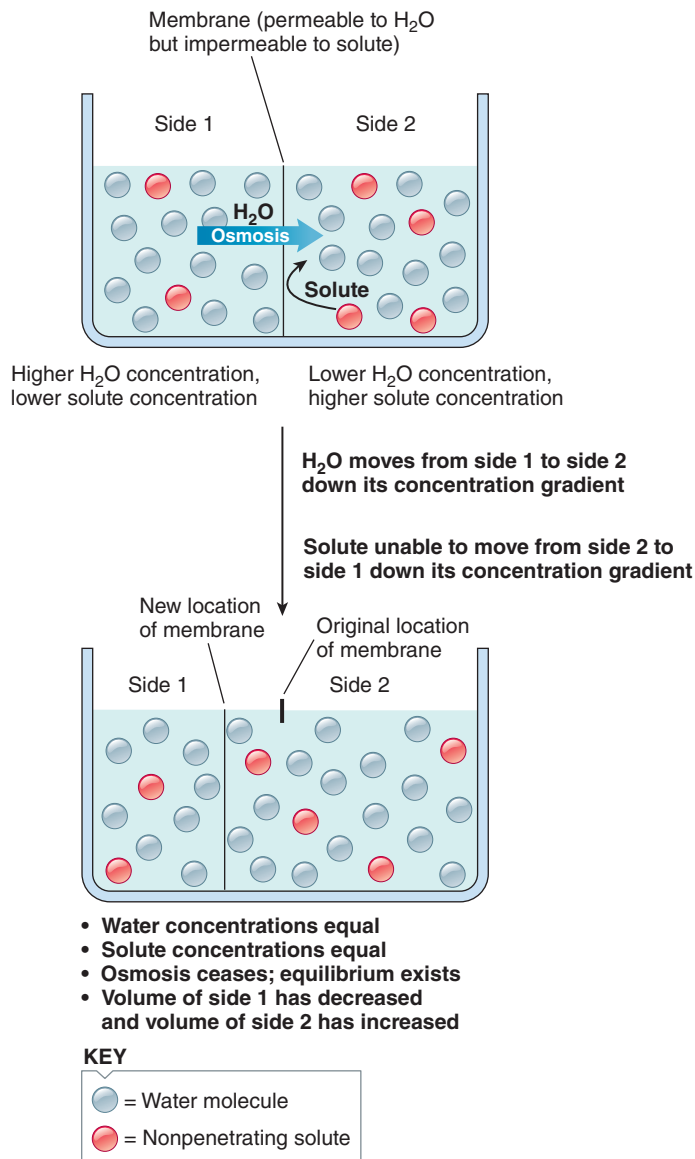
● **FIGURE 3-11** Movement of water and a penetrating solute unequally distributed across a membrane.

**MOVEMENT OF WATER WHEN A MEMBRANE SEPARATES EQUAL AND UNEQUAL SOLUTIONS OF A NONPENETRATING SOLUTE** If solutions of *equal* concentration of *nonpenetrating* solute (the same osmolarities) are separated by a membrane that is permeable to water but impermeable to the solute, no concentration differences will exist and thus no net movement of water will occur across the membrane. Of course, the solute will not move because the membrane is impermeable to it and no concentration gradient exists for it. This is the usual situation in body fluids. Body cells normally do not experience any net gain (swelling) or loss (shrinking) of volume, because the concentration of nonpenetrating solutes in the ECF is normally carefully regulated (primarily by the kidneys) so that the ECF osmolarity is the same as the osmolarity within the cells. Intracellular osmolarity is normally 300 mOsm, and all intracellular solutes are assumed to be nonpenetrating.

Now assume that solutions of *unequal* concentration of *nonpenetrating* solute (differing osmolarities) are separated by a membrane that is permeable to water but impermeable to the solute (● Figure 3-12). Osmotic movement of water across the membrane is driven by the difference in osmotic pressure of the two solutions. At first, the concentration gradients are identical to those in ● Figure 3-11. Net diffusion of water takes place from side 1 to side 2, but the solute cannot cross the membrane down its concentration gradient. As a result of water movement alone, the volume of side 2 increases while the volume of side 1 correspondingly decreases. Loss of water from side 1 increases the solute concentration on side 1, whereas addition of water to side 2 reduces the solute concentration on that side. If the membrane is free to move so that side 2 can expand without an opposing hydrostatic pressure developing, eventually the concentrations of water and solute on the two sides of the membrane become equal and net diffusion of water ceases. This situation is similar to what happens across plasma membranes in the body. Within the slight range of changes in ECF osmolarity that occur physiologically, if water moves by osmosis into the cells, their plasma membranes normally accommodate the increase in cell volume with no significant change in hydrostatic pressure inside the cells. Likewise, in the reverse situation, if water moves by osmosis out of the cells, the ECF compartment expands without a change in its hydrostatic pressure. Therefore, osmosis is the major force responsible for the net movement of water into or out of cells, without having to take hydrostatic pressure into consideration. At the endpoint, when osmosis ceases, the volume has increased on the side that originally had the higher solute concentration and the volume has decreased on the side with the lower solute concentration. Therefore, osmotic movement of water across the plasma membrane always results in a change in cell volume, and cells, especially brain cells, do not function properly when they swell or shrink.

**Tonicity refers to the effect the concentration of nonpenetrating solutes in a solution has on cell volume.**

The **tonicity** of a solution is the effect the solution has on cell volume—whether the cell remains the same size, swells, or shrinks—when the solution surrounds the cell. The tonicity of



● **FIGURE 3-12** Osmosis in the presence of an unequally distributed nonpenetrating solute.

a solution has no units and is a reflection of its concentration of nonpenetrating solutes relative to the cell's concentration of nonpenetrating solutes. (By contrast, the osmolarity of a solution is a measure of its total concentration of both penetrating and nonpenetrating solutes expressed in units of osmoles per liter.) The easiest way to demonstrate this phenomenon is to place red blood cells in solutions with varying concentrations of a nonpenetrating solute (● Figure 3-13).

Normally, the plasma in which red blood cells are suspended has the same osmotic activity as the fluid inside these cells, so the cells maintain a constant volume. An **isotonic solution** (*iso* means “equal”) has the same concentration of nonpenetrating solutes as normal body cells do. When a cell is bathed in an isotonic solution, no water enters or leaves the cell by osmosis, so cell volume remains constant. For this reason, the ECF is normally maintained isotonic so that no net diffusion of water occurs across the plasma membranes of body cells.

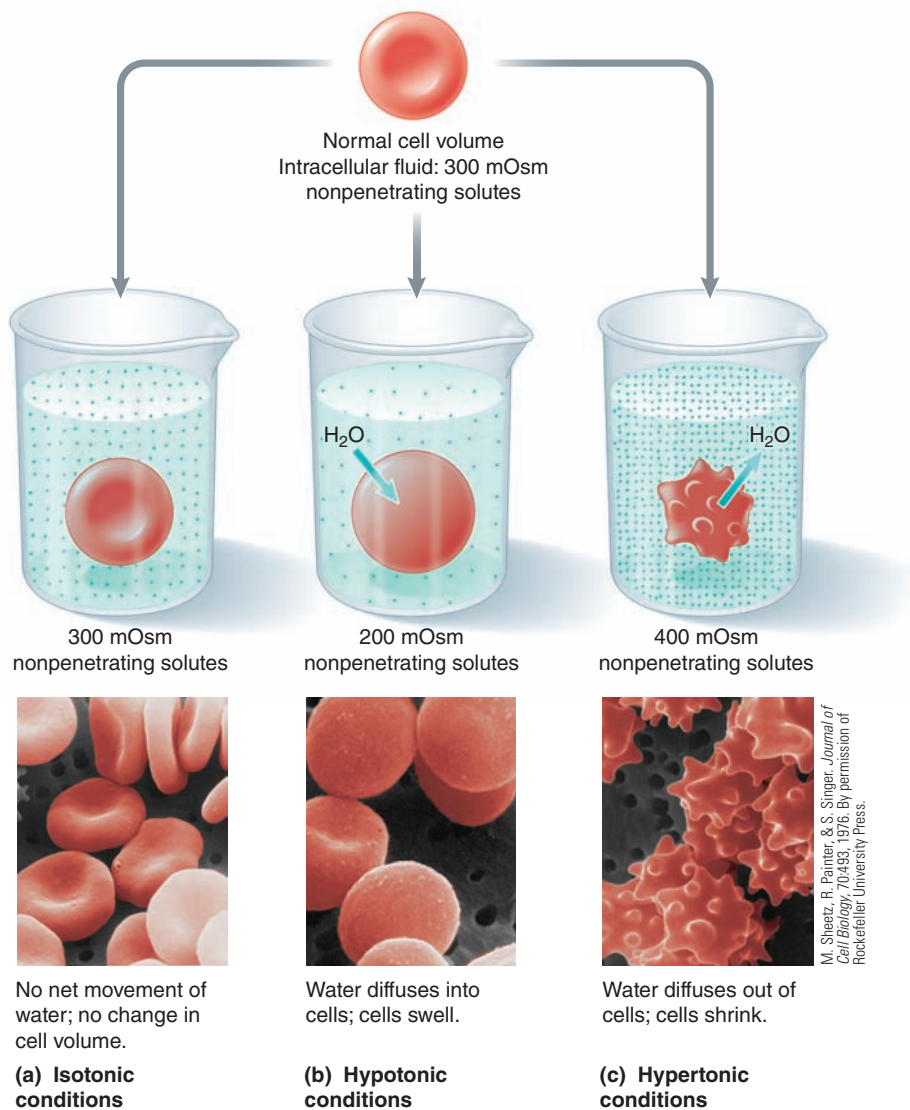
If red blood cells are placed in a dilute or **hypotonic solution** (*hypo* means “below”), a solution with a below-normal concentration of nonpenetrating solutes (and therefore a higher concentration of water), water enters the cells by osmosis. Net gain of water by the cells causes them to swell, perhaps to the point of rupturing or *lysing*. If, in contrast, red blood cells are placed in a concentrated or **hypertonic solution** (*hyper* means “above”), a solution with an above-normal concentration of nonpenetrating solutes (and therefore a lower concentration of water), the cells shrink as they lose water by osmosis. When a red blood cell decreases in volume, its surface area does not decrease correspondingly, so the cell assumes a *crenated*, or spiky, shape (● Figure 3-13c). Because cells change volume when surrounded by fluid that is not isotonic, it is crucial that the concentration of nonpenetrating solutes in the ECF quickly be restored to normal should the ECF become hypotonic (as with ingesting too much water) or hypertonic (as with losing too much water through severe diarrhea). (See pp. 421–426 for further details about the important homeostatic mechanisms that maintain the normal concentration of nonpenetrating solutes in the ECF.) For the same reason, fluids injected intravenously should be isotonic to prevent unwanted movement of water into or out of the cells. For example, isotonic saline (0.9% NaCl solution) is used as a vehicle for delivering drugs intravenously or for expanding plasma volume without impacting the cells.

## Assisted Membrane Transport

All the kinds of transport we have discussed thus far—diffusion down concentration gradients, movement along electrical gradients, and osmosis—produce net movement of solutes capable of permeating the plasma membrane because of their lipid solubility (nonpolar molecules of any size) or their ability to fit through channels (selected ions and water). Poorly lipid-soluble polar molecules that are too big for channels, such as proteins, glucose, and amino acids, cannot cross the plasma membrane on their own no matter what forces are acting on them. This impermeability ensures that large, polar intracellular proteins stay in the cell where they belong and can carry out their life-sustaining functions—for example, serving as metabolic enzymes.

However, because poorly lipid-soluble molecules cannot cross the plasma membrane on their own, the cell must provide mechanisms for deliberately transporting these types of molecules into or out of the cell as needed. For example, the cell must usher in essential nutrients, such as glucose for energy and amino acids for the synthesis of proteins, and transport out metabolic wastes and secretory products, such as water-soluble protein hormones. Furthermore, passive diffusion alone cannot always account for the movement of ions. Some ions move through the membrane passively in one direction and actively in the other direction. Cells use two different mechanisms to accomplish these selective transport processes: *carrier-mediated transport* for transfer of small water-soluble substances across the membrane and *vesicular transport* for movement of large molecules and multimolecular particles between the ECF and the ICF. We examine each of these methods of assisted membrane transport in turn.





● **FIGURE 3-13** Tonicity and osmotic water movement.

### Carrier-mediated transport is accomplished by a membrane carrier changing its shape.

A carrier protein spans the thickness of the plasma membrane and can change its conformation (shape) so that specific binding sites within the carrier are alternately exposed to the ECF and the ICF. ● Figure 3-14 shows how this **carrier-mediated transport** works. Step 1 shows the carrier open to the ECF. The molecule to be transported attaches to a carrier's binding site on one side of the membrane—in this case, on the ECF side (step 2). Then the carrier changes shape, exposing the same site to the other side of the membrane (step 3). Having been moved in this way from one side of the membrane to the other, the bound molecule detaches from the carrier (step 4). Next, the carrier reverts to its original shape (back to step 1).

Both channels and carriers are proteins that span the plasma membrane and serve as selective avenues for movement of water-soluble substances across the membrane, but there are notable differences between them: (1) Only ions fit through the narrow channels, whereas small polar molecules such as glucose are transported across the membrane by carriers.

(2) Channels can be open or closed, but carriers are always “open for business” (although the number and kinds of carriers in the plasma membrane can be regulated). (3) When open for traffic, channels are open at both sides of the membrane at the same time, permitting continuous, rapid movement of ions between the ECF and the ICF through these nonstop passageways. By contrast, carriers are never open to both the ECF and the ICF simultaneously. They must change shape to alternately pick up passenger molecules on one side and drop them off on the other side, a time-consuming process. Whereas a carrier may move up to 5000 particles per second across the membrane, 5 million ions may pass through an open channel in 1 second.

Carrier-mediated transport systems display three important characteristics that determine the kind and amount of material that can be transferred across the membrane: *specificity*, *saturation*, and *competition*.

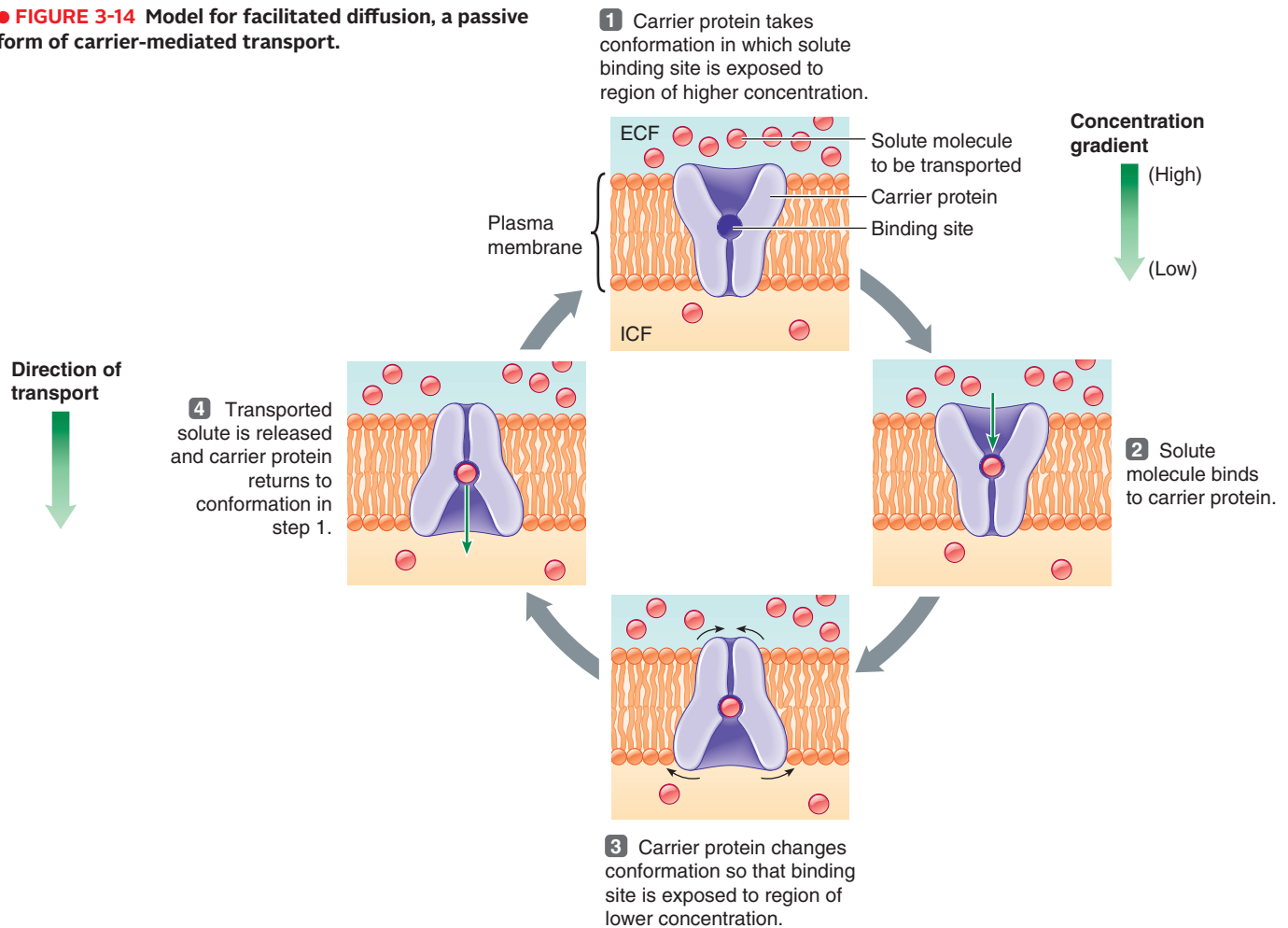
**1. Specificity.** Each carrier protein is specialized to transport a specific substance or, at most, a few closely related chemical compounds. For example, amino acids cannot bind to glucose carriers,

although several similar amino acids may be able to use the same carrier. Cells vary in the types of carriers they have, thus permitting transport selectivity among cells.

**2. Saturation.** A limited number of carrier binding sites are available within a particular plasma membrane for a specific substance. Therefore, the amount of a substance carriers can transport across the membrane in a given time is limited. This limit is known as the **transport maximum** ( $T_m$ ). Until the  $T_m$  is reached, the number of carrier binding sites occupied by a substance and, accordingly, the substance's rate of transport across the membrane are directly related to its concentration. The more of a substance available for transport, the more transported. When the  $T_m$  is reached, the carriers are saturated (all binding sites are occupied) and the rate of the substance's transport across the membrane is maximal. Further increases in the substance's concentration are no longer accompanied by corresponding increases in the rate of transport (● Figure 3-15).

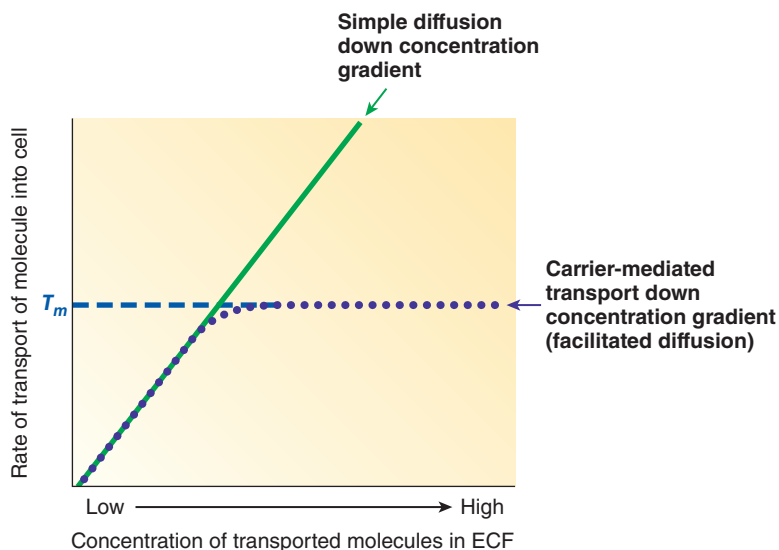
As an analogy, consider a ferry boat that can carry at most 100 people across a river during one trip in an hour. If 25 people are on hand to board the ferry, 25 will be transported

● **FIGURE 3-14** Model for facilitated diffusion, a passive form of carrier-mediated transport.



that hour. Doubling the number of people on hand to 50 will double the rate of transport to 50 people that hour. Such a direct relationship will exist between the number of people waiting to board (the concentration) and the rate of transport until the ferry is fully occupied (its  $T_m$  is reached). Even if 150 people are waiting to board, only 100 can be transported per hour.

Saturation of carriers is a critical rate-limiting factor in the transport of selected substances across the kidney membranes during urine formation and across the intestinal membranes during absorption of digested foods. Furthermore, it is sometimes possible to regulate the rate of carrier-mediated transport by varying the affinity (attraction) of the binding site for its passenger or by varying the number of binding sites. For example,



● **FIGURE 3-15** Comparison of carrier-mediated transport and simple diffusion down a concentration gradient. With simple diffusion of a molecule down its concentration gradient, the rate of transport of the molecule into the cell is directly proportional to the extracellular concentration of the molecule. With carrier-mediated transport of a molecule down its concentration gradient, the rate of transport of the molecule into the cell is directly proportional to the extracellular concentration of the molecule until the carrier is saturated, at which time the rate of transport reaches the transport maximum ( $T_m$ ). After  $T_m$  is reached, the rate of transport levels off despite further increases in the ECF concentration of the molecule.

the hormone insulin greatly increases the carrier-mediated transport of glucose into most cells of the body by promoting an increase in the number of glucose carriers in the cell's plasma membrane. Deficient insulin action (*diabetes mellitus*) drastically impairs the body's ability to take up and use glucose as the primary energy source.

**3. Competition.** Several closely related compounds may compete for a ride across the membrane on the same carrier. If a given binding site can be occupied by more than one type of molecule, the rate of transport of each substance is less when both molecules are present than when either is present by itself. To illustrate, assume the ferry has 100 seats (binding sites) that can be occupied by either men or women. If only men are waiting to board, up to 100 men can be transported during each trip; the same holds true if only women are waiting to board. If both men and women are waiting to board, however, they will compete for the available seats. Fifty of each might make the trip, although the total number of people transported will still be the same, 100 people. In other words, when a carrier can transport two closely related substances, such as the amino acids glycine and alanine, the presence of both diminishes the rate of transfer for either.

### Facilitated diffusion is passive carrier-mediated transport.

Carrier-mediated transport takes two forms, depending on whether energy must be supplied to complete the process: facilitated diffusion (not requiring energy) and active transport (requiring energy). **Facilitated diffusion** uses a carrier to facilitate (assist) the transfer of a particular substance across the membrane “downhill” from high to low concentration. This process is passive and does not require energy because movement occurs naturally down a concentration gradient. **Active transport**, however, requires the carrier to expend energy to transfer its passenger “uphill” against a concentration gradient, from an area of lower concentration to an area of higher concentration. An analogous situation is a car on a hill. To move the car downhill requires no energy; it will coast from the top down. Driving the car uphill, however, requires the use of energy (generated by the burning of gasoline).

The most notable example of facilitated diffusion is the transport of glucose into cells. Glucose is in higher concentration in the blood than in the tissues. Fresh supplies of this nutrient are regularly added to the blood by eating and by using reserve energy stores in the body. Simultaneously, the cells metabolize glucose almost as rapidly as it enters from the blood. As a result, a continuous gradient exists for net diffusion of glucose into the cells. However, glucose cannot cross plasma membranes on its own because it is not lipid soluble and is too large to fit through a channel. Without glucose carrier molecules (called *glucose transporters*, or *GLUTs*; see p. 530) to facilitate membrane transport of glucose, cells would be deprived of their preferred source of fuel.

The binding sites on facilitated diffusion carriers can bind with their passenger molecules when exposed on either side of the membrane. As a result of thermal energy, these carriers undergo spontaneous changes in shape, alternately exposing

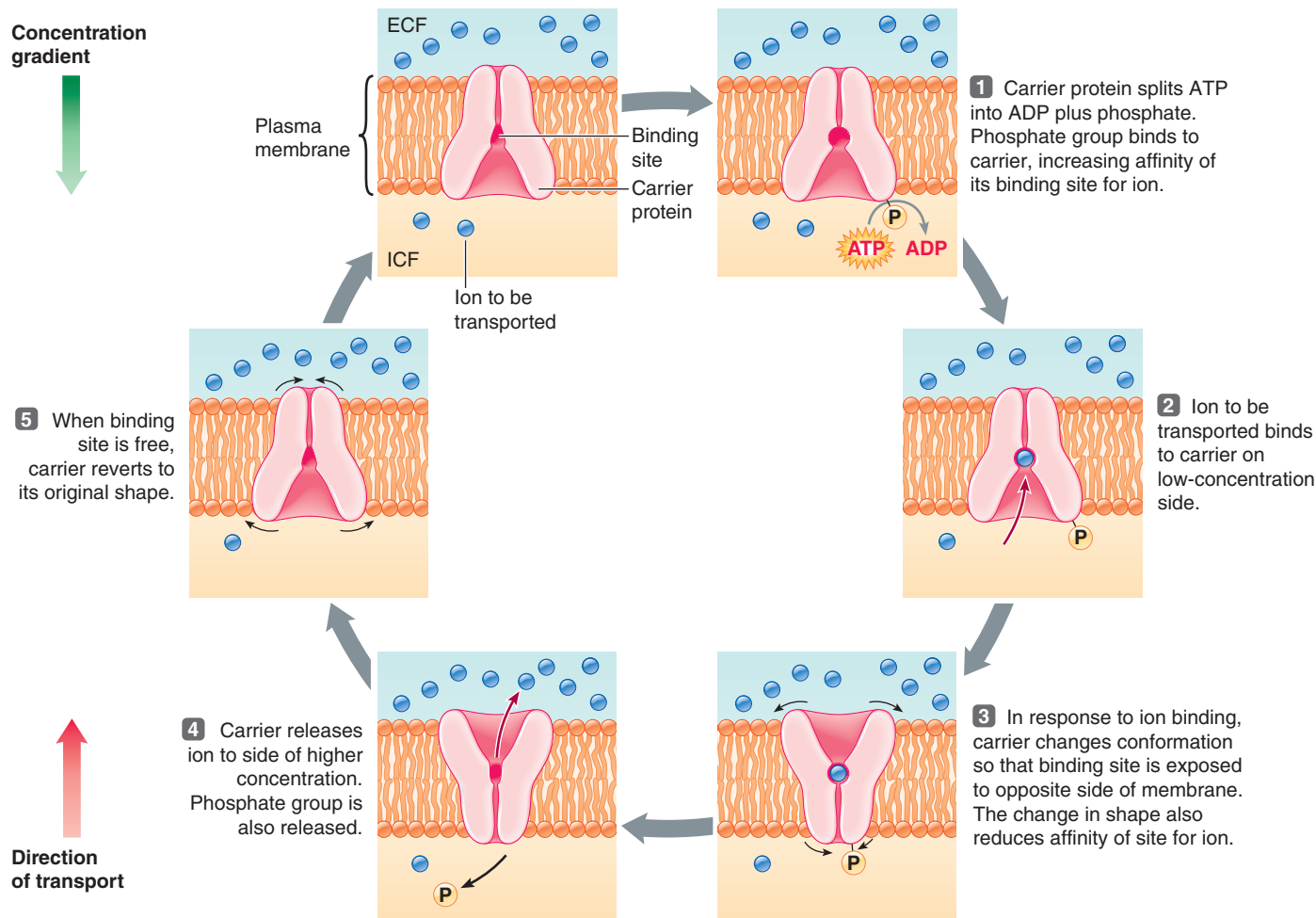
their binding sites to the ECF or the ICF. After picking up the passenger on one side, when the carrier changes its conformation, it drops off the passenger on the opposite side of the membrane. Because passengers are more likely to bind with the carrier on the high-concentration side than on the low-concentration side, the net movement always proceeds down the concentration gradient from higher to lower concentration (see ● Figure 3-14). As is characteristic of all types of mediated transport, the rate of facilitated diffusion is limited by saturation of the carrier binding sites—unlike the rate of simple diffusion, which is always directly proportional to the concentration gradient (see ● Figure 3-15).

### Active transport is carrier-mediated and uses energy to move a substance against its concentration gradient.

Active transport also uses a carrier protein to transfer a specific substance across the membrane, but in this case the carrier transports the substance uphill *against* its concentration gradient. Active transport comes in two forms. In **primary active transport**, energy is *directly* required to move a substance against its concentration gradient; the carrier splits ATP to power the transport process. In **secondary active transport**, energy is required in the entire process, but it is *not directly* used to produce uphill movement. That is, the carrier does not split ATP; instead, it moves a molecule uphill by using “secondhand” energy stored in the form of a  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient. This gradient is built up by primary active transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  by a different carrier. Let us examine each process in more detail.

**PRIMARY ACTIVE TRANSPORT** In primary active transport, energy in the form of ATP is required to vary the affinity of the binding site when it is exposed on opposite sides of the plasma membrane. In contrast, in facilitated diffusion, the affinity of the binding site is the same when exposed to either the outside or the inside of the cell.

With primary active transport, the binding site has a greater affinity for its passenger (always an ion) on the low-concentration side as a result of *phosphorylation* (attachment of phosphate) of the carrier on this side (● Figure 3-16, step **1**). The carrier acts as an enzyme that has ATPase activity, which means it splits the terminal phosphate from an ATP molecule to yield adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and inorganic phosphate plus free energy (see p. 27). The phosphate group then attaches to the carrier, increasing the affinity of its binding site for the ion. As a result, the ion to be transported binds to the carrier on the low-concentration side (step **2**). In response to this binding, the carrier changes its conformation so that the ion is now exposed to the high-concentration side of the membrane (step **3**). The change in carrier shape reduces the affinity of the binding site for the passenger, so the ion is released on the high-concentration side. Simultaneously, the change in shape is accompanied by *dephosphorylation*; that is, the phosphate group detaches from the carrier (step **4**). The carrier then returns to its original conformation (step **5**). Thus, ATP energy is used in the phosphorylation–dephosphorylation cycle of the carrier. It alters the affinity of the carrier's binding sites on opposite sides



● **FIGURE 3-16 Model for active transport.** The energy of ATP is required in the phosphorylation–dephosphorylation cycle of the carrier to transport the molecule uphill from a region of low concentration to a region of high concentration.

of the membrane so that transported ions are moved uphill from an area of low concentration to an area of higher concentration. These active-transport mechanisms are often called “**pumps**,” analogous to water pumps that require energy to lift water against the downward pull of gravity.

Primary active-transport pumps all move positively charged ions, namely,  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ , hydrogen ion ( $\text{H}^+$ ), or  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , across the membrane. The simplest primary active-transport systems pump a single type of passenger. For example, the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pump in the plasma membrane transports  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of the cell, keeping the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration in the cytosol low. These  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transporters are particularly abundant in the plasma membrane of neuron (nerve cell) terminals that store chemical messengers (neurotransmitters) in secretory vesicles (see p. 86). An electrical signal in a neuron terminal triggers the opening of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels in the terminal’s plasma membrane. Entry of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  down its concentration gradient through these open channels promotes the secretion of neurotransmitter by exocytosis of the secretory vesicles. By keeping the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration low, the active  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pump helps maintain a large concentration gradient for the entry of secretion-inducing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the ECF into the neuron terminal.

**$\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  PUMP** More complicated primary active-transport mechanisms involve the transfer of two different passengers in opposite directions. The most important example is a sequentially active  **$\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase pump** ( **$\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump** for short) found in the plasma membrane of all cells. This carrier transports  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell, concentrating it in the ECF, and picks up  $\text{K}^+$  from the outside, concentrating it in the ICF. No direct exchange occurs of  $\text{Na}^+$  for  $\text{K}^+$ , however. The  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump moves  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell for every two  $\text{K}^+$  it pumps in. (To appreciate the magnitude of active  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pumping that takes place, consider that a single nerve cell membrane contains perhaps 1 million  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pumps capable of transporting about 200 million ions per second.)

The  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump plays three important roles:

1. It establishes  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  concentration gradients across the plasma membrane of all cells; these gradients are critically important in the ability of nerve and muscle cells to generate electrical signals essential to their functioning (a topic discussed more thoroughly later).
2. It helps regulate cell volume by controlling the concentrations of solutes inside the cell and thus minimizing osmotic effects that would induce swelling or shrinking of the cell.

3. The energy used to run the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump also indirectly serves as the energy source for secondary active transport, a topic to which we now turn our attention.

**SECONDARY ACTIVE TRANSPORT** With secondary active transport, the carrier does not directly split ATP to move a substance against its concentration gradient. Instead, the movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  into the cell down its concentration gradient (established by the ATP-splitting  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump) drives the uphill transport of another solute by a secondary active-transport carrier. This is efficient, because  $\text{Na}^+$  must be pumped out anyway to maintain the electrical and osmotic integrity of the cell.

In secondary active transport, the transfer of the solute across the membrane is always coupled (occurs together) with the transfer of the  $\text{Na}^+$  that supplies the driving force. Secondary active transport carriers have two binding sites: one for the solute being moved and one for  $\text{Na}^+$ . Secondary active transport occurs by two mechanisms—symport and antiport—depending on the direction the transported solute moves in relation to  $\text{Na}^+$  movement. In **symport** (also called **cotransport**), the solute and  $\text{Na}^+$  move through the membrane in the same direction, that is, into the cell (*sym* means “together”; *co* means “with”). Glucose and amino acids are examples of molecules transported by symport in intestinal and kidney cells. We discuss the importance of these carriers in more detail shortly. In **antiport** (also known as **countertransport** or **exchange**), the solute and  $\text{Na}^+$  move through the membrane in opposite directions, that is,  $\text{Na}^+$  into and the solute out of the cell (*anti* means “opposite”; *counter* means “against”). For example, cells exchange  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{H}^+$  by means of antiport. This carrier plays an important role in maintaining the appropriate pH inside the cells (a fluid becomes more acidic as its  $\text{H}^+$  concentration rises).

Let us examine  $\text{Na}^+$  and glucose symport in more detail as an example of secondary active transport. Unlike most cells of the body, the intestinal and kidney cells actively transport glucose by moving it uphill from low to high concentration. The intestinal cells transport this nutrient from the intestinal lumen into the blood, concentrating it there, until none is left in the lumen to be lost in the feces. The kidney cells save this nutrient for the body by transporting it out of the fluid that is to become urine, moving it against a concentration gradient into the blood. The symport carriers that transport glucose against its concentration gradient from the lumen in the intestine and kidneys are distinct from the glucose facilitated-diffusion carriers that transport glucose down its concentration gradient into most cells.

Here, we focus specifically on the symport carrier that co-transport  $\text{Na}^+$  and glucose in intestinal epithelial cells. This carrier, known as the **sodium and glucose cotransporter** or **SGLT**, is located in the luminal membrane (the membrane facing the intestinal lumen) (● Figure 3-17). The  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump in these cells is located in the basolateral membrane (the membrane on the side of the cell opposite the lumen and along the lateral edge of the cell below the tight junction; see ● Figure 3-5, p. 49). More  $\text{Na}^+$  is present in the lumen than inside the cells because the energy-requiring  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump transports  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell at the basolateral membrane, keeping the intra-

cellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration low (● Figure 3-17, step 1). Because of this  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration difference, more  $\text{Na}^+$  binds to the SGLT when it is exposed to the lumen than when it is exposed to the ICF. Binding of  $\text{Na}^+$  to this carrier increases its affinity for glucose, so glucose binds to the SGLT when it is open to the lumen side where glucose concentration is low (step 2a). When both  $\text{Na}^+$  and glucose are bound to it, the SGLT changes shape and opens to the inside of the cell (step 2b). Both  $\text{Na}^+$  and glucose are released to the interior— $\text{Na}^+$  because of the lower intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration and glucose because of the reduced affinity of the binding site on release of  $\text{Na}^+$  (step 2c). The movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  into the cell by this cotransport carrier is downhill because the intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration is low, but the movement of glucose is uphill because glucose becomes concentrated in the cell.

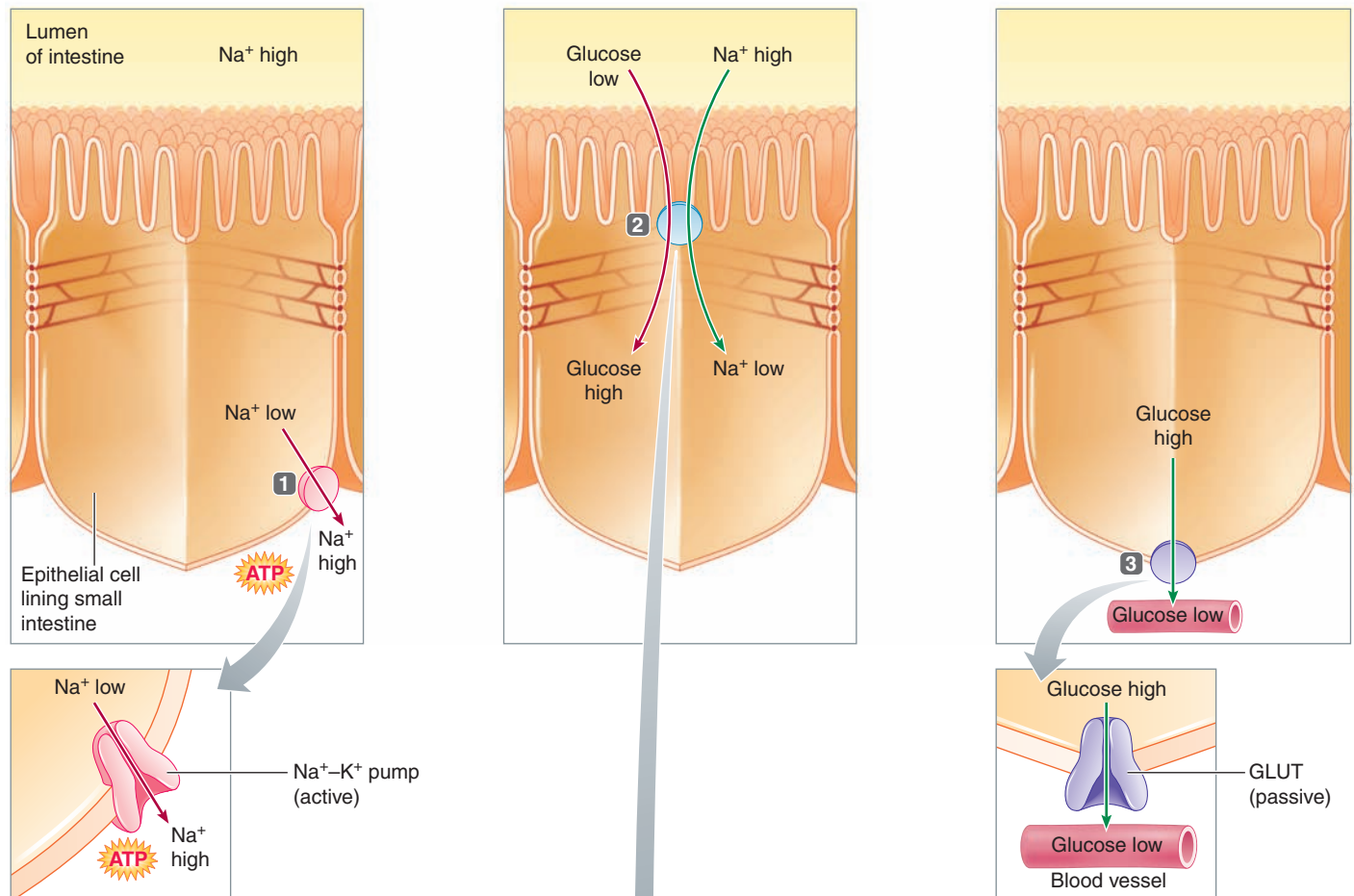
The released  $\text{Na}^+$  is quickly pumped out by the active  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  transport mechanism, keeping the level of intracellular  $\text{Na}^+$  low. The energy expended in this process is not used directly to run the SGLT because phosphorylation is not required to alter the affinity of the binding site to glucose. Instead, the establishment of a  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient by the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump (a primary active-transport mechanism) drives the SGLT (a secondary active-transport mechanism) to move glucose against its concentration gradient.

The glucose carried across the luminal membrane into the cell by secondary active transport then moves passively out of the cell by facilitated diffusion across the basolateral membrane and into the blood (step 3). This facilitated diffusion, which moves glucose down its concentration gradient, is mediated by a passive GLUT identical to the one that transports glucose into other cells, but in intestinal and kidney cells it transports glucose out of the cell. The difference depends on the direction of the glucose concentration gradient. In the case of intestinal and kidney cells, the glucose concentration is higher inside the cells.

Before leaving the topic of carrier-mediated transport, think about all the activities that rely on carrier assistance. All cells depend on carriers for the uptake of glucose and amino acids, which serve as the major energy source and the structural building blocks, respectively.  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pumps are essential for generating cellular electrical activity and for ensuring that cells have an appropriate intracellular concentration of osmotically active solutes. Primary and secondary active transport are used extensively to accomplish the specialized functions of the nervous and digestive systems, as well as those of the kidneys and all types of muscle.

### With vesicular transport, material is moved into or out of the cell wrapped in membrane.

The special carrier-mediated transport systems embedded in the plasma membrane selectively transport ions and small polar molecules. But how do large polar molecules, such as the protein hormones secreted by endocrine cells, or even multimolecular materials, such as the bacteria ingested by white blood cells, leave or enter the cell? These materials are unable to cross the plasma membrane, even with assistance: They are much too big for channels, and no carriers exist for them (they would not even fit into a carrier molecule). These large particles are transferred between

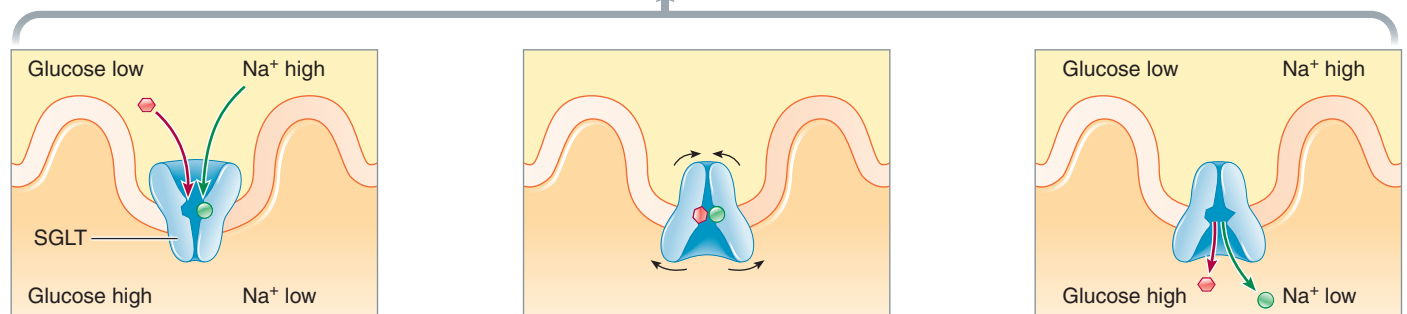


**Primary Active Transport** → establishes  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient from lumen to cell, which drives **Secondary Active Transport** → creating glucose concentration gradient from cell to blood used for **Facilitated Diffusion**

**1**  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+$  pump uses energy to drive  $\text{Na}^+$  uphill out of cell.

**2** SGLT uses  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient to simultaneously move  $\text{Na}^+$  downhill and glucose uphill from lumen into cell.

**3** GLUT passively moves glucose downhill out of cell into blood.



**2a** Binding of  $\text{Na}^+$  on luminal side, where  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration is higher, increases affinity of SGLT for glucose. Therefore, glucose also binds to SGLT on luminal side, where glucose concentration is lower.

**2b** When both  $\text{Na}^+$  and glucose are bound, SGLT changes shape, opening to cell interior.

**2c** SGLT releases  $\text{Na}^+$  to cell interior, where  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration is lower. Because affinity of SGLT for glucose decreases on release of  $\text{Na}^+$ , SGLT also releases glucose to cell interior, where glucose concentration is higher.

**● FIGURE 3-17 Symport of glucose.** Glucose is transported across intestinal and kidney cells against its concentration gradient by means of secondary active transport mediated by the sodium and glucose cotransporter (SGLT) at the cells' luminal membrane.

the ICF and the ECF not by crossing the membrane but by being wrapped in a membrane-enclosed vesicle, a process known as **vesicular transport**. Vesicular transport requires energy expenditure by the cell, so this is an active method of membrane transport. Energy is needed to accomplish vesicle formation and vesicle movement within the cell. Transport into the cell in this manner is termed *endocytosis*, whereas transport out of the cell is called *exocytosis* (see ● Figure 2-5, p. 25).

**ENDOCYTOSIS** To review, in **endocytosis** the plasma membrane surrounds the substance to be ingested and then fuses over the surface, pinching off a membrane-enclosed vesicle so that the engulfed material is trapped within the cell. Recall that there are three forms of endocytosis, depending on the nature of the material internalized: *pinocytosis* (nonselective uptake of a sample of ECF), *receptor-mediated endocytosis* (selective uptake of a large molecule), and *phagocytosis* (selective uptake of a multimolecular particle) (see ● Figure 2-7, p. 26).

**EXOCYTOSIS** In **exocytosis**, almost the reverse of endocytosis occurs. A membrane-enclosed secretory vesicle formed within the cell fuses with the plasma membrane and then opens up and releases its contents to the exterior. Protein hormones and enzymes are secreted by this means.

In some cells, endocytic vesicles bypass the lysosomes where they are normally degraded and instead travel to the opposite side of the cell, where they release their contents by exocytosis. This provides a pathway to shuttle large intact molecules through the cell. Such vesicular traffic is one means by which materials are transferred through the thin cells lining the capillaries, across which exchanges are made between the blood and the surrounding tissues.

Our discussion of membrane transport is now complete; ▲ Table 3-2 summarizes the pathways by which materials can pass between the ECF and the ICF. Cells are differentially selective in what enters or leaves because they have varying numbers and kinds of channels, carriers, and mechanisms for vesicular transport. Large polar molecules (too large for channels and not lipid soluble) that have no special transport mechanisms are unable to permeate.

The selective transport of  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$  is responsible for the electrical properties of cells. We turn our attention to this topic next.

## Membrane Potential

The plasma membranes of all living cells have a membrane potential, or are polarized electrically.

### Membrane potential is a separation of opposite charges across the plasma membrane.

The term **membrane potential** refers to a separation of opposite charges across the membrane or to a difference in the relative number of cations and anions in the ICF and ECF. Recall that opposite charges tend to attract each other and like charges tend to repel each other. Work must be performed (energy ex-

pendent) to separate opposite charges after they have come together. Conversely, when oppositely charged particles have been separated, the electrical force of attraction between them can be harnessed to perform work when the charges are permitted to come together again. This is the basic principle underlying electrically powered devices. A separation of charges across the membrane is called a membrane potential because separated charges have the potential to do work. Potential is measured in volts (the same unit used for the voltage in electrical devices), but because the membrane potential is relatively low, the unit used is the **millivolt (mV; 1/1000 of a volt)**.

Because the concept of potential is fundamental to understanding much of physiology, especially nerve and muscle physiology, it is important to understand clearly what this term means. The membrane in ● Figure 3-18a is electrically neutral; with an equal number of positive (+) and negative (-) charges on each side of the membrane, no membrane potential exists. In ● Figure 3-18b, some of the positive charges from the right side have been moved to the left. Now the left side has an excess of positive charges, leaving an excess of negative charges on the right. In other words, opposite charges are separated across the membrane, or the relative number of positive and negative charges differs between the two sides. A membrane potential now exists. The attractive force between the separated charges causes them to accumulate in a thin layer along the outer and inner surfaces of the plasma membrane (● Figure 3-18c). These separated charges represent only a fraction of the total number of charged particles (ions) present in the ICF and ECF, however, and most fluid inside and outside the cells is electrically neutral (● Figure 3-18d). The electrically balanced ions can be ignored, because they do not contribute to membrane potential. Thus, an almost insignificant fraction of the total number of charged particles present in the body fluids is responsible for the membrane potential.

Note that the membrane itself is not charged. The term *membrane potential* refers to the difference in charge between the wafer-thin regions of ICF and ECF lying next to the inside and outside of the membrane, respectively. The magnitude of the potential depends on the number of opposite charges separated: The greater the number of charges separated, the larger the potential. Therefore, in ● Figure 3-18e, membrane B has more potential than A and less potential than C.

### Membrane potential is due to differences in the concentration and permeability of key ions.

All cells have membrane potential. The cells of *excitable tissues*—namely, nerve cells and muscle cells—have the ability to produce rapid, transient changes in their membrane potential when excited. These brief fluctuations in potential serve as electrical signals. The constant membrane potential present in the cells of nonexcitable tissues and those of excitable tissues when they are at rest—that is, when they are not producing electrical signals—is known as the **resting membrane potential**. Here, we concentrate on the generation and maintenance of the resting membrane potential; in later chapters, we examine the changes that take place in excitable tissues during electrical signaling.

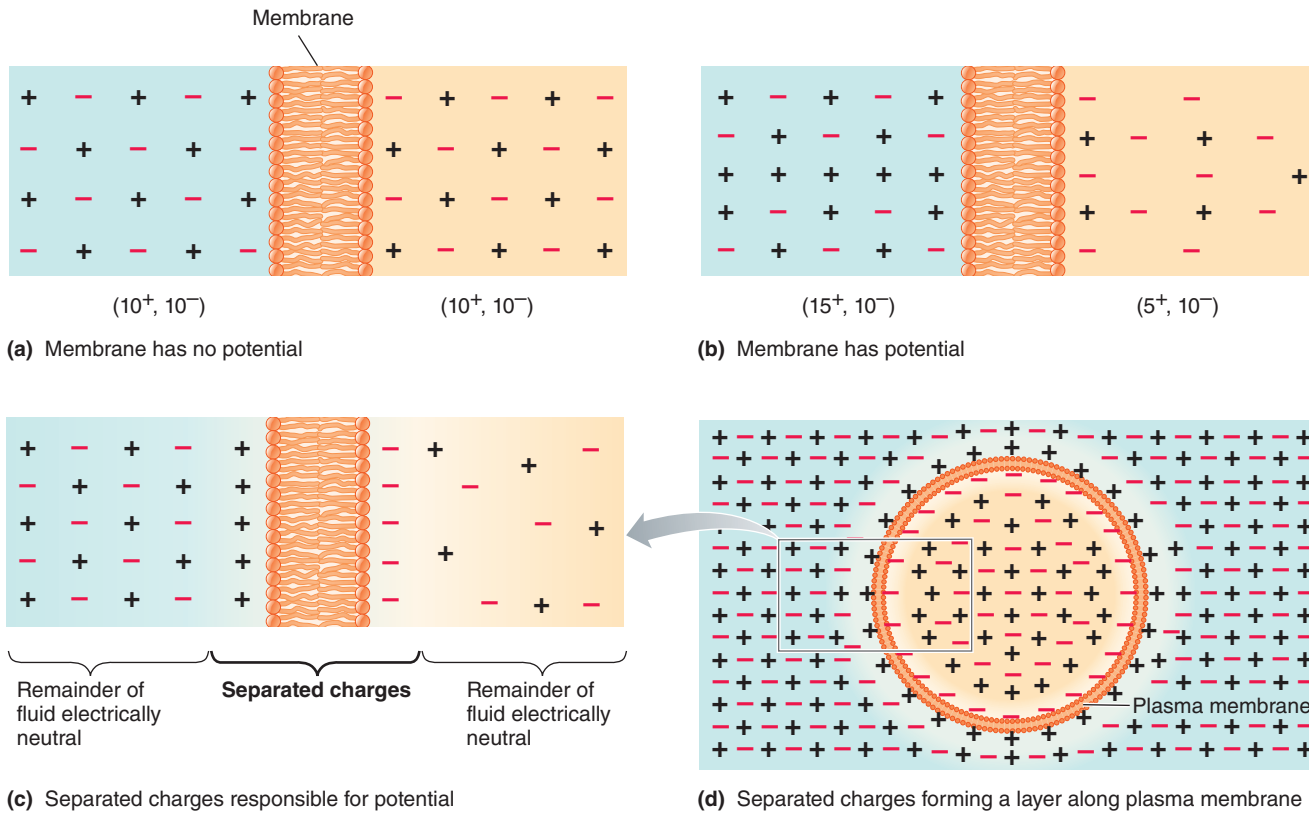
▲ **Table 3-2** Methods of Membrane Transport and Their Characteristics

Method of Transport	Substances Involved	Energy Requirements and Force Producing Movement	Limit to Transport
<b>Simple Diffusion</b>			
<i>Diffusion through the lipid bilayer</i>	Nonpolar molecules of any size (e.g., O <sub>2</sub> , CO <sub>2</sub> , fatty acids)	Passive; molecules move down a concentration gradient (from high to low concentration)	Continues until the gradient is abolished (no further net movement)
<i>Diffusion through a protein channel</i>	Specific small ions (e.g., Na <sup>+</sup> , K <sup>+</sup> , Ca <sup>2+</sup> , Cl <sup>-</sup> )	Passive; ions move down an electrochemical gradient through open channels (from high to low concentration and by attraction of the ion to an area of opposite charge)	Continues until the concentration and electrical gradients exactly counterbalance each other (no further net movement)
<i>Osmosis</i>	Water only	Passive; water moves down its own concentration gradient (to an area of lower water concentration, i.e., higher solute concentration)	Continues until the concentration difference is abolished, until it is stopped by an opposing hydrostatic pressure, or until the cell is destroyed
<b>Carrier-Mediated Transport</b>			
<i>Facilitated diffusion</i>	Specific small polar molecules for which a carrier is available (e.g., glucose)	Passive; molecules move down a concentration gradient (from high to low concentration)	Displays a <i>transport maximum</i> ( <i>T<sub>m</sub></i> ); the carriers can become saturated
<i>Primary active transport</i>	Specific cations for which carriers are available (e.g., Na <sup>+</sup> , K <sup>+</sup> , H <sup>+</sup> , Ca <sup>2+</sup> )	Active; ions move against a concentration gradient (from low to high concentration); requires ATP	Displays a <i>T<sub>m</sub></i> ; the carriers can become saturated
<i>Secondary active transport (symport or antiport)</i>	Specific small polar molecules and ions for which coupled transport carriers are available (e.g., glucose, amino acids for symport; some ions for antiport)	Active; substances move against a concentration gradient (from low to high concentration); driven directly by a Na <sup>+</sup> gradient established by the ATP-requiring primary pump. In symport, the cotransported molecule and driving ion move in the same direction; in antiport, the transported solute and driving ion move in opposite directions	Displays a <i>T<sub>m</sub></i> ; the coupled transport carriers can become saturated
<b>Vesicular Transport</b>			
<i>Endocytosis</i>			
Pinocytosis	Small volume of ECF	Active; the plasma membrane dips inward and pinches off at the surface, forming an internalized vesicle	Control is poorly understood
Receptor-mediated endocytosis	Specific large polar molecule (e.g., protein)	Active; the plasma membrane dips inward and pinches off at the surface, forming an internalized vesicle	Necessitates binding to a specific receptor on the membrane surface
Phagocytosis	Multimolecular particles (e.g., bacteria, cellular debris)	Active; the cell extends pseudopods that surround the particle, forming an internalized vesicle	Necessitates binding to a specific receptor on the membrane surface
<i>Exocytosis</i>			
	Secretory products (e.g., hormones, enzymes), as well as large molecules that pass through the cell intact	Active; an increase in cytosolic Ca <sup>2+</sup> induces fusion of a secretory vesicle with the plasma membrane; the vesicle opens up and releases its contents to the outside	Secretion is triggered by specific neural or hormonal stimuli

The unequal distribution of a few key ions between the ICF and the ECF and their selective movement through the plasma membrane are responsible for the electrical properties of the membrane. In the body, electrical charges are carried by ions. The ions

primarily responsible for the generation of the resting membrane potential are Na<sup>+</sup>, K<sup>+</sup>, and large, negatively charged (anionic) intracellular proteins, written as A<sup>-</sup>. Other ions (calcium, magnesium, and chloride, to name a few) do not contribute directly to the





● **FIGURE 3-18** Determination of membrane potential by unequal distribution of positive and negative charges across the membrane. (a) When the positive and negative charges are equally balanced on each side of the membrane, no membrane potential exists. (b) When opposite charges are separated across the membrane, membrane potential exists. (c) The unbalanced charges responsible for the potential accumulate in a thin layer along opposite surfaces of the membrane. (d) The vast majority of the fluid in the ECF and ICF is electrically neutral. The unbalanced charges accumulate along the plasma membrane. (e) The greater the separation of charges across the membrane, the larger the potential.

resting electrical properties of the plasma membrane in most cells, even though they play other important roles in the body.

The concentrations and relative permeabilities of the ions critical to membrane electrical activity are compared in ▲ Table 3-3. Note that  $\text{Na}^+$  is more concentrated in the ECF and  $\text{K}^+$  is more concentrated in the ICF. These concentration differences are maintained by the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump at the expense of energy. Because the plasma membrane is virtually impermeable to  $\text{A}^-$ , these large, negatively charged proteins are found only inside the cell. After they have been synthesized from amino acids transported into the cell, they remain trapped within the cell.

In addition to the active carrier mechanism,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  can passively cross the membrane through protein channels specific for them. It is usually much easier for  $\text{K}^+$  than for  $\text{Na}^+$  to get through the membrane because the membrane typically has many more leak channels always open for passive  $\text{K}^+$  traffic than channels open for passive  $\text{Na}^+$  traffic. At resting potential

▲ **Table 3-3** Concentration and Permeability of Ions Responsible for Membrane Potential in a Resting Nerve Cell

Ion	Extracellular Concentration*	Intracellular Concentration*	Relative Permeability
$\text{Na}^+$	150	15	1
$\text{K}^+$	5	150	25–30
$\text{A}^-$	0	65	0

\*Concentration expressed in millimoles per liter, mM

in a nerve cell, the membrane is typically about 25 to 30 times more permeable to  $K^+$  than to  $Na^+$ .

Armed with knowledge of the relative concentrations and permeabilities of these ions, we can analyze the forces acting across the plasma membrane. We consider (1) the direct contributions of the  $Na^+-K^+$  pump to membrane potential, (2) the effect that the movement of  $K^+$  alone would have on membrane potential, (3) the effect of  $Na^+$  alone, and (4) the situation that exists in the cells when both  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$  effects are taking place concurrently. Remember throughout this discussion that *the concentration gradient for  $K^+$  will always be outward and the concentration gradient for  $Na^+$  will always be inward*, because the  $Na^+-K^+$  pump maintains a higher concentration of  $K^+$  inside the cell and a higher concentration of  $Na^+$  outside the cell. Also, note that because  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$  are both cations (positively charged), *the electrical gradient for both of these ions will always be toward the negatively charged side of the membrane*.

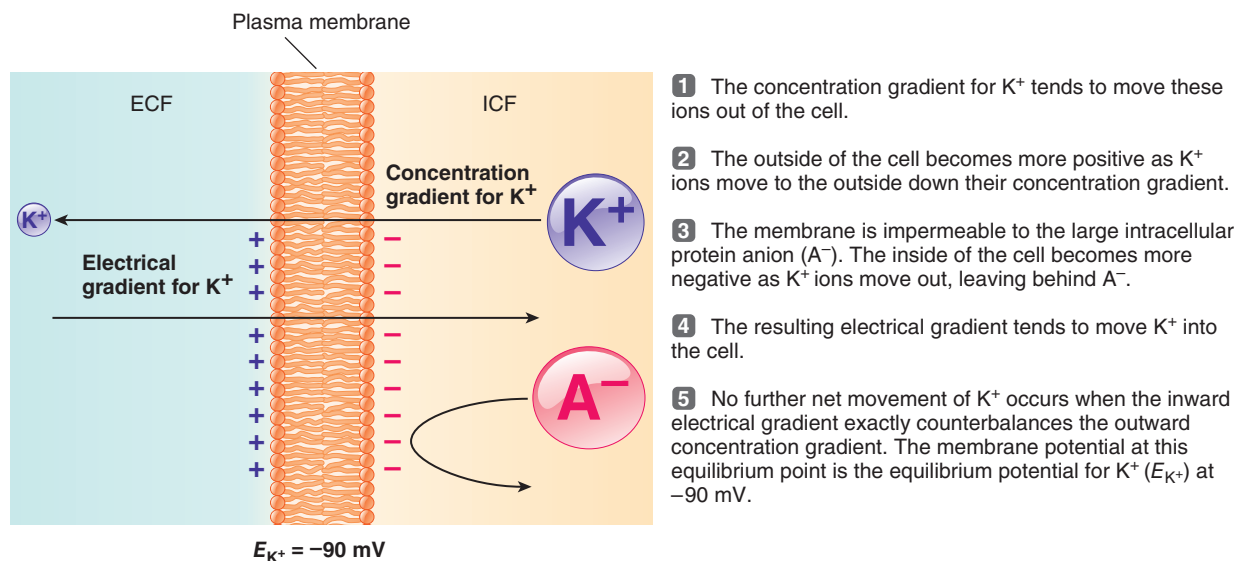
**EFFECT OF THE  $Na^+-K^+$  PUMP ON MEMBRANE POTENTIAL** The  $Na^+-K^+$  pump transports three  $Na^+$  out for every two  $K^+$  it transports in. Because  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  are both positive ions, this unequal transport separates charges across the membrane, with the outside becoming relatively more positive and the inside becoming relatively more negative as more positive ions are transported out than in. However, this active-transport mechanism only separates enough charges to generate a small membrane potential. Most of the membrane potential results from the passive diffusion of  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$  down concentration gradients. Thus, the main role of the  $Na^+-K^+$  pump in producing membrane potential is indirect, through its critical contribution to maintaining the concentration gradients directly responsible for the ion movements that generate most of the potential.

**EFFECT OF THE MOVEMENT OF  $K^+$  ALONE ON MEMBRANE POTENTIAL: EQUILIBRIUM POTENTIAL FOR  $K^+$**  Consider a hypothetical situation characterized by (1) the concentrations that exist for  $K^+$  and  $A^-$  across the plasma membrane, (2) free permeability of the

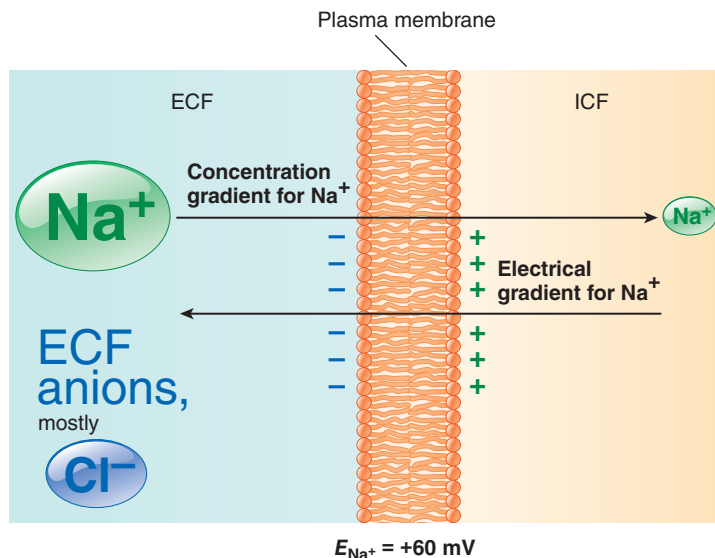
membrane to  $K^+$  but not to  $A^-$ , and (3) no potential as yet present. The concentration gradient for  $K^+$  would tend to move these ions out of the cell (● Figure 3-19). Because the membrane is permeable to  $K^+$ , these ions would readily pass through, carrying their positive charge with them, so more positive charges would be on the outside. At the same time, negative charges in the form of  $A^-$  would be left behind on the inside, similar to the situation shown in ● Figure 3-18b. (Remember that  $A^-$  cannot diffuse out, despite a tremendous concentration gradient.) A membrane potential would now exist. Because an electrical gradient would also be present,  $K^+$  would be attracted toward the negatively charged interior and repelled by the positively charged exterior. Thus, two opposing forces would now be acting on  $K^+$ : the concentration gradient tending to move  $K^+$  out of the cell and the electrical gradient tending to move these same ions into the cell.

Initially, the concentration gradient would be stronger than the electrical gradient, so net movement of  $K^+$  out of the cell would continue and the membrane potential would increase. As more  $K^+$  moved out of the cell, however, the opposing electrical gradient would become stronger as the outside became increasingly positive and the inside increasingly negative. Net outward movement would gradually be reduced as the strength of the electrical gradient approached that of the concentration gradient. Finally, when these two forces exactly balanced each other (that is, when they were in equilibrium), no further net movement of  $K^+$  would occur. The potential that would exist at this equilibrium is known as the **equilibrium potential for  $K^+$  ( $E_{K^+}$ )**. At this point, a large concentration gradient for  $K^+$  would still exist, but no more net movement of  $K^+$  out of the cell would occur down this concentration gradient because of the exactly equal opposing electrical gradient (● Figure 3-19).

The membrane potential at  $E_{K^+}$  is  $-90$  mV. By convention, *the sign always designates the polarity of the excess charge on the inside of the membrane*. A membrane potential of  $-90$  mV means that the potential is of a magnitude of 90 mV, with the inside being negative relative to the outside. A potential of  $+90$  mV would have the same strength, but the inside would be more positive than the outside.



● FIGURE 3-19 Equilibrium potential for  $K^+$ .



- 1 The concentration gradient for  $\text{Na}^+$  tends to move these ions into the cell.
- 2 The inside of the cell becomes more positive as  $\text{Na}^+$  ions move to the inside down their concentration gradient.
- 3 The outside becomes more negative as  $\text{Na}^+$  ions move in, leaving behind in the ECF unbalanced negatively charged ions, mostly  $\text{Cl}^-$ .
- 4 The resulting electrical gradient tends to move  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell.
- 5 No further net movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  occurs when the outward electrical gradient exactly counterbalances the inward concentration gradient. The membrane potential at this equilibrium point is the equilibrium potential for  $\text{Na}^+$  ( $E_{\text{Na}^+}$ ) at +60 mV.

● **FIGURE 3-20** Equilibrium potential for  $\text{Na}^+$ .

**EFFECT OF MOVEMENT OF  $\text{Na}^+$  ALONE ON MEMBRANE POTENTIAL: EQUILIBRIUM POTENTIAL FOR  $\text{Na}^+$**  A similar hypothetical situation could be developed for  $\text{Na}^+$  alone (● Figure 3-20). The concentration gradient for  $\text{Na}^+$  would move these ions into the cell, producing a buildup of positive charges on the interior of the membrane and leaving negative charges unbalanced outside (primarily in the form of chloride,  $\text{Cl}^-$ ;  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ —that is, salt—are the predominant ECF ions). Net inward movement would continue until equilibrium was established by the development of an opposing electrical gradient that exactly counterbalanced the concentration gradient. At this point, given the concentrations for  $\text{Na}^+$ , the **equilibrium potential for  $\text{Na}^+$**  ( $E_{\text{Na}^+}$ ) would be +60 mV. In this case, the inside of the cell would be positive, in contrast to the equilibrium potential for  $\text{K}^+$ . The magnitude of  $E_{\text{Na}^+}$  is somewhat less than that for  $E_{\text{K}^+}$  (60 mV compared to 90 mV) because the concentration gradient for  $\text{Na}^+$  is not as large (see Table 3-3); thus, the opposing electrical gradient (membrane potential) is not as great at equilibrium.

**CONCURRENT  $\text{K}^+$  AND  $\text{Na}^+$  EFFECTS ON RESTING MEMBRANE POTENTIAL** Neither  $\text{K}^+$  nor  $\text{Na}^+$  exists alone in the body fluids, so equilibrium potentials are not present in body cells. They exist only in hypothetical or experimental conditions. In a living cell, the effects of both  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Na}^+$  must be taken into account. *The greater the permeability of the plasma membrane for a given ion, the greater the tendency for that ion to drive the membrane potential toward the ion's own equilibrium potential.* Because the membrane at rest is 25 to 30 times more permeable to  $\text{K}^+$  than to  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$  passes through more readily than  $\text{Na}^+$ ; thus,  $\text{K}^+$  influences the resting membrane potential to a much greater extent than  $\text{Na}^+$  does. Recall that  $\text{K}^+$  acting alone would establish an equilibrium potential of -90 mV. The membrane is somewhat permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$ , however, so some  $\text{Na}^+$  enters the cell in a limited attempt to reach its equilibrium potential. This  $\text{Na}^+$  entry neutralizes, or cancels, some of the potential that would have been produced by  $\text{K}^+$  alone if  $\text{Na}^+$  were not present.

To better understand this concept, assume that each separated pair of charges in ● Figure 3-21 represents 10 mV of potential. (This is not technically correct, because in reality many separated charges must be present to account for a potential of 10 mV.) In this simplified example, nine separated pluses and minuses, with the minuses on the inside, represent the  $E_{\text{K}^+}$  of -90 mV. Superimposing the slight influence of  $\text{Na}^+$  on this  $\text{K}^+$ -dominated membrane, assume that two  $\text{Na}^+$  enter the cell down the  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration and electrical gradients. (Note that the electrical gradient for  $\text{Na}^+$  is now inward in contrast to the outward electrical gradient for  $\text{Na}^+$  at  $E_{\text{Na}^+}$ . At  $E_{\text{Na}^+}$ , the inside of the cell is positive as a result of the inward movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  down its concentration gradient. In a resting nerve cell, however, the inside is negative because of the dominant influence of  $\text{K}^+$  on membrane potential. Thus, both the concentration and the electrical gradients now favor the inward movement of  $\text{Na}^+$ .) The inward movement of these two positively charged  $\text{Na}^+$  neutralizes some of the potential established by  $\text{K}^+$ , so now only seven pairs of charges are separated and the potential is -70 mV. This is the resting membrane potential of a typical nerve cell. The resting potential is much closer to  $E_{\text{K}^+}$  than to  $E_{\text{Na}^+}$  because of the greater permeability of the membrane to  $\text{K}^+$ , but it is slightly less than  $E_{\text{K}^+}$  (-70 mV is a lower potential than -90 mV) because of the weak influence of  $\text{Na}^+$ .

**BALANCE OF PASSIVE LEAKS AND ACTIVE PUMPING AT RESTING MEMBRANE POTENTIAL** At resting potential, neither  $\text{K}^+$  nor  $\text{Na}^+$  is at equilibrium. A potential of -70 mV does not exactly counterbalance the concentration gradient for  $\text{K}^+$ ; it takes a potential of -90 mV to do that. Thus,  $\text{K}^+$  slowly continues to passively exit through its leak channels down this small concentration gradient. In the case of  $\text{Na}^+$ , the concentration and electrical gradients do not even oppose each other; they both favor the inward movement of  $\text{Na}^+$ . Therefore,  $\text{Na}^+$  continually leaks inward down its electrochemical gradient, but only slowly, because of its low permeability, that is, because of the scarcity of  $\text{Na}^+$  leak channels.

1 The  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+$  pump actively transports  $\text{Na}^+$  out of and  $\text{K}^+$  into the cell, keeping the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  high in the ECF and the concentration of  $\text{K}^+$  high in the ICF.

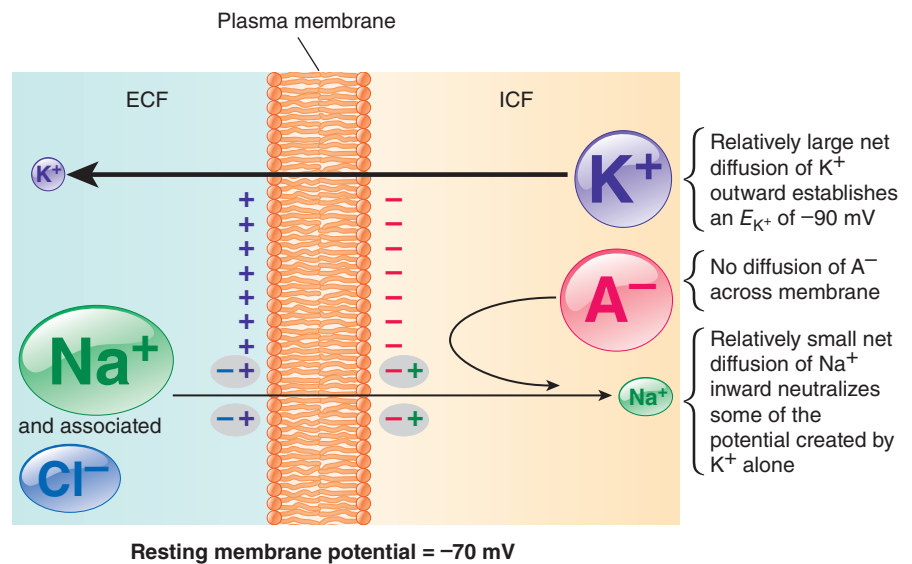
2 Given the concentration gradients that exist across the plasma membrane,  $\text{K}^+$  tends to drive membrane potential to the equilibrium potential for  $\text{K}^+$  ( $-90\text{ mV}$ ), whereas  $\text{Na}^+$  tends to drive membrane potential to the equilibrium potential for  $\text{Na}^+$  ( $+60\text{ mV}$ ).

3 However,  $\text{K}^+$  exerts the dominant effect on resting membrane potential because the membrane is more permeable to  $\text{K}^+$ . As a result, resting potential ( $-70\text{ mV}$ ) is much closer to  $E_{\text{K}^+}$  than to  $E_{\text{Na}^+}$ .

4 During the establishment of resting potential, the relatively large net diffusion of  $\text{K}^+$  outward does not produce a potential of  $-90\text{ mV}$  because the resting membrane is slightly permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  and the relatively small net diffusion of  $\text{Na}^+$  inward neutralizes (in gray shading) some of the potential that would be created by  $\text{K}^+$  alone, bringing resting potential to  $-70\text{ mV}$ , slightly less than  $E_{\text{K}^+}$ .

5 The negatively charged intracellular proteins ( $\text{A}^-$ ) that cannot cross the membrane remain unbalanced inside the cell during the net outward movement of the positively charged ions, so the inside of the cell is more negative than the outside.

● **FIGURE 3-21** Effect of concurrent  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Na}^+$  movement on establishing the resting membrane potential.



Such leaking goes on all the time, so why doesn't the intracellular concentration of  $\text{K}^+$  continue to fall and the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  inside the cell progressively increase? The reason is that the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+$  pump counterbalances the rate of passive leakage. At resting potential, this pump transports back into the cell essentially the same number of potassium ions that have leaked out and simultaneously transports to the outside the sodium ions that have leaked in. At this point, no net movement of any ions takes place, because all passive leaks are exactly balanced by active pumping. Because the active pump offsets the passive leaks, the concentration gradients for  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Na}^+$  remain constant. Thus, the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+$  pump not only is initially responsible for the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  concentration differences across the membrane but also maintains these differences.

As just discussed, the magnitude of these concentration gradients, together with the difference in permeability of the membrane to these ions, accounts for the magnitude of the membrane potential. Because the concentration gradients and permeabilities for  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  remain constant in the resting state, the resting membrane potential established by these forces remains constant.

**SPECIALIZED USE OF MEMBRANE POTENTIAL IN NERVE AND MUSCLE CELLS** Nerve and muscle cells have developed a specialized use for membrane potential. They can rapidly and transiently alter their membrane permeabilities to the involved ions in response to appropriate stimulation, thereby bringing about fluctuations in membrane potential. The rapid fluctuations in potential are responsible for producing nerve impulses in nerve cells and for triggering contraction in muscle cells.

These activities are the focus of the next five chapters. Even though all cells display a membrane potential, its significance in other cells is uncertain, although changes in membrane potential of some secretory cells, such as insulin-secreting cells, have been linked to their level of secretory activity.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



All cells of the body must obtain vital materials, such as nutrients and  $\text{O}_2$ , from the surrounding ECF; they must also eliminate wastes to the ECF and release secretory products, such as chemical messengers and digestive enzymes. Thus, transport of materials across the plasma membrane between the ECF and the ICF is essential for cell survival, and the constituents of the ECF must be homeostatically maintained to support these life-sustaining exchanges.

Many cell types use membrane transport to carry out their specialized activities geared toward maintaining homeostasis. Here are several examples:

1. Absorption of nutrients from the digestive tract lumen involves the transport of these energy-giving molecules across the membranes of the cells lining the tract.
2. Exchange of  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  between air and blood in the lungs involves the transport of these gases across the membranes of the cells lining the air sacs and blood vessels of the lungs.

- Urine is formed by the selective transfer of materials between the blood and the fluid within the kidney tubules across the membranes of the cells lining the tubules.
- The beating of the heart is triggered by cyclic changes in the transport of  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ , and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  across the heart cells' membranes.
- Secretion of chemical messengers such as neurotransmitters from nerve cells and hormones from endocrine cells involves the transport of these regulatory products to the ECF on appropriate stimulation.

In addition to providing selective transport of materials between the ECF and the ICF, the plasma membrane contains receptors for binding with specific chemical messengers that regulate various cell activities, many of which are specialized activities aimed toward maintaining homeostasis. For example, the hormone vasopressin, which is secreted in response to a water deficit in the body, binds with receptors in the plasma membrane of a specific type of kidney cell. This binding triggers the cells to conserve water during urine formation by promoting the insertion of additional aquaporins

(water channels) in the plasma membrane of these cells, thus helping alleviate the water deficit that initiated the response.

All living cells have a membrane potential, with the cell's interior being slightly more negative than the fluid surrounding the cell when the cell is electrically at rest. The specialized activities of nerve and muscle cells depend on these cells' ability to change their membrane potential rapidly on appropriate stimulation. The transient, rapid changes in potential in nerve cells serve as electrical signals or nerve impulses, which provide a means to transmit information along nerve pathways. This information is used to accomplish homeostatic adjustments, such as restoring blood pressure to normal when signaled that it has fallen too low.

Rapid changes in membrane potential in muscle cells trigger muscle contraction, the specialized activity of muscle. Muscle contraction contributes to homeostasis in many ways, including the pumping of blood by the heart and the movement of food through the digestive tract.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-39)

- The nonpolar tails of the phospholipid molecules bury themselves in the interior of the plasma membrane. (*True or false?*)
- Cells shrink when in contact with a hypertonic solution. (*True or false?*)
- Channels are open to both sides of the membrane at the same time, but carriers are open to only one side of the membrane at a time. (*True or false?*)
- Through its unequal pumping, the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump is directly responsible for separating sufficient charges to establish a resting membrane potential of  $-70$  mV. (*True or false?*)
- At resting membrane potential, there is a slight excess of \_\_\_\_\_ (*positive/negative*) charges on the inside of the membrane, with a corresponding slight excess of \_\_\_\_\_ (*positive/negative*) charges on the outside.
- Using the answer code on the right, indicate which membrane component is responsible for the function in question:
 

___ 1. channel formation	(a) lipid bilayer
___ 2. barrier to passage of water-soluble substances	(b) proteins
___ 3. receptor sites	(c) carbohydrates
___ 4. membrane fluidity	
___ 5. recognition of "self"	
___ 6. membrane-bound enzymes	
___ 7. structural boundary	
___ 8. carriers	
- Using the answer code on the right, indicate the direction of net movement in each case:
 

___ 1. simple diffusion	(a) movement from high to low concentration
___ 2. facilitated diffusion	(b) movement from low to high concentration
___ 3. primary active transport	
___ 4. $\text{Na}^+$ during symport or antiport	
___ 5. transported solute during symport or antiport	
___ 6. water with regard to the water concentration gradient during osmosis	
___ 7. water with regard to the solute concentration gradient during osmosis	
- Using the answer code on the right, indicate the type of cell junction described:
 

___ 1. adhering junction	(a) gap junction
___ 2. impermeable junction	(b) tight junction
___ 3. communicating junction	(c) desmosome
___ 4. made up of connexons, which permit passage of ions and small molecules between cells	
___ 5. consisting of interconnecting fibers, which spot- rivet adjacent cells	
___ 6. formed by an actual fusion of proteins on the outer surfaces of two interacting cells	
___ 7. important in tissues subject to mechanical stretching	
___ 8. important in synchronizing contractions within heart and smooth muscle by allowing spread of electrical activity between the cells composing the muscle mass	
___ 9. important in preventing passage between cells in epithelial sheets that separate compartments of two different chemical compositions	

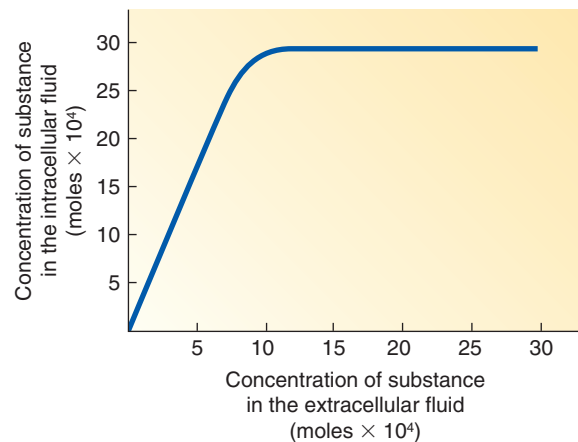
## Essay Questions

1. Describe the fluid mosaic model of membrane structure.
2. What are the functions of the three major types of protein fibers in the extracellular matrix?
3. What two properties of a particle influence whether it can permeate the plasma membrane?
4. List and describe the methods of membrane transport. Indicate what types of substances are transported by each method, and state whether each means of transport is passive or active and unassisted or assisted.
5. Explain what effect an increase in surface area would have on the rate of net diffusion across a membrane. Explain what effect an increase in thickness would have on the rate of net diffusion across a membrane.
6. State three important roles of the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+$  pump.
7. Describe the contribution of each of the following to establishing and maintaining membrane potential: (a) the  $\text{Na}^+\text{-K}^+$  pump, (b) passive movement of  $\text{K}^+$  across the membrane, (c) passive movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  across the membrane, and (d) the large intracellular anions.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-39)

1. A solution may have the same osmolarity as normal body fluids yet not be isotonic. Explain why.
2. Assume that a membrane permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  but not to  $\text{Cl}^-$  separates two solutions. The concentration of sodium chloride on side 1 is higher than on side 2. Which of the following ionic movements would occur?
  - a.  $\text{Na}^+$  would move until its concentration gradient is dissipated (until the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  on side 2 is the same as the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  on side 1).
  - b.  $\text{Cl}^-$  would move down its concentration gradient from side 1 to side 2.
  - c. A membrane potential, negative on side 1, would develop.
  - d. A membrane potential, positive on side 1, would develop.
  - e. None of the preceding is correct.
3. Compared to resting potential, would the membrane potential become more negative or more positive if the membrane were more permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  than to  $\text{K}^+$ ?
4. Which of the following methods of transport is being used to transfer the substance into the cell in the accompanying graph?
  - a. diffusion down a concentration gradient
  - b. osmosis
  - c. facilitated diffusion
  - d. active transport
  - e. vesicular transport
  - f. it is impossible to tell with the information provided
5. Colostrum, the first milk that a mother produces, contains an abundance of antibodies, large protein molecules. These maternal antibodies help protect breast-fed infants from infections until the babies are capable of producing their own antibodies. By what means would you suspect these maternal antibodies are transported across the cells lining a newborn's digestive tract into the bloodstream?



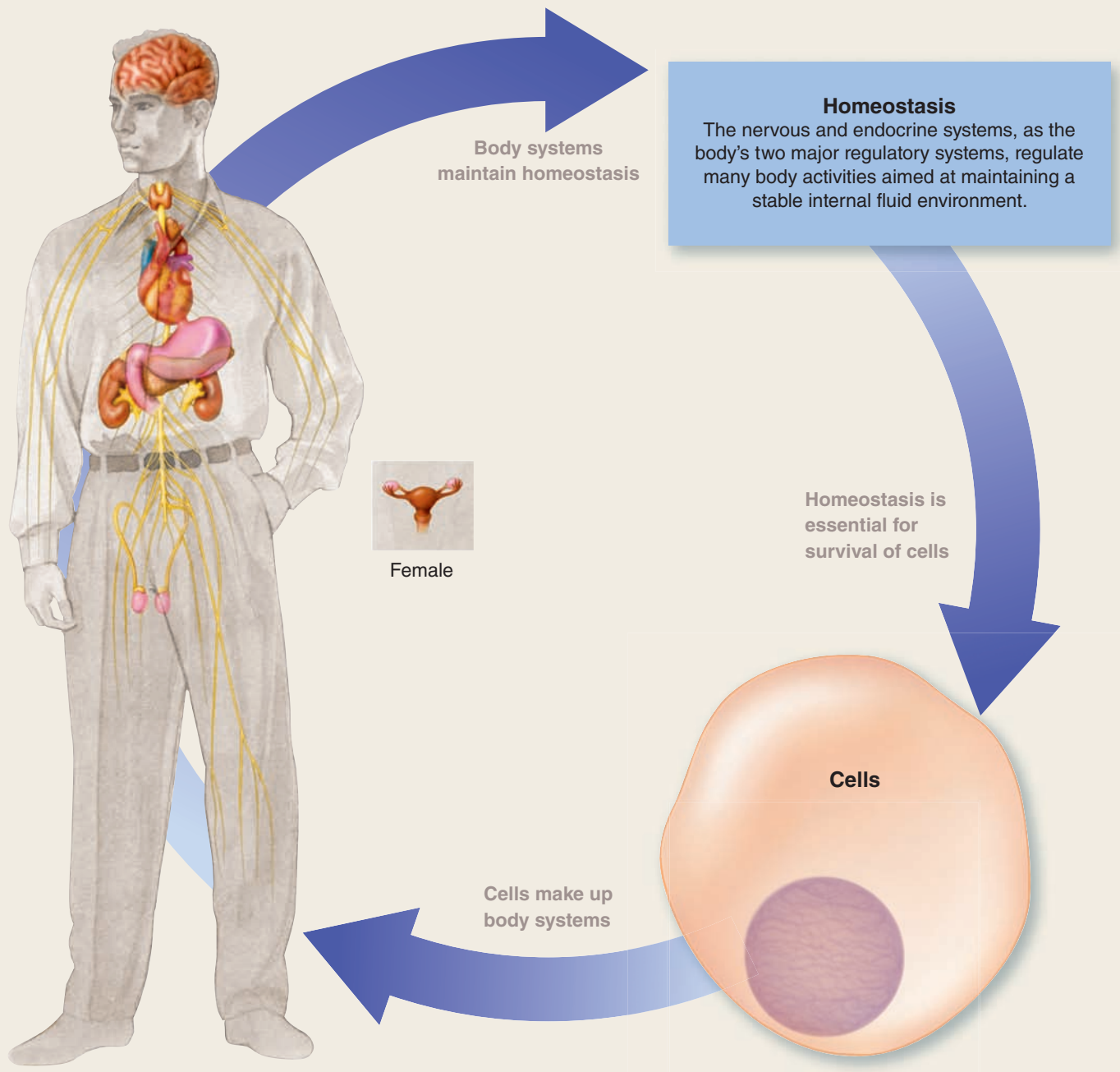
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-40)

When William H. was helping victims following a devastating earthquake in a region that was not prepared to swiftly set up adequate temporary shelter, he developed severe diarrhea. He was diagnosed as having *cholera*, a disease transmitted through unsanitary water supplies that have been contaminated by fecal material from infected individuals.

The toxin produced by cholera bacteria causes  $\text{Cl}^-$  channels in the luminal membranes of the intestinal cells to open, thereby increasing the secretion of  $\text{Cl}^-$  from the cells into the intestinal tract lumen. By what mechanisms would  $\text{Na}^+$  and water be secreted into the lumen in conjunction with  $\text{Cl}^-$  secretion? How does this secretory response account for the severe diarrhea that is characteristic of cholera?

## Nervous and Endocrine Systems



To maintain homeostasis, cells must work in a coordinated fashion toward common goals. The two major regulatory systems of the body that help ensure life-sustaining coordinated responses are the nervous and endocrine systems. **Neural communication** is accomplished by means of nerve cells, or neurons, which are specialized for rapid electrical signaling and for secreting neurotransmitters, short-distance chemical messengers that act on nearby target organs. The nervous system exerts rapid control over most

of the body's muscles and exocrine secretions. **Hormonal communication** is accomplished by hormones, which are long-distance chemical messengers secreted by the endocrine glands into the blood. The blood carries the hormones to distant target sites, where they regulate processes that require duration rather than speed, such as metabolic activities, water and electrolyte balance, and growth.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

## Introduction to Neural Communication

## Graded Potentials

Grading of graded potentials

Spread of graded potentials

## Action Potentials

Changes in membrane potential during an action potential

Changes in membrane permeability and ion movement during an action potential

Propagation of action potentials; contiguous conduction

Refractory period

All-or-none law

Role of myelin; saltatory conduction

## Synapses and Neuronal Integration

Events at a synapse; role of neurotransmitters

Excitatory and inhibitory synapses

Grand postsynaptic potential; summation

Convergence and divergence

## Intercellular Communication and Signal Transduction

Types of cell-to-cell communication

Signal transduction

## Introduction to Hormonal Communication

Classification of hormones according to solubility characteristics

Comparison of the synthesis, storage, secretion, and transport of peptide and steroid hormones

Mechanism of hydrophilic hormone action via second-messenger systems

Mechanism of lipophilic hormone action via activation of genes

## Comparison of the Nervous and Endocrine Systems

## Principles of Neural and Hormonal Communication

## Introduction to Neural Communication

All body cells display a membrane potential, which is a separation of positive and negative charges across the membrane, as discussed in the preceding chapter (see pp. 62–67). This potential is related to the uneven distribution of sodium ( $\text{Na}^+$ ), potassium ( $\text{K}^+$ ), and large intracellular protein anions between the intracellular fluid (ICF) and the extracellular fluid (ECF) and to the differential permeability of the plasma membrane to these ions.

## Nerve and muscle are excitable tissues.

The constant membrane potential present when a cell is electrically at rest, that is, not producing electrical signals, is referred to as the *resting membrane potential*. Two types of cells, *neurons (nerve cells)* and *muscle cells*, have developed a specialized use for membrane potential. They can undergo transient, rapid fluctuations in their membrane potentials, which serve as electrical signals.

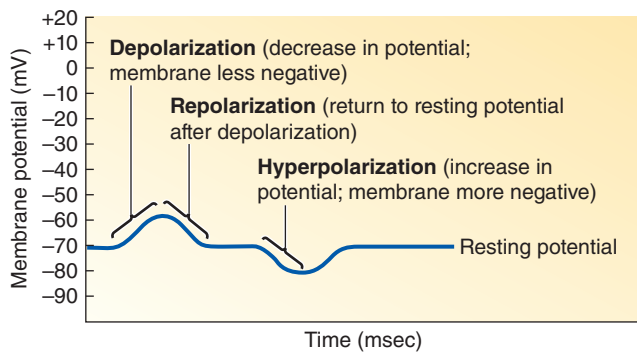
Nerve and muscle are considered **excitable tissues** because they produce electrical signals when excited. Neurons use these electrical signals to receive, process, initiate, and transmit messages. In muscle cells, these electrical signals initiate contraction. Thus, electrical signals are critical to the function of the nervous system and all muscles. In this chapter, we examine how neurons undergo changes in potential to accomplish their function. Muscle cells are discussed in later chapters.

## Membrane potential becomes less negative during depolarization and more negative during hyperpolarization.

Before you can understand what electrical signals are and how they are created, you must become familiar with several terms used to describe changes in potential, which are graphically represented in ● Figure 4-1:

**1. Polarization.** Charges are separated across the plasma membrane, so the membrane has potential. Any time membrane potential is other than 0 millivolts (mV), in either the positive or the negative direction, the membrane is in a state of polarization. Recall that the magnitude of the potential is directly proportional to the number of positive and negative charges separated by the membrane and that the sign of the potential (+ or –) always designates whether excess positive or excess negative charges are present, respectively, on the inside of the membrane. At resting potential, the membrane is polarized at  $-70$  mV in a typical neuron (see p. 66).





● **FIGURE 4-1** Types of changes in membrane potential.

**2. Depolarization.** The membrane becomes less polarized; the inside becomes less negative than at resting potential, with the potential moving closer to 0 mV (for example, a change from  $-70$  to  $-60$  mV); fewer charges are separated than at resting potential. This term also refers to the inside even becoming positive as it does during an action potential (a major type of electrical signal) when the membrane potential reverses itself (for example, becoming  $+30$  mV).

**3. Repolarization.** The membrane returns to resting potential after having been depolarized.

**4. Hyperpolarization.** The membrane becomes more polarized; the inside becomes more negative than at resting potential, with the potential moving even farther from 0 mV (for instance, a change from  $-70$  to  $-80$  mV); more charges are separated than at resting potential.

One possibly confusing point should be clarified. On the device used for recording rapid changes in potential, during a depolarization, when the inside becomes less negative than at resting, this *decrease* in the magnitude of the potential is represented as an *upward* deflection. By contrast, during a hyperpolarization, when the inside becomes more negative than at resting, this *increase* in the magnitude of the potential is represented by a *downward* deflection.

### Electrical signals are produced by changes in ion movement across the plasma membrane.

Changes in membrane potential are brought about by changes in ion movement across the membrane. For example, if the net inward flow of positively charged ions increases compared to the resting state (such as more  $\text{Na}^+$  moves in), the membrane depolarizes (becomes less negative inside). By contrast, if the net outward flow of positively charged ions increases compared to the resting state (such as more  $\text{K}^+$  moves out), the membrane hyperpolarizes (becomes more negative inside).

Changes in ion movement are brought about by changes in membrane permeability in response to triggering events. A **triggering event** triggers a change in membrane potential by altering membrane permeability and consequently altering ion flow across the membrane. These ion movements redistribute charge across the membrane, causing membrane potential to fluctuate.

Because the water-soluble ions responsible for carrying charge cannot penetrate the plasma membrane's lipid bilayer,

these charges can cross the membrane only through channels specific for them or by carrier-mediated transport. Membrane channels may be either *leak channels* or *gated channels*. As described in Chapter 3, leak channels, which are open all the time, permit unregulated leakage of their specific ion across the membrane through the channels. Gated channels, in contrast, have gates that can be open or closed, permitting ion passage through the channels when open and preventing ion passage through the channels when closed. Gate opening and closing occurs in response to a triggering event that causes a change in the conformation (shape) of the protein that forms the gated channel. There are four kinds of gated channels, depending on the factor that causes the channel to change shape: (1) **voltage-gated channels** open or close in response to changes in membrane potential, (2) **chemically gated channels** change shape in response to binding of a specific extracellular chemical messenger to a surface membrane receptor, (3) **mechanically gated channels** respond to stretching or other mechanical deformation, and (4) **thermally gated channels** respond to local changes in temperature (heat or cold).

There are two basic forms of electrical signals: (1) *graded potentials*, which serve as short-distance signals, and (2) *action potentials*, which signal over long distances. We next examine these types of signals in more detail, beginning with graded potentials, and then explore how neurons use these signals to convey messages.

## Graded Potentials

**Graded potentials** are local changes in membrane potential that occur in varying grades or degrees of magnitude or strength. For example, membrane potential could change from  $-70$  to  $-60$  mV (a 10-mV graded potential) or from  $-70$  to  $-50$  mV (a 20-mV graded potential).

### The stronger a triggering event, the larger the resultant graded potential.

Graded potentials are usually produced by a specific triggering event that causes gated ion channels to open in a specialized region of the excitable cell membrane. The resultant ion movement produces the graded potential, which most commonly is a depolarization resulting from net  $\text{Na}^+$  entry. The graded potential is confined to this small, specialized region of the total plasma membrane.

The magnitude of the initial graded potential (that is, the difference between the new potential and the resting potential) is related to the magnitude of the triggering event: *the stronger the triggering event, the larger the resultant graded potential*. Here's why, using gated channels that permit net  $\text{Na}^+$  entry as a common example: The stronger the triggering event is, the more gated channels open. As more gated channels open, more positive charges in the form of  $\text{Na}^+$  enter the cell. The more positive charges that enter the cell, the less negative (more depolarized) the inside becomes at this specialized region. This depolarization is the graded potential. Therefore, the stronger the triggering event is, the larger the graded potential produced.

Also, the duration of the graded potential varies, depending on how long the triggering event keeps the gated channels

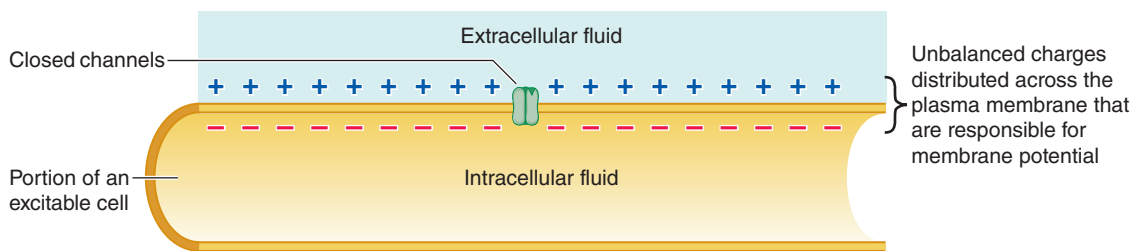
open. The longer the duration of the triggering event, the longer the duration of the graded potential.

### Graded potentials spread by passive current flow.

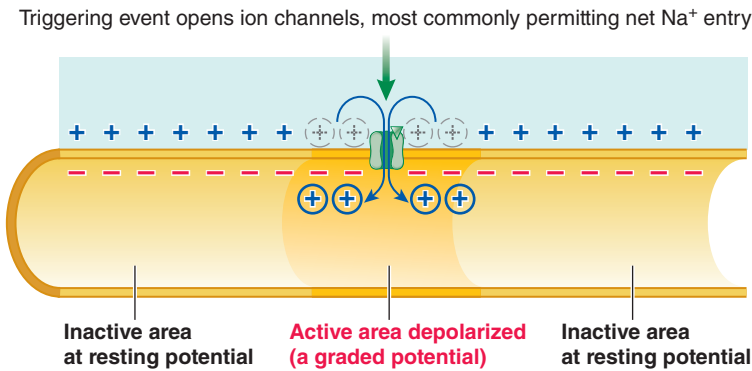
When a graded potential occurs locally in a nerve or muscle cell membrane, the rest of the membrane remains at resting potential. The temporarily depolarized region is called an *active area*. Note from ● Figure 4-2 that, inside the cell, the active area is relatively more positive than the neighboring *inactive areas* that are still at resting potential. Outside the cell, the active area is relatively less positive than adjacent inactive areas. Because of this difference in potential, electrical charges, which are carried by ions, passively flow between the active and the adjacent resting regions on both the inside and the outside of the membrane. Any flow of electrical charges is called a **current**. By convention, the direction of

current flow is always expressed as the direction in which the positive charges are moving (● Figure 4-2c). Inside the cell, positive charges flow through the ICF away from the relatively more positive depolarized active region toward the more negative adjacent resting regions. Outside the cell, positive charges flow through the ECF from the more positive adjacent inactive regions toward the relatively more negative active region. Ion movement (that is, current) is occurring *along* the membrane between regions next to each other on the same side of the membrane. This flow is in contrast to ion movement *across* the membrane through ion channels or by means of carriers.

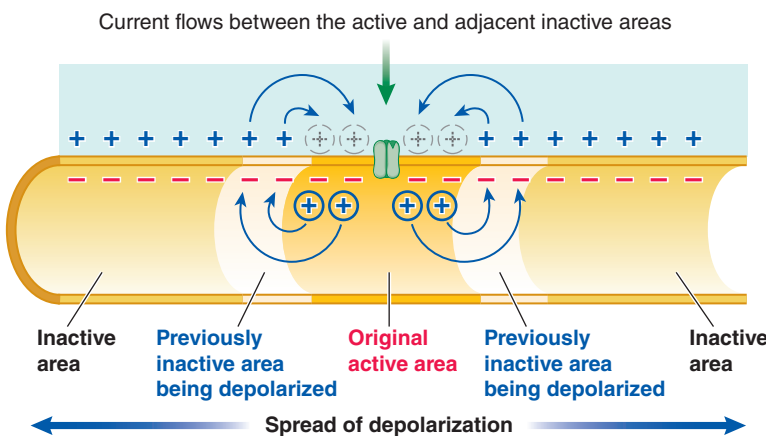
As a result of local current flow between an active depolarized area and an adjacent inactive area, the potential changes in the previously inactive area. Because positive charges have flowed simultaneously into the adjacent inactive area on the inside and out of this area on the outside, the adjacent area is now more



(a) Entire membrane at resting potential



(b) Inward movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  depolarizes membrane, producing a graded potential



(c) Depolarization spreads by local current flow to adjacent inactive areas, away from point of origin

● **FIGURE 4-2** Current flow during a graded potential. (a) The membrane of an excitable cell at resting potential. (b) A triggering event opens ion channels, usually leading to net  $\text{Na}^+$  entry that depolarizes the membrane at this site. The adjacent inactive areas are still at resting potential. (c) Local current flows between the active and the adjacent inactive areas, resulting in depolarization of the previously inactive areas. In this way, the depolarization spreads away from its point of origin.

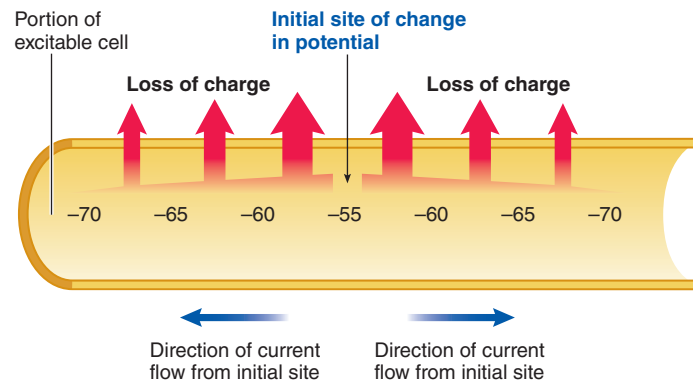
positive (or less negative) on the inside than before and less positive (or more negative) on the outside (● Figure 4-2c). Stated differently, the previously inactive adjacent area has been depolarized, so the graded potential has spread. This area's potential now differs from that of the inactive region immediately next to it on the other side, inducing further current flow at this new site, and so on. In this manner, current spreads in both directions away from the initial site of the change in potential.

The amount of current that flows between two areas depends on the difference in potential between the areas and on the resistance of the material through which the charges are moving. **Resistance** is the hindrance to electrical charge movement. The *greater* the difference in potential, the *greater* the current flow; by contrast, the *lower* the resistance, the *greater* the current flow. *Conductors* have low resistance, providing little hindrance to current flow. Electrical wires and the ICF and ECF are all good conductors, so current readily flows through them. *Insulators* have high resistance and greatly hinder movement of charge. The plastic surrounding electrical wires has high resistance, as do body lipids. Thus, current does not flow directly through the plasma membrane's lipid bilayer. Current, carried by ions, can move across the membrane only through ion channels.

### Graded potentials die out over short distances.

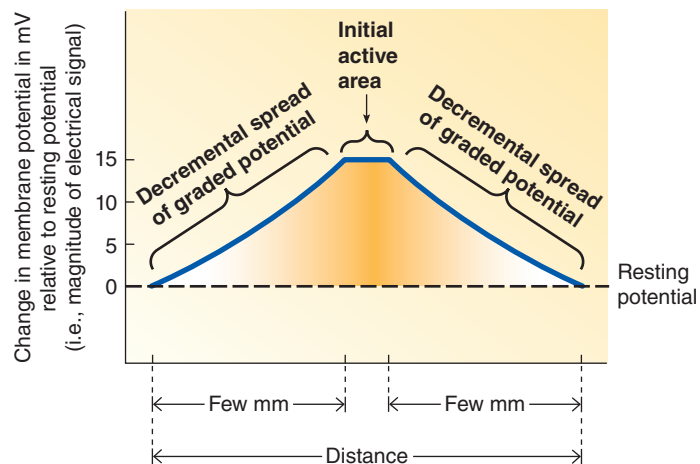
The passive current flow between active and adjacent inactive areas is similar to the means by which current is carried through electrical wires. We know from experience that current leaks out of an electrical wire with dangerous results unless the wire is covered with an insulating material such as plastic. (People can get an electric shock if they touch a bare wire.) Likewise, current is lost across the plasma membrane as charge-carrying ions in the form of  $K^+$  leak out through the “uninsulated” parts of the membrane, that is, by diffusing outward down their electrochemical gradient through open leak channels. Because of this current loss, the magnitude of the local current—and thus the magnitude of the graded potential—progressively diminishes the farther it moves from the initial active area (● Figure 4-3a). Another way of saying this is that the spread of a graded potential is *decremental* (gradually decreases) (● Figure 4-3b). Note that in this example the magnitude of the initial change in potential is 15 mV (a change from the resting state of  $-70$  to  $-55$  mV); the change in potential decreases as it moves along the membrane to a potential of 10 mV (from  $-70$  to  $-60$  mV) and continues to diminish the farther it moves away from the initial active area until there is no longer a change in potential. In this way, local currents die out within a few millimeters from the initial site of change in potential and consequently can function as signals for only very short distances.

Although graded potentials have limited signaling distance, they are critically important to the body's function, as explained in later chapters. The following are all graded potentials: *postsynaptic potentials*, *receptor potentials*, *end-plate potentials*, *pacemaker potentials*, and *slow-wave potentials*. These terms are unfamiliar to you now, but you will become well acquainted with them as we continue discussing nerve and muscle physiology. We are including this list here because it is the



\* Numbers refer to the local potential in mV at various points along the membrane.

(a) Current loss across the membrane



(b) Decremental spread of graded potentials

● **FIGURE 4-3** Current loss across the plasma membrane leading to decremental spread of a graded potential. (a) Leakage of charge-carrying ions across the plasma membrane results in progressive loss of current with increasing distance from the initial site of the change in potential. (b) Because of leaks in current, the magnitude of a graded potential continues to decrease as it passively spreads from the initial active area. The potential dies out altogether within a few millimeters of its site of initiation.

only place all these types of graded potentials are listed together. For now it's enough to say that most excitable cells produce one of these types of graded potentials in response to a triggering event. In turn, graded potentials can initiate action potentials, the long-distance signals, in an excitable cell.

## Action Potentials

**Action potentials** are brief, rapid, large (100 mV) changes in membrane potential during which the potential actually reverses so that the inside of the excitable cell transiently becomes more positive than the outside. As with a graded potential, a single action potential involves only a small portion of the total excitable cell membrane. Unlike graded potentials, however, action potentials are conducted, or propagated, throughout the entire membrane *nondecrementally*; that is, they do not diminish in strength as they travel from their site of initiation

throughout the remainder of the cell membrane. Thus, action potentials can serve as faithful long-distance signals.

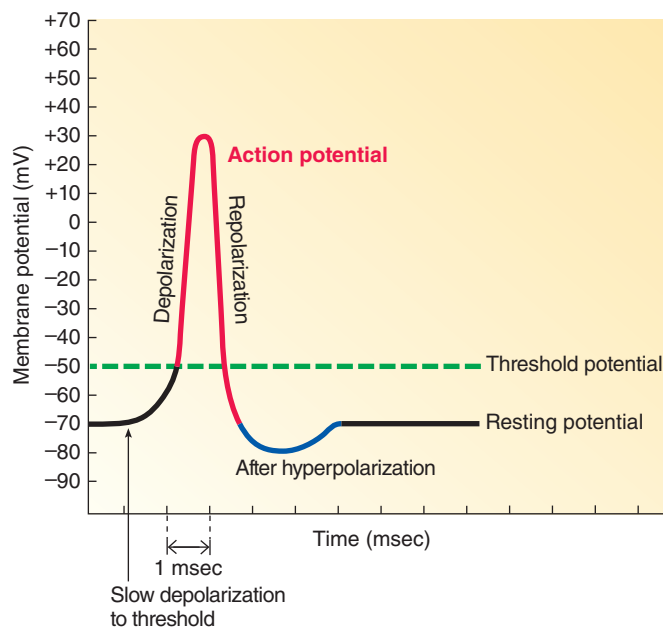
Think about the neuron that causes the muscle cells in your big toe to contract (see ● Figure 4-8, p. 79). If you want to wiggle your big toe, commands are sent from your brain down your spinal cord to initiate an action potential at the beginning of this neuron, which is located in the spinal cord. The action potential travels all the way down the neuron's long axon, which runs through your leg to terminate on your big-toe muscle cells. The signal does not weaken or die off, being instead preserved at full strength from beginning to end.

Let us now consider the changes in potential during an action potential, and the permeability and ion movements responsible for generating this change in potential, before we see how action potentials spread throughout the cell membrane without diminishing.

### During an action potential, the membrane potential rapidly, transiently reverses.

If a graded potential is large enough, it can initiate an action potential before the graded change dies off. (Later you will discover how this initiation is accomplished for the various types of graded potentials.) Typically, the region of the excitable membrane where graded potentials are produced in response to a triggering event does not undergo action potentials. Instead, passive current flow from the region where a graded potential is taking place depolarizes adjacent portions of the membrane where action potentials can occur.

Depolarization from the resting potential of  $-70$  mV proceeds slowly until it reaches a critical level known as **threshold potential**, typically between  $-50$  and  $-55$  mV (● Figure 4-4). At threshold potential, an explosive depolarization takes place. A recording of the potential at this time shows a sharp upward deflection as the potential rapidly reverses itself so that the in-



● FIGURE 4-4 Changes in membrane potential during an action potential.

side of the cell becomes positive compared to the outside. Peak potential is usually  $+30$  to  $+40$  mV, depending on the excitable cell. Just as rapidly, the membrane repolarizes, dropping back to resting potential. Often, the forces that repolarize the membrane push the potential too far, causing a brief **after hyperpolarization**, during which the inside of the membrane briefly becomes even more negative than normal (for example,  $-80$  mV) before the resting potential is restored.

The action potential is the entire rapid change in potential from threshold to peak and then back to resting. Unlike the variable duration of a graded potential, the duration of an action potential is always the same in a given excitable cell. In a neuron, an action potential lasts for only 1 msec (0.001 second). It lasts longer in muscle, with the duration depending on the muscle type. Often an action potential is referred to as a **spike** because of its spikelike recorded appearance. Alternatively, when an excitable membrane is triggered to undergo an action potential, it is said to **fire**. Thus, the terms *action potential*, *spike*, and *firing* all refer to the same phenomenon of rapid reversal of membrane potential. If the initial triggered depolarization does not reach threshold potential, no action potential takes place. Thus, threshold is a critical all-or-none point. Either the membrane is depolarized to threshold and an action potential takes place, or threshold is not reached in response to the depolarizing event and no action potential occurs.

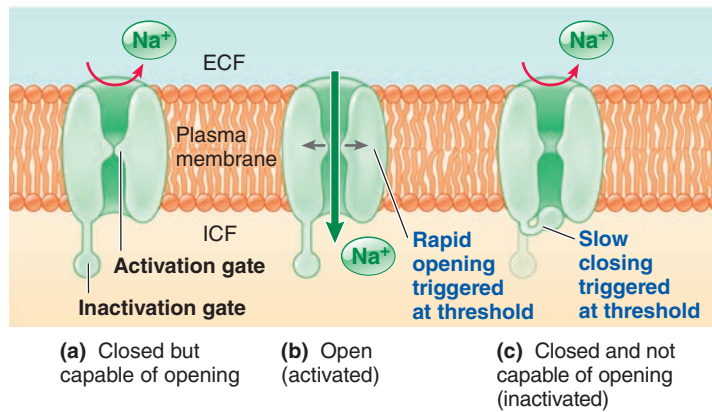
### Marked changes in membrane permeability and ion movement lead to an action potential.

How is the membrane potential, which is usually maintained at a constant resting level, altered to such an extent as to produce an action potential? Recall that  $K^+$  makes the greatest contribution to the establishment of the resting potential, because the membrane at rest is considerably more permeable to  $K^+$  than to  $Na^+$  (see p. 66). During an action potential, marked changes in membrane permeability to  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  take place, permitting rapid fluxes of these ions down their electrochemical gradients. These ion movements carry the current responsible for the potential changes that occur during an action potential. Action potentials take place as a result of the triggered opening and subsequent closing of two specific types of channels: voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channels and voltage-gated  $K^+$  channels.

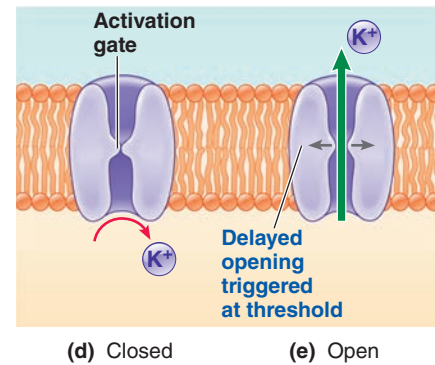
**VOLTAGE-GATED  $Na^+$  AND  $K^+$  CHANNELS** Voltage-gated membrane channels consist of proteins that have many charged groups. The electrical field (potential) surrounding the channels can distort the channel structure as charged portions of the channel proteins are electrically attracted or repelled by charges in the fluids around the membrane. Unlike most membrane proteins, which remain stable despite fluctuations in membrane potential, voltage-gated channel proteins are especially sensitive to voltage changes. Small distortions in shape induced by changes in potential can cause the channels to change their conformation. Here, again, is an example of how subtle changes in structure can profoundly influence function.

The voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channel has two gates: an activation gate and an inactivation gate (● Figure 4-5). The *activation gate*

### VOLTAGE-GATED SODIUM CHANNEL



### VOLTAGE-GATED POTASSIUM CHANNEL



● **FIGURE 4-5** Conformations of voltage-gated sodium and potassium channels.

guards the channel interior by opening and closing like a sliding door. The *inactivation gate* consists of a ball-and-chain-like sequence of amino acids at the channel opening facing the ICF. This gate is open when the ball is hanging free on the end of its chain and closed when the ball binds to the channel opening, thus blocking the opening. Both gates must be open to permit passage of  $\text{Na}^+$  through the channel, and closure of either gate prevents passage. This voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channel can exist in three conformations: (1) *closed but capable of opening* (activation gate closed, inactivation gate open, ● Figure 4-5a); (2) *open, or activated* (both gates open, ● Figure 4-5b); and (3) *closed and not capable of opening, or inactivated* (activation gate open, inactivation gate closed, ● Figure 4-5c). The channel moves through these various conformations as a result of voltage changes that take place during an action potential, as described shortly. When the action potential is over and the membrane has returned to resting potential, the channel reverts back to its “closed but capable of opening” conformation.

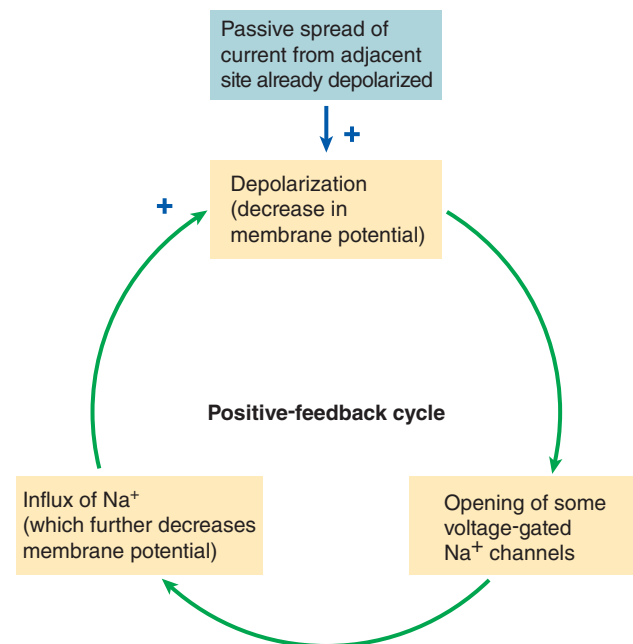
The voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channel is simpler. It has only an activation gate, which can be either closed (● Figure 4-5d) or open (● Figure 4-5e). These voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels exist in addition to the  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$  pump and the leak channels for these ions (described in Chapter 3).

**CHANGES IN PERMEABILITY AND ION MOVEMENT DURING AN ACTION POTENTIAL** At resting potential ( $-70$  mV), all voltage-gated channels for both  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  are closed, with the activation gates of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels being closed and their inactivation gates being open; that is, the voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are in their “closed but capable of opening” conformation. Therefore,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  cannot pass through these voltage-gated channels at resting potential. However, because many  $\text{K}^+$  leak channels and few  $\text{Na}^+$  leak channels are present, the resting membrane is 25 to 30 times more permeable to  $\text{K}^+$  than to  $\text{Na}^+$ .

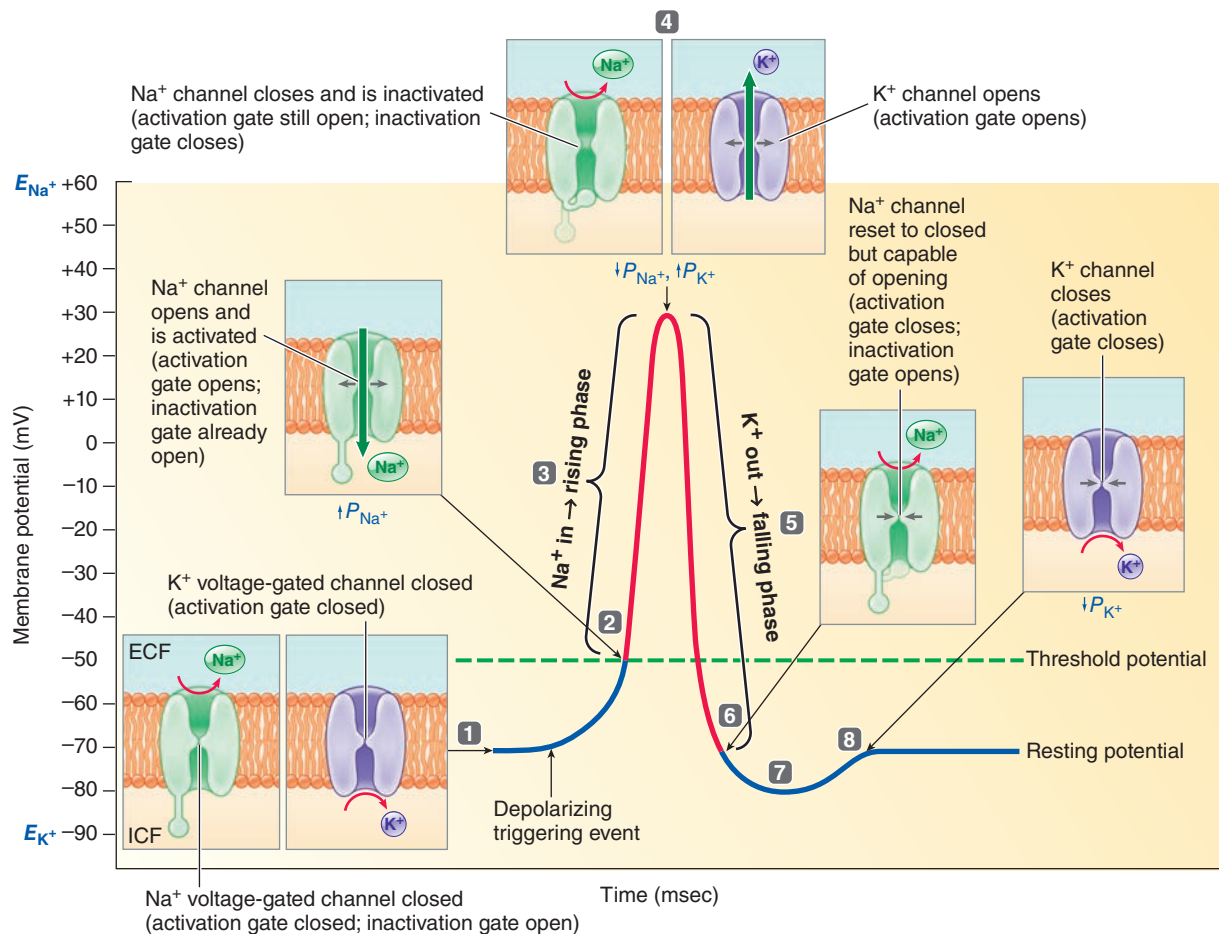
When current spreads passively from an adjacent site already depolarized (such as from a site undergoing a graded potential) into a new region still at resting potential, the new region of membrane starts to depolarize toward threshold. This depolarization causes the activation gates of some voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in the new region to open so that both gates of these activated channels are now open. Because both the concentration

and the electrical gradients for  $\text{Na}^+$  favor its movement into the cell,  $\text{Na}^+$  starts to move in. The inward movement of positively charged  $\text{Na}^+$  depolarizes the membrane further, opening even more voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels and allowing more  $\text{Na}^+$  to enter, and so on, in a positive-feedback cycle (● Figure 4-6).

At threshold potential,  $\text{Na}^+$  permeability, which is symbolized as  $P_{\text{Na}^+}$ , increases explosively as the membrane swiftly becomes about 600 times more permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  than to  $\text{K}^+$ . Each channel is either closed or open and cannot be partially open. However, the delicately poised gating mechanisms of the various voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are jolted open by slightly different voltage changes. During the early depolarizing phase, more and more  $\text{Na}^+$  channels open as the potential progressively decreases. At threshold, enough  $\text{Na}^+$  gates have opened to set off the positive-feedback cycle that rapidly causes the remaining  $\text{Na}^+$  gates to open. Now  $\text{Na}^+$  permeability dominates the membrane, in contrast to the  $\text{K}^+$  domination at resting potential. Thus, at threshold  $\text{Na}^+$  rushes into the cell,



● **FIGURE 4-6** Positive-feedback cycle responsible for opening  $\text{Na}^+$  channels at threshold.



- 1 Resting potential: all voltage-gated channels closed.
- 2 At threshold, Na<sup>+</sup> activation gate opens and  $P_{Na^+}$  rises.
- 3 Na<sup>+</sup> enters cell, causing explosive depolarization to  $+30$  mV, which generates rising phase of action potential.
- 4 At peak of action potential, Na<sup>+</sup> inactivation gate closes and  $P_{Na^+}$  falls, ending net movement of Na<sup>+</sup> into cell. At the same time, K<sup>+</sup> activation gate opens and  $P_{K^+}$  rises.
- 5 K<sup>+</sup> leaves cell, causing its repolarization to resting potential, which generates falling phase of action potential.
- 6 On return to resting potential, Na<sup>+</sup> activation gate closes and inactivation gate opens, resetting channel to respond to another depolarizing triggering event.
- 7 Further outward movement of K<sup>+</sup> through still-open K<sup>+</sup> channel briefly hyperpolarizes membrane, which generates after hyperpolarization.
- 8 K<sup>+</sup> activation gate closes, and membrane returns to resting potential.

● **FIGURE 4-7** Permeability changes and ion fluxes during an action potential.

rapidly eliminating the internal negativity and even making the inside of the cell more positive than the outside in an attempt to drive the membrane potential to the Na<sup>+</sup> equilibrium potential (which is  $+60$  mV; see p. 66). The potential reaches  $+30$  mV, close to the Na<sup>+</sup> equilibrium potential. The potential does not become any more positive, because, at the peak of the action potential, the Na<sup>+</sup> channels start to close to the inactivated state and  $P_{Na^+}$  starts to fall to its low resting value (● Figure 4-7).

What causes the Na<sup>+</sup> channels to close? When the membrane potential reaches threshold, two closely related events take place

in the gates of each Na<sup>+</sup> channel. First, the activation gates are triggered to *open rapidly* in response to the depolarization, converting the channel to its open (activated) conformation. Surprisingly, the conformational change that opens the channel also allows the inactivation gate's ball to bind to the channel opening, thereby physically blocking the mouth of the channel. However, this closure process takes time, so the inactivation gate *closes slowly* compared to the rapidity of channel opening (see ● Figure 4-5c). Meanwhile, during the 0.5-msec delay after the activation gate opens and before the inactivation gate closes, both

gates are open and  $\text{Na}^+$  rushes into the cell through these open channels, bringing the action potential to its peak. Then the inactivation gate closes, membrane permeability to  $\text{Na}^+$  plummets to its low resting value, and further  $\text{Na}^+$  entry is prevented. The channel remains in this inactivated conformation until the membrane potential has been restored to its resting value.

Simultaneous with inactivation of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels, the voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels start to slowly open at the peak of the action potential. Opening of the  $\text{K}^+$  channel gate is a delayed voltage-gated response triggered by the initial depolarization to threshold (see ● Figures 4-5e and 4-7). Thus, three action potential-related events occur at threshold: (1) rapid opening of the  $\text{Na}^+$  activation gates, which permits  $\text{Na}^+$  to enter, moving the potential from threshold to its positive peak; (2) slow closing of the  $\text{Na}^+$  inactivation gates, which halts further  $\text{Na}^+$  entry after a brief time delay, thus keeping the potential from rising any further; and (3) slow opening of the  $\text{K}^+$  gates, which is responsible for the potential plummeting from its peak back to resting.

When the voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels open at the peak of the action potential,  $\text{K}^+$  permeability (designated  $P_{\text{K}^+}$ ) greatly increases to about 300 times the resting  $P_{\text{Na}^+}$ . This marked increase in  $P_{\text{K}^+}$  causes  $\text{K}^+$  to rush out of the cell down its electrochemical gradient, carrying positive charges back to the outside. Note that at the peak of the action potential, the positive potential inside the cell tends to repel the positive  $\text{K}^+$  ions, so the electrical gradient for  $\text{K}^+$  is outward, unlike at resting potential. Of course, the concentration gradient for  $\text{K}^+$  is always outward. The outward movement of  $\text{K}^+$  rapidly restores the negative resting potential.

To review (● Figure 4-7), *the rising phase of the action potential* (from threshold to +30 mV) is due to  $\text{Na}^+$  influx ( $\text{Na}^+$  entering the cell) induced by an explosive increase in  $P_{\text{Na}^+}$  at threshold. *The falling phase* (from +30 mV to resting potential) is brought about by  $\text{K}^+$  efflux ( $\text{K}^+$  leaving the cell) caused by the marked increase in  $P_{\text{K}^+}$  occurring simultaneously with inactivation of the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels at the peak of the action potential.

As the potential returns to resting, the changing voltage shifts the  $\text{Na}^+$  channels to their “closed but capable of opening” conformation, with the activation gate closed and the inactivation gate open. Now the channel is reset, ready to respond to another triggering event. The newly opened voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels also close, so the membrane returns to the resting number of open  $\text{K}^+$  leak channels. Typically, the voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels are slow to close. As a result of this persistent increased permeability to  $\text{K}^+$ , more  $\text{K}^+$  may leave than is necessary to bring the potential to resting. This slightly excessive  $\text{K}^+$  efflux makes the interior of the cell transiently even more negative than resting potential, causing the after hyperpolarization. When the voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels all close, the membrane returns to resting potential, where it remains until another triggering event alters the gated  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels.

### The $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$ pump gradually restores the concentration gradients disrupted by action potentials.

At the completion of an action potential, the membrane potential has been restored to its resting condition, but the ion distribution has been altered slightly.  $\text{Na}^+$  entered the cell during the rising

phase, and a comparable amount of  $\text{K}^+$  left during the falling phase. The  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$  pump restores these ions to their original locations in the long run, but not after each action potential.

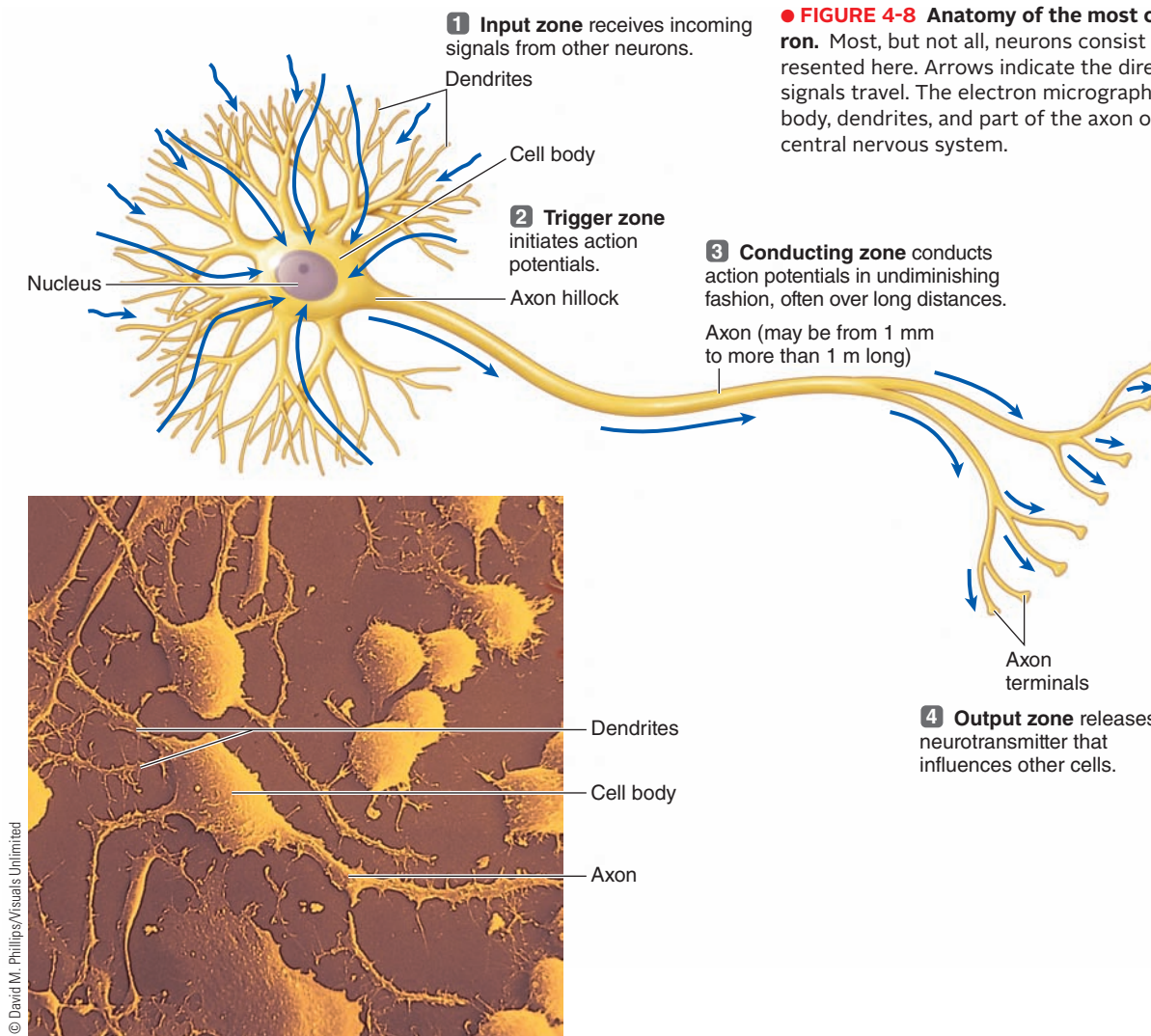
The active pumping process takes much longer to restore  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  to their original locations than it takes for the passive fluxes of these ions during an action potential. However, the membrane does not need to wait until the concentration gradients are slowly restored before it can undergo another action potential. Actually, the movement of relatively few  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  ions causes the large swings in membrane potential that occur during an action potential. Only about 1 out of 100,000  $\text{K}^+$  ions present in the cell leaves during an action potential, while a comparable number of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions enter from the ECF. The movement of this extremely small proportion of the total  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  during a single action potential produces dramatic 100 mV changes in potential (between -70 and +30 mV) but only infinitesimal changes in the ICF and ECF concentrations of these ions. Much more  $\text{K}^+$  is still inside the cell than outside, and  $\text{Na}^+$  is still predominantly an extracellular cation. Consequently, the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  concentration gradients still exist, so repeated action potentials can occur without the pump having to keep pace to restore the gradients.

Were it not for the pump, even tiny fluxes accompanying repeated action potentials would eventually “run down” the concentration gradients so that further action potentials would be impossible. If the concentrations of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  were equal between the ECF and the ICF, changes in permeability to these ions would not bring about ion fluxes, so no change in potential would occur. Thus, the  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$  pump is critical to maintaining the concentration gradients in the long run. However, it does not have to perform its role between action potentials, nor is it directly involved in the ion fluxes or potential changes that occur during an action potential.

### Action potentials are propagated from the axon hillock to the axon terminals.

A single action potential involves only a small patch of the total surface membrane of an excitable cell. But if action potentials are to serve as long-distance signals, they cannot be merely isolated events occurring in a limited area of a nerve or muscle cell membrane. Mechanisms must exist to conduct or spread the action potential throughout the entire cell membrane. Furthermore, the signal must be transmitted from one cell to the next (for example, along specific nerve pathways). To explain these mechanisms, we begin with a brief look at neuronal structure. Then we examine how an action potential (nerve impulse) is conducted throughout a neuron before we turn to how the signal is passed to another cell.

A single **neuron** typically consists of three basic parts—the *cell body*, the *dendrites*, and the *axon*—although the structure varies depending on the location and function of the neuron. The nucleus and organelles are housed in the **cell body**, from which numerous extensions known as **dendrites** typically project like antennae to increase the surface area available for receiving signals from other neurons (● Figure 4-8). Some neurons have up to 400,000 dendrites, which carry signals *toward*



● **FIGURE 4-8 Anatomy of the most common type of neuron.** Most, but not all, neurons consist of the basic parts represented here. Arrows indicate the direction in which nerve signals travel. The electron micrograph highlights the cell body, dendrites, and part of the axon of a neuron within the central nervous system.

the cell body. In most neurons, the plasma membrane of the dendrites and cell body contains protein receptors that bind chemical messengers from other neurons. Therefore, the dendrites and cell body are the neuron's *input zone*, because these components receive and integrate incoming signals. This is the region where graded potentials are produced in response to triggering events, in this case, incoming chemical messengers.

The **axon**, or **nerve fiber**, is a single, elongated, tubular extension that conducts action potentials *away from* the cell body and eventually terminates at other cells. The first portion of the axon plus the region of the cell body from which the axon leaves are known collectively as the **axon hillock** or **initial segment**. The axon hillock is the neuron's *trigger zone*, because it is the site where action potentials are triggered, or initiated, by the graded potential if it is of sufficient magnitude. The action potentials are then conducted along the axon from the axon hillock to what is typically the highly branched ending at the **axon terminals**. These terminals release chemical messengers that simultaneously influence numerous other cells with which they come into close association. Functionally, therefore, the axon is the *conducting zone* of the neuron, and the axon terminals constitute its *output zone*. (The major exceptions to this typical

neuronal structure and functional organization are neurons specialized to carry sensory information, a topic described in a later chapter.)

Axons vary in length from less than a millimeter in neurons that communicate only with neighboring cells to longer than a meter in neurons that communicate with distant parts of the nervous system or with peripheral organs. For example, the axon of the neuron innervating your big toe must traverse the distance from the origin of its cell body within the spinal cord in the lower region of your back all the way down your leg to your toe.

Action potentials can be initiated only in portions of the membrane with abundant voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels that can be triggered to open by a depolarizing event. Typically, regions of excitable cells where graded potentials take place do not undergo action potentials because voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are sparse there. Therefore, sites specialized for graded potentials do not undergo action potentials, even though they might be considerably depolarized. However, before dying out, graded potentials can trigger action potentials in adjacent portions of the membrane by bringing these more sensitive regions to threshold through local current flow spreading from the site of the graded potential. In a typical neuron, for example, graded



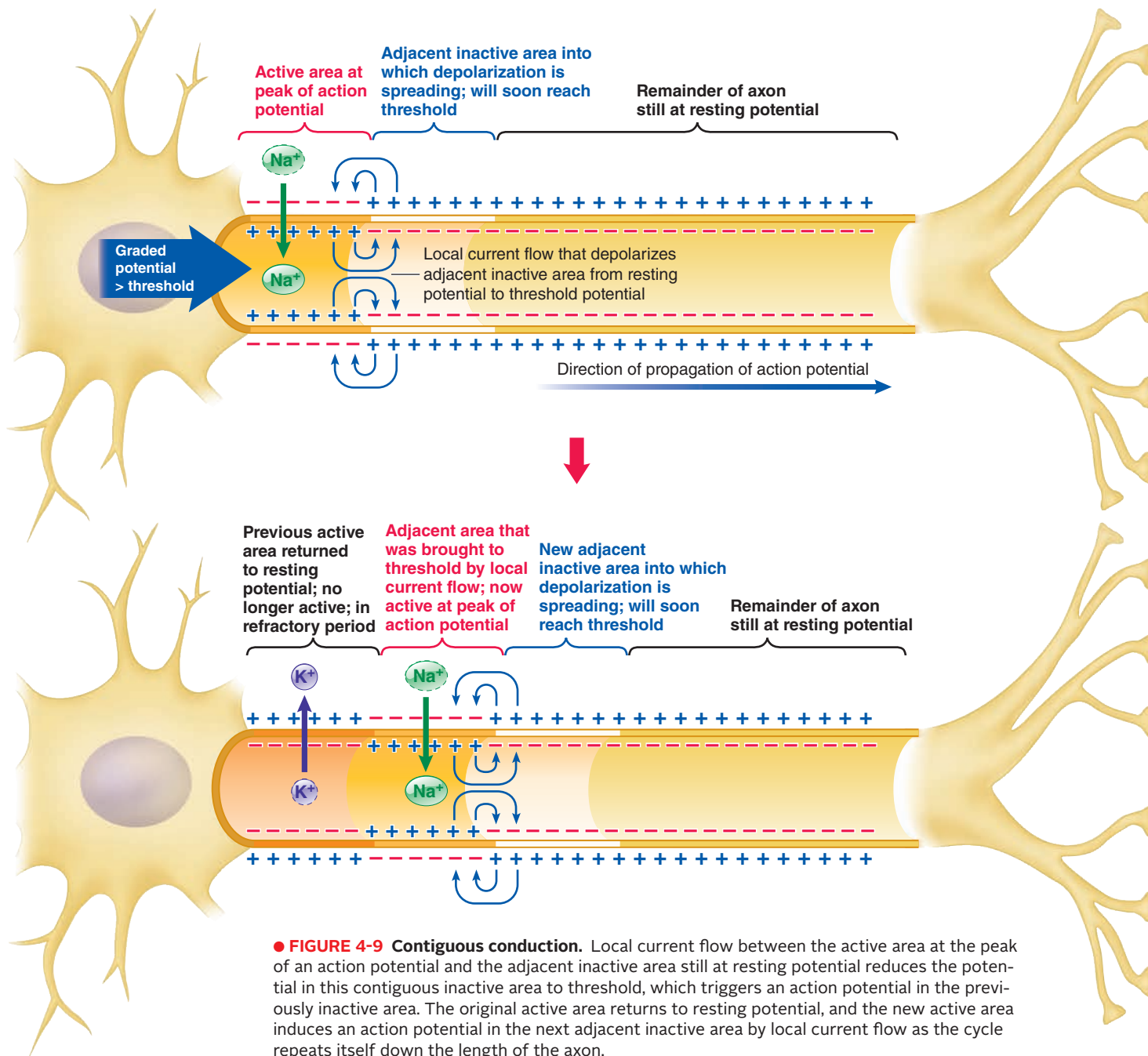
potentials are generated in the dendrites and cell body in response to incoming chemical signals. If these graded potentials have sufficient magnitude by the time they have spread to the axon hillock, they initiate an action potential at this trigger zone. The axon hillock has the lowest threshold in the neuron because of its high density of voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels.

**Once initiated, action potentials are conducted throughout a nerve fiber.**

Once an action potential is initiated at the axon hillock, no further triggering event is necessary to activate the remainder of the nerve fiber. The impulse is automatically conducted throughout the neuron without further stimulation by one of two methods of propagation: *contiguous conduction* or *saltatory*

*conduction*. Here, we discuss contiguous conduction. Saltatory conduction is discussed later.

**Contiguous conduction** involves the spread of the action potential along every patch of membrane down the length of the axon (*contiguous* means “touching” or “next to in sequence”). This process is illustrated in ● Figure 4-9, which represents a longitudinal section of the axon hillock and the portion of the axon immediately beyond it. The membrane at the axon hillock is at the peak of an action potential. The inside of the cell is positive in this active area, because  $\text{Na}^+$  has already rushed in here. The remainder of the axon, still at resting potential and negative inside, is considered inactive. For the action potential to spread from the active to the inactive areas, the inactive areas must somehow be depolarized to threshold. This depolarization is accomplished by



● **FIGURE 4-9 Contiguous conduction.** Local current flow between the active area at the peak of an action potential and the adjacent inactive area still at resting potential reduces the potential in this contiguous inactive area to threshold, which triggers an action potential in the previously inactive area. The original active area returns to resting potential, and the new active area induces an action potential in the next adjacent inactive area by local current flow as the cycle repeats itself down the length of the axon.

local current flow between the area already undergoing an action potential and the adjacent inactive area, similar to the current flow responsible for the spread of graded potentials. Because opposite charges attract, current can flow locally between the active area and the neighboring inactive area on both the inside and the outside of the membrane. This local current flow in effect neutralizes or eliminates some of the unbalanced charges in the inactive area; that is, it reduces the number of opposite charges separated across the membrane, reducing the potential in this area. This depolarizing effect quickly brings the involved inactive area to threshold, at which time the voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels in this region of the membrane are all thrown open, leading to an action potential in this previously inactive area. Meanwhile, the original active area returns to resting potential as a result of  $\text{K}^+$  efflux.

Beyond the new active area is another inactive area, so the same thing happens again. This cycle repeats itself in a chain reaction until the action potential has spread to the end of the axon. *Once an action potential is initiated in one part of a neuron's cell membrane, a self-perpetuating cycle is initiated so that the action potential is propagated along the rest of the fiber automatically.* In this way, the axon is like a firecracker fuse that needs to be lit at only one end. Once ignited, the fire spreads down the fuse; it is not necessary to hold a match to every separate section of the fuse. Therefore, a new action potential can be initiated in two ways, in both cases involving passive spread of current from an adjacent site already depolarized. An action potential is initiated in the axon hillock in the first place by depolarizing current spreading from a graded potential in the cell body and dendrites. During propagation of the action potential down the axon, each new ac-

tion potential is initiated by depolarizing local current flow spreading from the preceding site undergoing an action potential.

Note that the original action potential does not travel along the membrane. Instead, it triggers an identical new action potential in the bordering area of the membrane, with this process being repeated along the axon's length. An analogy is the "wave" at a stadium. Each section of spectators stands up (the rising phase of an action potential) and then sits down (the falling phase) in sequence one after another as the wave moves around the stadium. The wave, not individual spectators, travels around the stadium. Similarly, new action potentials arise sequentially down the axon. Each new action potential is a fresh local event that depends on induced permeability changes and electrochemical gradients that are virtually identical down the length of the axon. Therefore, the last action potential at the end of the axon is identical to the original one, no matter how long the axon is. In this way, action potentials can serve as long-distance signals without attenuation or distortion.

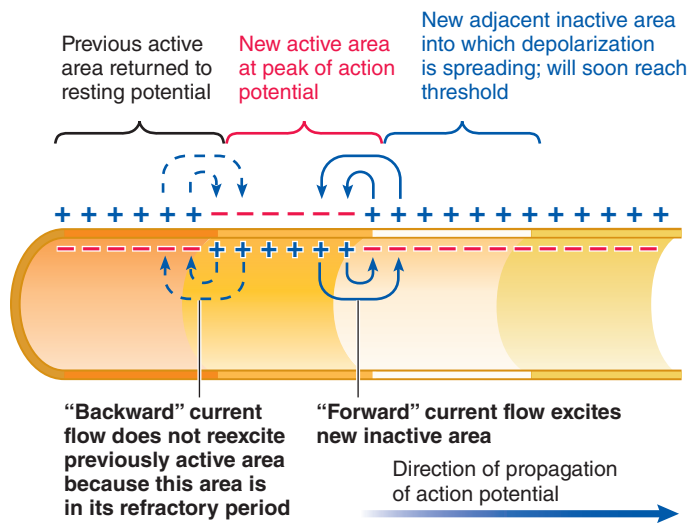
This nondecremental propagation of an action potential contrasts with the decremental spread of a graded potential, which dies out over a short distance because it cannot regenerate itself. ▲ Table 4-1 summarizes the differences between graded potentials and action potentials, some of which we have yet to discuss.

### The refractory period ensures one-way propagation of action potential.

What ensures the one-way propagation of an action potential away from the initial site of activation? Note from ● Figure 4-10 that once the action potential has been regenerated at a new

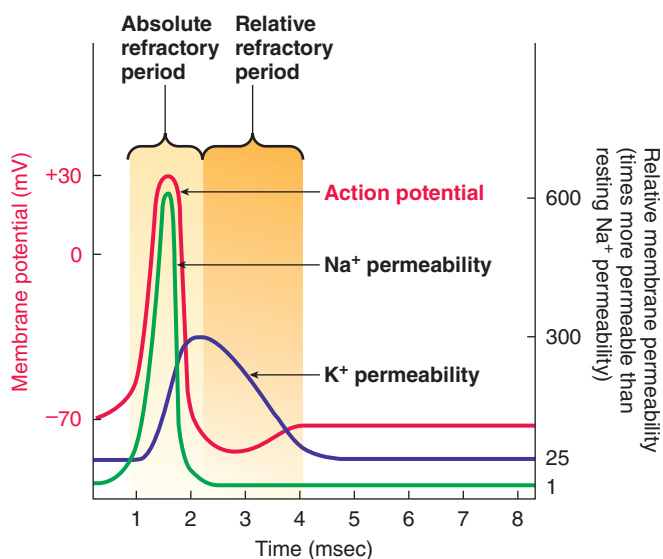
▲ Table 4-1 Comparison of Graded Potentials and Action Potentials

Property	Graded Potentials	Action Potentials
<b>Triggering events</b>	Stimulus, combination of neurotransmitter with receptor, or inherent shifts in channel permeability	Depolarization to threshold, usually through passive spread of depolarization from an adjacent area undergoing a graded potential or an action potential
<b>Ion movement producing a change in potential</b>	Net movement of $\text{Na}^+$ , $\text{K}^+$ , $\text{Cl}^-$ , or $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ across the plasma membrane by various means	Sequential movement of $\text{Na}^+$ into and $\text{K}^+$ out of the cell through voltage-gated channels
<b>Coding of the magnitude of the triggering event</b>	Graded potential change; magnitude varies with the magnitude of the triggering event	All-or-none membrane response; magnitude of the triggering event is coded in the frequency rather than the amplitude of action potentials
<b>Duration</b>	Varies with the duration of the triggering event	Constant
<b>Magnitude of the potential change with distance from the initial site</b>	Decremental conduction; magnitude diminishes with distance from the initial site	Propagated throughout the membrane in an undiminishing fashion; self-regenerated in neighboring inactive areas of the membrane
<b>Refractory period</b>	None	Relative, absolute
<b>Summation</b>	Temporal, spatial	None
<b>Direction of potential change</b>	Depolarization or hyperpolarization	Always depolarization and reversal of charges
<b>Location</b>	Specialized regions of the membrane designed to respond to the triggering event	Regions of the membrane with an abundance of voltage-gated channels



● **FIGURE 4-10 Value of the refractory period.** The refractory period prevents “backward” current flow. During an action potential and slightly afterward, an area cannot be restimulated by normal events to undergo another action potential. Thus, the refractory period ensures that an action potential can be propagated only in the forward direction along the axon.

neighboring site (now positive inside) and the original active area has returned to resting (again negative inside), the proximity of opposite charges between these two areas is conducive to local current flow in the backward direction, as well as in the forward direction into as-yet-unexcited portions of the membrane. If such backward current flow were able to bring the



● **FIGURE 4-11 Absolute and relative refractory periods.** During the absolute refractory period, the portion of the membrane that has just undergone an action potential cannot be restimulated. This period corresponds to the time during which the  $\text{Na}^+$  gates are not in their resting conformation. During the relative refractory period, the membrane can be restimulated only by a stronger stimulus than is usually necessary. This period corresponds to the time during which the  $\text{K}^+$  gates opened during the action potential have not yet closed, coupled with lingering inactivation of some voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels.

previous active area to threshold again, another action potential would be initiated here, which would spread both forward and backward, initiating still other action potentials, and so on. But if action potentials were to move in both directions, the situation would be chaotic, with numerous action potentials bouncing back and forth along the axon until the neuron eventually fatigued. Fortunately, neurons are saved from this fate of oscillating action potentials by the **refractory period**, during which a new action potential cannot be initiated by normal events in a region that has just undergone an action potential.

Because of the changing status of the voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels during and after an action potential, the refractory period has two components: the *absolute refractory period* and the *relative refractory period* (● Figure 4-11). When a particular patch of axonal membrane is undergoing an action potential, it cannot initiate another action potential, no matter how strong the depolarizing triggering event is. This period when a recently activated patch of membrane is completely refractory (meaning “stubborn” or “unresponsive”) to further stimulation is known as the **absolute refractory period**. Once the voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are triggered to open at threshold, they cannot open again in response to another depolarizing triggering event, no matter how strong, until they pass through their “closed and not capable of opening” conformation and then are reset to their “closed and capable of opening” conformation when resting potential is restored. Accordingly, the absolute refractory period lasts the entire time from threshold, through the action potential, and until return to resting potential. Only then can the voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels respond to another depolarization with an explosive increase in  $P_{\text{Na}^+}$  to initiate another action potential. Because of the absolute refractory period, one action potential must be over before another can be initiated at the same site. Action potentials cannot overlap or be added one on top of another “piggyback” fashion.

Following the absolute refractory period is a **relative refractory period**, during which a second action potential can be produced only by a triggering event considerably stronger than usual. The relative refractory period occurs after the action potential is completed because of a twofold effect. First, the voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels that opened during the action potential do not all reset at once when resting potential is reached. Some take a little longer to be restored to their capable of opening conformation. As a result, fewer voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are in a position to be jolted open in response to another depolarizing triggering event. Second, the voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels that opened at the peak of the action potential are slow to close. During this time, the resultant less-than-normal  $\text{Na}^+$  entry in response to another triggering event is opposed by  $\text{K}^+$  still leaving through its slow-to-close channels during the after hyperpolarization. Thus, a greater depolarizing triggering event than normal is needed to offset the persistent hyperpolarizing outward movement of  $\text{K}^+$  and bring the membrane to threshold during the relative refractory period.

By the time the original site has recovered from its refractory period and is capable of being restimulated by normal current flow, the action potential has been propagated in the forward direction only and is so far away that it can no longer

influence the original site. Thus, *the refractory period ensures the one-way propagation of the action potential down the axon away from the initial site of activation.*

### Action potentials occur in all-or-none fashion.

If any portion of the neuronal membrane is depolarized to threshold, an action potential is initiated and relayed along the membrane in an undiminished fashion. Furthermore, once threshold has been reached, the resultant action potential always goes to maximal height. The reason for this effect is that the changes in voltage during an action potential result from ion movements down concentration and electrical gradients, and these gradients are not affected by the strength of the depolarizing triggering event. A triggering event stronger than necessary to bring the membrane to threshold does not produce a larger action potential. However, a triggering event that fails to depolarize the membrane to threshold does not trigger an action potential at all. Thus, *an excitable membrane either responds to a triggering event with a maximal action potential that spreads nondcrementally throughout the membrane or does not respond with an action potential at all.* This property is called the **all-or-none law**.

The all-or-none concept is analogous to firing a gun. Either the trigger is not pulled sufficiently to fire the bullet (threshold is not reached), or it is pulled hard enough to elicit the full firing response of the gun (threshold is reached). Squeezing the trigger harder does not produce a greater explosion. Just as it is not possible to fire a gun halfway, it is not possible to cause a half-way action potential.

The threshold phenomenon allows some discrimination between important and unimportant stimuli or other triggering events. Stimuli too weak to bring the membrane to threshold do not initiate action potentials and therefore do not clutter up the nervous system by transmitting insignificant signals.

### The strength of a stimulus is coded by the frequency of action potentials.

How is it possible to differentiate between two stimuli of varying strengths when both stimuli bring the membrane to threshold and generate action potentials of the same magnitude? For example, how can we distinguish between touching a warm object and touching a hot object if both trigger identical action potentials in a nerve fiber relaying information about skin temperature to the central nervous system (CNS)? The answer partly lies in the *frequency* with which the action potentials are generated. A stronger stimulus does not produce a *larger* action potential, but it does trigger a greater *number* of action potentials per second. For an illustration, see ● Figure 10-31, p. 290, in which changes in blood pressure are coded by corresponding changes in the frequency of action potentials generated in the neurons monitoring blood pressure.

In addition, a stronger stimulus in a region causes more neurons to reach threshold, increasing the total information sent to the CNS. For example, lightly touch this page with your finger and note the area of skin in contact with the page. Now, press down more firmly and note that a larger surface area of

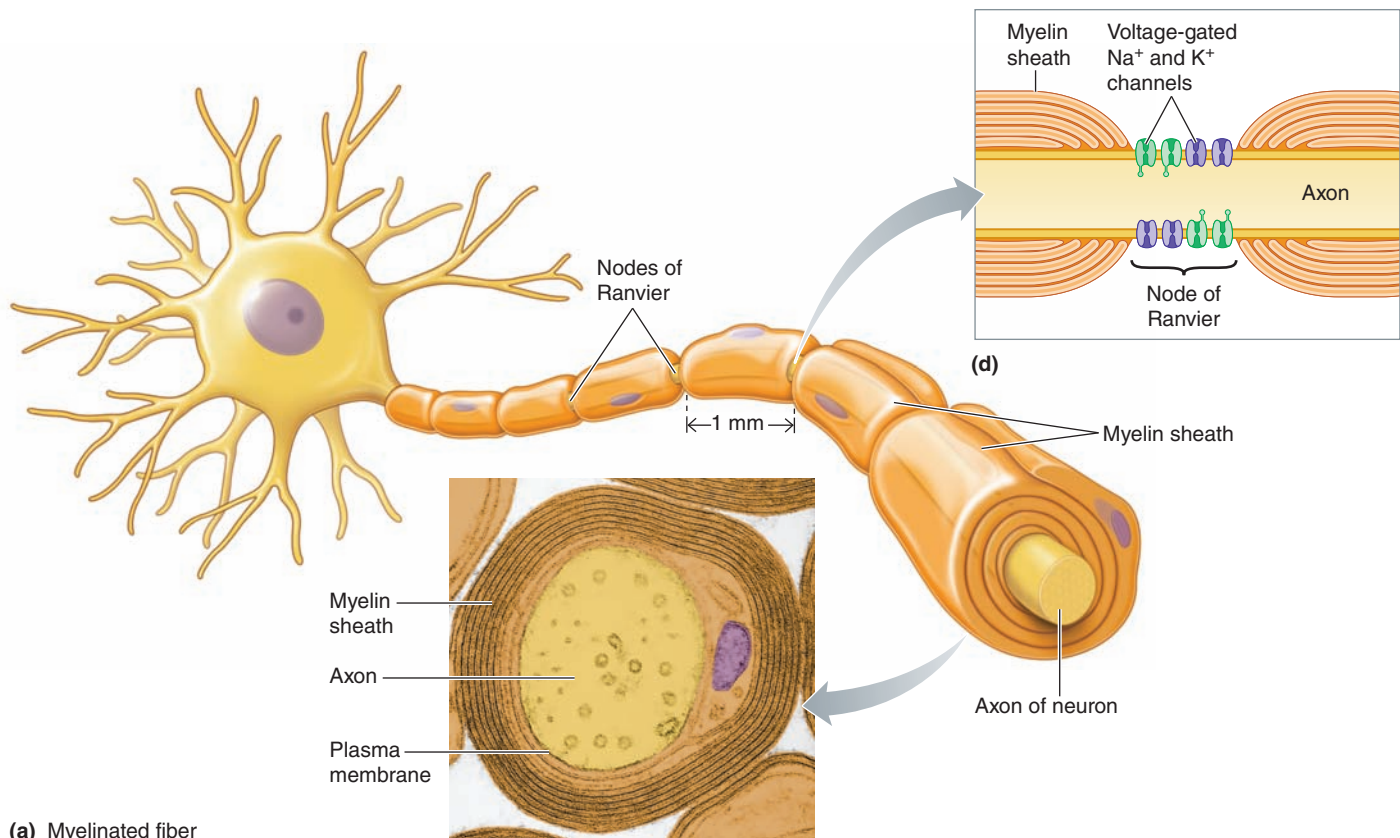
skin is in contact with the page. Therefore, more neurons are brought to threshold with this stronger touch stimulus.

Once initiated, the velocity, or speed, with which an action potential travels down the axon depends on whether the fiber is myelinated or not. Contiguous conduction occurs in unmyelinated fibers. In this case, as you just learned, each action potential initiates an identical new action potential in the next contiguous (bordering) segment of the axon membrane so that every portion of the membrane undergoes an action potential as this electrical signal is conducted from the beginning to the end of the axon. A faster method of propagation, saltatory conduction, takes place in myelinated fibers. We show next how a myelinated fiber compares with an unmyelinated fiber and then how saltatory conduction compares with contiguous conduction.

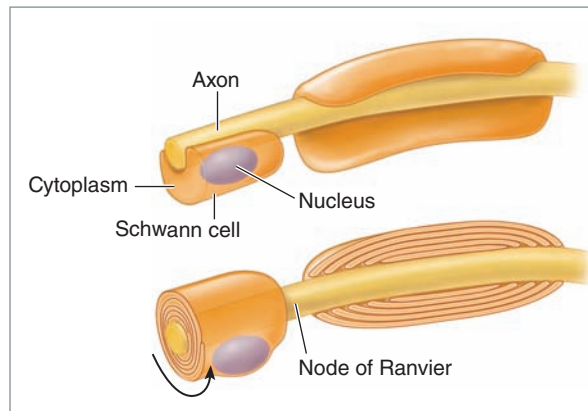
### Myelination increases the speed of conduction of action potentials.

**Myelinated fibers** are axons covered with myelin, a thick layer composed primarily of lipids, at regular intervals along their length (● Figure 4-12a). Because the water-soluble ions responsible for carrying current across the membrane cannot permeate this myelin coating, it acts as an insulator, just like plastic around an electrical wire, to prevent leakage of current across the myelinated portion of the membrane. Myelin is not actually a part of the neuron but consists of separate myelin-forming cells that wrap themselves around the axon in jelly-roll fashion. These myelin-forming cells are **Schwann cells** in the peripheral nervous system (PNS) (● Figure 4-12b) (the nerves running between the CNS and the various regions of the body), and **oligodendrocytes** in the CNS (the brain and spinal cord) (● Figure 4-12c). Each patch of lipid-rich myelin consists of multiple layers of the myelin-forming cell's plasma membrane (predominantly the lipid bilayer) as the cell repeatedly wraps itself around the axon. Between the myelinated regions, at the **nodes of Ranvier**, the axonal membrane is bare and exposed to the ECF. Current can flow across the membrane only at these bare spaces to produce action potentials. Voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels are concentrated at the nodes, whereas the myelin-covered regions are almost devoid of these special passageways (● Figure 4-12d). By contrast, an unmyelinated fiber has a high density of these voltage-gated channels along its entire length. As you now know, action potentials can be generated only at portions of the membrane furnished with an abundance of these channels.

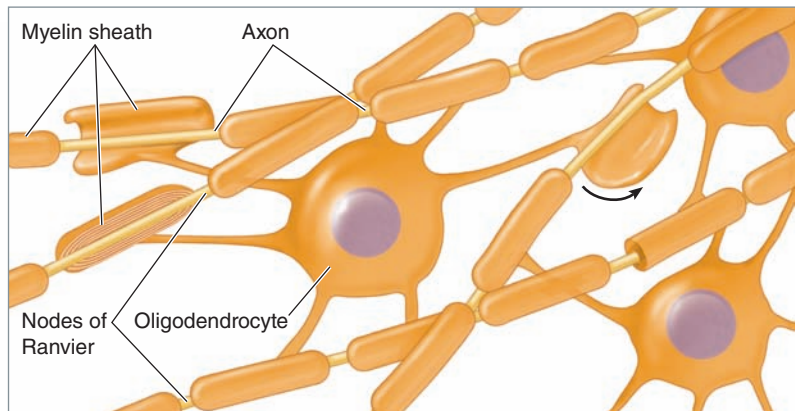
The distance between the nodes is short enough that local current can flow between an active node and an adjacent inactive node before dying off. When an action potential occurs at one node, local current flow between this node and the oppositely charged adjacent resting node reduces the adjacent node's potential to threshold so that it undergoes an action potential, and so on. Consequently, in a myelinated fiber, the impulse “jumps” from node to node, skipping over the myelinated sections of the axon; this process is called **saltatory conduction** (*saltare* means “to jump or leap”). Saltatory conduction propagates action potentials more rapidly than contiguous conduction does, because the action potential does not have to be



(a) Myelinated fiber



(b) Schwann cells in peripheral nervous system



(c) Oligodendrocytes in central nervous system

● **FIGURE 4-12 Myelinated fibers.** (a) A myelinated fiber is surrounded by myelin at regular intervals. The intervening bare, unmyelinated regions are known as nodes of Ranvier. The electron micrograph shows a myelinated fiber in cross section at a myelinated region. (b) In the peripheral nervous system, each patch of myelin is formed by a separate Schwann cell that wraps itself jelly-roll fashion around the nerve fiber. (c) In the central nervous system, each of the several processes (“arms”) of a myelin-forming oligodendrocyte forms a patch of myelin around a separate nerve fiber. (d) Voltage-gated channels can be seen concentrated at a node of Ranvier in this longitudinal section.

regenerated at myelinated sections but must be regenerated within every section of an unmyelinated axonal membrane from beginning to end. Myelinated fibers conduct impulses about 50 times faster than unmyelinated fibers of comparable size. You can think of myelinated fibers as the “superhighways” and unmyelinated fibers as the “back roads” of the nervous system when it comes to the speed with which information can

be transmitted. Thus, the most urgent types of information are transmitted via myelinated fibers, whereas nerve pathways carrying less urgent information are unmyelinated.

**Multiple sclerosis (MS)** is a pathophysiologic condition in which nerve fibers in various locations throughout the nervous system lose their myelin. MS is an autoimmune disease (*auto* means “self”; *immune*



means “defense against”) in which the body’s defense system erroneously attacks the myelin sheath surrounding myelinated nerve fibers. Loss of myelin slows transmission of impulses in the affected neurons. A hardened scar known as a *sclerosis* (meaning “hard”) forms at the multiple sites of myelin damage. These scars interfere with and can eventually block the propagation of action potentials in the underlying axons. The symptoms of MS vary considerably, depending on the extent and location of the myelin damage.

You have now seen how an action potential is propagated along the axon. But what happens when an action potential reaches the end of the axon?

## Synapses and Neuronal Integration

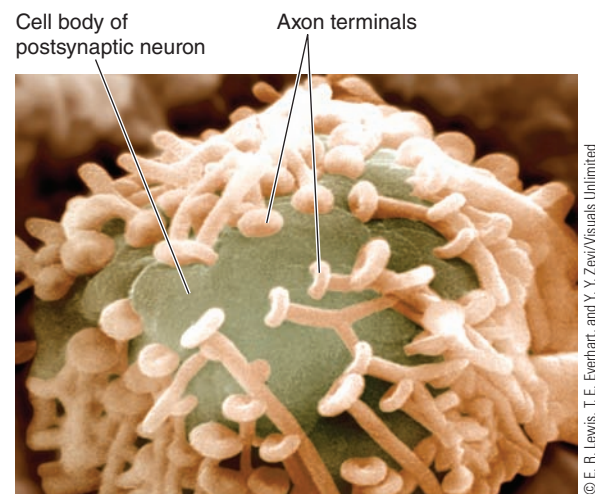
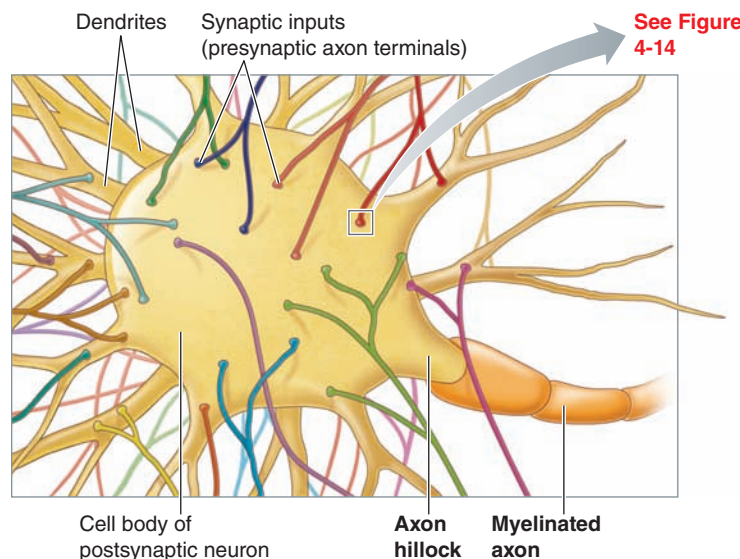
When the action potential reaches the axon terminals, they release a chemical messenger that alters the activity of the cells on which the neuron terminates. A neuron may terminate on one of three structures: a muscle, a gland, or another neuron. Therefore, depending on where a neuron terminates, it can cause a muscle cell to contract, a gland cell to secrete, another neuron to convey an electrical message along a nerve pathway, or some other function. When a neuron terminates on a muscle or a gland, the neuron is said to **innervate**, or supply, the structure. The junctions between the nerves and the muscles and glands that they innervate are described later. For now, we concentrate on the junction between two neurons—a **synapse** (*synapsis* means “juncture”). (Sometimes the term *synapse* is used to describe a junction between any two excitable cells, but we reserve this term for the junction between two neurons.)

### Synapses are junctions between presynaptic and postsynaptic neurons.

Typically, a synapse involves a junction between an axon terminal of one neuron, known as the *presynaptic neuron*, and the dendrites or cell body of a second neuron, known as the *postsynaptic neuron*. (*Pre* means “before,” and *post* means “after”; the presynaptic neuron lies before the synapse, and the postsynaptic neuron lies after the synapse.) The dendrites and, to a lesser extent, the cell body of most neurons receive thousands of synaptic inputs, which are axon terminals from many other neurons. Some neurons in the CNS receive as many as 100,000 synaptic inputs (● Figure 4-13).

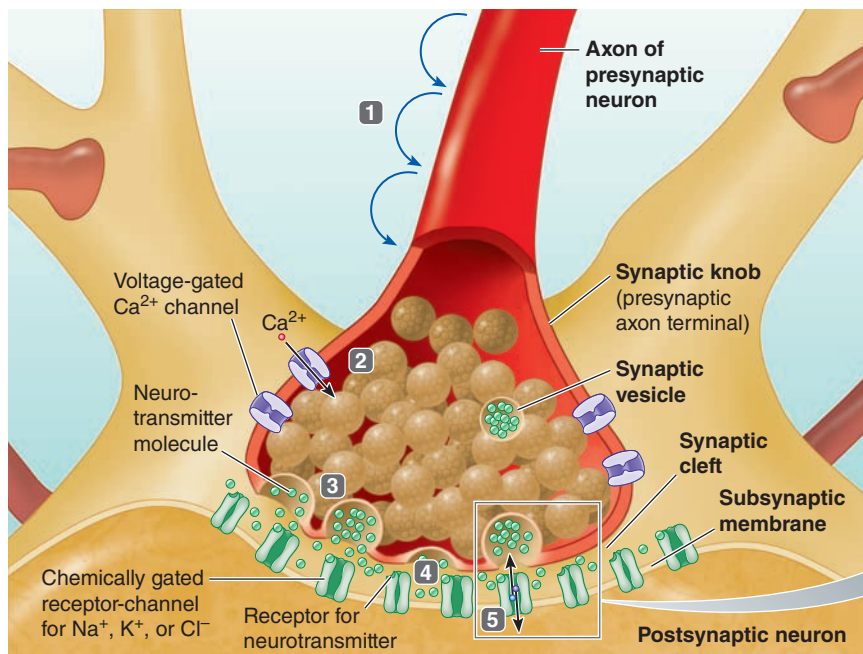
The anatomy of one of these thousands of synapses is shown in ● Figure 4-14. The axon terminal of the **presynaptic neuron**, which conducts its action potentials *toward* the synapse, ends in a slight swelling, the **synaptic knob**. The synaptic knob contains **synaptic vesicles**, which store a specific chemical messenger, a **neurotransmitter** that has been synthesized and packaged by the presynaptic neuron. The synaptic knob comes close to, but does not touch, the **postsynaptic neuron**, whose action potentials are propagated *away from* the synapse. The space between the presynaptic and the postsynaptic neurons, the **synaptic cleft**, is too wide for the direct spread of current from one cell to the other and therefore prevents action potentials from electrically passing between the neurons.

Instead, an action potential in the presynaptic neuron alters the postsynaptic neuron’s potential by chemical means. Synapses operate in one direction only; that is, the presynaptic neuron brings about changes in the membrane potential of the postsynaptic neuron, but the postsynaptic neuron does not directly influence the potential of the presynaptic neuron. The reason for this becomes readily apparent when you examine the events that occur at a synapse.

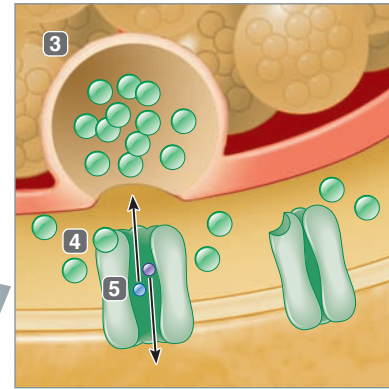


● **FIGURE 4-13** Synaptic inputs (presynaptic axon terminals) to the cell body and dendrites of a single postsynaptic neuron. The drying process used to prepare the neuron for the electron micrograph has toppled the presynaptic axon terminals and pulled them away from the postsynaptic cell body.

© E. R. Lewis, T. E. Everhart, and Y. Y. Zevu/Visuals Unlimited



- 1 Action potential reaches axon terminal of presynaptic neuron.
- 2  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  enters synaptic knob (presynaptic axon terminal).
- 3 Neurotransmitter is released by exocytosis into synaptic cleft.
- 4 Neurotransmitter binds to receptors that are an integral part of chemically gated channels on subsynaptic membrane of postsynaptic neuron.
- 5 Binding of neurotransmitter to receptor-channel opens that specific channel.



● **FIGURE 4-14 Structure and function of a single synapse.** The numbered steps designate the sequence of events that take place at a synapse. The blowup depicts the release by exocytosis of neurotransmitter from the presynaptic axon terminal and its subsequent binding with receptors specific for it on the subsynaptic membrane of the postsynaptic neuron.

### A neurotransmitter carries the signal across a synapse.

When an action potential in a presynaptic neuron has been propagated to the axon terminal (● Figure 4-14, step 1), this local change in potential triggers the opening of voltage-gated calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) channels in the synaptic knob. Because  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is more highly concentrated in the ECF (see p. 59), this ion flows into the synaptic knob through the open channels (step 2).  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  promotes the release of a neurotransmitter from some synaptic vesicles into the synaptic cleft (step 3). The release is accomplished by exocytosis (see p. 24). The released neurotransmitter diffuses across the cleft and binds with specific protein receptors on the **subsynaptic membrane**, the portion of the postsynaptic membrane immediately underlying the synaptic knob (*sub* means “under”) (step 4). These receptors are an integral part of specific ion channels. These combined receptor and channel units are appropriately known as **receptor-channels**. Binding of neurotransmitter to the receptor-channels causes the channels to open, changing the ion permeability of the postsynaptic neuron (step 5). These are chemically gated channels, in contrast to the voltage-gated channels responsible for the action potential and for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx into the synaptic knob. Because the presynaptic terminal releases the neurotransmitter and the subsynaptic membrane of the postsynaptic neuron has receptor-channels for the neurotransmitter, the synapse can operate only in the direction from presynaptic to postsynaptic neuron.

### Some synapses excite, whereas others inhibit, the postsynaptic neuron.

Each presynaptic neuron typically releases only one neurotransmitter; however, different neurons vary in the neurotransmitter they release. On binding with their subsynaptic receptor-channels, different neurotransmitters cause different ion permeability changes. There are two types of synapses, depending on the resultant permeability changes: *excitatory synapses* and *inhibitory synapses*.

**EXCITATORY SYNAPSES** At an **excitatory synapse**, the receptor-channels to which the neurotransmitter binds are nonspecific cation channels that permit simultaneous passage of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  through them. (These are a different type of channel from those you have encountered before.) When these channels open in response to neurotransmitter binding, permeability to both these ions is increased at the same time. How much of each ion diffuses through an open cation channel depends on their electrochemical gradients. At resting potential, both the concentration and the electrical gradients for  $\text{Na}^+$  favor its movement into the postsynaptic neuron, whereas only the concentration gradient for  $\text{K}^+$  favors its movement outward. Therefore, the permeability change induced at an excitatory synapse results in the movement of a few  $\text{K}^+$  ions out of the postsynaptic neuron, while a larger number of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions simultaneously enter this neuron. The result is net movement of positive ions into the cell.

This makes the inside of the membrane slightly less negative than at resting potential, thus producing a *small depolarization* of the postsynaptic neuron.

Activation of one excitatory synapse can rarely depolarize the postsynaptic neuron enough to bring it to threshold. Too few channels are involved at a single subsynaptic membrane to permit adequate ion flow to reduce the potential to threshold. This small depolarization, however, does bring the membrane of the postsynaptic neuron closer to threshold, increasing the likelihood that threshold will be reached (in response to further excitatory input) and that an action potential will occur. That is, the membrane is now more excitable (easier to bring to threshold) than when at rest. Accordingly, the change in postsynaptic potential occurring at an excitatory synapse is called an **excitatory postsynaptic potential**, or **EPSP** (● Figure 4-15a).

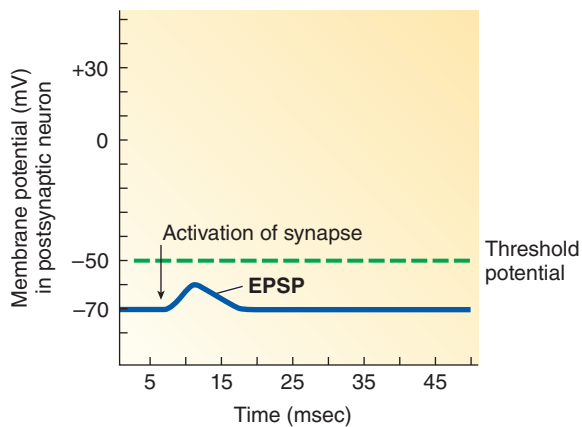
**INHIBITORY SYNAPSES** At an **inhibitory synapse**, binding of a neurotransmitter with its receptor-channels increases the permeability of the subsynaptic membrane to either  $K^+$  or chloride ( $Cl^-$ ), depending on the synapse. The resulting ion movements

bring about a *small hyperpolarization* of the postsynaptic neuron—that is, greater internal negativity. In the case of increased  $P_{K^+}$ , more positive charges leave the cell via  $K^+$  efflux, leaving more negative charges behind on the inside. In the case of increased  $P_{Cl^-}$ , because the concentration of  $Cl^-$  is higher outside the cell, negative charges enter the cell in the form of  $Cl^-$  ions. In either case, this small hyperpolarization moves the membrane potential even farther from threshold (● Figure 4-15b), lessening the likelihood that the postsynaptic neuron will reach threshold and undergo an action potential. That is, the membrane is now less excitable (harder to bring to threshold by excitatory input) than when it is at resting potential. The membrane is said to be inhibited under these circumstances, and the small hyperpolarization of the postsynaptic cell is called an **inhibitory postsynaptic potential**, or **IPSP**.

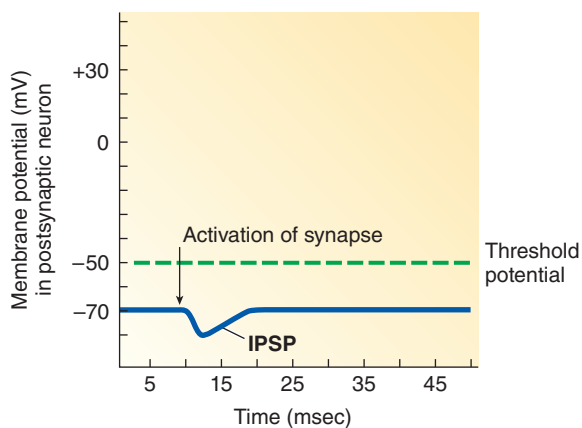
Note that EPSPs and IPSPs are produced by opening of chemically gated channels, unlike action potentials, which are produced by opening of voltage-gated channels.

### Each neurotransmitter–receptor combination always produces the same response.

Many chemicals serve as neurotransmitters (▲ Table 4-2). Even though neurotransmitters vary from synapse to synapse, the same neurotransmitter is always released at a particular synapse. Furthermore, at a given synapse, binding of a neurotransmitter with its appropriate subsynaptic receptor-channels always leads to the same change in permeability and resultant change in potential of the postsynaptic membrane. That is, the response to a given neurotransmitter–receptor combination is always the same; the combination does not generate an EPSP under one circumstance and an IPSP under another. Some neurotransmitters (for example, *glutamate*, the most common excitatory neurotransmitter in the brain) typically bring about EPSPs, whereas others (for example, *gamma-aminobutyric acid*, or *GABA*, the brain's main inhibitory neurotransmitter) always produce IPSPs. Still other neurotransmitters (for example, *norepinephrine*) can produce EPSPs at one synapse and IPSPs at a different synapse, because different permeability changes occur in response to the binding of this same neurotransmitter to different postsynaptic neurons. Yet the response at a given norepinephrine-influenced synapse is always either excitatory or inhibitory.



(a) Excitatory synapse



(b) Inhibitory synapse

● **FIGURE 4-15 Postsynaptic potentials.** (a) An excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP) brought about by activation of an excitatory presynaptic input brings the postsynaptic neuron closer to threshold potential. (b) An inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP) brought about by activation of an inhibitory presynaptic input moves the postsynaptic neuron farther from threshold potential.

### ▲ Table 4-2 Some Common Neurotransmitters

Acetylcholine	Histamine
Dopamine	Glycine
Norepinephrine	Glutamate
Epinephrine	Aspartate
Serotonin	Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)



## Neurotransmitters are quickly removed from the synaptic cleft.

As long as the neurotransmitter remains bound to the receptor-channels, the alteration in membrane permeability responsible for the EPSP or IPSP continues. For the postsynaptic neuron to be ready to receive additional messages from the same or other presynaptic inputs, the neurotransmitter must be inactivated or removed from the postsynaptic cleft after it has produced the appropriate response in the postsynaptic neuron; that is, the postsynaptic “slate” must be “wiped clean.” Thus, after combining with the postsynaptic receptor-channel, chemical transmitters are removed and the response is terminated.

Several mechanisms can remove the neurotransmitter: It may diffuse away from the synaptic cleft, be inactivated by specific enzymes within the subsynaptic membrane, or be actively taken back up into the axon terminal by transport mechanisms in the presynaptic membrane. The method employed depends on the particular synapse.



Some drugs work by interfering with removal of specific neurotransmitters from synapses. For example, **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, as their name implies, selectively block the reuptake of *serotonin* into presynaptic axon terminals, thereby prolonging the action of this neurotransmitter at synapses that use this messenger. SSRIs, such as *Prozac* and *Paxil*, are prescribed to treat depression, which is characterized by a deficiency of serotonin, among other things. Serotonin is involved in neural pathways that regulate mood and behavior.

## The grand postsynaptic potential depends on the sum of the activities of all presynaptic inputs.

EPSPs and IPSPs are graded potentials. Unlike action potentials, which behave according to the all-or-none law, graded potentials can be of varying magnitude, have no refractory period, and can be summed (added on top of one another). What are the mechanisms and significance of summation?

The events that occur at a single synapse result in either an EPSP or an IPSP at the postsynaptic neuron. But if a single EPSP is inadequate to bring the postsynaptic neuron to threshold and an IPSP moves it even farther from threshold, how can an action potential be initiated in the postsynaptic neuron? The answer lies in the thousands of presynaptic inputs that a typical neuronal cell body receives from many other neurons. Some of these presynaptic inputs may be carrying sensory information from the environment; some may be signaling internal changes in homeostatic balance; others may be transmitting signals from control centers in the brain; and still others may arrive carrying other bits of information. At any given time, any number of these presynaptic neurons (probably hundreds) may be firing and thus influencing the postsynaptic neuron's level of activity. The total potential in the postsynaptic neuron, the **grand postsynaptic potential (GPSP)**, is a composite of all EPSPs and IPSPs occurring around the same time.

The postsynaptic neuron can be brought to threshold by either *temporal summation* or *spatial summation*. To illustrate these methods of summation, we examine the possible interac-

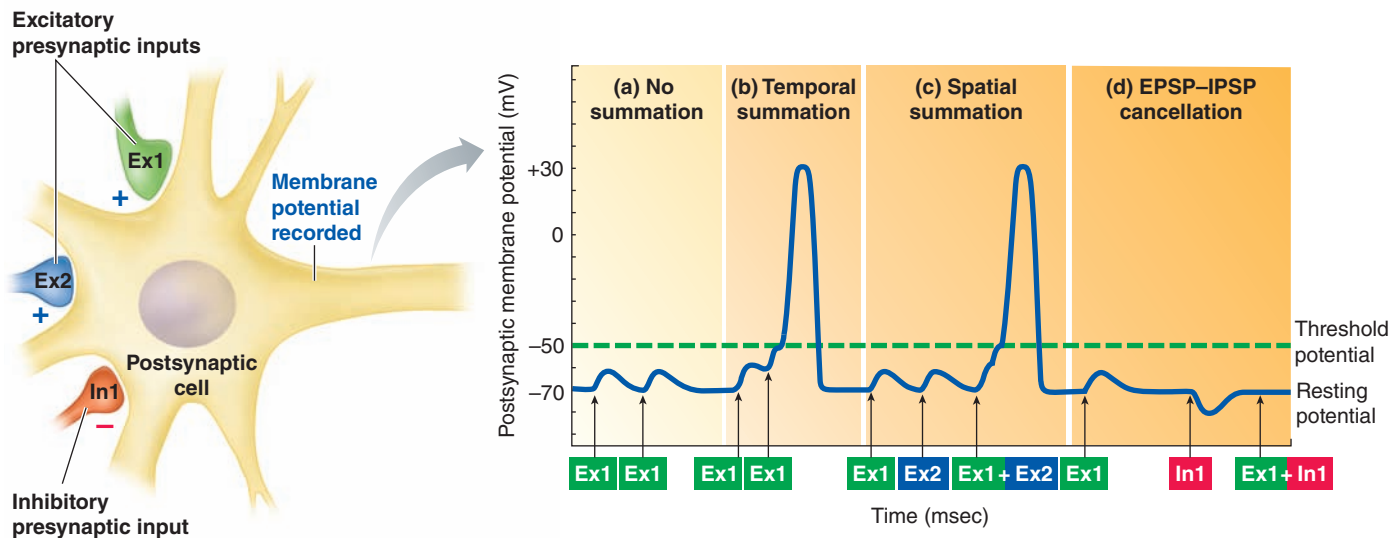
tions of three presynaptic inputs—two excitatory inputs (Ex1 and Ex2) and one inhibitory input (In1)—on a hypothetical postsynaptic neuron (● Figure 4-16). The recording shown in the figure represents the potential in the postsynaptic cell. Bear in mind during our discussion of this simplified version that many thousands of synapses are actually interacting in the same way on a single cell body and its dendrites.

**TEMPORAL SUMMATION** Suppose that Ex1 has an action potential that causes an EPSP in the postsynaptic neuron. After this EPSP has died off, if another action potential occurs in Ex1, an EPSP of the same magnitude takes place before dying off (● Figure 4-16a). Next, suppose that Ex1 has two action potentials in close succession (● Figure 4-16b). The first action potential in Ex1 produces an EPSP in the postsynaptic membrane. While the postsynaptic membrane is still partially depolarized from this first EPSP, the second action potential in Ex1 produces a second EPSP. Because graded potentials do not have a refractory period, the second EPSP can add to the first, bringing the membrane to threshold and initiating an action potential in the postsynaptic neuron. EPSPs can add together or sum because an EPSP lasts longer than the action potential that caused it. The presynaptic neuron (Ex1) can recover from its refractory period following the first action potential and have a second action potential, causing a second EPSP in the postsynaptic neuron, before the first EPSP is finished.

The summing of several EPSPs occurring very close together in time because of successive firing of a single presynaptic neuron is known as **temporal summation** (*tempus* means “time”). In reality, up to 50 EPSPs might be needed to bring the postsynaptic membrane to threshold. Each action potential in a single presynaptic neuron triggers the emptying of a certain number of synaptic vesicles. The amount of neurotransmitter released and the resultant magnitude of the change in postsynaptic potential are thus directly related to the frequency of presynaptic action potentials. One way in which the postsynaptic membrane can be brought to threshold, then, is through rapid, repetitive excitation from a single persistent input.

**SPATIAL SUMMATION** Let us now see what happens in the postsynaptic neuron if both excitatory inputs are stimulated simultaneously (● Figure 4-16c). An action potential in either Ex1 or Ex2 produces an EPSP in the postsynaptic neuron; however, neither of these alone brings the membrane to threshold to elicit a postsynaptic action potential. But simultaneous action potentials in Ex1 and Ex2 produce EPSPs that add to each other, bringing the postsynaptic membrane to threshold, so an action potential does occur. The summation of EPSPs originating simultaneously from several presynaptic inputs (that is, from different points in “space”) is known as **spatial summation**. A second way to elicit an action potential in a postsynaptic cell, therefore, is through concurrent activation of several excitatory inputs. Again, in reality, up to 50 simultaneous EPSPs are required to bring the postsynaptic membrane to threshold.

Similarly, IPSPs can undergo both temporal and spatial summation. As IPSPs add together, however, they progressively move the potential farther from threshold.



- (a) If an excitatory presynaptic input (Ex1) is stimulated a second time after the first EPSP in the postsynaptic cell has died off, a second EPSP of the same magnitude will occur.
- (b) If, however, Ex1 is stimulated a second time before the first EPSP has died off, the second EPSP will add on to, or sum with, the first EPSP, resulting in *temporal summation*, which may bring the postsynaptic cell to threshold.
- (c) The postsynaptic cell may also be brought to threshold by *spatial summation* of EPSPs that are initiated by simultaneous activation of two (Ex1 and Ex2) or more excitatory presynaptic inputs.
- (d) Simultaneous activation of an excitatory (Ex1) and inhibitory (In1) presynaptic input does not change the postsynaptic potential, because the resultant EPSP and IPSP cancel each other out.

● **FIGURE 4-16 Determination of the grand postsynaptic potential by the sum of activity in the presynaptic inputs.** Two excitatory (Ex1 and Ex2) and one inhibitory (In1) presynaptic inputs terminate on this hypothetical postsynaptic neuron. The potential of the postsynaptic neuron is being recorded. For simplicity in the figure, summation of two EPSPs brings the postsynaptic neuron to threshold, but in reality many EPSPs must sum to reach threshold.

**CANCELLATION OF CONCURRENT EPSP AND IPSP** If an excitatory and an inhibitory input are simultaneously activated, the concurrent EPSP and IPSP more or less cancel each other out. The extent of cancellation depends on their respective magnitudes. In most cases, the postsynaptic membrane potential remains close to resting potential (● Figure 4-16d).

**IMPORTANCE OF POSTSYNAPTIC NEURONAL INTEGRATION** The magnitude of the GPSP depends on the sum of activity in all presynaptic inputs and, in turn, determines whether or not the postsynaptic neuron will undergo an action potential to pass information on to the cells on which the neuron terminates. The following oversimplified real-life example demonstrates the benefits of this neuronal integration. The explanation is not completely accurate technically, but the principles of summation are accurate.

Assume for simplicity's sake that urination is controlled by a postsynaptic neuron that innervates the urinary bladder. When this neuron fires, the bladder contracts. (Actually, voluntary control of urination is accomplished by postsynaptic integration at the neuron controlling the external urethral sphincter rather than the bladder itself.) As the bladder fills with urine and becomes stretched, a reflex is initiated that ultimately produces EPSPs in the postsynaptic neuron responsible for causing bladder contraction. Partial filling of the bladder does not cause

enough excitation to bring the neuron to threshold, so urination does not take place. That is, action potentials do not occur frequently enough in presynaptic neuron Ex1, which fires reflexly in response to the degree of bladder stretching, to generate EPSPs close enough together in the postsynaptic neuron to bring the latter to threshold (● Figure 4-16a). As the bladder progressively fills, the frequency of action potentials progressively increases in presynaptic neuron Ex1, leading to more rapid formation of EPSPs in the postsynaptic neuron. Thus, the frequency of EPSP formation arising from Ex1 activity signals the postsynaptic neuron of the extent of bladder filling. When the bladder becomes sufficiently stretched that the Ex1-generated EPSPs are temporally summed to threshold, the postsynaptic neuron undergoes an action potential that stimulates bladder contraction (● Figure 4-16b).

What if the time is inopportune for urination to take place? Presynaptic inputs originating in higher levels of the brain responsible for voluntary control can produce IPSPs at the bladder postsynaptic neuron (In1 in ● Figure 4-16d). These “voluntary” IPSPs in effect cancel out the “reflex” EPSPs triggered by stretching of the bladder. Thus, the postsynaptic neuron remains at resting potential and does not have an action potential, so the bladder is prevented from contracting and emptying even though it is full.

What if a person's bladder is only partially filled, so that the presynaptic input from this source (Ex1) is insufficient to bring the postsynaptic neuron to threshold to cause bladder contraction, yet the individual needs to supply a urine specimen for laboratory analysis? The person can voluntarily activate another excitatory presynaptic neuron originating in higher brain levels (Ex2 in ● Figure 4-16c). The “voluntary” EPSPs arising from Ex2 activity and the “reflex” EPSPs arising from Ex1 activity are spatially summed to bring the postsynaptic neuron to threshold. This achieves the action potential necessary to stimulate bladder contraction, even though the bladder is not full.

This example illustrates the importance of postsynaptic neuronal integration. Each postsynaptic neuron in a sense “computes” all the input it receives and “decides” whether to pass the information on (that is, whether threshold is reached and an action potential is transmitted down the axon). In this way, neurons serve as complex computational devices, or integrators. The dendrites function as the primary processors of incoming information. They receive and tally the signals from all presynaptic neurons. Each neuron's output in the form of frequency of action potentials to other cells (muscle cells, gland cells, or other neurons) reflects the balance of activity in the inputs it receives via EPSPs or IPSPs from the thousands of other neurons that terminate on it. Each postsynaptic neuron filters out information that is not significant enough to bring it to threshold and does not pass it on. If every action potential in every presynaptic neuron that impinges on a particular postsynaptic neuron were to cause an action potential in the postsynaptic neuron, the neuronal pathways would be overwhelmed with trivia. Only if an excitatory presynaptic signal is reinforced by other supporting signals through summation will the information be passed on. Furthermore, interaction of EPSPs and IPSPs provides a way for one set of signals to offset another, allowing a fine degree of discrimination and control in determining what information will be passed on.

### Some neurons secrete neuromodulators in addition to neurotransmitters.

In addition to secreting classical neurotransmitters that act rapidly to bring about a change in the potential of a postsynaptic neuron (an EPSP or an IPSP), some neurons co-secrete larger molecules known as **neuropeptides** from distinctly different vesicles in the axon terminal at the same time that the neurotransmitter is released. Most neuropeptides function as **neuromodulators** that do not cause the formation of EPSPs or IPSPs but instead act slowly to bring about long-term changes that subtly *modulate* (that is, depress or enhance) the action of the synapse. The neuronal receptors to which neuromodulators bind are not located on the subsynaptic membrane, and they do not directly alter membrane permeability and potential. Neuromodulators may act at either presynaptic or postsynaptic sites. For example, a neuromodulator may influence the level of an enzyme involved in the synthesis of a neurotransmitter by a presynaptic neuron, or it may alter the sensitivity of the postsynaptic neuron to a particular neurotransmitter by causing long-term changes in the number of subsynaptic receptors for the neurotransmitter.

Thus, neuromodulators delicately fine-tune the synaptic response. Whereas neurotransmitters are involved in rapid communication between neurons, neuromodulators are involved with more long-lasting events, such as learning and motivation.

Interestingly, the synaptically released neuromodulators include many substances that also have distinctly different roles as hormones released into the blood from endocrine tissues. Therefore, some hormones also act as neuromodulators to influence synaptic function.

### Drugs and diseases can modify synaptic transmission.



Most drugs that influence the nervous system function by altering synaptic mechanisms. Synaptic drugs may block an undesirable effect or enhance a desirable effect. Possible drug actions include (1) altering the synthesis, storage, or release of a neurotransmitter; (2) modifying neurotransmitter interaction with the postsynaptic receptor; (3) influencing neurotransmitter reuptake or destruction; and (4) replacing a deficient neurotransmitter with a substitute transmitter.

You already learned about SSRIs. As another example, the socially abused drug **cocaine** blocks the reuptake of the neurotransmitter *dopamine* at presynaptic terminals. It does so by binding competitively with the dopamine reuptake transporter, which is a protein molecule that picks up released dopamine from the synaptic cleft and shuttles it back to the axon terminal. With cocaine occupying the dopamine transporter, dopamine remains in the synaptic cleft longer than usual and continues to interact with its postsynaptic receptors. The result is prolonged activation of neural pathways that use this chemical as a neurotransmitter, especially pathways that play a role in feelings of pleasure. In essence, when cocaine is present, the neural switches in the pleasure pathway are locked in the “on” position.

Cocaine is addictive because the involved neurons become *desensitized* to the drug. After the postsynaptic cells are incessantly stimulated for an extended time, they can no longer transmit normally across synapses without increasingly larger doses of the drug. Specifically, with prolonged use of cocaine, the number of dopamine receptors in the brain is reduced in response to the glut of the abused substance. As a result of this desensitization, the user must steadily increase the dosage of the drug to get the same “high,” or sensation of pleasure, a phenomenon known as *drug tolerance*. When the cocaine molecules diffuse away, the sense of pleasure evaporates, because the normal level of dopamine activity no longer “satisfies” the overly needy demands of the postsynaptic cells for stimulation. Cocaine users reaching this low become frantic and profoundly depressed. Only more cocaine makes them feel good again. But repeated use of cocaine often modifies responsiveness to the drug; the user no longer derives pleasure from the drug but suffers unpleasant *withdrawal symptoms* once its effect has worn off. The user typically becomes **addicted** to the drug, compulsively seeking it out, first to experience the pleasurable sensations and later to avoid the negative withdrawal symptoms. Cocaine is abused by millions who have become addicted to its mind-altering properties, with devastating social and economic effects.

Synaptic transmission is also vulnerable to neural toxins, which may cause nervous system disorders by acting at either presynaptic or postsynaptic sites. For example, **tetanus toxin** prevents the release of the neurotransmitter GABA from inhibitory presynaptic inputs terminating at neurons that supply skeletal muscles. Unchecked excitatory inputs to these neurons result in uncontrolled muscle spasms. These spasms occur especially in the jaw muscles early in the disease, giving rise to the common name of *lockjaw* for this condition. Later, they progress to the muscles responsible for breathing, at which point death occurs.

Many other drugs and diseases influence synaptic transmission, but as these examples illustrate, any site along the synaptic pathway is vulnerable to interference.

### Neurons are linked through complex converging and diverging pathways.

Two important relationships exist between neurons: convergence and divergence. A given neuron may have many other neurons synapsing on it. Such a relationship is known as **convergence** (● Figure 4-17). Through converging input, a single cell is influenced by thousands of other cells. This single cell, in turn, influences the level of activity in many other cells by divergence of output. The term **divergence** refers to the branching of axon terminals so that a single cell synapses with and influences many other cells.

Note that a particular neuron is postsynaptic to the neurons converging on it but presynaptic to the other cells at which it terminates. Thus, the terms *presynaptic* and *postsynaptic* refer only to a single synapse. Most neurons are presynaptic to one group of neurons and postsynaptic to another group.

An estimated 100 billion neurons and  $10^{14}$  (100 quadrillion) synapses are found in the brain alone! A single neuron may be connected to between 5000 and 10,000 other neurons. When you consider the vast and intricate interconnections possible among these neurons through converging and diverging pathways, you can begin to imagine the complexity of the wir-

ing mechanism of our nervous system. Even the most sophisticated computers are far less complex than the human brain. The “language” of the nervous system—that is, all communication among neurons—is in the form of graded potentials, action potentials, neurotransmitter signaling across synapses, and other nonsynaptic forms of chemical chatter. All activities for which the nervous system is responsible—every sensation, every command to move a muscle, every thought, every emotion, every memory, every spark of creativity—depend on the patterns of electrical and chemical signaling among neurons along these complexly wired neural pathways.

A neuron communicates with the cells it influences by releasing a neurotransmitter, but this is only one means of intercellular (“between cell”) communication. We now consider all the ways by which cells can “talk” with one another.

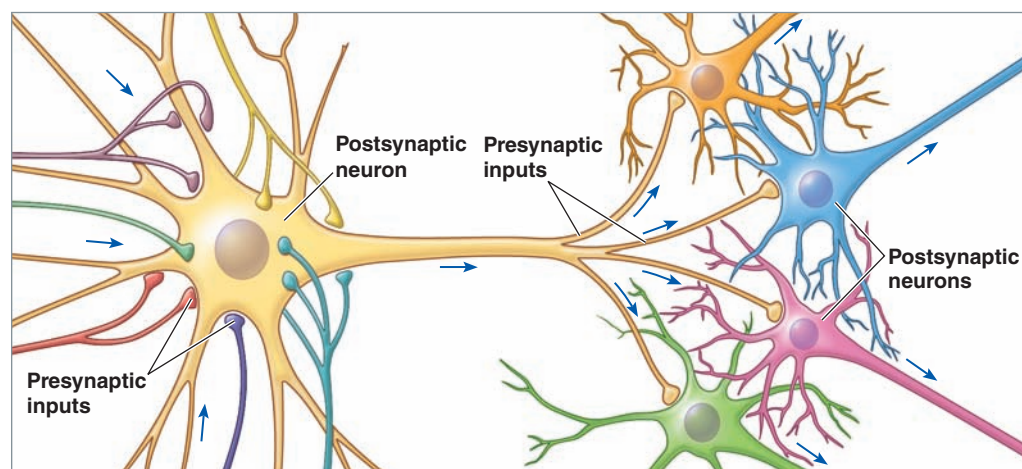
## Intercellular Communication and Signal Transduction

Coordination of the diverse activities of cells throughout the body to accomplish life-sustaining and other desired responses depends on the ability of cells to communicate with one another.

### Communication among cells is largely orchestrated by extracellular chemical messengers.

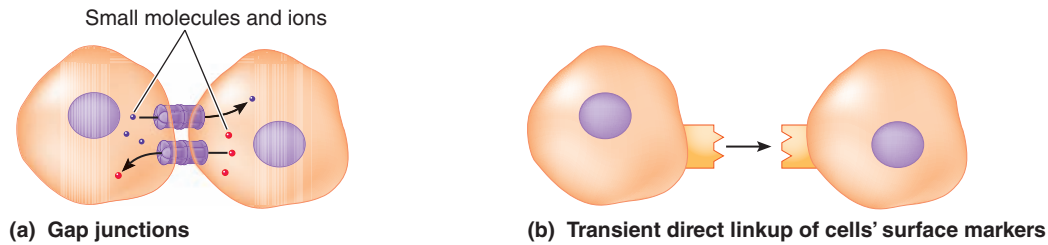
Intercellular communication can take place either directly or indirectly (● Figure 4-18). *Direct* intercellular communication involves physical contact between the interacting cells:

1. *Through gap junctions.* The most intimate means of intercellular communication is through gap junctions, the minute tunnels that bridge the cytoplasm of neighboring cells in some types of tissues. Through gap junctions, small ions and molecules are directly exchanged between interacting cells without ever entering the ECF (see p. 49).

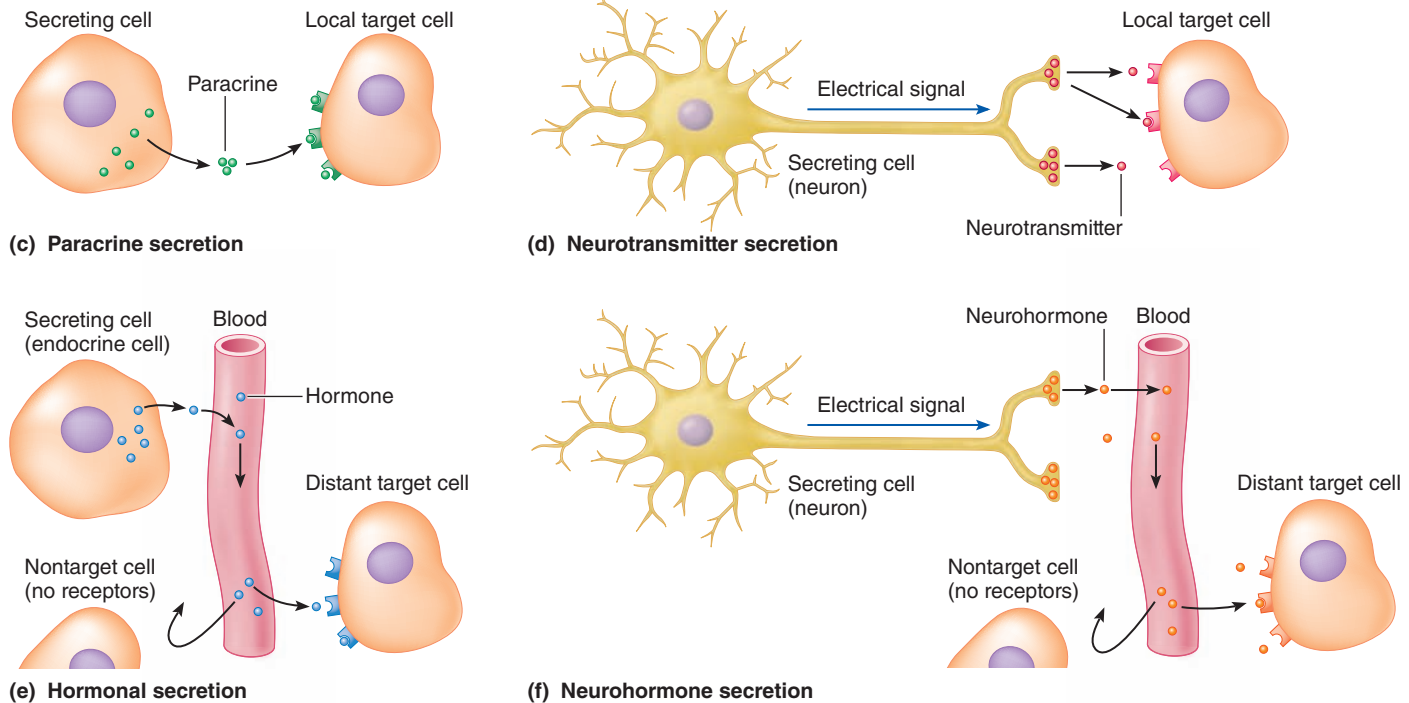


● **FIGURE 4-17** Convergence and divergence. Arrows indicate the direction in which information is being conveyed.

## DIRECT INTERCELLULAR COMMUNICATION



## INDIRECT INTERCELLULAR COMMUNICATION VIA EXTRACELLULAR CHEMICAL MESSENGERS



● **FIGURE 4-18 Types of intercellular communication.** Gap junctions and transient direct linkup of cells by means of complementary surface markers are both means of direct communication between cells. Paracrines, neurotransmitters, hormones, and neurohormones are all extracellular chemical messengers that accomplish indirect communication between cells. These chemical messengers differ in their source and the distance they travel to reach their target cells.

2. *Through transient direct linkup of surface markers.* Some cells, such as those of the immune system, have specialized markers on the surface membrane that allow them to directly link with certain other cells that have compatible markers for transient interactions. This is how the cell-destroying immune cells of the body's defense system specifically recognize and selectively destroy only undesirable cells, such as cancer cells, while leaving the body's own healthy cells alone.

The most common means by which cells communicate with one another is *indirectly* through **extracellular chemical messengers** or **signal molecules**, of which there are four types: *paracrines*, *neurotransmitters*, *hormones*, and *neurohormones*. In each case, a specific chemical messenger, the signal molecule, is synthesized by specialized controlling cells to serve a designated purpose. On being released into the ECF by appropriate stimulation, these extracellular chemical messengers act on

other particular cells, the messenger's **target cells**, in a prescribed manner. To exert its effect, an extracellular chemical messenger must bind with target cell receptors specific for it. These receptors are specialized plasma membrane proteins (see p. 47). Different cell types have distinct combinations of receptors, allowing them to react individually to various regulatory chemical messengers.

The four types of chemical messengers differ in their source and the distance to and means by which they get to their site of action.

1. **Paracrines** are local chemical messengers whose effect is exerted only on neighboring cells in the immediate environment of their site of secretion. Because paracrines are distributed by simple diffusion within the interstitial fluid, their action is restricted to short distances. They do not gain entry to the blood in any significant quantity because they are rapidly inac-

tivated by locally existing enzymes. One example of a paracrine is *histamine*, which is released from a specific type of connective tissue cell during an inflammatory response within an invaded or injured tissue (see p. 313). Among other things, histamine dilates (opens more widely) the blood vessels in the vicinity to increase blood flow to the tissue. This action brings additional blood-borne combat supplies into the affected area.

2. As you just learned, neurons communicate directly with the cells they innervate (their target cells) by releasing *neurotransmitters*, which are short-range chemical messengers, in response to electrical signals (action potentials). Like paracrines, neurotransmitters diffuse from their site of release across a narrow extracellular space to act locally on an adjoining target cell, which may be another neuron, a muscle, or a gland. Neurons themselves may carry electrical signals long distances (the length of the axon), but the chemical messenger released at the axon terminal acts at short range—just across the synaptic cleft.

3. **Hormones** are long-range chemical messengers specifically secreted into the blood by endocrine glands in response to an appropriate signal. The blood carries the messengers to other sites in the body, where they exert their effects on their target cells some distance from their site of release. Only the target cells of a particular hormone have membrane receptors for binding with this hormone. Nontarget cells are not influenced by any blood-borne hormones that reach them.

4. **Neurohormones** are hormones released into the blood by *neurosecretory neurons*. Like ordinary neurons, neurosecretory neurons can respond to and conduct electrical signals. Instead of directly innervating target cells, however, a neurosecretory neuron releases its chemical messenger, a neurohormone, into the blood on appropriate stimulation. The neurohormone is then distributed through the blood to distant target cells. Thus, like endocrine cells, neurosecretory neurons release blood-borne chemical messengers, whereas ordinary neurons secrete short-range neurotransmitters into a confined space. In the future, the general term *hormone* will tacitly include both blood-borne hormonal and neurohormonal messengers.

In every case, extracellular chemical messengers are released from one cell type and interact with other target cells to bring about a desired effect in the target cells. We now turn to how these chemical messengers cause the right cellular response.

### Extracellular chemical messengers bring about cell responses primarily by signal transduction.

The term **signal transduction** refers to the process by which incoming signals (instructions from extracellular chemical messengers) are conveyed into the target cell, where they are transformed into the dictated cellular response. Binding of the extracellular chemical messenger amounts to a signal for the cell to get a certain job done. During signal transduction, the extracellular signal is transduced, or changed into a form necessary to modify intracellular activities to accomplish the desired outcome. (A *transducer* is a device that receives energy from one system and transmits it in a different form to another system. For example, your radio receives radio waves sent out from

the broadcast station and transmits these signals in the form of sound waves that can be detected by your ears.)

Signal transduction occurs by different mechanisms, depending on the messenger and the receptor type. Lipid-soluble extracellular chemical messengers, such as cholesterol-derived steroid hormones, gain entry into the cell by dissolving in and passing through the lipid bilayer of the target cell's plasma membrane. Thus, these extracellular chemical messengers bind to receptors inside the target cell to initiate the desired intracellular response themselves, usually by changing gene activity. By contrast, water-soluble extracellular chemical messengers cannot gain entry to the target cell because they are poorly soluble in lipid and cannot dissolve in the plasma membrane. The major water-soluble extracellular messengers are protein hormones delivered by the blood and neurotransmitters released from nerve endings. These messengers signal the cell to perform a given response by first binding with surface membrane receptors specific for that given messenger. This binding triggers a sequence of intracellular events that controls a particular cellular activity, such as membrane transport, secretion, metabolism, or contraction.

Despite the wide range of possible responses, binding of an extracellular messenger (also known as the **first messenger**) to its matching surface membrane receptor brings about the desired intracellular response primarily by two general means: (1) by *opening or closing chemically gated receptor-channels* or (2) by *activating second-messenger pathways via G-protein-coupled receptors*. Because of the universal nature of these events, let us examine each more closely.

### Some extracellular chemical messengers open chemically gated receptor-channels.

Some extracellular messengers carry out the assigned task by opening or closing specific chemically gated receptor-channels to regulate movement of particular ions across the membrane. In this case, *the receptor itself serves as an ion channel*. When the appropriate extracellular messenger binds to the receptor-channel, the channel opens. An example is the opening of chemically gated receptor-channels in the subsynaptic membrane in response to neurotransmitter binding (see ● Figure 4-14). The resultant small, short-lived movement of given charge-carrying ions across the membrane through these open channels generates electrical signals—in this example, EPSPs and IPSPs.

### Most extracellular chemical messengers activate second-messenger pathways via G-protein-coupled receptors.

Most extracellular chemical messengers that cannot enter their target cells do not act on chemically gated receptor-channels to bring about the desired intracellular response. Instead, these first messengers issue their orders by triggering a “Psst, pass it on” process, activating intracellular second-messenger pathways via binding with G-protein-coupled receptors.

The **second-messenger pathway** is initiated by binding of the first messenger (alias the extracellular chemical messenger, alias the signal molecule) to a surface membrane receptor specific for it. In this pathway, *the receptor is coupled with a G pro-*

*tein*, appropriately called a **G-protein-coupled receptor**, which snakes through the membrane (see ● Figure 4-20). Binding of the first messenger to the receptor activates the **G protein**, which is a membrane-bound intermediary that shuttles along the membrane to alter the activity of a nearby membrane protein called the **effector protein**. Once altered, the effector protein leads to an increased concentration of an intracellular messenger, known as the **second messenger**. The second messenger relays the orders through a series of biochemical reactions inside the cell that cause a change in the shape and function of designated proteins. These activated, designated proteins accomplish the cellular response dictated by the first messenger. Such a chain of reactions leading to a desired effect is called a **cascade**. The intracellular pathways activated by a second messenger are remarkably similar among different cells despite the diversity of ultimate responses. The variability in response depends on the specialization of the cell, not on the mechanism used.



About half of all drugs prescribed today act on G-protein-coupled receptors. These receptors participate in some way in most body functions, so they are important targets for a variety of drugs used to treat diverse disorders. For example, they include drugs used to reduce high blood pressure, to treat congestive heart failure, to suppress stomach acid, to open airways in asthmatics, to ease symptoms of enlarged prostate, to block histamine-induced allergic responses, to relieve pain, and to treat hormone-dependent cancers.

Second-messenger pathways are widely used throughout the body, including being the key means by which most water-soluble hormones ultimately bring about their effects. Let us now turn our attention to hormonal communication, where we examine one of the most common second-messenger pathways (the cyclic adenosine monophosphate or cAMP second-messenger pathway) in more detail.

## Introduction to Hormonal Communication

**Endocrinology** is the study of homeostatic chemical adjustments and other activities accomplished by hormones, which are secreted into the blood by endocrine glands. Earlier we described the underlying molecular and cellular mechanisms of the nervous system—electrical signaling within neurons and chemical transmission of signals between neurons. We now focus on the molecular and cellular features of hormonal action and compare the similarities and differences in how neurons and endocrine cells communicate with other cells in carrying out their regulatory actions.

### Hormones are classified chemically as hydrophilic or lipophilic.

Hormones fall into two distinct chemical groups based on their solubility properties: *hydrophilic* and *lipophilic* hormones. Hormones can also be classified according to their biochemical structure (namely, *peptides*, *amines*, and *steroids*) as follows (▲ Table 4-3):

**1. Hydrophilic** (“water-loving”) **hormones** are highly water soluble and have low lipid solubility. Most hydrophilic hormones are peptide or protein hormones consisting of specific amino acids arranged in a chain of varying length. The shorter chains are peptides, and the longer ones are proteins. For convenience, we refer to this entire category as **peptides**. Insulin from the pancreas is a peptide hormone. The **amines** are so called because they are amino acid derivatives. The amine hormones include one type of hydrophilic hormone (catecholamines) and one type of lipophilic hormone (thyroid hormone). *Catecholamines* are derived from the amino acid tyrosine and are largely secreted by the adrenal medulla. The adrenal gland consists of an inner adrenal medulla surrounded by an outer adrenal cortex. (You will learn more about the location and structure of the endocrine glands and the functions of specific hormones in later chapters.) Epinephrine is the major catecholamine hormone.

**2. Lipophilic** (“lipid-loving”) **hormones** have high lipid solubility and are poorly soluble in water. Lipophilic hormones include thyroid hormone and the steroid hormones. *Thyroid hormone*, as its name implies, is secreted exclusively by the thyroid gland; it is an iodinated tyrosine derivative. Even though catecholamines and thyroid hormone are both derived from tyrosine, they behave differently because of their solubility properties. **Steroids** are neutral lipids derived from cholesterol. They include hormones secreted by the adrenal cortex, such as cortisol, and the sex hormones (testosterone in males and estrogen in females) secreted by the reproductive organs.

Minor differences in chemical structure among hormones within each category often result in profound differences in biological response. For example, in ● Figure 4-19, note the subtle difference between the steroid hormone testosterone, the male sex hormone responsible for inducing the development of masculine characteristics, and the steroid hormone estradiol, a form of estrogen, which is the feminizing female sex hormone.

The solubility properties of a hormone determine (1) how the hormone is processed by the endocrine cell, (2) how the hormone is transported in the blood, and (3) how the hormone exerts its effects at the target cell. We first consider the different ways in which these hormone types are processed at their site of origin, the endocrine cell, before comparing their means of transport and their mechanisms of action.

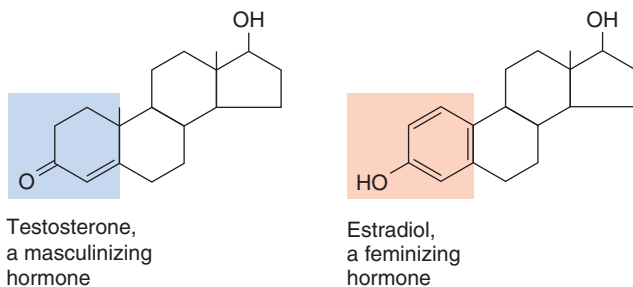
### The mechanisms of synthesis, storage, and secretion of hormones vary according to their chemical differences.

Because of their chemical differences, the means by which the various types of hormones are synthesized, stored, and secreted differ.

**PROCESSING OF HYDROPHILIC PEPTIDE HORMONES** Peptide hormones are synthesized and secreted by the same steps used for manufacturing any protein that is exported from a cell (see ● Figure 2-3, p. 23). From the time peptide hormones are synthesized until they are secreted, they are always segregated from intracellular proteins within membrane-enclosed compartments. Here is a brief outline of these steps:

## ▲ Table 4-3 Chemical Classification of Hormones

Properties	AMINES			
	Peptides	Catecholamines	Thyroid Hormone	Steroids
<b>Solubility</b>	Hydrophilic	Hydrophilic	Lipophilic	Lipophilic
<b>Structure</b>	Chains of specific amino acids	Tyrosine derivative	Iodinated tyrosine derivative	Cholesterol derivative
<b>Synthesis</b>	In the rough endoplasmic reticulum; packaged in the Golgi complex	In the cytosol	In the colloid within the thyroid gland (see p. 513)	Stepwise modification of cholesterol molecules in various intracellular compartments
<b>Storage</b>	Large amounts in secretory granules	In secretory granules	In the colloid	Not stored; the cholesterol precursor is stored in lipid droplets
<b>Secretion</b>	Exocytosis of granules	Exocytosis of granules	Endocytosis of the colloid	Simple diffusion
<b>Transport in blood</b>	As a free hormone	Half bound to plasma proteins	Mostly bound to plasma proteins	Mostly bound to plasma proteins
<b>Receptor site</b>	Surface of the target cell	Surface of the target cell	Inside the target cell	Inside the target cell
<b>Mechanism of action</b>	Activation of a second-messenger pathway to alter the activity of pre-existing proteins that produce the effect	Activation of a second-messenger pathway to alter the activity of pre-existing proteins that produce the effect	Activation of specific genes to make new proteins that produce the effect	Activation of specific genes to make new proteins that produce the effect
<b>Hormones of this type</b>	Most hormones	Hormones from the adrenal medulla	Hormones from thyroid follicular cells	Hormones from the adrenal cortex and gonads and some placental hormones



● **FIGURE 4-19** Comparison of two steroid hormones, testosterone and estradiol.

1. Large precursor proteins, or **preprohormones**, are synthesized by ribosomes on the rough endoplasmic reticulum (ER). They then migrate to the Golgi complex in membrane-enclosed transport vesicles that pinch off from the smooth ER.
2. During their journey through the ER and Golgi complex, the preprohormones are pruned to active hormones.
3. The Golgi complex packages the finished hormones into secretory vesicles that are pinched off and stored in the cytoplasm until an appropriate signal triggers their secretion.
4. On appropriate stimulation, the secretory vesicles fuse with the plasma membrane and release their contents to the out-

side by exocytosis (see p. 24). The blood then picks up the secreted hormones for distribution.

**PROCESSING OF LIPOPHILIC STEROID HORMONES** All steroidogenic (steroid-producing) cells perform the following steps to produce and release their hormonal product:

1. Cholesterol is the common precursor for all steroid hormones.
2. Synthesis of the various steroid hormones from cholesterol requires a series of enzymatic reactions that modify the basic cholesterol molecule—for example, by varying the type and position of side groups attached to the cholesterol framework. Each conversion from cholesterol to a specific steroid hormone requires the help of particular enzymes limited to certain steroidogenic organs. Thus, each steroidogenic organ can produce only the steroid hormone or hormones for which it has a complete set of appropriate enzymes. For example, a key enzyme necessary for producing cortisol is found only in the adrenal cortex, so no other steroidogenic organ can produce this hormone.
3. Unlike peptide hormones, steroid hormones are not stored. Once formed, the lipid-soluble steroid hormones immediately diffuse through the steroidogenic cell's lipid plasma membrane to enter the blood. Only the hormone precursor cholesterol is



stored in significant quantities within steroidogenic cells. Accordingly, the rate of steroid hormone secretion is controlled entirely by the rate of hormone synthesis. In contrast, peptide hormone secretion is controlled primarily by regulating the release of presynthesized stored hormone.

4. Following their secretion into the blood, some steroid hormones, as well as thyroid hormone, undergo further interconversions within the blood or other organs, where they are changed into more potent or different hormones.

The adrenomedullary catecholamines and thyroid hormone have unique synthetic and secretory pathways that are described when we address each of these hormones specifically in the endocrine chapter, Chapter 17.

### Hydrophilic hormones dissolve in the plasma; lipophilic hormones are transported by plasma proteins.

All hormones are carried by the blood, but they are not all transported in the same manner:

- The hydrophilic peptide hormones simply dissolve in the blood.
- Lipophilic steroids and thyroid hormone, which are poorly soluble in water, cannot dissolve to any extent in the watery blood. Instead, most lipophilic hormones circulate to their target cells reversibly bound to plasma proteins in the blood. Some plasma proteins carry only one type of hormone, whereas others, such as albumin, indiscriminately pick up any “hitchhiking” hormone.

Only the small, unbound, freely dissolved fraction of a lipophilic hormone is biologically active (that is, free to cross capillary walls and bind with target cell receptors to exert an effect). The bound form of steroid and thyroid hormones provides a large reserve of these lipophilic hormones that can be used to replenish the active free pool. To maintain normal endocrine function, the magnitude of the small, free, effective pool, rather than the total blood concentration of a particular lipophilic hormone, is monitored and adjusted.



The chemical properties of a hormone dictate not only the means by which blood transports it but also the way in which it can be artificially introduced into the blood for therapeutic purposes. Because the digestive system does not secrete enzymes that can digest steroid and thyroid hormones, hormones such as the sex steroids contained in birth control pills can, when taken orally, be absorbed intact from the digestive tract into the blood. No other type of hormones can be taken orally, because protein-digesting enzymes would attack and convert them into inactive fragments. Therefore, these hormones must be administered by nonoral routes; for example, insulin deficiency is typically treated with daily injections of insulin.

Next, we examine how the hydrophilic and lipophilic hormones vary in their mechanisms of action at their target cells.

### Hormones generally produce their effect by altering intracellular proteins.

To induce their effect, hormones must bind with target cell receptors specific for them. Each interaction between a particular hor-

mone and a target cell receptor produces a highly characteristic response that differs among hormones and among different target cells influenced by the same hormone. Both the location of the receptors within the target cell and the mechanism by which binding of the hormone with the receptors brings about a response vary, depending on the hormone's solubility characteristics.

**LOCATION OF RECEPTORS FOR HYDROPHILIC AND LIPOPHILIC HORMONES** Hormones can be grouped into two categories based on the primary location of their receptors:

1. The hydrophilic peptides and catecholamines, which are poorly soluble in lipid, cannot pass through the lipid membrane barriers of their target cells. Instead, they bind with specific receptors on the *outer plasma membrane surface* of the target cell.
2. The lipophilic steroids and thyroid hormone easily pass through the surface membrane to bind with specific receptors located *inside* the target cell.

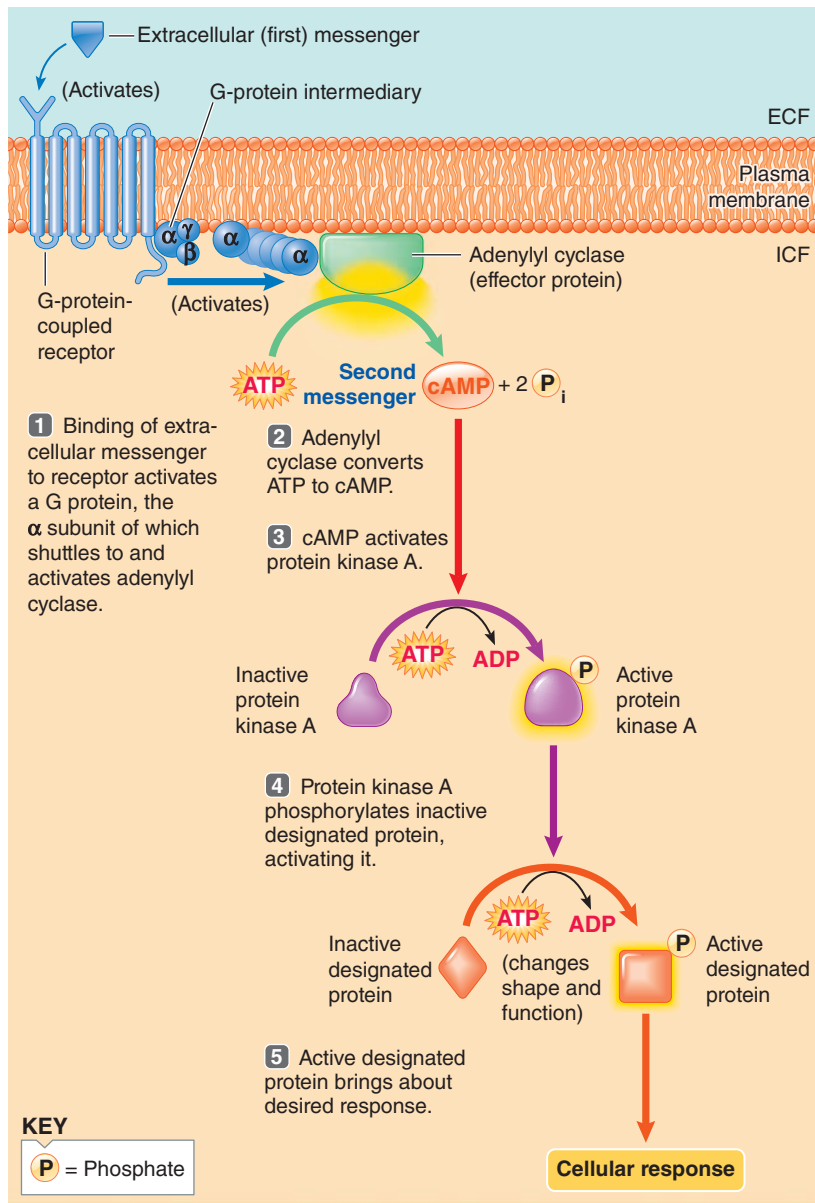
**GENERAL MEANS OF HYDROPHILIC AND LIPOPHILIC HORMONE ACTION** Even though hormones cause a wide variety of responses, they ultimately influence their target cells by altering the cell's proteins in one of two major ways:

1. Surface-binding hydrophilic hormones function largely by *activating second-messenger pathways* within the target cell. This activation directly *alters the activity of preexisting intracellular proteins*, usually enzymes, to produce the desired effect.
2. Lipophilic hormones function mainly by *activating specific genes* in the target cell to cause *formation of new intracellular proteins*, which in turn produce the desired effect. The new proteins may be enzymatic or structural.

Let us examine the two major mechanisms of hormonal action (activation of second-messenger pathways and activation of genes) in more detail.

### Hydrophilic hormones alter preexisting proteins via second-messenger systems.

Most hydrophilic hormones (peptides and catecholamines) bind to G-protein-coupled surface membrane receptors and produce their effects in their target cells by acting through a second-messenger pathway to alter the activity of preexisting proteins. There are two major second-messenger pathways: One uses **cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cyclic AMP, or cAMP)** as a second messenger, and the other employs  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in this role. Both pathways use a G protein, which is found on the inner surface of the plasma membrane, as an intermediary between the receptor and the effector protein (● Figure 4-20). An inactive G protein consists of a complex of alpha ( $\alpha$ ), beta ( $\beta$ ), and gamma ( $\gamma$ ) subunits. When an appropriate extracellular messenger (a first messenger) binds with its receptor, the receptor attaches to the associated G protein, activating the G protein. Different G proteins are activated in response to binding of various first messengers to their respective surface receptors. Once activated, the  $\alpha$  subunit breaks away from the G-protein complex and moves along the inner surface of the



● **FIGURE 4-20** Mechanism of action of hydrophilic hormones via activation of the cyclic AMP second-messenger pathway.

plasma membrane until it reaches an effector protein. An effector protein is either an enzyme or an ion channel within the membrane. The  $\alpha$  subunit links up with the effector protein and alters its activity. Researchers have identified more than 300 different receptors that convey instructions of extracellular messengers through the membrane to effector proteins by means of G proteins. Different second-messenger pathways influence different effector proteins. We next examine the cAMP pathway in more detail as an example of what happens after an effector protein is activated.

**CAMP SECOND-MESSENGER PATHWAY** Cyclic AMP is the most widely used second messenger. In the following description of the cAMP pathway, the numbered steps correlate to the numbered steps in ● Figure 4-20. When the appropriate extracellular messenger binds to its surface membrane receptor and activates the associated G protein, the G protein in turn activates

the effector protein, in this case, the enzyme **adenylyl cyclase** (step **1**), which is located on the cytoplasmic side of the plasma membrane. Adenylyl cyclase converts intracellular adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to cAMP by cleaving off two of the phosphates (step **2**). (This is the same ATP used as the common energy currency in the body.) Acting as the intracellular second messenger, cAMP triggers a preprogrammed series of biochemical steps within the cell to bring about the response dictated by the first messenger. To begin, cAMP activates a specific intracellular enzyme, **protein kinase A** (step **3**). Protein kinase A, in turn, *phosphorylates* (transfers a phosphate group from ATP to) a designated preexisting intracellular protein, such as an enzyme important in a particular metabolic pathway. Phosphorylation causes the protein to change its shape and function, thereby activating it (step **4**). This activated protein brings about the target cell's ultimate response to the first messenger (step **5**). For example, the activity of a particular enzymatic protein that regulates a specific metabolic event may be increased or decreased.

Note that in this signal transduction pathway the steps involving the extracellular first messenger, the receptor, the G-protein complex, and the effector protein occur *in the plasma membrane* and lead to activation of the second messenger. The extracellular messenger cannot enter the cell to “personally” deliver its message to the proteins that carry out the desired response. Instead, it initiates membrane events that activate an intracellular second messenger, cAMP. The second messenger then triggers a chain reaction of biochemical events *inside the cell* that leads to the cellular response.

Different types of cells have different proteins available for phosphorylation and modification by protein kinase A. Therefore, a *common second messenger such as cAMP can cause widely differing responses in different cells*, depending on what proteins are modified. Cyclic AMP can be thought of as a molecular “switch” that can “turn on” (or “turn off”) different cell events, depending on the kinds of protein activity ultimately modified in the various target cells. The type of proteins altered by a second messenger depends on the unique specialization of a particular cell type. This can be likened to being able to either illuminate or cool a room depending on whether the wall switch you flip on is wired to a device specialized to shed light (a chandelier) or one specialized to create air movement (a ceiling fan). In the body, the variable responsiveness once the switch is turned on results from genetically programmed differences in the sets of proteins within different cells. For example, depending on its cellular location, activating the cAMP pathway can modify heart rate in the heart, stimulate the formation of female sex hormones in the ovaries, break down stored glucose in the liver, control water conservation during urine formation in the kid-

## Beyond the Basics

In most cases, the signal transduction pathways triggered by the binding of an extracellular chemical messenger to a cell's surface membrane receptor are aimed at promoting proper functioning, growth, survival, or reproduction of the cell. But every cell also has an unusual built-in pathway that, if triggered, causes the cell to commit suicide by activating intracellular protein-snipping enzymes, which slice the cell into small, disposable pieces. Such intentional, programmed cell death is called **apoptosis**. (This term means “dropping off,” in reference to the dropping off of cells that are no longer useful, much as autumn leaves drop off trees.) Apoptosis is a normal part of life—individual cells that have become superfluous or disordered are triggered to self-destruct for the greater good of maintaining the whole body's health.

### Roles of Apoptosis

Here are examples of the vital roles played by this intrinsic sacrificial program:

- *Predictable self-elimination of selected cells is a normal part of development.* Certain unwanted cells produced during development are programmed to kill themselves as the body is sculpted into its final form. During the development of a female, for example, apoptosis deliberately removes the embryonic ducts capable of forming a male reproductive tract. Likewise, apoptosis carves fingers from a mitten-shaped developing hand by eliminating the weblike membranes between them.

## Programmed Cell Suicide: A Surprising Example of a Signal Transduction Pathway

- *Apoptosis is important in tissue turnover in the adult body.* Optimal functioning of most tissues depends on a balance between controlled production of new cells and regulated cell self-destruction. This balance maintains the proper number of cells in a given tissue while ensuring a controlled supply of fresh cells that are at their peak of performance.
- *Programmed cell death plays an important role in the immune system.* Apoptosis provides a means to remove cells infected with harmful viruses. Furthermore, infection-fighting white blood cells that have finished their prescribed function and are no longer needed execute themselves.
- *Undesirable cells that threaten homeostasis are typically culled from the body by apoptosis.* Included in this hit list are aged cells, cells that have suffered irreparable damage by exposure to radiation or other poisons, and cells that have somehow gone awry. Many mutated cells are eliminated by this means before they become fully cancerous.

### Comparison of Apoptosis and Necrosis

Apoptosis is not the only means by which a cell can die, but it is the neatest way. Apoptosis is a controlled, intentional, tidy way of removing individual cells that are no longer needed or that pose a threat to the body. The other form of cell death, **necrosis** (meaning “making dead”), is uncontrolled, accidental, messy murder of

useful cells that have been severely injured by an agent external to the cell, as by a physical blow, oxygen deprivation, or disease. For example, heart muscle cells deprived of their oxygen supply by complete blockage of the blood vessels supplying them during a heart attack die as a result of necrosis (see p. 255).

Even though necrosis and apoptosis both result in cell death, the steps involved are different. In necrosis the dying cells are passive victims, whereas in apoptosis the cells actively participate in their own deaths. In necrosis, the injured cell cannot pump out  $\text{Na}^+$  as usual. As a result, water streams in by osmosis, causing the cell to swell and rupture. Typically, in necrosis the insult that prompted cell death injures many cells in the vicinity, so many neighboring cells swell and rupture together. Release of intracellular contents into the surrounding tissues initiates an inflammatory response at the damaged site (see p. 313). Unfortunately, this inflammatory response may harm healthy neighboring cells.

By contrast, apoptosis targets individual cells for destruction, leaving the surrounding cells intact. A condemned cell signaled to commit suicide detaches itself from its neighbors and then shrinks instead of swelling and bursting. As its lethal weapon, the suicidal cell activates a cascade of normally inactive intracellular protein-cutting enzymes, the **caspases**, which kill the cell from within. The unleashed caspases act like molecular scissors to systematically dismantle the cell.

neys, create simple memory traces in the brain, or cause perception of a sweet taste by a taste bud. (See the boxed feature on pp. 98–99, **Beyond the Basics**, for a description of a surprising signal-transduction pathway—one that causes a cell to kill itself.)

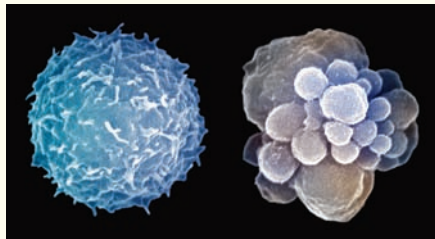
After the response is completed and the first messenger is removed, the  $\alpha$  subunit rejoins the  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  subunits to restore the inactive G-protein complex. Cyclic AMP and the other participating chemicals are inactivated so that the intracellular message is “erased” and the response can be terminated. Otherwise, once triggered, the response would go on indefinitely until the cell ran out of necessary supplies.

Many hydrophilic hormones use cAMP as their second messenger. A few use intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in this role. In other cells, the second messenger is still unknown. Remember that activation of second messengers is a universal mechanism em-

ployed by various other extracellular messengers in addition to hydrophilic hormones.

**AMPLIFICATION BY A SECOND-MESSENGER PATHWAY** Several remaining points about receptor activation and the ensuing events merit attention. First, considering the number of steps in a second-messenger relay chain, you might wonder why so many cell types use the same complex system to accomplish such a range of functions. The multiple steps of a second-messenger pathway are actually advantageous because the cascading (multiplying) effect of these pathways greatly amplifies the initial signal. *Amplification* means that the output of a system is greater than the input. Using the cAMP pathway as an example, binding of one extracellular messenger molecule to a receptor activates several adenylyl cyclase molecules (let us arbitrarily say 10), each of which activates many (in our hypothetical ex-

Snipping protein after protein, they chop up the nucleus, disassembling its life-essential deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA); break down the internal shape-holding cytoskeleton; and finally fragment the cell itself into disposable membrane-enclosed packets (see accompanying photo). Importantly, the contents of the dying cell remain wrapped by plasma membrane throughout the entire self-execution process, thus avoiding the spewing of potentially harmful intracellular contents characteristic of necrosis. No inflammatory response is triggered, so no neighboring cells are harmed. Instead, cells in the vicinity swiftly engulf and destroy the apoptotic cell fragments by phagocytosis. The breakdown products are recycled for other purposes as needed. The tissue as a whole has continued to function normally while the targeted cell has unobtrusively killed itself.



A normal cell (left) and a cell undergoing apoptosis (right).

### Control of Apoptosis

If every cell contains caspases, what normally keeps these powerful self-destructive enzymes under control (that is, in inactive form) in cells that are useful to the body and deserve to live? Likewise,

what activates the death-wielding caspase cascade in unwanted cells destined to eliminate themselves? Given the importance of these life-or-death decisions, it is not surprising that multiple pathways tightly control whether a cell is “to be or not to be.” A cell normally receives a constant stream of “survival signals,” which reassure the cell that it is useful to the body, that all is right in the internal environment surrounding the cell, and that everything is in good working order within the cell. These signals include tissue-specific growth factors, certain hormones, and appropriate contact with neighboring cells and the extracellular matrix. These extracellular survival signals trigger intracellular pathways that block activation of the caspase cascade, thus restraining the cell’s death machinery. Most cells are programmed to commit suicide if they do not receive their normal reassuring survival signals. With the usual safeguards removed, the lethal protein-snipping enzymes are unleashed. For example, withdrawal of growth factors or detachment from the extracellular matrix causes a cell to promptly execute itself.

Furthermore, cells display “death receptors” in their plasma membrane that receive specific extracellular “death signals,” such as a particular hormone or a specific chemical messenger from white blood cells. Activation of death pathways by these signals can override the life-saving pathways triggered by the survival signals. The death-signal transduction pathway swiftly ignites the internal apoptotic machinery, driving the cell to its own demise. Likewise, the self-execution ma-

chinery is set in motion when a cell suffers irreparable intracellular damage. Thus, some signals block apoptosis, and others promote it. Whether a cell lives or dies depends on which of these competing signals dominates at any given time. Although all cells have the same death machinery, they vary in the specific signals that induce them to commit suicide.

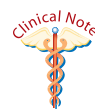
Considering that every cell’s life hangs in delicate balance at all times, it is not surprising that faulty control of apoptosis—resulting in either too much or too little cell suicide—appears to participate in many major diseases. Excessive apoptotic activity is believed to contribute to the brain cell death associated with Alzheimer’s disease, Parkinson’s disease, and stroke, as well as to the premature demise of important infection-fighting cells in AIDS. Conversely, too little apoptosis most likely plays a role in cancer. Evidence suggests that cancer cells fail to respond to the normal extracellular signals that promote cell death. Because these cells neglect to die on cue, they grow in unchecked fashion, forming a chaotic, out-of-control mass.

Apoptosis is currently one of the hottest topics of investigation in the field. Researchers are scrambling to sort out the multiple factors involved in the signal transduction pathways controlling this process. Their hope is to find ways to tinker with the apoptotic machinery and thus discover badly needed new therapies for treating various big killers.

ample, let us say 100) cAMP molecules. Each cAMP molecule then acts on a single protein kinase A, which phosphorylates and thereby influences many (again, let’s say 100) specific proteins, such as enzymes. Each enzyme, in turn, is responsible for producing many (perhaps 100) molecules of a particular product, such as a secretory product. The result of this cascade, with one event triggering the next in sequence, is a tremendous amplification of the initial signal. In our hypothetical example, one extracellular messenger molecule has been responsible for inducing a yield of 10 million molecules of a secretory product. In this way, very low concentrations of hormones and other chemical messengers can trigger pronounced cell responses.

**REGULATION OF RECEPTORS** Although membrane receptors are links between extracellular first messengers and intracellular second messengers in the regulation of specific cellular activi-

ties, the receptors themselves are also often subject to regulation. In many instances, receptor number and affinity (attraction of a receptor for its chemical messenger) can be altered, depending on the circumstances. For example, a chronic elevation in blood insulin levels leads to a reduction in the number of insulin receptors, thus lessening the responsiveness of this hormone’s target cells to its high levels.



Many diseases can be linked to malfunctioning receptors or to defects in the ensuing signal-transduction pathways. For example, defective receptors are responsible for *Laron dwarfism*. In this condition, the person is abnormally short, despite having normal levels of growth hormone, because the tissues cannot respond normally to growth hormone. This is in contrast to the more usual type of dwarfism in which the person is abnormally short because of growth hormone deficiency.

Having examined the means by which hydrophilic hormones alter their target cells, we now focus on the mechanism of lipophilic hormone action.

### By stimulating genes, lipophilic hormones promote synthesis of new proteins.

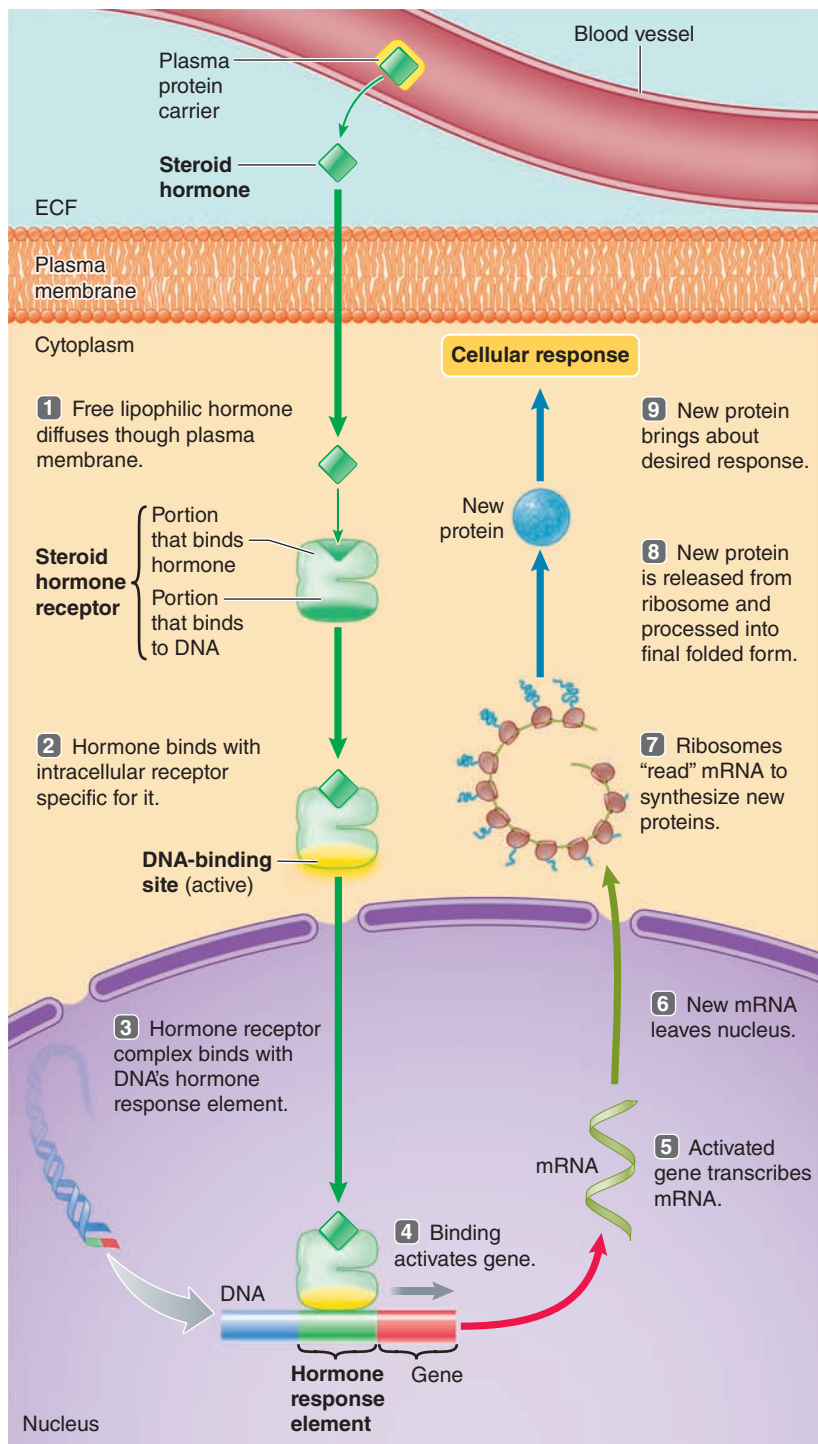
All lipophilic hormones (steroids and thyroid hormone) bind with intracellular receptors and primarily produce effects in their target cells by activating specific genes that cause

the synthesis of new proteins, as summarized in ● Figure 4-21.

Free lipophilic hormone (hormone not bound with its plasma-protein carrier) diffuses through the plasma membrane of the target cell (step 1) and binds with its specific receptor inside the cell, either in the cytoplasm or in the nucleus (step 2). Each receptor has a specific region for binding with its hormone and another region for binding with DNA. The receptor cannot bind with DNA unless it first binds with the hormone. Once the hormone is bound to the receptor, the hormone receptor complex binds with DNA at a specific attachment site on the DNA known as the **hormone response element (HRE)** (step 3). Different steroid hormones and thyroid hormone, once bound with their respective receptors, attach at different HREs on DNA. For example, the estrogen receptor complex binds at DNA's *estrogen response element*.

Binding of the hormone receptor complex with DNA “turns on” or activates a specific gene within the target cell (step 4). This gene contains a code for synthesizing a given protein. The code of the activated gene is transcribed into complementary messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) (step 5). The new mRNA leaves the nucleus and enters the cytoplasm (step 6), where it binds to ribosomes, the “workbenches” that mediate the assembly of new proteins. Here, mRNA directs the synthesis of the designated new proteins according to the DNA code in the activated genes (step 7). The newly synthesized protein, either enzymatic or structural, is released from the ribosome (step 8) and produces the target cell’s ultimate response to the hormone (step 9). By means of this mechanism, different genes are activated by different lipophilic hormones, resulting in different biological effects.

Next, we compare the similarities and differences between neural and hormonal responses at the system level.



● **FIGURE 4-21** Mechanism of action of lipophilic hormones via activation of genes.

## Comparison of the Nervous and Endocrine Systems

The nervous and endocrine systems are the two main regulatory systems of the body. The **nervous system** swiftly transmits electrical impulses to the skeletal muscles and the exocrine glands that it innervates. The **endocrine system** secretes hormones into the blood for delivery to distant sites of action. Although these two systems differ in many respects, they have much in common (▲ Table 4-4). They both alter their target cells (their sites of action) by releasing chemical messengers (neurotransmitters in the case of neurons, hormones in the case of endocrine cells) that bind with specific receptors of the target cells. This

▲ **Table 4-4 Comparison of the Nervous System and the Endocrine System**

Property	Nervous System	Endocrine System
<b>Anatomic Arrangement</b>	A “wired” system: a specific structural arrangement exists between neurons and their target cells, with structural continuity in the system	A “wireless” system: endocrine glands are widely dispersed and not structurally related to one another or to their target cells
<b>Type of Chemical Messenger</b>	Neurotransmitters released into the synaptic cleft	Hormones released into the blood
<b>Distance of Action of the Chemical Messenger</b>	Short distance (diffuses across the synaptic cleft)	Long distance (carried by the blood)
<b>Specificity of Action on the Target Cell</b>	Dependent on the close anatomic relationship between neurons and their target cells	Dependent on the specificity of target cell binding and responsiveness to a particular hormone
<b>Speed of Response</b>	Generally rapid (milliseconds)	Generally slow (minutes to hours)
<b>Duration of Action</b>	Brief (milliseconds)	Long (minutes to days or longer)
<b>Major Functions</b>	Coordinates rapid, precise responses	Controls activities that require long duration rather than speed

binding triggers the cellular response dictated by the regulatory system.

Now let us examine the anatomic distinctions between these two systems and the different ways in which they accomplish specificity of action.

### The nervous system is “wired,” and the endocrine system is “wireless.”

Anatomically, the nervous and endocrine systems are quite different. In the nervous system, each neuron terminates directly on its specific target cells; that is, the nervous system is “wired” into highly organized, distinct anatomic pathways for transmission of signals from one part of the body to another. Information is carried along chains of neurons to the desired destination through action potential propagation coupled with synaptic transmission. In contrast, the endocrine system is a “wireless” system in that the endocrine glands are not anatomically linked with their target cells. Instead, the endocrine chemical messengers are secreted into the blood and delivered to distant target sites. In fact, the components of the endocrine system itself are not anatomically interconnected; the endocrine glands are scattered throughout the body (see ● Figure 17-1, p. 496). These glands constitute a system in a functional sense, however, because they all secrete hormones and many interactions take place among various endocrine glands.

### Neural specificity is due to anatomic proximity, and endocrine specificity is due to receptor specialization.

As a result of their anatomic differences, the nervous and endocrine systems accomplish specificity of action by distinctly different means. Specificity of neural communication depends on neurons having a close anatomic relationship with their target cells, so each neuron has a very narrow range of influence. A neurotransmitter is released only to specific adjacent target cells and then is swiftly

inactivated or removed before it can enter the blood. The target cells for a particular neuron have receptors for the neurotransmitter, but so do many other cells in other locations, and they could respond to this same mediator if it were delivered to them. For example, the entire system of neurons (called motor neurons) supplying your skeletal muscles uses the same neurotransmitter, *acetylcholine (ACh)*, and all your skeletal muscles bear complementary ACh receptors (see Chapter 8). Yet you can wiggle your big toe without influencing any of your other muscles because ACh can be discretely released from the motor neurons specifically wired to the muscles controlling your toe. If ACh were indiscriminately released into the blood, as are hormones, all the skeletal muscles would simultaneously respond by contracting, because they all have identical receptors for ACh. This does not happen because of the precise wiring patterns that provide direct lines of communication between motor neurons and their target cells.

This specificity sharply contrasts to the way specificity of communication is built into the endocrine system. Because hormones travel in the blood, they reach virtually all tissues. Yet only specific target cells can respond to each hormone. Specificity of hormonal action depends on specialization of target cell receptors. For a hormone to exert its effect, the hormone must first bind with receptors specific for it that are located only on or in the hormone’s target cells. Target cell receptors are highly selective in their binding function. A receptor recognizes a specific hormone because a portion of its conformation matches a unique portion of its binding hormone in “lock-and-key” fashion. Binding of a hormone with target cell receptors initiates a reaction that culminates in the hormone’s final effect. The hormone cannot influence any other cells because nontarget cells lack the right binding receptors. Likewise, a given target cell has receptors that are “tuned” to recognize only one or a few of the many hormones that circulate in its vicinity. Other signals pass by without effect because the cell has no receptors for them.

## The nervous and endocrine systems have their own realms of authority but interact functionally.

The nervous and endocrine systems are specialized for controlling different types of activities. In general, the nervous system governs the coordination of rapid, precise responses. It is especially important in the body's interactions with the external environment. Neural signals in the form of action potentials are rapidly propagated along neuronal fibers, resulting in the release at the axon terminal of a neurotransmitter that must diffuse only a microscopic distance to its target cell before a response is effected. A neurally mediated response is not only rapid but brief; the action is quickly halted as the neurotransmitter is swiftly removed from the target site. This permits ending the response, almost immediately repeating the response, or rapidly initiating an alternate response as circumstances demand (for example, the swift changes in commands to muscle groups needed to coordinate walking). This mode of action makes neural communication extremely rapid and precise. The target tissues of the nervous system are the muscles and glands, especially exocrine glands, of the body.

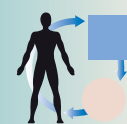
The endocrine system, in contrast, is specialized to control activities that require duration rather than speed, such as regulating organic metabolism; maintaining water and electrolyte balance; promoting smooth, sequential growth and development; and controlling reproduction. The endocrine system responds more slowly to its triggering stimuli than the nervous system does for several reasons. First, the endocrine system must depend on blood flow to convey its hormonal messengers over long distances. Second, hormones typically have a more complex mechanism of action at their target cells than neurotransmitters do; thus, they require more time before a response occurs. The ultimate effect of some hormones cannot be detected until a few hours after they bind with target cell receptors. Also, because of the receptors' high affinity for their respective hormone, the hormones often remain bound to receptors for some time, thus prolonging their biological effectiveness. Furthermore, unlike the brief, neurally induced responses that stop almost immediately after the neurotransmitter is removed, endocrine effects usually last for some time after the hormone's withdrawal. Neural responses to a single burst of neurotransmitter release usually last only milliseconds to seconds, whereas the alterations that hormones induce in target cells range from minutes to days or, in the case of growth-promoting effects, even a lifetime. Thus, hormonal action is relatively slow and prolonged, making endocrine control particularly suitable for regulating metabolic activities that require long-term stability.

Although the endocrine and nervous systems have their own areas of specialization, they are intimately interconnected functionally. Some neurons do not release neurotransmitters at synapses but instead end at blood vessels and release their chemical messengers (neurohormones) into the blood, where these chemicals act as hormones. A given messenger may even be a neurotransmitter when released from a nerve ending and a hormone when secreted by an endocrine cell. An example is *norepinephrine* (see p. 523). The nervous system directly or indirectly controls the secretion of many hormones (see Chapter 17). At the same time, many hormones act as neuromodulators, altering synaptic effectiveness and thereby influencing the excitability of the nervous system. The presence of certain key

hormones is even essential for the proper development and maturation of the brain during fetal life. Furthermore, in many instances the nervous and endocrine systems both influence the same target cells in supplementary fashion. For example, these two major regulatory systems both help regulate the circulatory and digestive systems. Thus, many important regulatory interfaces exist between the nervous and the endocrine systems.

In the next three chapters, we concentrate on the nervous system. We examine the endocrine system in more detail in later chapters. Throughout the text, we continue to point out the numerous ways in which these two regulatory systems interact so that the body is a coordinated whole, even though each system has its own realm of authority.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



To maintain homeostasis, cells must communicate so that they work together to accomplish life-sustaining activities. To bring about desired responses, the two major regulatory systems of the body, the nervous system and the endocrine system, must communicate with the target cells they are controlling. Neural and hormonal communication is therefore critical in maintaining a stable internal environment, as well as in coordinating nonhomeostatic activities.

Neurons are specialized to receive, process, encode, and rapidly transmit information from one part of the body to another. The information is transmitted over intricate neuronal pathways by propagation of action potentials along the neuron's length, as well as by chemical transmission of the signal from neuron to neuron at synapses and from neuron to muscles and glands through other neurotransmitter–receptor interactions at these junctions.

Collectively, the neurons make up the nervous system. Many activities controlled by the nervous system are geared toward maintaining homeostasis. Some neuronal electrical signals convey information about changes to which the body must rapidly respond to maintain homeostasis—for example, information about a fall in blood pressure. Other neuronal electrical signals swiftly convey messages to muscles and glands stimulating appropriate responses to counteract these changes—for example, adjustments in heart and blood vessel activity that restore blood pressure to normal when it starts to fall. Furthermore, the nervous system directs many activities not geared toward maintaining homeostasis, many of which are subject to voluntary control, such as playing basketball or browsing on the Internet.

The endocrine system secretes hormones into the blood, which carries these chemical messengers to distant target cells where they bring about their effect by changing the activity of enzymatic or structural proteins within these cells. Through its relatively slow-acting hormonal messengers, the endocrine system generally regulates activities that require duration rather than speed. Most of these activities are directed toward maintaining homeostasis. For example, hormones help maintain the

proper concentration of nutrients in the internal environment by directing chemical reactions involved in the cellular uptake, storage, release, and use of these molecules. Also, hormones help maintain the proper water and electrolyte balance in the internal environment. Unrelated to homeostasis, hormones direct growth and control most aspects of the reproductive system.

Together, the nervous and the endocrine systems orchestrate a range of adjustments that help the body maintain homeostasis in response to stress. Likewise, these systems work in concert to control the circulatory and digestive systems, which carry out many homeostatic activities.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-40)

- Conformational changes in channel proteins brought about by voltage changes are responsible for opening and closing the gates for  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  during the generation of an action potential. (*True or false?*)
- The  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump restores the membrane to resting potential after it reaches the peak of an action potential. (*True or false?*)
- Following an action potential, there is more  $\text{K}^+$  outside the cell than inside because of the efflux of  $\text{K}^+$  during the falling phase. (*True or false?*)
- Postsynaptic neurons can either excite or inhibit presynaptic neurons. (*True or false?*)
- Second-messenger pathways ultimately bring about the desired cell response by inducing a change in the shape and function of particular designated intracellular proteins. (*True or false?*)
- Each steroidogenic organ has all the enzymes necessary to produce any steroid hormone. (*True or false?*)
- The one-way propagation of action potentials away from the original site of activation is ensured by the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is the site of action potential initiation in most neurons because it has the lowest threshold.
- A junction in which the electrical activity in one neuron influences the electrical activity in another neuron by means of a neurotransmitter is called a \_\_\_\_\_.
- The neuronal relationship in which synapses from many presynaptic inputs act on a single postsynaptic cell is called \_\_\_\_\_, whereas the relationship in which a single presynaptic neuron synapses with and thereby influences the activity of many postsynaptic cells is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
- A common membrane-bound intermediary between the receptor and the effector protein within the plasma membrane is the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Using the answer code on the right, indicate which potential is being described:
  - behaves in all-or-none fashion (a) graded potential (b) action potential
  - has a magnitude of potential change that varies with the magnitude of the triggering event
  - spreads decrementally away from the original site
  - spreads nondecrementally throughout the membrane
  - serves as a long-distance signal
  - serves as a short-distance signal
- Using the answer code on the right, indicate which characteristics apply to peptide and steroid hormones:
  - are hydrophilic (a) peptide hormones
  - are lipophilic (b) steroid hormones
  - are synthesized by the endoplasmic reticulum (c) both peptide and steroid hormones (d) neither peptide nor steroid hormones
  - are synthesized by modifying cholesterol
  - include epinephrine from the adrenal medulla
  - include cortisol from the adrenal cortex
  - bind to plasma proteins
  - bind to intracellular receptors
  - bind to surface membrane receptors
  - activate genes to promote synthesis of new proteins
  - act via a second messenger to alter preexisting proteins
  - are secreted into the blood by endocrine glands and carried to distant target sites

### Essay Questions

- What are the two types of excitable tissue?
- Define the following terms: polarization, depolarization, hyperpolarization, repolarization, resting membrane potential, threshold potential, action potential, refractory period, and all-or-none law.
- Compare the four kinds of gated channels in terms of the factor that opens or closes them.
- Describe the permeability changes and ion fluxes that occur during an action potential.
- Compare contiguous and saltatory conduction.
- Compare the events that occur at excitatory and inhibitory synapses.
- Compare temporal and spatial summation.
- List and describe the types of intercellular communication.
- Define signal transduction.
- Distinguish between first and second messengers.
- Describe the sequence of events in the cAMP second-messenger pathway.
- Compare the nervous and endocrine systems.



**(Explanations on p. A-40)**

1. Which of the following would occur if a neuron were experimentally stimulated simultaneously at both ends?
  - a. The action potentials would pass in the middle and travel to the opposite ends.
  - b. The action potentials would meet in the middle and then be propagated back to their starting positions.
  - c. The action potentials would stop as they met in the middle.
  - d. The stronger action potential would override the weaker action potential.
  - e. Summation would occur when the action potentials met in the middle, resulting in a larger action potential.
2. Assume you touched a hot stove with your finger. Contraction of the biceps muscle causes flexion (bending) of the elbow, whereas contraction of the triceps muscle causes extension (straightening) of the elbow. What pattern of postsynaptic potentials would you expect to be initiated as a reflex in the cell bodies of the neurons controlling these muscles to pull your hand away from the painful stimulus: excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSPs) or inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (IPSPs)?
 

Now assume your finger is being pricked to obtain a blood sample. The same withdrawal reflex would be initiated. What pattern of postsynaptic potentials would you voluntarily produce in the neurons controlling the biceps and triceps to keep your arm extended despite the painful stimulus?
3. Compare the expected changes in membrane potential of a neuron simulated with a *subthreshold stimulus* (a stimulus not sufficient to bring a membrane to threshold), a *threshold stimulus* (a stimulus just sufficient to bring the membrane to threshold), and a *suprathreshold stimulus* (a stimulus larger than that necessary to bring the membrane to threshold).
4. Assume presynaptic excitatory neuron A terminates on a postsynaptic cell near the axon hillock and presynaptic excitatory neuron B terminates on the same postsynaptic cell on a dendrite located on the side of the cell body opposite the axon hillock. Explain why rapid firing of presynaptic neuron A could bring the postsynaptic neuron to threshold through temporal summation, thus initiating an action potential, whereas firing of presynaptic neuron B at the same frequency and the same magnitude of EPSPs may not bring the postsynaptic neuron to threshold.
5. Two classes of drugs that block different receptors are among those used to treat high blood pressure. (1) *Angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs)* block binding of angiotensin to its receptors on the cells of the adrenal cortex that secrete a salt-conserving hormone, aldosterone. Aldosterone acts on the kidneys to conserve salt (specifically  $\text{Na}^+$ , with  $\text{Cl}^-$  following along the resulting electrical gradient) during urine formation. Salt accounts for more than 90% of the osmotic (water-holding) activity of the ECF, including the plasma. (2)  *$\beta_1$ -adrenergic receptor blockers* block binding of epinephrine to its receptors in the heart. Epinephrine, a hormone secreted by the adrenal medulla, increases the rate and strength of contraction of the heart. Explain how each of these drugs lowers blood pressure.

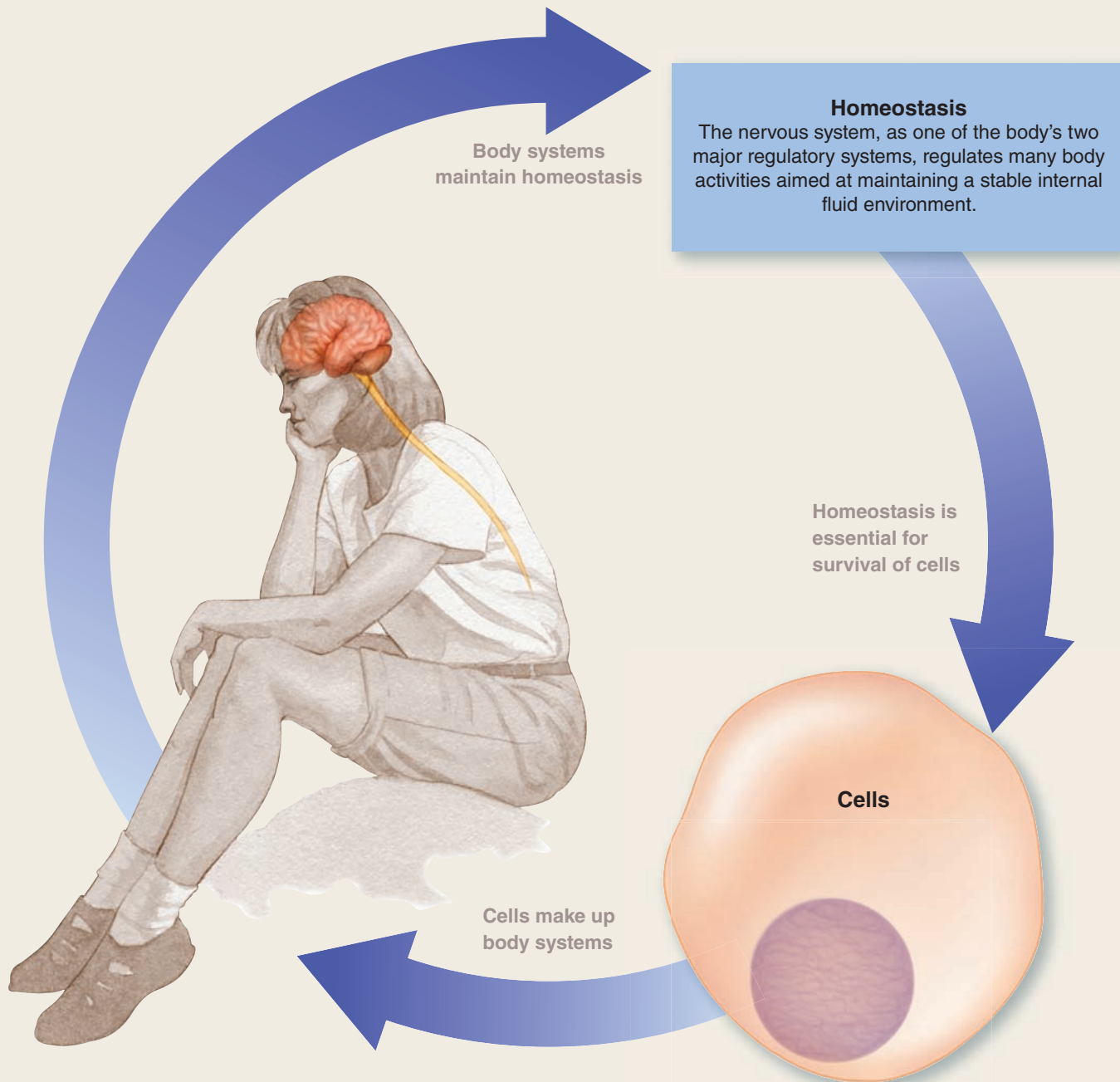
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-40)

Becky N. was apprehensive as she sat in the dentist's chair awaiting the placement of her first silver amalgam (the "filling" in a cavity in a tooth). Before preparing the tooth for the amalgam by drilling away the decayed portion of the tooth, the dentist injected a local anesthetic in the nerve

pathway supplying the region. As a result, Becky, much to her relief, did not feel any pain during the drilling and filling procedure. Local anesthetics block voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels. Explain how this action prevents the transmission of pain impulses to the brain.

## Nervous System (Central Nervous System)



The **nervous system** is one of the two major regulatory systems of the body; the other is the endocrine system. The three basic functional types of neurons—afferent neurons, efferent neurons, and interneurons—form a complex interactive network of excitable cells. Ninety percent of the cells of the nervous system are nonexcitable glial cells, which interact extensively both structurally and functionally with neurons. The **central nervous system (CNS)**, which consists of the brain and spinal cord, receives input about the external and internal environment from the afferent

neurons. The CNS sorts and processes this input and then initiates appropriate directions in the efferent neurons, which carry the instructions to glands or muscles to bring about the desired response—some type of secretion or movement. Many of these neurally controlled activities are directed toward maintaining homeostasis. In general, the nervous system acts by means of its electrical signals (action potentials) to control the rapid responses of the body.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Organization and Cells of the Nervous System**

Central and peripheral nervous systems  
Three classes of neurons  
Glial cells

**Protection and Nourishment of the Brain**

Meninges; cerebrospinal fluid  
Blood–brain barrier  
Brain's dependence on oxygen and glucose delivery

**Overview of the Central Nervous System****Cerebral Cortex**

Cortical structure  
Sensory perception  
Motor control  
Language ability  
Association areas  
Cerebral specialization

**Basal Nuclei, Thalamus, and Hypothalamus****Emotion, Behavior, and Motivation**

Limbic system  
Emotion  
Motivated behaviors  
Neurotransmitters for emotions and behavior

**Learning and Memory**

Knowledge acquisition  
Memory stages  
Mechanisms of short-term and long-term memory; consolidation  
Parts of brain involved in memory; declarative and procedural memories; working memory

**Cerebellum****Brain Stem**

Components and functions of the brain stem  
Consciousness; sleep–wake cycle

**Spinal Cord**

Anatomy of the Spinal Cord  
Spinal Reflexes

# The Central Nervous System

## Organization and Cells of the Nervous System

The way humans act and react depends on complex, organized, discrete neuronal processing. Many basic life-supporting neuronal patterns, such as those controlling respiration and circulation, are similar in all individuals. However, there must be subtle differences in neuronal integration between someone who is a talented composer and someone who cannot carry a tune or between someone who is a math wizard and someone who struggles with long division. Some differences in the nervous systems of individuals are genetically endowed. The rest, however, are due to environmental encounters and experiences. When the immature nervous system develops according to its genetic plan, an overabundance of neurons and synapses is formed. Depending on external stimuli and the extent to which these pathways are used, some are retained, firmly established, and even enhanced, whereas others are eliminated.



A case in point is **amblyopia** (lazy eye), in which the weaker of the two eyes is not used for vision. A lazy eye that does not get appropriate visual stimulation during a critical developmental period will almost completely and permanently lose the power of vision. The functionally blind eye itself is normal; the defect lies in the lost neuronal connections in the brain's visual pathways. However, if the weak eye is forced to work by covering the stronger eye with a patch during the sensitive developmental period, the weaker eye will retain full vision.

The maturation of the nervous system involves many instances of “use it or lose it.” Once the nervous system has matured, modifications still occur as we continue to learn from our unique set of experiences. For example, the act of reading this page is somehow altering the neuronal activity of your brain as you (it is hoped) tuck the information away in your memory.

### The nervous system is organized into the central nervous system and the peripheral nervous system.

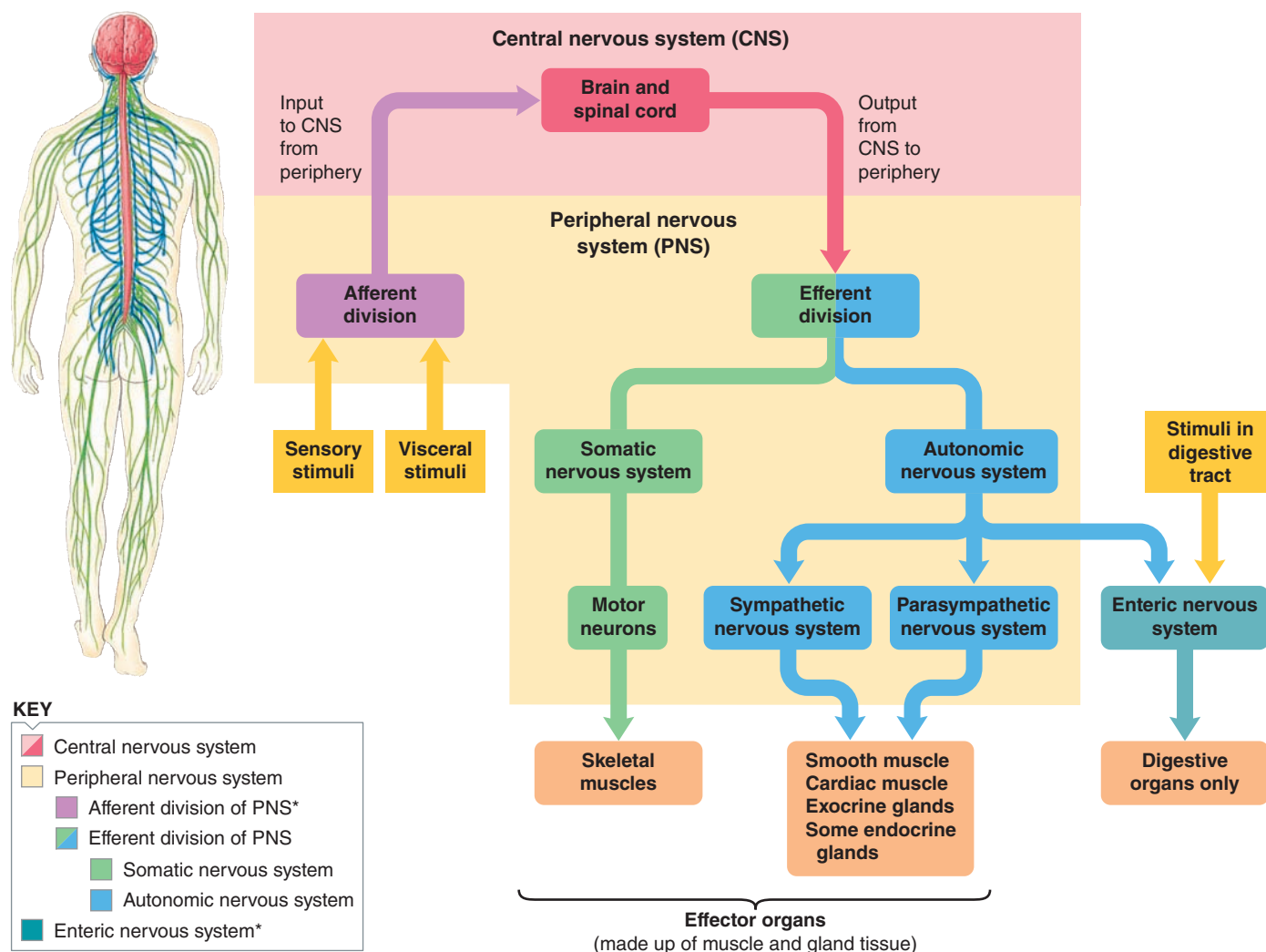
The nervous system is organized into the **central nervous system (CNS)**, consisting of the brain and spinal cord, and the **peripheral nervous system (PNS)**, consisting of nerve fibers that carry information between the CNS and the other parts of the body (the periphery) (● Figure 5-1). The PNS is further subdivided into afferent and efferent divisions. The **afferent division** carries information *to* the CNS, apprising it of the external environment and providing status reports on internal activities being regulated by the nervous system (*a* is from *ad*, meaning “toward,” as in *advance*; *ferent* means “carrying”; thus, *afferent* means “carrying toward”). Instructions *from* the CNS are transmitted via the **efferent division** to **effector organs**—the muscles or glands that carry out the orders to bring about the desired effect (*e* is from *ex*, meaning

“from,” as in *exit*; thus, *efferent* means “carrying from”). The efferent nervous system is divided into the **somatic nervous system**, which consists of the fibers of the motor neurons that supply the skeletal muscles; and the **autonomic nervous system**, which consists of fibers that innervate smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands. The latter system is further subdivided into the **sympathetic nervous system** and the **parasympathetic nervous system**, both of which innervate most of the organs supplied by the autonomic system. In addition to the CNS and PNS, the **enteric nervous system** is an extensive nerve network in the wall of the digestive tract. Digestive activities are controlled by the autonomic nervous system and the enteric nervous system, as well as by hormones. The enteric nervous system can act independently of the rest of the nervous system but is also influenced by autonomic fibers that terminate on the enteric neurons. Sometimes the enteric nervous system is considered a third component of the autonomic nervous system, one that supplies the digestive organs only.

It is important to recognize that all these “nervous systems” are really subdivisions of a single, integrated nervous system. These subdivisions are based on differences in the structure, location, and functions of the various diverse parts of the whole nervous system.

**The three functional classes of neurons are afferent neurons, efferent neurons, and interneurons.**

Three functional classes of neurons make up the nervous system: *afferent neurons*, *efferent neurons*, and *interneurons*. The afferent division of the PNS consists of **afferent neurons**, which are shaped differently from efferent neurons and interneurons (● Figure 5-2). At its peripheral ending, a typical afferent neuron has a **sensory receptor** that generates action potentials in response to a particular type of stimulus. (This stimulus-sensitive afferent neuronal receptor should not be confused with the special protein receptors that bind chemical messengers and are found in the plasma membrane of all



● **FIGURE 5-1 Organization of the nervous system.** \*The afferent division of the PNS and the enteric nervous system are not shown in the human figure. Afferent fibers travel within the same nerves as efferent fibers but in the opposite direction. The enteric nervous system lies entirely within the wall of the digestive tract.

cells.) The afferent neuron cell body, which is devoid of dendrites and presynaptic inputs, is adjacent to the spinal cord. A long *peripheral axon*, commonly called the *afferent fiber*, extends from the receptor to the cell body, and a short *central axon* passes from the cell body into the spinal cord. Action potentials are initiated at the receptor end of the peripheral axon in response to a stimulus and are propagated along the peripheral axon and the central axon toward the spinal cord. The terminals of the central axon diverge and synapse with other neurons within the spinal cord, thus disseminating information about the stimulus. Afferent neurons lie primarily within the PNS. Only a small portion of their central axon endings projects into the spinal cord to relay signals from the periphery to the CNS.

**Efferent neurons** also lie primarily in the PNS. Efferent neuron cell bodies originate in the CNS, where many centrally located presynaptic inputs converge on them to influence their outputs to the effector organs. Efferent axons (*efferent fibers*) leave the CNS to course their way to the muscles or glands they innervate, conveying their integrated output for the effector organs to put into effect. (An autonomic nerve pathway consists of a two-neuron chain between the CNS and the effector organ.)

About 99% of all neurons are **interneurons**, which lie entirely within the CNS. The human CNS is estimated to have more than 100 billion interneurons. As their name implies, interneurons lie between the afferent and the efferent neurons and are important in integrating peripheral information to peripheral responses (*inter* means “between”). For example, on

receiving information through afferent neurons that you are touching a hot object, appropriate interneurons signal efferent neurons that transmit to your hand and arm muscles the message, “Pull the hand away from the hot object!” The more complex the required action, the greater the number of interneurons interposed between the afferent message and the efferent response. In addition, interconnections between interneurons themselves are responsible for the abstract phenomena associated with the “mind,” such as thoughts, emotions, memory, creativity, intellect, and motivation. These activities are the least understood functions of the nervous system.

### Glial cells support the interneurons physically, metabolically, and functionally.

About 90% of the cells within the CNS are not neurons but **glial cells** or **neuroglia**. Despite their large numbers, glial cells occupy only about half the volume of the brain, because they do not branch as extensively as neurons do.

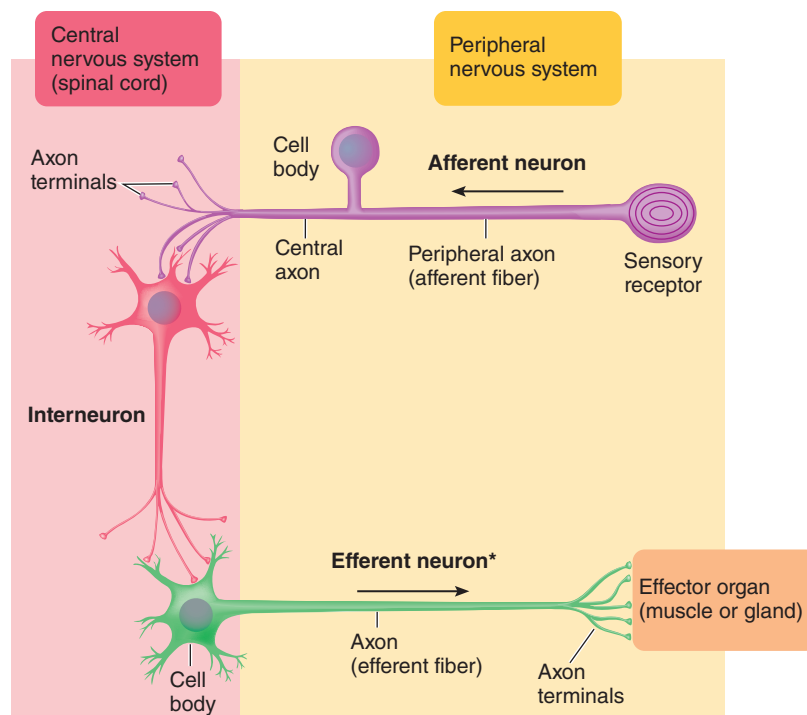
Unlike neurons, glial cells do not initiate or conduct nerve impulses. However, they do communicate with neurons and among themselves by means of chemical signals. For much of the time since the discovery of glial cells in the 19th century, scientists thought these cells were passive “mortar” that physically supported the functionally important neurons. In the last decade, however, the varied and important roles of these dynamic cells have become apparent. Glial cells help support the neurons both physically and metabolically. They also homeostatically maintain the composition of the specialized extracellular environment surrounding the neurons within the narrow limits optimal for normal neuronal function. Furthermore, they actively modulate (depress or enhance) synaptic function and are considered nearly as important as neurons to learning and memory. There are four major types of glial cells in the CNS—*astrocytes*, *oligodendrocytes*, *microglia*, and *ependymal cells*—each with specific roles (● Figure 5-3).

ASTROCYTES Named for their starlike shape (*astro* means “star”; *cyte* means “cell”) (● Figure 5-4), **astrocytes** are the most abundant glial cells. They fill several critical functions:

**1.** As the main “glue” (*glia* means “glue”) of the CNS, astrocytes hold the neurons together in proper spatial relationships.

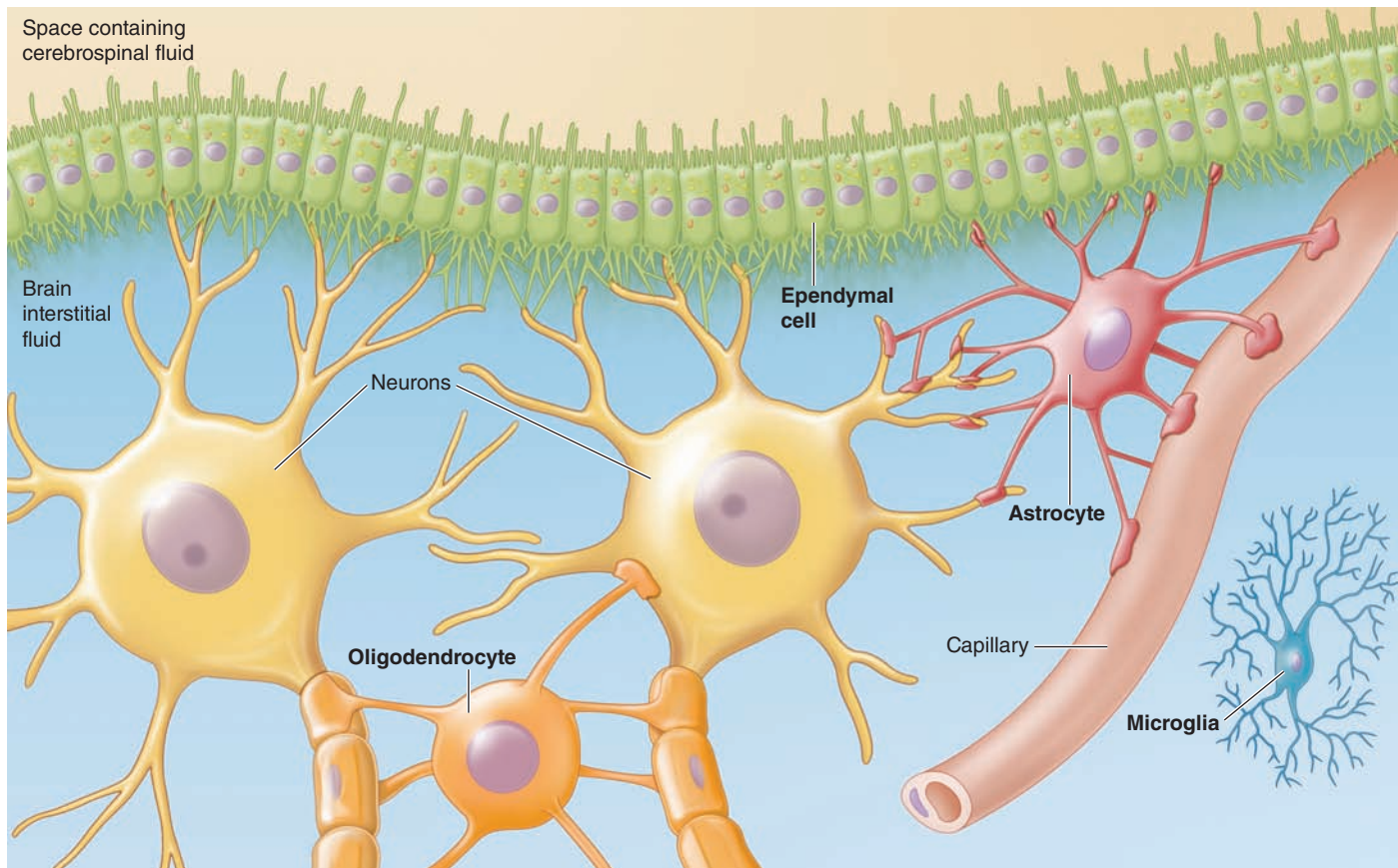
**2.** Astrocytes serve as a scaffold that guides neurons to their proper final destination during fetal brain development.

**3.** These glial cells induce the small blood vessels (capillaries) of the brain to undergo the anatomic and functional changes that establish the blood–brain barrier, a highly selective barricade between the blood and the brain that we soon describe in greater detail.

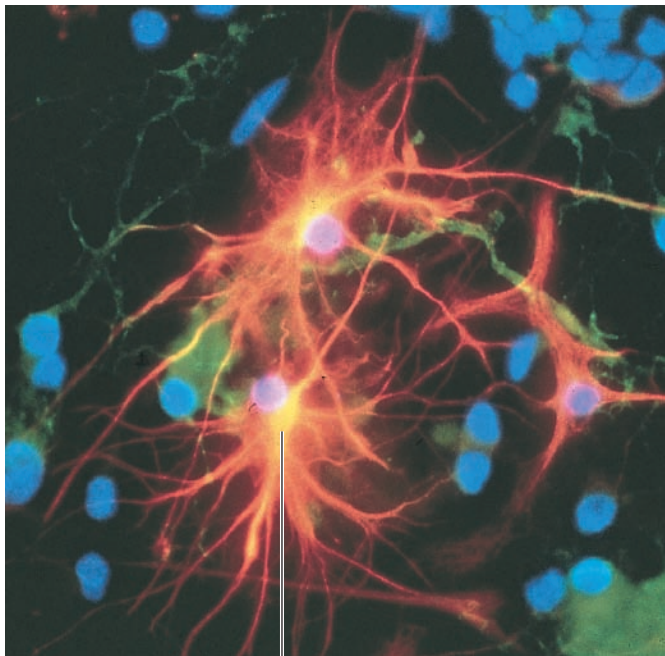


\* Efferent autonomic nerve pathways consist of a two-neuron chain between the CNS and the effector organ.

● **FIGURE 5-2** Structure and location of the three functional classes of neurons. Efferent autonomic nerve pathways consist of a two-neuron chain between the CNS and the effector organ.



● **FIGURE 5-3 Glial cells of the central nervous system.** The glial cells include the astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, microglia, and ependymal cells.



Nancy Keidersha, Ph.D., Research Scientist, Cell Biology, ImmunoGen, Inc. (Harvard Medical School)

● **FIGURE 5-4 Astrocytes.** Note the starlike shape of these astrocytes, which have been grown in tissue culture.

4. Astrocytes help transfer nutrients from the blood to the neurons.
5. They help repair brain injuries by forming neural scars.
6. They take up and degrade some locally released neurotransmitters, thus bringing the actions of these chemical messengers to a halt.
7. Astrocytes take up excess  $K^+$  from the brain ECF when high action potential activity outpaces the ability of the  $Na^+-K^+$  pump to return the effluxed  $K^+$  to the neurons. (Recall that  $K^+$  leaves a neuron during the falling phase of an action potential; see p. 78.) By taking up excess  $K^+$ , astrocytes help maintain the optimal ion conditions around neurons to sustain normal neural excitability.
8. Astrocytes communicate with neurons and with one another by means of chemical signals passing locally in both directions between these cells, both extracellularly and through gap junctions (see p. 49). Evidence suggests this two-directional chatter plays an important role in synaptic transmission and the brain's processing of information. As examples, via chemical signals astrocytes can share information about action potential activity in nearby neurons, affect neuronal excitability, coordinate and integrate synaptic activity among networks of neurons working to

gether, and promote the formation of new synapses. Some neuroscientists suggest that synapses should be considered “three-party” junctures involving the glial cells and the presynaptic and postsynaptic neurons. This point of view is indicative of the increasingly important role being placed on astrocytes in synapse function. Thus, astrocytes have come a long way from their earlier reputation as “support staff” for neurons; these glial cells might turn out to be the “board members” commanding the neurons.

**OLIGODENDROCYTES** **Oligodendrocytes** form the insulative myelin sheaths around axons in the CNS. An oligodendrocyte has several elongated projections, each of which wraps jelly-roll fashion around a section of an interneuronal axon to form a patch of myelin (see ● Figure 4-12c, p. 84, and ● Figure 5-3). Late in fetal life, oligodendrocytes begin secreting *nerve-growth-inhibiting proteins*, such as the chemical messenger dubbed *Nogo*. Scientists speculate that nerve-growth inhibitors normally serve as “guardrails” to keep new nerve endings from straying outside their proper paths. The growth-inhibiting action of oligodendrocytes may thus stabilize the enormously complex structure of the CNS.



Growth inhibition is a disadvantage, however, when central axons need to be mended, as when the spinal cord has been severed accidentally. Damaged neuronal fibers in the brain and spinal cord never regenerate, leaving the patient with permanent deficits, such as paralysis and loss of sensation below the level of spinal cord severance. Researchers are exploring promising ways to spur repair of central axonal pathways, with the goal of enabling victims to walk again.

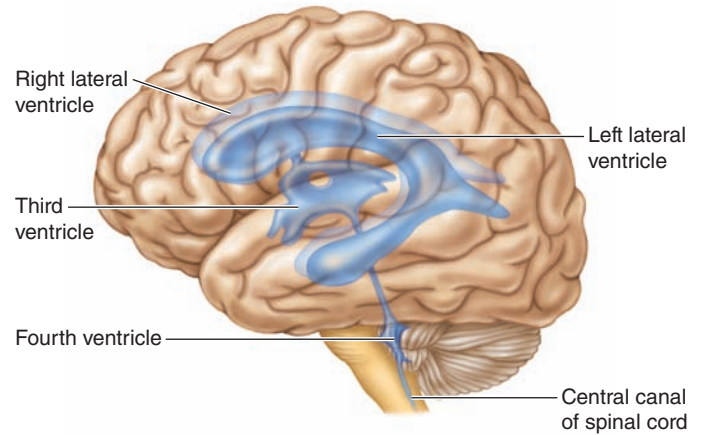
By contrast, Schwann cells, the myelin-forming cells of the PNS, form a *regeneration tube* and secrete *nerve-growth-enhancing proteins* that respectively guide and promote regrowth of damaged peripheral axons, as long as the cell body and dendrites remain intact (that is, as long as the neuron is still alive). Successful fiber regeneration permits the return of sensation and movement at some time after peripheral nerve injuries, although regeneration is not always successful.

**MICROGLIA** **Microglia** are the immune defense cells of the CNS, where they remain stationary until activated by an infection or injury. When trouble occurs in the CNS, microglia become highly mobile and move toward the affected area to remove any foreign invaders or tissue debris by phagocytosis (see p. 24). Activated microglia also release destructive chemicals for assault against their target.



Researchers increasingly suspect that excessive release of these chemicals from overzealous microglia may damage the neurons they are meant to protect, thus contributing to the insidious neuronal damage seen in stroke, Alzheimer’s disease, multiple sclerosis, the dementia (mental failing) of AIDS, and other *neurodegenerative diseases*.

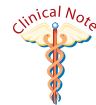
**EPENDYMAL CELLS** **Ependymal cells** line the internal, fluid-filled cavities of the CNS. As the nervous system develops embryonically from a hollow neural tube, the original central cavity of this tube is maintained and modified to form the ventricles and central canal. The four **ventricles** are interconnected



● **FIGURE 5-5** The ventricles of the brain.

chambers within the brain that are continuous with the narrow, hollow **central canal** through the middle of the spinal cord (● Figure 5-5). The ependymal cells lining the ventricles help form cerebrospinal fluid, a topic to be discussed shortly.

Ependymal cells also have a different role: They serve as neural stem cells with the potential of forming not only other glial cells but new neurons as well (see p. 8). The traditional view has long held that new neurons are not produced in the mature brain. Then, in the late 1990s, scientists discovered that new neurons are produced in a specific part of the hippocampus, a structure important for learning and memory (see p. 127). Neurons in the rest of the brain are considered irreplaceable. But the discovery that ependymal cells are precursors for new neurons suggests that the adult brain has more potential for repairing damaged regions than previously assumed. Currently, no evidence shows that the brain spontaneously repairs itself following neuron-losing insults such as head trauma, strokes, and neurodegenerative diseases. Apparently, most brain regions cannot activate this mechanism for replenishing neurons, probably because the appropriate “cocktail” of supportive chemicals is not present. Researchers hope that probing into why these ependymal cells are dormant and how they might be activated will lead to the possibility of unlocking the brain’s undeveloped capacity for self-repair.



Unlike neurons, glial cells do not lose the ability to undergo cell division, so most brain tumors of neural origin consist of glial cells (**gliomas**). Neurons themselves do not form tumors because they are unable to divide and multiply. Brain tumors of non-neural origin are of two types: (1) those that metastasize (spread) to the brain from other sites and (2) **meningiomas**, which originate from the meninges, the protective membranes covering the CNS. We next examine the meninges and other means by which the CNS is protected.

## Protection and Nourishment of the Brain

Central nervous tissue is delicate. Because of this characteristic, and because damaged nerve cells cannot be replaced, this fragile, irreplaceable tissue must be well protected.



### The delicate CNS is well protected.

Four major features help protect the CNS from injury:

1. It is enclosed by hard, bony structures. The **cranium (skull)** encases the brain, and the **vertebral column** surrounds the spinal cord.
2. Three protective and nourishing membranes, the **meninges**, lie between the bony covering and the nervous tissue.
3. The brain “floats” in a special cushioning fluid, the **cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)**. CSF circulates throughout the ventricles and central canal, as well as over the entire surface of the brain and spinal cord in a space between the meningeal layers. CSF has about the same density as the brain itself, so the brain is essentially suspended in this special fluid environment. The major function of CSF is to be a shock-absorbing fluid to prevent the brain from bumping against the interior of the hard skull when the head is subjected to sudden, jarring movements.
4. A highly selective **blood–brain barrier (BBB)** regulates exchanges between the blood and the brain, thus limiting access of blood-borne materials into the vulnerable brain tissue. Throughout the body, materials can be exchanged between the blood and the interstitial fluid only across the walls of capillaries. Capillary walls are formed by a single layer of cells. The holes or pores usually present between the cells making up a capillary wall permit rather free exchange across capillaries elsewhere. However, the cells that form the walls of a brain capillary are joined by tight junctions (see p. 48). These impermeable junctions seal the capillary wall so that nothing can be exchanged across the wall by passing between the cells. The only permissible exchanges occur through the capillary cells themselves. Only selected, carefully regulated exchanges can be made across this barrier. Thus, transport across brain capillary walls *between* the wall-forming cells is *anatomically prevented* and transport *through* the cells is *physiologically restricted*. Together, these mechanisms constitute the BBB. Astrocytes induce formation of the BBB by signaling the cells that form the brain capillaries to “get tight” and by promoting the production of specific carrier proteins and ion channels that regulate the transport of selected substances through these capillary cells.

By strictly limiting exchange between the blood and the brain, the BBB protects the delicate brain from chemical fluctuations in the blood. For example, even if the  $K^+$  level in the blood is doubled, little change occurs in the  $K^+$  concentration of the fluid bathing the central neurons. This is beneficial because alterations in interstitial fluid  $K^+$  would be detrimental to neuronal function. Also, the BBB minimizes the possibility that potentially harmful blood-borne substances might reach the central neural tissue. It further prevents certain circulating hormones that could act as neurotransmitters from reaching the brain, where they could produce uncontrolled nervous activity. On the negative side, the BBB limits the use of drugs for the treatment of brain and spinal cord disorders, because many drugs cannot penetrate this barrier.

### The brain depends on constant delivery of oxygen and glucose by the blood.

Even though many substances in the blood never come in contact with the brain tissue, the brain depends more than any other tissue on a constant blood supply. Unlike most tissues, which can resort to anaerobic metabolism to produce ATP in the absence of  $O_2$  for at least short periods (see p. 30), the brain cannot produce ATP without  $O_2$ . Also in contrast to most tissues, which can use other sources of fuel for energy production in lieu of glucose, the brain normally uses only glucose but does not store any of this nutrient. Because of its high rate of demand for ATP, under resting conditions the brain uses 20% of the  $O_2$  and 50% of the glucose consumed in the body. Therefore, the brain depends on a continuous, adequate blood supply of  $O_2$  and glucose. Although it constitutes only 2% of body weight, the brain receives 15% of the blood pumped out by the heart.



Brain damage results if this organ is deprived of its critical  $O_2$  supply for more than 4 to 5 minutes or if its glucose supply is cut off for more than 10 to 15 minutes. The most common cause of inadequate blood supply to the brain is a stroke. (See the accompanying boxed feature, **Beyond the Basics**, for details.)

## Overview of the Central Nervous System

The CNS consists of the brain and spinal cord. The estimated 100 billion neurons in your brain are assembled into complex networks that enable you to (1) subconsciously regulate your internal environment by neural means, (2) experience emotions, (3) voluntarily control your movements, (4) perceive (be consciously aware of) your own body and your surroundings, and (5) engage in other higher cognitive processes such as thought and memory. The term **cognition** refers to the act or process of “knowing,” including both awareness and judgment.

No part of the brain acts in isolation from other brain regions, because networks of neurons are anatomically linked by synapses and neurons throughout the brain communicate extensively with one another by electrical and chemical means. However, neurons that work together to ultimately accomplish a given function tend to be organized within a discrete location. Therefore, even though the brain operates as a whole, it is organized into regions. The parts of the brain can be grouped in various ways based on anatomic distinctions, functional specialization, and evolutionary development. We use the following grouping:

1. Brain stem
2. Cerebellum
3. Forebrain
  - a. Diencephalon
    - (1) Hypothalamus
    - (2) Thalamus
  - b. Cerebrum
    - (1) Basal nuclei
    - (2) Cerebral cortex

## Beyond the Basics

The most common cause of brain damage is a **cerebrovascular accident (CVA or stroke)**. When a cerebral (brain) blood vessel is blocked by a clot (which accounts for more than 80% of strokes) or ruptures, the brain tissue supplied by that vessel loses its vital  $O_2$  and glucose supply. The result is damage and usually death of the deprived tissue. New findings show that neural damage (and the subsequent loss of neural function) extends well beyond the blood-deprived area as a result of a neurotoxic effect that leads to the death of additional nearby cells. The initial blood-deprived cells die by necrosis (unintentional cell death), but the doomed neighbors undergo apoptosis (deliberate cell suicide; see p. 98). In a process known as **excitotoxicity**, the initial  $O_2$ -starved cells release excessive amounts of glutamate, a common excitatory neurotransmitter. The excitatory overdose of glutamate from the damaged brain cells binds with and overexcites surrounding neurons. Specifically, glutamate binds with excitatory receptors that function as calcium ( $Ca^{2+}$ ) channels. As a result of toxic activation of these receptor-channels, they remain open for too long, permitting too much  $Ca^{2+}$  to rush into the affected neighbor-

## Strokes: A Deadly Domino Effect

ing neurons. This elevated intracellular  $Ca^{2+}$  triggers these cells to self-destruct. Cell-damaging free radicals (see p. 254) are produced during this process. Adding to the injury, researchers speculate that the  $Ca^{2+}$  apoptotic signal may spread from these dying cells to abutting healthy cells through gap junctions, cell-to-cell conduits that allow  $Ca^{2+}$  and other small ions to diffuse freely between cells (see p. 49). This action kills even more neuronal victims. Thus, most neurons that die following a stroke are originally unharmed cells that commit suicide in response to the chain of reactions unleashed by the toxic release of glutamate from the initial site of  $O_2$  deprivation.

Until the last decade, physicians could do nothing to halt the inevitable neuronal loss following a stroke, leaving patients with an unpredictable mix of neural deficits. Treatment was limited to rehabilitative therapy after the damage was already complete. In recent years, armed with new knowledge about the underlying factors in stroke-related neuronal death, the medical community has been seeking ways to halt the cell-killing dom-

ino effect. The goal is to limit the extent of neuronal damage and thus minimize or even prevent clinical symptoms such as paralysis. In the early 1990s, doctors started administering clot-dissolving drugs within the first 3 hours after the onset of a stroke to restore blood flow through blocked cerebral vessels. Clot busters were the first drugs used to treat strokes, but they are only the beginning of new stroke therapies. Other methods are under investigation to prevent adjacent neurons from succumbing to the neurotoxic release of glutamate. These include blocking the  $Ca^{2+}$  receptor-channels that initiate the death-wielding chain of events in response to glutamate, halting the apoptosis pathway that results in self-execution, and blocking the gap junctions that permit the  $Ca^{2+}$  death messenger to spread to adjacent cells. These tactics hold much promise for treating strokes, which are the most common cause of adult disability and the third leading cause of death in the United States. However, to date, no new neuroprotective drugs have been found that do not cause serious side effects.

The order in which these components are listed generally represents both their anatomic location (from bottom to top) and their complexity and sophistication of function (from the least specialized, oldest evolutionary level to the newest, most specialized level).

A primitive nervous system consists of comparatively few interneurons interspersed between afferent and efferent neurons. During evolutionary development, the interneuronal component progressively expanded, formed more complex interconnections, and became localized at the head end of the nervous system, forming the brain. Newer, more sophisticated layers of the brain were added on to the older, more primitive layers. The human brain represents the present peak of development.

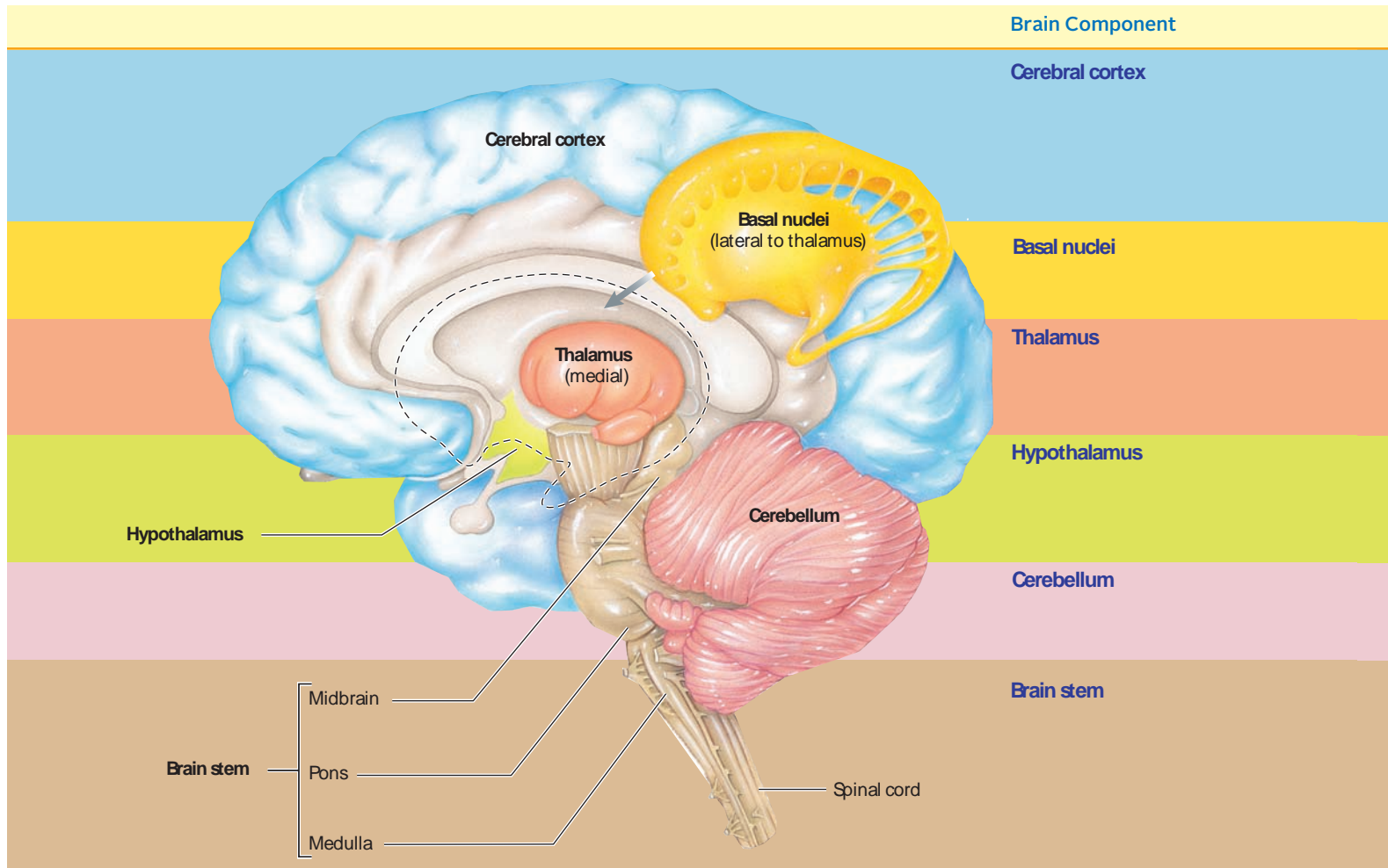
The *brain stem*, the oldest region of the brain, is continuous with the spinal cord (▲ Table 5-1 and ● Figure 5-6b). It consists of the midbrain, pons, and medulla. The brain stem controls many life-sustaining processes, such as respiration, circulation, and digestion, common to all vertebrates. These processes are

often referred to as vegetative functions, meaning functions performed unconsciously or involuntarily. With the loss of higher brain functions, these lower brain levels, in conjunction with appropriate supportive therapy such as providing adequate nourishment, can still sustain the functions essential for survival, but the person has no awareness or control of that life, a condition sometimes described as “being a vegetable.”

Attached at the top rear portion of the brain stem is the *cerebellum*, which is concerned with maintaining proper position of the body in space and subconscious coordination of motor activity (movement). The cerebellum also plays a key role in learning skilled motor tasks, such as a dance routine.

On top of the brain stem, tucked within the interior of the cerebrum, is the *diencephalon*. It houses two brain components: the *hypothalamus*, which controls many homeostatic functions important in maintaining stability of the internal environment; and the *thalamus*, which performs some primitive sensory processing.

## ▲ Table 5-1 Overview of Structures and Functions of the Major Components of the Brain



Using an ice cream cone as an analogy, on top of this “cone” of lower brain regions is the *cerebrum*, whose “scoop” gets progressively larger and more highly convoluted (that is, has tortuous ridges delineated by deep grooves or folds) the more evolutionarily advanced the vertebrate species is. The cerebrum is most highly developed in humans, where it constitutes about 80% of the total brain weight. The outer layer of the cerebrum is the highly convoluted *cerebral cortex*, which caps an inner core that houses the *basal nuclei*. The myriad convolutions of the human cerebral cortex give it the appearance of a much-folded walnut (● Figure 5-6a). In more ancestral mammal groups, the cortex is smooth. Without these surface wrinkles, the human cortex would take up to three times the area it does and, thus, would not fit like a cover over the underlying structures. The increased neural circuitry housed in the extra-cerebral cortical area not found in less highly developed species is responsible for many of our unique human abilities. The cerebral cortex plays a key role in the most sophisticated neural functions, such as voluntary initiation of movement, final sensory perception (the brain’s interpretation of the body and its

surroundings based on sensory input), conscious thought, language, personality traits, and other factors we associate with the mind or intellect. It is the highest, most complex, integrating area of the brain.

Each of these regions of the CNS is now discussed in turn, starting with the highest level, the cerebral cortex, and moving down to the lowest level, the spinal cord.

### Cerebral Cortex

The **cerebrum**, by far the largest portion of the human brain, is divided into two halves, the right and left **cerebral hemispheres** (● Figure 5-6a). They are connected to each other by the **corpus callosum**, a thick band consisting of an estimated 300 million neuronal axons that connect the two hemispheres (● Figure 5-6b; also see ● Figure 5-12, p. 122). The corpus callosum is the body’s “information superhighway.” The two hemispheres communicate and cooperate with each other by means of constant information exchange through this neural connection.

## Major Functions

1. Sensory perception
2. Voluntary control of movement
3. Language
4. Personality traits
5. Sophisticated mental events, such as thinking, memory, decision making, creativity, and self-consciousness

1. Inhibition of muscle tone
2. Coordination of slow, sustained movements
3. Suppression of useless patterns of movement

1. Relay station for all synaptic input
2. Crude awareness of sensation
3. Some degree of consciousness
4. Role in motor control

1. Regulation of many homeostatic functions, such as temperature control, thirst, urine output, and food intake
2. Important link between nervous and endocrine systems
3. Extensive involvement with emotion and basic behavioral patterns
4. Role in sleep–wake cycle

1. Maintenance of balance
2. Enhancement of muscle tone
3. Coordination and planning of skilled voluntary muscle activity

1. Origin of majority of peripheral cranial nerves
2. Cardiovascular, respiratory, and digestive control centers
3. Regulation of muscle reflexes involved with equilibrium and posture
4. Reception and integration of all synaptic input from spinal cord; arousal and activation of cerebral cortex
5. Role in sleep–wake cycle

### The cerebral cortex is an outer shell of gray matter covering an inner core of white matter.

Each hemisphere is composed of a thin outer shell of *gray matter*, the **cerebral cortex**, covering a thick central core of *white matter* (see ● Figure 5-12). Several other masses of gray matter that collectively constitute the basal nuclei are located deep within the white matter. Throughout the entire CNS, **gray matter** consists mostly of densely packaged neuronal cell bodies and their dendrites, as well as most glial cells. Bundles or tracts of myelinated nerve fibers (axons) constitute the **white matter**; its white appearance is due to the lipid composition of the myelin. The gray matter can be viewed as the “computers” of the CNS and the white matter as the “wires” that connect the computers to one another. Integration of neural input and initiation of neural output take place at synapses within the gray matter. The fiber tracts in the white matter transmit signals from one part of the cerebral cortex to another or between the cortex and the other regions of the CNS. Such communication between different areas of the cortex and elsewhere facilitates integration of their activity. This integration is essential for even a relatively simple task such as picking a flower. Vision of the flower is received by one area of the cortex, reception of its fragrance takes

place in another area, and movement is initiated by still another area. More subtle neuronal responses, such as appreciation of the flower’s beauty and the urge to pick it, are poorly understood but undoubtedly involve extensive interconnection of fibers among different cortical regions.

### The four pairs of lobes in the cerebral cortex are specialized for different activities.

We now consider the locations of the major functional areas of the cerebral cortex. Throughout this discussion, keep in mind that even though a discrete activity is ultimately attributed to a particular region of the brain, no part of the brain functions in isolation. Each part depends on complex interplay among numerous other regions for both incoming and outgoing messages.

The anatomic landmarks used in cortical mapping are specific deep folds that divide each half of the cortex into four major lobes: the *occipital*, *temporal*, *parietal*, and *frontal lobes* (● Figure 5-7). Look at the basic functional map of the cortex in ● Figure 5-8a during the following discussion of the major activities attributed to various regions of these lobes.

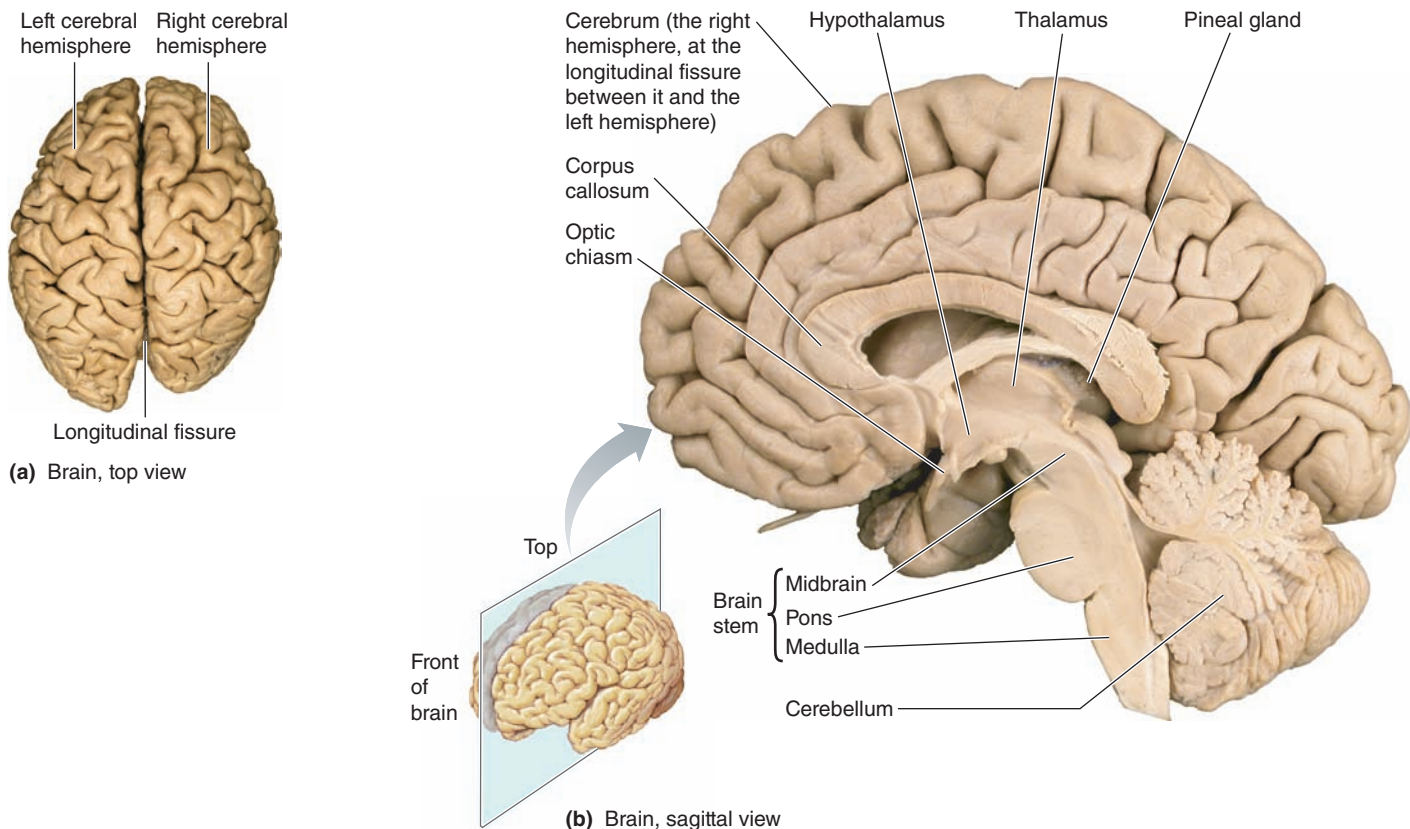
The **occipital lobes**, located posteriorly (at the back of the head), carry out the initial processing of visual input. Auditory (sound) sensation is initially received by the **temporal lobes**, located laterally (on the sides of the head) (● Figure 5-8a and b). You will learn more about the functions of these regions in Chapter 6 when we discuss vision and hearing.

The parietal lobes and frontal lobes, located on the top of the head, are separated by a deep infolding, the **central sulcus**, which runs roughly down the middle of the lateral surface of each hemisphere. The **parietal lobes** lie to the rear of the central sulcus on each side, and the **frontal lobes** lie in front of it. The parietal lobes are primarily responsible for receiving and processing sensory input. The frontal lobes are responsible for three main functions: (1) voluntary motor activity, (2) speaking ability, and (3) elaboration of thought. We next examine the role of the parietal lobes in sensory perception and then turn to the functions of the frontal lobes in more detail.

### The parietal lobes accomplish somatosensory processing.

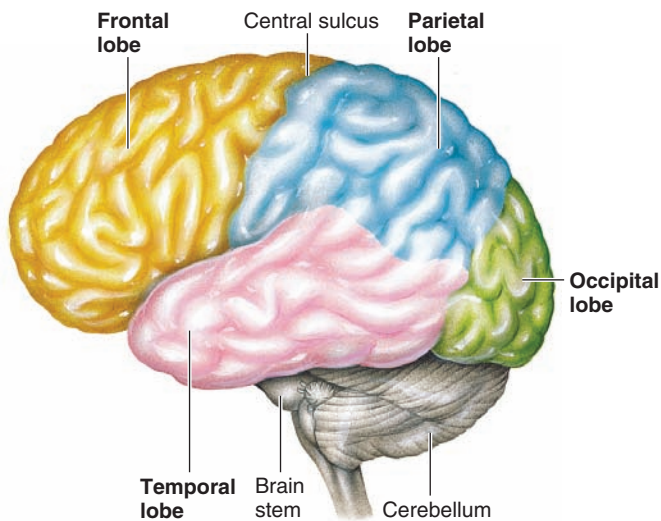
Sensations from the surface of the body, such as touch, pressure, heat, cold, and pain, are collectively known as **somesthetic sensations** (*somesthetic* means “body feelings”). The means by which afferent neurons detect and relay information to the CNS about these sensations are covered in Chapter 6 when we explore the afferent division of the PNS in detail. Within the CNS, this information is **projected** (transmitted along specific neural pathways to higher brain levels) to the **somatosensory cortex**. The somatosensory cortex is located in the front portion of each parietal lobe immediately behind the central sulcus (● Figures 5-8a and 5-9a). It is the site for initial cortical processing and perception of both somesthetic and proprioceptive input. **Proprioception** is the awareness of body position.

Each region within the somatosensory cortex receives somesthetic and proprioceptive input from a specific area of the body. This distribution of cortical sensory processing is depicted in ● Figure 5-9b. Note that on this **sensory homunculus**



● **FIGURE 5-6 Brain of a human cadaver.** (a) Top view of the brain. Note that the deep longitudinal fissure divides the cerebrum into the right and left cerebral hemispheres. (b) Sagittal view of the right half of the brain. All major brain regions are visible from this midline interior view. The corpus callosum is a neural bridge between the two cerebral hemispheres.

(*homunculus* means “little man”) the different parts of the body are not equally represented. The size of each body part in this homunculus indicates the relative proportion of the somatosensory cortex devoted to that area. The exaggerated size of the face, tongue, hands, and genitalia indicates the high degree of sensory perception associated with these body parts.

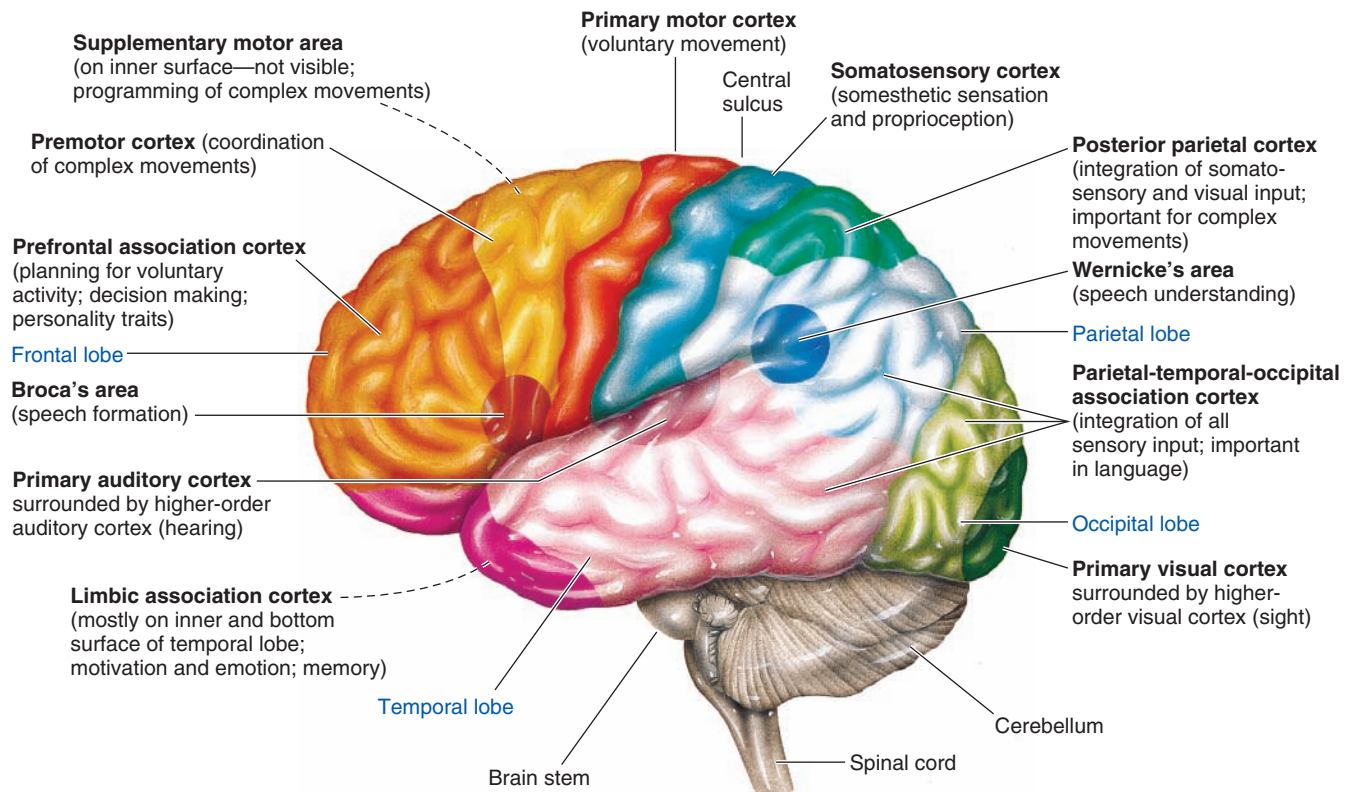


● **FIGURE 5-7 Cortical lobes.** Each half of the cerebral cortex is divided into the occipital, temporal, parietal, and frontal lobes, as depicted in this lateral view of the brain.

The somatosensory cortex on each side of the brain mostly receives sensory input from the opposite side of the body, because most ascending pathways that carry sensory information up the spinal cord cross over to the opposite side before eventually terminating in the cortex. Thus, damage to the somatosensory cortex in the left hemisphere produces sensory deficits on the right side of the body, whereas sensory losses on the left side are associated with damage to the right half of the cortex.

Simple awareness of touch, pressure, temperature, or pain is detected by the thalamus, a lower level of the brain, but the somatosensory cortex goes beyond mere recognition of sensations to fuller sensory perception. The thalamus makes you aware that something hot versus something cold is touching your body, but it does not tell you where or of what intensity. The somatosensory cortex localizes the source of sensory input and perceives the level of intensity of the stimulus. It also is capable of spatial discrimination, so it can discern shapes of objects being held and can distinguish subtle differences in similar objects that come into contact with the skin.

The somatosensory cortex, in turn, projects this sensory input via white matter fibers to adjacent higher sensory areas for even further elaboration, analysis, and integration of sensory information. These higher areas are important in perceiving complex patterns of somatosensory stimulation—for example, simultaneous appreciation of the texture, firmness, temperature, shape, position, and location of an object you are holding.



(a) Regions of the cerebral cortex responsible for various functions



(b) Regions of increased blood flow during different tasks

● **FIGURE 5-8 Functional areas of the cerebral cortex.** (a) Various regions of the cerebral cortex are primarily responsible for various aspects of neural processing, as indicated in this lateral view of the brain. (b) Different areas of the brain “light up” on positron-emission tomography (PET) scans as a person performs different tasks. PET scans detect the magnitude of blood flow in various regions of the brain. Because more blood flows into a particular region of the brain when it is more active, neuroscientists can use PET scans to “take pictures” of the brain at work on various tasks.

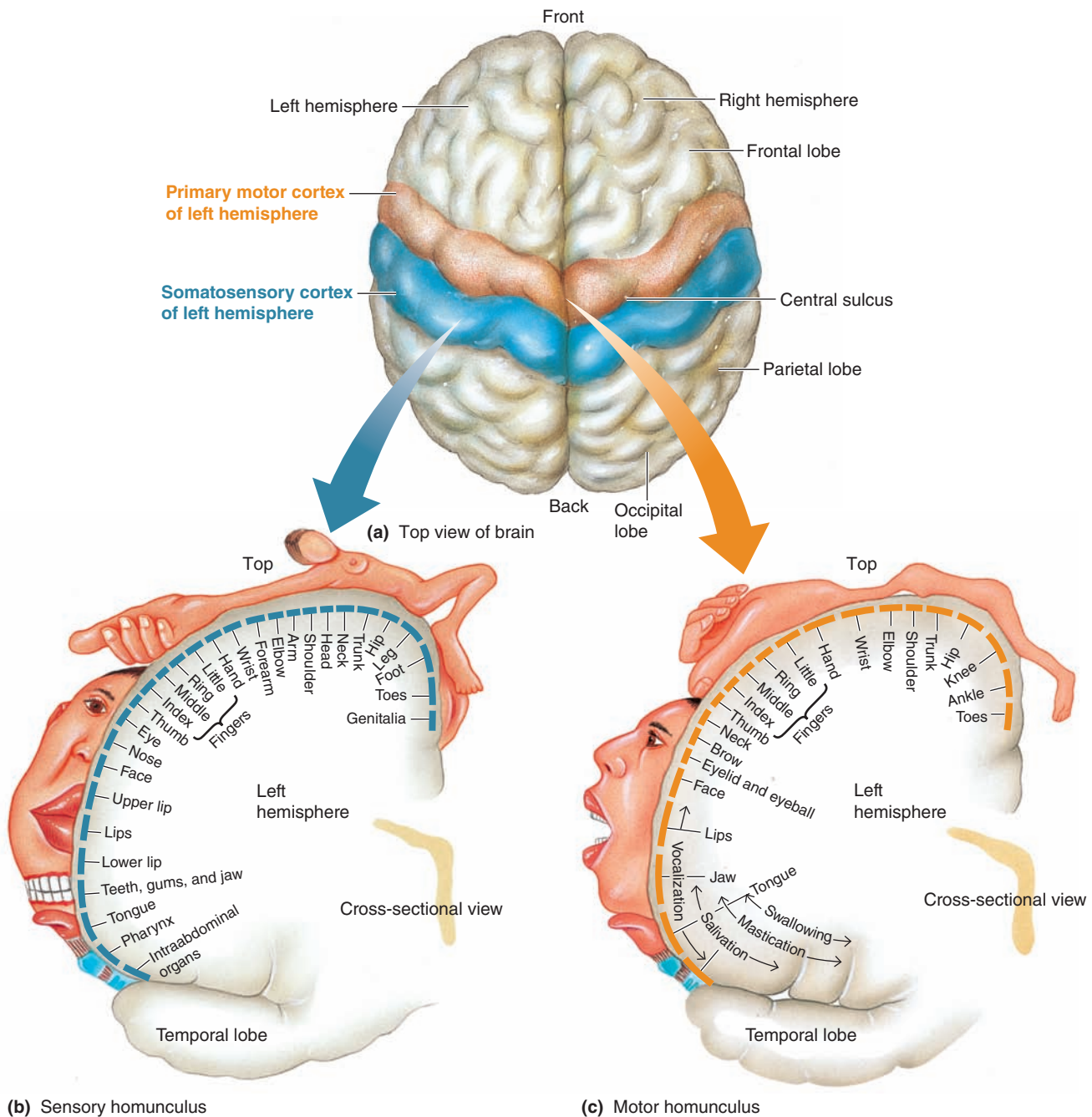
Courtesy of Washington University School of Medicine, St. Louis

### The primary motor cortex located in the frontal lobes controls the skeletal muscles.

The area in the rear portion of the frontal lobe immediately in front of the central sulcus and next to the somatosensory cortex is the **primary motor cortex** (see ● Figures 5-8a and 5-9a). It confers voluntary control over movement produced by skeletal muscles. As in sensory processing, the motor cortex on each side of the brain primarily controls muscles on the opposite side of the body. Neuronal tracts originating in the motor cortex of the left hemisphere cross over before passing down the spinal

cord to terminate on efferent motor neurons that trigger skeletal muscle contraction on the right side of the body. Accordingly, damage to the motor cortex on the left side of the brain produces paralysis on the right side of the body; the converse is also true.

Stimulation of different areas of the primary motor cortex brings about movement in different regions of the body. Like the sensory homunculus for the somatosensory cortex, the **motor homunculus**, which depicts the location and relative amount of motor cortex devoted to output to the muscles of each body part,



**● FIGURE 5-9 Somatotopic maps of the somatosensory cortex and the primary motor cortex.** (a) Top view of cerebral hemispheres showing the somatosensory cortex and the primary motor cortex. (b) Sensory homunculus showing the distribution of sensory input to the somatosensory cortex from different parts of the body. The distorted graphic representation of the body parts indicates the relative proportion of the somatosensory cortex devoted to reception of sensory input from each area. (c) Motor homunculus showing the distribution of motor output from the primary motor cortex to different parts of the body. The distorted graphic representation of the body parts indicates the relative proportion of the primary motor cortex devoted to controlling skeletal muscles in each area.

is distorted (● Figure 5-9c). The fingers, thumbs, and muscles important in speech, especially those of the lips and tongue, are grossly exaggerated, indicating the fine degree of motor control these body parts have. Compare this to how little brain tissue is devoted to the trunk, arms, and lower extremities, which are not capable of such complex movements. Thus, the extent of representation in the motor cortex is proportional to the precision and complexity of motor skills required of the respective part.

### The higher motor areas are also important in motor control.

Even though signals from the primary motor cortex terminate on the efferent neurons that trigger voluntary skeletal muscle contraction, the motor cortex is not the only region of the brain involved with motor control. First, lower brain regions and the spinal cord control involuntary skeletal muscle activity, such as in maintaining posture. Some of these same regions play an important role in monitoring and coordinating voluntary motor activity that the primary motor cortex has set in motion. Second, although fibers originating from the motor cortex can activate motor neurons to bring about muscle contraction, the motor cortex itself does not *initiate* voluntary movement. The motor cortex is activated by a widespread pattern of neuronal discharge, the **readiness potential**, which occurs about 750 msec before specific electrical activity is detectable in the motor cortex. Three higher motor areas of the cortex are involved in this voluntary decision-making period. These higher areas, which all command the primary motor cortex, include the *supplementary motor area*, the *premotor cortex*, and the *posterior parietal cortex* (see ● Figure 5-8a). Furthermore, a subcortical region of the brain, the *cerebellum*, plays an important role in planning, initiating, and timing certain kinds of movement by sending input to the motor areas of the cortex.

The three higher motor areas of the cortex and the cerebellum carry out different, related functions that are all important in programming and coordinating complex movements that involve simultaneous contraction of many muscles. Even though electrical stimulation of the primary motor cortex brings about contraction of particular muscles, no purposeful coordinated movement can be elicited, just as pulling on isolated strings of a puppet does not produce any meaningful movement. A puppet displays purposeful movements only when a skilled puppeteer manipulates the strings in a coordinated manner. In the same way, these four regions (and perhaps other areas as yet undetermined) develop a **motor program** for the specific voluntary task and then “pull” the appropriate pattern of “strings” in the primary motor cortex to produce the sequenced contraction of appropriate muscles that accomplishes the desired complex movement.

The **supplementary motor area** lies on the medial (inner) surface of each hemisphere in front of the primary motor cortex. It plays a preparatory role in programming complex sequences of movement. Stimulation of various regions of this motor area brings about complex patterns of movement, such as opening or closing the hand. Lesions here do not result in paralysis, but they do interfere with performance of more complex, useful integrated movements.

The **premotor cortex**, located on the lateral surface of each hemisphere in front of the primary motor cortex, is important in orienting the body and arms toward a specific target. To command the primary motor cortex to produce the appropriate skeletal muscle contraction for accomplishing the desired movement, the premotor cortex must be informed of the body’s momentary position in relation to the target. The premotor cortex is guided by sensory input processed by the **posterior parietal cortex**, a region that lies in back of the primary somatosensory cortex. These two higher motor areas have many anatomic interconnections and are closely related functionally. When either of these areas is damaged, the person cannot process complex sensory information to accomplish purposeful movement in a spatial context; for example, the person cannot successfully manipulate eating utensils.

Even though these higher motor areas command the primary motor cortex and are important in preparing for execution of deliberate, meaningful movement, researchers cannot say that voluntary movement is actually initiated by these areas. This pushes the question of how and where voluntary activity is initiated one step further. Probably no single area is responsible; undoubtedly, numerous pathways can ultimately bring about deliberate movement.

Think about the neural systems called into play, for example, during the simple act of picking up an apple to eat. Your memory tells you the fruit is in a bowl on the kitchen counter. Sensory systems, coupled with your knowledge based on past experience, enable you to distinguish the apple from the other kinds of fruit in the bowl. On receiving this integrated sensory information, motor systems issue commands to the exact muscles of the body in the proper sequence to enable you to move to the fruit bowl and pick up the targeted apple. During execution of this act, minor adjustments in the motor command are made as needed, based on continual updating provided by sensory input about the position of your body relative to the goal. Then there is the issue of motivation and behavior. Are you reaching for the apple because you are hungry (detected by a neural system in the hypothalamus) or because of a more complex behavioral scenario (for example, you started to think about food because you just saw someone eating on television)? Why did you choose an apple rather than a banana when both are in the fruit bowl and you like the taste of both, and so on? Thus, initiating and executing purposeful voluntary movement actually include a complex neuronal interplay that involves output from the motor regions guided by integrated sensory information and ultimately depends on motivational systems and elaboration of thought. All this plays against a background of memory stores from which you can make meaningful decisions about desirable movements.

### Different regions of the cortex control different aspects of language.

Unlike the sensory and motor regions of the cortex, which are present in both hemispheres, in most people the areas of the brain responsible for language ability are found in only one hemisphere—the left hemisphere. **Language** is a complex form of communication in which written or spoken words symbolize



objects and convey ideas. It involves the integration of two distinct capabilities—namely, *expression* (speaking ability) and *comprehension*—each of which is related to a specific area of the cortex. The primary areas of cortical specialization for language are Broca's area and Wernicke's area. **Broca's area**, which governs speaking ability, is located in the left frontal lobe in close association with the motor areas of the cortex that control the muscles necessary for speaking (see ● Figures 5-8a, 5-8b, and 5-10). **Wernicke's area**, located in the left cortex at the juncture of the parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes, is concerned with language comprehension. It plays a critical role in understanding both spoken and written messages. Furthermore, it is responsible for formulating coherent patterns of speech that are transferred via a bundle of fibers to Broca's area, which in turn controls the act of speaking. Wernicke's area receives input from the visual cortex in the occipital lobe, a pathway important in reading comprehension and in describing objects seen, as well as from the auditory cortex in the temporal lobe, a pathway essential for understanding spoken words. Precise interconnecting pathways between these localized cortical areas are involved in the various aspects of speech.

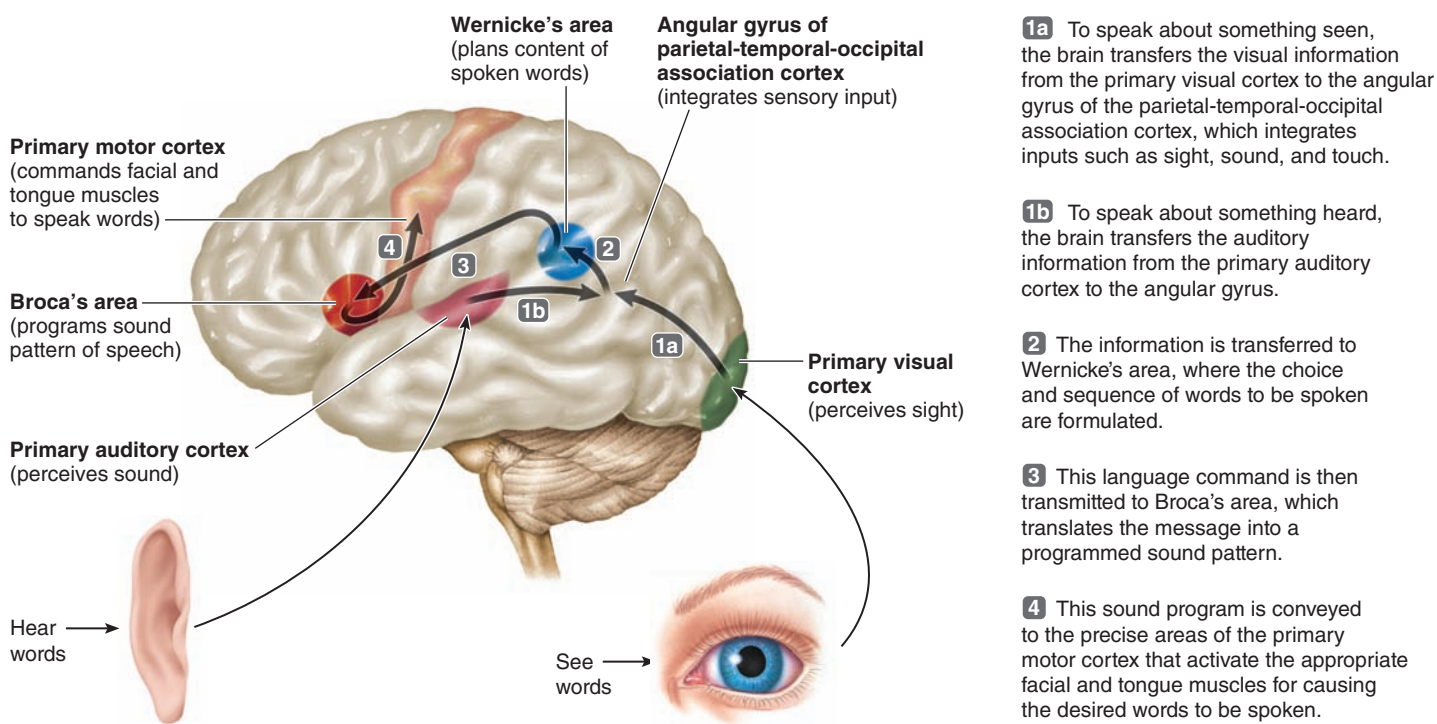
**Clinical Note** Because various aspects of language are localized in different regions of the cortex, damage to specific regions of the brain can result in selective disturbances of language. Damage to Broca's area results in a failure of word formation, although the patient can still understand the spoken and written word. Such people know what they want to say but cannot express themselves. Even though they can move their lips and tongue, they cannot establish the proper motor command to say the desired words. In contrast, patients with a lesion in Wernicke's area cannot understand words they see or hear. They can speak fluently, but their perfectly spoken words

make no sense. They cannot attach meaning to words or choose appropriate words to convey their thoughts. Such language disorders caused by damage to specific cortical areas are known as **aphasias**, most of which result from strokes. Aphasias should not be confused with **speech impediments**, which are caused by a defect in the mechanical aspect of speech, such as weakness or incoordination of the muscles controlling the vocal apparatus.

**Dyslexia**, another language disorder, is a difficulty in learning to read because of inappropriate interpretation of words. The problem arises from developmental abnormalities in connections between the visual and the language areas of the cortex or within the language areas themselves; that is, the person is born with "faulty wiring" within the language-processing system. The condition is in no way related to intellectual ability.

### The association areas of the cortex are involved in many higher functions.

The motor, sensory, and language areas account for only about half of the total cerebral cortex. The remaining areas, called **association areas**, are involved in higher functions. There are three association areas: (1) the *prefrontal association cortex*, (2) the *parietal-temporal-occipital association cortex*, and (3) the *limbic association cortex* (see ● Figure 5-8a). At one time, the association areas were called "silent" areas, because stimulation does not produce any observable motor response or sensory perception. (During brain surgery, typically the patient remains awake and only local anesthetic is used along the cut scalp. This is possible because the brain itself is insensitive to pain. Before cutting into this precious, nonregenerative tissue, the neurosurgeon explores the exposed region with a tiny stimulating electrode. The patient is asked to describe what



● **FIGURE 5-10** Cortical pathway for speaking a word seen or heard. The arrows and numbered steps show the pathway used to speak about something seen or heard. Similarly, appropriate muscles of the hand can be commanded to write the desired words.

happens with each stimulation—the flick of a finger, a prickly feeling on the bottom of the foot, nothing? In this way, the surgeon can ascertain the appropriate landmarks on the neural map before making an incision.)

The **prefrontal association cortex** is the front portion of the frontal lobe just ahead of the premotor cortex. This is the part of the brain that “brainstorms” or thinks (see ● Figure 5-8b). Specifically, the roles attributed to this region are (1) planning for voluntary activity, (2) decision making (that is, weighing consequences of future actions and choosing among options for various social or physical situations), (3) creativity, and (4) personality traits. To carry out these highest of neural functions, the prefrontal cortex is the site of operation of *working memory*, where the brain temporarily stores and actively manipulates information used in reasoning and planning. You will learn more about working memory later. Stimulating the prefrontal cortex does not produce any observable effects, but deficits in this area change personality and social behavior.

The **parietal-temporal-occipital association cortex** lies at the interface of the three lobes for which it is named. In this strategic location, it pools and integrates somatic, auditory, and visual sensations projected from these three lobes for complex perceptual processing. It enables you to “get the complete picture” of the relationship of various parts of your body with the external world. For example, it integrates visual information with proprioceptive input to let you place what you are seeing in proper perspective, such as realizing that a bottle is in an upright position despite the angle from which you view it (that is, whether you are standing up, lying down, or hanging upside down from a tree branch).

The **limbic association cortex** is located mostly on the bottom and adjoining inner portion of each temporal lobe. This area is concerned primarily with motivation and emotion and is extensively involved in memory.

The cortical association areas are all interconnected by bundles of fibers within the cerebral white matter. Collectively, the association areas integrate diverse information for purposeful action.

### The cerebral hemispheres have some degree of specialization.

The cortical areas described thus far appear to be equally distributed in both the right and the left hemispheres, except for the language areas, which are found only on one side, usually the left. The left side is also most commonly the dominant hemisphere for fine motor control. Thus, most people are right handed, because the left side of the brain controls the right side of the body. Furthermore, each hemisphere is somewhat specialized in the types of mental activities it carries out best. The **left cerebral hemisphere** excels in logical, analytical, sequential, and verbal tasks, such as math, language forms, and philosophy. In contrast, the **right cerebral hemisphere** excels in nonlanguage skills, especially spatial perception and artistic and musical talents. The left hemisphere tends to process information in a fine-detail, fragmentary way, while the right hemisphere views the world in a big-picture, holistic way. Normally, the two hemispheres share so much information that they complement each other, but in many individuals the skills associated with one hemisphere are more strongly developed. Left cere-

bral hemisphere dominance tends to be associated with “thinkers,” whereas right hemispheric skills dominate in “creators.”

### An electroencephalogram is a record of postsynaptic activity in cortical neurons.

Extracellular current flow arising from electrical activity within the cerebral cortex can be detected by placing recording electrodes on the scalp to produce a graphic record known as an **electroencephalogram**, or **EEG**. These “brain waves” for the most part are not due to action potentials but instead represent the momentary collective postsynaptic potential activity (that is, excitatory postsynaptic potentials, or EPSPs, and inhibitory postsynaptic potentials, or IPSPs) (see p. 87) in the cell bodies and dendrites located in the cortical layers under the recording electrode.

Electrical activity can always be recorded from the living brain, even during sleep and unconscious states, but the waveforms vary, depending on the degree of activity in the cerebral cortex. Often the waveforms appear irregular, but sometimes distinct patterns in the wave’s amplitude and frequency can be observed. A dramatic example of this is illustrated in ● Figure 5-11, in which the EEG waveform recorded over the occipital (visual) cortex changes markedly in response to simply opening and closing the eyes.

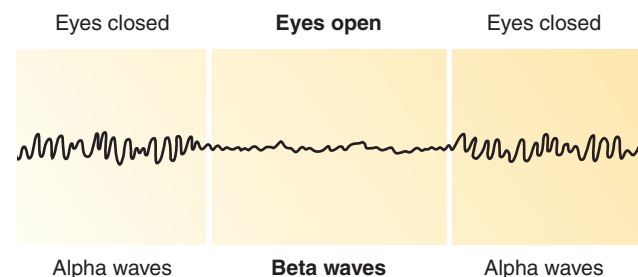
The EEG has three major uses:



1. The EEG is often used as a *clinical tool in the diagnosis of cerebral dysfunction*. Diseased or damaged cortical tissue often gives rise to altered EEG patterns.

One of the most common neurological diseases accompanied by a distinctively abnormal EEG is **epilepsy**. Epileptic seizures occur when a large collection of neurons undergo abnormal, synchronous action potentials that produce stereotypical, involuntary spasms and alterations in behavior.

2. The EEG is also used in the *legal determination of brain death*. Even though a person may have stopped breathing and the heart may have stopped pumping blood, it is often possible to restore and maintain respiratory and circulatory activity if resuscitative measures are instituted soon enough. Yet because the brain is susceptible to O<sub>2</sub> deprivation, irreversible brain damage may occur before lung and heart function can be reestablished, resulting in the paradoxical situation of a dead brain in a living body. The determination of whether a comatose patient being maintained by artificial respiration and other supportive measures is alive or dead has important medical, legal, and social implications. The need for viable organs for modern transplant surgery has made



● **FIGURE 5-11** Replacement of an alpha rhythm on an EEG with a beta rhythm when the eyes are opened.

the timeliness of such life-or-death determinations of utmost importance. Physicians, lawyers, and Americans in general have accepted the notion of brain death—that is, a brain that is not functioning, with no possibility of recovery—as the determinant of death under such circumstances. The most widely accepted indication of brain death is a flat EEG.

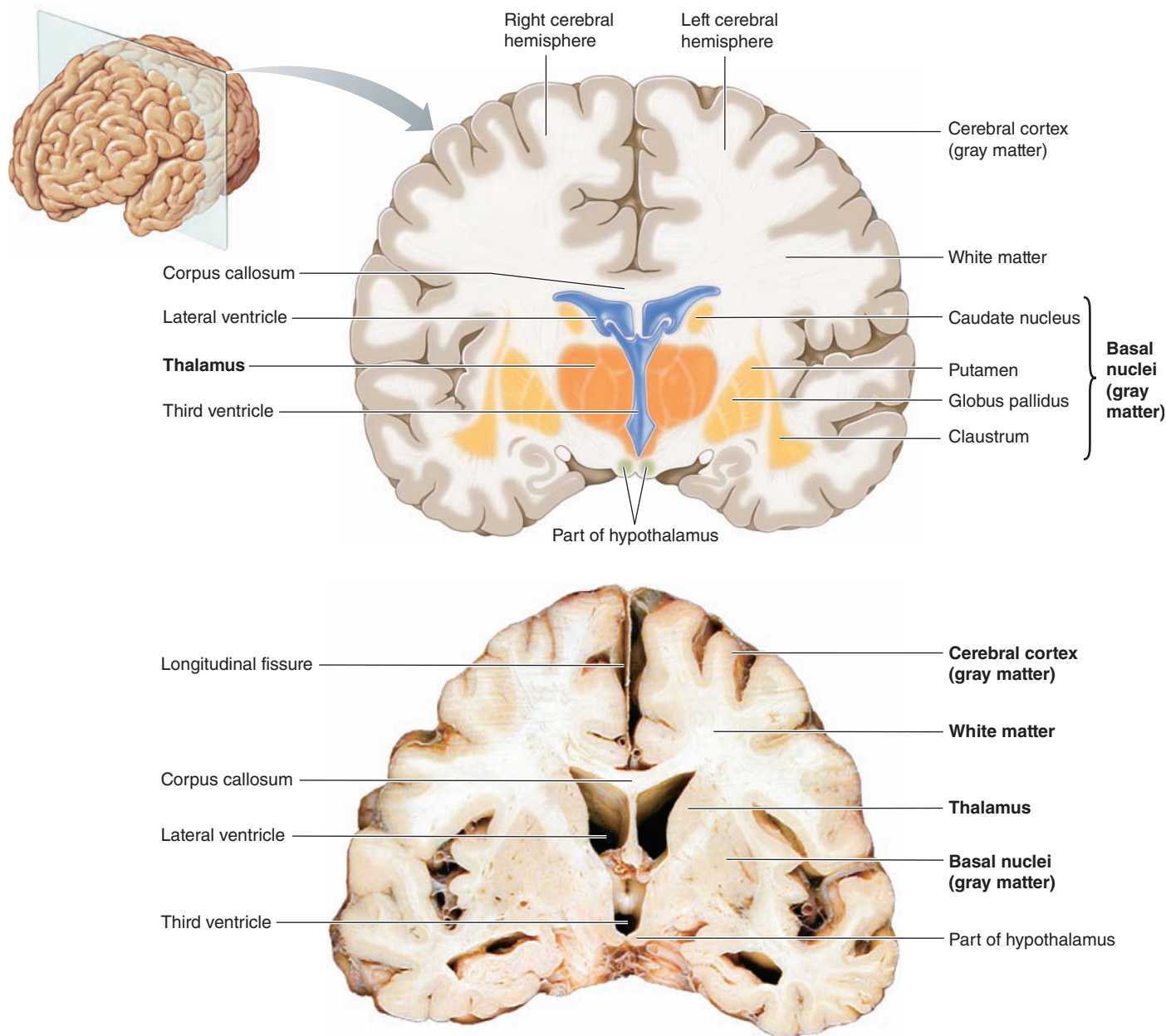
3. The EEG is also used to *distinguish various stages of sleep*, as described later in this chapter.

We now shift our attention to the **subcortical regions** of the brain, which interact extensively with the cortex in the perfor-

mance of their functions (*subcortical* means “under the cortex”). These regions include the *basal nuclei*, located in the cerebrum, and the *thalamus* and *hypothalamus*, located in the diencephalon.

## Basal Nuclei, Thalamus, and Hypothalamus

The **basal nuclei** (also known as **basal ganglia**) consist of several masses of gray matter located deep within the cerebral white matter (▲ Table 5-1 and ● Figure 5-12). In the CNS, a



● **FIGURE 5-12 Frontal section of the brain.** The cerebral cortex, an outer shell of gray matter, surrounds an inner core of white matter. Deep within the cerebral white matter are several masses of gray matter, the basal nuclei. The ventricles are cavities in the brain through which the cerebrospinal fluid flows. The thalamus forms the walls of the third ventricle. For comparison, the colors used for these brain components are the same as those used in the lateral view depicted in Table 5-1, p. 114. Also, compare this frontal section of a cadaver brain with the sagittal section of a cadaver brain in Figure 5-6, p. 116.

Photo: Mark Nielsen, Department of Biology, University of Utah

**nucleus** (plural, **nuclei**) is a functioning group of neuron cell bodies.

### The basal nuclei play an important inhibitory role in motor control.

The basal nuclei play a complex role in controlling movement. In particular, they are important in (1) inhibiting muscle tone throughout the body (proper muscle tone is normally maintained by a balance of excitatory and inhibitory inputs to the neurons that innervate skeletal muscles), (2) selecting and maintaining purposeful motor activity while suppressing useless or unwanted patterns of movement, and (3) helping monitor and coordinate slow, sustained contractions, especially those related to posture and support. The basal nuclei do not directly influence the efferent motor neurons that bring about muscle contraction but act instead by modifying ongoing activity in motor pathways.



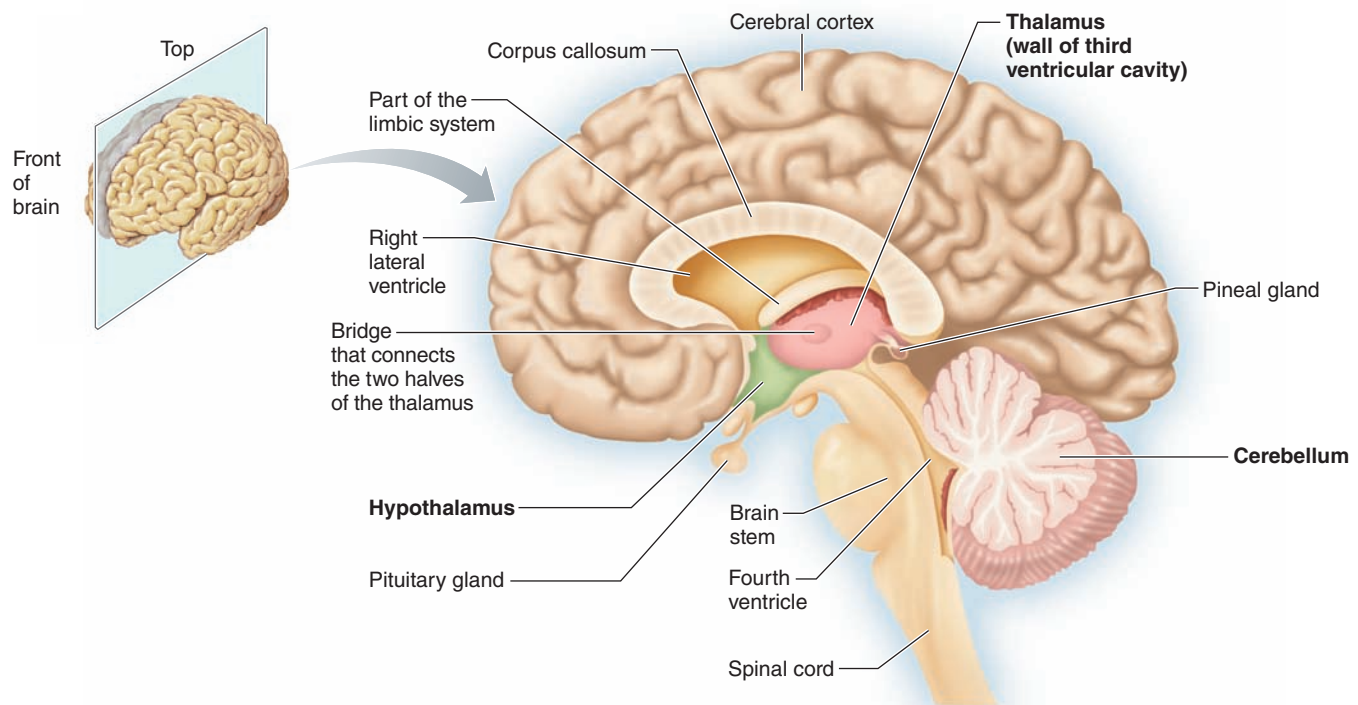
The importance of the basal nuclei in motor control is evident in **Parkinson's disease (PD)**. This condition is associated with a gradual destruction of neurons that release the neurotransmitter dopamine in the basal nuclei. Because the basal nuclei lack enough dopamine to exert their normal roles, three types of motor disturbances characterize PD: (1) increased muscle tone, or rigidity; (2) involuntary, useless, or unwanted movements, such as *resting tremors* (for example, hands rhythmically shaking, making it difficult or impossible to hold a cup of coffee); and (3) slowness in initiating and carrying out different motor behaviors. People with PD find it difficult to stop ongoing activities. If sitting down, they tend to remain seated, and if they get up, they do so slowly. The standard treat-

ment for PD is the administration of *levodopa (L-dopa)*, a precursor of dopamine. Dopamine itself cannot be given because it is unable to cross the BBB, but L-dopa can enter the brain from the blood. Once inside the brain, L-dopa is converted into dopamine, thus substituting for the deficient neurotransmitter.

### The thalamus is a sensory relay station and is important in motor control.

Deep within the brain near the basal nuclei is the **diencephalon**, a midline structure that forms the walls of the third ventricular cavity, one of the spaces through which CSF flows (see ● Figure 5-5, p. 111). The diencephalon consists of two main parts, the *thalamus* and the *hypothalamus* (see ▲ Table 5-1 and ● Figures 5-6b, 5-12, and 5-13).

The **thalamus** serves as a “relay station” for preliminary processing of sensory input. All sensory input synapses in the thalamus on its way to the cortex. The thalamus screens out insignificant signals and routes the important sensory impulses to appropriate areas of the somatosensory cortex, as well as to other regions of the brain. Along with the brain stem and cortical association areas, the thalamus helps direct attention to stimuli of interest. For example, parents can sleep soundly through the noise of outdoor traffic but become instantly aware of their baby's slightest whimper. The thalamus is also capable of crude awareness of various sensations but cannot distinguish their location or intensity. Some degree of consciousness resides here as well. Finally, the thalamus plays an important role in motor control by positively reinforcing voluntary motor behavior initiated by the cortex.



● **FIGURE 5-13** Location of the thalamus, hypothalamus, and cerebellum in sagittal section.

### The hypothalamus regulates many homeostatic functions.

The **hypothalamus** is a collection of specific nuclei and associated fibers that lie beneath the thalamus. It is an integrating center for many important homeostatic functions and is an important link between the autonomic nervous system and the endocrine system. Specifically, the hypothalamus (1) controls body temperature; (2) controls thirst and urine output; (3) controls food intake; (4) controls anterior pituitary hormone secretion; (5) produces posterior pituitary hormones; (6) controls uterine contractions and milk ejection; (7) serves as a major autonomic nervous system coordinating center, which in turn affects all smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and exocrine glands; (8) plays a role in emotional and behavioral patterns; and (9) participates in the sleep–wake cycle.

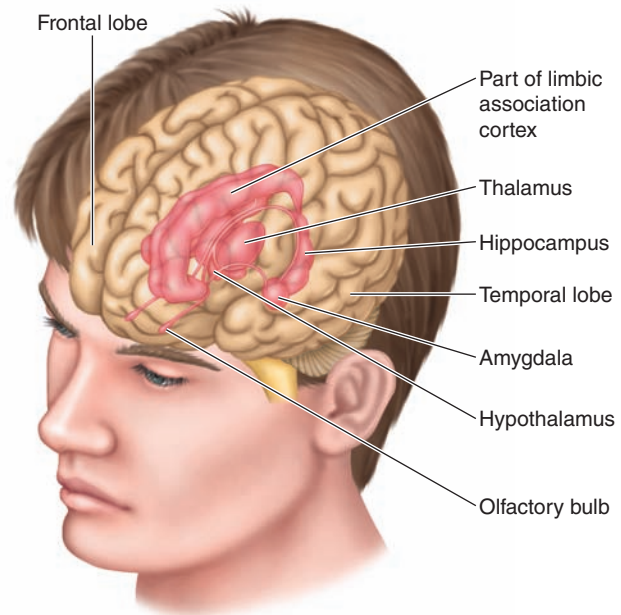
The hypothalamus is the brain area most involved in directly regulating the internal environment. For example, when the body is cold, the hypothalamus initiates internal responses to increase heat production (such as shivering) and to decrease heat loss (such as constricting the skin blood vessels to reduce the flow of warm blood to the body surface, where heat could be lost to the external environment). Other areas of the brain, such as the cerebral cortex, act more indirectly to regulate the internal environment. For example, a person who feels cold is motivated to voluntarily put on warmer clothing, close the window, turn up the thermostat, and so on. Even these voluntary behavioral activities are strongly influenced by the hypothalamus, which, as a part of the limbic system, functions with the cortex in controlling emotions and motivated behavior. We now turn to the limbic system and its functional relations with the higher cortex.

## Emotion, Behavior, and Motivation

The **limbic system** is not a separate structure but a ring of fore-brain structures that surround the brain stem and are interconnected by intricate neuron pathways (● Figure 5-14). It includes portions of each of the following: the lobes of the cerebral cortex (especially the limbic association cortex), the basal nuclei, the thalamus, and the hypothalamus. This complex interacting network is associated with emotions, basic survival and sociosexual behavioral patterns, motivation, and learning. Let us examine each of these brain functions further.

### The limbic system plays a key role in emotion.

The concept of **emotion** encompasses subjective emotional feelings and moods (such as anger, fear, and happiness) plus the overt physical responses associated with these feelings. These responses include specific behavioral patterns (for example, preparing for attack or defense when angered by an adversary) and observable emotional expressions (for example, laughing, crying, or blushing). Evidence points to a central role for the limbic system in all aspects of emotion. Stimulating specific regions of the limbic system during brain surgery produces vague subjective sensations that the patient may describe as joy, satisfaction, or pleasure in one region and discouragement, fear, or anxiety in another. For example, the **amygdala**, on the inte-



● **FIGURE 5-14 Limbic system.** This partially transparent view of the brain reveals the structures composing the limbic system.

rior underside of the temporal lobe (● Figure 5-14), is especially important in processing inputs that give rise to the sensation of fear. In humans and to an undetermined extent in other species, higher levels of the cortex are also crucial for conscious awareness of emotional feelings.

### The limbic system and higher cortex participate in controlling basic behavioral patterns.

Basic inborn behavioral patterns controlled at least in part by the limbic system include those aimed at individual survival (attack, searching for food) and those directed toward perpetuating the species (sociosexual behaviors conducive to mating). In experimental animals, stimulating the limbic system brings about complex and even bizarre behaviors. For example, stimulation in one area can elicit responses of anger and rage in a normally docile animal, whereas stimulation in another area results in placidity and tameness, even in an otherwise vicious animal. Stimulation in yet another limbic area can induce sexual behaviors such as copulatory movements.

The relationships among the hypothalamus, limbic system, and higher cortical regions regarding emotions and behavior are still not well understood. Apparently the extensive involvement of the hypothalamus in the limbic system governs the involuntary internal responses of various body systems in preparation for appropriate action to accompany a particular emotional state. For example, the hypothalamus controls the increase of heart rate and respiratory rate, elevation of blood pressure, and diversion of blood to skeletal muscles that occur in anticipation of attack or when angered. These preparatory changes in the internal state require no conscious control.

In executing complex behavioral activities such as attacking, fleeing, or mating, the individual (humans and other ani-

mals) must interact with the external environment. Higher cortical mechanisms are called into play to connect the limbic system and hypothalamus with the outer world so that appropriate overt behaviors are manifested. At the simplest level, the cortex provides the neural mechanisms necessary for implementing the appropriate skeletal muscle activity required to approach or avoid an adversary, participate in sexual activity, or display emotional expression.

Higher cortical levels also can reinforce, modify, or suppress basic behavioral responses so that actions can be guided by planning, strategy, and judgment based on an understanding of the situation. Even if you are angry at someone and your body is internally preparing for attack, you can usually judge whether an attack is appropriate and can consciously suppress the external manifestation of this basic emotional behavior. Thus, the higher levels of the cortex, particularly the prefrontal and limbic association areas, are important in conscious learned control of innate behavioral patterns. Using fear as an example, exposure to an aversive experience calls two parallel tracks into play for processing this emotional stimulus: a fast track in which the lower-level amygdala plays a key role and a slower track mediated primarily by the higher-level prefrontal cortex. The fast track permits a rapid, rather crude, instinctive response (“gut reaction”) and is essential for the “feeling” of being afraid. The slower track involving the prefrontal cortex permits a more refined response to the aversive stimulus based on a rational analysis of the current situation compared to stored past experiences. The prefrontal cortex formulates plans and guides behavior, suppressing amygdala-induced responses that may be inappropriate for the situation at hand.

### Motivated behaviors are goal directed.

An individual tends to reinforce behaviors that have proved gratifying and to suppress behaviors that have been associated with unpleasant experiences. Certain regions of the limbic system have been designated as “reward” and “punishment” centers, because stimulation in these respective areas gives rise to pleasant or unpleasant sensations. When a self-stimulating device is implanted in a reward center, an experimental animal will self-deliver up to 5000 stimulations per hour and will continue self-stimulation in preference to food, even when starving. When the device is implanted in a punishment center, animals will avoid stimulation at all costs. Reward centers are found most abundantly in regions involved in mediating the highly motivated behavioral activities of eating, drinking, and sexual activity.


**Motivation** is the ability to direct behavior toward specific goals. Some goal-directed behaviors are aimed at satisfying specific identifiable physical needs related to homeostasis. **Homeostatic drives** represent the subjective urges associated with specific bodily needs that motivate appropriate behavior to satisfy those needs. As an example, the sensation of thirst accompanying a water deficit in the body drives an individual to drink to satisfy the homeostatic need for water. However, whether water, a soft drink, or another beverage is chosen as the thirst quencher is unrelated to homeostasis. Much human behavior does not depend on purely homeostatic drives related to simple

tissue deficits such as thirst. Human behavior is influenced by experience, learning, and habit, shaped in a complex framework of unique personal gratifications blended with cultural expectations.

### Norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin are neurotransmitters in pathways for emotions and behavior.

The underlying neurophysiological mechanisms responsible for the psychological observations of emotions and motivated behavior largely remain a mystery, although the neurotransmitters *norepinephrine*, *dopamine*, and *serotonin* all have been implicated. Norepinephrine and dopamine, both chemically classified as *catecholamines* (see p. 94), are known transmitters in the regions that elicit the highest rates of self-stimulation in animals equipped with do-it-yourself devices. Numerous **psychoactive drugs** affect moods in humans, and some of these drugs have been shown to influence self-stimulation in experimental animals. For example, increased self-stimulation is observed after the administration of drugs that increase catecholamine synaptic activity, such as *amphetamine*, an “upper” drug. Amphetamine stimulates the release of dopamine from dopamine-secreting neurons.

Although most psychoactive drugs are used therapeutically to treat various mental disorders, others, unfortunately, are abused. Many abused drugs act by enhancing the effectiveness of dopamine in the “pleasure” pathways, thus initially giving rise to an intense sensation of pleasure. As you have already learned, an example is cocaine, which blocks the reuptake of dopamine at synapses (see p. 90).

 **Depression** is among the psychiatric disorders associated with defects in limbic system neurotransmitters. (As a distinction, *psychiatric disorders* involve abnormal activity in specific neurotransmitter pathways in the absence of detectable brain lesions, whereas *neurological disorders* are associated with specific lesions of the brain and may or may not involve abnormalities in neurotransmission. Examples of neurological disorders include PD and Alzheimer’s disease.) A functional deficiency of serotonin, norepinephrine, or both is implicated in depression, a disorder characterized by a pervasive negative mood accompanied by a generalized loss of interests, an inability to experience pleasure, and suicidal tendencies. All effective antidepressant drugs increase the available concentration of these neurotransmitters in the CNS. *Prozac*, the most widely prescribed drug in American psychiatry, is illustrative. It blocks the reuptake of released serotonin, thus prolonging serotonin activity at synapses (see p. 88). Serotonin and norepinephrine are synaptic messengers in the limbic regions of the brain involved in pleasure and motivation, suggesting that the pervasive sadness and lack of interest (no motivation) in depressed patients are related at least partly to deficiencies or decreased effectiveness of these neurotransmitters.

Researchers are optimistic that as understanding of the molecular mechanisms of mental disorders is expanded in the future, many psychiatric problems can be corrected or better managed through drug intervention, a hope of great medical significance.

# Learning and Memory

In addition to their involvement in emotion and basic behavioral patterns, the limbic system and higher cortex are involved in learning and memory. The cerebellum also plays a key role in some types of learning and memory, as you will see as we examine these processes.

## Learning is the acquisition of knowledge as a result of experiences.

**Learning** is the acquisition of knowledge or skills as a consequence of experience, instruction, or both. Rewards and punishments are integral parts of many types of learning. If an animal is rewarded on responding in a particular way to a stimulus, the likelihood increases that the animal will respond in the same way again to the same stimulus as a consequence of this experience. Conversely, if a particular response is accompanied by punishment, the animal is less likely to repeat the same response to the same stimulus. When behavioral responses that give rise to pleasure are reinforced or those accompanied by punishment are avoided, learning has taken place. Housebreaking a puppy is an example. If the puppy is praised when it urinates outdoors but scolded when it wets the carpet, it will soon learn the acceptable place to empty its bladder. Thus, learning is a change in behavior that occurs as a result of experiences. It highly depends on the organism's interaction with its environment. The only limits to the effects that environmental influences can have on learning are the biological constraints imposed by species-specific and individual genetic endowments.

## Memory is laid down in stages.

**Memory** is the storage of acquired knowledge for later recall. Learning and memory form the basis by which individuals adapt their behavior to their particular external circumstances. Without these mechanisms, it would be impossible for indi-

viduals to plan for successful interactions and to intentionally avoid predictably disagreeable circumstances.

The neural change responsible for retention or storage of knowledge is known as the **memory trace**. Generally, concepts, not verbatim information, are stored. As you read this page, you are storing the concept discussed, not the specific words. Later, when you retrieve the concept from memory, you will convert it into your own words. It is possible, however, to memorize bits of information word by word.

Storage of acquired information is accomplished in at least two stages: short-term memory and long-term memory (▲ Table 5-2). **Short-term memory** lasts for seconds to hours, whereas **long-term memory** is retained for days to years. The process of transferring and fixing short-term memory traces into long-term memory stores is known as **consolidation**.

A recently developed concept is that of **working memory**, or what has been called “the erasable blackboard of the mind.” Working memory temporarily holds and interrelates various pieces of information relevant to a current mental task. Through your working memory, you briefly hold and process data for immediate use—both newly acquired information and related, previously stored knowledge that is transiently brought forth into working memory—so that you can evaluate the incoming data in context. This integrative function is crucial to your ability to reason, plan, and make judgments. By comparing and manipulating new and old information within your working memory, you can comprehend what you are reading, carry on a conversation, calculate a restaurant tip in your head, find your way home, and know that you should put on warm clothing if you see snow outside. In short, working memory enables people to string thoughts together in a logical sequence and plan for future action.

**COMPARISON OF SHORT-TERM AND LONG-TERM MEMORY** Newly acquired information is initially deposited in short-term memory, which has a limited capacity for storage. Information in short-term memory has one of two eventual fates. Either it is soon for-

▲ Table 5-2 Comparison of Short-Term and Long-Term Memory

Characteristic	Short-Term Memory	Long-Term Memory
<b>Time of storage after acquisition of new information</b>	Immediate	Later; must be transferred from short-term to long-term memory through consolidation; enhanced by practice or recycling of information through short-term mode
<b>Duration</b>	Lasts for seconds to hours	Retained for days to years
<b>Capacity of storage</b>	Limited	Very large
<b>Retrieval time (remembering)</b>	Rapid retrieval	Slower retrieval, except for thoroughly ingrained memories, which are rapidly retrieved
<b>Inability to retrieve (forgetting)</b>	Permanently forgotten; memory fades quickly unless consolidated into long-term memory	Usually only transiently unable to access; relatively stable memory trace
<b>Mechanism of storage</b>	Involves transient modifications in functions of preexisting synapses, such as altering the amount of neurotransmitter released	Involves relatively permanent functional or structural changes between existing neurons, such as the formation of new synapses; synthesis of new proteins plays a key role

gotten (for example, forgetting a telephone number after you have looked it up and finished dialing), or it is transferred into the more permanent long-term memory mode through *active practice* or *rehearsal*. The recycling of newly acquired information through short-term memory increases the likelihood that the information will be consolidated into long-term memory. (Therefore, when you cram for an exam, your long-term retention of the information is poor!) This relationship can be likened to developing photographic film. The originally developed image (short-term memory) will rapidly fade unless it is chemically fixed (consolidated) to provide a more enduring image (long-term memory). Sometimes only parts of memories are fixed while other parts fade away. Information of interest or importance to the individual is more likely to be recycled and fixed in long-term stores, whereas less important information is quickly erased.

The storage capacity of the long-term memory bank is much larger than the capacity of short-term memory. Different informational aspects of long-term memory traces seem to be processed, codified, and then stored with other memories of the same type; for example, visual memories are stored separately from auditory memories. This organization facilitates future searching of memory stores to retrieve desired information. For example, in remembering a woman you once met, you may use various recall cues from different storage pools, such as her name, her appearance, the fragrance she wore, an incisive comment she made, or the song playing in the background.

Stored knowledge is of no use unless it can be retrieved and used to influence current or future behavior. Because long-term memory stores are larger, it often takes longer to retrieve information from long-term memory than from short-term memory. *Remembering* is the process of retrieving specific information from memory stores; *forgetting* is the inability to retrieve stored information. Information lost from short-term memory is permanently forgotten, but information in long-term storage is often forgotten only temporarily. For example, you may be transiently unable to remember an acquaintance's name and then have it suddenly "come to you" later.

Some forms of long-term memory involving information or skills used daily are essentially never forgotten and are rapidly accessible, such as knowing your own name or being able to write. Even though long-term memories are relatively stable, stored information may be gradually lost or modified over time unless it is thoroughly ingrained by years of practice.



**AMNESIA** Occasionally, individuals suffer from a lack of memory that involves whole portions of time rather than isolated bits of information. This condition, known as **amnesia**, occurs in two forms. The most common form, *retrograde* (meaning "going backward") *amnesia*, is the inability to recall recent past events. It usually follows a traumatic event that interferes with electrical activity of the brain, such as a concussion or stroke. If a person is knocked unconscious, the content of short-term memory is essentially erased, resulting in loss of memory about activities that occurred within about the last half hour before the event. Severe trauma may interfere with access to recently acquired information in long-term stores as well.

*Anterograde* (meaning "going forward") *amnesia*, conversely, is the inability to consolidate memory in long-term storage for later retrieval. It is usually associated with lesions of the medial portions of the temporal lobes, which are generally considered critical regions for memory consolidation. People suffering from this condition may be able to recall things they learned before the onset of their problem, but they cannot establish new permanent memories. New information is lost as quickly as it fades from short-term memory. In one case study, the person could not remember where the bathroom was in his new home but still had total recall of his old home.

### Short-term memory and long-term memory involve different molecular mechanisms.

Despite a vast amount of psychological data, only a few tantalizing scraps of physiological evidence concerning the cellular basis of memory traces are available. Obviously, some change must take place within the neural circuitry of the brain to account for the altered behavior that follows learning. A single memory does not reside in a single neuron but rather in changes in the pattern of signals transmitted across synapses within a vast neuronal network.

Different mechanisms are responsible for short-term and long-term memory, as follows:

1. Short-term memory involves transient modifications in the function of preexisting synapses, such as a temporary change in the amount of neurotransmitter released in response to stimulation or temporary increased responsiveness of the postsynaptic cell to the neurotransmitter within affected nerve pathways.
2. Long-term memory storage, in contrast, requires the activation of specific genes that control synthesis of proteins, needed for lasting structural or functional changes at specific synapses. Thus, long-term memory storage involves rather permanent physical changes in the brain. Examples of such changes include the formation of new synaptic connections or permanent changes in pre- or postsynaptic membranes.

### Memory traces are present in multiple regions of the brain.

Another question besides the "how" of memory is the "where" of memory. What parts of the brain are responsible for memory? There is no single "memory center" in the brain. Instead, the neurons involved in memory traces are widely distributed throughout the subcortical and cortical regions of the brain. The regions of the brain most extensively implicated in memory include the hippocampus and associated structures of the medial temporal lobes, the limbic system, the cerebellum, and the prefrontal cortex, as well as other areas of the cerebral cortex.

**THE HIPPOCAMPUS AND DECLARATIVE MEMORIES** The **hippocampus**, the elongated, medial portion of the temporal lobe that is part of the limbic system (see ● Figure 5-14), plays a vital role in short-term memory involving the integration of various related stimuli and is crucial for consolidation into long-term memory. The hippocampus is believed to store new long-term



memories only temporarily and then transfer them to other cortical sites for more permanent storage. The sites for long-term storage of various types of memories are only beginning to be identified by neuroscientists.

The hippocampus and surrounding regions play an especially important role in **declarative memories**—the “what” memories of specific people, places, objects, facts, and events that often result after only one experience and that can be declared or verbalized in a statement such as “I saw the Statue of Liberty last summer” or conjured up in a mental image. Declarative memories involve conscious recall.



People with hippocampal damage are profoundly forgetful of facts critical to daily functioning. Declarative memories typically are the first to be lost. Extensive damage in the hippocampus is evident in patients with **Alzheimer’s disease (AD)** during autopsy. The condition is characterized by extracellular neuritic plaques and intracellular neurofibrillary tangles, both of which are especially abundant in the hippocampus. A *neuritic* (or *senile*) *plaque* is an abnormal deposit of a waxy, fibrous protein known as *beta amyloid* surrounded by degenerating dendritic and axonal nerve endings. Beta amyloid is toxic to neurons. *Neurofibrillary tangles* are dense bundles of abnormal cytoskeletal filaments that accumulate in the cell body of an affected neuron and interfere with its vital axonal transport system (see p. 35), further contributing to the neuron’s demise. Acetylcholine-secreting neurons that terminate in the hippocampus and cerebral cortex are particularly affected. Neuron death and loss of synaptic communication are responsible for the ensuing dementia. AD accounts for about two thirds of the cases of *senile dementia* (diminution of mental abilities in old age). In the earliest stages of AD, only short-term memory is impaired, but as the disease progresses, even firmly entrenched long-term memories, such as recognition of family members, are lost. Higher mental abilities gradually deteriorate as the patient loses the ability to read, write, and calculate. Language ability and speech are often impaired. In later stages, AD victims are unable to feed, dress, and groom themselves.

**THE CEREBELLUM AND PROCEDURAL MEMORIES** The cerebellum and relevant cortical regions play an essential role in the “how to” **procedural memories** involving motor skills gained through repetitive training, such as memorizing a particular dance routine. The cortical areas important for a given procedural memory are the specific motor or sensory systems engaged in performing the routine. For example, different groups of muscles are called into play to tap dance than those needed to execute a dive. In contrast to declarative memories, which are consciously recollected from previous experiences, procedural memories can be brought forth without conscious effort. For example, an ice skater during a competition typically performs best by “letting the body take over” the routine instead of thinking about exactly what needs to be done next.



The distinct localization in different parts of the brain of declarative and procedural memory is apparent in people who have temporal or limbic lesions.

They can perform a skill, such as playing a piano, but the next day they have no recollection of having done so.

**THE PREFRONTAL CORTEX AND WORKING MEMORY** The major orchestrator of the complex reasoning skills associated with *working memory* is the prefrontal association cortex. The prefrontal cortex serves as a temporary storage site for holding relevant data online and is largely responsible for the so-called executive functions involving manipulation and integration of this information for planning, juggling competing priorities, problem solving, and organizing activities. Researchers have identified different storage bins in the prefrontal cortex, depending on the nature of the current relevant data. For example, working memory involving spatial cues is in a prefrontal location distinct from working memory involving verbal cues or cues about an object’s appearance. One recent fascinating proposal suggests that a person’s intelligence may be determined by the capacity of working memory to temporarily hold and relate a variety of relevant data.

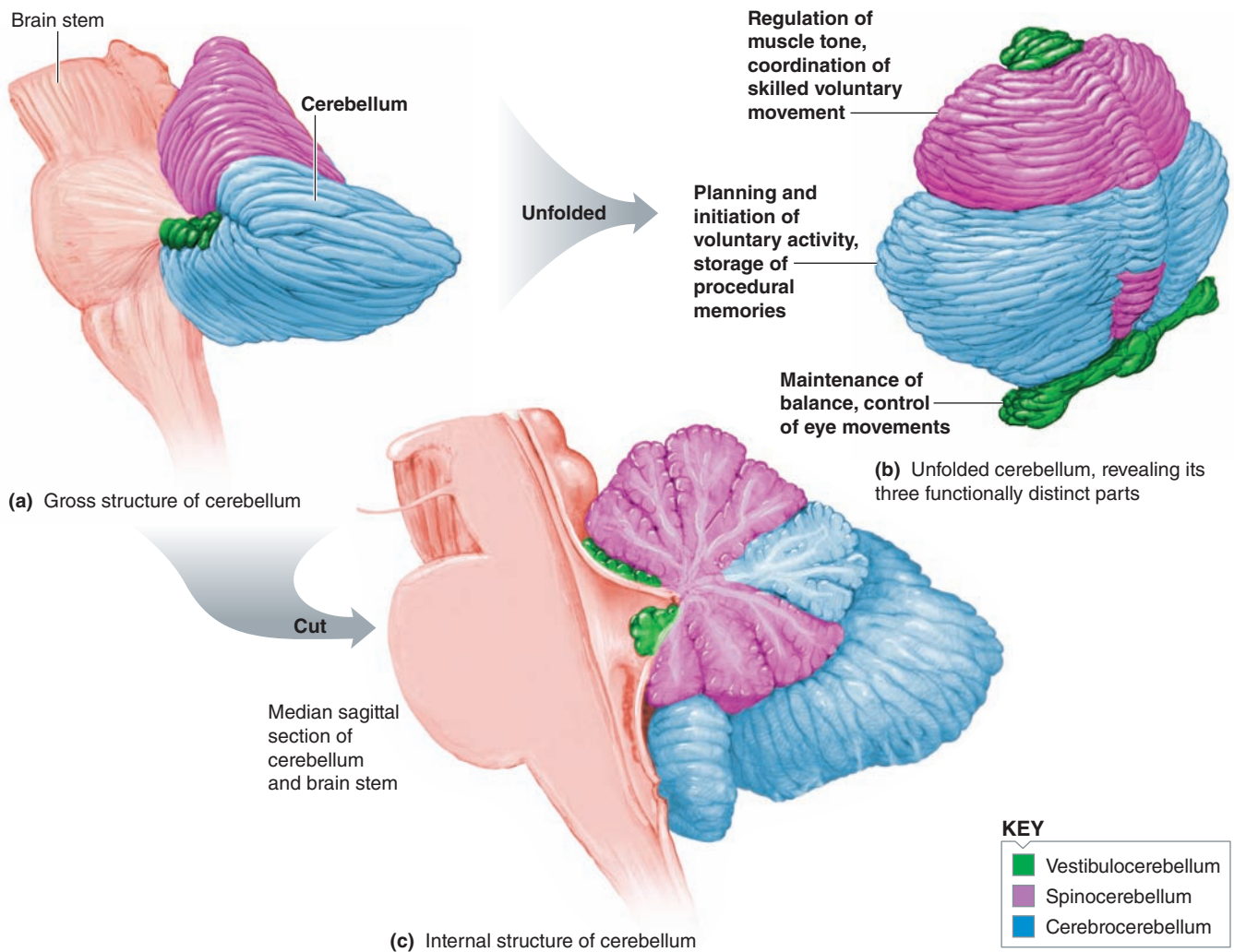
## Cerebellum

The **cerebellum** is a highly folded, baseball-sized part of the brain that lies underneath the occipital lobe of the cortex and is attached to the back of the upper portion of the brain stem (see ▲ Table 5-1, p. 114, and ● Figures 5-6b, p. 116, and 5-13, p. 123).

### The cerebellum is important in balance and in planning and executing voluntary movement.

More individual neurons are found in the cerebellum than in the entire rest of the brain, indicative of the importance of this structure. The cerebellum consists of three functionally distinct parts with different roles concerned primarily with subconscious control of motor activity (● Figure 5-15). Specifically, the different parts of the cerebellum perform the following functions:

1. The **vestibulocerebellum** is important for maintaining balance and controls eye movements.
2. The **spinocerebellum** enhances muscle tone and coordinates skilled, voluntary movements. This brain region is especially important in ensuring the accurate timing of various muscle contractions to coordinate movements involving multiple joints. For example, the movements of your shoulder, elbow, and wrist joints must be synchronized even during the simple act of reaching for a pencil. When cortical motor areas send messages to muscles for executing a particular movement, the spinocerebellum is informed of the intended motor command. This region also receives input from peripheral receptors that inform it about the body movements and positions that are actually taking place. The spinocerebellum essentially acts as “middle management,” comparing the “intentions” or “orders” of the higher centers with the “performance” of the muscles and then correcting any “errors” or deviations from the intended movement. The spinocerebellum even seems able to predict the position of a body part in the next fraction of a second during



● FIGURE 5-15 Cerebellum.

a complex movement and to make adjustments accordingly. If you are reaching for a pencil, for example, this region “puts on the brakes” soon enough to stop the forward movement of your hand at the intended location rather than letting you overshoot your target. These ongoing adjustments, which ensure smooth, precise, directed movement, are especially important for rapidly changing (phasic) activities such as typing, playing the piano, or running.

3. The **cerebrocerebellum** plays a role in planning and initiating voluntary activity by providing input to the cortical motor areas. This is also the cerebellar region that stores procedural memories.



All the following symptoms of cerebellar disease result from a loss of these functions: poor balance; “drunken sailor” gait with wide stance and unsteady walking; rhythmic, oscillating eye movements; reduced muscle tone but no paralysis; inability to perform rapid alternating movements smoothly; and inability to stop and start skeletal muscle action quickly. The latter gives rise to an *intention tremor* characterized by oscillating to-and-fro movements of a limb as it approaches its intended destination. A person with cerebellar

damage who tries to pick up a pencil may overshoot the pencil and then rebound excessively, repeating this to-and-fro process until success is finally achieved. No tremor is observed except in performing intentional activity, in contrast to the resting tremor associated with disease of the basal nuclei, most notably PD.

The cerebellum and basal nuclei both monitor and adjust motor activity commanded from the motor cortex, and like the basal nuclei, the cerebellum does not directly influence the efferent motor neurons. Although they perform different roles (for example, the cerebellum enhances muscle tone, whereas the basal nuclei inhibit it), both function indirectly by modifying the output of major motor systems in the brain. The motor command for a particular voluntary activity arises from the motor cortex, but the actual execution of that activity is coordinated subconsciously by these subcortical regions. To illustrate, you can voluntarily decide you want to walk, but you do not have to consciously think about the specific sequence of movements you have to perform to accomplish this intentional act. Accordingly, much voluntary activity is actually involuntarily regulated.

You will learn more about motor control when we discuss skeletal muscle physiology in Chapter 8. For now, we move on to the remaining part of the brain, the brain stem.

## Brain Stem

The **brain stem** consists of the **medulla**, **pons**, and **midbrain** (see ▲ Table 5-1 and ● Figure 5-6b).

### The brain stem is a vital link between the spinal cord and the higher brain regions.

All incoming and outgoing fibers traversing between the periphery and the higher brain centers must pass through the brain stem, with incoming fibers relaying sensory information to the brain and outgoing fibers carrying command signals from the brain for efferent output. Most of these fibers synapse within the brain stem for important processing. Thus, the brain stem is a critical connecting link between the rest of the brain and the spinal cord.

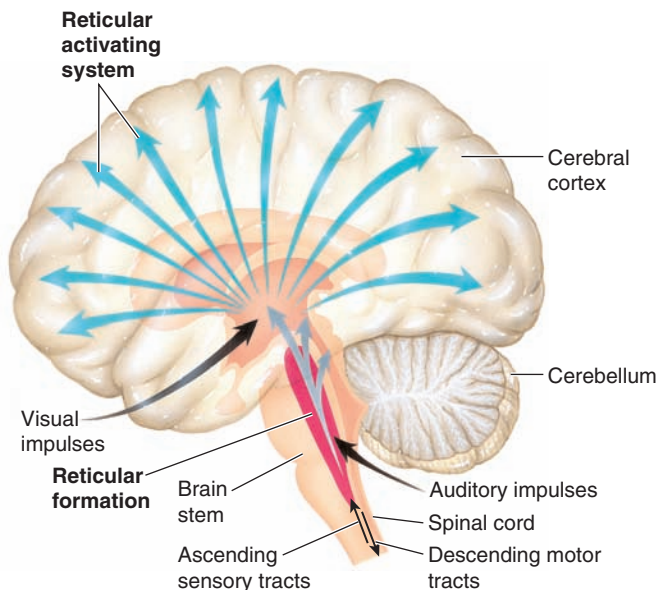
The functions of the brain stem include the following:

1. Most of the 12 pairs of **cranial nerves** arise from the brain stem. With one major exception, these nerves supply structures in the head and neck with both sensory and motor fibers. They are important in sight, hearing, taste, smell, sensation of the face and scalp, eye movement, chewing, swallowing, facial expressions, and salivation. The major exception is cranial nerve X, the **vagus nerve**. Instead of innervating regions in the head, most branches of the vagus nerve supply organs in the thoracic and abdominal cavities. The vagus is the major nerve of the parasympathetic nervous system.
2. Collected within the brain stem are neuronal clusters or “**centers**” that control heart and blood vessel function, respiration, and many digestive activities. An example is the respiratory control center.
3. The brain stem helps regulate muscle reflexes involved in equilibrium and posture.
4. A widespread network of interconnected neurons called the **reticular formation** runs throughout the entire brain stem and into the thalamus. This network receives and integrates all incoming sensory synaptic input. Ascending fibers originating in the reticular formation carry signals upward to arouse and activate the cerebral cortex (● Figure 5-16). These fibers compose the **reticular activating system (RAS)**, which controls the overall degree of cortical alertness and is important in the ability to direct attention. In turn, fibers descending from the cortex, especially its motor areas, can activate the RAS.
5. The centers that govern sleep traditionally have been considered to be housed within the brain stem, although recent evidence suggests that the hypothalamus plays a key role too.

We now examine sleep and the other states of consciousness in further detail.

### Sleep is an active process consisting of alternating periods of slow-wave and paradoxical sleep.

The term **consciousness** refers to subjective awareness of the external world and self, including awareness of the private inner world of one’s own mind—that is, awareness of thoughts, percep-



● **FIGURE 5-16** The reticular activating system. The reticular formation, a widespread network of neurons within the brain stem (in red), receives and integrates all synaptic input. The reticular activating system, which promotes cortical alertness and helps direct attention toward specific events, consists of ascending fibers (in blue) that originate in the reticular formation and carry signals upward to arouse and activate the cerebral cortex.

tions, dreams, and so on. Even though the final level of awareness resides in the cerebral cortex and a crude sense of awareness is detected by the thalamus, conscious experience depends on the integrated functioning of many parts of the nervous system. The cellular and molecular basis underlying consciousness is one of the greatest unanswered questions in neuroscience.

The following states of consciousness are listed in decreasing order of arousal level, based on the extent of interaction between peripheral stimuli and the brain:

- maximum alertness
- wakefulness
- sleep (several types)
- coma

Maximum alertness depends on attention-getting sensory input that “energizes” the RAS and subsequently the activity level of the CNS as a whole. At the other extreme, **coma** is the total unresponsiveness of a living person to external stimuli, caused either by brain stem damage that interferes with the RAS or by widespread depression of the cerebral cortex, such as accompanies  $O_2$  deprivation.

The **sleep-wake cycle** is a normal cyclic variation in awareness of surroundings. In contrast to being awake, sleeping people are not consciously aware of the external world, but they do have inward conscious experiences such as dreams. Furthermore, they can be aroused by external stimuli, such as an alarm going off.

**Sleep** is an active process, not just the absence of wakefulness. The brain’s overall level of activity is not reduced during sleep. During certain stages of sleep,  $O_2$  uptake by the brain is even increased above normal waking levels.

## ▲ Table 5-3 Comparison of Slow-Wave and Paradoxical Sleep

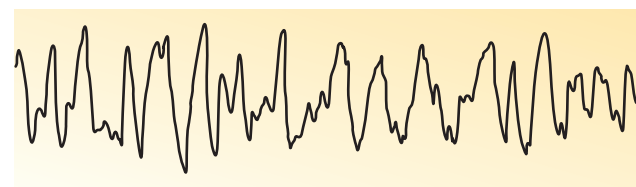
Characteristic	TYPE OF SLEEP	
	Slow-Wave Sleep	Paradoxical Sleep
<b>EEG</b>	Displays slow waves	Similar to the EEG of an alert, awake person
<b>Motor activity</b>	Considerable muscle tone; frequent shifting	Abrupt inhibition of muscle tone; no movement
<b>Heart rate, respiratory rate, and blood pressure</b>	Regular	Irregular
<b>Dreaming</b>	Rare (mental activity is an extension of waking-time thoughts)	Common
<b>Arousal</b>	Sleeper is easily awakened	Sleeper is hard to arouse but apt to wake up spontaneously
<b>Percentage of sleeping time</b>	80%	20%
<b>Other important characteristics</b>	Has four stages; sleeper must pass through this type of sleep first	Rapid eye movements

There are two types of sleep, characterized by different EEG patterns and different behaviors: *slow-wave sleep* and *paradoxical*, or *REM*, *sleep* (▲ Table 5-3).

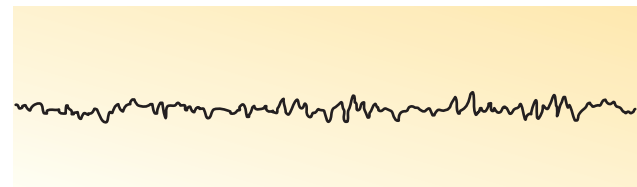
**EEG PATTERNS DURING SLEEP** **Slow-wave sleep** occurs in four stages, each displaying progressively slower EEG waves of higher amplitude (hence, “slow-wave” sleep) (● Figure 5-17). At the onset of sleep, you move from the light sleep of stage 1 to the deep sleep of stage 4 of slow-wave sleep during a period of 30 to 45 minutes; then you reverse through the same stages in the same amount of time. A 10- to 15-minute episode of **paradoxical sleep** punctuates the end of each slow-wave sleep cycle. Paradoxically, your EEG pattern during this time abruptly becomes similar to that of a wide-awake, alert individual, even though you are still asleep (hence, “paradoxical” sleep) (● Figure 5-17). After the paradoxical episode, the stages of slow-wave sleep repeat. You cyclically alternate between the two types of sleep throughout the night. In a normal sleep cycle, you always pass through slow-wave sleep before entering paradoxical sleep. Brief periods of wakefulness occasionally occur.

**BEHAVIORAL PATTERNS DURING SLEEP** In addition to distinctive EEG patterns, the two types of sleep are distinguished by behavioral differences. It is difficult to pinpoint exactly when an individual drifts from drowsiness into slow-wave sleep. In this type of sleep, the person still has considerable muscle tone and often shifts body position. Respiratory rate, heart rate, and blood pressure remain regular. During this time, the sleeper can be easily awakened and rarely dreams. The mental activity associated with slow-wave sleep is less visual than dreaming. It is more conceptual and plausible—like an extension of waking-time thoughts concerned with everyday events—and it is less likely to be recalled.

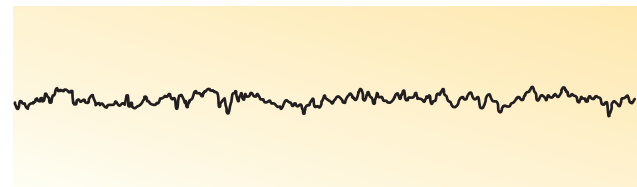
The behavioral pattern accompanying paradoxical sleep is marked by abrupt inhibition of muscle tone throughout the body. The muscles are completely relaxed, with no movement taking place except in the eye muscles. Paradoxical sleep is



Slow-wave sleep, stage 4



Paradoxical sleep



Awake, eyes open

● **FIGURE 5-17 EEG patterns during types of sleep.** Note that the EEG pattern during paradoxical sleep is similar to that of an alert, awake person, whereas the pattern during slow-wave sleep displays distinctly different waves.

characterized by *rapid eye movements*, hence the alternative name, **REM sleep**. Heart rate and respiratory rate become irregular, and blood pressure may fluctuate. Another characteristic of REM sleep is dreaming. The rapid eye movements are not related to “watching” the dream imagery. The eye movements are driven in a locked, oscillating pattern uninfluenced by dream content.

Brain imaging of volunteers during REM sleep shows heightened activity in the higher-level visual processing areas and lim-

bic system (the seat of emotions), coupled with reduced activity in the prefrontal cortex (the seat of reasoning). This pattern of activity lays the groundwork for the characteristics of dreaming: internally generated visual imagery reflecting activation of the person's "emotional memory bank" with little guidance or interpretation from the complex thinking areas. As a result, dreams are often charged with intense emotions, a distorted sense of time, and bizarre content that is uncritically accepted as real, with little reflection about all the strange happenings.

### The sleep–wake cycle is controlled by interactions among three neural systems.

The sleep–wake cycle, as well as the various stages of sleep, is due to the cyclic interplay of three neural systems: (1) an **arousal system**, which is commanded by a specialized group of neurons in the hypothalamus that continuously fire on their own and keep you awake by stimulating the RAS in the brain stem unless these neurons are inhibited by the slow-wave sleep center; (2) a **slow-wave sleep center** in the hypothalamus that brings on slow-wave sleep by inhibiting the arousal system; and (3) a **paradoxical sleep center** in the brain stem that turns off slow-wave sleep and switches to paradoxical sleep. The patterns of interaction among these three neural regions, which bring about the fairly predictable cyclical sequence between being awake and passing alternately between the two types of sleep, are the subject of intense investigation, yet the underlying molecular mechanisms remain poorly understood.

The normal cycle can easily be interrupted, with the arousal system more readily overriding the sleep systems than vice versa; that is, it is easier to stay awake when you are sleepy than to fall asleep when you are wide awake. The arousal system can be activated by afferent sensory input (for example, a person has difficulty falling asleep when it is noisy) or by input descending to the brain stem from higher brain regions. Intense concentration or strong emotional states, such as anxiety or excitement, can keep a person from falling asleep, just as motor activity, such as getting up and walking around, can arouse a drowsy person.

### The function of sleep is unclear.

Even though humans spend about a third of their lives sleeping, why sleep is needed largely remains a mystery. Sleep is not accompanied by a reduction in neural activity (that is, the brain cells are not "resting"), as once was suspected, but rather by a profound *change* in activity.

One widely accepted proposal holds that sleep provides "catch-up" time for the brain to restore biochemical or physiological processes that have progressively degraded during wakefulness. Another leading theory is that sleep is necessary to allow the brain to "shift gears" to accomplish the long-term structural and chemical adjustments necessary for learning and memory. These theories are not mutually exclusive. Sleep might serve multiple purposes.

Little is known about the brain's need for cycling between the two types of sleep, although a specified amount of paradoxical sleep appears to be required. Individuals experimentally

deprived of paradoxical sleep for a night or two by being aroused every time the paradoxical EEG pattern appeared suffered hallucinations and spent proportionally more time in paradoxical sleep during subsequent undisturbed nights, as if to make up for lost time.

We have completed our discussion of the brain and now shift our attention to the other component of the CNS, the spinal cord.

## Spinal Cord

The **spinal cord** is a long, slender cylinder of nerve tissue that extends from the brain stem. It is about 45 cm (18 in.) long and 2 cm in diameter (about the size of your thumb).

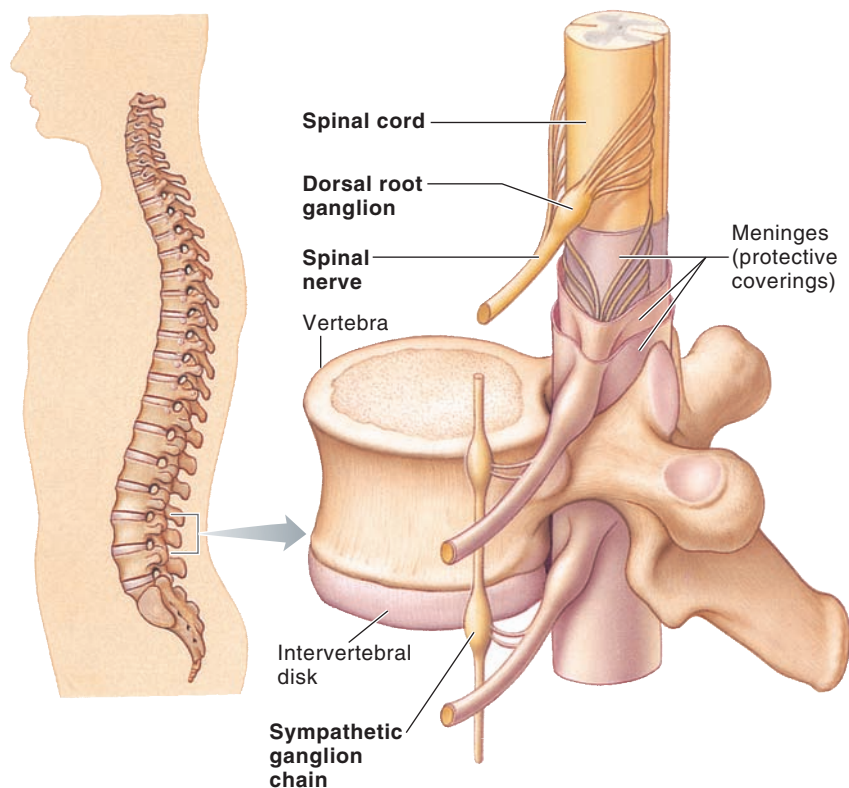
### The spinal cord extends through the vertebral canal and is connected to the spinal nerves.

Exiting through a large hole in the base of the skull, the spinal cord is enclosed by the protective vertebral column as it descends through the vertebral canal (● Figure 5-18). Paired **spinal nerves** emerge from the spinal cord through spaces formed between the bony, winglike arches of adjacent vertebrae. The spinal nerves are named according to the region of the vertebral column from which they emerge (● Figure 5-19): There are 8 pairs of *cervical (neck) nerves* (namely, C1 to C8), 12 *thoracic (chest) nerves*, 5 *lumbar (abdominal) nerves*, 5 *sacral (pelvic) nerves*, and 1 *coccygeal (tailbone) nerve*.

During development, the vertebral column grows about 25 cm longer than the spinal cord. Because of this differential growth, segments of the spinal cord that give rise to various spinal nerves are not aligned with the corresponding intervertebral spaces. Most spinal nerve roots must descend along the cord before emerging from the vertebral column at the corresponding space. The spinal cord itself extends only to the level of the first or second lumbar vertebra (about waist level), so the nerve roots of the remaining nerves are greatly elongated to exit the vertebral column at their appropriate space (● Figure 5-19b).

### The white matter of the spinal cord is organized into tracts.

Although there are some slight regional variations, the cross-sectional anatomy of the spinal cord is generally the same throughout its length (● Figure 5-20). In contrast to the brain, where the gray matter forms an outer shell capping an inner white core, the gray matter in the spinal cord forms an inner butterfly-shaped region surrounded by the outer white matter. As in the brain, the cord gray matter consists primarily of neuronal cell bodies and their dendrites, as well as glial cells. The white matter is organized into **tracts**, which are bundles of nerve fibers (axons of long interneurons) with a similar function. The bundles are grouped into columns that extend the length of the cord. Each of these tracts begins or ends within a particular area of the brain, and each transmits a specific type of information. Some are **ascending** (cord to brain) **tracts** that transmit to the brain signals derived from afferent input. Others



● **FIGURE 5-18** Location of the spinal cord relative to the vertebral column.

are **descending** (brain to cord) **tracts** that relay messages from the brain to efferent neurons. Because various types of signals are carried in different tracts within the spinal cord, damage to particular areas of the cord can interfere with some functions, whereas other functions remain intact.

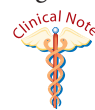
### Spinal nerves carry both afferent and efferent fibers.

Spinal nerves connect with each side of the spinal cord by a **dorsal root** and a **ventral root** (● Figure 5-20). Afferent fibers carrying incoming signals from peripheral receptors enter the spinal cord through the **dorsal root**. The cell bodies for the afferent neurons at each level are clustered together in a **dorsal root ganglion**. (A collection of neuronal cell bodies located outside the CNS is called a *ganglion*, whereas a functional collection of cell bodies within the CNS is referred to as a *nucleus* or a *center*.) The cell bodies for the efferent neurons originate in the gray matter and send axons out through the **ventral root**. Therefore, efferent fibers carrying outgoing signals to muscles and glands exit through the ventral root.

The dorsal and ventral roots at each level join to form a spinal nerve that emerges from the vertebral column (● Figure 5-20). A spinal nerve contains both afferent and efferent fibers traversing between a particular region of the body and the spinal cord. Note the relationship between a *nerve* and a *neuron*. A **nerve** is a bundle of peripheral neuronal axons, some afferent and some efferent, enclosed by a connective tissue covering and following the same pathway. A nerve does not contain a complete nerve cell, only the axonal portions of many neurons. (By this definition, there are no nerves in the CNS! Bundles of ax-

ons in the CNS are called tracts.) The individual fibers within a nerve generally do not have any direct influence on one another. They travel together for convenience, just as many individual telephone lines are carried within a telephone cable yet any particular phone connection can be private without interference or influence from other lines in the cable.

The 31 pairs of spinal nerves and the 12 pairs of cranial nerves that arise from the brain stem constitute the PNS. After they emerge, the spinal nerves progressively branch to form a vast network of peripheral nerves that supply the tissues. Each segment of the spinal cord gives rise to a pair of spinal nerves that ultimately supplies a particular region of the body with both afferent and efferent fibers. Thus, the location and extent of sensory and motor deficits associated with spinal-cord injuries can be clinically important in determining the level and extent of the cord injury.



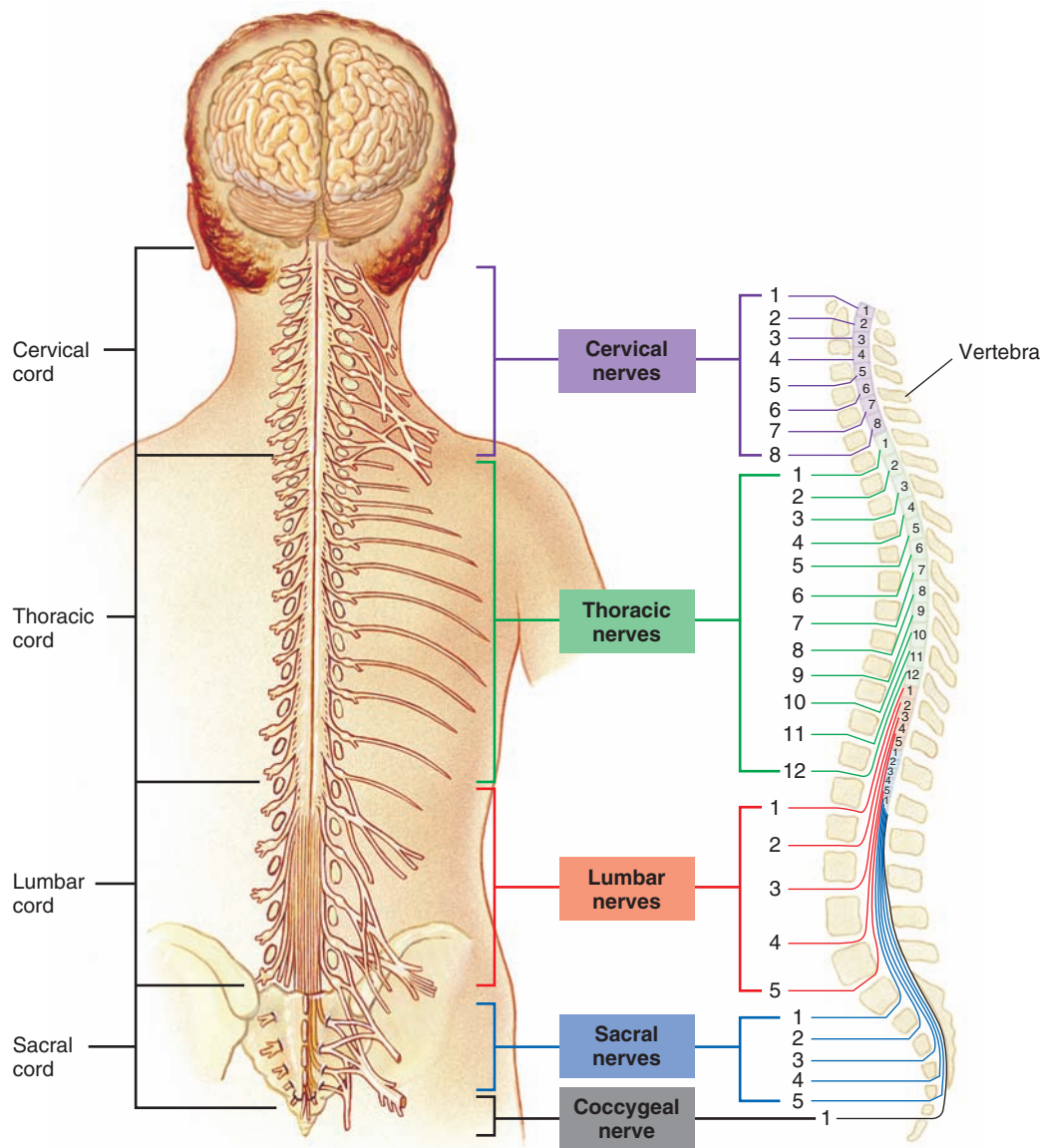
Each spinal nerve carries sensory fibers from a particular region on the body surface. Spinal nerves also carry fibers that branch off to supply internal organs, and sometimes pain originating from one of these organs is “re-

ferred” to the corresponding surface region supplied by the same spinal nerve. **Referred pain** originating in the heart, for example, may appear to come from the left shoulder and arm. The mechanism responsible for referred pain is not completely understood. Inputs arising from the heart presumably share a pathway to the brain in common with inputs from the left upper extremity. The higher perception levels, being more accustomed to receiving sensory input from the left arm than from the heart, may interpret the input from the heart as having arisen from the left arm.

### The spinal cord is responsible for the integration of many basic reflexes.

The spinal cord is strategically located between the brain and the afferent and efferent fibers of the PNS; this location enables the spinal cord to fulfill its two primary functions: (1) serving as a link for transmission of information between the brain and the remainder of the body and (2) integrating reflex activity between afferent input and efferent output without involving the brain. This type of reflex activity is called a *spinal reflex*.

A **reflex** is any response that occurs automatically without conscious effort. There are two types of reflexes: (1) **Simple**, or **basic, reflexes** are built-in, unlearned responses, such as pulling the hand away from a burning hot object, and (2) **acquired**, or **conditioned, reflexes** are a result of practice and learning, such as a pianist striking a particular key on seeing a given note on the music staff. The musician reads music and plays the notes automatically, but only after considerable conscious training effort.



(a) Posterior view of spinal cord

(b) Lateral view of spinal cord

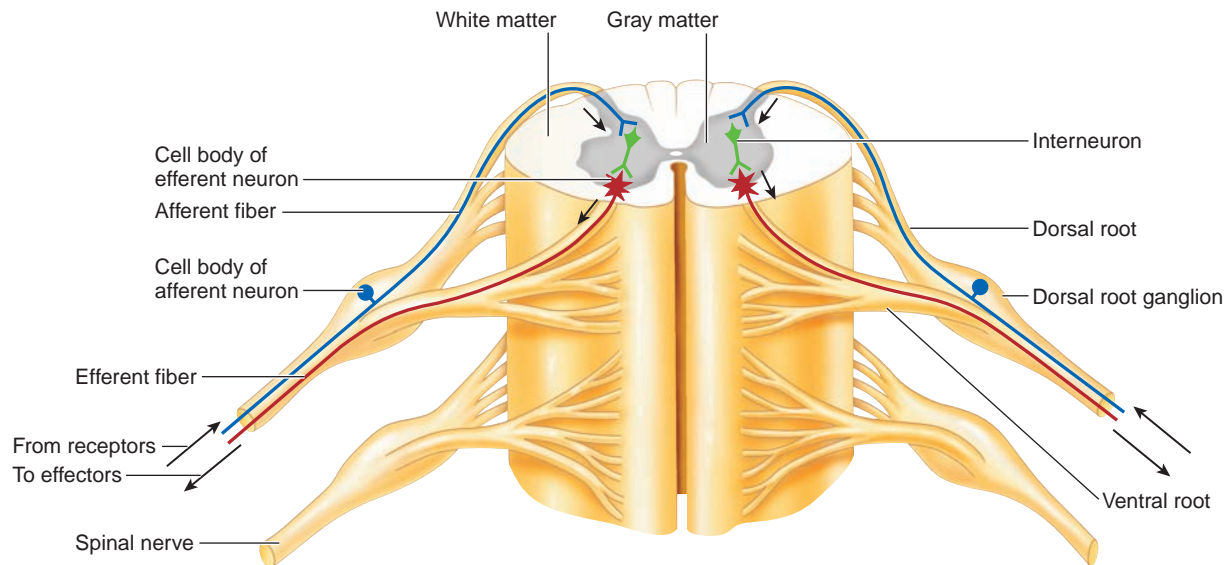
● **FIGURE 5-19 Spinal nerves.** The 31 pairs of spinal nerves are named according to the region of the vertebral column from which they emerge. Because the spinal cord is shorter than the vertebral column, spinal nerve roots must descend along the cord before emerging from the vertebral column at the corresponding intervertebral space, especially those beyond the level of the first lumbar vertebra (L1). (a) Posterior view of the brain, spinal cord, and spinal nerves (on the right side only). (b) Lateral view of the spinal cord and spinal nerves emerging from the vertebral column.

**REFLEX ARC** The neural pathway involved in accomplishing reflex activity is known as a **reflex arc**, which typically includes five basic components:

1. sensory receptor
2. afferent pathway
3. integrating center
4. efferent pathway
5. effector

The **sensory receptor** (*receptor* for short) responds to a **stimulus**, which is a detectable physical or chemical change in

the environment of the receptor. In response to the stimulus, the receptor produces an action potential that is relayed by the **afferent pathway** to the **integrating center** (usually the CNS) for processing. The spinal cord and brain stem integrate basic reflexes, whereas higher brain levels usually process acquired reflexes. The integrating center processes all information available to it from this receptor, as well as from all other inputs, and then “makes a decision” about the appropriate response. The instructions from the integrating center are transmitted via the **efferent pathway** to the **effector**—a muscle or gland—that carries out the desired response. Unlike conscious behavior, in which any one of numerous responses is possible, a re-



● **FIGURE 5-20 Spinal cord in cross section.** The afferent fibers enter through the dorsal root, and the efferent fibers exit through the ventral root. Afferent and efferent fibers are enclosed together within a spinal nerve.

flex response is predictable, because the pathway is always the same.

**STRETCH REFLEX** A basic **spinal reflex** is one integrated by the spinal cord; that is, all components necessary for linking afferent input to efferent response are present within the spinal cord. The simplest reflex is the **stretch reflex**, in which an afferent neuron originating at a stretch-detecting receptor in a skeletal muscle terminates directly on the efferent neuron supplying the same skeletal muscle to cause it to contract and counteract the stretch. In this reflex, the integrating center is the single synapse within the spinal cord between the afferent and the efferent pathways. The output of this system (whether or not the muscle contracts in response to passive stretch) depends on the extent of summation of EPSPs at the cell body of the efferent neuron arising from the frequency of afferent input (determined by the extent of stretch detected by the receptor). Integration in this case simply involves summation of EPSPs from a single source. (You will learn more about the role of this reflex in Chapter 8.) The stretch reflex is a **monosynaptic** (“one synapse”) **reflex**, because the only synapse in the reflex arc is the one between the afferent neuron and the efferent neuron. All other reflexes are **polysynaptic** (“many synapses”), because interneurons are interposed in the reflex pathway and, therefore, a number of synapses are involved. The withdrawal reflex is an example of a polysynaptic basic spinal reflex.

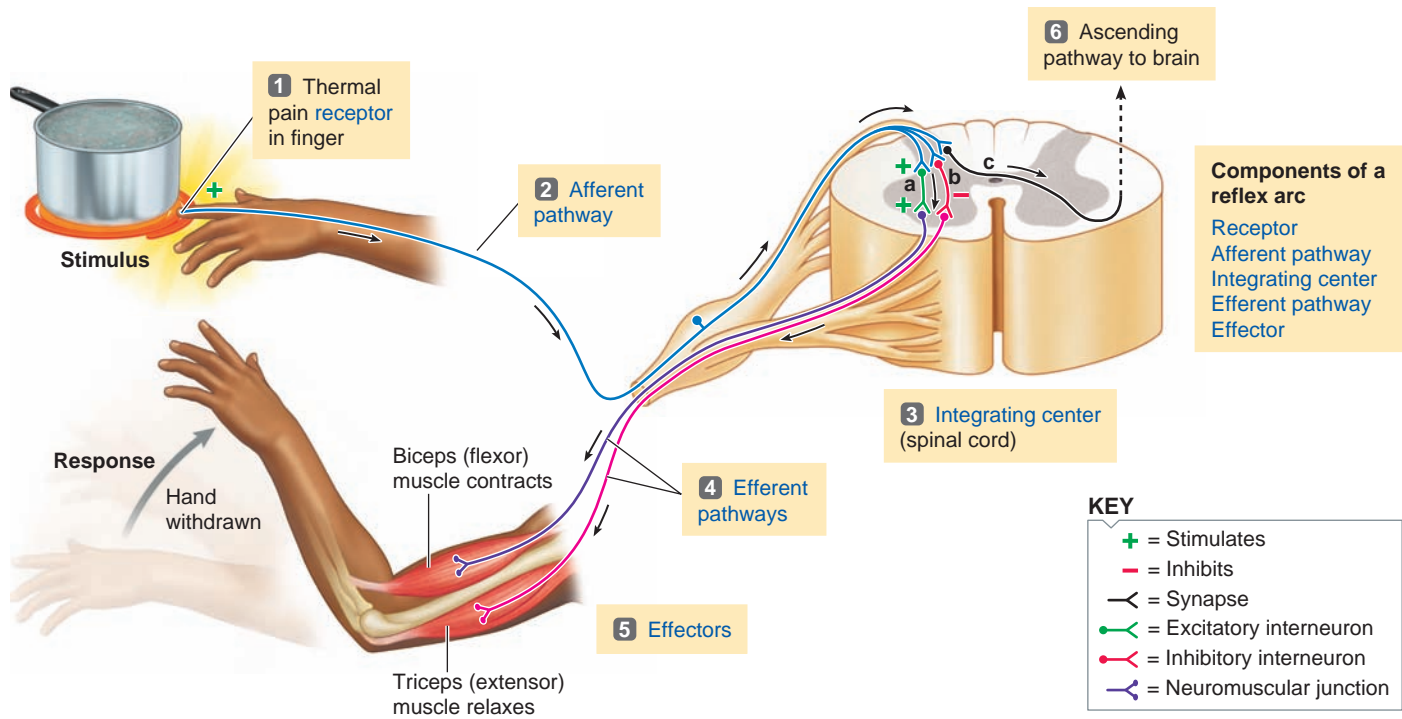
**WITHDRAWAL REFLEX** When a person touches a hot stove (or receives another painful stimulus), a withdrawal reflex is initiated to withdraw from the painful stimulus (● Figure 5-21). The skin has different receptors for warmth, cold, light touch, pressure, and pain. Even though all information is sent to the CNS by way of action potentials, the CNS can distinguish among various stimuli because different receptors and consequently different afferent pathways are activated by different stimuli.

When a receptor is stimulated enough to reach threshold, an action potential is generated in the afferent neuron. The stronger the stimulus is, the greater the frequency of action potentials generated and propagated to the CNS. Once the afferent neuron enters the spinal cord, it diverges to synapse with the following interneurons (the letters correspond to those in ● step 3 of Figure 5-21).

1. An excited afferent neuron stimulates excitatory interneurons that in turn stimulate the efferent motor neurons supplying the biceps (3a), the muscle in the arm that flexes (bends) the elbow joint, pulling the hand away from the hot stove.
2. The afferent neuron also stimulates inhibitory interneurons that inhibit the efferent neurons supplying the triceps (3b) to prevent it from contracting. The triceps is the muscle that extends (straightens out) the elbow joint. When the biceps contracts to flex the elbow, it would be counterproductive for the triceps to contract. Therefore, built into the withdrawal reflex is inhibition of the muscle that antagonizes (opposes) the desired response. This type of connection involving stimulation of the nerve supply to one muscle and simultaneous inhibition of the nerves to its antagonistic muscle is known as **reciprocal innervation**.
3. The afferent neuron stimulates still other interneurons that carry the signal up the spinal cord to the brain via an ascending pathway (3c). Only when the impulse reaches the sensory area of the cortex is the person aware of the pain, its location, and the type of stimulus. Also, when the impulse reaches the brain, the information can be stored as memory, and the person can start thinking about the situation—how it happened, what to do about it, and so on. All this activity at the conscious level is beyond the basic reflex.

As with all spinal reflexes, the brain can modify the withdrawal reflex. Impulses may be sent down descending pathways to the efferent motor neurons supplying the involved muscles to





**1** Painful heat stimulus activates thermal pain receptor in finger.

**2** Action potentials are generated in afferent pathway, which propagates impulses to the spinal cord.

**3** Spinal cord serves as the integrating center. Here afferent neuron stimulates:  
 (a) excitatory interneurons, which stimulate motor neurons to biceps.  
 (b) inhibitory interneurons, which inhibit motor neurons to triceps.  
 (c) interneurons that are part of ascending pathway to brain.

**4** One efferent pathway stimulates biceps to contract. Other efferent pathway leads to relaxation of triceps by preventing counterproductive excitation and contraction of this antagonistic muscle.

**5** The biceps and triceps are effectors. Resultant flexion of elbow joint pulls hand away from painful stimulus. This response completes the withdrawal reflex.

**6** Events that occur in brain on arrival of signal via ascending pathway, such as awareness of pain, memory storage, and so on, are above and beyond reflex arc.

● **FIGURE 5-21** The withdrawal reflex.

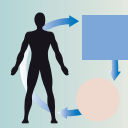
override the input from the receptors, actually preventing the biceps from contracting despite the painful stimulus. When your finger is being pricked to obtain a blood sample, pain receptors are stimulated, initiating the withdrawal reflex. Knowing that you must be brave and not pull your hand away, you can consciously override the reflex by sending IPSPs via descending pathways to the motor neurons supplying the biceps and EPSPs to those supplying the triceps. The activity in these efferent neurons depends on the sum of activity of all their synaptic inputs. Because the neurons supplying the biceps are now receiving more IPSPs from the brain (voluntary) than EPSPs from the afferent pain pathway (reflex), these neurons are inhibited and do not reach threshold. Therefore, the biceps is not stimulated to contract and withdraw the hand. Simultaneously, the neurons to the triceps are receiving more EPSPs from the brain than IPSPs via the reflex arc, so they reach threshold, fire, and consequently stimulate the triceps to contract. Thus, the arm is kept extended despite the painful stimulus. In this way, the withdrawal reflex has been voluntarily overridden.

**OTHER REFLEX ACTIVITY** Besides protective reflexes (such as the withdrawal reflex) and simple postural reflexes, basic spinal reflexes mediate emptying of pelvic organs (for example, urination). All spinal reflexes can be voluntarily overridden, at least temporarily, by higher brain centers.

Not all reflex activity involves a clear-cut reflex arc, although the basic principles of a reflex (that is, an automatic response to a detectable change) are present. Pathways for unconscious responsiveness digress from the typical reflex arc in two general ways:

1. *Responses at least partly mediated by hormones.* A particular reflex may be mediated solely by either neurons or hormones or may involve a pathway using both.
2. *Local responses that do not involve either nerves or hormones.* For example, the blood vessels in an exercising muscle dilate because of local metabolic changes, thereby increasing blood flow to match the active muscle's metabolic needs.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



To interact in appropriate ways with the external environment to stay alive, such as in acquiring food, and to make the internal adjustments necessary to maintain homeostasis, the body must be informed about any changes taking place in the external and the internal environment and must be able to process this information and send messages to various muscles and glands to accomplish the desired results. The nervous system, one of the body's two major regulatory systems, plays a central role in this life-sustaining communication. The central nervous system (CNS), which consists of the brain and spinal cord, receives information about the external and the internal environment by means of the afferent peripheral nerves. After sorting, processing, and integrating this input, the CNS sends directions, by means of efferent peripheral nerves, to bring about appropriate muscular contractions and glandular secretions.

With its swift electrical signaling system, the nervous system is especially important in controlling the rapid responses of the body. Many neurally controlled muscular and glandular activities are aimed toward maintaining homeostasis. The CNS is the main site of integration between afferent input and efferent output. It links the appropriate response to a particular input so that conditions compatible with life are maintained in the body. For example, when informed by the afferent nervous system that blood pressure has fallen, the CNS sends appropriate commands to the heart and blood vessels to increase the blood pressure to normal. Likewise,

when informed that the body is overheated, the CNS promotes secretion of sweat by the sweat glands, among other cooling responses. Evaporation of sweat helps cool the body to normal temperature. Were it not for this processing and integrating ability of the CNS, maintaining homeostasis in an organism as complex as a human would be impossible.

At the simplest level, the spinal cord integrates many basic protective and evacuative reflexes that do not require conscious participation, such as withdrawing from a painful stimulus and emptying of the urinary bladder. In addition to serving as a more complex integrating link between afferent input and efferent output, the brain is responsible for the initiation of all voluntary movement, complex perceptual awareness of the external environment, self-awareness, language, and abstract neural phenomena such as thinking, learning, remembering, consciousness, emotions, and personality traits. All neural activity—from the most private thoughts to commands for motor activity, from enjoying a concert to retrieving memories from the distant past—is ultimately attributable to propagation of action potentials along individual nerve cells and chemical transmission between cells.

During evolutionary development, the nervous system has become progressively more complex. Newer, more complicated, and more sophisticated layers of the brain have been piled on top of older, more primitive regions. Mechanisms for governing many basic activities necessary for survival are built into the older parts of the brain. The newer, higher levels progressively modify, enhance, or nullify actions coordinated by lower levels in a hierarchy of command; they also add new capabilities. Many of these higher neural activities are not aimed at maintaining life, but they add immeasurably to the quality of being alive.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-41)

1. The major function of the CSF is to nourish the brain. (*True or false?*)
2. In emergencies when  $O_2$  supplies are low, the brain can perform anaerobic metabolism. (*True or false?*)
3. Damage to the left cerebral hemisphere brings about paralysis and loss of sensation on the left side of the body. (*True or false?*)
4. The hands and structures associated with the mouth have a disproportionately large share of representation in both the sensory and the motor cortexes. (*True or false?*)
5. The left cerebral hemisphere specializes in artistic and musical ability, whereas the right side excels in verbal and analytical skills. (*True or false?*)
6. The process of transferring and fixing short-term memory traces into long-term memory stores is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Afferent fibers enter through the \_\_\_\_\_ root of the spinal cord, and efferent fibers leave through the \_\_\_\_\_ root.
8. Match the following:
  - \_\_\_ 1. consists of nerves carrying information between the periphery and the CNS
  - \_\_\_ 2. consists of the brain and spinal cord
  - \_\_\_ 3. is the division of the PNS that transmits signals to the CNS
  - \_\_\_ 4. is the division of the PNS that transmits signals from the CNS
  - \_\_\_ 5. supplies skeletal muscles
  - \_\_\_ 6. supplies smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands
  - (a) somatic nervous system
  - (b) autonomic nervous system
  - (c) central nervous system
  - (d) peripheral nervous system
  - (e) efferent division
  - (f) afferent division

9. Using the answer code on the right, indicate which neurons are being described (a characteristic may apply to more than one class of neurons):
 

___ 1. have a receptor at peripheral endings	(a) afferent neurons
___ 2. lie entirely within the CNS	(b) efferent neurons
___ 3. lie primarily within the PNS	(c) interneurons
___ 4. innervate muscles and glands	
___ 5. have a cell body devoid of presynaptic inputs	
___ 6. is the predominant type of neuron	
___ 7. is responsible for thoughts, emotions, memory, etc.	

### Essay Questions

1. Discuss the function of each of the following: astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, ependymal cells, microglia, cerebrospinal fluid, and blood–brain barrier.
2. Compare the composition of white and gray matter.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-41)

1. Special studies designed to assess the specialized capacities of each cerebral hemisphere have been performed on “split-brain” patients. In these people, the corpus callosum—the bundle of fibers that links the two halves of the brain—has been surgically cut to prevent the spread of epileptic seizures from one hemisphere to the other. Even though no overt changes in behavior, intellect, or personality occur in these patients, because both hemispheres individually receive the same information, deficits are observable with tests designed to restrict information to one brain hemisphere at a time. One such test involves limiting a visual stimulus to only half of the brain. Because of a cross-over in the nerve pathways from the eyes to the occipital cortex, the visual information to the right of a midline point is transmitted to only the left half of the brain, whereas visual information to the left of this point is received by only the right half of the brain. A split-brain patient presented with a visual stimulus that reaches only the left hemisphere accurately describes the object seen, but when a visual stimulus is presented to only the right hemisphere, the patient denies having seen anything. The right hemisphere does receive the visual input, however, as demonstrated by nonverbal tests. Even though a split-brain patient denies having seen anything after an object is presented to the right hemisphere, the patient can correctly match the object by picking it out from among several objects, usually to the patient’s surprise. What is your explanation of this finding?
2. Which of the following symptoms are most likely to occur as the result of a severe blow to the back of the head?
  - a. paralysis
  - b. hearing impairment
  - c. visual disturbances
  - d. burning sensations
  - e. personality disorders
3. The hormone insulin enhances the carrier-mediated transport of glucose into most of the body’s cells but not into brain cells. The uptake of glucose from the blood by neurons does not depend on insulin. Knowing the brain’s need for a continuous supply of blood-borne glucose, predict the effect that insulin excess would have on the brain.
4. Give examples of conditioned reflexes you have acquired.
5. Under what circumstances might it be inadvisable to administer a clot-dissolving drug to a stroke victim?

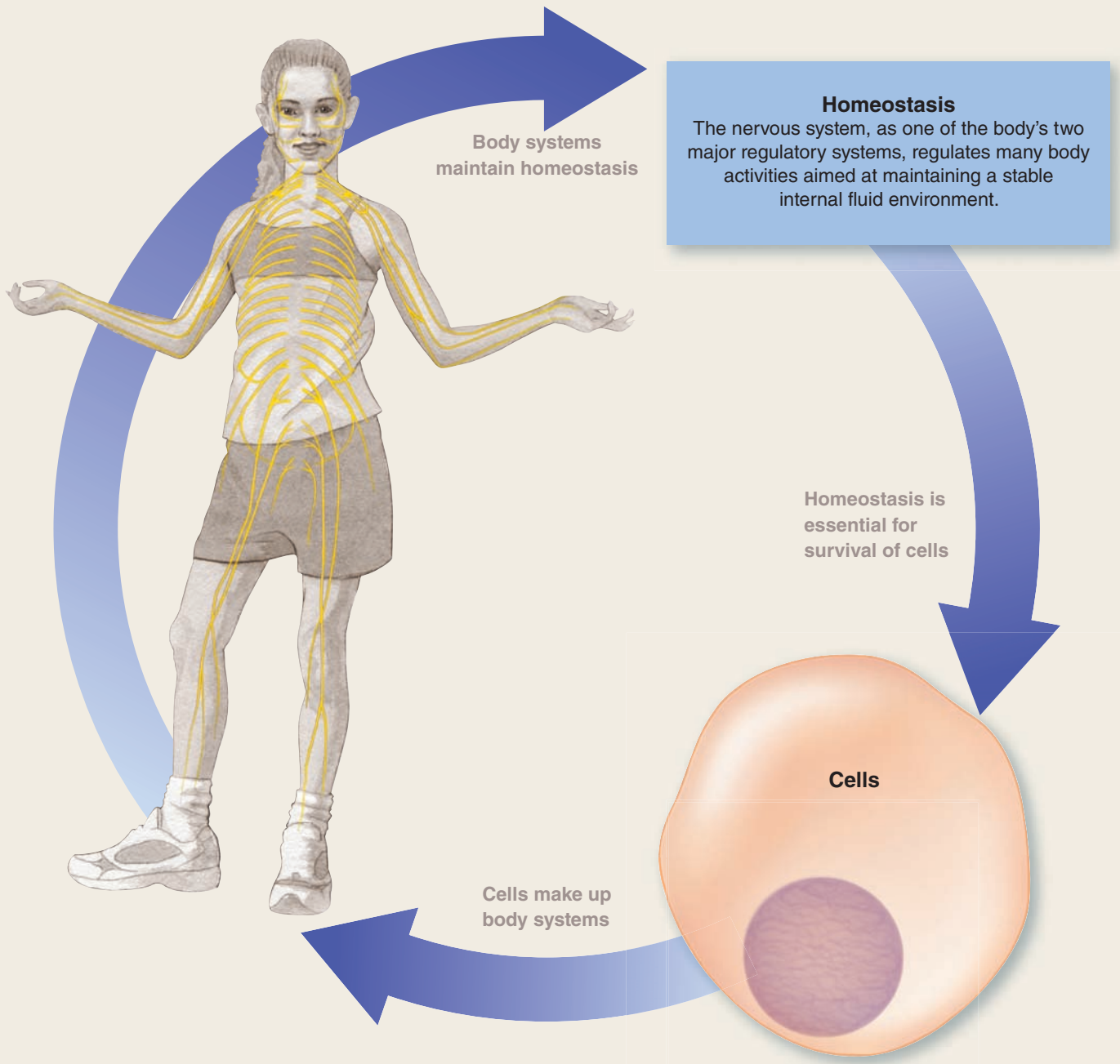
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

**(Explanation on p. A-41)**

Julio D., who had recently retired, was enjoying an afternoon of playing golf when suddenly he experienced a severe headache and dizziness. These symptoms were quickly followed by numbness and partial paralysis on the upper right

side of his body, accompanied by an inability to speak. After being rushed to the emergency room, Julio was diagnosed as having suffered a stroke. Given the observed neurological impairment, what areas of his brain were affected?

## Nervous System (Peripheral Nervous System)



The nervous system, one of the two major regulatory systems of the body, consists of the central nervous system (CNS), composed of the brain and spinal cord, and the **peripheral nervous system (PNS)**, composed of the afferent and efferent fibers that relay signals between the CNS and the periphery (other parts of the body). The **afferent division** of the PNS detects, encodes, and transmits peripheral signals to the CNS, thus informing the CNS about

the internal and the external environment. This afferent input to the controlling centers of the CNS is essential in maintaining homeostasis. To make appropriate adjustments in effector organs via efferent output, the CNS has to “know” what is going on. Afferent input is also used to plan for voluntary actions unrelated to homeostasis.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Receptor Physiology**

Receptor types  
 Receptor potentials; receptor adaptation  
 Labeled lines for afferent input  
 Acuity; receptive field  
 Perception

**Pain**

Receptors and mechanisms of pain  
 Built-in analgesic system

**Eye: Vision**

Anatomy of eye  
 Light  
 Refractive structures; accommodation  
 Phototransduction; retinal processing  
 Comparison of rod and cone vision; color vision  
 Dark and light adaptation  
 Visual pathways; cortical visual processing

**Ear: Hearing and Equilibrium**

Anatomy of ear  
 Sound waves  
 Roles of the external ear and middle ear  
 Sound transduction by the organ of Corti  
 Pitch, timbre, and loudness discrimination  
 Auditory pathway  
 Vestibular apparatus

**Chemical Senses: Taste and Smell**

Taste Receptors  
 Taste transduction and discrimination  
 Olfactory receptors  
 Olfactory transduction and discrimination

# The Peripheral Nervous System: Afferent Division and Special Senses

## Receptor Physiology

The peripheral nervous system (PNS) consists of nerve fibers that carry information between the central nervous system (CNS) and the other parts of the body. The afferent division of the PNS sends information about the external and internal environment to the CNS.

A **stimulus** is a change detectable by the body. Stimuli exist in various energy forms, or **modalities**, such as heat, light, sound, pressure, and chemical changes. Afferent neurons have **sensory receptors** (*receptors* for short) at their peripheral endings that respond to stimuli in both the external world and the internal environment. (Though both are called *receptors*, stimulus-sensitive sensory receptors are distinctly different from the plasma-membrane protein receptors that bind with extracellular chemical messengers; see p. 47.) Because the only way afferent neurons can transmit information to the CNS about stimuli is via action potential propagation, receptors must convert these other forms of energy into electrical signals. Stimuli bring about graded potentials known as **receptor potentials** in the receptor. The conversion of stimulus energy into a receptor potential is known as **sensory transduction**. Receptor potentials in turn trigger action potentials in the afferent fiber.

### Receptors have differential sensitivities to various stimuli.

Each type of receptor is specialized to respond to one type of stimulus, its **adequate stimulus**. For example, receptors in the eye are sensitive to light, receptors in the ear to sound waves, and heat receptors in the skin to heat energy. Because of this differential sensitivity of receptors, we cannot see with our ears or hear with our eyes. Some receptors can respond weakly to stimuli other than their adequate stimulus, but even when activated by a different stimulus, a receptor still gives rise to the sensation usually detected by that receptor type. As an example, the adequate stimulus for eye receptors (photoreceptors) is light, to which they are exquisitely sensitive, but these receptors can also be activated to a lesser degree by mechanical stimulation. When hit in the eye, a person often “sees stars,” because the mechanical pressure stimulates the photoreceptors.

**TYPES OF RECEPTORS ACCORDING TO THEIR ADEQUATE STIMULUS** Depending on the type of energy to which they ordinarily respond, receptors are categorized as follows:

- **Photoreceptors** are responsive to visible wavelengths of light.
- **Mechanoreceptors** are sensitive to mechanical energy. Examples include skeletal muscle receptors sensitive to stretch, the receptors in the ear containing fine hairs that are bent as a result of sound waves, and blood pressure–monitoring baroreceptors.

- **Thermoreceptors** are sensitive to heat and cold.
- **Osmoreceptors** detect changes in the concentration of solutes in the extracellular fluid (ECF) and the resultant changes in osmotic activity (see p. 53).
- **Chemoreceptors** are sensitive to specific chemicals. Chemoreceptors include the receptors for taste and smell, as well as those located deeper within the body that detect  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  concentrations in the blood or the chemical content of the digestive tract.
- **Nociceptors, or pain receptors,** are sensitive to tissue damage such as cutting or burning.

Some sensations are compound sensations in that their perception arises from central integration of several simultaneously activated primary sensory inputs. For example, the perception of wetness comes from touch, pressure, and thermal receptor input; there is no such thing as a “wetness receptor.”

**USES FOR INFORMATION DETECTED BY RECEPTORS** The information detected by receptors is conveyed via afferent neurons to the CNS, where it is used for various purposes:

- Afferent input is essential for the control of efferent output, both for regulating motor behavior in accordance with external circumstances and for coordinating internal activities directed at maintaining homeostasis. At the most basic level, afferent input provides information (of which the person may or may not be consciously aware) for the CNS to use in directing activities necessary for survival. On a broader level, we could not interact successfully with our environment or with one another without sensory input.
- Processing of sensory input by the reticular activating system in the brain stem is critical for cortical arousal and consciousness (see p. 130).
- Central processing of sensory information gives rise to our perceptions of the world around us.
- Selected information delivered to the CNS may be stored for future reference.
- Sensory stimuli can have a profound impact on our emotions. The smell of just-baked apple pie, the sensuous feel of silk, the sight of a loved one, the sound of someone sharing bad news—sensory input can gladden, sadden, arouse, calm, anger, frighten, or evoke a range of other emotions.

We next examine how adequate stimuli initiate action potentials that ultimately are used for these purposes.

### A stimulus alters the receptor’s permeability, leading to a graded receptor potential.

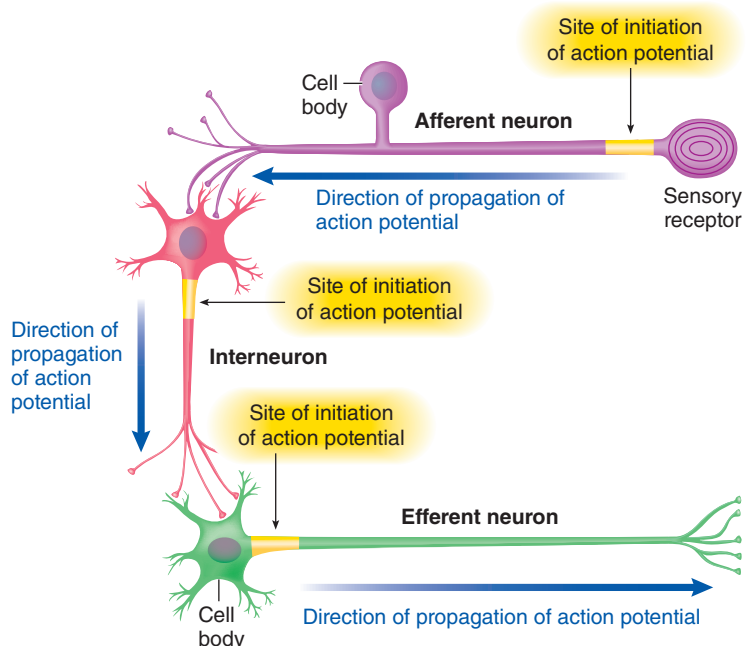
A receptor may be either (1) a specialized ending of the afferent neuron or (2) a separate receptor cell closely associated with the peripheral ending of the neuron. Stimulation of a receptor alters its membrane permeability, usually by causing nonspecific cation channels to open. The means by which this permeability change takes place is individualized for each receptor type. Because the electrochemical driving force is greater for sodium

( $Na^+$ ) than for other small cations at resting potential, the predominant effect is an inward flux of  $Na^+$ , which depolarizes the receptor membrane. This local depolarization, the receptor potential, is a graded potential. As is true of all graded potentials, the stronger the stimulus, the greater the permeability change and the larger the receptor potential (see p. 72). Also, receptor potentials have no refractory period, so summation in response to rapidly successive stimuli is possible. Because the receptor region has few to no voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channels and thus has a high threshold, action potentials do not take place at the receptor itself. For long-distance transmission, the receptor potential must be converted into action potentials that can be propagated along the afferent fiber.

### Receptor potentials may initiate action potentials in the afferent neuron.

If a receptor potential is large enough, it may trigger an action potential in the afferent neuron membrane next to the receptor. Depending on the type of receptor, the depolarized receptor brings about depolarization of this adjacent membrane, either by local current flow or by releasing a depolarizing chemical messenger. If the resulting ionic flux in this adjacent membrane is big enough to bring this region to threshold, voltage-gated  $Na^+$  channels open here, triggering an action potential that is conducted along the afferent fiber to the CNS.

Note that the initiation site of action potentials in an afferent neuron differs from the site in an efferent neuron or interneuron. In the latter two types of neurons, action potentials are initiated at the axon hillock located at the start of the axon next to the cell body (see p. 79). By contrast, action potentials are initiated at the peripheral end of an afferent nerve fiber next to the receptor, a long distance from the cell body (● Figure 6-1).



● **FIGURE 6-1** Comparison of the initiation site of an action potential in the three types of neurons.

The intensity of the stimulus is reflected by the magnitude of the receptor potential. The larger the receptor potential, the greater the frequency of action potentials generated in the afferent neuron (● Figure 6-2). A larger receptor potential cannot bring about a larger action potential (because of the all-or-none law), but it can induce more rapid firing of action potentials (see p. 83). The more rapidly an afferent fiber fires, the more neurotransmitter it releases. This neurotransmitter influences the next cell in the neural pathway, passing on information about stimulus strength. Stimulus strength is also reflected by the size of the area stimulated. Stronger stimuli usually affect larger areas, so correspondingly more receptors respond. For example, a light touch does not activate as many pressure receptors in the skin as does a more forceful touch applied to the same area. Stimulus intensity is therefore distinguished both by the frequency of action potentials generated in the afferent neuron and by the number of receptors and thus afferent fibers activated within the area.

### Receptors may adapt slowly or rapidly to sustained stimulation.

Stimuli of the same intensity do not always bring about receptor potentials of the same magnitude from the same receptor. Some receptors can diminish the extent of their depolarization despite sustained stimulus strength, a phenomenon called **adaptation**. Subsequently, the frequency of action potentials generated in the afferent neuron decreases. That is, the receptor “adapts” to the stimulus by no longer responding to it to the same degree.

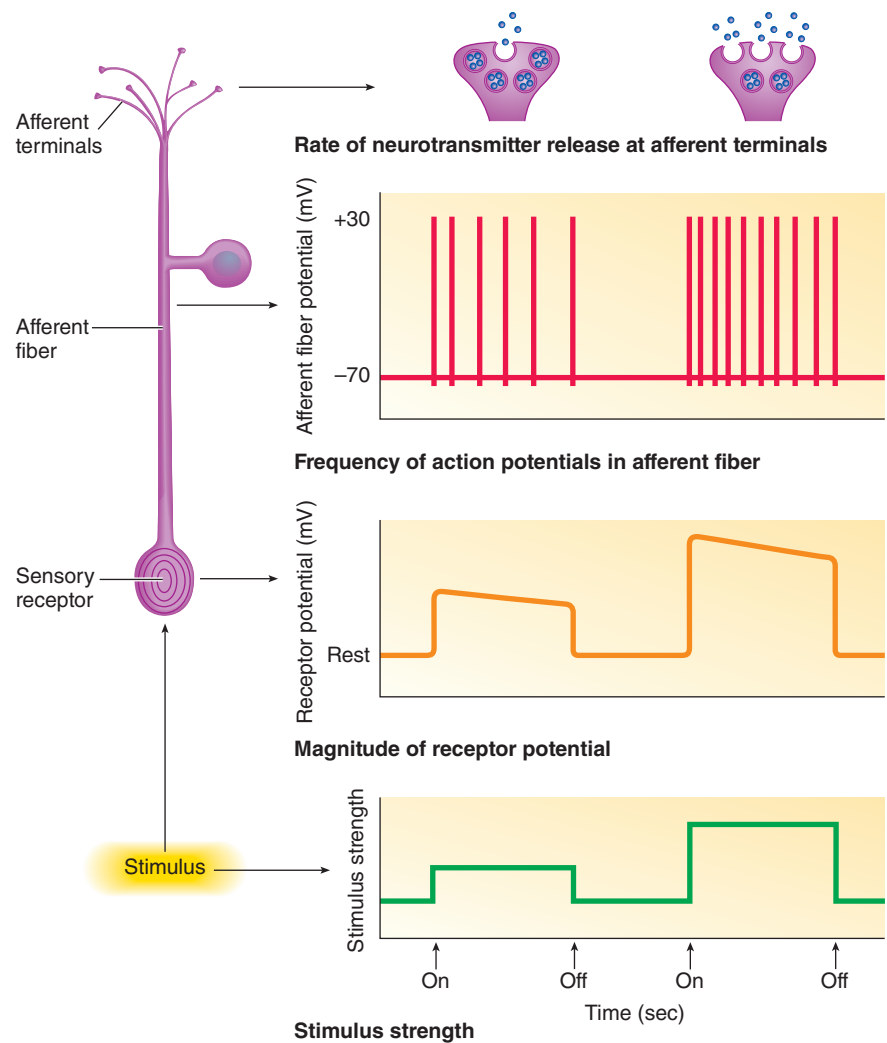
**TYPES OF RECEPTORS ACCORDING TO THEIR SPEED OF ADAPTATION** Depending on their speed of adaptation, receptors are classified as *tonic receptors* or *phasic receptors*. **Tonic receptors** do not adapt or adapt slowly (● Figure 6-3a). These receptors are useful when it is valuable to maintain information about a stimulus. Examples of tonic receptors are muscle stretch receptors, which monitor muscle length, and joint proprioceptors, which measure the degree of joint flexion. To maintain posture and balance, the CNS must continually get information about the degree of muscle length and joint position. It is important, therefore, that these receptors do *not* adapt to a stimulus but continue to generate action potentials to relay this information to the CNS.

**Phasic receptors**, in contrast, are rapidly adapting receptors. The receptor quickly adapts by no longer responding to a maintained stimulus. Some phasic receptors respond with a slight depolarization called the

**off response** when the stimulus is removed (● Figure 6-3b). Phasic receptors are useful when it is important to signal a change in stimulus intensity rather than to relay status quo information. Many *tactile (touch) receptors* that signal changes in pressure on the skin surface are phasic receptors. Because these receptors adapt rapidly, you are not continually conscious of wearing your watch, rings, and clothing. When you put something on, you soon become accustomed to it because of these receptors’ rapid adaptation. When you take the item off, you are aware of its removal because of the off response.

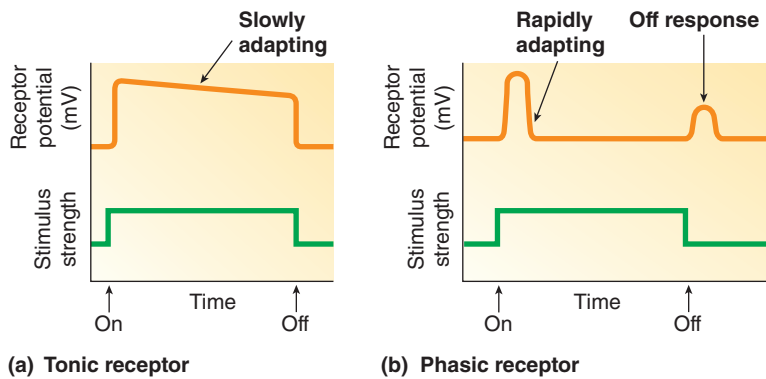
### Visceral afferents carry subconscious input, whereas sensory afferents carry conscious input.

Action potentials generated by receptors in afferent fibers in response to stimuli are propagated to the CNS. Afferent information about the internal environment, such as blood pressure and the concentration of CO<sub>2</sub> in the body fluids, never reaches the level of conscious awareness, but this input is essential for determining the appropriate efferent output to maintain homeostasis. The incoming pathway for information derived from



● **FIGURE 6-2** Magnitude of receptor potential, frequency of action potentials in afferent fiber, and rate of neurotransmitter release at afferent terminals as a function of stimulus strength.





**(a) Tonic receptor** **(b) Phasic receptor**  
**● FIGURE 6-3 Tonic and phasic receptors.** (a) A tonic receptor does not adapt or adapts slowly to a sustained stimulus and thus provides continuous information about the stimulus. (b) A phasic receptor adapts rapidly to a sustained stimulus and often exhibits an off response when the stimulus is removed. Thus, the receptor signals changes in stimulus intensity rather than relaying status quo information.

the internal viscera (the organs in the body cavities, such as the abdominal cavity) is called a **visceral afferent**. Even though mostly subconscious information is transmitted via visceral afferents, people do become aware of pain signals arising from viscera. Afferent input derived from receptors located at the body surface or in the muscles or joints typically reaches the level of conscious awareness. This input is known as *sensory information*, and the incoming pathway is considered a **sensory afferent**. Sensory information is categorized as (1) **somatic** (body sense) **sensation** arising from the body surface, including *somesthetic sensation* from the skin and *proprioception* from the muscles, joints, skin, and inner ear (see p. 115), or (2) **special senses**, including *vision*, *hearing*, *equilibrium*, *taste*, and *smell*. Final processing of sensory input by the CNS not only is essential for interaction with the environment for basic survival (for example, food procurement and defense from danger) but also adds immeasurably to the richness of life.

**Each somatosensory pathway is “labeled” according to modality and location.**

On reaching the spinal cord, afferent information has two possible destinies: (1) it may become part of a reflex arc, bringing about an appropriate effector response, or (2) it may be relayed upward to the brain via ascending pathways for further processing and possible conscious awareness. Pathways conveying conscious somatic sensation, the **somatosensory pathways**, consist of discrete chains of neurons, or **labeled lines**, synaptically interconnected in a particular sequence to accomplish progressively more sophisticated processing of the sensory information. A particular sensory modality detected by a specialized receptor type is sent over a specific afferent and ascending pathway (a neural pathway committed to that modality) to excite a defined area in the somatosensory cortex. That is, a particular sensory input is **projected** to a specific region of the cortex. Thus, different types of incoming information are kept separated within specific labeled lines between the periphery and the cortex. In this way, even though all information is propagated to the CNS via the same type of signal (action po-

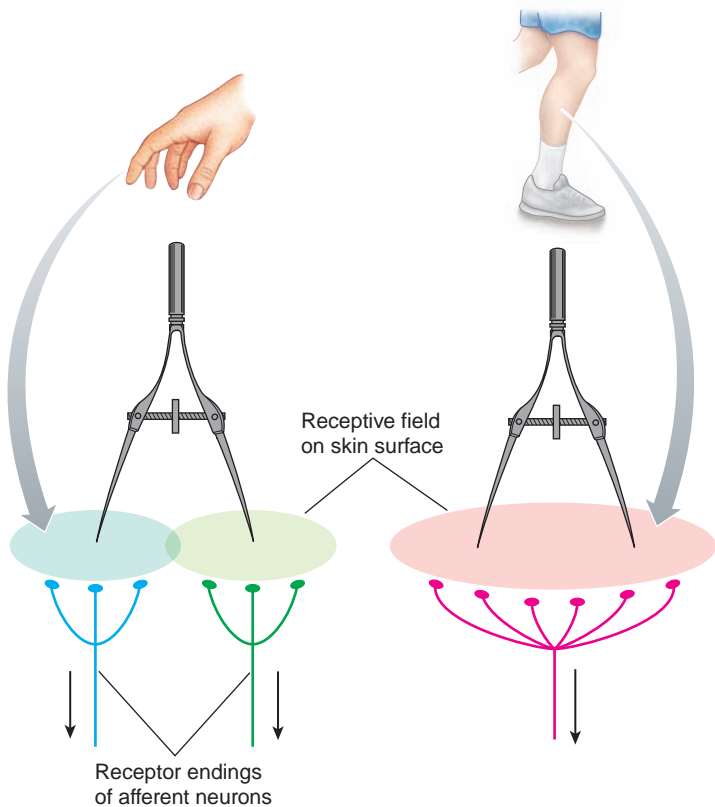
tentials), the brain can decode the type and location of the stimulus. ▲ Table 6-1 summarizes how the CNS is informed of the type (what), location (where), and intensity (how much) of a stimulus.

**Acuity is influenced by receptive field size.**

Each somesthetic sensory neuron responds to stimulus information only within a circumscribed region of the skin surface surrounding it; this region is called its **receptive field**. The size of a receptive field varies inversely with the density of receptors in the region; the more closely receptors of a particular type are spaced, the smaller the area of skin each monitors. The smaller the receptive field in a region, the greater its **acuity** or **discriminative ability**. Compare the tactile discrimination in your fingertips with that in your calf by “feeling” the same object with both. You can sense more precise information about the object with your richly innervated fingertips because the receptive fields there are small; as a result, each neuron signals information about small, discrete portions of the object’s surface. An estimated 17,000 tactile mechanoreceptors are present in the fingertips and palm of each hand. In contrast, the skin over the calf is served by relatively few sensory endings with larger receptive fields. Subtle differences within each large receptive field cannot be detected (● Figure 6-4). The distorted cortical representation of various body parts in the sensory homunculus (see p. 115) corresponds precisely with the innervation density; more cortical space is allotted for sensory reception from areas with smaller receptive fields and, accordingly, greater tactile discriminative ability.

**▲ Table 6-1 Coding of Sensory Information**

Stimulus Property	Mechanism of Coding
<b>Type of stimulus (stimulus modality)</b>	Distinguished by the type of receptor activated and the specific pathway over which this information is transmitted to a particular area of the cerebral cortex
<b>Location of stimulus</b>	Distinguished by the location of the activated receptor field and the pathway subsequently activated to transmit this information to the area of the somatosensory cortex representing that particular location
<b>Intensity of stimulus (stimulus strength)</b>	Distinguished by the frequency of action potentials initiated in an activated afferent neuron and by the number of receptors (and afferent neurons) activated



Two receptive fields stimulated by the two points of stimulation:  
**Two points felt**

Only one receptive field stimulated by the two points of stimulation the same distance apart as in (a):  
**One point felt**

(a) Region with small receptive fields

(b) Region with large receptive field

● **FIGURE 6-4 Comparison of discriminative ability of regions with small versus large receptive fields.** The relative tactile acuity of a given region can be determined by the *two-point threshold-of-discrimination test*. If the two points of a pair of calipers applied to the surface of the skin stimulate two different receptive fields, two separate points are felt. If the two points touch the same receptive field, they are perceived as only one point. By adjusting the distance between the caliper points, we can determine the minimal distance at which the two points can be recognized as two rather than one, which reflects the size of the receptive fields in the region. With this technique, it is possible to plot the discriminative ability of the body surface. The two-point threshold ranges from 2 mm in the fingertip (enabling a person to read Braille, where the raised dots are spaced 2.5 mm apart) to 48 mm in the poorly discriminative skin of the calf of the leg.

### Perception is the conscious awareness of surroundings derived from interpretation of sensory input.

**Perception** is our conscious interpretation of the external world as created by the brain from a pattern of nerve impulses delivered to it from receptors. Is the world, as we perceive it, reality? The answer is a resounding no. Our perception is different from what is really “out there”—for several reasons. First, humans have receptors that detect only a limited number of existing energy forms. We perceive sounds, colors, shapes, textures, smells, tastes, and temperature but are not informed of magnetic forces, polarized light waves, radio waves, or X-rays because we do not have receptors to respond to the latter energy forms. What is not detected by receptors, the brain will never know. Second, the information channels to our brains are not

high-fidelity recorders. During precortical processing of sensory input, some features of stimuli are accentuated and others are suppressed or ignored. Third, the cerebral cortex further manipulates the data, comparing the sensory input with other incoming information, as well as with memories of past experiences to extract the significant features—for example, sifting out a friend’s words from the hubbub of sound in a school cafeteria. In the process, the cortex often fills in or distorts the information to abstract a logical perception; that is, it “completes the picture.” Other species, equipped with different types of receptors, sensitivities, and neural processing perceive a markedly different world from what we perceive.

Having completed our general discussion of receptor physiology, we now examine one important somatic sensation in greater detail—pain.

## Pain

**Pain** is primarily a protective mechanism meant to bring to conscious awareness tissue damage that is occurring or is about to occur. Because of their value to survival, nociceptors (pain receptors) do not adapt to sustained or repetitive stimulation. Storage of painful experiences in memory helps us avoid potentially harmful events in the future.

### Stimulation of nociceptors elicits the perception of pain plus motivational and emotional responses.

Unlike other somatosensory modalities, the sensation of pain is accompanied by motivated behavioral responses (such as withdrawal or defense), as well as emotional reactions (such as crying or fear). Also, unlike other sensations, the subjective perception of pain can be influenced by other past or present experiences (for example, heightened pain perception accompanying fear of the dentist or lowered pain perception in an injured athlete during a competitive event).



All nociceptors can be sensitized by the presence of *prostaglandins*, which greatly enhance the receptor response to noxious stimuli (that is, it hurts more when prostaglandins are present). Prostaglandins are a special group of fatty acid derivatives that are cleaved from the lipid bilayer of the plasma membrane and act locally where released (see p. 558). Tissue injury, among other things, can lead to the local release of prostaglandins. These chemicals act on the nociceptors’ peripheral endings to lower their threshold for activation. Aspirin-like drugs inhibit the synthesis of prostaglandins, accounting at least in part for the **analgesic** (pain-relieving) properties of these drugs.

**FAST AND SLOW AFFERENT PAIN FIBERS** Pain impulses originating at nociceptors are transmitted to the CNS via one of two types of afferent fibers. Different types of nociceptors respond to different painful stimuli. Signals arising from nociceptors that respond to mechanical damage such as cutting or to thermal damage such as burning are transmitted over small, myelinated fibers at rates of up to 30 m/sec (the **fast pain pathway**). Impulses from nociceptors that respond to chemicals

released into the ECF from damaged tissue are carried by small, unmyelinated fibers at a slower rate of 12 m/sec (the **slow pain pathway**). Think about the last time you cut or burned your finger. You undoubtedly felt a sharp twinge of pain at first, with a more diffuse, disagreeable pain commencing shortly thereafter. Pain typically is perceived initially as a brief, sharp, prickling sensation that is easily localized; this is fast pain originating from specific mechanical or heat nociceptors. This feeling is followed by a dull, aching, poorly localized sensation that persists and is more unpleasant; this slow pain is activated for a prolonged time because of the persistence of released chemicals at the site long after removal of the mechanical or thermal stimulus that caused the tissue damage.



Interestingly, the peripheral receptors of the slow pain pathway fibers are activated by **capsaicin**, the ingredient in hot chili peppers that gives them their fiery zing. (In addition to binding with pain receptors, capsaicin binds with heat receptors—hence the burning sensation when eating hot peppers.) Ironically, local application of capsaicin can reduce clinical pain, most likely by overstimulating and damaging the nociceptors with which it binds.

**HIGHER-LEVEL PROCESSING OF PAIN INPUT** The afferent pain fibers synapse with specific interneurons in the spinal cord from which the signal is transmitted to the brain for perceptual processing. One of the pain neurotransmitters released from these afferent pain terminals is **substance P**, which is unique to pain fibers. When the pain signal reaches the brain, processing by the somatosensory cortex localizes the pain, whereas other cortical areas participate in other conscious components of the pain experience, such as deliberation about the incident. The limbic system is especially important in perceiving the unpleasant aspects of pain.

### The brain has a built-in analgesic system.

In addition to the chain of neurons connecting peripheral nociceptors with higher CNS structures for pain perception, the CNS contains a built-in pain-suppressing or **analgesic system** that suppresses transmission in the pain pathways as they enter the spinal cord. This analgesic system suppresses pain largely by blocking the release of substance P from afferent pain-fiber terminals.

The analgesic system depends on the presence of **opiate receptors**. People have long known that **morphine**, a component of the opium poppy, is a powerful analgesic. Researchers considered it unlikely that the body has been endowed with opiate receptors only to interact with chemicals derived from a flower. They therefore began to search for the substances that normally bind with these opiate receptors. The result was the discovery of **endogenous opiates** (morphinelike substances)—the **endorphins**, **enkephalins**, and **dynorphin**—which are important in the body's natural analgesic system. These endogenous opiates serve as analgesic neurotransmitters; they are released from the descending analgesic pathway and bind with opiate receptors on the afferent pain-fiber terminal. This binding suppresses the release of substance P, blocking further

transmission of the pain signal. Morphine binds to these same opiate receptors, which largely accounts for its analgesic properties. Morphine (and likely the endogenous opiates) also acts centrally to suppress pain.

It is not clear how this natural pain-suppressing mechanism is normally activated. Factors known to modulate pain include exercise, stress, and acupuncture. Researchers believe that endorphins are released during prolonged exercise and presumably produce the “runner's high.” Some types of stress also induce analgesia. It is sometimes disadvantageous for a stressed organism to display the normal reaction to pain. For example, when two male lions are fighting for dominance of the group, withdrawing, escaping, or resting when injured would mean certain defeat. (See the accompanying boxed feature, **Beyond the Basics**, for an examination of how acupuncture relieves pain.)

This completes our discussion of somatic sensation. Whereas somatic sensation is detected by widely distributed receptors that provide information about the body's interactions with the environment in general, each of the special senses has highly localized, extensively specialized receptors that respond to unique environmental stimuli. The special senses include vision, hearing, equilibrium, taste, and smell, to which we now turn our attention, starting with vision.

## Eye: Vision

For **vision**, the eyes capture the patterns of illumination in the environment as an “optical picture” on a layer of light-sensitive cells, the **retina**, much as a nondigital camera captures an image on film. Just as film can be developed into a visual likeness of the original image, the coded image on the retina is transmitted through the steps of visual processing until it is finally consciously perceived as a visual likeness of the original image.

### The eye is a fluid-filled sphere enclosed by three specialized tissue layers.

Each **eye** is a spherical, fluid-filled structure enclosed by three layers. From outermost to innermost, these are (1) the **sclera/cornea**, (2) the **choroid/ciliary body/iris**, and (3) the **retina** (● Figure 6-5b). Most of the eyeball is covered by a tough outer layer of connective tissue, the **sclera**, which forms the visible white part of the eye (● Figure 6-5a).

Anteriorly, the outer layer consists of the transparent **cornea**, through which light rays pass into the interior of the eye. The middle layer underneath the sclera is the highly pigmented **choroid**, which contains many blood vessels that nourish the retina. The choroid layer becomes specialized anteriorly to form the ciliary body and iris, which we describe shortly. The innermost coat under the choroid is the **retina**, which consists of an outer pigmented layer and an inner nervous-tissue layer. The latter contains the **rods** and **cones**, the photoreceptors that convert light energy into nerve impulses. Like the black walls of a photographic studio, the pigment in the choroid and retina absorbs light after it strikes the retina to prevent reflection or scattering of light within the eye.

## Beyond the Basics

It sounds like science fiction. How can a needle inserted in the hand relieve a toothache? **Acupuncture analgesia (AA)**, the technique of relieving pain by inserting and manipulating threadlike needles at key points, has been practiced in China for more than 2000 years but is relatively new to Western medicine and still remains controversial in the United States.

### Brief History

Traditional Chinese teaching holds that disease can occur when the normal patterns of flow of healthful energy (called *qi*; pronounced “chee”) just under the skin become disrupted, with acupuncture being able to correct this imbalance and restore health. Many Western scientists have been skeptical because, until recently, the phenomenon could not be explained on the basis of any known, logical, physiologic principles, although a tremendous body of anecdotal evidence in support of the effectiveness of AA existed in China. In Western medicine, the success of acupuncture was considered a placebo effect. The term *placebo effect* refers to a chemical or technique that brings about a desired response through the power of suggestion or distraction rather than through any direct action.

Because the Chinese were content with anecdotal evidence for the success of AA, this phenomenon did not come under close scientific scrutiny until the last several decades, when European and American scientists started studying it. As a result of these efforts, an impressive body of rigorous scientific investigation supports the contention that AA really

## Acupuncture: Is It for Real?

works (that is, by a physiologic rather than a placebo or psychological effect). In controlled clinical studies, 55% to 85% of patients were helped by AA. Pain relief was reported by only 30% to 35% of placebo controls (people who thought they were receiving proper AA treatment but in whom needles were inserted in the wrong places or not deep enough). Furthermore, its mechanisms of action have become apparent. Indeed, more is known about the underlying physiologic mechanisms of AA than about those of many conventional medical techniques, such as gas anesthesia.

### Mechanism of Action

The overwhelming body of evidence supports the *acupuncture endorphin hypothesis* as the primary mechanism of AA's action. According to this hypothesis, acupuncture needles activate specific afferent nerve fibers, which send impulses to the CNS. Here, the incoming impulses cause analgesia by blocking pain transmission at both the spinal-cord and the brain level through use of endogenous opiates. Several other neurotransmitters, such as serotonin and norepinephrine, as well as cortisol, the major hormone released during stress, are implicated as well. (Pain relief in placebo controls is believed to occur as a result of placebo responders subconsciously activating their own built-in analgesic system.)

### Acupuncture in the United States

In the United States, AA has not been used in mainstream medicine, even by

physicians who have been convinced by scientific evidence that the technique is valid. AA methodology has traditionally not been taught in U.S. medical colleges, and the techniques take time to learn. Also, using AA is more time-consuming than prescribing drugs. Western physicians who have been trained to use drugs to solve most pain problems are generally reluctant to scrap their known methods for an unfamiliar, time-consuming technique. However, acupuncture is gaining favor as an alternative treatment for relief of chronic pain, especially because analgesic drugs can have troublesome side effects. After decades of being spurned by most of the U.S. medical community, acupuncture started gaining respectability following a 1997 report issued by an expert panel convened by the National Institutes of Health (NIH). This report, based on an evaluation of published scientific studies, concluded that acupuncture is effective as an alternative or adjunct to conventional treatment for many kinds of pain and nausea. Now that acupuncture has been sanctioned by NIH and thus been made scientifically legitimate, some medical insurers have taken the lead in paying for this treatment, and some of the nation's medical schools are beginning to incorporate the technique into their curricula. However, most licensed acupuncture practitioners are nonphysicians who have specialized in acupuncture training and oriental medicine at one of the nearly 60 nationally accredited acupuncture schools.

The interior of the eye consists of two fluid-filled cavities, separated by an elliptical **lens**, all of which are transparent to permit light to pass through the eye from the cornea to the retina. The larger posterior cavity between the lens and the retina contains a clear, jellylike substance, the **vitreous humor**. The vitreous humor helps maintain the spherical shape of the eyeball. The anterior cavity between the cornea and the lens contains a clear, watery fluid, the **aqueous humor**. The aqueous humor carries nutrients for the cornea and lens, both of which lack a blood supply. Blood vessels in these structures would impede the passage of light to the photoreceptors.

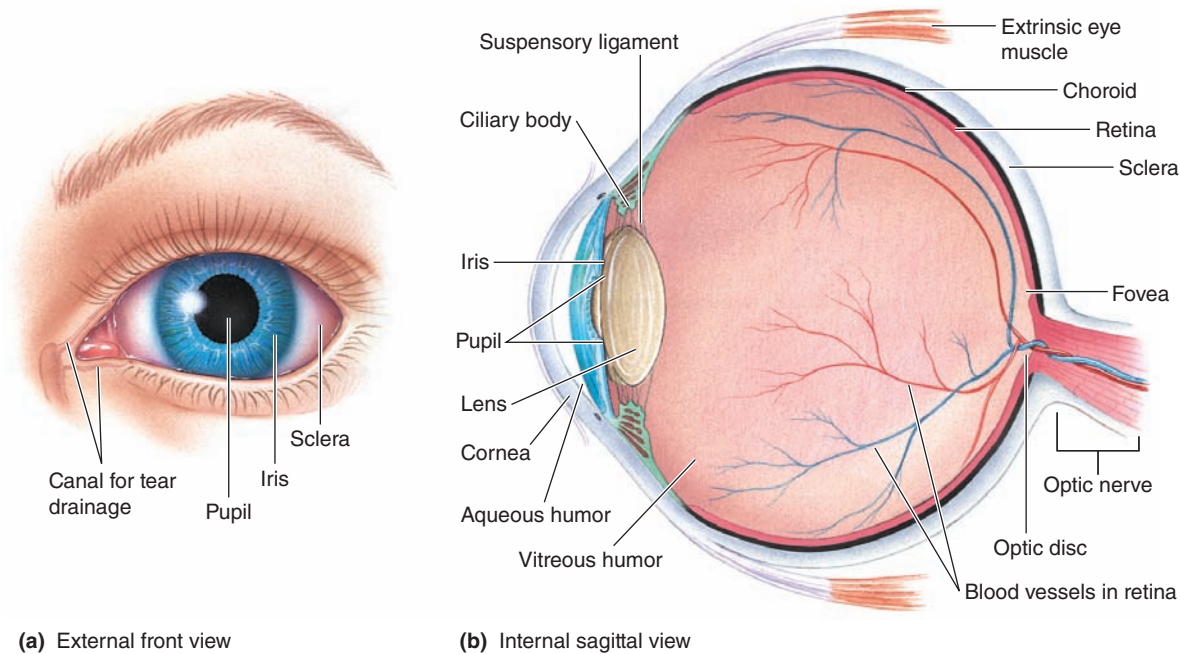
The aqueous humor is produced by a capillary network within the **ciliary body**, a specialized anterior derivative of the choroid layer. This fluid drains into a canal at the edge of the cornea and eventually enters the blood (● Figure 6-6).



If the aqueous humor is not drained as rapidly as it forms (for example, because of a blocked drainage canal), the excess accumulates in the anterior cavity, causing the pressure to rise within the eye. This condition is known as **glaucoma**. The excess aqueous humor pushes the lens backward into the vitreous humor, which in turn pushes against the inner neural layer of the retina. This compression causes retinal and optic nerve damage that can lead to blindness if the condition is not treated.

### The amount of light entering the eye is controlled by the iris.

Not all light passing through the cornea reaches the light-sensitive photoreceptors because of the presence of the iris, a thin, pigmented smooth muscle that forms a visible ringlike



(a) External front view  
 (b) Internal sagittal view  
 ● **FIGURE 6-5** Structure of the eye.

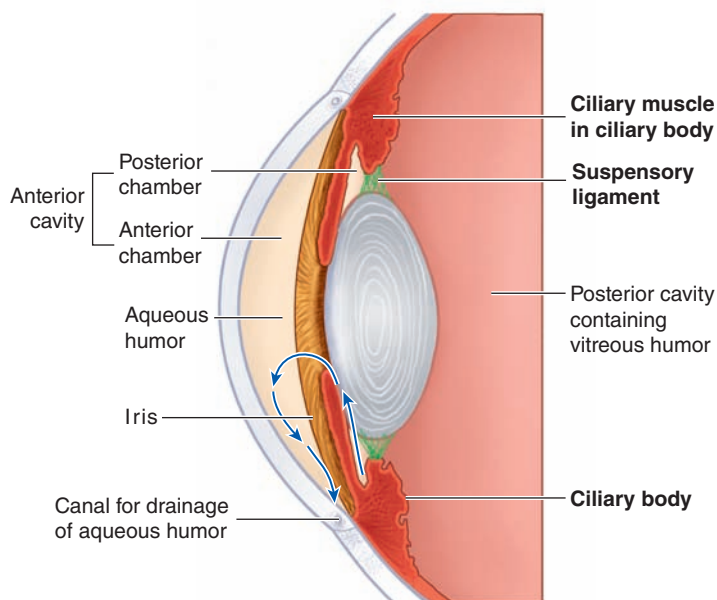
structure within the aqueous humor (see ● Figure 6-5a and b). The pigment in the iris is responsible for eye color. The varied flecks, lines, and other nuances of the iris are unique for each individual, making the iris the basis of the latest identification technology. Recognition of iris patterns by a video camera that captures iris images and translates the landmarks into a computerized code is more foolproof than fingerprinting or even DNA testing.

The round opening in the center of the iris through which light enters the interior portions of the eye is the **pupil**. The size

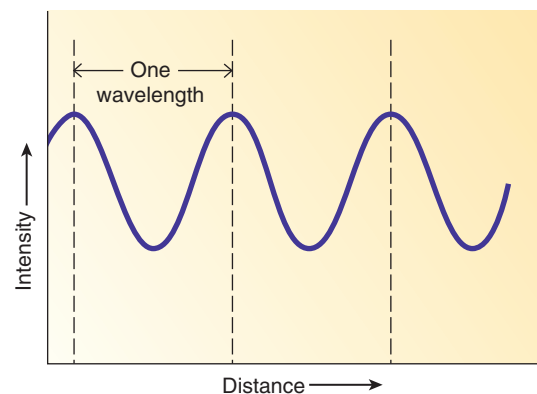
of this opening can be adjusted by variable contraction of the iris smooth muscles to admit more or less light as needed, much as the diaphragm controls the amount of light entering a camera. Iris muscles, and thus pupillary size, are controlled by the autonomic nervous system. Parasympathetic stimulation causes pupillary constriction, whereas sympathetic stimulation causes pupillary dilation.

**The eye refracts the entering light to focus the image on the retina.**

**Light** is a form of electromagnetic radiation that travels in wavelike fashion. The distance between two wave peaks is known as the *wavelength* (● Figure 6-7). The wavelengths in the electromagnetic spectrum range from  $10^{-14}$  m (quadrillionths of a meter, as in the extremely short cosmic rays) to  $10^4$  m (10 km, as in long radio waves). The photoreceptors in the eye



● **FIGURE 6-6** Formation and drainage of the aqueous humor. The aqueous humor is formed by a capillary network in the ciliary body, drains into a canal, and eventually enters the blood.



● **FIGURE 6-7** Properties of an electromagnetic wave. A wavelength is the distance between two wave peaks. The intensity is the amplitude of the wave.

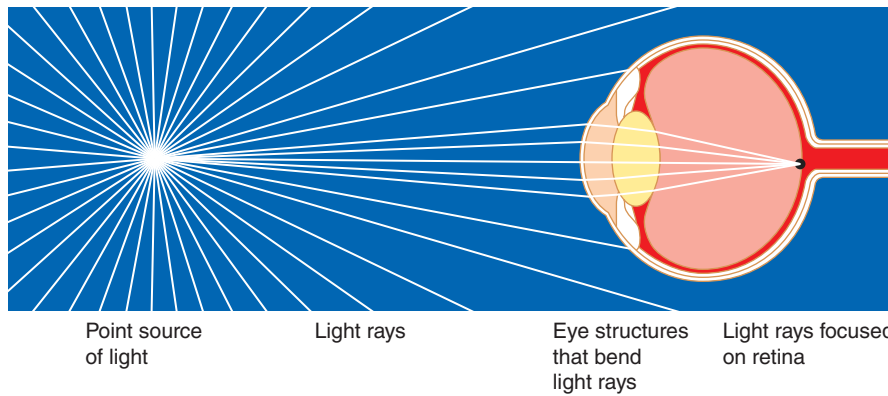
are sensitive only to wavelengths between 400 and 700 nanometers (nm; billionths of a meter). Thus, **visible light** is only a small portion of the total electromagnetic spectrum. Light of different wavelengths in this visible band is perceived as different color sensations. The shorter visible wavelengths are sensed as violet and blue; the longer wavelengths are interpreted as orange and red (see ● Figure 6-20, p. 157).

In addition to having variable wavelengths, light energy varies in intensity; that is, the amplitude, or height, of the wave (● Figure 6-7). Dimming a bright red light does not change its color; it just becomes less intense or less bright.

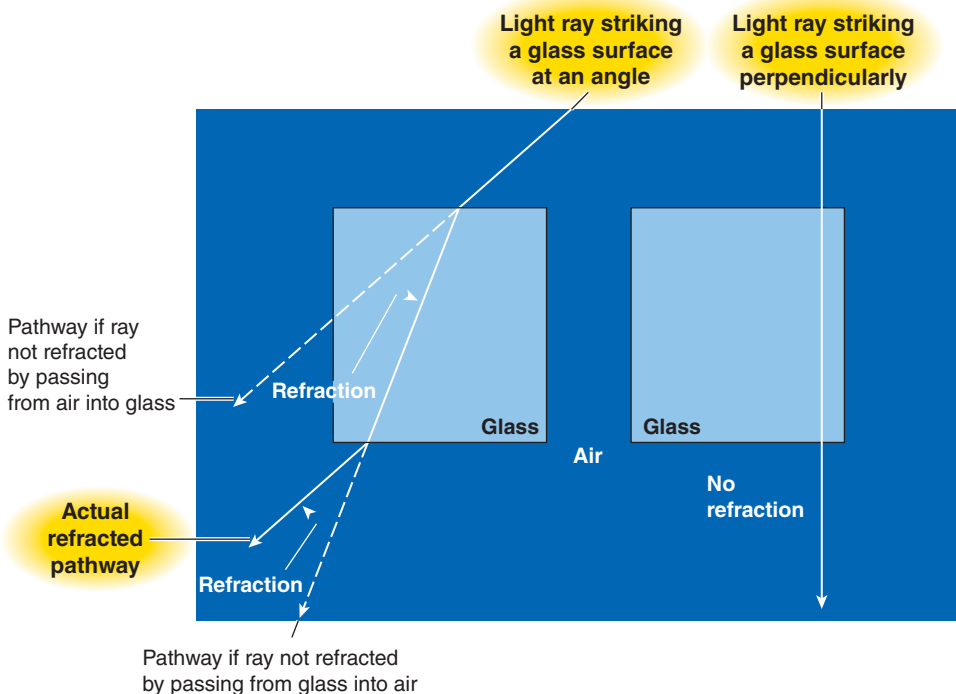
Light waves *diverge* (radiate outward) in all directions from every point of a light source. The forward movement of a light wave in a particular direction is known as a **light ray**. Divergent light rays reaching the eye must be bent inward to be focused

back into a point (the **focal point**) on the light-sensitive retina and provide an accurate image of the light source (● Figure 6-8).

**PROCESS OF REFRACTION** Light travels faster through air than through other transparent media such as water and glass. When a light ray enters a medium of greater density, it is slowed down (the converse is also true). The course of direction of the ray changes if it strikes the surface of the new medium at any angle other than perpendicular (● Figure 6-9). The bending of a light ray is known as **refraction**. With a curved surface such as a lens, the greater the curvature, the greater is the degree of bending and the stronger the lens. When a light ray strikes the curved surface of any object of greater density, the direction of refraction depends on the angle of the curvature (● Figure 6-10). A **convex surface** curves outward (like the outer surface

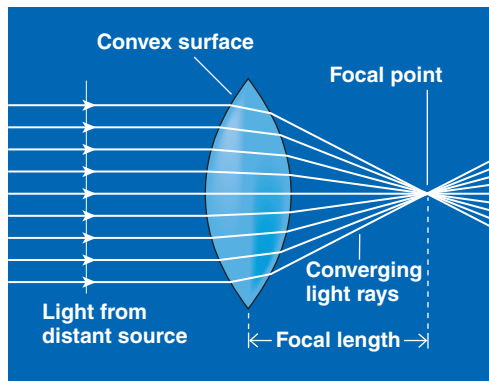


● **FIGURE 6-8** Focusing of diverging light rays. Diverging light rays must be bent inward to be focused.

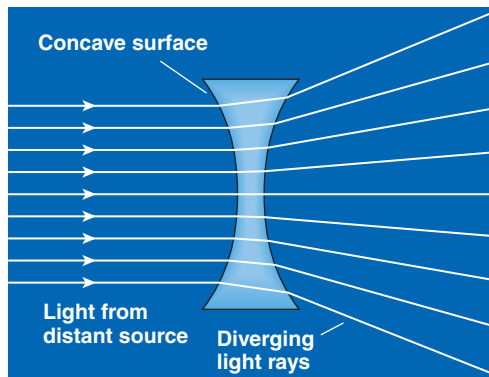


Bill Beatty/Visuals Unlimited

● **FIGURE 6-9** Refraction. A light ray is bent (refracted) when it strikes the surface of a medium of different density from the one in which it had been traveling (for example, moving from air into glass) at any angle other than perpendicular to the new medium's surface. Thus, the pencil in the glass of water appears to bend. What is happening, though, is that the light rays coming to the camera (or your eyes) are bent as they pass through the water, then the glass, and then the air. Consequently, the pencil appears distorted.



(a) Convex lens



(b) Concave lens

● **FIGURE 6-10 Refraction by convex and concave lenses.** (a) A lens with a convex surface converges the rays (brings them closer together). (b) A lens with a concave surface diverges the rays (spreads them farther apart).

of a ball), whereas a **concave surface** curves inward (like a cave). Convex surfaces converge light rays, bringing them closer together. Because convergence is essential for bringing an image to a focal point, refractive surfaces of the eye are convex. Concave surfaces diverge light rays (spread them farther apart). A concave lens is useful for correcting certain refractive errors of the eye, such as nearsightedness.

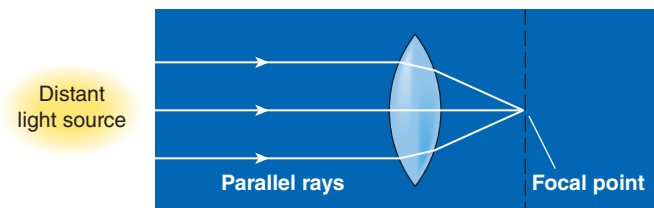
**THE EYE'S REFRACTIVE STRUCTURES** The two structures most important in the eye's refractive ability are the *cornea* and the *lens*. The curved corneal surface, the first structure light passes through as it enters the eye, contributes most extensively to the eye's total refractive ability because the difference in density at the air–cornea interface is greater than the differences in density between the lens and the fluids surrounding it. In **astigmatism**, the curvature of the cornea is uneven, so light rays are unequally refracted. The refractive ability of a person's cornea remains constant, because the curvature of the cornea never changes. In contrast, the refractive ability of the lens can be adjusted by changing its curvature as needed for near or far vision.

Rays from light sources more than 20 feet away are considered parallel by the time they reach the eye. Light rays originating from near objects are still diverging when they reach the eye. For a given refractive ability of the eye, the diverging rays of a near source come to a focal point a greater distance behind the lens

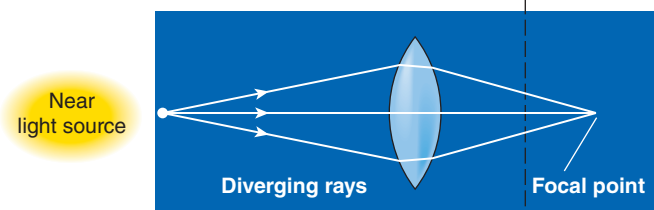
than the parallel rays of a far source come to a focal point (● Figure 6-11a and b). However, in a particular eye, the distance between the lens and the retina always remains the same. Therefore, a greater distance beyond the lens is not available for bringing near objects into focus. Yet for clear vision, the refractive structures of the eye must bring both near and far light sources into focus on the retina. If an image is focused before it reaches the retina or is not yet focused when it reaches the retina, it will be blurred (● Figure 6-12). To bring both near and far light sources into focus on the retina (that is, in the same distance), a stronger lens must be used for the near source (● Figure 6-11c). Let us see how the strength of the lens can be adjusted as needed.

### Accommodation increases the strength of the lens for near vision.

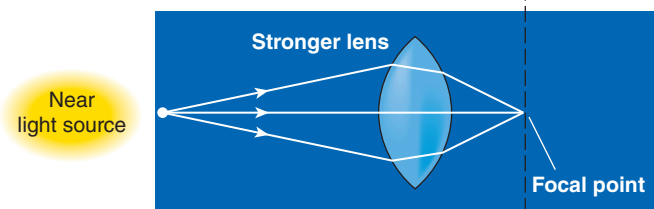
The ability to adjust the strength of the lens is known as **accommodation**. The strength of the lens depends on its shape, which in turn is regulated by the ciliary muscle. The **ciliary muscle** is part of the ciliary body, an anterior specialization of the choroid layer. The ciliary body has two major components: the ciliary



(a) Parallel rays of distant light source



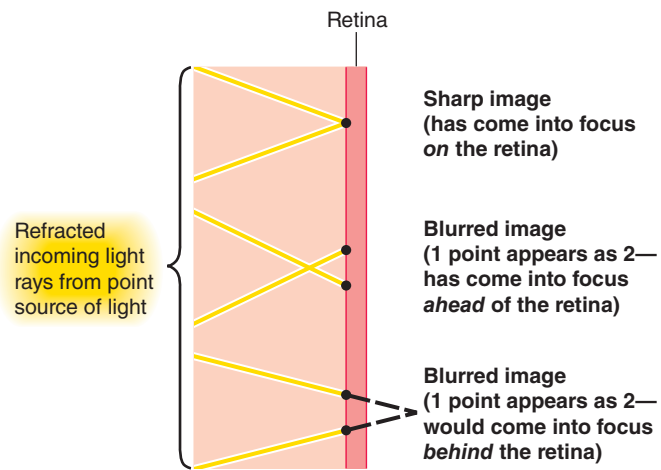
(b) Diverging rays of near light source



(c) Stronger lens needed to focus near light source

● **FIGURE 6-11 Focusing of distant and near sources of light.**

(a) The rays from a distant (far) light source (more than 20 feet from the eye) are parallel by the time the rays reach the eye. (b) The rays from a near light source (less than 20 feet from the eye) are still diverging when they reach the eye. A lens of a given strength takes a longer distance to bend the diverging rays from a near light source into focus than to bend the parallel rays from a distant light source into focus. (c) To focus both distant and near light sources in the same distance (the distance between the lens and the retina), a stronger lens must be used for the near source.



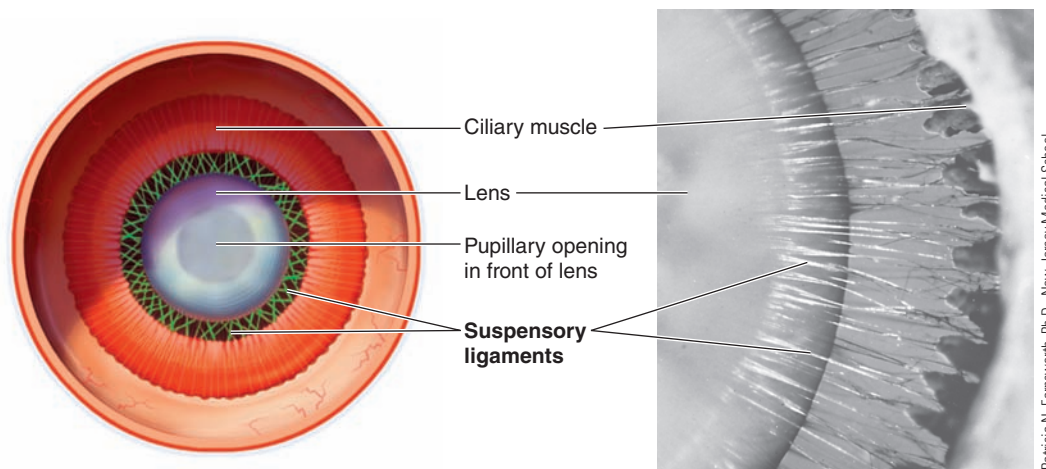
**KEY**

● = Points of stimulation of the retina

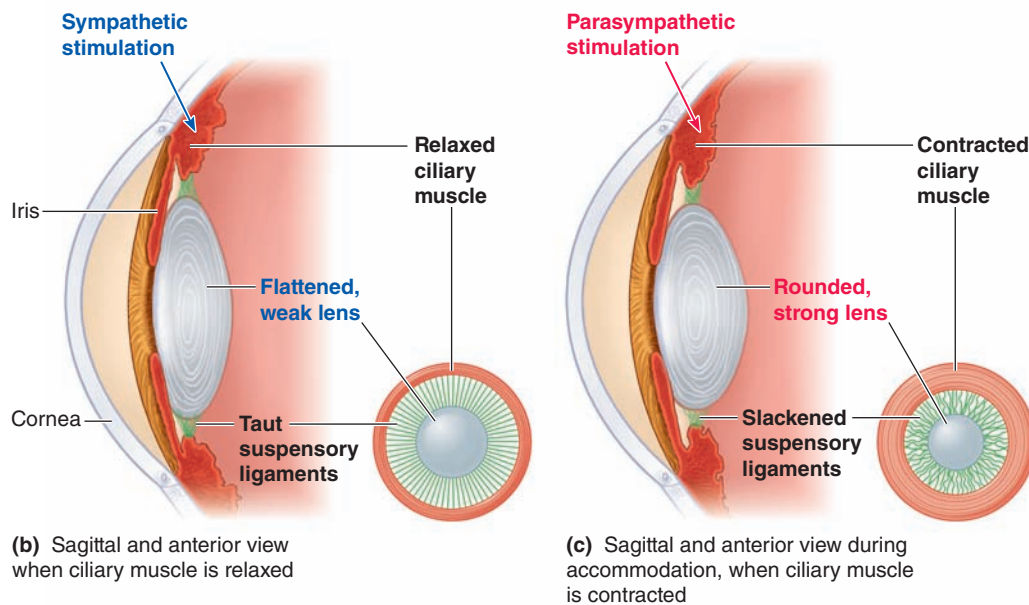
● **FIGURE 6-12** Comparison of images that do and do not come into focus on the retina.

muscle and the capillary network that produces the aqueous humor (see ● Figure 6-6). The ciliary muscle is a circular ring of smooth muscle attached to the lens by **suspensory ligaments** (● Figure 6-13a).

When the ciliary muscle is relaxed, the suspensory ligaments are taut, and they pull the lens into a flattened, weakly refractive shape (● Figure 6-13b). As the muscle contracts, its circumference decreases, slackening the tension in the suspensory ligaments (● Figure 6-13c). When the suspensory ligaments are not pulling on the lens, it becomes more spherical because of its inherent elasticity. The greater curvature of the more rounded lens increases its strength, further bending light rays. In the normal eye, the ciliary muscle is relaxed and the lens is flat for far vision but the muscle contracts to let the lens become more convex and stronger for near vision. The ciliary muscle is controlled by the autonomic nervous system, with sympathetic stimulation causing its relaxation and parasympathetic stimulation causing its contraction.



(a) Anterior view of suspensory ligaments extending from ciliary muscles to lens



● **FIGURE 6-13** Mechanism of accommodation. (a) Suspensory ligaments extend from the ciliary muscle to the outer edge of the lens. (b) When the ciliary muscle is relaxed, the suspensory ligaments are taut, putting tension on the lens so that it is flat and weak. (c) When the ciliary muscle is contracted, the suspensory ligaments become slack, reducing the tension on the lens and allowing it to assume a stronger, rounder shape because of its elasticity.





The lens is made up of about 1000 layers of cells that destroy their nucleus and organelles during development so that the cells are perfectly transparent.

Lacking DNA and protein-synthesizing machinery, mature lens cells cannot regenerate or repair themselves. Cells in the center of the lens are in double jeopardy. Not only are they oldest, but they also are farthest from the aqueous humor, the lens's nutrient source. With advancing age, these nonrenewable central cells die and become stiff. With loss of elasticity, the lens can no longer assume the spherical shape required to accommodate for near vision. This age-related reduction in accommodative ability, **presbyopia**, affects most people by middle age (45 to 50 years), requiring them to resort to corrective lenses for near vision (reading).

The normally transparent elastic fibers in the lens occasionally become opaque so that light rays cannot pass through, a condition known as a **cataract**. The defective lens can be surgically removed and vision can be restored by an implanted artificial lens or by compensating eyeglasses.

Other common vision disorders are *nearsightedness* (*myopia*) and *farsightedness* (*hyperopia*). In a normal eye (**emmetropia**) (● Figure 6-14a), a far light source is focused on the retina without accommodation, whereas the strength of the lens is increased by accommodation to bring a near source into focus. In **myopia** (● Figure 6-14b, part 1), because the eyeball is too long or the lens is too strong, a near light source is brought into focus on the retina without accommodation (even though accommodation is normally used for near vision), whereas a far light source is focused in front of the retina and is blurry. Thus, a myopic individual has better near vision than far vision, a condition that can be corrected by a concave lens (● Figure 6-14b, part 2). With **hyperopia** (● Figure 6-14c, part 1), either the eyeball is too short or the lens is too weak. Far objects are focused on the retina only with accommodation, whereas near objects are focused behind the retina even with accommodation and, accordingly, are blurry. Thus, a hyperopic individual has better far vision than near vision, a condition that can be corrected by a convex lens (● Figure 6-14c, part 2). Instead of using corrective eyeglasses or contact lenses, many people are now opting to compensate for refractive errors with laser eye surgery (such as LASIK) to permanently change the shape of the cornea.

### Light must pass through several retinal layers before reaching the photoreceptors.

The major function of the eye is to focus light rays from the environment on the rods and cones, the photoreceptor cells of the retina. The photoreceptors then transform the light energy into electrical signals for transmission to the CNS.

The receptor-containing portion of the retina is actually an anatomic extension of the CNS, not a separate peripheral organ. During embryonic development, the retinal cells “back out” of the nervous system, so the retinal layers, surprisingly, are facing backward! The neural portion of the retina consists of three layers of excitable cells (● Figure 6-15): (1) the outermost layer (closest to the choroid) containing the **rods** and **cones**, whose

light-sensitive ends face the choroid (away from the incoming light); (2) a middle layer of **bipolar cells** and associated interneurons; and (3) an inner layer of **ganglion cells**. Axons of the ganglion cells join to form the **optic nerve**, which leaves the retina slightly off center. The point on the retina at which the optic nerve leaves and through which blood vessels pass is the **optic disc** (see ● Figure 6-5b). This region is often called the **blind spot**; no image can be detected in this area because it has no rods and cones (● Figure 6-16). We are normally not aware of the blind spot, because central processing somehow “fills in” the missing spot. You can discover the existence of your own blind spot by a simple demonstration (● Figure 6-17).

Light must pass through the ganglion and bipolar layers before reaching the photoreceptors in all areas of the retina except the fovea. In the **fovea**, which is a pinhead-sized depression located in the exact center of the retina (see ● Figure 6-5b), the bipolar and ganglion cell layers are pulled aside so that light strikes the photoreceptors directly. Because of this feature, and because only cones (which have greater acuity or discriminative ability than the rods) are found here, the fovea is the point of most distinct vision. Thus, we turn our eyes so that the image of the object at which we are looking is focused on the fovea. The area immediately surrounding the fovea, the **macula lutea**, also has a high concentration of cones and fairly high acuity (see ● Figure 6-16). Macular acuity, however, is less than that of the fovea because of the overlying ganglion and bipolar cells in the macula.



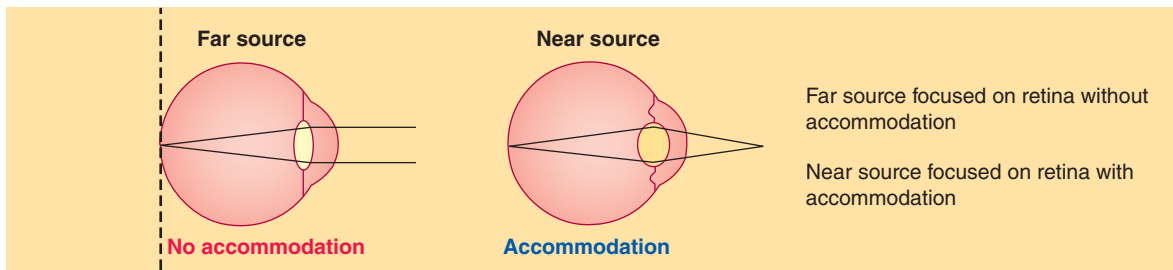
**Macular degeneration** is the leading cause of blindness in the Western Hemisphere. This condition is characterized by loss of photoreceptors in the macula lutea in association with advancing age. Its victims have “doughnut” vision. They suffer a loss in the middle of their visual field, which normally has the highest acuity, and are left with only the less distinct peripheral vision.

### Phototransduction by retinal cells converts light stimuli into neural signals.

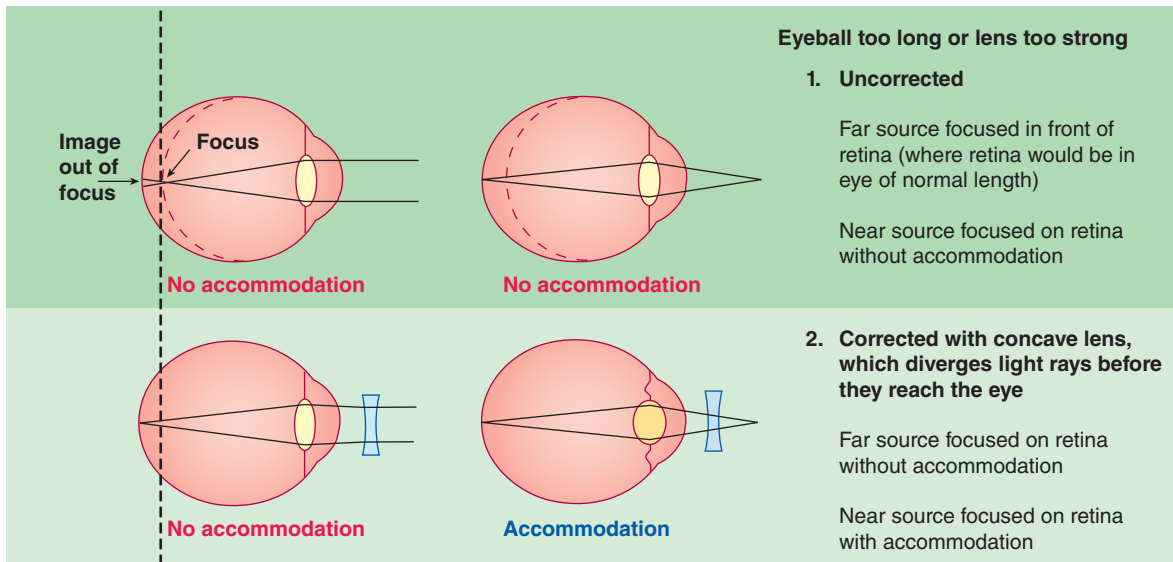
**Photoreceptors** (rod and cone cells) consist of three parts (● Figure 6-18a):

1. An *outer segment*, which lies closest to the eye's exterior, facing the choroid. It detects the light stimulus.
2. An *inner segment*, which lies in the middle of the photoreceptor's length. It contains the metabolic machinery of the cell.
3. A *synaptic terminal*, which lies closest to the eye's interior, facing the bipolar cells. It varies its rate of neurotransmitter release, depending on the extent of dark or light exposure detected by the outer segment.

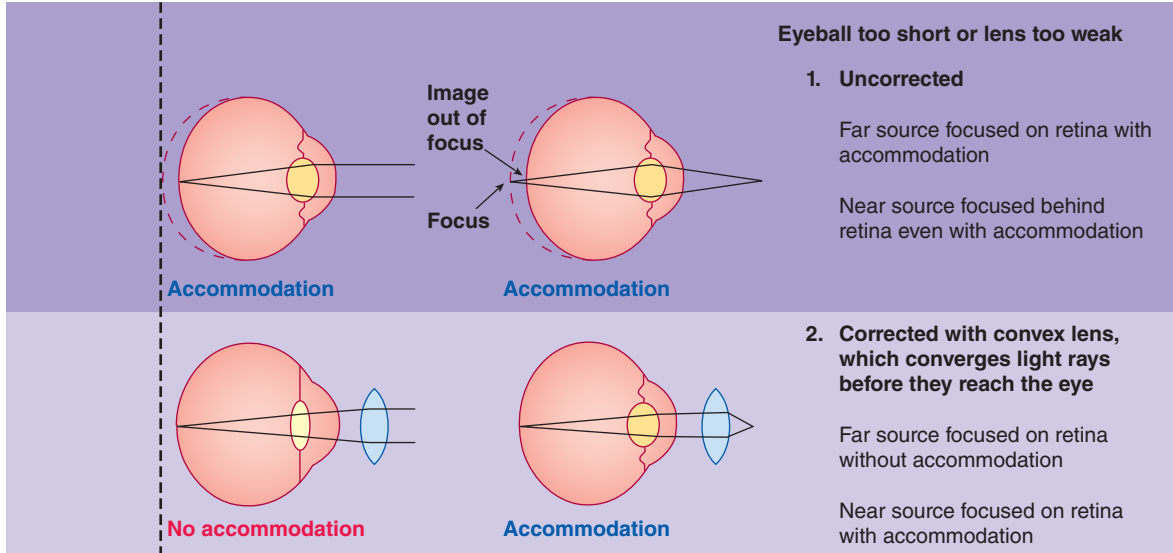
The outer segment, which is rod shaped in rods and cone shaped in cones (● Figure 6-18a and c), consists of stacked, flattened, membranous discs containing an abundance of light-sensitive **photopigments**. Each retina contains more than 125 million photoreceptors, and more than 1 billion photopigments may be packed into the outer segment of each photoreceptor.



(a) Normal eye (Emmetropia)

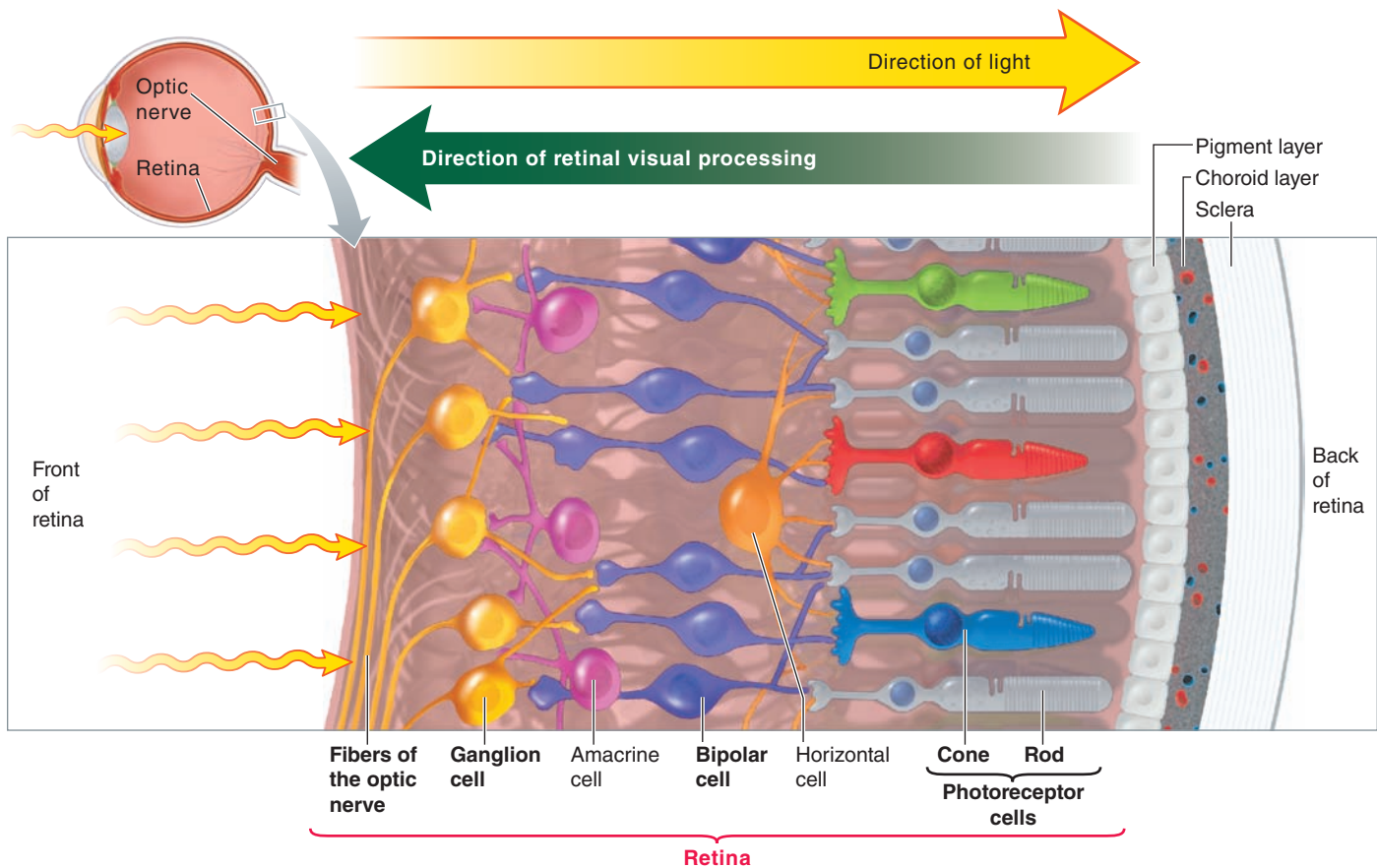


(b) Nearsightedness (Myopia)

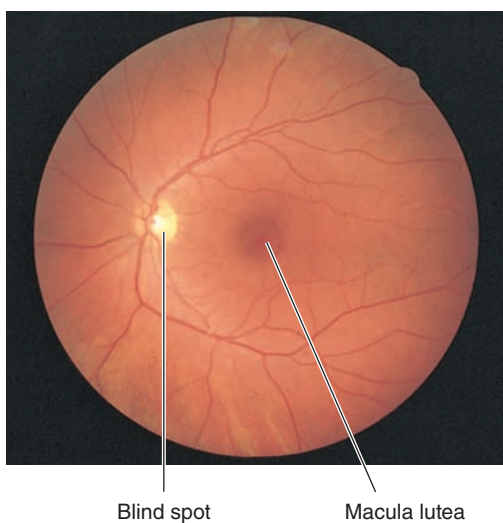


(c) Farsightedness (Hyperopia)

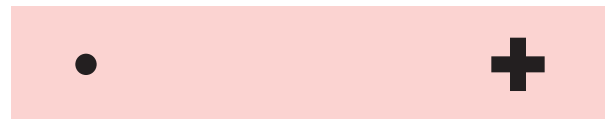
● **FIGURE 6-14 Emmetropia, myopia, and hyperopia.** This figure compares far vision and near vision (a) in the normal eye with (b) nearsightedness and (c) farsightedness in both their (1) uncorrected and (2) corrected states. The vertical dashed line represents the normal distance of the retina from the cornea, that is, the site at which an image is brought into focus by the refractive structures in a normal eye.



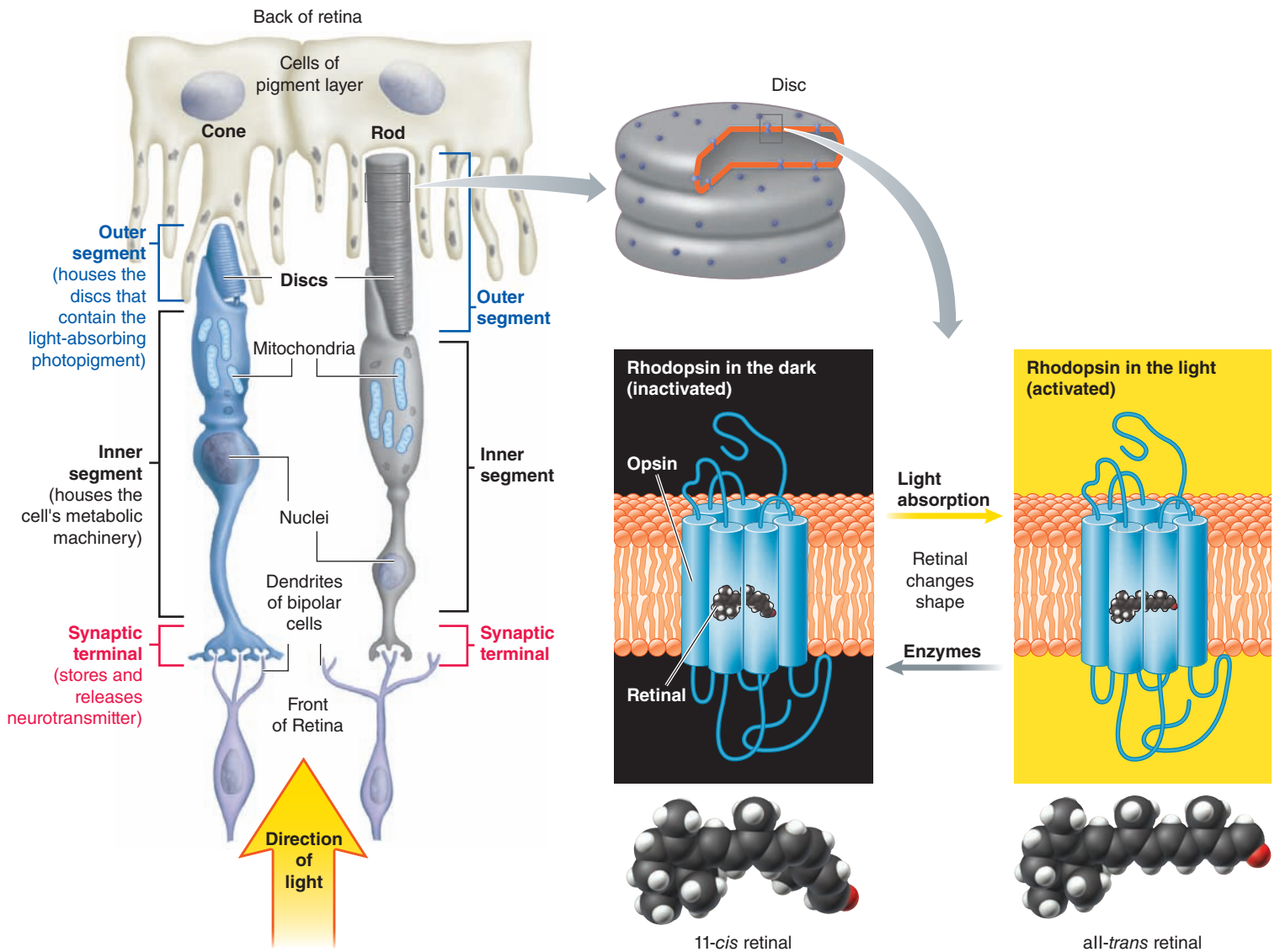
● **FIGURE 6-15 Retinal layers.** The retinal visual pathway extends from the photoreceptor cells (rods and cones, whose light-sensitive ends face the choroid away from the incoming light) to the bipolar cells to the ganglion cells. The horizontal and amacrine cells act locally for retinal processing of visual input.



● **FIGURE 6-16 View of the retina seen through an ophthalmoscope.** With an ophthalmoscope, a lighted viewing instrument, it is possible to view the optic disc (blind spot) and macula lutea within the retina at the rear of the eye.

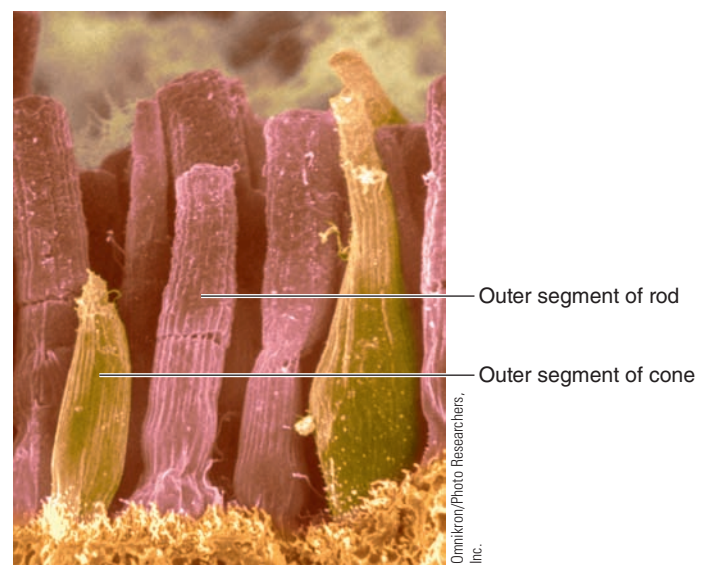


● **FIGURE 6-17 Demonstration of the blind spot.** Find the blind spot in your left eye by closing your right eye and holding the book about 4 in. from your face. While focusing on the cross, gradually move the book away from you until the circle vanishes from view. At this time, the image of the circle is striking the blind spot of your left eye. You can similarly locate the blind spot in your right eye by closing your left eye and focusing on the circle. The cross will disappear when its image strikes the blind spot of your right eye.



(a) Structure of rods and cones

(b) Photopigment rhodopsin in the dark and light



(c) Outer segments of rods and cones

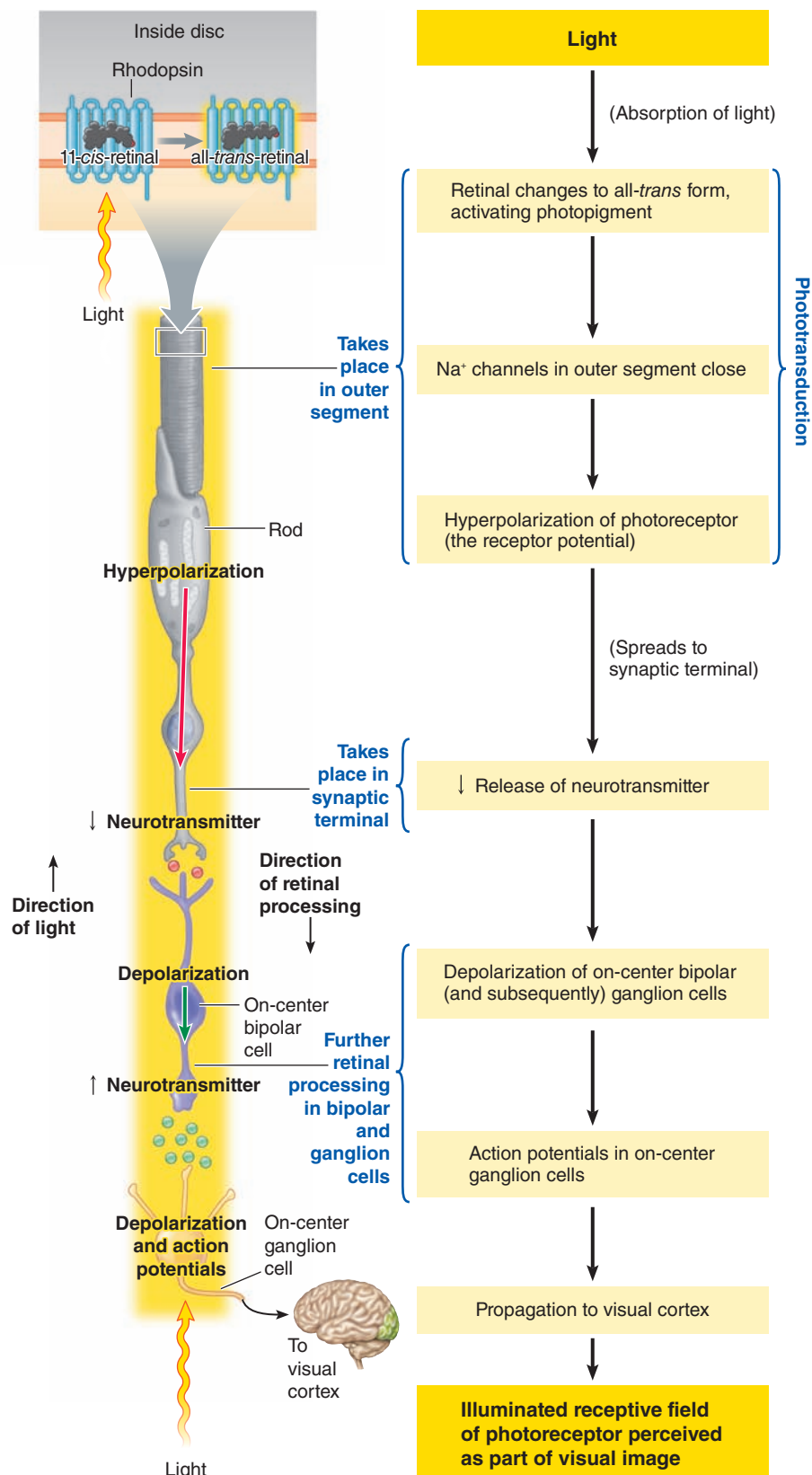
● **FIGURE 6-18 Photoreceptors.** (a) The three parts of the rods and cones, the eye's photoreceptors. Note in the outer segment of the rod and cone the stacked, flattened, membranous discs, which contain an abundance of photopigments. (b) A photopigment, such as rhodopsin, depicted here and found in rods, consists of opsin, a plasma-membrane protein, and retinal, a vitamin A derivative. In the dark, 11-*cis* retinal is bound within the interior of opsin and the photopigment is inactive. In the light, retinal changes to all-*trans* retinal, activating the photopigment. (c) Scanning electron micrograph of the outer segments of rods and cones. Note the rod shape in rods and the cone shape in cones.

Photopigments undergo chemical alterations when activated by light. Through a series of steps, this light-induced change and the subsequent activation of the photopigment bring about a receptor potential in the photoreceptor that ultimately leads to the generation of action potentials in ganglion cells, which transmit this information to the brain for visual processing.

A photopigment consists of two components: **opsin**, a protein in the disc plasma membrane, and **retinal**, a derivative of vitamin A. Retinal is the light-absorbing part of the photopigment. **Phototransduction**, the process of converting light stimuli into electrical signals, is basically the same for all photoreceptors. We use rods as an example, but the same events take place in cones, except that they preferentially absorb light in different parts of the visible spectrum.

The photopigment in rods is **rhodopsin**. Retinal exists in different conformations in the dark and light. In the dark, it exists as 11-*cis* retinal (● Figure 6-18b). When 11-*cis* retinal absorbs light, it changes to the all-*trans* retinal conformation. This change in retinal's shape activates rhodopsin. In an unusual twist, the Na<sup>+</sup> channels of a photoreceptor are open in the absence of stimulation, that is, in the dark. The resultant passive inward Na<sup>+</sup> leak, the so-called *dark current*, depolarizes the photoreceptor. The depolarized photoreceptor releases neurotransmitter in the dark. Activation of rhodopsin on light exposure leads to closure of the Na<sup>+</sup> channels, stopping the depolarizing Na<sup>+</sup> leak and thereby causing hyperpolarization—an unusual receptor potential—in the outer segment (● Figure 6-19). Thus, photoreceptors are *inhibited by their adequate stimulus* (hyperpolarized by light) and *excited in the absence of stimulation* (depolarized by darkness). The receptor potential, which is graded in accordance with the light intensity, passively spreads to the synaptic terminal, where the potential change decreases the release of neurotransmitter from the photoreceptor.

Photoreceptors synapse with bipolar cells, the next layer of excitable cells in the retina. The membrane potential of bipolar cells is influenced by the neurotransmitter released from the photoreceptors. Bipolar cells, similar to photoreceptors, display graded potentials. Some



● **FIGURE 6-19** Phototransduction, further retinal processing, and initiation of action potentials in the visual pathway. Events occurring in the retina and visual pathway in response to a light stimulus.

types of bipolar cells (*on-center cells* excited by light in the center of their receptive field) are “turned on” or depolarized by this reduction in neurotransmitter. (Other bipolar cells, the *off-center cells*, are excited by light in the periphery of their receptive field, adding to the complexity of retinal visual processing.) When on-center bipolar cells depolarize, they increase their neurotransmitter release at the ganglion cells. If ganglion cells are brought to threshold by bipolar cell activity, they undergo action potentials. Thus, action potentials do not originate until the ganglion cells, the first neurons in the chain that must propagate the visual message over a long distance to the brain. Neural messages sent to the visual cortex by the ganglion cells depend on the pattern of light striking the photoreceptors to which they are “wired” via the intervening bipolar cells. As the firing rates of the different ganglion cells change in response to the changing pattern of illumination on the retina, as detected by the photoreceptors, the brain is informed about the rapidity and extent of change in contrast within the visual image.

After the light signal has been passed on to the bipolar cells, the short-lived active form of the photopigment quickly dissociates into opsin and retinal. The retinal is converted back into its *11-cis* form. In the dark, enzyme-mediated mechanisms rejoin opsin and this recycled retinal to restore the photopigment to its original inactive conformation (see ● Figure 6-18b).

### Rods provide indistinct gray vision at night, whereas cones provide sharp color vision during the day.

The retina contains 20 times more rods than cones (120 million rods compared to 6 million cones per eye). Cones are most abundant in the macula lutea in the center of the retina. From this point outward, the concentration of cones decreases and the concentration of rods increases. Rods are most abundant in the periphery. We have examined the similar way in which phototransduction takes place in rods and cones. Now we focus on the differences between these photoreceptors (▲ Table 6-2).

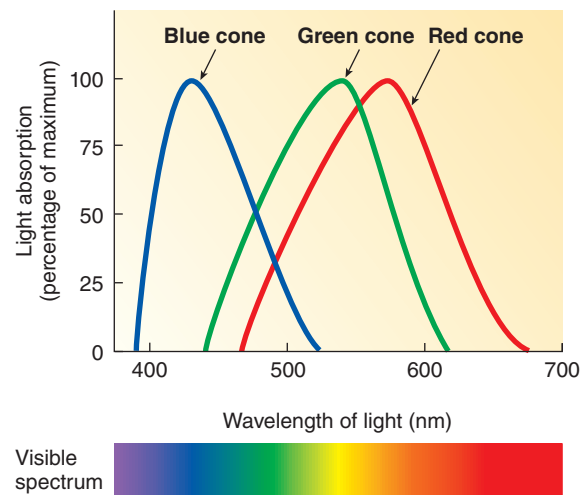
Rods have high sensitivity, so they can respond to the dim light of night. Cones, by contrast, have lower sensitivity to light, being activated only by bright daylight. Thus, rods are specialized for night vision and cones for day vision.

The pathways by which cones are “wired” to the other retinal neuronal layers confer high acuity (sharpness, or the ability to distinguish between two nearby points). Thus, cones provide sharp vision with high resolution for fine detail during the day. By contrast, the wiring pathways of rods provide low acuity, so you can see at night with your rods but at the expense of distinctness.

Cones provide color vision; rods provide vision in shades of gray. There are four photopigments, one in the rods and one in each of three types of cones—**blue**, **green**, and **red cones**. Each of the four photopigments absorbs different wavelengths of light in the visible spectrum to varying degrees. Rods absorb all visible wavelengths to some degree. Each type of cone absorbs light best in a particular color range, namely, blue, green, or red (● Figure 6-20). Because the photopigments in the three types of cones each respond selectively to a different part of the visible light spectrum, the brain can compare the responses of the three cone types, making color vision in daylight possible. In contrast, the

## ▲ Table 6-2 Properties of Rod Vision and Cone Vision

Rods	Cones
120 million per retina	6 million per retina
More numerous in the periphery	Concentrated in the fovea
High sensitivity	Low sensitivity
Night vision	Day vision
Low acuity	High acuity
Vision in shades of gray	Color vision



● FIGURE 6-20 Sensitivity of the three types of cones to different wavelengths.

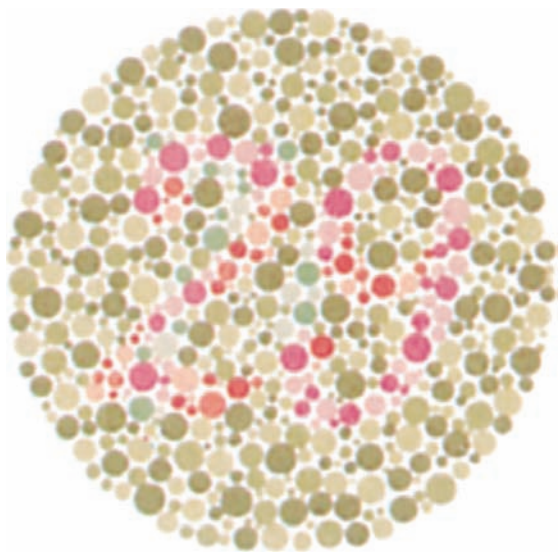
brain cannot discriminate among various wavelengths when using visual input from the rods. The rhodopsin in every rod responds in the same way to a given wavelength, so no comparison among rod inputs is possible. Therefore, rods provide vision at night only in shades of gray by detecting different intensities, not different colors. We now examine color vision in further detail.

### Color vision depends on the ratios of stimulation of the three cone types.

Vision depends on stimulation of photoreceptors by light. Certain objects in the environment, such as the sun, fire, and lightbulbs, emit light. But how do you see objects such as chairs, trees, and people, which do not emit light? The pigments in various objects selectively absorb particular wavelengths of light transmitted to them from light-emitting sources, and the unabsorbed wavelengths are reflected from the objects’ surfaces. These reflected light rays enable you to see the objects. An object perceived as blue absorbs the longer red and green wavelengths of light and reflects the shorter blue wavelengths, which can be absorbed by the photopigment in the eyes’ blue cones, thereby activating them.

Each cone type is most effectively activated by a particular wavelength of light in the range of color indicated by its name. However, cones also respond in varying degrees to other wavelengths (● Figure 6-20). **Color vision**, the perception of the many colors of the world, depends on the three cone types' various *ratios of stimulation* in response to different wavelengths. A wavelength perceived as blue does not stimulate red or green cones but excites blue cones maximally. (The percentage of maximal stimulation for red, green, and blue cones, respectively, is 0:0:100.) The sensation of yellow, in comparison, arises from a stimulation ratio of 83:83:0; that is, red and green cones are each stimulated 83% of maximum, while blue cones are not excited. The ratio for green is 31:67:36, and so on, with various combinations giving rise to the sensation of all the different colors. White is a mixture of all wavelengths of light, whereas black is the absence of light.

The extent to which each of the cone types is excited is coded and transmitted in separate parallel pathways to the brain. A distinct color vision center in the primary visual cortex in the occipital lobe of the brain (see ● Figure 5-8, p. 117) combines and processes these inputs to generate the perception of color, taking into consideration the object in comparison with its background. The concept of color is therefore in the mind of the beholder. Most of us agree on what color we see because we have the same types of cones and use similar neural pathways for comparing their output. Occasionally, however, individuals lack a particular cone type, so their color vision is a product of the differential sensitivity of only two types of cones, a condition known as **color blindness**. Not only do color-defective individuals perceive certain colors differently, but they are also unable to distinguish as many varieties of colors (● Figure 6-21). For example, people with certain color defects cannot distinguish between red and green. At a traffic light, they can tell which light is “on” by its intensity, but they must rely on the position of the bright light to know whether to stop or go.



● **FIGURE 6-21** Color blindness chart. People with red–green color blindness cannot detect the number 29 in this chart.

### The sensitivity of the eyes can vary markedly through dark and light adaptation.

The eyes' sensitivity to light depends on the amount of light-responsive photopigment present in the rods and cones. When you go from bright sunlight into darkened surroundings, you cannot see anything at first, but gradually you begin to distinguish objects as a result of the process of **dark adaptation**. Breakdown of photopigments during exposure to sunlight tremendously decreases photoreceptor sensitivity. In the dark, the photopigments broken down during light exposure are gradually regenerated. As a result, the sensitivity of your eyes gradually increases so that you begin to see in the darkened surroundings. However, only the highly sensitive, rejuvenated rods are “turned on” by the dim light.

Conversely, when you move from the dark to the light (for example, leaving a movie theater and entering bright sunlight), at first your eyes are very sensitive to the dazzling light. With little contrast between lighter and darker parts, the entire image appears bleached. As some of the photopigments are rapidly broken down by the intense light, the sensitivity of the eyes decreases and normal contrasts can again be detected, a process known as **light adaptation**. The rods are so sensitive to light that enough rhodopsin is broken down in bright light to essentially “burn out” the rods; that is, after the rod photopigments have already been broken down by the bright light, they no longer can respond to the light. Therefore, only the less sensitive cones are used for day vision.

Our eyes' sensitivity can change as much as 1 million times as they adjust to various levels of illumination through dark and light adaptation. These adaptive measures are also enhanced by pupillary reflexes that adjust the amount of available light permitted to enter the eye.



Because retinal is a derivative of vitamin A, adequate amounts of this nutrient must be available for synthesis of photopigments. **Night blindness** occurs as a result of dietary deficiencies of vitamin A. Although photopigment concentrations in both rods and cones are reduced in this condition, there is still enough cone photopigment to respond to the intense stimulation of bright light, except in the most severe cases. However, even modest reductions in rhodopsin content can decrease the sensitivity of rods so much that they cannot respond to dim light. The person can see in the day using cones but cannot see at night because the rods are no longer functional. Thus, carrots are “good for your eyes” because they are rich in vitamin A.

### Visual information is separated before reaching the visual cortex.

The field of view that can be seen without moving the head is known as the **visual field**. Because of the pattern of wiring between the eyes and the visual cortex, the left half of the cortex receives information only from the right half of the visual field as detected by both eyes, and the right half receives input only from the left half of the visual field of both eyes.

As light enters the eyes, light rays from the left half of the visual field fall on the right half of the retina of both eyes (the

medial or inner half of the left retina and the lateral or outer half of the right retina) (● Figure 6-22a). Similarly, rays from the right half of the visual field reach the left half of each retina (the lateral half of the left retina and the medial half of the right retina). Each optic nerve exiting the retina carries information from both halves of the retina it serves. This information is separated as the optic nerves meet at the **optic chiasm** located underneath the hypothalamus (*chiasm* means “cross”) (see ● Figure 5-6b, p. 116). Within the optic chiasm, the fibers from the medial half of each retina cross to the opposite side, but those from the lateral half remain on the original side. The reorganized bundles of fibers leaving the optic chiasm are known as **optic tracts**. Each optic tract carries information from the lateral half of one retina and the medial half of the other retina. Therefore, this partial crossover brings together, from the two eyes, fibers that carry information from the same half of the visual field. Each optic tract, in turn, delivers to the half of the brain on its same side information about the opposite half of the visual field.



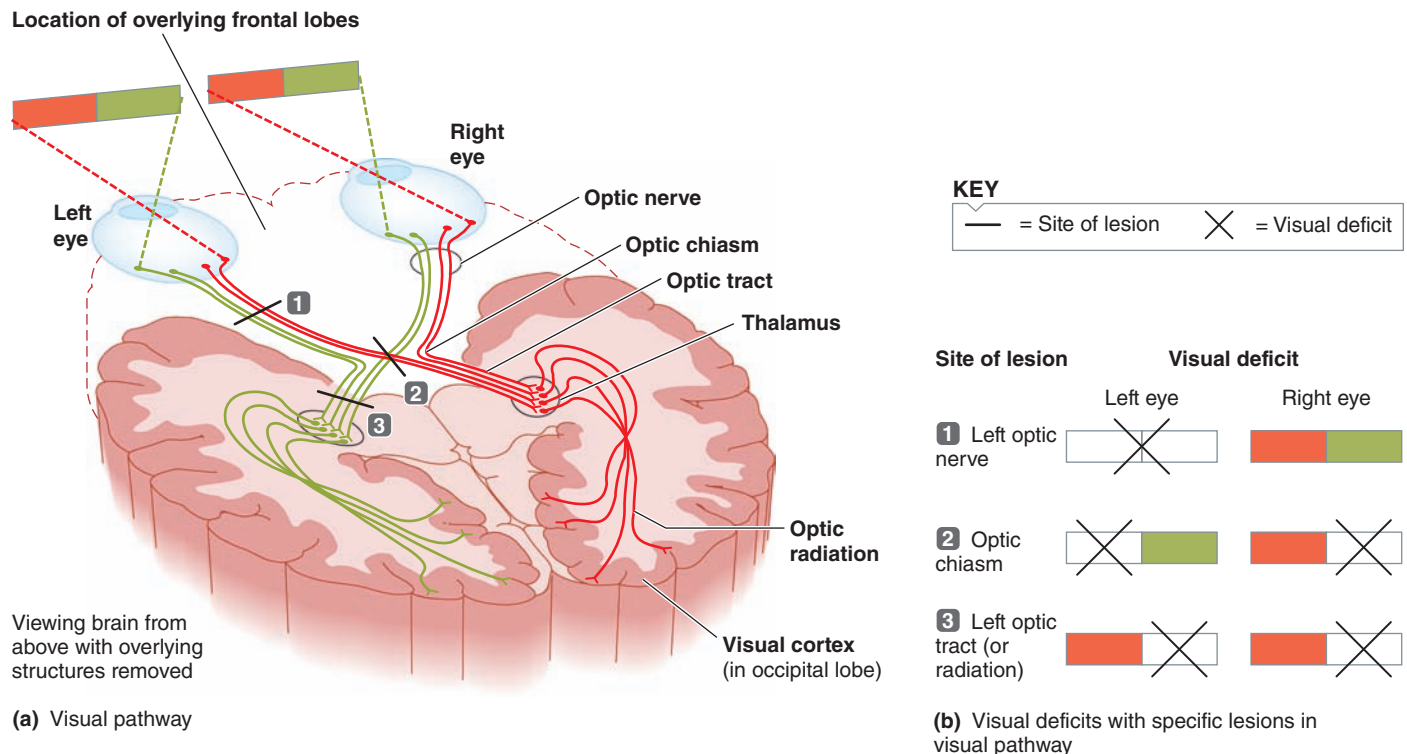
A knowledge of these pathways can facilitate diagnosis of visual defects arising from interruption of the visual pathway at various points (● Figure 6-22b).

Before we move on to how the brain processes visual information, take a look at ▲ Table 6-3, which summarizes the functions of the various components of the eyes.

### The thalamus and visual cortex elaborate the visual message.

The first stop in the brain for information in the visual pathway is the thalamus (● Figure 6-22a). It separates information received from the eyes and relays it via fiber bundles known as **optic radiations** to different zones in the visual cortex located in the occipital lobes (see Figure 5-8a, p. 117). Each zone processes different aspects of the visual stimulus (for example, form, movement, color, and depth). This sorting process is no small task, because each optic nerve contains more than a million fibers carrying information from the photoreceptors in one retina. This is more than all the afferent fibers carrying somatosensory input from all other regions of the body! Researchers estimate that hundreds of millions of neurons occupying about 40% of the cortex participate in visual processing, compared to 8% devoted to touch perception and 3% to hearing.

**DEPTH PERCEPTION** Although each half of the visual cortex receives information simultaneously from the same part of the visual field as received by both eyes, the messages from the two eyes are not identical. Each eye views an object from a slightly different vantage point, even though the overlap is tremendous. The overlapping area seen by both eyes at the same time is known as the **binocular** (“two-eyed”) field of vision, which is important for **depth perception**. The brain uses the slight dis-



● **FIGURE 6-22 The visual pathway and visual deficits associated with lesions in the pathway.** (a) Note that the left half of the visual cortex in the occipital lobe receives information from the right half of the visual field of both eyes (in green), and the right half of the cortex receives information from the left half of the visual field of both eyes (in red). (b) Each visual deficit illustrated is associated with a lesion at the corresponding numbered point of the visual pathway in part (a).



## ▲ Table 6-3 Functions of the Major Components of the Eye

Structure (in alphabetical order)	Location	Function
<b>Aqueous Humor</b>	Anterior cavity between the cornea and the lens	A clear, watery fluid that is continually formed and carries nutrients to the cornea and lens
<b>Bipolar Cells</b>	Middle layer of nerve cells in the retina	Important in retinal processing of a light stimulus
<b>Blind Spot</b>	Point slightly off-center on the retina where the optic nerve exits; lacks photoreceptors (also known as the <i>optic disc</i> )	Route for passage of the optic nerve and blood vessels
<b>Choroid</b>	Middle layer of the eye	Pigmented to prevent scattering of light rays in the eye; contains blood vessels that nourish the retina; anteriorly specialized to form the ciliary body and iris
<b>Ciliary Body</b>	Specialized anterior derivative of the choroid layer; forms a ring around the outer edge of the lens	Produces the aqueous humor and contains the ciliary muscle
<b>Ciliary Muscle</b>	Circular muscular component of the ciliary body; attached to the lens by means of suspensory ligaments	Important in accommodation
<b>Cones</b>	Photoreceptors in the outermost layer of the retina	Responsible for high acuity, color, and day vision
<b>Cornea</b>	Anterior, clear, outermost layer of the eye	Contributes most extensively to the eye's refractive ability
<b>Fovea</b>	Exact center of the retina	Region with the greatest acuity
<b>Ganglion Cells</b>	Inner layer of nerve cells in the retina	Important in retinal processing of a light stimulus; form the optic nerve
<b>Iris</b>	Visible pigmented ring of muscle within the aqueous humor	Varies the size of the pupil by variable contraction; responsible for eye color
<b>Lens</b>	Between the aqueous humor and the vitreous humor; attaches to the ciliary muscle by suspensory ligaments	Provides variable refractive ability during accommodation
<b>Macula Lutea</b>	Area immediately surrounding the fovea	Has high acuity because of the abundance of cones
<b>Optic Disc</b>	(See entry for <i>blind spot</i> )	
<b>Optic Nerve</b>	Leaves each eye at the optic disc (blind spot)	First part of the visual pathway to the brain
<b>Pupil</b>	Anterior round opening in the middle of the iris	Permits variable amounts of light to enter the eye
<b>Retina</b>	Innermost layer of the eye	Contains the photoreceptors (rods and cones)
<b>Rods</b>	Photoreceptors in the outermost layer of the retina	Responsible for high-sensitivity, black-and-white, and night vision
<b>Sclera</b>	Tough outer layer of the eye	Protective connective tissue coat; forms the visible white part of the eye; anteriorly specialized to form the cornea
<b>Suspensory Ligaments</b>	Suspended between the ciliary muscle and the lens	Important in accommodation
<b>Vitreous Humor</b>	Between the lens and the retina	Jellylike substance that helps maintain the spherical shape of the eye

parity in the information received from the two eyes to estimate distance, allowing you to perceive three-dimensional objects in spatial depth. Some depth perception is possible using only one eye, based on experience and comparison with other cues. For example, if your one-eyed view includes a car and a building and the car is larger, you correctly interpret that the car must be closer to you than the building is.

**HIERARCHY OF VISUAL CORTICAL PROCESSING** Within the cortex, visual information is first processed in the primary visual cortex and then is sent to surrounding higher-level visual areas for even more complex processing and abstraction. Each level of cortical visual neurons has increasingly greater capacity for abstraction of information built up from the increasing convergence of input from lower-level neurons. In this way, the cortex

transforms the dotlike pattern of photoreceptors stimulated to varying degrees by varying light intensities in the retinal image into information about position, orientation, movement, contour, and length. Other aspects of visual information, such as depth perception and color perception, are processed simultaneously. How and where the entire image is finally put together is still unresolved. Only when these separate bits of processed information are integrated by higher visual regions is a reassembled picture of the visual scene perceived. This is similar to the blobs of paint on an artist's palette versus the finished portrait; the separate pigments do not represent a portrait of a face until they are appropriately integrated on a canvas.

### Visual input goes to other areas of the brain not involved in vision perception.

Not all fibers in the visual pathway terminate in the visual cortex. Some are projected to other regions of the brain for purposes other than direct vision perception. Examples of nonsight activities dependent on input from the rods and cones include (1) contribution to cortical alertness and attention (for example, you get drowsy in a dimly lit room), (2) control of pupil size (for example, your pupils constrict in bright light), and (3) control of eye movements (for example, input from your photoreceptors is used to guide contraction of your external eye muscles to enable you to read this page). Each eye is equipped with a set of six **external eye muscles** that position and move the eye so that it can better locate, see, and track objects. Eye movements are among the fastest, most discretely controlled movements of the body.

About 3% of the eyes' ganglion cells are not involved in visual processing. Instead, they make **melanopsin**, a light-sensitive

pigment that plays a key role in setting the body's "biological clock" to march in step with the light-dark cycles (see p. 511).

We next shift our attention from the eyes to the ears.

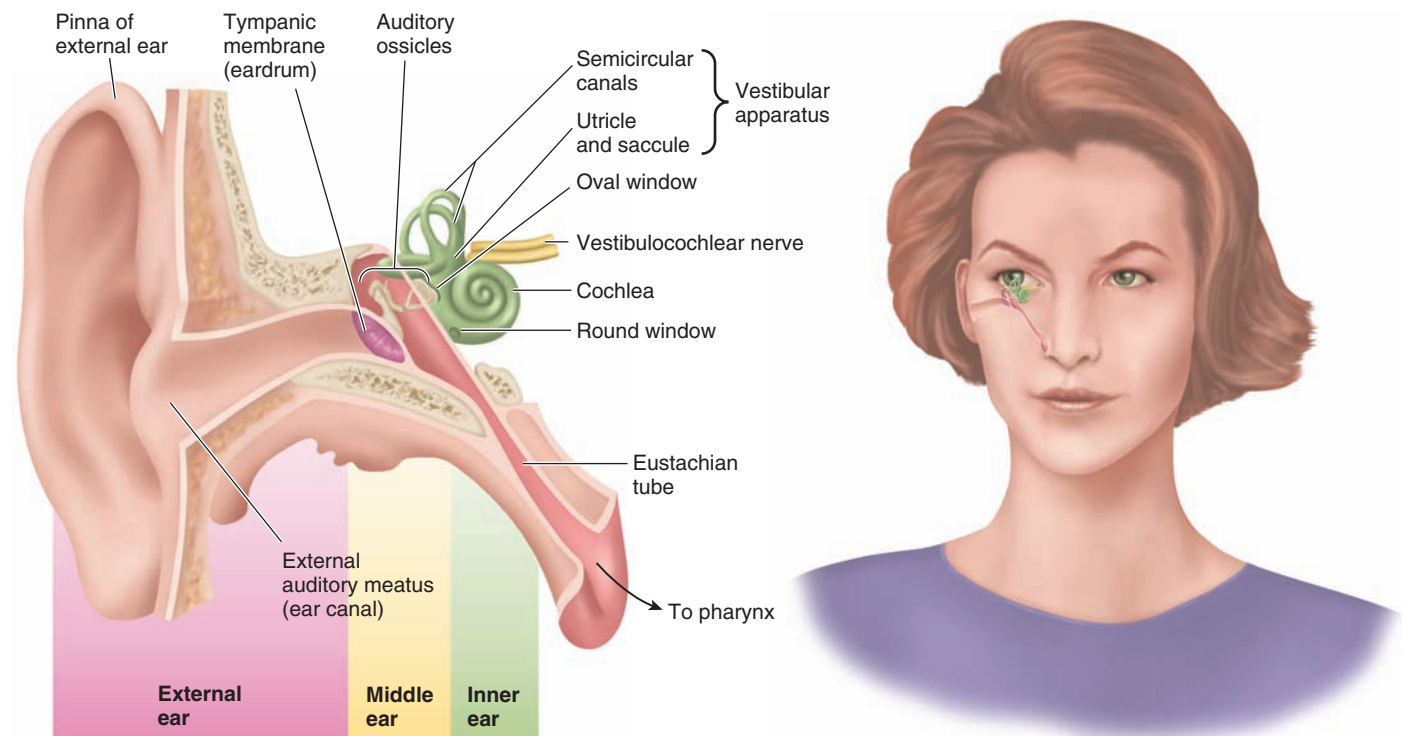
## Ear: Hearing and Equilibrium

Each **ear** consists of three parts: the *external*, the *middle*, and the *inner ear* (● Figure 6-23). The external and middle portions of the ear transmit airborne sound waves to the fluid-filled inner ear, amplifying sound energy in the process. The inner ear houses two sensory systems: the cochlea, which contains the receptors for conversion of sound waves into nerve impulses, making hearing possible, and the vestibular apparatus, which is necessary for the sense of equilibrium.

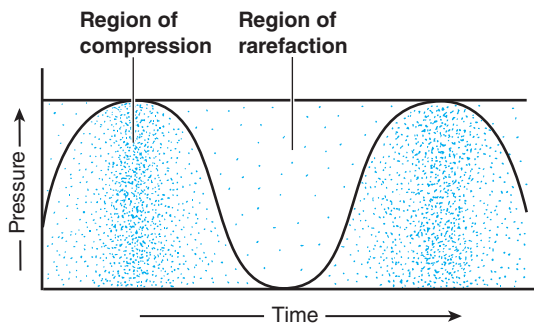
### Sound waves consist of alternate regions of compression and rarefaction of air molecules.

**Hearing** is the neural perception of sound energy. Hearing involves two aspects: the identification of the sounds (what) and their localization (where). We first examine the characteristics of sound waves and then explore how the ears and brain process sound input to accomplish hearing.

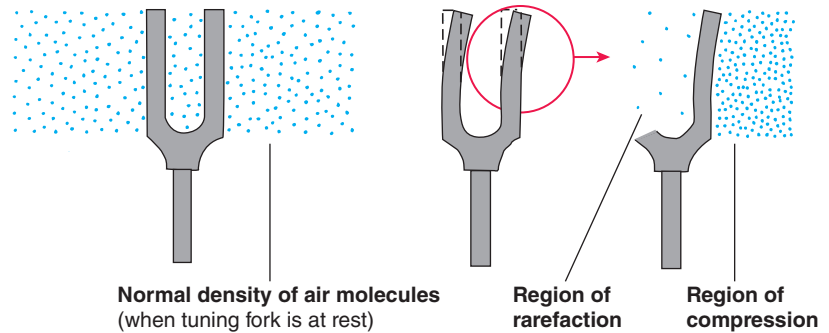
**Sound waves** are traveling vibrations of air. They consist of regions of high pressure, caused by compression of air molecules, alternating with regions of low pressure, caused by rarefaction of the molecules (● Figure 6-24a). Any device capable of producing such a disturbance pattern in air molecules is a source of sound. A simple example is a tuning fork. When a tuning fork is struck, its prongs vibrate. As a prong of the fork moves in one direction (● Figure 6-24b), air molecules ahead of it are pushed closer to-



● **FIGURE 6-23** Anatomy of the ear.

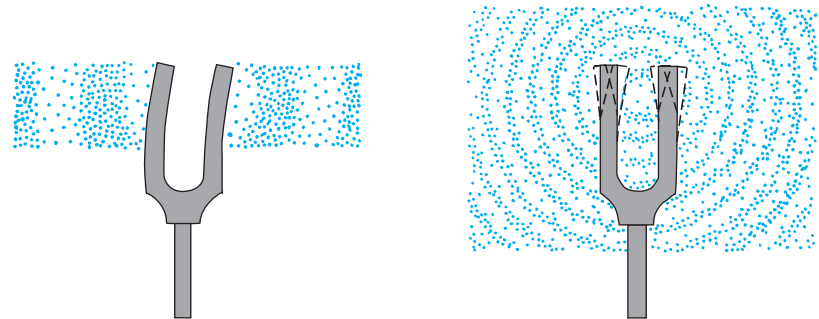


(a) Sound waves



(b) Tuning fork setting up sound waves

● **FIGURE 6-24 Formation of sound waves.** (a) Sound waves are alternating regions of compression and rarefaction of air molecules. (b) A vibrating tuning fork sets up sound waves, as the air molecules ahead of the advancing arm of the tuning fork are compressed while the molecules behind the arm are rarefied. (c) Disturbed air molecules bump into molecules beyond them, setting up new regions of air disturbance more distant from the original source of sound. In this way, sound waves travel progressively farther from the source, even though each air molecule travels only a short distance when it is disturbed. The sound wave dies out when the last region of air disturbance is too weak to disturb the region beyond it.



(c) Sound waves traveling from source

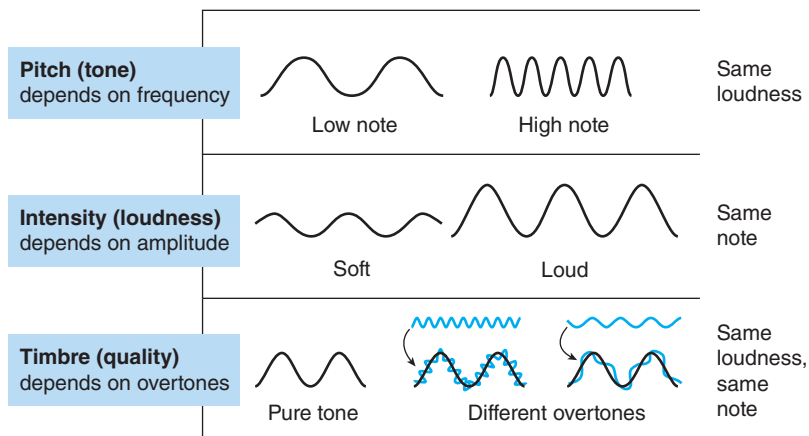
gether, or compressed, increasing the pressure in this area. Simultaneously, as the prong moves forward, the air molecules behind the prong spread out, or are rarefied, lowering the pressure in that region. As the prong moves in the opposite direction, an opposite wave of compression and rarefaction is created. Even though individual molecules are moved only short distances as the tuning fork vibrates, alternating waves of compression and rarefaction spread out considerable distances in a rippling fashion. Disturbed air molecules disturb other molecules in adjacent regions, setting up new regions of compression and rarefaction, and so on (● Figure 6-24c). Sound energy gradually dissipates as sound waves travel farther from the original sound source; it finally dies out when the last sound wave is too weak to disturb the air molecules around it. Sound waves can also travel through media other than air, such as water. They do so less efficiently, however;

greater pressure is needed to cause movements of fluid than movements of air.

Sound is characterized by its pitch (tone), intensity (loudness), and timbre (quality) (● Figure 6-25):

- The **pitch**, or **tone**, of a sound (for example, whether it is a C or a G note) is determined by the *frequency* of vibrations. The greater the frequency of vibration, the higher the pitch. Human ears can detect sound waves with frequencies from 20 to 20,000 cycles per second, or **hertz (Hz)**, but are most sensitive to frequencies between 1000 and 4000 Hz.

- The **intensity**, or **loudness**, of a sound depends on the *amplitude* of the sound waves, or the pressure differences between a high-pressure region of compression and a low-pressure region of rarefaction. Within the hearing range, the greater the amplitude, the louder the sound. Human ears can detect a wide range of sound intensities, from the slightest whisper to the painfully loud takeoff of a jet. Loudness is measured in **decibels (dB)**, which are a logarithmic measure of intensity compared with the faintest sound that can be heard—the **hearing threshold**. Because of the logarithmic relationship, every 10 dB indicates a 10-fold increase in loudness. A few examples of common sounds illustrate the magnitude of these increases (▲ Table 6-4). Note that the rustle of leaves at 10 dB is 10 times louder than hearing threshold but the sound of a jet taking off at 150 dB is 1 quadrillion (1 million billion) times, not 150 times, louder than the faintest audible sound. Sounds greater than 100 dB can permanently damage the sensitive sensory apparatus in the cochlea.



● **FIGURE 6-25 Properties of sound waves.**

▲ **Table 6-4** Relative Magnitude of Common Sounds

Sound	Loudness in decibels (dB)	Comparison to faintest audible sound (hearing threshold)
<b>Rustle of Leaves</b>	10 dB	10 times louder
<b>Ticking of Watch</b>	20 dB	100 times louder
<b>Whispering</b>	30 dB	1000 times louder
<b>Normal Conversation</b>	60 dB	1 million times louder
<b>Food Blender, Lawn Mower, or Hair Dryer</b>	90 dB	1 billion times louder
<b>Loud Rock Concert or Ambulance Siren</b>	120 dB	1 trillion times louder
<b>Takeoff of Jet</b>	150 dB	1 quadrillion times louder

■ The **timbre**, or **quality**, of a sound depends on its *overtones*, which are additional frequencies superimposed on the fundamental pitch or tone. A tuning fork has a pure tone, but most sounds lack purity. For example, complex mixtures of overtones impart different sounds to different instruments playing the same note (a C note on a trumpet sounds different from C on a piano). Overtones are likewise responsible for characteristic differences in voices. Timbre enables the listener to distinguish the source of sound waves, because each source produces a different pattern of overtones. Thanks to timbre, you can tell whether it is your mother or girlfriend calling on the telephone before you say the wrong thing.

### The external ear plays a role in sound localization.

The specialized receptor cells for sound are located in the fluid-filled inner ear. Airborne sound waves must therefore be channeled toward and transferred into the inner ear, compensating for the loss in sound energy that naturally occurs as sound waves pass from air into water. This function is performed by the external ear and the middle ear.

The **external ear** (see ● Figure 6-23) consists of the *pinna* (ear), *external auditory meatus* (ear canal), and *tympanic membrane* (eardrum). The **pinna**, a prominent skin-covered flap of cartilage, collects sound waves and channels them down the ear canal. The ear canal tunnels through the temporal bone from the exterior to the **tympanic membrane**, a thin membrane that separates the external ear and the middle ear.

Because of its shape, the pinna partially shields sound waves that approach the ear from the rear and thus helps a person distinguish whether a sound is coming from directly in front or behind. Sound localization for sounds approaching from the right or left depends on the sound wave reaching the ear closer to the sound source slightly before it arrives at the farther ear. The auditory cortex integrates all these cues to determine the location of the sound source. It is difficult to localize sound with only one ear.

### The tympanic membrane vibrates in unison with sound waves in the external ear.

The tympanic membrane, which is stretched across the entrance to the middle ear, vibrates when struck by sound waves. The alternating higher- and lower-pressure regions of a sound

wave cause the exquisitely sensitive eardrum to bow inward and outward in unison with the wave's frequency.

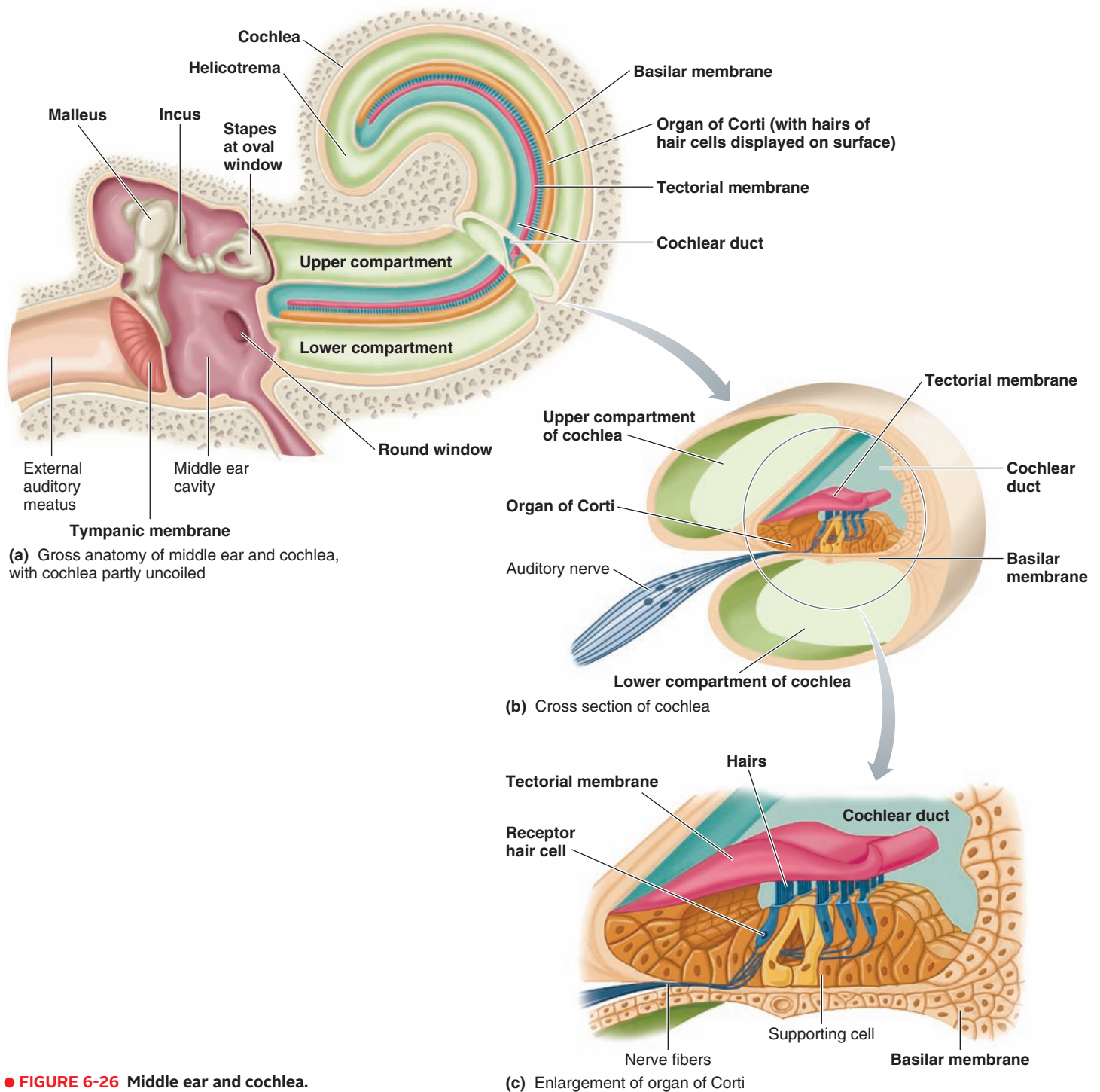
For the membrane to be free to move as sound waves strike it, the resting air pressure on both sides of the tympanic membrane must be equal. The outside of the eardrum is exposed to atmospheric pressure that reaches it through the ear canal. The inside of the eardrum facing the middle ear cavity is also exposed to atmospheric pressure via the **eustachian (auditory) tube**, which connects the middle ear to the **pharynx** (back of the throat) (see ● Figure 6-23). The eustachian tube is normally closed, but it can be pulled open by yawning, chewing, and swallowing. Such opening permits air pressure within the middle ear to equilibrate with atmospheric pressure so that pressures on both sides of the tympanic membrane are equal. During rapid external pressure changes (for example, during air flight), the eardrum bulges painfully as the pressure outside the ear changes while the pressure in the middle ear remains unchanged. Opening the eustachian tube by yawning allows the pressure on both sides of the tympanic membrane to equalize, relieving the pressure distortion as the eardrum “pops” back into place.



Infections originating in the throat sometimes spread through the eustachian tube to the middle ear. The resulting fluid accumulation in the middle ear not only is painful but also interferes with sound conduction across the middle ear.

### The middle ear bones convert tympanic membrane vibrations into fluid movements in the inner ear.

The **middle ear** transfers the vibrating movements of the tympanic membrane to the fluid of the inner ear. This transfer is facilitated by a movable chain of three small bones, or **ossicles** (the **malleus**, **incus**, and **stapes**), that extend across the middle ear (● Figure 6-26a). The first bone, the malleus, is attached to the tympanic membrane, and the last bone, the stapes, is attached to the **oval window**, the entrance into the fluid-filled cochlea. As the tympanic membrane vibrates in response to sound waves, the chain of bones is set into motion at the same frequency, transmitting this frequency of movement from the tympanic membrane to the oval window. The resulting pressure on the oval window with each vibration produces wavelike



● **FIGURE 6-26** Middle ear and cochlea.

movements in the inner ear fluid at the same frequency as the original sound waves. Recall that it takes greater pressure to set fluid in motion than needed to move air, but the ossicular system amplifies the pressure of the airborne sound waves sufficiently to produce fluid movements in the inner ear. The mechanical arrangement of the ossicles increases the force exerted on the oval window by 20 times what it would be if the airborne sound wave struck the oval window directly.

**The cochlea contains the organ of Corti, the sense organ for hearing.**

The pea-sized, snail-shaped **cochlea**, the “hearing” portion of the inner ear, is a coiled tubular system lying deep within the temporal bone (*cochlea* means “snail”) (see ● Figure 6-23). It is easier to understand the functional components of the cochlea by “uncoiling” it, as shown in ● Figure 6-26a. The cochlea is divided throughout most of its length into three fluid-filled

longitudinal compartments. A blind-ended **cochlear duct**, which constitutes the middle compartment, tunnels lengthwise through the center of the cochlea, not quite reaching its end. The upper compartment is sealed from the middle ear cavity by the oval window, to which the stapes is attached. Another small membrane-covered opening, the **round window**, seals the lower compartment from the middle ear. The region beyond the tip of the cochlear duct where the fluid in the upper and lower compartments is continuous is called the **helicotrema**. The **basilar membrane** forms the floor of the cochlear duct, separating it from the lower compartment. The basilar membrane is especially important because it bears the **organ of Corti**, the sense organ for hearing.

### Hair cells in the organ of Corti transduce fluid movements into neural signals.

The organ of Corti, which rests on top of the basilar membrane throughout its full length, contains 15,000 **auditory hair cells** that are the receptors for sound (● Figure 6-26c). Protruding from the surface of each hair cell are about 100 hairs. Hair cells generate neural signals when their surface hairs are mechanically deformed by fluid movements in the inner ear. These hairs contact the **tectorial membrane**, an awninglike projection overhanging the organ of Corti throughout its length (● Figure 6-26b and c).

The pistonlike action of the stapes against the oval window sets up pressure waves in the upper compartment. Because fluid is incompressible, pressure is dissipated in two ways as the stapes causes the oval window to bulge inward: (1) displacement of the round window and (2) deflection of the basilar membrane (● Figure 6-27a). In the first of these pathways, the pressure wave pushes the fluid forward in the upper compartment, around the helicotrema, and into the lower compartment, where it causes the round window to bulge outward into the middle ear cavity to compensate for the pressure increase. As the stapes rocks backward and pulls the oval window outward toward the middle ear, the fluid shifts in the opposite direction, displacing the round window inward. This pathway does not result in sound reception; it just dissipates pressure.

Pressure waves of frequencies associated with sound reception take a “shortcut” (● Figure 6-27a). Pressure waves in the upper compartment are transferred into the cochlear duct and then through the basilar membrane into the lower compartment. Transmission of pressure waves through the basilar membrane causes this membrane to move up and down, or vibrate, in synchrony with the pressure wave. Because the organ of Corti rides on the basilar membrane, the hair cells also move up and down. The hairs of these receptor cells are bent back and forth when the oscillating basilar membrane shifts their position in relationship to the tectorial membrane with which they are in contact (● Figure 6-28). This back-and-forth mechanical deformation of the hairs alternately opens and closes mechanically gated cation channels (see p. 72) in the hair cell, resulting in alternating depolarizing and hyperpolarizing potential changes—the receptor potential—at the same frequency as the original sound stimulus. Like photoreceptors, hair cells do not

undergo action potentials. Instead, graded potential changes in the hair cells lead to changes in the rate of action potentials in the afferent nerve fibers that make up the **auditory (cochlear) nerve**, which conducts the impulses to the brain. These neural signals are perceived by the brain as sound sensations (● Figure 6-29). The neural pathway between the organ of Corti and the auditory cortex in the temporal lobe of the brain (see Figure 5-8a, p. 117) involves several synapses en route, the most notable of which are in the brain stem and the thalamus. The brain stem uses the auditory input for alertness and arousal. The thalamus sorts and relays the signals upward.

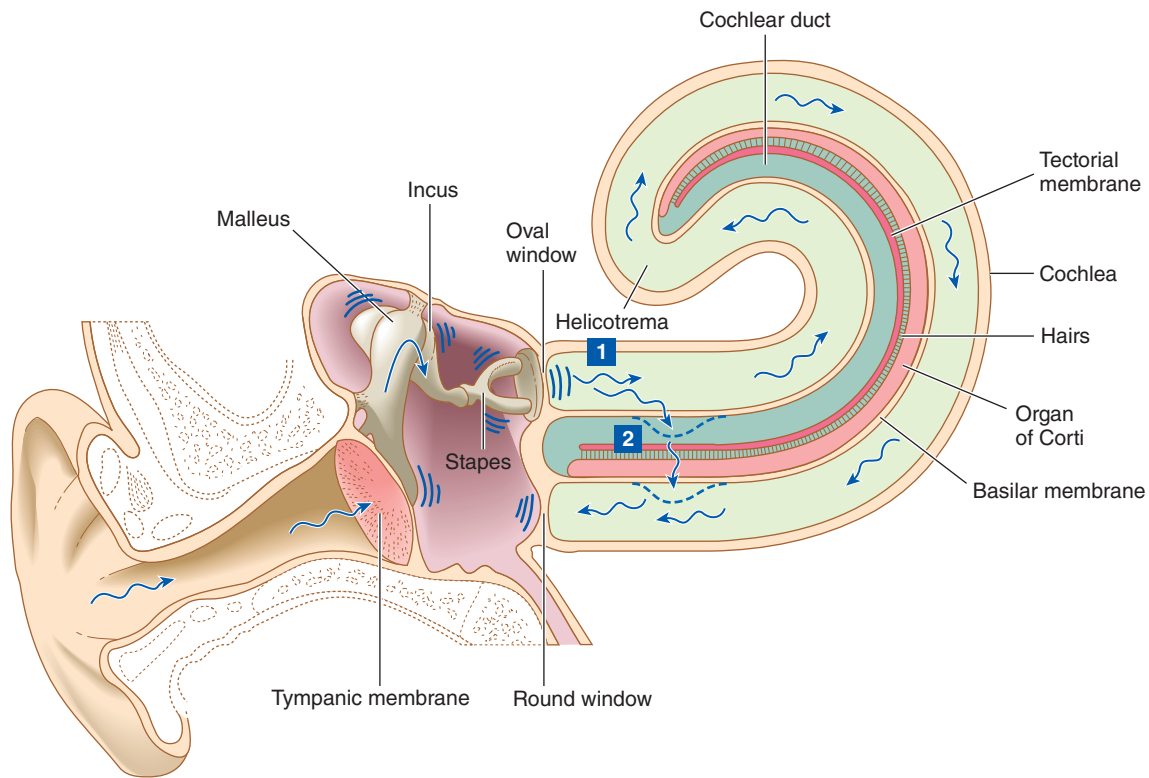
Unlike the visual pathways, auditory signals from each ear are transmitted to both temporal lobes because the fibers partially cross over in the brain stem. For this reason, a disruption of the auditory pathways on one side beyond the brain stem does not affect hearing in either ear to any extent.

The primary auditory cortex appears to perceive discrete sounds, whereas the surrounding higher-order auditory cortex integrates the separate sounds into a coherent, meaningful pattern. Think about the complexity of the task accomplished by your auditory system. When you are at a concert, your organ of Corti responds to the simultaneous mixture of the instruments, the applause and hushed talking of the audience, and the background noises in the theater. You can distinguish these separate parts of the many sound waves reaching your ears and can pay attention to those of importance to you.

### Pitch discrimination depends on the region of the basilar membrane that vibrates.

**Pitch discrimination** (that is, the ability to distinguish among various frequencies of incoming sound waves) depends on the shape and properties of the basilar membrane, which is narrow and stiff at its oval window end and wide and flexible at its helicotrema end (see ● Figure 6-27b). Different regions of the basilar membrane naturally vibrate maximally at different frequencies; that is, each frequency displays a peak vibration at a different position along the membrane. The narrow end nearest the oval window vibrates best with high-frequency pitches, whereas the wide end nearest the helicotrema vibrates maximally with low-frequency tones (see ● Figure 6-27c). The pitches in between are sorted out precisely along the length of the membrane from higher to lower frequency. As a sound wave of a particular frequency is set up in the cochlea by oscillation of the stapes, the wave travels to the region of the basilar membrane that naturally responds maximally to that frequency. The energy of the pressure wave is dissipated with this vigorous membrane oscillation, so the wave dies out at the region of maximal displacement.

The hair cells in the region of peak vibration of the basilar membrane undergo the most mechanical deformation and accordingly are the most excited. You can think of the organ of Corti as a piano with 15,000 keys (represented by the 15,000 hair cells) rather than the usual 88 keys. Each hair cell is “tuned” to an optimal sound frequency, determined by its location on the organ of Corti. Different sound waves promote maximal movement of different regions of the basilar membrane and

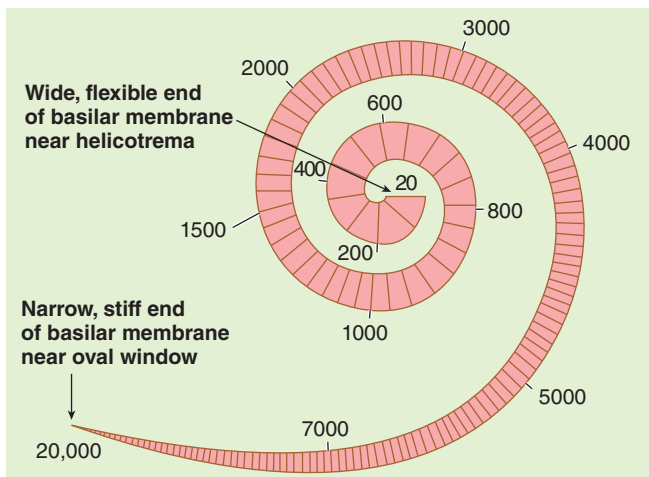


Fluid movement within the cochlea set up by vibration of the oval window follows two pathways:

**Pathway 1:** Through the upper compartment, around the helicotrema, and through the lower compartment, causing the round window to vibrate. This pathway just dissipates sound energy.

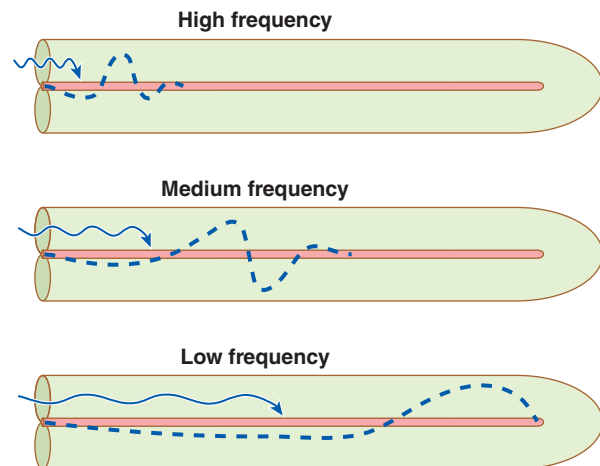
**Pathway 2:** A “shortcut” from the upper compartment through the basilar membrane to the lower compartment. This pathway triggers activation of the receptors for sound by bending the hairs of hair cells as the organ of Corti on top of the vibrating basilar membrane is displaced in relation to the overlying tectorial membrane.

(a) Fluid movement in cochlea



The numbers indicate the frequencies of sound waves in cycles per second (hertz) with which different regions of the basilar membrane maximally vibrate.

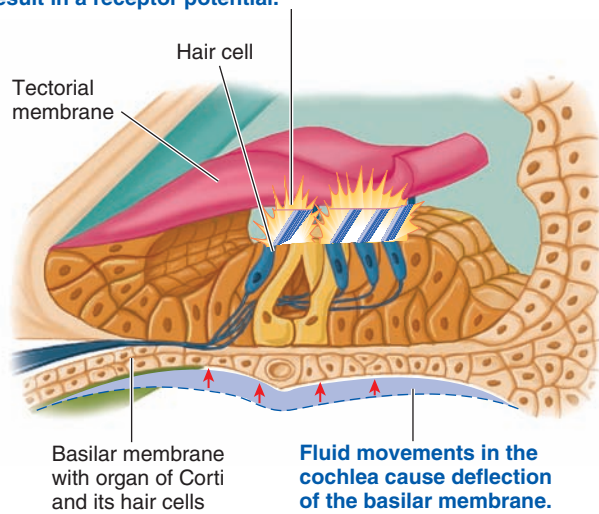
(b) Basilar membrane, partly uncoiled



(c) Basilar membrane, completely uncoiled

● **FIGURE 6-27 Transmission of sound waves.** (a) Fluid movement within the cochlea set up by vibration of the oval window follows two pathways, one dissipating sound energy and the other initiating the receptor potential. (b) Different regions of the basilar membrane vibrate maximally at different frequencies. (c) The narrow, stiff end of the basilar membrane nearest the oval window vibrates best with high-frequency pitches. The wide, flexible end of the basilar membrane near the helicotrema vibrates best with low-frequency pitches.

The hairs from the hair cells of the basilar membrane contact the overlying tectorial membrane. These hairs are bent when the basilar membrane is deflected in relation to the stationary tectorial membrane. This bending of the hair cells' hairs opens mechanically gated channels, leading to ion movements that result in a receptor potential.



● **FIGURE 6-28** Bending of hairs on deflection of the basilar membrane.

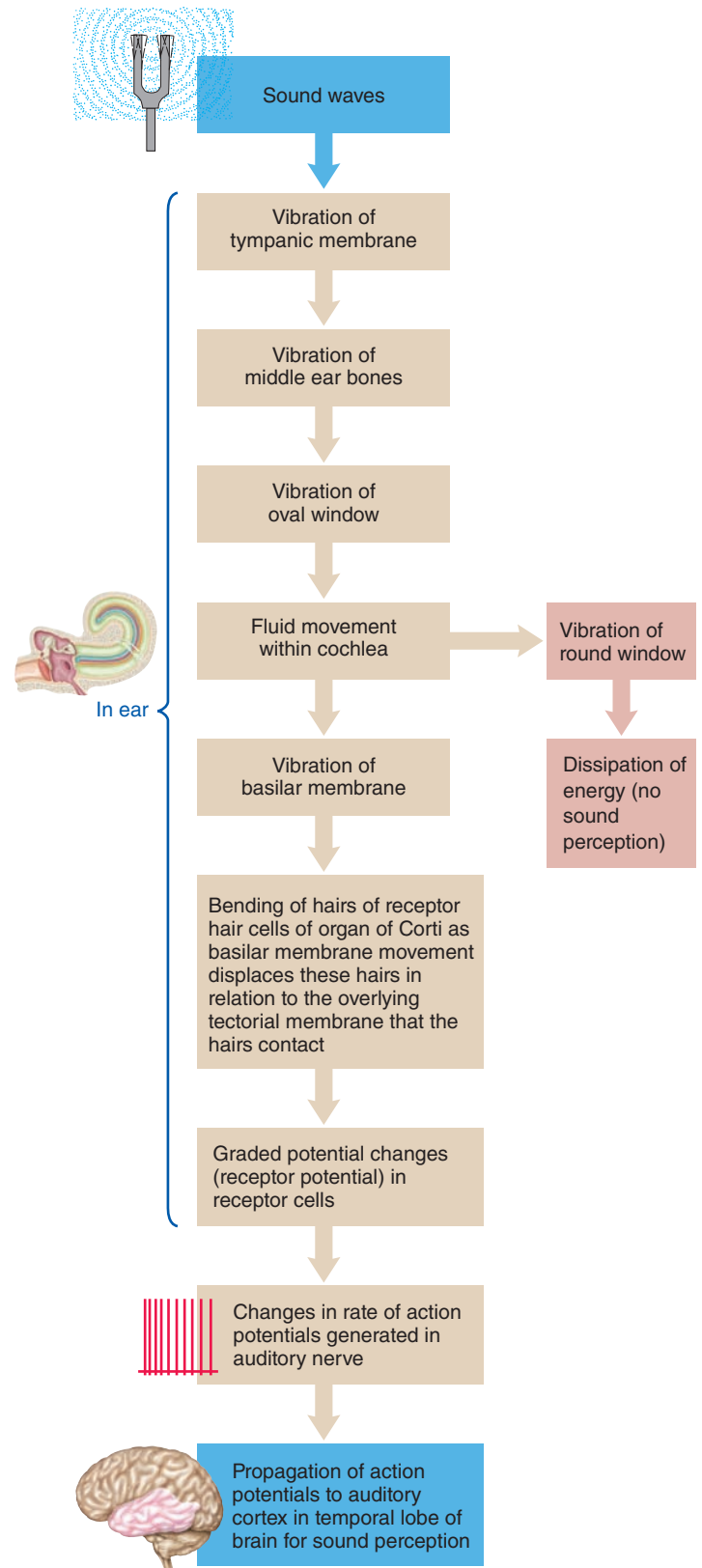
thus activate differently tuned hair cells (that is, different sound waves “strike” different “piano keys”). This information is propagated to the CNS, which interprets the pattern of hair cell stimulation as a sound of a particular frequency.

Overtone of varying frequencies cause many points along the basilar membrane to vibrate simultaneously but less intensely than the fundamental tone, enabling the CNS to distinguish the timbre of the sound (**timbre discrimination**).

### Loudness discrimination depends on the amplitude of vibration.

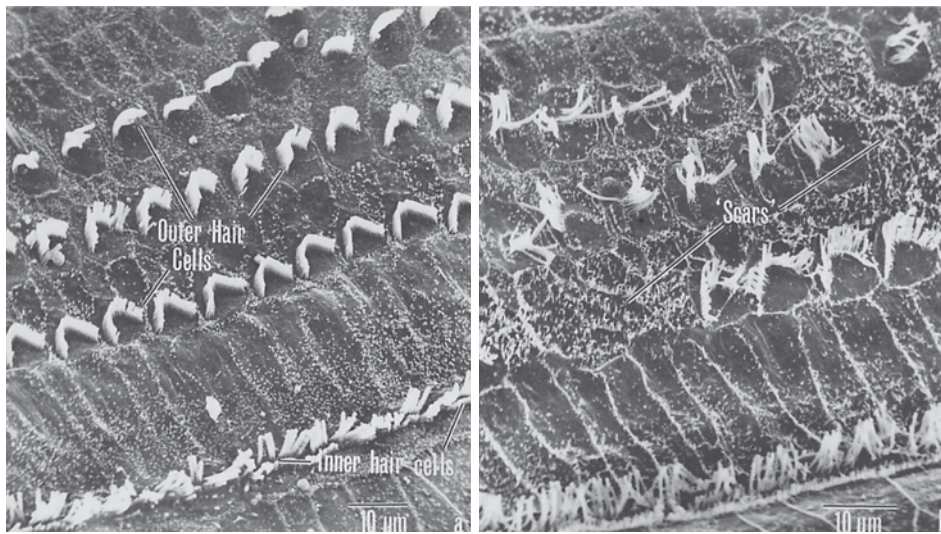
**Intensity (loudness) discrimination** depends on the amplitude of vibration. As sound waves originating from louder sound sources strike the eardrum, they cause it to vibrate more vigorously (that is, bulge in and out to a greater extent) but at the same frequency as a softer sound of the same pitch. The greater tympanic membrane deflection translates into greater basilar membrane movement in the region of peak responsiveness, causing greater bending of the hairs in this region. The CNS interprets this greater hair bending as a louder sound. Thus, pitch discrimination depends on “where” the basilar membrane maximally vibrates and loudness discrimination depends on “how much” this place vibrates.

The auditory system is so sensitive and can detect sounds so faint that the distance of basilar membrane deflection is comparable to only a fraction of the diameter of a hydrogen atom, the smallest of atoms. No wonder very loud sounds (for example, the sounds of a typical rock concert) can set up such violent vibrations of the basilar membrane that irreplaceable hair cells are actually sheared off or permanently distorted, leading to partial hearing loss (● Figure 6-30).



● **FIGURE 6-29** Pathway for sound transduction.





R. S. Preston and J. E. Hawkins, University of Michigan, Kresge Hearing Institute

(a) Normal hair cells (b) Damaged hair cells

● **FIGURE 6-30 Loss of hair cells caused by loud noises.** The scanning electron micrographs show portions of the organ of Corti, with its three rows of outer hair cells and one row of inner hair cells, from the inner ear of (a) a normal guinea pig and (b) a guinea pig after a 24-hour exposure to noise at 120 decibels SPL (sound pressure level), a level approached by loud rock music.

### Deafness is caused by defects in either conduction or neural processing of sound waves.



Loss of hearing, or **deafness**, may be temporary or permanent, partial or complete. Hearing loss, which affects about 10% of all Americans, is the second most common physical disability in the United States. Deafness is classified into two types—*conductive deafness* and *sensorineural deafness*—depending on the part of the hearing mechanism that fails to function adequately. **Conductive deafness** occurs when sound waves are not adequately conducted through the external and middle portions of the ear to set the fluids in the inner ear in motion. Possible causes include physical blockage of the ear canal with earwax, rupture of the eardrum, middle ear infections with accompanying fluid accumulation, or restriction of ossicular movement because of bony adhesions. In **sensorineural deafness**, sound waves are transmitted to the inner ear, but they are not translated into nerve signals that are interpreted by the brain as sound sensations. The defect can lie in the organ of Corti, in the auditory nerves or, rarely, in the ascending auditory pathways or auditory cortex.

One of the most common causes of partial hearing loss, **neural presbycusis**, is a degenerative, age-related process that occurs as hair cells “wear out” with use. Over time, exposure to even ordinary modern-day sounds eventually damages hair cells so that, on average, adults have lost more than 40% of their cochlear hair cells by age 65. Unfortunately, partial hearing loss caused by excessive exposure to loud noises is affecting people at younger ages than in the past because we live in an increasingly noisy environment. Currently, more than 28 million Americans have some degree of hearing loss, and this number is expected to climb to 78 million by 2030. According to one study, an estimated 5 million children between 6 and 19 years of age in the United States already have some hearing damage resulting from

amplified music and other noise pollution. Hair cells that process high-frequency sounds are the most vulnerable to destruction.

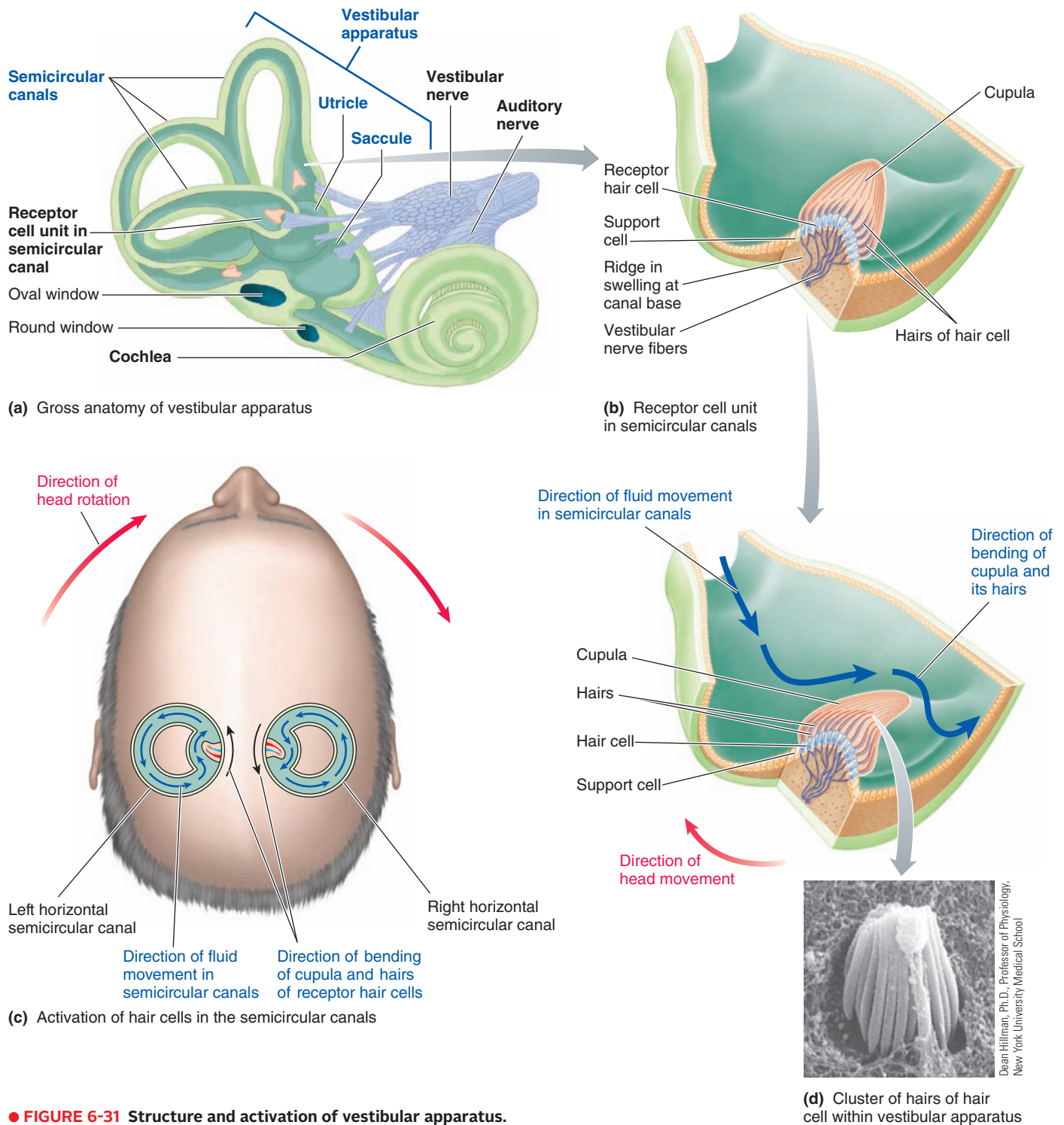
### The vestibular apparatus is important for equilibrium by detecting position and motion of the head.

In addition to its cochlear-dependent role in hearing, the inner ear has another specialized component, the **vestibular apparatus**, which provides information essential for the sense of equilibrium and for coordinating head movements with eye and postural movements (● Figure 6-31). **Equilibrium** is the sense of body orientation and motion. The vestibular apparatus consists of two sets of structures lying within a tunneled-out region of the temporal bone near the cochlea—the *semicircular canals* and the *otolith organs*.

The vestibular apparatus detects changes in position and motion of the head. As in the cochlea, all components of the vestibular apparatus contain fluid. Also, similar to the organ of Corti, the vestibular components each contain hair cells that respond to mechanical deformation triggered by specific movements of the fluid. Unlike information from the auditory system, much of the information provided by the vestibular apparatus does not reach the level of conscious awareness.

**ROLE OF THE SEMICIRCULAR CANALS** The **semicircular canals** detect rotational or angular acceleration or deceleration of the head, such as when starting or stopping spinning, somersaulting, or turning the head. Each ear contains three semicircular canals arranged three-dimensionally in planes that lie at right angles to each other. The receptor hair cells of each semicircular canal are situated on top of a ridge located in a swelling at the base of the canal (● Figure 6-31a and b). The hairs are embedded in an overlying, cuplike, gelatinous layer, the **cupula**, which protrudes into the fluid within this swelling. The cupula sways in the direction of fluid movement, much like seaweed leaning in the direction of the prevailing tide.

Acceleration or deceleration during rotation of the head in any direction causes fluid movement in at least one of the semicircular canals because of their three-dimensional arrangement. As you start to move your head, the bony canal and the ridge of hair cells embedded in the cupula move with your head. Initially, however, the fluid within the canal, not being attached to your skull, does not move in the direction of the rotation but lags behind because of its inertia. (Because of inertia, a resting object remains at rest and a moving object continues to move in the same direction unless the object is acted on by some external force that induces change.) When the fluid is



● **FIGURE 6-31** Structure and activation of vestibular apparatus.

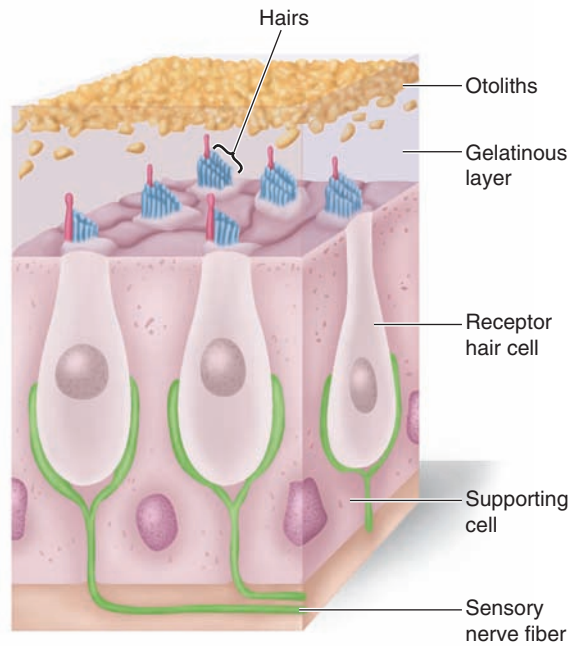
left behind as you start to rotate your head, the fluid that is in the same plane as the head movement is in effect shifted in the opposite direction from the movement (similar to your body tilting to the right as the car in which you are riding suddenly turns to the left) (● Figure 6-31c). This fluid movement causes the cupula to lean in the opposite direction from the head movement, bending the sensory hairs embedded in it. If your head movement continues at the same rate in the same direc-

tion, the fluid catches up and moves in unison with your head so that the hairs return to their unbent position. When your head slows down and stops, the reverse situation occurs. The fluid briefly continues to move in the direction of the rotation while your head decelerates to a stop. As a result, the cupula and its hairs are transiently bent in the direction of the preceding spin, which is opposite to the way they were bent during acceleration. Bending the hairs in one direction increases the rate of

firing in afferent fibers within the **vestibular nerve**, whereas bending in the opposite direction decreases the frequency of action potentials in these afferent fibers. When the fluid gradually comes to a halt, the hairs straighten again. Thus, the semi-circular canals detect changes in the rate of rotational movement (rotational acceleration or deceleration) of your head. They do not respond when your head is motionless or when it is moving in a circle at a constant speed.

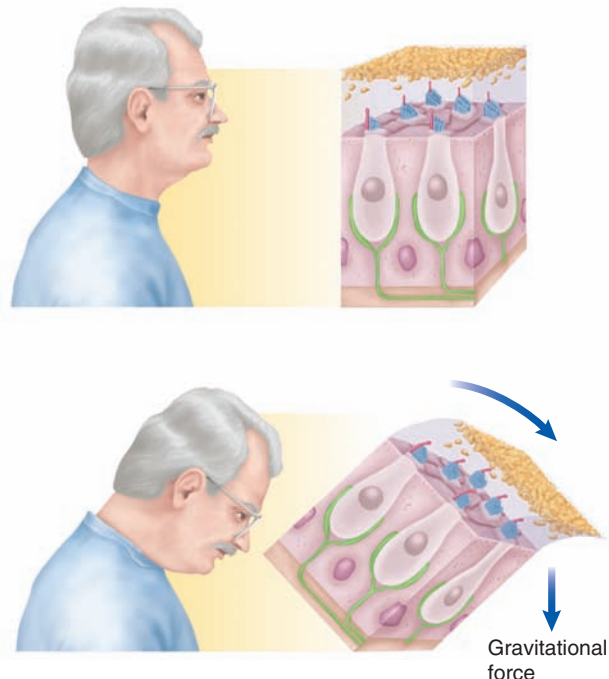
**ROLE OF THE OTOLITH ORGANS** The **otolith organs** provide information about the position of the head relative to gravity

(that is, static head tilt) and detect changes in the rate of linear motion (moving in a straight line regardless of direction). The otolith organs, the **utricle** and the **sacculle**, are saclike structures housed within a bony chamber situated between the semi-circular canals and the cochlea (● Figure 6-31a). The hairs of the receptor hair cells in these sense organs also protrude into an overlying gelatinous sheet, whose movement displaces the hairs and results in changes in hair cell potential. Many tiny crystals of calcium carbonate—the **otoliths** (“ear stones”)—are suspended within the gelatinous layer, making it heavier and giving it more inertia than the surrounding fluid (● Figure 6-32a).

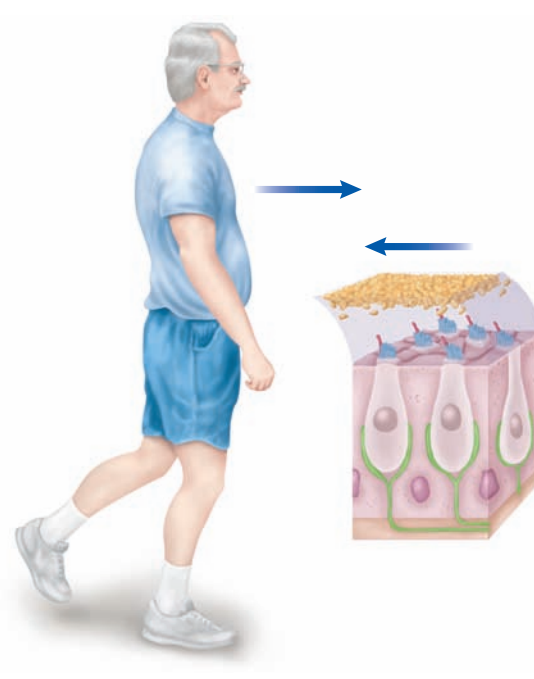


(a) Receptor cell unit in utricle

● FIGURE 6-32 Structure and activation of utricle.



(b) Activation of utricle by change in head position



(c) Activation of utricle by horizontal linear acceleration

When a person is in an upright position, the hairs within the utricle are oriented vertically and the saccule hairs are lined up horizontally.

Let us look at the *utricle* as an example. Its otolith-embedded, gelatinous mass shifts positions and bends the hairs in two ways:

1. When you tilt your head in any direction so that it is no longer vertical (that is, when your head is not straight up and down), the hairs are bent in the direction of the tilt because of the gravitational force exerted on the top-heavy gelatinous layer (● Figure 6-32b). This bending produces depolarizing or hyperpolarizing receptor potentials depending on the tilt of your head. The CNS thus receives different patterns of neural activity depending on head position with respect to gravity.

2. The utricle hairs are also displaced by any change in horizontal linear motion (such as moving straight forward, backward, or to the side). As you start to walk forward (● Figure 6-32c), the top-heavy otolith membrane at first lags behind the fluid and hair cells because of its greater inertia. The hairs are thus bent to the rear, in the opposite direction of the forward movement of your head. If you maintain your walking pace, the gelatinous layer soon catches up and moves at the same rate as your head so that the hairs are no longer bent. When you stop walking, the otolith sheet continues to move forward briefly as your head slows and stops, bending the hairs toward the front. Thus, the hair cells of the utricle detect horizontally directed linear acceleration and deceleration, but they do not provide information about movement in a straight line at constant speed.

The saccule functions similarly to the utricle, except that it responds selectively to tilting of the head away from a horizontal position (such as getting up from bed) and to vertically directed linear acceleration and deceleration (such as jumping up and down or riding in an elevator).

Signals arising from the various components of the vestibular apparatus are carried through the vestibulocochlear nerve to the **vestibular nuclei**, a cluster of neuronal cell bodies in the brain stem, and to the cerebellum. Here, the vestibular information is integrated with input from the eyes, skin surface, joints, and muscles for (1) maintaining balance and desired posture; (2) controlling the external eye muscles so that the eyes remain fixed on the same point, despite movement of the head; and (3) perceiving motion and orientation. Some people, for poorly understood reasons, are especially sensitive to particular motions that activate the vestibular apparatus and cause symptoms of dizziness and nausea; this sensitivity is called **motion sickness**.

▲ Table 6-5 summarizes the functions of the major components of the ear.

## Chemical Senses: Taste and Smell

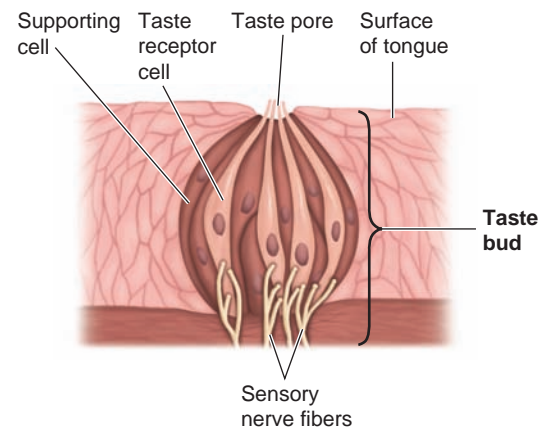
Unlike the eyes' photoreceptors and the ears' mechanoreceptors, the receptors for taste and smell are chemoreceptors, which generate neural signals on binding with particular chemicals in their environment. The sensations of taste and smell in

association with food intake influence the flow of digestive juices and affect appetite. Furthermore, stimulation of taste or smell receptors induces pleasurable or objectionable sensations and signals the presence of something to seek (a nutritionally useful, good-tasting food) or to avoid (a potentially toxic, bad-tasting substance). Thus, the chemical senses provide a “quality-control” checkpoint for substances available for ingestion. In lower animals, smell also plays a major role in finding direction, in seeking prey or avoiding predators, and in sexual attraction to a mate. The sense of smell is less sensitive in humans and less important in influencing our behavior (although millions of dollars are spent annually on perfumes and deodorants to make us smell better and thereby be more socially attractive). We first examine the mechanism of taste (**gustation**) and then turn our attention to smell (**olfaction**).

### Taste receptor cells are located primarily within tongue taste buds.

The chemoreceptors for **taste** sensation are packaged in taste buds, about 10,000 of which are present in the oral cavity and throat, with the greatest percentage on the upper surface of the tongue. A **taste bud** consists of about 50 long, spindle-shaped *taste receptor cells* packaged with *supporting cells* in an arrangement like slices of an orange (● Figure 6-33). Each taste bud has a small opening, the **taste pore**, through which fluids in the mouth come into contact with the surface of its receptor cells. **Taste receptor cells** are modified epithelial cells with many surface folds, or microvilli, that protrude slightly through the taste pore, greatly increasing the surface area exposed to the oral contents (see p. 38). The plasma membrane of the microvilli contains receptor sites that bind selectively with chemical molecules in the environment. Only chemicals in solution—either ingested liquids or solids that have been dissolved in saliva—can attach to receptor cells and evoke the sensation of taste.

Most receptors are carefully sheltered from direct exposure to the environment, but the taste receptor cells, because of their task, often come into contact with potent chemicals. Unlike the eye or ear receptors, which are irreplaceable, taste receptors have a life span of about 10 days. Epithelial cells surrounding the taste



● **FIGURE 6-33 Structure of a taste bud.** The receptor cells and supporting cells of a taste bud are arranged like slices of an orange.

▲ **Table 6-5** Functions of the Major Components of the Ear

Structure	Location	Function
<b>External Ear</b>		
<i>Pinna (ear)</i>	Skin-covered flap of cartilage located on each side of the head	<b>Collects and transfers sound waves to the middle ear</b> Collects sound waves and channels them down the ear canal; contributes to sound localization
<i>External auditory meatus (ear canal)</i>	Tunnels through the temporal bone from the pinna to the tympanic membrane	Directs sound waves to the tympanic membrane
<i>Tympanic membrane (eardrum)</i>	Thin membrane that separates the external ear and the middle ear	Vibrates in synchrony with sound waves that strike it, setting middle ear bones in motion
<b>Middle Ear</b>		
<i>Malleus, incus, and stapes</i>	Movable chain of bones that extends across the middle ear cavity; the malleus attaches to the tympanic membrane, and the stapes attaches to the oval window	<b>Transfers vibrations of the tympanic membrane to fluid in the cochlea</b> Oscillate in synchrony with tympanic membrane vibrations and set up wavelike movements in cochlea fluid at the same frequency
<b>Inner Ear: Cochlea</b>		
<i>Oval window</i>	Thin membrane at the entrance to the cochlea; separates the middle ear from the upper compartment of the cochlea	<b>Houses the sensory system for hearing</b> Vibrates in unison with movement of the stapes, to which it is attached; oval window movement sets cochlea fluid in motion
<i>Upper and lower compartments of the cochlea</i>	Snail-shaped tubular system that lies deep within the temporal bone	Contain fluid that is set in motion by oval window movement driven by the oscillation of middle ear bones
<i>Cochlear duct</i>	Blind-ended tubular compartment that tunnels through the center of the cochlea between the upper and the lower compartments	Houses the basilar membrane and organ of Corti
<i>Basilar membrane</i>	Forms the floor of the cochlear duct	Vibrates in unison with fluid movements; bears the organ of Corti, the sense organ for hearing
<i>Organ of Corti</i>	Rests on top of the basilar membrane throughout its length	Contains auditory hair cells, the receptors for sound, which undergo receptor potentials when their hairs are bent as a result of fluid movement in the cochlea
<i>Tectorial membrane</i>	Stationary membrane that overhangs the organ of Corti and contacts the surface hairs of the receptor hair cells	Serves as the stationary site against which the hairs of the receptor cells are bent and undergo receptor potentials as the vibrating basilar membrane moves in relation to this overhanging membrane
<i>Round window</i>	Thin membrane that separates the lower compartment of the cochlea from the middle ear	Vibrates in unison with fluid movements to dissipate pressure in the cochlea; does not contribute to sound reception
<b>Inner Ear: Vestibular Apparatus</b>		
<i>Semicircular canals</i>	Three semicircular canals arranged three-dimensionally in planes at right angles to each other near the cochlea	<b>Houses sensory systems for equilibrium and provides input essential for maintaining posture and balance</b> Detect rotational or angular acceleration or deceleration
<i>Utricle</i>	Saclike structure in a bony chamber between the cochlea and the semicircular canals	Detects changes in head position away from vertical and horizontally directed linear acceleration and deceleration
<i>Sacculle</i>	Lies next to the utricle	Detects changes in head position away from horizontal and vertically directed linear acceleration and deceleration

bud differentiate first into supporting cells and then into receptor cells to constantly renew the taste bud components.

Binding of a taste-provoking chemical, a **tastant**, with a receptor cell alters the cell's ionic channels to produce a depolarizing receptor potential that in turn initiates action potentials in afferent nerve fibers with which the receptor cell synapses. Signals in these sensory inputs are conveyed via synaptic stops in the brain stem and thalamus to the **cortical gustatory area**, a region in the parietal lobe adjacent to the “tongue” area of the somatosensory cortex, where the taste is perceived. Taste signals are also sent to the hypothalamus and limbic system to add affective dimensions, such as whether the taste is pleasant or unpleasant, and to process behavioral aspects associated with taste and smell.

### Taste discrimination is coded by patterns of activity in various taste bud receptors.

We can discriminate among thousands of taste sensations, yet all tastes are varying combinations of five **primary tastes**: *salty*, *sour*, *sweet*, *bitter*, and *umami*. Umami, a meaty or savory taste, has recently been added to the list of primary tastes. These primary taste sensations are elicited by the following stimuli:

- **Salty taste** is stimulated by chemical salts, especially NaCl (table salt).
- **Sour taste** is caused by acids. The citric acid content of lemons, for example, accounts for their distinctly sour taste.
- **Sweet taste** is evoked by the particular configuration of glucose. From an evolutionary perspective, we crave sweet foods because they supply necessary calories in a readily usable form. However, other organic molecules with similar structures but no calories, such as saccharin, aspartame, sucralose, and other artificial sweeteners, can interact with “sweet” receptor binding sites.
- **Bitter taste** is elicited by a more chemically diverse group of tastants than the other taste sensations. For example, alkaloids (such as caffeine, nicotine, strychnine, morphine, and other toxic plant derivatives), as well as poisonous substances, all taste bitter, presumably as a protective mechanism to discourage ingestion of these potentially dangerous compounds.
- **Umami taste**, which was first identified and named by a Japanese researcher, is triggered by amino acids, especially glutamate. The presence of amino acids, as found in meat, for example, is a marker for a desirable, nutritionally protein-rich food. This taste pathway is also responsible for the distinctive taste of the flavor additive monosodium glutamate (MSG), which is especially popular in Asian dishes.

Salty and sour tastants bring about receptor potentials in taste buds by directly affecting membrane channels, whereas the other three categories of tastants act by binding to G-protein-coupled receptors and activating second-messenger pathways to bring about receptor potentials (see p. 93).

Each receptor cell responds in varying degrees to all five primary tastes but is generally preferentially responsive to one of the taste modalities. The richness of fine taste discrimination

beyond the primary tastes depends on subtle differences in the stimulation patterns of all taste buds in response to various substances, similar to the variable stimulation of the three cone types that gives rise to the range of color sensations.

Taste perception is also influenced by information derived from other receptors, especially odor. When you temporarily lose your sense of smell because of swollen nasal passageways during a cold, your sense of taste is also markedly reduced, even though your taste receptors are unaffected by the cold. Other factors affecting taste include temperature and texture of the food, as well as psychological factors associated with past experiences with the food. How the gustatory cortex accomplishes the complex perceptual processing of taste sensation is not yet known.

### The olfactory receptors in the nose are specialized endings of renewable afferent neurons.

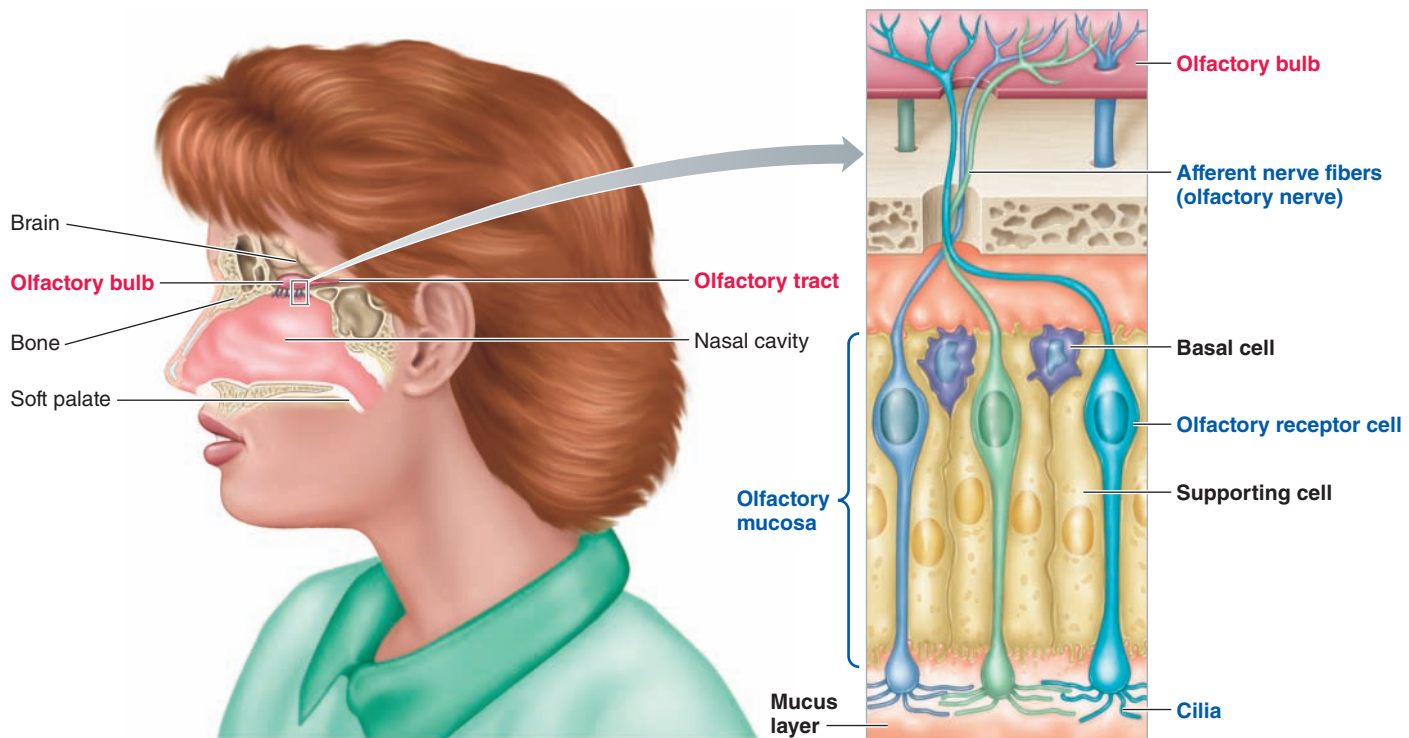
The **olfactory** (“smell”) **mucosa**, a 3 cm<sup>2</sup> patch of mucosa in the ceiling of the nasal cavity, contains three cell types: *olfactory receptor cells*, *supporting cells*, and *basal cells* (● Figure 6-34). The supporting cells secrete mucus, which coats the nasal passages. The basal cells are precursors for new olfactory receptor cells, which are replaced about every 2 months. The sense of **smell** depends on the **olfactory receptor cells** detecting odors, or scents. An olfactory receptor cell is an afferent neuron whose receptor portion lies in the olfactory mucosa in the nose and whose afferent axon traverses into the brain. The axons of the olfactory receptor cells collectively form the **olfactory nerve**.

The receptor portion of an olfactory receptor cell consists of an enlarged knob bearing several long cilia that extend like a tassel to the surface of the mucosa. These cilia contain the binding sites for attachment of **odorants**, molecules that can be smelled. To be smelled, a substance must be (1) sufficiently volatile (easily vaporized) that some of its molecules can enter the nose in the inspired air and (2) sufficiently water soluble that it can dissolve in the mucus coating the olfactory mucosa. As with taste receptors, molecules must be dissolved to be detected by olfactory receptors.

### Various parts of an odor are detected by different olfactory receptors and sorted into “smell files.”

The human nose contains 5 million olfactory receptors, of which there are 1000 types. During smell detection, an odor is “dissected” into various components. Each receptor responds to only one discrete component of an odor rather than to the whole odorant molecule. Accordingly, each of the various parts of an odor is detected by one of the thousand different receptors, and a given receptor can respond to a particular odor component shared by different scents. Compare this to the three cone types for coding color vision and the taste buds that respond differentially to only five primary tastes to accomplish coding for taste discrimination.

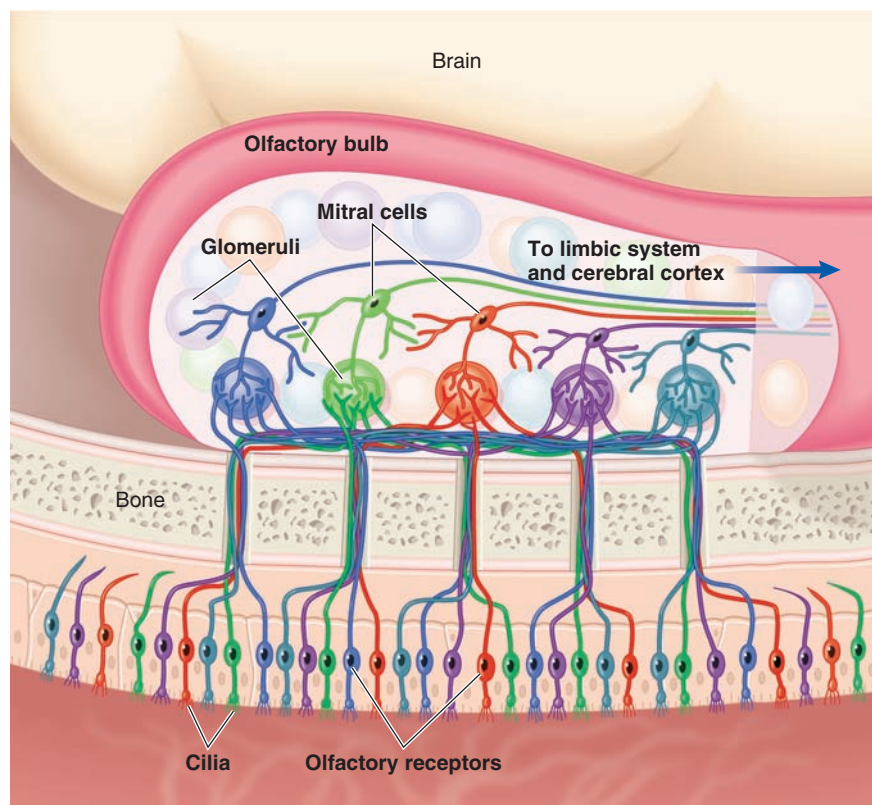
Odorants act through G-protein-coupled receptors and second-messenger pathways to trigger receptor potentials. Binding of an appropriate scent signal to an olfactory receptor brings about a depolarizing receptor potential that generates



● **FIGURE 6-34** Location and structure of the olfactory receptor cells.

action potentials in the afferent fiber. The frequency of the action potentials depends on the concentration of the stimulating chemical molecules.

The afferent fibers arising from the receptor endings in the nose pass through tiny holes in the flat bone plate separating the olfactory mucosa from the overlying brain tissue (● Figure 6-34). They immediately synapse in the **olfactory bulb**, a complex neural structure containing several layers of cells that are functionally similar to the retinal layers of the eye. The twin olfactory bulbs, one on each side, are about the size of small grapes (see ● Figure 5-14, p. 124). Each olfactory bulb is lined by small, ball-like neural junctions known as **glomeruli** (meaning “little balls”) (● Figure 6-35). Within each glomerulus, the terminals of receptor cells carrying information about a particular scent component synapse with the next cells in the olfactory pathway, the **mitral cells**. Because each glomerulus receives signals only from receptors that detect a particular odor component, the glomeruli serve as “smell files.” The separate components of an odor are sorted into different glomeruli, one component per file. Thus, the glomeruli, which are the first relay station in the brain for process-



● **FIGURE 6-35** Processing of scents in the olfactory bulb. Each of the glomeruli lining the olfactory bulb receives synaptic input from only one type of olfactory receptor, which, in turn, responds to only one discrete component of an odorant. Thus, the glomeruli sort and file the various components of an odoriferous molecule before relaying the smell signal to the mitral cells and higher brain levels for further processing.

ing olfactory information, play a key role in organizing scent perception.

The mitral cells on which the olfactory receptors terminate in the glomeruli refine the smell signals and relay them to the brain for further processing. Fibers leaving the olfactory bulb travel in two routes:

1. A subcortical route going primarily to regions of the limbic system, especially the lower medial sides of the temporal lobes (considered the **primary olfactory cortex**). This route, which includes hypothalamic involvement, permits close coordination between smell and behavioral reactions associated with feeding, mating, and direction orienting.
2. A route through the thalamus to the cortex. As with other senses, the cortical route is important for conscious perception and fine discrimination of smell.

### Odor discrimination is coded by patterns of activity in the olfactory bulb glomeruli.

Because each odorant activates multiple receptors and glomeruli in response to its various odor components, odor discrimination is based on different patterns of glomeruli activated by various scents. In this way, the cortex can distinguish more than 10,000 scents. This mechanism for sorting out and distinguishing odors is very effective. A noteworthy example is our ability to detect methyl mercaptan (garlic odor) at a concentration of 1 molecule per 50 billion molecules in the air. This substance is added to odorless natural gas to enable us to detect potentially lethal gas leaks. Despite this impressive sensitivity, humans have a poor sense of smell compared to other species. By comparison, dogs' sense of smell is hundreds of times more sensitive than that of humans. Bloodhounds, for example, have about 4 billion olfactory receptor cells compared to our 5 million such cells, accounting for bloodhounds' superior scent-sniffing ability.

### The olfactory system adapts quickly.

Although the olfactory system is sensitive and highly discriminating, it is also quickly adaptive. Sensitivity to a new odor diminishes rapidly after a short period of exposure to it, even though the odor source continues to be present. This reduced sensitivity does not involve receptor adaptation, as researchers thought for years; actually, the olfactory receptors themselves adapt slowly. It apparently involves some sort of adaptation process in the CNS. Adaptation is specific for a particular odor, and responsiveness to other odors remains unchanged.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



To maintain a life-sustaining stable internal environment, the body must constantly make adjustments to compensate for myriad external and internal factors that continuously threaten to disrupt homeostasis, such as external exposure

to cold or internal acid production. Many of these adjustments are directed by the nervous system, one of the body's two major regulatory systems. The central nervous system (CNS), the integrating and decision-making component of the nervous system, must continuously be informed of "what's happening" in both the internal and the external environment so that it can command appropriate responses in the organ systems to maintain the body's viability. In other words, the CNS must know what changes are taking place before it can respond to these changes.

The afferent division of the peripheral nervous system (PNS) is the communication link by which the CNS is informed about the internal and external environment. The afferent division detects, encodes, and transmits peripheral signals to the CNS for processing. Afferent input is necessary for arousal, perception, and determination of efferent output.

Afferent information about the internal environment, such as the CO<sub>2</sub> level in the blood, never reaches the level of conscious awareness, but this input to the controlling centers of the CNS is essential for maintaining homeostasis. Afferent input that reaches the level of conscious awareness, called *sensory information*, includes somesthetic and proprioceptive sensation (body sense) and special senses (vision, hearing, equilibrium, taste, and smell).

The body sense receptors are distributed over the entire body surface, as well as throughout the joints and muscles. Afferent signals from these receptors provide information about what's happening directly to each specific body part in relation to the external environment (that is, the "what," "where," and "how much" of stimulatory inputs to the body's surface and the momentary position of the body in space). In contrast, each special sense organ is restricted to a single site in the body. Rather than provide information about a specific body part, a special sense organ provides a specific type of information about the external environment that is useful to the body as a whole. For example, through their ability to detect, extensively analyze, and integrate patterns of illumination in the external environment, the eyes and visual processing system enable you to see your surroundings. The same integrative effect could not be achieved if photoreceptors were scattered over your entire body surface, as are touch receptors.

Sensory input (both body sense and special senses) enables a complex multicellular organism such as a human to interact in meaningful ways with the external environment in procuring food, defending against danger, and engaging in other behavioral actions geared toward maintaining homeostasis. In addition to providing information essential for interactions with the external environment for basic survival, the perceptual processing of sensory input adds immeasurably to the richness of life, such as enjoyment of a good book, concert, or meal.



## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-41)

1. Conversion of the energy forms of stimuli into electrical energy by the receptors is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The type of stimulus to which a particular receptor is most responsive is called its \_\_\_\_\_.
3. All afferent information is sensory information. (*True or false?*)
4. During dark adaptation, rhodopsin is gradually regenerated to increase the sensitivity of the eyes. (*True or false?*)
5. An optic nerve carries information from the lateral and medial halves of the same eye, whereas an optic tract carries information from the lateral half of one eye and the medial half of the other. (*True or false?*)
6. Displacement of the round window generates neural impulses perceived as sound sensations. (*True or false?*)
7. Hair cells in different regions of the organ of Corti are activated by different tones. (*True or false?*)
8. Each taste receptor responds to just one of the five primary tastes. (*True or false?*)
9. Rapid adaptation to odors results from adaptation of the olfactory receptors. (*True or false?*)
10. Match the following:

___ 1. is the layer that contains photoreceptors	(a) aqueous humor
___ 2. marks the point from which the optic nerve leaves the retina	(b) fovea
___ 3. forms the white part of the eye	(c) cornea
___ 4. is the colored diaphragm of muscle that controls the amount of light entering the eye	(d) retina
___ 5. contributes the most to the eye's refractive ability	(e) lens
___ 6. supplies nutrients to the lens and cornea	(f) optic disc or blind spot
___ 7. produces the aqueous humor	(g) iris
___ 8. has adjustable refractive ability	(h) ciliary body
___ 9. is the portion of the retina with greatest acuity	(i) sclera

11. Using the answer codes on the right, indicate which properties apply to taste and/or smell:

___ 1. Receptors are separate cells that synapse with terminal endings of afferent neurons.	(a) applies to taste
___ 2. Receptors are specialized endings of afferent neurons.	(b) applies to smell
___ 3. Receptors are regularly replaced.	(c) applies to both taste and smell
___ 4. Specific chemicals in the environment attach to special binding sites on the receptor surface, leading to a depolarizing receptor potential.	
___ 5. There are two processing pathways: a limbic system route and a cortical route.	
___ 6. Five receptor types are used.	
___ 7. A thousand receptor types are used.	
___ 8. Information from receptor cells is filed and sorted by neural junctions called glomeruli.	

### Essay Questions

1. List and describe the receptor types according to their adequate stimulus.
2. Compare tonic and phasic receptors.
3. Explain how acuity is influenced by receptive field size.
4. Compare the fast and slow pain pathways.
5. Describe the built-in analgesic system of the brain.
6. Describe the process of phototransduction.
7. Compare the functional characteristics of rods and cones.
8. What are sound waves? What is responsible for the pitch, intensity, and timbre of a sound?
9. Describe the function of each of the following parts of the ear: pinna, ear canal, tympanic membrane, ossicles, oval window, and various parts of the cochlea. Include a discussion of how sound waves are transduced into action potentials.
10. Discuss the functions of the semicircular canals, the utricle, and the saccule.
11. Describe the location, structure, and activation of the receptors for taste and smell.
12. Compare the processes of color vision, hearing, taste, and smell discrimination.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-41)

1. Patients with certain nerve disorders are unable to feel pain. Why is this disadvantageous?
2. Ophthalmologists often instill eye drops in their patients' eyes to bring about pupillary dilation, which makes it easier for the physician to view the eye's interior. The iris contains two sets of smooth muscle, one circular (the muscle fibers run in a circle around the pupil) and the other radial (the fibers radiate outward from the pupil like bicycle spokes). Remember that a muscle fiber shortens when it contracts. Parasympathetic stimulation causes contraction of the circular muscle; sympathetic stimulation causes contraction of the radial muscle. In what way would the drug in the eye drops affect autonomic nervous system activity in the eye to cause the pupils to dilate?
3. A patient complains of not being able to see the right half of the visual field with either eye. At what point in the patient's visual pathway does the defect lie?
4. Explain how middle ear infections interfere with hearing. Of what value are the "tubes" that are sometimes surgically placed in the eardrums of patients with a history of repeated middle ear infections accompanied by chronic fluid accumulation?
5. Explain why your sense of smell is reduced when you have a cold, even though the cold virus does not directly adversely affect the olfactory receptor cells.

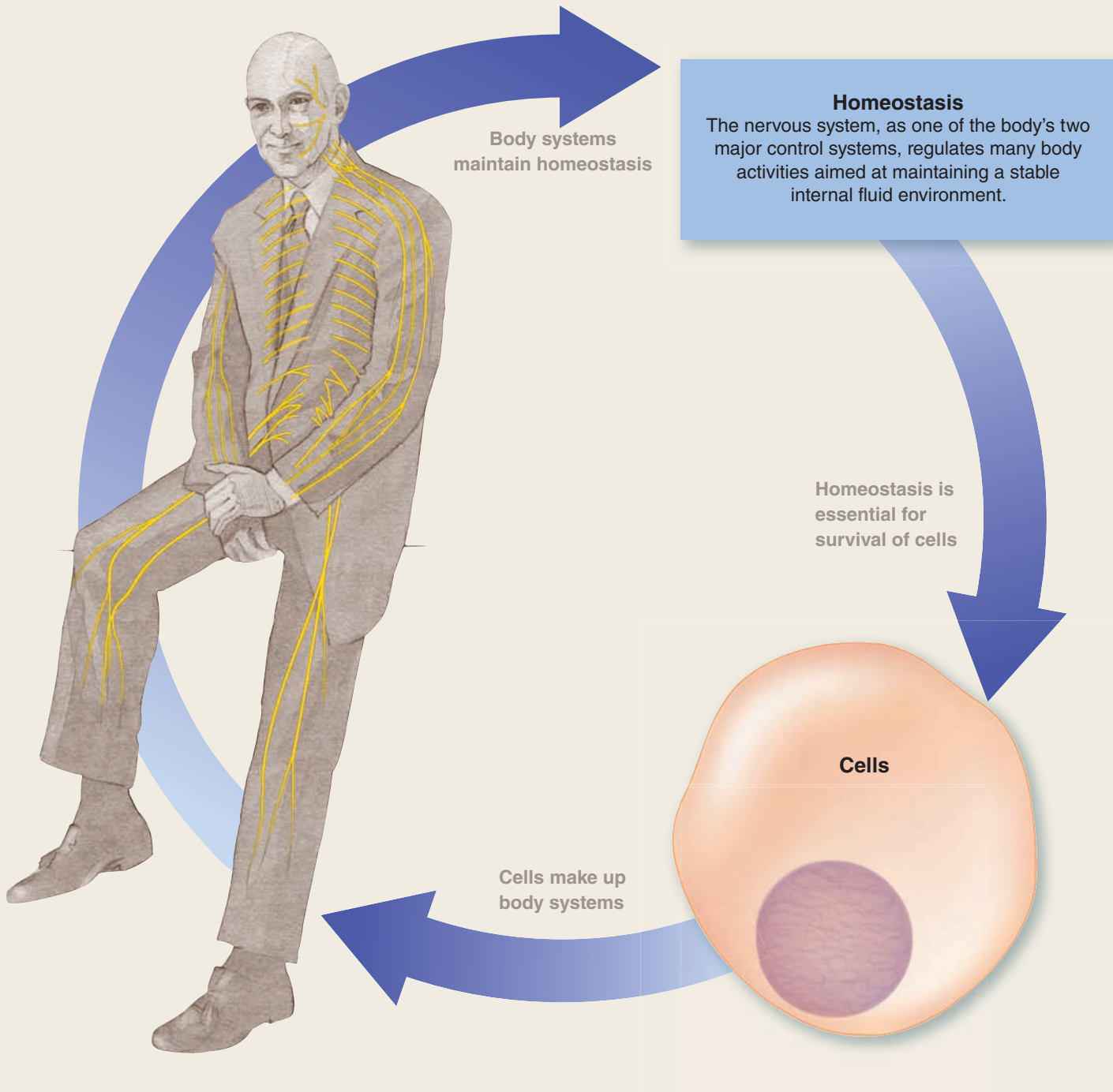
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-42)

Suzanne J. complained to her physician of bouts of dizziness. The physician asked her whether by "dizziness" she meant feeling lightheaded, as if she were going to faint (a condition known as *syncope*) or feeling that she or sur-

rounding objects in the room were spinning around (a condition known as *vertigo*). Why is this distinction important in the differential diagnosis of her condition? What are some possible causes of each of these symptoms?

## Nervous System (Peripheral Nervous System)



The nervous system, one of the two major regulatory systems of the body, consists of the central nervous system (CNS), composed of the brain and spinal cord, and the **peripheral nervous system (PNS)**, composed of the afferent and efferent fibers that relay signals between the CNS and the periphery (other parts of the body).

Once informed by the afferent division of the PNS that a change in the internal or the external environment is threatening homeostasis, the CNS makes appropriate adjustments to maintain homeostasis. The CNS makes these adjustments by controlling the activities of effectors (muscles and glands), transmitting signals *from* the CNS to these organs through the **efferent division** of the PNS.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Autonomic Nervous System**

Anatomy and neurotransmitters of autonomic fibers  
 Dominance patterns of sympathetic and parasympathetic systems  
 Autonomic receptor types  
 CNS control of autonomic activity

**Somatic Nervous System**

Motor neurons  
 Control of somatic activity

**Neuromuscular Junction**

Events at the neuromuscular junction  
 Role of acetylcholine  
 Role of acetylcholinesterase  
 Influence of specific chemical agents and diseases

# The Peripheral Nervous System: Efferent Division

## Autonomic Nervous System

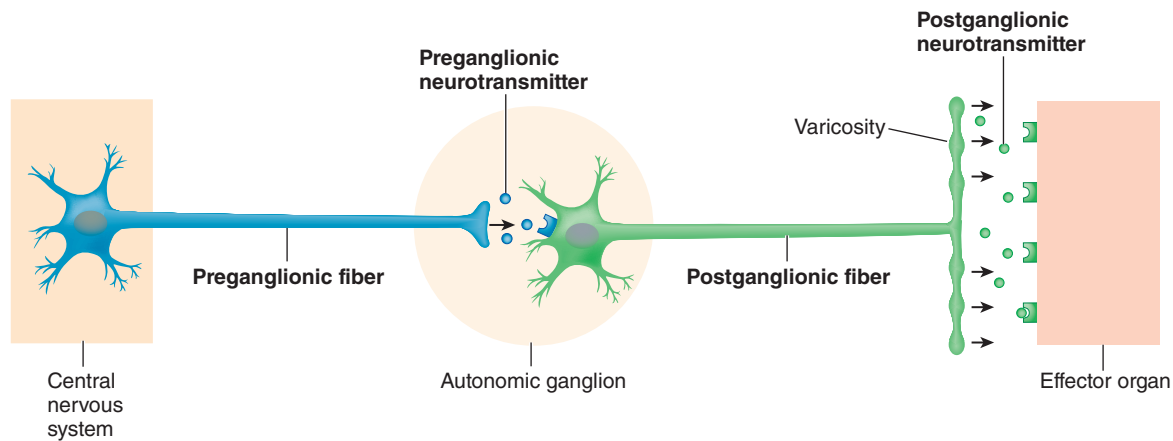
The efferent division of the peripheral nervous system (PNS) is the communication link by which the central nervous system (CNS) controls muscles and glands, the effector organs that carry out the intended effects or actions (typically contraction or secretion, respectively). The CNS regulates these effectors by initiating action potentials in the cell bodies of efferent neurons whose axons terminate on these organs. Cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, most exocrine glands, some endocrine glands, and adipose tissue (fat) are innervated by the **autonomic nervous system**, the involuntary branch of the peripheral efferent division. Skeletal muscle is innervated by the **somatic nervous system**, the branch of the efferent division subject to voluntary control. Much of this efferent output is directed toward maintaining homeostasis. The efferent output to skeletal muscles is also directed toward voluntarily controlled nonhomeostatic activities, such as riding a bicycle. (Many effector organs are also subject to hormonal control or to intrinsic control; see p. 11.)

How many different neurotransmitters would you guess are released from the various efferent neuronal terminals to elicit essentially all neurally controlled effector organ responses? Only two: acetylcholine and norepinephrine. Acting independently, these neurotransmitters bring about such diverse effects as salivary secretion, bladder contraction, and voluntary motor movements. These effects are a prime example of how the same chemical messenger may cause different responses in various tissues, depending on specialization of the effector organs.

### An autonomic nerve pathway consists of a two-neuron chain.

Each autonomic nerve pathway extending from the CNS to an innervated organ is a two-neuron chain (● Figure 7-1). The cell body of the first neuron in the series is located in the CNS. Its axon, the **preganglionic fiber**, synapses with the cell body of the second neuron, which lies within a ganglion. (Recall that a ganglion is a cluster of neuronal cell bodies outside the CNS.) The axon of the second neuron, the **postganglionic fiber**, innervates the effector organ.

The autonomic nervous system has two subdivisions—the **sympathetic** and the **parasympathetic nervous systems** (● Figure 7-2). Sympathetic nerve fibers originate in the thoracic (chest) and lumbar (abdominal) regions of the spinal cord (see p. 132). Most sympathetic preganglionic fibers are very short, synapsing with cell bodies of postganglionic neurons within ganglia that lie in a **sympathetic ganglion chain** located along either side of the spinal cord (see ● Figure 5-18, p. 133). Long postganglionic fibers originate in the ganglion chain and end on the effector organs. Some preganglionic fibers pass through the ganglion chain without synapsing. Instead, they end later in sympathetic **collateral ganglia** about halfway between the CNS and the innervated organs, with postganglionic fibers traveling the rest of the distance.



● **FIGURE 7-1** Autonomic nerve pathway.

Parasympathetic preganglionic fibers arise from the cranial (brain) and sacral (lower spinal cord) areas of the CNS. These fibers are longer than sympathetic preganglionic fibers because they do not end until they reach **terminal ganglia** that lie in or near the effector organs. Very short postganglionic fibers end on the cells of an organ itself.

#### Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers release acetylcholine; sympathetic ones release norepinephrine.

Sympathetic and parasympathetic preganglionic fibers release the same neurotransmitter, **acetylcholine (ACh)**, but the postganglionic endings of these two systems release different neurotransmitters (the neurotransmitters that influence the autonomic effectors). Parasympathetic postganglionic fibers release ACh. Accordingly, they, along with all autonomic preganglionic fibers, are called **cholinergic fibers**. Most sympathetic postganglionic fibers, in contrast, are called **adrenergic fibers** because they release **noradrenaline**, commonly known as **norepinephrine**.

Postganglionic autonomic fibers do not end in a single terminal swelling like a synaptic knob. Instead, the terminal branches of autonomic fibers have numerous swellings, or **varicosities**, that simultaneously release neurotransmitter over a large area of the innervated organ rather than on single cells (see ● Figures 7-1 and 8-26, p. 224). Because of this diffuse release of neurotransmitter, and because any resulting change in electrical activity is spread throughout a smooth or cardiac muscle mass via gap junctions (see p. 49), autonomic activity typically influences whole organs instead of discrete cells.

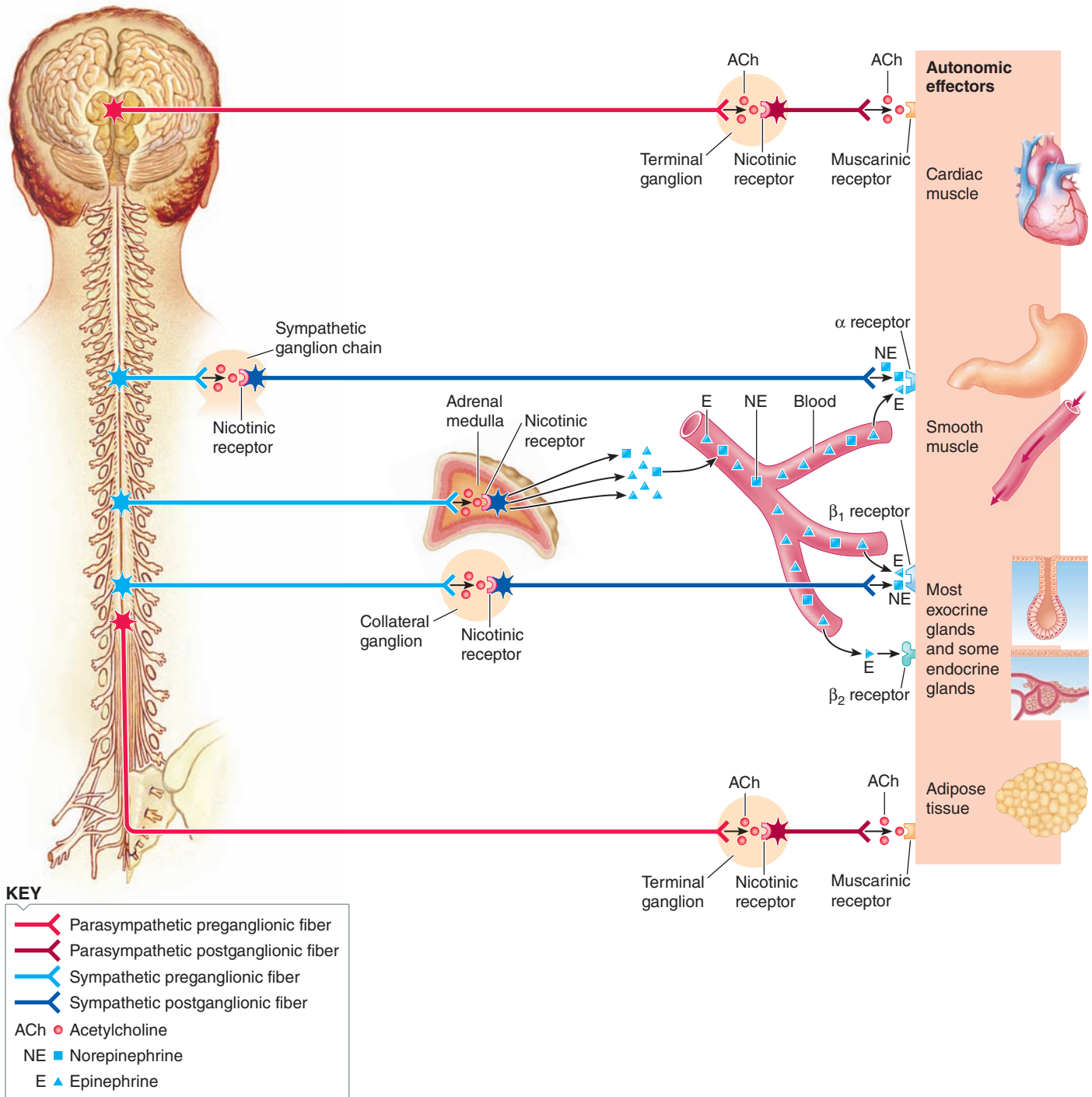
#### The sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems dually innervate most visceral organs.

Afferent information coming from the viscera (internal organs) usually does not reach the conscious level (see p. 143). Examples of visceral afferent information include input from the baroreceptors that monitor blood pressure and input from the chemoreceptors that monitor the protein or fat content of ingested food. This input is used to direct the activity of the autonomic efferent neurons. Autonomic efferent output regulates visceral activities such as circulation and digestion. Like vis-

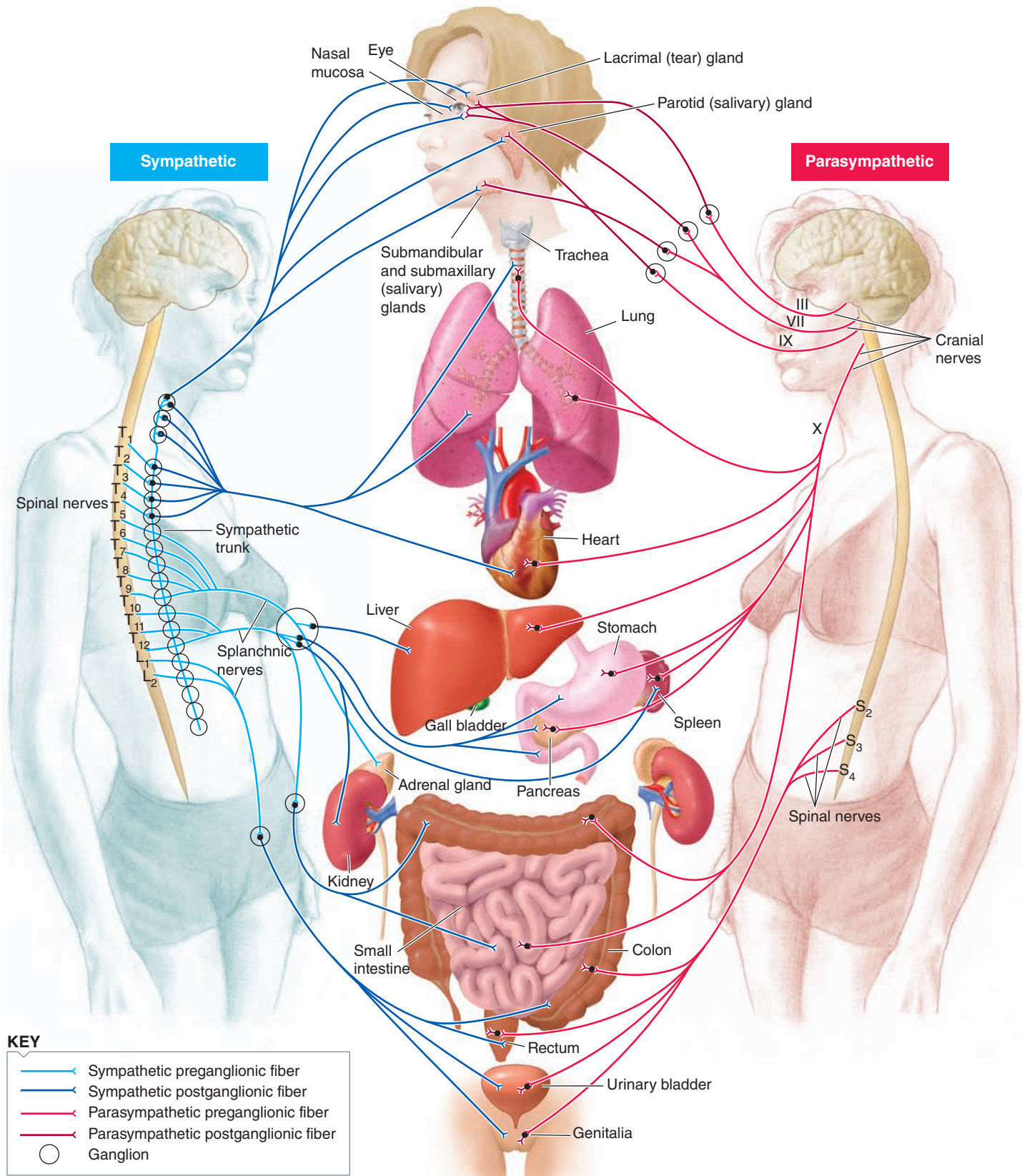
ceral afferent input, autonomic efferent output operates outside the realm of consciousness and voluntary control.

Most visceral organs are innervated by both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerve fibers (● Figure 7-3). Innervation of a single organ by both branches of the autonomic nervous system is known as **dual innervation** (*dual* means “pertaining to two”). ▲ Table 7-1 summarizes the major effects of these autonomic branches. Although the details of this array of autonomic responses are described more fully in later chapters that discuss the individual organs involved, you can consider several general concepts now. As you can see from the table, the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems generally exert opposite effects in a particular organ. Sympathetic stimulation increases the heart rate, whereas parasympathetic stimulation decreases it; sympathetic stimulation slows movement within the digestive tract, whereas parasympathetic stimulation enhances digestive motility. Note that both systems increase the activity of some organs and reduce the activity of others.

Rather than memorize a list such as in Table 7-1, it is better to logically deduce the actions of the two systems by first understanding the circumstances under which each system dominates. Usually, both systems are partially active; that is, some level of action potential activity exists in both the sympathetic and the parasympathetic fibers supplying a particular organ. This ongoing activity is called **sympathetic** or **parasympathetic tone**. Under given circumstances, activity of one division can dominate the other. *Sympathetic dominance* to a particular organ exists when the sympathetic fibers’ rate of firing to that organ increases above tone level, coupled with a simultaneous decrease below tone level in the parasympathetic fibers’ frequency of action potentials to the same organ. The reverse situation is true for *parasympathetic dominance*. The balance between sympathetic and parasympathetic activity can be shifted separately for individual organs to meet specific demands (for example, sympathetically induced dilation of the pupil in dim light; see p. 148), or a more generalized, widespread discharge of one autonomic system in favor of the other can be elicited to control bodywide functions. Massive widespread discharges take place more often in the sympathetic system. The value of



● **FIGURE 7-2 Autonomic nervous system.** The sympathetic nervous system, which originates in the thoracic and lumbar regions of the spinal cord, has short cholinergic (acetylcholine-releasing) preganglionic fibers and long adrenergic (norepinephrine-releasing) postganglionic fibers. The parasympathetic nervous system, which originates in the brain and sacral region of the spinal cord, has long cholinergic preganglionic fibers and short cholinergic postganglionic fibers. In most instances, sympathetic and parasympathetic postganglionic fibers innervate the same effector organs. The adrenal medulla is a modified sympathetic ganglion, which releases epinephrine (E) and norepinephrine (NE) into the blood. Nicotinic cholinergic receptors are located in the autonomic ganglia and adrenal medulla and respond to acetylcholine (ACh) released by all autonomic preganglionic fibers. Muscarinic cholinergic receptors are located at the autonomic effectors and respond to ACh released by parasympathetic postganglionic fibers.  $\alpha_1$ -,  $\alpha_2$ -,  $\beta_1$ -, and  $\beta_2$ -adrenergic receptors are variably located at the autonomic effectors and differentially respond to NE released by sympathetic postganglionic fibers and to E released by the adrenal medulla.



● **FIGURE 7-3** Structures innervated by the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems.

▲ **Table 7-1** Effects of Autonomic Nervous System on Various Organs

Organ	Effect of Sympathetic Stimulation	Effect of Parasympathetic Stimulation
<b>Heart</b>	Increases heart rate and increases force of contraction of the whole heart	Decreases heart rate and decreases force of contraction of the atria only
<b>Blood Vessels</b>	Constricts	Dilates vessels supplying the penis and the clitoris only
<b>Lungs</b>	Dilates the bronchioles (airways)	Constricts the bronchioles
<b>Digestive Tract</b>	Decreases motility (movement) Contracts sphincters (to prevent forward movement of tract contents) Inhibits digestive secretions	Increases motility Relaxes sphincters (to permit forward movement of tract contents) Stimulates digestive secretions
<b>Urinary Bladder</b>	Relaxes	Contracts (emptying)
<b>Eye</b>	Dilates the pupil Adjusts the eye for far vision	Constricts the pupil Adjusts the eye for near vision
<b>Liver (glycogen stores)</b>	Glycogenolysis (glucose is released)	None
<b>Adipose Cells (fat stores)</b>	Lipolysis (fatty acids are released)	None
<b>Exocrine Glands</b>		
<i>Exocrine pancreas</i>	Inhibits pancreatic exocrine secretion	Stimulates pancreatic exocrine secretion (important for digestion)
<i>Sweat glands</i>	Stimulates secretion by sweat glands important in cooling the body	Stimulates secretion by specialized sweat glands in the armpits and genital area
<i>Salivary glands</i>	Stimulates a small volume of thick saliva rich in mucus	Stimulates a large volume of watery saliva rich in enzymes
<b>Endocrine Glands</b>		
<i>Adrenal medulla</i>	Stimulates epinephrine and norepinephrine secretion	None
<i>Endocrine pancreas</i>	Inhibits insulin secretion	Stimulates insulin secretion
<b>Genitals</b>	Controls ejaculation (males) and orgasm contractions (both sexes)	Controls erection (penis in males and clitoris in females)
<b>Brain Activity</b>	Increases alertness	None

massive sympathetic discharge is clear, considering the circumstances during which this system usually dominates.

**TIMES OF SYMPATHETIC DOMINANCE** The sympathetic system promotes responses that prepare the body for strenuous physical activity in emergency or stressful situations, such as a physical threat from the outside. This response is typically referred to as a “**fight-or-flight**” response because the sympathetic system readies the body to fight against or flee from the threat. Think about the body resources needed in such circumstances. The heart beats more rapidly and more forcefully, blood pressure is elevated by generalized constriction (narrowing) of the blood vessels, respiratory airways dilate (open wide) to permit maximal airflow, glycogen (stored sugar) and fat stores are broken down to release extra fuel into the blood, and blood vessels supplying skeletal muscles dilate. All these responses are aimed at providing increased flow of oxygenated, nutrient-rich blood to the skeletal muscles in anticipation of strenuous physical activity. Furthermore, the pupils dilate and the eyes adjust for far vision, letting the person visually assess the entire threatening scene. Sweating is promoted in anticipation of excess heat production by the physical exertion. Be-

cause digestive and urinary activities are not essential in meeting the threat, the sympathetic system inhibits these activities.

**TIMES OF PARASYMPATHETIC DOMINANCE** The parasympathetic system dominates in quiet, relaxed situations. Under such non-threatening circumstances, the body can be concerned with its own “general housekeeping” activities, such as digestion. The parasympathetic system promotes such “**rest-and-digest**” bodily functions while slowing down those activities that are enhanced by the sympathetic system. For example, the heart does not need to beat rapidly and forcefully when the person is in a tranquil setting.

**ADVANTAGE OF DUAL AUTONOMIC INNERVATION** What is the advantage of dual innervation of organs with nerve fibers whose actions oppose each other? It enables precise control over an organ’s activity, like having both an accelerator and a brake to control the speed of a car. If an animal suddenly darts across the road as you are driving, you could eventually stop if you just took your foot off the accelerator, but you might stop too slowly to avoid hitting the animal. If you simultaneously apply the brake as you lift up on the accelerator, however, you can come to a more rapid,



controlled stop. In a similar manner, a sympathetically accelerated heart rate could gradually be reduced to normal following a stressful situation by decreasing the firing rate in the cardiac sympathetic nerve (letting up on the accelerator). However, the heart rate can be reduced more rapidly by simultaneously increasing activity in the parasympathetic supply to the heart (applying the brake). Indeed, the two divisions of the autonomic nervous system are usually reciprocally controlled; increased activity in one division is accompanied by a corresponding decrease in the other.

We now turn to the adrenal medulla, a unique endocrine component of the sympathetic nervous system.

### The adrenal medulla is a modified part of the sympathetic nervous system.

The two *adrenal glands* lie above the kidneys, one on each side (*ad* means “next to”; *renal* means “kidney”). The adrenal glands are endocrine glands, each with an outer portion, the *adrenal cortex*, and an inner portion, the *adrenal medulla* (see pp. 518 and 522–523). The **adrenal medulla** is a modified sympathetic ganglion that does not give rise to postganglionic fibers. Instead, on stimulation by the preganglionic fiber that originates in the CNS, it secretes hormones into the blood (see ● Figure 7-2). Not surprisingly, the hormones are identical or similar to postganglionic sympathetic neurotransmitters. About 20% of the adrenal medullary hormone output is norepinephrine, and the remaining 80% is the closely related **epinephrine (adrenaline)**. These hormones, in general, reinforce activity of the sympathetic nervous system.

### Several receptor types are available for each autonomic neurotransmitter.

Because each autonomic neurotransmitter and medullary hormone stimulates activity in some tissues but inhibits activity in others, the particular responses must depend on specialization

of the tissue cells rather than on properties of the chemicals themselves. Responsive tissue cells have one or more of several types of plasma membrane receptor proteins for these chemical messengers. Binding of a neurotransmitter to a receptor induces the tissue-specific response.

**CHOLINERGIC RECEPTORS** Researchers have identified two types of ACh (cholinergic) receptors—*nicotinic* and *muscarinic*—on the basis of their response to particular drugs. Nicotinic receptors are activated by the tobacco plant derivative nicotine, whereas muscarinic receptors are activated by the mushroom poison muscarine. **Nicotinic receptors** are found on the postganglionic cell bodies in all autonomic ganglia. These receptors respond to ACh released from both sympathetic and parasympathetic preganglionic fibers. **Muscarinic receptors** are found on effector cell membranes (smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands). They bind with ACh released from parasympathetic postganglionic fibers.

**ADRENERGIC RECEPTORS** The two major classes of adrenergic receptors for norepinephrine and epinephrine are **alpha ( $\alpha$ )** and **beta ( $\beta$ ) receptors**, which are further subclassified into  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$  and into  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  receptors, respectively (▲ Table 7-2). These various receptor types are distinctly distributed among sympathetically controlled effector organs as follows:

- $\alpha_1$  receptors are present on most sympathetic target tissues.
- $\alpha_2$  receptors are located mainly on digestive organs.
- $\beta_1$  receptors are restricted to the heart.
- $\beta_2$  receptors are found on smooth muscles of arterioles and bronchioles (small blood vessels and airways).

Different receptor types also have different affinities (attraction) for norepinephrine and epinephrine:

▲ Table 7-2 Properties of Autonomic Receptor Types

Receptor Type	Neurotransmitter Affinity	Effector(s) with This Receptor Type	Effect on Effector
<b>Nicotinic</b>	ACh from autonomic preganglionic fibers	All autonomic postganglionic cell bodies and the adrenal medulla	Excitatory
	ACh from motor neurons	Motor end plates of skeletal muscle fibers	Excitatory
<b>Muscarinic</b>	ACh from parasympathetic postganglionic fibers	Cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and most exocrine and some endocrine glands	Excitatory or inhibitory, depending on the effector
$\alpha_1$	Greater affinity for norepinephrine (from sympathetic postganglionic fibers) than for epinephrine (from the adrenal medulla)	Most sympathetic target tissues	Excitatory
$\alpha_2$	Greater affinity for norepinephrine than for epinephrine	Digestive organs	Inhibitory
$\beta_1$	Equal affinity for norepinephrine and for epinephrine	Heart	Excitatory
$\beta_2$	Affinity for epinephrine only	Smooth muscles of arterioles and bronchioles	Inhibitory

- $\alpha$  receptors of both subtypes have a greater attraction for norepinephrine than for epinephrine.
- $\beta_1$  receptors have about equal affinities for norepinephrine and epinephrine.
- $\beta_2$  receptors bind only with epinephrine.

Activation of  $\alpha_1$  receptors usually brings about an excitatory response in the effector organ—for example, arteriolar constriction caused by increased contraction of smooth muscle in the walls of these blood vessels. Activation of  $\alpha_2$  receptors, in contrast, brings about an inhibitory response in the effector, such as decreased smooth muscle contraction in the digestive tract. Stimulation of  $\beta_1$  receptors, which are found only in the heart, causes an excitatory response, namely, increased rate and force of cardiac contraction. The response to  $\beta_2$  receptor activation is generally inhibitory, such as arteriolar or bronchiolar dilation caused by relaxation of the smooth muscle in the walls of these tubular structures. As a quick rule of thumb, activation of the subscript “1” versions of adrenergic receptors leads to excitatory responses and activation of the subscript “2” versions leads to inhibitory responses.



**AUTONOMIC AGONISTS AND ANTAGONISTS** Drugs are available that selectively alter autonomic responses at each of the receptor types. An **agonist** binds to the neurotransmitter’s receptor and causes the same response as the neurotransmitter would. An **antagonist**, by contrast, binds with the receptor, preventing the neurotransmitter from binding and causing a response, yet the antagonist itself produces no response. Thus, an agonist mimics the neurotransmitter’s response and an antagonist blocks the neurotransmitter’s response. Some of these drugs are only of experimental interest, but others are important therapeutically. For example, *atropine* blocks the effect of ACh at muscarinic receptors but does not affect nicotinic receptors. Because ACh released at both parasympathetic and sympathetic preganglionic fibers combines with nicotinic receptors, blockage at nicotinic synapses would knock out both these autonomic branches. By acting selectively to interfere with ACh action only at muscarinic junctions, which are the sites of parasympathetic postganglionic action, atropine blocks parasympathetic effects but does not influence sympathetic activity. Doctors use this principle to suppress salivary and bronchial secretions before surgery and thus reduce the risk of a patient inhaling these secretions into the lungs.

Likewise, drugs that act selectively at  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -adrenergic receptor sites to either activate or block specific sympathetic effects are widely used. Following are several examples. *Salbutamol* selectively activates  $\beta_2$ -adrenergic receptors at low doses, making it possible to dilate the bronchioles in the treatment of asthma without undesirably stimulating the heart (which has mostly  $\beta_1$  receptors). By contrast, *metoprolol* selectively blocks  $\beta_1$ -adrenergic receptors and is prescribed to treat high blood pressure because it decreases the amount of blood the heart pumps into the blood vessels. Metoprolol does not affect  $\beta_2$  receptors and so has no effect on the bronchioles.

## Many regions of the CNS are involved in the control of autonomic activities.

Messages from the CNS are delivered to cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and glands via the autonomic nerves, but what regions of the CNS regulate autonomic output?

- Some autonomic reflexes, such as urination, defecation, and erection, are integrated at the spinal-cord level, but all these spinal reflexes are subject to control by higher levels of consciousness.
- The medulla within the brain stem is the region most directly responsible for autonomic output. Centers for controlling cardiovascular, respiratory, and digestive activity via the autonomic system are located there.
- The hypothalamus plays an important role in integrating the autonomic, somatic, and endocrine responses that automatically accompany various emotional and behavioral states. For example, the increased heart rate, blood pressure, and respiratory activity associated with anger or fear are brought about by the hypothalamus acting through the medulla.
- Autonomic activity can also be influenced by the prefrontal association cortex through its involvement with emotional expression characteristic of the individual’s personality. An example is blushing when embarrassed, which is caused by dilation of blood vessels supplying the skin of the cheeks. Such responses are mediated through hypothalamic–medullary pathways.

▲ Table 7-3 summarizes the main distinguishing features of the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems.

## Somatic Nervous System

### Motor neurons supply skeletal muscle.

**Motor neurons**, whose axons constitute the somatic nervous system, supply skeletal muscles and bring about movement (*motor* means “movement”). The cell bodies of almost all motor neurons are within the spinal cord. The only exception is that the cell bodies of motor neurons supplying muscles in the head are in the brain stem. Unlike the two-neuron chain of autonomic nerve fibers, the axon of a motor neuron is continuous from its origin in the CNS to its ending on skeletal muscle. Motor-neuron axon terminals release ACh, which brings about excitation and contraction of the innervated muscle cells. Motor neurons can only stimulate skeletal muscles, in contrast to autonomic fibers, which can either stimulate or inhibit their effector organs. Inhibition of skeletal muscle activity can be accomplished only within the CNS through inhibitory synaptic input to the dendrites and cell bodies of the motor neurons supplying that particular muscle.

### Motor neurons are influenced by many areas of the CNS involved in motor control.


The only way any other parts of the nervous system can influence skeletal muscle activity is by acting on motor neurons. Motor-neuron dendrites and cell bodies are influenced by many converging presynaptic inputs, both excitatory and inhibitory.

## ▲ Table 7-3 Distinguishing Features of Sympathetic Nervous System and Parasympathetic Nervous System

Feature	Sympathetic System	Parasympathetic System
<b>Origin of Preganglionic Fiber</b>	Thoracic and lumbar regions of the spinal cord	Brain and sacral region of the spinal cord
<b>Origin of Postganglionic Fiber (location of ganglion)</b>	Sympathetic ganglion chain (near the spinal cord) or collateral ganglia (about halfway between the spinal cord and the effector organs)	Terminal ganglia (in or near the effector organs)
<b>Length of Fibers</b>	Short preganglionic fibers and long postganglionic fibers	Long preganglionic fibers and short postganglionic fibers
<b>Effector Organs Innervated</b>	Cardiac muscle, almost all smooth muscle, most exocrine glands, and some endocrine glands	Cardiac muscle, most smooth muscle, most exocrine glands, and some endocrine glands
<b>Neurotransmitter Released</b>	Preganglionic: ACh Postganglionic: norepinephrine	Preganglionic: ACh Postganglionic: ACh
<b>Types of Receptors for Neurotransmitter</b>	For preganglionic neurotransmitter: nicotinic For postganglionic neurotransmitter: $\alpha_1$ , $\alpha_2$ , $\beta_1$ , and $\beta_2$	For preganglionic neurotransmitter: nicotinic For postganglionic neurotransmitter: muscarinic
<b>Dominance</b>	In emergency (“fight-or-flight”) situations during which the body prepares for strenuous physical activity	In quiet, relaxed (“rest-and-digest”) situations during which the body promotes “general housekeeping” activities such as digestion

Some of these inputs are part of spinal reflex pathways originating with peripheral sensory receptors. Others are part of descending pathways originating within the brain. Areas of the brain that exert control over skeletal muscle movements include the motor regions of the cortex, the basal nuclei, the cerebellum, and the brain stem (see pp. 117–119, 123, 128–130, and 214).

The somatic system is under voluntary control, but much of skeletal muscle activity involving posture, balance, and stereotypical movements is subconsciously controlled. You may decide you want to start walking, but you do not have to consciously bring about the alternate contraction and relaxation of the involved muscles because these movements are involuntarily coordinated by lower brain centers.

 The cell bodies of motor neurons may be selectively destroyed by **poliovirus**. The result is paralysis of the muscles innervated by the affected neurons. **Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)**, also known as **Lou Gehrig’s disease**, is the most common motor-neuron disease. This incurable condition is characterized by degeneration and eventual death of motor neurons. The underlying cause is uncertain. The result is gradual loss of motor control, progressive paralysis, and finally, death within 3 to 5 years of onset.

Before turning to the junction between a motor neuron and the muscle cells it innervates, we pull together in table form two groups of information we have been examining in this and preceding nervous system chapters. ▲ Table 7-4 summarizes the features of the two branches of the efferent division of the PNS: the autonomic nervous system and the somatic nervous system. ▲ Table 7-5 compares the three functional types of neurons: afferent neurons, efferent neurons, and interneurons.

## Neuromuscular Junction

**Motor neurons and skeletal muscle fibers are chemically linked at neuromuscular junctions.**

An action potential in a motor neuron is rapidly propagated from the cell body within the CNS to the skeletal muscle along the large myelinated axon (efferent fiber) of the neuron. As the axon approaches a muscle, it divides and loses its myelin sheath. Each of these axon terminals forms a special junction, a **neuromuscular junction**, with one of the many muscle cells that compose the whole muscle (● Figure 7-4). Each branch innervates only one muscle cell; therefore, each muscle cell has only one neuromuscular junction. A single muscle cell, called a **muscle fiber**, is long and cylindrical. Within a neuromuscular junction, the axon terminal splits into multiple fine branches, each of which ends in an enlarged knoblike structure called the **terminal button**. The entire axon terminal ending (all the fine branches with terminal buttons) fits into a shallow depression, or groove, in the underlying muscle fiber. This specialized underlying portion of the muscle cell membrane is called the **motor end plate** (● Figure 7-4).

**ACh is the neuromuscular junction neurotransmitter.**

Nerve and muscle cells do not come into direct contact at a neuromuscular junction. The space, or cleft, between these two structures is too large for electrical transmission of an impulse between them (that is, an action potential cannot “jump” that far). Just as at a neuronal synapse (see p. 85), a chemical messenger carries the signal between a terminal button and the muscle fiber. This neurotransmitter is ACh.

▲ **Table 7-4 Comparison of the Autonomic Nervous System and the Somatic Nervous System**

Feature	Autonomic Nervous System	Somatic Nervous System
<b>Site of Origin</b>	Brain or spinal cord	Spinal cord for most; those supplying muscles in the head originate in the brain
<b>Number of Neurons from Origin in CNS to Effector Organ</b>	Two-neuron chain (preganglionic and postganglionic)	Single neuron (motor neuron)
<b>Organs Innervated</b>	Cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and glands	Skeletal muscle
<b>Type of Innervation</b>	Most effector organs dually innervated by the two antagonistic branches of this system (sympathetic and parasympathetic)	Effector organs innervated only by motor neurons
<b>Neurotransmitter at Effector Organs</b>	May be ACh (parasympathetic terminals) or norepinephrine (sympathetic terminals)	Only ACh
<b>Effects on Effector Organs</b>	Stimulation or inhibition (antagonistic actions of two branches)	Stimulation only (inhibition is possible only centrally through inhibitory postsynaptic potentials on dendrites and the cell body of the motor neuron)
<b>Type of Control</b>	Involuntary control	Voluntary control, although much activity is subconsciously coordinated
<b>Higher Centers Involved in Control</b>	Spinal cord, medulla, hypothalamus, and prefrontal association cortex	Spinal cord, motor cortex, basal nuclei, cerebellum, and brain stem

**RELEASE OF ACh AT THE NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTION** Each terminal button contains thousands of vesicles that store ACh. Propagation of an action potential to the axon terminal (● Figure 7-5, step 1, p. 190) triggers the opening of voltage-gated calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) channels in all of its terminal buttons (see p. 72). We focus on one terminal button, but the same events take place concurrently at all terminal buttons of a given neuromuscular junction. When  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels open,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffuses into the terminal button from its higher extracellular concentration (step 2), which in turn causes the release of ACh by exocytosis from several hundred of the vesicles into the cleft (step 3).

**FORMATION OF AN END-PLATE POTENTIAL** The released ACh diffuses across the cleft and binds with specific chemically gated receptor-channels, which are specialized membrane proteins unique to the motor end-plate portion of the muscle fiber membrane (● Figure 7-5, step 4). (These cholinergic receptors are of the nicotinic type.) Binding with ACh causes these receptor-channels to open. They are nonspecific cation channels that permit both sodium ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) and potassium ( $\text{K}^+$ ) ions, but no anions, traffic through them (step 5). Because the permeability of the end-plate membrane to  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  on opening of these channels is essentially equal, the relative movement of these ions through the channels depends on their electrochemical driving forces. Recall that at resting potential the net driving force for  $\text{Na}^+$  is much greater than that for  $\text{K}^+$  because the resting potential is much closer to the  $\text{K}^+$  than to the  $\text{Na}^+$  equilibrium potential. Both the concentration and the electrical gradients for  $\text{Na}^+$  are inward, whereas the outward concentration gradient for  $\text{K}^+$  is almost, but not quite, balanced by the opposing inward electrical gradient. As a result, when ACh triggers the opening of these

channels, considerably more  $\text{Na}^+$  moves inward than  $\text{K}^+$  moves outward, depolarizing the motor end plate. This potential change is called the **end-plate potential (EPP)**. It is a graded potential similar to an excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP; see p. 87), except that an EPP is considerably larger.

**INITIATION OF AN ACTION POTENTIAL** The motor end-plate region itself does not have a threshold potential, so an action potential cannot be initiated at this site. However, an EPP brings about an action potential in the rest of the muscle fiber as follows: The neuromuscular junction is usually in the middle of the long, cylindrical muscle fiber. When an EPP takes place, local current flow occurs between the depolarized end plate and the adjacent, resting cell membrane in both directions (● Figure 7-5, step 6), opening voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels and thus reducing the potential to threshold in the adjacent areas (step 7). The subsequent action potential initiated at these sites propagates throughout the muscle fiber membrane by contiguous conduction (step 8) (see p. 80). The spread runs in both directions, away from the motor end plate toward both ends of the fiber. This electrical activity triggers contraction of the muscle fiber. Thus, by means of ACh, an action potential in a motor neuron brings about an action potential and subsequent contraction in the muscle fiber.

Unlike synaptic transmission, an EPP is normally large enough to cause an action potential in the muscle cell. Therefore, one-to-one transmission of an action potential typically occurs at a neuromuscular junction; one action potential in a nerve cell triggers one action potential in a muscle cell that it innervates. Other comparisons of neuromuscular junctions with synapses can be found in ▲ Table 7-6, p. 191.

## ▲ Table 7-5 Comparison of Neuron Types

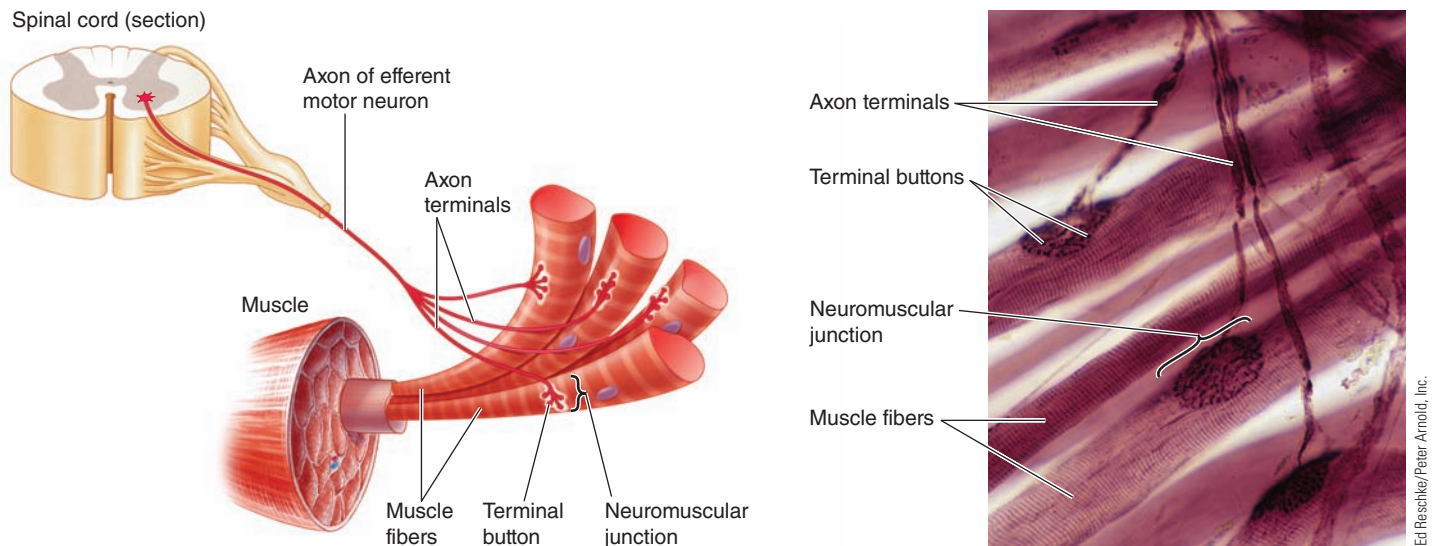
Feature	Afferent Neuron	EFFERENT NEURON		
		Autonomic Nervous System	Somatic Nervous System	Interneuron
<b>Origin, Structure, and Location</b>	Receptor at the peripheral ending; elongated peripheral axon travels in the peripheral nerve; cell body located in the dorsal root ganglion; short central axon enters the spinal cord	Two-neuron chain; first neuron (preganglionic fiber) originates in the CNS and terminates on a ganglion; second neuron (postganglionic fiber) originates in the ganglion and terminates on the effector organ	Cell body of the motor neuron in the spinal cord; long axon travels in the peripheral nerve and terminates on the effector organ	Lies entirely within the CNS; some cell bodies originate in the brain, with long axons traveling down the spinal cord in descending pathways; some originate in the spinal cord, with long axons traveling up the cord to the brain in ascending pathways; others form short local connections
<b>Termination</b>	Interneurons*	Effector organs (cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, glands)	Effector organs (skeletal muscle)	Other interneurons and efferent neurons
<b>Function</b>	Carries information about the external and the internal environment to the CNS	Carries instructions from the CNS to the effector organs	Carries instructions from the CNS to the effector organs	Processes and integrates afferent input; initiates and coordinates efferent output; is responsible for thought and other higher mental functions
<b>Convergence of Input on the Cell Body</b>	No (only input is through receptor)	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Effect of Input to the Neuron</b>	Can only be excited (through a receptor potential induced by a stimulus; must reach threshold for an action potential)	Can be excited or inhibited (through EPSPs** and IPSPs** at the first neuron; must reach threshold for an action potential)	Can be excited or inhibited (through EPSPs and IPSPs; must reach threshold for an action potential)	Can be excited or inhibited (through EPSPs and IPSPs; must reach threshold for an action potential)
<b>Site of Action Potential Initiation</b>	First excitable portion of the membrane adjacent to the receptor	Axon hillock	Axon hillock	Axon hillock
<b>Divergence of Output</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Effect of Output on Effector Organ</b>	Only excites	Postganglionic fiber excites or inhibits	Only excites	Excites or inhibits

\*Except in the stretch reflex, where afferent neurons terminate on efferent neurons.  
 \*\*EPSPs: excitatory postsynaptic potentials; IPSPs: inhibitory postsynaptic potentials.

### Acetylcholinesterase ends ACh activity at the neuromuscular junction.

To ensure purposeful movement, a muscle cell's response to stimulation by its motor neuron must be switched off promptly when there is no longer a signal from the motor neuron. The muscle cell's electrical response is turned off by an enzyme in the motor end-plate membrane, **acetylcholinesterase (AChE)**, which inactivates ACh.

As a result of diffusion, many of the released ACh molecules come into contact with and bind to receptor-channels on the surface of the motor end-plate membrane. However, some of the ACh molecules bind with AChE, which is also at the end-plate surface. Being quickly inactivated, this ACh never contributes to the EPP. The ACh that does bind with receptor-channels does so briefly (for about 1 millionth of a second) and then detaches. Some of the detached ACh molecules quickly



● **FIGURE 7-4 Motor neuron innervating skeletal muscle cells.** The cell body of a motor neuron originates in the ventral gray matter of the spinal cord. The axon (somatic efferent fiber) exits through the ventral root and travels through a spinal nerve to the skeletal muscle it innervates. When the axon reaches a skeletal muscle, it divides into many axon terminals, each of which forms a neuromuscular junction with a single muscle cell (muscle fiber). The axon terminal within a neuromuscular junction further divides into fine branches, each of which ends in an enlarged terminal button. Note that the muscle fibers innervated by a single axon terminal are dispersed throughout the muscle but for simplicity are grouped together in this figure.

rebind with receptor-channels, keeping these end-plate channels open, but some randomly contact AChE instead and are inactivated (● Figure 7-5, step 9). As this process repeats, more ACh is inactivated until all of it has been removed from the cleft within a few milliseconds after its release. ACh removal ends the EPP, so the remainder of the muscle cell membrane returns to resting potential. Now the muscle cell can relax. Or, if sustained contraction is essential for the desired movement, another motor-neuron action potential leads to the release of more ACh, which keeps the contractile process going. By removing contraction-inducing ACh from the motor end plate, AChE permits the choice of allowing relaxation to take place (no more ACh released) or keeping the contraction going (more ACh released), depending on the body's momentary needs.

### The neuromuscular junction is vulnerable to several chemical agents and diseases.



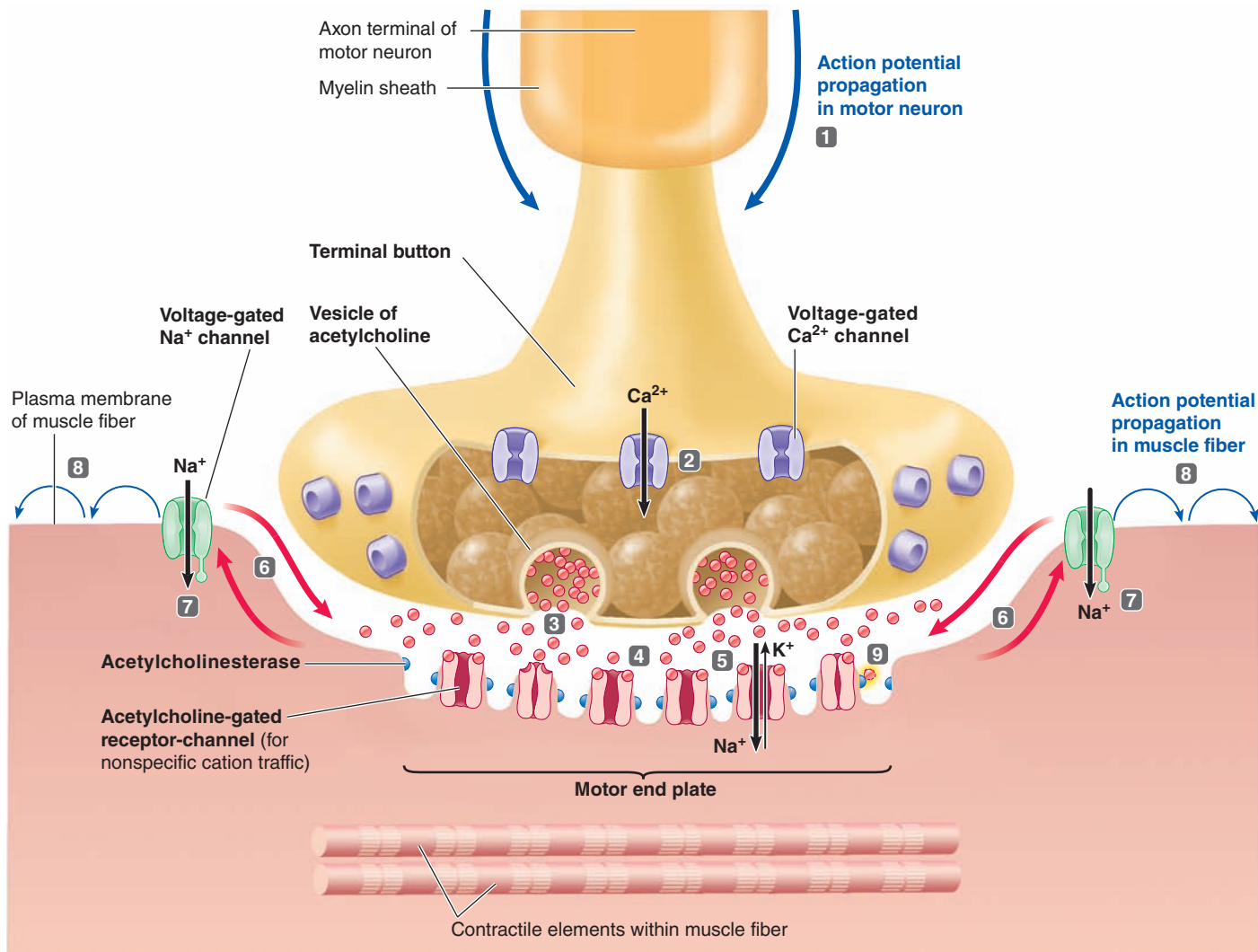
Several chemical agents and diseases affect the neuromuscular junction by acting at different sites in the transmission process, as the following examples illustrate.

**BLACK WIDOW SPIDER VENOM CAUSES EXPLOSIVE RELEASE OF ACh** The venom of black widow spiders exerts its deadly effect by triggering explosive release of ACh from the storage vesicles, not only at neuromuscular junctions but at all cholinergic sites. All cholinergic sites undergo prolonged depolarization, the most harmful result of which is respiratory failure. Breathing is

accomplished by alternate contraction and relaxation of skeletal muscles, particularly the diaphragm. Respiratory paralysis occurs as a result of prolonged depolarization of the diaphragm. During this so-called *depolarization block*, the voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels are trapped in their inactivated state (see p. 76). This depolarization block prohibits the initiation of new action potentials and resultant contraction of the diaphragm. As a consequence, the victim cannot breathe.

**BOTULINUM TOXIN BLOCKS RELEASE OF ACh** Botulinum toxin, in contrast, exerts its lethal blow by blocking the release of ACh from the terminal button in response to a motor-neuron action potential. *Clostridium botulinum* toxin causes **botulism**, a form of food poisoning. When this toxin is consumed, it prevents muscles from responding to nerve impulses. Death is due to respiratory failure caused by inability to contract the diaphragm. Botulinum toxin is one of the most lethal poisons known; ingesting less than 0.0001 mg can kill an adult human. (See the boxed feature on p. 191, Beyond the Basics, to learn about a surprising new wrinkle in the botulinum toxin story.)

**CURARE BLOCKS ACTION OF ACh AT RECEPTOR-CHANNELS** Other chemicals interfere with neuromuscular junction activity by blocking the effect of released ACh. The best-known example is the antagonist **curare**, which reversibly binds to the ACh receptor-channels on the motor end plate. Unlike ACh, however, curare does not alter membrane permeability, nor is it inactivated by AChE. When curare occupies ACh receptor-channels, ACh cannot combine with and open these channels



- 1 An action potential in a motor neuron is propagated to the axon terminal (terminal button).
- 2 This local action potential triggers the opening of voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels and the subsequent entry of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the terminal button.
- 3  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  triggers the release of acetylcholine (ACh) by exocytosis from a portion of the vesicles.
- 4 ACh diffuses across the space separating the nerve and muscle cells and binds with receptor-channels specific for it on the motor end plate of the muscle cell membrane.
- 5 This binding brings about the opening of these nonspecific cation channels, leading to a relatively large movement of  $\text{Na}^{+}$  into the muscle cell compared to a smaller movement of  $\text{K}^{+}$  outward.

● **FIGURE 7-5** Events at a neuromuscular junction.

- 6 The result is an end-plate potential. Local current flow occurs between the depolarized end plate and the adjacent membrane.
- 7 This local current flow opens voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^{+}$  channels in the adjacent membrane.
- 8 The resultant  $\text{Na}^{+}$  entry reduces the potential to threshold, initiating an action potential, which is propagated throughout the muscle fiber.
- 9 ACh is subsequently destroyed by acetylcholinesterase, an enzyme located on the motor end-plate membrane, terminating the muscle cell's response.

to permit the ionic movement responsible for an EPP. Consequently, because muscle action potentials cannot occur in response to nerve impulses to these muscles, paralysis ensues. When enough curare is present to block a significant number of ACh receptor-channels, the person dies from respiratory paralysis caused by inability to contract the diaphragm. In the past, some peoples used curare as a deadly arrowhead poison.

**ORGANOPHOSPHATES PREVENT INACTIVATION OF ACh** Organophosphates are a group of chemicals that modify neuromuscular junction activity in yet another way—namely, by irreversibly inhibiting AChE. Inhibition of AChE prevents the inactivation of released ACh. Death from organophosphates is also due to respiratory failure because the diaphragm cannot repolarize and return to resting conditions, then be

## Beyond the Basics

The powerful toxin produced by *Clostridium botulinum* causes the deadly food poisoning botulism. Yet this dreaded, highly lethal poison has been put to use as a treatment for alleviating specific movement disorders and, more recently, has been added to the list of tools that cosmetic surgeons use to fight wrinkles.

During the last several decades, botulinum toxin, marketed in therapeutic doses as *Botox*, has offered welcome relief to people with painful, disruptive neuromuscular diseases known categorically as **dystonias**. These conditions are characterized by spasms (excessive, sustained, involuntarily produced muscle contractions) that result in involuntary twisting or abnormal postures, depending on the body part affected. For example, painful neck spasms that twist the head to one side result from *spasmodic torticollis* (*tortus* means “twisted”; *collum* means “neck”), the most common dystonia. The problem is believed to arise from too little inhibitory input compared to excitatory input to the motor neurons that supply the affected muscle. The reasons for this imbalance in motor-neuron input are unknown. The end result of excessive motor-neuron activation is sustained, disabling contraction of the muscle supplied by the overactive motor neurons. Fortunately, injecting minuscule

## Botulinum Toxin's Reputation Gets a Facelift

amounts of botulinum toxin into the affected muscle causes a reversible, partial paralysis of the muscle. Botulinum toxin interferes with the release of muscle-contraction-causing ACh from the overactive motor neurons at the neuromuscular junctions in the treated muscle. The goal is to inject just enough botulinum toxin to alleviate the troublesome spasmodic contractions but not enough to eliminate the normal contractions needed for ordinary movements. The therapeutic dose is considerably less than the amount of toxin needed to induce even mild symptoms of botulinum poisoning. Botulinum toxin is eventually cleared away, so its muscle-relaxing effects wear off after 3 to 6 months, at which time the treatment must be repeated.

The first dystonia for which Botox was approved as a treatment by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) was *blepharospasm* (*blepharo* means “eyelid”). In this condition, sustained and involuntary contractions of the muscles around the eye nearly permanently close the eyelids.

Botulinum toxin's potential as a treatment option for cosmetic surgeons was

accidentally discovered when physicians noted that injections used to counter abnormal eye muscle contractions also smoothed the appearance of wrinkles in the treated areas. It turns out that frown lines, crow's feet, and furrowed brows are caused by facial muscles that have become overactivated, or permanently contracted, as a result of years of performing certain repetitive facial expressions. By relaxing these muscles, botulinum toxin temporarily smoothes out these age-related wrinkles. Botox now has FDA approval as an antiwrinkle treatment. The agent is considered an excellent alternative to facelift surgery for combating lines and creases. This treatment is among the most rapidly growing cosmetic procedures in the United States, especially in the entertainment industry and in high-fashion circles. However, as with its therapeutic use to treat dystonias, the costly injections of botulinum toxin must be repeated every 3 to 6 months to maintain the desired effect in appearance. Furthermore, Botox does not work against the fine, crinkly wrinkles associated with years of excessive sun exposure, because these wrinkles are caused by skin damage, not by contracted muscles.

## ▲ Table 7-6 Comparison of a Synapse and a Neuromuscular Junction

Similarities	Differences
Both consist of two excitable cells separated by a narrow cleft that prevents direct transmission of electrical activity between them.	A synapse is a junction between two neurons. A neuromuscular junction exists between a motor neuron and a skeletal muscle fiber.
Axon terminals store chemical messengers (neurotransmitters) that are released by the $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced exocytosis of storage vesicles when an action potential reaches the terminal.	One-to-one transmission of action potentials occurs at a neuromuscular junction, whereas one action potential in a presynaptic neuron cannot by itself bring about an action potential in a postsynaptic neuron. An action potential in a postsynaptic neuron occurs only when summation of EPSPs brings the membrane to threshold.
Binding of the neurotransmitter with receptor-channels in the membrane of the cell underlying the axon terminal opens the channels, permitting ionic movements that alter the membrane potential of the cell.	A neuromuscular junction is always excitatory (an EPP); a synapse may be excitatory (an EPSP) or inhibitory (an IPSP).
The resultant change in membrane potential is a graded potential.	Inhibition of skeletal muscles cannot be accomplished at the neuromuscular junction; this can occur only in the CNS through IPSPs at dendrites and the cell body of the motor neuron.



stimulated to contract again to bring in a fresh breath of air. These toxic agents are used in some pesticides and military nerve gases.

### MYASTHENIA GRAVIS INACTIVATES ACh RECEPTOR-CHANNELS

**Myasthenia gravis**, a disease involving the neuromuscular junction, is characterized by extreme muscular weakness (*myasthenia* means “muscular weakness”; *gravis* means “severe”). It is an autoimmune (meaning “immunity against self”) condition, in which the body erroneously produces antibodies against its own motor end-plate ACh receptor-channels. Thus, not all released ACh molecules can find a functioning receptor-channel with which to bind. As a result, AChE destroys much of the ACh before it ever has a chance to interact with a receptor-channel and contribute to the EPP.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



The nervous system, along with the other major regulatory system, the endocrine system, controls most muscle contractions and gland secretions. Whereas the afferent division of the PNS detects and carries information to the CNS for processing and decision making, the efferent division of the PNS

carries directives from the CNS to the effector organs (muscles and glands), which carry out the intended response. Much of this efferent output is directed toward maintaining homeostasis.

The autonomic nervous system, which is the efferent branch that innervates smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands, plays a major role in the following homeostatic activities, among others:

- regulating blood pressure
- controlling digestive juice secretion and digestive tract contractions that mix ingested food with the digestive juices
- controlling sweating to help maintain body temperature

The somatic nervous system, the efferent branch that innervates skeletal muscle, contributes to homeostasis by stimulating the following activities:

- skeletal muscle contractions that enable the body to move in relation to the external environment, contributing to homeostasis by moving the body toward food or away from harm
- contractions that accomplish breathing to maintain appropriate levels of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the body
- shivering, which is important in maintaining body temperature

In addition, efferent output to skeletal muscles accomplishes many movements that are not aimed at maintaining a stable internal environment but nevertheless enrich our lives and enable us to engage in activities that contribute to society, such as dancing, building bridges, or performing surgery.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-42)

1. Sympathetic preganglionic fibers begin in the thoracic and lumbar segments of the spinal cord. (*True or false?*)
2. Action potentials are transmitted on a one-to-one basis at both a neuromuscular junction and a synapse. (*True or false?*)
3. The sympathetic nervous system
  - a. is always excitatory.
  - b. innervates only tissues concerned with protecting the body against challenges from the outside environment.
  - c. has short preganglionic and long postganglionic fibers.
  - d. is part of the afferent division of the PNS.
  - e. is part of the somatic nervous system.
4. Acetylcholinesterase
  - a. is stored in vesicles in the terminal button.
  - b. combines with receptor-channels on the motor end plate to bring about an end-plate potential.
  - c. is inhibited by organophosphates.
  - d. is the chemical transmitter at the neuromuscular junction.
  - e. paralyzes skeletal muscle by strongly binding with acetylcholine (ACh) receptor-channels.
5. The two divisions of the autonomic nervous system are the \_\_\_\_\_ nervous system, which dominates in “fight-or-flight” situations, and the \_\_\_\_\_ nervous system, which dominates in “rest-and-digest” situations.
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a modified sympathetic ganglion that does not give rise to postganglionic fibers but instead secretes hormones similar or identical to sympathetic postganglionic neurotransmitters into the blood.
7. Using the answer code on the right, identify the autonomic neurotransmitter being described:
  - \_\_\_ 1. is secreted by all preganglionic fibers
  - \_\_\_ 2. is secreted by sympathetic postganglionic fibers
  - \_\_\_ 3. is secreted by parasympathetic postganglionic fibers
  - \_\_\_ 4. is secreted by the adrenal medulla
  - \_\_\_ 5. is secreted by motor neurons
  - \_\_\_ 6. binds to muscarinic or nicotinic receptors
  - \_\_\_ 7. binds to  $\alpha$  or  $\beta$  receptors

8. Using the answer code on the right, indicate which type of efferent output is being described:
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ___ 1. is composed of two-neuron chains   | (a) characteristic of the somatic nervous system   |
| ___ 2. innervates cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and glands                       | (b) characteristic of the autonomic nervous system |
| ___ 3. innervates skeletal muscle   |  |
| ___ 4. consists of the axons of motor neurons                                     |  |
| ___ 5. exerts either an excitatory or an inhibitory effect on its effector organs |  |
| ___ 6. dually innervates its effector organs                                      |  |
| ___ 7. exerts only an excitatory effect on its effector organs                    |  |

### Essay Questions

1. What is the advantage of dual innervation of many organs by both branches of the autonomic nervous system?
2. Distinguish among the following types of receptors: nicotinic receptors, muscarinic receptors,  $\alpha_1$  receptors,  $\alpha_2$  receptors,  $\beta_1$  receptors, and  $\beta_2$  receptors.
3. What regions of the CNS regulate autonomic output?
4. Describe the sequence of events that occurs at a neuromuscular junction.
5. Discuss the effect each of the following has at the neuromuscular junction: black widow spider venom, botulinum toxin, curare, myasthenia gravis, and organophosphates.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-42)

1. Explain why epinephrine, which causes arteriolar constriction (narrowing) in most tissues, is often administered in conjunction with local anesthetics.
2. Would skeletal muscle activity be affected by atropine (see p. 185)? Why or why not?
3. Considering that you can voluntarily control the emptying of your urinary bladder by contracting (preventing emptying) or relaxing (permitting emptying) your external urethral sphincter, a ring of muscle that guards

the exit from the bladder, of what type of muscle is this sphincter composed and what branch of the nervous system supplies it?

4. The venom of certain poisonous snakes contains  $\alpha$ -bungarotoxin, which binds tenaciously to ACh receptor sites on the motor end-plate membrane. What would the resultant symptoms be?
5. Explain how destruction of motor neurons by poliovirus or amyotrophic lateral sclerosis can be fatal.

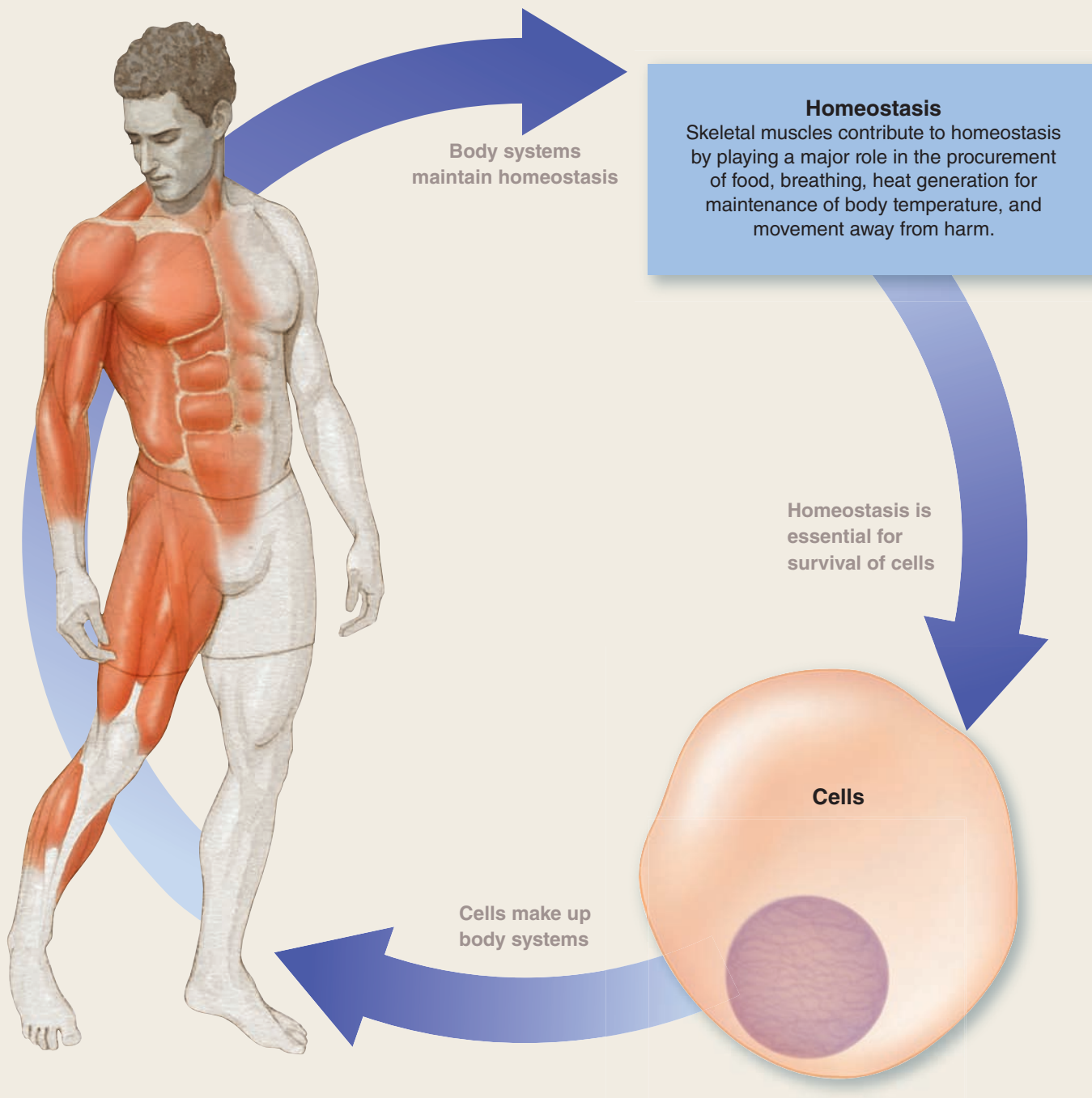
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-42)

Christopher K. experienced chest pains when he climbed the stairs to his fourth-floor office or played tennis but had no symptoms when not physically exerting himself. His condition was diagnosed as *angina pectoris* (*angina* means “pain”; *pectoris* means “chest”), heart pain that occurs whenever the blood supply to the heart muscle cannot meet the muscle’s need for oxygen delivery. This condition usually is caused by narrowing of the blood vessels supplying the heart by cholesterol-containing deposits. Most people with this condition do not have any pain at rest but experience bouts of pain whenever the heart’s need for

oxygen increases, such as during exercise or emotionally stressful situations that increase sympathetic nervous activity. Christopher obtains immediate relief of angina attacks by promptly taking a vasodilator drug such as *nitroglycerin*, which relaxes the smooth muscle in the walls of his narrowed heart vessels. Consequently, the vessels open more widely and more blood can flow through them. For prolonged treatment, his doctor has indicated that Christopher will experience fewer and less severe angina attacks if he takes a  $\beta_1$ -blocker drug, such as *metoprolol*, regularly. Explain why.

## Muscular System



**Muscles** are the contraction specialists of the body. **Skeletal muscle** attaches to the skeleton. Contraction of skeletal muscles moves bones to which they are attached, allowing the body to perform various motor activities. Skeletal muscles that support homeostasis include those important in acquiring, chewing, and swallowing food and those essential for breathing. Also, heat-generating muscle contractions are important in regulating temperature. Skeletal muscles are further used to move the body away from harm. Finally, skeletal muscle contractions are impor-

tant for nonhomeostatic activities, such as dancing or operating a computer.

The body has two other muscle types. **Smooth muscle** is found in the walls of hollow organs and tubes. Controlled contraction of smooth muscle regulates movement of blood through blood vessels, food through the digestive tract, air through respiratory airways, and urine to the exterior. **Cardiac muscle** is found only in the walls of the heart, whose contraction pumps life-sustaining blood throughout the body.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Structure of Skeletal Muscle**

Levels of organization in muscle  
Thick- and thin-filament composition

**Molecular Basis of Skeletal Muscle Contraction**

Sliding filament mechanism  
Excitation–contraction coupling

**Skeletal Muscle Mechanics**

Gradation of contraction: recruitment, summation, and length–tension relationship

Isotonic and isometric contractions  
Load–velocity relationship

**Skeletal Muscle Metabolism and Fiber Types**

Pathways supplying ATP  
Muscle fatigue  
Excess postexercise oxygen consumption  
Muscle fiber types

**Control of Motor Movement**

Inputs influencing motor-neuron output  
Local reflexes, muscle spindles, and Golgi tendon organs

**Smooth and Cardiac Muscle**

Multiunit and single-unit smooth muscle  
Myogenic activity  
Factors modifying smooth muscle activity; gradation of smooth muscle contraction  
Cardiac muscle

# Muscle Physiology

## Structure of Skeletal Muscle

Muscle comprises the largest group of tissues in the body, accounting for approximately half of the body's weight. By moving specialized intracellular components, muscle cells can develop tension and shorten, that is, contract. Through their highly developed ability to contract, groups of muscle cells working together within a muscle can produce movement and do work. Controlled contraction of muscles allows (1) purposeful movement of the whole body or parts of the body (such as walking or waving your hand), (2) manipulation of external objects (such as driving a car or moving a piece of furniture), (3) propulsion of contents through hollow internal organs (such as circulation of blood or movement of a meal through the digestive tract), and (4) emptying the contents of certain organs to the external environment (such as urination or giving birth).

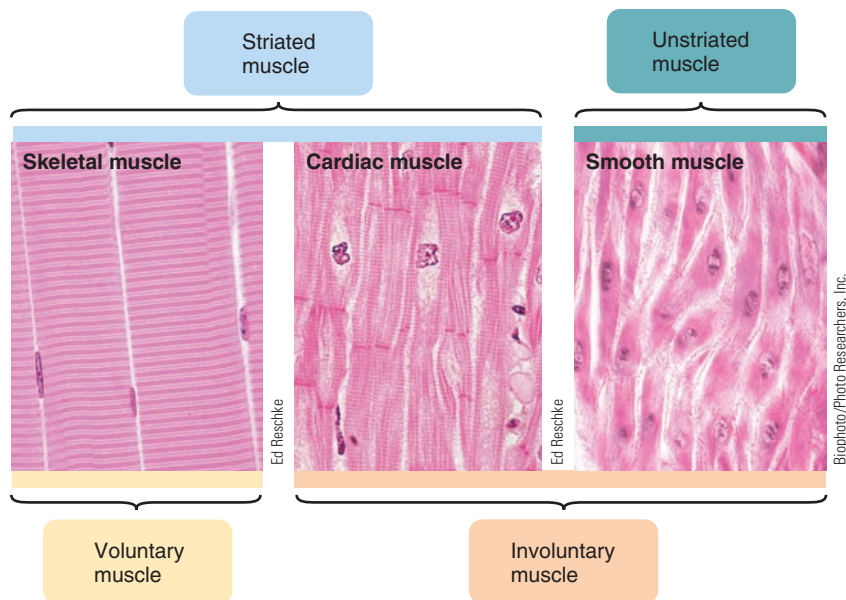
Recall that the three types of muscle are *skeletal*, *cardiac*, and *smooth* (see p. 3). Although these muscle types are structurally and functionally distinct, they can be classified in two ways according to common characteristics (● Figure 8-1). First, muscles are categorized as *striated* (skeletal and cardiac muscle) or *unstriated* (smooth muscle), depending on whether alternating dark and light bands, or striations (stripes), can be seen when the muscle is viewed under a light microscope. Second, muscles are categorized as *voluntary* (skeletal muscle) or *involuntary* (cardiac and smooth muscle), depending on whether they are innervated by the somatic nervous system and subject to voluntary control or are innervated by the autonomic nervous system and not subject to voluntary control, respectively (see p. 179). Although skeletal muscle is categorized as voluntary, because it can be consciously controlled, much skeletal muscle activity is also subject to subconscious, involuntary regulation, such as that related to posture, balance, and stereotypical movements like walking.

Most of this chapter is a detailed examination of the most abundant and best understood muscle, skeletal muscle. Skeletal muscles make up the muscular system. We begin with a discussion of skeletal muscle structure and then examine how it works from the molecular level, through the cell level, and finally to the whole muscle. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the unique properties of smooth and cardiac muscle in comparison to skeletal muscle. Smooth muscle appears throughout the body systems as a component of hollow organs and tubes. Cardiac muscle is found only in the heart.

**Skeletal muscle fibers are striated by a highly organized internal arrangement.**

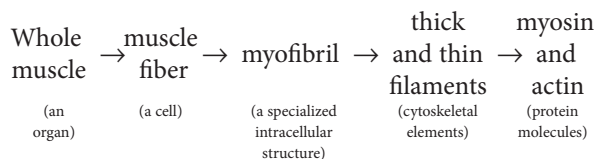
A single skeletal muscle cell, known as a **muscle fiber**, is relatively large, elongated, and cylinder shaped. A skeletal muscle consists of a number of muscle fibers lying parallel to one another and bundled together by connective tissue (● Figure 8-2a). The fibers usually extend the entire length of the muscle.

A skeletal muscle fiber contains numerous **myofibrils**, which are cylindrical intracellular structures that extend the entire length of the muscle fiber (● Figure 8-2b). Myofibrils are specialized contractile elements that constitute 80% of the volume of the



● **FIGURE 8-1** Categorization of muscle.

muscle fiber. Each myofibril consists of a regular arrangement of highly organized cytoskeletal elements—the thick and the thin filaments (● Figure 8-2c). The **thick filaments** are special assemblies of the protein *myosin*, whereas the thin filaments are made up primarily of the protein *actin* (● Figure 8-2d). The levels of organization in a skeletal muscle can be summarized as follows:



Viewed with an electron microscope, a myofibril displays alternating dark bands (the A bands) and light bands (the I bands) (● Figure 8-3a). The bands of all the myofibrils lined up parallel to one another collectively produce the striated or striped appearance of a skeletal muscle fiber visible under a light microscope (● Figure 8-3b). Alternate stacked sets of thick and thin filaments that slightly overlap one another are responsible for the A and I bands (see ● Figure 8-2c).

An **A band** is made up of a stacked set of thick filaments along with the portions of the thin filaments that overlap on both ends of the thick filaments. The thick filaments lie only within the A band and extend its entire width; that is, the two ends of the thick filaments within a stack define the outer limits of a given A band. The lighter area within the middle of the A band, where the thin filaments do not reach, is the **H zone**. Only the central portions of the thick filaments are found in this region. A system of supporting proteins holds the thick filaments together vertically within each stack. These proteins can be seen as the **M line**, which extends vertically down the middle of the A band.

An **I band** consists of the remaining portion of the thin filaments that do not project into the A band. Visible in the

middle of each I band is a dense, vertical **Z line**. The area between two Z lines is called a **sarcomere**, which is the functional unit of skeletal muscle. A **functional unit** of any organ is the smallest component that can perform all functions of that organ. Accordingly, a sarcomere is the smallest component of a muscle fiber that can contract. The Z line is a flat, cytoskeletal disc that connects the thin filaments of two adjoining sarcomeres. Each relaxed sarcomere consists of one whole A band and half of each of the two I bands located on either side. An I band contains only thin filaments from two adjacent sarcomeres but not the entire length of these filaments.

With an electron microscope, fine **cross bridges** can be seen extending from each thick filament toward the surrounding thin filaments in the areas where the thick and thin filaments overlap (see ● Figure 8-2c). To give you an idea of the magnitude of these filaments, a single muscle fiber may contain an estimated 16 billion thick and 32 billion thin filaments, all arranged in a precise pattern within the myofibrils.

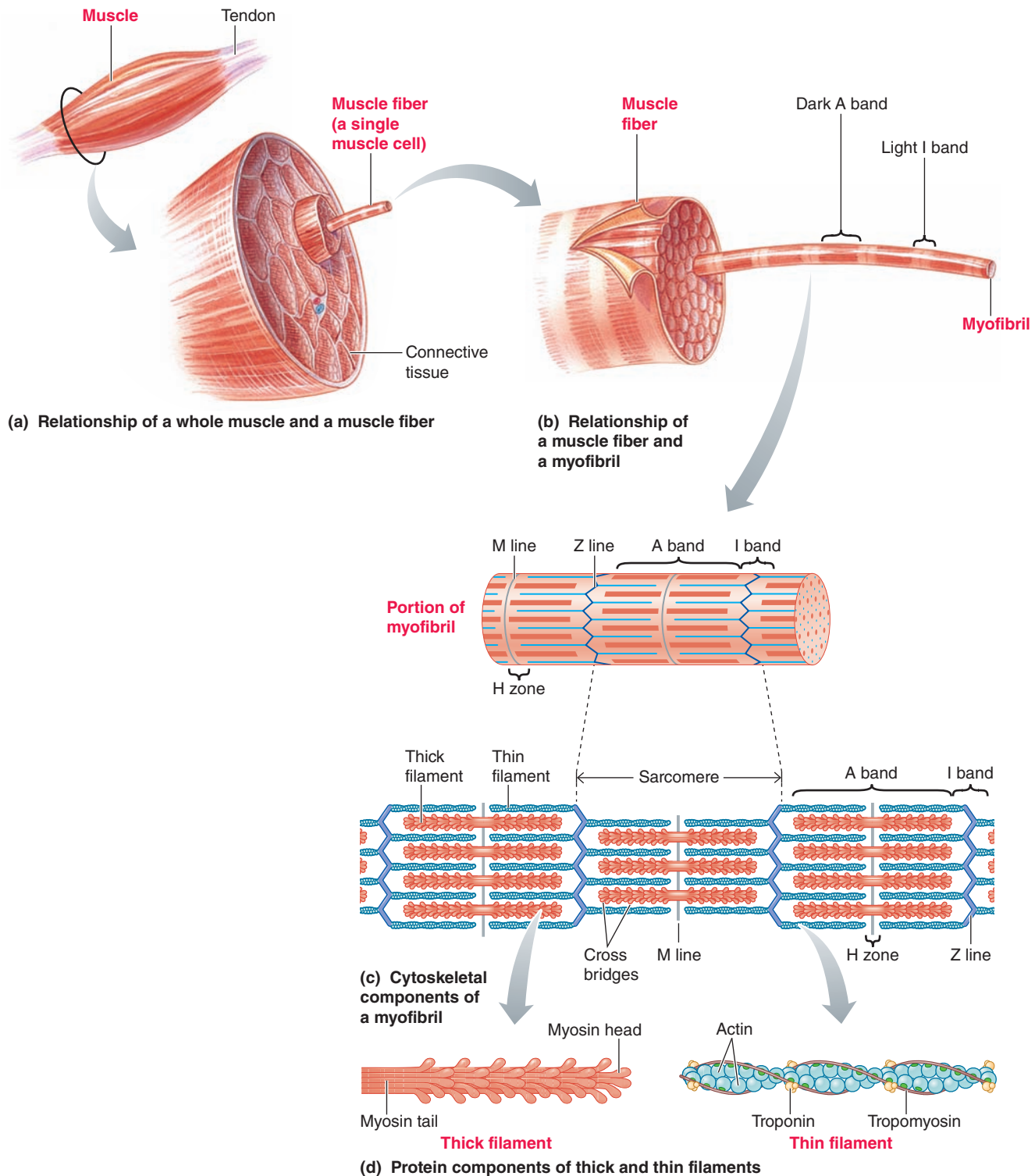
Not shown in the figure, single strands of a giant, highly elastic protein known as **titin** extend in both directions from the M line along the length of the thick filament to the Z lines at opposite ends of the sarcomere. Titin, the largest protein in the body, contributes extensively to a muscle's elasticity, the ability to spring back to its resting length after having been stretched.

### Myosin forms the thick filaments.

Each thick filament has several hundred myosin molecules packed together in a specific arrangement. A **myosin** molecule is a protein consisting of two identical subunits, each shaped somewhat like a golf club (● Figure 8-4a). The protein's tail ends are intertwined around each other like golf-club shafts twisted together, with the two globular heads projecting out at one end. The two halves of each thick filament are mirror images made up of myosin molecules lying lengthwise in a regular, staggered array, with their tails oriented toward the center of the filament and their globular heads protruding outward at regular intervals (● Figure 8-4b). These heads form the cross bridges between thick and thin filaments. Each cross bridge has two sites crucial to the contractile process: (1) an actin binding site and (2) a myosin ATPase (ATP-splitting) site.

### Actin is the main structural component of the thin filaments.

Thin filaments consist of three proteins: *actin*, *tropomyosin*, and *troponin* (● Figure 8-5). **Actin** molecules, the primary structural proteins of the thin filament, are spherical. The backbone of a thin filament is formed by actin molecules joined into two strands and twisted together, like two intertwined strings of pearls. Each actin molecule has a special binding site for attaching with a myosin cross bridge. By a mechanism to be described shortly, binding of myosin and actin at the cross bridges leads

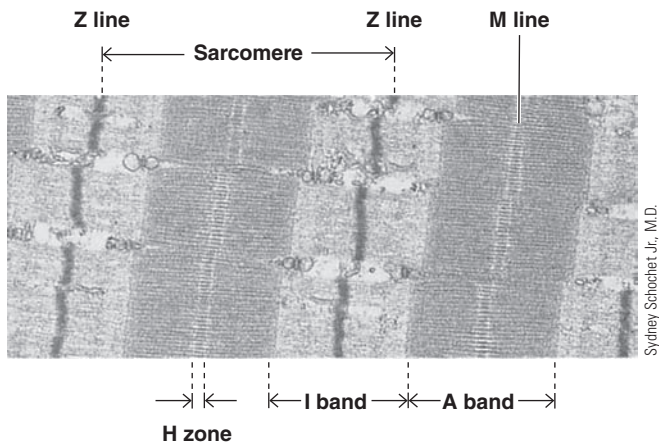


● **FIGURE 8-2** Levels of organization in a skeletal muscle.

to contraction of the muscle fiber. Myosin and actin are not unique to muscle cells, but these proteins are more abundant and more highly organized in muscle cells (see pp. 37–38).

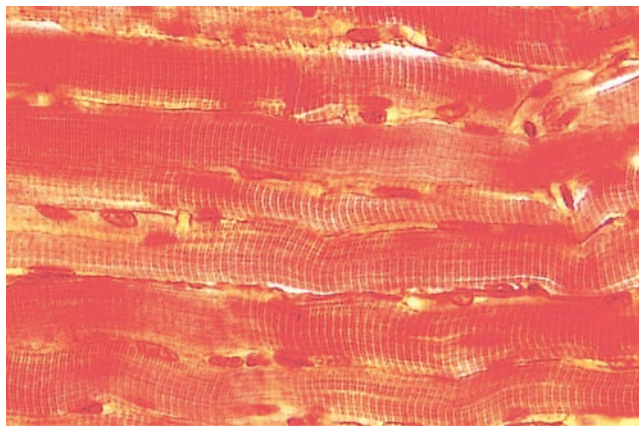
In a relaxed muscle fiber, contraction does not take place; actin cannot bind with cross bridges because of the way the two other types of protein—tropomyosin and troponin—are positioned within the thin filament. **Tropomyosin** molecules are

threadlike proteins that lie end to end alongside the groove of the actin spiral. In this position, tropomyosin covers the actin sites that bind with the cross bridges, blocking the interaction that leads to muscle contraction. The other thin-filament component, **troponin**, is a protein complex made of three subunits: one binds to tropomyosin, one binds to actin, and a third can bind with calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ).



Sydney Schochet Jr., M.D.

(a) Electron micrograph of a myofibril



M. Abbey/Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc.

(b) Low-power light micrograph of skeletal muscle fibers

● **FIGURE 8-3** Microscope view of skeletal muscle components. (a) Note the A and I bands. (b) Note the striated appearance.

Source: (a) Reprinted with permission from Sydney Schochet Jr., M.D., Professor, Department of Pathology, School of Medicine, West Virginia University, *Diagnostic Pathology of Skeletal Muscle and Nerve*, Fig. 1-13 (Stamford, CT: Appleton & Lange, 1986).

When troponin is not bound to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , this protein stabilizes tropomyosin in its blocking position over actin's cross-bridge binding sites (● Figure 8-6a). When  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds to troponin, the shape of this protein is changed in such a way that tropomyosin slips away from its blocking position (● Figure 8-6b). With tropomyosin out of the way, actin and myosin can bind and interact at the cross bridges, resulting in muscle contraction.

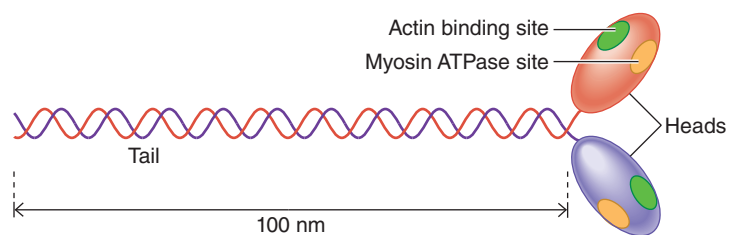
## Molecular Basis of Skeletal Muscle Contraction

Several important links in the contractile process remain to be discussed. How does cross-bridge interaction between actin and myosin bring about muscle contraction? How does a muscle action potential trigger this contractile process? What is the source of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that physically repositions troponin and tropomyosin to permit cross-bridge binding? We turn our attention to these topics in this section.

### During contraction, cycles of cross-bridge binding and bending pull the thin filaments inward.

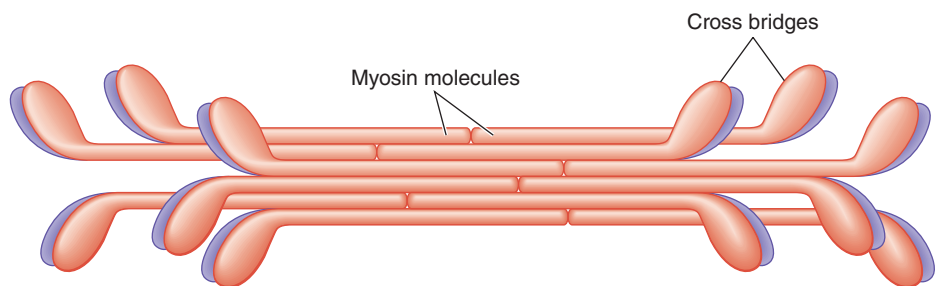
Cross-bridge interaction between actin and myosin brings about muscle contraction by means of the sliding filament mechanism.

**SLIDING FILAMENT MECHANISM** The thin filaments on each side of a sarcomere slide inward over the stationary thick filaments toward the A band's center during contraction (● Figure 8-7). As they slide inward, the thin filaments pull the Z lines to which they are attached closer together, so the sarcomere shortens. As all sarcomeres throughout the muscle fiber's length shorten simultaneously, the entire fiber shortens. This is the **sliding fila-**

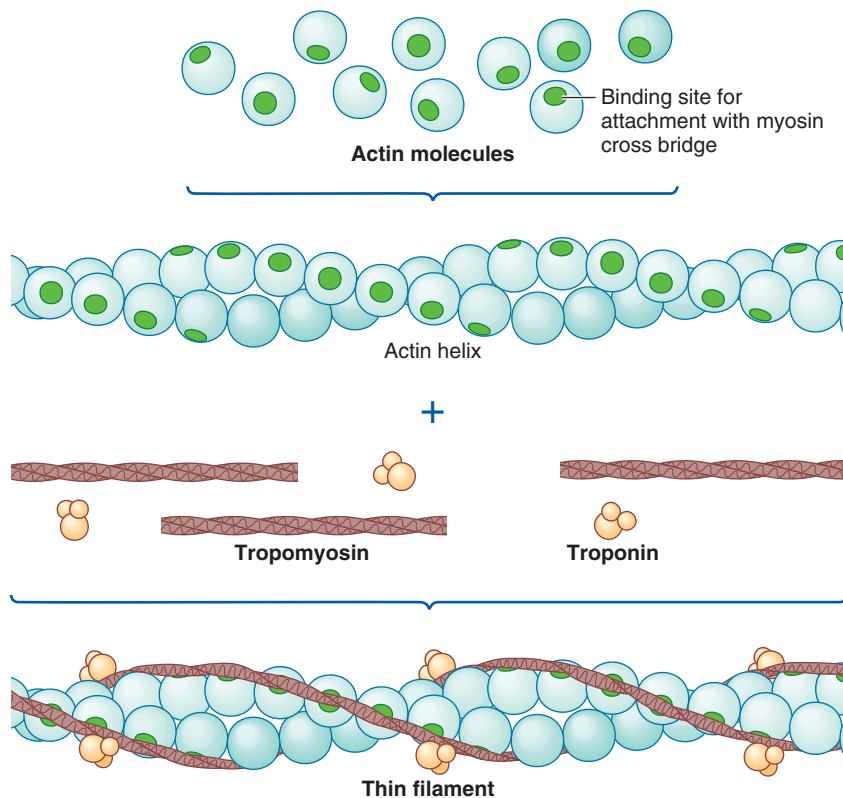


(a) Myosin molecule

● **FIGURE 8-4** Structure of myosin molecules and their organization within a thick filament. (a) Each myosin molecule consists of two identical, golf-club-shaped subunits with their tails intertwined and their globular heads, each of which contains an actin binding site and a myosin ATPase site, projecting out at one end. (b) A thick filament is made up of myosin molecules lying lengthwise parallel to one another. Half are oriented in one direction, and half are in the opposite direction. The globular heads, which protrude at regular intervals along the thick filament, form the cross bridges.



(b) Thick filament



● **FIGURE 8-5 Composition of a thin filament.** The main structural component of a thin filament is two chains of spherical actin molecules that are twisted together. Troponin molecules (which consist of three small, spherical subunits) and threadlike tropomyosin molecules are arranged to form a ribbon that lies alongside the groove of the actin helix and physically covers the binding sites on actin molecules for attachment with myosin cross bridges. (The thin filaments shown here are not drawn in proportion to the thick filaments in Figure 8-4. Thick filaments are two to three times larger in diameter than thin filaments.)

**ment mechanism** of muscle contraction. The H zone, in the center of the A band where the thin filaments do not reach, becomes smaller as the thin filaments approach each other when they slide more deeply inward. The I band, which consists of the portions of the thin filaments that do not overlap with the thick filaments, narrows as the thin filaments further overlap the thick filaments during their inward slide. The thin filaments themselves do not change length during muscle fiber shortening. The width of the A band remains unchanged during contraction because its width is determined by the length of the thick filaments, and the thick filaments do not change length during the shortening process. Note that neither the thick nor the thin filaments decrease in length to shorten the sarcomere. Instead, contraction is accomplished by the thin filaments from the opposite sides of each sarcomere sliding closer together between the thick filaments.

**POWER STROKE** During contraction, with the troponin and tropomyosin “chaperones” pulled out of the way by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , the myosin cross bridges from a thick filament can bind with the actin molecules in the surrounding thin filaments. Let us concentrate on a single cross-bridge interaction (● Figure 8-8a). The two myosin heads of each myosin molecule act independently, with only one head attaching to actin at a given time.

When myosin and actin make contact at a cross bridge, the bridge changes shape, bending inward as if it were on a hinge and “stroking” toward the center of the sarcomere, like the stroking of a boat oar. This **power stroke** of a cross bridge pulls inward the thin filament to which it is attached. A single power stroke pulls the thin filament inward only a small percentage of the total shortening distance. Repeated cycles of cross-bridge binding and bending complete the shortening.

At the end of one cross-bridge cycle, the link between the myosin cross bridge and the actin molecule breaks. The cross bridge returns to its original shape and binds to the next actin molecule behind its previous actin partner. The cross bridge bends again to pull the thin filament in farther and then detaches and repeats the cycle. Repeated cycles of cross-bridge power strokes successively pull in the thin filaments, much like pulling in a rope hand over hand.

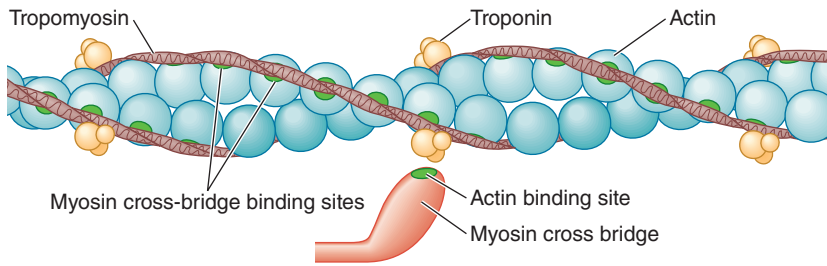
Because of the way myosin molecules are oriented within a thick filament (● Figure 8-8b), all cross bridges stroke toward the center of the sarcomere so that all surrounding thin filaments on each end of the sarcomere are pulled inward simultaneously. The cross bridges do not all stroke in unison, however. At any time during contraction, part of the cross bridges are attached to the thin filaments and are stroking while others are returning to their original conformation in preparation for binding with another actin molecule. Thus, some cross bridges are “holding on” to the thin filaments, whereas others “let go” to bind with new actin. Were it not for this asynchronous cycling of the cross bridges, the thin filaments would slip back toward their resting position between strokes.

How does muscle excitation switch on this cross-bridge cycling? The term **excitation–contraction coupling** refers to the series of events linking muscle excitation (the presence of an action potential in a muscle fiber) to muscle contraction (cross-bridge activity that causes the thin filaments to slide closer together to produce sarcomere shortening). We now turn to excitation–contraction coupling.

### **Ca<sup>2+</sup> is the link between excitation and contraction.**

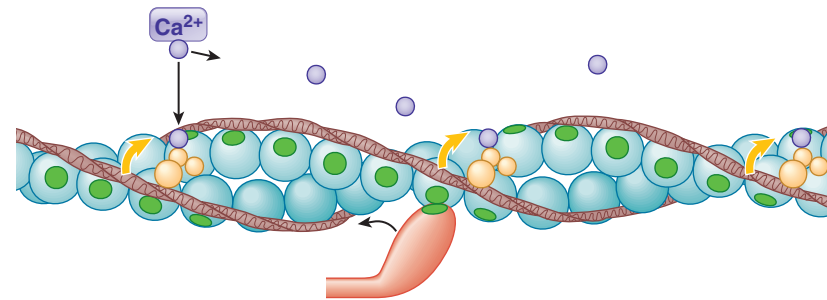
Skeletal muscles are stimulated to contract by release of acetylcholine (ACh) at neuromuscular junctions between motor-neuron terminal buttons and muscle fibers. Recall that binding of ACh with the motor end plate of a muscle fiber brings about permeability changes in the muscle fiber, resulting in an action potential that is conducted over the entire surface of the muscle cell membrane (see p. 187). Two membranous structures within the muscle fiber play an important role in linking this excitation to contraction—*transverse tubules* and the *sarcoplasmic reticulum*. Let us examine the structure and function of each.





**(a) Relaxed**

- 1 No excitation.
- 2 No cross-bridge binding because cross-bridge binding site on actin is physically covered by troponin–tropomyosin complex.
- 3 Muscle fiber is relaxed.



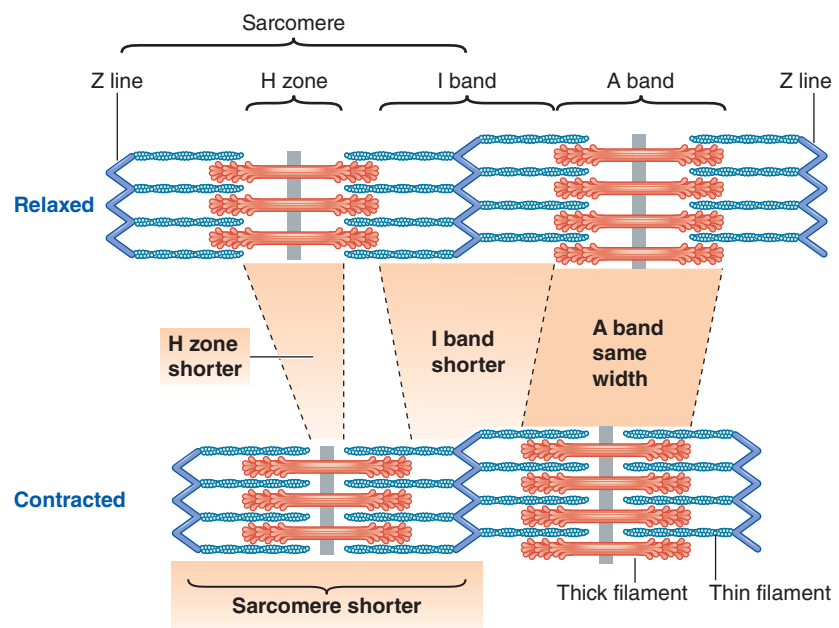
**(b) Excited**

- 1 Muscle fiber is excited and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released.
- 2 Released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds with troponin, pulling troponin–tropomyosin complex aside to expose cross-bridge binding site.
- 3 Cross-bridge binding occurs.
- 4 Binding of actin and myosin cross bridge triggers power stroke that pulls thin filament inward during contraction.

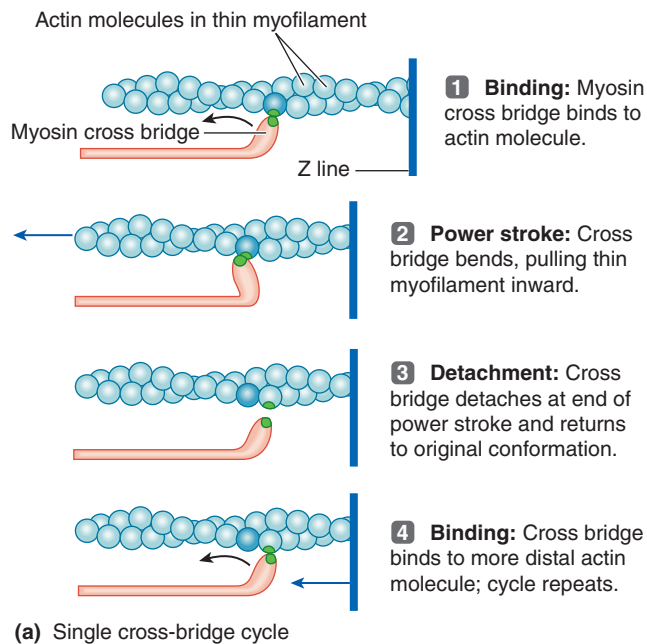
● **FIGURE 8-6** Role of calcium in turning on cross bridges.

**SPREAD OF THE ACTION POTENTIAL DOWN THE TRANSVERSE TUBULES** At each junction of an A band and I band, the surface membrane dips into the muscle fiber to form a **transverse tubule (T tubule)**, which runs perpendicularly from the surface of the muscle cell membrane into the central portions of the muscle fiber (● Figure 8-9). Because the T tubule membrane is continuous with the surface membrane, an action potential on the surface membrane spreads down into the T tubule, rapidly transmitting the surface electrical activity into the interior of the fiber. The presence of a local action potential in the T tubules leads to permeability changes in a separate membranous network within the muscle fiber, the sarcoplasmic reticulum.

**RELEASE OF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  FROM THE SARCOPLASMIC RETICULUM** The **sarcoplasmic reticulum** is a modified endoplasmic reticulum (see p. 22) that consists of a fine network of interconnected membrane-enclosed compartments surrounding each myofibril like a mesh sleeve (● Figure 8-9). This membranous network encircles the myofibril throughout its length but is not continuous. Separate segments of sarcoplasmic reticulum are wrapped around each A band and each I band. The ends of each segment expand to form saclike regions, the **lateral sacs**, which are separated from the adjacent T tubules by a slight gap. The lateral sacs store  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Spread of an action potential down a T tubule triggers the opening of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -release channels in the adjacent lateral sacs on each side.  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released into the cytosol from the lateral sacs through all these open  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -release channels. By slightly



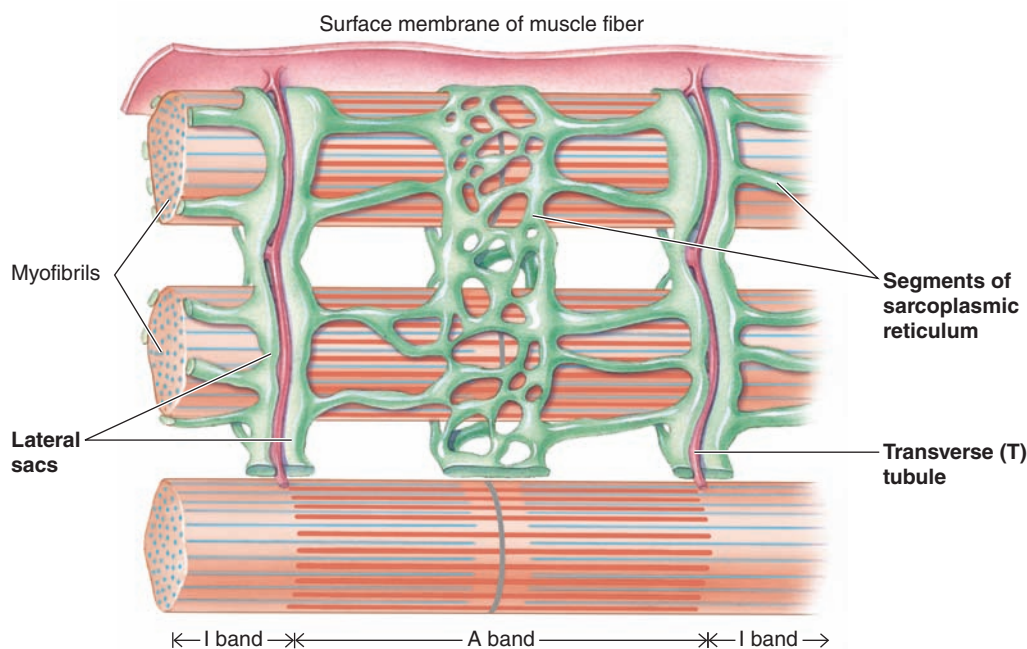
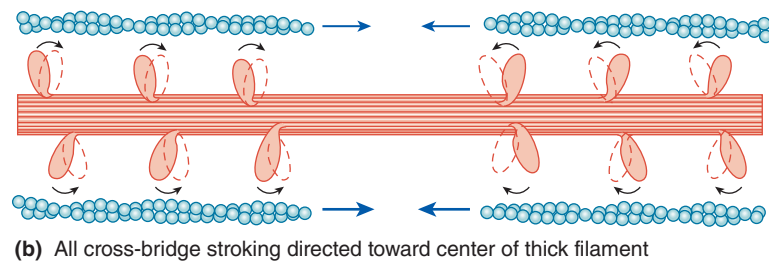
● **FIGURE 8-7** Changes in banding pattern during shortening. During muscle contraction, each sarcomere shortens as the thin filaments slide closer together between the thick filaments so that the Z lines are pulled closer together. The width of the A bands does not change as a muscle fiber shortens, but the I bands and H zones become shorter.



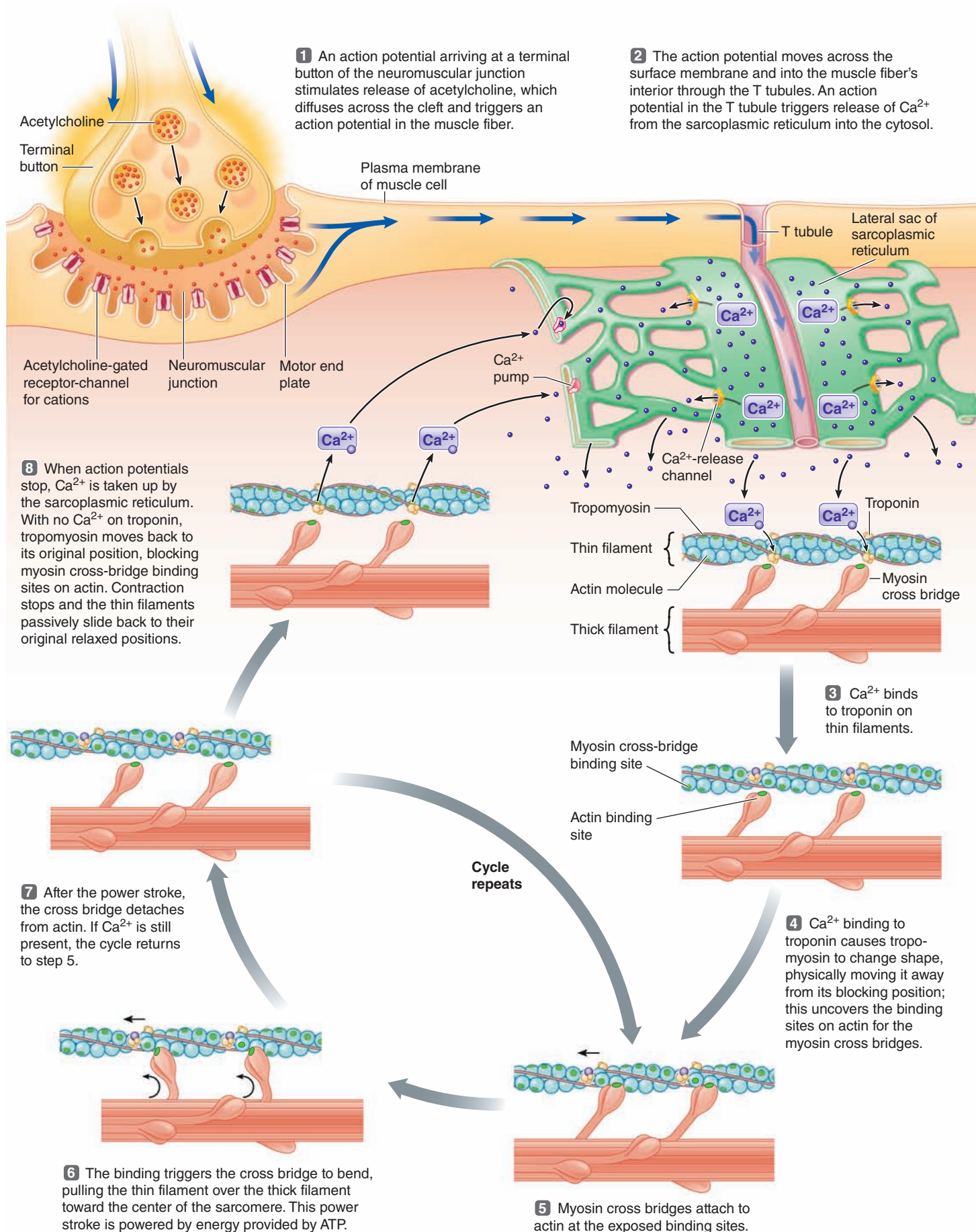
● **FIGURE 8-8 Cross-bridge activity.** (a) During each cross-bridge cycle, the cross bridge binds with an actin molecule, bends to pull the thin filament inward during the power stroke, and then detaches and returns to its resting conformation, ready to repeat the cycle. (b) The power strokes of all cross bridges extending from a thick filament are directed toward the center of the thick filament.

repositioning the troponin and tropomyosin molecules, this released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  exposes the binding sites on the actin molecules so that they can link with the myosin cross bridges at their complementary binding sites. Excitation-contraction coupling is summarized in ● Figure 8-10.

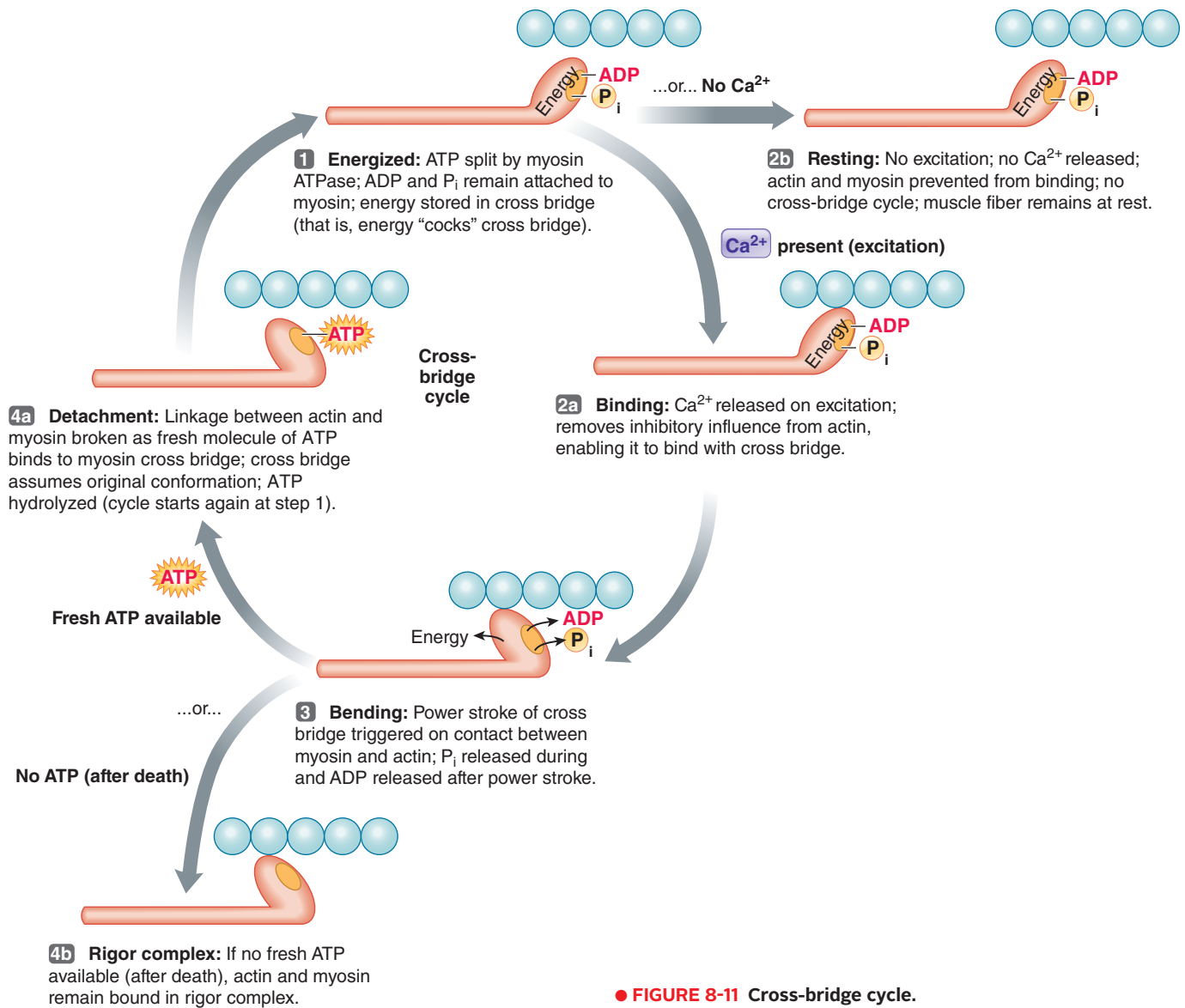
**ATP-POWERED CROSS-BRIDGE CYCLING** Recall that a myosin cross bridge has two special sites, an actin binding site and an ATPase site (see ● Figure 8-4a). The latter is an enzymatic site that can bind the energy carrier *adenosine triphosphate (ATP)* and split it into *adenosine diphosphate (ADP)* and *inorganic phosphate ( $P_i$ )*, yielding energy in the process. The breakdown of ATP occurs on the myosin cross bridge before the bridge ever links with an actin molecule (● Figure 8-11, step 1). The ADP and  $P_i$  remain tightly bound to the myosin, and the generated energy is stored within the cross bridge to produce a high-energy form of myosin. To use an analogy, the cross bridge is “cocked” like a gun, ready to be fired when the trigger is pulled. When the muscle fiber is excited,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pulls the troponin-tropomyosin complex out of its blocking position so that the energized (cocked) myosin cross bridge can bind with an actin molecule (step 2a). This contact between myosin and actin “pulls the trigger,” causing the cross-bridge bending that produces the power stroke (step 3). Researchers have not found the mechanism by which the chemical energy released



● **FIGURE 8-9 The transverse (T) tubules and sarcoplasmic reticulum in relationship to the myofibrils.** The T tubules are membranous, perpendicular extensions of the surface membrane that dip deep into the muscle fiber at the junctions between the A and the I bands of the myofibrils. The sarcoplasmic reticulum is a fine, membranous network that runs longitudinally and surrounds each myofibril, with separate segments encircling each A band and I band. The ends of each segment are expanded to form lateral sacs that lie next to the adjacent T tubules.



● **FIGURE 8-10 Excitation-contraction coupling and muscle relaxation.** Steps 1 through 7 show the events that couple neurotransmitter release and subsequent electrical excitation of the muscle cell with muscle contraction. At step 7, if calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) is still present, the cross-bridge cycle returns to step 5 for another power stroke. If  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is no longer present as a consequence of step 8, relaxation occurs.



● **FIGURE 8-11** Cross-bridge cycle.

from ATP is stored within the myosin cross bridge and then translated into the mechanical energy of the power stroke.  $P_i$  is released from the cross bridge during the power stroke. After the power stroke is complete, ADP is released.

When the muscle is not excited and  $Ca^{2+}$  is not released, troponin and tropomyosin remain in their blocking position so that actin and the myosin cross bridges do not bind and no power stroking takes place (step 2b).

When  $P_i$  and ADP are released from myosin following contact with actin and the subsequent power stroke, the myosin ATPase site is free for attachment of another ATP molecule. The actin and myosin remain linked at the cross bridge until a fresh molecule of ATP attaches to myosin at the end of the power stroke. Attachment of the new ATP molecule permits detachment of the cross bridge, which returns to its unbent form, ready to start another cycle (step 4a). The newly attached ATP is then split by myosin ATPase, energizing the myosin cross bridge again (step 1). On binding with another actin molecule,

the energized cross bridge again bends, and so on, successively pulling the thin filament inward to accomplish contraction.



**RIGOR MORTIS** Note that fresh ATP must attach to myosin to permit the cross-bridge link between myosin and actin to break at the end of a cycle, even though the ATP is not split during this dissociation process. The need for ATP in separating myosin and actin is amply shown in **rigor mortis**. This “stiffness of death” is a generalized locking in place of the skeletal muscles that begins 3 to 4 hours after death and completes in about 12 hours. Following death, the cytosolic concentration of  $Ca^{2+}$  begins to rise, most likely because the inactive muscle cell membrane cannot keep out extracellular  $Ca^{2+}$  and perhaps because  $Ca^{2+}$  leaks out of the lateral sacs. This  $Ca^{2+}$  moves troponin and tropomyosin aside, letting actin bind with the myosin cross bridges, which were already charged with ATP before death. Dead cells cannot produce any more ATP, so actin and myosin, once bound, can-

not detach, because they lack fresh ATP. The thick and thin filaments thus stay linked by the immobilized cross bridges, leaving dead muscles stiff (● Figure 8-11, step 4b). During the next several days, rigor mortis gradually subsides as the proteins involved in the rigor complex begin to degrade.

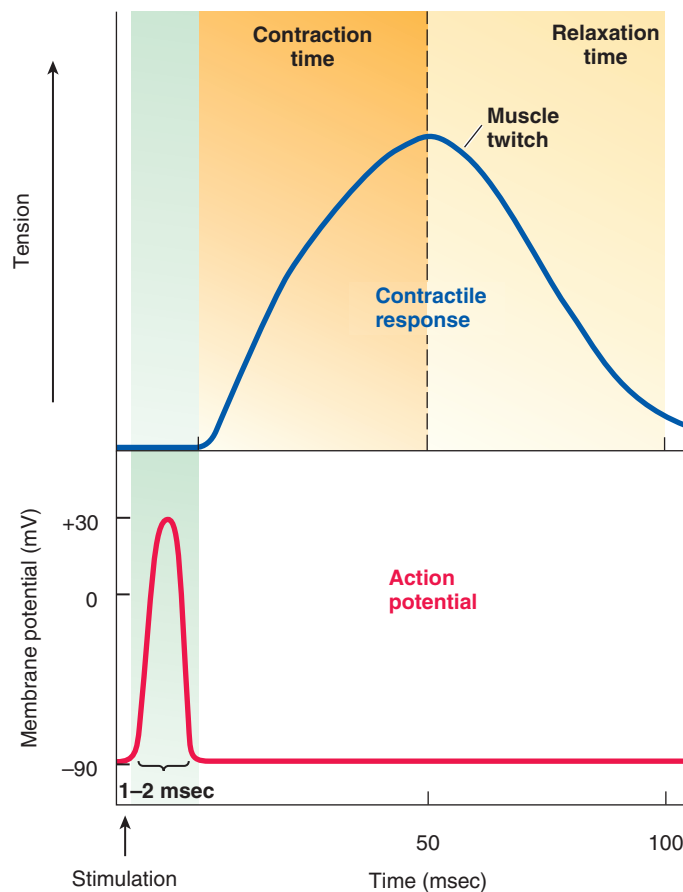
**RELAXATION** How is relaxation normally accomplished in a living muscle? Just as an action potential in a muscle fiber turns on the contractile process by triggering release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the lateral sacs into the cytosol, the contractile process is turned off and **relaxation** occurs when  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is returned to the lateral sacs when local electrical activity stops. The sarcoplasmic reticulum has an energy-consuming carrier, a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -ATPase pump, which actively transports  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the cytosol and concentrates it in the lateral sacs (see ● Figure 8-10). Recall that the end-plate potential and resultant muscle-fiber action potential stop when the membrane-bound enzyme acetylcholinesterase removes ACh from the neuromuscular junction (see p. 188). When a local action potential is no longer in the T tubules to trigger release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , the ongoing activity of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pump returns released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  back into the lateral sacs. Removing cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  lets the troponin–tropomyosin complex slip back into its blocking position, so actin and myosin can no longer bind at the cross bridges. The thin filaments, freed from cycles of cross-bridge attachment and pulling, return passively to their resting position. The muscle fiber has relaxed.

How long does the contractile activity initiated by an action potential last in response to a single action potential before relaxation occurs?

### Contractile activity far outlasts the electrical activity that initiated it.

A single action potential in a skeletal muscle fiber lasts only 1 to 2 msec. The onset of the resulting contractile response lags behind the action potential because the entire excitation–contraction coupling must occur before cross-bridge activity begins. In fact, the action potential is over before the contractile apparatus even becomes operational (● Figure 8-12).

Time is also needed for generating tension within the muscle fiber by means of the sliding interactions between the thick and the thin filaments through cross-bridge activity. The time from contraction onset until peak tension develops—**contraction time**—averages about 50 msec, although this time varies depending on the type of muscle fiber. The contractile response does not end until the lateral sacs have taken up all  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  released in response to the action potential. This reuptake of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is also time-consuming. Even after  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is removed, it takes time for the filaments to return to their resting positions. The time from peak tension until relaxation is complete—the **relaxation time**—usually lasts another 50 msec or more. Consequently, the entire contractile response to a single action potential may last 100 msec or more; this is much longer than the duration of the action potential that initiated it (100 msec compared to 1 to 2 msec). This fact is important in the body's ability to produce muscle contractions of variable strength, as you will discover in the next section.



● **FIGURE 8-12** Relationship of an action potential to the resultant muscle twitch. The duration of the action potential is not drawn to scale but is exaggerated. Note that the resting potential of a skeletal muscle fiber is  $-90$  millivolts (mV), compared to a resting potential of  $-70$  mV in a neuron.

## Skeletal Muscle Mechanics

Thus far, we have described the contractile response in a single muscle fiber. In the body, groups of muscle fibers are organized into whole muscles. We now turn to the contraction of whole muscles.

### Whole muscles are groups of muscle fibers bundled together and attached to bones.

Each person has about 600 skeletal muscles, which range in size from the delicate external eye muscles that control eye movements and contain only a few hundred fibers to the large, powerful leg muscles that contain several hundred thousand fibers.

Each muscle is sheathed by connective tissue that penetrates from the surface into the muscle to envelop each individual fiber and divide the muscle into columns or bundles. The connective tissue extends beyond the ends of the muscle to form tough, collagenous **tendons** that attach the muscle to bones. A tendon may be quite long, attaching to a bone some distance from the fleshy part of the muscle. For example, some of the muscles involved in finger movement are in the forearm, with long tendons extending down to attach to the bones of the

fingers. (You can readily see these tendons move on the top of your hand when you wiggle your fingers.) This arrangement permits greater dexterity; the fingers would be thicker and more awkward if all the muscles used in finger movement were actually in the fingers.

### Muscle tension is transmitted to bone as the contractile component tightens the series-elastic component.

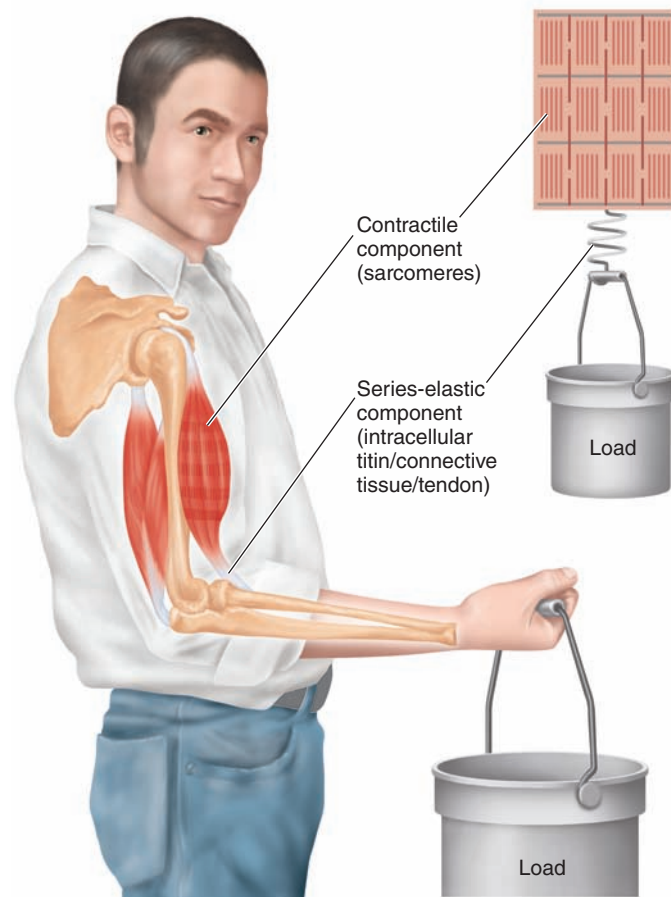
**Tension** is produced internally within the sarcomeres, considered the **contractile component** of the muscle, as a result of cross-bridge activity and thus the sliding of filaments. However, the sarcomeres are not attached directly to the bones. Instead, the tension generated by these contractile elements must be transmitted to the bone via the connective tissue and tendons before the bone can be moved. Connective tissue and tendon, as well as the intracellular titin, have a certain degree of passive elasticity. These noncontractile tissues are called the **series-elastic component** of the muscle; they behave like a stretchy spring placed between the internal tension-generating elements and the bone that is to be moved against an external load (● Figure 8-13). Shortening of the sarcomeres stretches the series-elastic component. Muscle tension is transmitted to the bone by this tightening of the series-elastic component. This force applied to the bone moves the bone against a load. By mechanisms to be described shortly, the amount of tension generated by a muscle can be graded or of varying strengths. In other words, you can vary the force you exert by the same muscle, depending on whether you are picking up a piece of paper, a book, or a 50-pound weight.

A muscle is typically attached to at least two bones across a joint by means of tendons that extend from each end of the muscle. When the muscle shortens during contraction, the position of the joint is changed as one bone is moved in relation to the other—for example, *flexion* (bending) of the elbow joint by contraction of the biceps muscle and *extension* (straightening) of the elbow by contraction of the triceps (● Figure 8-14). The end of the muscle attached to the more stationary part of the skeleton is called the **origin**, and the end attached to the skeletal part that moves is the **insertion**.

### The two primary types of contraction are isotonic and isometric.

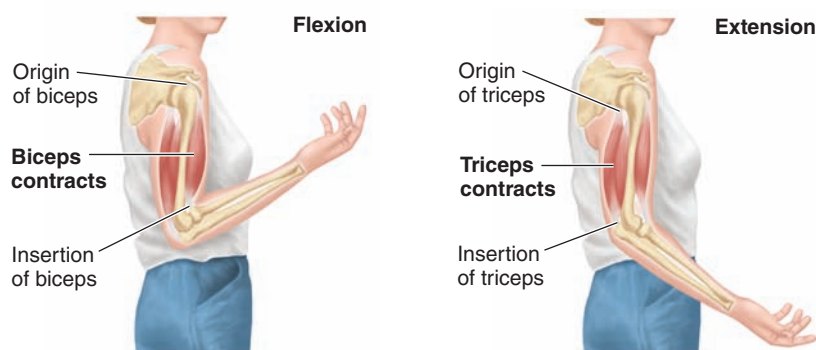
Not all muscle contractions shorten muscles and move bones. For a muscle to shorten during contraction, the tension developed in the muscle must exceed the forces that oppose movement of the bone to which the muscle's insertion is attached. In the case of elbow flexion, the opposing force, or **load**, is the weight of an object being lifted. When you flex your elbow without lifting any external object, there is still a load, albeit a minimal one—the weight of your forearm being moved against the force of gravity.

There are two primary types of contraction, depending on whether the muscle changes length during contraction. In an **isotonic contraction**,



● **FIGURE 8-13** Relationship between the contractile component and the series-elastic component in transmitting muscle tension to bone. Muscle tension is transmitted to the bone by means of the stretching and tightening of the muscle's intracellular titin, elastic connective tissue, and tendon (collectively the series-elastic component) as a result of sarcomere shortening brought about by cross-bridge cycling (the contractile component).

muscle tension remains constant as the muscle changes length (*isotonic* means “constant tension”). In an **isometric contraction**, the muscle is prevented from shortening, so tension develops at constant muscle length (*isometric* means “constant length”). The same internal events occur in both isotonic and isometric contractions: Muscle excitation turns on the tension-



● **FIGURE 8-14** Flexion and extension of the elbow joint.

generating contractile process, the cross bridges start cycling, and filament sliding shortens the sarcomeres, which stretches the series-elastic component to exert force on the bone at the site of the muscle's insertion.

Considering your biceps as an example, assume you are going to lift an object. When the tension developing in your biceps becomes great enough to overcome the weight of the object in your hand, you can lift the object, with the whole muscle shortening in the process. Because the weight of the object does not change as it is lifted, the muscle tension remains constant throughout the period of shortening. This is an *isotonic contraction*. Isotonic contractions are used for body movements and for moving external objects.

What happens if you try to lift an object too heavy for you (that is, if the tension you can develop in your arm muscles is less than needed to lift the load)? In this case, the muscle cannot shorten and lift the object but remains at constant length despite the development of tension, so an *isometric contraction* occurs. In addition to occurring when the load is too great, isometric contractions take place when the tension developed in the muscle is deliberately less than needed to move the load. In this case, the goal is to keep the muscle at fixed length although it can develop more tension. These submaximal isometric contractions are important for maintaining posture (such as keeping the legs straight while standing) and for supporting objects in a fixed position (such as holding a beverage between sips). During a given movement, a muscle may shift between isotonic and isometric contractions. For example, when you pick up a book to read, your biceps muscle undergoes an isotonic contraction while you are lifting the book, but the contraction becomes isometric as you stop to hold the book in front of you.

**CONCENTRIC AND ECCENTRIC ISOTONIC CONTRACTIONS** There are actually two types of isotonic contraction—*concentric* and *eccentric*. In both, the muscle changes length at constant tension. With **concentric contractions**, however, the muscle shortens, whereas with **eccentric contractions** the muscle lengthens because it is being stretched by an external force while contracting. With an eccentric contraction, the contractile activity is resisting the stretch. An example is lowering a load to the ground. During this action, the muscle fibers in the biceps are lengthening but are still contracting in opposition to being stretched. This tension supports the weight of the object.

**OTHER CONTRACTIONS** The body is not limited to pure isotonic and isometric contractions. Muscle length and tension often vary throughout a range of motion. Think about pulling back a bow and arrow. The tension of your biceps muscle continuously increases to overcome the progressively increasing resistance as you stretch the bow. At the same time, the muscle progressively shortens as you draw the bow farther back. Such a contraction occurs at neither constant tension nor constant length.

Some skeletal muscles do not attach to bones at both ends but still produce movement. For example, the tongue muscles are not attached at the free end. Isotonic contractions of the tongue muscles maneuver the free, unattached portion of the

tongue to facilitate speech and eating. A few skeletal muscles are completely unattached to bone and actually prevent movement. These are the voluntarily controlled rings of skeletal muscles, known as **sphincters**, that guard the exit of urine and feces from the body by isotonic contracting.

### The velocity of shortening is related to the load.

The load is also an important determinant of the **velocity**, or speed, of shortening. During a concentric contraction, the greater the load, the lower the velocity at which a single muscle fiber (or a constant number of contracting fibers within a muscle) shortens. The speed of shortening is maximal when there is no external load, progressively decreases with an increasing load, and falls to zero (no shortening—*isometric contraction*) when the load cannot be overcome by maximal tension. You have often experienced this load-velocity relationship. You can lift light objects requiring little muscle tension quickly, whereas you can lift heavy objects only slowly, if at all. This relationship between load and shortening velocity is a fundamental property of muscle, presumably because it takes the cross bridges longer to stroke against a greater load.

Now let us examine the means by which muscle tension can be graded or varied.

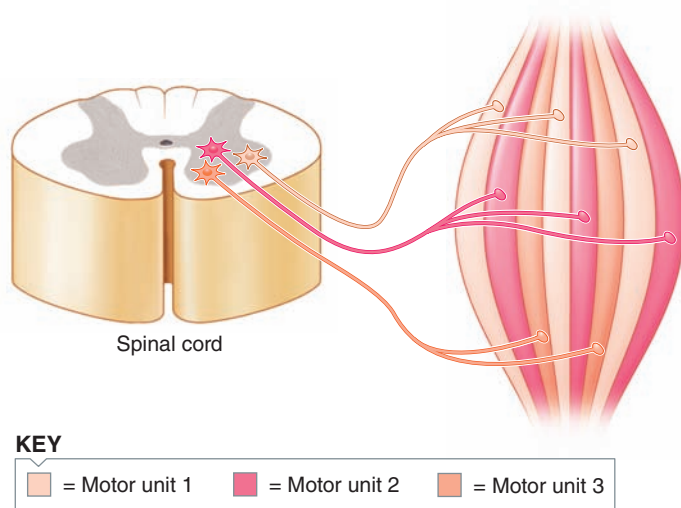
### Contractions of a whole muscle can be of varying strength.

A single action potential in a muscle fiber produces a brief, weak contraction called a **twitch**, which is too short and too weak to be useful and normally does not take place in the body. Muscle fibers are arranged into whole muscles, where they function cooperatively to produce contractions of variable grades of strength stronger than a twitch. Two primary factors can be adjusted to accomplish gradation of whole-muscle tension: (1) *the number of muscle fibers contracting within a muscle* and (2) *the tension developed by each contracting fiber*. We discuss each of these factors in turn.

### The number of fibers contracting within a muscle depends on the extent of motor unit recruitment.

The greater the number of fibers contracting, the greater the total muscle tension. Therefore, larger muscles consisting of more muscle fibers can generate more tension than smaller muscles with fewer fibers can.

Each whole muscle is innervated by a number of different motor neurons. When a motor neuron enters a muscle, it branches, with each axon terminal supplying a single muscle fiber (● Figure 8-15). One motor neuron innervates a number of muscle fibers, but each muscle fiber is supplied by only one motor neuron. When a motor neuron is activated, all the muscle fibers it supplies are stimulated to contract simultaneously. This team of concurrently activated components—one motor neuron plus all the muscle fibers it innervates—is called a **motor unit**. The muscle fibers that compose a motor unit are dispersed throughout the whole muscle; thus, their simultaneous contraction results in an evenly distributed, although weak,



● **FIGURE 8-15** Motor units in a skeletal muscle.

contraction of the whole muscle. Each muscle consists of numerous intermingled motor units. For a weak contraction of the whole muscle, only one or a few of its motor units are activated. For stronger and stronger contractions, more and more motor units are recruited, or stimulated to contract simultaneously, a phenomenon known as **motor unit recruitment**.

How much stronger the contraction will be with the recruitment of each additional motor unit depends on the size of the motor unit (that is, the number of muscle fibers controlled by a single motor neuron). The number of muscle fibers per motor unit and the number of motor units per muscle vary widely, depending on the specific function of the muscle. For muscles that produce precise, delicate movements, such as external eye muscles and hand muscles, a single motor unit may contain as few as a dozen muscle fibers. Because so few muscle fibers are involved with each motor unit, recruitment of each additional motor unit adds only a small increment to the whole muscle's strength of contraction. These small motor units allow fine control over muscle tension. In contrast, in muscles designed for powerful, coarsely controlled movement, such as those of the legs, a single motor unit may contain 1500 to 2000 muscle fibers. Recruitment of motor units in these muscles results in large incremental increases in whole-muscle tension. More powerful contractions occur at the expense of less precisely controlled gradations. Thus, the number of muscle fibers participating in the whole muscle's total contractile effort depends on the number of motor units recruited and the number of muscle fibers per motor unit in that muscle.

To delay or prevent **fatigue** (inability to maintain muscle tension at a given level) during a sustained contraction involving only a portion of a muscle's motor units, as is necessary in muscles supporting the weight of the body against the force of gravity, **asynchronous recruitment** of motor units takes place. The body alternates motor unit activity, like shifts at a factory, to give motor units that have been active an opportunity to rest while others take over. Changing of the shifts is carefully coordinated, so the sustained contraction is smooth rather than jerky. Asynchronous recruitment is possible only for submaxi-

mal contractions, during which only some of the motor units must maintain the desired level of tension. During maximal contractions, when all muscle fibers must participate, it is impossible to alternate motor unit activity to prevent fatigue. This is one reason you cannot support a heavy object as long as a light one.

### The frequency of stimulation can influence the tension developed by each muscle fiber.

Whole-muscle tension depends not only on the number of muscle fibers contracting but also on the tension developed by each contracting fiber. Various factors influence the extent to which tension can be developed. These factors include the following:

1. Frequency of stimulation
2. Length of the fiber at the onset of contraction
3. Extent of fatigue
4. Thickness of the fiber

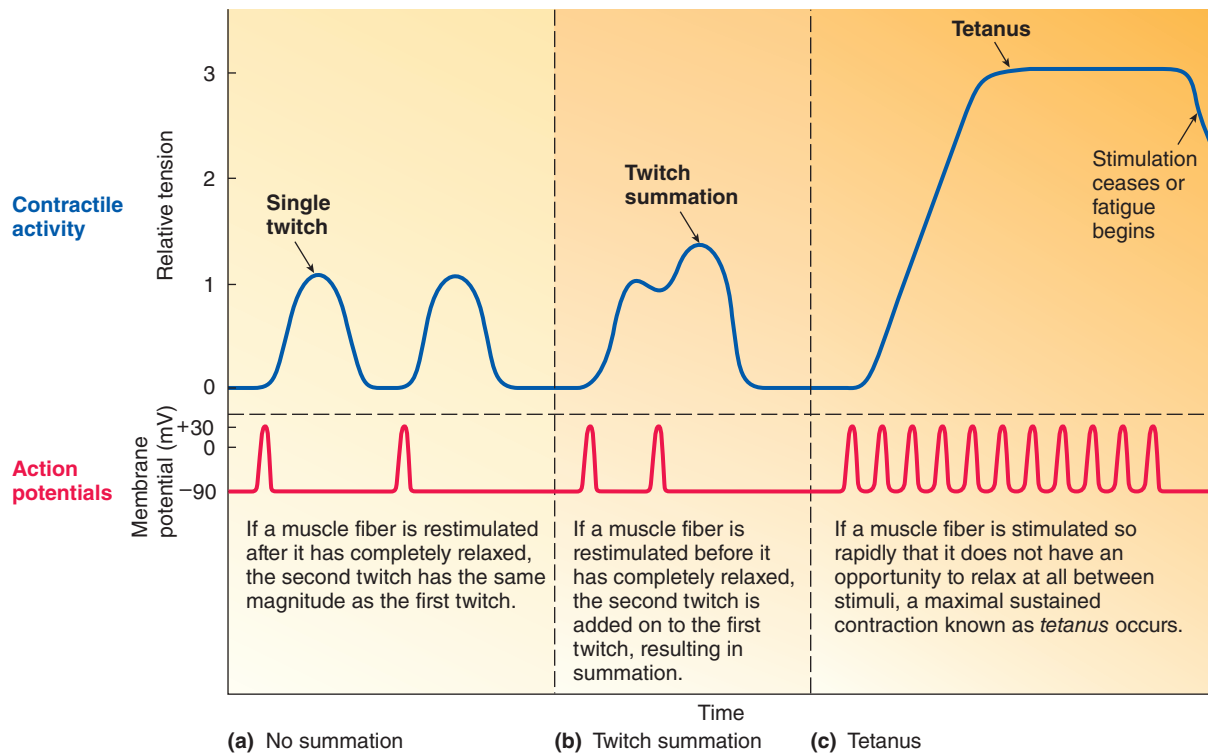
We now examine the effect of frequency of stimulation; we discuss the other factors in later sections.

**TWITCH SUMMATION AND TETANUS** Even though a single action potential in a muscle fiber produces only a twitch, contractions with longer duration and greater tension can be achieved by repeated stimulation of the fiber. Let us see what happens when a second action potential occurs in a muscle fiber. If the muscle fiber has completely relaxed before the next action potential takes place, a second twitch of the same magnitude as the first occurs (● Figure 8-16a). The same excitation–contraction events take place each time, resulting in identical twitch responses. If, however, the muscle fiber is stimulated a second time before it has completely relaxed from the first twitch, a second action potential causes a second contractile response, which is added in “piggyback” fashion on top of the first twitch (● Figure 8-16b). The two twitches from the two action potentials add together, or sum, to produce greater tension in the fiber than that produced by a single action potential. This **twitch summation** is similar to temporal summation of excitatory postsynaptic potentials (EPSPs) at the postsynaptic neuron (see p. 88).

Twitch summation is possible only because the duration of the action potential (1 to 2 msec) is much shorter than the duration of the resulting twitch (100 msec). Once an action potential has been initiated, a brief refractory period occurs during which another action potential cannot be initiated (see p. 82). It is therefore impossible to achieve summation of action potentials. The membrane must return to resting potential and recover from its refractory period before another action potential can occur. However, because the action potential and refractory period are over long before the resulting muscle twitch is completed, the muscle fiber may be restimulated while some contractile activity still exists to produce summation of the mechanical response.

If the muscle fiber is stimulated so rapidly that it does not have a chance to relax at all between stimuli, a smooth, sus-





● **FIGURE 8-16** Twitch summation and tetanus.

tained contraction of maximal strength known as **tetanus** occurs (● Figure 8-16c). A tetanic contraction is usually three to four times stronger than a single twitch. (Don't confuse this normal physiologic tetanus with the disease tetanus; see p. 91.)

### Twitch summation results from a sustained elevation in cytosolic $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .

What is the mechanism of twitch summation and tetanus at the cell level? The tension produced by a contracting muscle fiber increases as a result of greater cross-bridge cycling. As the frequency of action potentials increases, the resulting tension development increases until a maximum tetanic contraction is achieved. Enough  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released in response to a single action potential to interact with all the troponin within the cell. As a result, all cross bridges are free to participate in the contractile response. How, then, can repetitive action potentials bring about a greater contractile response? The difference depends on how long enough  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is available. The cross bridges remain active and continue to cycle as long as enough  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is present to keep the troponin–tropomyosin complexes away from the cross-bridge binding sites on actin. Each troponin–tropomyosin complex spans a distance of seven actin molecules. Thus, binding of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to one troponin molecule leads to the uncovering of only seven cross-bridge binding sites on the thin filament.

As soon as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released in response to an action potential, the sarcoplasmic reticulum starts pumping  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  back into the lateral sacs. As the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration subsequently declines, less  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is present to bind with troponin, so some of the troponin–tropomyosin complexes slip back into

their blocking positions. Consequently, not all cross-bridge binding sites remain available to participate in the cycling process during a single twitch induced by a single action potential. Because not all cross bridges find a binding site, the resulting contraction during a single twitch is not of maximal strength.

If action potentials and twitches occur far enough apart in time for all released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the first contractile response to be pumped back into the lateral sacs between the action potentials, an identical twitch response will occur as a result of the second action potential. If, however, a second action potential occurs and more  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is released while the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that was released in response to the first action potential is being taken back up, the cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration remains high and might even be elevated further. This prolonged availability of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the cytosol permits more of the cross bridges to continue participating in the cycling process for a longer time. As a result, tension development increases correspondingly. As the frequency of action potentials increases, the duration of elevated cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration increases, and contractile activity likewise increases until a maximum tetanic contraction is reached. With tetanus, the maximum number of cross-bridge binding sites remain uncovered so that cross-bridge cycling, and consequently tension development, is at its peak.

Because skeletal muscle must be stimulated by motor neurons to contract, the nervous system plays a key role in regulating contraction strength. The two main factors subject to control to accomplish gradation of contraction are the *number of motor units stimulated* and the *frequency of their stimulation*. The areas of the brain that direct motor activity combine tetanic contractions and precisely timed shifts of asynchronous motor unit recruitment to execute smooth rather than jerky contractions.

Additional factors not directly under nervous control also influence the tension developed during contraction. Among these is the length of the fiber at the onset of contraction, to which we now turn our attention.

### There is an optimal muscle length at which maximal tension can be developed.

A relationship exists between the length of the muscle before the onset of contraction and the tetanic tension that each contracting fiber can subsequently develop at that length. Every muscle has an **optimal length ( $l_o$ )** at which maximal force can be achieved during a tetanic contraction beginning at that length. That is, more tension can be achieved during tetanus when beginning at  $l_o$  than can be achieved when the contraction begins with the muscle longer or shorter than  $l_o$ . This **length–tension relationship** can be explained by the sliding filament mechanism of muscle contraction.

#### CONTRACTILE ACTIVITY AT OPTIMAL LENGTH

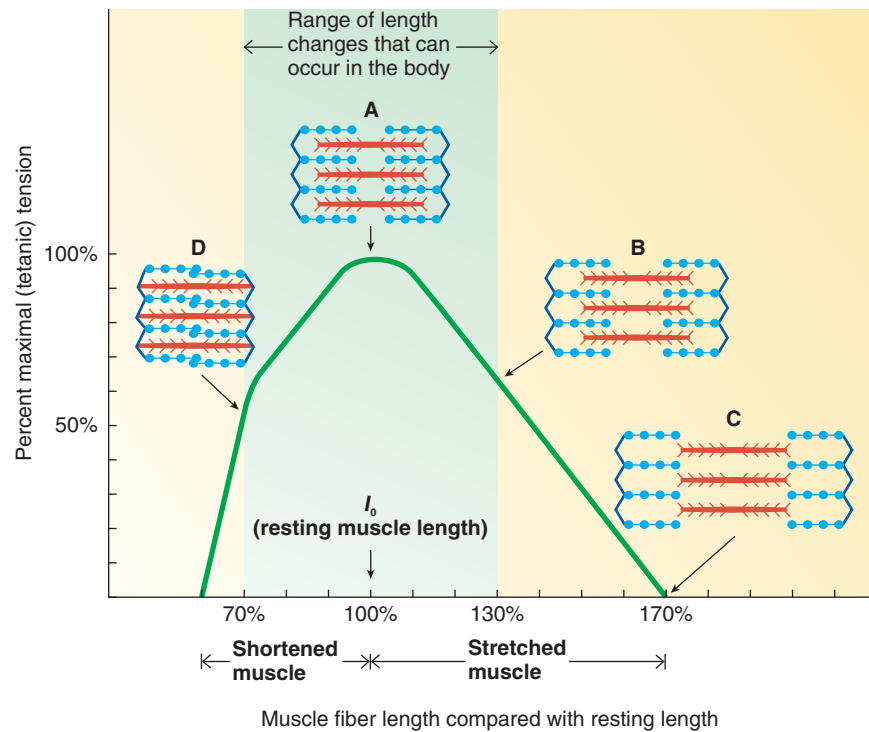
At  $l_o$ , when maximum tension can be developed (point A in ● Figure 8-17), the thin filaments optimally overlap the regions of the thick filaments where the cross bridges are located. At this length, a maximal number of cross bridges and actin molecules are accessible to each other for cycles of binding and bending. The central region of thick filaments, where the thin filaments do not overlap at  $l_o$ , lacks cross bridges; only myosin tails are found here.

#### CONTRACTILE ACTIVITY AT LENGTHS GREATER THAN $l_o$

At greater lengths, as when a muscle is passively stretched (point B), the thin filaments are pulled out from between the thick filaments, decreasing the number of actin sites available for cross-bridge binding; that is, some of the actin sites and cross bridges no longer “match up,” so they “go unused.” When less cross-bridge activity can occur, less tension can develop. In fact, when the muscle is stretched to about 70% longer than its  $l_o$  (point C) the thin filaments are completely pulled out from between the thick filaments, preventing cross-bridge activity; consequently, no contraction can occur.

**CONTRACTILE ACTIVITY AT LENGTHS LESS THAN  $l_o$**  If a muscle is shorter than  $l_o$  before contraction (point D), less tension can be developed for two main reasons:

1. The thin filaments from the opposite sides of the sarcomere become overlapped, which limits the opportunity for the cross bridges to interact with actin.
2. The ends of the thick filaments become forced against the Z lines, so further shortening is impeded.



● **FIGURE 8-17 Length–tension relationship.** Maximal tetanic contraction can be achieved when a muscle fiber is at its optimal length ( $l_o$ ) before the onset of contraction, because this is the point of optimal overlap of thick-filament cross bridges and thin-filament cross-bridge binding sites (point A). The percentage of maximal tetanic contraction that can be achieved decreases when the muscle fiber is longer or shorter than  $l_o$  before contraction. When it is longer, fewer thin-filament binding sites are accessible for binding with thick-filament cross bridges, because the thin filaments are pulled out from between the thick filaments (points B and C). When the fiber is shorter, fewer thin-filament binding sites are exposed to thick-filament cross bridges because the thin filaments overlap (point D). Also, further shortening and tension development are impeded as the thick filaments become forced against the Z lines (point D). In the body, the resting muscle length is at  $l_o$ . Furthermore, because of restrictions imposed by skeletal attachments, muscles cannot vary beyond 30% of their  $l_o$  in either direction (the range screened in light green). At the outer limits of this range, muscles still can achieve about 50% of their maximal tetanic contraction.

**LIMITATIONS ON MUSCLE LENGTH** The extremes in muscle length that prevent development of tension occur only under experimental conditions, when a muscle is removed and stimulated at various lengths. In the body, the muscles are positioned so that their relaxed length is approximately at  $l_o$ ; thus, they can achieve near-maximal tetanic contraction most of the time. Because attachment to the skeleton imposes limitations, a muscle cannot be stretched or shortened more than 30% of its resting (optimal) length, and usually it deviates much less than 30% from normal length. Even at the outer limits (130% and 70% of  $l_o$ ), the muscles still can generate half their maximum tension.

The factors we have discussed thus far that influence how much tension a contracting muscle fiber can develop—the frequency of stimulation and the muscle length at the onset of contraction—can vary from contraction to contraction. Other determinants of muscle fiber tension—the metabolic capability of the fiber relative to resistance to fatigue and the thickness of the fiber—do not vary from contraction to contraction but depend on the fiber type and can be modified over time. We consider these other factors as we shift our attention from muscle

mechanics to metabolic means by which muscles power these movements.

## Skeletal Muscle Metabolism and Fiber Types

Three steps in the contraction–relaxation process require ATP:

1. Splitting of ATP by myosin ATPase provides the energy for the power stroke of the cross bridge.
2. Binding (but not splitting) of a fresh molecule of ATP to myosin lets the bridge detach from the actin filament at the end of a power stroke so that the cycle can be repeated. This ATP is later split to provide energy for the next stroke of the cross bridge.
3. Active transport of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  back into the lateral sacs of the sarcoplasmic reticulum during relaxation depends on energy derived from the breakdown of ATP.

### Muscle fibers have alternate pathways for forming ATP.

Because ATP is the only energy source that can be directly used for these activities, for contractile activity to continue, ATP must constantly be supplied. Only limited stores of ATP are immediately available in muscle tissue, but three pathways supply additional ATP as needed during muscle contraction: (1) transfer of a high-energy phosphate from creatine phosphate to ADP, (2) oxidative phosphorylation (the electron transport system and chemiosmosis), and (3) glycolysis.

**CREATINE PHOSPHATE** **Creatine phosphate** is the first energy storehouse tapped at the onset of contractile activity. Like ATP, creatine phosphate contains a high-energy phosphate group, which can be donated directly to ADP to form ATP. A rested muscle contains about five times as much creatine phosphate as ATP. Thus, most energy is stored in muscle in creatine phosphate pools. At the onset of contraction, when the meager reserves of ATP are rapidly used, more ATP is quickly formed by the transfer of energy and phosphate from creatine phosphate to ADP. Because only one enzymatic reaction is involved in this energy transfer, ATP can be formed rapidly (within a fraction of a second) by using creatine phosphate.

Thus, creatine phosphate is the first source for supplying additional ATP when exercise begins. Muscle ATP levels actually remain fairly constant early in contraction, but creatine phosphate stores become depleted. In fact, short bursts of high-intensity contractile effort, such as high jumps, sprints, or weight lifting, are supported primarily by ATP derived at the expense of creatine phosphate. Other energy systems do not have a chance to become operable before the activity is over. Creatine phosphate stores typically power the first minute or less of exercise.

**OXIDATIVE PHOSPHORYLATION** If the energy-dependent contractile activity is to continue, the muscle shifts to the alternate pathways of oxidative phosphorylation and glycolysis to form

ATP. These multistep pathways require time to pick up their rates of ATP formation to match the increased demands for energy, time provided by the immediate supply of energy from the one-step creatine phosphate system.

**Oxidative phosphorylation** takes place within the muscle mitochondria if sufficient oxygen ( $\text{O}_2$ ) is present (see p. 30). Although it provides a rich yield of 32 ATP molecules for each glucose molecule processed, oxidative phosphorylation is relatively slow because of the number of steps involved.

During light exercise (such as walking) to moderate exercise (such as jogging or swimming), muscle cells can form enough ATP through oxidative phosphorylation to keep pace with the modest energy demands of the contractile machinery for prolonged periods. To sustain ongoing oxidative phosphorylation, the exercising muscles depend on delivery of adequate  $\text{O}_2$  and nutrients to maintain their activity. Activity that can be supported in this way is **aerobic** (“with  $\text{O}_2$ ”) or **endurance-type exercise**.

**GLYCOLYSIS** There are respiratory and cardiovascular limits to how much  $\text{O}_2$  can be delivered to a muscle. That is, the lungs and heart can pick up and deliver just so much  $\text{O}_2$  to exercising muscles. Furthermore, in near-maximal contractions, the powerful contraction almost squeezes closed the blood vessels that course through the muscle, severely limiting  $\text{O}_2$  availability to the muscle fibers. Even when  $\text{O}_2$  is available, the relatively slow oxidative phosphorylation system may not be able to produce ATP rapidly enough to meet the muscle’s needs during intense activity. A skeletal muscle’s energy consumption may increase up to 100-fold when going from rest to high-intensity exercise. When  $\text{O}_2$  delivery or oxidative phosphorylation cannot keep pace with the demand for ATP formation as the intensity of exercise increases, the muscle fibers rely increasingly on glycolysis to generate ATP (see p. 27). The chemical reactions of **glycolysis** yield products for ultimate entry into the oxidative phosphorylation pathway, but glycolysis can also proceed alone in the absence of further processing of its products by oxidative phosphorylation. During glycolysis, a glucose molecule is broken down into two **pyruvate** molecules, yielding two ATP molecules in the process. Pyruvate can be further degraded by oxidative phosphorylation to extract more energy. However, glycolysis alone has two advantages over the oxidative phosphorylation pathway: (1) glycolysis can form ATP in the absence of  $\text{O}_2$  (operating *anaerobically*, that is, “without  $\text{O}_2$ ”), and (2) it can proceed more rapidly than oxidative phosphorylation. Although glycolysis extracts considerably fewer ATP molecules from each nutrient molecule processed, it can proceed so much more rapidly that it can outproduce oxidative phosphorylation over a given period if enough glucose is present. Activity that can be supported in this way is **anaerobic** or **high-intensity exercise**.

**LACTATE PRODUCTION** Even though anaerobic glycolysis provides a means of performing intense exercise when  $\text{O}_2$  delivery or the oxidative phosphorylation capacity is exceeded, using this pathway has two consequences. First, large amounts of nutrient fuel must be processed, because glycolysis is less effi-

cient than oxidative phosphorylation in converting nutrient energy into the energy of ATP. (Glycolysis yields a net of 2 ATP molecules for each glucose molecule degraded, whereas the oxidative phosphorylation pathway can extract 32 molecules of ATP from each glucose molecule.) Muscle cells can store limited quantities of glucose in the form of glycogen, but anaerobic glycolysis rapidly depletes the muscle's glycogen supplies. Second, when the end product of anaerobic glycolysis, pyruvate, cannot be further processed by the oxidative phosphorylation pathway, it is converted to **lactate**. Lactate accumulation has been implicated in the muscle soreness that occurs during the time that intense exercise is actually taking place. (The delayed-onset pain and stiffness that begin the day after unaccustomed muscular exertion, however, are probably caused by reversible structural damage.) Furthermore, lactate (lactic acid) picked up by the blood produces the metabolic acidosis accompanying intense exercise.

Researchers believe that both depletion of energy reserves and fall in muscle pH caused by lactate accumulation play a role in the onset of muscle fatigue, when an exercising muscle can no longer respond to stimulation with the same degree of contractile activity. Therefore, anaerobic, high-intensity exercise can be sustained for only a short duration, in contrast to the body's prolonged ability to sustain aerobic, endurance-type activities.

### Increased O<sub>2</sub> consumption is necessary to recover from exercise.

A person continues to breathe deeply and rapidly for some time after exercising. The need for elevated O<sub>2</sub> uptake during recovery from exercise (**excess postexercise oxygen consumption**, or **EPOC**) is due to various factors. The best known is repayment of an **oxygen deficit** incurred during exercise, when contractile activity was being supported by ATP derived from nonoxidative sources such as creatine phosphate and anaerobic glycolysis. During exercise, the creatine phosphate stores of active muscles are reduced, lactate may accumulate, and glycogen stores may be tapped; the extent of these effects depends on the intensity and duration of the activity. The biochemical transformations that restore the energy systems all need O<sub>2</sub>, which is provided by the sustained increase in respiratory activity after exercise has stopped.

Part of EPOC is not directly related to repayment of energy stores but instead results from a general metabolic disturbance following exercise. For example, secretion of epinephrine, a hormone that increases O<sub>2</sub> consumption by the body, is elevated during exercise. Until the circulating level of epinephrine returns to its preexercise state, O<sub>2</sub> uptake is increased above normal. Furthermore, body temperature rises several degrees Fahrenheit during exercise. A rise in temperature speeds up O<sub>2</sub>-consuming chemical reactions. Until body temperature returns to preexercise levels, the increased speed of these chemical reactions partly accounts for EPOC.

We have been looking at the contractile and metabolic activities of skeletal muscle fibers in general. However, not all skeletal muscle fibers use these mechanisms to the same extent.

We next examine the types of muscle fibers based on their speed of contraction and how they are metabolically equipped to generate ATP.

### There are three types of skeletal muscle fibers, based on differences in ATP splitting and synthesis.

Classified by their biochemical capacities, there are three major types of muscle fibers (▲ Table 8-1):

1. **Slow-oxidative (type I) fibers**
2. **Fast-oxidative (type IIa) fibers**
3. **Fast-glycolytic (type IIx) fibers**

As their names imply, the two main differences among these fiber types are their speed of contraction (slow or fast) and the type of enzymatic machinery they primarily use for ATP formation (oxidative or glycolytic).

**FAST VERSUS SLOW FIBERS** Fast fibers have higher myosin ATPase (ATP-splitting) activity than slow fibers do. The higher the ATPase activity, the more rapidly ATP is split and the faster the rate at which energy is made available for cross-bridge cycling. The result is a fast twitch, compared to the slower twitches of those fibers that split ATP more slowly. Thus, two factors determine the speed with which a muscle contracts: the load (load-velocity relationship) and the myosin ATPase activity of the contracting fibers (fast or slow twitch).

**OXIDATIVE VERSUS GLYCOLYTIC FIBERS** Fiber types also differ in ATP-synthesizing ability. Those with a greater capacity to form ATP are more resistant to fatigue. Some fibers are better equipped for oxidative phosphorylation, whereas others rely primarily on anaerobic glycolysis for synthesizing ATP. Because oxidative phosphorylation yields considerably more ATP from each nutrient molecule processed, it does not readily deplete energy stores. Furthermore, it does not result in lactate accumulation. Oxidative types of muscle fibers are therefore more resistant to fatigue than glycolytic fibers are.

Other related characteristics distinguishing these three fiber types are summarized in Table 8-1. As you would expect, the oxidative fibers, both slow and fast, contain an abundance of mitochondria, the organelles that house the enzymes involved in oxidative phosphorylation. Because adequate oxygenation is essential to support this pathway, these fibers are richly supplied with capillaries. Oxidative fibers also have high myoglobin content. **Myoglobin**, which is similar to hemoglobin, can store small amounts of O<sub>2</sub>, but more importantly, it increases the rate of O<sub>2</sub> transfer from the blood into muscle fibers. Myoglobin not only helps support oxidative fibers' O<sub>2</sub> dependency but also gives them a red color, just as oxygenated hemoglobin produces the red color of arterial blood. Accordingly, these muscle fibers are called **red fibers**.

In contrast, the fast fibers specialized for glycolysis contain few mitochondria but have a high content of glycolytic enzymes instead. Also, to supply the large amounts of glucose needed for glycolysis, they contain a lot of stored glycogen. Because the glycolytic fibers need relatively less O<sub>2</sub> to function, they have

## ▲ Table 8-1 Characteristics of Skeletal Muscle Fibers

Characteristic	TYPE OF FIBER		
	Slow Oxidative (Type I)	Fast Oxidative (Type IIa)	Fast Glycolytic (Type IIx)
<b>Myosin–ATPase Activity</b>	Low	High	High
<b>Speed of Contraction</b>	Slow	Fast	Fast
<b>Resistance to Fatigue</b>	High	Intermediate	Low
<b>Oxidative Phosphorylation Capacity</b>	High	High	Low
<b>Enzymes for Anaerobic Glycolysis</b>	Low	Intermediate	High
<b>Mitochondria</b>	Many	Many	Few
<b>Capillaries</b>	Many	Many	Few
<b>Myoglobin Content</b>	High	High	Low
<b>Color of Fiber</b>	Red	Red	White
<b>Glycogen Content</b>	Low	Intermediate	High

only a meager capillary supply compared with the oxidative fibers. The glycolytic fibers contain little myoglobin and therefore are pale in color, so they are sometimes called **white fibers**. (The most readily observable comparison between red and white fibers is the dark and white meat in poultry.)

**GENETIC ENDOWMENT OF MUSCLE FIBER TYPES** In humans, most muscles contain a mixture of all three fiber types; the percentage of each type is largely determined by the type of activity for which the muscle is specialized. Accordingly, a high proportion of slow-oxidative fibers are found in muscles specialized for maintaining low-intensity contractions for long periods without fatigue, such as the muscles of the back and legs that support the body's weight against the force of gravity. A preponderance of fast-glycolytic fibers are found in the arm muscles, which are adapted for performing rapid, forceful movements such as lifting heavy objects.

The percentage of these various fibers not only differs among muscles within an individual but also varies considerably among individuals. Athletes genetically endowed with a higher percentage of the fast-glycolytic fibers are good candidates for power and sprint events, whereas those with a greater proportion of slow-oxidative fibers are more likely to succeed in endurance activities such as marathon races.

Of course, success in any event depends on many factors other than genetic endowment, such as the extent and type of training and the level of dedication. Indeed, the mechanical and metabolic capabilities of muscle fibers can change a lot in response to the patterns of demands placed on them. Let us see how.

### Muscle fibers adapt considerably in response to the demands placed on them.

Different types of exercise produce different patterns of neuronal discharge to the muscle involved. Depending on the pattern of neural activity, long-term adaptive changes occur in the muscle fibers, enabling them to respond most efficiently to the

types of demands placed on the muscle. Two types of changes can be induced in muscle fibers: changes in their oxidative capacity and changes in their diameter.

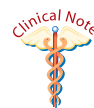
### IMPROVEMENT IN OXIDATIVE CAPACITY

Regular aerobic endurance exercise, such as long-distance jogging or swimming, promotes metabolic changes within the oxidative fibers, which are the ones primarily recruited during aerobic exercise. For example, the number of mitochondria and the number of capillaries supplying blood to these fibers both increase. Muscles so adapted can

use O<sub>2</sub> more efficiently and therefore can better endure prolonged activity without fatiguing. However, they do not change in size.

**MUSCLE HYPERTROPHY** The actual size of the muscles can be increased by regular bouts of anaerobic, short-duration, high-intensity resistance training, such as weight lifting. The resulting muscle enlargement comes primarily from an increase in diameter (**hypertrophy**) of the fast-glycolytic fibers called into play during such powerful contractions. Most fiber thickening results from increased synthesis of myosin and actin filaments, which permits a greater opportunity for cross-bridge interaction and consequently increases the muscle's contractile strength. The resultant bulging muscles are better adapted to activities that require intense strength for brief periods, but endurance has not been improved.

**INFLUENCE OF TESTOSTERONE** Men's muscle fibers are thicker, and accordingly, their muscles are larger and stronger than those of women, even without weight training, because of the actions of testosterone, a steroid hormone secreted primarily in males. Testosterone promotes the synthesis and assembly of myosin and actin. This fact has led some athletes, both males and females, to the dangerous practice of taking this or closely related steroids to increase their athletic performance. (To explore this topic further, see the accompanying boxed feature, **Beyond the Basics**.)



**MUSCLE ATROPHY** At the other extreme, if a muscle is not routinely used, its actin and myosin content decreases, its fibers become smaller, and the muscle accordingly **atrophies** (decreases in mass) and becomes weaker. For example, atrophy occurs when a muscle is not used for a long period, as when a cast or brace must be worn or during prolonged bed confinement.

We have now completed our discussion of all the determinants of whole-muscle tension in a skeletal muscle, which are summarized in ▲ Table 8-2. Next, we examine the central and

## Beyond the Basics

The testing of athletes for drugs, and the much publicized exclusion from competition of those found to be using substances outlawed by sports federations, have stirred considerable controversy. One such group of drugs is **anabolic androgenic steroids** (*anabolic* means “buildup of tissues,” *androgenic* means “male producing,” and *steroids* are a class of hormone). These agents are closely related to testosterone, the natural male sex hormone, which is responsible for promoting the increased muscle mass characteristic of males.

Although their use is outlawed (possessing anabolic steroids without a prescription became a federal offense in 1991), these agents are taken by many athletes who specialize in power events such as weight lifting and sprinting in the hopes of increasing muscle mass and, accordingly, muscle strength. Both male and female athletes have resorted to using these substances in an attempt to gain a competitive edge. Bodybuilders also take anabolic steroids. Furthermore, although most players deny using these agents, experts believe these performance enhancers are widely used in professional sports such as baseball, football, basketball, competitive cycling, and hockey. There are an estimated 1 million anabolic steroid abusers in the United States. Compounding the problem, underground chemists recently created new synthetic performance-enhancing steroids undetectable by standard drug tests. Unfortunately, use of anabolic steroids has spread into our nation's high schools and even younger age groups. Recent studies indicate that 10% of male and 3% of female high school athletes use banned steroids. The manager of the steroid abuse hotline of the National Steroid Research Center reports having calls for help from abusers as young as 12 years old.

Studies have confirmed that steroids can increase muscle mass when used in large amounts and coupled with heavy exercise. One reputable study demonstrated an average 8.9-pound gain of lean muscle in bodybuilders who used steroids during a 10-week period. Anecdotal evidence suggests that some steroid users have added as much as 40 pounds of muscle in a year.

The adverse effects of these drugs, however, outweigh any benefits derived.

## Are Athletes Who Use Steroids to Gain Competitive Advantage Really Winners or Losers?

In females, who normally lack potent androgenic hormones, anabolic steroid drugs not only promote “male-type” muscle mass and strength but also “masculinize” the users in other ways, such as by inducing growth of facial hair and by lowering the voice. More important, in both males and females, these agents adversely affect the reproductive and cardiovascular systems and the liver, may have an impact on behavior, and may be addictive.

### Adverse Effects on the Reproductive System

In males, testosterone secretion and sperm production by the testes are normally controlled by hormones from the anterior pituitary gland. In negative-feedback fashion, testosterone inhibits secretion of these controlling hormones so that a constant circulating level of testosterone is maintained. The anterior pituitary is similarly inhibited by androgenic steroids taken as a drug. As a result, because the testes do not receive their normal stimulatory input from the anterior pituitary, testosterone secretion and sperm production decrease and the testes shrink. This hormone abuse also may set the stage for cancer of the testes and prostate gland.

In females, inhibition of the anterior pituitary by androgenic drugs suppresses the hormonal output that controls ovarian function. The result is failure to ovulate, menstrual irregularities, and decreased secretion of “feminizing” female sex hormones. Their decline diminishes breast size and other female characteristics.

### Adverse Effects on the Cardiovascular System

Use of anabolic steroids induces cardiovascular changes that increase the risk of developing atherosclerosis, which in turn is associated with an increased incidence of heart attacks and strokes (see p. 253). Among these adverse cardiovascular effects are (1) a reduction in high-density lipoproteins (HDL), the “good” cholesterol carriers that help remove cholesterol from the body, and (2) elevated blood pressure. Animal studies have also demonstrated damage to the heart muscle itself.

### Adverse Effects on the Liver

Liver dysfunction is common with high steroid intake because the liver, which normally inactivates steroid hormones and prepares them for urinary excretion, is overloaded by the excess steroid intake. The incidence of liver cancer is also increased.

### Adverse Effects on Behavior

Although the evidence is still controversial, anabolic steroid use appears to promote aggressive, even hostile behavior—the so-called ‘roid rages.

### Addictive Effects

A troubling new concern is the addiction to anabolic steroids of some who abuse these drugs. In a survey using anonymous, self-administered questionnaires, 57% of steroid users qualified as being addicted. This apparent tendency to become chemically dependent on steroids is alarming because the potential for adverse effects on health increases with long-term, heavy use, the kind of use that would be expected from someone hooked on the drug.

Thus, for health reasons, without even taking into account the legal and ethical issues, people should not use anabolic steroids. However, the problem appears to be worsening. Currently, the international black market for anabolic steroids is estimated at \$1 billion per year.

### Other Cheating Ways to Build Muscle Mass

Athletes seeking an artificial competitive edge have resorted to other illicit measures besides taking anabolic steroids, such as using human growth hormone or related compounds in the hopes of spurring muscle buildup. More worrisome, scientists predict the next illicit frontier will be gene doping. **Gene doping** refers to gene therapy aimed at improving athletic performance, such as by promoting production of naturally occurring muscle-building chemicals (for example, *insulin-like growth factor*) or by blocking production of *myostatin*, a natural body chemical that puts the brakes on muscle growth. Because these chemicals occur naturally in the body, detection of gene doping will be a challenge.

## ▲ Table 8-2 Determinants of Whole-Muscle Tension in Skeletal Muscle

### Number of Fibers Contracting

Number of motor units recruited\*

Number of muscle fibers per motor unit

Number of muscle fibers available to contract (size of muscle)

### Tension Developed by Each Contracting Fiber

Frequency of stimulation (twitch summation, tetanus)\*

Length of fiber at onset of contraction (length–tension relationship)

Extent of fatigue

Duration of activity

Type of fiber (fatigue-resistant oxidative, fatigue-prone glycolytic)

Thickness of fiber

Pattern of neural activity (hypertrophy, atrophy)

Amount of testosterone (larger fibers in males than females)

\*Factors controlled to accomplish gradation of contraction.

local mechanisms involved in regulating the motor activity performed by these muscles.

## Control of Motor Movement

Particular patterns of motor unit output govern motor activity, ranging from simply maintaining posture and balance; to stereotypical movements, such as walking; to highly skilled movements, such as gymnastics. Control of any motor movement, regardless of its level of complexity, depends on converging input to the motor neurons of specific motor units. The motor neurons in turn trigger contraction of the muscle fibers within their respective motor units.

### Multiple neural inputs influence motor unit output.

Three levels of input to the motor neurons control their output to the muscle fibers they innervate:

1. *Input from afferent neurons.* This input, usually through intervening interneurons, occurs at the level of the spinal cord—that is, spinal reflexes (see p. 135).
2. *Input from the primary motor cortex.* Fibers originating from neuronal cell bodies known as **pyramidal cells** within the primary motor cortex (see p. 117) descend directly without synaptic interruption to terminate on motor neurons in the spinal cord. These fibers make up the **corticospinal** (or **pyramidal**) **motor system**.
3. *Input from the brain stem as part of the multineuronal motor system.* The pathways composing the **multineuronal** (or **extrapyramidal**) **motor system** include synapses that involve many

regions of the brain (*extra* means “outside of”; *pyramidal* refers to the pyramidal system). The final link in multineuronal pathways is the brain stem, especially the reticular formation (see p. 130), which in turn is influenced by motor regions of the cortex, the cerebellum, and the basal nuclei. In addition, the motor cortex itself is interconnected with the thalamus, as well as with premotor and supplementary motor areas; these are all part of the multineuronal system.

The only brain regions that directly influence motor neurons are the primary motor cortex and brain stem; the other involved brain regions indirectly regulate motor activity by adjusting motor output from the motor cortex and brain stem. Numerous complex interactions take place among these various brain regions. (See Chapter 5 for further discussion of the specific roles of these brain regions.)

Spinal reflexes involving afferent neurons are important in maintaining posture and in executing basic protective movements, such as the withdrawal reflex. The corticospinal system primarily mediates performance of fine, discrete, voluntary movements of the hands and fingers, such as those required for doing intricate needlework. Premotor and supplementary motor areas, with input from the cerebrocerebellum, plan the voluntary motor command that is issued to the appropriate motor neurons by the primary motor cortex through this descending system (see p. 119). The multineuronal system, in contrast, primarily regulates overall body posture involving involuntary movements of large muscle groups of the trunk and limbs. The corticospinal and multineuronal systems show considerable complex interaction and overlapping of function. To voluntarily manipulate your fingers to do needlework, for example, you subconsciously assume a particular posture of your arms that lets you hold your work.



Some inputs converging on motor neurons are excitatory, whereas others are inhibitory. Coordinated movement depends on an appropriate balance of activity in these inputs. The following types of motor abnormalities result from defective motor control:

- If an inhibitory system originating in the brain stem is disrupted, muscles become hyperactive because of the unopposed activity in excitatory inputs to motor neurons. This condition, characterized by increased muscle tone and augmented limb reflexes, is known as **spastic paralysis**.
- In contrast, loss of excitatory input, such as that accompanies destruction of descending excitatory pathways exiting the primary motor cortex, brings about **flaccid paralysis**. In this condition, the muscles are relaxed and the person cannot voluntarily contract muscles, although spinal reflex activity is still present. Damage to the primary motor cortex on one side of the brain, as with a stroke, leads to flaccid paralysis on the opposite half of the body (**hemiplegia**, or paralysis of one side of the body). Disruption of all descending pathways, as in traumatic severance of the spinal cord, produces flaccid paralysis below the level of the damaged region—**quadriplegia** (paralysis of all four limbs) in upper-spinal-cord damage and **paraplegia** (paralysis of the legs) in lower-spinal-cord injury.

- Destruction of motor neurons—either their cell bodies or the efferent fibers—causes flaccid paralysis and lack of reflex responsiveness in the affected muscles.
- Damage to the cerebellum or basal nuclei results not in paralysis but in uncoordinated, clumsy activity and inappropriate patterns of movement. These regions normally smooth out activity initiated voluntarily.
- Damage to higher cortical regions involved in planning motor activity results in the inability to establish appropriate motor commands to accomplish desired goals.

### Muscle receptors provide afferent information needed to control skeletal muscle activity.

Coordinated, purposeful skeletal muscle activity depends on afferent input from various sources. At a simple level, afferent signals indicating that your finger is touching a hot stove trigger reflex contractile activity in appropriate arm muscles to withdraw the hand from the injurious stimulus. At a more complex level, if you are going to catch a ball, the motor systems of your brain must program sequential motor commands that will move and position your body correctly for the catch, using predictions of the ball's direction and rate of movement provided by visual input. Many muscles acting simultaneously or alternately at different joints are called into play to shift your body's location and position rapidly while maintaining your balance. To appropriately program muscle activity, your CNS must know the starting position of your body. Furthermore, it must be constantly informed about the progression of movement it has initiated so that it can make adjustments as needed. Your brain receives this information, which is known as *proprioceptive input* (see p. 115), from receptors in your eyes, joints, vestibular apparatus, and skin, as well as from the muscles themselves.

You can demonstrate your joint and muscle proprioceptive receptors in action by closing your eyes and bringing the tips of your right and left index fingers together at any point in space. You can do so without seeing where your hands are, because your brain is informed of the position of your hands and other body parts at all times by afferent input from the joint and muscle receptors.

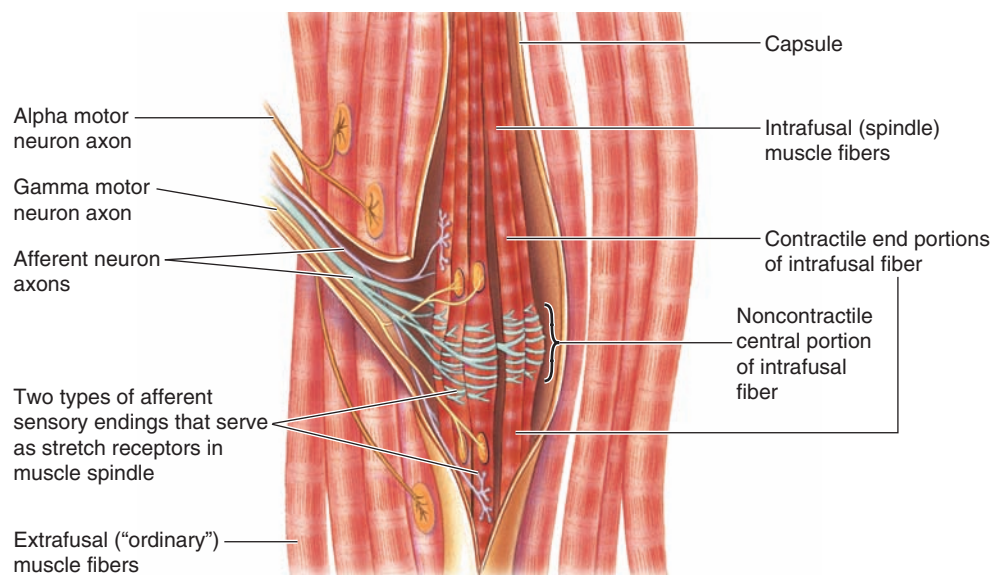
Two types of muscle receptors—*muscle spindles* and *Golgi tendon organs*—monitor changes in muscle length and tension. Muscle length is monitored by muscle spindles; changes in muscle tension are detected by Golgi tendon organs. Both these receptor types are activated by muscle stretch, but they convey different types of information. Let us see how.

**MUSCLE SPINDLE STRUCTURE** Muscle spindles, which are distributed throughout the fleshy part of a skeletal muscle, consist of collections of specialized muscle fibers known as **intrafusal fibers**, which lie within spindle-shaped connective tissue capsules parallel to the “ordinary” **extrafusal fibers** (*fusus* means “spindle”) (● Figure 8-18). Unlike an ordinary extrafusal skeletal muscle fiber, which contains contractile elements (myofibrils) throughout its entire length, an intrafusal fiber has a noncontractile central portion, with the contractile elements being limited to both ends.

Each muscle spindle has its own private efferent and afferent nerve supply. The efferent neuron that innervates a muscle spindle's intrafusal fibers is known as a **gamma motor neuron**, whereas the motor neurons that supply the extrafusal fibers are called **alpha motor neurons**. Two types of afferent sensory endings terminate on the intrafusal fibers and serve as muscle spindle receptors, both of which are activated by stretch. Together they detect changes in the length of the fibers during stretching, as well as the speed with which it occurs. Muscle spindles play a key role in the stretch reflex.

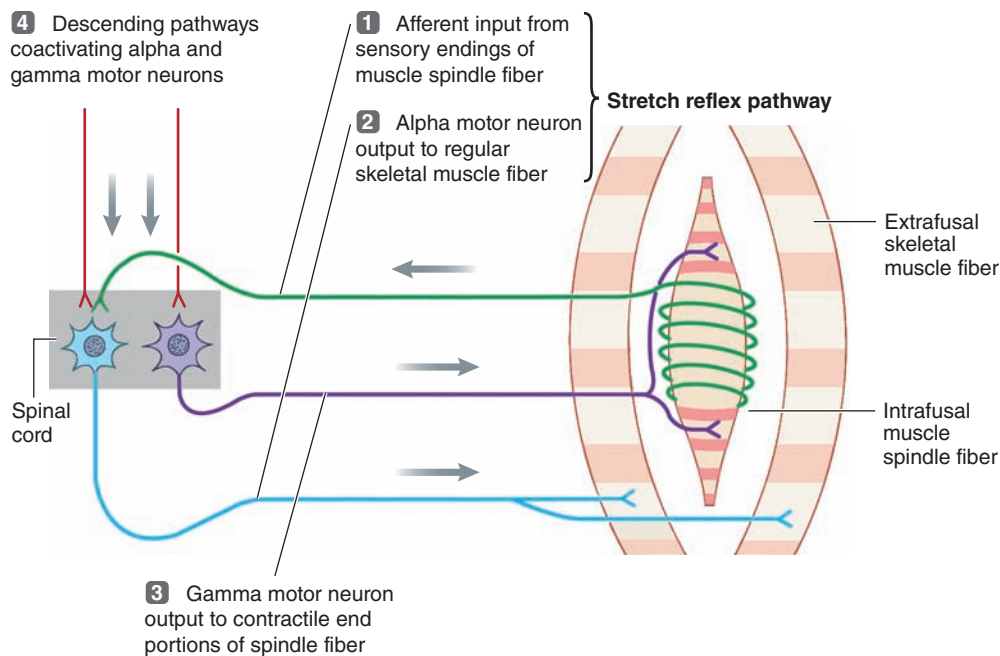
**STRETCH REFLEX** Whenever a whole muscle is passively stretched, its muscle spindle intrafusal fibers are likewise stretched, increasing the firing rate in the afferent nerve fibers whose sensory endings terminate on the stretched spindle fibers. The afferent neuron directly synapses on the alpha motor neuron that innervates the extrafusal fibers of the same muscle, resulting in contraction of that muscle (● Figure 8-19a, steps 1 and 2). This monosynaptic **stretch reflex** (see p. 135) is a local negative-feedback mechanism to resist any passive changes in muscle length so that optimal resting length can be maintained.

The classic example of the stretch reflex is the **patellar tendon, or knee-jerk, reflex** (● Figure 8-20). The extensor muscle of the knee is the *quadriceps femoris*, which forms the front portion of the thigh and is attached just below the knee to the tibia (shinbone) by the *patellar tendon*. Tapping this tendon with a rubber mallet passively stretches the quadriceps muscle, acti-

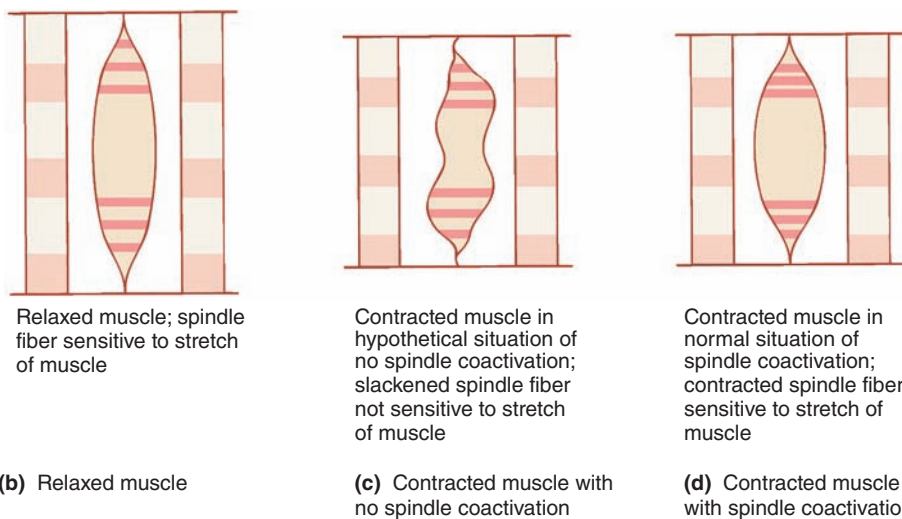


● FIGURE 8-18 Muscle spindle.





(a) Pathways involved in monosynaptic stretch reflex and coactivation of alpha and gamma motor neurons



● **FIGURE 8-19** Muscle spindle function.

vating its spindle receptors. The resulting stretch reflex brings about contraction of this extensor muscle, causing the knee to extend and raise the foreleg in the well-known knee-jerk fashion.



This test is routinely done as a preliminary assessment of nervous system function. A normal knee jerk indicates that a number of neural and muscular components—muscle spindle, afferent input, motor neurons, efferent output, neuromuscular junctions, and the muscles themselves—are functioning normally. It also indicates an appropriate balance of excitatory and inhibitory input to the motor neurons from higher brain levels. Muscle jerks may be absent or depressed with loss of higher-level excitatory inputs, or they may be greatly exaggerated with loss of inhibitory input to the motor neurons from higher brain levels.

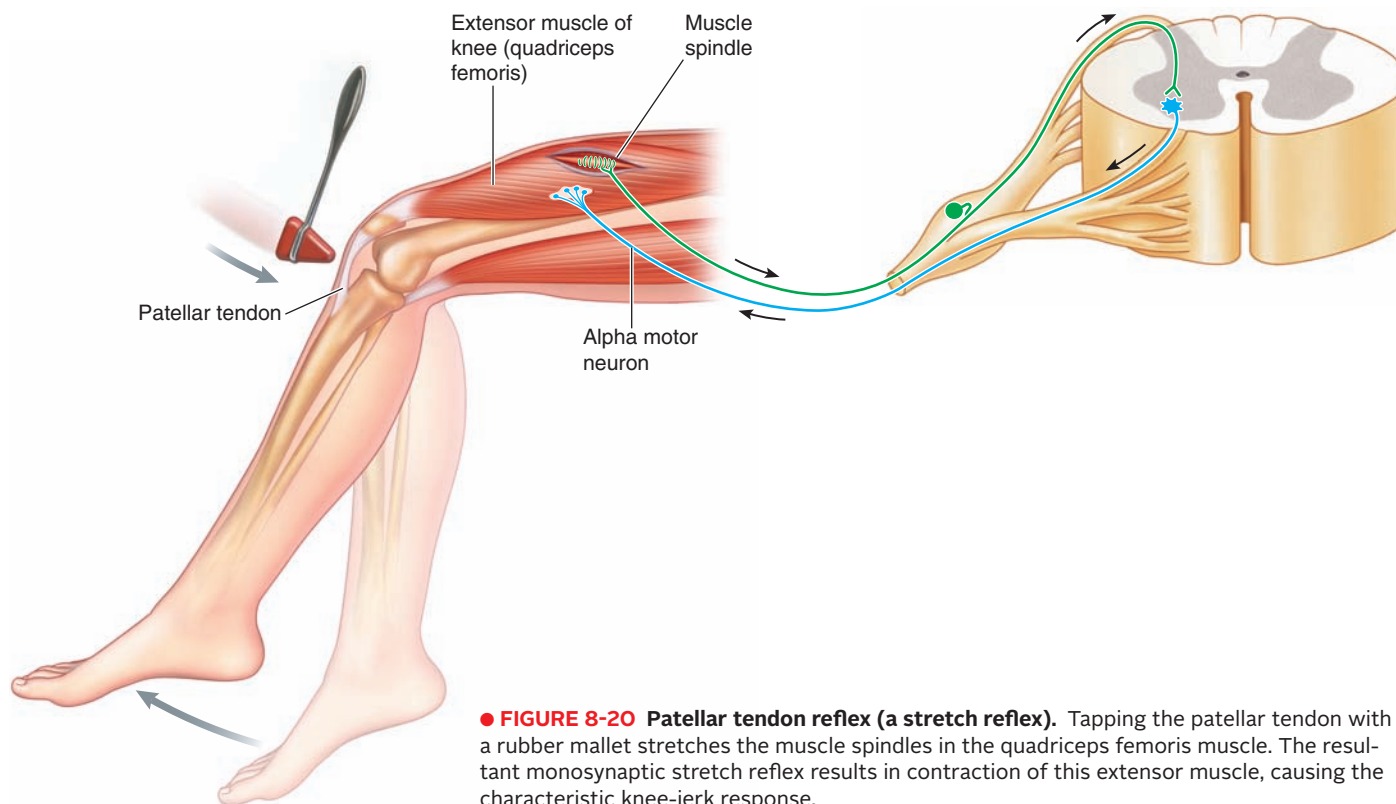
step 4 takes the slack out of the spindle fibers as the whole muscle shortens, letting these receptor structures maintain their high sensitivity to stretch over a range of muscle lengths (see ● Figure 8-19d). When gamma-motor-neuron stimulation triggers simultaneous contraction of both end muscular portions of an intrafusal fiber, the noncontractile central portion is pulled in opposite directions, tightening this region and taking out the slack. Whereas the extent of alpha-motor-neuron activation depends on the intended strength of the motor response, the extent of simultaneous gamma-motor-neuron activity to the same muscle depends on the anticipated distance of shortening.

**GOLGI TENDON ORGANS** In contrast to muscle spindles, which lie within the belly of the muscle, Golgi tendon organs are in the tendons of the muscle, where they can respond to changes in

The primary purpose of the stretch reflex is to resist the tendency for your extensor muscles to passively stretch as a result of gravitational forces when you are standing upright. Whenever your knee joint tends to buckle because of gravity, your quadriceps muscle is stretched. The resulting enhanced contraction of this extensor muscle brought about by the stretch reflex quickly straightens out the knee, keeping your leg extended so that you remain standing.

**COACTIVATION OF GAMMA AND ALPHA MOTOR NEURONS**

Gamma motor neurons initiate contraction of the muscular end regions of intrafusal fibers (see ● Figure 8-19a, step 3). This contractile response is too weak to have any influence on whole-muscle tension, but it does have an important localized effect on the muscle spindle itself. If there were no compensating mechanisms, shortening of the whole muscle by alpha-motor-neuron stimulation of extrafusal fibers would slacken the spindle fibers so that they would be less sensitive to stretch and therefore not as effective as muscle length detectors (see ● Figure 8-19b and c). **Coactivation** (simultaneous stimulation) of the gamma-motor-neuron system along with the alpha-motor-neuron system during reflex and voluntary contractions (see ● Figure 8-19a,



● **FIGURE 8-20 Patellar tendon reflex (a stretch reflex).** Tapping the patellar tendon with a rubber mallet stretches the muscle spindles in the quadriceps femoris muscle. The resultant monosynaptic stretch reflex results in contraction of this extensor muscle, causing the characteristic knee-jerk response.

the muscle's tension rather than to changes in its length. Because several factors determine the tension developed in the whole muscle during contraction (for example, frequency of stimulation or length of muscle at the onset of contraction), it is essential that motor control systems be apprised of the tension actually achieved so that adjustments can be made if necessary.

Golgi tendon organs consist of endings of afferent fibers entwined within bundles of collagen (connective tissue) fibers that make up the tendon. When the extrafusal muscle fibers contract, the resulting pull on the tendon tightens the collagen bundles, which in turn increase the tension exerted on the bone to which the tendon is attached. In the process, the entwined Golgi organ afferent receptor endings are stretched, causing the afferent fibers to fire; the frequency of firing is directly related to the tension developed. This afferent information is sent to the brain for processing. Much of this information is used subconsciously for smoothly executing motor activity, but unlike afferent information from the muscle spindles, afferent information from the Golgi tendon organ reaches the level of conscious awareness. You are aware of the tension within a muscle but not of its length.

Scientists once thought the Golgi tendon organ triggered a protective spinal reflex that halted further contraction and brought about sudden reflex relaxation when the muscle tension became great enough, thus helping prevent damage to the muscle or tendon from excessive, tension-developing muscle contractions. Scientists now believe, however, that this receptor is a pure sensor and does not initiate any reflexes. Other unknown mechanisms are apparently involved in inhibiting further contraction to prevent tension-induced damage.

Having completed our discussion of skeletal muscle, we now examine smooth and cardiac muscle.

## Smooth and Cardiac Muscle

The two other types of muscle—smooth muscle and cardiac muscle—share some basic properties with skeletal muscle, but each also displays unique characteristics (▲ Table 8-3). The three muscle types all have a specialized contractile apparatus made up of thin actin filaments that slide relative to stationary thick myosin filaments in response to a rise in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to accomplish contraction. Also, they all directly use ATP as the energy source for cross-bridge cycling. However, the structure and organization of fibers within these muscle types vary, as do their mechanisms of excitation and the means by which excitation and contraction are coupled. Furthermore, important distinctions occur in the contractile response itself. We spend the rest of this chapter highlighting unique features of smooth and cardiac muscle as compared with skeletal muscle, saving more detailed discussion of their function for chapters on organs containing these muscle types.

### Smooth muscle cells are small and unstriated.

Most smooth muscle cells are found in the walls of hollow organs and tubes. Their contraction exerts pressure on and regulates the forward movement of the contents of these structures.

Both smooth and skeletal muscle cells are elongated, but in contrast to their large, cylindrical skeletal muscle counterparts, smooth muscle cells are spindle shaped and smaller. Also unlike

▲ **Table 8-3 Comparison of Muscle Types**

Characteristic	TYPE OF MUSCLE			
	Skeletal	Multiunit Smooth	Single-Unit Smooth	Cardiac
<b>Location</b>	Attached to skeleton	Large blood vessels, small airways, eye, and hair follicles	Walls of hollow organs in digestive, reproductive, and urinary tracts and in small blood vessels	Heart only
<b>Function</b>	Movement of the body in relation to the external environment	Varies with the structure involved	Movement of the contents within hollow organs	Pumps blood out of the heart
<b>Mechanism of Contraction</b>	Sliding filament mechanism	Sliding filament mechanism	Sliding filament mechanism	Sliding filament mechanism
<b>Innervation</b>	Somatic nervous system (alpha motor neurons)	Autonomic nervous system	Autonomic nervous system	Autonomic nervous system
<b>Level of Control</b>	Under voluntary control; also subject to subconscious regulation	Under involuntary control	Under involuntary control	Under involuntary control
<b>Initiation of Contraction</b>	Neurogenic	Neurogenic	Myogenic (pacemaker potentials, slow-wave potentials)	Myogenic (pacemaker potentials)
<b>Role of Nervous Stimulation</b>	Initiates contraction; accomplishes gradation	Initiates contraction; contributes to gradation	Modifies contraction; can excite or inhibit; contributes to gradation	Modifies contraction; can excite or inhibit; contributes to gradation
<b>Modifying Effect of Hormones</b>	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Presence of Thick Myosin and Thin Actin Filaments</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Striated by Orderly Arrangement of Filaments</b>	Yes	No	No	Yes
<b>Presence of Troponin and Tropomyosin</b>	Yes	Tropomyosin only	Tropomyosin only	Yes
<b>Presence of T Tubules</b>	Yes	No	No	Yes
<b>Level of Development of Sarcoplasmic Reticulum</b>	Well developed	Poorly developed	Poorly developed	Moderately developed
<b>Cross Bridges Turned on by Ca<sup>2+</sup></b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

▲ **Table 8-3 Comparison of Muscle Types—cont'd**

Characteristic	TYPE OF MUSCLE			
	Skeletal	Multiunit Smooth	Single-Unit Smooth	Cardiac
<b>Source of Increased Cytosolic Ca<sup>2+</sup></b>	Sarcoplasmic reticulum	Extracellular fluid and sarcoplasmic reticulum	Extracellular fluid and sarcoplasmic reticulum	Extracellular fluid and sarcoplasmic reticulum
<b>Site of Ca<sup>2+</sup> Regulation</b>	Troponin in thin filaments	Myosin in thick filaments	Myosin in thick filaments	Troponin in thin filaments
<b>Mechanism of Ca<sup>2+</sup> Action</b>	Physically repositions the troponin–tropomyosin complex to uncover actin cross-bridge binding sites	Chemically brings about phosphorylation of myosin cross bridges so that they can bind with actin	Chemically brings about phosphorylation of myosin cross bridges so that they can bind with actin	Physically repositions the troponin–tropomyosin complex
<b>Presence of Gap Junctions</b>	No	Yes (few)	Yes	Yes
<b>ATP used Directly by the Contractile Apparatus</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Myosin ATPase Activity (Speed of Contraction)</b>	Fast or slow, depending on type of fiber	Very slow	Very slow	Slow
<b>Means by Which Gradation Is Accomplished</b>	Varying number of motor units contracting (motor unit recruitment) and frequency at which they're stimulated (twitch summation)	Varying number of muscle fibers contracting and varying cytosolic Ca <sup>2+</sup> concentration in each fiber by autonomic and hormonal influences	Varying cytosolic Ca <sup>2+</sup> concentration through myogenic activity and influences of the autonomic nervous system, hormones, mechanical stretch, and local metabolites	Varying length of fiber (depending on the extent of filling of heart chambers) and varying cytosolic Ca <sup>2+</sup> concentration through autonomic, hormonal, and local metabolite influence
<b>Clear-Cut Length–Tension Relationship</b>	Yes	No	No	Yes

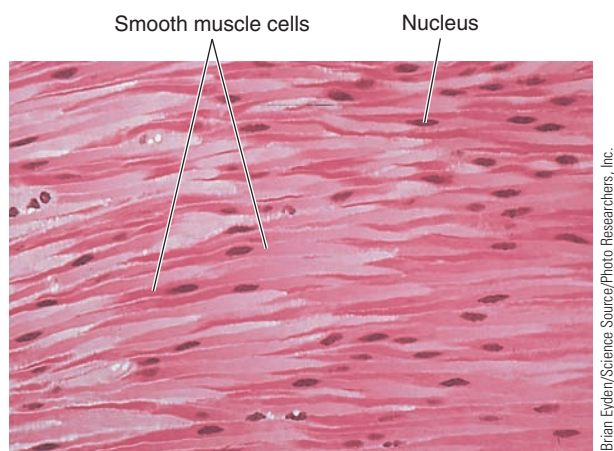
skeletal muscle cells, a single smooth muscle cell does not extend the full length of a muscle. Instead, groups of smooth muscle cells are typically arranged in sheets (● Figure 8-21a).

A smooth muscle cell has three types of filaments: (1) thick myosin filaments, which are longer than those in skeletal muscle; (2) thin actin filaments, which contain tropomyosin but lack troponin; and (3) filaments of intermediate size, which do not directly participate in contraction but are part of the cytoskeletal framework that supports the cell shape. Smooth muscle filaments do not form myofibrils and are not arranged in the sarcomere pattern found in skeletal muscle. Thus, smooth muscle cells do not show the banding or striation of skeletal muscle, hence the term *smooth* for this muscle type.

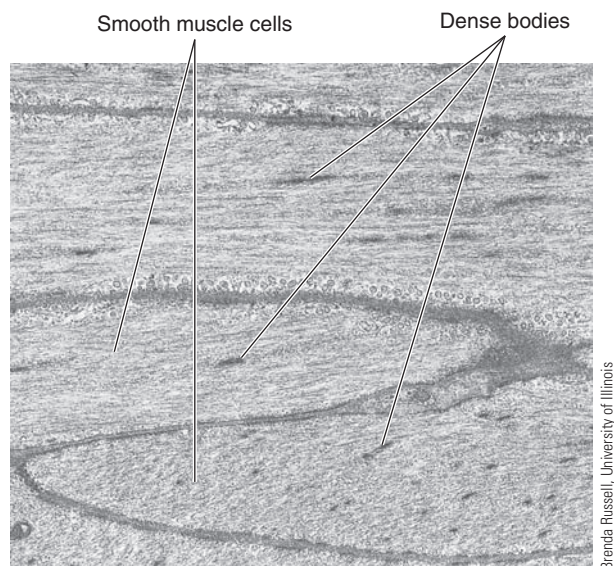
Lacking sarcomeres, smooth muscle does not have Z lines as such but has **dense bodies** containing the same protein constituent found in Z lines (● Figure 8-21b). Dense bodies are positioned throughout the smooth muscle cell, as well as at-

tached to the internal surface of the plasma membrane. Dense bodies are held in place by a scaffold of intermediate filaments. The actin filaments are anchored to the dense bodies. Considerably more actin is present in smooth muscle cells than in skeletal muscle cells, with 10 to 15 thin filaments for each thick myosin filament in smooth muscle compared to 2 thin filaments for each thick filament in skeletal muscle. The thick- and thin-filament contractile units are oriented slightly diagonally from side to side within the smooth muscle cell in an elongated, diamond-shaped lattice, rather than running parallel with the long axis as myofibrils do in skeletal muscle (● Figure 8-22a). Relative sliding of the thin filaments past the thick filaments during contraction causes the filament lattice to shorten and expand from side to side. As a result, the whole cell shortens and bulges out between the points where the thin filaments are attached to the inner surface of the plasma membrane (● Figure 8-22b).

Unlike in skeletal muscle, myosin molecules are arranged in a smooth-muscle thick filament so that cross bridges are present along the entire filament length (that is, there is no bare portion in the center of a smooth-muscle thick filament). As a result, the surrounding thin filaments can be pulled along the thick filaments for longer distances than in skeletal muscle. Also dissimilar to skeletal muscle (in which all thin filaments surrounding a thick filament are pulled toward the center of the stationary thick filament), the myosin proteins in smooth-muscle thick filaments are organized so that half of the surrounding thin filaments are pulled toward one end of the stationary thick filament and the other half are pulled in the opposite direction (● Figure 8-22b).



(a) Low-power light micrograph of smooth muscle cells



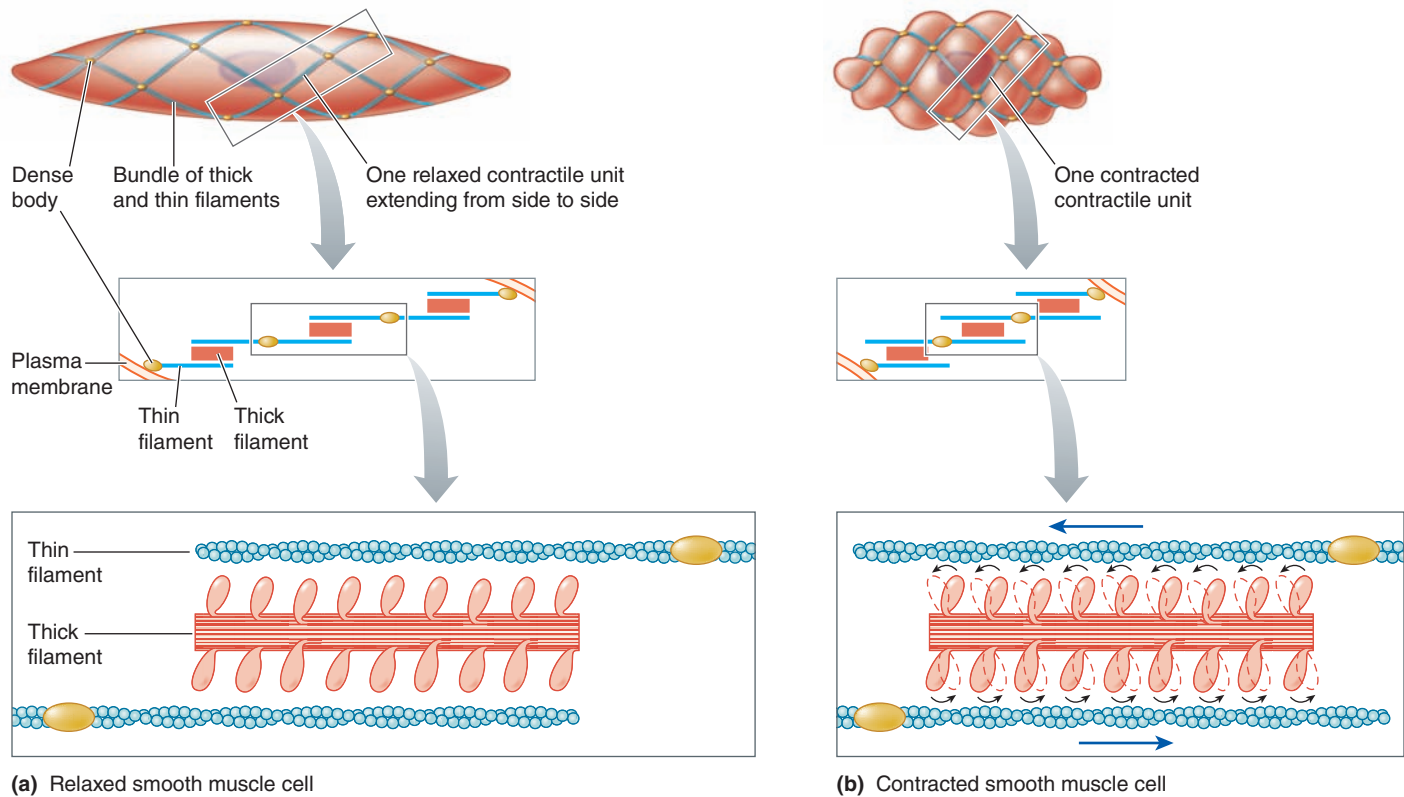
(b) Electron micrograph of smooth muscle cells

● **FIGURE 8-21 Microscopic view of smooth muscle cells.**

(a) Note the spindle shape. (b) Note the presence of dense bodies and lack of banding.

**Smooth muscle cells are turned on by  $Ca^{2+}$ -dependent phosphorylation of myosin.**

The thin filaments of smooth muscle cells do not contain troponin, and tropomyosin does not block actin's cross-bridge binding sites. What, then, prevents actin and myosin from binding at the cross bridges in the resting state, and how is cross-bridge activity switched on in the excited state? Smooth muscle myosin can interact with actin only when it is *phosphorylated* (that is, has phosphate from ATP attached to it) at its light chain. The **light chain** is a “necklace” of proteins attached to the head of a myosin molecule, near the “neck” region. During excitation, the increased smooth muscle  $Ca^{2+}$  binds with **calmodulin**, an intracellular protein structurally similar to troponin. This  $Ca^{2+}$ -calmodulin complex initiates a chain of biochemical events that results in phosphorylation of the myosin light chain. This phosphate on the myosin light chain is in addition to the phosphate accompanying ADP on the myosin cross-bridge ATPase site during the energy cycle (● Figure 8-23). Phosphorylated myosin then binds with actin so that cross-bridge cycling can begin. Therefore, smooth muscle is triggered to contract by a rise in cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  similar to what happens in skeletal muscle. However, in smooth muscle,  $Ca^{2+}$  ultimately turns on the cross bridges by inducing a *chemical* change in myosin in the *thick* filaments (phosphorylation), whereas in skeletal muscle it exerts its effects by causing a *physical* change at the *thin* filaments



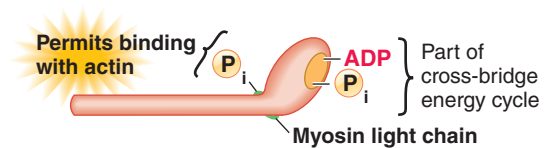
(a) Relaxed smooth muscle cell  
 ● **FIGURE 8-22** Arrangement of thick and thin filaments in a smooth muscle cell in relaxed and contracted states.

(moving troponin and tropomyosin from their blocking positions) (● Figure 8-24).

The means by which cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration increases in smooth muscle cells to turn on the cross bridges also differs from that for skeletal muscle. A smooth muscle cell has no T tubules and a poorly developed sarcoplasmic reticulum. The increased cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that triggers contraction comes from two sources: Most  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  enters down its concentration gradient from the extracellular fluid (ECF) when surface-membrane  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels open. The entering  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  triggers the opening of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels in the sarcoplasmic reticulum so that small additional amounts of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  are released intracellularly from this meager source. Because smooth muscle cells are so much smaller in diameter than skeletal muscle fibers, most  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering from the ECF can influence cross-bridge activity, even in the central portions of the cell, without requiring an elaborate T tubule–sarcoplasmic reticulum mechanism.

Relaxation in smooth muscle is accomplished by removal of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  as it is actively transported out across the plasma membrane, or back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum, depending on its source. When  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is removed, myosin is dephosphorylated (the phosphate is removed) and can no longer interact with actin, so the muscle relaxes.

We still have not addressed the question of how smooth muscle becomes excited to contract; that is, what opens the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels in the plasma membrane? Smooth muscle is grouped into two categories—*multiunit* and *single-unit smooth*

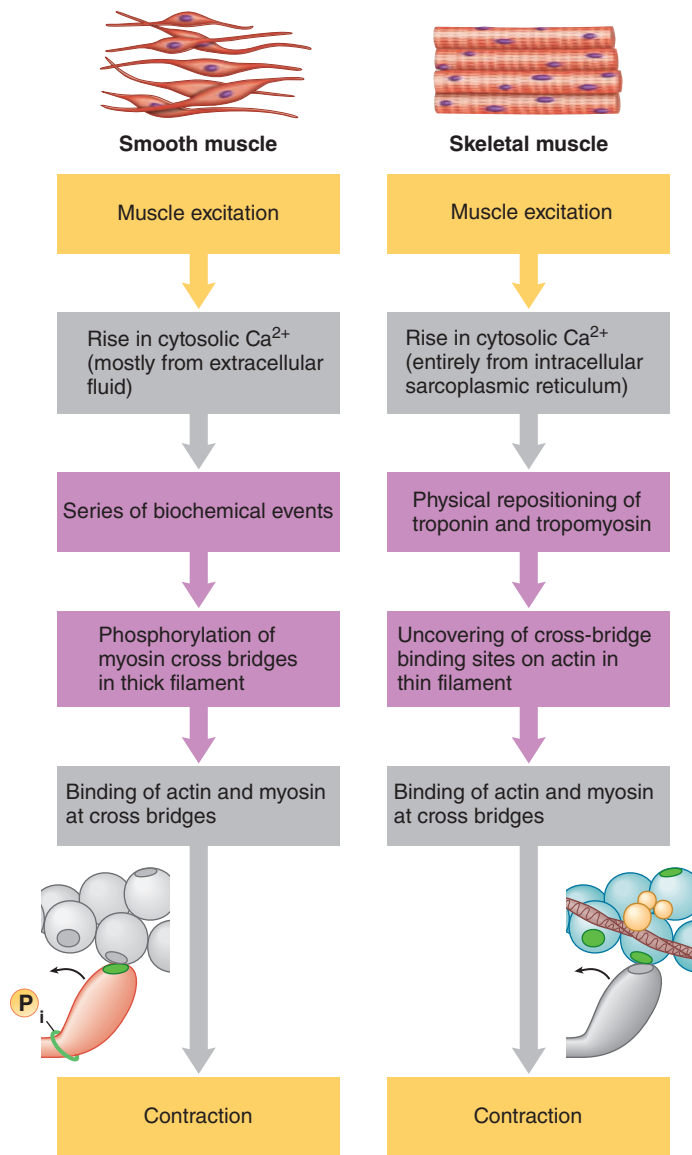


● **FIGURE 8-23** Activated myosin cross bridge in smooth muscle.

*muscle*—based on differences in how the muscle fibers become excited. Let us compare these two types of smooth muscle.

### Multiunit smooth muscle is neurogenic.

**Multiunit smooth muscle** exhibits properties partway between those of skeletal muscle and those of single-unit smooth muscle. As the name implies, a multiunit smooth muscle consists of multiple discrete units that function independently of one another and must be separately stimulated by nerves to undergo action potentials and contract, similar to skeletal muscle motor units. Thus, contractile activity in both skeletal muscle and multiunit smooth muscle is **neurogenic** (“nerve produced”). That is, contraction in these muscle types is initiated only in response to stimulation by the nerves supplying the muscle. Whereas skeletal muscle is innervated by the voluntary somatic nervous system (motor neurons), multiunit (as well as single-unit) smooth muscle is supplied by the involuntary autonomic nervous system.



● **FIGURE 8-24** Comparison of the role of calcium in bringing about contraction in smooth muscle and skeletal muscle.

Multiunit smooth muscle is found (1) in the walls of large blood vessels; (2) in small airways to the lungs; (3) in the muscle of the eye that adjusts the lens for near or far vision; (4) in the iris of the eye, which alters the pupil size to adjust the amount of light entering the eye; and (5) at the base of hair follicles, contraction of which causes “goose bumps.”

### Single-unit smooth muscle cells form functional syncytia.

Most smooth muscle is **single-unit smooth muscle**, alternatively called **visceral smooth muscle**, because it is found in the walls of the hollow organs or viscera (for example, the digestive, reproductive, and urinary tracts and small blood vessels). The term *single-unit smooth muscle* derives from the muscle fibers that make up this type of muscle becoming excited and contracting as a single unit. The muscle fibers in single-unit smooth muscle are electrically linked by gap junctions (see p. 49). When an action potential occurs anywhere within a sheet of single-unit smooth

muscle, it is quickly propagated via these special points of electrical contact throughout the entire group of interconnected cells, which then contract as a single, coordinated unit. Such a group of interconnected muscle cells that function electrically and mechanically as a unit is known as a **functional syncytium** (plural, *syncytia*; *syn* means “together”; *cyt* means “cell”).

Thinking about the role of the uterus during labor can help you appreciate the significance of this arrangement. Muscle cells composing the uterine wall act as a functional syncytium. They repetitively become excited and contract as a unit during labor, exerting a series of coordinated “pushes” that eventually deliver the baby. Independent, uncoordinated contractions of individual muscle cells in the uterine wall could not exert the uniformly applied pressure needed to expel the baby.

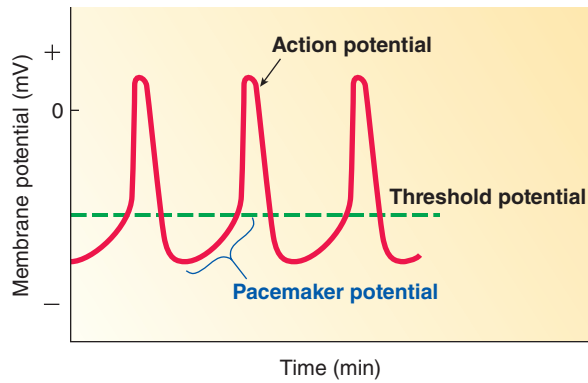
### Single-unit smooth muscle is myogenic.

Single-unit smooth muscle is **self-excitable**, so it does not require nervous stimulation for contraction. Clusters of specialized cells within a functional syncytium display spontaneous electrical activity; that is, they can undergo action potentials without any external stimulation. In contrast to the other excitable cells we have been discussing (such as neurons, skeletal muscle fibers, and multiunit smooth muscle), the self-excitable cells of single-unit smooth muscle do not maintain a constant resting potential. Instead, their membrane potential inherently fluctuates without any influence by factors external to the cell. Two major types of spontaneous depolarizations displayed by self-excitable cells are *pacemaker potentials* and *slow-wave potentials*.

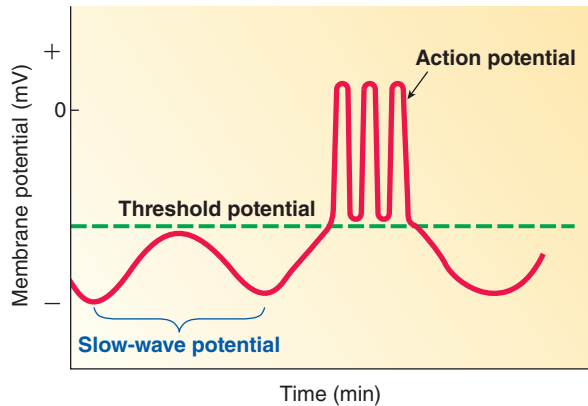
**PACEMAKER POTENTIALS** With **pacemaker potentials**, the membrane potential of specialized muscle cells gradually depolarizes on its own because of shifts in passive ionic fluxes accompanying automatic changes in channel permeability (● Figure 8-25a). When the membrane has depolarized to threshold, an action potential is initiated. After repolarizing, the membrane potential again depolarizes to threshold, cyclically continuing in this manner to repetitively self-generate action potentials.

Self-excitable smooth muscle pacemaker cells are specialized to initiate action potentials, but they are not equipped to contract. Only a few of all the cells in a functional syncytium are noncontractile, pacemaker cells. Most smooth muscle cells are specialized to contract but cannot self-initiate action potentials. However, once an action potential is initiated by a self-excitable pacemaker cell, it is conducted to the remaining contractile, nonpacemaker cells of the functional syncytium via gap junctions, so the entire group of connected cells contracts as a unit without any nervous input. Such nerve-independent contractile activity initiated by the muscle itself is called **myogenic activity** (“muscle-produced” activity), in contrast to the neurogenic activity of skeletal muscle and multiunit smooth muscle.

**SLOW-WAVE POTENTIALS** **Slow-wave potentials** are spontaneous, gradually alternating depolarizing and hyperpolarizing swings in potential (● Figure 8-25b) brought about by un-



(a) Pacemaker potential



(b) Slow-wave potential

● **FIGURE 8-25 Self-generated electrical activity in smooth muscle.** (a) With pacemaker potentials, the membrane gradually depolarizes to threshold periodically without any nervous stimulation. These regular depolarizations cyclically trigger self-induced action potentials. (b) In slow-wave potentials, the membrane gradually undergoes self-induced depolarizing and hyperpolarizing swings in potential. A burst of action potentials occurs if a depolarizing swing brings the membrane to threshold.

known mechanisms. They occur only in smooth muscle of the digestive tract. Slow-wave potentials are initiated by specialized clusters of nonmuscle pacemaker cells within the digestive tract wall and spread to the adjacent smooth muscle cells via gap junctions. The potential is moved farther from threshold during each hyperpolarizing swing and closer to threshold during each depolarizing swing. If threshold is reached, a burst of action potentials occurs at the peak of a depolarizing swing. These action potentials bring about myogenically induced contraction. Threshold is not always reached, however, so the oscillating slow-wave potentials can continue without generating action potentials and contractile activity. Whether threshold is reached depends on the starting point of the membrane potential at the onset of its depolarizing swing. The starting point, in turn, is influenced by neural and local factors typically associated with meals (see Chapter 15 for further detail). We have now discussed all the means by which excitable tissues can be brought to threshold. ▲ Table 8-4 summarizes the different triggering events that can initiate action potentials in various excitable tissues.

### Gradation of single-unit smooth muscle contraction differs from that of skeletal muscle.

Single-unit smooth muscle differs from skeletal muscle in the way contraction is graded. Gradation of skeletal muscle contraction is entirely under neural control, primarily involving motor unit recruitment and twitch summation. In single-unit smooth muscle, gap junctions ensure that an entire smooth muscle mass contracts as a single unit, making it impossible to vary the number of muscle fibers contracting. Only the tension of the fibers can be modified to achieve varying strengths of contraction of the whole organ. The portion of cross bridges activated and the tension subsequently developed in single-unit smooth muscle can be graded by varying the cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$

## ▲ Table 8-4 Various Means of Initiating Action Potentials in Excitable Tissues

Method of Depolarizing the Membrane to Threshold Potential	Type of Excitable Tissue Involved	Description of This Triggering Event
Summation of EPSPs (see p. 88)	Efferent neurons and interneurons	Temporal or spatial summation of slight depolarizations (EPSPs) of the dendrite and cell body end of the neuron brought about by changes in channel permeability in response to binding of an excitatory neurotransmitter with surface membrane receptors
Receptor Potential (see p. 142)	Afferent neurons	Typically a depolarization of the afferent neuron's receptor initiated by changes in channel permeability in response to the neuron's adequate stimulus
End-Plate Potential (see p. 187)	Skeletal muscle	Depolarization of the motor end plate brought about by changes in channel permeability in response to binding of the neurotransmitter ACh with receptors on the end-plate membrane
Pacemaker Potential (see p. 222)	Smooth muscle and cardiac muscle	Gradual depolarization of the membrane on its own because of shifts in passive ionic fluxes accompanying automatic changes in channel permeability
Slow-Wave Potential (see p. 222)	Smooth muscle in digestive tract only	Gradual alternating depolarizing and hyperpolarizing swings in potential initiated by associated nonmuscle self-excitable cells; the depolarizing swing may or may not reach threshold



concentration. A single excitation in smooth muscle does not cause all cross bridges to switch on, in contrast to skeletal muscles, where a single action potential triggers release of enough  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to permit all cross bridges to cycle. As  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration increases in smooth muscle, more cross bridges are brought into play and greater tension develops.

**SMOOTH MUSCLE TONE** Many single-unit smooth muscle cells have sufficient levels of cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to maintain a low level of tension, or **tone**, even in the absence of action potentials. A sudden drastic change in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , such as accompanies a myogenically induced action potential, brings about a contractile response superimposed on the ongoing tonic tension.

**OTHER FACTORS INFLUENCING SMOOTH MUSCLE ACTIVITY** Besides self-induced action potentials, several other factors such as (1) autonomic neurotransmitters, (2) mechanical stretch, (3) certain hormones, and (4) local metabolites can influence contractile activity and the development of tension in smooth muscle cells by altering their cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. Thus, smooth muscle is subject to more external influences than skeletal muscle is, even though smooth muscle can contract on its own and skeletal muscle cannot.

**MODIFICATION OF SMOOTH MUSCLE ACTIVITY BY THE AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM** Smooth muscle is typically innervated by both branches of the autonomic nervous system. In single-unit smooth muscle, this nerve supply does not *initiate* contraction, but it can *modify* the rate and strength of contraction, either enhancing or retarding the inherent contractile activity of a given organ. Recall that the isolated motor end-plate region of a skeletal muscle fiber interacts with ACh released from a single axon terminal of a motor neuron. In contrast, the receptors that bind with autonomic neurotransmitters are dispersed throughout the entire surface membrane of a smooth muscle cell. Smooth muscle cells are sensitive to varying degrees and in varying ways to autonomic neurotransmitters, depending on the cells' distribution of cholinergic and adrenergic receptors (see p. 184).

Each terminal branch of a postganglionic autonomic fiber travels across the surface of one or more smooth muscle cells, releasing neurotransmitter from the vesicles within its multiple varicosities (bulges) as an action potential passes along the terminal (● Figure 8-26). The neurotransmitter diffuses to the many receptors specific for it on the cells underlying the terminal. Thus, in contrast to the discrete one-to-one relationship at motor end plates, a

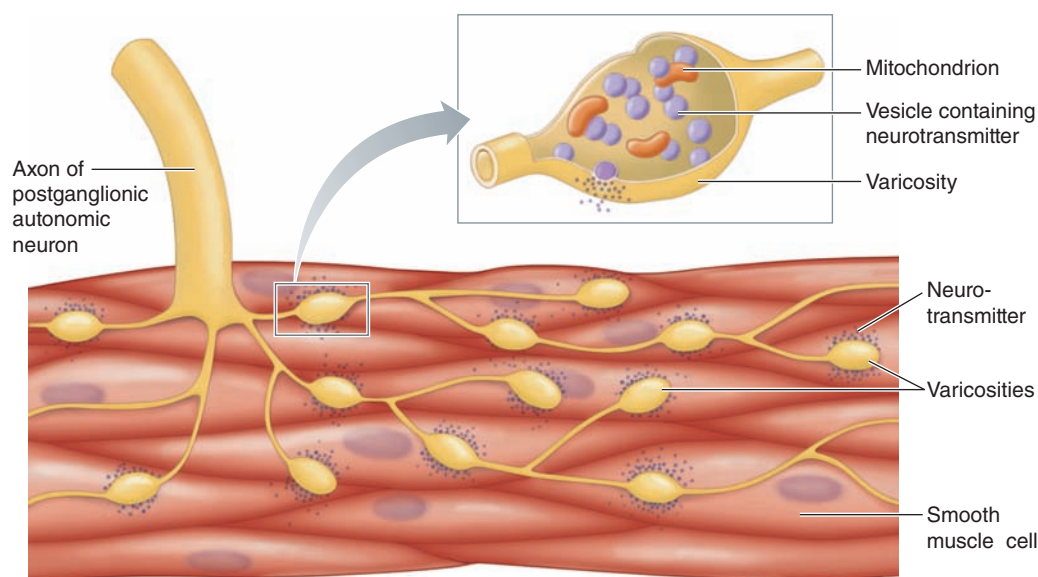
given smooth muscle cell can be influenced by more than one type of neurotransmitter, and each autonomic terminal can influence more than one smooth muscle cell.

Next, as we look at the length–tension relationship in smooth muscle, we consider the effect of mechanical stretch (as occurs during filling of a hollow organ) on smooth muscle contractility. We examine the extracellular chemical influences (certain hormones and local metabolites) on smooth muscle contractility in later chapters when we discuss regulation of the various organs that contain smooth muscle.

### Smooth muscle can still develop tension when stretched.

The relationship between the length of the muscle fibers before contraction and the tension that can be developed on a subsequent contraction is less closely linked in smooth muscle than in skeletal muscle. The range of lengths over which a smooth muscle fiber can develop near-maximal tension is greater than the range for skeletal muscle. Smooth muscle can still develop considerable tension even when stretched up to 2.5 times its resting length, for two reasons. First, in contrast to skeletal muscle, in which the resting length is at  $l_0$ , in smooth muscle the resting (nonstretched) length is much shorter than at  $l_0$ . Therefore, smooth muscle can be stretched considerably before reaching its  $l_0$ . Second, the thin filaments still overlap the longer thick filaments even in the stretched-out position, so cross-bridge interaction and tension development can still take place. In contrast, when skeletal muscle is stretched only three fourths longer than its resting length, the thick and thin filaments are completely pulled apart and can no longer interact (see ● Figure 8-17, p. 209).

The ability of a considerably stretched smooth muscle fiber to still develop tension is important, because the smooth muscle fibers within the wall of a hollow organ are progressively stretched as the volume of the organ's contents expands. Consider the urinary bladder as an example. Even though the muscle fibers in the urinary bladder are stretched as the bladder



● **FIGURE 8-26** Innervation of smooth muscle by autonomic postganglionic nerve terminals.

gradually fills with urine, they still maintain their tone and can even develop further tension in response to inputs that regulate bladder emptying. If considerable stretching prevented tension development, as in skeletal muscle, a filled bladder would not be capable of contracting to empty. Smooth muscle fibers can contract to half their normal length, enabling hollow organs to dramatically empty their contents; thus, smooth-muscle viscera can easily accommodate large volumes but can empty to practically zero volume. This length range in which smooth muscle normally functions (anywhere from 0.5 to 2.5 times the normal length) is greater than the limited length range within which skeletal muscle remains functional.

### Smooth muscle is slow and economical.

A smooth muscle contractile response proceeds more slowly than a skeletal muscle twitch. ATP splitting by myosin ATPase is slower in smooth muscle, so cross-bridge activity and filament sliding occur about 10 times more slowly in smooth muscle than in skeletal muscle. A single smooth muscle contraction may last as long as 3 seconds (3000 msec), compared to the maximum of 100 msec for a single contractile response in skeletal muscle. Smooth muscle also relaxes more slowly because of slower  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  removal. Slowness should not be equated with weakness, however. Smooth muscle can generate the same contractile tension per unit of cross-sectional area as skeletal muscle, but it does so more slowly and at considerably less energy expense. Because of slow cross-bridge cycling during smooth muscle contraction, cross bridges stay attached for more time during each cycle, compared with skeletal muscle; that is, the cross bridges “latch onto” the thin filaments for a longer time each cycle. This **latch phenomenon** enables smooth muscle to maintain tension with comparatively less ATP consumption because each cross-bridge cycle uses up one molecule of ATP. Smooth muscle is therefore an economical contractile tissue, making it well suited for long-term sustained contractions with little energy consumption and without fatigue. In contrast to the rapidly changing demands placed on your skeletal muscles as you maneuver through and manipulate your external environment, your smooth muscle activities are geared for long-term duration and slower adjustments to change. Because of its slowness and the less ordered arrangement of its filaments, smooth muscle has often been mistakenly viewed as a poorly developed version of skeletal muscle. Actually, smooth muscle is just as highly specialized for the demands placed on it. It is an extremely adaptive, efficient tissue.

### Cardiac muscle blends features of both skeletal and smooth muscle.

Cardiac muscle, found only in the heart, shares structural and functional characteristics with both skeletal and single-unit smooth muscle. Like skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle is striated, with its thick and thin filaments highly organized into a regular banding pattern. Cardiac thin filaments contain troponin and tropomyosin, which constitute the site of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  action in switching on cross-bridge activity, as in skeletal muscle. Also like skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle has a clear length–tension relation-

ship. Like the oxidative skeletal muscle fibers, cardiac muscle cells have lots of mitochondria and myoglobin. They also have T tubules and a moderately well-developed sarcoplasmic reticulum.

As in smooth muscle,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  enters the cytosol from both the ECF and the sarcoplasmic reticulum during cardiac excitation.  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry from the ECF triggers release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  intracellularly from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Like single-unit smooth muscle, the heart displays pacemaker (but not slow-wave) activity, initiating its own action potentials without any external influence. Cardiac cells are interconnected by gap junctions that enhance the spread of action potentials throughout the heart, just as in single-unit smooth muscle. Also similarly, the heart is innervated by the autonomic nervous system, which, along with certain hormones and local factors, can modify the rate and strength of contraction.

Unique to cardiac muscle, the cardiac fibers are joined in a branching network, and the action potentials of cardiac muscle last much longer before repolarizing. Further details and the importance of cardiac muscle’s features are addressed in the next chapter.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



Skeletal muscles comprise the muscular system itself. Cardiac muscle and smooth muscle are part of organs that make up other body systems. Cardiac muscle is found only in the heart, which is part of the circulatory system. Smooth muscle is found in the walls of hollow organs and tubes, including the blood vessels in the circulatory system, airways in the respiratory system, bladder in the urinary system, stomach and intestines in the digestive system, and tubular components of the reproductive system, an example being the uterus in females.

Contraction of skeletal muscles accomplishes movement of body parts in relation to one another and movement of the whole body in relation to the external environment. Thus, these muscles permit you to move through and manipulate your external environment. At a general level, some of these movements are aimed at maintaining homeostasis, such as moving the body toward food or away from harm. Examples of more specific homeostatic functions accomplished by skeletal muscles include chewing and swallowing food for further breakdown in the digestive system into usable energy-producing nutrient molecules (the mouth and throat muscles are all skeletal muscles) and breathing to obtain  $\text{O}_2$  and get rid of carbon dioxide (the respiratory muscles are all skeletal muscles). Contracting skeletal muscles also are the major source of heat production in maintaining body temperature. The skeletal muscles further accomplish many nonhomeostatic activities that enable us to work and play—for example, operating a piece of equipment or riding a bicycle—so that we can contribute to society and enjoy ourselves.

All other systems of the body, except the immune (defense) system, depend on their nonskeletal muscle compo-

nents to enable them to accomplish their homeostatic functions. For example, contraction of cardiac muscle in the heart pushes life-sustaining blood forward into the blood vessels, and contraction of smooth muscle in the stomach and intes-

tines pushes ingested food through the digestive tract at a rate appropriate for the digestive juices secreted along the route to break down the food into usable units.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-42)

- When an action potential in a muscle fiber is completed, the contractile activity initiated by the action potential stops. (*True or false?*)
- The velocity at which a muscle shortens depends entirely on the ATPase activity of its fibers. (*True or false?*)
- When a skeletal muscle is maximally stretched, it can develop maximal tension on contraction, because the actin filaments can slide in a maximal distance. (*True or false?*)
- A pacemaker potential always initiates an action potential. (*True or false?*)
- A slow-wave potential always initiates an action potential. (*True or false?*)
- Smooth muscle can develop tension even when considerably stretched, because the thin filaments still overlap with the long, thick filaments. (*True or false?*)
- A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ contraction is an isotonic contraction in which the muscle shortens, whereas the muscle lengthens in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ isotonic contraction.
- \_\_\_\_\_ motor neurons supply extrafusal muscle fibers, whereas intrafusal fibers are innervated by \_\_\_\_\_ motor neurons.
- Which of the following provide(s) direct input to alpha motor neurons? (*Indicate all correct answers.*)
  - primary motor cortex
  - brain stem
  - cerebellum
  - basal nuclei
  - spinal reflex pathways
- Which of the following is *not* involved in bringing about muscle relaxation?
  - reuptake of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  by the sarcoplasmic reticulum
  - no more ATP
  - no more action potential
  - removal of ACh at the end plate by acetylcholinesterase
  - filaments sliding back to their resting position
- Match the following (with reference to skeletal muscle):
 

___ 1. $\text{Ca}^{2+}$	(a) cyclically binds with the myosin cross bridges during contraction
___ 2. T tubule	(b) has ATPase activity
___ 3. ATP	(c) supplies energy for the power stroke of a cross bridge
___ 4. lateral sacs of the sarcoplasmic reticulum	(d) rapidly transmits the action potential to the central portion of the muscle fiber
___ 5. myosin	(e) stores $\text{Ca}^{2+}$
___ 6. troponin-tropomyosin complex	(f) pulls the troponin-tropomyosin complex out of its blocking position
___ 7. actin	(g) prevents actin from interacting with myosin when the muscle fiber is not excited
- Using the answer code at the right, indicate what happens in the banding pattern during contraction:
 

___ 1. thick myofilament	(a) remains the same size during contraction
___ 2. thin myofilament	(b) decreases in length (shortens) during contraction
___ 3. A band	
___ 4. I band	
___ 5. H zone	
___ 6. sarcomere	

### Essay Questions

- Describe the levels of organization in a skeletal muscle.
- What produces the striated appearance of skeletal muscles? Describe or draw the arrangement of thick and thin filaments that gives rise to the banding pattern.
- What is the functional unit of skeletal muscle?
- Describe the composition of thick and thin filaments.
- Describe the sliding filament mechanism of muscle contraction. How do cross-bridge power strokes bring about shortening of the muscle fiber?
- Compare the excitation-contraction coupling process in skeletal muscle with that in smooth muscle.
- Compare isotonic and isometric contractions.
- How can gradation of skeletal muscle contraction be accomplished?
- What is a motor unit? Compare the size of motor units in finely controlled muscles with those specialized for coarse, powerful contractions. Describe motor unit recruitment.
- Explain twitch summation and tetanus.

11. How does a skeletal muscle fiber's length at the onset of contraction affect the strength of the subsequent contraction?
12. Describe the role of each of the following in powering skeletal muscle contraction: ATP, creatine phosphate, oxidative phosphorylation, and glycolysis. Distinguish between aerobically and anaerobically supported exercise.
13. Compare the three types of skeletal muscle fibers.
14. What are the roles of the corticospinal system and multineuronal system in controlling motor movement?
15. Describe the structure and function of muscle spindles and Golgi tendon organs.
16. Distinguish between multiunit and single-unit smooth muscle.
17. Differentiate between neurogenic and myogenic muscle activity.
18. How can smooth muscle contraction be graded?
19. Compare the contractile speed and relative energy expenditure of skeletal muscle with that of smooth muscle.
20. In what ways is cardiac muscle functionally similar to skeletal muscle and to single-unit smooth muscle?

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-42)

1. Why does regular aerobic exercise provide more cardiovascular benefit than weight training does? (*Hint:* The heart responds to the demands placed on it in a way similar to that of skeletal muscle.)
2. Put yourself in the position of the scientists who discovered the sliding filament mechanism of muscle contraction by considering what molecular changes must be involved to account for the observed alterations in the banding pattern during contraction. If you were comparing a relaxed and a contracted muscle fiber under an electron microscope (see ● Figure 8-3a, p. 198), how could you determine that the thin filaments do not change in length during muscle contraction? You cannot see or measure a single thin filament at this magnification. (*Hint:* What landmark in the banding pattern represents each end of the thin filament? If these landmarks are the same distance apart in a relaxed and contracted fiber, then the thin filaments must not change in length.)
3. What type of off-the-snow training would you recommend for a competitive downhill skier versus a competitive cross-country skier? What adaptive skeletal muscle changes would you hope to accomplish in the athletes in each case?
4. When the bladder is filled and the micturition (urination) reflex is initiated, the nervous system supply to the bladder promotes contraction of the bladder and relaxation of the external urethral sphincter, a ring of muscle that guards the exit from the bladder. If the time is inopportune for bladder emptying when the micturition reflex is initiated, the external urethral sphincter can be voluntarily tightened to prevent urination even though the bladder is contracting. Using your knowledge of the muscle types and their innervation, of what types of muscle are the bladder and the external urethral sphincter composed, and what branch of the efferent division of the peripheral nervous system supplies each of these muscles?
5. Three-dimensionally, the thin filaments are arranged hexagonally around the thick filaments in a skeletal muscle fiber. Cross bridges project from each thick filament in all six directions toward the surrounding thin filaments. Each thin filament, in turn, is surrounded by three thick filaments. Sketch this geometric arrangement of thick and thin filaments in cross section.

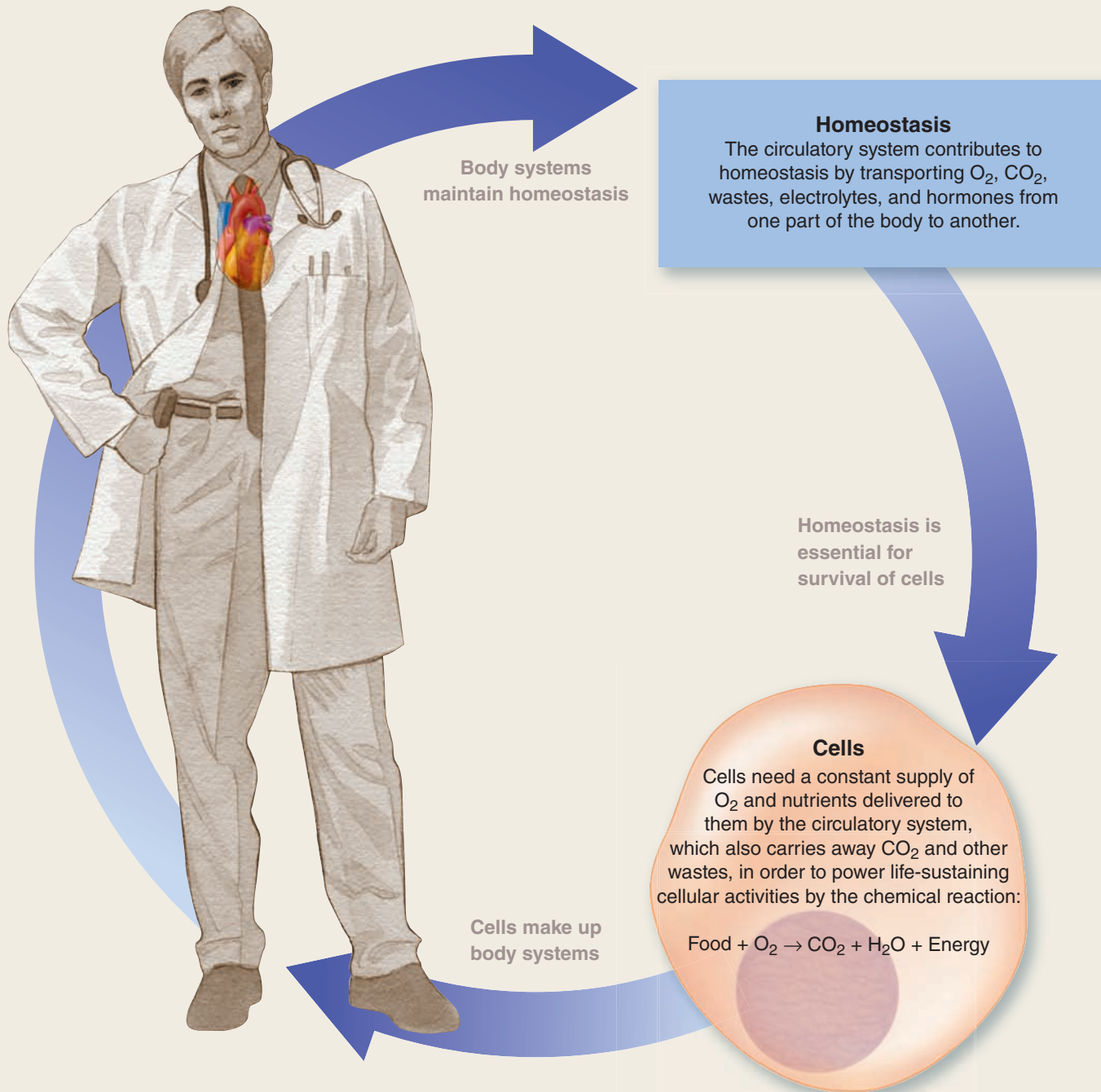
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-43)

Jason W. is waiting impatiently for the doctor to finish removing the cast from his leg, which Jason broke the last day of school 6 weeks ago. Summer vacation is half over, and he hasn't been able to swim, play baseball, or participate in any of his favorite sports. When the cast is finally

off, Jason's excitement gives way to concern when he sees that the injured limb is noticeably smaller in diameter than his normal leg. What explains this reduction in size? How can the leg be restored to its normal size and functional ability?

## Circulatory System (Heart)



To maintain homeostasis, essential materials such as O<sub>2</sub> and nutrients must continually be picked up from the external environment and delivered to the cells and waste products must continually be removed. Furthermore, excess heat generated by muscles must be transported to the skin where it can be lost from the body surface to help maintain body temperature. Homeostasis also depends on the transfer of hormones, which are important regulatory chemical messengers, from their site of production to their

site of action. The circulatory system, which contributes to homeostasis by serving as the body's transport system, consists of the heart, blood vessels, and blood.

All body tissues constantly depend on the life-supporting blood flow the heart provides them by contracting or beating. The heart drives blood through the blood vessels for delivery to the tissues in sufficient amounts, whether the body is at rest or engaging in vigorous exercise.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Anatomy of the Heart**

Location of the heart  
 The heart as a dual pump  
 Heart valves  
 Heart walls; cardiac muscle

**Electrical Activity of the Heart**

Pacemaker activity  
 Spread of cardiac excitation  
 Action potential of cardiac contractile cells  
 Cardiac refractory period  
 Electrocardiography

**Mechanical Events of the Cardiac Cycle**

Electrical, pressure, and volume relationships during diastole and systole  
 Heart sounds

**Cardiac Output and Its Control**

Determinants of cardiac output  
 Control of heart rate  
 Control of stroke volume

**Nourishing the Heart Muscle**

Coronary circulation  
 Coronary artery disease

# Cardiac Physiology

## Anatomy of the Heart

From just days following conception until death, the beat goes on. Throughout an average human life span, the heart contracts about 3 billion times, never stopping except for a fraction of a second to fill between beats. Within about 3 weeks after conception, the heart of the developing embryo starts to function. It is the first organ to become functional. At this time, the human embryo is only a few millimeters long, about the size of a capital letter on this page.

Why does the heart develop so early, and why is it so crucial throughout life? It is this important because the circulatory system is the body's transport system. A human embryo, having little yolk available as food, depends on promptly establishing a circulatory system that can interact with the mother's circulation to pick up and distribute to the developing tissues the supplies so critical for survival and growth. Thus begins the story of the circulatory system, which continues throughout life to be a vital pipeline for transporting materials on which the cells of the body absolutely depend.

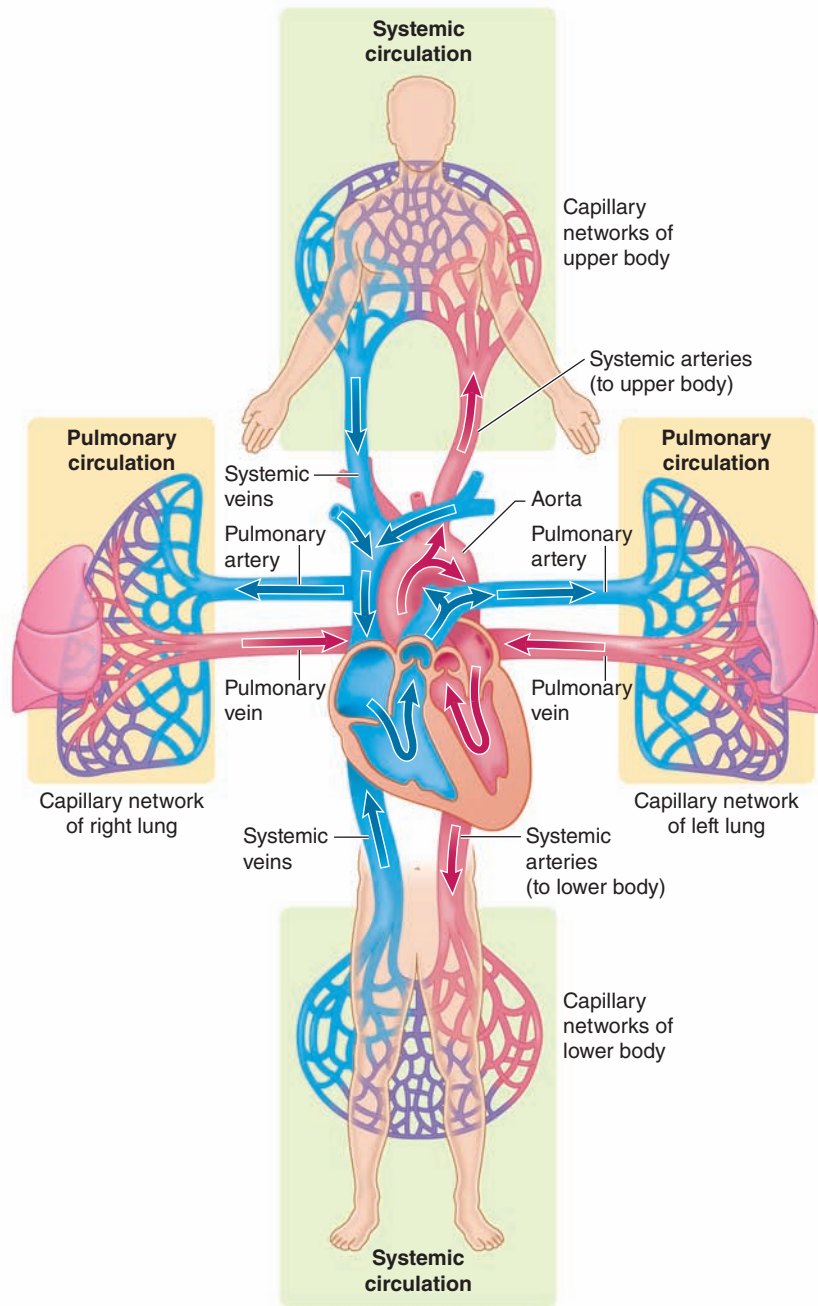
The **circulatory system** has three basic components:

1. The **heart** is the pump that imparts pressure to the blood to establish the pressure gradient needed for blood to flow to the tissues. Like all liquids, blood flows down a pressure gradient from an area of higher pressure to an area of lower pressure. This chapter focuses on cardiac physiology (*cardia* means "heart").
2. The **blood vessels** are the passageways through which blood is directed and distributed from the heart to all parts of the body and subsequently returned to the heart. The smallest of the blood vessels are designed for rapid exchange of materials between the surrounding tissues and the blood within the vessels (see Chapter 10).
3. **Blood** is the transport medium within which materials being transported long distances in the body, such as O<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>, nutrients, wastes, electrolytes, and hormones, are dissolved or suspended (see Chapter 11).

Blood travels continuously through the circulatory system to and from the heart through two separate vascular (blood vessel) loops, both originating and terminating at the heart (● Figure 9-1). The **pulmonary circulation** consists of a closed loop of vessels carrying blood between the heart and the lungs (*pulmo* means "lung"). The **systemic circulation** is a circuit of vessels carrying blood between the heart and the other body systems. Each of these vascular loops forms a figure "8." The pulmonary circulation simultaneously loops through the right lung and the left lung; the systemic circulation simultaneously loops through the upper half and the lower half of the body.

### The heart is positioned in the middle of the thoracic cavity.

The heart is a hollow, muscular organ about the size of a clenched fist. It lies in the **thoracic** (chest) **cavity** about midline between the **sternum** (breastbone) anteriorly and the **vertebrae** (backbone) posteriorly. Place your hand over your heart. People usually put their hand on the left side of the chest, even though the heart is actually in



**KEY**

■ = O<sub>2</sub>-rich blood   ■ = O<sub>2</sub>-poor blood

● **FIGURE 9-1 Pulmonary and systemic circulation in relation to the heart.** The circulatory system consists of two separate vascular loops: the pulmonary circulation, which carries blood between the heart and the lungs, and the systemic circulation, which carries blood between the heart and the organ systems. Each of these loops forms a figure “8,” with the pulmonary circulation simultaneously supplying the right and left lungs and the systemic circulation simultaneously supplying the upper and lower parts of the body.

the middle of the chest. The heart has a broad **base** at the top and tapers to a pointed tip, the **apex**, at the bottom. It is situated at an angle under the sternum so that its base lies predominantly to the right and the apex lies to the left of the sternum. When the heart beats forcefully, the apex thumps against the inside of the chest wall on the left side. Because we are aware of

of the heart receives and pumps O<sub>2</sub>-poor blood, whereas the left side of the heart receives and pumps O<sub>2</sub>-rich blood.

**THE COMPLETE CIRCUIT OF BLOOD FLOW** Let us look at how the heart functions as a dual pump by tracing a drop of blood through one complete circuit (● Figure 9-2a and b). Blood

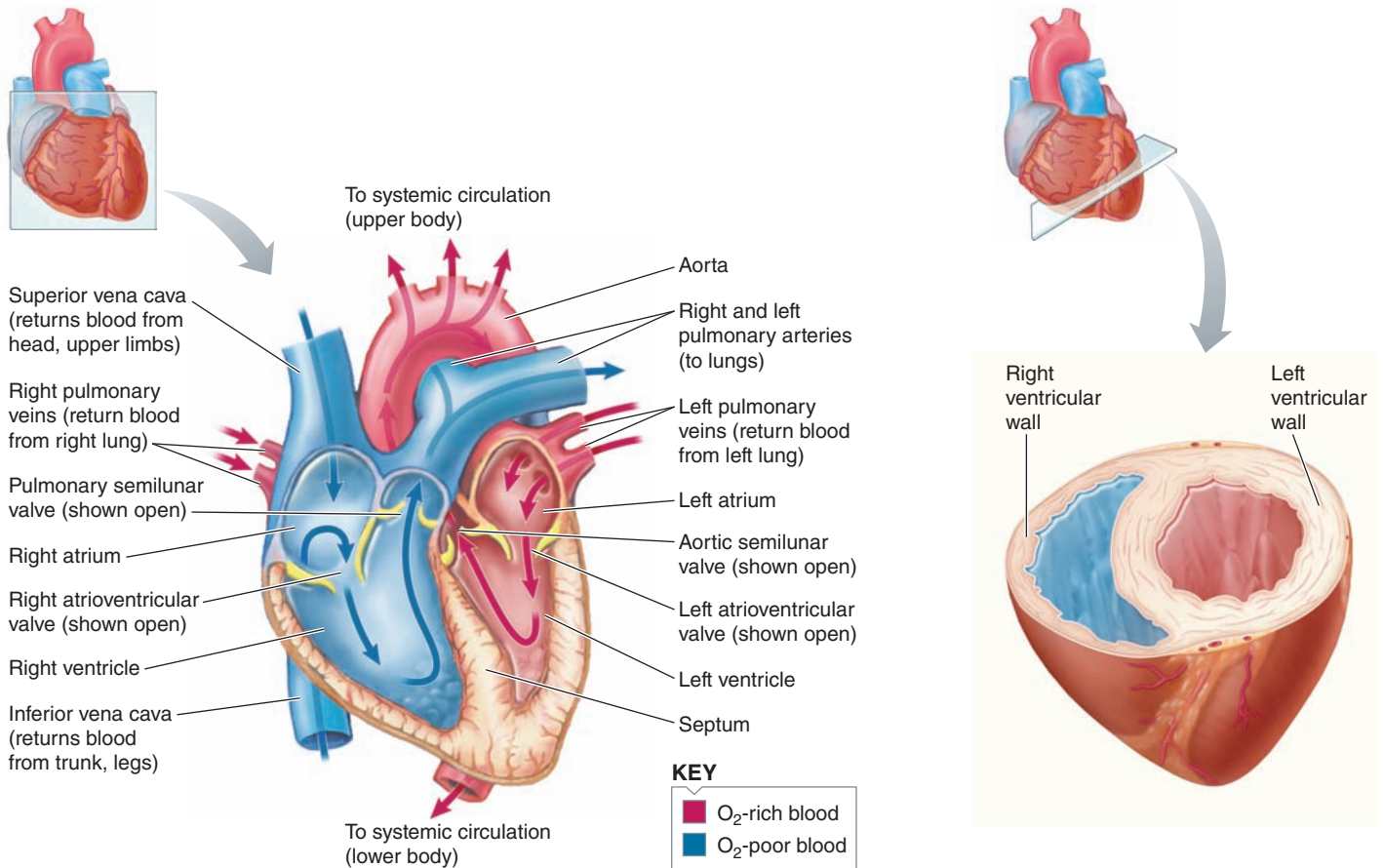
the beating heart through the apex beat on the left side of the chest, we tend to think—erroneously—that the entire heart is on the left.



The heart’s position between two bony structures, the sternum and the vertebrae, makes it possible to manually drive blood out of the heart when it is not pumping effectively. Rhythmically depressing the sternum compresses the heart between the sternum and the vertebrae so that blood is squeezed out into the blood vessels, maintaining blood flow to the tissues. Often, this *external cardiac compression*, which is part of **cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)**, is a lifesaving measure until appropriate therapy can restore the heart to normal function.

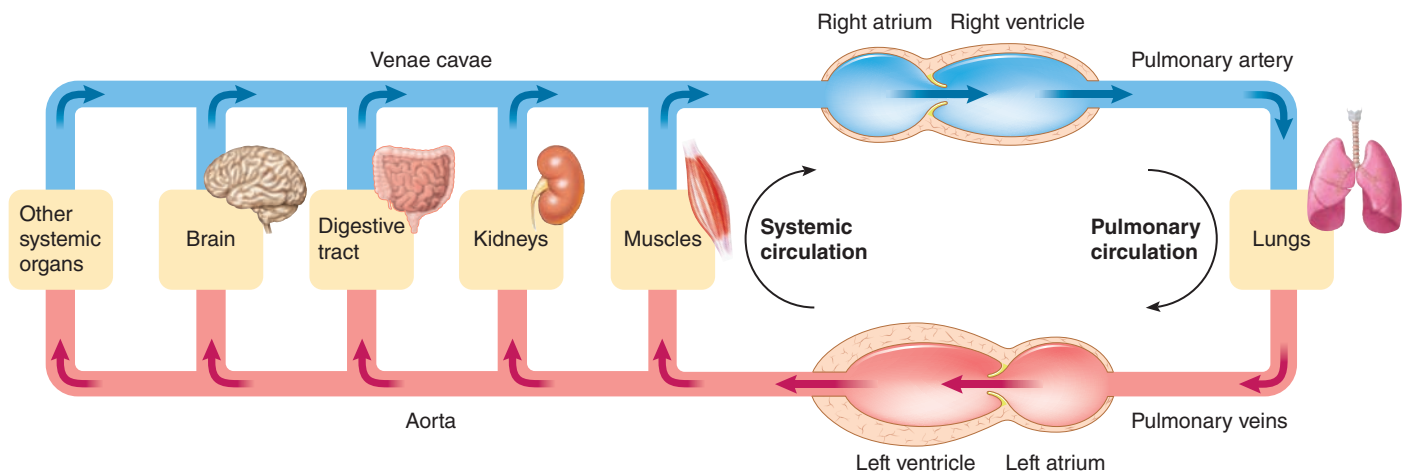
**The heart is a dual pump.**

Even though anatomically the heart is a single organ, the right and left sides of the heart function as two separate pumps. The heart is divided into right and left halves and has four chambers, an upper and a lower chamber within each half (● Figure 9-2a). The upper chambers, the **atria** (singular, *atrium*), receive blood returning to the heart and transfer it to the lower chambers, the **ventricles**, which pump blood from the heart. The vessels that return blood from the tissues to the atria are **veins**, and those that carry blood away from the ventricles to the tissues are **arteries**. The two halves of the heart are separated by the **septum**, a continuous muscular partition that prevents blood mixing from the two sides of the heart. This separation is extremely important, because the right side



(a) Blood flow through the heart

(c) Thickness of right and left ventricles



(b) Dual pump action of the heart

● **FIGURE 9-2 Blood flow through and pump action of the heart.** (a) The arrows indicate the direction of blood flow. To illustrate the direction of blood flow through the heart, all of the heart valves are shown open, which is never the case. The right side of the heart receives O<sub>2</sub>-poor blood from the systemic circulation and pumps it into the pulmonary circulation. The left side of the heart receives O<sub>2</sub>-rich blood from the pulmonary circulation and pumps it into the systemic circulation. (b) Note the parallel pathways of blood flow through the systemic organs. (The relative volume of blood flowing through each organ is not drawn to scale.) (c) Note that the left ventricular wall is thicker than the right wall.



returning from the systemic circulation enters the right atrium via two large veins, the **venae cavae**, one returning blood from above and the other returning blood from below heart level. The drop of blood entering the right atrium has returned from the body tissues, where  $O_2$  has been taken from it and  $CO_2$  has been added to it. This partially deoxygenated blood flows from the right atrium into the right ventricle, which pumps it out through the **pulmonary artery**. This artery immediately forms two branches, one going to each of the two lungs. Thus, the *right side of the heart receives blood from the systemic circulation and pumps it into the pulmonary circulation*.

Within the lungs, the drop of blood loses its extra  $CO_2$  and picks up a fresh supply of  $O_2$  before being returned to the left atrium via the **pulmonary veins** coming from both lungs. This  $O_2$ -rich blood returning to the left atrium subsequently flows into the left ventricle, the pumping chamber that propels the blood to all body systems except the lungs; that is, *the left side of the heart receives blood from the pulmonary circulation and pumps it into the systemic circulation*. The single large artery carrying blood away from the left ventricle is the **aorta**. Major arteries branch from the aorta to supply the various organs of the body.

In contrast to the pulmonary circulation, in which all the blood flows through the lungs, the systemic circulation may be viewed as a series of parallel pathways. Part of the blood pumped out by the left ventricle goes to the muscles, part to the kidneys, part to the brain, and so on (● Figure 9-2b). Thus, the output of the left ventricle is distributed so that each part of the body receives a fresh blood supply. Accordingly, the drop of blood we are tracing goes to only one of the systemic organs. Tissue cells within the organ take  $O_2$  from the blood and use it to oxidize nutrients for energy production; in the process, the tissue cells form  $CO_2$  as a waste product that is added to the blood (see pp. 3 and 33). The drop of blood, now partially depleted of  $O_2$  content and increased in  $CO_2$  content, returns to the right side of the heart, which again will pump it to the lungs. One circuit is complete.

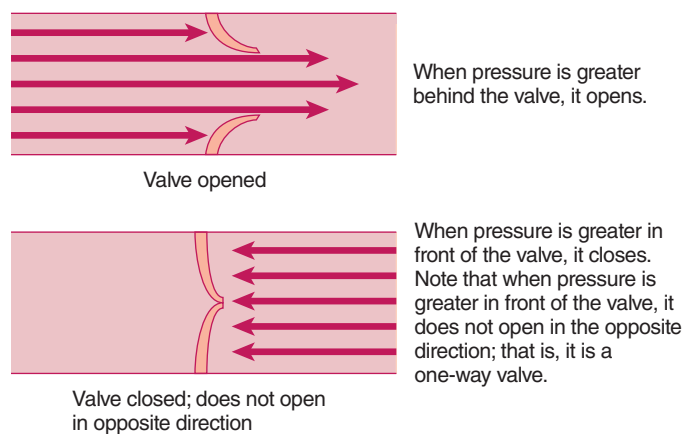
**COMPARISON OF THE RIGHT AND LEFT PUMPS** Both sides of the heart simultaneously pump equal amounts of blood. The volume of  $O_2$ -poor blood being pumped to the lungs by the right side of the heart soon becomes the same volume of  $O_2$ -rich blood being delivered to the tissues by the left side of the heart. The pulmonary circulation is a low-pressure, low-resistance system, whereas the systemic circulation is a high-pressure, high-resistance system. Pressure is the force exerted on the vessel walls by the blood pumped into them by the heart. Resistance is the opposition to blood flow, largely caused by friction between the flowing blood and the vessel wall. Even though the right and left sides of the heart pump the same amount of blood, the left side works harder, because it pumps an equal volume of blood at a higher pressure into a higher-resistance and longer system. Accordingly, the heart muscle on the left side is thicker than the muscle on the right side, making the left side a stronger pump (● Figure 9-2a and c).

### Pressure-operated heart valves ensure that blood flows in the right direction through the heart.

Blood flows through the heart in one fixed direction—from veins, to atria, to ventricles, to arteries. The presence of four one-way heart valves ensures this unidirectional flow of blood. The valves are positioned so that they open and close passively because of pressure differences, similar to a one-way door (● Figure 9-3). A forward pressure gradient (that is, a greater pressure behind the valve) forces the valve open, much as you open a door by pushing on one side of it, whereas a backward pressure gradient (that is, a greater pressure in front of the valve) forces the valve closed, just as you apply pressure to the opposite side of the door to close it. Note that a backward gradient can force the valve closed but cannot force it to swing open in the opposite direction; that is, heart valves are not like swinging, saloon-type doors.

**AV VALVES BETWEEN THE ATRIA AND THE VENTRICLES** Two of the heart valves, the **right** and **left atrioventricular (AV) valves**, are positioned between the atrium and the ventricle on the right and the left sides, respectively (● Figure 9-4a). These valves let blood flow from the atria into the ventricles during ventricular filling (when atrial pressure exceeds ventricular pressure) but prevent the backflow of blood from the ventricles into the atria during ventricular emptying (when ventricular pressure greatly exceeds atrial pressure). If the rising ventricular pressure did not force the AV valves to close as the ventricles contracted to empty, much of the blood would inefficiently be forced back into the atria and veins instead of being pumped into the arteries. The right AV valve is also called the **tricuspid valve** (*tri* means “three”) because it consists of three cusps or leaflets (● Figure 9-4b). Likewise, the left AV valve, which has two cusps, is often called the **bicuspid valve** (*bi* means “two”) or the **mitral valve** (because of its physical resemblance to a miter, or a bishop’s traditional hat).

The edges of the AV valve leaflets are fastened by tough, thin cords of tendinous-type tissue, the **chordae tendineae**, which prevent the valve from *everting* (that is, from being forced by the high ventricular pressure to open in the opposite direction into the atria). These cords extend from the edges of each cusp and attach to small, nipple-shaped **papillary muscles**, which pro-



● **FIGURE 9-3** Mechanism of valve action.

trude from the inner surface of the ventricular walls (*papilla* means “nipple”). When the ventricles contract, the papillary muscles also contract, pulling downward on the chordae tendineae. This pulling exerts tension on the closed AV valve cusps to hold them in position, much like tethering ropes hold down a hot-air balloon. This action helps keep the valve tightly sealed in the face of a strong backward pressure gradient (● Figure 9-4c).

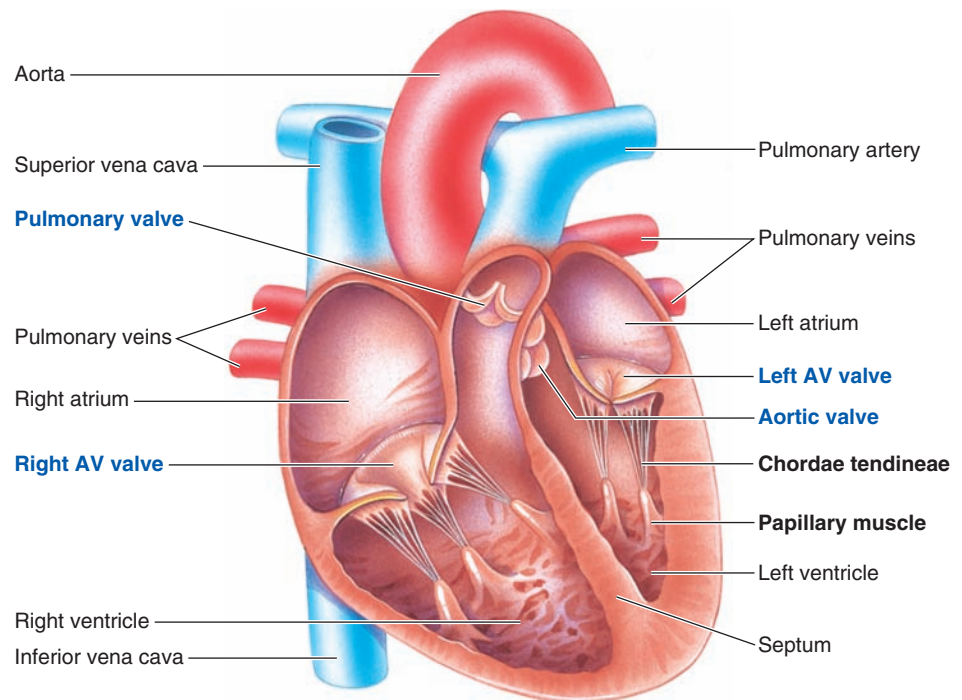
**SEMILUNAR VALVES BETWEEN THE VENTRICLES AND THE MAJOR ARTERIES** The other two heart valves, the **aortic** and **pulmonary valves**, lie at the juncture where the major arteries leave the ventricles (● Figure 9-4a). They are known as **semilunar valves** because they have three cusps, each resembling a shallow half-moon-shaped pocket (*semi* means “half”; *lunar* means “moon”) (● Figure 9-4b). These valves are forced open when the left and right ventricular pressures exceed the pressure in the aorta and pulmonary artery, respectively, during ventricular contraction and emptying. Closure results when the ventricles relax and ventricular pressures fall below the aortic and pulmonary artery pressures. The closed valves prevent blood from flowing from the arteries back into the ventricles from which it has just been pumped.

Now let us turn to the portion of the heart that actually generates the forces responsible for blood flow, the cardiac muscle within the heart walls.

### The heart walls are composed primarily of cardiac muscle fibers.

The heart wall has three distinct layers:

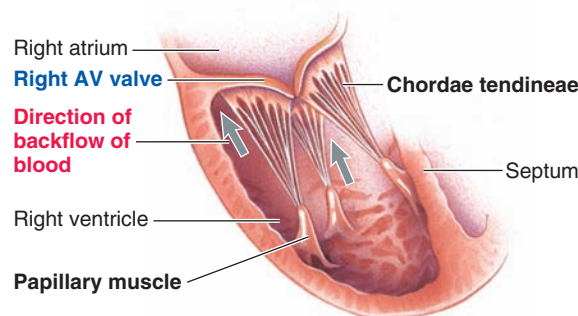
- A thin, inner layer, the **endothelium**, a unique type of epithelial tissue that lines the entire circulatory system
- A middle layer, the **myocardium**, which is composed of cardiac muscle and constitutes the bulk of the heart wall (*myo* means “muscle”)
- A thin, external layer, the **epicardium**, that covers the heart (*epi* means “on”)



(a) Location of the heart valves in a longitudinal section of the heart



(b) Heart valves in closed position, viewed from above



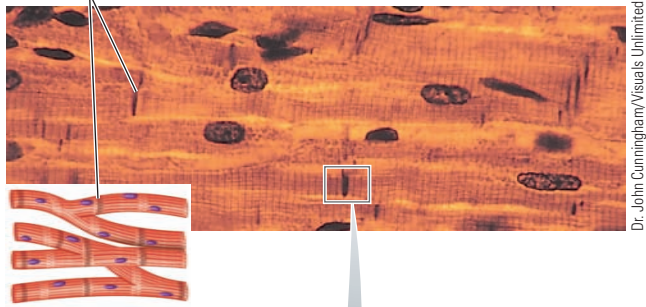
(c) Prevention of eversion of AV valves

● **FIGURE 9-4** Heart valves.

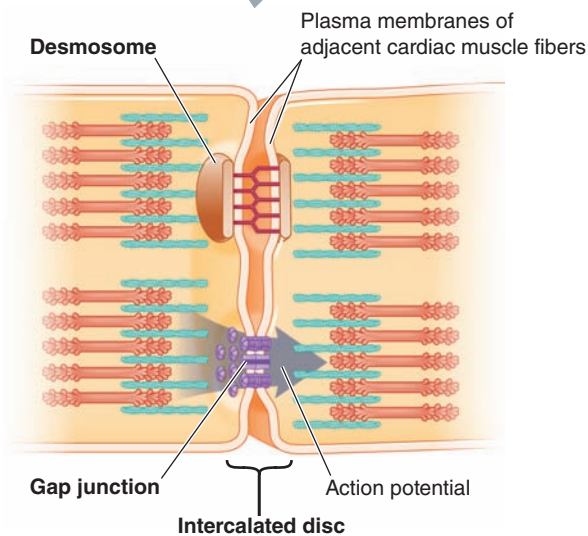
### Cardiac muscle fibers are interconnected by intercalated discs and form functional syncytia.

The individual cardiac muscle cells are interconnected to form branching fibers, with adjacent cells joined end to end at specialized structures called **intercalated discs**. Two types of membrane junctions are present within an intercalated disc: **desmosomes** and **gap junctions** (● Figure 9-5). A *desmosome*, a type of adhering junction that mechanically holds cells together, is particularly abundant in tissues such as the heart that are subject to considerable mechanical stress (see p. 48). At intervals along the intercalated disc, the opposing membranes

### Intercalated discs



(a) Cardiac muscle fibers branch and are interconnected by intercalated discs.



(b) Intercalated discs contain two types of membrane junctions: mechanically important desmosomes and electrically important gap junctions.

● **FIGURE 9-5 Organization of cardiac muscle fibers.** Adjacent cardiac muscle cells are joined end to end by intercalated discs, which contain two types of specialized junctions: desmosomes, which mechanically hold the cells together, and gap junctions, which permit action potentials to spread from one cell to adjacent cells.

approach each other closely to form *gap junctions*, which are areas of low electrical resistance that allow action potentials to spread from one cardiac cell to adjacent cells (see p. 49). Some specialized cardiac muscle cells can generate action potentials without any nervous stimulation. When one of the cardiac cells spontaneously undergoes an action potential, the electrical impulse spreads to all the other cells that are joined by gap junctions in the surrounding muscle mass so that they become excited and contract as a single, functional syncytium (see p. 222). The atria and the ventricles each form a *functional syncytium* and contract as separate units. The synchronous contraction of the muscle cells that make up the walls of each of these chambers produces the force needed to eject the enclosed blood.

No gap junctions join the atrial and ventricular contractile cells; furthermore, the atria and the ventricles are separated by electrically nonconductive fibrous tissue that surrounds and

supports the valves. However, an important, specialized conduction system facilitates and coordinates transmission of electrical excitation from the atria to the ventricles to ensure synchronization between atrial and ventricular pumping.

Because of both the syncytial nature of cardiac muscle and the conduction system between the atria and the ventricles, an impulse spontaneously generated in one part of the heart spreads throughout the entire heart. Therefore, unlike skeletal muscle, where graded contractions can be produced by varying the number of muscle cells contracting within the muscle (recruitment of motor units), either all cardiac muscle fibers contract or none do. A “halfhearted” contraction is not possible. Cardiac contraction is graded by varying the strength of contraction of all the cardiac muscle cells. You will learn more about this process later.

Building on this foundation of heart structure, we next explain how action potentials are initiated and spread throughout the heart. We follow this with a discussion of how this electrical activity brings about coordinated pumping of the heart.

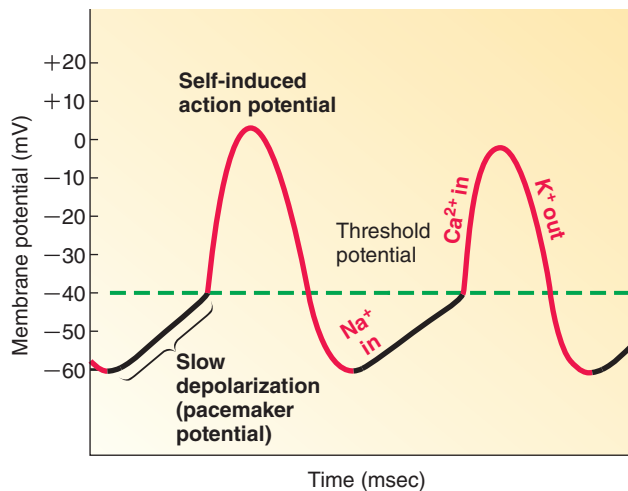
## Electrical Activity of the Heart

Contraction of cardiac muscle cells to eject blood is triggered by action potentials sweeping across the muscle cell membranes. The heart contracts, or beats, rhythmically as a result of action potentials that it generates by itself, a property called **autorhythmicity** (*auto* means “self”). There are two specialized types of cardiac muscle cells:

1. **Contractile cells**, which are 99% of the cardiac muscle cells, do the mechanical work of pumping. These working cells normally do not initiate their own action potentials.
2. In contrast, the **autorhythmic cells**, the small but extremely important remainder of the cardiac cells, do not contract but instead are specialized for initiating and conducting the action potentials responsible for contraction of the working cells.

### Cardiac autorhythmic cells display pacemaker activity.

In contrast to nerve and skeletal muscle cells, in which the membrane remains at constant resting potential unless the cell is stimulated, the cardiac autorhythmic cells do not have a resting potential. Instead, they display *pacemaker activity*; that is, their membrane potential slowly depolarizes, or drifts, between action potentials until threshold is reached, at which time the membrane fires or has an action potential. An autorhythmic cell membrane’s slow drift to threshold is called the **pacemaker potential** (● Figure 9-6; see also p. 222). A unique voltage-gated channel found only in cardiac autorhythmic cells plays a key role in producing the pacemaker potential. Voltage-gated channels typically open when the membrane becomes less negative (depolarizes), but these unusual channels open when the potential becomes more negative (hyperpolarizes) at the end of repolarization from the previous action potential. Because of this unusual behavior, they are sometimes called **funny channels**.



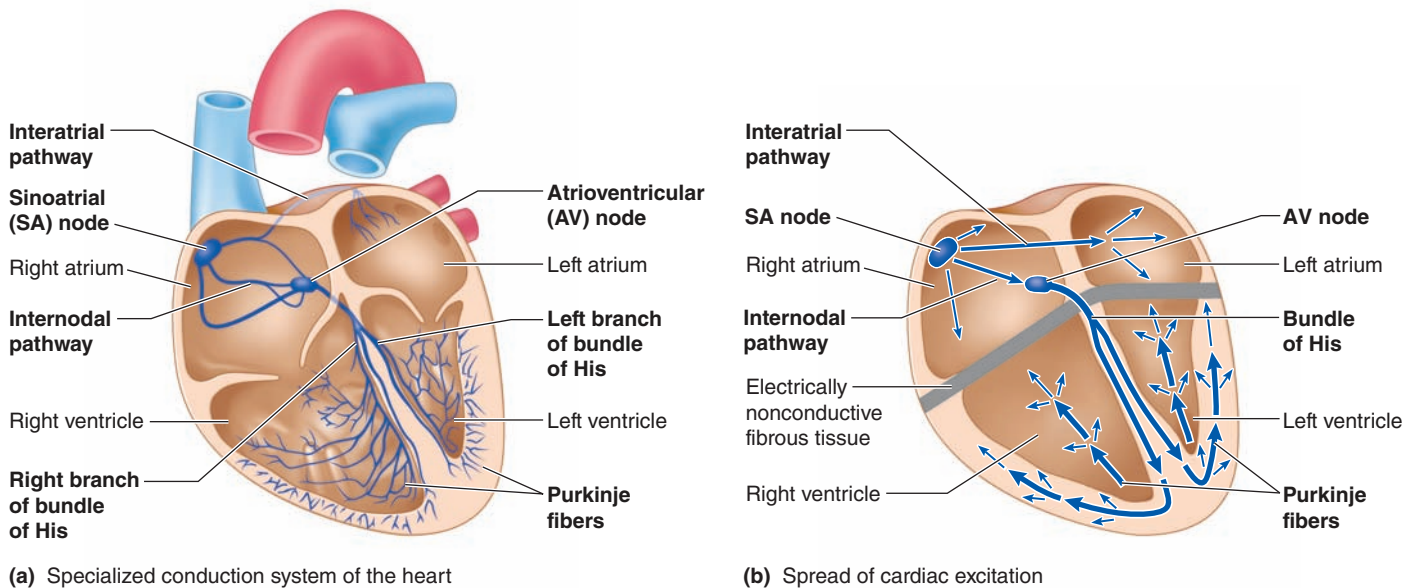
● **FIGURE 9-6 Pacemaker activity of cardiac autorhythmic cells.** The pacemaker potential (slow, self-induced depolarization to threshold) is largely caused by  $\text{Na}^+$  entry through unique funny channels that open in response to hyperpolarization at the end of the previous action potential. Once threshold is reached, the rising phase of the action potential is the result of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry on opening of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels, whereas the falling phase is the result of  $\text{K}^+$  exit on opening of  $\text{K}^+$  channels.

When one action potential ends and the funny channels open, the resultant depolarizing net inward  $\text{Na}^+$  movement starts immediately moving the pacemaker cell's potential toward threshold once again. Once threshold is reached, the rising phase of the action potential occurs in response to opening of voltage-

gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels and the resulting entry of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , in contrast to nerve and skeletal muscle cells where  $\text{Na}^+$  entry rather than  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry swings the potential in the positive direction. The falling phase occurs as usual by  $\text{K}^+$  leaving the pacemaker cell as a result of opening of voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels. Through repeated cycles of drift and fire, these autorhythmic cells cyclically initiate action potentials, which then spread throughout the heart to trigger rhythmic beating without any nervous stimulation.

**The sinoatrial node is the normal pacemaker of the heart.** The specialized noncontractile cardiac cells capable of autorhythmicity lie in the following specific sites (● Figure 9-7):

1. The **sinoatrial node (SA node)**, a small, specialized region in the right atrial wall.
2. The **atrioventricular node (AV node)**, a small bundle of specialized cardiac muscle cells located at the base of the right atrium near the septum.
3. The **bundle of His**, a tract of specialized cells that originates at the AV node and enters the septum between the ventricles. Here, it divides to form the right and left bundle branches that travel down the septum, curve around the tip of the ventricular chambers, and travel back toward the atria along the outer walls.
4. **Purkinje fibers**, small terminal fibers that extend from the bundle of His and spread throughout the ventricular myocardium much like small twigs of a tree branch.



(a) Specialized conduction system of the heart  
 ● **FIGURE 9-7 Specialized conduction system of the heart and spread of cardiac excitation.** An action potential initiated at the SA node first spreads throughout both atria. Its spread is facilitated by two specialized atrial conduction pathways, the interatrial and internodal pathways. The AV node is the only point where an action potential can spread from the atria to the ventricles. From the AV node, the action potential spreads rapidly throughout the ventricles, hastened by a specialized ventricular conduction system consisting of the bundle of His and Purkinje fibers.

**NORMAL PACEMAKER ACTIVITY** Because these various autorhythmic cells have different rates of slow depolarization to threshold, the rates at which they are normally capable of generating action potentials also differ (▲ Table 9-1). The heart cells with the fastest rate of action potential initiation are localized in the SA node. Once an action potential occurs in any cardiac muscle cell, it is propagated throughout the rest of the myocardium via gap junctions and the specialized conduction system. Therefore, the SA node, which normally has the fastest rate of autorhythmicity, at 70 to 80 action potentials per minute, drives the rest of the heart at this rate and thus is known as the **pacemaker** of the heart. That is, the entire heart becomes excited, triggering the contractile cells to contract and the heart to beat at the pace or rate set by SA node autorhythmicity, normally at 70 to 80 beats per minute. The other autorhythmic tissues cannot assume their own naturally slower rates, because they are activated by action potentials originating in the SA node before they can reach threshold at their own, slower rhythm.

The following analogy shows how the SA node drives the rest of the heart at its own pace. Suppose a train has 100 cars, 3 of which are engines capable of moving on their own; the other 97 cars must be pulled (● Figure 9-8a). One engine (the SA node) can travel at 70 miles per hour (mph) on its own, another engine (the AV node) at 50 mph, and the last engine (the Purkinje fibers) at 30 mph. If all these cars are joined, the engine that can travel at 70 mph will pull the rest of the cars at that speed. The engines that can travel at lower speeds on their own will be pulled at a faster speed by the fastest engine and therefore cannot assume their own slower rate as long as they are being driven by a faster engine. The other 97 cars (nonautorhythmic, contractile cells), being unable to move on their own, will likewise travel at whatever speed the fastest engine pulls them.



**ABNORMAL PACEMAKER ACTIVITY** If for some reason the fastest engine breaks down (SA node damage), the next-fastest engine (the AV node) takes over and the entire train travels at 50 mph; that is, if the SA node becomes nonfunctional, the AV node assumes pacemaker activity (● Figure 9-8b).

### ▲ Table 9-1 Normal Rate of Action Potential Discharge in Autorhythmic Tissues of the Heart

Tissue	Action Potentials per Minute*
SA node (normal pacemaker)	70–80
AV node	40–60
Bundle of His and Purkinje fibers	20–40

\*In the presence of parasympathetic tone; see pp. 180 and 249.

If impulse conduction becomes blocked between the atria and the ventricles, the atria continue at the typical rate of 70 beats per minute, and the ventricular tissue, not being driven by the faster SA nodal rate, assumes its own, slower autorhythmic rate of about 30 beats per minute, initiated by the Purkinje fibers. This situation is like a breakdown of the second engine (the AV node) so that the lead engine (the SA node) becomes disconnected from the slow third engine (the Purkinje fibers) and the rest of the cars (● Figure 9-8c). The lead engine (and cars connected directly to it; that is, the atrial cells) continues at 70 mph while the rest of the train proceeds at 30 mph. This **complete heart block** occurs when the conducting tissue between the atria and the ventricles is damaged (as, for example, during a heart attack) and becomes nonfunctional. A ventricular rate of 30 beats per minute will support only a very sedentary existence; in fact, the patient usually becomes comatose.

When a person has an abnormally low heart rate, as in SA node failure or heart block, an **artificial pacemaker** can be used. Such an implanted device rhythmically generates impulses that spread throughout the heart to drive both the atria and the ventricles at the typical rate of 70 beats per minute.

Occasionally, an area of the heart, such as a Purkinje fiber, becomes overly excitable and depolarizes more rapidly than the SA node. (The slow engine suddenly goes faster than the lead engine; see ● Figure 9-8d). This abnormally excitable area, an **ectopic focus**, initiates a premature action potential that spreads throughout the rest of the heart before the SA node can initiate a normal action potential (*ectopic* means “out of place”). An occasional abnormal impulse from a ventricular ectopic focus produces a **premature ventricular contraction (PVC)**. If the ectopic focus continues to discharge at its more rapid rate, pacemaker activity shifts from the SA node to the ectopic focus. The heart rate abruptly becomes greatly accelerated and continues this rapid rate for a variable period until the ectopic focus returns to normal. Such overly irritable areas may be associated with organic heart disease, but more frequently they occur in response to anxiety, lack of sleep, or excess caffeine, nicotine, or alcohol consumption.

We now turn to how an action potential, once initiated, is conducted throughout the heart.

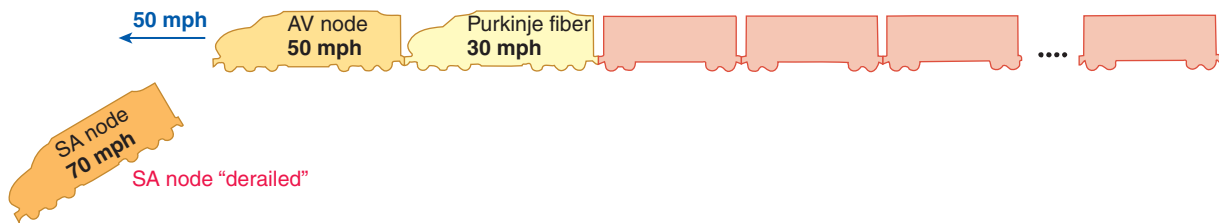
#### The spread of cardiac excitation is coordinated to ensure efficient pumping.

Once initiated in the SA node, an action potential spreads throughout the rest of the heart. For efficient cardiac function, the spread of excitation should satisfy three criteria:

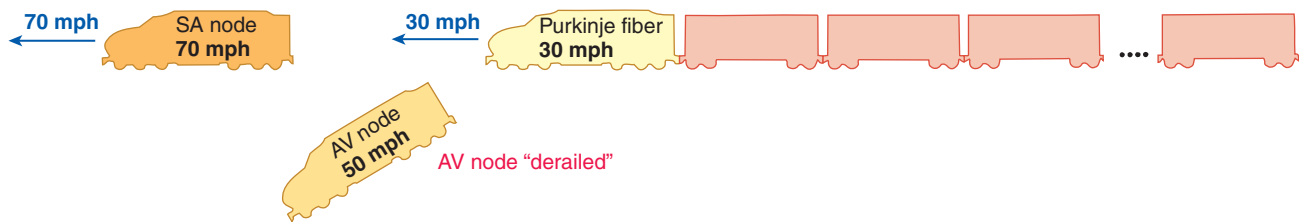
1. *Atrial excitation and contraction should be complete before the onset of ventricular contraction.* Complete ventricular filling requires that atrial contraction precede ventricular contraction. During cardiac relaxation, the AV valves are open, so venous blood entering the atria continues to flow directly into the ventricles. Almost 80% of ventricular filling occurs by this means before atrial contraction. When the atria do contract, more blood is squeezed into the ventricles to complete ventricular filling. Ventricular contraction then occurs to eject blood from the heart into the arteries.



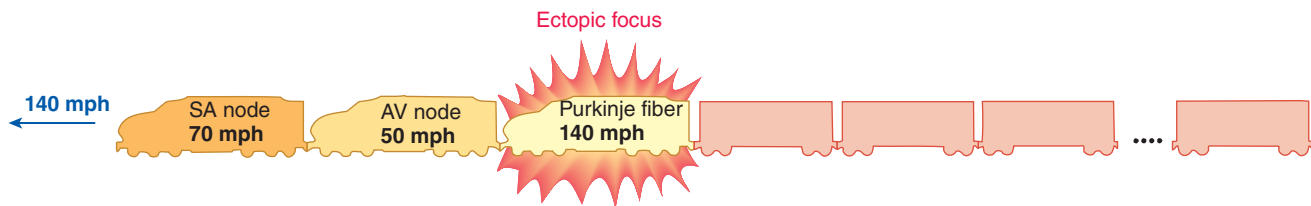
(a) Normal pacemaker activity: Whole train will go **70 mph** (heart rate set by SA node, the fastest autorhythmic tissue).



(b) Takeover of pacemaker activity by AV node when the SA node is nonfunctional: Train will go **50 mph** (the next fastest autorhythmic tissue, the AV node, will set the heart rate).



(c) Takeover of ventricular rate by the slower ventricular autorhythmic tissue in complete heart block: First part of train will go **70 mph**; last part will go **30 mph** (atria will be driven by SA node; ventricles will assume own, much slower rhythm).



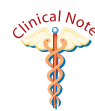
(d) Takeover of pacemaker activity by an ectopic focus: Train will be driven by ectopic focus, which is now going faster than the SA node (the whole heart will be driven more rapidly by an abnormal pacemaker).

● **FIGURE 9-8 Analogy of pacemaker activity.** In complete heart block (c), when ventricular rate is taken over by the slower ventricular autorhythmic tissue, the atrial rate (not shown) is still driven by the SA node.

If the atria and ventricles were to contract simultaneously, the AV valves would close immediately because ventricular pressures would greatly exceed atrial pressures. The ventricles have thicker walls and, accordingly, can generate more pressure. Atrial contraction would be unproductive because the atria could not squeeze blood into the ventricles through closed valves. Therefore, to ensure complete filling of the ventricles—to obtain the remaining 20% of ventricular filling that occurs during atrial contraction—the atria must become excited and contract before ventricular excitation and contraction.

2. *Excitation of cardiac muscle fibers should be coordinated to ensure that each heart chamber contracts as a unit to pump efficiently.* If the muscle fibers in a heart chamber became excited and contracted randomly rather than contracting simultaneously in a coordinated fashion, they would be unable to eject

blood. A smooth, uniform ventricular contraction is essential to squeeze out the blood. As an analogy, assume you have a basting syringe full of water. If you merely poke a finger here or there into the rubber bulb of the syringe, you will not eject much water. However, if you compress the bulb in a smooth, coordinated fashion, you can squeeze out the water.



In a similar manner, contraction of isolated cardiac muscle fibers is not successful in pumping blood. Such random, uncoordinated excitation and contraction of the cardiac cells is known as **fibrillation**. Fibrillation of the ventricles is more serious than atrial fibrillation. Ventricular fibrillation rapidly causes death, because the heart cannot pump blood into the arteries. This condition can often be corrected by electrical defibrillation, in which a strong electrical current is applied on the chest wall. When this current

reaches the heart, it stimulates (depolarizes) all parts of the heart simultaneously. Usually the first part of the heart to recover is the SA node, which takes over pacemaker activity, again initiating impulses that trigger the synchronized contraction of the rest of the heart.

3. *The pair of atria and pair of ventricles should be functionally coordinated so that both members of the pair contract simultaneously.* This coordination permits synchronized pumping of blood into the pulmonary and systemic circulation.

The normal spread of cardiac excitation is carefully orchestrated to ensure that these criteria are met and the heart functions efficiently, as follows (see ● Figure 9-7b).

**ATRIAL EXCITATION** An action potential originating in the SA node first spreads throughout both atria, primarily from cell to cell via gap junctions. In addition, several poorly delineated, specialized conduction pathways speed up conduction of the impulse through the atria.

■ The *interatrial pathway* extends from the SA node within the right atrium to the left atrium. Because this pathway rapidly transmits the action potential from the SA node to the pathway's termination in the left atrium, a wave of excitation can spread across the gap junctions throughout the left atrium at the same time as excitation is similarly spreading throughout the right atrium. This ensures that both atria become depolarized to contract simultaneously.

■ The *internodal pathway* extends from the SA node to the AV node. The AV node is the only point of electrical contact between the atria and the ventricles; in other words, because the atria and the ventricles are structurally connected by electrically nonconductive fibrous tissue, the only way an action potential in the atria can spread to the ventricles is by passing through the AV node. The internodal conduction pathway directs the spread of an action potential originating at the SA node to the AV node to ensure sequential contraction of the ventricles following atrial contraction.

**CONDUCTION BETWEEN THE ATRIA AND THE VENTRICLES** The action potential is conducted relatively slowly through the AV node. This slowness is advantageous because it allows time for complete ventricular filling. The impulse is delayed about 100 msec (the **AV nodal delay**), which enables the atria to become completely depolarized and to contract, emptying their contents into the ventricles, before ventricular depolarization and contraction occur.

**VENTRICULAR EXCITATION** After the AV nodal delay, the impulse travels rapidly down the septum via the right and left branches of the bundle of His and throughout the ventricular myocardium via the Purkinje fibers. This highly organized conduction system is specialized for rapid propagation of action potentials. Its presence hastens and coordinates the spread of ventricular excitation to ensure that the ventricles contract as a unit.

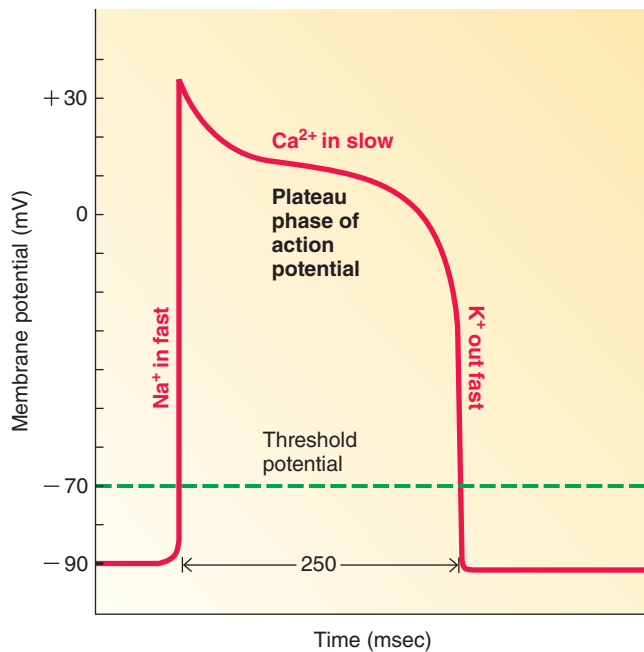
Although this system carries the action potential rapidly to a large number of cardiac muscle cells, it does not terminate on

every cell. The impulse quickly spreads from the excited cells to the rest of the ventricular muscle cells by means of gap junctions.

Because the ventricular mass is so much larger than the atrial mass, the ventricular conduction system is crucial for hastening the spread of excitation in the ventricles. Purkinje fibers can transmit an action potential six times faster than the ventricular syncytium of contractile cells could. If the entire ventricular depolarization process depended on cell-to-cell spread of the impulse via gap junctions, the ventricular tissue immediately next to the AV node would become excited and contract before the impulse had even passed to the heart apex. This, of course, would not allow efficient pumping. Rapid conduction of the action potential down the bundle of His and its swift, diffuse distribution throughout the Purkinje network lead to almost simultaneous activation of the ventricular myocardial cells in both ventricular chambers, which ensures a single, smooth, coordinated contraction that can efficiently eject blood into the systemic and pulmonary circulations at the same time.

### The action potential of cardiac contractile cells shows a characteristic plateau.

The action potential in cardiac contractile cells, although initiated by the nodal pacemaker cells, varies considerably in ionic mechanisms and shape from the SA node potential (compare ● Figures 9-6 and 9-9). Unlike the membrane of autorhythmic cells, the membrane of contractile cells remains essentially at rest, about  $-90$  millivolts (mV), until excited by electrical activity propagated from the pacemaker. Once the membrane of a ventricular myocardial contractile cell is excited, the membrane potential rapidly reverses to a positive value of  $+30$  mV as a result of activation of voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels and  $\text{Na}^+$  subsequently rapidly entering the cell, as it does in other excitable cells undergoing an action potential (see p. 76). Unique to the cardiac contractile cells, however, the membrane potential is maintained close to this peak positive level for several hundred milliseconds, producing a *plateau phase* of the action potential. In contrast, the short action potential of neurons and skeletal muscle cells lasts 1 to 2 msec. Whereas the rising phase of the action potential is brought about by activation of comparatively “fast”  $\text{Na}^+$  channels, this plateau is maintained primarily by activation of relatively “slow” voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels in the cardiac contractile cell membrane. These channels open in response to the sudden change in voltage during the rising phase of the action potential. Opening of these  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels results in a slow, inward diffusion of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , because  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is in greater concentration in the extracellular fluid (ECF). This continued influx of positively charged  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  prolongs the positivity inside the cell and is primarily responsible for the plateau part of the action potential. The rapid falling phase of the action potential results from inactivation of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels and opening of voltage-gated  $\text{K}^+$  channels. As in other excitable cells, the cell returns to resting potential as  $\text{K}^+$  rapidly leaves the cell.



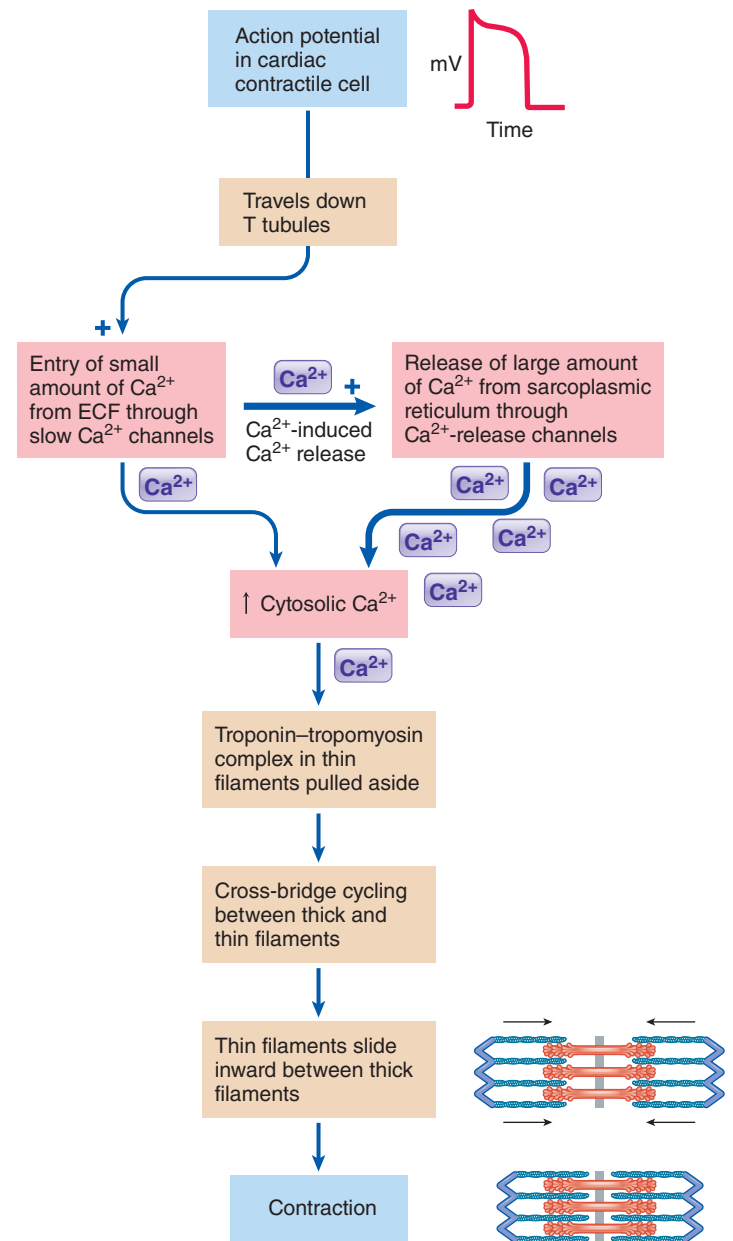
● **FIGURE 9-9 Action potential in contractile cardiac muscle cells.** The action potential in cardiac contractile cells differs considerably from the action potential in cardiac autorhythmic cells (compare with Figure 9-6). The rapid rising phase of the action potential in contractile cells is the result of  $\text{Na}^+$  entry on opening of fast  $\text{Na}^+$  channels at threshold. The unique plateau phase is the result of prolonged  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry on opening of slow  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels. The rapid falling phase is the result of  $\text{K}^+$  exit on opening of  $\text{K}^+$  channels.

Let us now see how this action potential brings about contraction.

### $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ entry from the ECF induces a much larger $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum.

In cardiac contractile cells, the slow  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels lie primarily in the transverse (T) tubules. As you just learned, these voltage-gated channels open during a local action potential. Thus, unlike in skeletal muscle,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  diffuses into the cytosol from the ECF across the T tubule membrane during a cardiac action potential. This entering  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  triggers the opening of nearby  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -release channels in the adjacent lateral sacs of the sarcoplasmic reticulum (see p. 200). By means of this action, termed  **$\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -induced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release**,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entering the cytosol from the ECF induces a much larger release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the cytosol from the intracellular stores (● Figure 9-10). The resultant increase in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  turns on the contractile machinery. Ninety percent of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  needed for muscle contraction comes from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. This extra supply of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , coupled with the slow  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  removal processes, is responsible for the long period of cardiac contraction, which lasts about three times longer than the contraction of a single skeletal muscle fiber (300 msec compared to 100 msec). This increased contractile time ensures adequate time to eject the blood.

As in skeletal muscle, the role of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  within the cytosol is to bind with the troponin–tropomyosin complex and physically pull it aside to allow cross-bridge cycling and contraction (● Figure 9-10). However, unlike skeletal muscle, in which suf-

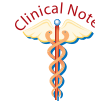


● **FIGURE 9-10 Excitation–contraction coupling in cardiac contractile cells.**

ficient  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is always released to turn on all the cross bridges, in cardiac muscle the extent of cross-bridge activity varies with the amount of cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . As we will show, various regulatory factors can alter the amount of cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .

Removal of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the cytosol by energy-dependent mechanisms in both the plasma membrane and the sarcoplasmic reticulum restores the blocking action of troponin and tropomyosin, so contraction ceases and the heart muscle relaxes.

Some drugs alter cardiac function by influencing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  movement across the myocardial cell membranes. For example,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -channel blocking agents, such as *verapamil*, block  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry during an action potential, reducing the force of cardiac contraction. Other drugs, such as *digitalis*, increase cardiac contractility by causing accumulation of cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .





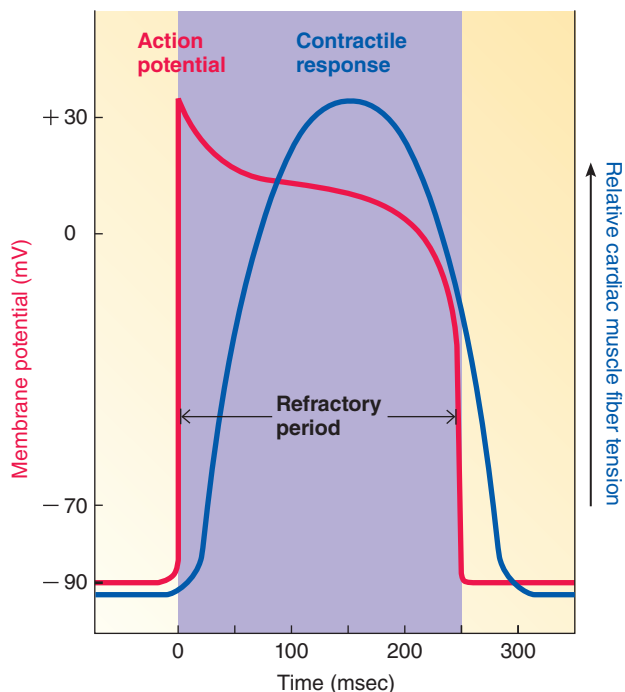
### A long refractory period prevents tetanus of cardiac muscle.

Like other excitable tissues, cardiac muscle has a refractory period. During the refractory period, a second action potential cannot be triggered until an excitable membrane has recovered from the preceding action potential. In skeletal muscle, the refractory period is very short compared with the duration of the resulting contraction, so the fiber can be restimulated before the first contraction is complete to produce summation of contractions. Rapidly repetitive stimulation that does not let the muscle fiber relax between stimulations results in a sustained, maximal contraction known as *tetanus* (see ● Figure 8-16, p. 208).

In contrast, cardiac muscle has a long refractory period that lasts about 250 msec because of the prolonged plateau phase of the action potential. This is almost as long as the period of contraction initiated by the action potential; a cardiac muscle fiber contraction averages about 300 msec (● Figure 9-11). Consequently, cardiac muscle cannot be restimulated until contraction is almost over, precluding summation of contractions and tetanus of cardiac muscle. This is a valuable protective mechanism, because pumping of blood requires alternate periods of contraction (emptying) and relaxation (filling). A prolonged tetanic contraction would prove fatal: The heart chambers could not be filled and emptied again.

### The ECG is a record of the overall spread of electrical activity through the heart.

The electrical currents generated by cardiac muscle during depolarization and repolarization spread into the tissues around the heart and are conducted through the body fluids. A small



● **FIGURE 9-11** Comparison of the duration of an action potential and the refractory period to the duration of the contractile response in cardiac muscle.

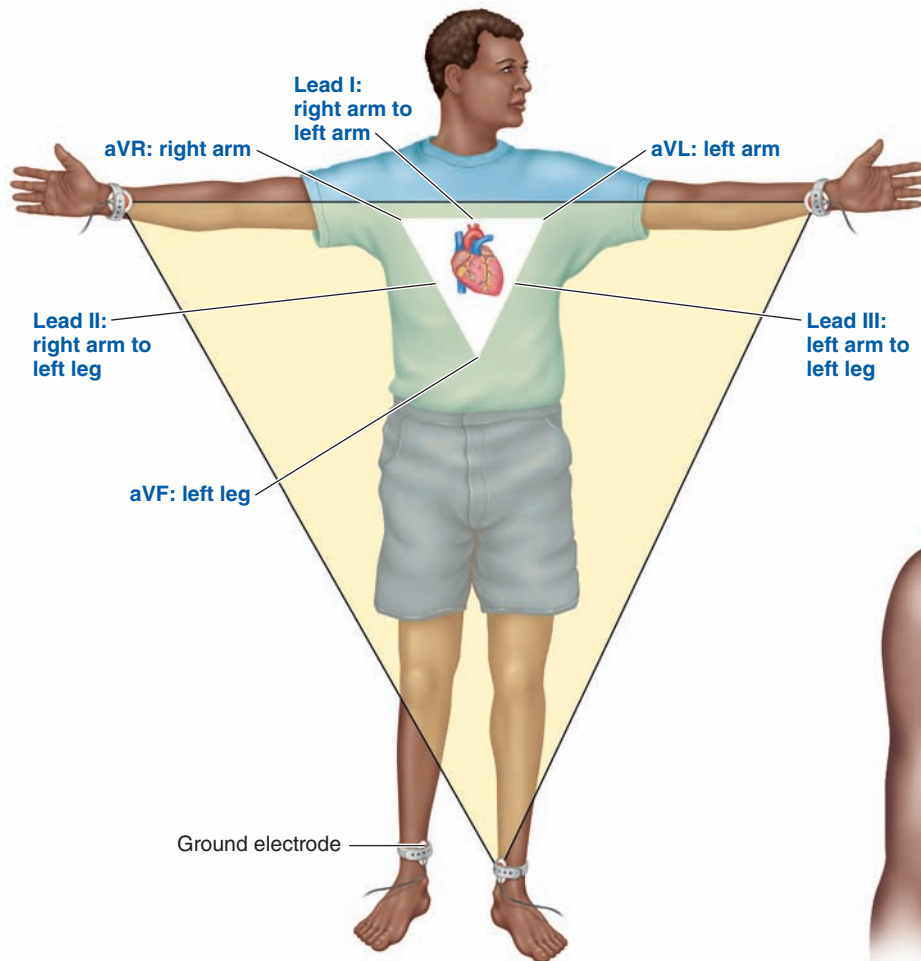
part of this electrical activity reaches the body surface, where it can be detected using recording electrodes. The record produced is an **electrocardiogram, or ECG**. (Alternatively, the abbreviation **EKG** is often used, from the ancient Greek word *kardia*, instead of the Latin *cardia*, for “heart.”)

Remember three important points when considering what an ECG represents:

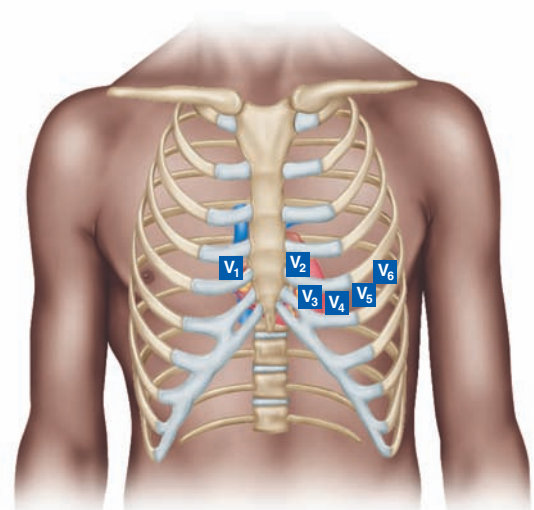
1. An ECG is a recording of that part of the electrical activity present in body fluids from the cardiac impulse that reaches the body surface, not a direct recording of the actual electrical activity of the heart.
2. The ECG is a complex recording representing the *overall* spread of activity throughout the heart during depolarization and repolarization. It is not a recording of a *single* action potential in a single cell at a single point in time. The record at any given time represents the sum of electrical activity in all the cardiac muscle cells, some of which may be undergoing action potentials while others may not yet be activated. For example, immediately after the SA node fires, the atrial cells are undergoing action potentials while the ventricular cells are still at resting potential. At a later point, the electrical activity will have spread to the ventricular cells while the atrial cells will be repolarizing. Therefore, the overall pattern of cardiac electrical activity varies with time as the impulse passes throughout the heart.
3. The recording represents comparisons in voltage detected by electrodes at two points on the body surface, not the actual potential. For example, the ECG does not record a potential when the ventricular muscle is either completely depolarized or completely repolarized; both electrodes are “viewing” the same potential, so no difference in potential between the two electrodes is recorded.

The exact pattern of electrical activity recorded from the body surface depends on the orientation of the recording electrodes. Electrodes may be loosely thought of as “eyes” that “see” electrical activity and translate it into a visible recording, the ECG record. Whether an upward or downward deflection is recorded is determined by the way the electrodes are oriented with respect to the current flow in the heart. For example, the spread of excitation across the heart is “seen” differently from the right arm, from the left leg, or from a recording directly over the heart. Even though the same electrical events are occurring in the heart, different waveforms representing the same electrical activity result when this activity is recorded by electrodes at different points on the body.

To provide standard comparisons, ECG records routinely consist of 12 conventional electrode systems, or leads. When an electrocardiograph machine is connected between recording electrodes at two points on the body, the specific arrangement of each pair of connections is called a **lead**. The 12 leads each record electrical activity in the heart from different locations—six different electrical arrangements from the limbs and six chest leads at various sites around the heart. To provide a common basis for comparison and for recognizing deviations from normal, the same 12 leads are routinely used in all ECG recordings (● Figure 9-12).



(a) Limb leads



(b) Chest leads

● **FIGURE 9-12 Electrocardiogram leads.** (a) The six limb leads include leads I, II, III, aVR, aVL, and aVF. Leads I, II, and III are bipolar leads because two recording electrodes are used. The tracing records the *difference* in potential between the two electrodes. For example, lead I records the difference in potential detected at the right arm and left arm. The electrode placed on the right leg serves as a ground and is not a recording electrode. The aVR, aVL, and aVF leads are unipolar leads. Even though two electrodes are used, only the actual potential under one electrode, the exploring electrode, is recorded. The other electrode is set at zero potential and serves as a neutral reference point. For example, the aVR lead records the potential reaching the right arm in comparison to the rest of the body. (b) The six chest leads, V<sub>1</sub> through V<sub>6</sub>, are also unipolar leads. The exploring electrode mainly records the electrical potential of the cardiac musculature immediately beneath the electrode in six different locations surrounding the heart.

### Different parts of the ECG record can be correlated to specific cardiac events.

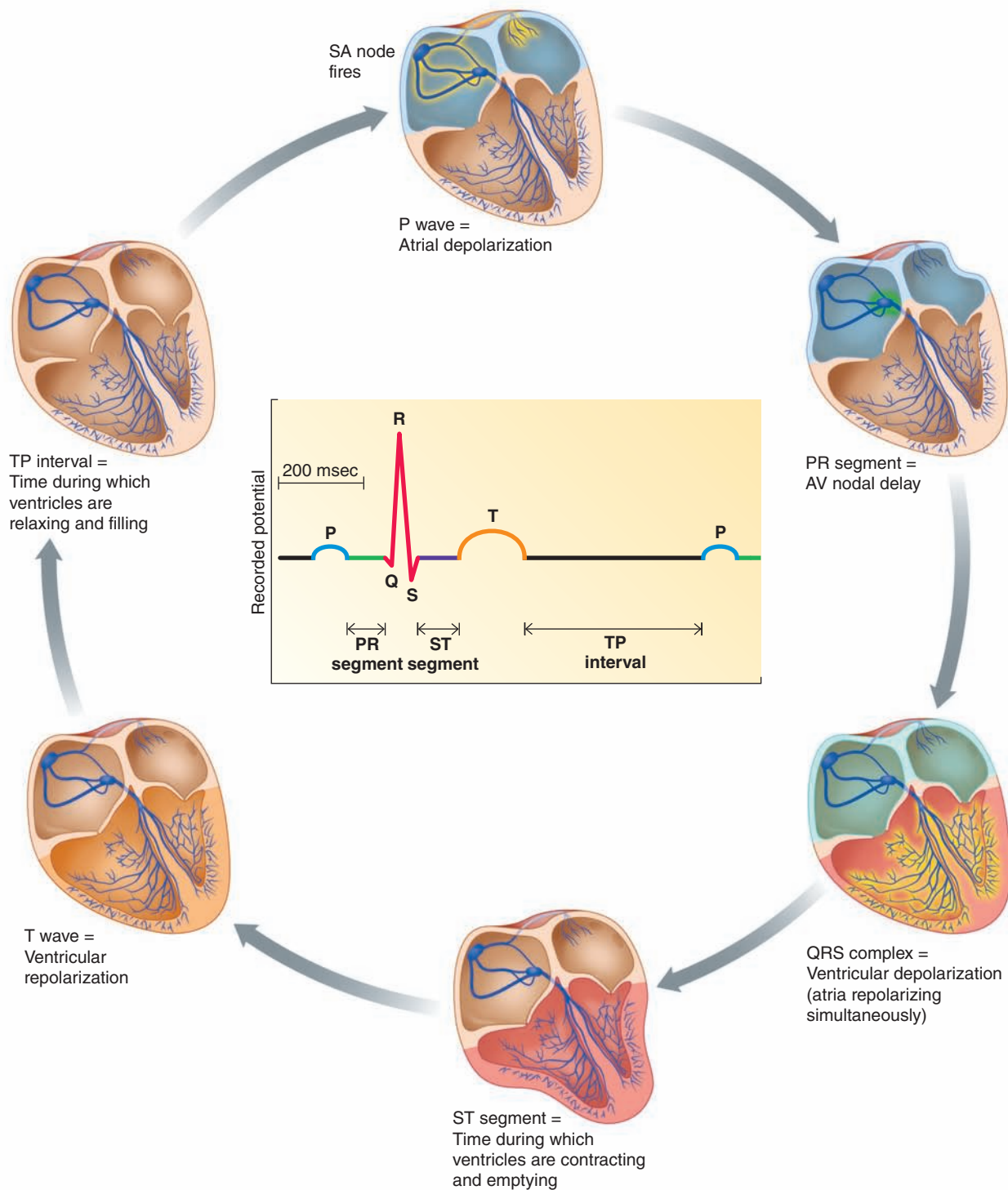
A normal ECG has three distinct waveforms: the P wave, the QRS complex, and the T wave (● Figure 9-13). (The letters only indicate the orderly sequence of the waves. The inventor of the technique just started in midalphabet when naming the waves.)

- The **P wave** represents atrial depolarization.
- The **QRS complex** represents ventricular depolarization.
- The **T wave** represents ventricular repolarization.

These shifting waves of depolarization and repolarization bring about alternating contraction and relaxation of the heart, respectively.

The following points about the ECG record should also be noted:

1. Firing of the SA node does not generate enough electrical activity to reach the body surface, so no wave is recorded for SA nodal depolarization. Therefore, the first recorded wave, the P wave, occurs when the wave of depolarization spreads across the atria.
2. In a normal ECG, no separate wave for atrial repolarization is visible. The electrical activity associated with atrial repolarization normally occurs simultaneously with ventricular depolarization and is masked by the QRS complex.
3. The P wave is smaller than the QRS complex, because the atria have a smaller muscle mass than the ventricles and consequently generate less electrical activity.



● **FIGURE 9-13** Electrocardiogram waveforms in lead II and electrical status of the heart associated with each waveform.

4. At the following three points in time, no net current flow is taking place in the heart musculature, so the ECG remains at baseline:
  - a. *During the AV nodal delay.* This delay is represented by the interval of time between the end of P and the onset of QRS; this segment of the ECG is known as the **PR segment**. (It is called the “PR segment” rather than the

- “PQ segment” because the Q deflection is small and sometimes absent, whereas the R deflection is the dominant wave of the complex.) Current is flowing through the AV node, but the magnitude is too small for the ECG electrodes to detect.
- b. *When the ventricles are completely depolarized and the cardiac contractile cells are undergoing the plateau phase*

of their action potential before they repolarize, represented by the **ST segment**. This segment lies between QRS and T; it coincides with the time during which ventricular activation is complete and the ventricles are contracting and emptying. Note that the ST segment is *not* a record of cardiac contractile activity. The ECG is a measure of the electrical activity that triggers the subsequent mechanical activity.

- c. When the heart muscle is completely repolarized and at rest and ventricular filling is taking place, after the T wave and before the next P wave. This period is called the **TP interval**.

### The ECG can be used to diagnose abnormal heart rates, arrhythmias, and damage of heart muscle.

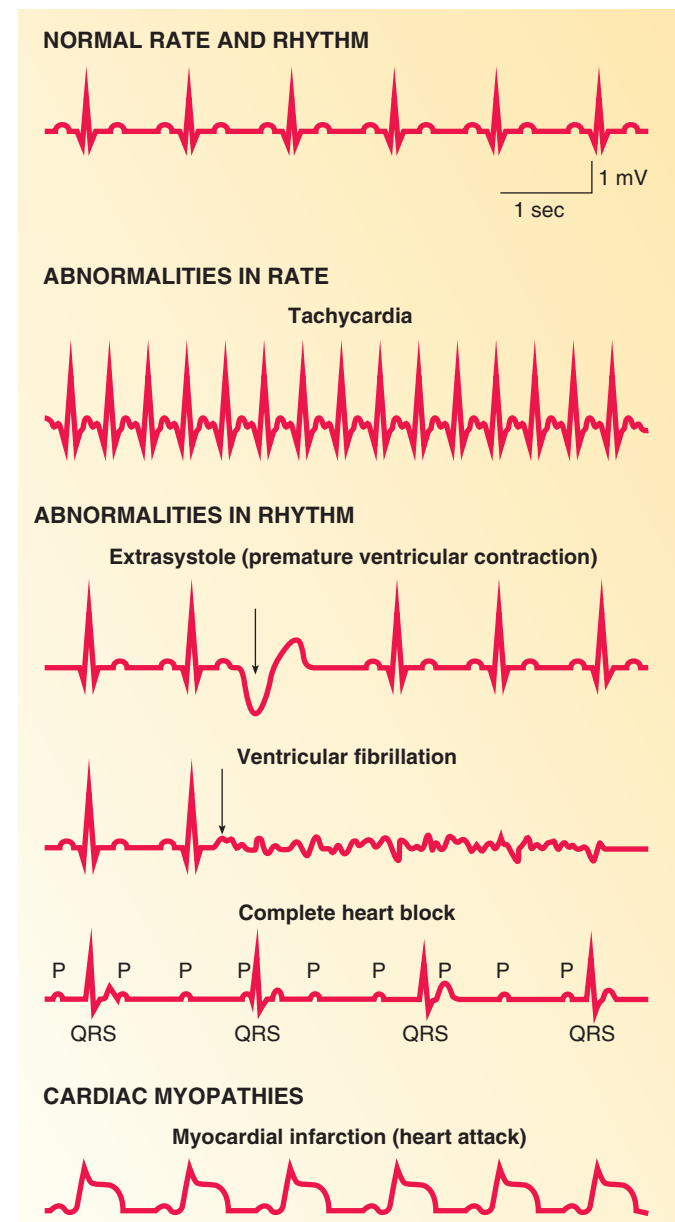


Because electrical activity triggers mechanical activity, abnormal electrical patterns are usually accompanied by abnormal contractile activity of the heart. Thus, evaluation of ECG patterns can provide useful information about the status of the heart. The main deviations from normal that can be found through an ECG are (1) abnormalities in rate, (2) abnormalities in rhythm, and (3) cardiac myopathies (● Figure 9-14).

**ABNORMALITIES IN RATE** The heart rate can be determined from the distance between two consecutive QRS complexes on the calibrated paper used to record an ECG. A rapid heart rate of more than 100 beats per minute is called **tachycardia** (*tachy* means “fast”), whereas a slow heart rate of fewer than 60 beats per minute is called **bradycardia** (*brady* means “slow”).

**ABNORMALITIES IN RHYTHM** *Rhythm* refers to the regularity or spacing of the ECG waves. Any variation from the normal rhythm and sequence of excitation of the heart is termed an **arrhythmia**. It may result from ectopic foci, alterations in SA node pacemaker activity, or interference with conduction. For example, with *complete heart block* the SA node continues to govern atrial depolarization, but the ventricles generate their own impulses at a rate slower than that of the atria. On the ECG, the P waves exhibit a normal rhythm. The QRS and T waves also occur regularly but more slowly than the P waves and independently of P wave rhythm. Because atrial activity and ventricular activity are not synchronized, waves for atrial repolarization may appear, no longer masked by the QRS complex.

**CARDIAC MYOPATHIES** Abnormal ECG waves are also important in recognizing and assessing **cardiac myopathies** (damage of the heart muscle). **Myocardial ischemia** is inadequate delivery of oxygenated blood to the heart tissue. Actual death, or **necrosis**, of heart muscle cells occurs when a blood vessel supplying that area of the heart becomes blocked or ruptured. This condition is **acute myocardial infarction**, commonly called a **heart attack**. Abnormal QRS waveforms appear when part of the heart muscle becomes necrotic. In addition to ECG changes, because damaged heart muscle cells release character-



● **FIGURE 9-14** Representative heart conditions detectable through electrocardiography.

istic enzymes into the blood, the level of these enzymes in the blood provides a further index of the extent of myocardial damage.

## Mechanical Events of the Cardiac Cycle

The mechanical events of the cardiac cycle—contraction, relaxation, and the resultant changes in blood flow through the heart—are brought about by the rhythmic changes in cardiac electrical activity.

## The heart alternately contracts to empty and relaxes to fill.

The cardiac cycle consists of alternate periods of **systole** (contraction and emptying) and **diastole** (relaxation and filling). Contraction results from the spread of excitation across the heart, whereas relaxation follows the subsequent repolarization of the cardiac muscle. The atria and ventricles go through separate cycles of systole and diastole. Unless qualified, the terms *systole* and *diastole* refer to what is happening with the ventricles.

The following discussion and corresponding ● Figure 9-15 correlate various events that occur concurrently during the cardiac cycle, including ECG features, pressure changes, volume changes, valve activity, and heart sounds. Only the events on the left side of the heart are described, but keep in mind that identical events are occurring on the right side of the heart, except that the pressures are lower. To complete one full cardiac cycle, our discussion begins and ends with ventricular diastole.

**MIDVENTRICULAR DIASTOLE** During most of ventricular diastole, the atrium is still also in diastole. Because of the continuous inflow of blood from the venous system into the atrium, atrial pressure slightly exceeds ventricular pressure even though both chambers are relaxed (● Figure 9-15, point 1). Because of this pressure differential, the AV valve is open, and blood flows directly from the atrium into the ventricle throughout ventricular diastole (● Figure 9-15, heart a). As a result of this passive filling, the ventricular volume slowly continues to rise even before atrial contraction takes place (point 2).

**LATE VENTRICULAR DIASTOLE** Late in ventricular diastole, the SA node reaches threshold and fires. The impulse spreads throughout the atria, which appears on the ECG as the P wave (point 3). Atrial depolarization brings about atrial contraction, raising the atrial pressure curve (point 4) and squeezing more blood into the ventricle. The excitation–contraction coupling process takes place during the short delay between the P wave and the rise in atrial pressure. The corresponding rise in ventricular pressure (point 5) that occurs simultaneously with the rise in atrial pressure results from the additional volume of blood added to the ventricle by atrial contraction (point 6 and heart b).

**END OF VENTRICULAR DIASTOLE** Ventricular diastole ends at the onset of ventricular contraction. By this time, atrial contraction and ventricular filling are completed. The volume of blood in the ventricle at the end of diastole is known as the **end-diastolic volume (EDV)** (point 7), which averages about 135 ml. No more blood will be added to the ventricle during this cycle. Therefore, the end-diastolic volume is the maximum amount of blood that the ventricle will contain during this cycle.

**VENTRICULAR EXCITATION AND ONSET OF VENTRICULAR SYSTOLE** After atrial excitation, the impulse travels through the AV node and specialized conduction system to excite the ventricle. Simultaneously, the atria are contracting. By the time ventricular activation is complete, atrial contraction is already over. The

QRS complex represents this ventricular excitation (point 8), which induces ventricular contraction. The ventricular pressure curve sharply increases shortly after the QRS complex, signaling the onset of ventricular systole (point 9). As ventricular contraction begins, ventricular pressure immediately exceeds atrial pressure. This backward pressure differential forces the AV valve closed (point 9).

**ISOVOLUMETRIC VENTRICULAR CONTRACTION** After ventricular pressure exceeds atrial pressure and the AV valve has closed, to open the aortic valve, the ventricular pressure must continue to increase until it exceeds aortic pressure. Therefore, after the AV valve closes and before the aortic valve opens, the ventricle briefly remains a closed chamber (point 10). Because all valves are closed, no blood can enter or leave the ventricle during this time, which is termed the period of **isovolumetric ventricular contraction** (*isovolumetric* means “constant volume and length”) (heart c). Because no blood enters or leaves the ventricle, the ventricular chamber stays at constant volume, and the muscle fibers stay at constant length (point 11), while ventricular pressure continues to rise.

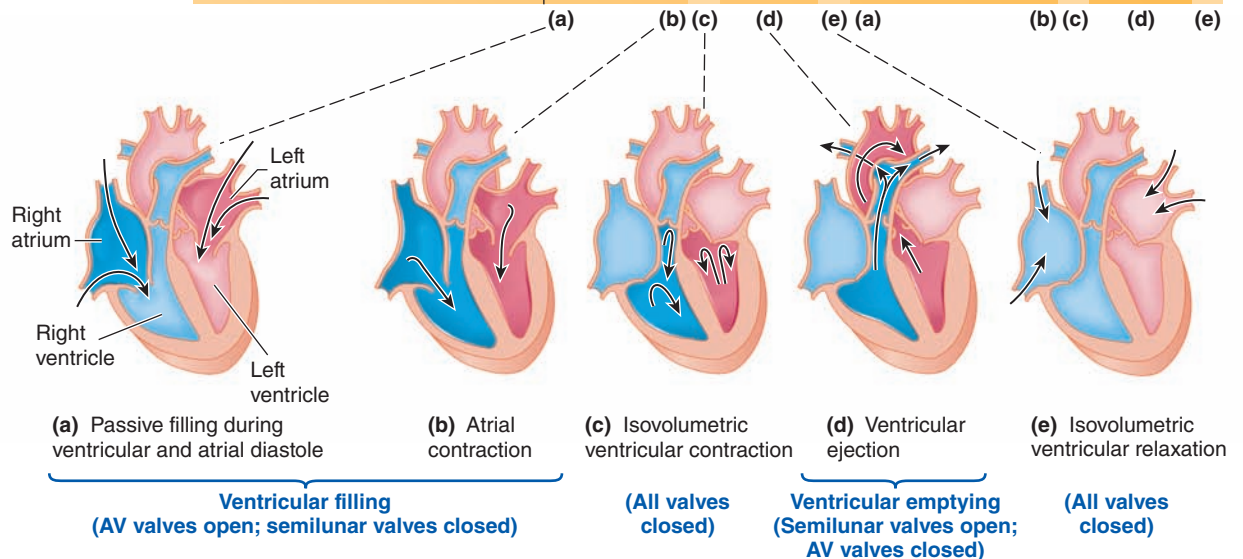
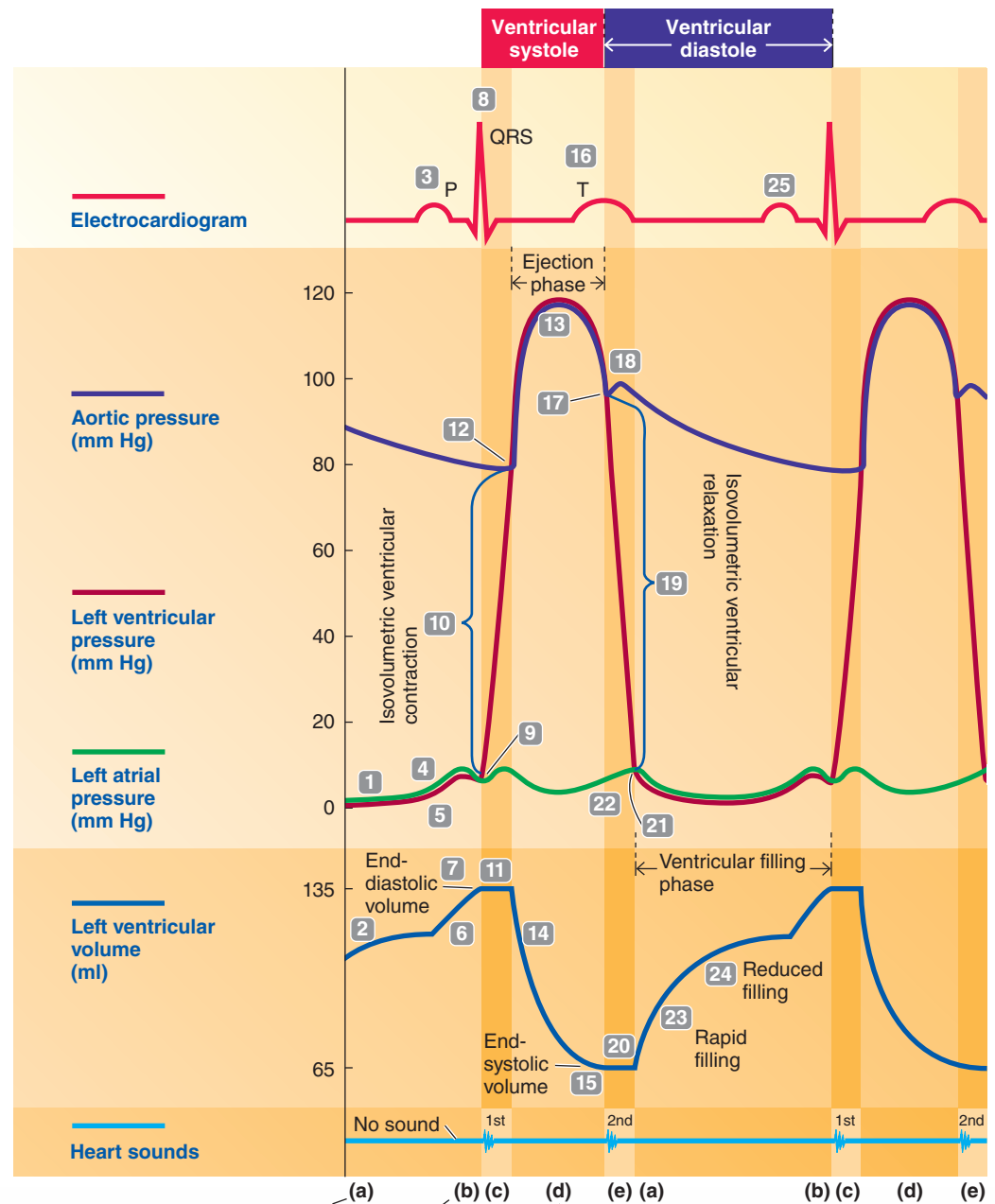
**VENTRICULAR EJECTION** When ventricular pressure exceeds aortic pressure (point 12), the aortic valve is forced open and ejection of blood begins (heart d). The amount of blood pumped out of each ventricle with each contraction is called the **stroke volume (SV)**. The aortic pressure curve rises as blood is forced into the aorta from the ventricle faster than blood is draining off into the smaller vessels at the other end (point 13). The ventricular volume decreases substantially as blood is rapidly pumped out (point 14). Ventricular systole includes both isovolumetric ventricular contraction and ventricular ejection.

**END OF VENTRICULAR SYSTOLE** The ventricle does not empty completely during ejection. Normally, only about half the blood within the ventricle at the end of diastole is pumped out during the subsequent systole. The amount of blood left in the ventricle at the end of systole when ejection is complete is the **end-systolic volume (ESV)** (point 15), which averages about 65 ml. This is the least amount of blood that the ventricle will contain during this cycle.

The difference between the volume of blood in the ventricle before contraction and the volume after contraction is the amount of blood ejected during the contraction, that is,  $EDV - ESV = SV$ . In our example, the end-diastolic volume is 135 ml, the end-systolic volume is 65 ml, and the stroke volume is 70 ml.

**VENTRICULAR REPOLARIZATION AND ONSET OF VENTRICULAR DIASTOLE** The T wave signifies ventricular repolarization at the end of ventricular systole (point 16). When the ventricle repolarizes and starts to relax, ventricular pressure falls below aortic pressure and the aortic valve closes (point 17). Closure of the aortic valve produces a disturbance or notch on the aortic pressure curve (point 18). No more blood leaves the ventricle during this cycle, because the aortic valve has closed.

● **FIGURE 9-15 Cardiac cycle.** This graph depicts various events that occur concurrently during the cardiac cycle. Follow each horizontal strip across to see the changes that take place in the electrocardiogram; aortic, ventricular, and atrial pressures; ventricular volume; and heart sounds throughout the cycle. The last half of diastole, one full systole and diastole (one full cardiac cycle), and another systole are shown for the left side of the heart. Follow each vertical strip downward to see what happens simultaneously with each of these factors during each phase of the cardiac cycle. See the text (pp. 244 and 246) for a detailed explanation of the numbered points. The sketches of the heart illustrate the flow of O<sub>2</sub>-poor (dark blue) and O<sub>2</sub>-rich (dark pink) blood in and out of the ventricles during the cardiac cycle.



**ISOVOLUMETRIC VENTRICULAR RELAXATION** When the aortic valve closes, the AV valve is not yet open, because ventricular pressure still exceeds atrial pressure, so no blood can enter the ventricle from the atrium. Therefore, all valves are again closed for a brief period known as **isovolumetric ventricular relaxation** (point 19 and heart e). The muscle fiber length and chamber volume (point 20) remain constant. No blood leaves or enters as the ventricle continues to relax and the pressure steadily falls.

**VENTRICULAR FILLING** When ventricular pressure falls below atrial pressure, the AV valve opens (point 21) and ventricular filling occurs again. Ventricular diastole includes both isovolumetric ventricular relaxation and ventricular filling.

Atrial repolarization and ventricular depolarization occur simultaneously, so the atria are in diastole throughout ventricular systole. Blood continues to flow from the pulmonary veins into the left atrium. As this incoming blood pools in the atrium, atrial pressure rises continuously (point 22). When the AV valve opens at the end of ventricular systole, blood that accumulated in the atrium during ventricular systole pours rapidly into the ventricle (heart a again). Ventricular filling thus occurs rapidly at first (point 23) because of the increased atrial pressure resulting from the accumulation of blood in the atria. Then ventricular filling slows down (point 24) as the accumulated blood has already been delivered to the ventricle. During this period of reduced filling, blood continues to flow from the pulmonary veins into the left atrium and through the open AV valve into the left ventricle. During late ventricular diastole, when the ventricle is filling slowly, the SA node fires again, and the cardiac cycle starts over (point 25).

When the body is at rest, one complete cardiac cycle lasts 800 msec, with 300 msec devoted to ventricular systole and 500 msec taken up by ventricular diastole. Significantly, much of ventricular filling occurs early in diastole during the rapid-filling phase. During times of rapid heart rate, diastole length is shortened more than systole length is. This greatly reduces the time available for ventricular relaxation and filling. However, because much ventricular filling is accomplished during early diastole, filling is not seriously impaired during periods of increased heart rate, such as during exercise.

### Two normal heart sounds are associated with valve closures.

Two major heart sounds normally can be heard with a stethoscope during the cardiac cycle. The **first heart sound** is low-pitched, soft, and relatively long, sounding like “lub.” The **second heart sound** has a higher pitch and is shorter and sharper, sounding like “dup.” Thus, one normally hears “lub-dup-lub-dup-lub-dup . . .” The first heart sound is associated with closure of the AV valves, whereas the second sound is associated with closure of the semilunar valves (see the “Heart sounds” line at the bottom of the chart in ● Figure 9-15). Opening of valves does not produce any sound.

Because the AV valves close at the onset of ventricular contraction, when ventricular pressure first exceeds atrial pressure,

the first heart sound signals the onset of ventricular systole (● Figure 9-15, point 9). The semilunar valves close at the onset of ventricular relaxation, as the left and right ventricular pressures fall below the aortic and pulmonary artery pressures, respectively. The second heart sound, therefore, signals the onset of ventricular diastole (point 17).

### Turbulent blood flow produces heart murmurs.



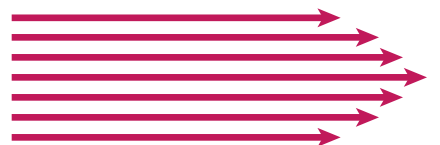
Abnormal heart sounds, or **murmurs**, are usually (but not always) associated with cardiac disease. Blood normally flows in a *laminar* fashion; that is, layers of the fluid slide smoothly over one another (*lamina* means “layer”). Laminar flow does not produce any sound. When blood flow becomes turbulent, however, a sound can be heard (● Figure 9-16).

**STENOTIC AND INSUFFICIENT VALVES** The most common cause of turbulence is valve malfunction, either a stenotic or an insufficient valve. A **stenotic valve** is a stiff, narrowed valve that does not open completely. Blood must be forced through the constricted opening at tremendous velocity, resulting in turbulence that produces an abnormal whistling sound similar to the sound produced when you force air rapidly through narrowed lips to whistle.

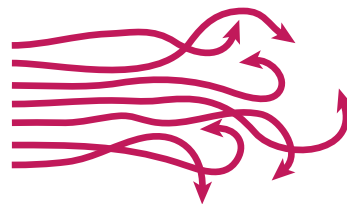
An **insufficient, or incompetent, valve** is one that cannot close completely, usually because the valve edges are scarred and do not fit together properly. Turbulence is produced when blood flows backward through the insufficient valve and collides with blood moving in the opposite direction, creating a swishing or gurgling murmur. An insufficient heart valve is often called a **leaky valve**, because it lets blood leak back through when the valve should be closed.

**TIMING OF MURMURS** The valve involved and the type of defect can usually be detected by the *location* and *timing* of the murmur. Each heart valve can be heard best at a specific location on the chest. Noting where a murmur is loudest helps the diagnostician tell which valve is involved.

The “timing” of the murmur refers to the part of the cardiac cycle during which the murmur is heard. Recall that the first



(a) Laminar flow (does not create any sound)



(b) Turbulent flow (can be heard)

● **FIGURE 9-16** Comparison of laminar and turbulent flow.

heart sound signals the onset of ventricular systole and the second heart sound signals the onset of ventricular diastole. Thus, a murmur between the first and the second heart sounds (“lub-murmur-dup—lub-murmur-dup”) is a **systolic murmur**. A **diastolic murmur**, in contrast, occurs between the second and the first heart sounds (“lub-dup-murmur—lub-dup-murmur”). The sound of the murmur characterizes it as either a stenotic (whistling) murmur or an insufficient (swishy) murmur. Armed with these facts, one can determine the cause of a valvular murmur (▲ Table 9-2). As an example, a whistling murmur (denoting a stenotic valve) occurring between the first and the second heart sounds (denoting a systolic murmur) indicates stenosis in a valve that should be open during systole. It could be either the aortic or the pulmonary semilunar valve through which blood is being ejected. Identifying which of these valves is stenotic is accomplished by finding where the murmur is best heard.

The main concern with a heart murmur is not the murmur itself but the harmful circulatory results of the defect.

## Cardiac Output and Its Control

**Cardiac output (CO)** is the volume of blood pumped by *each ventricle* per minute (not the total amount of blood pumped by the heart). During any period, the volume of blood flowing through the pulmonary circulation is the same as the volume flowing through the systemic circulation. Therefore, the cardiac output from each ventricle normally is the same, although minor variations may occur on a beat-to-beat basis.

### Cardiac output depends on the heart rate and the stroke volume.

The two determinants of cardiac output are *heart rate* (beats per minute) and *stroke volume* (volume of blood pumped per beat or stroke). The average resting heart rate is 70 beats per minute, established by SA node rhythmicity; the average resting stroke volume is 70 ml per beat, producing an average cardiac output of 4900 ml per minute, or close to 5 L per minute:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cardiac output} &= \text{heart rate} \times \text{stroke volume} \\ &= 70 \text{ beats/min} \times 70 \text{ ml/beat} \\ &= 4900 \text{ ml/min} \approx 5 \text{ L/min} \end{aligned}$$

Because the body’s total blood volume averages 5 to 5.5 liters, each half of the heart pumps the equivalent of the entire blood volume each minute. In other words, each minute the right ventricle normally pumps 5 liters of blood through the lungs and the left ventricle pumps 5 liters through the systemic circulation. At this rate, each half of the heart would pump about 2.5 million liters of blood in just 1 year. Yet this is only the resting cardiac output; during exercise, cardiac output can increase to 20 to 25 liters per minute (and even more in trained athletes).

How can cardiac output vary so tremendously, depending on the demands of the body? You can readily answer this question by thinking about how your own heart pounds rapidly (increased heart rate) and forcefully (increased stroke volume) when you engage in strenuous physical activities (when you need increased cardiac output). Thus, regulation of cardiac output depends on the control of both heart rate and stroke volume, topics that we discuss next.

### Heart rate is determined primarily by autonomic influences on the SA node.

The SA node is normally the pacemaker of the heart because it has the fastest spontaneous rate of depolarization to threshold. When the SA node reaches threshold, an action potential is initiated that spreads throughout the heart, inducing the heart to contract, or have a “heartbeat.” This happens about 70 times per minute, setting the average heart rate at 70 beats per minute.

The heart is innervated by both divisions of the autonomic nervous system, which can modify the rate (as well as the strength) of contraction, even though nervous stimulation is not required to initiate contraction. The parasympathetic nerve to the heart, the *vagus nerve*, primarily supplies the atrium, especially the SA and AV nodes. Parasympathetic innervation of the ventricles is sparse. The cardiac sympathetic nerves also

▲ **Table 9-2** Type and Timing of Murmur Associated with Various Heart Valve Disorders

Pattern Heard with Stethoscope	Type of Valve Defect	Timing of Murmur	Valve Disorder
<b>Lub-Whistle-Dup</b>	Stenotic	Systolic	<i>Stenotic semilunar valve.</i> A whistling systolic murmur signifies that a valve that should be open during systole (a semilunar valve) does not open completely.
<b>Lub-Dup-Whistle</b>	Stenotic	Diastolic	<i>Stenotic AV valve.</i> A whistling diastolic murmur signifies that a valve that should be open during diastole (an AV valve) does not open completely.
<b>Lub-Swish-Dup</b>	Insufficient	Systolic	<i>Insufficient AV valve.</i> A swishy systolic murmur signifies that a valve that should be closed during systole (an AV valve) does not close completely.
<b>Lub-Dup-Swish</b>	Insufficient	Diastolic	<i>Insufficient semilunar valve.</i> A swishy diastolic murmur signifies that a valve that should be closed during diastole (a semilunar valve) does not close completely.



supply the atria, including the SA and AV nodes, and richly innervate the ventricles. Parasympathetic and sympathetic stimulation have the following specific effects on the heart.

### EFFECT OF PARASYMPATHETIC STIMULATION ON THE HEART

- Parasympathetic stimulation decreases the SA node's rate of spontaneous depolarization, prolonging the time required to drift to threshold. Therefore, the SA node reaches threshold and fires less frequently, decreasing the heart rate (● Figure 9-17).
- Parasympathetic stimulation decreases the AV node's excitability, prolonging transmission of impulses to the ventricles even longer than the usual AV nodal delay.
- Parasympathetic stimulation of the atrial contractile cells shortens the plateau phase of the action potential by reducing the slow inward current carried by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . As a result, atrial contraction is weakened.
- The parasympathetic system has little effect on ventricular contraction because of the sparseness of parasympathetic innervation to the ventricles.

Thus, the heart is more “leisurely” under parasympathetic influence—it beats less rapidly, the time between atrial and ventricular contraction is stretched out, and atrial contraction is weaker. These actions are appropriate, considering that the parasympathetic system controls heart action in quiet, relaxed situations when the body is not demanding enhanced cardiac output.

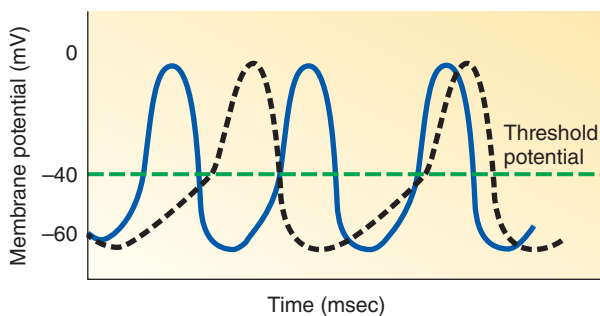
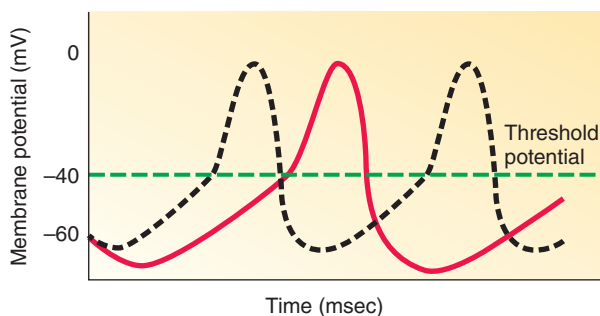
**EFFECT OF SYMPATHETIC STIMULATION ON THE HEART** In contrast, the sympathetic nervous system, which controls heart action in emergency or exercise situations that require greater blood flow, “revs up” the heart.

- The main effect of sympathetic stimulation on the SA node is to speed up depolarization so that threshold is reached more rapidly. This swifter drift to threshold under sympathetic influence permits more frequent action potentials and a correspondingly faster heart rate (● Figure 9-17).
- Sympathetic stimulation of the AV node reduces the AV nodal delay by increasing conduction velocity.
- Similarly, sympathetic stimulation speeds up spread of the action potential throughout the specialized conduction pathway.
- In the atrial and ventricular contractile cells, both of which have many sympathetic nerve endings, sympathetic stimulation increases contractile strength so that the heart beats more forcefully and squeezes out more blood. This effect is produced by increasing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  permeability through prolonged opening of the slow  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels. The resultant enhanced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx strengthens contraction by intensifying  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  participation in excitation–contraction coupling.

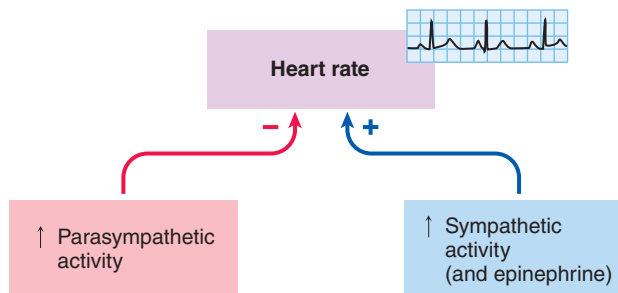
The overall effect of sympathetic stimulation on the heart, therefore, is to improve its effectiveness as a pump by increasing heart rate, decreasing the delay between atrial and ventricular contraction, decreasing conduction time throughout the heart, and increasing the force of contraction.

### KEY

- = Inherent SA node pacemaker activity
- = SA node pacemaker activity on parasympathetic stimulation
- = SA node pacemaker activity on sympathetic stimulation



(a) Autonomic influence on SA node potential



(b) Control of heart rate by autonomic nervous system

**● FIGURE 9-17 Autonomic control of SA node activity and heart rate.** (a) Parasympathetic stimulation decreases the rate of SA nodal depolarization so that the membrane reaches threshold more slowly and has fewer action potentials, whereas sympathetic stimulation increases the rate of depolarization of the SA node so that the membrane reaches threshold more rapidly and has more frequent action potentials. (b) Because each SA node action potential ultimately leads to a heartbeat, increased parasympathetic activity decreases the heart rate, whereas increased sympathetic activity increases the heart rate.

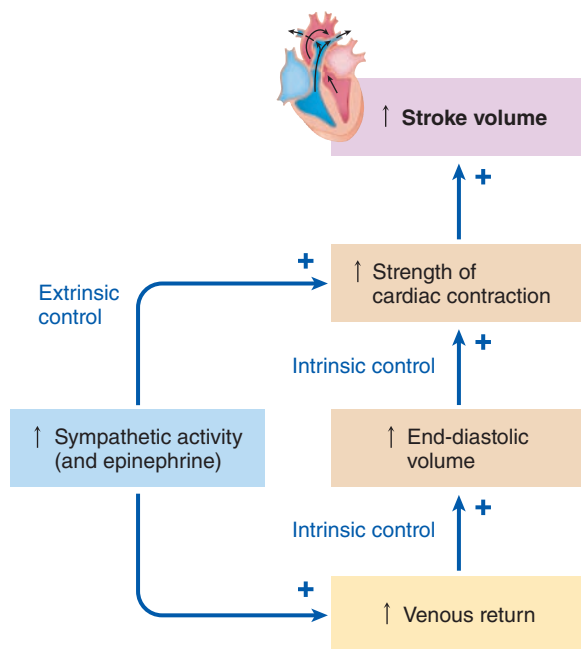
**CONTROL OF HEART RATE** Thus, as is typical of the autonomic nervous system, parasympathetic and sympathetic effects on heart rate are antagonistic (oppose each other). At any given moment, heart rate is determined largely by the balance between inhibition of the SA node by the vagus nerve and stimulation by the cardiac sympathetic nerves. Under resting conditions, parasympathetic discharge dominates because acetylcholine (the parasympathetic neurotransmitter) suppresses sympathetic activity by inhibiting the release of norepinephrine (the sympathetic neurotransmitter)

from neighboring sympathetic nerve endings. If all autonomic nerves to the heart were blocked, the resting heart rate would increase from its average value of 70 beats per minute to about 100 beats per minute, which is the inherent rate of the SA node's spontaneous discharge when not subjected to any nervous influence. (We use 70 beats per minute as the normal rate of SA node discharge because this is the average rate under normal resting conditions when parasympathetic activity dominates.) The heart rate can be altered beyond this resting level in either direction by shifting the balance of autonomic nervous stimulation. Heart rate is speeded up by simultaneously increasing sympathetic and decreasing parasympathetic activity; heart rate is slowed by a concurrent rise in parasympathetic activity and decline in sympathetic activity. The relative level of activity in these two autonomic branches to the heart in turn is primarily coordinated by the *cardiovascular control center* in the brain stem.

Although autonomic innervation is the primary means by which heart rate is regulated, other factors affect it as well. The most important is epinephrine, a hormone secreted into the blood from the adrenal medulla on sympathetic stimulation. Epinephrine acts in a manner similar to norepinephrine to increase heart rate, thus reinforcing the direct effect that the sympathetic nervous system has on the heart.

### Stroke volume is determined by the extent of venous return and by sympathetic activity.

The other component besides heart rate that determines cardiac output is stroke volume, the amount of blood pumped out by each ventricle during each beat. Two types of control influence stroke volume: (1) *intrinsic control* related to the extent of venous return and (2) *extrinsic control* related to the extent of sympathetic stimulation of the heart. Both factors increase stroke volume by increasing the strength of heart contraction (● Figure 9-18). Let us examine each of these mechanisms in detail.



● FIGURE 9-18 Intrinsic and extrinsic control of stroke volume.

### Increased end-diastolic volume results in increased stroke volume.

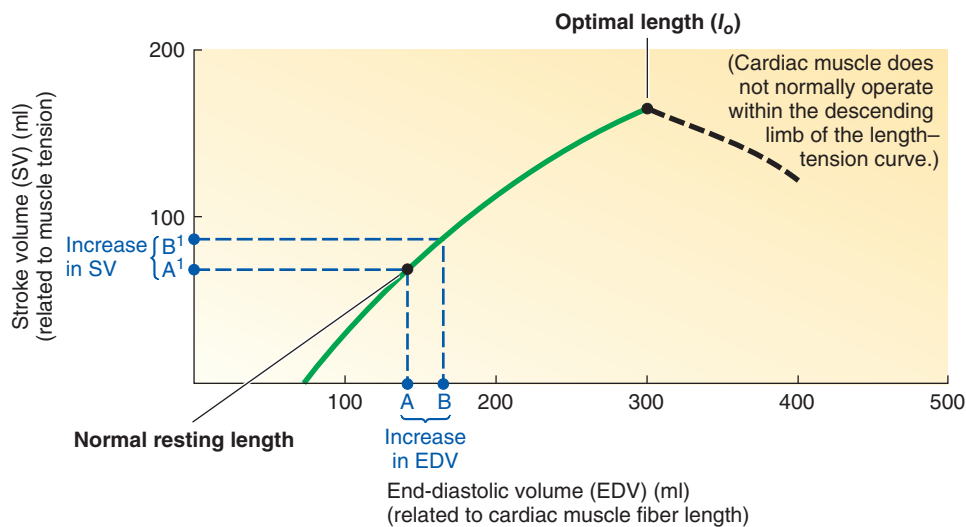
**Intrinsic control** of stroke volume, which refers to the heart's inherent ability to vary stroke volume, depends on the direct correlation between end-diastolic volume (EDV) and stroke volume. As more blood returns to the heart, the heart pumps out more blood, but the relationship is not quite as simple as might seem, because the heart does not eject all the blood it contains. This intrinsic control depends on the length–tension relationship of cardiac muscle, which is similar to that of skeletal muscle. For skeletal muscle, the resting muscle length is approximately the optimal length ( $l_o$ ) at which maximal tension can be developed during a subsequent contraction. When the skeletal muscle is longer or shorter than  $l_o$ , the subsequent contraction is weaker (see ● Figure 8-17, p. 209). For cardiac muscle, the resting cardiac muscle fiber length is less than  $l_o$ . Therefore, the length of cardiac muscle fibers normally varies along the ascending limb of the length–tension curve. An increase in cardiac muscle fiber length, by moving closer to  $l_o$ , increases the contractile tension of the heart on the following systole (● Figure 9-19).

Unlike in skeletal muscle, the length–tension curve of cardiac muscle normally does not operate at lengths that fall within the region of the descending limb. That is, within physiologic limits, cardiac muscle does not get stretched beyond its  $l_o$  to the point that contractile strength diminishes with further stretching.

**FRANK–STARLING LAW OF THE HEART** What causes cardiac muscle fibers to vary in length before contraction? Skeletal muscle length can vary before contraction because of the positioning of the skeletal parts to which the muscle is attached, but cardiac muscle is not attached to any bones. The main determinant of cardiac muscle fiber length is the degree of diastolic filling. An analogy is a balloon filled with water—the more water you put in, the larger the balloon becomes, and the more it is stretched. Likewise, the greater the diastolic filling, the larger the EDV, and the more the heart is stretched. The more the heart is stretched, the longer the initial cardiac fiber before contraction. The increased length results in a greater force on the subsequent cardiac contraction and thus in a greater stroke volume. This intrinsic relationship between EDV and stroke volume is known as the **Frank–Starling law of the heart**. Stated simply, the law says that the heart normally pumps out during systole the volume of blood returned to it during diastole; increased venous return results in increased stroke volume. In ● Figure 9-19, assume that EDV increases from point A to point B. You can see that this increase in EDV is accompanied by a corresponding increase in stroke volume from point A<sup>1</sup> to point B<sup>1</sup>.

### ADVANTAGES OF THE CARDIAC LENGTH–TENSION RELATIONSHIP

The built-in relationship matching stroke volume with venous return has two important advantages. First, one of the most important functions of this intrinsic mechanism is equalizing output between the right and the left sides of the heart so that blood pumped out by the heart is equally distributed between



● **FIGURE 9-19 Intrinsic control of stroke volume, or the Frank–Starling curve.** The cardiac muscle fiber’s length, which is determined by the extent of venous filling, is normally less than the optimal length ( $l_o$ ) for developing maximal tension. Therefore, an increase in end-diastolic volume (that is, an increase in venous return), by moving the cardiac muscle fiber length closer to  $l_o$ , increases the contractile tension of the fibers on the next systole. A stronger contraction squeezes out more blood. Thus, as more blood is returned to the heart and the end-diastolic volume increases, the heart automatically pumps out a correspondingly larger stroke volume.

the pulmonary and the systemic circulation. If, for example, the right side of the heart ejects a larger stroke volume, more blood enters the pulmonary circulation, so venous return to the left side of the heart increases accordingly. The increased EDV of the left side of the heart causes it to contract more forcefully, so it too pumps out a larger stroke volume. In this way, output of the two ventricular chambers is kept equal. If such equalization did not happen, too much blood would be dammed up in the venous system before the ventricle with the lower output.

Second, when a larger cardiac output is needed, such as during exercise, venous return is increased through action of the sympathetic nervous system and other mechanisms to be described in the next chapter. The resulting increase in EDV automatically increases stroke volume correspondingly. Because exercise also increases heart rate, these two factors act together to increase the cardiac output so that more blood can be delivered to the exercising muscles.

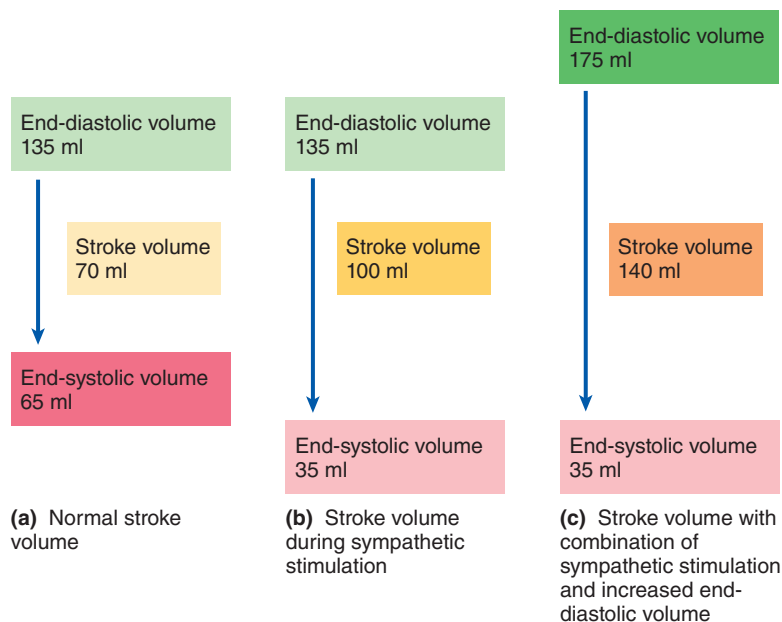
### Sympathetic stimulation increases the contractility of the heart.

In addition to intrinsic control, stroke volume is subject to **extrinsic control** by factors originating outside the heart, the most important of which are actions of the cardiac sympathetic nerves and epinephrine. Sympathetic stimulation and epinephrine enhance the heart’s **contractility**, which is the strength of contraction at any given EDV. In other words, on sympathetic stimulation the heart contracts more forcefully and squeezes out a greater percentage of the blood it contains, leading to more complete ejection. This increased

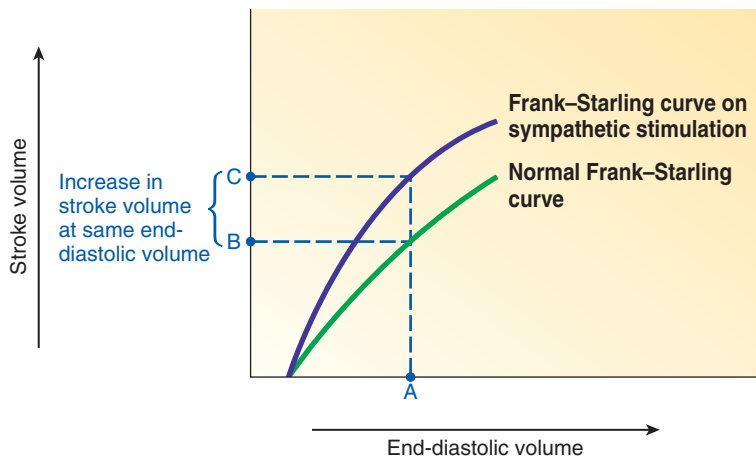
contractility results from the increased  $Ca^{2+}$  influx triggered by norepinephrine and epinephrine. The extra cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  lets the myocardial fibers generate more force through greater cross-bridge cycling than they would without sympathetic influence. Normally, the EDV is 135 ml and the end-systolic volume (ESV) is 65 ml for a stroke volume of 70 ml (● Figure 9-20a). Under sympathetic influence, for the same EDV of 135 ml, the ESV might be 35 ml and the stroke volume 100 ml (● Figure 9-20b). In effect, sympathetic stimulation shifts the Frank–Starling curve to the left (● Figure 9-21). Depending on the extent of sympathetic stimulation, the curve can be shifted to varying degrees, up to a maximal increase in contractile strength of about 100% greater than normal.

Sympathetic stimulation increases stroke volume not only by strengthening cardiac contractility but also by enhancing venous return (see ● Figure 9-20c). Sympathetic stimulation constricts the veins, which squeezes more blood forward from the veins to the heart, increasing the EDV and subsequently increasing stroke volume even further.

**SUMMARY OF FACTORS AFFECTING STROKE VOLUME AND CARDIAC OUTPUT** The strength of cardiac muscle contraction and, accordingly, stroke volume can thus be graded by (1) varying the initial length of the muscle fibers, which in turn depends on the



● **FIGURE 9-20 Effect of sympathetic stimulation on stroke volume.**



● **FIGURE 9-21** Shift of the Frank–Starling curve to the left by sympathetic stimulation. For the same end-diastolic volume (point A), a larger stroke volume (from point B to point C) is pumped out on sympathetic stimulation as a result of increased contractility of the heart. The Frank–Starling curve is shifted to the left by variable degrees, depending on the extent of sympathetic stimulation.

degree of ventricular filling before contraction (intrinsic control), and (2) varying the extent of sympathetic stimulation (extrinsic control) (see ● Figure 9-18). This is in contrast to gradation of skeletal muscle, in which twitch summation and recruitment of motor units produce variable strength of muscle contraction. These mechanisms do not apply to cardiac muscle. Here, twitch summation is impossible because of the long refractory period. Recruitment of motor units is not possible, because the heart muscle cells are arranged into functional syncytia where all contractile cells become excited and contract with every beat, instead of into distinct motor units that can be discretely activated.

All the factors that determine cardiac output by influencing heart rate or stroke volume are summarized in ● Figure 9-22. Note that sympathetic stimulation increases cardiac output by increasing both heart rate and stroke volume. Sympathetic activity to the heart increases, for example, during exercise when the working skeletal muscles need increased delivery of  $O_2$ -laden blood to support their high rate of ATP consumption.

We next examine how a failing heart cannot pump out enough blood, and then we turn to the final section of this chapter, which focuses on how the heart muscle is nourished.

### In heart failure, the contractility of the heart decreases.

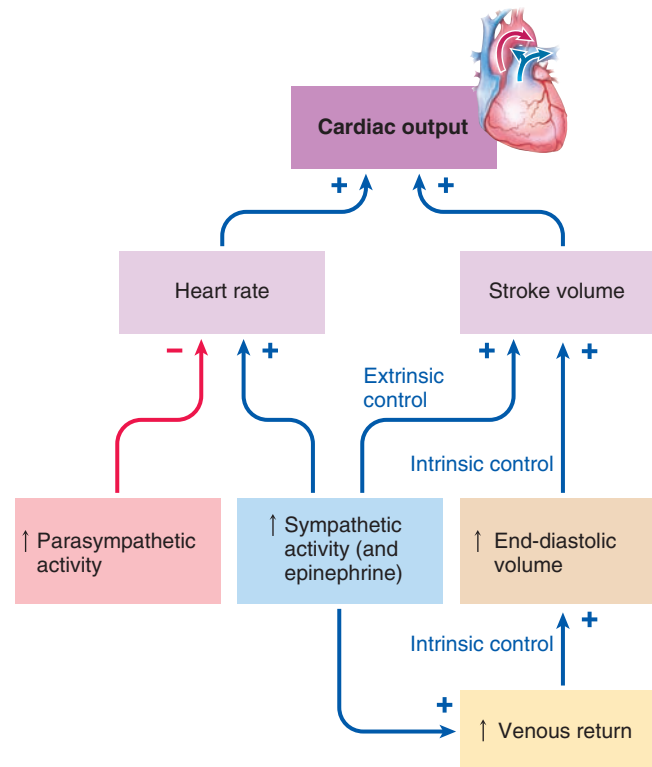
**Clinical Note** **Heart failure** is the inability of the cardiac output to keep pace with the body's demands for supplies and removal of wastes. Either one or both ventricles may progressively weaken and fail. When a failing ventricle cannot pump out all the blood returned to it, the veins behind the failing ventricle become congested with blood. Heart failure may occur for a variety of reasons, but the two most common are (1) damage to the heart muscle as a result of a heart attack or impaired circulation to the cardiac muscle and (2) prolonged pumping against a chronically elevated blood pressure. Heart failure presently affects almost 5 million Americans, nearly 50% of whom will die within 5 years of diagnosis. About 500,000

new cases are diagnosed annually, with these numbers expected to rise as the population ages.

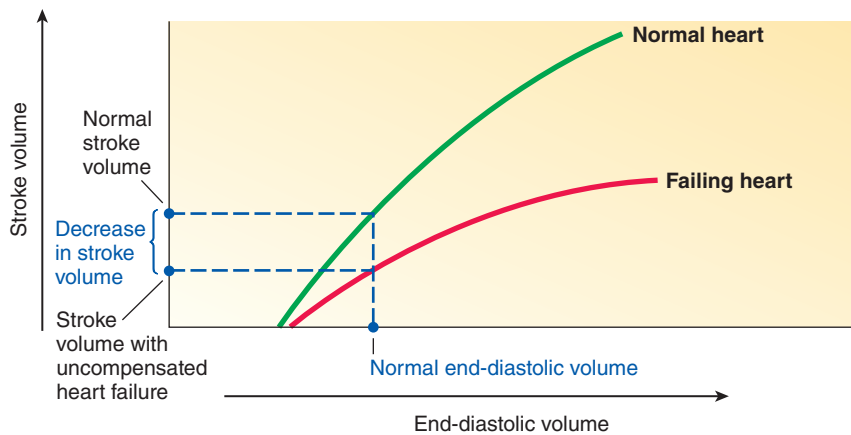
**PRIME DEFECT IN HEART FAILURE** The prime defect in heart failure is a decrease in cardiac contractility; that is, weakened cardiac muscle cells contract less effectively. The intrinsic ability of the heart to develop pressure and eject a stroke volume is reduced so that the heart operates on a lower length–tension curve (● Figure 9-23a). The Frank–Starling curve shifts downward and to the right such that, for a given EDV, a failing heart pumps out a smaller stroke volume than a normal healthy heart.

**COMPENSATORY MEASURES FOR HEART FAILURE** In the early stages of heart failure, two major compensatory measures help restore stroke volume to normal. First, sympathetic activity to the heart is reflexly increased, which increases heart contractility toward normal (● Figure 9-23b). Sympathetic stimulation can help compensate only for a limited time, however, because the heart becomes less responsive to prolonged sympathetic stimulation.

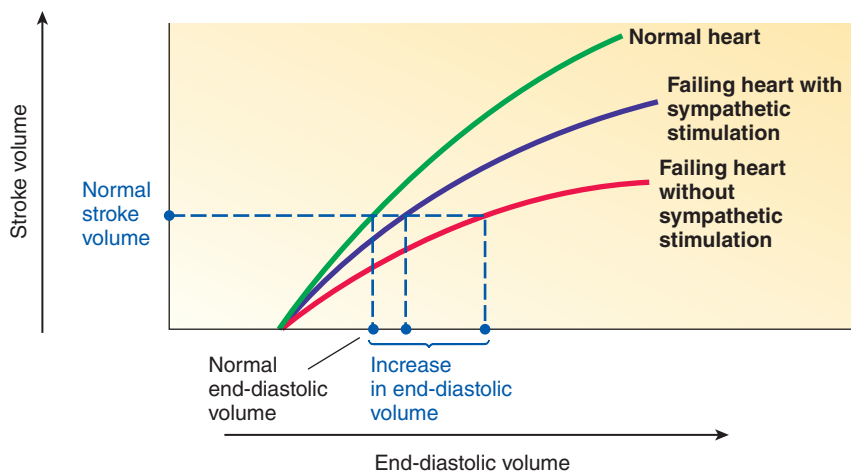
Second, when cardiac output is reduced, the kidneys, in a compensatory attempt to improve their reduced blood flow, retain extra salt and water in the body during urine formation to expand the blood volume. The increase in circulating blood volume increases the EDV. The resultant stretching of the cardiac muscle fibers enables the weakened heart to pump out a normal stroke volume (● Figure 9-23b). The heart is now



● **FIGURE 9-22** Control of cardiac output. Because cardiac output equals heart rate times stroke volume, this figure is a composite of Figure 9-17b (control of heart rate) and Figure 9-18 (control of stroke volume).



(a) Reduced contractility in a failing heart



(b) Compensation for heart failure

● **FIGURE 9-23 Compensated heart failure.** (a) The Frank–Starling curve shifts downward and to the right in a failing heart. Because its contractility is decreased, the failing heart pumps out a smaller stroke volume at the same end-diastolic volume than a normal heart does. (b) During compensation for heart failure, reflex sympathetic stimulation shifts the Frank–Starling curve of a failing heart to the left, increasing the contractility of the heart toward normal. A compensatory increase in end-diastolic volume as a result of blood volume expansion further increases the strength of contraction of the failing heart. Operating at a longer cardiac muscle fiber length, a compensated failing heart is able to eject a normal stroke volume.

pumping out the blood returned to it but is operating at a greater cardiac muscle fiber length.

**DECOMPENSATED HEART FAILURE** As the disease progresses and heart contractility deteriorates further, the heart reaches a point at which it can no longer pump out a normal stroke volume (that is, it cannot pump out all the blood returned to it) despite compensatory measures. At this point, the heart slips from compensated heart failure into a state of decompensated heart failure. Now the cardiac muscle fibers are stretched to the point that they are operating in the descending limb of the length–tension curve. *Forward failure* occurs as the heart fails to pump an adequate amount of blood forward to the tissues because the stroke volume becomes progressively smaller. *Backward failure* occurs simultaneously as blood that cannot enter and be pumped out by the heart continues to

dam up in the venous system. The congestion in the venous system is the reason this condition is sometimes termed **congestive heart failure**.

Left-sided failure has more serious consequences than right-sided failure. Backward failure of the left side leads to pulmonary edema (excess tissue fluid in the lungs) because blood dams up in the lungs. This fluid accumulation in the lungs reduces exchange of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  between the air and the blood in the lungs, reducing arterial oxygenation and elevating levels of acid-forming  $CO_2$  in the blood. In addition, one of the more serious consequences of left-sided forward failure is an inadequate blood flow to the kidneys, which causes a twofold problem. First, vital kidney function is depressed; second, the kidneys retain even more salt and water in the body during urine formation as they try to expand the plasma volume even further to improve their reduced blood flow. Excessive fluid retention worsens the already existing problems of venous congestion.

Treatment of congestive heart failure therefore includes measures that reduce salt and water retention and increase urinary output, as well as drugs that enhance the contractile ability of the weakened heart—digitalis, for example.

## Nourishing the Heart Muscle

Cardiac muscle cells contain an abundance of mitochondria, the  $O_2$ -dependent energy organelles. Up to 40% of the cell volume of cardiac muscle cells is occupied by mitochondria, indicative of how much the heart depends on  $O_2$  delivery and aerobic metabolism to generate the energy necessary for contraction (see p. 30).

### The heart receives most of its own blood supply through the coronary circulation during diastole.

Although all the blood passes through the heart, the heart muscle cannot extract  $O_2$  or nutrients from the blood within its chambers for two reasons. First, the watertight endothelial lining does not permit blood to pass from the chamber into the myocardium. Second, the heart walls are too thick to permit diffusion of  $O_2$  and other supplies from the blood in the chamber to the individual cardiac cells. Therefore, like other tissues of the body, heart muscle must receive blood through blood vessels, specifically via the **coronary circulation**. The coronary arteries branch from the aorta just beyond the aortic valve (see ● Figure 9-26, p. 255), and the coronary veins empty into the right atrium.

The heart muscle receives most of its blood supply during diastole. Blood flow to the heart muscle cells is substantially reduced during systole for two reasons: (1) the contracting myocardium compresses the major branches of the coronary arteries and (2) the open aortic valve partially blocks the entrance to the coronary vessels. Thus, about 70% of coronary arterial flow occurs during diastole, driven by the aortic blood pressure, with only 30% occurring during systole, driven by ventricular contraction.

This limited time for coronary blood flow becomes especially important during rapid heart rates, when diastolic time is much reduced. Just when increased demands are placed on the heart to pump more rapidly, it has less time to provide O<sub>2</sub> and nourishment to its own musculature to accomplish the increased workload.

Nevertheless, under normal circumstances, the heart muscle receives adequate blood flow to support its activities—even during exercise, when the rate of coronary blood flow increases up to five times its resting rate. Extra blood is delivered to the cardiac cells primarily by vasodilation, or enlargement, of the coronary vessels, which lets more blood flow through them, especially during diastole. Coronary blood flow is adjusted primarily in response to changes in the heart's O<sub>2</sub> requirements. When cardiac activity increases and the heart thus needs more O<sub>2</sub>, local chemical changes induce dilation of the coronary blood vessels, allowing more O<sub>2</sub>-rich blood to flow to the more active cardiac cells to meet their increased O<sub>2</sub> demand. This matching of O<sub>2</sub> delivery to O<sub>2</sub> needs is crucial, because heart muscle depends on oxidative processes to generate energy. The heart cannot get enough ATP through anaerobic metabolism.

### Atherosclerotic coronary artery disease can deprive the heart of essential oxygen.



Adequacy of coronary blood flow is relative to the heart's O<sub>2</sub> demands at any moment. In the normal heart, coronary blood flow increases correspondingly as O<sub>2</sub> demands rise. With coronary artery disease, coronary blood flow may not be able to keep pace with rising O<sub>2</sub> needs. The term **coronary artery disease (CAD)** refers to pathological changes within the coronary artery walls that diminish blood flow through these vessels. A given rate of coronary blood flow may be adequate at rest but insufficient in physical exertion or other stressful situations.

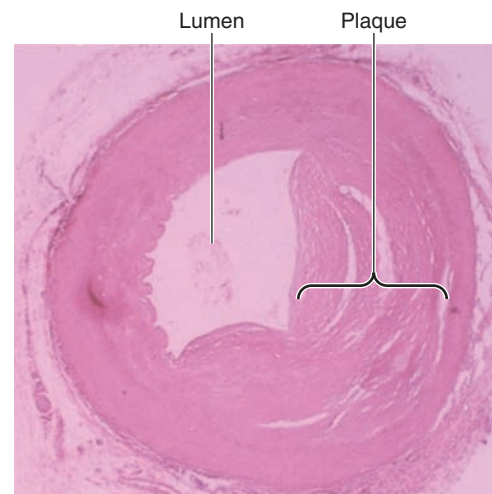
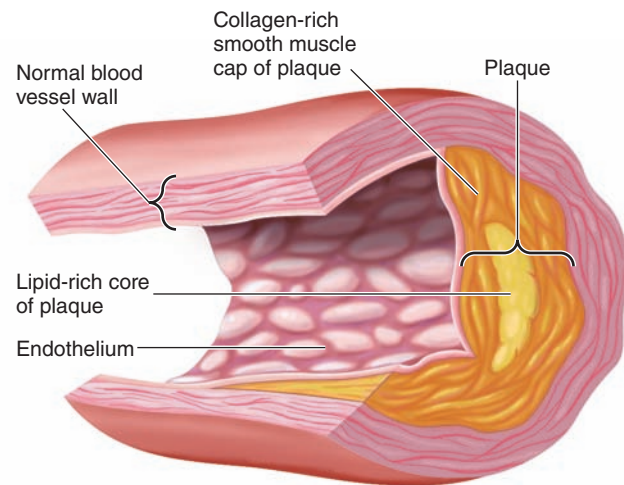
CAD is the underlying cause of about 50% of all deaths in the United States. CAD can cause myocardial ischemia and possibly lead to a heart attack by three mechanisms: (1) profound vascular spasm of the coronary arteries, (2) formation of atherosclerotic plaques, and (3) thromboembolism. We discuss each in turn.

**VASCULAR SPASM** **Vascular spasm** is an abnormal spastic constriction that transiently narrows the coronary vessels. Vascular spasms are associated with the early stages of CAD and are most often triggered by exposure to cold, physical exertion, or anxiety. The condition is reversible and usually does not last long enough to damage the cardiac muscle.

When too little O<sub>2</sub> is available in the coronary vessels, the endothelium (blood vessel lining) releases *platelet-activating factor (PAF)*. PAF, which exerts a variety of actions, was named for its first discovered effect, activating platelets. Among its other effects, PAF, once released from the endothelium, diffuses to the underlying vascular smooth muscle and causes it to contract, bringing about vascular spasm.

**DEVELOPMENT OF ATHEROSCLEROSIS** **Atherosclerosis** is a progressive, degenerative arterial disease that leads to occlusion (gradual blockage) of affected vessels, reducing blood flow through them. Atherosclerosis is characterized by plaques forming beneath the vessel lining within arterial walls. An **atherosclerotic plaque** consists of a lipid-rich core covered by an abnormal overgrowth of smooth muscle cells, topped off by a collagen-rich connective tissue cap. As the plaque forms, it bulges into the vessel lumen (● Figure 9-24).

Although all the contributing factors have not yet been identified, in recent years investigators have sorted out the following complex sequence of events in the gradual development of atherosclerosis:



● **FIGURE 9-24** Atherosclerotic plaque in a coronary vessel.

1. Atherosclerosis starts with injury to the blood vessel wall, which triggers an *inflammatory response* that sets the stage for plaque buildup. Normally, inflammation is a protective response that fights infection and promotes repair of damaged tissue (see p. 313). However, when the cause of the injury persists within the vessel wall, the sustained, low-grade inflammatory response over a course of decades can insidiously lead to arterial plaque formation and heart disease. Plaque formation likely has many causes. Suspected artery-abusing agents that may set off the vascular inflammatory response include oxidized cholesterol, free radicals, high blood pressure, homocysteine, chemicals released from fat cells, or even bacteria and viruses that damage blood vessel walls. The most common triggering agent appears to be oxidized cholesterol. (For further discussion of the role of cholesterol and other factors in the development of atherosclerosis, see the boxed feature on pp. 256–257, **B** Beyond the Basics.)

2. Typically, the initial stage of atherosclerosis is characterized by accumulation beneath the endothelium of excessive amounts of *low-density lipoprotein (LDL)*, the so-called bad cholesterol, in combination with a protein carrier. As LDL accumulates within the vessel wall, this cholesterol product becomes oxidized, primarily by oxidative wastes produced by the blood vessel cells. These wastes are **free radicals**, unstable electron-deficient particles that are highly reactive and cause cell damage by snatching electrons from other molecules.

3. In response to the presence of oxidized LDL or other irritants, the endothelial cells produce chemicals that attract *monocytes*, a type of white blood cell, to the site. These immune cells trigger a local inflammatory response.

4. Once they leave the blood and enter the vessel wall, monocytes settle down permanently, enlarge, and become large phagocytic cells called *macrophages*. Macrophages voraciously phagocytize (see p. 24) the oxidized LDL until these cells become so packed with fatty droplets that they appear foamy under a microscope. Now called *foam cells*, these engorged macrophages accumulate beneath the vessel lining and form a visible *fatty streak*, the beginning of an atherosclerotic plaque.

5. Thus, the earliest stage of a plaque is accumulation beneath the endothelium of a cholesterol-rich deposit. The disease progresses as smooth muscle cells within the blood vessel wall migrate from the muscular layer of the blood vessel to a position on top of the lipid accumulation, just beneath the endothelium. This migration is triggered by chemicals released at the inflammatory site. At their new location, the smooth muscle cells continue to divide and enlarge, producing *atheromas*, which are benign (noncancerous) tumors of smooth muscle cells within the blood vessel walls. Together the lipid-rich core and overlying smooth muscle form a maturing plaque.

6. As it continues to develop, the plaque progressively bulges into the lumen of the vessel. The protruding plaque narrows the opening through which blood can flow.

7. Further contributing to vessel narrowing, oxidized LDL inhibits release of *nitric oxide* from the endothelial cells. Nitric

oxide is a local chemical messenger that relaxes the underlying layer of normal smooth muscle cells within the vessel wall. Relaxation of these smooth muscle cells dilates the vessel. Because of reduced nitric oxide release, vessels damaged by developing plaques cannot dilate as readily as normal.

8. A thickening plaque also interferes with nutrient exchange for cells located within the involved arterial wall, leading to degeneration of the wall in the vicinity of the plaque. The damaged area is invaded by *fibroblasts* (scar-forming cells), which form a collagen-rich connective tissue cap over the plaque. (The term *sclerosis* means “excessive growth of fibrous connective tissue,” hence the term *atherosclerosis* for this condition characterized by atheromas and sclerosis, along with abnormal lipid accumulation.)

9. In the later stages of the disease,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  often precipitates in the plaque. A vessel so afflicted becomes hard and cannot distend easily.

**THROMBOEMBOLISM AND OTHER COMPLICATIONS OF ATHEROSCLEROSIS** Atherosclerosis attacks arteries throughout the body, but the most serious consequences involve damage to the vessels of the brain and heart. In the brain, atherosclerosis is the prime cause of strokes, whereas in the heart it brings about myocardial ischemia and its complications. The following are potential complications of coronary atherosclerosis:

■ *Angina pectoris*. Gradual enlargement of protruding plaque continues to narrow the vessel lumen and progressively diminishes coronary blood flow, triggering increasingly frequent bouts of transient myocardial ischemia as the ability to match blood flow with cardiac  $\text{O}_2$  needs becomes more limited. Although the heart cannot normally be “felt,” pain is associated with myocardial ischemia. Such cardiac pain, known as **angina pectoris** (meaning “pain of the chest”), can be felt beneath the sternum and is often referred to (or appears to come from) the left shoulder and down the left arm (see p. 133). The symptoms of angina pectoris recur whenever cardiac  $\text{O}_2$  demands become too great in relation to the coronary blood flow—for example, during exertion or emotional stress. The ischemia associated with the characteristically brief angina attacks is usually temporary and reversible and can be relieved by rest, taking vasodilator drugs such as *nitroglycerin*, or both. Nitroglycerin brings about coronary vasodilation by being metabolically converted to nitric oxide, which in turn relaxes the vascular smooth muscle.

■ *Thromboembolism*. The enlarging atherosclerotic plaque can break through the weakened endothelial lining that covers it, exposing blood to the underlying collagen in the collagen-rich connective tissue cap of the plaque. Foam cells release chemicals that can weaken the fibrous cap of a plaque by breaking down the connective tissue fibers. Plaques with thick fibrous caps are considered stable because they are not likely to rupture. However, plaques with thinner fibrous caps are unstable because they are likely to rupture and trigger clot formation.

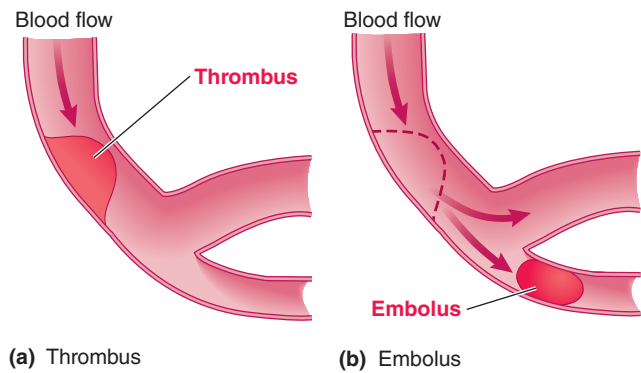
Blood platelets (formed elements of the blood involved in plugging vessel defects and in clot formation) normally do not

adhere to smooth, healthy vessel linings. However, when platelets contact collagen at the site of vessel damage, they stick to the site and help promote the formation of a blood clot. Furthermore, foam cells produce a potent clot promoter. Such an abnormal clot attached to a vessel wall is called a **thrombus**. The thrombus may enlarge gradually until it completely blocks the vessel at that site, or the continued flow of blood past the thrombus may break it loose. As it heads downstream, such a freely floating clot, or **embolus**, may completely plug a smaller vessel (● Figure 9-25). Thus, through **thromboembolism**, atherosclerosis can result in a gradual or sudden occlusion of a coronary vessel (or any other vessel).

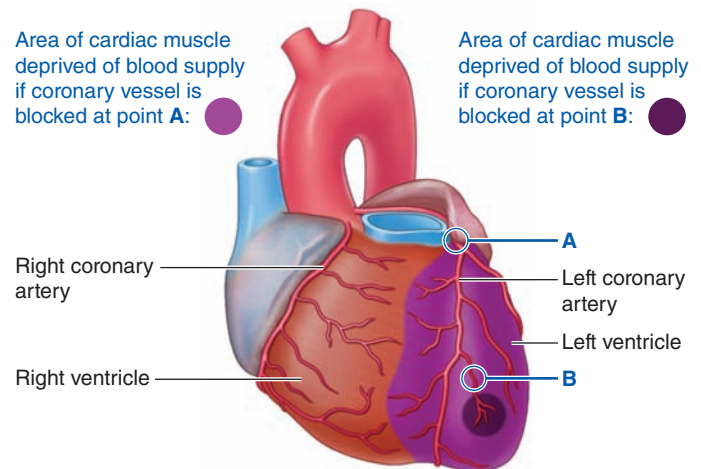
■ **Heart attack.** When a coronary vessel is completely plugged, the cardiac tissue served by the vessel soon dies from O<sub>2</sub> deprivation and a heart attack occurs, unless the area can be supplied with blood from nearby vessels.

The extent of the damaged area during a heart attack depends on the size of the blocked vessel: The larger the vessel occluded, the greater the area deprived of blood supply. As ● Figure 9-26 illustrates, a blockage at point A in the coronary circulation would cause more extensive damage than a blockage at point B would. Because there are only two major coronary arteries, complete blockage of either one of these main branches results in extensive myocardial damage. Left coronary artery blockage is most devastating because this vessel supplies blood to 85% of the cardiac tissue.

A heart attack has four possible outcomes: immediate death, delayed death from complications, full functional recovery, or recovery with impaired function (▲ Table 9-3).



(a) Thrombus (b) Embolus  
● **FIGURE 9-25** Consequences of thromboembolism. (a) A thrombus may enlarge gradually until it completely occludes the vessel at that site. (b) A thrombus may break loose from its attachment, forming an embolus that may completely occlude a smaller vessel downstream.



● **FIGURE 9-26** Extent of myocardial damage as a function of the size of the occluded vessel.

### ▲ Table 9-3 Possible Outcomes of Acute Myocardial Infarction (Heart Attack)

Immediate Death	Delayed Death from Complications	Full Functional Recovery	Recovery with Impaired Function
Acute cardiac failure because the heart is too weak to pump effectively to support body tissues	Fatal rupture of the dead, degenerating area of the heart wall	Replacement of the damaged area with a strong scar, accompanied by enlargement of the remaining normal contractile tissue to compensate for the lost cardiac musculature	Persistence of permanent functional defects, such as bradycardia or conduction blocks, caused by destruction of irreplaceable autorhythmic or conductive tissues
Fatal ventricular fibrillation from damage to specialized conducting tissue or from O <sub>2</sub> deprivation	Slowly progressing congestive heart failure because the weakened heart cannot pump out all the blood returned to it		



The cause of atherosclerosis is still not entirely clear. Certain high-risk factors have been associated with an increased incidence of atherosclerosis and coronary heart disease. Included among them are genetic predisposition, obesity, advanced age, smoking, hypertension, lack of exercise, high blood concentrations of C-reactive protein, elevated levels of homocysteine, infectious agents, and most notoriously, elevated cholesterol levels in the blood.

### Sources of Cholesterol

The body has two sources of cholesterol: (1) dietary intake of cholesterol, with animal products such as egg yolk, red meats, and butter being especially rich in this lipid (animal fats contain cholesterol, whereas plant fats typically do not), and (2) manufacture of cholesterol by cells, especially liver cells.

### “Good” versus “Bad” Cholesterol

Actually, it is not the total blood cholesterol level but the amount of cholesterol bound to various plasma protein carriers that is most important to the risk of developing atherosclerotic heart disease. Because cholesterol is a lipid, it is not very soluble in blood. Most cholesterol in the blood is attached to specific plasma protein carriers in the form of lipoprotein complexes, which are soluble in blood. The two major lipoproteins are named for their density of protein as compared to cholesterol: **high-density lipoproteins (HDL)**, which contain the most protein and least cholesterol, and **low-density lipoproteins (LDL)**, which have less protein and more cholesterol.

Cholesterol carried in LDL complexes has been termed “bad” cholesterol, because cholesterol is transported to the cells, including those lining the blood vessel walls, by LDL. The propensity toward developing atherosclerosis substantially increases with elevated levels of LDL. The presence of oxidized LDL within an arterial wall is a major trigger for the inflammatory process that leads to the development of atherosclerotic plaques (see p. 254).

In contrast, cholesterol carried in HDL complexes has been dubbed “good” cholesterol, because HDL removes cholesterol from the cells and transports it to the liver for partial elimination from the body. HDL not only removes excess cholesterol from the tissues but also helps

## Atherosclerosis: Cholesterol and Beyond

protect against the formation of atherosclerotic plaques by inhibiting oxidation of LDL. Furthermore, recent research suggests that HDL has anti-inflammatory action, helps stabilize atherosclerotic plaques so that they are less prone to rupture, and reduces clot formation, all actions that counter the progressive development of atherosclerosis. The risk of atherosclerosis is inversely related to the concentration of HDL in the blood; that is, elevated levels of HDL are associated with a low incidence of atherosclerotic heart disease.

Some other factors known to influence atherosclerotic risk can be related to HDL levels; for example, cigarette smoking lowers HDL, whereas regular exercise raises HDL.

### Cholesterol Uptake by Cells

Unlike most lipids, cholesterol is not used as metabolic fuel by cells. Instead, it is an essential component of plasma membranes. In addition, a few special cell types use cholesterol as a precursor for the synthesis of secretory products, such as steroid hormones and bile salts. Although most cells can synthesize some of the cholesterol needed for their own plasma membranes, they cannot manufacture sufficient amounts and therefore must rely on supplemental cholesterol being delivered by the blood.

Cells accomplish cholesterol uptake from the blood by synthesizing receptor proteins specifically capable of binding LDL and inserting these receptors into the plasma membrane. When an LDL particle binds to one of the membrane receptors, the cell engulfs the particle by receptor-mediated endocytosis, receptor and all (see p. 24). Within the cell, lysosomal enzymes break down the LDL to free the cholesterol, making it available to the cell for synthesis of new cellular membrane. The LDL receptor, which is also freed within the cell, is recycled back to the surface membrane.

If too much free cholesterol accumulates in the cell, both the synthesis of LDL receptor proteins (so that less cholesterol is taken up) and the cell's own cholesterol synthesis (so that less new cholesterol is made) are shut down. Faced with a cholesterol shortage, in contrast, the cell makes more LDL receptors so

that it can engulf more cholesterol from the blood.

### Maintenance of Blood Cholesterol Level and Cholesterol Metabolism

Maintaining a constant blood-borne cholesterol supply to the cells involves an interaction between dietary cholesterol and synthesis of cholesterol by the liver. When the amount of dietary cholesterol is increased, hepatic (liver) synthesis of cholesterol is turned off because cholesterol in the blood directly inhibits a hepatic enzyme essential for cholesterol synthesis. Thus, as more cholesterol is ingested, less is produced by the liver. Conversely, when cholesterol intake from food is reduced, the liver synthesizes more of this lipid because the inhibitory effect of cholesterol on the crucial hepatic enzyme is removed. In this way, the blood concentration of cholesterol is maintained at a fairly constant level despite changes in cholesterol intake; thus, it is difficult to significantly reduce cholesterol levels in the blood by decreasing cholesterol intake.

HDL transports cholesterol to the liver. The liver secretes cholesterol, as well as cholesterol-derived bile salts, into the bile. Bile enters the intestinal tract, where bile salts participate in the digestive process. Most of the secreted cholesterol and bile salts are subsequently reabsorbed from the intestine into the blood to be recycled to the liver. However, the cholesterol and bile salts not reclaimed by absorption are eliminated in the feces and lost from the body.

Thus, the liver has a primary role in determining total blood cholesterol levels, and the interplay between LDL and HDL determines the traffic flow of cholesterol between the liver and the other cells. Whenever these mechanisms are altered, blood cholesterol levels may be affected in such a way as to influence the individual's predisposition to atherosclerosis.

Varying the intake of dietary fatty acids may alter total blood cholesterol levels by influencing one or more of the mechanisms involving cholesterol balance. The blood cholesterol level tends to be raised by ingesting saturated fatty acids found predominantly in animal fats because these fatty acids stimulate cho-

lesterol synthesis and inhibit its conversion to bile salts. In contrast, ingesting polyunsaturated fatty acids, the predominant fatty acids of most plants, tends to reduce blood cholesterol levels by enhancing elimination of both cholesterol and cholesterol-derived bile salts in the feces.

### Risk Factors besides Cholesterol

Despite the strong links between cholesterol and heart disease, more than half of all patients with heart attacks have a normal cholesterol profile and no other well-established risk factors. Clearly, other factors are involved in the development of coronary artery disease in these people. These same factors may also contribute to development of atherosclerosis in people with unfavorable cholesterol levels. The following are among the leading other possible risk factors:

- Elevated blood levels of the amino acid **homocysteine** have recently been implicated as a strong predictor for heart disease, independent of the person's cholesterol or lipid profile. Homocysteine is formed as an inter-

mediate product during metabolism of the essential dietary amino acid *methionine*. Investigators believe homocysteine contributes to atherosclerosis by promoting proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells, an early step in development of this artery-clogging condition. Furthermore, homocysteine appears to damage endothelial cells and may cause oxidation of LDL, both of which can contribute to plaque formation. Three B vitamins—*folic acid*, *vitamin B<sub>12</sub>*, and *vitamin B<sub>6</sub>*—all play key roles in pathways that clear homocysteine from the blood. Therefore, these B vitamins are all needed to keep blood homocysteine at safe levels.

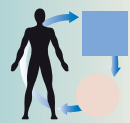
- People with elevated levels of **C-reactive protein**, a blood-borne marker of inflammation, have a higher risk for developing coronary artery disease. In one study, people with a high level of C-reactive protein in their blood were three times more likely to have a heart attack over the next 10 years than those with a low level of this inflammatory protein. Because inflammation

plays a crucial role in the development of atherosclerosis, anti-inflammatory drugs, such as aspirin, help prevent heart attacks. Furthermore, aspirin protects against heart attacks through its role in inhibiting clot formation.

- Accumulating data suggest that an infectious agent may be the underlying culprit in a significant number of cases of atherosclerotic disease. Among the leading suspects are respiratory-infection-causing *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, cold-sore-causing herpes virus, and gum-disease-causing bacteria. Importantly, if a link between infections and coronary artery disease can be confirmed, antibiotics may be added to the regimen of heart disease prevention strategies.

As you can see, the relationships among atherosclerosis, cholesterol, and other factors are far from clear. Much research on this complex disease is currently in progress because the incidence of atherosclerosis is so high and its consequences are potentially fatal.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



Survival depends on continual delivery of needed supplies to all body cells and on ongoing removal of wastes generated by the cells. Furthermore, regulatory chemical messengers, such as hormones, must be transported from their production site to their action site, where they control a variety of activities, most of which are directed toward maintaining a stable internal environment. Finally, to maintain normal body temperature, excess heat produced during muscle contraction must be carried to the skin, where the heat can be lost from the body surface.

The circulatory system contributes to homeostasis by serving as the body's transport system. It provides a way to rapidly move materials from one part of the body to another. Without the circulatory system, materials would not get quickly enough to where they need to be to support life-sustaining activities. For example, O<sub>2</sub> would take months to years to diffuse from the body surface to internal organs, yet through the heart's swift pumping action the blood can pick up and deliver O<sub>2</sub> and other substances to all the cells in a few seconds.

The heart is a dual pump that continuously circulates blood between the lungs, where O<sub>2</sub> is picked up, and the other body tissues, which use O<sub>2</sub> to support their energy-

generating chemical reactions. As blood is pumped through the various tissues, other substances besides O<sub>2</sub> are exchanged between the blood and the tissues. For example, the blood picks up nutrients as it flows through the digestive organs, and other tissues remove nutrients from the blood as it flows through them. Even excess heat is transported by the blood from exercising muscles to the skin surface, where it is lost to the external environment.

Although all the body tissues constantly depend on the life-supporting blood flow provided to them by the heart, the heart itself is quite an independent organ. It can take care of many of its own needs without any outside influence. Contraction of this magnificent muscle is self-generated through a carefully orchestrated interplay of changing ionic permeabilities. Local mechanisms within the heart ensure that blood flow to the cardiac muscle normally meets the heart's need for O<sub>2</sub>. In addition, the heart has built-in capabilities to vary its strength of contraction, depending on the amount of blood returned to it. The heart does not act entirely autonomously, however. It is innervated by the autonomic nervous system and is influenced by the hormone epinephrine, both of which can vary heart rate and contractility, depending on the body's needs for blood delivery. Furthermore, as with all tissues, the cells that make up the heart depend on the other body systems to maintain a stable internal environment in which they can survive and function.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-43)

1. Adjacent cardiac muscle cells are joined end to end at specialized structures known as \_\_\_\_\_, which contain two types of membrane junctions: \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The heart lies in the left half of the thoracic cavity. (*True or false?*)
3. The only point of electrical contact between the atria and the ventricles is the fibrous tissue that surrounds and supports the heart valves. (*True or false?*)
4. The atria and the ventricles each act as a functional syncytium. (*True or false?*)
5. Which of the following is the proper sequence of cardiac excitation?
  - a. SA node → AV node → atrial myocardium → bundle of His → Purkinje fibers → ventricular myocardium
  - b. SA node → atrial myocardium → AV node → bundle of His → ventricular myocardium → Purkinje fibers
  - c. SA node → atrial myocardium → ventricular myocardium → AV node → bundle of His → Purkinje fibers
  - d. SA node → atrial myocardium → AV node → bundle of His → Purkinje fibers → ventricular myocardium
6. What percentage of ventricular filling is normally accomplished before atrial contraction begins?
  - a. 0%
  - b. 20%
  - c. 50%
  - d. 80%
  - e. 100%
7. Sympathetic stimulation of the heart \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. increases the heart rate.
  - b. increases the contractility of the heart muscle.
  - c. shifts the Frank–Starling curve to the left.
  - d. does both (a) and (b).
  - e. does all of the above.
8. Match the following:

___ 1. receives O <sub>2</sub> -poor blood from the venae cavae	(a) AV valves
___ 2. prevent backflow of blood from the ventricles to the atria	(b) semilunar valves
___ 3. pumps O <sub>2</sub> -rich blood into the aorta	(c) left atrium
___ 4. prevent backflow of blood from the arteries into the ventricles	(d) left ventricle
___ 5. pumps O <sub>2</sub> -poor blood into the pulmonary artery	(e) right atrium
___ 6. receives O <sub>2</sub> -rich blood from the pulmonary veins	(f) right ventricle
9. Circle the correct choice in each instance to complete the statement: The first heart sound is associated with closing of the (*AV/semilunar*) valves and signals the onset of (*systole/diastole*), whereas the second heart sound is associated with closing of the (*AV/semilunar*) valves and signals the onset of (*systole/diastole*).

10. Circle the correct choice in each instance to complete the statements: During ventricular filling ventricular pressure must be (*greater than/less than*) atrial pressure, whereas during ventricular ejection ventricular pressure must be (*greater than/less than*) aortic pressure. Atrial pressure is always (*greater than/less than*) aortic pressure. During isovolumetric ventricular contraction and relaxation, ventricular pressure is (*greater than/less than*) atrial pressure and (*greater than/less than*) aortic pressure.

### Essay Questions

1. What are the three basic components of the circulatory system?
2. Trace a drop of blood through one complete circuit of the circulatory system.
3. Describe the location and function of each of the four heart valves. What is the role of the chordae tendineae and that of papillary muscles?
4. What are the three layers of the heart wall? Describe the distinguishing structural features of cardiac muscle cells.
5. What are the two specialized types of cardiac muscle cells?
6. Why is the SA node the pacemaker of the heart?
7. Describe the normal spread of cardiac excitation. What is the significance of the AV nodal delay? Why is the ventricular conduction system important?
8. Compare the changes in membrane potential associated with an action potential in a nodal pacemaker cell with those in a myocardial contractile cell. What is responsible for the plateau phase?
9. Why is tetanus of cardiac muscle impossible? Why is this inability advantageous?
10. Draw and label the waveforms of a normal ECG. What electrical event does each component of the ECG represent?
11. Describe the mechanical events (that is, pressure changes, volume changes, valve activity, and heart sounds) of the cardiac cycle. Correlate the mechanical events of the cardiac cycle with the changes in electrical activity.
12. Distinguish between a stenotic and an insufficient valve.
13. Define the following: end-diastolic volume, end-systolic volume, stroke volume, heart rate, and cardiac output.
14. Discuss autonomic nervous system control of heart rate.
15. Describe the intrinsic and extrinsic control of stroke volume.
16. How is the heart muscle provided with blood? Why does the heart receive most of its own blood supply during diastole?
17. What are the pathological changes and consequences of coronary artery disease?
18. Distinguish between “good” cholesterol and “bad” cholesterol.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-43)

1. The stroke volume ejected on the next heartbeat after a premature ventricular contraction (PVC) is usually larger than normal. Can you explain why? (*Hint: At a given heart rate, the interval between a PVC and the next normal beat is longer than the interval between two normal beats.*)
2. Trained athletes usually have lower resting heart rates than normal (for example, 50 beats per minute in an athlete compared to 70 beats per minute in a sedentary individual). Considering that the resting cardiac output is 5000 ml per minute in both trained athletes and sedentary people, what is responsible for the bradycardia of trained athletes?
3. During fetal life, because of the tremendous resistance offered by the collapsed, nonfunctioning lungs, the pressures in the right half of the heart and pulmonary circulation are higher than those in the left half of the heart and systemic circulation, a situation that reverses after birth. Also in the fetus, a vessel called the **ductus arteriosus** connects the pulmonary artery and aorta as these major vessels both leave the heart. The blood pumped out by the heart into the pulmonary circulation is shunted from the pulmonary artery into the aorta through the ductus arteriosus, bypassing the nonfunctional lungs. What force is driving blood to flow in this direction through the ductus arteriosus?

At birth, the ductus arteriosus normally collapses and eventually degenerates into a thin, ligamentous strand. On occasion, this fetal bypass fails to close properly at birth, leading to a patent (open) ductus arteriosus. In what direction would blood flow through a patent ductus arteriosus? What possible outcomes would you predict might occur as a result of this blood flow?
4. Through what regulatory mechanisms can a transplanted heart, which does not have any innervation, adjust cardiac output to meet the body's changing needs?
5. There are two branches of the bundle of His, the right and left bundle branches, each of which travels down its respective side of the ventricular septum (see ● Figure 9-7, p. 235). Occasionally, conduction through one of these branches becomes blocked (so-called *bundle-branch block*). In this case, the wave of excitation spreads out from the terminals of the intact branch and eventually depolarizes the whole ventricle, but the normally stimulated ventricle completely depolarizes a considerable time before the ventricle on the side of the defective bundle branch. For example, if the left bundle branch is blocked, the right ventricle will be completely depolarized two to three times more rapidly than the left ventricle. How would this defect affect the heart sounds?

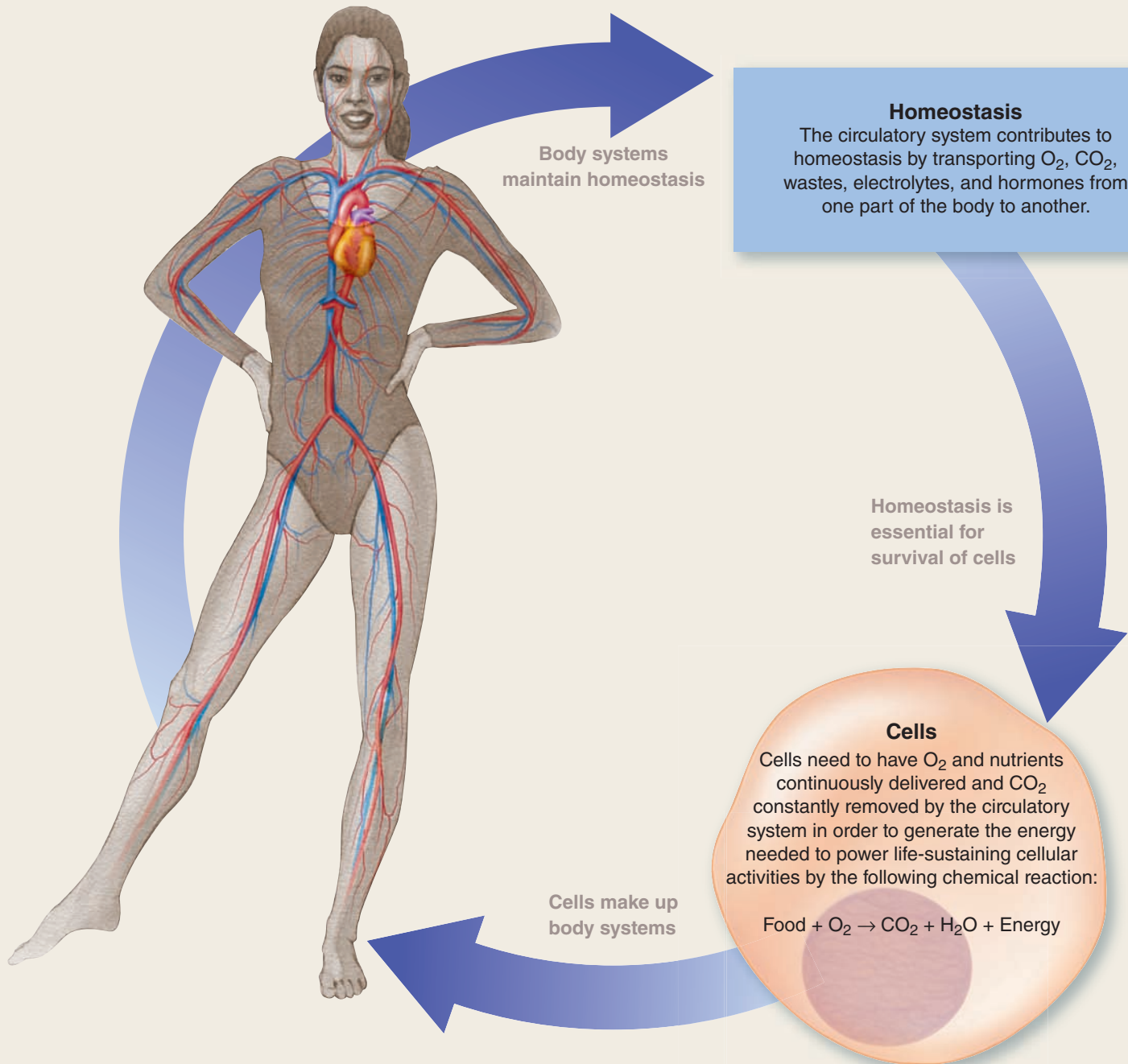
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-44)

In a physical exam, Rachel B.'s heart rate was rapid and very irregular. Furthermore, her heart rate, determined directly by listening to her heart with a stethoscope, exceeded the pulse rate taken concurrently at her wrist. Such a difference in heart rate and pulse rate is called a *pulse deficit*. No definite P waves could be detected on Rachel's ECG. The QRS

complexes were normal in shape but occurred sporadically. Given these findings, what is the most likely diagnosis of Rachel's condition? Explain why the condition is characterized by a rapid, irregular heartbeat. Would cardiac output be seriously impaired by this condition? Why or why not? What accounts for the pulse deficit?

## Cardiovascular System (Blood Vessels)



The **circulatory system** contributes to homeostasis by serving as the body's transport system. The blood vessels transport and distribute blood pumped through them by the heart to meet the body's needs for O<sub>2</sub> and nutrient delivery, waste removal, and hormonal signaling. The highly elastic **arteries** transport blood from the heart to the organs and serve as a pressure reservoir to continue driving blood forward when the heart is relaxing and filling. The **mean arterial blood pressure** is closely regulated to ensure adequate blood delivery to the organs. The amount of

blood that flows through a given organ depends on the caliber (internal diameter) of the highly muscular **arterioles** that supply the organ. Arteriolar caliber is subject to control so that flow to particular organs can be variably adjusted to best serve the body's needs at the moment. The thin-walled **capillaries** are the actual site of exchange between blood and surrounding tissue cells. The highly distensible **veins** return blood from the organs to the heart and serve as a blood reservoir.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Patterns and Physics of Blood Flow**

Reconditioning organs  
 Flow, pressure, and resistance relationships  
 Blood vessel types

**Arteries**

Passageways to the tissues  
 Role as a pressure reservoir  
 Arterial pressure

**Arterioles**

Major resistance vessels  
 Control of arteriolar radius  
 Role in distributing cardiac output  
 Role in maintaining arterial blood pressure

**Capillaries**

Sites of exchange  
 Diffusion across the capillary wall  
 Bulk flow across the capillary wall  
 Formation and function of lymph  
 Edema

**Veins**

Passageways to the heart  
 Role as a blood reservoir  
 Venous return

**Blood Pressure**

Factors influencing mean arterial pressure  
 Baroreceptor reflex  
 Hypertension  
 Hypotension; circulatory shock

# The Blood Vessels and Blood Pressure

## Patterns and Physics of Blood Flow

Most body cells are not in direct contact with the external environment, yet these cells must make exchanges with this environment, such as picking up  $O_2$  and nutrients and eliminating wastes. Furthermore, chemical messengers must be transported between cells to accomplish integrated activity. To achieve these long-distance exchanges, cells are linked with one another and with the external environment by vascular (blood vessel) highways. Blood is transported to all parts of the body through a system of vessels that brings fresh supplies to the vicinity of all cells while removing their wastes.

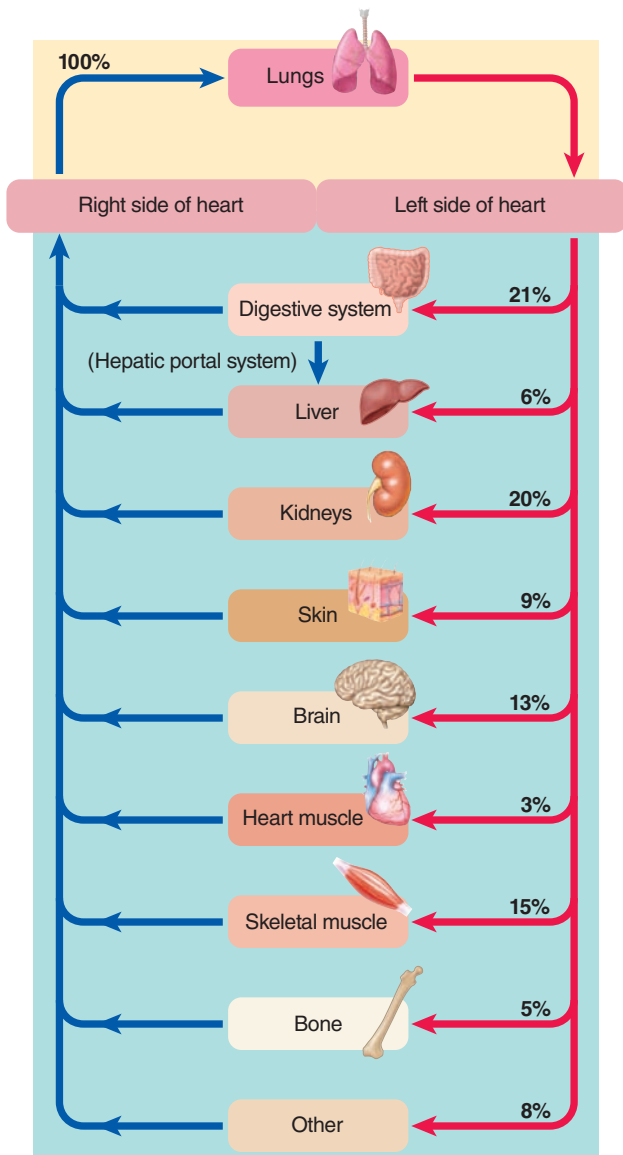
To review, all blood pumped by the right side of the heart passes through the pulmonary circulation to the lungs for  $O_2$  pickup and  $CO_2$  removal. The blood pumped by the left side of the heart into the systemic circulation is distributed in various proportions to the systemic organs through a parallel arrangement of vessels that branch from the aorta (● Figure 10-1). This arrangement ensures that all organs receive blood of the same composition; that is, one organ does not receive “leftover” blood that has passed through another organ. Because of this parallel arrangement, blood flow through each systemic organ can be independently adjusted as needed.

In this chapter, we first examine some general principles regarding blood flow patterns and the physics of blood flow. Then we turn our attention to the roles of the various types of blood vessels through which blood flows. We end by discussing how blood pressure is regulated to ensure adequate delivery of blood to the tissues.

### To maintain homeostasis, reconditioning organs receive blood flow in excess of their own needs.

Blood is constantly “reconditioned” so that its composition remains relatively constant despite an ongoing drain of supplies to support metabolic activities and despite the continual addition of wastes from the tissues. Organs that recondition the blood normally receive much more blood flow than is necessary to meet their basic metabolic needs, so they can adjust the extra blood to achieve homeostasis. For example, large percentages of the cardiac output are distributed to the digestive tract (to pick up nutrient supplies), to the kidneys (to eliminate metabolic wastes and adjust water and electrolyte composition), and to the skin (to eliminate heat). Blood flow to the other organs—heart, skeletal muscles, and so on—is solely for filling these organs’ metabolic needs and can be adjusted according to their level of activity. For example, during exercise, additional blood is delivered to the active muscles to meet their increased metabolic needs.

Because reconditioning organs—digestive organs, kidneys, and skin—receive blood flow in excess of their own needs, they can withstand temporary reductions in blood flow much better than other organs can that do not have this extra margin of blood supply. The brain in particular suffers irreparable damage when transiently



● **FIGURE 10-1** Distribution of cardiac output at rest. The lungs receive all the blood pumped out by the right side of the heart, whereas the systemic organs each receive some of the blood pumped out by the left side of the heart. The percentage of pumped blood received by the various organs under resting conditions is indicated. This distribution of cardiac output can be adjusted as needed.

deprived of blood supply. After only 4 minutes without  $O_2$ , permanent brain damage occurs. Therefore, constant delivery of adequate blood to the brain, which can least tolerate disrupted blood supply, is a high priority in the overall operation of the circulatory system.

In contrast, the reconditioning organs can tolerate significant reductions in blood flow for quite a long time, and often do. For example, during exercise some of the blood that normally flows through the digestive organs and kidneys is diverted to the skeletal muscles. Likewise, to conserve body heat, blood flow through the skin is markedly restricted during exposure to cold.

Later in the chapter, you will see how distribution of cardiac output is adjusted according to the body's current needs. For now, we concentrate on the factors that influence blood flow through a given blood vessel.

### Blood flow through a vessel depends on the pressure gradient and vascular resistance.

The **flow rate** of blood through a vessel (that is, the volume of blood passing through per unit of time) is directly proportional to the pressure gradient (as the pressure gradient increases, flow rate increases) and inversely proportional to vascular resistance (as resistance increases, flow rate decreases):

$$F = \Delta P/R$$

where

$F$  = flow rate of blood through a vessel

$\Delta P$  = pressure gradient

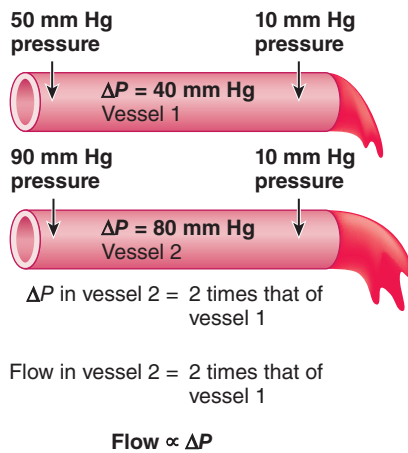
$R$  = resistance of blood vessel

**PRESSURE GRADIENT** The **pressure gradient** is the difference in pressure between the beginning and the end of a vessel. Blood flows from an area of higher pressure to an area of lower pressure down a pressure gradient. Contraction of the heart imparts pressure to the blood, which is the main driving force for flow through a vessel. Because of frictional losses (resistance), the pressure drops as blood flows throughout the vessel's length. Accordingly, pressure is higher at the beginning than at the end of the vessel, establishing a pressure gradient for forward flow of blood through the vessel. The greater the pressure gradient forcing blood through a vessel, the greater the flow rate through that vessel (● Figure 10-2a). Think of a garden hose attached to a faucet. If you turn on the faucet slightly, a small stream of water flows out of the end of the hose, because the pressure is slightly greater at the beginning than at the end of the hose. If you open the faucet all the way, the pressure gradient increases tremendously so that water flows through the hose faster and spurts from the end of the hose. Note that the *difference* in pressure between the two ends of a vessel, not the absolute pressures within the vessel, determines flow rate (● Figure 10-2b).

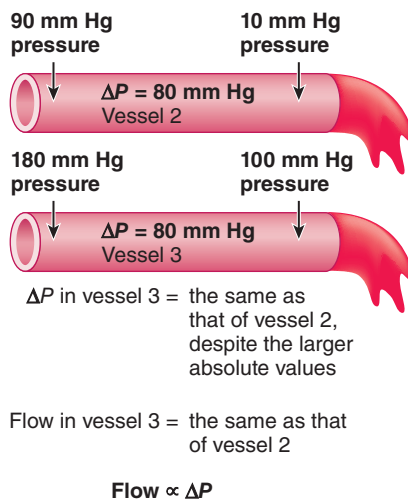
**RESISTANCE** The other factor influencing flow rate through a vessel is **resistance**, which is a measure of the hindrance or opposition to blood flow through the vessel, caused by friction between the moving fluid and the stationary vascular walls. As resistance to flow increases, it is more difficult for blood to pass through the vessel, so flow rate decreases (as long as the pressure gradient remains unchanged). When resistance increases, the pressure gradient must increase correspondingly to maintain the same flow rate. Accordingly, when the vessels offer more resistance to flow, the heart must work harder to maintain adequate circulation.

Resistance to blood flow is (1) directly proportional to viscosity of the blood, (2) directly proportional to vessel length, and (3) inversely proportional to vessel radius, which is by far the most important:

$$R \propto \eta L/r^4$$



(a) Comparison of flow rate in vessels with a different  $\Delta P$



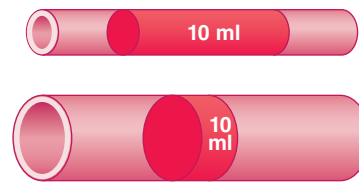
(b) Comparison of flow rate in vessels with the same  $\Delta P$

● **FIGURE 10-2 Relationship of flow to the pressure gradient in a vessel.** (a) As the difference in pressure ( $\Delta P$ ) between the two ends of a vessel increases, the flow rate increases proportionately. (b) Flow rate is determined by the *difference* in pressure between the two ends of a vessel, not the magnitude of the pressures at each end.

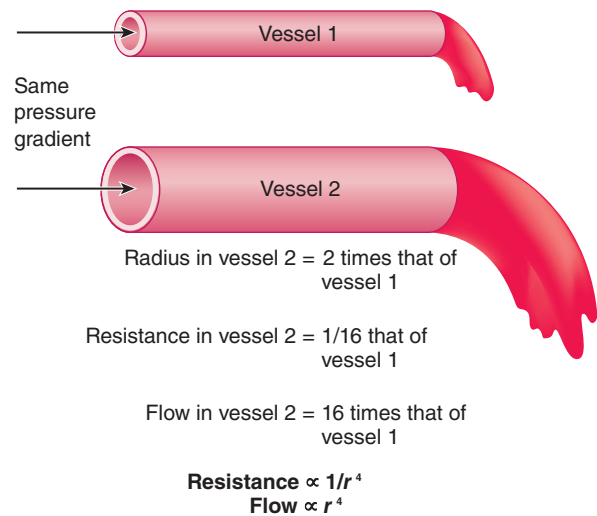
where

$\eta$  = viscosity  
 $L$  = vessel length  
 $r$  = vessel radius

**Viscosity** refers to the friction developed between the molecules of a fluid as they slide over each other during flow of the fluid. The greater the viscosity, the greater the resistance to flow. In general, the thicker a liquid, the more viscous the liquid. For example, molasses flows more slowly than water because molasses has greater viscosity. Blood viscosity is determined primarily by the number of circulating red blood cells. Normally, this factor is relatively constant and not important in controlling



(a) Comparison of contact of a given volume of blood with the surface area of a small-radius vessel and a large-radius vessel



(b) Influence of vessel radius on resistance and flow

● **FIGURE 10-3 Relationship of resistance and flow to the vessel radius.** (a) The smaller-radius vessel offers more resistance to blood flow, because the blood “rubs” against a larger surface area. (b) Doubling the radius decreases the resistance to 1/16th and increases the flow 16 times, because the resistance is inversely proportional to the fourth power of the radius.

resistance. Occasionally, however, blood viscosity and resistance to flow are altered by an abnormal number of red blood cells. When excessive red blood cells are present, blood flow is more sluggish than normal.

Because blood “rubs” against the lining of the vessels as it flows past, the greater the vessel surface area in contact with the blood, the greater the resistance to flow. Surface area is determined by both the length and the radius of the vessel. At a constant radius, the longer the vessel, the greater the surface area and the greater the resistance to flow. Because vessel length remains constant in the body, it is not a variable factor in the control of vascular resistance.

Therefore, the major determinant of resistance to flow is the vessel’s radius. Fluid passes more readily through a large vessel than through a smaller vessel. The reason is that a given volume of blood comes into contact with more of the surface area of a small-radius vessel than of a larger-radius vessel, resulting in greater resistance (● Figure 10-3a).

Furthermore, a slight change in the radius of a vessel brings about a notable change in flow, because, as can be noted in the preceding equation for  $R$ , resistance is inversely proportional to the fourth power of the radius (multiplying the radius by itself



four times;  $R \propto 1/r^4$ ). Thus, doubling the radius reduces the resistance to 1/16th its original value ( $r^4 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 16$ ;  $R \propto 1/16$ ) and therefore increases flow through the vessel 16-fold (at the same pressure gradient) (● Figure 10-3b). The converse is also true: Only 1/16th as much blood flows through a vessel at the same driving pressure when its radius is halved. Importantly, the radius of arterioles can be regulated and is the most important factor in controlling resistance to blood flow throughout the vascular circuit.

The significance of the relationships among flow, pressure, and resistance, as largely determined by vessel radius, become even more apparent as we embark on a voyage through the vessels in the next section.

### The vascular tree consists of arteries, arterioles, capillaries, venules, and veins.

The systemic and pulmonary circulations each consist of a closed system of vessels (● Figure 10-4). (For the history leading up to the conclusion that blood vessels form a closed system, see the accompanying boxed feature, ► Beyond the Basics.) These vascular loops each consist of a continuum of different blood vessel types that begins and ends with the heart, as described here.

Looking specifically at the systemic circulation, **arteries**, which carry blood from the heart to the organs, branch into a “tree” of progressively smaller vessels, with the various branches delivering blood to different regions of the body. When a small artery reaches the organ it is supplying, it branches into numerous **arterioles**. The volume of blood flowing through an organ can be adjusted by regulating the caliber (internal diameter) of the organ’s arterioles.

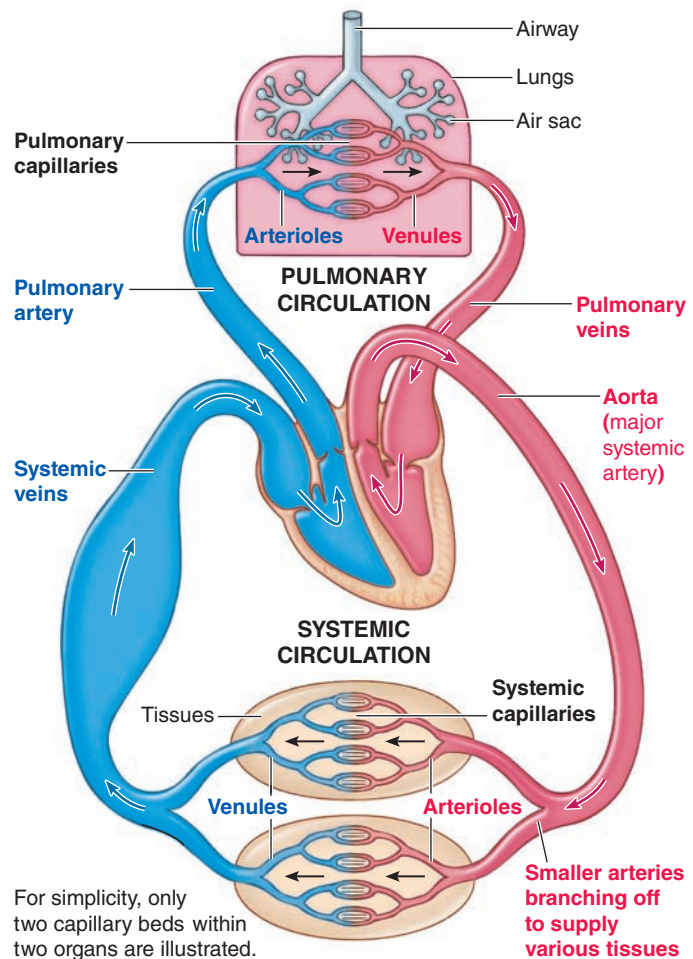
Arterioles branch further within the organs into **capillaries**, the smallest of vessels, across which all exchanges are made with surrounding cells. Capillary exchange is the entire purpose of the circulatory system; all other activities of the system are directed toward ensuring an adequate distribution of replenished blood to capillaries for exchange with all cells. Capillaries rejoin to form small **venules**, which further merge to form small **veins** that leave the organs. The small veins progressively unite to form larger veins that eventually empty into the heart.

The arterioles, capillaries, and venules are collectively referred to as the **microcirculation**, because they are only visible through a microscope. The microcirculatory vessels are all located within the organs. The pulmonary circulation consists of the same vessel types, but all the blood in this loop goes between the heart and the lungs. If all of the vessels in the body were strung end to end, they could circle the circumference of Earth twice!

In discussing the vessel types in this chapter, we refer to their roles in the systemic circulation, starting with systemic arteries.

## Arteries

The consecutive segments of the vascular tree are specialized to perform specific tasks (▲ Table 10-1).



● **FIGURE 10-4 Basic organization of the cardiovascular system.** Arteries progressively branch as they carry blood from the heart to the organs. A separate small arterial branch delivers blood to each of the various organs. As a small artery enters the organ it is supplying, it branches into arterioles, which further branch into an extensive network of capillaries. The capillaries rejoin to form venules, which further unite to form small veins that leave the organ. The small veins progressively merge as they carry blood back to the heart.

### Arteries serve as rapid-transit passageways to the organs and as a pressure reservoir.

Arteries are specialized (1) to serve as rapid-transit passageways for blood from the heart to the organs (because of their large radius, arteries offer little resistance to blood flow) and (2) to act as a **pressure reservoir** to provide the driving force for blood when the heart is relaxing.

Let us expand on the role of the arteries as a pressure reservoir. The heart alternately contracts to pump blood into the arteries and then relaxes to refill with blood from the veins. When the heart is relaxing and refilling, no blood is pumped out. However, capillary flow does not fluctuate between cardiac systole and diastole; that is, blood flow is continuous through the capillaries supplying the organs. The driving force for the continued flow of blood to the organs during cardiac relaxation is provided by the elastic properties of the arterial walls.

All vessels are lined with an *endothelium*, a single layer of smooth, flat endothelial cells, that is continuous with the

## Beyond the Basics

Today even grade-school children know that blood is pumped by the heart and continually circulates throughout the body in a system of blood vessels. Furthermore, people accept without question that blood picks up  $O_2$  in the lungs from the air we breathe and delivers it to the various organs. This common knowledge was unknown for most of human history, however. Even though the function of blood was described as early as the fifth century BC, our modern concept of circulation did not develop until AD 1628, more than 2000 years later, when William Harvey published his now classical study on the circulatory system.

Ancient Greeks believed everything material in the universe consisted of just four elements: earth, air, fire, and water. Extending this view to the human body, they thought these four elements took the form of four “humors”: *black bile* (representing earth), *blood* (representing air), *yellow bile* (representing fire), and *phlegm* (representing water). According to the Greeks, disease resulted when one humor was out of normal balance with the rest. The “cure” was logical: To restore normal balance, drain off whichever humor was in excess. Because the easiest humor to drain off was the blood, blood-letting became standard procedure for treating many illnesses—a practice that persisted well into the Renaissance (which began in the 1300s and extended into the 1600s).

Although the ancient Greeks’ notion of the four humors was erroneous, their concept of the necessity of balance within the body was remarkably accurate. As we now know, life depends on homeostasis, maintenance of the proper balance among all elements of the internal environment.

Aristotle (384–322 BC), a biologist as well as a philosopher, was among the first to correctly describe the heart at the center of a system of blood vessels. However, he thought the heart was both the seat of intellect (the brain was not identified as the seat of intellect until more than a century later) and a furnace that heated the blood. He considered this warmth the vital force of life, because the body cools quickly at death. Aristotle also erroneously theorized that breathing ventilated the “furnace,” with air serving as a cooling agent. Aristotle could observe with his

## From Humors to Harvey: Historical Highlights in Circulation

eyes the arteries and veins in cadavers but did not have a microscope with which to observe capillaries. (The microscope was not invented until the 17th century.) Thus, he did not think arteries and veins were directly connected.

In the third century BC, Erasistratus, a Greek many consider the first “physiologist,” proposed that the liver used food to make blood, which the veins delivered to the other organs. He believed the arteries contained air, not blood. According to his view, *pneuma* (meaning “air”), a living force, was taken in by the lungs, which transferred it to the heart. The heart transformed the air into a “vital spirit” that the arteries carried to the other organs.

Galen (AD 130–206), a prolific, outspoken, dogmatic Roman physician, philosopher, and scholar, expanded on the work of Erasistratus and others who had preceded him. Galen further elaborated on the pneumatic theory. He proposed three fundamental members in the body, from lowest to highest: liver, heart, and brain. Each was dominated by a special *pneuma*, or “spirit.” (In Greek, *pneuma* encompassed the related ideas of “air,” “breath,” and “spirit.”) Like Erasistratus, Galen believed that the liver made blood from food, taking on a “natural” or “physical” spirit (*pneuma physicon*) in the process. The newly formed blood then proceeded through veins to organs. The natural spirit, which Galen considered a vapor rising from the blood, controlled the functions of nutrition, growth, and reproduction. Once its spirit supply was depleted, the blood moved in the opposite direction through the same venous pathways, returning to the liver to be replenished. When the natural spirit was carried in the venous blood to the heart, it mixed with air that was breathed in and transferred from the lungs to the heart. Contact with air in the heart transformed the natural spirit into a higher-level spirit, the “vital” spirit (*pneuma zotikon*). The vital spirit, which was carried by the arteries, conveyed heat and life throughout the body. The vital spirit was transformed further into a yet higher “animal” or “psychical” spirit (*pneuma psychikon*) in the brain. This ultimate spirit regulated the brain, nerves, feelings, and so on. Thus,

according to Galenic theory, the veins and arteries were conduits for carrying different levels of pneuma, and no direct connection existed between veins and arteries. The heart was not involved in moving blood but instead was the site where blood and air mixed. (We now know that blood and air meet in the lungs for the exchange of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$ .)

Galen was one of the first to understand the need for experimentation, but unfortunately, his impatience and his craving for philosophical and literary fame led him to expound comprehensive theories that were not always based on the time-consuming collection of evidence. Even though his assumptions about bodily structure and functions often were incorrect, his theories were convincing because they seemed a logical way of pulling together what was known at the time. Furthermore, the sheer quantity of his writings helped establish him as an authority. His writings remained the anatomic and physiologic “truth” for nearly 15 centuries, throughout the Middle Ages and well into the Renaissance. So firmly entrenched was Galenic doctrine that people who challenged its accuracy risked their lives by being declared secular heretics.

Not until the Renaissance and the revival of classical learning did independent-minded European investigators begin to challenge Galen’s theories. Most notably, the English physician William Harvey (1578–1657) revolutionized the view of the roles played by the heart, blood vessels, and blood. Through careful observations, experimentation, and deductive reasoning, Harvey was the first to correctly identify the heart as a pump that repeatedly moves a small volume of blood forward in one fixed direction in a circular path through a closed system of blood vessels (the *circulatory system*). He also correctly proposed that blood travels to the lungs to mix with air (instead of air traveling to the heart to mix with blood). Even though he could not see physical connections between arteries and veins, he speculated on their existence. Not until the discovery of the microscope later in the century was the existence of these connections, capillaries, confirmed, by Marcello Malpighi (1628–1694).

## ▲ Table 10-1 Features of Blood Vessels

Feature	VESSEL TYPE			
	Arteries	Arterioles	Capillaries	Veins
<b>Number</b>	Several hundred*	Half a million	Ten billion	Several hundred*
<b>Special Features</b>	Thick, highly elastic, walls; large radii*	Highly muscular, well-innervated walls; small radii	Very thin walled; large total cross-sectional area	Thin walled; highly distensible; large radii*
<b>Functions</b>	Passageway from the heart to organs; pressure reservoir	Primary resistance vessels; determination of distribution of cardiac output	Site of exchange; determination of distribution of ECF between plasma and interstitial fluid	Passageway to the heart from organs; blood reservoir
<b>Structure</b>				
<b>Relative Thickness of Layers in Wall</b>				

\*These numbers and special features refer to the large arteries and veins, not to the smaller arterial branches or venules.

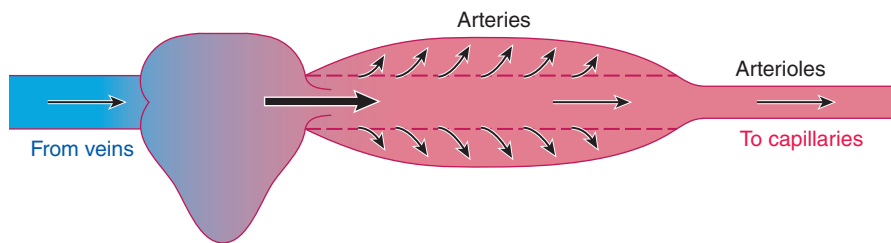
endothelial lining of the heart. A thick wall made up of smooth muscle and connective tissue surrounds the arteries' endothelial lining (▲ Table 10-1). Arterial connective tissue contains an abundance of two types of connective tissue fibers: *collagen fibers*, which provide tensile strength against the high, driving pressure of blood ejected from the heart, and *elastin fibers*, which give the arterial walls elasticity so that they behave much like a balloon.

As the heart pumps blood into the arteries during ventricular systole, a greater volume of blood enters the arteries from the heart than leaves them to flow into the arterioles because these smaller vessels have a greater resistance to flow than the arteries do. The highly elastic arteries expand to temporarily hold this excess volume of ejected blood, storing some of the pressure energy imparted by cardiac contraction in their stretched walls—just as a balloon expands to accommodate the extra volume of air

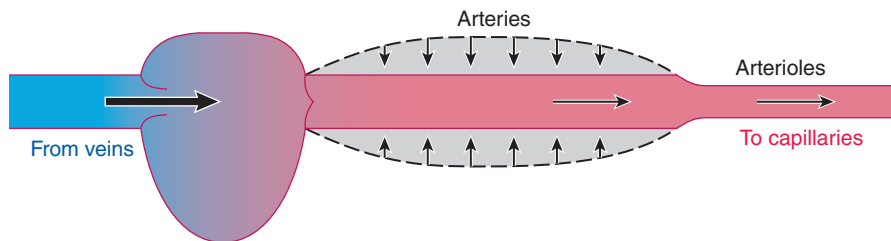
you blow into it (● Figure 10-5a). When the heart relaxes and temporarily stops pumping blood into the arteries, the stretched arterial walls passively recoil, like an inflated balloon that is released. This recoil exerts pressure on the blood in the arteries during diastole. The pressure pushes the excess blood contained in the arteries into the vessels downstream, ensuring continued blood flow to the organs when the heart is relaxing and not pumping blood into the system (● Figure 10-5b).

### Arterial pressure fluctuates in relation to ventricular systole and diastole.

**Blood pressure**, the force exerted by the blood against a vessel wall, depends on the volume of blood contained within the vessel and the **compliance**, or **distensibility**, of the vessel walls



(a) Heart contracting and emptying



(b) Heart relaxing and filling

● **FIGURE 10-5 Arteries as a pressure reservoir.** Because of their elasticity, arteries act as a pressure reservoir. (a) The elastic arteries distend during cardiac systole as more blood is ejected into them than drains off into the narrow, high-resistance arterioles downstream. (b) The elastic recoil of arteries during cardiac diastole continues driving the blood forward when the heart is not pumping.

(how easily they can be stretched). If the volume of blood entering the arteries were equal to the volume of blood leaving the arteries during the same period, arterial blood pressure would remain constant. This is not the case, however. During ventricular systole, a stroke volume of blood enters the arteries from the ventricle, while only about one third as much blood leaves the arteries to enter the arterioles. During diastole, no blood enters the arteries, while blood continues to leave, driven by elastic recoil. The maximum pressure exerted in the arteries when blood is ejected into them during systole, the **systolic pressure**, averages 120 mm Hg. The minimum pressure within the arteries when blood is draining off into the rest of the vessels during diastole, the **diastolic pressure**, averages 80 mm Hg. Although ventricular pressure falls to 0 mm Hg during diastole, arterial pressure does not fall to 0 mm Hg, because the next cardiac contraction refills the arteries before all the blood drains off (● Figure 10-6; also see ● Figure 9-15, p. 245).

In clinical practice, arterial blood pressure is expressed as systolic pressure over diastolic pressure, with desirable blood pressure being 120/80 (read “120 over 80”) mm Hg or slightly less.

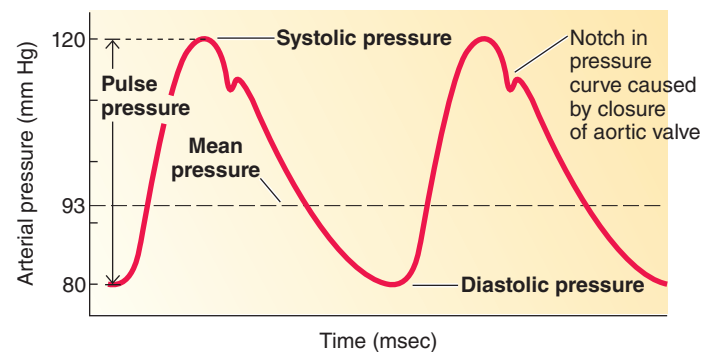
When you palpate (feel with your fingers) an artery lying close to the surface of the skin (such as at your wrist or neck), you can feel the artery expand as the pressure rises during systole when blood is ejected into the arterial system by the left ventricle. What you feel when you “take a pulse” is the difference between systolic and diastolic pressures; you don’t feel anything during diastole, but you feel the surge in pressure during systole. This pressure difference is known as the **pulse pressure**. When blood pressure is 120/80, pulse pressure is 40 mm Hg (120 minus 80 mm Hg). Because the pulse can be felt each time the ventricles pump blood into the arteries, the pulse rate is a measure of the heart rate.

### Blood pressure can be measured indirectly by using a sphygmomanometer.

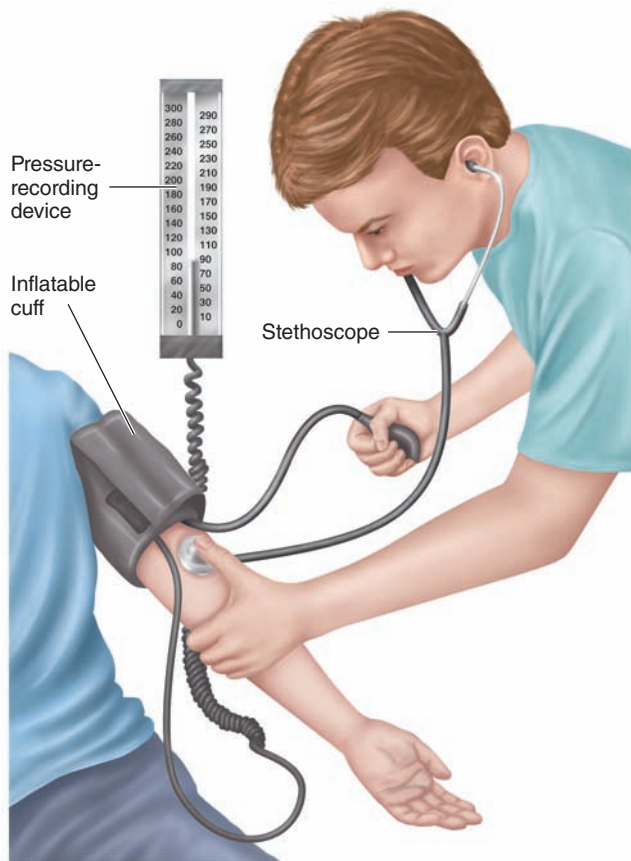
The changes in arterial pressure throughout the cardiac cycle can be measured directly by connecting a pressure-measuring device to a needle inserted in an artery. However, it is more convenient and reasonably accurate to measure the pressure indirectly with a **sphygmomanometer**, an externally applied inflatable cuff attached to a pressure gauge. When the cuff is wrapped around the upper arm and then inflated with air, the pressure of the cuff is transmitted through the tissues to the underlying brachial artery, the main vessel carrying blood to the forearm (● Figure 10-7a). The technique involves balancing the pressure in the cuff against the pressure in the artery. When cuff pressure is greater than the pressure in the vessel, the vessel is pinched closed so that no blood flows through it. When blood pressure is greater than cuff pressure, the vessel is open and blood flows through.

During the determination of blood pressure, a stethoscope is placed over the brachial artery at the inside bend of the elbow just below the cuff. No sound can be detected either when blood is not flowing through the vessel or when blood is flowing in the normal, smooth laminar flow (see p. 246). Turbulent blood flow, in contrast, creates vibrations that can be heard. The sounds heard when determining blood pressure are distinct from the heart sounds associated with valve closure heard when listening to the heart with a stethoscope.

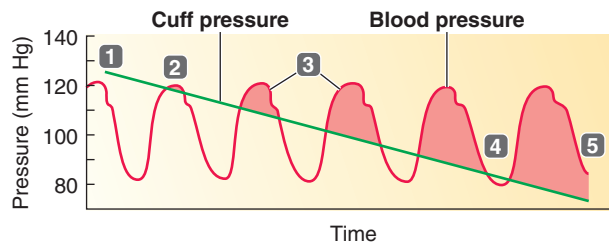
At the onset of a blood pressure determination, the cuff is inflated to a pressure greater than systolic blood pressure so that the brachial artery collapses. Because the externally applied



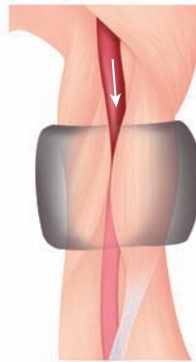
● **FIGURE 10-6 Arterial blood pressure.** The systolic pressure is the peak pressure exerted in the arteries when blood is pumped into them during ventricular systole. The diastolic pressure is the lowest pressure exerted in the arteries when blood is draining off into the vessels downstream during ventricular diastole. The pulse pressure is the difference between systolic and diastolic pressure. The mean pressure is the average pressure throughout the cardiac cycle.



(a) Use of a sphygmomanometer in determining blood pressure



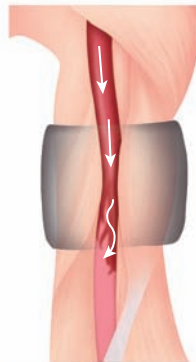
When blood pressure is 120/80:



When cuff pressure is greater than 120 mm Hg and exceeds blood pressure throughout the cardiac cycle:

No blood flows through the vessel.

**1** No sound is heard because no blood is flowing.

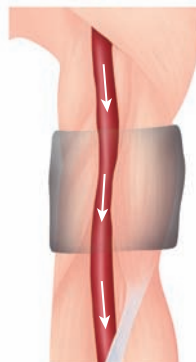


When cuff pressure is between 120 and 80 mm Hg:

Blood flow through the vessel is turbulent whenever blood pressure exceeds cuff pressure.

**2** The first sound is heard at peak systolic pressure.

**3** Intermittent sounds are produced by turbulent spurts of flow as blood pressure cyclically exceeds cuff pressure.



When cuff pressure is less than 80 mm Hg and is below blood pressure throughout the cardiac cycle:

Blood flows through the vessel in smooth, laminar fashion.

**4** The last sound is heard at minimum diastolic pressure.

**5** No sound is heard thereafter because of uninterrupted, smooth, laminar flow.

(b) Blood flow through the brachial artery in relation to cuff pressure and sounds

● **FIGURE 10-7 Measuring blood pressure.** (a) The pressure in the sphygmomanometer (inflatable cuff) can be varied to prevent or permit blood flow in the underlying brachial artery. Turbulent blood flow can be detected with a stethoscope, whereas smooth laminar flow and no flow are inaudible. (b) The red shaded areas in the graph are the times during which blood is flowing in the brachial artery.

pressure is greater than the peak internal pressure, the artery remains completely pinched closed throughout the entire cardiac cycle; no sound can be heard because no blood is passing through (● Figure 10-7b, point **1**). As air in the cuff is slowly released, the pressure in the cuff is gradually reduced. When the cuff pressure falls to just below the peak systolic pressure, the artery transiently opens a bit when the blood pressure reaches this peak. Blood escapes through the partially occluded artery for a brief interval before the arterial pressure falls below the

cuff pressure and the artery collapses again. This spurt of blood is turbulent, so it can be heard. Thus, the highest cuff pressure at which the *first sound* can be heard indicates the *systolic pressure* (point **2**). As the cuff pressure continues to fall, blood intermittently spurts through the artery and produces a sound with each subsequent cardiac cycle whenever the arterial pressure exceeds the cuff pressure (point **3**).

When the cuff pressure finally falls below diastolic pressure, the brachial artery is no longer pinched closed during any

part of the cardiac cycle, and blood can flow uninterrupted through the vessel (point 5). With the return of nonturbulent blood flow, no further sounds can be heard. Therefore, the lowest cuff pressure at which the *last sound* can be detected indicates the *diastolic pressure* (point 4).

### Mean arterial pressure is the main driving force for blood flow.

The **mean arterial pressure** is the *average pressure* driving blood forward into the tissues throughout the cardiac cycle. Contrary to what you might expect, mean arterial pressure is not the halfway value between systolic and diastolic pressure (for example, with a blood pressure of 120/80, mean pressure is not 100 mm Hg). The reason is that arterial pressure remains closer to diastolic than to systolic pressure for a longer portion of each cardiac cycle. At resting heart rate, about two thirds of the cardiac cycle is spent in diastole and only one third in systole. As an analogy, if a race car traveled 80 miles per hour (mph) for 40 minutes and 120 mph for 20 minutes, its average speed would be 93 mph, not the halfway value of 100 mph.

Similarly, a good approximation of the mean arterial pressure can be determined using the following formula:

$$\text{Mean arterial pressure} = \text{diastolic pressure} + \frac{1}{3} \text{ pulse pressure}$$

At 120/80,

$$\text{Mean arterial pressure} = 80 + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) 40 = 93 \text{ mm Hg}$$

The mean arterial pressure, not the systolic or diastolic pressure, is monitored and regulated by blood pressure reflexes described later in the chapter.

Because arteries offer little resistance to flow, only a negligible amount of pressure energy is lost in them because of friction. Therefore, arterial pressure—systolic, diastolic, pulse, or mean—is essentially the same throughout the arterial tree (● Figure 10-8).

Blood pressure exists throughout the entire vascular tree, but when discussing a person's "blood pressure" without qualifying which blood vessel type is being referred to, the term is tacitly understood to mean the pressure in the arteries.

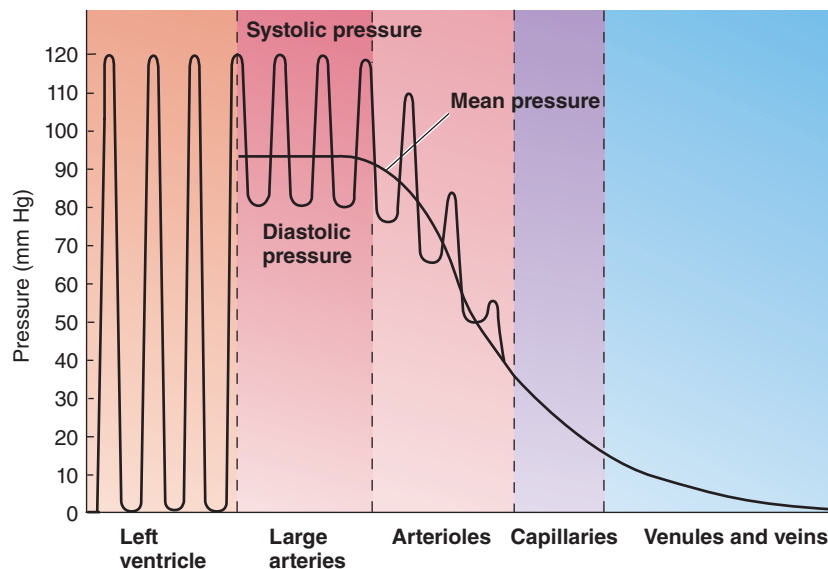
## Arterioles

When an artery reaches the organ it is supplying, it branches into numerous arterioles within the organ.

### Arterioles are the major resistance vessels.

Arterioles are the main resistance vessels in the vascular tree because their radius is small enough to offer considerable resistance to flow. (Even though capillaries have a smaller radius than arterioles, you will see later how collectively the capillaries do not offer as much resistance to flow as the arterioles do.) In contrast to the low resistance of the arteries, the high degree of arteriolar resistance causes a marked drop in mean pressure as blood flows through these small vessels. On average, the pressure falls from 93 mm Hg, the mean arterial pressure (the pressure of the blood entering the arterioles), to 37 mm Hg, the pressure of the blood leaving the arterioles and entering the capillaries (● Figure 10-8). This decline in pressure helps establish the pressure differential that encourages the flow of blood from the heart to the various organs downstream. Arteriolar resistance also converts the pulsatile systolic-to-diastolic pressure swings in the arteries into the nonfluctuating pressure present in the capillaries.

The radius (and, accordingly, the resistances) of arterioles supplying individual organs can be adjusted independently to accomplish two functions: (1) to variably distribute the cardiac output among the systemic organs, depending on the body's momentary needs, and (2) to help regulate arterial blood pressure. Before considering how such adjustments are important in accomplishing these two functions, we discuss the mechanisms involved in adjusting arteriolar resistance.



● **FIGURE 10-8** Pressures throughout the systemic circulation. Left ventricular pressure swings from a low pressure of 0 mm Hg during diastole to a high pressure of 120 mm Hg during systole. Arterial blood pressure, which fluctuates between a peak systolic pressure of 120 mm Hg and a low diastolic pressure of 80 mm Hg each cardiac cycle, is of the same magnitude throughout the large arteries. Because of the arterioles' high resistance, the pressure drops precipitously and the systolic-to-diastolic swings in pressure are converted to a nonpulsatile pressure when blood flows through the arterioles. The pressure continues to decline but at a slower rate as blood flows through the capillaries and venous system.

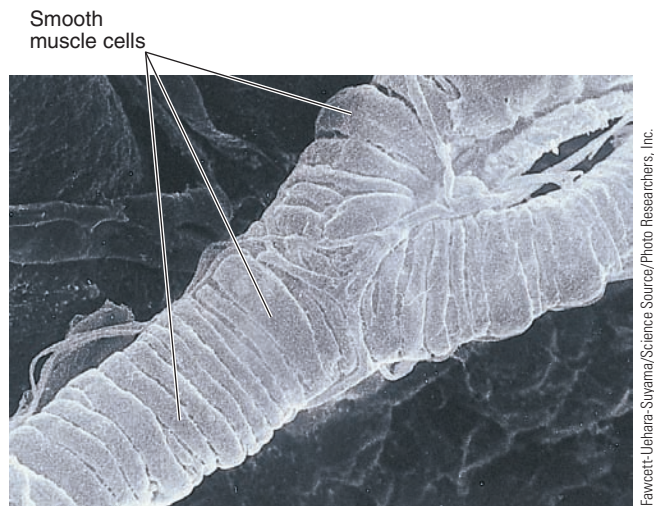
**VASOCONSTRICTION AND VASODILATION** Unlike arteries, arteriolar walls contain little elastic connective tissue. However, they do have a thick layer of smooth muscle that is richly innervated by sympathetic nerve fibers (see ▲ Table 10-1). The smooth muscle is also sensitive to many local chemical changes, to a few circulating hormones, and to mechanical stretch. The smooth muscle layer runs circularly around the arteriole (● Figure 10-9a), so when the smooth muscle layer contracts, the vessel's circumference (and its radius) becomes smaller, increasing resistance and decreasing flow through that vessel. **Vasoconstriction** is the term applied to such narrowing of a vessel (● Figure 10-9c). In contrast, the term **vasodilation** refers to enlargement in the circumference and radius of a vessel as a result of its smooth muscle layer relaxing (● Figure 10-9d). Vasodilation leads to decreased resistance and increased flow through that vessel.

**VASCULAR TONE** Arteriolar smooth muscle normally displays a state of partial constriction known as **vascular tone**, which establishes a baseline of arteriolar resistance (● Figure 10-9b) (see

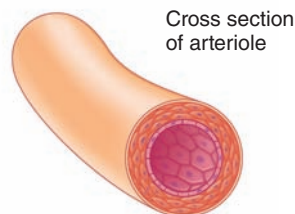
p. 224). Two factors are responsible for vascular tone. First, arteriolar smooth muscle has considerable myogenic activity; that is, it shows self-induced contractile activity independent of any neural or hormonal influences (see p. 222). Second, the sympathetic fibers supplying most arterioles continually release norepinephrine, which further enhances vascular tone.

This ongoing tonic activity makes it possible to either increase or decrease the level of contractile activity to accomplish vasoconstriction or vasodilation, respectively. Were it not for tone, it would be impossible to reduce the tension in an arteriolar wall to accomplish vasodilation; only varying degrees of vasoconstriction would be possible.

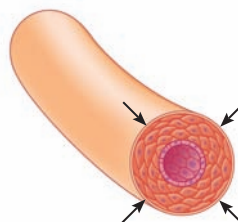
A variety of factors can influence the level of contractile activity in arteriolar smooth muscle, thereby substantially changing resistance to flow in these vessels. The factors that cause arteriolar vasoconstriction or vasodilation fall into two categories: local (intrinsic) controls, which are important in determining the distribution of cardiac output, and extrinsic controls, which are important in blood pressure regulation. We look at each of these controls in turn.



(a) Scanning electron micrograph of an arteriole showing how the smooth muscle cells run circularly around the vessel wall

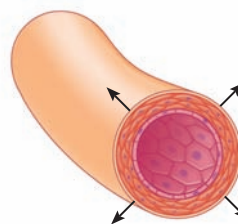


(b) Normal arteriolar tone



(c) **Vasoconstriction** (increased contraction of circular smooth muscle in the arteriolar wall, which leads to increased resistance and decreased flow through the vessel)

**Major causes:**  
 Local control:  
 ↑ Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) and other local chemical changes indicative of decreased need for blood flow  
 Extrinsic control:  
 ↑ Sympathetic stimulation



(d) **Vasodilation** (decreased contraction of circular smooth muscle in the arteriolar wall, which leads to decreased resistance and increased flow through the vessel)

**Major causes:**  
 Local control:  
 ↓ O<sub>2</sub> and other local chemical changes indicative of increased need for blood flow  
 Extrinsic control:  
 ↓ Sympathetic stimulation

● **FIGURE 10-9** Arteriolar vasoconstriction and vasodilation.

### Local control of arteriolar radius is important in determining the distribution of cardiac output.

The fraction of the total cardiac output delivered to each organ is not always constant; it varies, depending on the demands for blood at the time. The amount of the cardiac output received by each organ is determined by the number and caliber of the arterioles supplying that area. Recall that  $F = \Delta P/R$ . Because blood is delivered to all organs at the same mean arterial pressure, the driving force for flow is identical for each organ. Therefore, differences in flow to various organs are determined by differences in the extent of vascularization and by differences in the resistance offered by the arterioles supplying each organ. From moment to moment, the distribution of cardiac output can be varied by differentially adjusting arteriolar resistance in the various vascular beds.

As an analogy, consider a pipe carrying water, with several adjustable valves located throughout its length (● Figure 10-10). Assuming that water pressure in the pipe is constant, differences in the amount of water flowing into a beaker under each valve depend entirely on which valves are open and to what extent. No water enters beakers under closed valves (high resistance), and more water flows into beakers under valves that are opened completely (low resistance) than into beakers under valves that are only partially opened (moderate resistance).

Similarly, more blood flows to areas whose arterioles offer the least resistance to its passage. During exercise, for example, not only is cardiac output increased, but also, because of vasodilation in skeletal muscle and in the heart, a greater percentage of the pumped blood is diverted to these organs to support their increased metabolic activity. Simultaneously, blood flow to the digestive tract and kidneys is reduced as a result of arteriolar vasoconstriction in these organs. Only the blood supply to the

brain remains remarkably constant no matter what the person is doing, be it vigorous physical activity, intense mental concentration, or sleep. Although total blood flow to the brain remains constant, new imaging techniques demonstrate that regional blood flow varies within the brain in close correlation with local neural activity patterns (see Figure 5-8b, p. 117).

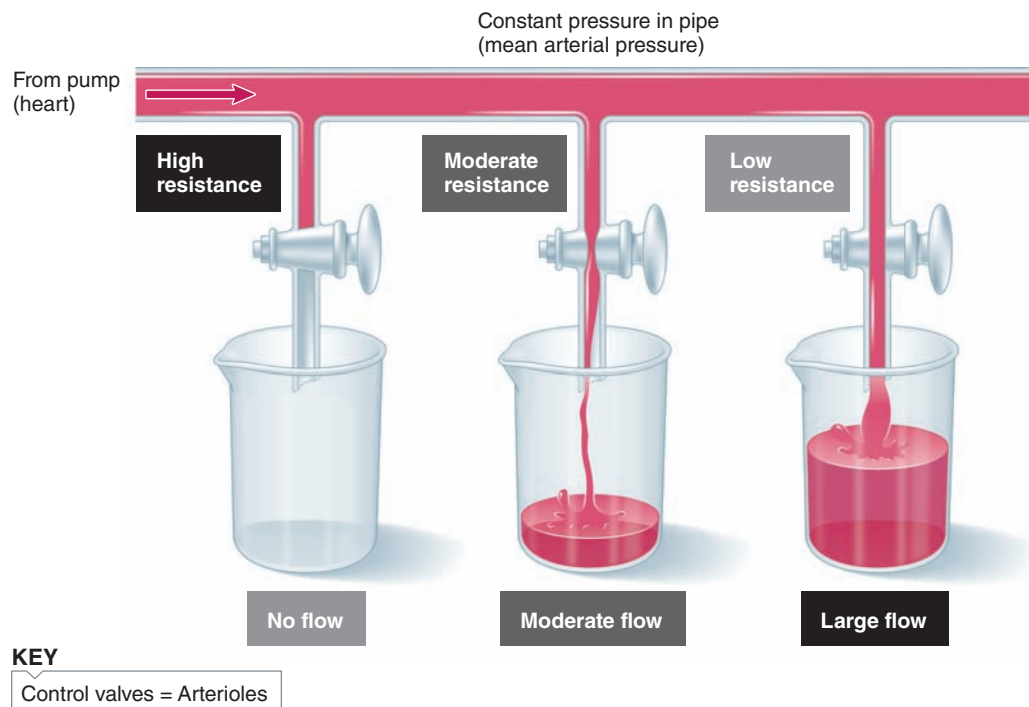
Local (intrinsic) controls are changes within an organ that alter the radius of the vessels and hence adjust blood flow through the organ by directly affecting the smooth muscle of the organ's arterioles. Local influences may be either chemical or physical. Local chemical influences on arteriolar radius include (1) local metabolic changes and (2) histamine release. Local physical influences include (1) myogenic response to stretch and (2) local application of heat or cold. Let us examine the role and mechanism of each of these local influences.

### Local metabolic influences on arteriolar radius help match blood flow with the organs' needs.

The most important local chemical influences on arteriolar smooth muscle are related to metabolic changes within a given organ. The influence of these local changes on arteriolar radius is important in matching blood flow through an organ with the organ's metabolic needs. Local metabolic controls are especially important in skeletal muscle and in the heart, the organs whose metabolic activity and need for blood supply normally vary most.

**ACTIVE HYPEREMIA** Arterioles lie within the organ they are supplying and can be acted on by local factors within the organ. During increased metabolic activity, such as when a skeletal muscle is contracting during exercise, local concentrations of several of the

organ's chemicals change. For example, the local  $O_2$  concentration decreases as the actively metabolizing cells use up more  $O_2$  to support oxidative phosphorylation for ATP production (see p. 30). This and other local chemical changes (such as increased  $CO_2$ ) produce local arteriolar dilation by triggering relaxation of the arteriolar smooth muscle in the vicinity. Local arteriolar vasodilation then increases blood flow to that particular area. This increased blood flow in response to enhanced tissue activity is called **active hyperemia** (*hyper* means "above normal"; *emia* means "blood"). When cells are more active metabolically, they need more blood to bring in  $O_2$  and nutrients and to remove metabolic wastes.



● **FIGURE 10-10** Flow rate as a function of resistance.



Conversely, when an organ, such as a relaxed muscle, is less active metabolically and thus has reduced needs for blood delivery, the resultant local chemical changes (for example, increased local O<sub>2</sub> concentration) bring about local arteriolar vasoconstriction and a subsequent reduction in blood flow to the area. Local metabolic changes can thus adjust blood flow as needed without involving nerves or hormones.

**ENDOTHELIAL DERIVED VASOACTIVE PARACRINES** The local chemical changes that bring about these “selfish” local adjustments in arteriolar caliber to match a tissue’s blood flow with its needs do not act directly on vascular smooth muscle to change its contractile state. Instead, endothelial cells, the single layer of specialized epithelial cells that line the lumen of all blood vessels, release paracrines (locally acting chemical messengers; see p. 92) in response to chemical changes in the cells’ environment (such as a reduction in O<sub>2</sub>). These vasoactive (“acting on vessels”) paracrines act on the underlying smooth muscle to alter its state of contraction, thus locally regulating arteriolar caliber.

Among the best studied of these vasoactive paracrines is **nitric oxide (NO)**, which brings about local arteriolar vasodilation by causing relaxation of arteriolar smooth muscle in the vicinity. NO is a small, highly reactive, short-lived gas molecule that once was known primarily as a toxic air pollutant. Yet studies have revealed an astonishing number of biological roles for NO, which is produced in many tissues besides endothelial cells. NO is one of the body’s most important messenger molecules, as shown by the range of functions identified for this chemical and listed in ▲ Table 10-2. As you can see, most areas of the body are influenced by this versatile intercellular messenger molecule.

Endothelial cells release other important paracrines besides NO. As an example, **endothelin** causes arteriolar smooth muscle contraction and is one of the most potent vasoconstrictors yet identified. Still other chemicals, released from the endothelium in response to chronic changes in blood flow to an organ, trigger long-term vascular changes that permanently influence blood flow to a region. For instance, **vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)** stimulates new vessel growth, a process known as **angiogenesis**.

#### Local histamine release pathologically dilates arterioles.

Histamine is another local chemical mediator that influences arteriolar smooth muscle, but it is not released in response to local metabolic changes and is not derived from endothelial cells. Although histamine normally does not participate in controlling blood flow, it is important in certain pathological conditions.



Histamine is synthesized and stored within special connective tissue cells in many organs and in certain types of circulating white blood cells. When organs are injured or during allergic reactions, histamine is released and acts as a paracrine in the damaged region (see p. 313). By promoting relaxation of arteriolar smooth muscle, histamine is the major cause of vasodilation in an injured area. The resultant increase in blood flow into the area

## ▲ Table 10-2 Functions of Nitric Oxide

- Causes relaxation of arteriolar smooth muscle. By means of this action, NO plays an important role in controlling blood flow through the tissues and in maintaining mean arterial blood pressure.
- Dilates the arterioles of the penis and clitoris, thus serving as the direct mediator of erection of these reproductive organs. Erection is accomplished by rapid engorgement of these organs with blood.
- Is used as chemical warfare against bacteria and cancer cells by macrophages, large phagocytic cells of the immune system.
- Interferes with platelet function and blood clotting at sites of vessel damage.
- Serves as a novel type of neurotransmitter in the brain and elsewhere.
- Plays a role in the changes underlying memory.
- By promoting relaxation of digestive-tract smooth muscle, helps regulate peristalsis, a type of contraction that pushes digestive tract contents forward.
- Relaxes the smooth muscle cells in the airways of the lungs, helping keep these passages open to facilitate movement of air in and out of the lungs.
- Modulates the filtering process involved in urine formation.
- Directs blood flow to O<sub>2</sub>-starved tissues.

produces the redness and contributes to the swelling seen with inflammatory responses (see Chapter 11 for further details).

#### The myogenic response of arterioles to stretch helps tissues autoregulate their blood flow.

Arteriolar smooth muscle is influenced by locally acting physical factors in addition to local chemical influences. Local physical influences include stretch and temperature changes, with the myogenic response to stretch being the most important physiologically.

Arteriolar smooth muscle responds to being passively stretched by myogenically increasing its tone via vasoconstriction, thereby acting to resist the initial passive stretch. Conversely, a reduction in arteriolar stretching decreases myogenic vessel tone by promoting vasodilation. The extent of passive stretch varies with the volume of blood delivered to the arterioles from the arteries, which depends on the mean arterial pressure (the pressure that drives blood into the arterioles). Mean arterial pressure is normally maintained within narrow limits, but if this driving pressure for some reason becomes abnormal, the myogenic response to stretch enables a tissue to resist changes in its own blood flow secondary to changes in mean arterial pressure by making appropriate adjustments in arteriolar radius. This process, known as **autoregulation**, helps keep tissue blood flow fairly constant despite rather wide deviations in mean arterial driving pressure (*auto* means “self”). For example, when mean arterial pressure falls (such as because of hemorrhage or a weakened heart), the driving force is reduced,

so blood flow to organs decreases. Because less blood is flowing through the arterioles, they are not stretched as much as normal. The arterioles respond to this reduced stretch by vasodilating. The increased flow through the vasodilated arterioles helps restore tissue blood flow toward normal despite the reduced driving pressure.



### Local heat application dilates arterioles and cold application constricts them.

The effect of temperature changes on arterioles can be exploited clinically. Heat application, by causing localized arteriolar vasodilation, is a useful therapeutic agent for promoting increased blood flow to an area. Conversely, applying ice packs to an inflamed area produces vasoconstriction, which reduces swelling by counteracting histamine-induced vasodilation.

This completes our discussion of the local control of arteriolar radius. Now let us shift attention to extrinsic control of arteriolar radius.

### Extrinsic sympathetic control of arteriolar radius is important in regulating blood pressure.

Extrinsic control of arteriolar radius includes both neural and hormonal influences, the effects of the sympathetic nervous system being the most important. Sympathetic nerve fibers supply arteriolar smooth muscle everywhere in the systemic circulation except in the brain. Recall that a certain level of ongoing sympathetic activity contributes to vascular tone. Increased sympathetic activity produces generalized arteriolar vasoconstriction, whereas decreased sympathetic activity leads to generalized arteriolar vasodilation. These widespread changes in arteriolar resistance bring about changes in mean arterial pressure because of their influence on total peripheral resistance, as follows.

**INFLUENCE OF TOTAL PERIPHERAL RESISTANCE ON MEAN ARTERIAL PRESSURE** To find the effect of changes in arteriolar resistance on mean arterial pressure, the formula  $F = \Delta P/R$  applies to the entire circulation as well as to a single vessel:

- $F$ . Looking at the circulatory system as a whole, flow ( $F$ ) through all the vessels in either the systemic or the pulmonary circulation is equal to the cardiac output.
- $\Delta P$ . The pressure gradient ( $\Delta P$ ) for the entire systemic circulation is the mean arterial pressure. ( $\Delta P$  equals the difference in pressure between the beginning and the end of the systemic circulatory system. The beginning pressure is the mean arterial pressure as the blood leaves the left ventricle at an average of 93 mm Hg. The end pressure in the right atrium is 0 mm Hg. Therefore,  $\Delta P = 93$  minus  $0 = 93$  mm Hg, which is equivalent to the mean arterial pressure.)
- $R$ . The total resistance ( $R$ ) offered by all the systemic peripheral vessels together is the **total peripheral resistance**. By far the greatest percentage of the total peripheral resistance is due to arteriolar resistance, because arterioles are the primary resistance vessels.

Therefore, for the entire systemic circulation, rearranging

$$F = \Delta P/R$$

to

$$\Delta P = F \times R$$

gives us the equation

$$\text{Mean arterial pressure (MAP)} = \text{cardiac output (CO)} \times \text{total peripheral resistance (TPR)}$$

Thus, the extent of total peripheral resistance offered collectively by all the systemic arterioles influences the mean arterial pressure immensely. A dam provides an analogy to this relationship. At the same time a dam restricts the flow of water downstream, it increases the pressure upstream by elevating the water level in the reservoir behind the dam. Similarly, generalized, sympathetically induced vasoconstriction reflexly reduces blood flow downstream to the organs while elevating the upstream mean arterial pressure, thereby increasing the main driving force for blood flow to all the organs.

These effects seem counterproductive. Why increase the driving force for flow to the organs by increasing arterial blood pressure while reducing flow to the organs by narrowing the vessels supplying them? In effect, the sympathetically induced arteriolar responses help maintain the appropriate driving pressure head (that is, the mean arterial pressure) to all organs. The extent to which each organ actually receives blood flow is determined by local arteriolar adjustments that override the sympathetic constrictor effect. If all arterioles were dilated, blood pressure would fall substantially, so there would not be an adequate driving force for blood flow. An analogy is the pressure head for water in the pipes in your home. If the water pressure is adequate, you can selectively obtain satisfactory water flow at any of the faucets by turning the appropriate handle to the open position. If the water pressure in the pipes is too low, however, you cannot obtain satisfactory flow at any faucet, even if you turn the handle to the maximally open position. Tonic sympathetic activity thus constricts most vessels (with the exception of those in the brain) to help maintain a pressure head on which organs can draw as needed through local mechanisms that control arteriolar radius.

No vasoconstriction occurs in the brain. It is important that cerebral arterioles are not reflexly constricted by neural influences, because brain blood flow must remain constant to meet the brain's continuous need for  $O_2$ , no matter what is going on elsewhere in the body. Cerebral vessels are almost entirely controlled by local mechanisms that maintain a constant blood flow to support a constant level of brain metabolic activity. In fact, reflex vasoconstrictor activity in the remainder of the cardiovascular system is aimed at maintaining an adequate pressure head for blood flow to the vital brain.

Thus, sympathetic activity contributes in an important way to maintaining mean arterial pressure, ensuring an adequate driving force for blood flow to the brain at the expense of organs that can better withstand reduced blood flow. Other organs that really need additional blood, such as active muscles (including active heart muscle), obtain it through local controls that override the sympathetic effect.

**LOCAL CONTROLS OVERRIDING SYMPATHETIC VASOCONSTRICTION** Skeletal and cardiac muscles have the most powerful local control mechanisms with which to override generalized sympathetic vasoconstriction. For example, if you are pedaling a bicycle, the increased activity in the skeletal muscles of your legs brings about an overriding local, metabolically induced vasodilation in those particular muscles, despite the generalized sympathetic vasoconstriction that accompanies exercise. As a result, more blood flows through your leg muscles but not through your inactive arm muscles.

**NO PARASYMPATHETIC INNERVATION TO ARTERIOLES** Arterioles have no significant parasympathetic innervation, with the exception of the abundant parasympathetic vasodilator supply to the arterioles of the penis and clitoris. The rapid, profuse vasodilation induced by parasympathetic stimulation in these organs (by means of promoting release of NO) is largely responsible for accomplishing erection. Vasodilation elsewhere is produced by decreasing sympathetic vasoconstrictor activity below its tonic level. When mean arterial pressure rises above normal, reflex reduction in sympathetic vasoconstrictor activity accomplishes generalized arteriolar vasodilation to help bring the driving pressure down toward normal.

### The medullary cardiovascular control center and several hormones regulate blood pressure.

The main region of the brain that adjusts sympathetic output to the arterioles is the **cardiovascular control center** in the medulla of the brain stem. This is the integrating center for blood pressure regulation (described in further detail later in this chapter). Several other brain regions also influence blood distribution, the most notable being the hypothalamus, which, as part of its temperature-regulating function, controls blood flow to the skin to adjust heat loss to the environment.

In addition to neural reflex activity, several hormones extrinsically influence arteriolar radius. These hormones include the major adrenal medullary hormone epinephrine, which generally reinforces the sympathetic nervous system in most organs, as well as vasopressin and angiotensin II, which are important in controlling fluid balance. Vasopressin is primarily involved in maintaining water balance by regulating the amount of water the kidneys retain for the body during urine formation (see p. 406). Angiotensin II is part of a hormonal pathway, the *renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system*, which is important in regulating the body's salt balance. This pathway promotes salt conservation during urine formation and leads to water retention because salt exerts a water-holding osmotic effect in the ECF (see p. 392). Thus, both these hormones play important roles in maintaining the body's fluid balance, which in turn is an important determinant of plasma volume and blood pressure.

In addition, both vasopressin and angiotensin II are potent vasoconstrictors. Their role in this regard is especially crucial during hemorrhage. A sudden loss of blood reduces the plasma volume, which triggers increased secretion of both these hormones to help restore plasma volume. Their vasoconstrictor effect also helps maintain blood pressure despite abrupt loss of

plasma volume. (The functions and control of these hormones are discussed more thoroughly in later chapters.)

This completes our discussion of the various factors that affect total peripheral resistance, the most important of which are controlled adjustments in arteriolar radius. These factors are summarized in ● Figure 10-11.

We now turn to the next vessels in the vascular tree, the capillaries.

## Capillaries

Capillaries, the sites for exchange of materials between blood and tissue cells, branch extensively to bring blood within the reach of essentially every cell.

### Capillaries are ideally suited to serve as sites of exchange.

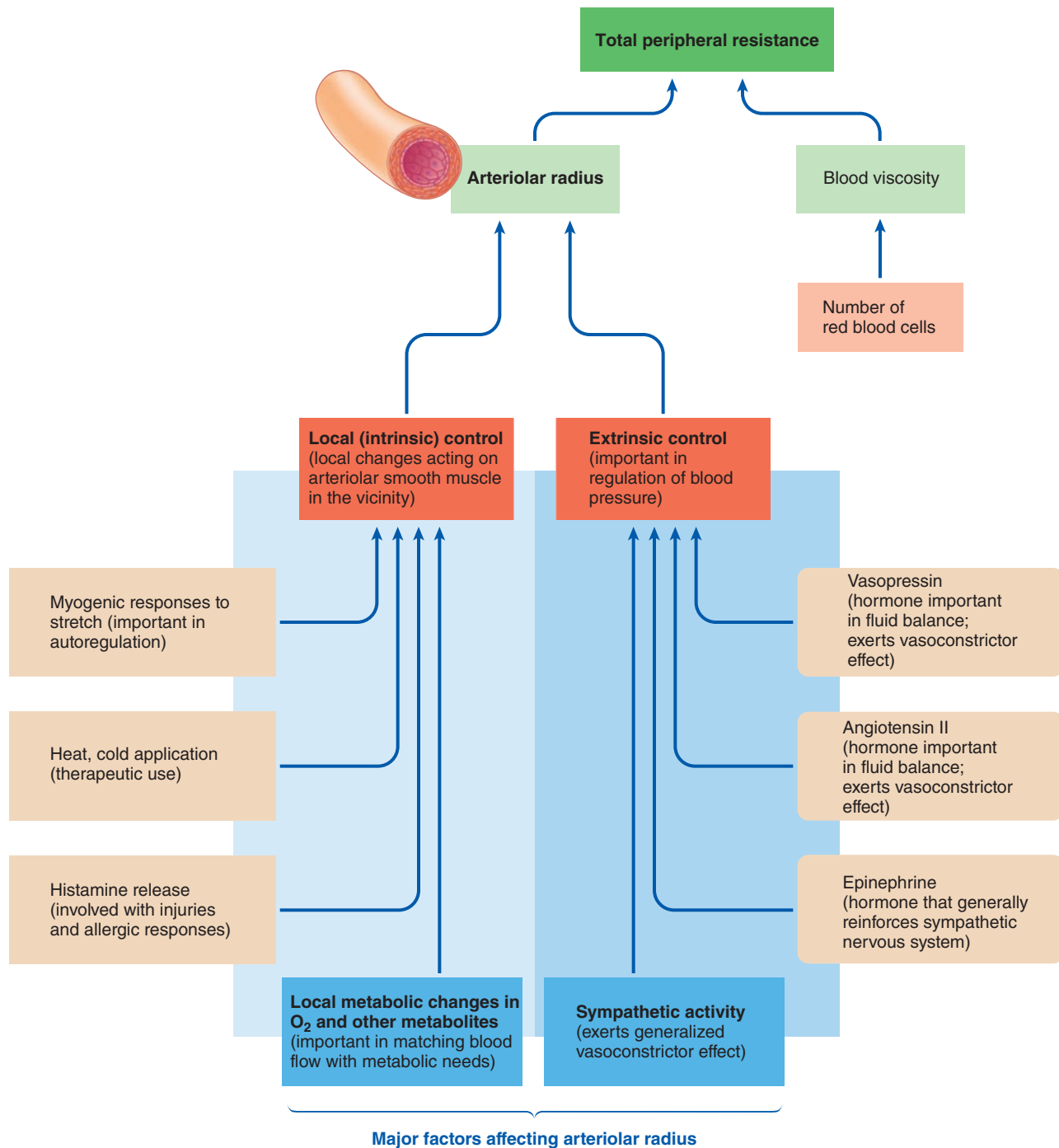
There are no carrier-mediated transport systems across capillaries, with the exception of those in the brain that play a role in the blood-brain barrier (see p. 112). Materials are exchanged across capillary walls mainly by diffusion.

**FACTORS THAT ENHANCE DIFFUSION ACROSS CAPILLARIES** Capillaries are ideally suited to enhance diffusion, in accordance with Fick's law of diffusion (see p. 51). They minimize diffusion distances while maximizing surface area and time available for exchange, as follows:

1. Diffusing molecules have only a short distance to travel between blood and surrounding cells because of the thin capillary wall and small capillary diameter, coupled with the proximity of every cell to a capillary. This short distance is important because the rate of diffusion slows down as the diffusion distance increases.

- a. Capillary walls are very thin (1  $\mu\text{m}$  in thickness; in contrast, the diameter of a human hair is 100  $\mu\text{m}$ ). Capillaries consist of only a single layer of flat endothelial cells—essentially the lining of the other vessel types (see ▲ Table 10-1, p. 266). No smooth muscle or connective tissue is present.
- b. Each capillary is so narrow (7  $\mu\text{m}$  average diameter) that red blood cells (8  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter) have to squeeze through in single file (● Figure 10-12). Consequently, plasma contents either are in direct contact with the inside of the capillary wall or are only a short diffusing distance from it.
- c. Researchers estimate that because of extensive capillary branching, scarcely any cell is farther than 0.01 cm (4/1000 in.) from a capillary.

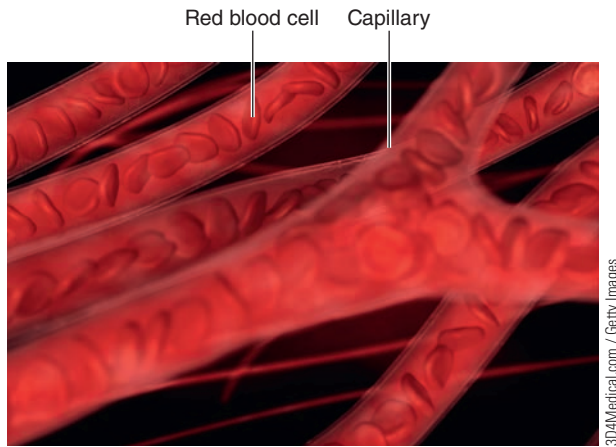
2. Because capillaries are distributed in such incredible numbers (estimates range from 10 billion to 40 billion capillaries), a tremendous total surface area is available for exchange (an estimated 600  $\text{m}^2$ ). Despite this large number of capillaries, at any point in time these microscopic sized vessels contain only 5% of the total blood volume (250 ml out of a total of 5000 ml). As a result, a small volume of blood is exposed to an extensive sur-



● **FIGURE 10-11 Factors affecting total peripheral resistance.** The primary determinant of total peripheral resistance is the adjustable arteriolar radius. Two major categories of factors influence arteriolar radius: (1) local (intrinsic) control, which is primarily important in matching blood flow through a tissue with the tissue's metabolic needs and is mediated by local factors acting on the arteriolar smooth muscle, and (2) extrinsic control, which is important in regulating blood pressure and is mediated primarily by sympathetic influence on arteriolar smooth muscle.

face area. If all capillary surfaces were stretched out in a flat sheet and the volume of blood contained within the capillaries was spread over the top, this would be roughly equivalent to spreading a half pint of paint over the floor of a high school gymnasium. Imagine how thin the paint layer would be!

3. Blood flows more slowly in the capillaries than elsewhere in the circulatory system. The extensive capillary branching is responsible for this slow velocity of blood flow through the capillaries. Let us see why blood slows down in the capillaries.

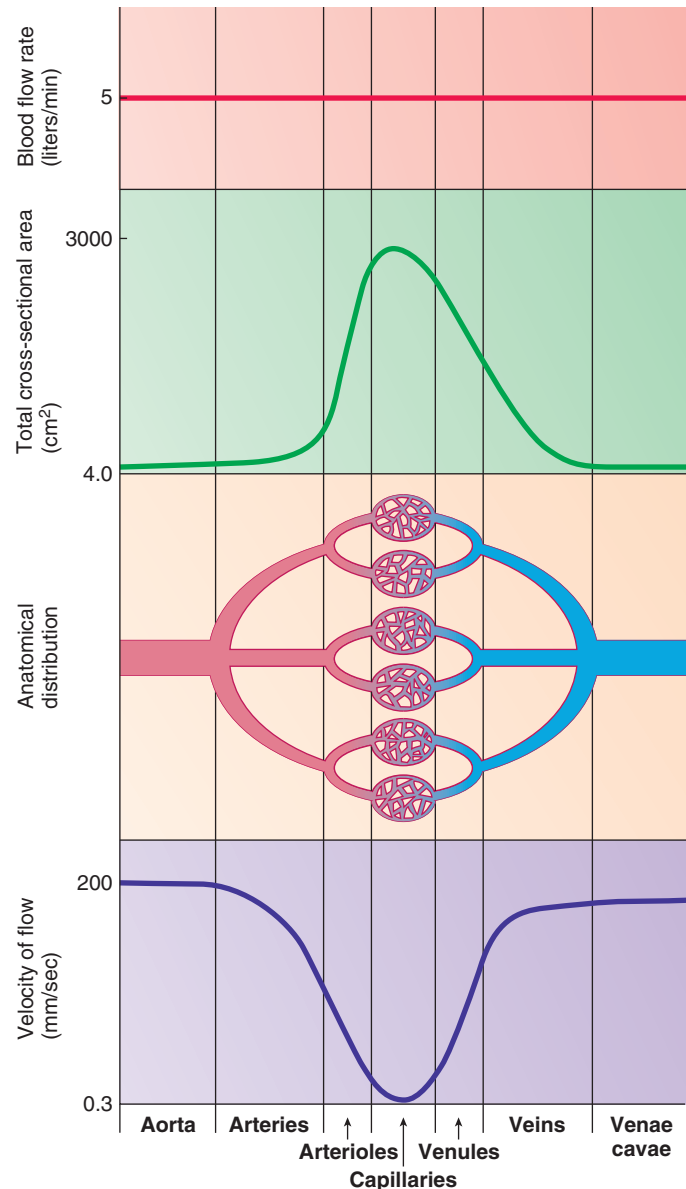


● **FIGURE 10-12 Capillary bed.** The capillaries are so narrow that red blood cells must pass through the capillary bed in single file.

**SLOW VELOCITY OF FLOW THROUGH CAPILLARIES** First, we need to clarify a potentially confusing point. The term *flow* can be used in two contexts—flow rate and velocity of flow. The *flow rate* refers to the *volume* of blood per unit of time flowing through a given segment of the circulatory system (this is the flow we have been talking about in relation to the pressure gradient and resistance). The *velocity of flow* is the *speed*, or distance per unit of time, with which blood flows forward through a given segment of the circulatory system. Because the circulatory system is a closed system, the volume of blood flowing through any level of the system must equal the cardiac output. For example, if the heart pumps out 5 L of blood per minute, and 5 L per minute return to the heart, then 5 L per minute must flow through the arteries, arterioles, capillaries, and veins. Therefore, the flow rate is the same at all levels of the circulatory system.

However, the velocity with which blood flows through the different segments of the vascular tree varies, because velocity of flow is inversely proportional to the total cross-sectional area of all vessels at any given level of the circulatory system. Even though the cross-sectional area of each capillary is extremely small compared to that of the large aorta, the total cross-sectional area of all capillaries added together is about 750 times greater than the cross-sectional area of the aorta because there are so many capillaries. Accordingly, blood slows considerably as it passes through the capillaries (● Figure 10-13). This slow velocity allows adequate time for exchange of nutrients and metabolic end products between blood and tissue cells, which is the sole purpose of the entire circulatory system. As the capillaries rejoin to form veins, the total cross-sectional area is again reduced, and the velocity of blood flow increases as blood returns to the heart.

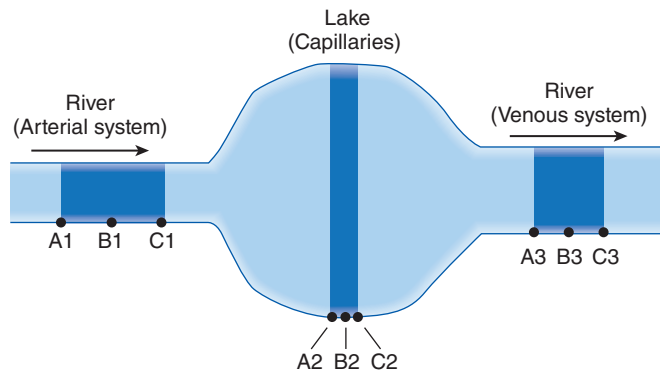
As an analogy, consider a river (the arterial system) that widens into a lake (the capillaries) and then narrows into a river again (the venous system) (● Figure 10-14). The flow rate is the same throughout the length of this body of water; that is, identical volumes of water are flowing past all points along the bank of the river and lake. However, the velocity of flow is slower in the wide lake than in the narrow river because the identical volume of water, now spread out over a larger cross-sectional area, moves forward a shorter distance in the wide lake than in the



● **FIGURE 10-13 Comparison of blood flow rate and velocity of flow in relation to total cross-sectional area.** The blood flow rate (red curve) is identical through all levels of the circulatory system and is equal to the cardiac output (5 L per minute at rest). The velocity of flow (purple curve) varies throughout the vascular tree and is inversely proportional to the total cross-sectional area (green curve) of all the vessels at a given level. Note that the velocity of flow is slowest in the capillaries, which have the largest total cross-sectional area.

narrow river during a given period. You could readily observe the forward movement of water in the swift-flowing river, but the forward motion of water in the lake would be unnoticeable.

Also, because of the capillaries' tremendous total cross-sectional area, the resistance offered by all capillaries is lower than that offered by all arterioles, even though each capillary has a smaller radius than each arteriole. For this reason, the arterioles contribute more to total peripheral resistance. Furthermore, arteriolar caliber (and, accordingly resistance) is subject to control, whereas capillary caliber cannot be adjusted.



● **FIGURE 10-14 Relationship between total cross-sectional area and velocity of flow.** The three dark blue areas represent equal volumes of water. During 1 minute, this volume of water moves forward from points A to points C. Therefore, an identical volume of water flows past points B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>, and B<sub>3</sub> during this minute; that is, the flow rate is the same at all points along the length of this body of water. However, during that minute the identical volume of water moves forward a shorter distance in the wide lake (A<sub>2</sub> to C<sub>2</sub>) than in the narrower river (A<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>1</sub> and A<sub>3</sub> to C<sub>3</sub>). Thus, velocity of flow is slower in the lake than in the river. Similarly, velocity of flow is slower in the capillaries than in the arterial and venous systems.

### Water-filled capillary pores permit passage of small, water-soluble substances.

Diffusion across capillary walls also depends on the walls' permeability to the materials being exchanged. The endothelial cells forming the capillary walls fit together like a jigsaw puzzle, but the closeness of the fit varies considerably among organs, as the following examples illustrate:

- At the tightest extreme, the endothelial cells in brain capillaries are joined by tight junctions (see p. 48). These junctions prevent passage of materials between these cells and thus constitute part of the protective blood–brain barrier (see p. 112).
- In most capillaries (for example, in skeletal muscle and in lung tissue), the endothelial cells are closely but not tightly joined, and narrow, water-filled **pores** exist at the junctions between these cells (● Figure 10-15). Small, water-soluble substances such as ions, glucose, and amino acids can readily pass through the pores, but large, water-soluble materials such as plasma proteins are kept from passing through. Lipid-soluble substances, such as O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub>, can readily pass through the endothelial cells themselves by dissolving in the lipid bilayer barrier of the plasma membrane surrounding the cells.
- In addition to having the narrow pores between endothelial cells, the leakier capillaries of the kidneys and intestines have larger holes known as **fenestrations** (*fenestra* means “window”) that extend through the thickness of the endothelial cells themselves. These through-the-cell passageways are important in the rapid movement of fluid across the capillaries in these organs during the formation of urine and during the absorption of a digested meal, respectively.

For convenience, in the future we lump the between-cell pores and the through-the-cell fenestrations into the single category of *capillary pores*.

Scientists traditionally considered the capillary wall a passive sieve, like a brick wall with permanent gaps in the mortar acting as pores. Recent studies, however, suggest that endothelial cells can actively change to regulate capillary permeability; that is, in response to appropriate signals, the “bricks” can readjust themselves to vary the size of the holes between them. Thus, the degree of leakiness does not necessarily remain constant for a given capillary bed. For example, histamine increases capillary permeability by triggering contractile responses in endothelial cells to widen the intercellular gaps. This is not a muscular contraction, because no smooth muscle cells are present in capillaries; it is the result of an actin–myosin contractile apparatus in the nonmuscular capillary endothelial cells. Because of these enlarged pores, the affected capillary wall is leakier. As a result, normally retained plasma proteins escape into the surrounding tissue, where they exert an osmotic effect. Along with histamine-induced vasodilation, the resulting additional local fluid retention contributes to inflammatory swelling.

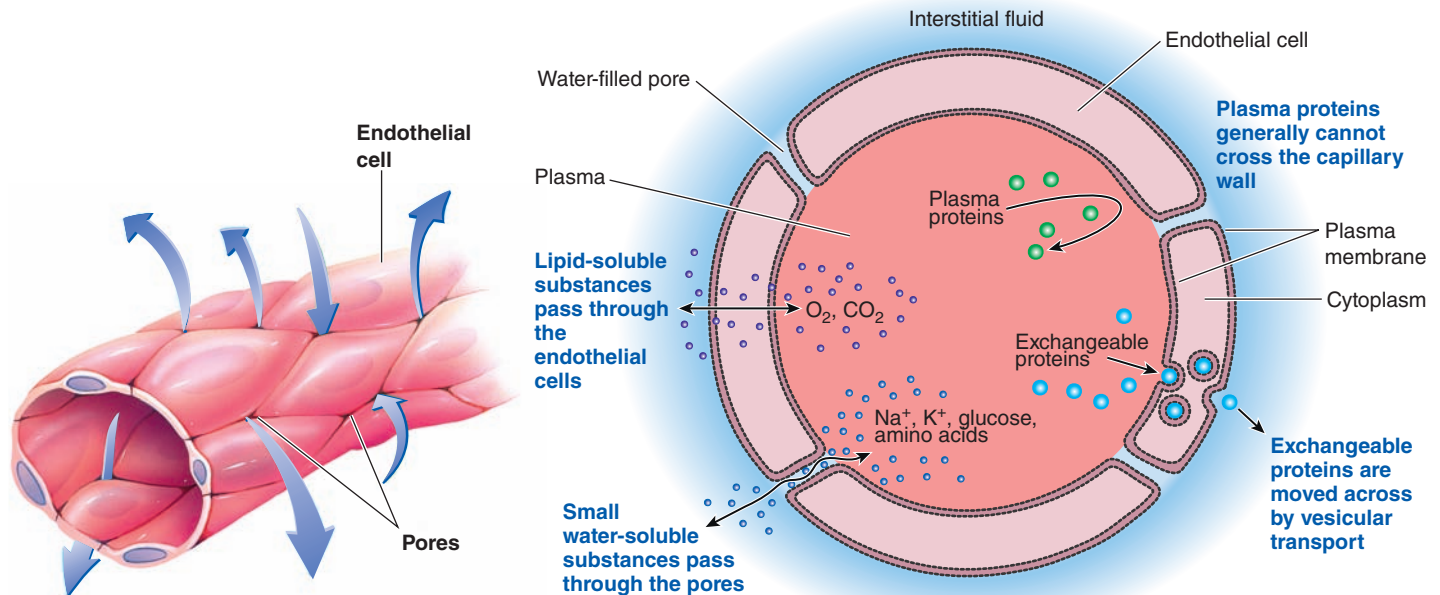
Vesicular transport also plays a limited role in the passage of materials across the capillary wall. Large non-lipid-soluble molecules, such as protein hormones that must be exchanged between blood and surrounding tissues, are transported from one side of the capillary wall to the other in endocytic–exocytic vesicles (see p. 62).

### Interstitial fluid is a passive intermediary between blood and cells.

Exchanges between blood and tissue cells are not made directly. Interstitial fluid, the true internal environment in immediate contact with the cells, acts as the go-between. Only 20% of the ECF circulates as plasma. The remaining 80% consists of interstitial fluid, which bathes all cells in the body. Cells exchange materials directly with interstitial fluid, with the type and extent of exchange being governed by the properties of cellular plasma membranes. Movement across the plasma membrane may be either passive (that is, by diffusion down electrochemical gradients or by carrier-mediated facilitated diffusion) or active (that is, by carrier-mediated active transport or by vesicular transport) (see ▲ Table 3-2, p. 63).

In contrast, exchanges across the capillary wall between the plasma and the interstitial fluid are largely passive. The only transport across this barrier that requires energy is the limited vesicular transport. Because capillary walls are highly permeable, exchange is so thorough that the interstitial fluid takes on essentially the same composition as incoming arterial blood, with the exception of the large plasma proteins that usually do not escape from the blood. Therefore, when we speak of exchanges between blood and tissue cells, we tacitly include interstitial fluid as a passive intermediary.

Exchanges between blood and surrounding tissues across the capillary walls are accomplished in two ways: (1) passive diffusion down concentration gradients, the primary mechanism for exchanging individual solutes, and (2) bulk flow, a process that fills the different function of determining the distribution of the ECF volume between the vascular and the in-



(a) Typical capillary

(b) Transport across a typical capillary wall

● **FIGURE 10-15 Exchanges across a capillary wall.** (a) Slitlike gaps between adjacent endothelial cells form pores within the capillary wall. (b) As depicted in this cross section of a capillary wall, small water-soluble substances are exchanged between the plasma and the interstitial fluid by passing through the water-filled pores, whereas lipid-soluble substances are exchanged across the capillary wall by passing through the endothelial cells. Proteins to be moved across are exchanged by vesicular transport. (The space between the interior and the exterior layers of the endothelial cell is exaggerated to show vesicular transport.) Plasma proteins generally cannot escape from the plasma across the capillary wall.

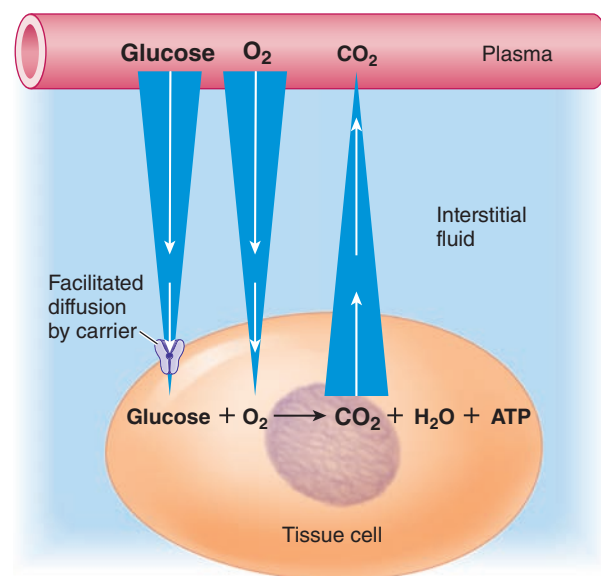
terstitial fluid compartments. We now examine each of these mechanisms in more detail, starting with diffusion.

### Diffusion across the capillary walls is important in solute exchange.

Because most capillary walls have no carrier-mediated transport systems, solutes cross primarily by diffusion down concentration gradients. The chemical composition of arterial blood is carefully regulated to maintain the concentrations of individual solutes at levels that promote each solute's movement in the appropriate direction across the capillary walls. The reconditioning organs continuously add nutrients and  $O_2$  and remove  $CO_2$  and other wastes as blood passes through them. Meanwhile, cells constantly use up supplies and generate metabolic wastes. As cells use up  $O_2$  and glucose, the blood constantly brings in fresh supplies of these vital materials, maintaining concentration gradients that favor the net diffusion of these substances from blood to cells. Simultaneously, ongoing net diffusion of  $CO_2$  and other metabolic wastes from cells to blood is maintained by the continual production of these wastes at the cell level and by their constant removal by the circulating blood (● Figure 10-16).

Because the capillary wall does not limit the passage of any constituent except plasma proteins, the extent of exchanges for each solute is independently determined by the magnitude of its concentration gradient between blood and surrounding cells. As cells increase their level of activity, they use up more  $O_2$  and

produce more  $CO_2$ , among other things. This creates larger concentration gradients for  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  between these cells and blood, so more  $O_2$  diffuses out of the blood into the cells and more  $CO_2$  proceeds in the opposite direction, to help support the increased metabolic activity.



● **FIGURE 10-16 Independent exchange of individual solutes down their own concentration gradients across the capillary wall.**

## Bulk flow across the capillary walls is important in extracellular fluid distribution.

The second means by which exchange is accomplished across capillary walls is bulk flow. A volume of protein-free plasma actually filters out of the capillary, mixes with the surrounding interstitial fluid, and then is reabsorbed. This process is called **bulk flow** because the various constituents of the fluid (water and all solutes) are moving in bulk, or as a unit, in contrast to the discrete diffusion of individual solutes down concentration gradients.

The capillary wall acts like a sieve, with fluid moving through its water-filled pores. When pressure inside the capillary exceeds pressure on the outside, fluid is pushed out through the pores in a process known as **ultrafiltration**. Most plasma proteins are retained on the inside during this process because of the pores' filtering effect, although a few do escape. Because all other constituents in plasma are dragged along as a unit with the volume of fluid leaving the capillary, the filtrate is essentially a protein-free plasma. When inward-driving pressures exceed outward pressures across the capillary wall, net inward movement of fluid from the interstitial fluid into the capillaries takes place through the pores, a process known as **reabsorption**.

**FORCES INFLUENCING BULK FLOW** Bulk flow occurs because of differences in the hydrostatic and the colloid osmotic pressures between plasma and interstitial fluid. Even though pressure differences exist between plasma and surrounding fluid elsewhere in the circulatory system, only the capillaries have pores that let fluids pass through. Four forces influence fluid movement across the capillary wall (● Figure 10-17):

**1. Capillary blood pressure ( $P_C$ )** is the fluid or hydrostatic pressure exerted on the inside of the capillary walls by blood. This pressure tends to force fluid *out* of the capillaries into the interstitial fluid. By the level of the capillaries, blood pressure has dropped substantially because of frictional losses in pressure in the high-resistance arterioles upstream. On average, the hydrostatic pressure is 37 mm Hg at the arteriolar end of a tissue capillary (compared to a mean arterial pressure of 93 mm Hg). It de-

clines even further, to 17 mm Hg, at the capillary's venular end because of further frictional loss coupled with the exit of fluid through ultrafiltration along the capillary's length (see ● Figure 10-8, p. 269).

**2. Plasma-colloid osmotic pressure ( $\pi_p$ )** is a force caused by colloidal dispersion of plasma proteins (see p. A-9); it encourages fluid movement *into* the capillaries. Because plasma proteins remain in the plasma rather than entering the interstitial fluid, a protein concentration difference exists between the plasma and the interstitial fluid. Accordingly, a water concentration difference also exists between these two regions. Plasma has a higher protein concentration and a lower water concentration than interstitial fluid does. This difference exerts an osmotic effect that tends to move water from the area of higher water concentration in interstitial fluid to the area of lower water concentration (or higher protein concentration) in plasma (see p. 53). The other plasma constituents do not exert an osmotic effect, because they readily pass through the capillary wall, so their concentrations are equal in plasma and interstitial fluid. Plasma-colloid osmotic pressure averages 25 mm Hg.

**3. Interstitial fluid hydrostatic pressure ( $P_{IF}$ )** is the fluid pressure exerted on the outside of the capillary wall by interstitial fluid. This pressure tends to force fluid *into* the capillaries. The value of this pressure varies among tissues and is either at, slightly above, or slightly below atmospheric pressure. For purposes of illustration, we will say it is 1 mm Hg.

**4. Interstitial fluid-colloid osmotic pressure ( $\pi_{IF}$ )** is another force that does not normally contribute significantly to bulk flow. The small fraction of plasma proteins that leak across the capillary walls into the interstitial spaces are normally returned to the blood by the lymphatic system. Therefore, the protein concentration in the interstitial fluid is extremely low, and the interstitial fluid-colloid osmotic pressure is essentially zero. If plasma proteins pathologically leak into the interstitial fluid, however, as they do when histamine widens the capillary pores during tissue injury, the leaked proteins exert an osmotic effect that tends to promote movement of fluid *out* of the capillaries into the interstitial fluid.

### FORCES AT ARTERIOLAR END OF CAPILLARY

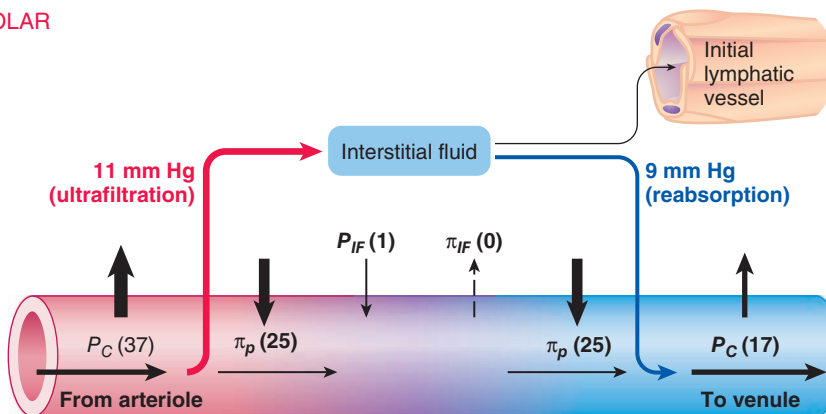
• Outward pressure

$$\begin{array}{r} P_C \quad 37 \\ \pi_{IF} \quad 0 \\ \hline 37 \end{array}$$

• Inward pressure

$$\begin{array}{r} \pi_p \quad 25 \\ P_{IF} \quad 1 \\ \hline 26 \end{array}$$

**Net outward pressure of 11 mm Hg = Ultrafiltration pressure**



### FORCES AT VENULAR END OF CAPILLARY

• Outward pressure

$$\begin{array}{r} P_C \quad 17 \\ \pi_{IF} \quad 0 \\ \hline 17 \end{array}$$

• Inward pressure

$$\begin{array}{r} \pi_p \quad 25 \\ P_{IF} \quad 1 \\ \hline 26 \end{array}$$

**Net inward pressure of 9 mm Hg = Reabsorption pressure**

All values are given in mm Hg.

Blood capillary

● **FIGURE 10-17 Bulk flow across the capillary wall.** Ultrafiltration occurs at the arteriolar end and reabsorption occurs at the venule end of the capillary as a result of imbalances in the physical forces acting across the capillary wall.



Therefore, the two pressures that tend to force fluid out of the capillary are capillary blood pressure and interstitial fluid–colloid osmotic pressure. The two opposing pressures that tend to force fluid into the capillary are plasma–colloid osmotic pressure and interstitial fluid hydrostatic pressure. Now let us analyze the fluid movement that occurs across a capillary wall because of imbalances in these opposing physical forces (● Figure 10-17).

**NET EXCHANGE OF FLUID ACROSS THE CAPILLARY WALL** Net exchange at a given point across the capillary wall can be calculated using the following equation:

$$\text{Net exchange pressure} = (P_C + \pi_{IF}) - (\pi_P + P_{IF})$$

(outward pressure)      (inward pressure)

A positive net exchange pressure (when the outward pressure exceeds the inward pressure) represents an ultrafiltration pressure. A negative net exchange pressure (when the inward pressure exceeds the outward pressure) represents a reabsorption pressure.

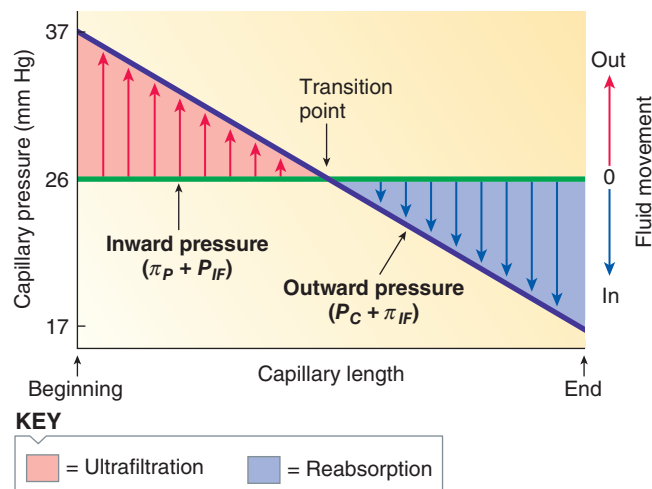
At the arteriolar end of the capillary, the outward pressure totals 37 mm Hg, whereas the inward pressure totals 26 mm Hg, for a net outward pressure of 11 mm Hg. Ultrafiltration takes place at the beginning of the capillary as this outward pressure gradient forces a protein-free filtrate through the capillary pores.

By the time the venular end of the capillary is reached, the capillary blood pressure has dropped but the other pressures have remained essentially constant. At this point, the outward pressure has fallen to a total of 17 mm Hg, whereas the total inward pressure is still 26 mm Hg, for a net inward pressure of 9 mm Hg. Reabsorption of fluid takes place as this inward pressure gradient forces fluid back into the capillary at its venular end.

Ultrafiltration and reabsorption, collectively known as *bulk flow*, are thus the result of a shift in the balance between the passive physical forces acting across the capillary wall. No active forces or local energy expenditures are involved in the bulk exchange of fluid between the plasma and the surrounding interstitial fluid. With only minor contributions from the interstitial fluid forces, ultrafiltration occurs at the beginning of the capillary because capillary blood pressure exceeds plasma–colloid osmotic pressure, whereas by the end of the capillary, reabsorption takes place because blood pressure has fallen below osmotic pressure.

It is important to realize that we have taken “snapshots” at two points—at the beginning and at the end—in a hypothetical capillary. Actually, blood pressure gradually diminishes along the length of the capillary so that progressively diminishing quantities of fluid are filtered out in the first half of the vessel and progressively increasing quantities of fluid are reabsorbed in the last half (● Figure 10-18).

**ROLE OF BULK FLOW** Bulk flow does not play an important role in the exchange of individual solutes between blood and tissues, because the quantity of solutes moved across the capillary wall by bulk flow is extremely small compared to the larger transfer



● **FIGURE 10-18** Net filtration and net reabsorption along the vessel length. The inward pressure ( $\pi_P + P_{IF}$ ) remains constant throughout the length of the capillary, whereas the outward pressure ( $P_C + \pi_{IF}$ ) progressively declines throughout the capillary’s length due to a gradual decrease in  $P_C$ . In the first half of the vessel, where the declining outward pressure still exceeds the constant inward pressure, progressively diminishing quantities of fluid are filtered out (*upward red arrows*). In the last half of the vessel, progressively increasing quantities of fluid are reabsorbed (*downward blue arrows*) as the declining outward pressure falls farther below the constant inward pressure.

of solutes by diffusion. The composition of the fluid filtered out of the capillary is essentially the same as the composition of the fluid that is reabsorbed. Thus, ultrafiltration and reabsorption are not important in the exchange of nutrients and wastes. Bulk flow is extremely important, however, in regulating the distribution of ECF between the plasma and the interstitial fluid. Maintenance of proper arterial blood pressure depends in part on an appropriate volume of circulating blood. If plasma volume is reduced (for example, by hemorrhage), blood pressure falls. The resultant lowering of capillary blood pressure alters the balance of forces across the capillary walls. Because the net outward pressure is decreased while the net inward pressure remains unchanged, extra fluid is shifted from the interstitial compartment into the plasma as a result of reduced filtration and increased reabsorption. The extra fluid soaked up from the interstitial fluid provides additional fluid for the plasma, temporarily compensating for the loss of blood. Meanwhile, reflex mechanisms acting on the heart and blood vessels (described later) also come into play to help maintain blood pressure until long-term mechanisms, such as thirst (and its satisfaction) and reduction of urinary output, can restore the fluid volume to completely compensate for the loss.

Conversely, if the plasma volume becomes overexpanded, as with excessive fluid intake, the resulting rise in capillary blood pressure forces extra fluid from the capillaries into the interstitial fluid, temporarily relieving the expanded plasma volume until the excess fluid can be eliminated from the body by long-term measures, such as increased urinary output.

These internal fluid shifts between the two ECF compartments occur automatically and immediately whenever the balance of forces acting across the capillary walls is changed; they

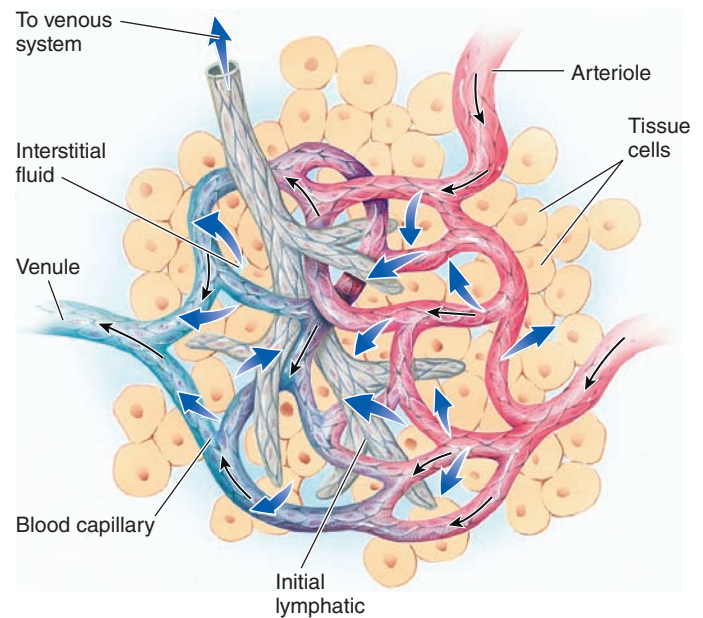
provide a temporary mechanism to help keep plasma volume fairly constant. In the process of restoring plasma volume to an appropriate level, interstitial fluid volume fluctuates, but it is more important that plasma volume be kept constant to ensure that the circulatory system functions effectively.

### The lymphatic system is an accessory route by which interstitial fluid can be returned to the blood.

Even under normal circumstances, slightly more fluid is filtered out of the capillaries into the interstitial fluid than is reabsorbed from the interstitial fluid back into the plasma. On average, the net ultrafiltration pressure starts at 11 mm Hg at the beginning of the capillary, whereas the net reabsorption pressure only reaches 9 mm Hg by the vessel's end (see ● Figure 10-17). Because of this pressure differential, on average more fluid is filtered out of the first half of the capillary than is reabsorbed in its last half. The extra fluid filtered out as a result of this filtration–reabsorption imbalance is picked up by the **lymphatic system**. This extensive network of one-way vessels provides an accessory route by which fluid can be returned from the interstitial fluid to the blood. The lymphatic system functions much like a storm sewer that picks up and carries away excess rainwater so that it does not accumulate and flood an area.

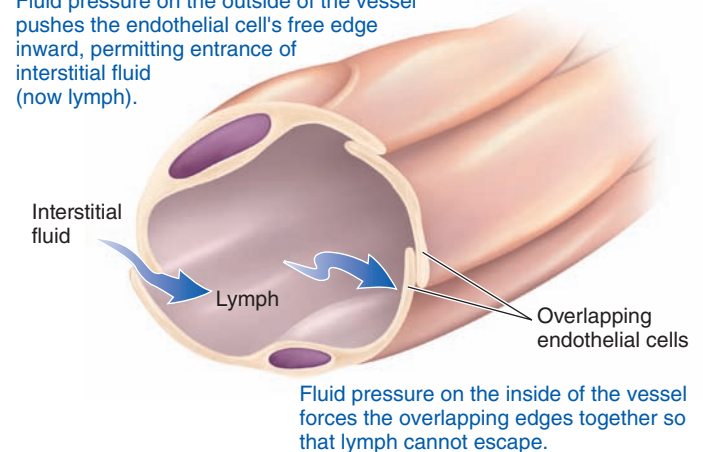
**PICKUP AND FLOW OF LYMPH** Small, blind-ended terminal lymph vessels known as **initial lymphatics** permeate almost every tissue of the body (● Figure 10-19a). The endothelial cells forming the walls of initial lymphatics slightly overlap like shingles on a roof, with their overlapping edges being free instead of attached to the surrounding cells. This arrangement creates one-way, valvelike openings in the vessel wall. Fluid pressure on the outside of the vessel pushes the innermost edge of a pair of overlapping edges inward, creating a gap between the edges (that is, opening the valve). This opening permits interstitial fluid to enter (● Figure 10-19b). Once interstitial fluid enters a lymphatic vessel, it is called **lymph**. Fluid pressure on the inside forces the overlapping edges together, closing the valves so that lymph does not escape. These lymphatic valvelike openings are larger than the pores in blood capillaries. Consequently, large particles in the interstitial fluid, such as escaped plasma proteins and bacteria, can gain access to initial lymphatics but are excluded from blood capillaries.

Initial lymphatics converge to form larger and larger **lymph vessels**, which eventually empty into the venous system near where the blood enters the right atrium (● Figure 10-20a). Because there is no “lymphatic heart” to provide driving pressure, you may wonder how lymph is directed from the tissues toward the venous system in the thoracic cavity. Lymph flow is accomplished by two mechanisms. First, lymph vessels beyond the initial lymphatics are surrounded by smooth muscle, which contracts rhythmically as a result of myogenic activity. When this muscle is stretched because the vessel is distended with lymph, the muscle inherently contracts more forcefully, pushing the lymph through the vessel. This intrinsic “lymph pump” is the major force for propelling lymph. Stimulation of lymphatic smooth muscle by the sympathetic nervous system further in-



(a) Relationship between initial lymphatics and blood capillaries

Fluid pressure on the outside of the vessel pushes the endothelial cell's free edge inward, permitting entrance of interstitial fluid (now lymph).



Fluid pressure on the inside of the vessel forces the overlapping edges together so that lymph cannot escape.

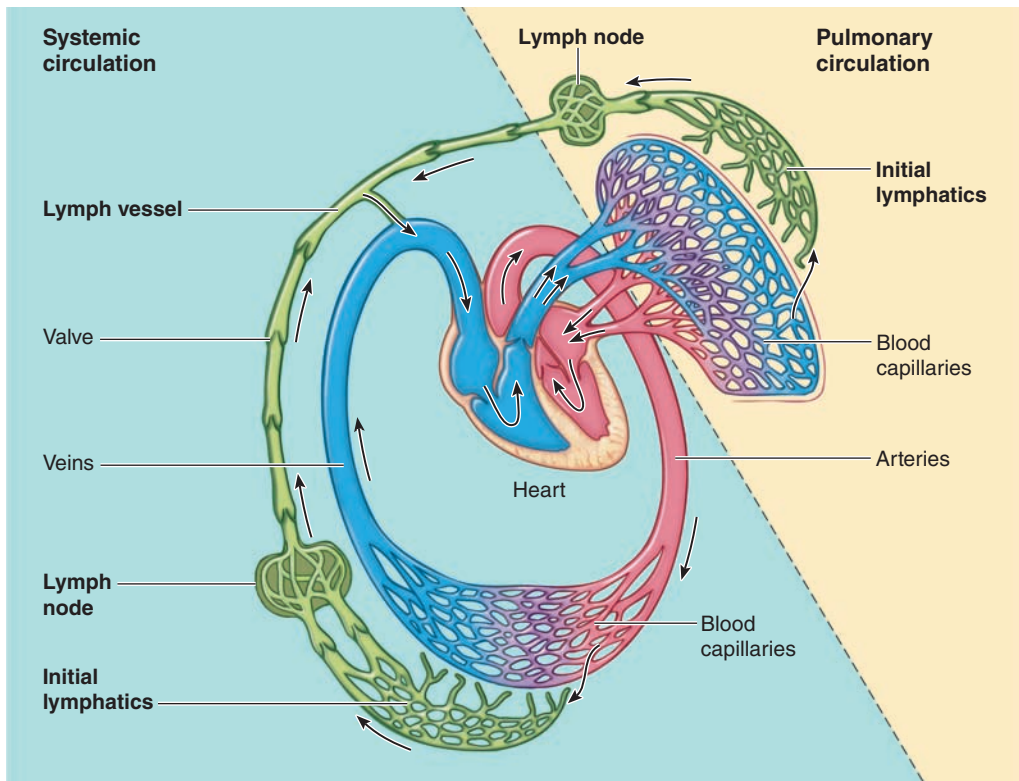
(b) Arrangement of endothelial cells in an initial lymphatic

● **FIGURE 10-19 Initial lymphatics.** (a) Blind-ended initial lymphatics pick up excess fluid filtered by blood capillaries and return it to the venous system. The blue arrows show fluid filtering out of and reentering the capillaries, with some fluid entering the initial lymphatic instead. (b) Note that the overlapping edges of the endothelial cells create valvelike openings in the vessel wall.

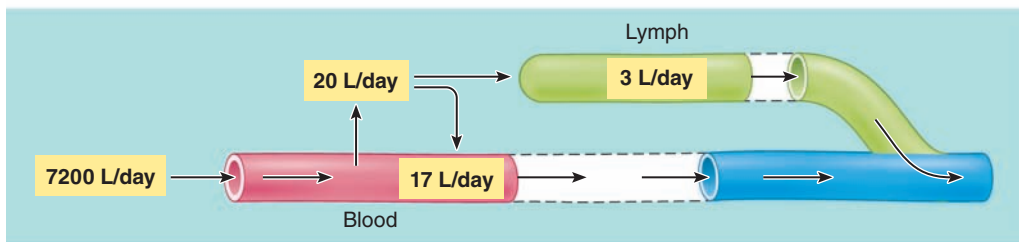
creases the pumping activity of the lymph vessels. Second, because lymph vessels lie between skeletal muscles, contraction of these muscles squeezes the lymph out of the vessels. One-way valves spaced at intervals within the lymph vessels direct the flow of lymph toward its venous outlet in the chest.

**FUNCTIONS OF THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM** Here are the most important functions of the lymphatic system:

■ **Return of excess filtered fluid.** Normally, capillary filtration exceeds reabsorption by about 3 liters per day (20 liters filtered, 17 liters reabsorbed) (● Figure 10-20b). Yet the entire blood volume is only 5 liters, and only 2.75 liters of that is plasma. (Blood cells make up the rest of the blood volume.) With an



(a) Relationship of lymphatic system to circulatory system



(b) Comparison of blood flow and lymph flow per day

● **FIGURE 10-20 Lymphatic system.** (a) Lymph empties into the venous system near its entrance to the right atrium. (b) Lymph flow averages 3 liters per day, whereas blood flow averages 7200 liters per day.

average cardiac output, 7200 liters of blood pass through the capillaries daily under resting conditions (more when cardiac output increases). Even though only a small fraction of the filtered fluid is not reabsorbed by the blood capillaries, the cumulative effect of this process being repeated with every heartbeat results in the equivalent of more than the entire plasma volume being left behind in the interstitial fluid each day. Obviously, this fluid must be returned to the circulating plasma, and this task is accomplished by the lymph vessels. The average rate of flow through the lymph vessels is 3 liters per day, compared with 7200 liters per day through the circulatory system.

■ **Defense against disease.** The lymph percolates through **lymph nodes** located en route within the lymphatic system. Passage of this fluid through the lymph nodes is an important aspect of the body's defense mechanism against disease. For example, bacteria picked up from the interstitial fluid are destroyed by special phagocytes within the lymph nodes (see Chapter 11).

■ **Transport of absorbed fat.** The lymphatic system is important in the absorption of fat from the digestive tract. The end products of the digestion of dietary fats are packaged by cells lining the digestive tract into fatty particles that are too large to gain access to the blood capillaries but can easily enter the initial lymphatics (see Chapter 15).

■ **Return of filtered protein.** Most capillaries permit leakage of a small amount of plasma proteins during filtration. These proteins cannot readily be reabsorbed back into the blood capillaries but can easily gain access to the initial lymphatics. If the proteins were allowed to accumulate in the interstitial fluid rather than being returned to the circulation via the lymphatics, the interstitial fluid–colloid osmotic pressure (an outward pressure) would progressively increase while the plasma–colloid osmotic pressure (an inward pressure) would progressively fall. As a result, filtration forces would gradually increase and reabsorption forces would gradually decrease, resulting in progressive accumulation of fluid in the interstitial spaces at the expense of loss of plasma volume.

### Edema occurs when too much interstitial fluid accumulates.



**Clinical Note** Occasionally, excessive interstitial fluid does accumulate when one of the physical forces acting across the capillary walls becomes abnormal for some reason. Swelling of the tissues because of excess interstitial fluid is known as **edema**. The causes of edema can be grouped into four categories:

1. **A reduced concentration of plasma proteins** decreases  $\pi_p$ . Such a drop in the major inward pressure lets excess fluid filter out, whereas less-than-normal amounts of fluid are reabsorbed; hence, extra fluid remains in the interstitial spaces. Edema can be caused by a decreased concentration of plasma proteins in several ways: excessive loss of plasma proteins in the urine, from kidney disease; reduced synthesis of plasma proteins, from liver disease (the liver synthesizes almost all plasma proteins); a diet deficient

in protein; or significant loss of plasma proteins from large burned surfaces.

2. *Increased permeability of the capillary walls* allows more plasma proteins than usual to pass from the plasma into the surrounding interstitial fluid—for example, via histamine-induced widening of the capillary pores during tissue injury or allergic reactions. The resultant fall in  $\pi_p$  decreases the effective inward pressure, whereas the resultant rise in  $\pi_{IF}$  caused by excess protein in the interstitial fluid increases the effective outward force. This imbalance contributes in part to the localized edema associated with injuries (for example, blisters) and allergic responses (for example, hives).

3. *Increased venous pressure*, as when blood dams up in the veins, is accompanied by increased  $P_C$ . Because the capillaries drain into the veins, damming of blood in the veins leads to a “backlog” of blood in the capillaries because less blood moves out of the capillaries into the overloaded veins than enters from the arterioles. The resultant elevation in outward hydrostatic pressure across the capillary walls is largely responsible for the edema seen with congestive heart failure (see p. 252). Regional edema can also occur because of localized restriction of venous return. An example is the swelling often occurring in the legs and feet during pregnancy. The enlarged uterus compresses the major veins that drain the lower extremities as these vessels enter the abdominal cavity. The resultant damming of blood in these veins raises blood pressure in the capillaries of the legs and feet, which promotes regional edema of the lower extremities.

4. *Blockage of lymph vessels* produces edema because the excess filtered fluid is retained in the interstitial fluid rather than returned to the blood through the lymphatics. Protein accumulation in the interstitial fluid compounds the problem through its os-

motonic effect. Local lymph blockage can occur, for example, in the arms of women whose major lymphatic drainage channels from the arm have been blocked as a result of lymph node removal during surgery for breast cancer. More widespread lymph blockage occurs with *filariasis*, a mosquito-borne parasitic disease found predominantly in tropical coastal regions. In this condition, small, threadlike filaria worms infect the lymph vessels, where their presence prevents proper lymph drainage. The affected body parts, particularly the scrotum and extremities, become grossly edematous. The condition is often called *elephantiasis* because of the elephant-like appearance of the swollen extremities (● Figure 10-21).

Whatever the cause of edema, an important consequence is reduced exchange of materials between blood and cells. As excess interstitial fluid accumulates, the distance between blood and cells across which nutrients,  $O_2$ , and wastes must diffuse increases, so the rate of diffusion decreases. Therefore, cells within edematous tissues may not be adequately supplied.

## Veins

The venous system completes the circulatory circuit. Blood leaving the capillary beds enters the venous system for transport back to the heart.

### Veins serve as a blood reservoir, as well as passageways back to the heart.

Veins have a large radius, so they offer little resistance to flow. Furthermore, because the total cross-sectional area of the venous system gradually decreases as smaller veins converge into progressively fewer but larger vessels, blood flow speeds up as blood approaches the heart.

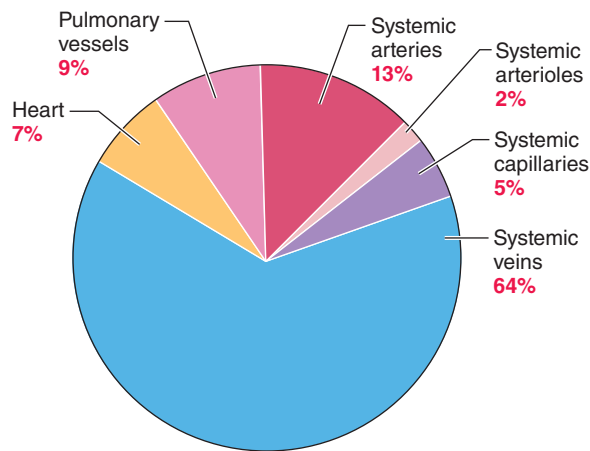
In addition to serving as low-resistance passageways to return blood from the tissues to the heart, systemic veins also serve as a *blood reservoir*. Because of their storage capacity, veins are often called **capacitance vessels**. Veins have thinner walls with less smooth muscle than arteries do. Also, in contrast to arteries, veins have little elasticity, because venous connective tissue contains considerably more collagen fibers than elastin fibers (see ▲ Table 10-1, p. 266). Unlike arteriolar smooth muscle, venous smooth muscle has little inherent myogenic tone. Because of these features, veins are highly distensible, or stretchable, and have little elastic recoil. They easily distend to accommodate additional volumes of blood with only a small increase in venous pressure. Arteries stretched by an excess volume of blood recoil because of the elastin fibers in their walls, driving the blood forward. Veins containing an extra volume of blood simply stretch to accommodate the additional blood without tending to recoil. In this way veins serve as a **blood reservoir**; that is, when demands for blood are low, the veins can store extra blood in reserve because of their passive distensibility. Under resting conditions, the veins contain more than 60% of the total blood volume (● Figure 10-22).

When the stored blood is needed, such as during exercise, extrinsic factors (soon to be described) reduce the capacity of



© Fred Marsik/Visuals Unlimited

● **FIGURE 10-21 Elephantiasis.** This tropical condition is caused by a mosquito-borne parasitic worm that invades the lymph vessels. As a result of the interference with lymph drainage, the affected body parts, usually the extremities, become grossly edematous, appearing elephant-like.



● **FIGURE 10-22** Percentage of total blood volume in different parts of the circulatory system.

the venous reservoir and drive the extra blood from the veins to the heart so that it can be pumped to the tissues. Increased venous return leads to an increased cardiac stroke volume, in accordance with the Frank–Starling law of the heart (see p. 249). In contrast, if too much blood pools in the veins instead of being returned to the heart, cardiac output is abnormally diminished. Thus, a delicate balance exists among the capacity of the veins, the extent of venous return, and the cardiac output. We now turn our attention to the factors that affect venous capacity and contribute to venous return.

### Venous return is enhanced by several extrinsic factors.

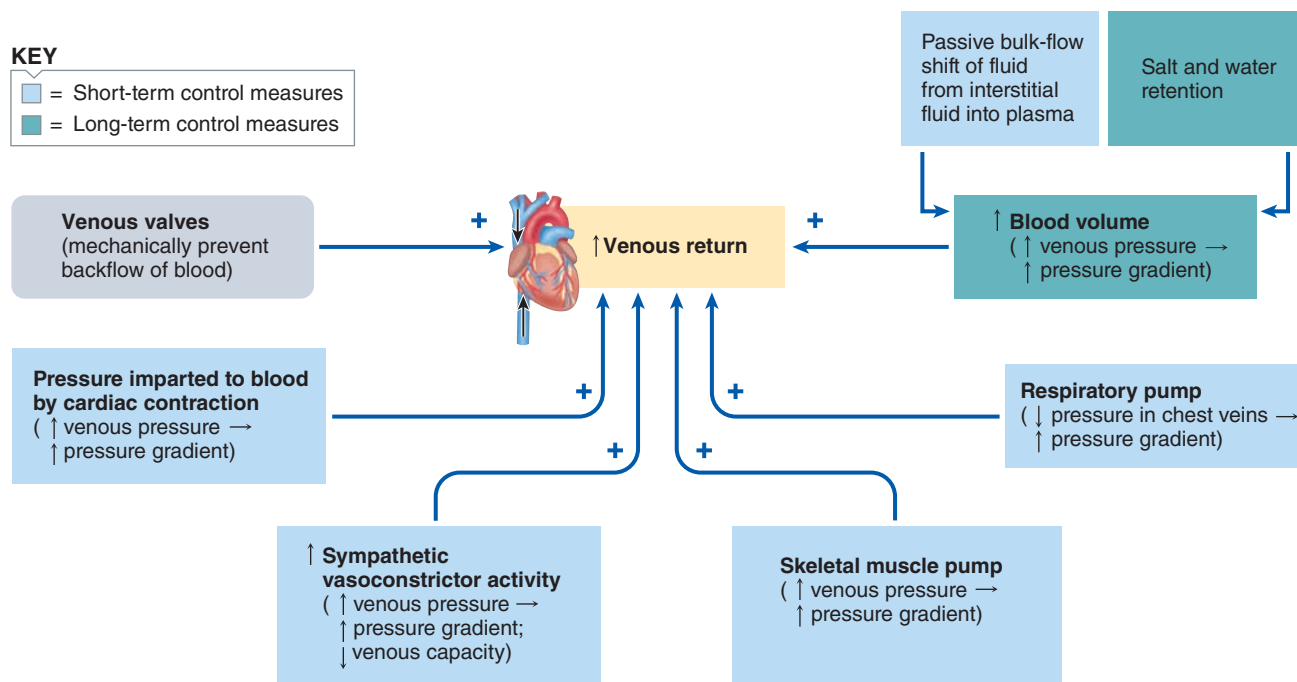
**Venous capacity** (the volume of blood that the veins can accommodate) depends on the distensibility of the vein walls (how

much they can stretch to hold blood) and the influence of any externally applied pressure squeezing inwardly on the veins. At a constant blood volume, as venous capacity increases, more blood remains in the veins instead of being returned to the heart. Such venous storage decreases the effective circulating blood volume, the volume of blood being returned to and pumped out of the heart. Conversely, when venous capacity decreases, more blood is returned to the heart and is subsequently pumped out. Thus, changes in venous capacity directly influence the magnitude of venous return, which in turn is an important (although not the only) determinant of effective circulating blood volume. The effective circulating blood volume is also influenced short term by passive shifts in bulk flow between the vascular and the interstitial fluid compartments and long term by factors that control total ECF volume, such as salt and water balance.

The term **venous return** refers to the volume of blood per minute entering each atrium from the veins. Recall that the magnitude of flow through a vessel is directly proportional to the pressure gradient. Much driving pressure imparted to the blood by cardiac contraction has been lost by the time the blood reaches the venous system because of frictional losses along the way, especially during passage through the high-resistance arterioles. By the time the blood enters the venous system, blood pressure averages only 17 mm Hg (see ● Figure 10-8, p. 269). However, because atrial pressure is near 0 mm Hg, a small but adequate driving pressure still exists to promote the flow of blood through the large-radius, low-resistance veins.



If atrial pressure becomes pathologically elevated, as in the presence of a leaky AV valve, the venous-to-atrial pressure gradient is decreased, reducing venous return and causing blood to dam up in the venous system. Elevated atrial pressure, among other more common causes, thus can lead to congestive heart failure (see p. 252).



● **FIGURE 10-23** Factors that facilitate venous return.

In addition to the driving pressure imparted by cardiac contraction, four other factors enhance venous return: sympathetically induced venous vasoconstriction, skeletal muscle activity, the effect of venous valves, and respiratory activity (● Figure 10-23). Most of these secondary factors affect venous return by influencing the pressure gradient between the veins and the heart. We examine each in turn.

**EFFECT OF SYMPATHETIC ACTIVITY ON VENOUS RETURN** Veins are not very muscular and have little inherent tone, but venous smooth muscle is abundantly supplied with sympathetic nerve fibers. Sympathetic stimulation produces venous vasoconstriction, which modestly elevates venous pressure; this, in turn, increases the pressure gradient to drive more of the stored blood from the veins into the right atrium, thus enhancing venous return. Veins normally have such a large radius that the moderate vasoconstriction from sympathetic stimulation has little effect on resistance to flow. Even when constricted, veins still have a relatively large radius and are still low-resistance vessels.

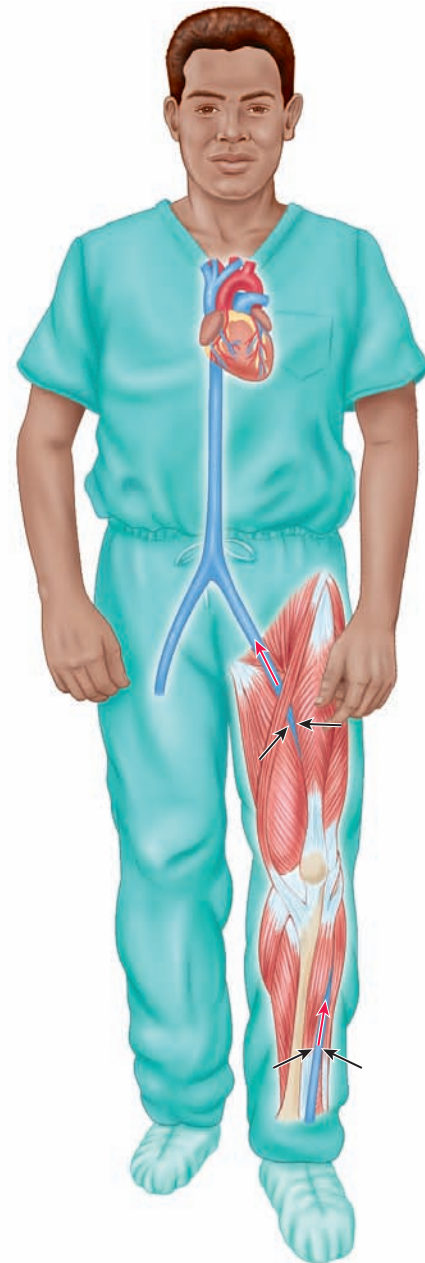
It is important to recognize the different outcomes of vasoconstriction in arterioles and veins. Arteriolar vasoconstriction immediately *reduces* flow through these vessels because of their increased resistance (less blood can enter and flow through a narrowed arteriole), whereas venous vasoconstriction immediately *increases* flow through these vessels because of their decreased capacity (narrowing of veins squeezes out more of the blood already in the veins, increasing blood flow through these vessels).

Increased venous return leads to increased cardiac output because of the increase in end-diastolic volume. Sympathetic stimulation of the heart also increases cardiac output by increasing the heart rate and increasing the heart's contractility (see p. 248 and p. 250). As long as sympathetic activity remains elevated, as during exercise, the heart pumps out more blood than usual for use by the exercising muscles.

**EFFECT OF SKELETAL MUSCLE ACTIVITY ON VENOUS RETURN** Many large veins in the extremities lie between skeletal muscles, so muscle contraction compresses the veins. This external venous compression decreases venous capacity and increases venous pressure, in effect squeezing fluid in the veins forward toward the heart (● Figure 10-24). This pumping action, known as the **skeletal muscle pump**, is another way extra blood stored in the veins is returned to the heart during exercise. Increased muscular activity pushes more blood out of the veins and into the heart.

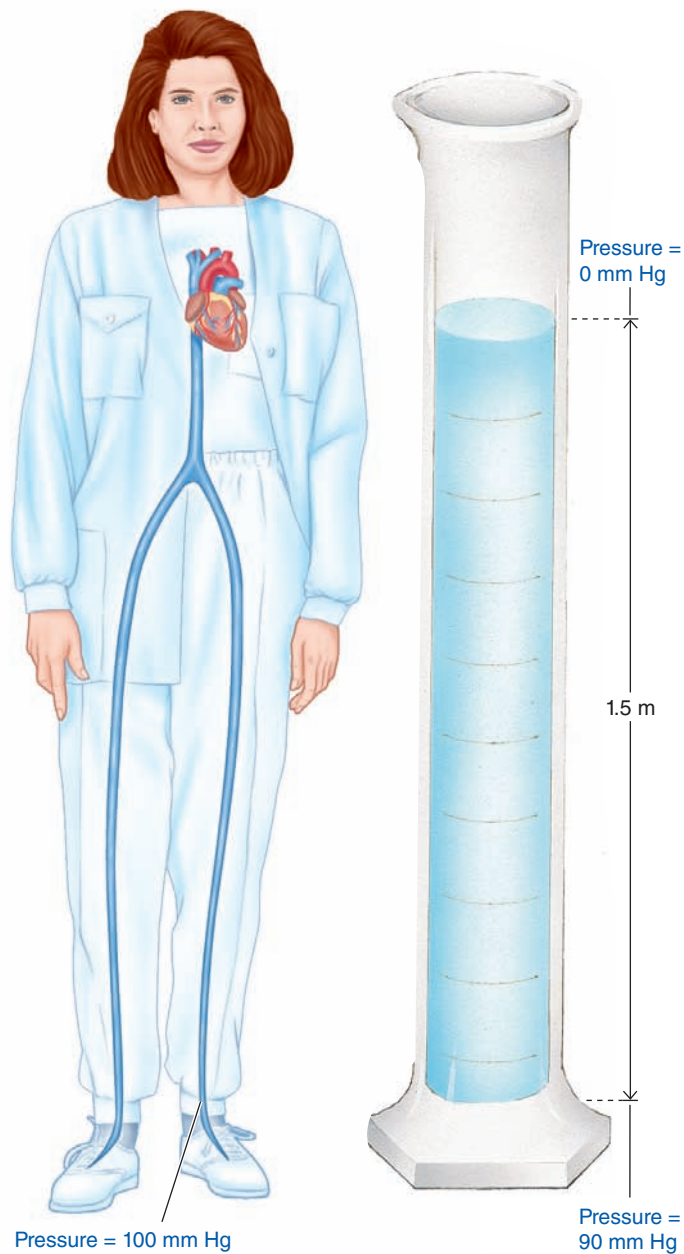
The skeletal muscle pump also counters the effect of gravity on the venous system. Let us see how.

**COUNTERING THE EFFECTS OF GRAVITY ON THE VENOUS SYSTEM** The average pressures mentioned thus far for various regions of the vascular tree are for a person in the horizontal position. When a person is lying down, the force of gravity is uniformly applied, so it need not be considered. When a person stands up, however, gravitational effects are not uniform. In addition to the usual pressure from cardiac contraction, vessels below heart level are subject to pressure from the weight of the column of blood extending from the heart to the level of the vessel (● Figure 10-25).



● **FIGURE 10-24** Skeletal muscle pump enhancing venous return.

This increased pressure has two important consequences. First, the distensible veins yield under the increased hydrostatic pressure, further expanding so that their capacity is increased. Even though the arteries are subject to the same gravitational effects, they are not nearly as distensible and do not expand like the veins. Much of the blood entering from the capillaries tends to pool in the expanded lower-leg veins instead of returning to the heart. Because venous return is reduced, cardiac output decreases and the effective circulating volume shrinks. Second, the marked increase in capillary blood pressure resulting from the effect of gravity causes excessive fluid to filter out of capillary beds in the lower extremities, producing localized edema (that is, swollen feet and ankles).

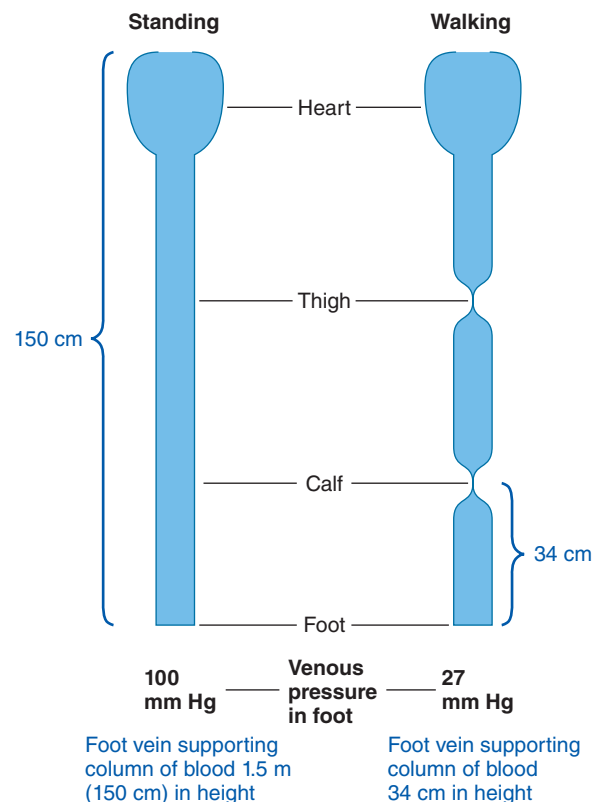


Pressure = 100 mm Hg

90 mm Hg caused by gravitational effect  
10 mm Hg caused by pressure imparted by cardiac contraction

● **FIGURE 10-25 Effect of gravity on venous pressure.** In an upright adult, the blood in the vessels extending between the heart and the foot is equivalent to a 1.5-m column of blood. The pressure exerted by this column of blood as a result of the effect of gravity is 90 mm Hg. The pressure imparted to the blood by the heart has declined to about 10 mm Hg in the lower-leg veins because of frictional losses in preceding vessels. Together, these pressures produce a venous pressure of 100 mm Hg in the ankle and foot veins. The capillaries in the region are subjected to these same gravitational effects.

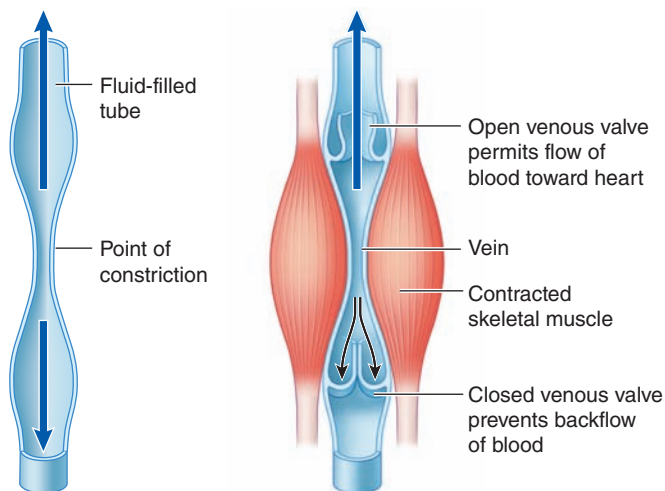
Two compensatory measures normally counteract these gravitational effects. First, the resultant fall in mean arterial pressure that occurs when a person moves from a lying-down to an upright position triggers sympathetically induced venous vasoconstriction, which drives some of the pooled blood for-



● **FIGURE 10-26 Effect of contraction of the skeletal muscles of the legs in counteracting the effects of gravity.** Contraction of skeletal muscles (as in walking) completely empties given vein segments, interrupting the column of blood that the lower veins must support.

ward. Second, the skeletal muscle pump “interrupts” the column of blood by completely emptying given vein segments intermittently so that a particular portion of a vein is not subjected to the weight of the entire venous column from the heart to that portion’s level (● Figure 10-26; also see ● Figure 10-24). Reflex venous vasoconstriction cannot completely compensate for gravitational effects without skeletal muscle activity. When a person stands still for a long time, therefore, blood flow to the brain is reduced because of the decline in effective circulating volume, despite reflexes aimed at maintaining mean arterial pressure. Reduced flow of blood to the brain, in turn, leads to fainting, which returns the person to a horizontal position, eliminating the gravitational effects on the vascular system and restoring effective circulation. For this reason, it is counterproductive to try to hold upright someone who has fainted. Fainting is a remedy to the problem, not the problem itself.

Because the skeletal muscle pump facilitates venous return and helps counteract the detrimental effects of gravity on the circulatory system, when you are working at a desk, it’s a good idea to get up periodically and, when you are on your feet, to move around. The mild muscular activity “gets the blood moving.” It is further recommended that people who must be on their feet for long periods use elastic stockings that apply a continuous gentle external compression, similar to the effect of



(a) Fluid moving in both directions on squeezing a fluid-filled tube

(b) Action of venous valves, permitting flow of blood toward heart and preventing backflow of blood

● **FIGURE 10-27** Function of venous valves. (a) When a tube is squeezed in the middle, fluid is pushed in both directions. (b) Venous valves permit the flow of blood only toward the heart.

skeletal muscle contraction, to further counter the effect of gravitational pooling of blood in the leg veins.

**EFFECT OF VENOUS VALVES ON VENOUS RETURN** Venous vasoconstriction and external venous compression both drive blood toward the heart. Yet if you squeeze a fluid-filled tube in the middle, fluid is pushed in both directions from the point of constriction (● Figure 10-27a). Then why isn't blood driven backward, as well as forward, by venous vasoconstriction and the skeletal muscle pump? Blood can only be driven forward because the large veins are equipped with one-way valves spaced at 2 to 4 cm intervals; these valves let blood move forward toward the heart but keep it from moving back toward the tissues (● Figure 10-27b).



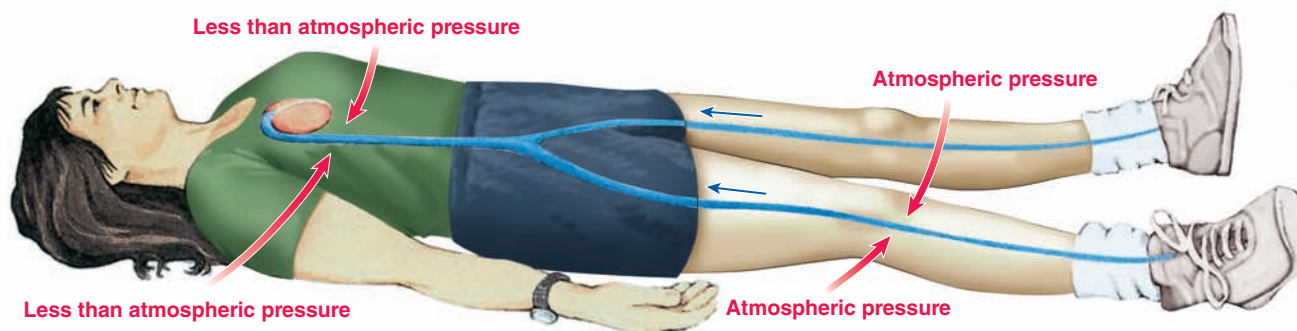
**Varicose veins** occur when the venous valves become incompetent and can no longer support the column of blood above them. People predisposed to

this condition usually have inherited an overdensibility and weakness of their vein walls. Aggravated by frequent, prolonged standing, the veins become so distended as blood pools in them that the edges of the valves can no longer meet to form a seal. Varicose superficial leg veins become visibly overdensified and tortuous. Contrary to what might be expected, chronic pooling of blood in the pathologically distended veins does not reduce cardiac output, because there is a compensatory increase in total circulating blood volume. Instead, the most serious consequence of varicose veins is the possibility of abnormal clot formation in the sluggish, pooled blood. Particularly dangerous is the risk that these clots may break loose and block small vessels elsewhere, especially the pulmonary capillaries.

**EFFECT OF RESPIRATORY ACTIVITY ON VENOUS RETURN** As a result of respiratory activity, the pressure within the chest cavity averages 5 mm Hg less than atmospheric pressure (that is, is subatmospheric). As the venous system returns blood to the heart from the lower regions of the body, it travels through the chest cavity, where it is exposed to this subatmospheric pressure. Because the venous system in the limbs and abdomen is subject to normal atmospheric pressure, an externally applied pressure gradient exists between the lower veins (at atmospheric pressure) and the chest veins (at less than atmospheric pressure). This pressure difference moves blood from the lower veins to the chest veins, promoting increased venous return (● Figure 10-28). This mechanism of facilitating venous return is called the **respiratory pump** because it results from respiratory activity. Increased respiratory activity, as well as the effects of the skeletal muscle pump and venous vasoconstriction, enhances venous return during exercise.

## Blood Pressure

Mean arterial pressure is the blood pressure that is monitored and regulated in the body, not the arterial systolic or diastolic pressure, the pulse pressure, or the pressure in any other part of the vascular tree. Routine blood pressure measurements record the arterial systolic and diastolic pressures, which can be used as a yardstick for assessing mean arterial pressure.



● **FIGURE 10-28** Respiratory pump enhancing venous return. As a result of respiratory activity, the pressure surrounding the chest veins is lower than the pressure surrounding the veins in the extremities and abdomen. This establishes an externally applied pressure gradient on the veins, which drives blood toward the heart.



**Blood pressure is regulated by controlling cardiac output, total peripheral resistance, and blood volume.**

Mean arterial pressure is the main driving force for propelling blood to the tissues. This pressure must be closely regulated for two reasons. First, it must be high enough to ensure sufficient driving pressure; without this pressure, the brain and other organs will not receive adequate flow, no matter what local adjustments are made in the resistance of the arterioles supplying them. Second, the pressure must not be so high that it creates extra work for the heart and increases the risk of vascular damage and possible rupture of small blood vessels.

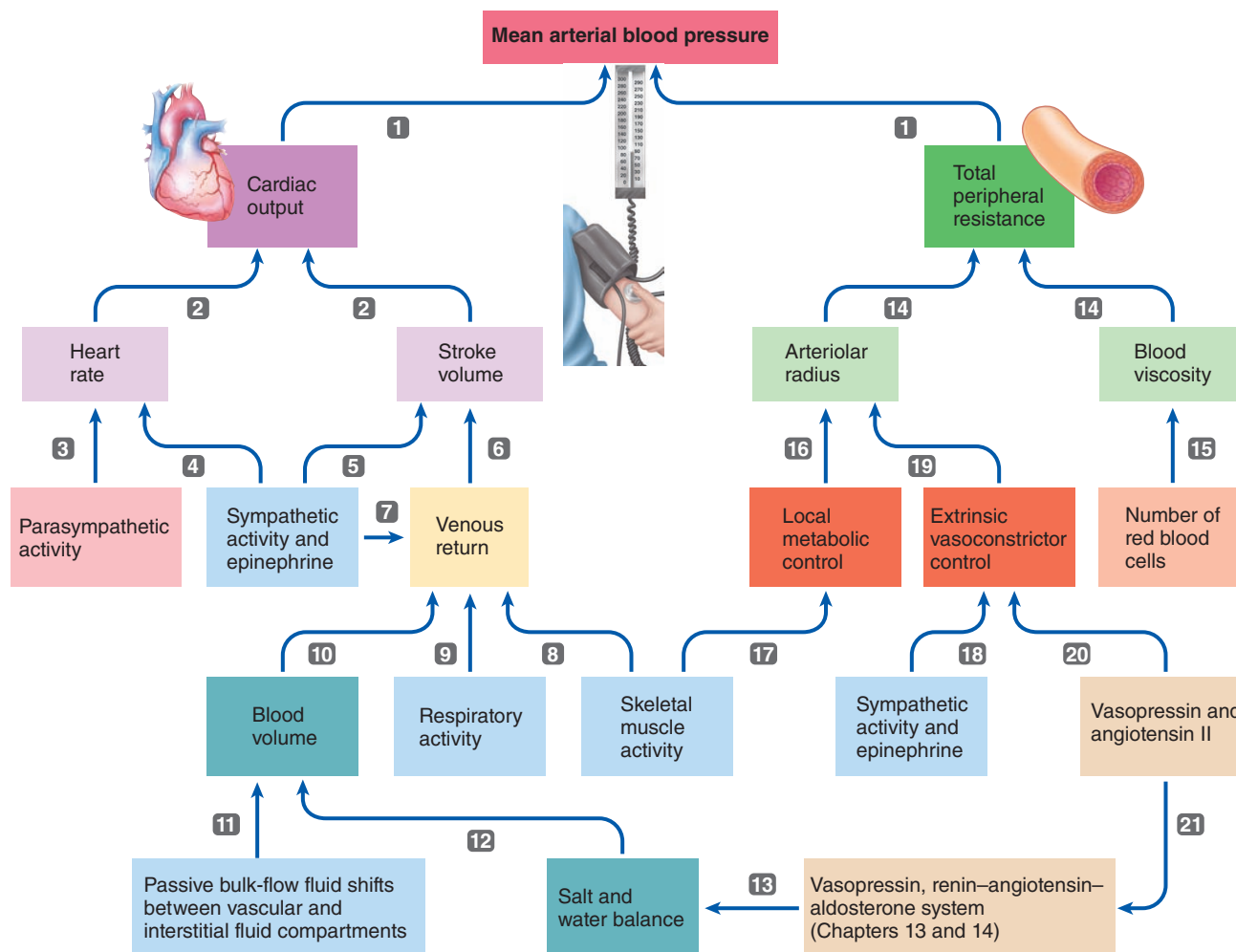
**DETERMINANTS OF MEAN ARTERIAL PRESSURE** Elaborate mechanisms involving the integrated action of the various components of the circulatory system and other body systems are vital in regulating this all-important mean arterial pressure (● Figure 10-29). Remember that the two determinants of mean arterial pressure are cardiac output and total peripheral resistance:

$$\text{Mean arterial pressure} = \text{cardiac output} \times \text{total peripheral resistance}$$

(Do not confuse this equation, which indicates the factors that *determine* the mean arterial pressure, namely, the magnitude of both cardiac output and total peripheral resistance, with the equation used to *calculate* mean arterial pressure, namely, mean arterial pressure = diastolic pressure + 1/3 pulse pressure.)

Recall that a number of factors, in turn, determine cardiac output and total peripheral resistance (see ● Figure 9-22, p. 251; ● Figure 10-11, p. 275; and ● Figure 10-23, p. 284). Thus, you can quickly appreciate the complexity of blood pressure regulation. Let us work through ● Figure 10-29, reviewing all the factors that affect mean arterial pressure. Even though we have covered all these factors before, it is useful to pull them together. The numbers in the text correspond to the numbers in the figure.

- Mean arterial pressure depends on cardiac output and total peripheral resistance (1 on ● Figure 10-29).
- Cardiac output depends on heart rate and stroke volume 2.
- Heart rate depends on the relative balance of parasympathetic activity 3, which decreases heart rate, and sympathetic activity (including epinephrine throughout this discussion) 4, which increases heart rate.



● **FIGURE 10-29** Determinants of mean arterial blood pressure. Note that this figure is basically a composite of Figure 9-22, p. 251, “Control of cardiac output”; Figure 10-11, p. 275, “Factors affecting total peripheral resistance”; and Figure 10-23, p. 284, “Factors that facilitate venous return.” See the text for a discussion of the numbers.

- Stroke volume increases in response to sympathetic activity **5** (extrinsic control of stroke volume).
- Stroke volume also increases as venous return increases **6** (intrinsic control of stroke volume according to the Frank-Starling law of the heart).
- Venous return is enhanced by sympathetically induced venous vasoconstriction **7**, the skeletal muscle pump **8**, and the respiratory pump **9**.
- The effective circulating blood volume also influences how much blood is returned to the heart **10**. The blood volume depends in the short term on the size of passive bulk-flow fluid shifts between the plasma and the interstitial fluid across the capillary walls **11**. In the long term, the blood volume depends on salt and water balance **12**, which are hormonally controlled by the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system and vasopressin, respectively **13**.
- The other major determinant of mean arterial blood pressure, total peripheral resistance, depends on the radius of all arterioles, as well as blood viscosity **14**. The main factor determining blood viscosity is the number of red blood cells **15**. However, arteriolar radius is the more important factor determining total peripheral resistance.
- Arteriolar radius is influenced by local (intrinsic) metabolic controls that match blood flow with metabolic needs **16**. For example, local changes that take place in active skeletal muscles cause local arteriolar vasodilation and increased blood flow to these muscles **17**.
- Arteriolar radius is also influenced by sympathetic activity **18**, an extrinsic control mechanism that causes arteriolar vasoconstriction **19**, to increase total peripheral resistance and mean arterial blood pressure.
- Arteriolar radius is also extrinsically controlled by the hormones vasopressin and angiotensin II, which are potent vasoconstrictors **20** as well as being important in salt and water balance **21**.

Altering any of the pertinent factors that influence blood pressure changes blood pressure, unless a compensatory change in another variable keeps the blood pressure constant. Blood flow to any given organ depends on the driving force of the mean arterial pressure and on the degree of vasoconstriction of the organ's arterioles. Because mean arterial pressure depends on the cardiac output and the degree of arteriolar vasoconstriction, if the arterioles in one organ dilate, the arterioles in other organs must constrict to maintain an adequate arterial blood pressure. An adequate pressure is needed to provide a driving force to push blood not only to the vasodilated organ but also to the brain, which depends on a constant blood supply. Thus, the cardiovascular variables must be continuously juggled to maintain a constant blood pressure despite organs' varying needs for blood.

**SHORT-TERM AND LONG-TERM CONTROL MEASURES** Mean arterial pressure is constantly monitored by **baroreceptors** (pressure sensors) within the circulatory system. When deviations from normal are detected, multiple reflex responses are initi-

ated to return mean arterial pressure to its normal value. *Short-term* (within seconds) adjustments are made by alterations in cardiac output and total peripheral resistance, mediated by means of autonomic nervous system influences on the heart, veins, and arterioles. *Long-term* (requiring minutes to days) control involves adjusting total blood volume by restoring normal salt and water balance through mechanisms that regulate urine output and thirst (see Chapters 13 and 14). The size of the total blood volume, in turn, has a profound effect on cardiac output and mean arterial pressure. Let us now turn to the short-term mechanisms involved in ongoing regulation of this pressure.

### The baroreceptor reflex is an important short-term mechanism for regulating blood pressure through immediate effects on the heart and blood vessels.

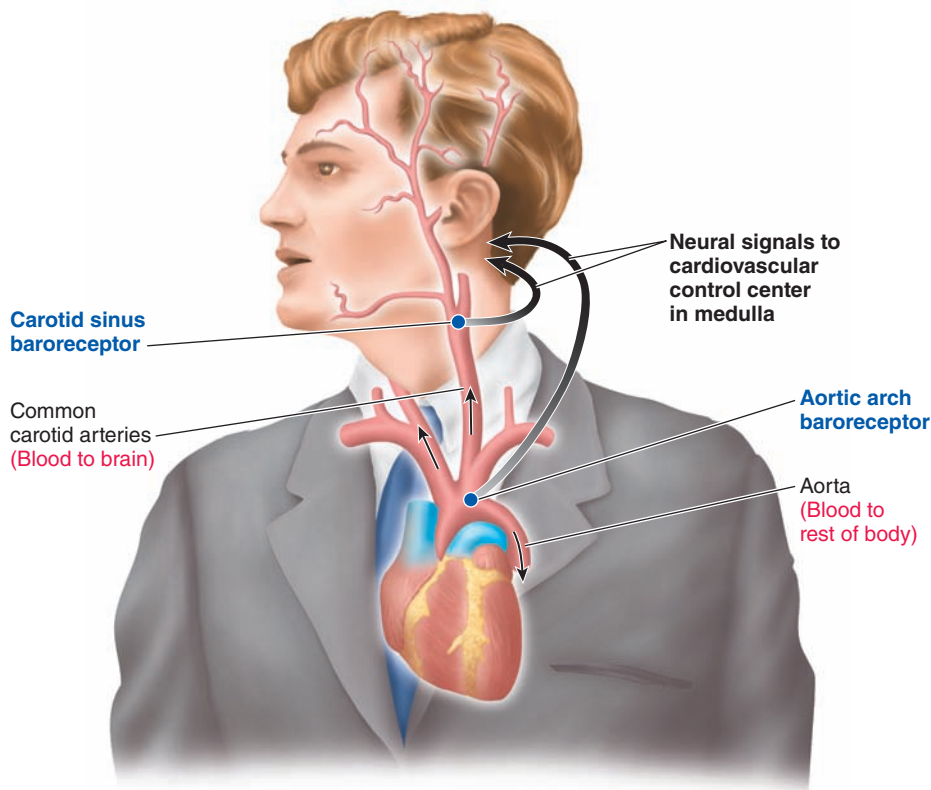
Any change in mean arterial pressure triggers an autonomically mediated **baroreceptor reflex** that influences the heart and blood vessels to adjust cardiac output and total peripheral resistance in an attempt to restore blood pressure toward normal. Like any reflex, the baroreceptor reflex includes a receptor, an afferent pathway, an integrating center, an efferent pathway, and effector organs.

The most important receptors involved in the moment-to-moment regulation of blood pressure, the **carotid sinus** and **aortic arch baroreceptors**, are mechanoreceptors sensitive to changes in mean arterial pressure. These baroreceptors are strategically located (● Figure 10-30) to provide critical information about arterial blood pressure in the vessels leading to the brain (the carotid sinus baroreceptor) and in the major arterial trunk before it gives off branches that supply the rest of the body (the aortic arch baroreceptor).

The baroreceptors constantly provide information about mean arterial pressure; in other words, they continuously generate action potentials in response to the ongoing pressure within the arteries. When mean arterial pressure increases, the receptor potential of these baroreceptors increases, thus increasing the rate of firing in the corresponding afferent neurons. Conversely, a decrease in the mean arterial pressure slows the rate of firing generated in the afferent neurons by the baroreceptors (● Figure 10-31).

The integrating center that receives the afferent impulses about the state of mean arterial pressure is the *cardiovascular control center*, located in the medulla within the brain stem. The efferent pathway is the autonomic nervous system. The cardiovascular control center alters the ratio between sympathetic and parasympathetic activity to the effector organs (the heart and blood vessels). To review how autonomic changes alter arterial blood pressure, study ● Figure 10-32, which summarizes the major effects of parasympathetic and sympathetic stimulation on the heart and blood vessels.

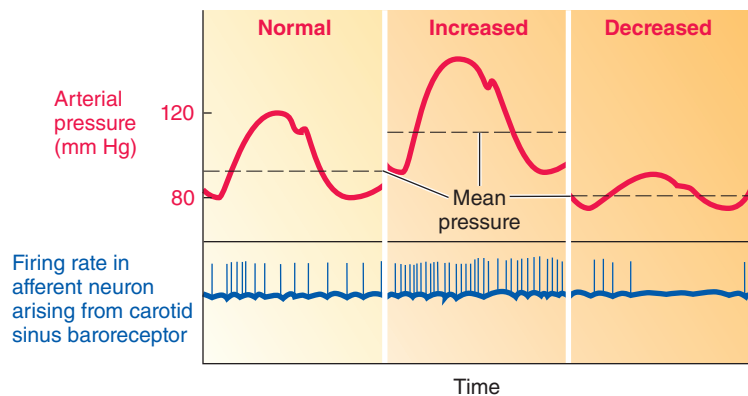
Let us fit all the pieces of the baroreceptor reflex together by tracing the reflex activity that compensates for an elevation or fall in arterial blood pressure. If for any reason mean arterial pressure rises above normal (● Figure 10-33a), the carotid sinus and aortic arch baroreceptors increase the rate of firing in their



● **FIGURE 10-30** Location of the arterial baroreceptors. The arterial baroreceptors are strategically located to monitor the mean arterial blood pressure in the arteries that supply blood to the brain (carotid sinus baroreceptor) and to the rest of the body (aortic arch baroreceptor).

respective afferent neurons. On being informed by increased afferent firing that the blood pressure has become too high, the cardiovascular control center responds by decreasing sympathetic and increasing parasympathetic activity to the cardiovascular system. These efferent signals decrease heart rate, decrease stroke volume, and produce arteriolar and venous vasodilation, which in turn lead to a decrease in cardiac output and a decrease in total peripheral resistance, with a subsequent fall in blood pressure back toward normal.

Conversely, when blood pressure falls below normal (● Figure 10-33b), baroreceptor activity decreases, inducing the



● **FIGURE 10-31** Firing rate in the afferent neuron from the carotid sinus baroreceptor in relation to the magnitude of mean arterial pressure.

cardiovascular center to increase sympathetic cardiac and vasoconstrictor nerve activity while decreasing its parasympathetic output. This efferent pattern of activity leads to an increase in heart rate and stroke volume, coupled with arteriolar and venous vasoconstriction. These changes increase both cardiac output and total peripheral resistance, raising blood pressure back toward normal.

Despite these control measures, sometimes blood pressure is not maintained at the appropriate level. We next examine blood pressure abnormalities.

### Hypertension is a serious national public-health problem, but its causes are largely unknown.



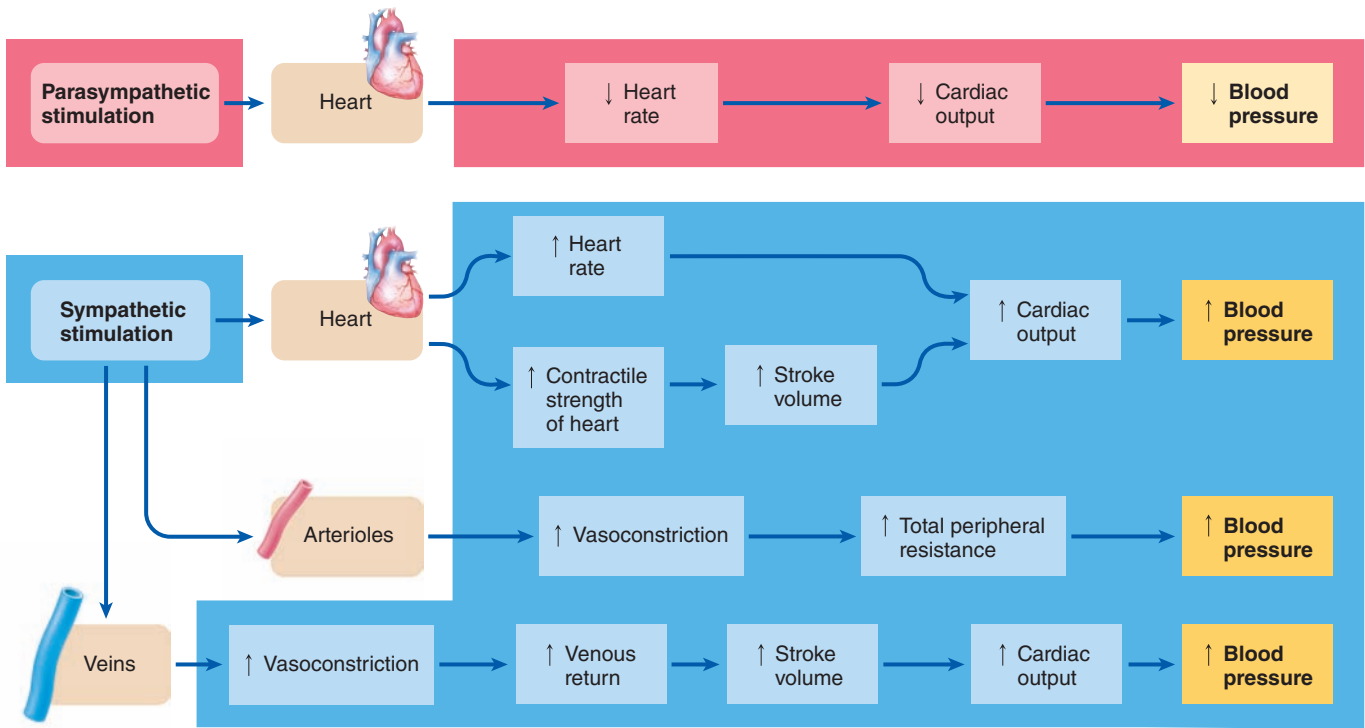
Sometimes blood pressure control mechanisms do not function properly or are unable to completely compensate for changes that have taken place. Blood pressure may be too high (**hypertension** if above 140/90 mm Hg) or too low (**hypotension** if below 100/60 mm Hg).

Hypotension in its extreme form is *circulatory shock*. We first examine hypertension, which is by far the most common of blood pressure abnormalities, and then conclude this chapter with a discussion of hypotension and shock.

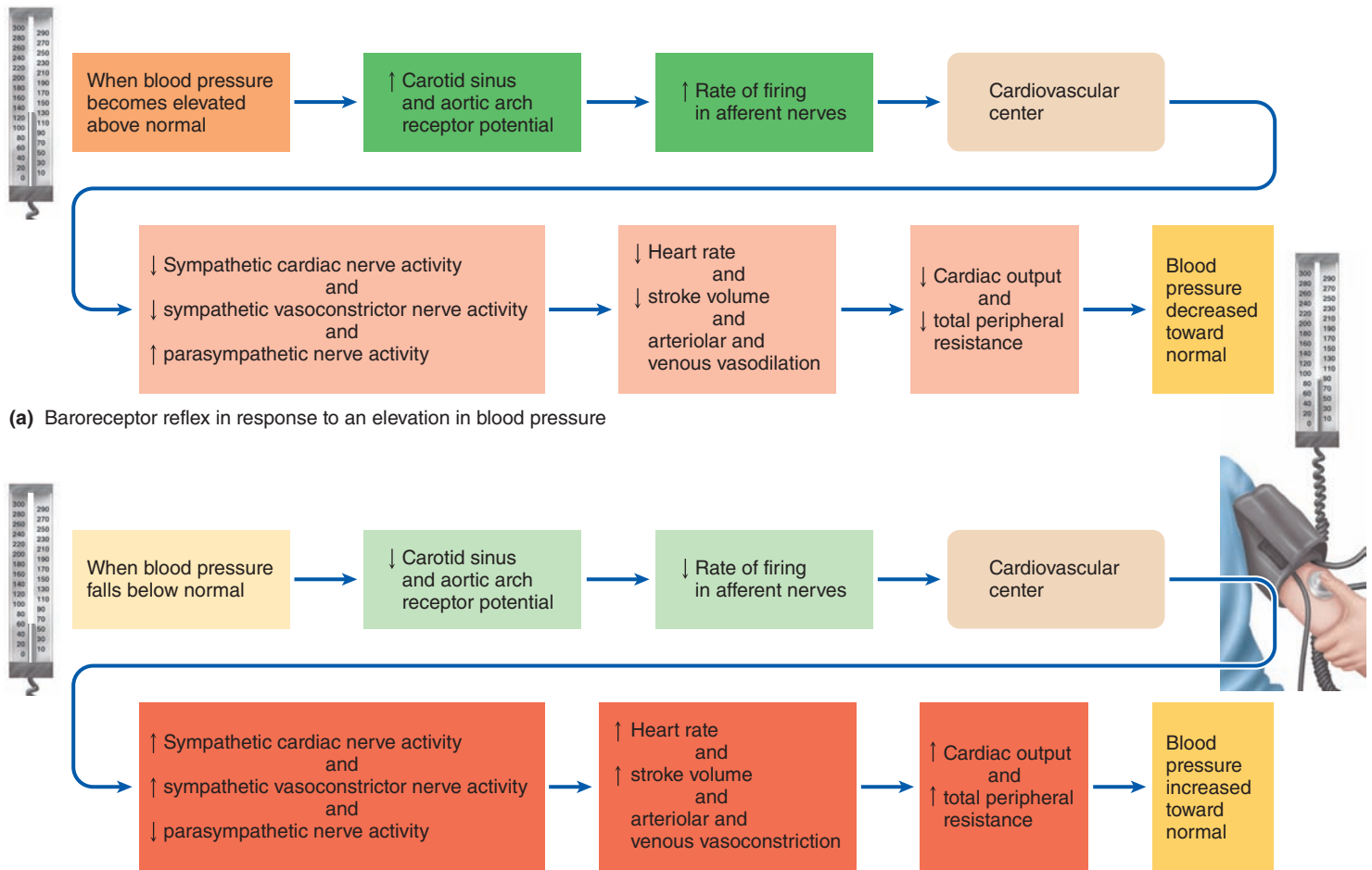
There are two broad classes of hypertension, secondary hypertension and primary hypertension, depending on the cause. A definite cause for hypertension can be established in only 10% of cases. Hypertension that occurs secondary to another known primary problem is called **secondary hypertension**. For example, when the elasticity of the arteries is reduced by the loss of elastin fibers or the presence of calcified atherosclerotic plaques (see p. 254), arterial pressure is chronically increased by this “hardening of the arteries.” Likewise, hypertension occurs if the kidneys are diseased and unable to eliminate the normal salt load. Salt retention induces water retention, which expands the plasma volume and leads to hypertension.

The underlying cause is unknown in the remaining 90% of hypertension cases. Such hypertension is known as **primary (essential or idiopathic) hypertension**. Primary hypertension is a catchall category for blood pressure elevated by a variety of unknown causes rather than by a single disease entity. People show a strong genetic tendency to develop primary hypertension, which can be hastened or worsened by contributing factors such as obesity, stress, smoking, or dietary habits.

Whatever the underlying defect, once initiated, hypertension appears to be self-perpetuating. Constant exposure to elevated blood pressure predisposes vessel walls to the development of atherosclerosis, which further raises blood pressure.



● **FIGURE 10-32** Summary of the effects of the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems on factors that influence mean arterial blood pressure.



(b) Baroreceptor reflex in response to a fall in blood pressure

● **FIGURE 10-33** Baroreceptor reflexes to restore blood pressure to normal.

**ADAPTATION OF BARORECEPTORS DURING HYPERTENSION** The baroreceptors do not respond to bring the blood pressure back to normal during hypertension because they adapt, or are “reset,” to operate at a higher level. In the presence of chronically elevated blood pressure, the baroreceptors still function to regulate blood pressure, but they maintain it at a higher mean pressure.

**COMPLICATIONS OF HYPERTENSION** Hypertension imposes stresses on both the heart and the blood vessels. The heart has an increased workload because it is pumping against an increased total peripheral resistance, whereas blood vessels may be damaged by the high internal pressure, particularly when the vessel wall is weakened by the degenerative process of atherosclerosis. Complications of hypertension include congestive heart failure caused by the heart’s inability to pump continuously against a sustained elevation in arterial pressure, strokes caused by rupture of brain vessels, and heart attacks caused by rupture of coronary vessels. (Recall that heart attacks can also occur as a result of blocked coronary vessels through thromboembolism; see p. 254). Spontaneous hemorrhage caused by bursting of small vessels elsewhere in the body may also occur but with less serious consequences; an example is the rupture of blood vessels in the nose, resulting in nosebleeds. Another serious complication of hypertension is renal failure caused by progressive impairment of blood flow through damaged renal blood vessels. Furthermore, retinal damage from changes in the blood vessels supplying the eyes may result in progressive loss of vision.

Until complications occur, hypertension is symptomless, because the tissues are adequately supplied with blood. Therefore, unless blood pressure measurements are made routinely, the condition can go undetected until a precipitous complicating event occurs. When you become aware of these potential complications of hypertension and consider that one third of all adults in America are estimated to have chronic elevated blood pressure, you can appreciate the magnitude of this national health problem.

**PREHYPERTENSION** In its recent guidelines, the National Institutes of Health identified **prehypertension** as a new category for blood pressures in the range between normal (120/80) and hypertension (140/90). Blood pressures in the prehypertension range can usually be reduced by appropriate dietary and exercise measures, whereas those in the hypertension range typically must be treated with blood pressure medication in addition to changing health habits. The goal in managing blood pressures in the prehypertension range is to take action before the pressure climbs into the hypertension range, where serious complications may develop.

We now examine the other extreme, hypotension, looking first at transient orthostatic hypotension, then at the (more serious) circulatory shock.

### Orthostatic hypotension results from transient inadequate sympathetic activity.

Hypotension, or low blood pressure, occurs either when there is a disproportion between vascular capacity and blood volume (in essence, too little blood to fill the vessels) or when the heart is too weak to drive the blood.

The most common situation in which hypotension occurs transiently is orthostatic hypotension. **Orthostatic (postural) hypotension** results from insufficient compensatory responses to the gravitational shifts in blood when a person moves from a horizontal to a vertical position, especially after prolonged bed rest. When a person moves from lying down to standing up, pooling of blood in the leg veins from gravity reduces venous return, decreasing stroke volume and thus lowering cardiac output and blood pressure. This fall in blood pressure is normally detected by the baroreceptors, which initiate immediate compensatory responses to restore blood pressure to its proper level. When a long-bedridden patient first starts to rise, however, these reflex compensatory adjustments are temporarily lost or reduced because of disuse. Sympathetic control of the leg veins is inadequate, so when the patient first stands up, blood pools in the lower extremities without sufficient compensatory responses coming into play to counter the gravity-induced fall in blood pressure. The resultant orthostatic hypotension and decrease in blood flow to the brain cause dizziness or actual fainting.

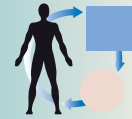
### Circulatory shock can become irreversible.

When blood pressure falls so low that adequate blood flow to the tissues can no longer be maintained, the condition known as **circulatory shock** occurs. Circulatory shock may result from (1) extensive loss of blood volume as through hemorrhage; (2) failure of a weakened heart to pump blood adequately; (3) widespread arteriolar vasodilation triggered by vasodilator substances (such as extensive histamine release in severe allergic reactions); or (4) neurally defective vasoconstrictor tone.

We now examine the compensations for shock, using hemorrhage as an example. It is an important example that pulls together many of the principles discussed in this chapter.

**COMPENSATIONS OF SHOCK** Following severe loss of blood, the resultant reduction in circulating blood volume leads to a decrease in venous return and a subsequent fall in cardiac output and arterial blood pressure. Compensatory measures immediately attempt to maintain adequate blood flow to the brain by increasing blood pressure toward normal, followed by longer-range measures aimed at restoring plasma volume and replacing lost red blood cells, as follows:

- In the short term, the baroreceptor reflex response to the fall in blood pressure brings about an increase in cardiac output and total peripheral resistance, which collectively lead to a compensatory increase in arterial pressure (see ● Figure 10-33).
- The original fall in arterial pressure is accompanied by a fall in capillary blood pressure, which results in immediate fluid shifts from the interstitial fluid into the capillaries to expand the plasma volume. This response is sometimes termed *autotransfusion*, because it helps restore the plasma volume as a transfusion does.
- This ECF shift is enhanced by plasma protein synthesis by the liver during the next few days following hemorrhage. The plasma proteins exert a colloid osmotic pressure that helps retain extra fluid in the plasma.



- Urinary output is reduced, thereby conserving water that normally would have been lost from the body. This additional fluid retention helps expand the reduced plasma volume. Expansion of plasma volume further augments the increase in cardiac output brought about by the baroreceptor reflex. Reduction in urinary output results from decreased renal blood flow caused by compensatory renal arteriolar vasoconstriction. The reduced plasma volume also triggers increased secretion of the hormone vasopressin and activation of the salt- and water-conserving renin–angiotensin–aldosterone hormonal pathway, which further reduces urinary output.

- Increased thirst is stimulated by the fall in plasma volume that occurs with hemorrhage. The resultant increased fluid intake helps restore plasma volume.

- Over a longer course (a week or more), lost red blood cells are replaced through increased red blood cell production triggered by a reduction in  $O_2$  delivery to the kidneys (see p. 300 for further details).

**IRREVERSIBLE SHOCK** Compensatory mechanisms are often not enough to counteract substantial fluid loss. Even if they can maintain an adequate blood pressure level, the short-term measures cannot continue indefinitely. Ultimately, fluid volume must be replaced from the outside through drinking, transfusion, or a combination of both. Blood supply to the kidneys, digestive tract, skin, and other organs can be compromised to maintain blood flow to the brain only so long before organ damage begins to occur. A point may be reached at which blood pressure continues to drop rapidly because of tissue damage, despite vigorous therapy. This condition is often termed *irreversible shock*, in contrast to *reversible shock*, which can be corrected by compensatory mechanisms and effective therapy.

Homeostatically, the blood vessels are passageways to transport blood to and from the cells for  $O_2$  and nutrient delivery, waste removal, distribution of fluid and electrolytes, elimination of excess heat, and hormonal signaling, among other things. Cells soon die if deprived of their blood supply; brain cells succumb within 4 minutes. Blood is constantly recycled and reconditioned as it travels through the various organs via the vascular highways. Hence, the body needs only a small volume of blood to maintain the appropriate chemical composition of the entire internal fluid environment on which the cells depend for their survival. For example,  $O_2$  is continually picked up by blood in the lungs and constantly delivered to all the body cells.

The smallest blood vessels, the capillaries, are the actual site of exchange between blood and surrounding cells. Capillaries bring homeostatically maintained blood within 0.01 cm of every cell in the body; this proximity is critical, because beyond a few centimeters materials cannot diffuse rapidly enough to support life-sustaining activities.  $O_2$  that would take months to years to diffuse from the lungs to all the cells of the body is continuously delivered to the “doorstep” of every cell, where diffusion can efficiently accomplish short local exchanges between capillaries and surrounding cells. Likewise, hormones must be rapidly transported through the circulatory system from their sites of production in endocrine glands to their sites of action in other parts of the body. These chemical messengers could not diffuse nearly rapidly enough to their target organs to effectively exert their controlling effects, many of which are aimed toward maintaining homeostasis.

The rest of the circulatory system is designed to transport blood to and from the capillaries. The arteries and arterioles distribute blood pumped by the heart to the capillaries for life-sustaining exchanges to take place, and the venules and veins collect blood from the capillaries and return it to the heart, where the process is repeated.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-44)

1. In general, the parallel arrangement of the vascular system enables each organ to receive its own separate arterial blood supply. (*True or false?*)
2. More blood flows through the capillaries during cardiac systole than during diastole. (*True or false?*)
3. The capillaries contain only 5% of the total blood volume at any point in time. (*True or false?*)
4. The same volume of blood passes through the capillaries in a minute as passes through the aorta, even though blood flow is much slower in the capillaries. (*True or false?*)
5. Because capillary walls have no carrier transport systems, all capillaries are equally permeable. (*True or false?*)
6. Because of gravitational effects, venous pressure in the lower extremities is greater when a person is standing up than when the person is lying down. (*True or false?*)
7. Which of the following functions is or are attributable to arterioles? (*Indicate all correct answers.*)
  - a. produce a significant decline in mean pressure, which helps establish the driving pressure gradient between the heart and the organs
  - b. serve as the site of exchange of materials between blood and surrounding tissue cells
  - c. act as the main determinant of total peripheral resistance
  - d. determine the pattern of distribution of cardiac output
  - e. help regulate mean arterial blood pressure
  - f. convert the pulsatile nature of arterial blood pressure into a smooth, nonfluctuating pressure in the vessels farther downstream
  - g. act as a pressure reservoir
8. Using the answer code on the right, indicate whether the following factors increase or decrease venous return:

___ 1. sympathetically induced venous vasoconstriction	(a) increases venous return
___ 2. skeletal muscle activity	(b) decreases venous return
___ 3. gravitational effect on the venous system	(c) has no effect on venous return
___ 4. respiratory activity	
___ 5. increased atrial pressure associated with a leaky AV valve	
9. Using the answer code on the right, indicate what kind of compensatory changes occur in the factors in question to restore blood pressure to normal in response to hypotension resulting from severe hemorrhage:

___ 1. rate of afferent firing generated by the carotid sinus and aortic arch baroreceptors	(a) increased	(b) decreased	(c) no effect
___ 2. sympathetic output by the cardiovascular center			

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ___ 3. parasympathetic output by the cardiovascular center                        |  |
| ___ 4. heart rate   |  |
| ___ 5. stroke volume  |  |
| ___ 6. cardiac output   |  |
| ___ 7. arteriolar radius  |  |
| ___ 8. total peripheral resistance  |  |
| ___ 9. venous radius  |  |
| ___ 10. venous return   |  |
| ___ 11. urinary output  |  |
| ___ 12. fluid retention within the body   |  |
| ___ 13. fluid movement from interstitial fluid into plasma across the capillaries |  |

### Essay Questions

1. Compare blood flow through reconditioning organs and through organs that do not recondition the blood.
2. Discuss the relationships among flow rate, pressure gradient, and vascular resistance. What is the major determinant of resistance to flow?
3. Describe the structure and major functions of each segment of the vascular tree.
4. How do the arteries serve as a pressure reservoir?
5. Describe the indirect technique of measuring arterial blood pressure by means of a sphygmomanometer.
6. Define *vasoconstriction* and *vasodilation*.
7. Discuss the local and extrinsic controls that regulate arteriolar resistance.
8. What is the primary means by which individual solutes are exchanged across capillary walls? What forces produce bulk flow across capillary walls? Of what importance is bulk flow?
9. How is lymph formed? What are the functions of the lymphatic system?
10. Define *edema*, and discuss its possible causes.
11. How do veins serve as a blood reservoir?
12. Compare the effect of vasoconstriction on the rate of blood flow in arterioles and veins.
13. Discuss the factors that determine mean arterial pressure.
14. Review the effects on the cardiovascular system of parasympathetic and sympathetic stimulation.
15. Differentiate between secondary hypertension and primary hypertension. What are the potential consequences of hypertension?
16. Define circulatory shock. What are its consequences and compensations? What is irreversible shock?

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-44)

1. During coronary bypass surgery, a piece of vein is often removed from the patient's leg and surgically attached within the coronary circulatory system so that blood detours, through the vein, around an occluded coronary artery segment. Why must the patient wear, for an extended period after surgery, an elastic support stocking on the limb from which the vein was removed?
2. Assume a person has a blood pressure recording of 125/77.
  - a. What is the systolic pressure?
  - b. What is the diastolic pressure?
  - c. What is the pulse pressure?
  - d. What is the mean arterial pressure?
  - e. Would any sound be heard when the pressure in an external cuff around the arm was 130 mm Hg? (Yes or no?)
  - f. Would any sound be heard when cuff pressure was 118 mm Hg?
  - g. Would any sound be heard when cuff pressure was 75 mm Hg?
3. A classmate who has been standing still for several hours working on a laboratory experiment suddenly faints. What is the probable explanation? What would you do if the person next to him tried to get him up?
4. A drug applied to a piece of excised arteriole causes the vessel to relax, but an isolated piece of arteriolar muscle stripped from the other layers of the vessel fails to respond to the same drug. What is the probable explanation?
5. Explain how each of the following antihypertensive drugs would lower arterial blood pressure.
  - a. drugs that block  $\alpha_1$ -adrenergic receptors (for example, phentolamine) (*Hint*: Review adrenergic receptors on p. 184.)
  - b. drugs that block  $\beta_1$ -adrenergic receptors (for example, metoprolol)
  - c. drugs that directly relax arteriolar smooth muscle (for example, hydralazine)
  - d. diuretic drugs that increase urinary output (for example, furosemide)
  - e. drugs that block release of norepinephrine from sympathetic endings (for example, guanethidine)
  - f. drugs that act on the brain to reduce sympathetic output (for example, clonidine)
  - g. drugs that block  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels (for example, verapamil)
  - h. drugs that interfere with the production of angiotensin II (for example, captopril)
  - i. drugs that block angiotensin receptors (for example, losartan)

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

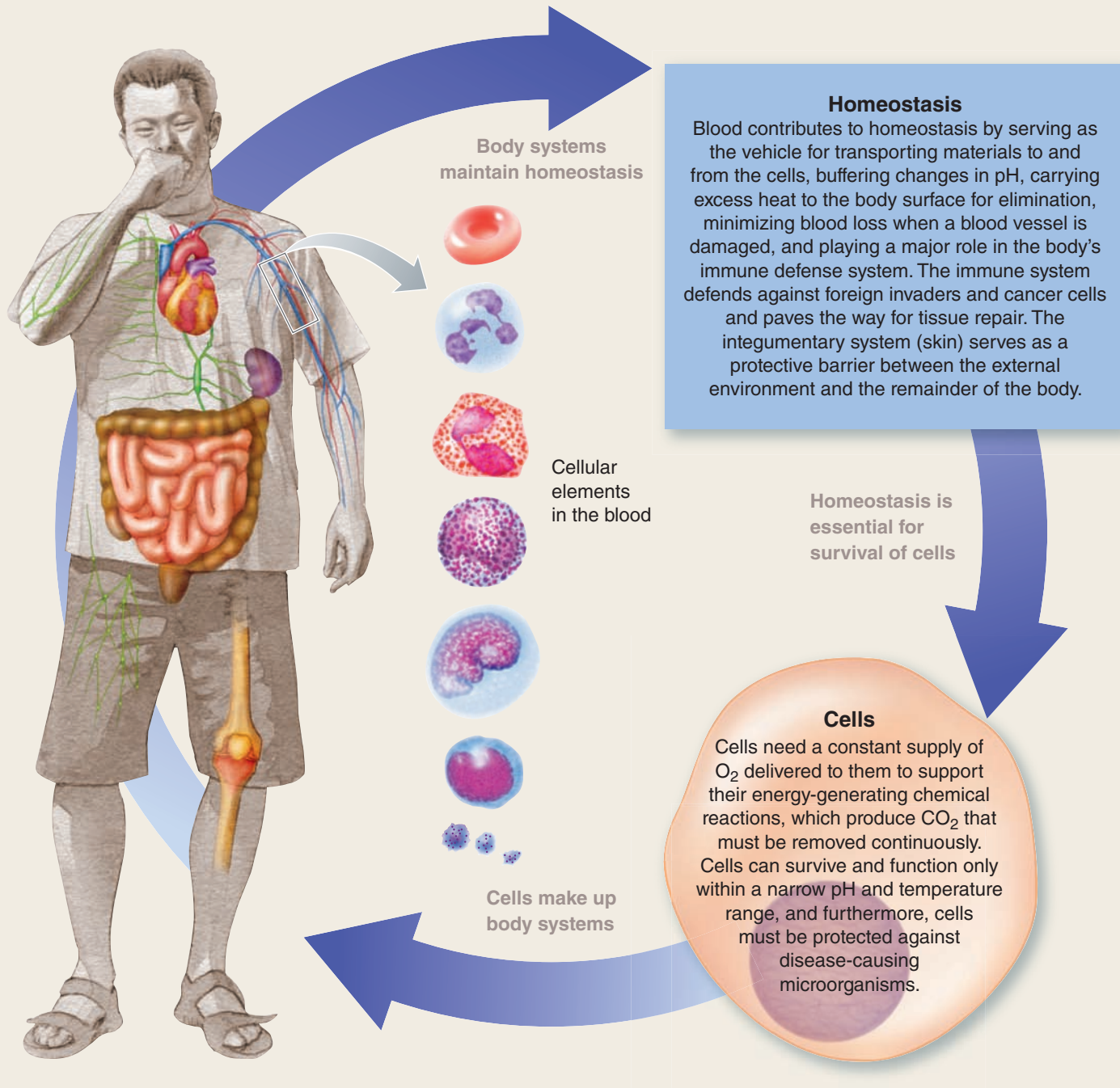
### (Explanation on p. A-45)

Li-Ying C. has just been diagnosed as having hypertension secondary to a *pheochromocytoma*, a tumor of the adrenal medulla that secretes excessive epinephrine. Explain how

this condition leads to secondary hypertension by describing the effect that excessive epinephrine would have on various factors that determine arterial blood pressure.



## Blood; Immune System; Integumentary System (Skin)



Blood is the vehicle for long-distance, mass transport of materials between the cells and the external environment or between the cells themselves. Such transport is essential for maintaining homeostasis. Blood consists of a liquid **plasma** in which the cellular elements are suspended. Among the blood's cellular elements, **erythrocytes (red blood cells, or RBCs)** transport O<sub>2</sub> in the blood. **Platelets** are important in hemostasis, the stopping of bleeding from an injured vessel. **Leukocytes (white blood cells, or WBCs)**

are part of a complex, multifaceted internal defense system, the **immune system**. They are transported in the blood to sites of injury or of invasion by disease-causing microorganisms. The immune system indirectly contributes to homeostasis by helping maintain the health of organs that directly contribute to homeostasis. The **integumentary system (skin)** is an outer protective barrier that prevents the loss of internal fluids and resists penetration by external agents.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Plasma**

Hematocrit  
Composition and functions of plasma  
Plasma proteins

**Erythrocytes**

Structure and function of erythrocytes  
Erythropoiesis

**Platelets and Hemostasis**

Platelet structure and function  
Hemostasis

**Leukocytes**

Bacteria and viruses as targets of the immune system  
Types and functions of leukocytes

**Innate Immunity**

Inflammation  
Interferon  
Natural killer cells  
Complement system

**Adaptive Immunity: General Concepts****B Lymphocytes: Antibody-Mediated Immunity**

Plasma cells; antibodies  
Clonal selection theory  
Memory cells

**T Lymphocytes: Cell-Mediated Immunity**

Cytotoxic, helper, and regulatory T cells  
Antigen-presenting cells  
Major histocompatibility complex; self-antigens  
Tolerance  
Immune surveillance against cancer

**Immune Diseases****External Defenses**

Structure and function of skin  
Protective measures within body cavities

# The Blood and Body Defenses

## Plasma

**The hematocrit represents the packed cell volume; plasma accounts for the rest of the volume.**

Blood represents about 8% of total body weight and has an average volume of 5 liters in women and 5.5 liters in men. It consists of three types of specialized cellular elements, *erythrocytes* (red blood cells), *leukocytes* (white blood cells), and *platelets* (thrombocytes), suspended in the complex liquid *plasma* (● Figure 11-1 and ▲ Table 11-1). Erythrocytes and leukocytes are both whole cells, whereas platelets are cell fragments.

The constant movement of blood as it flows through the blood vessels keeps the cellular elements rather evenly dispersed within the plasma. However, if you put a sample of whole blood in a test tube and treat it to prevent clotting, the heavier cells slowly settle to the bottom and the lighter plasma rises to the top. This process can be speeded up by centrifuging, which quickly packs the cells in the bottom of the tube (● Figure 11-1). Because more than 99% of the cells are erythrocytes, the **hematocrit**, or **packed cell volume**, essentially represents the percentage of erythrocytes in the total blood volume. The hematocrit averages about 42% for women and slightly higher, 45%, for men. Plasma accounts for the remaining volume. Accordingly, the average volume of plasma in the blood is about 58% for women and 55% for men. White blood cells and platelets, which are colorless and less dense than red cells, are packed in a thin, cream-colored layer, the *buffy coat*, on top of the packed red cell column. They are less than 1% of the total blood volume.

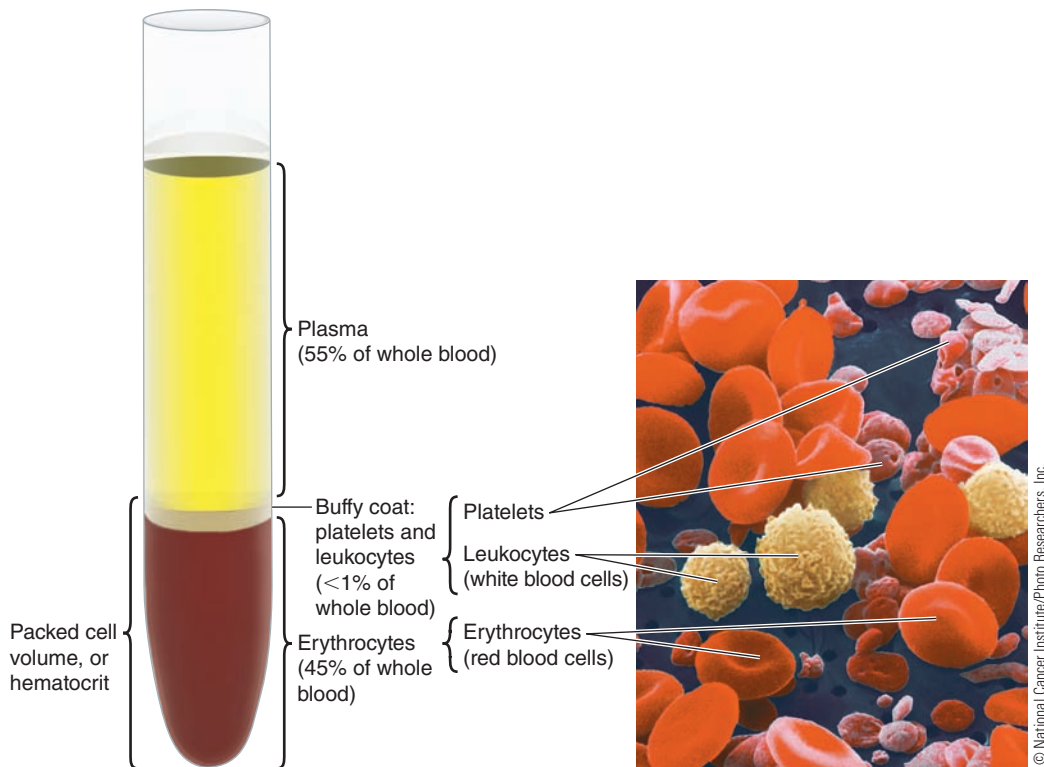
Let us first consider the properties of the largest portion of the blood, the plasma, before turning our attention to the cellular elements.

**Plasma water is a transport medium for many inorganic and organic substances.**

Plasma, being a liquid, consists of 90% water. Plasma water is a medium for materials being carried in the blood. Many inorganic and organic substances are dissolved in the plasma. Plasma also carries heat generated metabolically within tissues to the surface of the skin, where heat energy not needed to maintain body temperature is eliminated to the environment.

Inorganic constituents account for about 1% of plasma weight. The most abundant electrolytes (ions) in the plasma are  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ , the components of common salt. Smaller amounts of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , and other ions are present. The most notable functions of these ions are their roles in membrane excitability, osmotic distribution of fluid between the extracellular fluid (ECF) and the cells, and buffering of pH changes; these functions are discussed elsewhere.

The most plentiful organic constituents by weight are the plasma proteins, which make up 6% to 8% of plasma weight. We examine them more thoroughly in the next



● **FIGURE 11-1 Hematocrit and types of blood cells.** The values given are for men. The average hematocrit for women is 42%, with plasma occupying 58% of the blood volume. Note the biconcave shape of the erythrocytes.

section. The remaining small percentage of plasma consists of other organic substances, including nutrients (such as glucose, amino acids, lipids, and vitamins), waste products (creatinine, bilirubin, and nitrogenous substances such as urea), dissolved gases ( $O_2$  and  $CO_2$ ), and hormones. Most of these substances are merely being transported in the plasma. For example, endocrine glands secrete hormones into the plasma, which transports these chemical messengers to their sites of action.

**Many of the functions of plasma are carried out by plasma proteins.**

**Plasma proteins** are the one group of plasma constituents that are not along just for the ride. These important components normally stay in the plasma, where they perform

## ▲ Table 11-1 Blood Constituents and Their Functions

Constituent	Functions
<b>Plasma</b>	
<i>Water</i>	Acts as transport medium; carries heat
<i>Electrolytes</i>	Play a role in membrane excitability; distribute fluid osmotically between ECF and ICF; buffer pH changes
<i>Nutrients, wastes, gases, and hormones</i>	Are transported in blood; blood $CO_2$ plays a role in acid–base balance
<i>Plasma proteins</i>	Exert an osmotic effect important in the distribution of ECF between the vascular and the interstitial compartments; buffer pH changes; transport many substances; include clotting factors, inactive precursor molecules, and antibodies
<b>Cellular Elements</b>	
<i>Erythrocytes</i>	Transport $O_2$ and $CO_2$ (mainly $O_2$ )
<i>Leukocytes</i>	
Neutrophils	Engulf bacteria and debris
Eosinophils	Attack parasitic worms; play a role in allergic reactions
Basophils	Release histamine, which is important in allergic reactions, and heparin, which helps clear fat from the blood
Monocytes	Are in transit to become tissue macrophages
<i>Lymphocytes</i>	
B lymphocytes	Produce antibodies
T lymphocytes	Produce cell-mediated immune responses
<i>Platelets</i>	Contribute to hemostasis

many valuable functions. Here are the most important of these functions, which are elaborated on elsewhere in the text:

1. Unlike other plasma constituents that are dissolved in the plasma water, plasma proteins are dispersed as a colloid (see p. A-9). Furthermore, because they are the largest of the plasma constituents, plasma proteins usually do not exit through the narrow pores in the capillary walls to enter the interstitial fluid. By their presence as a colloidal dispersion in the plasma and their absence in the interstitial fluid, plasma proteins establish an osmotic gradient between the blood and the interstitial fluid. This colloid osmotic pressure is the primary force preventing excessive loss of plasma from the capillaries into the interstitial fluid and thus helps maintain plasma volume (see p. 279).
2. Plasma proteins are partially responsible for plasma's capacity to buffer changes in pH (see p. 430).
3. Some plasma proteins bind substances that are poorly soluble in plasma for transport in the plasma. Examples of substances carried by plasma proteins include cholesterol (see p. 256) and thyroid hormone (see p. 96).
4. Many of the factors involved in the blood-clotting process are plasma proteins (see p. 306).
5. Some plasma proteins are inactive, circulating precursor molecules, which are activated as needed by specific regulatory inputs. For example, the plasma protein *angiotensinogen* is activated to *angiotensin*, which plays an important role in regulating salt balance in the body (see p. 393).
6. One specific group of plasma proteins are *antibodies*, or *immunoglobulins*, which are crucial to the body's defense mechanism (see p. 320).

Plasma proteins are synthesized by the liver, with the exception of antibodies, which are produced by lymphocytes, one of the types of white blood cells.

## Erythrocytes

Each milliliter of blood on average contains about 5 billion **erythrocytes** (**red blood cells**, or **RBCs**), commonly reported clinically in a **red blood cell count** as 5 million cells per cubic millimeter ( $\text{mm}^3$ ).

**The structure of erythrocytes is well suited to their main function of  $\text{O}_2$  transport in the blood.**

The shape and content of erythrocytes are ideally suited to carry out their primary function, namely, transporting  $\text{O}_2$ .

**ERYTHROCYTE STRUCTURE** Two anatomic features of erythrocytes contribute to the efficiency with which they transport  $\text{O}_2$ . First, erythrocytes are flat, disc-shaped cells indented in the middle on both sides, like a doughnut with a flattened center instead of a hole (that is, they are biconcave discs) (● Figure 11-1). This unique shape provides a larger surface area for diffusion of  $\text{O}_2$  from the plasma across the membrane into the erythrocyte than a spherical cell of the same volume would.

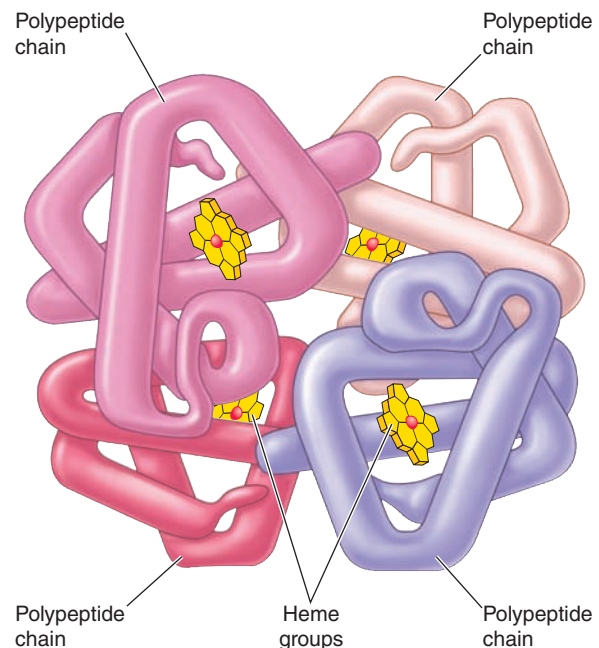
Second, the most important anatomic feature that enables RBCs to transport  $\text{O}_2$  is the hemoglobin they contain.

**HEMOGLOBIN'S TRANSPORT CAPACITY** Hemoglobin is found only in red blood cells. A **hemoglobin** molecule has two parts: (1) the **globin** portion, a protein made up of four highly folded polypeptide chains, and (2) four iron-containing, nonprotein groups known as **heme groups**, each of which is bound to one of the polypeptides (● Figure 11-2). Each of the four iron atoms can combine reversibly with one molecule of  $\text{O}_2$ ; thus, each hemoglobin molecule can pick up four  $\text{O}_2$  passengers in the lungs. Because  $\text{O}_2$  is poorly soluble in the plasma, 98.5% of the  $\text{O}_2$  carried in the blood is bound to hemoglobin (see p. 365).

Hemoglobin is a pigment (that is, it is naturally colored). Because of its iron content, it appears reddish when combined with  $\text{O}_2$  and bluish when deoxygenated. Thus, fully oxygenated arterial blood is red, and venous blood, which has lost some of its  $\text{O}_2$  load at the tissue level, has a bluish cast.

In addition to carrying  $\text{O}_2$ , hemoglobin can combine with the following:

1. *Carbon dioxide ( $\text{CO}_2$ )*. Hemoglobin helps transport this gas from the tissue cells back to the lungs (see p. 370).
2. *The acidic hydrogen-ion portion ( $\text{H}^+$ ) of ionized carbonic acid*, which is generated at the tissue level from  $\text{CO}_2$ . Hemoglobin buffers this acid so that it minimally alters the pH of the blood (see p. 430).
3. *Carbon monoxide ( $\text{CO}$ )*. This gas is not normally in the blood, but if inhaled, it preferentially occupies the  $\text{O}_2$ -binding sites on hemoglobin, causing  $\text{CO}$  poisoning (see p. 369).



● **FIGURE 11-2 Hemoglobin molecule.** A hemoglobin molecule consists of four highly folded polypeptide chains (the globin portion) and four iron-containing heme groups. The red sphere in the center of each heme represents iron.

4. **Nitric oxide (NO).** In the lungs, the vasodilator nitric oxide binds to hemoglobin. This NO is released at the tissues, where it relaxes and dilates the local arterioles (see p. 272). Vasodilation helps ensure that the O<sub>2</sub>-rich blood can make its vital rounds and helps stabilize blood pressure.

Therefore, hemoglobin plays the key role in O<sub>2</sub> transport while contributing significantly to CO<sub>2</sub> transport and the pH-buffering capacity of blood. Furthermore, by toting along its own vasodilator, hemoglobin helps deliver the O<sub>2</sub> it is carrying.

**LACK OF NUCLEUS AND ORGANELLES** To maximize its hemoglobin content, a single erythrocyte is stuffed with more than 250 million hemoglobin molecules, excluding almost everything else. (That means each RBC can carry more than 1 billion O<sub>2</sub> molecules.) Red blood cells contain no nucleus or organelles. During the cell's development, these structures are extruded to make room for more hemoglobin. Thus, an RBC is mainly a plasma membrane-enclosed sac full of hemoglobin.

Ironically, even though erythrocytes are the vehicles for transporting O<sub>2</sub> to all other tissues of the body, for energy production erythrocytes themselves cannot use the O<sub>2</sub> they are carrying. Lacking the mitochondria that house the enzymes for oxidative phosphorylation, erythrocytes must rely entirely on glycolysis for ATP formation (see p. 27).

### The bone marrow continuously replaces worn-out erythrocytes.

Each of us has a total of 25 trillion to 30 trillion RBCs streaming through our blood vessels at any given time (100,000 times more in number than the entire U.S. population). Yet these vital gas-transport vehicles are short lived and must be replaced at the average rate of 2 million to 3 million cells per second.

**ERYTHROCYTES' SHORT LIFE SPAN** The price erythrocytes pay for their generous content of hemoglobin to the exclusion of the usual specialized intracellular machinery is a short life span. Without DNA, RNA, and ribosomes, red blood cells cannot synthesize proteins for cell repair, growth, and division or for renewing enzyme supplies. Equipped only with initial supplies synthesized before they extrude their nucleus and organelles, RBCs survive an average of only 120 days, in contrast to nerve and muscle cells, which last a person's entire life. During its short life span of 4 months, each erythrocyte travels about 700 miles as it circulates through the vasculature.

As a red blood cell ages, its nonreparable plasma membrane becomes fragile and prone to rupture as the cell squeezes through tight spots in the vascular system. Most old RBCs meet their final demise in the **spleen**, because this organ's narrow, winding capillary network is a tight fit for these fragile cells. The spleen lies in the upper left part of the abdomen. In addition to removing most of the old erythrocytes from circulation, the spleen has a limited ability to store healthy erythrocytes in its pulpy interior, is a reservoir for platelets, and contains an abundance of lymphocytes, a type of white blood cell.

**ERYTHROPOIESIS** Because erythrocytes cannot divide to replenish their own numbers, the old ruptured cells must be replaced by new cells produced in an erythrocyte factory—the **bone marrow**—which is the soft, highly cellular tissue that fills the internal cavities of bones. The bone marrow normally generates new red blood cells, a process known as **erythropoiesis**, at a rate to keep pace with the demolition of old cells.

In children, most bones are filled with **red bone marrow** capable of blood cell production. As a person matures, however, fatty **yellow bone marrow** incapable of erythropoiesis gradually replaces red marrow, which remains only in a few isolated places, such as the sternum (breastbone), ribs, pelvis, and upper ends of the long limb bones. These are sites where bone marrow is extracted for examination or for use in bone marrow transplants.

Red marrow not only produces RBCs but also is the ultimate source for leukocytes and platelets. Undifferentiated **pluripotent stem cells**, the source of all blood cells, reside in the red marrow, where they continuously divide and differentiate to give rise to each of the types of blood cells (see ● Figure 11-13, p. 312). The different types of immature blood cells, along with the stem cells, are intermingled in the red marrow at various stages of development. Once mature, the blood cells are released into the rich supply of capillaries that permeate the red marrow. Regulatory factors act on the *hemopoietic* (“blood-producing”) red marrow to govern the type and number of cells generated and discharged into the blood. Of the blood cells, the mechanism for regulating RBC production is the best understood. We consider it next.

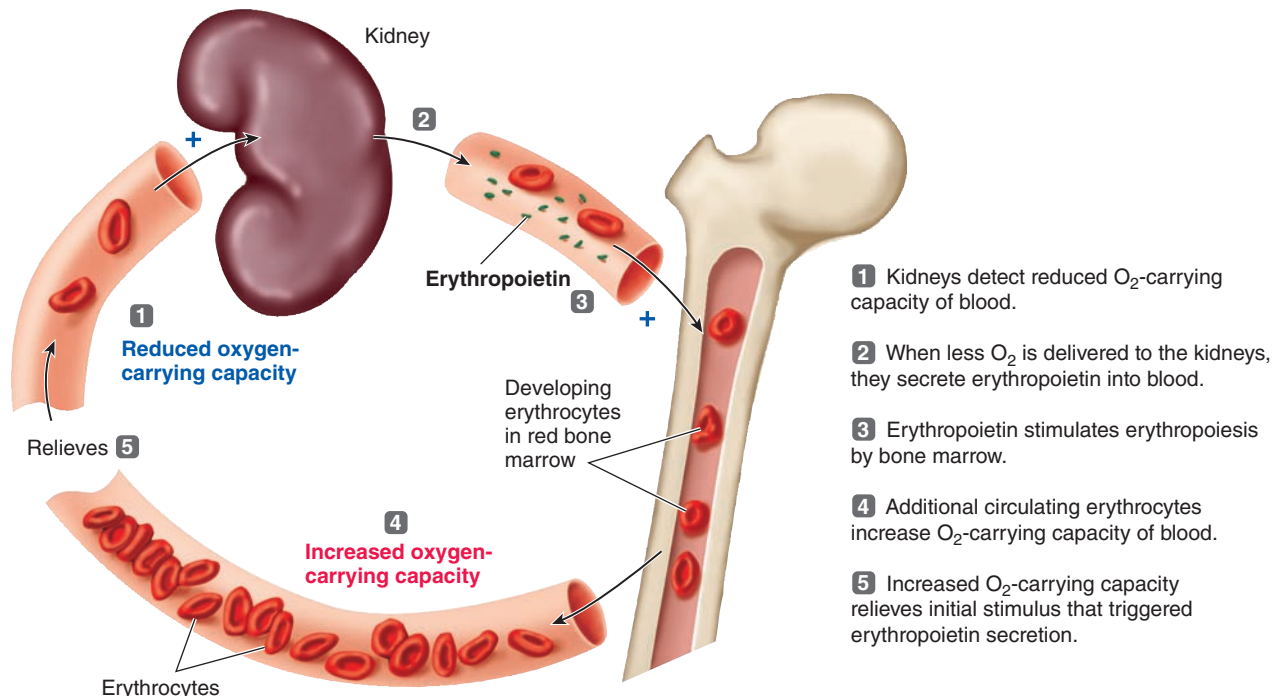
### Erythropoiesis is controlled by erythropoietin from the kidneys.

Because O<sub>2</sub> transport in the blood is the erythrocytes' main function, you might logically suspect that the primary stimulus for increased erythrocyte production would be reduced O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the tissues. You would be correct, but low O<sub>2</sub> levels do not stimulate erythropoiesis by acting directly on the red bone marrow. Instead, reduced O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the kidneys stimulates them to secrete the hormone **erythropoietin** into the blood, and this hormone in turn stimulates erythropoiesis by the bone marrow (● Figure 11-3). This increased erythropoietic activity elevates the number of circulating RBCs, thereby increasing O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity of the blood and restoring O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the tissues to normal. Once normal O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the kidneys is achieved, erythropoietin secretion is turned down until needed again. In this way, erythrocyte production is normally balanced against destruction or loss of these cells so that O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity in the blood stays fairly constant.

When you donate blood, your circulating erythrocyte supply is replenished in less than a week. In severe loss of RBCs, as in hemorrhage or abnormal destruction of young circulating erythrocytes, the rate of erythropoiesis can be increased to more than six times the normal level.



**SYNTHETIC ERYTHROPOIETIN** Researchers have identified the gene that directs erythropoietin synthesis, so this hormone can now be produced in a laboratory.



● FIGURE 11-3 Control of erythropoiesis.

Laboratory-produced erythropoietin (Epogen, Procrit) has currently become biotechnology's single-biggest moneymaker, with sales exceeding \$1 billion annually. This hormone is often used to boost RBC production in patients with suppressed erythropoietic activity, such as those with kidney failure or those undergoing chemotherapy for cancer. (Chemotherapy drugs interfere with the rapid cell division characteristic of both cancer cells and developing RBCs.)

### Anemia can be caused by a variety of disorders.

**Clinical Note** Despite control measures, O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity cannot always be maintained to meet tissue needs. A below-normal O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity of the blood is known as **anemia**, which is characterized by a low hematocrit. Anemia can be brought about by a decreased rate of erythropoiesis, excessive losses of erythrocytes, or a deficiency in the hemoglobin content of erythrocytes. The various causes of anemia can be grouped into six categories:

- 1. Nutritional anemia** is caused by a dietary deficiency of a factor needed for erythropoiesis. The production of RBCs depends on an adequate supply of essential raw ingredients, some of which are not synthesized in the body but must be provided by dietary intake. For example, *iron deficiency anemia* occurs when not enough iron is available for synthesizing hemoglobin.
- 2. Pernicious anemia** is caused by an inability to absorb enough ingested vitamin B<sub>12</sub> from the digestive tract. Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is essential for normal RBC production and maturation. It is abundant in various foods and thus is rarely deficient in the diet. The problem is a deficiency of *intrinsic factor*, a special substance secreted by the lining of the stomach (see p. 452).

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> can be absorbed from the intestinal tract only when this nutrient is bound to intrinsic factor.

- 3. Aplastic anemia** is caused by failure of the bone marrow to produce enough RBCs, even though all ingredients necessary for erythropoiesis are available. Reduced erythropoietic capability can be caused by destruction of red marrow by toxic chemicals (such as benzene), heavy exposure to radiation (fall-out from a nuclear bomb explosion, for example, or excessive exposure to X-rays), invasion of the marrow by cancer cells, or chemotherapy for cancer. The destructive process may selectively reduce the marrow's output of erythrocytes, or it may also reduce the productive capability for leukocytes and platelets. The anemia's severity depends on the extent to which erythropoietic tissue is destroyed; severe losses are fatal.
- 4. Renal anemia** may result from kidney disease. Because erythropoietin from the kidneys is the primary stimulus for promoting erythropoiesis, inadequate erythropoietin secretion by diseased kidneys leads to insufficient RBC production.
- 5. Hemorrhagic anemia** is caused by losing a lot of blood. The loss can be either acute, such as a bleeding wound, or chronic, such as excessive menstrual flow.
- 6. Hemolytic anemia** is caused by the rupture of too many circulating erythrocytes. **Hemolysis**, the rupture of RBCs, occurs either because otherwise normal cells are induced to rupture by external factors, as in the invasion of RBCs by *malaria* parasites, or because the cells are defective, as in sickle cell disease. **Sickle cell disease** is the best-known example among various hereditary abnormalities of erythrocytes that make these cells fragile. It affects about 1 in 650 African Americans. Sickle cell disease is caused by a genetic mutation that changes a single amino acid in the 146-long amino acid chain that

makes up a hemoglobin polypeptide. This defective type of hemoglobin joins together to form rigid chains that make the RBC stiff and unnaturally shaped, like a crescent or sickle (● Figure 11-4). Unlike normal erythrocytes, these deformed RBCs tend to clump together. The resultant “logjam” blocks blood flow through small vessels, leading to pain and tissue damage at the affected site. Furthermore, the defective erythrocytes are fragile and prone to rupture, even as young cells, as they travel through the narrow splenic capillaries. Despite an accelerated rate of erythropoiesis triggered by the constant excessive loss of RBCs, production may not be able to keep pace with the rate of destruction, and anemia may result.

### Polycythemia is an excess of circulating erythrocytes.



**Polycythemia**, in contrast to anemia, is characterized by too many circulating RBCs and an elevated hematocrit. There are two general types of polycythemia, depending on the circumstances that trigger the excess RBC production: primary polycythemia and secondary polycythemia.

**Primary polycythemia** is caused by a tumorlike condition of the bone marrow in which erythropoiesis proceeds at an excessive, uncontrolled rate instead of being subject to the normal erythropoietin regulatory mechanism. The RBC count may reach 11 million cells/mm<sup>3</sup> (normal is 5 million cells/mm<sup>3</sup>), and the hematocrit may be as high as 70% to 80% (normal is 42% to 45%). No benefit is derived from the extra O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity of the blood, because O<sub>2</sub> delivery is more than adequate with normal RBC numbers. Inappropriate polycythemia has harmful effects, however. The excessive number of red cells increases blood’s viscosity up to five to seven times normal (that is, makes the blood “thicker”), causing the blood to flow sluggishly, which may actually reduce O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the tissues (see p. 263). The increased viscosity also increases the total peripheral resistance, which may elevate the blood pressure, thus increasing the workload of the heart, unless blood-pressure control mechanisms can compensate (see ● Figure 10-11, p. 275).

**Secondary polycythemia**, in contrast, is an appropriate erythropoietin-induced adaptive mechanism to improve the blood’s O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity in response to a prolonged reduction in O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the tissues. It occurs normally in people

living at high altitudes, where less O<sub>2</sub> is available in the air, or in people for whom O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the tissues is impaired by chronic lung disease or cardiac failure. The price paid for improved O<sub>2</sub> delivery is an increased viscosity of the blood.

We next shift attention to blood types, which depend on special markers on the surface membrane of erythrocytes.

### Blood types depend on surface antigens on erythrocytes.

An **antigen** is a large, complex molecule that triggers a specific immune response against itself when it gains entry to the body. For example, antigens are found on the surface of foreign cells such as bacterial invaders. Certain types of white blood cells recognize antigens and produce specific antibodies against them. An **antibody** binds with the specific antigen against which it is produced and leads to the antigen’s destruction by various means. Thus, the body rejects cells bearing antigens that do not match its own. You will learn more about these immune responses later in this chapter when we turn to body defenses. For now, we focus on the special antigen–antibody reaction that forms the basis of different blood types.

**ABO BLOOD TYPES** The surface membranes of human erythrocytes contain inherited antigens that vary depending on blood type. Within the major blood group system, the **ABO system**, the erythrocytes of people with type A blood contain A antigens, those with type B blood contain B antigens, those with type AB blood have both A and B antigens, and those with type O blood do not have any A or B red blood cell surface antigens.

Antibodies against erythrocyte antigens not present on the body’s own erythrocytes begin to appear in human plasma after a baby is about 6 months of age. Accordingly, the plasma of type A blood contains anti-B antibodies, type B blood contains anti-A antibodies, no antibodies related to the ABO system are present in type AB blood, and both anti-A and anti-B antibodies are present in type O blood (▲ Table 11-2). Typically, one would expect antibody production against A or B antigen to be induced only if blood containing the alien antigen were injected into the body. However, high levels of these antibodies are found in the plasma of people who have never been exposed to a different type of blood. Consequently, these were considered naturally occurring antibodies, that is, produced without any known exposure to the antigen. Scientists now know that people are routinely exposed at an early age to small amounts of



Stanley Fletcher/Visuals Unlimited.

● **FIGURE 11-4** Sickle-shaped red blood cell.

### ▲ Table 11-2 ABO Blood Types

Blood Type	Antigens on Erythrocytes	Antibodies in Plasma
A	A	Anti-B
B	B	Anti-A
AB	A and B	No antibodies
O	No antigens	Both anti-A and anti-B

A- and B-like antigens associated with common, harmless intestinal bacteria. Antibodies produced against these foreign antigens coincidentally also interact with a nearly identical antigen for a foreign blood group, even on first exposure to it.



**TRANSFUSION REACTION** If a person is given blood of an incompatible type, two antigen–antibody interactions take place. By far, the more serious consequences arise from the effect of the antibodies in the recipient’s plasma on the incoming donor erythrocytes. The effect of the donor’s antibodies on the recipient’s erythrocyte-bound antigens is less important unless a large amount of blood is transfused, because the donor’s antibodies are so diluted by the recipient’s plasma that little red blood cell damage takes place in the recipient.

Antibody interaction with an erythrocyte-bound antigen may result in agglutination (clumping) or hemolysis (rupture) of the attacked red blood cells. Agglutination and hemolysis of donor red blood cells by antibodies in the recipient’s plasma can lead to a sometimes fatal **transfusion reaction** (● Figure 11-5). Agglutinated clumps of incoming donor cells can plug small blood vessels. In addition, one of the most lethal consequences of mismatched transfusions is acute kidney failure caused by the release of large amounts of hemoglobin from ruptured donor erythrocytes. If the free hemoglobin in the plasma rises above a critical level, it will precipitate in the kidneys and block the urine-forming structures, leading to acute kidney shutdown.

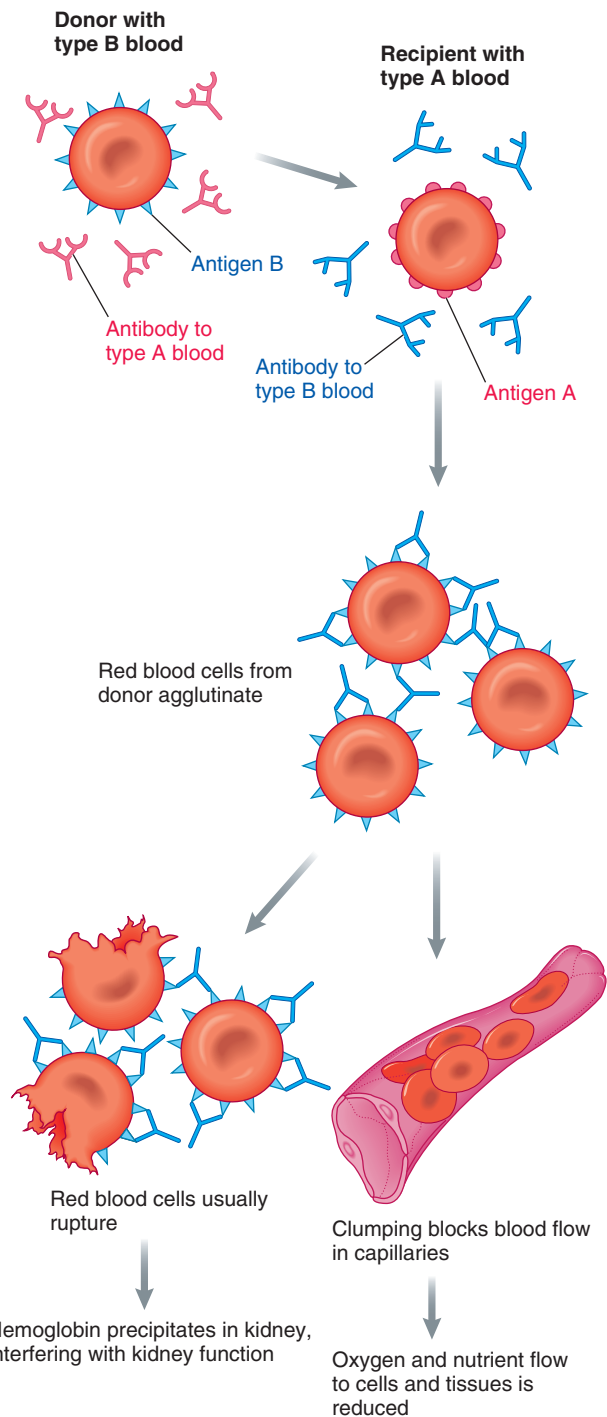
**UNIVERSAL BLOOD DONORS AND RECIPIENTS** Because type O individuals have no A or B antigens, their erythrocytes will not be attacked by either anti-A or anti-B antibodies, so they are considered **universal donors**. Their blood can be transfused into people of any blood type. However, type O individuals can receive only type O blood, because the anti-A and anti-B antibodies in their plasma will attack either A or B antigens in incoming blood. In contrast, type AB individuals are called **universal recipients**. Lacking both anti-A and anti-B antibodies, they can accept donor blood of any type, although they can donate blood only to other AB people. Because their erythrocytes have both A and B antigens, their cells would be attacked if transfused into individuals with antibodies against either of these antigens.

The terms *universal donor* and *universal recipient* are misleading, however. In addition to the ABO system, many other erythrocyte antigens and plasma antibodies can cause transfusion reactions, the most important of which is the Rh factor.

**RH BLOOD-GROUP SYSTEM** People who have the **Rh factor** (an erythrocyte antigen first observed in rhesus monkeys, hence the designation Rh) are said to have *Rh-positive* blood, whereas those lacking the Rh factor are considered *Rh-negative*. In contrast to the ABO system, no naturally occurring antibodies develop against the Rh factor.



Anti-Rh antibodies are produced only by Rh-negative individuals when (and if) such people are first exposed to the foreign Rh antigen present in Rh-positive blood. A subsequent transfusion of Rh-



● **FIGURE 11-5 Transfusion reaction.** This transfusion reaction results from type B blood being transfused into a recipient with type A blood.

positive blood could produce a transfusion reaction in such a sensitized Rh-negative person. Rh-positive individuals, in contrast, never produce antibodies against the Rh factor that they themselves possess. Therefore, Rh-negative people should be given only Rh-negative blood, whereas Rh-positive people can safely receive either Rh-negative or Rh-positive blood. The Rh factor is of particular medical importance when an Rh-negative mother develops antibodies against the erythrocytes of an Rh-positive fetus she is carrying, a condition known as **erythro-**



**blastosis fetalis, or hemolytic disease of the newborn.** Because the fetal bone marrow cannot put out mature erythrocytes as fast as the rate of erythrocyte destruction by the maternal antibodies, it releases immature precursors of erythrocytes known as erythroblasts (“erythrocyte formers”), hence the name of the condition. (See the Clinical Consideration on p. 343 for further discussion of this disorder.)

Except in extreme emergencies, it is safest to individually cross-match blood before a transfusion is undertaken even though the ABO and Rh typing is already known, because there are approximately 23 other minor human erythrocyte antigen systems, with hundreds of subtypes. Compatibility is determined by mixing the red blood cells from the potential donor with plasma from the recipient. If no clumping occurs, the blood is considered an adequate match for transfusion.

We next examine platelets, another type of cellular element present in the blood.

## Platelets and Hemostasis

An average of 250 million platelets are normally present in each milliliter of blood (range of 150,000 to 350,000/mm<sup>3</sup>).

### Platelets are cell fragments shed from megakaryocytes.

**Platelets, or thrombocytes,** are not whole cells but small cell fragments shed from the outer edges of extraordinarily large bone marrow-bound cells known as **megakaryocytes** (● Figure 11-6). A single megakaryocyte typically produces about 1000 platelets. Megakaryocytes are derived from the same undifferentiated stem cells that give rise to the erythrocytic and leukocytic cell lines (see ● Figure 11-13, p. 312). Platelets are essentially detached vesicles containing pieces of megakaryocyte cytoplasm wrapped in plasma membrane.

Platelets remain functional for an average of 10 days, at which time they are removed from circulation by tissue macro-

phages (large phagocytic cells), especially those in the spleen and liver, and are replaced by newly released platelets from the bone marrow. The hormone **thrombopoietin**, produced by the liver, increases the number of megakaryocytes in the bone marrow and stimulates each megakaryocyte to produce more platelets as needed.

Because platelets are cell fragments, they lack nuclei. However, they have organelles and cytosolic enzyme systems for generating energy and synthesizing secretory products, which they store in numerous granules dispersed throughout the cytosol. Furthermore, platelets contain high concentrations of actin and myosin, which enable them to contract. Their secretory and contractile abilities are important in hemostasis, a topic to which we now turn.

### Hemostasis prevents blood loss from damaged small vessels.

**Hemostasis** is the arrest of bleeding from a broken blood vessel—that is, the stopping of hemorrhage (*hemo* means “blood”; *stasis* means “standing”). For bleeding to take place from a vessel, there must be a break in the vessel wall and the pressure inside the vessel must be greater than the pressure outside it to force blood out through the defect.

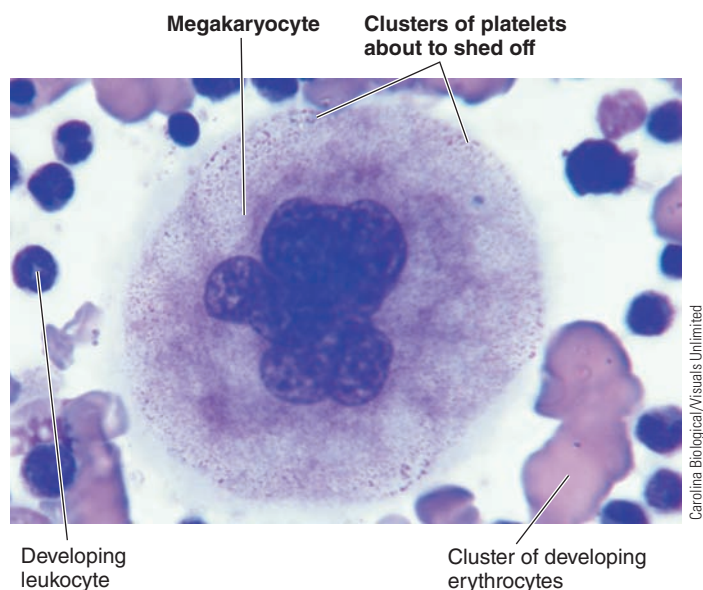
The small capillaries, arterioles, and venules are often ruptured by minor traumas of everyday life; such traumas are the most common source of bleeding, although we often are not even aware that any damage has taken place. The body’s inherent hemostatic mechanisms normally are adequate to seal defects and stop blood loss through these small microcirculatory vessels.

**Clinical Note** The rarer occurrence of bleeding from medium to large vessels usually cannot be stopped by the body’s hemostatic mechanisms alone. Bleeding from a severed artery is more profuse and therefore more dangerous than venous bleeding, because the outward driving pressure is greater in the arteries (that is, arterial blood pressure is higher than venous pressure). First-aid measures for a severed artery include applying external pressure to the wound that is greater than the arterial blood pressure to temporarily halt the bleeding until the torn vessel can be surgically closed. Hemorrhage from a traumatized vein can often be stopped simply by elevating the bleeding body part to reduce gravity’s effects on pressure in the vein (see p. 285). If the accompanying drop in venous pressure is not enough to stop the bleeding, mild external compression is usually adequate.

Hemostasis involves three major steps: (1) *vascular spasm*, (2) *formation of a platelet plug*, and (3) *blood coagulation (clotting)*. Platelets play a pivotal role in hemostasis. They obviously play a major part in forming a platelet plug, but they also contribute significantly to the other two steps.

### Vascular spasm reduces blood flow through an injured vessel.

A cut or torn blood vessel immediately constricts. The underlying mechanism is unclear but is thought to be an intrinsic response triggered by a paracrine released locally from the inner



● **FIGURE 11-6** A megakaryocyte forming platelets.

lining (endothelium) of the injured vessel (see p. 264). This constriction, or **vascular spasm**, slows blood flow through the defect and thus minimizes blood loss. Also, as the opposing endothelial surfaces of the vessel are pressed together by this initial vascular spasm, they become sticky and adhere to each other, further sealing off the damaged vessel. These physical measures alone cannot completely prevent further blood loss, but they minimize blood flow through the break in the vessel until the other hemostatic measures can actually plug the hole.

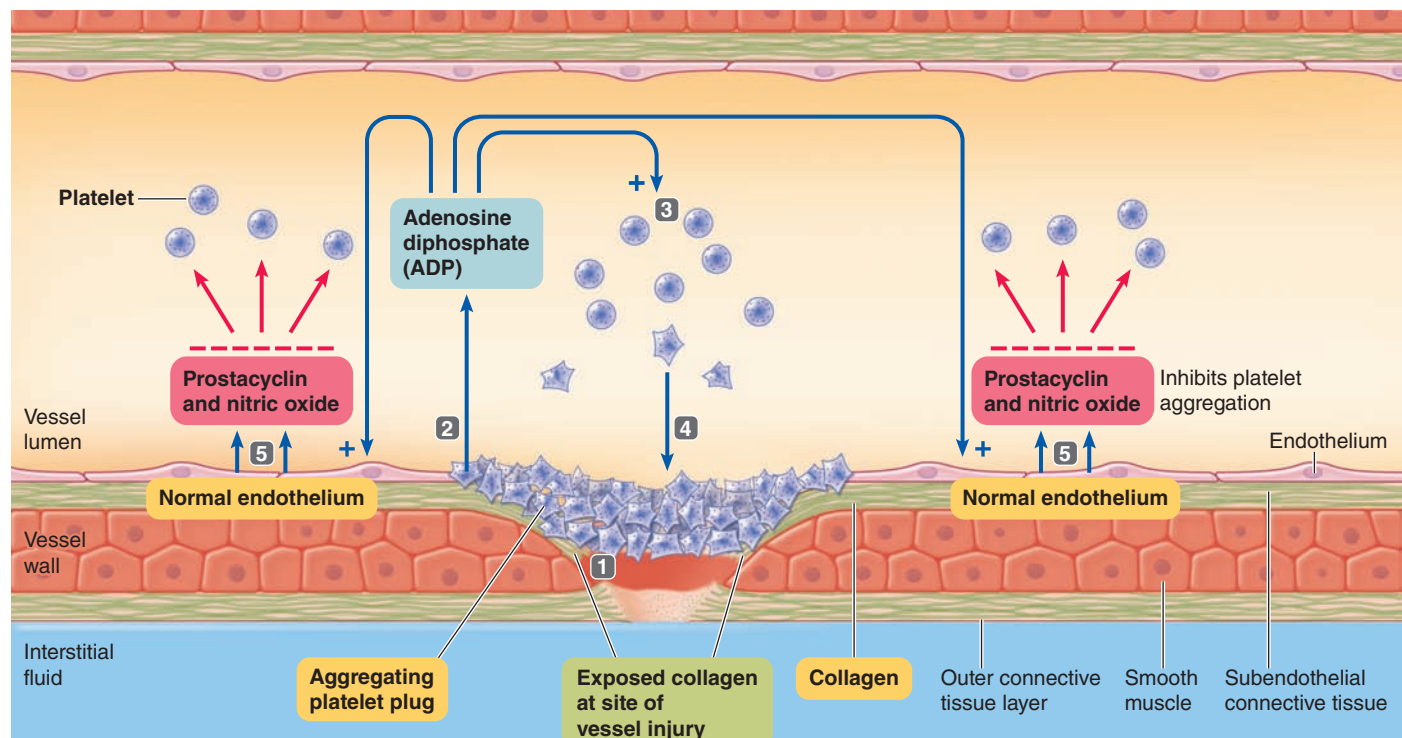
### Platelets aggregate to form a plug at a vessel tear or cut.

Platelets normally do not stick to the smooth endothelial surface of blood vessels, but when this lining is disrupted because of vessel injury, platelets adhere to the exposed *collagen*, which is a fibrous protein in the underlying connective tissue (see p. 48 and p. 266). This adhesion prevents these platelets from being swept forward in the circulation. This layer of stuck platelets forms the foundation of a hemostatic **platelet plug** at the site of the defect. Collagen activates the bound platelets. Activated platelets quickly reorganize their actin cytoskeletal elements to develop spiky processes, which help them adhere to the collagen and to other platelets. Activated platelets also release sev-

eral important chemicals from their storage granules. Among these chemicals is *adenosine diphosphate (ADP)*, which activates other nearby circulating platelets and causes their surfaces to become sticky so that they adhere to the first layer of aggregated platelets. These newly aggregated platelets release more ADP, which causes more platelets to pile on, and so on; thus, a plug of platelets is rapidly built up at the defect site in a positive-feedback fashion (● Figure 11-7).

Given the self-perpetuating nature of platelet aggregation, why does the platelet plug not continue to develop and expand over the surface of the adjacent normal vessel lining? A key reason is that ADP and other chemicals released by the activated platelets stimulate the release of *prostacyclin* and *nitric oxide* from the adjacent normal endothelium. Both these chemicals profoundly inhibit platelet aggregation. Thus, the platelet plug is limited to the defect and does not spread to the nearby undamaged vascular tissue (● Figure 11-7).

The aggregated platelet plug not only physically seals the break in the vessel but also performs three other important roles. (1) The actin–myosin complex within the aggregated platelets contracts to compact and strengthen what was originally a fairly loose plug. (2) The platelet plug releases several



- 1 Platelets adhere to and are activated by exposed collagen at the site of vessel injury.
- 2 Activated platelets release ADP.
- 3 ADP activates other platelets passing by.
- 4 Newly activated platelets aggregate onto growing platelet plug and release even more platelet-attracting chemicals.
- 5 Normal (uninjured) endothelium releases prostacyclin and nitric oxide, which inhibit platelet aggregation, so platelet plug is confined to site of injury.

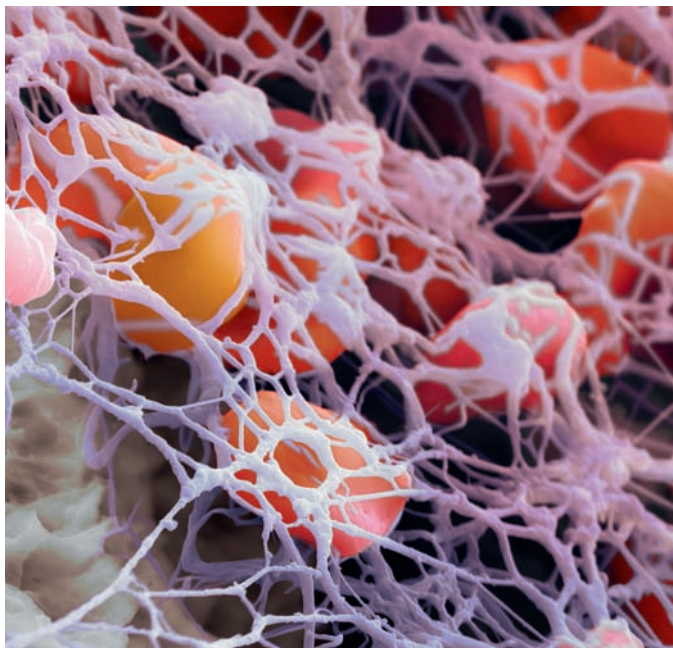
● **FIGURE 11-7 Formation of a platelet plug.** Platelets aggregate at a vessel defect through a positive-feedback mechanism involving release of adenosine diphosphate (ADP) (and other chemicals not shown) from platelets, which stick to exposed collagen at the site of the injury. Platelets are prevented from aggregating at the adjacent normal vessel lining by ADP promoting the release of prostacyclin and nitric oxide from the undamaged endothelial cells.

powerful vasoconstrictors that induce profound constriction of the affected vessel to reinforce the initial vascular spasm. (3) The platelet plug releases other chemicals that enhance blood coagulation, the next step of hemostasis. Although the platelet-plugging mechanism alone is often enough to seal the myriad minute tears in capillaries and other small vessels that occur many times daily, larger holes in vessels require the formation of a blood clot to completely stop the bleeding.

### Clot formation results from a triggered chain reaction involving plasma clotting factors.

**Blood coagulation**, or **clotting**, is the transformation of blood from a liquid into a solid gel. Formation of a clot on top of the platelet plug strengthens and supports the plug, reinforcing the seal over a break in a vessel. Furthermore, as blood in the vicinity of the vessel defect solidifies, it can no longer flow. Clotting is the body's most powerful hemostatic mechanism. It is required to stop bleeding from all but the most minute defects.

**CLOT FORMATION** The ultimate step in clot formation is the conversion of **fibrinogen**, a large, soluble plasma protein produced by the liver and normally always present in the plasma, into **fibrin**, an insoluble, threadlike molecule. This conversion into fibrin is catalyzed by the enzyme **thrombin** at the site of the injury. Fibrin molecules adhere to the damaged vessel surface, forming a loose, netlike meshwork that traps blood cells, including aggregating platelets. The resulting mass, or **clot**, typically appears red because of the abundance of trapped RBCs, but the foundation of the clot is formed of fibrin derived from the plasma (● Figure 11-8). Except for platelets, which play an important role in ultimately bringing about the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin, clotting can take place in the absence of all other blood cells.



Martin Oeggenli/Photo Researchers, Inc.

● **FIGURE 11-8** Erythrocytes trapped in the fibrin meshwork of a clot.

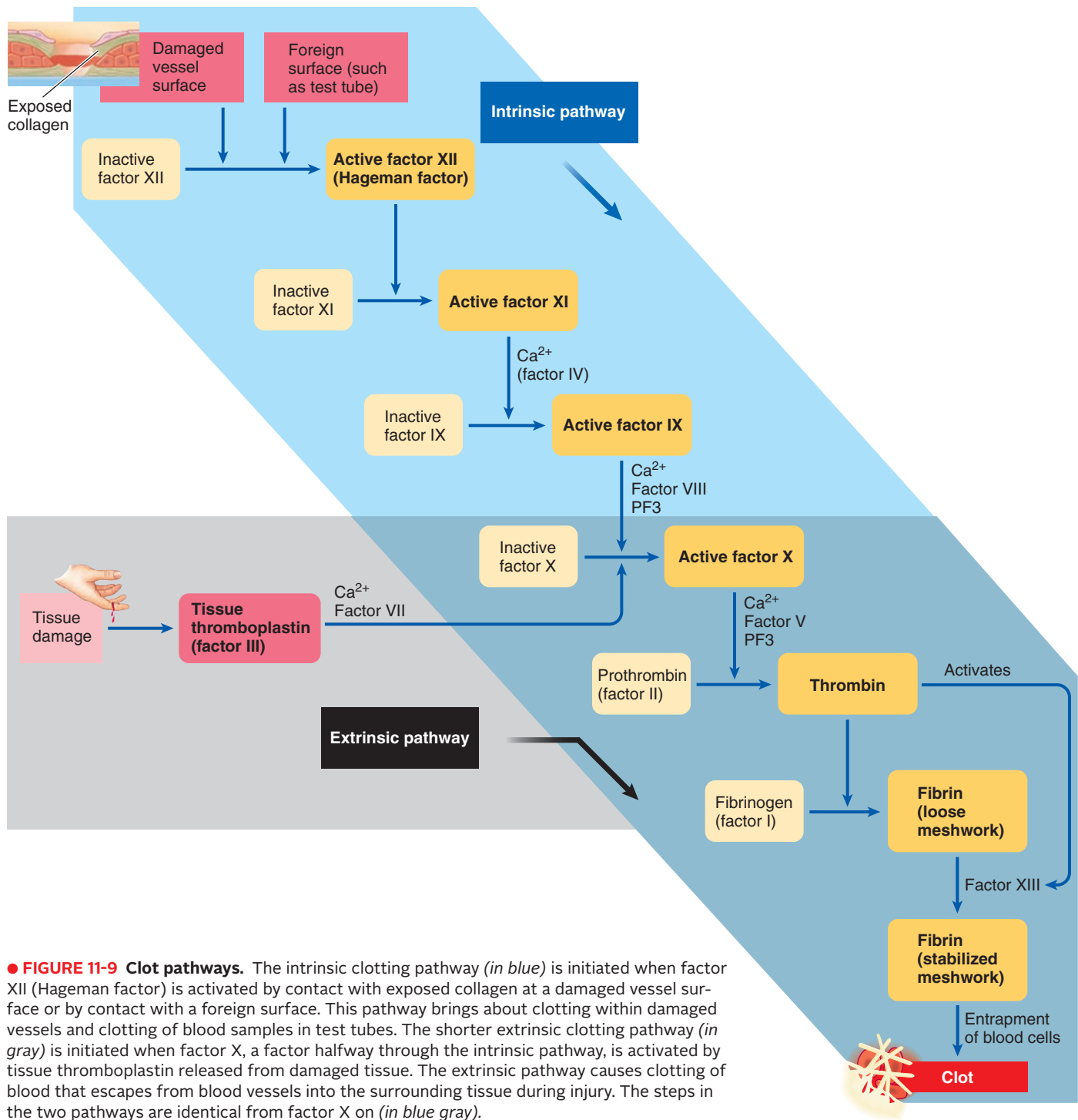
Because thrombin converts the ever-present fibrinogen molecules in the plasma into a blood-stanching clot, thrombin must normally be absent from the plasma except in the vicinity of vessel damage. Otherwise, blood would always be coagulated—a situation incompatible with life. How can thrombin normally be absent from the plasma yet be readily available to trigger fibrin formation when a vessel is injured? The solution lies in thrombin's existence in the plasma in the form of an inactive precursor called **prothrombin**. What converts prothrombin into thrombin when blood clotting is desirable? This conversion involves the clotting cascade.

**THE CLOTTING CASCADE** Yet another activated plasma clotting factor, **factor X**, converts prothrombin to thrombin; factor X itself is normally present in the blood in inactive form and must be converted into its active form by still another activated factor, and so on. Altogether, 12 plasma clotting factors participate in essential steps that lead to the final conversion of fibrinogen into a stabilized fibrin mesh (● Figure 11-9). These factors are designated by roman numerals in the order in which the factors were discovered, not the order in which they participate in the clotting process.<sup>1</sup> Most of these clotting factors are plasma proteins synthesized by the liver. Normally, they are always present in the plasma in an inactive form, such as fibrinogen and prothrombin. In contrast to fibrinogen, which is converted into insoluble fibrin strands, prothrombin and the other precursors, when converted to their active form, act as proteolytic (protein-splitting) enzymes. These enzymes activate another specific factor in the clotting sequence. Once the first factor in the sequence is activated, it in turn activates the next factor, and so on, in a series of sequential reactions known as the **clotting cascade**, until thrombin catalyzes the final conversion of fibrinogen into fibrin. Several of these steps require the presence of plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and *platelet factor 3 (PF3)*, a chemical secreted by the aggregated platelet plug. Thus, platelets also contribute to clot formation.

**INTRINSIC AND EXTRINSIC PATHWAYS** The clotting cascade may be triggered by the *intrinsic pathway* or the *extrinsic pathway*:

■ The **intrinsic pathway** precipitates clotting within damaged vessels, as well as clotting of blood samples in test tubes. All elements necessary to bring about clotting by means of the intrinsic pathway are present in the blood. This pathway, which involves seven separate steps (shown in blue in ● Figure 11-9), is set off when **factor XII (Hageman factor)** is activated by coming into contact with either exposed collagen in an injured vessel or a foreign surface such as a glass test tube. Remember that exposed collagen also initiates platelet aggregation. Thus, formation of a platelet plug and the chain reaction leading to clot formation are simultaneously set in motion when a vessel is damaged.

<sup>1</sup>The term *factor VI* is no longer used. What once was considered a separate factor VI has now been determined to be an activated form of factor V.



● **FIGURE 11-9 Clot pathways.** The intrinsic clotting pathway (*in blue*) is initiated when factor XII (Hageman factor) is activated by contact with exposed collagen at a damaged vessel surface or by contact with a foreign surface. This pathway brings about clotting within damaged vessels and clotting of blood samples in test tubes. The shorter extrinsic clotting pathway (*in gray*) is initiated when factor X, a factor halfway through the intrinsic pathway, is activated by tissue thromboplastin released from damaged tissue. The extrinsic pathway causes clotting of blood that escapes from blood vessels into the surrounding tissue during injury. The steps in the two pathways are identical from factor X on (*in blue gray*).

■ The **extrinsic pathway** takes a shortcut and requires only four steps (shown in gray in ● Figure 11-9). This pathway, which requires contact with tissue factors external to the blood, initiates clotting of blood that has escaped into the tissues. When a tissue is traumatized, it releases a protein complex known as **tissue thromboplastin**. Tissue thromboplastin directly activates factor X, thereby bypassing all preceding steps of the intrinsic pathway. From this point on, the two pathways are identical.

The intrinsic and extrinsic mechanisms usually operate simultaneously. When tissue injury involves rupture of vessels,

the intrinsic mechanism stops blood in the injured vessel, and the extrinsic mechanism clots blood that escaped into the tissue before the vessel was sealed off. Typically, clots are fully formed in 3 to 6 minutes.

**CLOT RETRACTION** Once a clot is formed, contraction of the platelets trapped within the clot shrinks the fibrin mesh, pulling the edges of the damaged vessel closer together. During **clot retraction**, fluid is squeezed from the clot. This fluid, which is essentially plasma minus fibrinogen and other clotting precursors,

sors that have been removed during the clotting process, is called **serum**.

### Fibrinolytic plasmin dissolves clots.

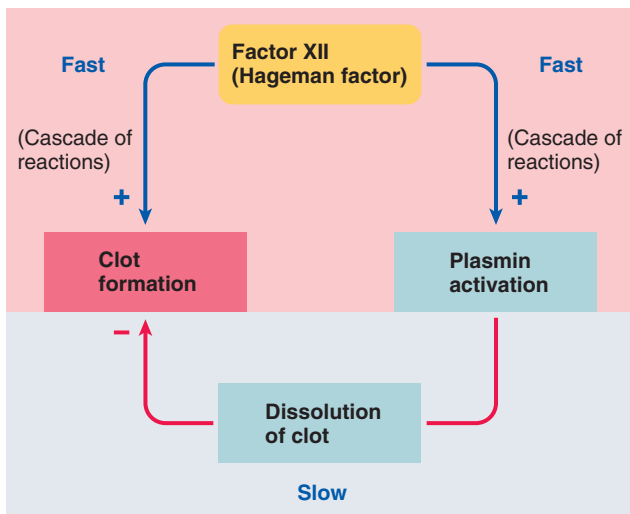
A clot is not meant to be a permanent solution to vessel injury. It is a transient device to stop bleeding until the vessel can be repaired.

**VESSEL REPAIR** The aggregated platelets secrete a chemical that helps promote the invasion of fibroblasts (“fiber formers”) from the surrounding connective tissue into the wounded area of the vessel. Fibroblasts form a scar at the vessel defect.

**CLOT DISSOLUTION** Simultaneous with the healing process, the clot, which is no longer needed to prevent hemorrhage, is slowly dissolved by a fibrinolytic (fibrin-splitting) enzyme called **plasmin**. If clots were not removed after they performed their hemostatic function, the vessels, especially the small ones that regularly endure tiny ruptures, would eventually become obstructed by clots.

Plasmin, like the clotting factors, is a plasma protein produced by the liver and present in the blood in an inactive precursor form, **plasminogen**. Plasmin is activated in a fast cascade of reactions involving many factors, among them factor XII (Hageman factor), which also triggers the chain reaction leading to clot formation (● Figure 11-10). When a clot is rapidly being formed, activated plasmin becomes trapped in the clot and later dissolves it by slowly breaking down the fibrin meshwork.

Phagocytic white blood cells gradually remove the products of clot dissolution. You have observed the slow removal of blood that has clotted after escaping into the tissue layers of



● **FIGURE 11-10 Role of factor XII in clot formation and dissolution.** Activation of factor XII (Hageman factor) simultaneously initiates a fast cascade of reactions that result in clot formation and a fast cascade of reactions that result in plasmin activation. Plasmin, which is trapped in the clot, subsequently slowly dissolves the clot. This action removes the clot when it is no longer needed after the vessel has been repaired.

your skin following an injury. The black-and-blue marks of such bruised skin result from deoxygenated clotted blood within the skin; this blood is eventually cleared by plasmin action, followed by the phagocytic “cleanup crew.”

**PREVENTING INAPPROPRIATE CLOT FORMATION** In addition to removing clots that are no longer needed, plasmin functions continually to prevent clots from forming inappropriately. Throughout the vasculature, small amounts of fibrinogen are constantly being converted into fibrin, triggered by unknown mechanisms. Clots do not develop, however, because the fibrin is quickly disposed of by plasmin activated by **tissue plasminogen activator (tPA)** from the tissues, especially the lungs. Normally, the low level of fibrin formation is counterbalanced by a low level of fibrinolytic activity, so inappropriate clotting does not occur. Only when a vessel is damaged do additional factors precipitate the explosive chain reaction that leads to more extensive fibrin formation and results in local clotting at the site of injury.



Genetically engineered tPA and other similar chemicals that trigger clot dissolution are frequently used to limit damage to cardiac muscle during heart attacks. Administering a clot-busting drug within the first hours after a clot has blocked a coronary (heart) vessel often dissolves the clot in time to restore blood flow to the cardiac muscle supplied by the blocked vessel before the muscle dies of O<sub>2</sub> deprivation. In recent years, tPA and related drugs have also been used successfully to promptly dissolve a stroke-causing clot within a cerebral (brain) blood vessel, minimizing loss of irreplaceable brain tissue after a stroke (see p. 113).

### Inappropriate clotting produces thromboembolism.



Despite protective measures, clots occasionally form in intact vessels. Abnormal or excessive clot formation within blood vessels—what has been dubbed “hemostasis in the wrong place”—can compromise blood flow to vital organs. The body’s clotting and anticlotting systems normally function in a check-and-balance manner. Acting in concert, they permit prompt formation of “good” blood clots, thus minimizing blood loss from damaged vessels, while preventing “bad” clots from forming and blocking blood flow in intact vessels. An abnormal intravascular clot attached to a vessel wall is known as a **thrombus**, and freely floating clots are called **emboli** (singular, *embolus*). An enlarging thrombus narrows and can eventually completely occlude the vessel in which it forms. By entering and completely plugging a smaller vessel, a circulating embolus can suddenly block blood flow (see ● Figure 9-25, p. 255).

Several factors, acting independently or simultaneously, can cause *thromboembolism*: (1) Roughened vessel surfaces associated with atherosclerosis can lead to thrombus formation (see p. 254). (2) Imbalances in the clotting–anticlotting systems can trigger clot formation. (3) Slow-moving blood is more apt to clot, probably because small quantities of fibrin accumulate in the stagnant blood, for example, in blood pooled in varicose leg veins (see p. 287). (4) Widespread clotting is occasionally

triggered by release of tissue thromboplastin into the blood from large amounts of traumatized tissue. Similar widespread clotting can occur in **septicemic shock**, in which bacteria or their toxins initiate the clotting cascade.

Anticoagulant drugs are sometimes given to prevent thromboembolism in people with conditions that make them more prone to the development of clots. For example, *heparin*, which must be injected, accelerates the action of a normal blood-borne inhibitor of thrombin, halting this clot promoter. *Warfarin* (Coumadin), which can be taken orally, interferes with vitamin K's action. Vitamin K, commonly known as the blood-clotting vitamin, is essential for normal clot formation.

### Hemophilia is the primary condition that produces excessive bleeding.



In contrast to inappropriate clot formation in intact vessels, the opposite hemostatic disorder is failure of clots to form promptly in injured vessels, resulting in life-threatening hemorrhage from even relatively mild traumas. The most common cause of excessive bleeding is **hemophilia**, which is caused by a deficiency of one of the factors in the clotting cascade.

People with a platelet deficiency, in contrast to the more profuse bleeding that accompanies defects in the clotting mechanism, continuously develop hundreds of small, confined hemorrhagic areas throughout the body tissues as blood leaks from tiny breaks in the small blood vessels before coagulation takes place. Platelets normally are the primary sealers of these ever-occurring minute ruptures. In the skin of a platelet-deficient person, the diffuse capillary hemorrhages are visible as small, purplish blotches, giving rise to the term **thrombocytopenia purpura** (“the purple of thrombocyte deficiency”) for this condition. (Recall that *thrombocyte* is another name for *platelet*.)

Vitamin K deficiency can also cause a bleeding tendency because of incomplete activation of vitamin K–dependent clotting factors.

## Leukocytes

**Leukocytes (white blood cells, or WBCs)** are the mobile units of the body's immune defense system. **Immunity** is the body's ability to resist or eliminate potentially harmful foreign materials or abnormal cells. The first line of defense against foreign invaders is the epithelial barriers that surround the outer surface of the body (the skin) and line the body cavities (such as the digestive tract and lungs) that are in contact with the external environment. These epithelial barriers are not part of the immune system. We discuss their roles in the body's overall defense mechanisms after examining the immune system in detail.

Leukocytes and their derivatives, along with a variety of plasma proteins, make up the **immune system**, an internal defense system that recognizes and either destroys or neutralizes materials that are not “normal self,” either foreign materials that have entered the body or abnormal cells that have arisen within the body. Specifically, the immune system:

1. defends against invading **pathogens** (disease-producing microorganisms such as bacteria and viruses).
2. functions as a “cleanup crew” that removes worn-out cells (such as aged red blood cells) and tissue debris (for example, tissue damaged by trauma or disease), paving the way for wound healing and tissue repair.
3. identifies and destroys abnormal or mutant cells that arise in the body. This function, termed *immune surveillance*, is the primary internal-defense mechanism against cancer.

### Leukocytes primarily function as defense agents outside the blood.

To carry out their functions, leukocytes largely use a “seek out and attack” strategy; that is, they go to sites of invasion or tissue damage. The main reason WBCs are in the blood is for rapid transport from their site of production or storage to wherever they are needed. Unlike erythrocytes, leukocytes are able to exit the blood by assuming amoeba-like behavior to wriggle through narrow capillary pores and crawl to assaulted areas (see ● Figure 11-14, p. 314). As a result, the immune system's effector cells are widely dispersed throughout the body and can defend in any location.

### Pathogenic bacteria and viruses are the major targets of the immune system.

The primary foreign enemies against which the immune system defends are bacteria and viruses. Comparing their relative sizes, if an average bacterium were the size of a pitcher's mound, a virus would be the size of a baseball. **Bacteria** are nonnucleated, single-celled microorganisms self-equipped with all the machinery essential for their own survival and reproduction. Pathogenic bacteria that invade the body cause tissue damage and produce disease largely by releasing enzymes or toxins that physically injure or functionally disrupt affected cells and organs. The disease-producing power of a pathogen is known as its **virulence**.

In contrast to bacteria, **viruses** are not self-sustaining cellular entities. They consist only of nucleic acids (genetic material—DNA or RNA) enclosed by a protein coat. Because they lack cellular machinery for energy production and protein synthesis, viruses cannot carry out metabolism and reproduce unless they invade a **host cell** (a body cell of the infected individual) and take over the cell's biochemical facilities for their own uses. Not only do viruses sap the host cell's energy resources, but the viral nucleic acids also direct the host cell to synthesize proteins needed for viral replication.

When a virus becomes incorporated into a host cell, the body's own defense mechanisms may destroy the cell because they no longer recognize it as a “normal self” cell. Other ways in which viruses can lead to cell damage or death are by depleting essential cell components, dictating that the cell produce substances toxic to the cell, or transforming the cell into a cancer cell.

### There are five types of leukocytes.

Leukocytes lack hemoglobin (in contrast to erythrocytes), so they are colorless (that is, “white”) unless specifically stained for microscopic visibility. Unlike erythrocytes, which are of uni-

form structure, identical function, and constant number, leukocytes vary in structure, function, and number. There are five types of circulating leukocytes—neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils, monocytes, and lymphocytes—each with a characteristic structure and function. They are all somewhat larger than erythrocytes.

**GRANULOCYTES AND AGRANULOCYTES** The five types of leukocytes fall into two main categories, depending on the appearance of their nuclei and the presence or absence of granules in their cytoplasm when viewed microscopically (● Figure 11-11). Neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils are categorized as **polymorphonuclear** (meaning “many-shaped nucleus”) **granulocytes** (meaning “granule-containing cells”). Their nuclei are segmented into several lobes of varying shapes, and their cytoplasm contains an abundance of membrane-enclosed granules. The three types of granulocytes are distinguished on the basis of the varying affinity of their granules for dyes: *eosinophils* have an affinity for the red dye eosin, *basophils* preferentially take up a basic blue dye, and *neutrophils* are neutral, showing no dye preference. Monocytes and lymphocytes are known as **mononuclear** (meaning “single nucleus”) **agranulocytes** (meaning “cells lacking granules”). Both have a single, large, nonsegmented nucleus and few granules. *Monocytes* are the larger of the two and have an oval or kidney-shaped nucleus. *Lymphocytes*, the smallest of the leukocytes, characteristically have a large spherical nucleus that occupies most of the cell.

**FUNCTIONS AND LIFE SPANS OF LEUKOCYTES** The following are the functions and life spans of the granulocytes:

- **Neutrophils** are phagocytic specialists. They engulf and destroy bacteria intracellularly (see ● Figure 2-7c, p. 26). As a further assault, neutrophils can also act like “suicide bombers,” undergoing an unusual type of programmed cell death in which they use vital cellular materials to prepare a web of fibers dubbed *neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs)*, which they release into the ECF on their death. These fibers contain bacteria-

killing chemicals, enabling NETs to trap and then destroy bacteria extracellularly. Neutrophils invariably are the first defenders on the scene of bacterial invasion. Furthermore, they scavenge to clean up debris. As might be expected in view of these functions, an increase in circulating neutrophils typically accompanies acute bacterial infections.

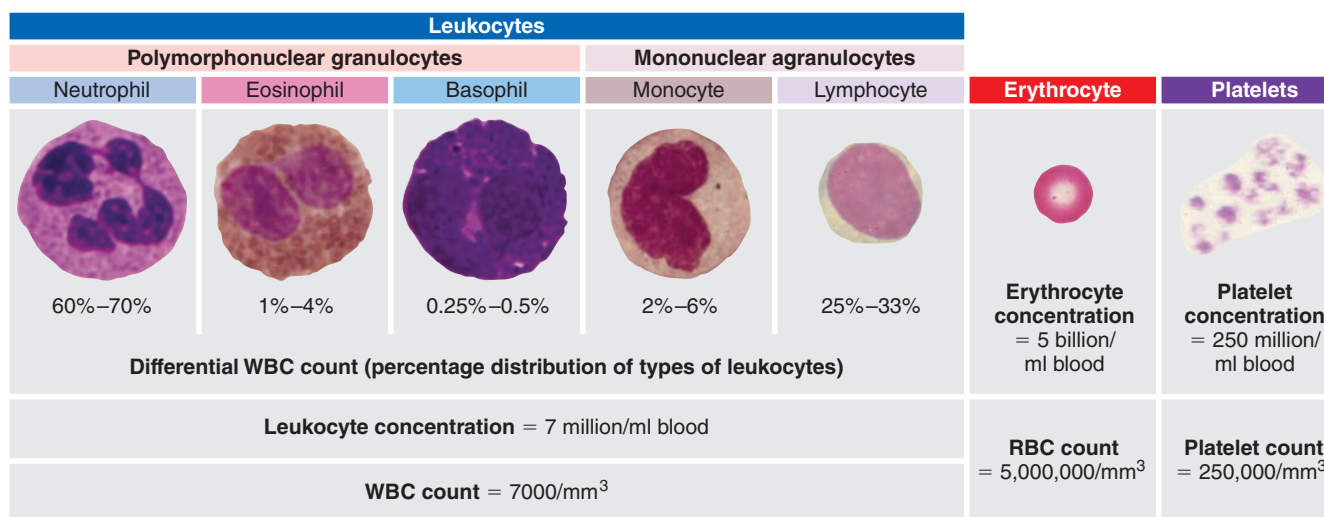
- **Eosinophils** are specialists of another type. An increase in circulating eosinophils is associated with allergic conditions (such as asthma and hay fever) and with internal parasite infestations (for example, worms). Eosinophils obviously cannot engulf a larger parasitic worm, but they do attach to the worm and secrete substances that kill it.

- **Basophils** are the least numerous and most poorly understood of the leukocytes. They are quite similar structurally and functionally to *mast cells*, which never circulate in the blood but instead are dispersed in connective tissue throughout the body. Both basophils and mast cells synthesize and store *histamine* and *heparin*, powerful chemical substances that can be released on appropriate stimulation. Histamine release is important in allergic reactions, whereas heparin speeds up removal of fat particles from the blood after a fatty meal. Heparin can also prevent clotting of blood samples drawn for clinical analysis and is used extensively as an anticoagulant drug, but whether it plays a physiologic role as an anticoagulant is still debated.

Once released into the blood from the bone marrow, a granulocyte usually stays in transit in the blood for less than a day before leaving the blood vessels to enter the tissues, where it survives another 3 to 4 days unless it dies sooner in the line of duty.

By comparison, the functions and life spans of the agranulocytes are as follows:

- **Monocytes**, like neutrophils, become professional phagocytes. They emerge from the bone marrow while still immature and circulate for only a day or two before settling down in various tissues throughout the body. At their new residences, monocytes continue to mature and greatly enlarge, becoming the large tissue phagocytes known as **macrophages** (*macro* means “large”; *phage*



© Cabisco/Visuals Unlimited; © Science VU/Visuals Unlimited; © Cabisco/Visuals Unlimited; © Science VU/Visuals Unlimited; Williams & Wilkins Co.; © Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc.; Williams & Wilkins Co.

● **FIGURE 11-11** Normal blood cellular elements and typical human blood cell count.

means “eater”). A macrophage’s life span may range from months to years unless it is destroyed sooner while performing its phagocytic activity. A phagocytic cell can ingest only a limited amount of foreign material before it succumbs.

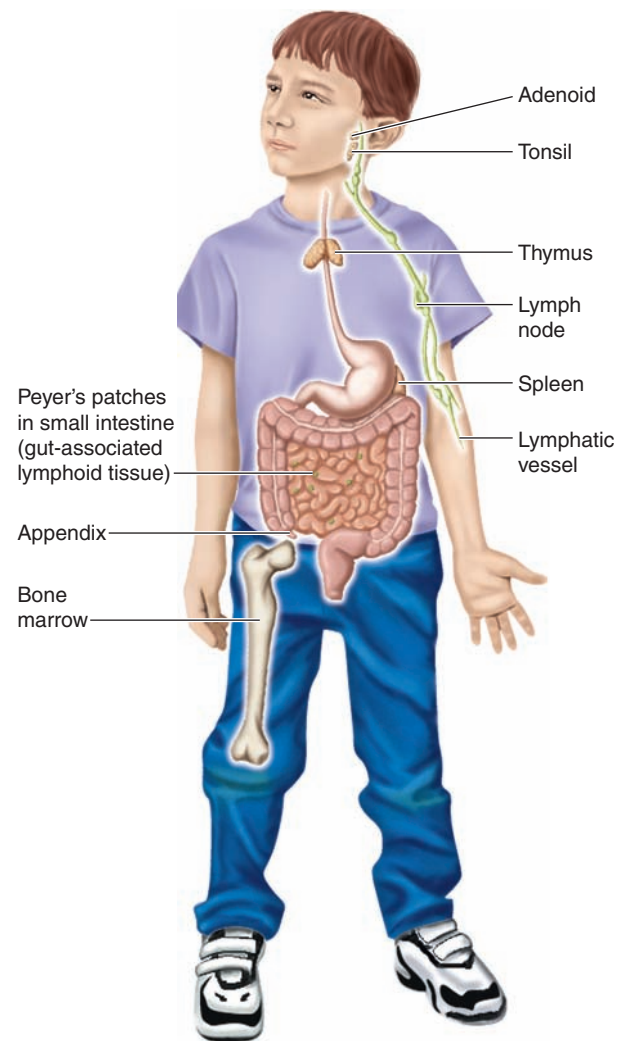
■ **Lymphocytes** provide immune defense against targets for which they are specifically programmed. There are two types of lymphocytes, B and T lymphocytes (B and T cells), which look alike. **B lymphocytes** produce antibodies, which circulate in the blood and are responsible for *antibody-mediated*, or *humoral, immunity*. An antibody binds with and marks for destruction (by phagocytosis or other means) the specific kinds of foreign matter, such as bacteria, that induced production of the antibody. **T lymphocytes** do not produce antibodies; instead, they directly destroy their specific target cells by releasing chemicals that punch holes in the victim cell, a process called *cell-mediated immunity*. The target cells of T cells include body cells invaded by viruses and cancer cells.

Lymphocytes live for about 100 to 300 days. Only a small part of the total lymphocytes are in transit in the blood at any given moment. Most continually recycle among the blood, lymph, and lymphoid tissues. **Lymphoid tissues**, such as the lymph nodes and tonsils, are lymphocyte-containing tissues that produce, store, or process lymphocytes (● Figure 11-12).

### Leukocytes are produced at varying rates depending on the changing needs of the body.

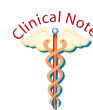
All leukocytes ultimately originate from common precursor undifferentiated pluripotent stem cells in the bone marrow that give rise to erythrocytes and platelets (● Figure 11-13). The cells destined to become leukocytes eventually differentiate into various committed cell lines and proliferate under the influence of appropriate stimulating factors. Granulocytes and monocytes are produced only in the bone marrow, which releases these mature leukocytes into the blood. Lymphocytes are originally derived from precursor cells in the bone marrow, but most new lymphocytes actually come from lymphocyte colonies already in the lymphoid tissues originally populated by cells derived from bone marrow.

The total number of leukocytes normally ranges from 5 million to 10 million cells per milliliter of blood, with an average of 7 million/ml, expressed as an average **white blood cell count** of 7000/mm<sup>3</sup>. Leukocytes are the least numerous of the blood cells (about 1 white blood cell for every 700 red blood cells), not because fewer are produced but because they are merely in transit while in the blood. Normally, about two thirds of the circulating leukocytes are granulocytes, mostly neutrophils, whereas one third are agranulocytes, predominantly lymphocytes (see ● Figure 11-11). However, the total number of white cells and the percentage of each type may vary considerably to meet changing defense needs. Depending on the type and extent of assault the body is combating, different types of leukocytes are selectively produced at varying rates. Chemical messengers arising from invaded or damaged tissues or from activated leukocytes themselves govern the rates of production of the various leukocytes. Specific messengers analogous to erythropoietin direct the differentiation and proliferation of



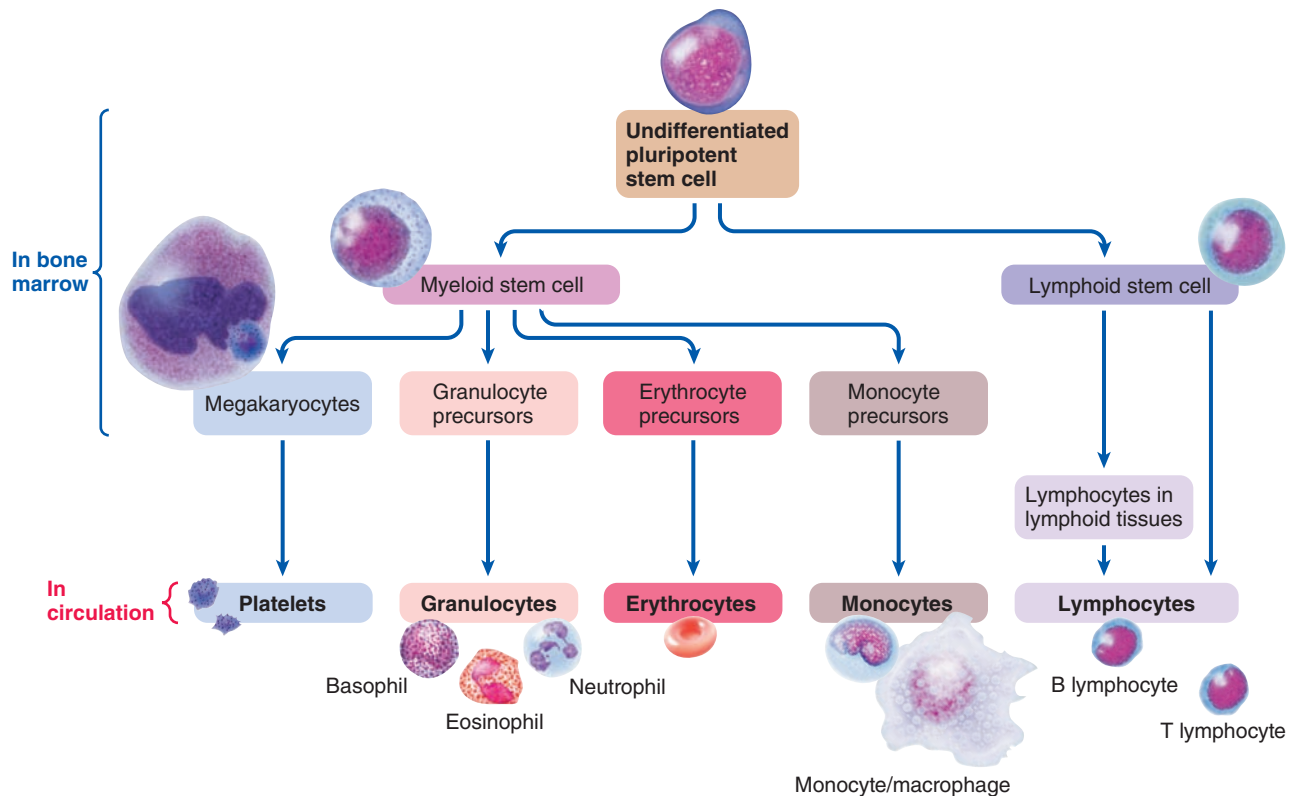
● **FIGURE 11-12 Lymphoid tissues.** The lymphoid tissues, which are dispersed throughout the body, produce, store, or process lymphocytes.

each cell type. Some of these messengers have been identified and can be produced in the laboratory; an example is **granulocyte colony-stimulating factor**, which stimulates increased replication and release of granulocytes, especially neutrophils, from the bone marrow. Marketed under the name Neulasta, this synthetic agent is a powerful new therapeutic tool that can be used to bolster defense and thus decrease the incidence of infection in cancer patients being treated with chemotherapy drugs, which suppress all rapidly dividing cells, including hemopoietic cells in the bone marrow, as well as the targeted cancer cells.



**ABNORMALITIES IN LEUKOCYTE PRODUCTION** Even though levels of circulating leukocytes may vary, changes in these levels are normally controlled and adjusted according to the body’s needs. However, abnormalities in leukocyte production can occur that are not subject to control; that is, either too few or too many WBCs can be produced. The bone marrow can greatly slow down or even stop production of white blood cells when it is exposed to certain toxic chemical agents (such as benzene and anticancer





● **FIGURE 11-13 Blood cell production (hemopoiesis).** All the blood cell types ultimately originate from the same undifferentiated pluripotent stem cells in the red bone marrow.

drugs) or to excessive radiation. The most serious consequence is the reduction in professional phagocytes (neutrophils and macrophages), which greatly reduces the body's defense capabilities against invading microorganisms. The only defense still available when the bone marrow fails is the immune capabilities of the lymphocytes produced by the lymphoid tissues.

Surprisingly, one of the major consequences of **leukemia**, a cancerous condition that involves uncontrolled proliferation of WBCs, is inadequate defense capabilities against foreign invasion. In leukemia, the WBC count may reach as high as 500,000/mm<sup>3</sup>, compared with the normal 7000/mm<sup>3</sup>, but because most of these cells are abnormal or immature, they cannot perform their normal defense functions. Another devastating consequence of leukemia is displacement of the other blood cell lines in the bone marrow. This results in anemia because of a reduction in erythropoiesis and in internal bleeding because of a deficit of platelets. Consequently, overwhelming infections or hemorrhage are the most common causes of death in leukemic patients.

We now turn to the two major components of the immune system's response to foreign invaders and other targets—innate and adaptive immune responses. In the process, we further examine the roles of each type of leukocyte.

### Immune responses may be either innate and nonspecific or adaptive and specific.

Protective immunity is conferred by the complementary actions of two separate but interdependent components of the immune system: the innate immune system and the adaptive, or acquired,

immune system. The responses of these two systems differ in timing and in the selectivity of the defense mechanisms.

The **innate immune system** encompasses the body's *non-specific* immune responses that come into play immediately on exposure to a threatening agent. These nonspecific responses are inherent (innate or built-in) defense mechanisms that non-selectively defend against foreign or abnormal material of any type, even on initial exposure to it. Such responses provide a first line of internal defense against a range of threats, including infectious agents, chemical irritants, and tissue injury from mechanical trauma and burns. Everyone is born with essentially the same innate immune-response mechanisms, although there are some subtle genetic differences. The **adaptive, or acquired, immune system**, in contrast, relies on *specific* immune responses selectively targeted against a particular foreign material to which the body has already been exposed and has had an opportunity to prepare for an attack aimed discriminately at the enemy. The adaptive immune system thus takes considerably more time to mount and takes on specific foes. The innate and adaptive immune systems work in harmony to contain, and then eliminate, harmful agents.

**INNATE IMMUNE SYSTEM** The components of the innate system are always on guard, ready to unleash a limited, rather crude repertoire of defense mechanisms at any and every invader. Of the immune effector cells, the neutrophils and macrophages—both phagocytic specialists—are especially important in innate defense. Several groups of plasma proteins also play key

roles, as you will see shortly. The various nonspecific immune responses are set in motion in response to generic molecular patterns associated with threatening agents, such as the carbohydrates typically found in bacterial cell walls but not found in human cells. The responding phagocytic cells are studded with plasma membrane proteins known as **toll-like receptors (TLRs)**, which recognize these pathogen-associated molecular patterns. TLRs have been dubbed the “eyes of the innate immune system” because these immune sensors recognize and bind with the unique, telltale pathogen markers, allowing the effector cells of the innate system to “see” pathogens as distinct from “self” cells. A TLR’s recognition of a pathogen triggers the phagocyte to engulf and destroy the infectious microorganism. Moreover, activation of the TLR induces the phagocytic cell to secrete chemicals, some of which contribute to inflammation, an important innate response to microbial invasion.

The innate mechanisms give us all a rapid but limited and nonselective response to unfriendly challenges of all kinds, much like medieval guardsmen lashing out with brute-force weapons at any enemy approaching the walls of the castle they are defending. Innate immunity largely contains and limits the spread of infection. These nonspecific responses are important for keeping the foe at bay until the adaptive immune system, with its highly selective weapons, can be prepared to take over and mount strategies to eliminate the villain.

**ADAPTIVE IMMUNE SYSTEM** The responses of the adaptive, or acquired, immune system are mediated by the B and T lymphocytes. Each B and T cell can recognize and defend against only one particular type of foreign material, such as one kind of bacterium. Among the millions of B and T cells in the body, only the ones specifically equipped to recognize the unique molecular features of a particular infectious agent are called into action to discriminately defend against this agent. This specialization is similar to modern, specially trained military personnel called into active duty to accomplish a specific task. The chosen lymphocytes multiply, expanding the pool of specialists that can launch a highly targeted attack against the invader.

The adaptive immune system is the ultimate weapon against most pathogens. The repertoire of activated and expanded B and T cells is constantly changing in response to the various pathogens encountered. Thus, the adaptive immune system adapts to wage battle against the specific pathogens in each person’s environment. The targets of the adaptive immune system vary among people, depending on the types of immune assaults each individual meets. Furthermore, this system acquires an ability to more efficiently eradicate a particular foe when rechallenged by the same pathogen in the future. It does so by establishing a pool of memory cells as a result of an encounter with a given pathogen so that, when later exposed to the same agent, it can more swiftly defend against the invader.

We examine in more detail the innate immune responses before looking more closely at adaptive immunity.

## Innate Immunity

Innate defenses include the following:

1. *Inflammation*, a nonspecific response to tissue injury in which the phagocytic specialists—neutrophils and macrophages—play a major role, along with supportive input from other immune cell types
2. *Interferon*, a family of proteins that nonspecifically defend against viral infection
3. *Natural killer cells*, a special class of lymphocyte-like cells that spontaneously and nonspecifically lyse (rupture) and thereby destroy virus-infected host cells and cancer cells
4. The *complement system*, a group of inactive plasma proteins that, when sequentially activated, bring about destruction of foreign cells by attacking their plasma membranes

We discuss each of these in turn, beginning with inflammation.

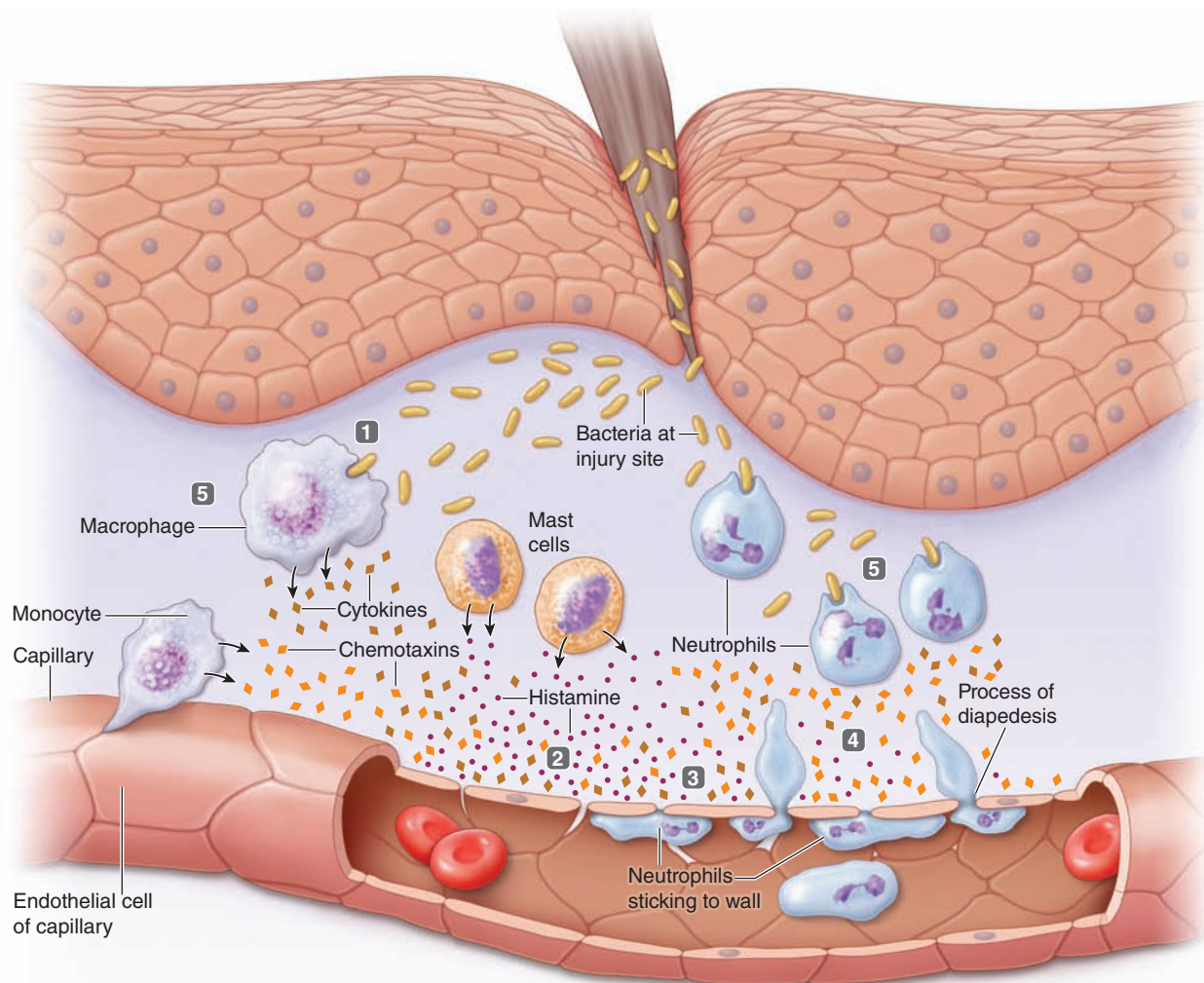
### Inflammation is a nonspecific response to foreign invasion or tissue damage.

The term **inflammation** refers to an innate, nonspecific series of highly interrelated events set into motion in response to foreign invasion, tissue damage, or both. The goal of inflammation is to bring to the invaded or injured area phagocytes and plasma proteins that can (1) isolate, destroy, or inactivate the invaders; (2) remove debris; and (3) prepare for subsequent healing and repair. The overall inflammatory response is remarkably similar no matter what the triggering event (bacterial invasion, chemical injury, or mechanical trauma), although some subtle differences may be evident, depending on the injurious agent or the site of damage. The following sequence of events typically occurs during inflammation. As an example, we use bacterial entry into a break in the skin (● Figure 11-14).

**DEFENSE BY RESIDENT TISSUE MACROPHAGES** When bacteria invade through a break in the external barrier of skin, macrophages already in the area immediately begin phagocytizing the foreign microbes, defending against infection during the first hour or so, before other mechanisms can be mobilized. Resident macrophages also secrete chemicals such as *chemotaxins* and *cytokines* that exert various immune responses, as will be described shortly (● Figure 11-14, step 1).

**LOCALIZED VASODILATION** Almost immediately on microbial invasion, arterioles within the area dilate, increasing blood flow to the site of injury. This localized vasodilation is mainly induced by **histamine** released from mast cells in the area of tissue damage (the connective tissue-bound “cousins” of circulating basophils) (step 2). Increased local delivery of blood brings to the site more phagocytic leukocytes and plasma proteins, both crucial to the defense response.

**INCREASED CAPILLARY PERMEABILITY** Released histamine also increases the capillaries’ permeability by enlarging the capillary pores (the spaces between the endothelial cells) so that plasma



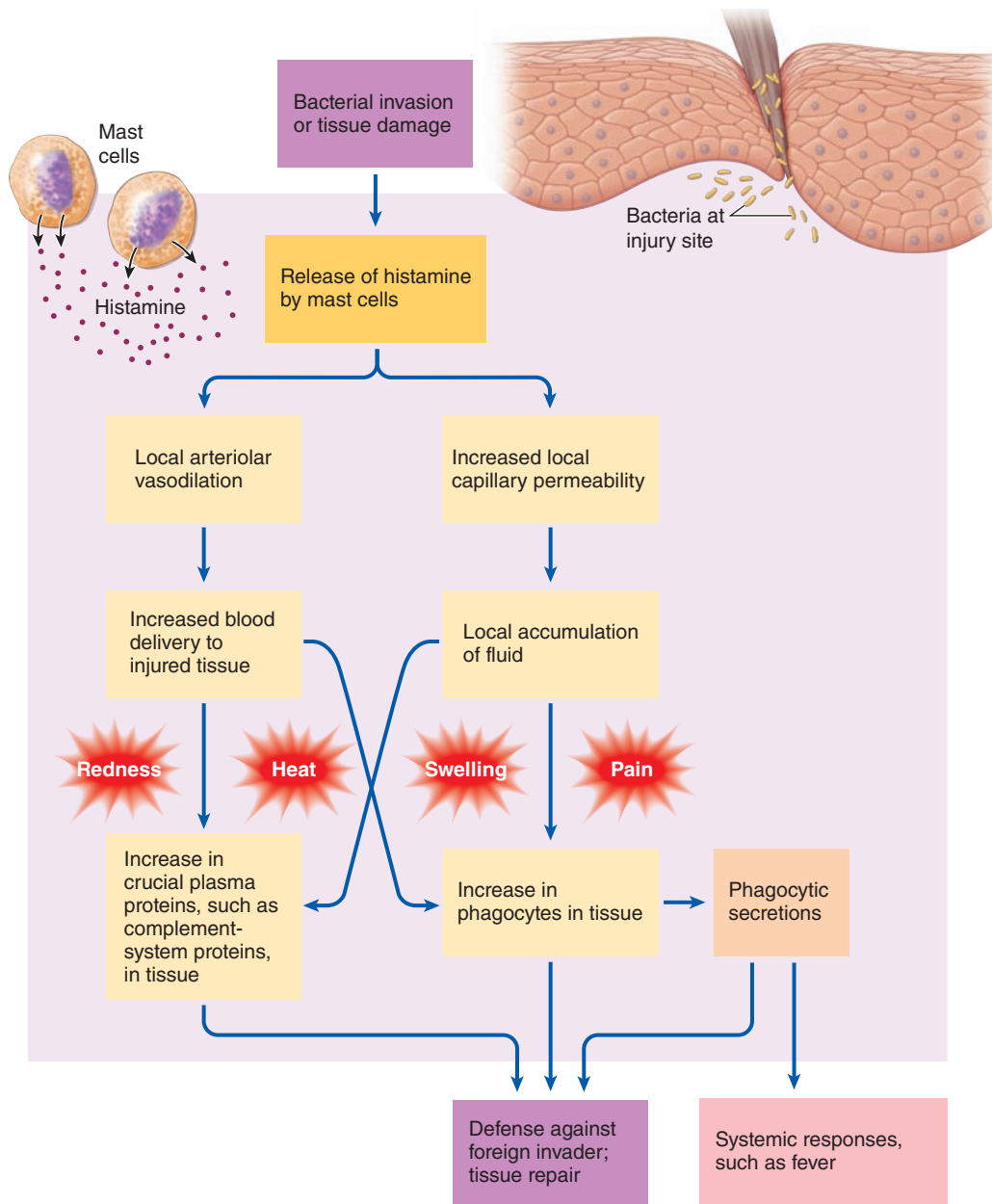
- 1 A break in the skin introduces bacteria, which reproduce at the wound site. Activated resident macrophages engulf the pathogens and secrete cytokines and chemotaxins.
- 2 Activated mast cells release histamine. Histamine dilates local blood vessels and widens the capillary pores.
- 3 The blood vessel wall becomes sticky, causing neutrophils and monocytes to attach.
- 4 Chemotaxins attract neutrophils and monocytes, which squeeze out between cells of the blood vessel wall, a process called diapedesis, and migrate to the infection site.
- 5 Monocytes enlarge into macrophages. Newly arriving macrophages and neutrophils engulf the pathogens and destroy them.

● **FIGURE 11-14 Steps producing inflammation.** Chemotaxins released at the site of damage attract phagocytes to the scene. Note the leukocytes emigrating from the blood into the tissues by assuming amoeba-like behavior and squeezing through the capillary pores, a process known as *diapedesis*. Mast cells secrete vessel-dilating, pore-widening histamine. Macrophages secrete cytokines that exert multiple local and systemic effects.

proteins normally prevented from leaving the blood can escape into the inflamed tissue (see p. 277).

**LOCALIZED EDEMA** Accumulation of leaked plasma proteins in the interstitial fluid raises the local interstitial fluid–colloid osmotic pressure. Furthermore, the increased local blood flow elevates capillary blood pressure. Because both these pressures tend to move fluid out of the capillaries, these changes favor enhanced ultrafiltration and reduced reabsorption of fluid across the involved capillaries. The end result of this shift in fluid balance is localized edema (see p. 283). Thus, the familiar swelling that accompanies inflammation is the result of

histamine-induced vascular changes. Likewise, the other well-known gross manifestations of inflammation, such as redness and heat, are largely caused by the enhanced flow of warm arterial blood to the damaged tissue (*inflammare* means “to set on fire”). Pain is caused both by local distension within the swollen tissue and by the direct effect of locally produced substances on the receptor endings of afferent neurons that supply the area. These observable characteristics of the inflammatory process (swelling, redness, heat, and pain) are coincidental to the primary purpose of the vascular changes in the injured area—to increase the number of leukocytic phagocytes and crucial plasma proteins in the area (● Figure 11-15).



● **FIGURE 11-15** Gross manifestations and outcomes of inflammation.

**EMIGRATION OF LEUKOCYTES** Blood-borne neutrophils and monocytes stick to the endothelial lining in response to released cytokines (see ● Figure 11-14, 3). Leukocytes can emigrate from the blood into the tissues by behaving like amoebas (see p. 38): wriggling through the capillary pores and then crawling toward the injured area (step 4). The phagocytic cells are attracted to **chemotaxins**, chemical mediators released at the site of damage (*taxis* means “attraction”). Within an hour after injury, the area is teeming with leukocytes that have left the vessels. Once neutrophils or monocytes leave the bloodstream, they never recycle back to the blood.

**LEUKOCYTE PROLIFERATION** Within a few hours after onset of the inflammatory response, the number of neutrophils in the blood may increase up to four to five times that of normal. A

link ensures that the bacterial victim does not have a chance to “get away” before the phagocyte can perform its lethal attack.

**LEUKOCYTIC DESTRUCTION OF BACTERIA** Neutrophils and macrophages clear the inflamed area of infectious and toxic agents, as well as tissue debris, by both phagocytic and nonphagocytic means; this clearing action is the main function of the inflammatory response.

Phagocytes eventually die from the accumulation of toxic by-products from foreign particle degradation or from inadvertent release of destructive lysosomal chemicals into the cytosol. The **pus** that forms in an infected wound is a collection of these phagocytic cells, both living and dead; necrotic (dead) tissue liquefied by lysosomal enzymes released from the phagocytes; and bacteria.

slower-commencing but longer-lasting increase in monocyte production also occurs, making available larger numbers of these macrophage precursor cells (step 5).

### MARKING OF BACTERIA FOR DESTRUCTION BY OPSONINS

Obviously, phagocytes must be able to distinguish between normal cells and foreign or abnormal cells before accomplishing their destructive mission. Otherwise, they could not selectively engulf and destroy only unwanted materials. First, as you have already learned, phagocytes, by means of their TLRs, recognize and subsequently engulf infiltrators that have standard bacterial cell wall components not found in human cells. Second, foreign particles are deliberately marked for phagocytic ingestion by being coated with chemical mediators generated by the immune system. Such body-produced chemicals that make bacteria more susceptible to phagocytosis are known as **opsonins** (*opsonin* means “to prepare for eating”). The most important opsonins are antibodies and one of the activated proteins of the complement system. An opsonin enhances phagocytosis by linking the foreign cell to a phagocytic cell. This

## MEDIATION OF THE INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE BY PHAGOCYTE-SECRETED CHEMICALS

Microbe-stimulated phagocytes release many chemicals that function as mediators of inflammation. All chemicals other than antibodies that leukocytes secrete are collectively called **cytokines**. Macrophages, monocytes, neutrophils, a type of T cell called a helper T cell, and some nonimmune cells such as fibroblasts (fiber-formers in the connective tissue) all secrete cytokines. More than 100 cytokines have been identified, and the list continues to grow as researchers unravel the complicated chemical means by which immune effector cells communicate with one another to coordinate their activities. Unlike antibodies, cytokines do not interact directly with the antigen (foreign material) that induces their production. Instead, cytokines largely spur other immune cells into action to help ward off the invader. Cytokines typically act locally as paracrines on cells in the vicinity, but some circulate in the blood to exert endocrine effects at distant sites (see p. 92). The cytokines released by phagocytes induce a range of interrelated immune activities, varying from local responses to the systemic manifestations that accompany microbe invasion. Some cytokines have names related to their first identified or most important function, examples being specific *colony-stimulating factors*. Other cytokines are designated as specific numbered *interleukins*, such as interleukin 1 (IL-1), interleukin 2 (IL-2), and so on (*interleukin* means “between leukocytes”). The following are among the most important functions of phagocytic secretions:

1. Some of the chemicals, which are very destructive, directly kill microbes by nonphagocytic means. For example, macrophages secrete *nitric oxide (NO)*, a multipurpose chemical that is toxic to nearby microbes (see p. 272).
2. Several chemicals released by macrophages, namely *interleukin 1 (IL-1)*, *interleukin 6 (IL-6)*, and *tumor necrosis factor (TNF)* collectively act to bring about a diverse array of effects locally and throughout the body, all of which are geared toward defending the body against infection or tissue injury. They promote inflammation and are largely responsible for the systemic manifestations accompanying an infection.
3. The same trio of cytokines function together as **endogenous pyrogen (EP)**, which induces the development of fever (*endogenous* means “from within the body”; *pyro* means “fire” or “heat”; *gen* means “production”). This response occurs especially when the invading organisms have spread into the blood. Endogenous pyrogen causes release within the hypothalamus of *prostaglandins*, locally acting chemical messengers that “turn up” the hypothalamic “thermostat” that regulates body temperature. The function of the resulting elevation in body temperature in fighting infection remains unclear. Fever is a common systemic manifestation of inflammation, suggesting the raised temperature plays an important beneficial role in the overall inflammatory response, as supported by recent evidence. Higher temperatures appear to augment phagocytosis, increase the rate of the many enzyme-dependent inflammatory activities, and interfere with bacterial multiplication. Resolving

the controversial issue of whether a fever can be beneficial is extremely important, given the widespread use of drugs that suppress fever.

4. TNF stimulates release of *histamine* from mast cells in the vicinity. Histamine, in turn, promotes the local vasodilation and increased capillary permeability of inflammation.
5. IL-1 enhances the proliferation and differentiation of both *B* and *T lymphocytes*, which, in turn, are responsible for antibody production and cell-mediated immunity, respectively.
6. Colony-stimulating factors stimulate the synthesis and release of *neutrophils* and *monocytes* by the bone marrow. This effect is especially prominent in response to bacterial infections.

This list of events augmented by phagocyte-secreted chemicals is not complete, but it illustrates the diversity and complexity of responses these mediators elicit. Furthermore, other important macrophage–lymphocyte interactions that do not depend on the release of chemicals from phagocytic cells are described later. Thus, the effect that phagocytes, especially macrophages, ultimately have on microbial invaders far exceeds their “engulf and destroy” tactics.

**TISSUE REPAIR** The ultimate purpose of the inflammatory process is to isolate and destroy injurious agents and to clear the area for tissue repair. In some tissues (for example, skin, bone, and liver), the healthy organ-specific cells surrounding the injured area undergo cell division to replace the lost cells, often repairing the wound perfectly. In nonregenerative tissues such as nerve and muscle, however, lost cells are replaced by **scar tissue**. Fibroblasts, a type of connective tissue cell, start to divide rapidly in the vicinity and secrete large quantities of the protein collagen, which fills in the region vacated by the lost cells and results in the formation of scar tissue. Even in a tissue as readily replaceable as skin, scars sometimes form when complex underlying structures, such as hair follicles and sweat glands, are permanently destroyed by deep wounds.

## Inflammation is an underlying culprit in many common, chronic illnesses.



Acute (short-term) inflammatory responses serve a useful purpose for eliminating pathogens from the body, but scientists are increasingly becoming aware that chronic (long-term), low-grade inflammation may be a unifying theory for many chronic diseases. Chronic inflammation occurs when the triggering agent persists long term, either because it is not entirely eliminated or because it is constantly present or continually renewed. Chronic inflammation has an important role in Alzheimer’s disease, atherosclerosis and coronary artery disease, asthma, obesity, possibly cancer, and a host of other health problems. Collectively, these conditions are responsible for the majority of morbidity (illness) and mortality (death). Reining in this underlying inflammatory process could have a huge impact on the quality and quantity of life for much of the world’s population.

## Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and glucocorticoids suppress inflammation.



Many drugs can suppress the inflammatory process; the most effective are the *nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs*, or *NSAIDs* (aspirin, ibuprofen, and related compounds) and *glucocorticoids* (drugs similar to the steroid hormone cortisol, which is secreted by the adrenal cortex; see p. 519). For example, aspirin interferes with the inflammatory response by decreasing histamine release, thus reducing pain, swelling, and redness. Furthermore, aspirin reduces fever by inhibiting production of prostaglandins, the local mediators of endogenous pyrogen-induced fever.

Glucocorticoids, which are potent anti-inflammatory drugs, suppress almost every aspect of the inflammatory response. In addition, they destroy lymphocytes within lymphoid tissue and reduce antibody production. These therapeutic agents are useful for treating undesirable immune responses, such as allergic reactions (for example, poison ivy rash and asthma) and the inflammation associated with arthritis. However, by suppressing inflammatory and other immune responses that localize and eliminate bacteria, such therapy also reduces the body's ability to resist infection. For this reason, glucocorticoids should be used discriminately.

Now let us shift from inflammation to interferon, another component of innate immunity.

## Interferon transiently inhibits multiplication of viruses in most cells.

**Interferon** is released from virus-infected cells and briefly provides nonspecific resistance to viral infections by transiently interfering with replication of the same or unrelated viruses in other host cells. In fact, interferon was named for its ability to “interfere” with viral replication.

**ANTIVIRAL EFFECT OF INTERFERON** When a virus invades a cell, the cell synthesizes and secretes interferon in response to being exposed to viral nucleic acid. Once released into the ECF from a virus-infected cell, interferon binds with receptors on the plasma membranes of healthy neighboring cells or even distant cells that it reaches through the blood, signaling these cells to prepare for possible viral attack. Interferon thus acts as a “whistle-blower,” forewarning healthy cells of potential viral attack and helping them prepare to resist. Interferon does not have a direct antiviral effect; instead, it triggers the production of virus-blocking enzymes by potential host cells. When interferon binds with these other cells, they synthesize enzymes that can break down viral messenger RNA (see p. 20) and inhibit protein synthesis. Both these processes are essential for viral replication. Although viruses are still able to invade these forewarned cells, the pathogens cannot govern cellular protein synthesis for their own replication (● Figure 11-16).

The newly synthesized inhibitory enzymes remain inactive within the tipped-off potential host cell unless it is actually invaded by a virus, at which time the enzymes are activated by the presence of viral nucleic acid. This activation requirement protects the cell's own messenger RNA and protein-synthesizing

machinery from unnecessary inhibition by these enzymes should viral invasion not occur. Because activation can take place only during a limited time span, this is a short-term defense mechanism.

Interferon is released nonspecifically from any cell infected by any virus and, in turn, can induce temporary self-protective activity against many different viruses in any other cells that it reaches. Thus, it provides a general, rapidly responding defense strategy against viral invasion until more specific but slower-responding immune mechanisms come into play.

**ANTICANCER EFFECTS OF INTERFERON** Interferon exerts anticancer, as well as antiviral, effects. It markedly enhances the actions of cell-killing cells—the *natural killer cells*, the component of innate immunity we describe next, and a special type of T lymphocyte, *cytotoxic T cells*—which attack and destroy both virus-infected cells and cancer cells. Furthermore, interferon itself slows cell division and suppresses tumor growth.

## Natural killer cells destroy virus-infected cells and cancer cells on first exposure to them.

**Natural killer (NK) cells** are naturally occurring, lymphocyte-like cells that nonspecifically destroy virus-infected cells and cancer cells by releasing chemicals that directly lyse (rupture) the membranes of such cells on first exposure to them. Their mode of action and major targets are similar to those of cytotoxic T cells, but the latter can fatally attack only the specific types of virus-infected cells and cancer cells to which they have been previously exposed. Furthermore, after exposure cytotoxic T cells require a maturation period before they can launch their lethal assault. NK cells provide an immediate, nonspecific defense against virus-invaded cells and cancer cells before the more specific and abundant cytotoxic T cells become functional.

## The complement system punches holes in microorganisms.

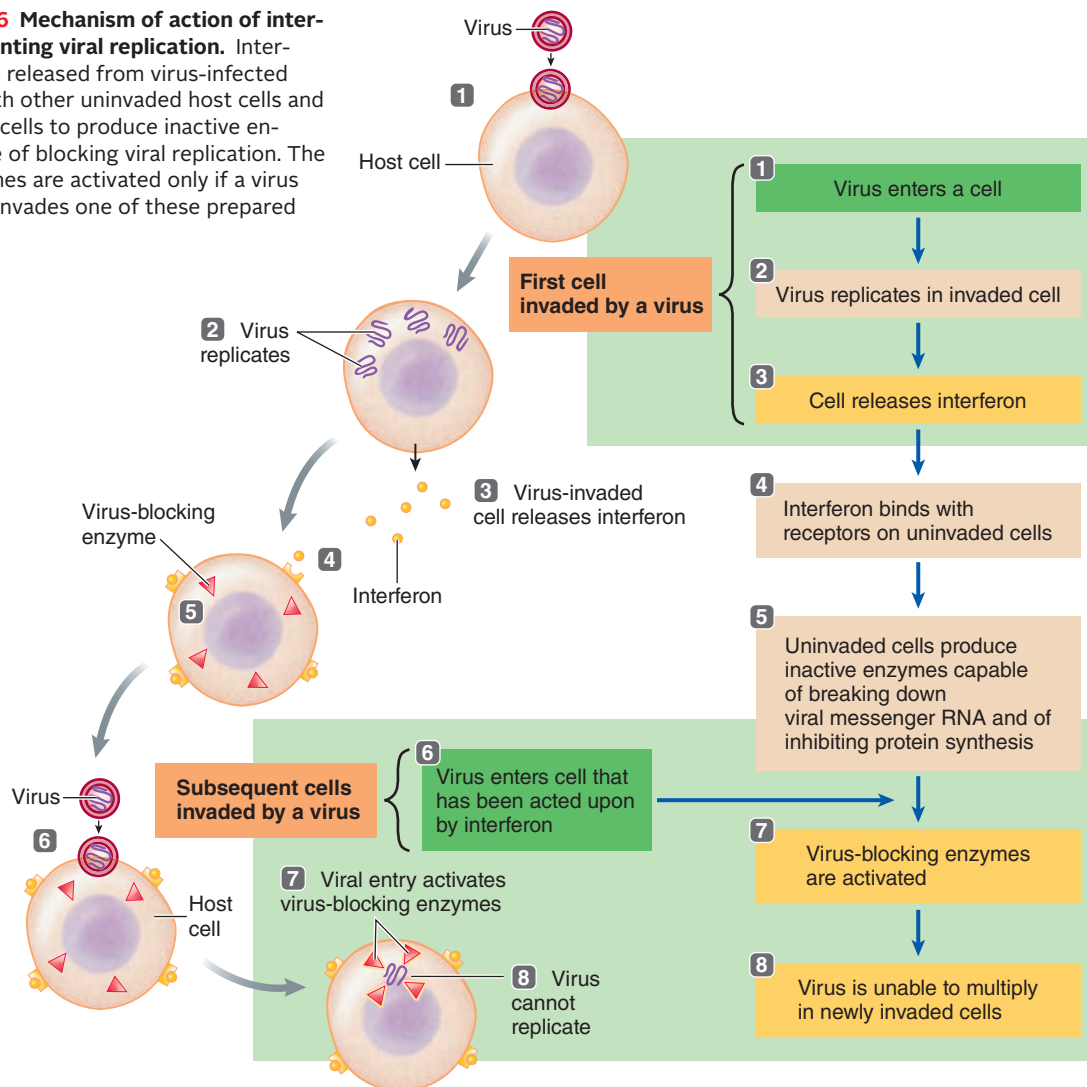
The **complement system** is another defense mechanism brought into play nonspecifically in response to invading organisms. This system can be activated in two ways:

1. By exposure to particular carbohydrate chains present on the surfaces of microorganisms but not found on human cells, a nonspecific innate immune response
2. By exposure to antibodies produced against a specific foreign invader, an adaptive immune response

The system derives its name from its ability to “complement” the action of antibodies; it is the primary mechanism activated by antibodies to kill foreign cells. The complement system destroys cells by forming *membrane attack complexes* that punch holes in the victim cells. In addition to bringing about direct lysis of the invader, the complement cascade reinforces general inflammatory tactics.

**FORMATION OF THE MEMBRANE ATTACK COMPLEX** In the same mode as the clotting and ant clotting systems, the complement system consists of plasma proteins that are produced by the

● **FIGURE 11-16 Mechanism of action of interferon in preventing viral replication.** Interferon, which is released from virus-infected cells, binds with other uninvaded host cells and induces these cells to produce inactive enzymes capable of blocking viral replication. The inactive enzymes are activated only if a virus subsequently invades one of these prepared cells.



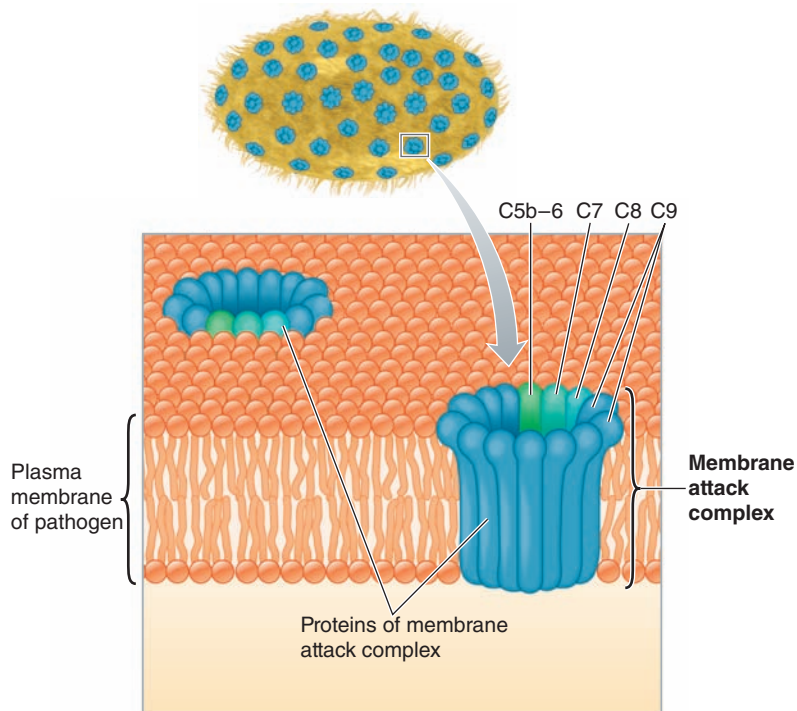
liver and circulate in the blood in inactive form. Once the first component, C1, is activated, it activates the next component, C2, and so on, in a cascade sequence of activation reactions. The five final components, C5 through C9, assemble into a large, doughnut-shaped protein complex, the **membrane attack complex (MAC)**, which embeds itself in the surface membrane of nearby microorganisms, creating a large channel through the membrane (● Figure 11-17). In other words, the parts make a hole. This hole-punching technique makes the membrane extremely leaky; the resulting osmotic flux of water into the victim cell causes it to swell and burst. Such complement-induced lysis is the major means of directly killing microbes without phagocytizing them.

**AUGMENTING INFLAMMATION** Unlike the other cascade systems, in which the sole function of the various components leading up to the end step is activation of the next precursor in the sequence, several activated proteins in the complement cascade additionally act on their own to augment the inflammatory process by the following methods:

- *Serving as chemotaxins*, which attract and guide professional phagocytes to the site of complement activation (that is, the site of microbial invasion)
- *Acting as opsonins* by binding with microbes and thereby enhancing their phagocytosis
- *Promoting vasodilation and increased vascular permeability*, thus increasing blood flow to the invaded areas
- *Stimulating release of histamine* from mast cells in the vicinity, which in turn enhances the local vascular changes characteristic of inflammation

Several activated components in the cascade are very unstable. Because these unstable components can carry out the sequence only in the immediate area in which they are activated before they decompose, the complement attack is confined to the surface membrane of the microbe whose presence initiated activation of the system. Nearby host cells are thus spared from lytic attack.

We have now completed our discussion of innate immunity and turn our attention to adaptive immunity.



Activated complement proteins C5, C6, C7, C8, and a number of C9s aggregate to form a porelike channel in the plasma membrane of the target cell. The resulting leakage leads to destruction of the cell.

● **FIGURE 11-17** Membrane attack complex of the complement system.

## Adaptive Immunity: General Concepts

A specific adaptive immune response is a selective attack aimed at limiting or destroying a particular offending target for which the body has been specially prepared after exposure to it.

### Adaptive immune responses include antibody-mediated immunity and cell-mediated immunity.

There are two classes of adaptive immune responses: **antibody-mediated**, or **humoral immunity**, involving production of antibodies by B lymphocyte derivatives known as *plasma cells*, and **cell-mediated immunity**, involving production of *activated T lymphocytes*, which directly attack unwanted cells. Because antibodies are blood borne, antibody-mediated immunity is sometimes known as humoral immunity, in reference to the ancient Greek use of the term *humors* for the various body fluids (see p. 265).

Lymphocytes can specifically recognize and selectively respond to an almost limitless variety of foreign agents, as well as cancer cells. The recognition and response processes are different in B and in T cells. In general, B cells recognize free-existing foreign invaders such as bacteria, which they combat by secreting antibodies specific for the invaders. T cells specialize in recognizing and destroying body cells gone awry, including virus-infected cells and cancer cells. We examine each of these processes in de-

tail in the upcoming sections. For now, we explore the different life histories of B and T cells.

**ORIGINS OF B AND T CELLS** Both types of lymphocytes, like all blood cells, are derived from common stem cells in the bone marrow (see p. 312). Whether a lymphocyte and all its progeny are destined to be B or T cells depends on the site of final differentiation and maturation of the original cell in the lineage (● Figure 11-18). B cells differentiate and mature in the bone marrow. As for T cells, during fetal life and early childhood, some immature lymphocytes from the bone marrow migrate through the blood to the thymus, where they undergo further processing to become T lymphocytes (named for their site of maturation). The **thymus** is a lymphoid tissue located midline within the chest cavity above the heart in the space between the lungs (see ● Figure 11-12, p. 311).

On being released into the blood from either the bone marrow or the thymus, mature B and T cells take up residence and establish lymphocyte colonies in the peripheral lymphoid tissues. Here, on appropriate stimulation, they undergo cell division to produce new generations of either B or T cells, depending on their ancestry. After early childhood, most new lymphocytes are derived from these peripheral lymphocyte colonies rather than from the bone marrow.

Each of us has an estimated 2 trillion lymphocytes, which, if aggregated in a mass, would be about the size of the brain. At any one time, most of these lymphocytes are concentrated in the various strategically located lymphoid tissues, but both B and T cells continually circulate among the lymph, blood, and body tissues, where they remain on constant surveillance.

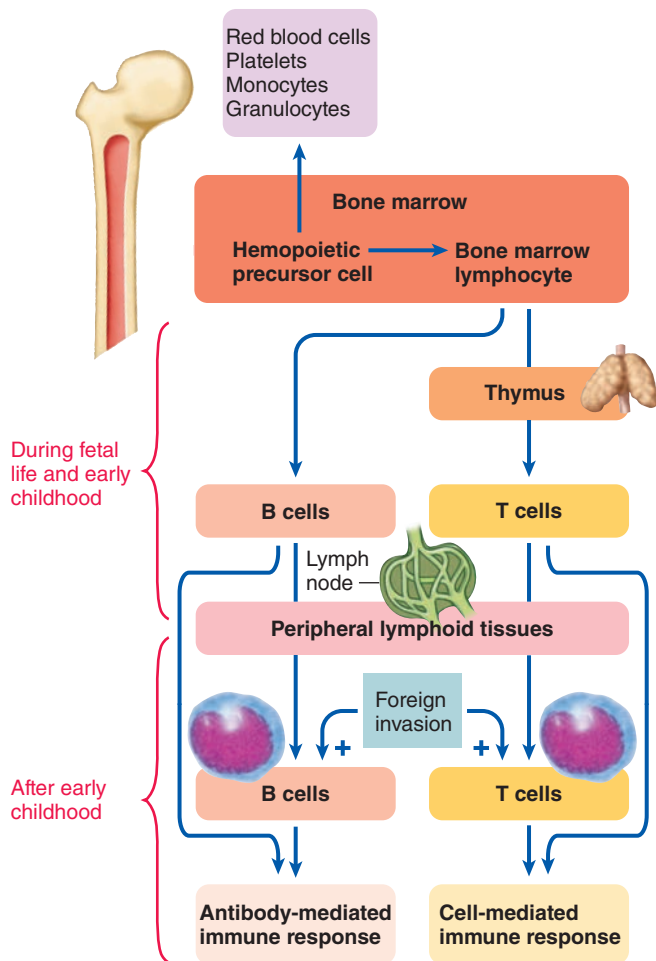
**ROLE OF THYMOSIN** Because most of the migration and differentiation of T cells occurs early in development, the thymus gradually atrophies and becomes less important as the person matures. It does, however, continue to produce **thymosin**, a hormone important in maintaining the T-cell lineage. Thymosin enhances proliferation of new T cells within the peripheral lymphoid tissues and augments the immune capabilities of existing T cells.

Let us now see how lymphocytes detect their selected target.

### An antigen induces an immune response against itself.

Both B and T cells must be able to specifically recognize unwanted cells and other material to be destroyed as being distinct from the body's own normal cells. The presence of antigens enables lymphocytes to make this distinction. Recall that an antigen is a large, unique molecule that triggers a specific immune response against itself, such as generation of antibodies that lead to its destruction, when it gains entry into the body (*antigen* means *antibody generator*, although some antigens trigger cell-mediated immune responses instead of antibody production). In general, the more complex a molecule is, the





● **FIGURE 11-18** Origins of B and T cells. B cells are derived from lymphocytes that matured and differentiated in the bone marrow, whereas T cells are derived from lymphocytes that originated in the bone marrow but matured and differentiated in the thymus. After early childhood, new B and T cells are produced primarily by colonies of B and T cells established in peripheral lymphoid tissues during fetal life and early childhood.

greater its antigenicity. Foreign proteins are the most common antigens because of their size and structural complexity. Antigens may exist as isolated molecules, such as bacterial toxins, or they may be an integral part of a multimolecular structure, as when they are on the surface of an invading foreign microbe.

We first see how B cells respond to their targeted antigen, after which we look at T cells' response to their antigen.

## B Lymphocytes: Antibody-Mediated Immunity

Each B and T cell has receptors—**B-cell receptors (BCRs)** and **T-cell receptors (TCRs)**—on its surface for binding with one particular type of the multitude of possible antigens (● Figure 11-19). These receptors are the “eyes of the adaptive immune system,” although a given lymphocyte can “see” only one unique antigen. This is in contrast to the TLRs of the innate effector

cells, which recognize generic “trademarks” characteristic of all microbial invaders.

### Antigens stimulate B cells to convert into plasma cells that produce antibodies.

When B-cell receptors bind with an antigen, most B cells differentiate into active *plasma cells* while others become dormant *memory cells*. We first examine the role of plasma cells and their antibodies and then later in the chapter turn our attention to memory cells.

**PLASMA CELLS** A **plasma cell** produces antibodies that can combine with the specific type of antigen that stimulated activation of the plasma cell. During differentiation into a plasma cell, a B cell swells as the rough endoplasmic reticulum (the site for synthesis of proteins to be exported; see p. 21) greatly expands (● Figure 11-20). Because antibodies are proteins, plasma cells essentially become prolific protein factories, producing up to 2000 antibody molecules per second. So great is the commitment of a plasma cell's protein-synthesizing machinery to antibody production that it cannot maintain protein synthesis for its own viability and growth. Consequently, it dies after a brief (5- to 7-day), highly productive life span.

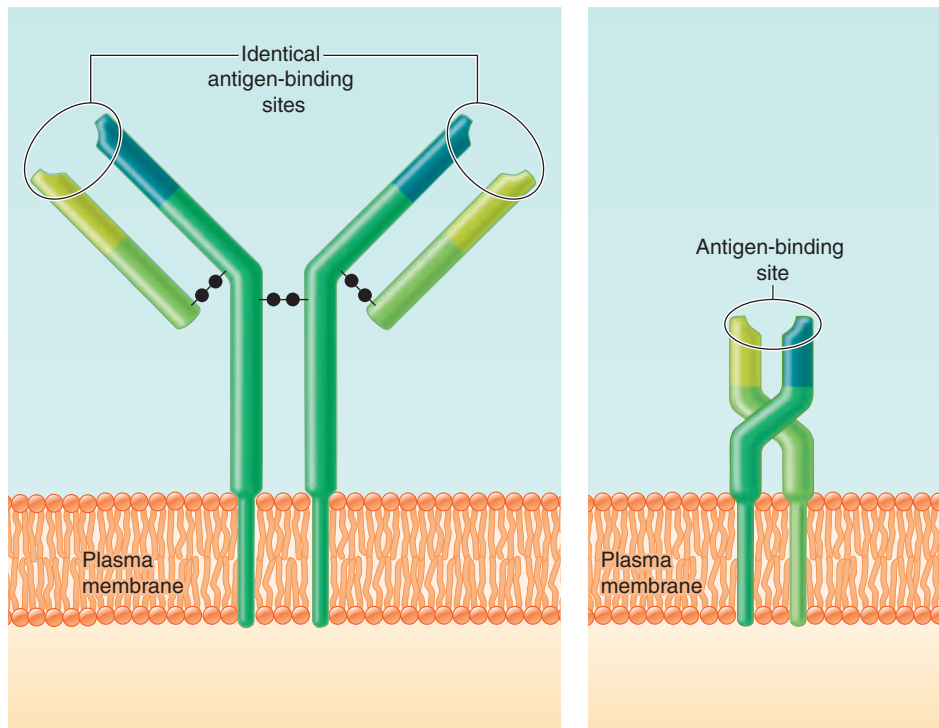
**ANTIBODY SUBCLASSES** Antibodies (immunoglobulins) are grouped into five subclasses based on differences in their biological activity. For example, **IgG** antibodies produce most specific immune responses against bacterial invaders and a few types of viruses, whereas **IgE** is the antibody mediator for common allergic responses, such as hay fever, asthma, and hives, and helps protect against parasitic worms. Note that this classification is based on different ways in which antibodies function. It does not imply that there are only five different antibodies. Within each functional subclass are millions of different antibodies, each able to bind only with a specific antigen.

### Antibodies are Y shaped and classified according to properties of their tail portion.

Antibodies of all five subclasses are arranged in the shape of a Y (● Figure 11-21). Characteristics of the arm regions of the Y determine the *specificity* of the antibody (that is, with what antigen the antibody can bind). Properties of the tail portion of the antibody determine the *functional properties* of the antibody (what the antibody does once it binds with an antigen).

An antibody has two identical antigen-binding sites, one at the tip of each arm. These **antigen-binding fragments (Fab)** are unique for each antibody, so each antibody can interact only with an antigen that specifically matches it, much like a lock and key. The tremendous variation in the fragments of different antibodies leads to the extremely large number of unique antibodies that can bind specifically with millions of different antigens.

In contrast to these variable Fab regions at the arm tips, the tail portion of every antibody within each immunoglobulin subclass is identical. The tail, the antibody's **constant (Fc) region**, contains binding sites for particular mediators of



(a) B-cell receptor (BCR)

(b) T-cell receptor (TCR)

● **FIGURE 11-19 B- and T-cell receptors.**

antibody-induced activities, which vary among the subclasses. In fact, differences in the constant region are the basis for distinguishing among the immunoglobulin subclasses. For example, the constant tail region of IgG antibodies, when activated by antigen binding in the Fab region, binds with phagocytic cells and serves as an opsonin to enhance phagocytosis. In comparison, the constant tail region of IgE antibodies attaches to mast cells and basophils, even in the absence of antigens. When the appropriate antigen gains entry to the body and binds with the attached antibodies, this triggers the release of histamine

from the affected mast cells and basophils. Histamine, in turn, induces the allergic manifestations that follow.

**Antibodies largely amplify innate immune responses to promote antigen destruction.**

Antibodies cannot directly destroy foreign organisms or other unwanted materials on binding with antigens on their surfaces. Instead, they exert their protective influence by physically hindering antigens or, more commonly, by amplifying innate immune responses (● Figure 11-22).

**PHYSICAL HINDRANCE OF AN ANTIGEN**

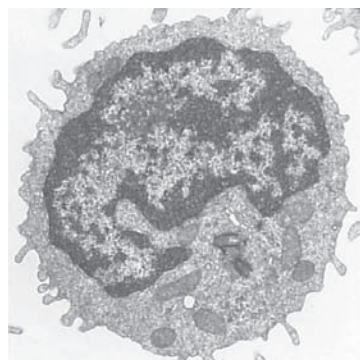
Agglutination is an example of how antibodies can physically hinder some antigens from exerting their detrimental effects. In **agglutination**, multiple antibody molecules cross-link numerous antigen molecules into chains or lattices of antigen-antibody complexes (● Figure 11-22a). Through

this means, foreign cells, such as bacteria or mismatched transfused red blood cells, bind together in a clump. When linked antigen-antibody complexes involve soluble antigens, such as tetanus toxin, the lattice can become so large that it precipitates out of solution. (**Precipitation** is the process in which a substance separates from a solution.)



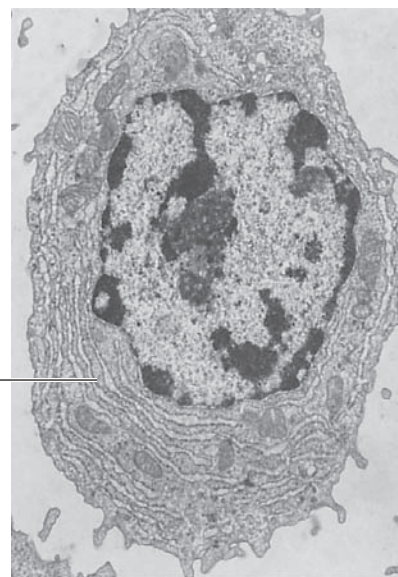
Within the body, these physical hindrance mechanisms play only a minor protective role against invading agents. However, the tendency for certain antigens to agglutinate or precipitate on forming large complexes with antibodies specific for them is useful for detecting the presence of particular antigens or antibodies. Pregnancy diagnosis tests, for example, use this principle to detect, in urine, the presence of a hormone secreted soon after conception.

● **FIGURE 11-20 Comparison of an unactivated B cell and a plasma cell.** Electron micrographs at the same magnification of (a) an unactivated B cell, or small lymphocyte, and (b) a plasma cell. A plasma cell is an activated B cell. It is filled with an abundance of rough endoplasmic reticulum distended with antibody molecules.



(a) Unactivated B cell

Dr. Dorothea Zucker-Franklin



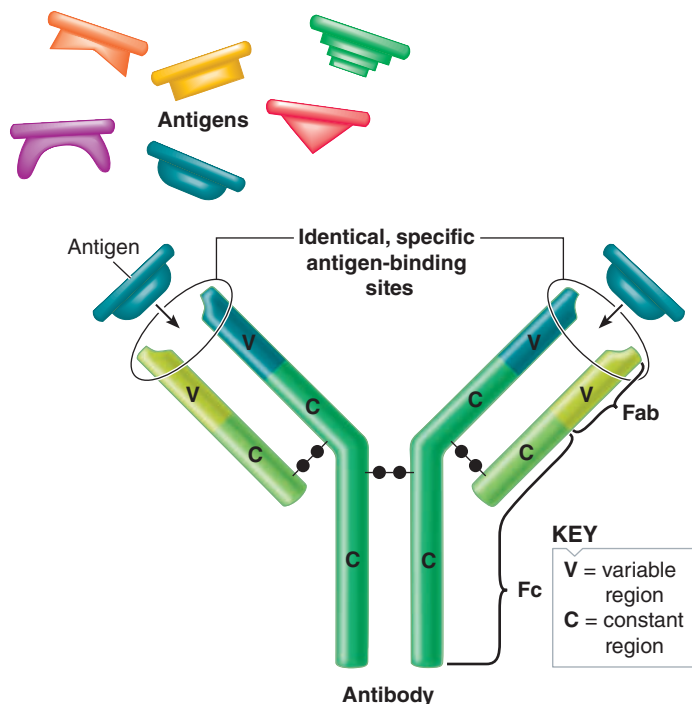
(b) Plasma cell

Endoplasmic reticulum

Dr. Dorothea Zucker-Franklin

**AMPLIFICATION OF INNATE IMMUNE RESPONSES**

The most important function of antibodies by far is to profoundly augment the innate immune responses already initiated by the invaders. Antibodies mark foreign material as targets for actual destruction by the complement system, phagocytes, or natural killer cells while enhancing the activity of these other defense systems by the following methods:



● **FIGURE 11-21 Antibody structure.** An antibody is a Y-shaped molecule. It is able to bind only with the specific antigen that “fits” its antigen-binding sites (Fab) on the arm tips. The tail region (Fc) binds with particular mediators of antibody-induced activities.

1. *Activating the complement system.* When an appropriate antigen binds with an antibody, receptors on the tail portion of the antibody bind with and activate C1, the first component of the complement system. This sets off the cascade of events leading to formation of the membrane attack complex, which is specifically directed at the membrane of the invading cell that bears the antigen that initiated the activation process (● Figure 11-22b). Antibodies are the most powerful activators of the complement system. The biochemical attack subsequently unleashed against the invader’s membrane is the most important mechanism by which antibodies exert their protective influence. Furthermore, various activated complement components enhance virtually every aspect of the inflammatory process. The same complement system is activated by an antigen–antibody complex regardless of the type of antigen. Although the binding of antigen to antibody is highly specific, the outcome, which is determined by the antibody’s constant tail region, is identical for all activated antibodies within a given subclass; for example, all IgG antibodies activate the same complement system.

2. *Enhancing phagocytosis.* Antibodies, especially IgG, act as opsonins. The tail portion of an antigen-bound IgG antibody binds with a receptor on the surface of a phagocyte and subsequently promotes phagocytosis of the antigen-containing victim attached to the antibody (● Figure 11-22c).

3. *Stimulating natural killer (NK) cells.* The binding of antibody to antigen also induces attack of the antigen-bearing target cell by NK cells. NK cells have receptors for the constant tail portion of antibodies. In this case, when the target cell is coated with antibodies, the tail portions of the antibodies link the tar-

get cell to NK cells, which destroy the target cell by lysing its plasma membrane (● Figure 11-22d).

In these ways, antibodies, although unable to directly destroy invading bacteria or other undesirable material, bring about destruction of the antigens to which they are specifically attached, by amplifying other nonspecific lethal defense mechanisms.



**IMMUNE COMPLEX DISEASE** Occasionally, an overzealous antigen–antibody response inadvertently causes damage to normal cells, as well as to invading foreign cells. Typically, antigen–antibody complexes, formed

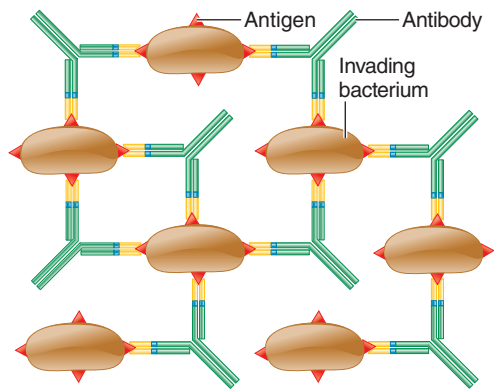
in response to foreign invasion, are removed by phagocytic cells after having revved up nonspecific defense strategies. If large numbers of these complexes are continuously produced, however, the phagocytes cannot clear away all the immune complexes formed. Antigen–antibody complexes that are not removed continue to activate the complement system, among other things. Excessive amounts of activated complement and other inflammatory agents may “spill over,” damaging the surrounding normal cells, as well as the unwanted cells. Furthermore, destruction is not necessarily restricted to the initial site of inflammation. Antigen–antibody complexes may circulate freely and become trapped in the kidneys, joints, brain, small vessels of the skin, and elsewhere, causing widespread inflammation and tissue damage. Such damage produced by immune complexes is referred to as an **immune complex disease**, which can be a complicating outcome of bacterial, viral, or parasitic infection.

More insidiously, immune complex disease can stem from overzealous inflammatory activity prompted by immune complexes formed by “self-antigens” (proteins synthesized by the person’s own body) and antibodies erroneously produced against them. *Rheumatoid arthritis* develops in this way.

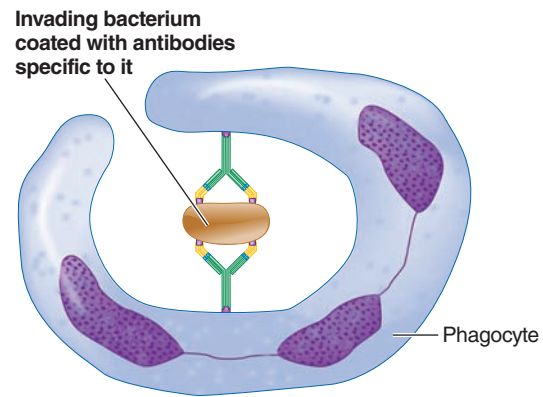
### Clonal selection accounts for the specificity of antibody production.

Consider the diversity of foreign molecules a person can potentially encounter during a lifetime. Despite this, each B cell is preprogrammed to respond to only 1 of probably more than 100 million different antigens. Other antigens cannot combine with the same B cell and induce it to secrete different antibodies. The astonishing implication is that each of us is equipped with about 100 million kinds of preformed B lymphocytes, at least one B lymphocyte for every possible antigen that we might ever encounter. The clonal selection theory proposes how a “matching” B cell responds to its antigen.

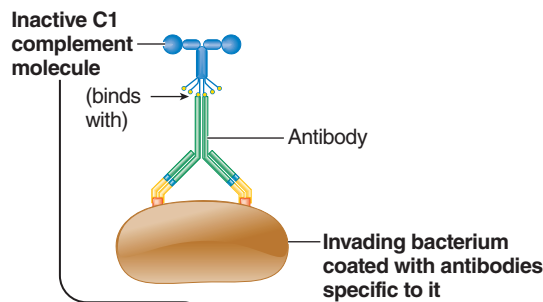
Early researchers in immunologic theory believed antibodies were “made to order” whenever a foreign antigen gained entry to the body. In contrast, the currently accepted **clonal selection theory** proposes that diverse B lymphocytes are produced during fetal development, each capable of synthesizing an antibody against a particular antigen before ever being exposed to it. All offspring of a particular ancestral B lymphocyte form a family of identical cells, or a **clone**, that is committed to producing the same specific antibody. B cells



(a) **Agglutination** (clumping of antigenic cells) and **precipitation** (if soluble antigen–antibody complex is too large to stay in solution)



(c) **Enhancement of phagocytosis (opsonization)**

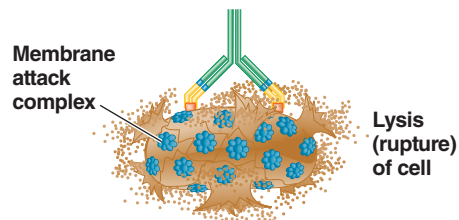


Activated by binding with antigen-attached antibody

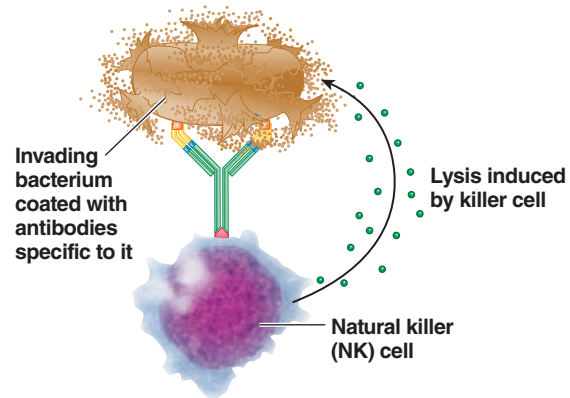
(leads to)

Formation of C5–C9, the membrane attack complex

(forms holes in foreign cell)



(b) **Activation of complement system**



(d) **Stimulation of natural killer (NK) cells**

Structures are not drawn to scale.

● **FIGURE 11-22** How antibodies help eliminate invading microbes. Antibodies may physically hinder antigens, such as through agglutination (a). More commonly, antibodies amplify innate immune responses by (b) activating the complement system, (c) enhancing phagocytosis by acting as opsonins, and (d) stimulating natural killer cells.

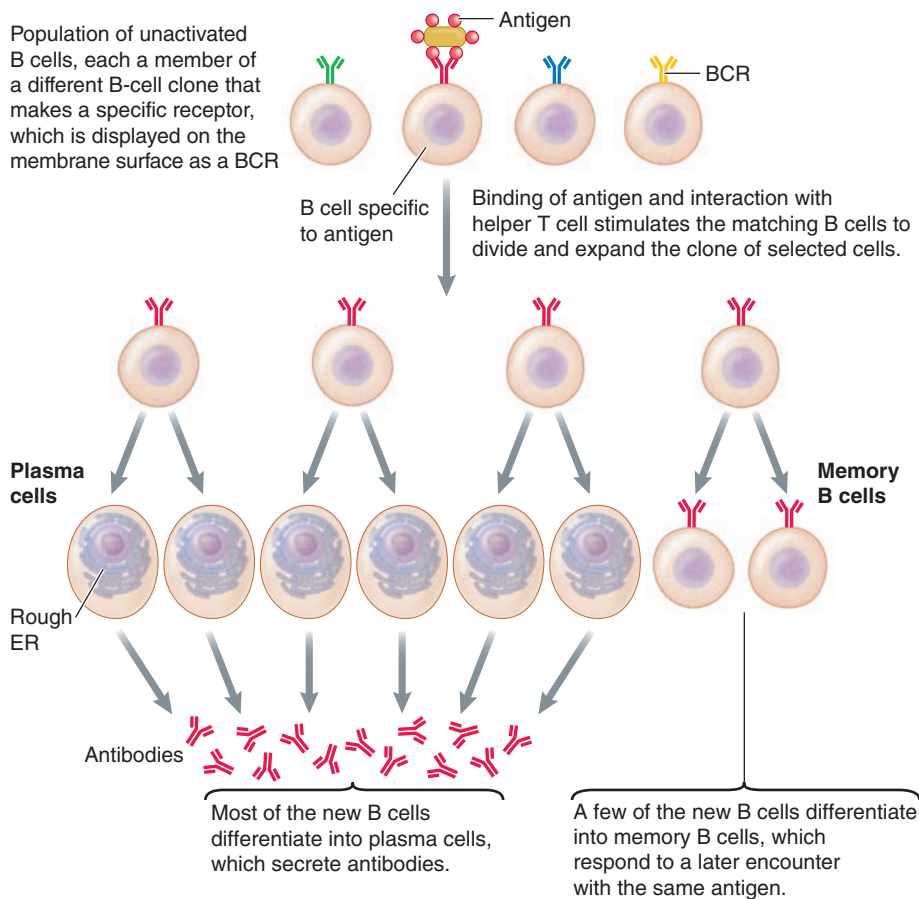
remain dormant, not actually secreting their particular antibody product nor undergoing rapid division until (or unless) they come into contact with the appropriate antigen. When an antigen gains entry to the body, the particular clone of B cells that bear receptors (BCRs) on their surface uniquely specific for that antigen is activated or “selected” by the antigen binding with the BCRs, hence the term *clonal selection theory* (● Figure 11-23).

The first antibodies produced by a newly formed B cell are inserted into the cell’s plasma membrane rather than secreted. Here they serve as BCRs for binding with a specific kind of antigen, almost like “advertisements” for the kind of antibody that the cell can produce. Binding of the appropriate antigen to

a B cell amounts to “placing an order” for the manufacture and secretion of large quantities of that particular antibody.

### Selected clones differentiate into active plasma cells and dormant memory cells.

Antigen binding causes the activated B-cell clone to multiply and differentiate into two cell types—the previously described plasma cells and memory cells, which we focus on next. Most progeny are transformed into active plasma cells, which are prolific producers of customized antibodies that contain the same antigen-binding sites as the surface receptors. In the blood, the secreted antibodies combine with the invading, free-



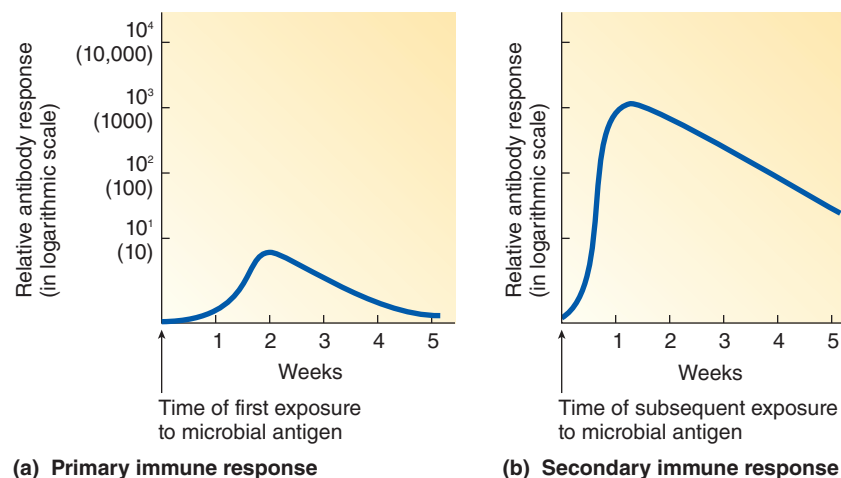
● **FIGURE 11-23 Clonal selection theory.** The B-cell clone specific to the antigen proliferates and differentiates into plasma cells and memory cells. Plasma cells secrete antibodies that bind with a free antigen not attached to B cells. Memory cells are primed and ready for subsequent exposure to the same antigen.

existing antigen, marking it for destruction by the complement system, phagocytic ingestion, or NK cells.

**MEMORY CELLS** Not all new B lymphocytes produced by the specifically activated clone differentiate into antibody-secreting plasma cells. A small proportion become **memory cells**, which do not participate in the current immune attack against the antigen but instead remain dormant and expand this specific clone. If the person is ever reexposed to the same antigen, these memory cells are primed and ready for even more immediate action than the original lymphocytes in the clone were.

Even though each of us has essentially the same original pool of different B-cell clones, the

● **FIGURE 11-24 Primary and secondary immune responses.** (a) Primary response on first exposure to a microbial antigen. (b) Secondary response on subsequent exposure to the same microbial antigen. The primary response does not peak for a couple of weeks, whereas the secondary response peaks in a week. The magnitude of the secondary response is 100 times that of the primary response. (The relative antibody response is in the logarithmic scale.)



pool gradually becomes appropriately biased to respond most efficiently to each person's particular antigenic environment. Those clones specific for antigens to which a person is never exposed remain dormant for life, whereas those specific for antigens in the individual's environment typically become expanded and enhanced by forming highly responsive memory cells.

### PRIMARY AND SECONDARY RESPONSES

During initial contact with a microbial antigen, the antibody response is delayed for several days until plasma cells are formed and does not reach its peak for a couple of weeks. This response is known as the **primary response** (● Figure 11-24a). Meanwhile, symptoms characteristic of the particular microbial invasion persist until either the invader succumbs to the mounting specific immune attack against it or the infected person dies. After reaching the peak, the antibody levels gradually decline over time. If the same antigen ever reappears, the long-lived memory cells launch a more rapid, more potent, and longer-lasting **secondary response** than occurred during the primary response (● Figure 11-24b). This swifter, more powerful immune attack is frequently adequate to prevent or

minimize overt infection on subsequent exposures to the same microbe, forming the basis of long-term immunity against a specific disease.



The original antigenic exposure that induces the formation of memory cells can occur through the person either having the disease or being vaccinated.

**Vaccination (immunization)** deliberately exposes the person to a pathogen that has been stripped of its disease-inducing capability but that can still induce antibody forma-

## Beyond the Basics

Modern society has come to hope and even expect that vaccines can be developed to protect us from almost any dreaded infectious disease. This expectation has been brought into sharp focus by our current frustration over the inability to date to develop a successful vaccine against HIV, the virus that causes AIDS.

Nearly 2500 years ago, our ancestors were aware of the existence of immune protection. Writing about a plague that struck Athens in 430 BC, Thucydides observed that the same person was never attacked twice by this disease. However, the ancients did not understand the basis of this protection, so they could not manipulate it to their advantage.

Early attempts to deliberately acquire lifelong protection against smallpox, a dreaded disease that was highly infectious and frequently fatal (up to 40% of the sick died), consisted of intentionally exposing oneself by coming into direct contact with a person suffering from a milder form of the disease. The hope was to protect against a future fatal bout of smallpox by deliberately inducing a mild case of the disease. By the beginning of the 17th century, this technique had evolved into using a needle to extract

## Vaccination: A Victory Over Many Dreaded Diseases

small amounts of pus from active smallpox pustules (the fluid-filled bumps on the skin, which leave a characteristic depressed scar or “pock” mark after healing) and introducing this infectious material into healthy individuals. This inoculation process was done by applying the pus directly to slight cuts in the skin or by inhaling dried pus.

Edward Jenner, an English physician, was the first to demonstrate that immunity against cowpox, a disease similar to but less serious than smallpox, could also protect humans against smallpox. Having observed that milkmaids who got cowpox seemed to be protected from smallpox, Jenner in 1796 inoculated a healthy boy with pus he had extracted from cowpox boils (*vacca*, as in *vaccination*, means “cow”). After the boy recovered, Jenner (not being restricted by modern ethical standards of research on human subjects) deliberately inoculated him with what was considered a normally fatal dose of smallpox infectious material. The boy survived.

Jenner's results were not taken seriously, however, until a century later when,

in the 1880s, Louis Pasteur, the first great experimental immunologist, extended Jenner's technique. Pasteur demonstrated that the disease-inducing capability of organisms could be greatly reduced (attenuated) so that they could no longer produce disease but would still induce antibody formation when introduced into the body—the basic principle of modern vaccines. His first vaccine was against anthrax, a deadly disease of sheep and cows. Pasteur isolated and heated anthrax bacteria and then injected these attenuated organisms into a group of healthy sheep. A few weeks later, at a gathering of fellow scientists, Pasteur injected these vaccinated sheep, as well as a group of unvaccinated sheep, with fully potent anthrax bacteria. The result was dramatic—all the vaccinated sheep survived, but all the unvaccinated sheep died. Pasteur's notorious public demonstrations such as this, coupled with his charismatic personality, caught the attention of physicians and scientists of the time, sparking the development of modern immunology.

tion against itself. (For the early history of vaccination development, see the accompanying boxed feature, **B** Beyond the Basics.)

We now turn our attention to T cells.

## T Lymphocytes: Cell-Mediated Immunity

As important as B lymphocytes and their antibody products are in specific defense against invading bacteria and other foreign material, they represent only half of the body's specific immune defenses. The T lymphocytes are equally important in defense against most viral infections and also play an important regulatory role in immune mechanisms.

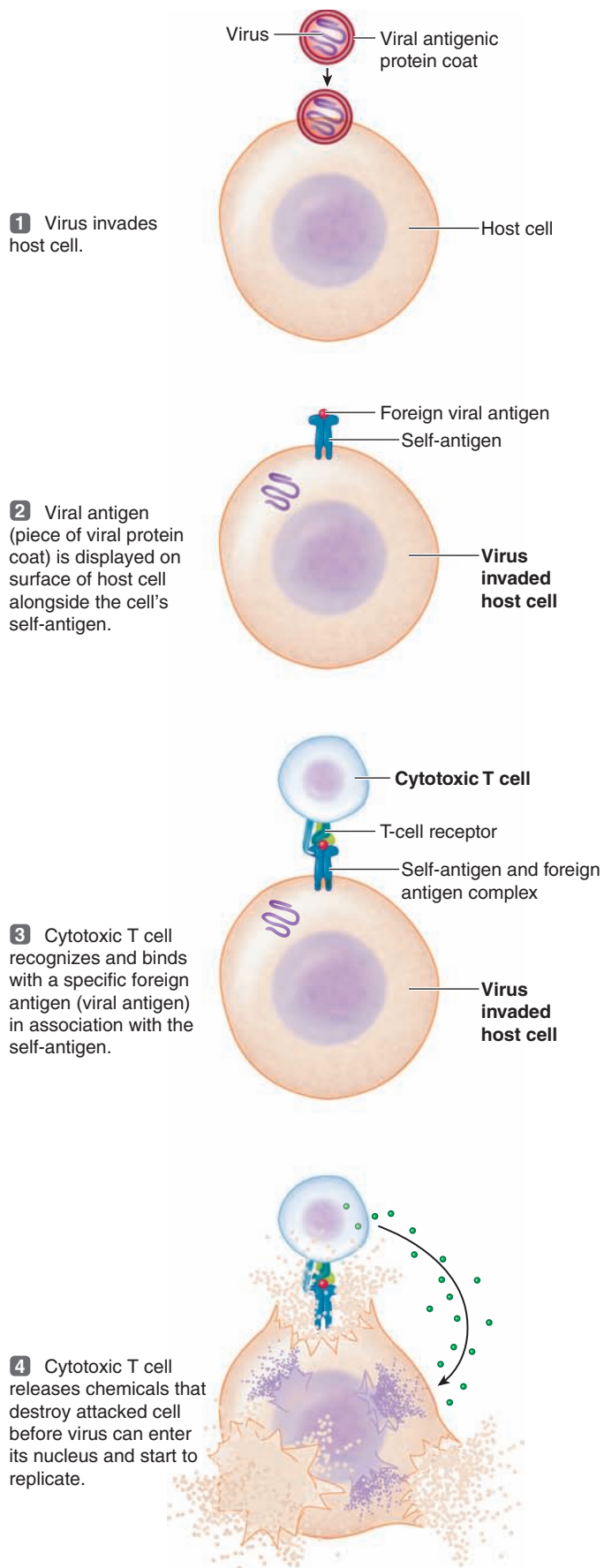
### T cells bind directly with their targets.

Whereas B cells and antibodies defend against conspicuous invaders in the ECF, T cells defend against covert invaders that hide inside cells where antibodies and the complement system cannot reach them. Unlike B cells, which secrete antibodies that can attack antigens at long distances, T cells do not secrete antibodies. Instead, they must directly contact their targets, a process known as *cell-mediated immunity*. T cells of the killer

type release chemicals that destroy the targeted cells they contact, such as virus-infected cells and cancer cells.

Like B cells, T cells are clonal and exquisitely antigen specific. On its plasma membrane, each T cell bears unique receptor proteins called *T-cell receptors (TCRs)*, similar although not identical to the surface receptors on B cells (see **●** Figure 11-19b, p. 321). Immature lymphocytes acquire their TCRs in the thymus during their differentiation into T cells. Unlike B cells, T cells are activated by a foreign antigen only when it is on the surface of a cell that also carries a marker of the individual's own identity; that is, both foreign antigens and **self-antigens** must be on a cell's surface before a T cell can bind with it. During thymic education, T cells learn to recognize foreign antigens only in combination with the person's own tissue antigens—a lesson passed on to all T cells' future progeny. The importance of this dual antigen requirement and the nature of the self-antigens are described shortly.

A delay of a few days generally follows exposure to the appropriate antigen before **activated T cells** are prepared to launch a cell-mediated immune attack. When exposed to a specific antigen combination, cells of the complementary T-cell clone proliferate and differentiate for several days, yielding large numbers of activated effector T cells that carry out various cell-mediated responses. Like B cells, T cells form a memory pool and display both primary and secondary responses.



● **FIGURE 11-25** A cytotoxic T cell lysing a virus-invaded cell.

### The three types of T cells are cytotoxic, helper, and regulatory.

There are three subpopulations of T cells, depending on their roles when activated by an antigen:

- **Cytotoxic, or killer, T cells** destroy host cells harboring anything foreign and thus bearing a foreign antigen, such as body cells invaded by viruses, cancer cells that have mutated proteins resulting from malignant transformations, and transplanted cells.

- **Helper T cells** do not directly participate in immune destruction of invading pathogens. Instead, they modulate activities of other immune cells. Because of the important role they play in “turning on” the full power of all the other activated lymphocytes and macrophages, helper T cells constitute the immune system’s “master switch.” Helper T cells are by far the most numerous T cells, making up 60% to 80% of circulating T cells.

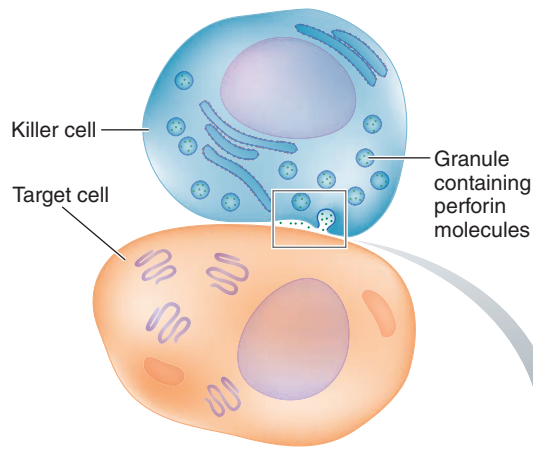
- **Regulatory T cells**, originally called **suppressor T cells**, are a recently identified small subset of T cells that suppress immune responses. They keep the rest of the immune system under tight control. Regulatory T cells are specialized to inhibit both innate and adaptive immune responses in a check-and-balance fashion to minimize harmful immune pathology.

We now examine the functions of the two most abundant and best-known T cells, cytotoxic T cells and helper T cells, in further detail.

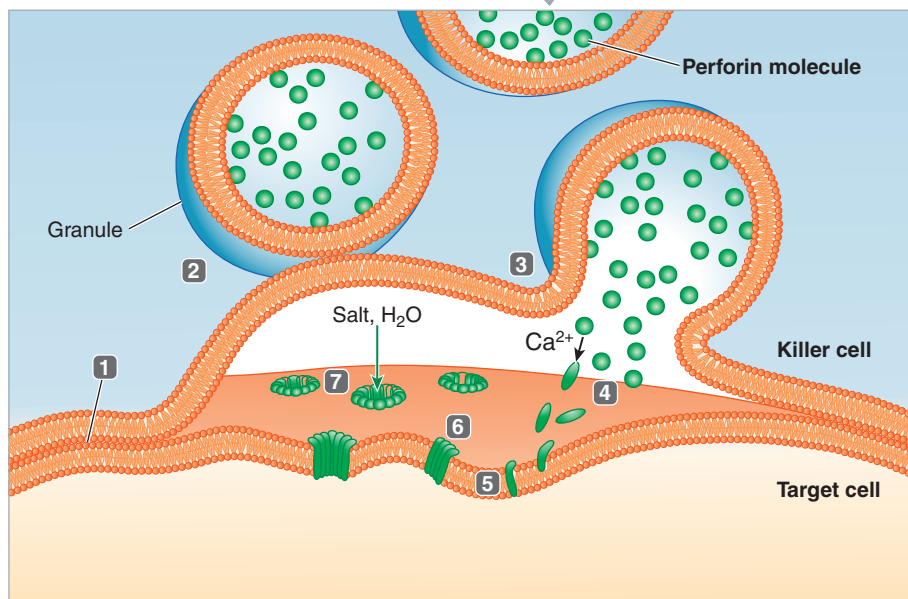
### Cytotoxic T cells secrete chemicals that destroy target cells.

Cytotoxic T cells are microscopic “hit men.” The targets of these destructive cells most frequently are host cells infected with viruses. When a virus invades a body cell, as it must to survive, the cell breaks down the envelope of proteins surrounding the virus and loads a fragment of this viral antigen piggyback onto a newly synthesized self-antigen. This self-antigen–viral antigen complex is inserted into the host cell’s surface membrane, where it serves as a red flag indicating the cell is harboring the invader (● Figure 11-25, steps **1** and **2**). To attack the intracellular virus, cytotoxic T cells must destroy the infected host cell in the process. Cytotoxic T cells of the clone specific for this particular virus recognize and bind to the viral antigen and self-antigen on the surface of an infected cell (step **3**). Thus activated by the viral antigen, a cytotoxic T cell can kill the infected cell by either direct or indirect means, depending on the type of lethal chemicals the activated T cell releases. Let us elaborate.

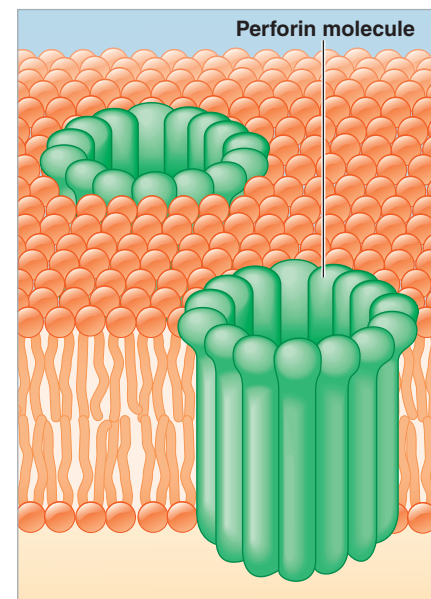
- An activated cytotoxic T cell may directly kill the victim cell by releasing chemicals that lyse the attacked cell before viral replication can begin (step **4**). Specifically, cytotoxic T cells, as well as NK cells, destroy a targeted cell by releasing **perforin** molecules, which penetrate the target cell’s surface membrane and join to form porelike channels (● Figure 11-26). This technique of killing a cell by punching holes in its membrane is similar to the method employed by the membrane attack complex of the complement cascade.



- 1 Killer cell binds to its target.
- 2 As a result of binding, killer cell's perforin-containing granules fuse with plasma membrane.
- 3 Granules discharge their perforin by exocytosis into a small pocket of intercellular space between killer cell and its target.
- 4 On exposure to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in this space, individual perforin molecules change from spherical to cylindrical shape.
- 5 Remodeled perforin molecules bind to target cell membrane and insert into it.
- 6 Individual perforin molecules group together like staves of a barrel to form pores.
- 7 Pores admit salt and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , causing target cell to swell and burst.



(a) Details of the killing process for cytotoxic T cells and NK cells



(b) Enlargement of perforin-formed pores in a target cell

● **FIGURE 11-26 Mechanism of killing by killer cells.** Note the similarity of the perforin-formed pores in a target cell to the membrane attack complex formed by complement molecules (see Figure 11-17, p. 319). (Source: Adapted from the illustration by Dana Burns-Pizer in "How Killer Cells Kill," by John Ding-E Young and Zanvil A. Cohn, in *Scientific America*, 1988.)

■ A cytotoxic T cell can also indirectly bring about death of an infected host cell by releasing **granzymes**, which are enzymes similar to digestive enzymes. Granzymes enter the target cell through the perforin channels. Once inside, these chemicals trigger the virus-infected cell to self-destruct through apoptosis (cell suicide; see p. 98).

The virus released on destruction of the host cell by either of these methods is directly destroyed in the ECF by phagocytic cells and the complement system. Meanwhile, the cytotoxic T cell, which has not been harmed in the process, can move on to kill other infected host cells.

The surrounding healthy cells replace the lost cells by means of cell division. Usually, to halt a viral infection, only some of the host cells must be destroyed. If the virus has had a chance to multiply, however, with replicated virus leaving the

original cell and spreading to other host cells, the cytotoxic T-cell defense mechanism may sacrifice so many of the host cells that serious malfunction may ensue.

Recall that other nonspecific defense mechanisms come into play to combat viral infections, most notably NK cells, interferon, macrophages, and the complement system. As usual, an intricate web of interplay exists among the immune defenses that are launched against viral invaders (▲ Table 11-3).

### Helper T cells secrete chemicals that amplify the activity of other immune cells.

In contrast to cytotoxic T cells, helper T cells are not killer cells. Instead, helper T cells secrete cytokines that "help," or augment, nearly all aspects of the immune response. The following are among the best known of helper T-cell cytokines:



## ▲ Table 11-3 Defenses against Viral Invasion

When the virus is free in the ECF,

### Macrophages

- Destroy the free virus by phagocytosis.
- Process and present the viral antigen to helper T cells.
- Secrete interleukin 1, which activates B- and T-cell clones specific to the viral antigen.

### Plasma Cells Derived from B Cells Specific to the Viral Antigen Secrete Antibodies That

- Act as opsonins to enhance phagocytosis of the virus
- Activate the lethal complement system as part of adaptive immunity

### Complement System

- Directly destroys the free virus by forming a hole-punching membrane attack complex.
- Enhances phagocytosis of the virus by acting as an opsonin.

When the virus has entered a host cell (which it must do to survive and multiply, with the replicated viruses leaving the original host cell to enter the ECF in search of other host cells),

### Interferon

- Is secreted by virus-infected cells.
- Binds with and prevents viral replication in other host cells.
- Enhances the killing power of macrophages, natural killer cells, and cytotoxic T cells.

### Natural Killer Cells

- Nonspecifically lyse virus-infected host cells.

### Cytotoxic T Cells

- Are specifically activated by the viral antigen and lyse the infected host cells before the virus has a chance to replicate.

### Helper T Cells

- Secrete cytokines, which enhance cytotoxic T-cell activity and B-cell antibody production.

When a virus-infected cell is destroyed, the free virus is released into the ECF, where it is attacked directly by macrophages, antibodies, and the activated complement components.

1. Helper T cells secrete *B-cell growth factor*, which contributes to B-cell function in concert with IL-1 secreted by macrophages. Antibody secretion is greatly reduced or absent without the assistance of helper T cells.
2. Helper T cells similarly secrete *T-cell growth factor*, which augments the activity of cytotoxic T cells and even of other helper T cells responsive to the invading antigen.
3. Some chemicals secreted by T cells act as *chemotaxins* to lure more neutrophils and macrophages-to-be to the invaded area.

4. Once macrophages are attracted to the area, *macrophage-migration inhibition factor*, another important cytokine released from helper T cells, keeps these large phagocytic cells in the region by inhibiting their outward migration. As a result, many chemotactically attracted macrophages accumulate in the infected area. This factor also confers greater phagocytic power on the gathered macrophages. These so-called **angry macrophages** have more powerful destructive ability.

5. One cytokine secreted by helper T cells activates eosinophils, and another promotes the development of IgE antibodies for defense against parasitic worms.

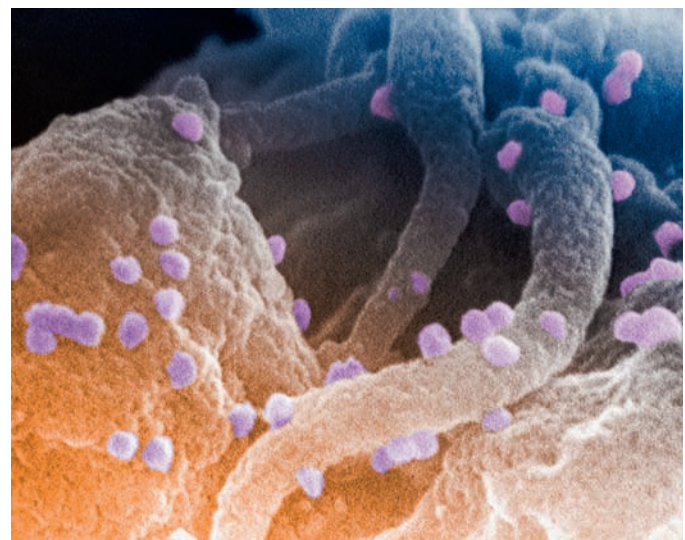


This variety of immune activities helped by helper T cells is why **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)**, caused by the **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)**, is so devastating to the immune defense system. The AIDS virus selectively invades helper T cells, destroying or incapacitating the cells that normally orchestrate much of the immune response (● Figure 11-27). The virus also invades macrophages, further crippling the immune system, and sometimes enters brain cells, leading to the dementia (severe impairment of intellectual capacity) noted in some AIDS victims.

We next examine how T cells are activated by antigen-presenting cells.

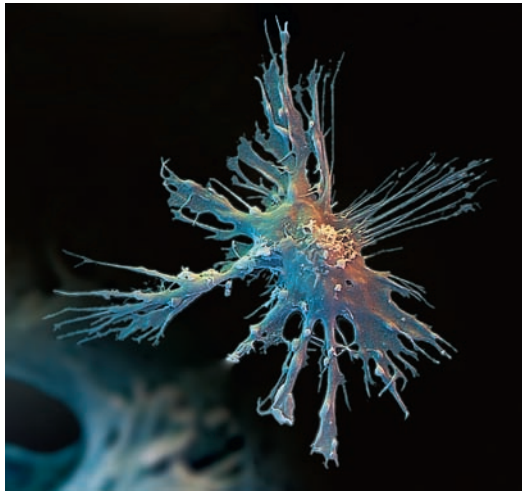
### T lymphocytes respond only to antigens presented to them by antigen-presenting cells.

T cells cannot perform their tasks without assistance from antigen-presenting cells. That is, relevant T cells cannot recognize “raw” foreign antigens entering the body; before reacting to it, a T-cell clone must be formally “introduced” to the antigen. **Antigen-presenting cells (APCs)** handle the formal introduction; they engulf, then process and present antigens, complexed with self-antigen molecules, on their surface to the T cells. Once displayed at the cell surface, the combined presence of



● **FIGURE 11-27 AIDS virus.** Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (in small purple spheres), the AIDS-causing virus, is shown on a portion of a helper T lymphocyte, HIV's primary target.

CDC/PHANIE/Photo Researchers, Inc.



David Scharf/Peter Arnold, Inc.

● **FIGURE 11-28** Dendritic cell.

these self- and non-self-antigens alerts the immune system to the presence of an undesirable agent within the cell.

APCs include macrophages and closely related dendritic cells, both of which not only are phagocytic effector cells of the innate defense system but also play a key role in activating cell-mediated adaptive immunity. You are already familiar with macrophages. **Dendritic cells** are specialized APCs that act as sentinels in almost every tissue. They are so named because they have many surface projections, or branches, that resemble the dendrites of neurons (*dendros* means “tree”) (● Figure 11-28). Dendritic cells are especially abundant in the skin and mucosal linings of the lungs and digestive tract—strategic locations where microbes are likely to enter the body.

To be activated, T cells must bind with foreign antigens presented on the surface of APCs and complexed with self-antigens. What is the nature of the self-antigens that the immune system learns to recognize as markers of a person’s own cells? That is the topic of the next section.

### The major histocompatibility complex is the code for self-antigens.

Self-antigens are plasma membrane-bound glycoproteins (proteins with sugar attached) known as **MHC molecules** because their synthesis is directed by a group of genes called the **major histocompatibility complex**, or **MHC**. The MHC genes are the most variable ones in humans. More than 100 different MHC molecules have been identified in human tissue, but each individual has a code for only 3 to 6 of these possible antigens. Because of the tremendous number of combinations possible, the exact pattern of MHC molecules varies from one individual to another, much like a “biochemical fingerprint” or “molecular identification card.”

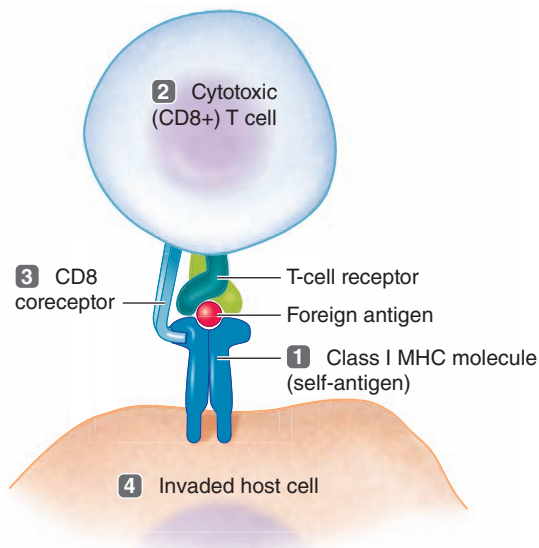
The major histocompatibility complex (*histo* means “tissue”; *compatibility* means “ability to get along”) was so named because these genes and the self-antigens they encode were first discerned in relation to tissue typing (similar to blood typing), which is done to obtain the most compatible matches for tissue grafting and transplantation. However, the transfer of tissue

from one individual to another does not normally occur in nature. The natural function of MHC antigens lies in their ability to direct the responses of T cells, not in their artificial role in rejecting transplanted tissue.

**CLASS I AND CLASS II MHC MOLECULES** T cells become active only when they match a given MHC–foreign antigen combination. In addition to having to fit a specific foreign antigen, the T-cell receptor must match the appropriate MHC molecule. Each person has two main classes of MHC-encoded molecules that are differentially recognized by cytotoxic and helper T cells—class I and class II MHC molecules, respectively (● Figure 11-29). The class I and II markers serve as signposts to guide cytotoxic and helper T cells to the precise cellular locations where their immune capabilities can be most effective. The **coreceptors** on the T cells bind with the MHC molecules on the target molecule, linking the two cells together.

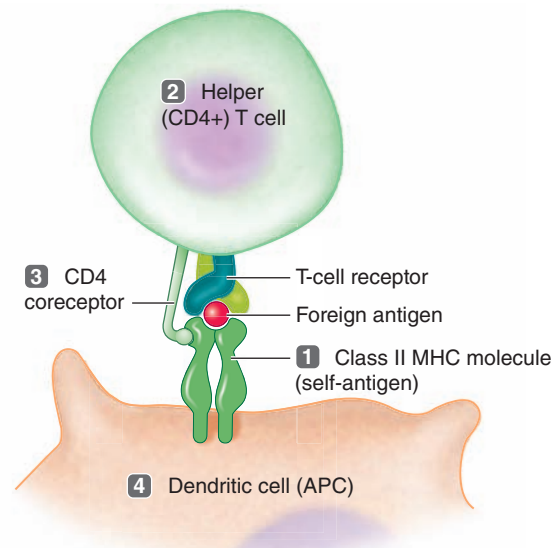
Cytotoxic T cells can respond to foreign antigens only in association with **class I MHC glycoproteins**, which are found on the surface of all nucleated body cells. This binding specificity occurs because the cytotoxic T cell’s **CD8 coreceptor** can interact only with class I MHC molecules. To carry out their role of dealing with pathogens that have invaded host cells, it is appropriate that cytotoxic T cells (also known as *CD8+ cells*, because of their coreceptor) bind only with body cells that viruses have infected—that is, with foreign antigens in association with self-antigens. Furthermore, these deadly T cells can link up with any cancerous body cell, because class I MHC molecules also display mutated (and thus “foreign” appearing) cellular proteins characteristic of these abnormal cells. Because any nucleated body cell can be invaded by viruses or become cancerous, essentially all cells display class I MHC glycoproteins, enabling cytotoxic T cells to attack any virus-invaded host cell or any cancer cell. In the case of cytotoxic T cells, the outcome of this binding is destruction of the infected body cell. Because cytotoxic T cells do not bind to MHC self-antigens in the absence of foreign antigens, normal body cells are protected from lethal immune attack.

In contrast, **class II MHC glycoproteins**, which are recognized by helper T cells, are restricted to the surface of a few special types of immune cells. The **CD4 coreceptor** associated with these helper T cells (also known as *CD4+ cells*) can interact only with class II MHC molecules. Thus, the specific binding requirements for cytotoxic and helper T cells ensure the appropriate T-cell responses. A helper T cell can bind with a foreign antigen only when it is found on the surfaces of immune cells with which the helper T cell directly interacts—*macrophages*, *dendritic cells*, and *B cells*. Class II MHC molecules are found on macrophages and dendritic cells, which present antigens to helper T cells, as well as on B cells, whose activities are enhanced by cytokines secreted by helper T cells. Binding of the antigen-bearing B cell with the matching helper T cell causes the T cell to secrete cytokines that activate this specific B cell, leading to clonal expansion and conversion of this B-cell clone into antibody-producing plasma cells and memory cells (● Figure 11-30 on pp. 332–333). The capabilities of helper T cells



- 1 Class I MHC molecules are found on surface of all cells.
- 2 They are recognized only by cytotoxic (CD8+) T cells.
- 3 CD8 coreceptor links the two cells together.
- 4 Linked in this way, cytotoxic T cells can destroy body cells if invaded by foreign (viral) antigen.

(a) Class I MHC self-antigens



- 1 Class II MHC molecules are found on the surface of immune cells with which helper T cells interact: dendritic cells, macrophages, and B cells.
- 2 They are recognized only by helper (CD4+) T cells.
- 3 CD4 coreceptor links the two cells together.
- 4 To be activated, helper T cells must bind with a class II MHC-bearing APC (dendritic cell or macrophage). To activate B cells, helper T cell must bind with a class II MHC-bearing B cell with displayed foreign antigen.

(b) Class II MHC self-antigens

● **FIGURE 11-29 Distinctions between class I and class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) glycoproteins.** Specific binding requirements for the two types of T cells ensure that these cells bind only with the target cells with which they can interact. Cytotoxic T cells can recognize and bind with a foreign antigen only when the antigen is in association with class I MHC glycoproteins, which are found on the surface of all body cells. This requirement is met when a virus invades a body cell, whereupon the cell is destroyed by the cytotoxic T cells. Helper T cells, which interact exclusively with dendritic cells, macrophages, and B cells, can recognize and bind with a foreign antigen only when it is in association with class II MHC glycoproteins, which are found only on the surface of these other immune cells.

would be squandered if these cells were able to bind with body cells other than these special APC and B immune cells. This is the primary pathway by which the adaptive immune system fights bacteria. ▲ Table 11-4 summarizes the innate and adaptive immune strategies that defend against bacterial invasion.



**TRANSPLANT REJECTION** T cells bind with MHC antigens present on the surface of transplanted cells in the absence of a foreign viral antigen. The ensuing destruction of the transplanted cells triggers the rejection of transplanted or grafted tissues. Presumably, some of the recipient's T cells “mistake” the MHC antigens of the donor cells for a closely resembling combination of a conventional viral foreign antigen complexed with the recipient's MHC self-antigens.

To minimize the rejection phenomenon, technicians match the tissues of donor and recipient according to MHC antigens as closely as possible. Therapeutic procedures to suppress the immune system then follow.

What factors normally prevent the adaptive immune system from unleashing its powerful defense capabilities against the body's own self-antigens? We examine this issue next.

### The immune system is normally tolerant of self-antigens.

The term **tolerance** in this context refers to preventing the immune system from attacking the person's own tissues. During embryonic development, some B and T cells are by chance formed that could react against the body's own tissue antigens.

If these lymphocyte clones were allowed to function, they would destroy the individual's own body. Fortunately, the immune system normally does not produce antibodies or activated T cells against the body's own self-antigens.

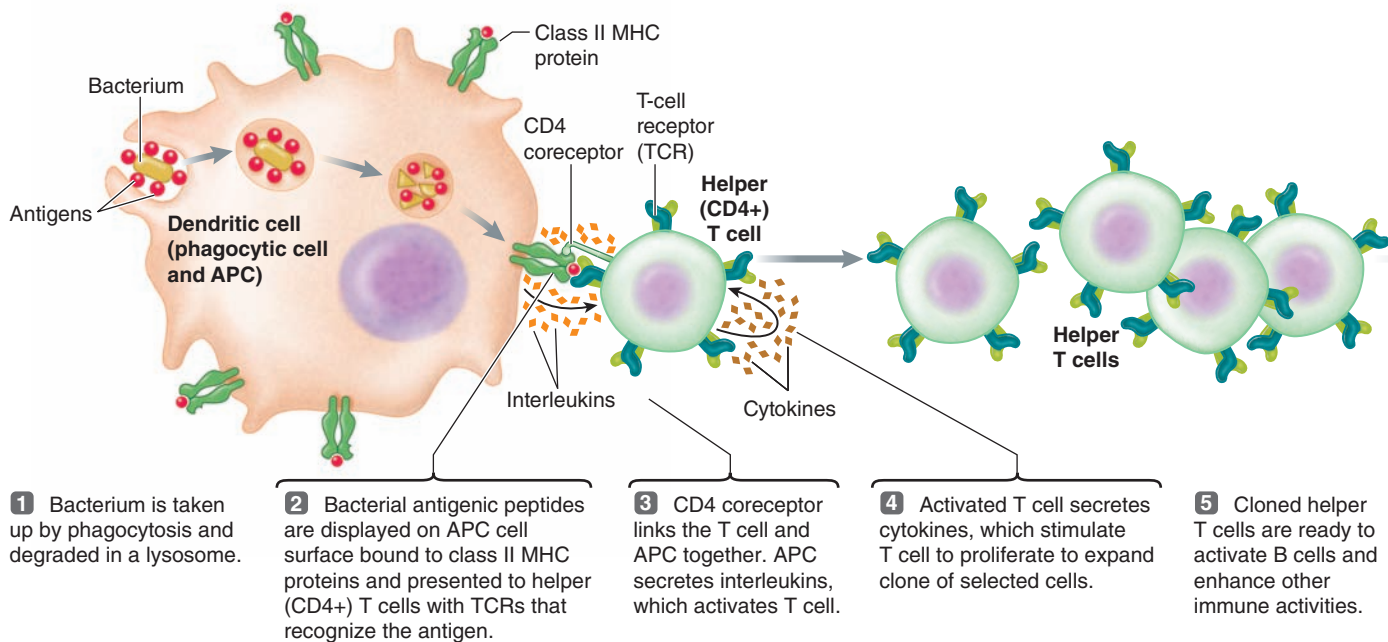
Multiple mechanisms are involved in tolerance. The following are examples:

1. **Clonal deletion.** In response to continuous exposure to body antigens early in development, B and T lymphocyte clones specifically capable of attacking these self-antigens in most cases are permanently destroyed within the thymus. This **clonal deletion** is accomplished by triggering apoptosis of immature cells that would react with the body's own proteins. This physical elimination is the major mechanism by which tolerance is developed.
2. **Clonal anergy.** The premise of clonal anergy is that a T lymphocyte must receive two specific simultaneous signals to be activated (“turned on”), one from its compatible antigen and a stimulatory cosignal found only on the surface of an APC. These dual signals—antigen plus cosignal—never are present for self-antigens because these antigens are not handled by cosignal-bearing APCs. The first exposure to a single signal from a self-antigen “turns off” the compatible T cell, rendering the cell unresponsive to further exposure to the antigen. This reaction is referred to as **clonal anergy** (*anergy* means “lack of energy”) because T cells are inactivated (that is, “become lazy”) rather than activated by their antigens. Anergized T lymphocyte clones survive, but they can't function.

▲ **Table 11-4 Innate and Adaptive Immune Responses to Bacterial Invasion**

Innate Immune Mechanisms	Adaptive Immune Mechanisms
<p><b>Inflammation</b></p> <p>Resident tissue macrophages engulf invading bacteria.</p> <p>Histamine-induced vascular responses increase blood flow to the area, bringing in additional immune-effector cells and plasma proteins.</p> <p>Neutrophils and monocytes–macrophages migrate from the blood to the area to engulf and destroy foreign invaders and to remove cell debris.</p> <p>Phagocytic cells secrete cytokines, which enhance both innate and adaptive immune responses and induce local and systemic symptoms associated with an infection.</p> <p><b>Nonspecific Activation of the Complement System</b></p> <p>Complement components form a hole-punching membrane attack complex that lyses bacterial cells.</p> <p>Complement components enhance many steps of inflammation, such as serving as chemotaxins and acting as opsonins</p>	<p>B cells specific to an antigen present the antigen to helper T cells. On binding with the B cells, helper T cells activate the B cells.</p> <p>The activated B-cell clone proliferates and differentiates into plasma cells and memory cells.</p> <p>Plasma cells secrete customized antibodies, which specifically bind to invading bacteria. Plasma-cell activity is enhanced by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interleukin 1 secreted by macrophages.</li> <li>• Helper T cells, which have been activated by the same bacterial antigen processed and presented to them by macrophages or dendritic cells.</li> </ul> <p>Antibodies bind to invading bacteria and enhance innate mechanisms that lead to the bacteria's destruction. Specifically, antibodies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Act as opsonins to enhance phagocytic activity.</li> <li>• Activate the lethal complement system.</li> <li>• Stimulate killer cells, which directly lyse bacteria.</li> </ul> <p>Memory cells persist that are capable of responding more rapidly and more forcefully should the same bacteria be encountered again.</p>

## Activation of helper T cells by antigen presentation



● **FIGURE 11-30** Interactions among large phagocytic cells (APCs), helper T cells, and B cells.

3. *Receptor editing.* With **receptor editing**, once a B cell that bears a receptor for one of the body's own antigens encounters the self-antigen, the B cell escapes death by swiftly changing its antigen receptor to a nonself version. In this way, an originally self-reactive B cell survives but is "rehabilitated" so that it will never target the body's own tissues again.
4. *Active suppression by regulatory T cells.* Regulatory T cells play a role in tolerance by inhibiting throughout life some lymphocyte clones specific for the body's own tissues.



Occasionally, the immune system fails to distinguish between self-antigens and foreign antigens and unleashes its deadly powers against one or more of the body's own tissues. A condition in which the immune system fails to recognize and tolerate self-antigens associated with particular tissues is known as an **autoimmune disease** (*auto* means "self"). Autoimmune diseases arise from a combination of genetic predisposition and environmental insults that lead to failure of the immune system's tolerance mechanisms. Autoimmunity underlies more than 80 diseases, many of which are well known. Examples include *multiple sclerosis*, *rheumatoid arthritis*, *Type 1 diabetes mellitus*, and *psoriasis*. About 50 million Americans suffer from some type of autoimmune disease.

Let us now look in more detail at the role of T cells in defending against cancer.

### Immune surveillance against cancer cells involves an interplay among immune cells and interferon.

Besides destroying virus-infected host cells, an important function of the T-cell system is recognizing and destroying newly arisen, potentially cancerous tumor cells before they have a

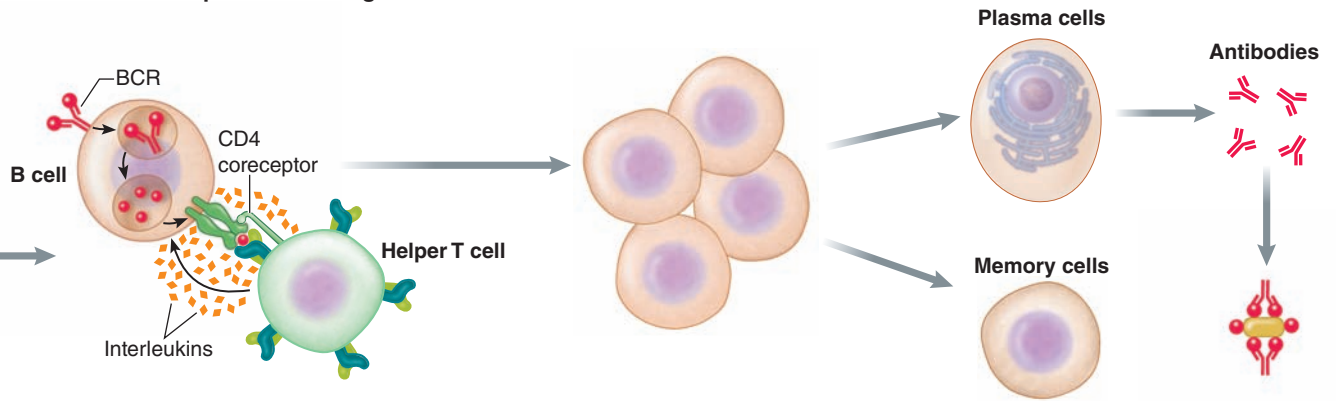
chance to multiply and spread, a process known as **immune surveillance**. At least once a day, on average, your immune system destroys a mutated cell that could potentially become cancerous. Any normal cell may be transformed into a cancer cell if mutations occur within its genes that govern cell division and growth. Such mutations may occur by chance alone or, more frequently, by exposure to **carcinogenic** (cancer-causing) factors such as ionizing radiation, certain environmental chemicals, or physical irritants. Alternatively, a few cancers are caused by tumor viruses, which turn the cells they invade into cancer cells, an example being the *human papillomavirus* that causes cervical cancer. The immune system recognizes cancer cells because they bear new and different surface antigens alongside the cell's normal self-antigens because of either genetic mutation or invasion by a tumor virus.



**BENIGN AND MALIGNANT TUMORS** Cell multiplication and growth are normally under strict control, but the regulatory mechanisms are largely unknown. Cell multiplication in an adult is generally restricted to replacing lost cells. Furthermore, cells normally respect their own place and space in the body's society of cells. If a cell that has transformed into a tumor cell manages to escape immune destruction, however, it defies the normal controls on its proliferation and position. Unrestricted multiplication of a single tumor cell results in a **tumor** that consists of a clone of cells identical to the original mutated cell.

If the mass is slow growing, stays put in its original location, and does not infiltrate the surrounding tissue, it is considered a **benign tumor**. In contrast, the transformed cell may multiply rapidly and form an invasive mass that lacks the "altruistic" behavior characteristic of normal cells. Such invasive tu-

## Activation of B cells responsive to antigen



**6** BCR binds to antigen. Antigen is internalized by receptor-mediated endocytosis and its macromolecules degraded. Antigenic peptides produced are displayed on cell surface bound to class II MHC proteins.

**7** TCR of a helper T cell recognizes specific antigen on B cell, and CD4 coreceptor links the two cells together.

**8** Helper T cell secretes interleukins, which stimulate B cell proliferation to produce clone of selected cells.

**9** Some cloned B cells differentiate into plasma cells, which secrete antibodies specific for the antigen, while a few differentiate into memory B cells.

**10** Antibodies bind with antigen, targeting antigenic invader for destruction by the innate immune system.

mors are **malignant tumors**, or **cancer**. Malignant tumor cells usually do not adhere well to the neighboring normal cells, so often some of the cancer cells break away from the parent tumor. These “emigrant” cancer cells are transported through the blood to new territories, where they continue to proliferate, forming multiple malignant tumors. The term **metastasis** is applied to this spreading of cancer to other parts of the body.

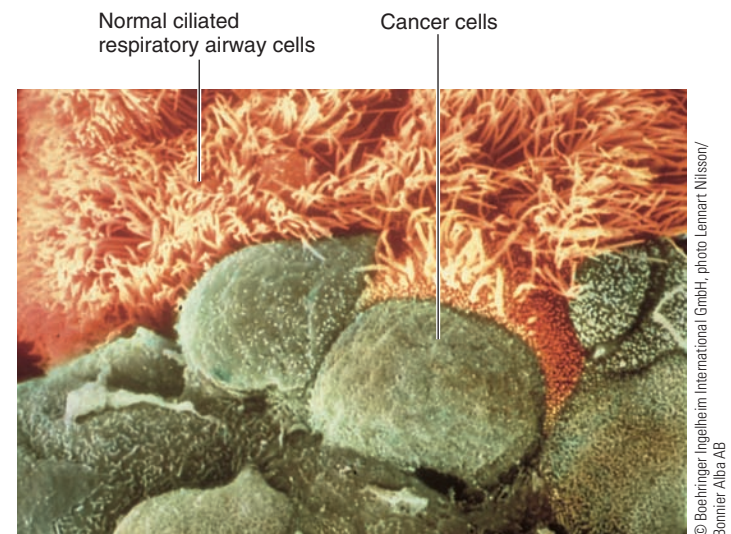
If a malignant tumor is detected early, before it has metastasized, it can be removed surgically. Once cancer cells have dispersed and seeded multiple cancerous sites, surgical elimination of the malignancy is impossible. In this case, agents that interfere with rapidly dividing and growing cells, such as certain chemotherapeutic drugs, are used in an attempt to destroy the malignant cells. Unfortunately, these agents also harm normal body cells, especially rapidly proliferating cells such as blood cells and the cells lining the digestive tract.

Untreated cancer is eventually fatal in most cases, for several interrelated reasons. The uncontrollably growing malignant mass crowds out normal cells by vigorously competing with them for space and nutrients, yet the cancer cells cannot take over the functions of the cells they are destroying. Cancer cells typically remain immature and do not become specialized, often resembling embryonic cells instead (● Figure 11-31). Such poorly differentiated malignant cells lack the ability to perform the specialized functions of the normal cell type from which they mutated. Affected organs gradually become disrupted to the point that they can no longer perform their life-sustaining functions, and the person dies.

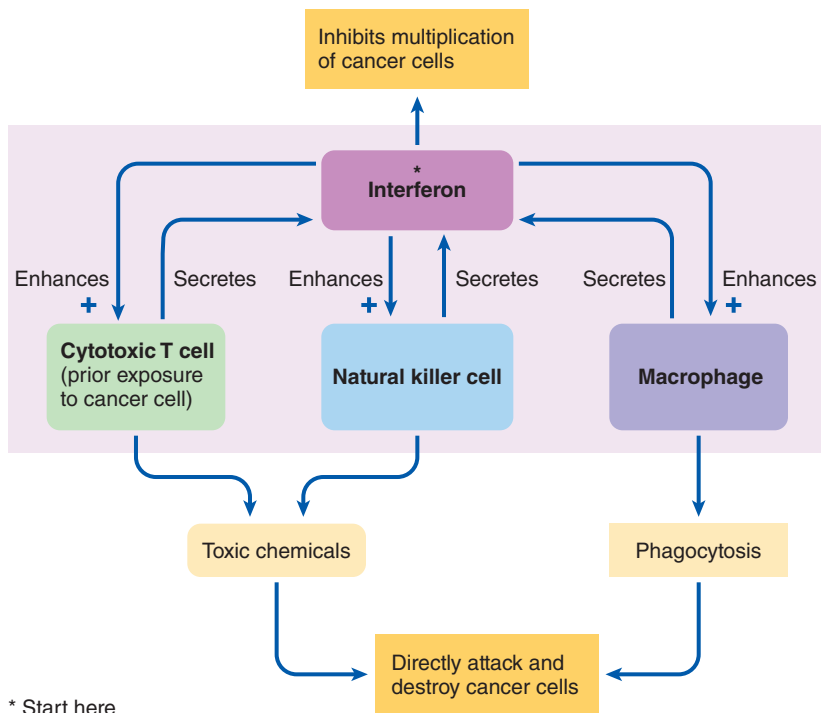
**EFFECTORS OF IMMUNE SURVEILLANCE** Immune surveillance against cancer depends on an interplay among three types of immune cells—*cytotoxic T cells*, *NK cells*, and *macrophages*—as

well as *interferon*. These three immune cell types not only can attack and destroy cancer cells directly but also secrete interferon. Interferon, in turn, inhibits multiplication of cancer cells and increases the killing ability of the immune cells (● Figure 11-32).

Still, cancer does sometimes occur because cancer cells occasionally escape these immune mechanisms. Some cancer cells



● **FIGURE 11-31** Comparison of normal and cancerous cells in the large respiratory airways. The normal cells display specialized cilia, which constantly contract in a whiplike motion to sweep debris and microorganisms from the respiratory airways so that they do not gain entrance to the deeper portions of the lungs. The cancerous cells are not ciliated, so they are unable to perform this specialized defense task.



\* Start here

● **FIGURE 11-32 Immune surveillance against cancer.** Anticancer interactions of cytotoxic T cells, natural killer cells, macrophages, and interferon.

are believed to survive by evading immune detection—for example, by failing to display identifying antigens on their surface or by being surrounded by counterproductive **blocking antibodies** that interfere with T-cell function. Although B cells and antibodies are not believed to play a direct role in cancer defense, B cells, on viewing a mutant cancer cell as an alien to “normal self,” may produce antibodies against it. These antibodies, for unknown reasons, do not activate the complement system, which could destroy the cancer cells. Instead, the antibodies bind with the antigenic sites on the cancer cell, “hiding” these sites from recognition by cytotoxic T cells. The coating of a tumor cell, by blocking antibodies, thus protects the harmful cell from attack by deadly T cells. Still other successful cancer cells thwart immune attack by turning on their pursuers. They induce the cytotoxic T cells that bind with them to commit suicide. In addition, some cancer cells secrete large amounts of a specific chemical messenger that recruits regulatory T cells and programs them to suppress cytotoxic T cells.

We have completed our discussion of the B and T cells. ▲ Table 11-5 compares the properties of these two adaptive effector cells.

## Immune Diseases

Abnormal functioning of the immune system can lead to immune diseases in two general ways: *immunodeficiency diseases* (too little immune response) and *inappropriate immune attacks* (too much or mistargeted immune response).



### Immunodeficiency diseases result from insufficient immune responses.

**Immunodeficiency diseases** occur when the immune system fails to respond adequately to foreign invasion. The condition may be congenital (present at birth) or acquired (nonhereditary), and it may specifically involve impairment of antibody-mediated immunity, cell-mediated immunity, or both. The most recent and tragically the most common immunodeficiency disease is AIDS, which, as described earlier, is caused by HIV, a virus that invades and incapacitates the critical helper T cells.

Let us now look at inappropriate immune attacks.

### Allergies are inappropriate immune attacks against harmless environmental substances.



**Inappropriate immune attacks** cause reactions harmful to the body. These include (1) *autoimmune diseases*, in which the immune system turns against

one of the body’s own tissues (see p. 332); (2) *immune complex diseases*, which involve overexuberant antibody responses that “spill over” and damage normal tissue (see p. 322); and (3) allergies. The first two conditions have been described earlier in this chapter, so we now concentrate on allergies.

An **allergy** is the acquisition of an inappropriate specific immune reactivity, or **hypersensitivity**, to a normally harmless environmental substance, such as dust or pollen. The offending agent is known as an **allergen**. Subsequent reexposure of a sensitized individual to the same allergen elicits an immune attack, which may vary from a mild, annoying reaction to a severe, body-damaging reaction that may even be fatal.

Allergic responses are classified into two categories: immediate hypersensitivity and delayed hypersensitivity. In **immediate hypersensitivity**, the allergic response appears within about 20 minutes after a sensitized person is exposed to an allergen. In **delayed hypersensitivity**, the reaction does not generally show up until a day or so following exposure. The difference in timing is the result of the different mediators involved. A particular allergen may activate either a B- or a T-cell response. Immediate allergic reactions involve B cells and are elicited by antibody interactions with an allergen; delayed reactions involve T cells and the more slowly responding process of cell-mediated immunity against the allergen. Let us examine the causes and consequences of each of these reactions in more detail.

**TRIGGERS FOR IMMEDIATE HYPERSENSITIVITY** In immediate hypersensitivity, the antibodies involved and the events that ensue on exposure to an allergen differ from the typical antibody-mediated response to bacteria. The most common allergens that provoke immediate hypersensitivities are pollen grains, bee stings, penicillin, certain foods, molds, dust, feathers, and ani-

▲ **Table 11-5 B versus T Lymphocytes**

Characteristic	B Lymphocytes	T Lymphocytes
<b>Ancestral Origin</b>	Bone marrow	Bone marrow
<b>Site of Maturational Processing</b>	Bone marrow	Thymus
<b>Receptors for an Antigen</b>	Known as B-cell receptors or BCRs, are antibodies inserted in the plasma membrane; highly specific	Known as T-cell receptors or TCRs, are present in the plasma membrane but are not the same as antibodies; highly specific
<b>Bind with</b>	Extracellular antigens such as bacteria	Foreign antigens in association with self-antigens, such as virus-infected cells
<b>Types of Active Cells</b>	Plasma cells	Cytotoxic, helper, and regulatory T cells
<b>Formation of Memory Cells</b>	Yes	Yes
<b>Type of Immunity</b>	Antibody-mediated immunity	Cell-mediated immunity
<b>Secretory Product</b>	Antibodies	Cytokines
<b>Functions</b>	Help eliminate free foreign invaders by enhancing innate immune responses against them; provide immunity against most bacteria and a few viruses	Lyse virus-infected cells and cancer cells; provide immunity against most viruses and a few bacteria; aid B cells in antibody production; modulate immune responses
<b>Life Span</b>	Short	Long

mal fur. (Actually, people allergic to cats are not allergic to the fur itself. The true allergen is in the cat's saliva, which is deposited on the fur during licking.) For unclear reasons, these allergens bind to and elicit the synthesis of IgE antibodies rather than the IgG antibodies associated with bacterial antigens. IgE antibodies are the least plentiful immunoglobulin, but their presence spells trouble. Without IgE antibodies, there would be no immediate hypersensitivity. When a person with an allergic tendency is first exposed to a particular allergen, compatible helper T cells secrete a cytokine that prods compatible B cells to synthesize IgE antibodies specific for the allergen. During this initial **sensitization period**, no symptoms are evoked, but memory cells form that are primed for a more powerful response on subsequent reexposure to the same allergen.

In contrast to the antibody-mediated response elicited by bacterial antigens, IgE antibodies do not freely circulate. Instead, their tail portions attach to mast cells and basophils, both of which produce and store an arsenal of potent inflammatory chemicals, such as histamine, in preformed granules. Mast cells are most plentiful in regions that come into contact with the external environment, such as the skin, the outer surface of the eyes, and the linings of the respiratory system and digestive tract. Binding of an appropriate allergen with the outreached arm regions of the IgE antibodies that are lodged tail-first in a mast cell or basophil triggers the rupture of the cell's granules. As a result, histamine and other chemical mediators spew forth into the surrounding tissue.

A single mast cell (or basophil) may be coated with several different IgE antibodies, each able to bind with a different allergen. Thus, the mast cell can be triggered to release its chemical products by any one of several allergens (● Figure 11-33).

**CHEMICAL MEDIATORS OF IMMEDIATE HYPERSENSITIVITY** The chemicals released by the mast cell cause the reactions that characterize immediate hypersensitivity. The following are among the most important chemicals released during immediate allergic reactions:

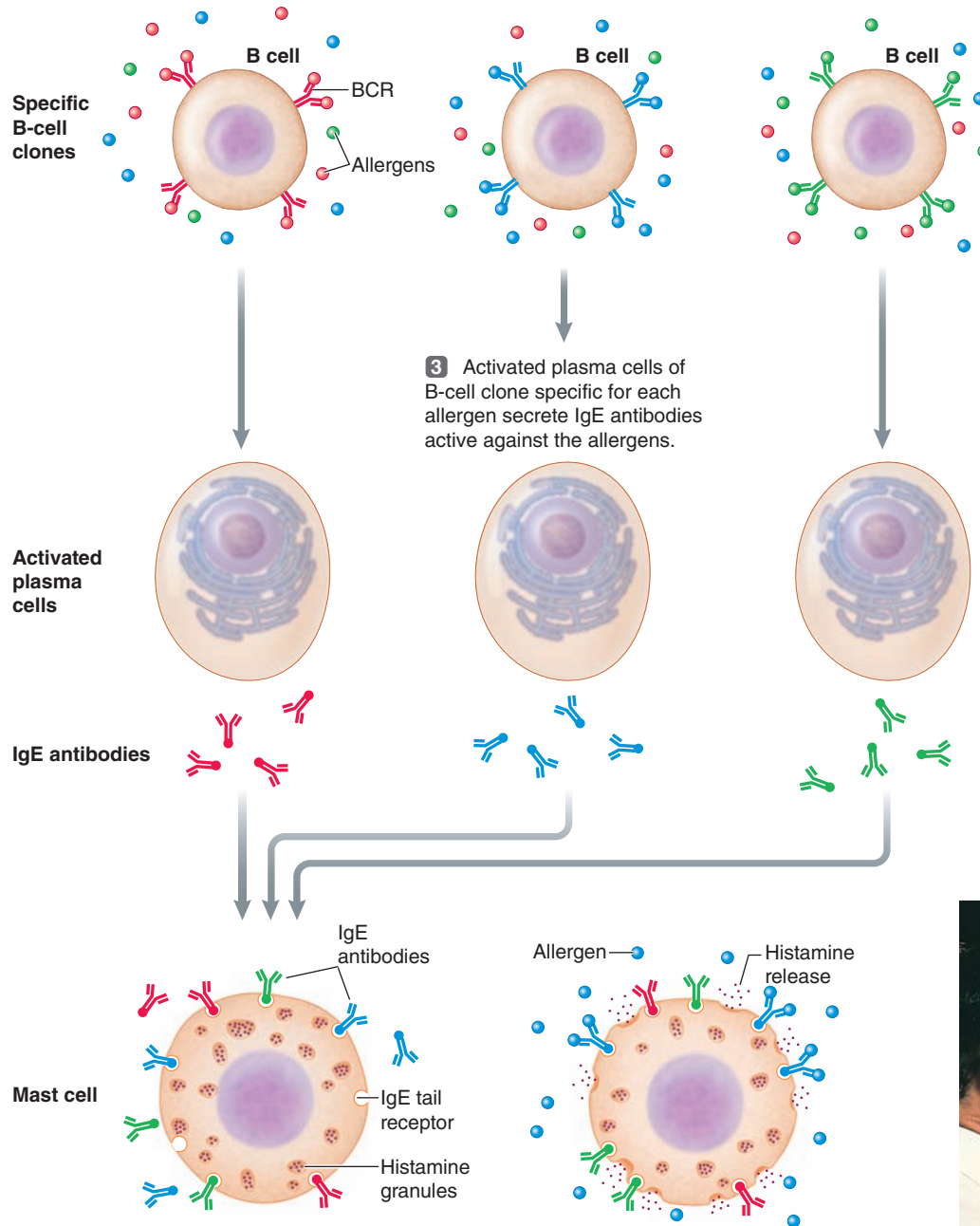
1. **Histamine**, which brings about vasodilation and increased capillary permeability, as well as increased mucus production.
2. **Slow-reactive substance of anaphylaxis (SRS-A)**, which induces prolonged and profound contraction of smooth muscle, especially of the small respiratory airways. SRS-A is a collection of three related leukotrienes, locally acting mediators similar to prostaglandins (see p. 558).
3. **Eosinophil chemotactic factor**, which specifically attracts eosinophils to the area. Interestingly, eosinophils release enzymes that inactivate SRS-A and may inhibit histamine, perhaps serving as an “off switch” to limit the allergic response.

**SYMPTOMS OF IMMEDIATE HYPERSENSITIVITY** Symptoms of immediate hypersensitivity vary depending on the site, allergen, and mediators involved. Most frequently, the reaction is localized to the body site in which the IgE-bearing cells first come into contact with the allergen. If the reaction is limited to the upper respiratory passages after a person inhales an allergen such as ragweed pollen, the released chemicals bring about the symptoms characteristic of **hay fever**—for example, nasal congestion caused by histamine-induced localized edema and sneezing and runny nose caused by increased mucus secretion. If the reaction is concentrated primarily within the bronchioles (the small respiratory airways that lead to the tiny air sacs within the lungs), **asthma** results. Contraction of the smooth



1 Allergens (antigens) enter the body for the first time.

2 Allergens bind to matching BCRs; B cells now process the allergens and, with stimulation by helper T cells (not shown), proceed through the steps leading to clonal expansion of activated plasma cells.



4 Fc tail portion of all IgE antibodies, regardless of the specificity of their Fab arm regions, binds to IgE tail receptors on mast cells and basophils. Unlike B cells, each mast cell can have a variety of antibody surface receptors for binding different allergens.

5 When an allergen enters the body on subsequent exposure, it binds with its matching IgE antibodies on mast cells; binding stimulates mast cell to release histamine and other substances by exocytosis. Any allergen for which preformed, matching IgE are attached to the mast cell can trigger histamine release.



6 Histamine and other released chemicals elicit the allergic response.

● **FIGURE 11-33 Role of IgE antibodies and mast cells in immediate hypersensitivity.** B-cell clones are converted into plasma cells, which secrete IgE antibodies on contact with the allergen for which they are specific. All IgE antibodies, regardless of their antigen specificity, bind to mast cells or basophils. When an allergen combines with the IgE receptor specific for it on the surface of a mast cell, the mast cell releases histamine and other chemicals by exocytosis. These chemicals elicit the allergic response.

muscle in the walls of the bronchioles in response to SRS-A narrows or constricts these passageways, making breathing difficult. Localized swelling in the skin because of allergy-induced histamine release causes **hives**. An allergic reaction in the digestive tract in response to an ingested allergen can lead to diarrhea.

**TREATMENT OF IMMEDIATE HYPERSENSITIVITY** Treatment of localized immediate allergic reactions with antihistamines often offers only partial relief of the symptoms because some manifestations are invoked by other chemical mediators not blocked by these drugs. For example, antihistamines are not particularly effective in treating asthma, the most serious symptoms of which are invoked by SRS-A. Adrenergic drugs (which mimic the sympathetic nervous system; see p. 185) are helpful through their vasoconstrictor–bronchodilator actions in counteracting the effects of both histamine and SRS-A. Anti-inflammatory drugs such as cortisol derivatives are often used as the primary treatment for ongoing allergen-induced inflammation, such as that associated with asthma. Newer drugs such as Singulair that inhibit leukotrienes, including SRS-A, have been added to the arsenal for combating immediate allergies.

**ANAPHYLACTIC SHOCK** A life-threatening systemic reaction can occur if the allergen becomes blood borne or if very large amounts of chemicals are released from the localized site into the circulation. When large amounts of these chemical mediators gain access to the blood, the extremely serious systemic (involving the entire body) reaction known as **anaphylactic shock** occurs. Severe hypotension that can lead to circulatory shock (see p. 292) results from widespread vasodilation and a massive shift of plasma fluid into the interstitial spaces as a result of a generalized increase in capillary permeability. Concurrently, pronounced bronchiolar constriction occurs and can lead to respiratory failure. The person may suffocate from an inability to move air through the narrowed airways. Unless countermeasures, such as injecting a vasoconstrictor–bronchodilator drug, are undertaken immediately, anaphylactic shock is often fatal. This

reaction is the reason even a single bee sting or eating a peanut can be so dangerous in people sensitized to these allergens.

**DELAYED HYPERSENSITIVITY** Some allergens invoke delayed hypersensitivity, a T-cell-mediated immune response, rather than an immediate, B cell–IgE antibody response. Among these allergens are poison ivy toxin and certain chemicals to which the skin is frequently exposed, such as cosmetics and household cleaning agents. Most commonly, the response is characterized by a delayed skin eruption that reaches its peak intensity 1 to 3 days after contact with an allergen to which the T-cell system has previously been sensitized. To illustrate, poison ivy toxin does not harm the skin on contact, but it activates T cells specific for the toxin, including formation of a memory component. On subsequent exposure to the toxin, activated T cells diffuse into the skin within a day or two, combining with the poison ivy toxin that is present. The resulting interaction gives rise to the tissue damage and discomfort typical of the condition. The best relief is obtained from application of anti-inflammatory preparations, such as those containing cortisol derivatives.

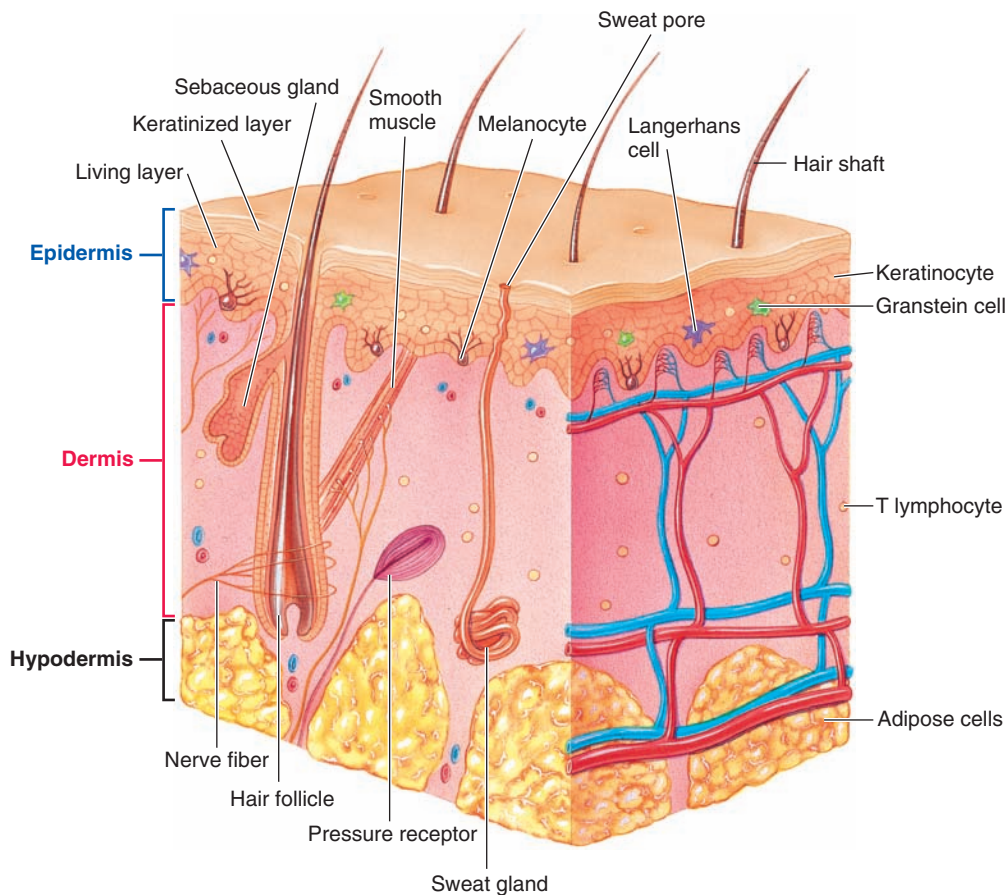
▲ Table 11-6 summarizes the distinctions between immediate and delayed hypersensitivities. This completes our discussion of the internal immune defense system. We now turn to external defenses that thwart entry of foreign invaders as a first line of defense.

## External Defenses

The body’s defenses against foreign microbes are not limited to the intricate, interrelated immune mechanisms that destroy microorganisms that have actually invaded the body. In addition to the internal immune defense system, the body is equipped with external defense mechanisms designed to prevent microbial penetration wherever body tissues are exposed to the external environment. The most obvious external defense is the **skin**, or **integument**, which covers the outside of the body (*integere* means “to cover”).

▲ **Table 11-6** Immediate versus Delayed Hypersensitivity Reactions

Characteristic	Immediate Hypersensitivity Reaction	Delayed Hypersensitivity Reaction
<b>Time of Onset of Symptoms After Exposure to the Allergen</b>	Within 20 minutes	Within 1 to 3 days
<b>Type of Immune Response</b>	Antibody-mediated immunity against the allergen	Cell-mediated immunity against the allergen
<b>Immune Effectors Involved</b>	B cells, IgE antibodies, mast cells, basophils, histamine, slow-reactive substance of anaphylaxis, and eosinophil chemotactic factor	T cells
<b>Allergies Commonly Involved</b>	Hay fever, asthma, hives, and, in extreme cases, anaphylactic shock	Contact allergies, such as allergies to poison ivy, cosmetics, and household cleaning agents



● **FIGURE 11-34 Anatomy of the skin.** The skin consists of two layers, a keratinized outer epidermis and a richly vascularized inner connective tissue dermis. Special infoldings of the epidermis form the sweat glands, sebaceous glands, and hair follicles. The epidermis contains four types of cells: keratinocytes, melanocytes, Langerhans cells, and Granstein cells. The skin is anchored to underlying muscle or bone by the hypodermis, a loose, fat-containing layer of connective tissue.

### The skin consists of an outer protective epidermis and an inner, connective tissue dermis.

The skin, which is the largest organ of the body, not only is a mechanical barrier between the external environment and the underlying tissues but is dynamically involved in defense mechanisms and other important functions as well. The skin in an average adult weighs 9 pounds and covers a surface area of 21 square feet. Its deeper layer contains an abundance of blood vessels, which if laid end to end would extend more than 11 miles. The skin consists of two layers, an outer *epidermis* and an inner *dermis* (● Figure 11-34).

**EPIDERMIS** The **epidermis** consists of numerous layers of epithelial cells. On average, the epidermis replaces itself about every 2.5 months. The inner epidermal layers are composed of cube-shaped cells that are living and rapidly dividing, whereas the cells in the outer layers are dead and flattened. The epidermis has no direct blood supply. Its cells are nourished only by diffusion of nutrients from a rich vascular network in the underlying dermis. The newly forming cells in the inner layers constantly push the older cells closer to the surface and ever farther from their nutrient supply. This, coupled with the continuous subjection of the

outer layers to pressure and “wear and tear,” causes these older cells to die and become flattened. Epidermal cells are riveted tightly together by desmosomes (see p. 48), which interconnect with intracellular keratin filaments (see p. 39) to form a strong, cohesive covering. During maturation of a keratin-producing cell, keratin filaments progressively accumulate and cross-link with one another within the cytosol. As the outer cells die, this fibrous keratin core remains, forming flattened, hardened scales that provide a tough, protective **keratinized layer**. As the scales of the outermost keratinized layer slough or flake off through abrasion, they are continuously replaced by means of cell division in the deeper epidermal layers. The keratinized layer is airtight, fairly waterproof, and impervious to most substances. It resists anything passing in either direction between the body and the external environment. For example, it minimizes loss of water and other vital constituents from the body and prevents most foreign material from penetrating into the body.



This protective layer’s value in holding in body fluids becomes obvious after severe burns. Bacterial infections can occur in the unprotected underlying tissue, but even more serious are the systemic consequences of loss of body water and plasma proteins, which escape from the exposed, burned surface. The resulting circulatory disturbances can be life threatening.

**DERMIS** Under the epidermis is the **dermis**, a connective tissue layer that contains many elastin fibers (for stretch) and collagen fibers (for strength), as well as an abundance of blood vessels and specialized nerve endings. The dermal blood vessels not only supply both the dermis and the epidermis but also play a major role in temperature regulation. The caliber of these vessels, and hence the volume of blood flowing through them, is subject to control to vary the amount of heat exchange between these skin surface vessels and the external environment (see Chapter 16). Receptors at the peripheral endings of afferent nerve fibers in the dermis detect pressure, temperature, pain, and other somatosensory input. Efferent nerve endings in the dermis control blood vessel caliber, hair erection, and secretion by the skin’s exocrine glands.

**SKIN'S EXOCRINE GLANDS AND HAIR FOLLICLES** Special foldings of the epidermis into the underlying dermis form the skin's exocrine glands—the sweat glands and the sebaceous glands—as well as the hair follicles. **Sweat glands**, which are distributed over most of the body, release a dilute salt solution through small openings, the sweat pores, onto the skin surface (● Figure 11-34). Evaporation of this sweat cools the skin and is important in regulating temperature.

The cells of the **sebaceous glands** produce an oily secretion released into adjacent hair follicles. From there sebum flows to the skin surface, oiling both the hairs and the outer keratinized layers of the skin, helping to waterproof them and prevent them from drying and cracking. Chapped hands or lips indicate insufficient protection by sebum. The sebaceous glands are particularly active during adolescence, causing the oily skin common among teenagers.

Each **hair follicle** is lined by special keratin-producing cells, which secrete keratin and other proteins that form the hair shaft. Hairs increase the sensitivity of the skin's surface to tactile (touch) stimuli. In some other species, this function is more finely tuned. For example, the whiskers on a cat are exquisitely sensitive in this regard. An even more important role of hair in hairier species is heat conservation, but this function is not significant in us relatively hairless humans.

**HYPODERMIS** The skin is anchored to the underlying tissue (muscle or bone) by the **hypodermis** (*hypo* means “below”), also known as **subcutaneous tissue** (*sub* means “under”; *cutaneous* means “skin”), a loose layer of connective tissue. Most fat cells are housed within the hypodermis. These fat deposits throughout the body are collectively referred to as **adipose tissue**.

### Specialized cells in the epidermis produce keratin and melanin and participate in immune defense.

The epidermis contains four distinct resident cell types—*melanocytes*, *keratinocytes*, *Langerhans cells*, and *Granstein cells*—plus transient T lymphocytes that are scattered throughout the epidermis and dermis. Each of these resident cell types performs specialized functions.

**MELANOCYTES** **Melanocytes** produce the pigment **melanin**, which they disperse to surrounding skin cells. The amount and type of melanin, which can vary among black, brown, yellow, and red pigments, are responsible for the shades of skin color of the various races. Fair-skinned people have about the same number of melanocytes as dark-skinned people; the difference in skin color depends on the amount of melanin produced by each melanocyte. In addition to hereditary determination of melanin content, the amount of this pigment can be increased transiently in response to exposure to ultraviolet (UV) light rays from the sun. This additional melanin, the outward appearance of which constitutes a “tan,” performs the protective function of absorbing harmful UV rays.

**KERATINOCYTES** The most abundant epidermal cells are the **keratinocytes**, which, as the name implies, are specialists in keratin production. As they die, they form the outer protective keratinized layer. They also generate hair and nails. A surprising, recently discovered function is that keratinocytes are also important immunologically. They secrete a cytokine that influences the maturation of T cells that tend to localize in the skin.

**OTHER IMMUNE CELLS OF THE SKIN** The two other epidermal cell types play a role in immunity. **Langerhans cells** are dendritic cells that serve as antigen-presenting cells. Thus, the skin not only is a mechanical barrier but actually alerts lymphocytes if the barrier is breached by invading microorganisms. In contrast, **Granstein cells** seem to act as a “brake” on skin-activated immune responses. These cells are the most recently discovered and least understood of the skin's immune cells. Significantly, Langerhans cells are more susceptible to damage by UV radiation (as from the sun) than Granstein cells are, leaving the skin more vulnerable to microbial invasion and cancer cells.

### Protective measures within body cavities discourage pathogen invasion into the body.

The human body's defense system must guard against entry of potential pathogens not only through the outer surface of the body but also through the internal cavities that communicate directly with the external environment—namely, the digestive system, the urogenital (urinary and reproductive) system, and the respiratory system. These systems use various tactics to destroy microorganisms entering through these routes.

**DEFENSES OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM** Saliva secreted into the mouth at the entrance of the digestive system contains an enzyme that lyses certain ingested bacteria. “Friendly” bacteria that live on the back of the tongue convert food-derived nitrate into nitrite, which is swallowed. Acidification of nitrite on reaching the highly acidic stomach generates nitric oxide, which is toxic to a variety of microorganisms. Furthermore, many of the surviving bacteria that are swallowed are killed directly by the strongly acidic gastric juice in the stomach. Farther down the tract, the intestinal lining is endowed with gut-associated lymphoid tissue. These defensive mechanisms are not 100% effective, however. Some bacteria do manage to survive and reach the large intestine (the last portion of the digestive tract), where they continue to flourish. Surprisingly, this normal microbial population provides a natural barrier against infection within the lower intestine. These harmless resident microbes competitively suppress the growth of potential pathogens that have managed to escape the antimicrobial measures of earlier parts of the digestive tract.



Occasionally, orally administered antibiotic therapy against an infection elsewhere within the body may induce an intestinal infection. By knocking out some normal intestinal bacteria, an antibiotic may permit an antibiotic-resistant pathogenic species to overgrow in the intestine.

**DEFENSES OF THE UROGENITAL SYSTEM** Within the urogenital system, would-be invaders encounter hostile conditions in the acidic urine and acidic vaginal secretions. The urogenital organs also produce a sticky mucus, which, like flypaper, entraps small invading particles. Subsequently, the particles are either engulfed by phagocytes or are swept out as the organ empties (for example, they are flushed out with urine flow).

**DEFENSES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM** The respiratory system is likewise equipped with several important defense mechanisms against inhaled particulate matter. The respiratory system is the largest surface of the body that comes into direct contact with the increasingly polluted external environment. The surface area of the respiratory system exposed to the air is 30 times that of the skin. Larger airborne particles are filtered out of the inhaled air by hairs at the entrance of the nasal passages. Lymphoid tissues, the *tonsils* and *adenoids*, provide immunological protection against inhaled pathogens near the beginning of the respiratory system. Farther down in the respiratory airways, millions of tiny hairlike projections known as *cilia* constantly beat in an outward direction (see p. 36). The respiratory airways are coated with a layer of thick, sticky mucus secreted by epithelial cells within the airway lining. This mucus sheet, laden with any inspired particulate debris (such as dust) that adheres to it, is constantly moved upward to the throat by ciliary action. This moving “staircase” of mucus is known as the **mucus escalator**. The dirty mucus is either spit out or, in most cases, is swallowed without the person even being aware of it; any indigestible foreign particulate matter is later eliminated in the feces. Besides keeping the lungs clean, this mechanism is an important defense against bacterial infection, because many bacteria enter the body on dust particles. Also contributing to defense against respiratory infections are antibodies secreted in the mucus. In addition, an abundance of phagocytic specialists called **alveolar macrophages** scavenge within the air sacs (alveoli) of the lungs. Further respiratory defenses include coughs and sneezes. These commonly experienced reflex mechanisms involve forceful outward expulsion of material in an attempt to remove irritants from the trachea (*coughs*) or nose (*sneezes*).



Cigarette smoking suppresses these normal respiratory defenses. The smoke from a single cigarette can paralyze the cilia for several hours, with repeated exposure eventually leading to ciliary destruction. Failure of ciliary activity to sweep out a constant stream of particulate-laden mucus enables inhaled carcinogens to remain in contact with the respiratory airways for prolonged periods. Furthermore, cigarette smoke incapacitates alveolar macrophages. In addition, noxious agents in tobacco smoke irritate the mucous linings of the respiratory tract, resulting in excess mucus production, which may partially obstruct the airways. “Smoker’s cough” is an attempt to dislodge this excess stationary mucus. These and other direct toxic effects on lung tissue lead to the increased incidence of lung cancer and chronic respiratory diseases associated with cigarette smoking.

We examine the respiratory system in greater detail in the next chapter.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



Blood contributes to homeostasis in various ways. First, the composition of interstitial fluid, the true internal environment that surrounds and directly exchanges materials with the cells, depends on the composition of blood plasma. Because of the thorough exchange that occurs between the interstitial and the vascular compartments, interstitial fluid has the same composition as plasma with the exception of plasma proteins, which cannot escape through the capillary walls. Thus, blood is the vehicle for rapid, long-distance, mass transport of materials to and from the cells, and interstitial fluid is the go-between.

Homeostasis depends on the blood carrying materials such as  $O_2$  and nutrients to the cells as rapidly as the cells consume these supplies and carrying materials such as metabolic wastes away from the cells as rapidly as the cells produce these products. It also depends on the blood carrying hormonal messengers from their site of production to their distant site of action. Once a substance enters the blood, it can be transported throughout the body within seconds, whereas diffusion of the substance over long distances in a large multicellular organism such as a human would take months to years—a situation incompatible with life. Diffusion can, however, effectively accomplish short local exchanges of materials between blood and surrounding cells through the intervening interstitial fluid.

Blood has special transport capabilities that enable it to move its cargo efficiently throughout the body. For example, life-sustaining  $O_2$  is poorly soluble in water, but blood is equipped with  $O_2$ -carrying specialists, the erythrocytes (red blood cells), which are stuffed full of hemoglobin, a complex molecule that transports  $O_2$ . Likewise, homeostatically important water-insoluble hormonal messengers are shuttled in the blood by plasma protein carriers.

Specific components of the blood perform the following additional homeostatic activities that are unrelated to blood’s transport function:

- Blood helps maintain the proper pH in the internal environment by buffering changes in the body’s acid–base load.
- Blood helps maintain body temperature by absorbing heat produced by heat-generating tissues, such as contracting skeletal muscles, and distributing it throughout the body. Excess heat is carried by the blood to the body surface for elimination to the external environment.
- Electrolytes in the plasma are important in membrane excitability, which is critical for nerve and muscle function.
- Electrolytes in the plasma are important in osmotic distribution of fluid between the extracellular and intracellular fluid. Plasma proteins play a critical role in distributing extracellular fluid between the plasma and interstitial fluid.
- Through their hemostatic functions, the platelets and clotting factors minimize the loss of life-sustaining blood after vessel injury.

- The leukocytes (white blood cells), their secretory products, and certain types of plasma proteins, such as antibodies, constitute the immune defense system. This system defends the body against invading disease-causing agents, destroys cancer cells, and paves the way for wound healing and tissue repair by clearing away debris from dead or injured cells. These actions indirectly contribute to homeostasis by helping the organs that directly maintain homeostasis stay healthy. We could not survive beyond early infancy were it not for the body's defense mechanisms.

The skin contributes indirectly to homeostasis by serving as a protective barrier between the external environment and the rest of the body cells. It helps prevent harmful foreign

agents such as pathogens and toxic chemicals from entering the body and helps prevent the loss of precious internal fluids from the body. The skin also contributes directly to homeostasis by helping maintain body temperature by means of the sweat glands and adjustments in skin blood flow. The amount of heat carried to the body surface for dissipation to the external environment is determined by the volume of warmed blood flowing through the skin.

Other systems that have internal cavities in contact with the external environment, such as the digestive, urogenital, and respiratory systems, also have defense capabilities to prevent harmful external agents from entering the body through these avenues.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-45)

- Hemoglobin can carry only  $O_2$ . (*True or false?*)
- Erythrocytes originate from the same undifferentiated pluripotent stem cells as leukocytes and platelets do. (*True or false?*)
- White blood cells spend the majority of their time in the blood. (*True or false?*)
- The complement system can be activated only by antibodies. (*True or false?*)
- Specific adaptive immune responses are accomplished by neutrophils. (*True or false?*)
- Active immunity against a particular disease can be acquired only by actually having the disease. (*True or false?*)
- A secondary response has a more rapid onset, is more potent, and has a longer duration than a primary response. (*True or false?*)
- \_\_\_\_\_ are receptors on the plasma membrane of phagocytes that recognize and bind with telltale molecular patterns present on the surface of microorganisms but absent from human cells.
- A chemical that enhances phagocytosis by serving as a link between a microbe and the phagocytic cell is known as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_, collectively, are all the chemical messengers other than antibodies secreted by lymphocytes.
- Which of the following is *not* a function served by the plasma proteins?
  - facilitating retention of fluid in the blood vessels
  - playing an important role in blood clotting
  - binding and transporting certain hormones in the blood
  - transporting  $O_2$  in the blood
  - serving as antibodies
  - contributing to the buffering capacity of the blood
- Which of the following is *not* directly triggered by exposed collagen in an injured vessel?
  - initial vascular spasm
  - platelet aggregation
  - activation of the clotting cascade
  - activation of plasminogen
- Which of the following statements concerning leukocytes is (are) *incorrect*? (*Indicate all incorrect answers.*)
  - Monocytes are transformed into macrophages.
  - T lymphocytes are transformed into plasma cells that secrete antibodies.
  - Neutrophils are highly mobile phagocytic specialists.
  - Basophils release histamine.
  - Lymphocytes arise largely from lymphoid tissues.
- Match the following blood abnormalities with their causes:
 

___ 1. deficiency of intrinsic factor	(a) hemolytic anemia
___ 2. insufficient amount of iron to synthesize adequate hemoglobin	(b) aplastic anemia
___ 3. destruction of bone marrow	(c) nutritional anemia
___ 4. abnormal loss of blood	(d) hemorrhagic anemia
___ 5. tumorlike condition of bone marrow	(e) pernicious anemia
___ 6. inadequate erythropoietin secretion	(f) renal anemia
___ 7. excessive rupture of circulating erythrocytes	(g) primary polycythemia
___ 8. consequence of living at high altitudes	(h) secondary polycythemia

15. Match the following:
- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| ___ 1. a protein that nonspecifically defends against viral infection | (a) complement system    |
|   | (b) natural killer cells |
|   | (c) interferon           |
|   | (d) inflammation         |
- \_\_\_ 2. a response to tissue injury in which neutrophils and macrophages play a major role
- \_\_\_ 3. a group of plasma proteins that, when activated, bring about destruction of foreign cells by attacking their plasma membranes
- \_\_\_ 4. lymphocyte-like cells that spontaneously lyse tumor cells and virus-infected host cells
16. Using the answer code on the right, indicate whether the numbered characteristics of the adaptive immune system apply to antibody-mediated immunity, cell-mediated immunity, or both:
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ___ 1. involves secretion of antibodies  | (a) antibody-mediated immunity                        |
| ___ 2. is mediated by B cells  | (b) cell-mediated immunity                            |
| ___ 3. is mediated by T cells  | (c) both antibody-mediated and cell-mediated immunity |
| ___ 4. is accomplished by thymus-educated lymphocytes  |   |
| ___ 5. is triggered by the binding of specific antigens to complementary lymphocyte receptors                                    |   |
| ___ 6. involves formation of memory cells in response to initial exposure to an antigen  |   |
| ___ 7. is primarily aimed against virus-infected host cells  |   |
| ___ 8. protects primarily against bacterial invaders   |   |
| ___ 9. directly destroys targeted cells  |   |
| ___ 10. is involved in rejection of transplanted tissue  |   |
| ___ 11. requires binding of a lymphocyte to a free extracellular antigen   |   |
| ___ 12. requires dual binding of a lymphocyte with both foreign antigens and self-antigens present on the surface of a host cell |   |

## Essay Questions

1. What is the average blood volume in women and in men?
2. What is the normal percentage of blood occupied by erythrocytes and by plasma? What is the hematocrit? What is the buffy coat?
3. What is the composition of plasma?
4. Describe the structure and functions of erythrocytes.
5. Why can erythrocytes survive for only about 120 days?
6. Describe the process and control of erythropoiesis.
7. Discuss the derivation of platelets.
8. Describe the three steps of hemostasis, including a comparison of the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways by which the clotting cascade is triggered.
9. Compare the structure and functions of the five types of leukocytes.
10. Distinguish between bacteria and viruses.
11. Distinguish between innate and adaptive immune responses.
12. Compare the life histories of B and T cells.
13. What is an antigen?
14. Describe the structure of an antibody. In what ways do antibodies exert their effect?
15. Describe the clonal selection theory.
16. Compare the functions of B and T cells. What are the roles of the three types of T cells?
17. Describe four mechanisms involved in tolerance.
18. What is the importance of class I and class II MHC molecules?
19. Describe the factors that contribute to immune surveillance against cancer cells.
20. Distinguish among immunodeficiency disease, autoimmune disease, immune complex disease, immediate hypersensitivity, and delayed hypersensitivity.
21. What are the immune functions of the skin?

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-45)

1. There are different forms of hemoglobin. *Hemoglobin A* is normal adult hemoglobin. The abnormal form *hemoglobin S* causes RBCs to warp into fragile, sickle-shaped cells. Fetal RBCs contain *hemoglobin F*, the production of which stops soon after birth. Now researchers are trying to goad the genes that direct hemoglobin F synthesis back into action as a means of treating sickle cell anemia. Explain how turning on these fetal genes could be a useful remedy. (Indeed, the first effective drug therapy approved for treating sickle cell anemia, *hydroxyurea*, acts on the bone marrow to boost production of fetal hemoglobin.)
2. Low on the list of popular animals are vampire bats, leeches, and ticks, yet these animals may someday

indirectly save your life. Scientists are currently examining the “saliva” of these blood-sucking creatures in search of new chemicals that might limit cardiac muscle damage in heart attack victims. What do you suspect the nature of these sought-after chemicals is?

3. What impact would failure of the thymus to develop embryonically have on the immune system after birth?
4. Medical researchers are currently working on ways to “teach” the immune system to view foreign tissue as “self.” What useful clinical application will the technique have?
5. When someone looks at you, are the cells of your body that person is viewing dead or alive?

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

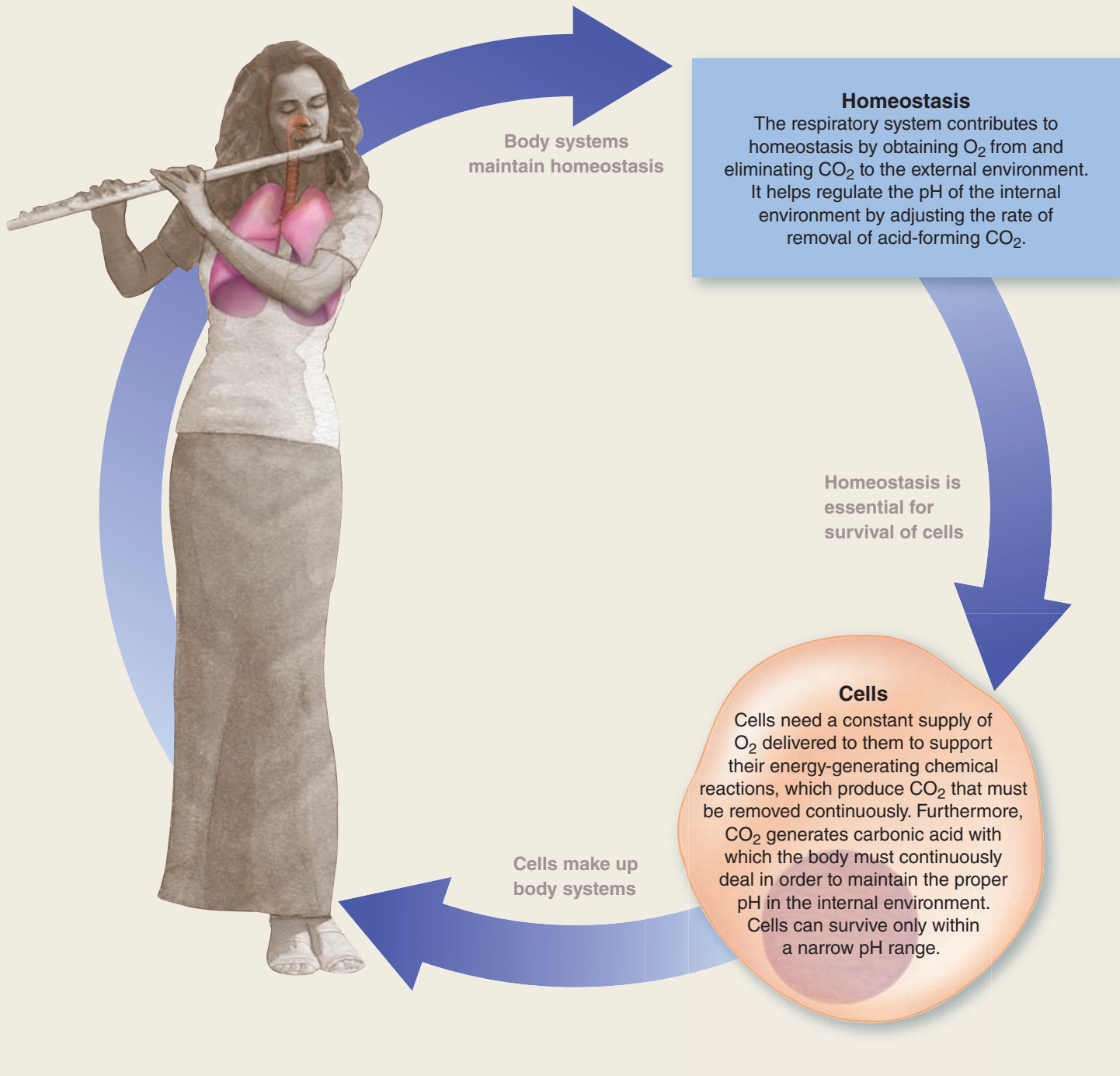
### (Explanation on p. A-46)

Heather L., who has Rh-negative blood, has just given birth to her first child, who has Rh-positive blood. Both mother and baby are fine, but the doctor administers an Rh immunoglobulin preparation so that any future Rh-positive babies Heather has will not suffer from erythroblastosis fetalis (hemolytic disease of the newborn) (see p. 303). During gestation (pregnancy), fetal and maternal blood do not mix. Instead, materials are exchanged between these two circulatory systems across the placenta, a special organ that develops during gestation from both maternal and fetal structures (see p. 578). Red blood cells are unable to cross the placenta, but antibodies can cross. During the birthing process, a small amount of the infant's blood may enter the maternal circulation.

1. Why did Heather's first-born child not have erythroblastosis fetalis; that is, why didn't maternal antibodies against the Rh factor attack the fetal Rh-positive red blood cells during gestation?
2. Why would any subsequent Rh-positive babies Heather might carry be likely to develop erythroblastosis fetalis if she were not treated with Rh immunoglobulin?
3. How would administering Rh immunoglobulin immediately following Heather's first pregnancy with an Rh-positive child prevent erythroblastosis fetalis in a later pregnancy with another Rh-positive child? Similarly, why must Rh immunoglobulin be given to Heather after the birth of each Rh-positive child she bears?
4. Suppose Heather were not treated with Rh immunoglobulin after the birth of her first Rh-positive child, and a second Rh-positive child developed erythroblastosis fetalis. Would administering Rh immunoglobulin to Heather immediately after the second birth prevent this condition in a third Rh-positive child? Why or why not?



## Respiratory System



Energy is essential for sustaining life-supporting cellular activities, such as protein synthesis and active transport across plasma membranes. The cells of the body need a continuous supply of O<sub>2</sub> to support their energy-generating chemical reactions. The CO<sub>2</sub> produced during these reactions must be eliminated from the body at the same rate as it is produced to prevent dangerous fluctuations in pH (that is, to maintain acid–base balance), because CO<sub>2</sub> generates carbonic acid.

**Respiration** involves the sum of the processes that accomplish ongoing passive movement of O<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere to the tissues to support cell metabolism, as well as the continual passive movement of metabolically produced CO<sub>2</sub> from the tissues to the atmosphere. The **respiratory system** contributes to homeostasis by exchanging O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> between the atmosphere and the blood. The blood transports O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> between the respiratory system and the tissues.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Respiratory Anatomy**

Cellular and external respiration  
Anatomy of the respiratory system,  
thorax, and pleura

**Respiratory Mechanics**

Pressure considerations  
Respiratory cycle  
Airway resistance  
Elastic behavior of the lungs  
Lung volumes and capacities  
Pulmonary and alveolar ventilation

**Gas Exchange**

Concept of partial pressure  
Gas exchange across the pulmonary  
and systemic capillaries

**Gas Transport**

Oxygen transport  
Carbon dioxide transport  
Abnormalities in blood-gas content

**Control of Respiration**

Respiratory control centers in the brain  
stem  
Generation of respiratory rhythm  
Chemical inputs affecting the magnitude  
of ventilation

# The Respiratory System

## Respiratory Anatomy

The primary function of respiration is to obtain O<sub>2</sub> for use by the body cells and to eliminate the CO<sub>2</sub> the cells produce.

**The respiratory system does not participate in all steps of respiration.**

Most people think of respiration as the process of breathing in and breathing out. In physiology, however, respiration has a broader meaning. Respiration encompasses two separate but related processes: cellular respiration and external respiration.

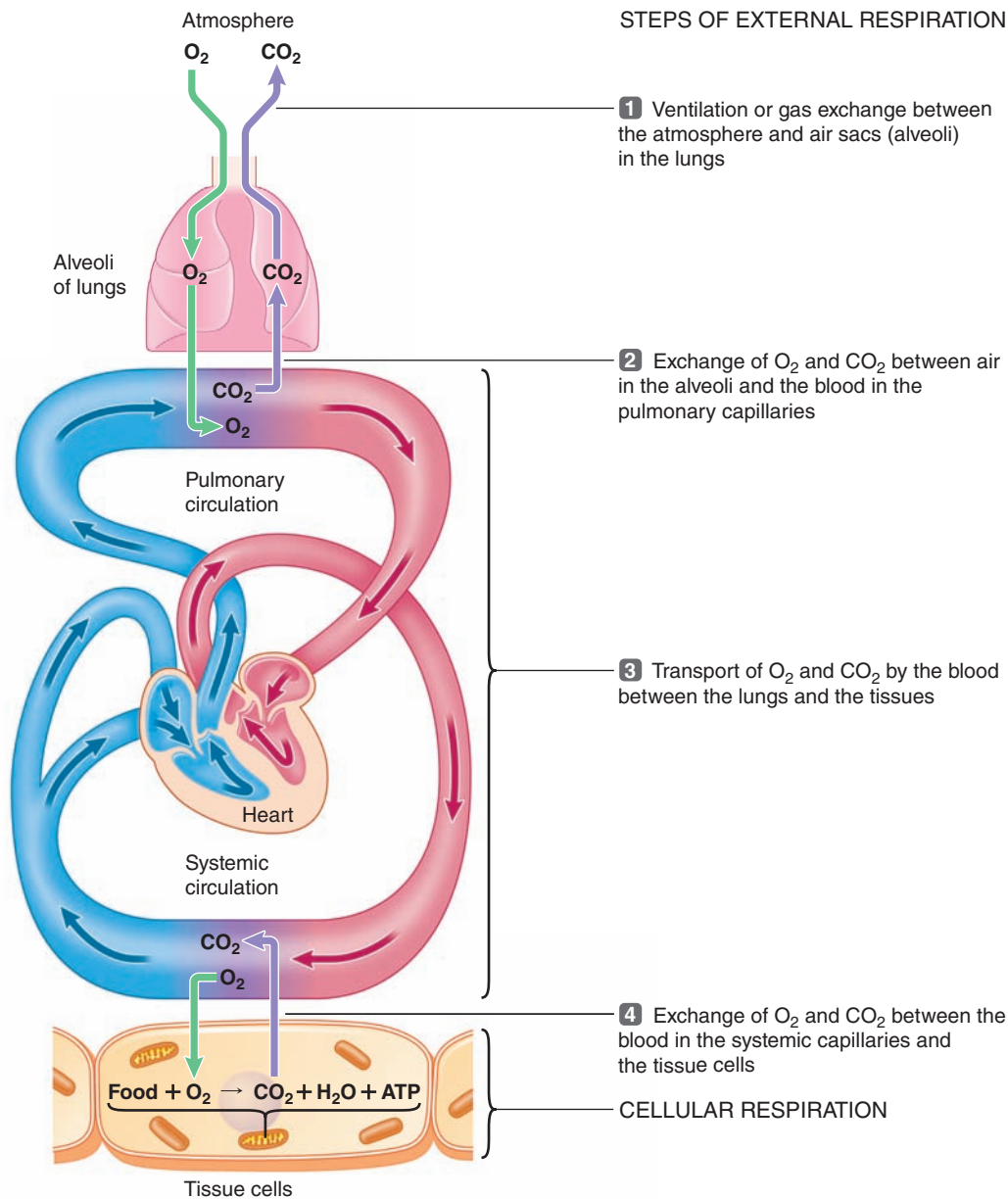
**CELLULAR RESPIRATION** The term **cellular respiration** refers to the intracellular metabolic processes carried out within the mitochondria, which use O<sub>2</sub> and produce CO<sub>2</sub> while deriving energy from nutrient molecules (see p. 27). The term **external respiration** refers to the entire sequence of events in the exchange of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> between the external environment and the tissue cells. External respiration, the topic of this chapter, encompasses four steps (● Figure 12-1):

1. Air is alternately moved into and out of the lungs so that air can be exchanged between the atmosphere (external environment) and the air sacs (*alveoli*) of the lungs. This exchange is accomplished by the mechanical act of **breathing**, or **ventilation**. The rate of ventilation is regulated to adjust the flow of air between the atmosphere and the alveoli according to the body's metabolic needs for O<sub>2</sub> uptake and CO<sub>2</sub> removal.
2. Oxygen and CO<sub>2</sub> are exchanged between air in the alveoli and the blood within the pulmonary (*pulmonary* means “lung”) capillaries by the process of diffusion.
3. The blood transports O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> between the lungs and the tissues.
4. Oxygen and CO<sub>2</sub> are exchanged between the tissue cells and the blood by the process of diffusion across the systemic (tissue) capillaries.

The respiratory system does not accomplish all the steps of respiration; it is involved only with ventilation and the exchange of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> between the lungs and the blood (steps **1** and **2**). The circulatory system carries out the remaining steps.

**NONRESPIRATORY FUNCTIONS OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM** The respiratory system also fills these nonrespiratory functions:

- It is a route for water loss and heat elimination. Inspired (inhaled) atmospheric air is humidified and warmed by the respiratory airways before it is expired. Moistening of inspired air is essential to prevent the alveolar linings from drying out. Oxygen and CO<sub>2</sub> cannot diffuse through dry membranes.
- It enhances venous return (see the “respiratory pump,” p. 287).
- It helps maintain normal acid–base balance by altering the amount of H<sup>+</sup>-generating CO<sub>2</sub> exhaled (see p. 431).



● **FIGURE 12-1 External and cellular respiration.** External respiration encompasses the steps involved in the exchange of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  between the external environment and the tissue cells (steps 1 through 4). Cellular respiration encompasses the intracellular metabolic reactions involving the use of  $O_2$  to derive energy (ATP) from food, producing  $CO_2$  as a by-product.

- It enables speech, singing, and other vocalization.
- It defends against inhaled foreign matter (see p. 340).
- It removes, modifies, activates, or inactivates various materials passing through the pulmonary circulation. All blood returning to the heart from the tissues must pass through the lungs before being returned to the systemic circulation. The lungs, therefore, are uniquely situated to act on specific materials that have been added to the blood at the tissue level before they have a chance to reach other parts of the body by means of the arterial system. For example, prostaglandins, a collection of chemical messengers released in many tissues to mediate particular local responses (see p. 558), may spill into the blood, but they are inactivated during passage through the lungs so

when the nasal passages are congested; that is, you can breathe through your mouth when you have a cold. Because the pharynx serves as a common passageway for food and air, reflex mechanisms close off the trachea during swallowing so that food enters the esophagus and not the airways. The esophagus stays closed except during swallowing to keep air from entering the stomach during breathing.

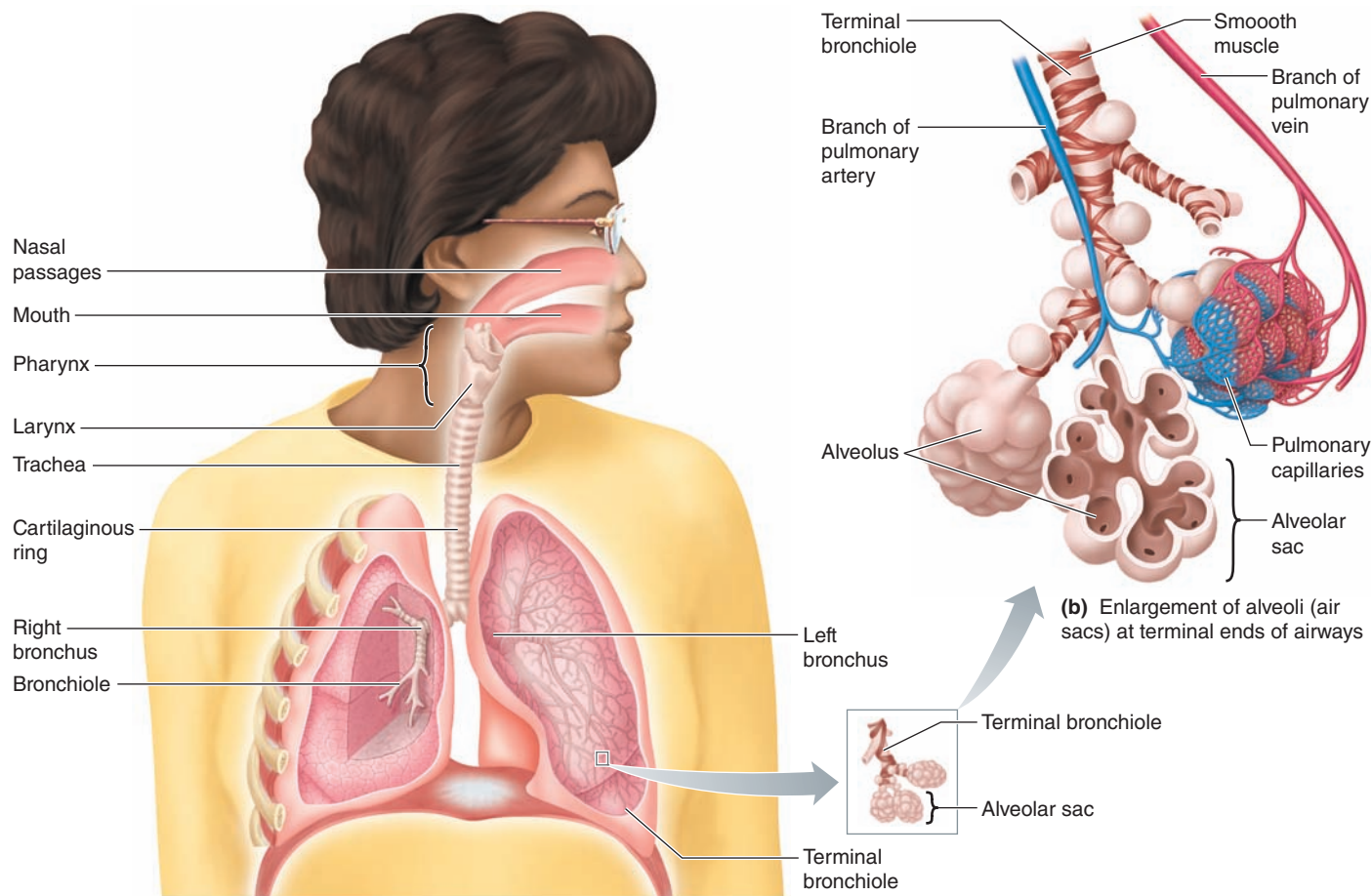
The **larynx**, or **voice box**, is located at the entrance of the trachea. The anterior protrusion of the larynx forms the “Adam’s apple.” The **vocal folds**, two bands of elastic tissue that lie across the opening of the larynx, can be stretched and positioned in different shapes by laryngeal muscles (● Figure 12-3a). Air passes into the larynx through the space between the vocal folds. This laryngeal opening is known as the **glottis**. As air

that they cannot exert systemic effects.

- The nose, a part of the respiratory system, is the organ of smell (see p. 173).

### The respiratory airways conduct air between the atmosphere and the alveoli.

The **respiratory system** includes the respiratory airways leading into the lungs, the lungs themselves, and the respiratory muscles of the thorax (chest) and abdomen involved in producing movement of air through the airways into and out of the lungs. The **respiratory airways** are tubes that carry air between the atmosphere and the air sacs, the latter being the only site where gases can be exchanged between air and blood. The airways begin with the **nasal passages (nose)** (● Figure 12-2a). The nasal passages open into the **pharynx (throat)**, which serves as a common passageway for both the respiratory and the digestive systems. Two tubes lead from the pharynx—the **trachea (windpipe)**, through which air is conducted to the lungs, and the **esophagus**, the tube through which food passes to the stomach. Air normally enters the pharynx through the nose, but it can enter by the mouth as well



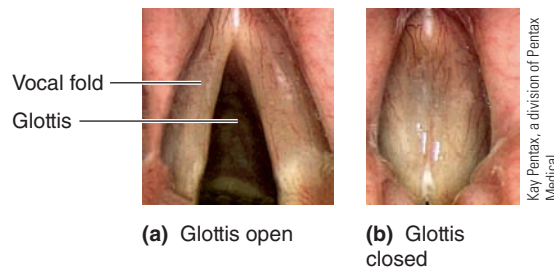
● **FIGURE 12-2 Anatomy of the respiratory system.** (a) The respiratory airways include the nasal passages, pharynx, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles. (b) Most alveoli (air sacs) are clustered in grapelike arrangements at the end of the terminal bronchioles.

moves through the open glottis past the variably positioned, taut vocal folds, they vibrate to produce the many sounds of speech. The lips and tongue modify the sounds into recognizable sound patterns. During swallowing, the vocal folds assume a function not related to speech: They close the glottis. That is, laryngeal muscles bring the vocal folds into tight apposition to each other to close off the entrance to the trachea so that food does not get into the airways (● Figure 12-3b).

Beyond the larynx, the trachea divides into two main branches, the right and left **bronchi**, which enter the right and left lungs, respectively. Within each lung, the bronchus continues to branch into progressively narrower, shorter, and more numerous airways, much like the branching of a tree. The smaller branches are known as **bronchioles**. Clustered at the ends of the terminal bronchioles are the **alveoli**, the tiny air sacs where gases are exchanged between air and blood (see ● Figure 12-2b).

**The gas-exchanging alveoli are thin-walled, inflatable air sacs encircled by pulmonary capillaries.**

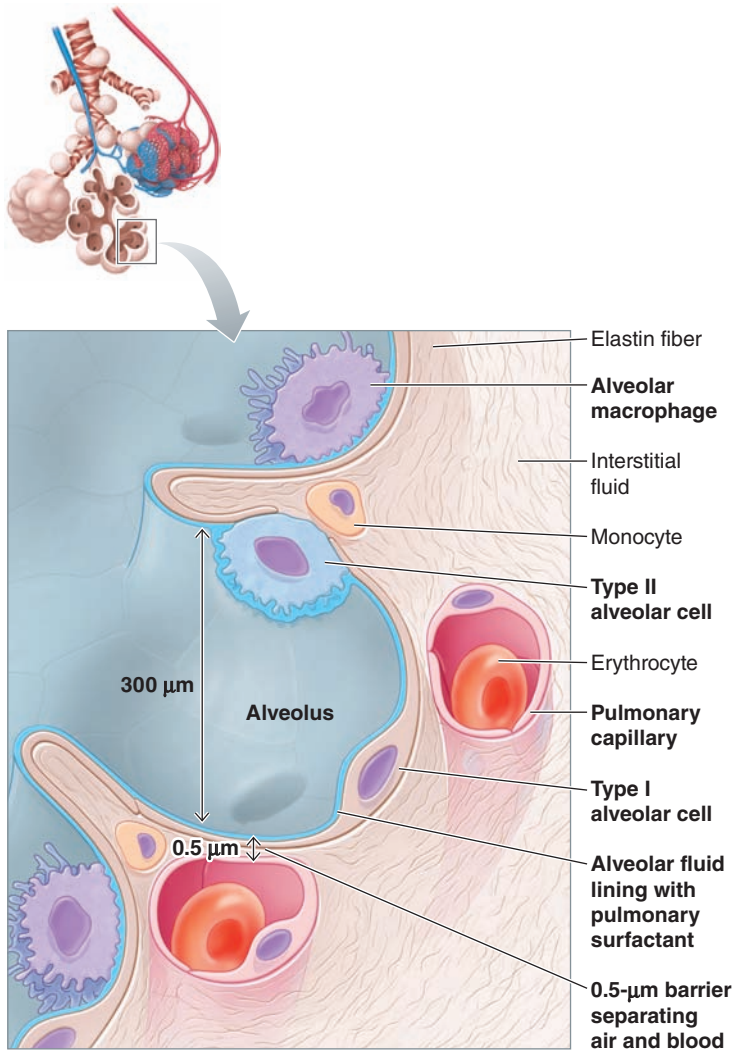
The lungs are ideally structured for gas exchange. According to Fick's law of diffusion, the shorter the distance through which



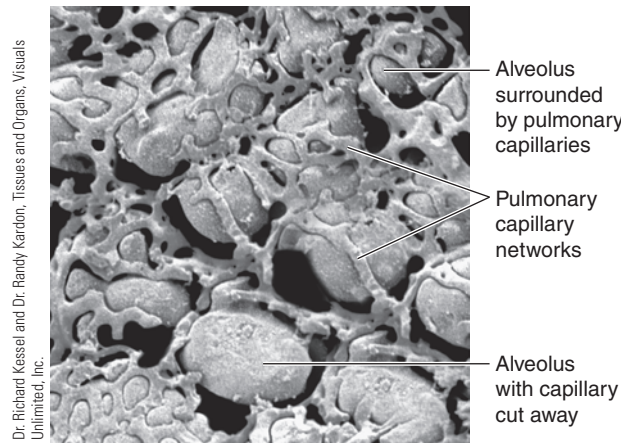
● **FIGURE 12-3 Vocal folds.** Photographs of the vocal folds as viewed from above at the laryngeal opening, showing the vocal folds (a) positioned apart when the glottis is open and (b) in tight apposition when the glottis is closed.

diffusion must take place, the greater the rate of diffusion. Also, the greater the surface area across which diffusion can take place, the greater the rate of diffusion (see p. 51).

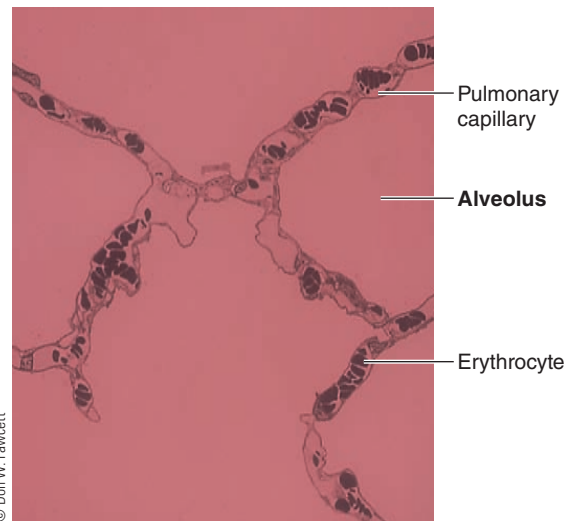
The alveoli are clusters of thin-walled, inflatable, grapelike sacs at the terminal branches of the conducting airways. The alveolar walls consist of a single layer of flattened, **Type I alveolar cells** (● Figure 12-4a). Each alveolus is surrounded by a network of pulmonary capillaries, the walls of which are also



(a) Alveolus and surrounding pulmonary capillaries



(b) Scanning electron micrograph of alveoli and surrounding pulmonary capillaries



(c) Transmission electron micrograph of several alveoli and surrounding pulmonary capillaries

● **FIGURE 12-4 Alveolus and associated pulmonary capillaries.** (a) A single layer of flattened Type I alveolar cells forms the alveolar walls. Type II alveolar cells embedded within the alveolar wall secrete pulmonary surfactant. Wandering alveolar macrophages are found within the alveolar lumen. The size of the cells and respiratory membrane is exaggerated compared to the size of the alveolar and pulmonary capillary lumens. The diameter of an alveolus is actually about 600 times larger ( $300\ \mu\text{m}$ ) than the intervening space between air and blood ( $0.5\ \mu\text{m}$ ). (b) Each alveolus is encircled with a dense network of pulmonary capillaries. (c) Note that each alveolus is surrounded by an almost continuous sheet of blood.

only one cell thick (● Figure 12-4b). The interstitial space between an alveolus and the surrounding capillary network forms an extremely thin barrier, with only  $0.5\ \mu\text{m}$  separating air in the alveoli from blood in the pulmonary capillaries. (A sheet of tracing paper is about 50 times thicker than this air-to-blood barrier.) The thinness of this barrier facilitates gas exchange.

Furthermore, the alveolar air–blood interface presents a tremendous surface area for exchange. The lungs contain about 500 million alveoli, each about  $300\ \mu\text{m}$  in diameter. So dense are the pulmonary capillary networks that each alveolus is encircled by an almost continuous sheet of blood (● Figure

12-4c). The total surface area thus exposed between alveolar air and pulmonary capillary blood is about  $75\ \text{m}^2$  (about the size of a tennis court). In contrast, if the lungs consisted of a single hollow chamber of the same dimensions instead of being divided into a multitude of alveolar units, the total surface area would be only about  $0.01\ \text{m}^2$ .

In addition to the thin, wall-forming Type I cells, 5% of the alveolar surface epithelium is covered by **Type II alveolar cells** (● Figure 12-4a). These cells secrete *pulmonary surfactant*, a chemical complex that facilitates lung expansion (described later). Furthermore, defensive alveolar macrophages stand guard within the lumen of the air sacs (see p. 339).

### The lungs occupy much of the thoracic cavity.

There are two **lungs**, each divided into several lobes and each supplied by one of the bronchi. The lung tissue itself consists of the series of highly branched airways, the alveoli, the pulmonary blood vessels, and large quantities of elastic connective tissue. The only muscle within the lungs is the smooth muscle in the walls of the arterioles and the walls of the bronchioles, both of which are subject to control. No muscle is present within the alveolar walls to cause them to inflate and deflate during the breathing process. Instead, changes in lung volume (and accompanying changes in alveolar volume) are brought about through changes in the dimensions of the thoracic (chest) cavity. You will learn about this mechanism after we complete our discussion of respiratory anatomy.

The lungs occupy most of the volume of the **thoracic (chest) cavity**, the only other structures in the chest being the heart and associated vessels, the esophagus, the thymus, and some nerves. The outer chest wall (**thorax**) is formed by 12 pairs of curved **ribs**, which join the **sternum** (breastbone) anteriorly and the **thoracic vertebrae** (backbone) posteriorly. The rib cage provides bony protection for the lungs and heart. Skeletal muscles connect these bony structures and enclose the thoracic cavity. The **diaphragm**, which forms the floor of the thoracic cavity, is a large, dome-shaped sheet of skeletal muscle that separates the thoracic cavity from the abdominal cavity. It is penetrated only by the esophagus and blood vessels traversing the thoracic and abdominal cavities. The only communication between the atmosphere and the thoracic cavity is through the respiratory airways into the alveoli.

### A pleural sac separates each lung from the thoracic wall.

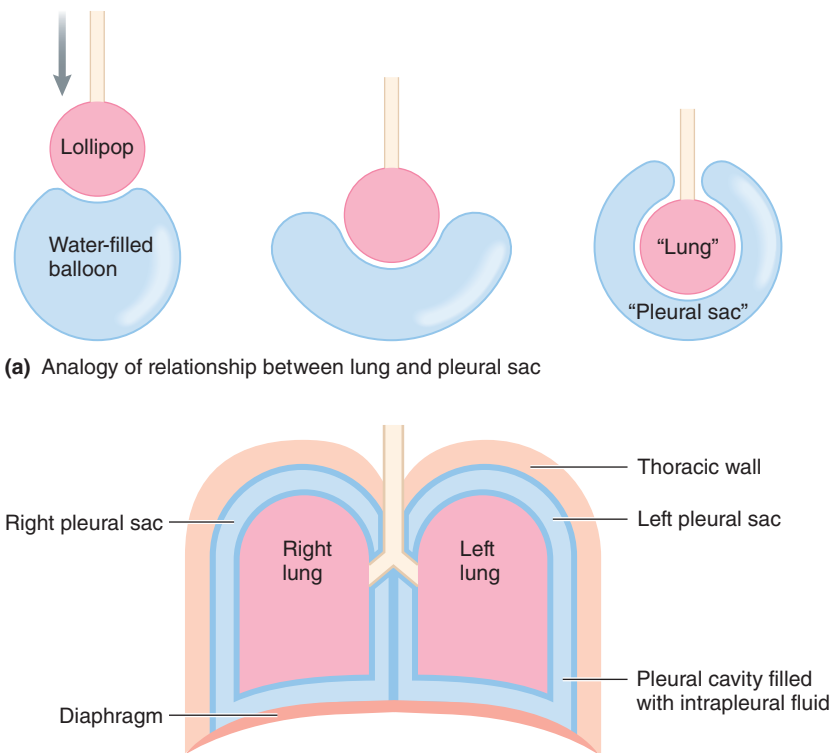
A double-walled, closed sac called the **pleural sac** separates each lung from the thoracic wall and other surrounding structures (● Figure 12-5). The interior of the pleural sac is known as the **pleural cavity**. In the illustration, the dimensions of the pleural cavity are greatly exaggerated to aid visualization; in reality, the layers of the pleural sac are in close contact with one another. The surfaces of the pleura secrete a thin **intrapleural fluid** (*intra* means “within”), which lubricates the pleural surfaces as they slide past each other during respiratory movements.



**Pleurisy**, an inflammation of the pleural sac, is accompanied by painful breathing, because each inflation and each deflation of the lungs cause a “friction rub.”

## Respiratory Mechanics

Air tends to move from a region of higher pressure to a region of lower pressure, that is, down a **pressure gradient**.



(a) Analogy of relationship between lung and pleural sac

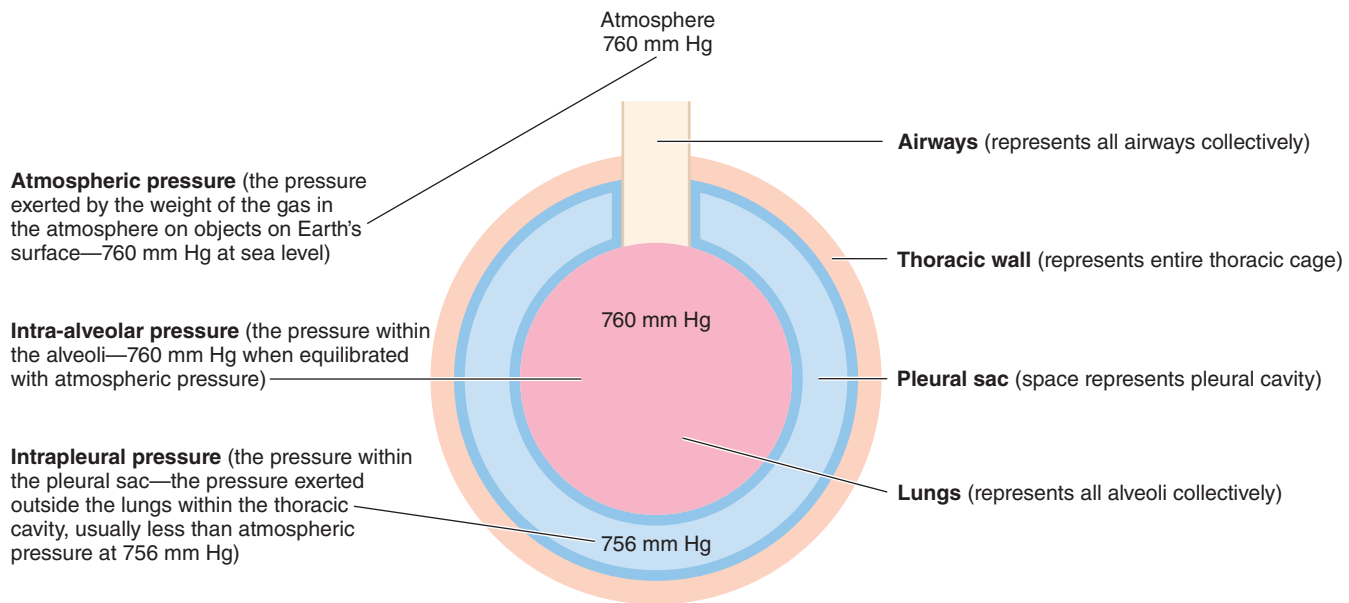
(b) Relationship of lungs to pleural sacs, thoracic wall, and diaphragm

● **FIGURE 12-5 Pleural sac.** (a) Pushing a lollipop into a small water-filled balloon produces a relationship analogous to that between each double-walled, closed pleural sac and the lung that it surrounds and separates from the thoracic wall. (b) One layer of the pleural sac closely adheres to the surface of the lung and then reflects back on itself to form another layer that lines the interior surface of the thoracic wall. The relative size of the pleural cavity between these two layers is grossly exaggerated for the purpose of visualization.

### Interrelationships among pressures inside and outside the lungs are important in ventilation.

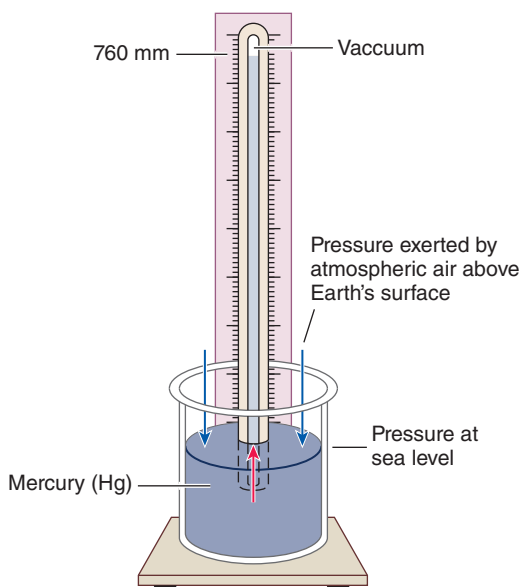
Air flows into and out of the lungs during the act of breathing by moving down alternately reversing pressure gradients established between the alveoli and the atmosphere by cyclic respiratory muscle activity. Three pressure considerations are important in ventilation (● Figure 12-6):

- 1. Atmospheric (barometric) pressure** is the pressure exerted by the weight of the air in the atmosphere on objects on Earth's surface. At sea level, it equals 760 mm Hg (● Figure 12-7). Atmospheric pressure diminishes with increasing altitude above sea level as the layer of air above Earth's surface correspondingly decreases in thickness. Minor fluctuations in atmospheric pressure occur at any height because of changing weather conditions (that is, when barometric pressure is rising or falling).
- 2. Intra-alveolar pressure** is the pressure within the alveoli. Because the alveoli communicate with the atmosphere through the conducting airways, air quickly flows down its pressure gradient any time intra-alveolar pressure differs from atmospheric pressure; air flow continues until the two pressures equilibrate (become equal).
- 3. Intrapleural pressure** is the pressure within the pleural sac. It is the pressure exerted outside the lungs within the thoracic cavity. The intrapleural pressure is usually less than atmospheric



● **FIGURE 12-6** Pressures important in ventilation.

pressure, averaging 756 mm Hg at rest. Just as blood pressure is recorded using atmospheric pressure as a reference point (that is, a systolic blood pressure of 120 mm Hg is 120 mm Hg greater than the atmospheric pressure of 760 mm Hg or, in reality, 880 mm Hg), 756 mm Hg is sometimes referred to as a pressure of  $-4$  mm Hg. However, there is really no such thing as an absolute negative pressure. A pressure of  $-4$  mm Hg is just negative when compared with the normal atmospheric pressure of 760 mm Hg. To avoid confusion, we use absolute positive values throughout our discussion of respiration.



● **FIGURE 12-7** Atmospheric pressure. The pressure exerted on objects by the atmospheric air above Earth's surface at sea level can push a column of mercury to a height of 760 mm. Therefore, atmospheric pressure at sea level is 760 mm Hg.

Intrapleural pressure does not equilibrate with atmospheric or intra-alveolar pressure because the pleural sac is a closed sac with no openings, so air cannot enter or leave despite any pressure gradients that might exist between the pleural cavity and the atmosphere or lungs.

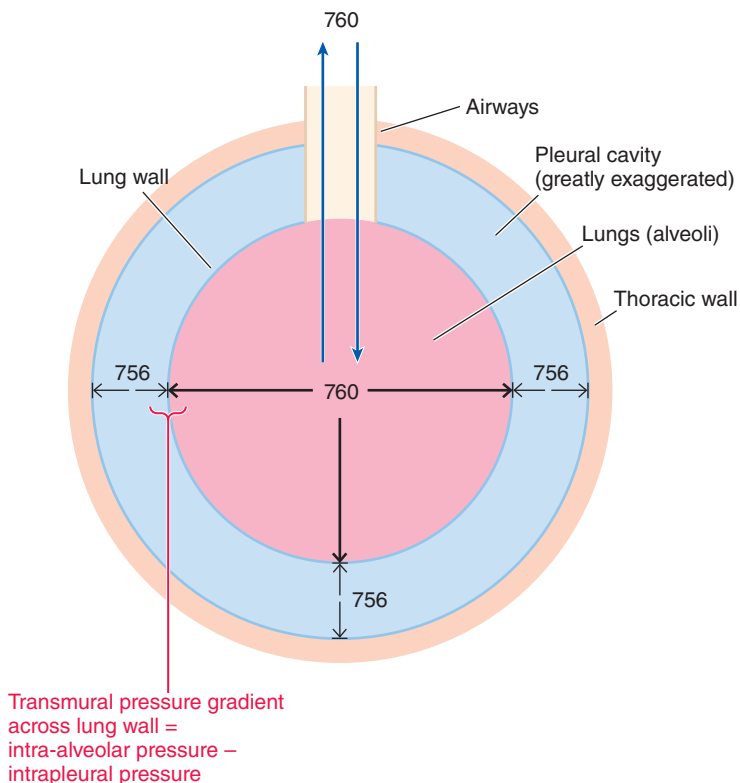
### The transmural pressure gradient normally stretches the lungs to fill the larger thoracic cavity.

The thoracic cavity is larger than the unstretched lungs because the thoracic wall grows more rapidly than the lungs during development. However, a *transmural pressure gradient* across the lung wall holds the lungs and thoracic wall in close apposition, stretching the lungs to fill the larger thoracic cavity. Let us examine the significance of this gradient and how it arises.

**TRANSMURAL PRESSURE GRADIENT** The intra-alveolar pressure, equilibrated with atmospheric pressure at 760 mm Hg, is greater than the intrapleural pressure of 756 mm Hg, so a greater pressure is pushing outward than is pushing inward across the lung wall. This net outward pressure differential, the **transmural pressure gradient**, pushes out on the lungs, stretching, or distending, them (*trans* means “across”; *mural* means “wall”) (● Figure 12-8). Because of this pressure gradient, the lungs are always forced to expand to fill the thoracic cavity, no matter its size. As the thoracic cavity enlarges, the lungs enlarge; that is, the lungs follow the movements of the chest wall.

### WHY THE INTRAPLEURAL PRESSURE IS SUBATMOSPHERIC

Because of the lungs' elasticity, they try to pull inward away from the thoracic wall as they are stretched to fill the larger thoracic cavity. The transmural pressure gradient, however, prevents the lungs from pulling away except to the slightest degree. The resultant ever-so-slight expansion of the pleural cavity is sufficient to drop the pressure in this cavity by 4 mm Hg, bringing the intrapleural pressure to the subatmospheric



Numbers are mm Hg pressure.

● **FIGURE 12-8 Transmural pressure gradient.** Across the lung wall, the intra-alveolar pressure of 760 mm Hg pushes outward, while the intrapleural pressure of 756 mm Hg pushes inward. This 4 mm Hg difference in pressure constitutes a transmural pressure gradient that pushes out on the lungs, stretching them to fill the larger thoracic cavity.

level of 756 mm Hg. This pressure drop occurs because the pleural cavity is filled with fluid, which cannot expand to fill the slightly larger volume. Therefore, a vacuum exists in the infinitesimal space in the slightly expanded pleural cavity not occupied by intrapleural fluid, producing a small drop in intrapleural pressure below atmospheric pressure.

Note the interrelationship between the transmural pressure gradient and the subatmospheric intrapleural pressure. The lungs are stretched by the transmural pressure gradient that exists across their walls because the intrapleural pressure is less than atmospheric pressure. The intrapleural pressure, in turn, is subatmospheric because the stretched lungs tend to pull away from the larger thoracic wall, slightly expanding the pleural cavity and dropping the intrapleural pressure below atmospheric pressure.



**PNEUMOTHORAX** Normally, air does not enter the pleural cavity, because there is no communication between the cavity and either the atmosphere or the alveoli. However, if the chest wall is punctured (for example, by a stab wound or a broken rib), air flows down its pressure gradient from the higher atmospheric pressure and rushes into the pleural space (● Figure 12-9a). The abnormal condition of air entering the pleural cavity is known as **pneumothorax** (“air in the chest”). Intrapleural and intra-alveolar

pressure are now both equilibrated with atmospheric pressure, so a transmural pressure gradient no longer exists across the lung wall. With no force present to stretch the lung, it collapses to its unstretched size (● Figure 12-9b). Similarly, pneumothorax and lung collapse can occur if air enters the pleural cavity through a hole in the lung produced, for example, by a disease process (● Figure 12-9c).

### Flow of air into and out of the lungs occurs because of cyclic changes in intra-alveolar pressure.

Because air flows down a pressure gradient, the intra-alveolar pressure must be less than atmospheric pressure for air to flow into the lungs during inspiration. Similarly, the intra-alveolar pressure must be greater than atmospheric pressure for air to flow out of the lungs during expiration. Intra-alveolar pressure can be changed by altering the volume of the lungs, in accordance with Boyle’s law. **Boyle’s law** states that, at any constant temperature, the pressure exerted by a gas in a closed container varies inversely with the volume of the gas (● Figure 12-10); that is, as the volume of a gas increases, the pressure exerted by the gas decreases proportionately. Conversely, the pressure increases proportionately as the volume decreases. Changes in lung volume, and accordingly intra-alveolar pressure, are brought about indirectly by respiratory muscle activity.

The respiratory muscles that accomplish breathing do not act directly on the lungs to change their volume.

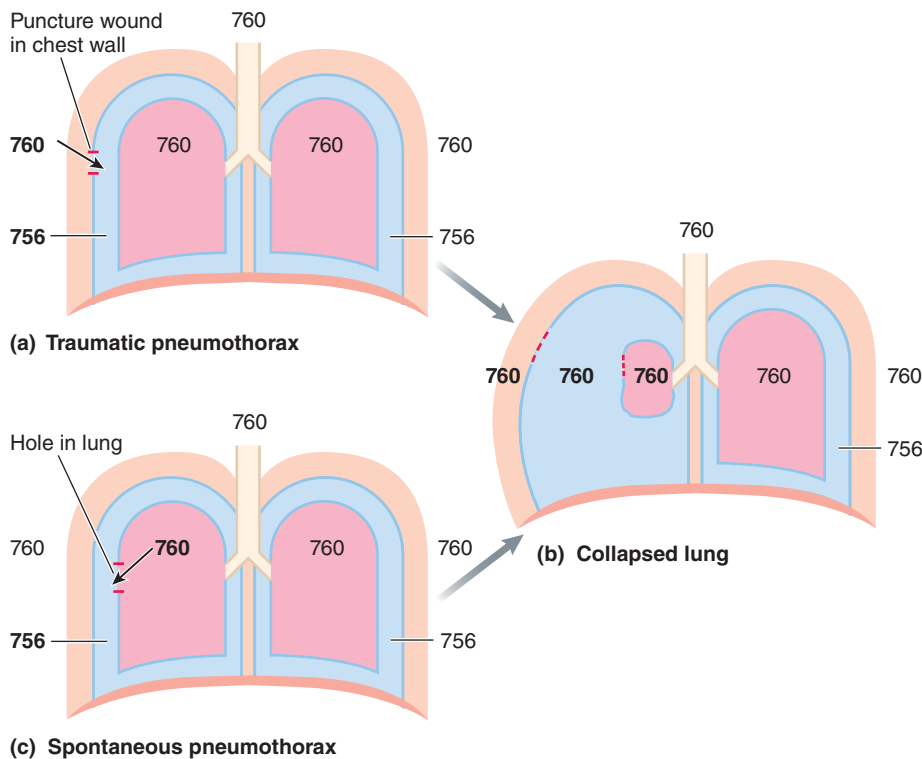
Instead, these muscles change the volume of the thoracic cavity, causing a corresponding change in lung volume because the thoracic wall and lungs are linked by the transmural pressure gradient.

Let us follow the changes that occur during one respiratory cycle—that is, one breath in (**inspiration**) and out (**expiration**).

### ONSET OF INSPIRATION: CONTRACTION OF INSPIRATORY MUSCLES

The major **inspiratory muscles**—the muscles that contract to accomplish an inspiration during quiet breathing—include the *diaphragm* and *external intercostal muscles* (● Figure 12-11). Before the beginning of inspiration, all respiratory muscles are relaxed (● Figure 12-12a). At the onset of inspiration, the inspiratory muscles are stimulated to contract, enlarging the thoracic cavity. The major inspiratory muscle is the diaphragm. The relaxed diaphragm has a dome shape that protrudes upward into the thoracic cavity. When the diaphragm contracts, it descends downward, enlarging the volume of the thoracic cavity by increasing its vertical (top-to-bottom) dimension (● Figure 12-12b). During quiet breathing, the diaphragm descends about 1 cm during inspiration, but during heavy breathing, it may descend as much as 10 cm. The abdominal wall, if relaxed, bulges outward during inspiration as the descending diaphragm pushes the abdominal contents downward and forward. Seventy-five percent of the enlargement of the thoracic cavity during quiet inspiration is accomplished by contraction of the diaphragm.





Numbers are mm Hg pressure.

● **FIGURE 12-9 Pneumothorax.** (a) In *traumatic pneumothorax*, a puncture in the chest wall permits air from the atmosphere to flow down its pressure gradient and enter the pleural cavity, abolishing the transmural pressure gradient. (b) When the transmural pressure gradient is abolished, the lung collapses to its unstretched size. (c) In *spontaneous pneumothorax*, a hole in the lung wall permits air to move down its pressure gradient and enter the pleural cavity from the lungs, abolishing the transmural pressure gradient. As with traumatic pneumothorax, the lung collapses to its unstretched size.

Two sets of **intercostal muscles** lie between the ribs (*inter* means “between”; *costa* means “rib”). The *external intercostal muscles* lie on top of the *internal intercostal muscles*. Contraction of the **external intercostal muscles**, whose fibers run downward and forward between adjacent ribs, enlarges the thoracic cavity in both the lateral (side-to-side) and the antero-posterior (front-to-back) dimensions. When the external intercostals contract, they elevate the ribs and subsequently the sternum upward and outward (● Figure 12-12b).

Before inspiration, at the end of the preceding expiration, intra-alveolar pressure is equal to atmospheric pressure, so no air is flowing into or out of the lungs (● Figure 12-13a). As the thoracic cavity enlarges during inspiration on contraction of the diaphragm and external intercostals, the lungs are also forced to expand to fill the larger thoracic cavity. As the lungs enlarge, the intra-alveolar pressure drops because the same number of air molecules now occupy a larger lung volume. In a typical inspiratory excursion, the intra-alveolar pressure drops 1 mm Hg to 759 mm Hg (● Figure 12-13b). Because the intra-alveolar pressure is now less than atmospheric pressure, air flows into the lungs down the pressure gradient from higher to lower pressure. Air continues to enter the lungs until no further gradient exists—that is, until intra-alveolar pressure equals atmospheric pressure. Thus, lung expansion is not caused by

movement of air into the lungs; instead, air flows into the lungs because of the fall in intra-alveolar pressure brought about by lung expansion.

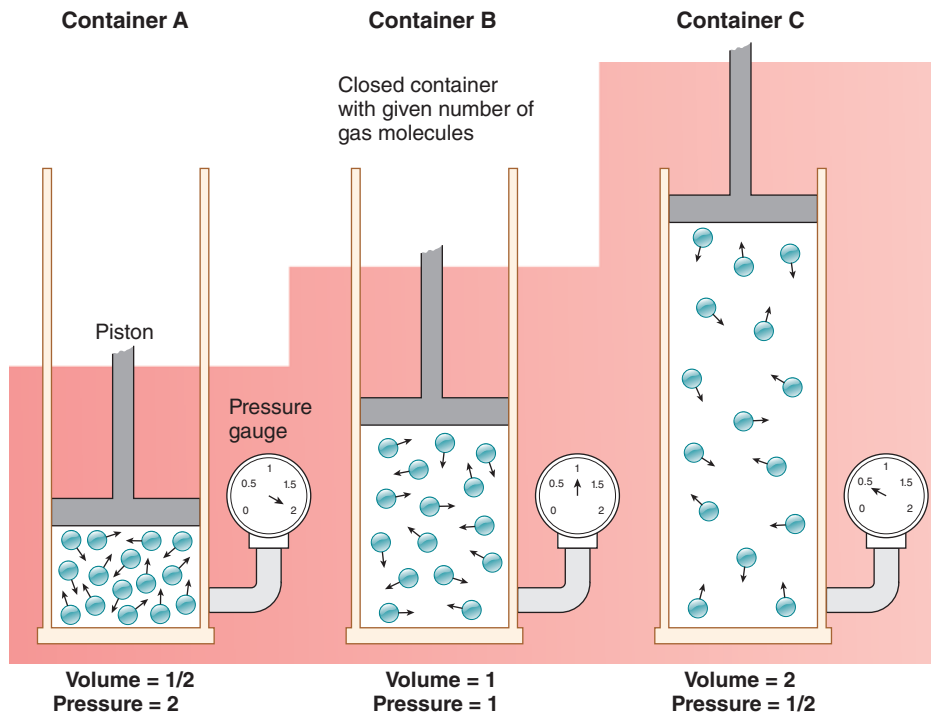
During inspiration, the intrapleural pressure falls to 754 mm Hg because the more highly stretched lungs tend to pull away a bit more from the thoracic wall.

**ROLE OF ACCESSORY INSPIRATORY MUSCLES** Deeper inspirations (more air breathed in) can be accomplished by contracting the diaphragm and external intercostal muscles more forcefully and by bringing the **accessory inspiratory muscles** into play to further enlarge the thoracic cavity. Contracting these accessory muscles, which are in the neck (see ● Figure 12-11), raises the sternum and elevates the first two ribs, enlarging the upper portion of the thoracic cavity. As the thoracic cavity increases even further in volume than under resting conditions, the lungs likewise expand more, dropping the intra-alveolar pressure further. Consequently, a larger inward flow of air occurs before equilibration with atmospheric pressure is achieved; that is, a deeper breath occurs.

**ONSET OF EXPIRATION: RELAXATION OF INSPIRATORY MUSCLES** At the end of inspiration, the inspiratory muscles relax.

The diaphragm assumes its original dome-shaped position when it relaxes. The elevated rib cage falls because of gravity when the external intercostals relax (see ● Figure 12-12c). With no forces expanding the chest wall (and accordingly, expanding the lungs), the chest wall and stretched lungs recoil to their preinspiratory size because of their elastic properties, much as a stretched balloon would on release. As the lungs recoil and become smaller in volume, the intra-alveolar pressure rises, because the greater number of air molecules contained within the larger lung volume at the end of inspiration are now compressed into a smaller volume. In a resting expiration, the intra-alveolar pressure increases about 1 mm Hg above atmospheric level to 761 mm Hg (● Figure 12-13c). Air now leaves the lungs down its pressure gradient from higher intra-alveolar pressure to lower atmospheric pressure. Outward flow of air ceases when intra-alveolar pressure becomes equal to atmospheric pressure and a pressure gradient no longer exists. ● Figure 12-14 summarizes the intra-alveolar and intrapleural pressure changes that take place during one respiratory cycle.

**FORCED EXPIRATION: CONTRACTION OF EXPIRATORY MUSCLES** During quiet breathing, expiration is normally a passive process because it is accomplished by elastic recoil of the lungs on relaxation of the inspiratory muscles, with no muscular exertion or



● **FIGURE 12-10 Boyle's law.** Each closed container has the same number of gas molecules. Given the random motion of gas molecules, the likelihood of a gas molecule striking the interior wall of the container and exerting pressure varies inversely with the volume of the container at any constant temperature. The gas in container B exerts more pressure than the same gas in larger container C but less pressure than the same gas in smaller container A. This relationship is stated as Boyle's law:  $P_1V_1 = P_2V_2$ . As the volume of a gas increases, the pressure of the gas decreases proportionately; conversely, the pressure increases proportionately as the volume decreases.

energy expenditure required. In contrast, inspiration is *always* active, because it is brought about only by contraction of inspiratory muscles at the expense of energy use. Expiration does become active to empty the lungs more completely and more rapidly than is accomplished during quiet breathing, as during the deeper breaths accompanying exercise. To force more air out, the intra-alveolar pressure must be increased even further above atmospheric pressure than can be accomplished by simple relaxation of the inspiratory muscles and elastic recoil of the lungs. To produce such a **forced, or active, expiration**, expiratory muscles must contract to further reduce the volume of the thoracic cavity and lungs (see ● Figures 12-11 and 12-12d). The most important **expiratory muscles** are (unbelievable as it may seem at first) the *muscles of the abdominal wall*. As the abdominal muscles contract, the resultant increase in intra-abdominal pressure exerts an upward force on the diaphragm, pushing it farther up into the thoracic cavity than its relaxed position, thus decreasing the vertical dimension of the thoracic cavity even more. The other expiratory muscles are the **internal intercostal muscles**, whose contraction pulls the ribs downward and inward, flattening the chest wall and further decreasing the size of the thoracic cavity; this action is just the opposite of that of the external intercostal muscles.

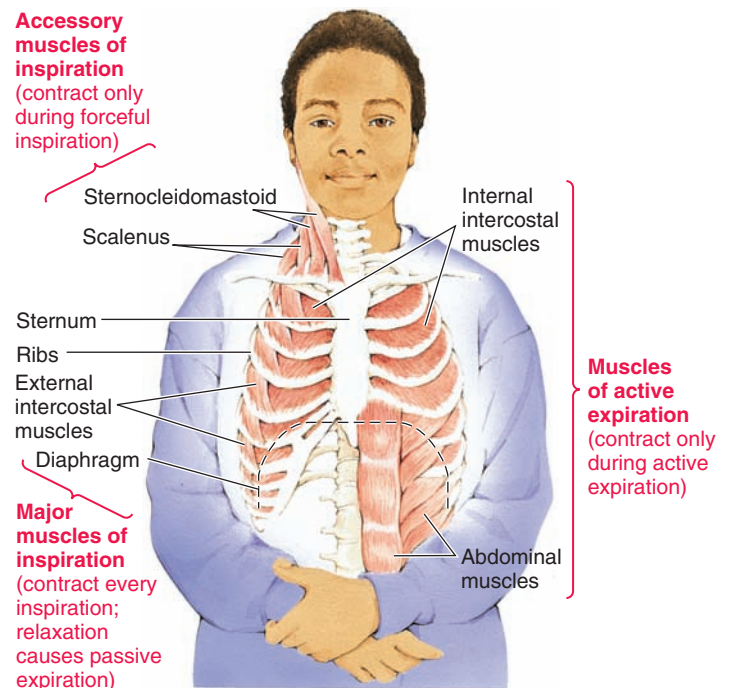
As active contraction of the expiratory muscles further reduces the volume of the thoracic cavity, the lungs also become further reduced in volume because they do not have to be

stretched as much to fill the smaller thoracic cavity; that is, they are permitted to recoil to an even smaller volume. The intra-alveolar pressure increases further as the air in the lungs is confined within this smaller volume. The differential between intra-alveolar and atmospheric pressure is even greater now than during passive expiration, so more air leaves down the pressure gradient before equilibration is achieved. In this way, the lungs are emptied more completely during forceful, active expiration than during quiet passive expiration.

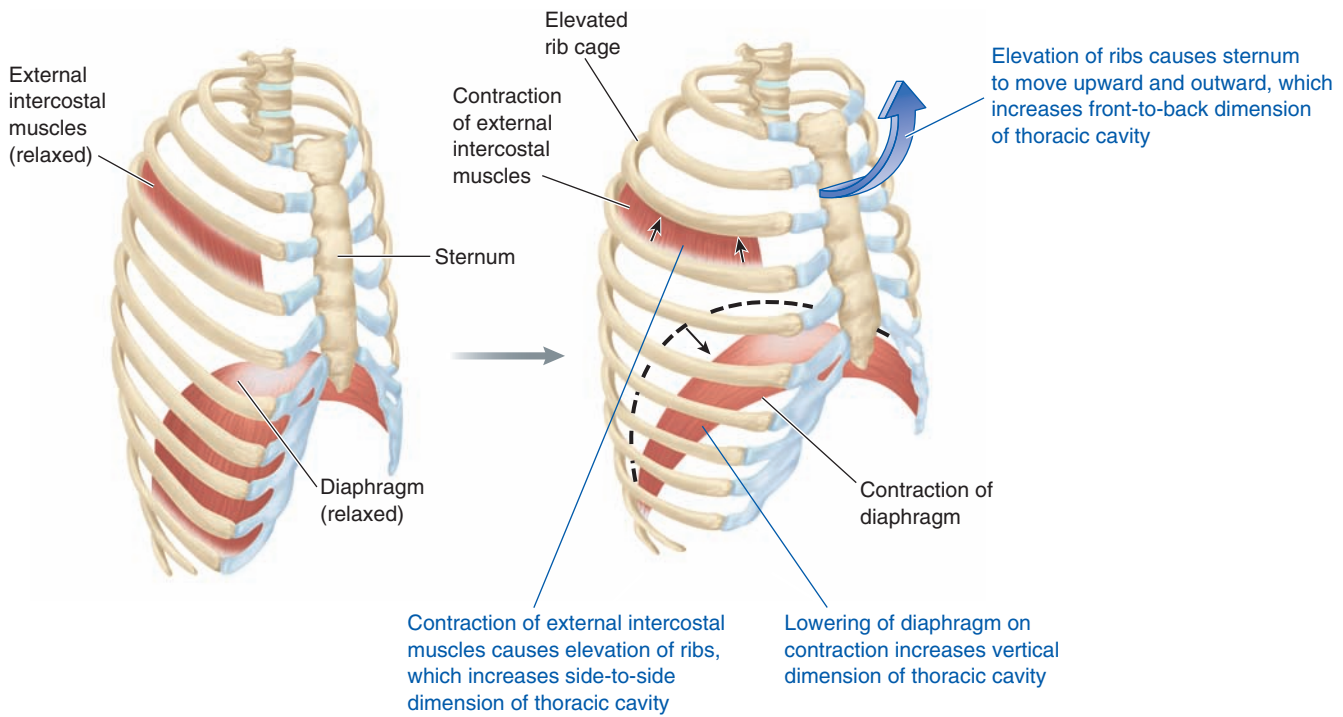
### Airway resistance influences airflow rates.

Thus far, we have discussed airflow in and out of the lungs as a function of the magnitude of the pressure gradient between the alveoli and the atmosphere. However, just as flow of blood through the blood vessels depends not only on the pressure gradient but also on the resistance to the flow offered by the vessels, so it is with airflow:

$$F = \frac{\Delta P}{R}$$



● **FIGURE 12-11 Anatomy of the respiratory muscles.**



(a) Before inspiration (b) Inspiration

● **FIGURE 12-12 Respiratory muscle activity during inspiration and expiration.** (a) Before inspiration, all respiratory muscles are relaxed. (b) During inspiration, the diaphragm descends on contraction, increasing the vertical dimension of the thoracic cavity. Contraction of the external intercostal muscles elevates the ribs and subsequently the sternum to enlarge the thoracic cavity from front to back and from side to side.

where

$$F = \text{airflow rate}$$

$\Delta P$  = difference between atmospheric and intra-alveolar pressure (pressure gradient)

$R$  = resistance of airways, determined by their radius

The primary determinant of resistance to airflow is the radius of the conducting airways. We ignored airway resistance in our preceding discussion of pressure gradient-induced airflow rates because, in a healthy respiratory system, the radius of the conducting system is large enough that resistance remains extremely low. Therefore, the pressure gradient between the alveoli and the atmosphere is usually the primary factor determining the airflow rate. Indeed, the airways normally offer such low resistance that only small pressure gradients of 1 to 2 mm Hg are needed to achieve adequate rates of airflow into and out of the lungs. (By comparison, it would take a pressure gradient 250 times greater to move air through a smoker's pipe than through the respiratory airways at the same flow rate.)

Normally, modest adjustments in airway size can be accomplished by autonomic nervous system regulation to suit the body's needs. Parasympathetic stimulation, which occurs in quiet, relaxed situations when the demand for airflow is low, promotes bronchiolar smooth muscle contraction, which increases airway resistance by producing **bronchoconstriction** (a decrease in the radius of bronchioles). In contrast, sympathetic stimulation and to

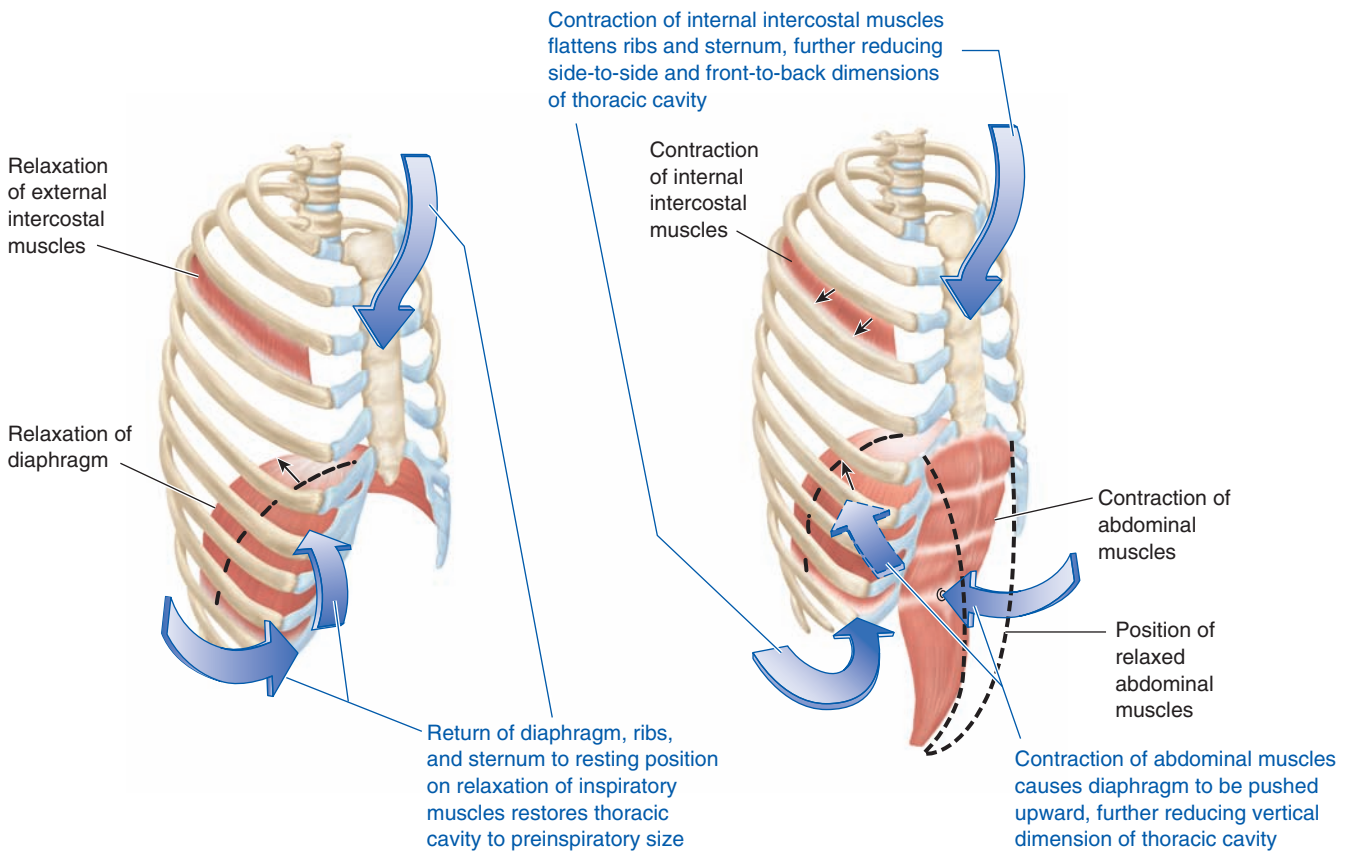
a greater extent its associated hormone, epinephrine, bring about **bronchodilation** (an increase in bronchiolar radius) and decreased airway resistance by promoting bronchiolar smooth muscle relaxation. Thus, during periods of sympathetic domination, when increased demands for  $O_2$  uptake are actually or potentially placed on the body, bronchodilation ensures that the pressure gradients established by respiratory muscle activity can achieve maximum airflow rates with minimum resistance. Because of this bronchodilator action, epinephrine or related drugs such as albuterol are useful therapeutic tools to counteract airway constriction in patients with bronchial spasms.

Resistance becomes an extremely important impediment to airflow when airway lumens become abnormally narrowed by disease. We have all transiently experienced the effect that increased airway resistance has on breathing when we have a cold. We know how difficult it is to produce an adequate airflow rate through a "stuffy nose" when the nasal passages are narrowed by swelling and mucus accumulation. More serious is chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, to which we now turn our attention.

**Airway resistance is abnormally increased with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.**



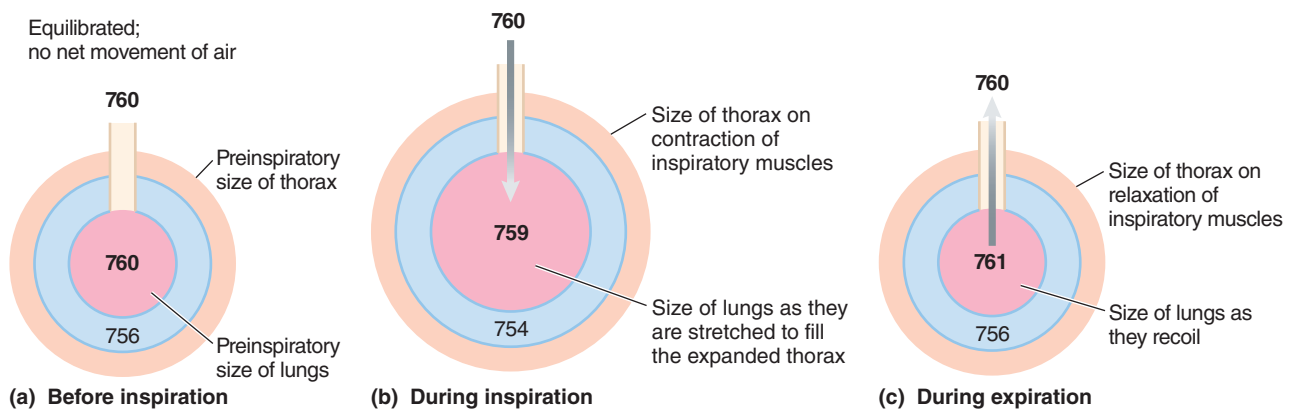
**Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)** is a group of lung diseases characterized by increased airway resistance resulting from narrowing of the lumens of the lower airways. When airway resistance



**(c) Passive expiration**

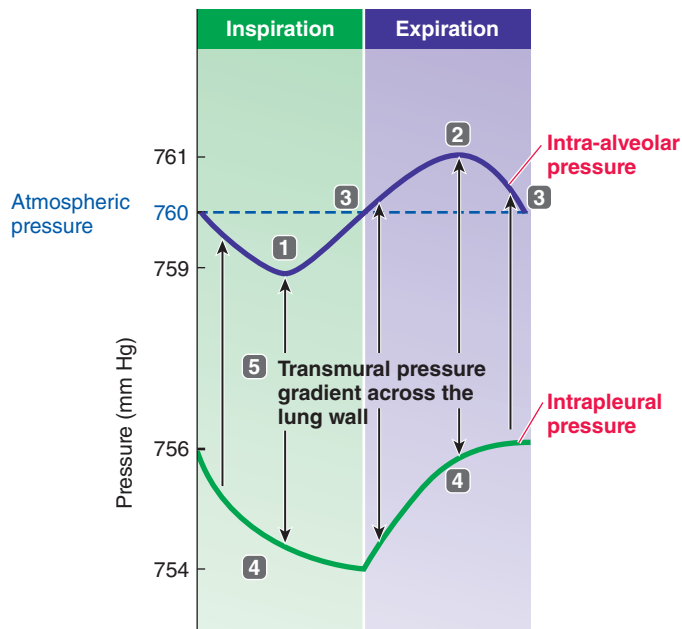
**(d) Active expiration**

● **FIGURE 12-12 (continued)** (c) During quiet passive expiration, the diaphragm relaxes, reducing the volume of the thoracic cavity from its peak inspiratory size. As the external intercostal muscles relax, the elevated rib cage falls because of gravity. This also reduces the volume of the thoracic cavity. (d) During active expiration, contraction of the abdominal muscles increases the intra-abdominal pressure, exerting an upward force on the diaphragm. This reduces the vertical dimension of the thoracic cavity further than it is reduced during quiet passive expiration. Contraction of the internal intercostal muscles decreases the front-to-back and side-to-side dimensions by flattening the ribs and sternum.



Numbers are mm Hg pressure.

● **FIGURE 12-13 Changes in lung volume and intra-alveolar pressure during inspiration and expiration.** (a) Before inspiration, at the end of the preceding expiration, intra-alveolar pressure is equilibrated with atmospheric pressure, and no air is flowing. (b) As the thorax (and thoracic cavity) and accordingly the lungs increase in volume during inspiration, the intra-alveolar pressure decreases, establishing a pressure gradient that favors the flow of air into the alveoli from the atmosphere; that is, an inspiration occurs. (c) As the lungs recoil to their preinspiratory size on relaxation of the inspiratory muscles, the intra-alveolar pressure increases, establishing a pressure gradient that favors the flow of air out of the alveoli into the atmosphere; that is, an expiration occurs.



- 1 During inspiration, intra-alveolar pressure is less than atmospheric pressure.
- 2 During expiration, intra-alveolar pressure is greater than atmospheric pressure.
- 3 At the end of both inspiration and expiration, intra-alveolar pressure is equal to atmospheric pressure because the alveoli are in direct communication with the atmosphere, and air continues to flow down its pressure gradient until the two pressures equilibrate.
- 4 Throughout the respiratory cycle, intrapleural pressure is less than intra-alveolar pressure.
- 5 Thus, a transmural pressure gradient always exists, and the lung is always stretched to some degree, even during expiration.

● **FIGURE 12-14** Intra-alveolar and intrapleural pressure changes throughout the respiratory cycle.

increases, a larger pressure gradient must be established to maintain even a normal airflow rate. For example, if resistance is doubled by narrowing of airway lumens,  $\Delta P$  must be doubled through increased respiratory muscle exertion to induce the same flow rate of air in and out of the lungs as a healthy person accomplishes during quiet breathing. Accordingly, patients with COPD must work harder to breathe.

COPD encompasses three chronic (long-term) diseases: *chronic bronchitis*, *asthma*, and *emphysema*.

**CHRONIC BRONCHITIS** *Chronic bronchitis* is a long-term inflammatory condition of the lower respiratory airways, generally triggered by frequent exposure to irritating cigarette smoke, polluted air, or allergens. In response to the chronic irritation, the airways become narrowed by prolonged edematous thickening of the airway linings, coupled with overproduction of thick mucus. Despite frequent coughing associated with the chronic irritation, the plugged mucus often cannot be satisfactorily removed, especially because the irritants immobilize the ciliary mucus escalator (see p. 339). Pulmonary bacterial infec-

tions frequently occur because the accumulated mucus is an excellent medium for bacterial growth.

**ASTHMA** In *asthma*, airway obstruction is the result of (1) thickening of airway walls, brought about by inflammation and histamine-induced edema (see p. 283 and p. 313); (2) plugging of the airways by excessive secretion of thick mucus; and (3) airway hyperresponsiveness, characterized by profound constriction of the smaller airways caused by trigger-induced spasm of the smooth muscle in the walls of these airways (see p. 335). Triggers that lead to these inflammatory changes, the exaggerated bronchoconstrictor response, or both include repeated exposure to allergens (such as dust mites or pollen), irritants (as in cigarette smoke), respiratory infections, and vigorous exercise. In severe asthmatic attacks, pronounced clogging and narrowing of the airways can cut off all airflow, leading to death. An estimated 15 million people in the United States have asthma, with the number steadily climbing. Asthma is the most common chronic childhood disease.

**EMPHYSEMA** *Emphysema* is characterized by (1) collapse of the smaller airways and (2) breakdown of alveolar walls. This irreversible condition can arise in two ways. Most commonly, emphysema results from excessive release of protein-digesting enzymes such as *trypsin* from alveolar macrophages as a defense mechanism in response to chronic exposure to inhaled cigarette smoke or other irritants. The lungs are normally protected from damage by these enzymes by  $\alpha_1$ -*antitrypsin*, a protein that inhibits trypsin. Excessive secretion of these destructive enzymes in response to chronic irritation, however, can overwhelm the protective capability of  $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin so that these enzymes destroy not only foreign materials but lung tissue as well. Loss of lung tissue leads to the breakdown of alveolar walls and collapse of small airways, which characterize emphysema.

Less frequently, emphysema arises from a genetic inability to produce  $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin so that the lung tissue has no protection from trypsin. The unprotected lung tissue gradually disintegrates under the influence of even small amounts of macrophage-released enzymes, in the absence of chronic exposure to inhaled irritants.

**DIFFICULTY IN EXPIRING** When COPD of any type increases airway resistance, expiration is more difficult than inspiration. The smaller airways, lacking the cartilaginous rings that hold the larger airways open, are kept open by the same transmural pressure gradient that distends the alveoli. Expansion of the thoracic cavity during inspiration indirectly dilates the airways even further than their expiratory dimensions, like alveolar expansion, so airway resistance is lower during inspiration than during expiration. In a healthy individual, the airway resistance is always so low that the slight variation between inspiration and expiration is not noticeable. When airway resistance has substantially increased, however, as during an asthmatic attack, the difference is quite noticeable. Thus, a person with asthma has more difficulty expiring than inspiring, giving rise to the characteristic “wheeze” as air is forced out through the narrowed airways.

## Elastic behavior of the lungs is a result of elastic connective tissue and alveolar surface tension.

During the respiratory cycle, the lungs alternately expand during inspiration and recoil during expiration. What properties of the lungs enable them to behave like balloons, being stretchable and then snapping back to their resting position when the stretching forces are removed? Two interrelated concepts are involved in pulmonary elasticity: compliance and elastic recoil.

The term **compliance** refers to how much effort is required to stretch or distend the lungs and is analogous to how easy or hard it is to blow up a balloon. (By comparison, 100 times more distending pressure is required to inflate a toy balloon than to inflate the lungs.) Specifically, compliance is a measure of how much change in lung volume results from a given change in the transmural pressure gradient, the force that stretches the lungs. A highly compliant lung stretches further for a given increase in the pressure difference than a less compliant lung does. Stated another way, the lower the compliance of the lungs, the larger the transmural pressure gradient that must be created during inspiration to produce normal lung expansion. In turn, a greater-than-normal transmural pressure gradient during inspiration can be achieved only by making the intrapleural pressure more subatmospheric than usual. This is accomplished by greater expansion of the thoracic cavity through more vigorous contraction of the inspiratory muscles. Therefore, the less compliant the lungs are, the more work is required to produce a given degree of inflation. A poorly compliant lung is referred to as a “stiff” lung because it lacks normal stretchability.



Respiratory compliance can be decreased by several factors, as in *pulmonary fibrosis*, where normal lung tissue is replaced with scar-forming fibrous connective tissue as a result of chronically breathing in asbestos fibers or similar irritants.

The term **elastic recoil** refers to how readily the lungs rebound after having been stretched. It is responsible for the lungs returning to their preinspiratory volume when the inspiratory muscles relax at the end of inspiration.

Pulmonary elastic behavior depends mainly on two factors: *highly elastic connective tissue* in the lungs and *alveolar surface tension*. Pulmonary connective tissue contains large quantities of stretchy elastin fibers (see ● Figure 12-4a, p. 348; also see p. 48). An even more important factor influencing elastic behavior of the lungs is the **alveolar surface tension** displayed by the thin liquid film that lines each alveolus. At an air–water interface, the water molecules at the surface are more strongly attracted to other surrounding water molecules than to the air above the surface. This unequal attraction produces a force known as *surface tension* at the surface of the liquid. Surface tension has a twofold effect. First, the liquid layer resists any force that increases its surface area; that is, it opposes expansion of the alveolus because the surface water molecules oppose being pulled apart. Accordingly, the greater the surface tension, the less compliant the lungs. Second, the liquid surface area tends to shrink as small as possible because the surface water molecules, being preferentially attracted to one another, try to get as close together as possible. Thus, the

surface tension of the liquid lining an alveolus tends to reduce alveolus size, squeezing in on the air inside. This property, along with the rebound of the stretched elastin fibers, produces the lungs’ elastic recoil back to their preinspiratory size when inspiration is over.

## Pulmonary surfactant decreases surface tension and contributes to lung stability.

The cohesive forces between water molecules are so strong that if the alveoli were lined with water alone, surface tension would be so great that the lungs would collapse. The recoil force attributable to the elastin fibers and high surface tension would exceed the opposing stretching force of the transmural pressure gradient. Furthermore, the lungs would be poorly compliant, so exhausting muscular efforts would be required to accomplish stretching and inflation of the alveoli. The tremendous surface tension of pure water is normally counteracted by pulmonary surfactant.

**PULMONARY SURFACTANT** **Pulmonary surfactant** is a complex mixture of lipids and proteins secreted by the Type II alveolar cells (see ● Figure 12-4a, p. 348). It intersperses between the water molecules in the fluid lining the alveoli and lowers alveolar surface tension, because the cohesive force between a water molecule and an adjacent pulmonary surfactant molecule is very low. By lowering alveolar surface tension, pulmonary surfactant provides two important benefits: (1) it increases pulmonary compliance, reducing the work of inflating the lungs, and (2) it reduces the lungs’ tendency to recoil so that they do not collapse as readily.

The opposing forces acting on the lung (that is, the forces keeping the alveoli open and the countering forces that promote alveolar collapse) are summarized in ▲ Table 12-1.



**NEWBORN RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME** Developing fetal lungs normally cannot synthesize pulmonary surfactant until late in pregnancy. Especially in an infant born prematurely, not enough pulmonary surfactant may be produced to reduce the alveolar surface tension to manageable levels. The resulting collection of symptoms is termed **newborn respiratory distress syndrome**. The infant must make strenuous inspiratory efforts to overcome the high surface tension in an attempt to inflate the poorly compliant

## ▲ Table 12-1 Opposing Forces Acting on the Lung

Forces Keeping the Alveoli Open	Forces Promoting Alveolar Collapse
Transmural pressure gradient	Elasticity of stretched pulmonary elastin connective tissue fibers
Pulmonary surfactant (which opposes alveolar surface tension)	Alveolar surface tension

lungs. Moreover, the work of breathing is further increased because the alveoli, in the absence of surfactant, tend to collapse almost completely during each expiration. It is more difficult (requires a greater transmural pressure differential) to expand a collapsed alveolus by a given volume than to increase an already partially expanded alveolus by the same volume. The situation is analogous to blowing up a new balloon. It takes more effort to blow in that first breath of air when starting to blow up a new balloon than to blow additional breaths into the already partially expanded balloon. With newborn respiratory distress syndrome, it is as though with every breath the infant must start blowing up a new balloon. Lung expansion may require transmural pressure gradients of 20 to 30 mm Hg (compared to the normal 4 to 6 mm Hg) to overcome the tendency of surfactant-deprived alveoli to collapse. Worse yet, the newborn's muscles are still weak. The respiratory distress from surfactant deficiency may soon lead to death if breathing efforts become exhausting or inadequate to support sufficient gas exchange.

This life-threatening condition affects 30,000 to 50,000 newborns, primarily premature infants, each year in the United States. Until the surfactant-secreting cells mature sufficiently, the condition is treated by surfactant replacement. In addition, drugs can hasten the maturation process.

### The lungs normally operate about “half full.”

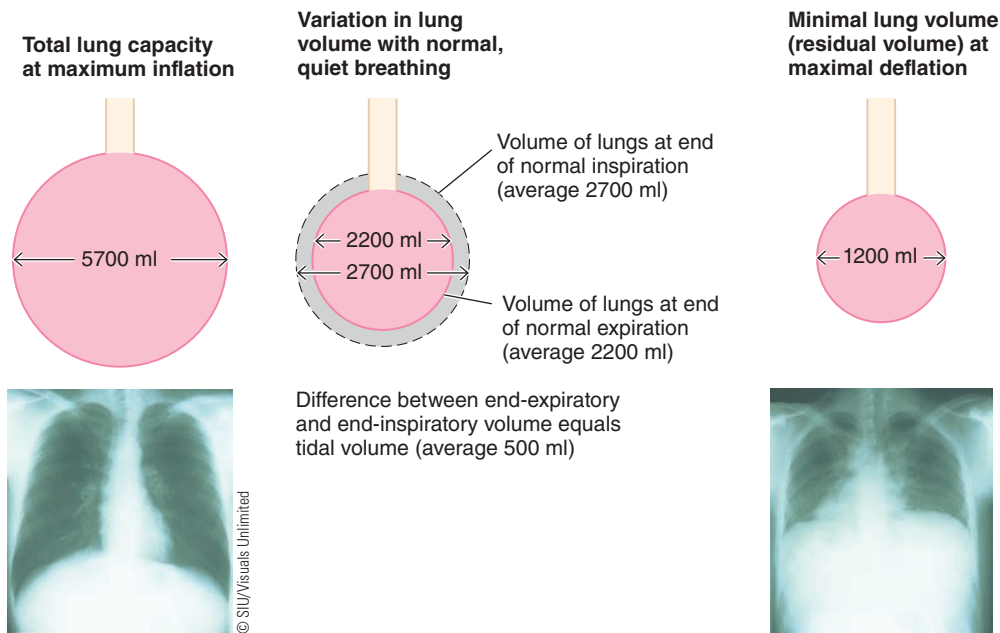
On average, in healthy young adults, the maximum air that the lungs can hold is about 5.7 liters in males (4.2 liters in females). Anatomic build, age, the distensibility of the lungs, and the presence or absence of respiratory disease affect this total lung capacity. Normally, during quiet breathing, the lungs are nowhere near maximally inflated, nor are they deflated to their minimum volume. Thus, the lungs normally remain moderately inflated throughout the respiratory cycle. At the end of a normal quiet expiration, the lungs still contain about 2200 ml of air. During each typical breath under resting conditions, about 500 ml of air are inspired and the same quantity is expired, so during quiet breathing the lung volume varies from 2200 ml at the end of expiration to 2700 ml at the end of inspiration (● Figure 12-15a). During maximal expiration, lung volume can decrease to 1200 ml in males (1000 ml in females), but the lungs can never be completely deflated because the small airways collapse during forced expirations at low lung volumes, blocking further outflow.

A beneficial outcome of not being able to empty the lungs completely is that even during maximal expiratory efforts gas exchange can continue between the blood flowing through the lungs and the remaining alveolar air. As a result, the gas content of the blood leaving the lungs for delivery to the tissues normally remains remarkably constant throughout the respiratory cycle. By contrast, if the lungs completely filled and emptied with each breath, the amount of  $O_2$  taken up and  $CO_2$  dumped off by the blood would fluctuate widely. Another advantage of the lungs not completely emptying with each breath is the reduced work of breathing. Recall that it takes less effort to inflate a partially inflated alveolus than a totally collapsed one.

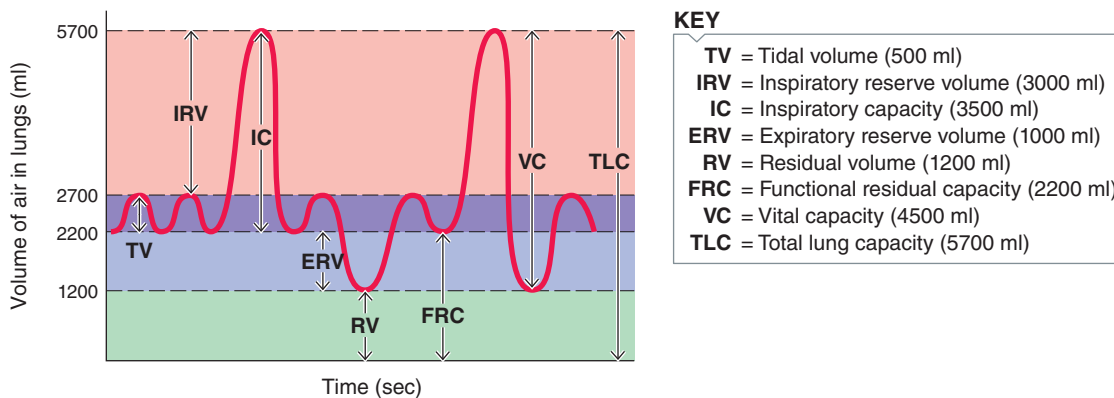
The changes in lung volume that occur with different respiratory efforts can be determined by a spirometer. A traditional wet **spirometer** consists of an air-filled drum floating in a water-filled chamber. As the person breathes air in and out of the drum through a tube connecting the mouth to the air chamber, the drum rises and falls in the water chamber. This rise and fall can be recorded as a **spirogram**, which is calibrated to volume changes. Inspiration is recorded as an upward deflection and expiration as a downward deflection. Today, less cumbersome computerized spirometers have replaced the wet spirometer for clinical use, but the principles of the lung volumes and capacities determined by the older instrument are the same, as follows:

**LUNG VOLUMES AND CAPACITIES** ● Figure 12-15b is a hypothetical example of a spirogram in a healthy young adult male. Generally, the values are lower for females. The following lung volumes and lung capacities (a lung capacity is the sum of two or more lung volumes) can be determined:

- **Tidal volume (TV).** The volume of air entering or leaving the lungs during a single breath. Average value under resting conditions = 500 ml.
- **Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV).** The extra volume of air that can be maximally inspired over and above the typical resting tidal volume. The IRV is accomplished by maximal contraction of the diaphragm, external intercostal muscles, and accessory inspiratory muscles. Average value = 3000 ml.
- **Inspiratory capacity (IC).** The maximum volume of air that can be inspired at the end of a normal quiet expiration ( $IC = IRV + TV$ ). Average value = 3500 ml.
- **Expiratory reserve volume (ERV).** The extra volume of air that can be actively expired by maximally contracting the expiratory muscles beyond that normally passively expired at the end of a typical resting tidal volume. Average value = 1000 ml.
- **Residual volume (RV).** The minimum volume of air remaining in the lungs even after a maximal expiration. Average value = 1200 ml. The residual volume cannot be measured directly with a spirometer, because this volume of air does not move into and out of the lungs. It can be determined indirectly, however, through gas-dilution techniques involving inspiration of a known quantity of a harmless tracer gas such as helium.
- **Functional residual capacity (FRC).** The volume of air in the lungs at the end of a normal passive expiration ( $FRC = ERV + RV$ ). Average value = 2200 ml.
- **Vital capacity (VC).** The maximum volume of air that can be moved out during a single breath following a maximal inspiration. The subject first inspires maximally and then expires maximally ( $VC = IRV + TV + ERV$ ). The VC represents the maximum volume change possible within the lungs. It is rarely used, because the maximal muscle contractions involved become exhausting, but it is valuable in determining the functional capacity of the lungs. Average value = 4500 ml.



(a) Normal range and extremes of lung volume in a healthy young adult male



(b) Normal spirogram of a healthy young adult male

● **FIGURE 12-15 Variations in lung volume in a healthy young adult male.** Values for females are somewhat lower. (Note that residual volume cannot be measured with a spirometer but must be determined by another means.)

■ **Total lung capacity (TLC).** The maximum volume of air that the lungs can hold ( $TLC = VC + RV$ ). Average value = 5700 ml.

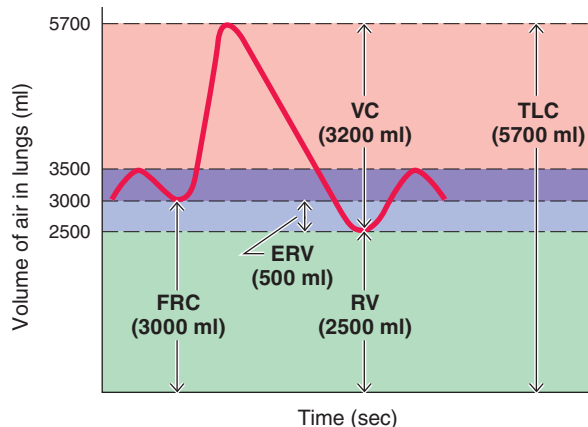
■ **Forced expiratory volume in 1 second ( $FEV_1$ ).** The volume of air that can be expired during the first second of expiration in a VC determination. Usually,  $FEV_1$  is about 80% of VC; that is, normally 80% of the air that can be forcibly expired from maximally inflated lungs can be expired within 1 second. This measurement indicates the maximal airflow rate possible from the lungs.



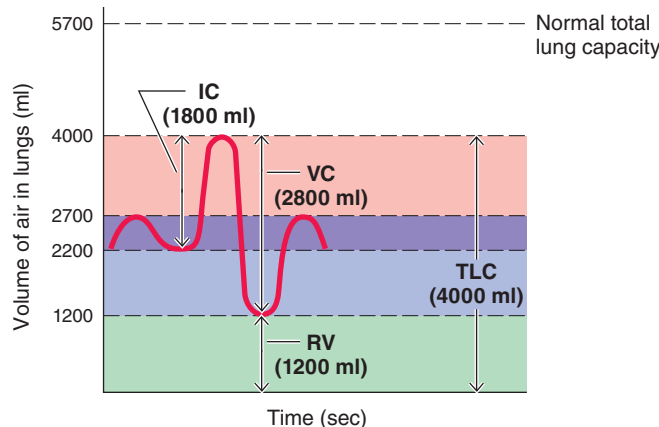
**RESPIRATORY DYSFUNCTION** Two general categories of respiratory dysfunction yield abnormal results during spirometry—*obstructive lung disease* (difficulty in emptying the lungs) and *restrictive lung disease* (difficulty in filling the lungs) (● Figure 12-16). However, these are

not the only categories of respiratory dysfunction, nor is spirometry the only pulmonary function test. Other conditions affecting respiratory function include (1) diseases impairing diffusion of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  across the pulmonary membranes; (2) reduced ventilation because of mechanical failure, as with neuromuscular disorders affecting the respiratory muscles; (3) inadequate perfusion (failure of adequate pulmonary blood flow); or (4) ventilation–perfusion imbalances involving a poor matching of air and blood so that efficient gas exchange cannot occur. Some lung diseases are actually a complex mixture of different types of functional disturbances. To determine what abnormalities are present, the diagnostician relies on a variety of pulmonary function tests in addition to spirometry, including X-ray examination, blood-gas determinations, and tests to measure the diffusion capacity of the alveolar capillary membrane.





(a) Spirogram in obstructive lung disease



(b) Spirogram in restrictive lung disease

● **FIGURE 12-16 Abnormal spiromgrams associated with obstructive and restrictive lung diseases.** (a) Because a patient with obstructive lung disease has more difficulty emptying the lungs than filling them, the total lung capacity (TLC) is essentially normal, but the functional residual capacity (FRC) and the residual volume (RV) are elevated due to additional air trapped in the lungs following expiration. Another common finding is a markedly reduced forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV<sub>1</sub>) because the airflow rate is reduced by the airway obstruction. (b) In restrictive lung disease, the lungs are less compliant than normal. TLC, inspiratory capacity (IC) and vital capacity (VC) are reduced because the lungs cannot be expanded as normal.

### Alveolar ventilation is less than pulmonary ventilation because of dead space.

Various changes in lung volume represent only one factor in determining **pulmonary ventilation**, which is the volume of air breathed in and out in 1 minute. The other important factor is **respiratory rate**, which averages 12 breaths per minute:

$$\text{Pulmonary ventilation} = \text{tidal volume} \times \text{respiratory rate}$$

(ml/min)                      (ml/breath)                      (breaths/min)

At an average tidal volume of 500 ml/breath and a respiratory rate of 12 breaths/min, pulmonary ventilation is 6000 ml, or 6 L, of air breathed in and out in 1 minute under resting conditions. For a brief period, a healthy young adult male can voluntarily increase his total pulmonary ventilation 25-fold, to 150 L/min. To increase pulmonary ventilation, both tidal volume and respiratory rate increase, but depth of breathing increases more than frequency of breathing. It is usually more advantageous to have a greater increase in tidal volume than in respiratory rate because of anatomic dead space, discussed next.

**ANATOMIC DEAD SPACE** Not all the inspired air gets down to the site of gas exchange in the alveoli. Part remains in the conducting airways, where it is not available for gas exchange. The volume of the conducting passages in an adult averages about 150 ml. This volume is considered **anatomic dead space** because air within these conducting airways is useless for exchange. Anatomic dead space greatly affects the efficiency of pulmonary ventilation. In effect, even though 500 ml of air are moved in and out with each breath, only 350 ml are actually exchanged between the atmosphere and the alveoli because of the 150 ml occupying the anatomic dead space.

Looking at ● Figure 12-17, note that at the end of inspiration the respiratory airways are filled with 150 ml of fresh atmospheric

air from the inspiration. During the subsequent expiration, 500 ml of air are expired to the atmosphere. The first 150 ml expired are the fresh air that was retained in the airways and never used. The remaining 350 ml expired are “old” alveolar air that has participated in gas exchange with the blood. During the same expiration, 500 ml of gas also leave the alveoli. The first 350 ml are expired to the atmosphere; the other 150 ml of old alveolar air never reach the outside but remain in the conducting airways.

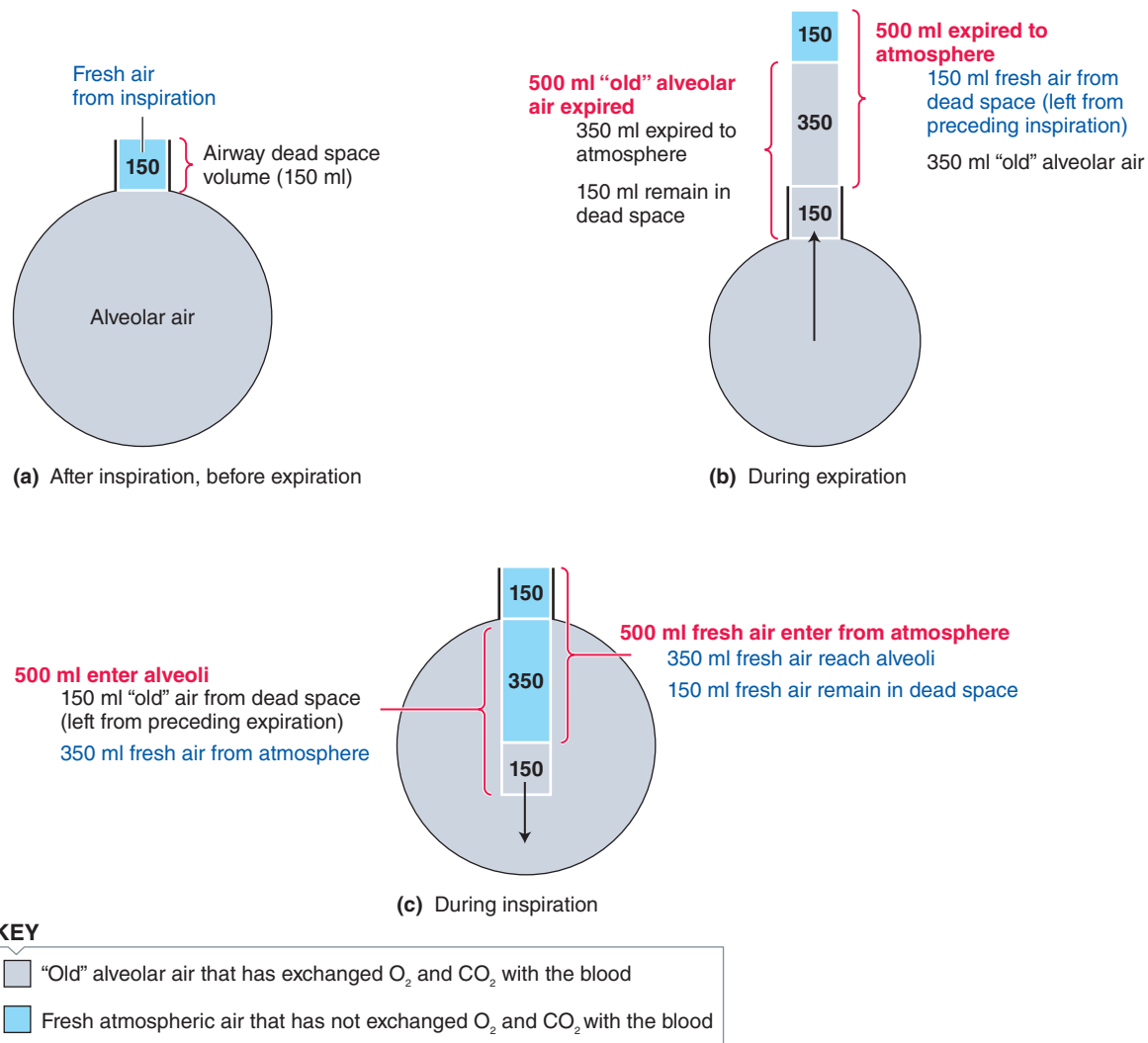
On the next inspiration, 500 ml of gas enter the alveoli. The first 150 ml to enter the alveoli are the old alveolar air that remained in the dead space during the preceding expiration. The other 350 ml entering the alveoli are fresh air inspired from the atmosphere. Simultaneously, 500 ml of air enter from the atmosphere. The first 350 ml of atmospheric air reach the alveoli; the other 150 ml remain in the conducting airways to be expired without benefit of being exchanged with the blood, as the cycle repeats itself.

**ALVEOLAR VENTILATION** Because the amount of atmospheric air that reaches the alveoli and is actually available for exchange with blood is more important than the total amount breathed in and out, **alveolar ventilation**—the volume of air exchanged between the atmosphere and the alveoli per minute—is more important than pulmonary ventilation. In determining alveolar ventilation, the amount of wasted air moved in and out through the anatomic dead space must be taken into account, as follows:

$$\text{Alveolar ventilation} = (\text{tidal volume} - \text{dead space volume}) \times \text{respiratory rate}$$

With average resting values,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Alveolar ventilation} &= (500 \text{ ml/breath} - 150 \text{ ml dead space volume}) \times 12 \text{ breaths/min} \\ &= 4200 \text{ ml/min} \end{aligned}$$



● **FIGURE 12-17** Effect of dead space volume on exchange of tidal volume between the atmosphere and the alveoli. Even though 500 ml of air move in and out between the atmosphere and the respiratory system and 500 ml move in and out of the alveoli with each breath, only 350 ml are actually exchanged between the atmosphere and the alveoli because of the anatomic dead space (the volume of air in the respiratory airways).

### ▲ Table 12-2 Effect of Different Breathing Patterns on Alveolar Ventilation

Breathing Pattern	Tidal Volume (ml/breath)	Respiratory Rate (breaths/min)	Dead Space Volume (ml)	Pulmonary Ventilation (ml/min)*	Alveolar Ventilation (ml/min)**
Quiet breathing at rest	500	12	150	6000	4200
Deep, slow breathing	1200	5	150	6000	5250
Shallow, rapid breathing	150	40	150	6000	0

\*Equals tidal volume  $\times$  respiratory rate.

\*\*Equals (tidal volume – dead space volume)  $\times$  respiratory rate.

Thus, with quiet breathing, alveolar ventilation is 4200 ml/min, whereas pulmonary ventilation is 6000 ml/min.

**EFFECT OF BREATHING PATTERNS ON ALVEOLAR VENTILATION**  
To understand how important dead space volume is in deter-

mining the magnitude of alveolar ventilation, examine the effect of various breathing patterns on alveolar ventilation, as shown in ▲ Table 12-2. If a person deliberately breathes deeply (for example, a tidal volume of 1200 ml) and slowly (for example, a respiratory rate of 5 breaths/min), pulmonary ventilation

is 6000 ml/min, the same as during quiet breathing at rest, but alveolar ventilation increases to 5250 ml/min compared to the resting rate of 4200 ml/min. In contrast, if a person deliberately breathes shallowly (for example, a tidal volume of 150 ml) and rapidly (a frequency of 40 breaths/min), pulmonary ventilation would still be 6000 ml/min; however, alveolar ventilation would be 0 ml/min. In effect, the person would only be drawing air in and out of the anatomic dead space without any atmospheric air being exchanged with the alveoli, where it could be useful. The individual could voluntarily maintain such a breathing pattern for only a few minutes before losing consciousness, at which time normal breathing would resume.

The value of reflexly bringing about a larger increase in depth of breathing than in rate of breathing when pulmonary ventilation increases during exercise should now be apparent. It is the most efficient means of elevating alveolar ventilation. When tidal volume increases, the entire increase goes toward elevating alveolar ventilation, whereas an increase in respiratory rate does not go entirely toward increasing alveolar ventilation. When respiratory rate increases, the frequency with which air is wasted in the dead space also increases, because a portion of *each breath* must move in and out of the dead space. As needs vary, ventilation is normally adjusted to a tidal volume and respiratory rate that meet those needs most efficiently in terms of energy cost.

We have now completed our discussion of respiratory mechanics—all the factors involved in ventilation. We next examine gas exchange between the alveolar air and the blood and then between the blood and the systemic tissues.

## Gas Exchange

The purpose of breathing is to provide a continual supply of fresh  $O_2$  for pickup by the blood and to constantly remove  $CO_2$  unloaded from the blood. Blood acts as a transport system for  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  between the lungs and the tissues, with the tissue cells extracting  $O_2$  from the blood and eliminating  $CO_2$  into it.

### Gases move down partial pressure gradients.

Gas exchange at both the pulmonary capillary and the tissue capillary levels involves simple passive diffusion of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  down *partial pressure gradients*. No active transport mechanisms exist for these gases. Let us see what partial pressure gradients are and how they are established.

**PARTIAL PRESSURES** Atmospheric air is a mixture of gases; typical dry air contains about 79% nitrogen ( $N_2$ ) and 21%  $O_2$ , with almost negligible percentages of  $CO_2$ ,  $H_2O$  vapor, other gases, and pollutants. Altogether, these gases exert a total atmospheric pressure of 760 mm Hg at sea level. This total pressure is equal to the sum of the pressures that each gas in the mixture partially contributes. The pressure exerted by a particular gas is directly proportional to the percentage of that gas in the total air mixture. Every gas molecule, no matter what its size, exerts the same amount of pressure; for example, a  $N_2$  molecule exerts the same pressure as an  $O_2$  molecule. Because 79% of the air consists of  $N_2$  molecules, 79% of the 760 mm Hg atmospheric pressure, or

600 mm Hg, is exerted by the  $N_2$  molecules. Similarly, because  $O_2$  represents 21% of the atmosphere, 21% of the 760 mm Hg atmospheric pressure, or 160 mm Hg, is exerted by  $O_2$  (● Figure 12-18). The individual pressure exerted independently by a particular gas within a mixture of gases is known as its **partial pressure**, designated by  $P_{\text{gas}}$ . Thus, the partial pressure of  $O_2$  in atmospheric air,  $P_{O_2}$ , is normally 160 mm Hg. The atmospheric partial pressure of  $CO_2$ ,  $P_{CO_2}$ , is negligible at 0.23 mm Hg.

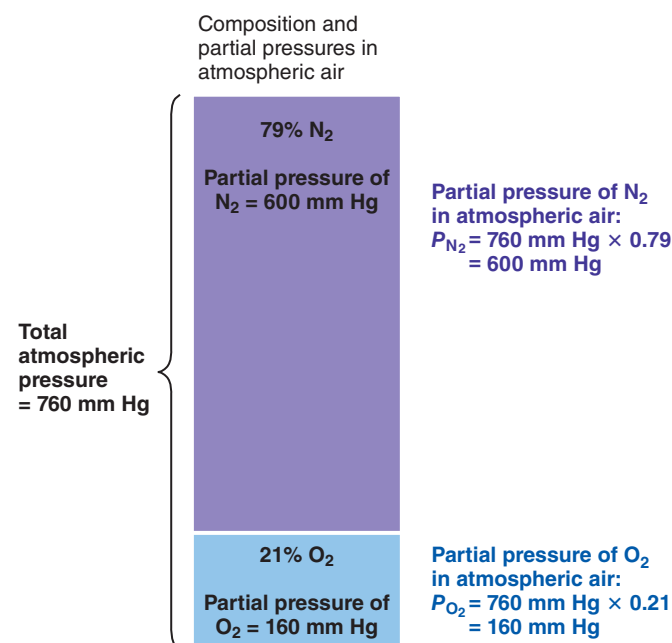
Gases dissolved in a liquid such as blood or another body fluid also exert a partial pressure. The greater the partial pressure of a gas in a liquid is, the more of that gas is dissolved.

**PARTIAL PRESSURE GRADIENTS** A difference in partial pressure between the capillary blood and the surrounding structures is known as a **partial pressure gradient**. Partial pressure gradients exist between the alveolar air and the pulmonary capillary blood. Similarly, partial pressure gradients exist between the systemic capillary blood and the surrounding tissues. A gas always diffuses down its partial pressure gradient from the area of higher partial pressure to the area of lower partial pressure, similar to diffusion down a concentration gradient.

### Oxygen enters and $CO_2$ leaves the blood in the lungs passively down partial pressure gradients.

We first consider the magnitude of alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  and then look at the partial pressure gradients that move these two gases between the alveoli and the incoming pulmonary capillary blood.

**ALVEOLAR  $P_{O_2}$  AND  $P_{CO_2}$**  Alveolar air is not of the same composition as inspired atmospheric air, for two reasons. First, as soon as atmospheric air enters the respiratory passages, exposure to



● **FIGURE 12-18** Concept of partial pressures. The partial pressure exerted by each gas in a mixture equals the total pressure times the fractional composition of the gas in the mixture.

the moist airways saturates it with  $H_2O$ . Like any other gas, water vapor exerts a partial pressure. Humidification of inspired air in effect “dilutes” the partial pressure of the inspired gases, because the sum of the partial pressures must total the atmospheric pressure. Second, alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  is also lower than atmospheric  $P_{O_2}$  because fresh inspired air (average volume equals 350 ml out of the tidal volume of 500 ml) is mixed with the large volume of old air that remained in the lungs at the end of the preceding expiration (average volume equals 2200 ml; the functional residual capacity). At the end of inspiration, only about 13% of the air in the alveoli is fresh air. As a result of humidification and the small turnover of alveolar air, the average alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  is 100 mm Hg, compared to the atmospheric  $P_{O_2}$  of 160 mm Hg.

It is logical to think that alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  would increase during inspiration with the arrival of fresh air and would decrease during expiration. Only small fluctuations occur, however, for two reasons. First, only a small proportion of the total alveolar air is exchanged with each breath. The relatively small volume of inspired, high- $P_{O_2}$  air is quickly mixed with the larger volume of retained alveolar air, which has a lower  $P_{O_2}$ . Thus, the  $O_2$  in the inspired air can only slightly elevate the level of the total alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ . Even this potentially small elevation of  $P_{O_2}$  is diminished for another reason. Oxygen is continually moving by passive diffusion down its partial pressure gradient from the alveoli into the blood. The  $O_2$  arriving in the alveoli in the newly inspired air simply replaces the  $O_2$  diffusing out of the alveoli into the pulmonary capillaries. Therefore, alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  remains relatively constant around 100 mm Hg throughout the respiratory cycle. Because pulmonary blood  $P_{O_2}$  equilibrates with alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ , the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood leaving the lungs likewise remains fairly constant at this same value. Accordingly, the amount of  $O_2$  in the blood available to the tissues varies only slightly during the respiratory cycle.

A similar situation exists in reverse for  $CO_2$ . Carbon dioxide, which is continuously produced by the body tissues as a metabolic waste product, is constantly added to the blood at the level of the systemic capillaries. In the pulmonary capillaries,  $CO_2$  diffuses down its partial pressure gradient from the blood into the alveoli and is subsequently removed from the body during expiration. As with  $O_2$ , alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  remains fairly constant throughout the respiratory cycle but at a lower value of 40 mm Hg.

### $P_{O_2}$ AND $P_{CO_2}$ GRADIENTS ACROSS THE PULMONARY CAPILLARIES

As blood passes through the lungs, it picks up  $O_2$  and gives up  $CO_2$  simply by diffusion down partial pressure gradients between blood and alveoli. Ventilation constantly replenishes alveolar  $O_2$  and removes  $CO_2$ , thus maintaining the appropriate gradients to ensure this diffusion. Blood entering the pulmonary capillaries is systemic venous blood pumped to the lungs through the pulmonary arteries. This blood, having just returned from the body tissues, is relatively low in  $O_2$ , with a  $P_{O_2}$  of 40 mm Hg, and is relatively high in  $CO_2$ , with a  $P_{CO_2}$  of 46 mm Hg. As this blood flows through the pulmonary capillaries, it is exposed to alveolar air (● Figure 12-19). Because the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  at 100 mm Hg is higher than the  $P_{O_2}$  of 40 mm Hg

in the blood entering the lungs,  $O_2$  diffuses down its partial pressure gradient from the alveoli into the blood until no further gradient exists. As blood leaves the pulmonary capillaries, it has a  $P_{O_2}$  equal to alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  at 100 mm Hg.

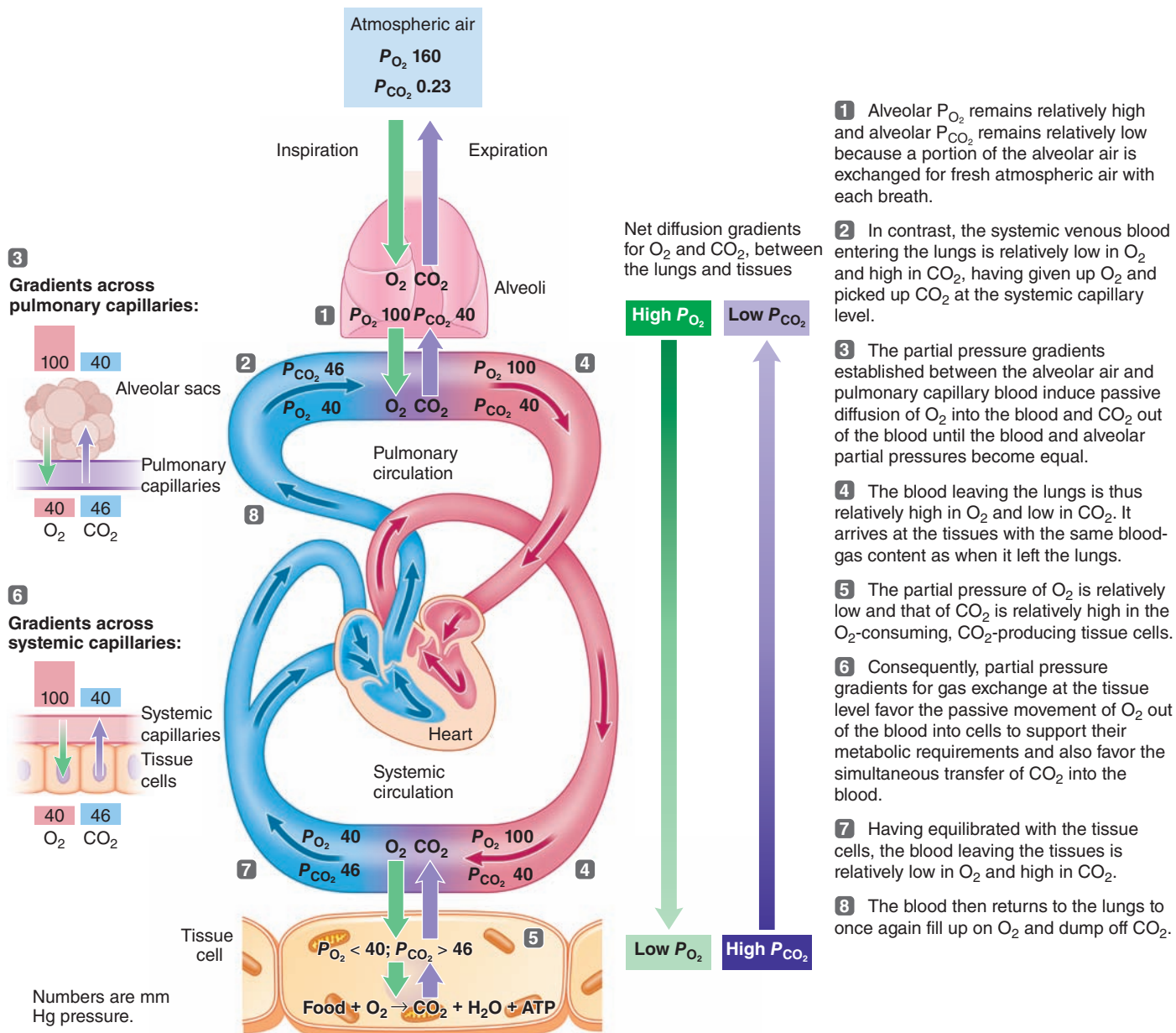
The partial pressure gradient for  $CO_2$  is in the opposite direction. Blood entering the pulmonary capillaries has a  $P_{CO_2}$  of 46 mm Hg, whereas alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  is only 40 mm Hg. Carbon dioxide diffuses from the blood into the alveoli until blood  $P_{CO_2}$  equilibrates with alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ . Thus, blood leaving the pulmonary capillaries has a  $P_{CO_2}$  of 40 mm Hg. After leaving the lungs, the blood, which now has a  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg and a  $P_{CO_2}$  of 40 mm Hg, is returned to the heart and then pumped out to the body tissues as systemic arterial blood.

Note that blood returning to the lungs from the tissues still contains  $O_2$  ( $P_{O_2}$  of systemic venous blood = 40 mm Hg) and that blood leaving the lungs still contains  $CO_2$  ( $P_{CO_2}$  of systemic arterial blood = 40 mm Hg). The extra  $O_2$  carried in the blood beyond that normally given up to the tissues represents an immediately available  $O_2$  reserve that can be tapped by the tissue cells whenever their  $O_2$  demands increase. The  $CO_2$  remaining in the blood even after passage through the lungs plays an important role in the acid–base balance of the body, because  $CO_2$  generates carbonic acid. Furthermore, arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  is important in driving respiration. This mechanism is described later.

The amount of  $O_2$  picked up in the lungs matches the amount extracted and used by the tissues. When the tissues metabolize more actively (for example, during exercise), they extract more  $O_2$  from the blood, reducing the systemic venous  $P_{O_2}$  even lower than 40 mm Hg—for example, to a  $P_{O_2}$  of 30 mm Hg. When this blood returns to the lungs, a larger-than-normal  $P_{O_2}$  gradient exists between the newly entering blood and the alveolar air. The difference in  $P_{O_2}$  between alveoli and blood is now 70 mm Hg (alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg and blood  $P_{O_2}$  of 30 mm Hg), compared to the normal  $P_{O_2}$  gradient of 60 mm Hg (alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg and blood  $P_{O_2}$  of 40 mm Hg). Therefore, more  $O_2$  diffuses from the alveoli into the blood down the larger partial pressure gradient before blood  $P_{O_2}$  equals alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ . This additional transfer of  $O_2$  into the blood replaces the increased amount of  $O_2$  consumed, so  $O_2$  uptake matches  $O_2$  use even when  $O_2$  consumption increases. As more  $O_2$  is diffusing from the alveoli into the blood because of the increased partial pressure gradient, ventilation is stimulated so that  $O_2$  enters the alveoli more rapidly from the atmosphere to replace the  $O_2$  diffusing into the blood. Similarly, the amount of  $CO_2$  given up to the alveoli from the blood matches the amount of  $CO_2$  picked up at the tissues.

### Factors other than the partial pressure gradient influence the rate of gas transfer.

We have been discussing diffusion of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  between alveoli and blood as if these gases' partial pressure gradients were the sole determinants of their rates of diffusion. According to Fick's law of diffusion, the diffusion rate of a gas through a sheet of tissue also depends on the surface area and thickness of the membrane through which the gas is diffusing, with the rate of diffusion decreasing as surface area decreases or thickness in-



- 1 Alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  remains relatively high and alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  remains relatively low because a portion of the alveolar air is exchanged for fresh atmospheric air with each breath.
- 2 In contrast, the systemic venous blood entering the lungs is relatively low in  $O_2$  and high in  $CO_2$ , having given up  $O_2$  and picked up  $CO_2$  at the systemic capillary level.
- 3 The partial pressure gradients established between the alveolar air and pulmonary capillary blood induce passive diffusion of  $O_2$  into the blood and  $CO_2$  out of the blood until the blood and alveolar partial pressures become equal.
- 4 The blood leaving the lungs is thus relatively high in  $O_2$  and low in  $CO_2$ . It arrives at the tissues with the same blood-gas content as when it left the lungs.
- 5 The partial pressure of  $O_2$  is relatively low and that of  $CO_2$  is relatively high in the  $O_2$ -consuming,  $CO_2$ -producing tissue cells.
- 6 Consequently, partial pressure gradients for gas exchange at the tissue level favor the passive movement of  $O_2$  out of the blood into cells to support their metabolic requirements and also favor the simultaneous transfer of  $CO_2$  into the blood.
- 7 Having equilibrated with the tissue cells, the blood leaving the tissues is relatively low in  $O_2$  and high in  $CO_2$ .
- 8 The blood then returns to the lungs to once again fill up on  $O_2$  and dump off  $CO_2$ .

● **FIGURE 12-19** Oxygen and  $CO_2$  exchange across pulmonary and systemic capillaries caused by partial pressure gradients.

creases. Because these other factors are relatively constant under resting conditions in a healthy lung, changes in the rate of gas exchange normally are determined primarily by changes in partial pressure gradients between blood and alveoli.

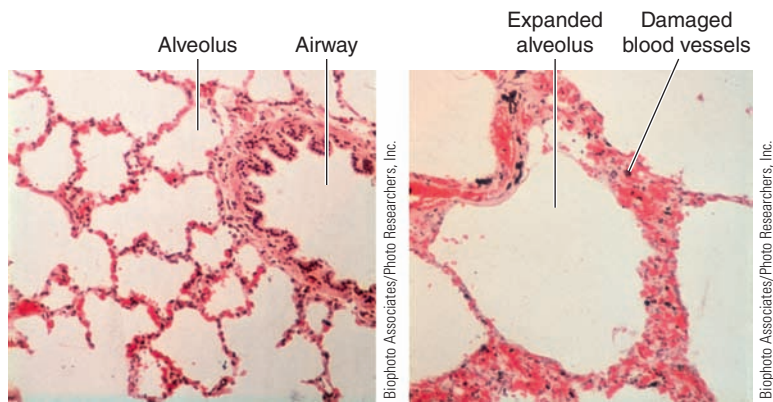
However, several pathological conditions can markedly reduce pulmonary surface area and, in turn, decrease the rate of gas exchange. Most notably, in *emphysema* surface area is reduced because many alveolar walls are lost, resulting in larger but fewer chambers (● Figure 12-20).

Inadequate gas exchange can also occur when the thickness of the barrier separating the air and blood is pathologically increased. Thickness increases in (1) *pulmonary edema*, an excess accumulation of interstitial fluid between the alveoli and the pulmonary capillaries caused by pulmonary inflammation or

left-sided congestive heart failure (see p. 252); (2) *pulmonary fibrosis*, involving replacement of delicate lung tissue with thick, fibrous tissue in response to certain chronic irritants; and (3) *pneumonia*, which is characterized by inflammatory fluid accumulation within or around the alveoli.

### Gas exchange across the systemic capillaries also occurs down partial pressure gradients.

Just as they do at the pulmonary capillaries,  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  move between the systemic capillary blood and the tissue cells by simple passive diffusion down partial pressure gradients. Refer again to ● Figure 12-19. The arterial blood that reaches the systemic capillaries is essentially the same blood that left the lungs by means of the pulmonary veins, because the only two



(a) Normal lung tissue

(b) Lung tissue in emphysema

● **FIGURE 12-20 Comparison of normal and emphysematous lung tissue.** (a) Each of the smallest clear spaces is an alveolar lumen in normal lung tissue. (b) Note the loss of alveolar walls in the emphysematous lung tissue, resulting in larger but fewer alveolar chambers.

places in the entire circulatory system at which gas exchange can take place are the pulmonary capillaries and the systemic capillaries. The arterial  $P_{O_2}$  is 100 mm Hg, and the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  is 40 mm Hg, the same as alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$ .

#### $P_{O_2}$ AND $P_{CO_2}$ GRADIENTS ACROSS THE SYSTEMIC CAPILLARIES

Cells constantly consume  $O_2$  and produce  $CO_2$  through oxidative metabolism. Cellular  $P_{O_2}$  averages about 40 mm Hg and  $P_{CO_2}$  about 46 mm Hg, although these values are highly variable, depending on the level of cellular metabolic activity. Oxygen moves by diffusion down its partial pressure gradient from the entering systemic capillary blood ( $P_{O_2} = 100$  mm Hg) into the adjacent cells ( $P_{O_2} = 40$  mm Hg) until equilibrium is reached. Therefore, the  $P_{O_2}$  of venous blood leaving the systemic capillaries is equal to the tissue  $P_{O_2}$  at an average of 40 mm Hg.

The reverse situation exists for  $CO_2$ . Carbon dioxide rapidly diffuses out of the cells ( $P_{CO_2} = 46$  mm Hg) into the entering capillary blood ( $P_{CO_2} = 40$  mm Hg) down the partial pressure gradient created by the ongoing production of  $CO_2$ . Transfer of  $CO_2$  continues until blood  $P_{CO_2}$  equilibrates with tissue  $P_{CO_2}$ .<sup>1</sup> Accordingly, blood leaving the systemic capillaries has an average  $P_{CO_2}$  of 46 mm Hg. This systemic venous blood, which is relatively low in  $O_2$  ( $P_{CO_2} = 40$  mm Hg) and relatively high in  $CO_2$  ( $P_{CO_2} = 46$  mm Hg), returns to the heart and is subsequently pumped to the lungs as the cycle repeats itself.

The more actively a tissue is metabolizing, the lower the cellular  $P_{O_2}$  falls and the higher the cellular  $P_{CO_2}$  rises. As a consequence of the larger blood-to-cell partial pressure gradients, more  $O_2$  diffuses from the blood into the cells, and more  $CO_2$  moves in the opposite direction before blood  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  achieve equilibrium with the surrounding cells. Thus, the

<sup>1</sup>Actually, the partial pressures of the systemic blood gases never completely equilibrate with tissue  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$ . Because the cells are constantly consuming  $O_2$  and producing  $CO_2$ , the tissue  $P_{O_2}$  is always slightly less than the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood leaving the systemic capillaries, and the tissue  $P_{CO_2}$  always slightly exceeds the systemic venous  $P_{CO_2}$ .

amount of  $O_2$  transferred to the cells and the amount of  $CO_2$  carried away from the cells both depend on the rate of cellular metabolism.

#### NET DIFFUSION OF $O_2$ AND $CO_2$ BETWEEN ALVEOLI AND TISSUES

Net diffusion of  $O_2$  occurs first between alveoli and blood and then between blood and tissues because of the  $O_2$  partial pressure gradients created by continuous replenishment of fresh alveolar  $O_2$  provided by alveolar ventilation and continuous use of  $O_2$  in the cells. Net diffusion of  $CO_2$  occurs in the reverse direction, first between tissues and blood and then between blood and alveoli because of the  $CO_2$  partial pressure gradients created by continuous production of  $CO_2$  in the cells and continuous removal of alveolar  $CO_2$  through the process of alveolar ventilation (see ● Figure 12-19).

Now let us see how  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  are transported in the blood between alveoli and tissues.

## Gas Transport

Oxygen picked up by the blood at the lungs must be transported to the tissues for cell use. Conversely,  $CO_2$  produced at the cell level must be transported to the lungs for elimination.

### Most $O_2$ in the blood is transported bound to hemoglobin.

Oxygen is present in the blood in two forms: physically dissolved and chemically bound to hemoglobin (▲ Table 12-3).

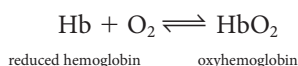
**PHYSICALLY DISSOLVED  $O_2$**  Little  $O_2$  physically dissolves in plasma water, because  $O_2$  is poorly soluble in body fluids. The amount dissolved is directly proportional to the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood: the higher the  $P_{O_2}$ , the more  $O_2$  dissolved. At a normal arterial  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg, only 3 ml of  $O_2$  can dissolve in 1 liter of blood. Thus, only 15 ml of  $O_2$  can dissolve per minute in the normal pulmonary blood flow of 5 liters/min (the resting cardiac output). Even under resting conditions, the cells consume 250 ml of  $O_2$  per minute, and consumption may increase up to 25-fold during strenuous exercise. To deliver the  $O_2$  needed by the tissues even at rest, the cardiac output would have to be

### ▲ Table 12-3 Methods of Gas Transport in the Blood

Gas	Method of Transport in Blood	Percentage Carried in This Form
$O_2$	Physically dissolved	1.5
	Bound to hemoglobin	98.5
$CO_2$	Physically dissolved	10
	Bound to hemoglobin	30
	As bicarbonate ( $HCO_3^-$ )	60

83.3 liters/min if  $O_2$  could only be transported in dissolved form. Obviously, there must be an additional mechanism for transporting  $O_2$  to the tissues. This mechanism is *hemoglobin* (*Hb*). Only 1.5% of the  $O_2$  in the blood is dissolved; the remaining 98.5% is transported in combination with Hb. *The  $O_2$  bound to Hb does not contribute to the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood*; thus, blood  $P_{O_2}$  is not a measure of the total  $O_2$  content of the blood but only of the dissolved portion of  $O_2$ .

**OXYGEN BOUND TO HEMOGLOBIN** Hemoglobin, an iron-bearing protein molecule contained within the red blood cells, can form a loose, easily reversible combination with  $O_2$  (see p. 299). When not combined with  $O_2$ , Hb is referred to as **reduced hemoglobin**, or **deoxyhemoglobin**; when combined with  $O_2$ , it is called **oxyhemoglobin** ( $HbO_2$ ):



We need to answer several questions about the role of Hb in  $O_2$  transport. What determines whether  $O_2$  and Hb are combined or dissociated (separated)? Why does Hb combine with  $O_2$  in the lungs and release  $O_2$  at the tissues? How can a variable amount of  $O_2$  be released at the tissues, depending on the level of tissue activity? How can we talk about  $O_2$  transfer between blood and surrounding tissues in terms of  $O_2$  partial pressure gradients when 98.5% of the  $O_2$  is bound to Hb and thus does not contribute to the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood?

### The $P_{O_2}$ is the primary factor determining the percent hemoglobin saturation.

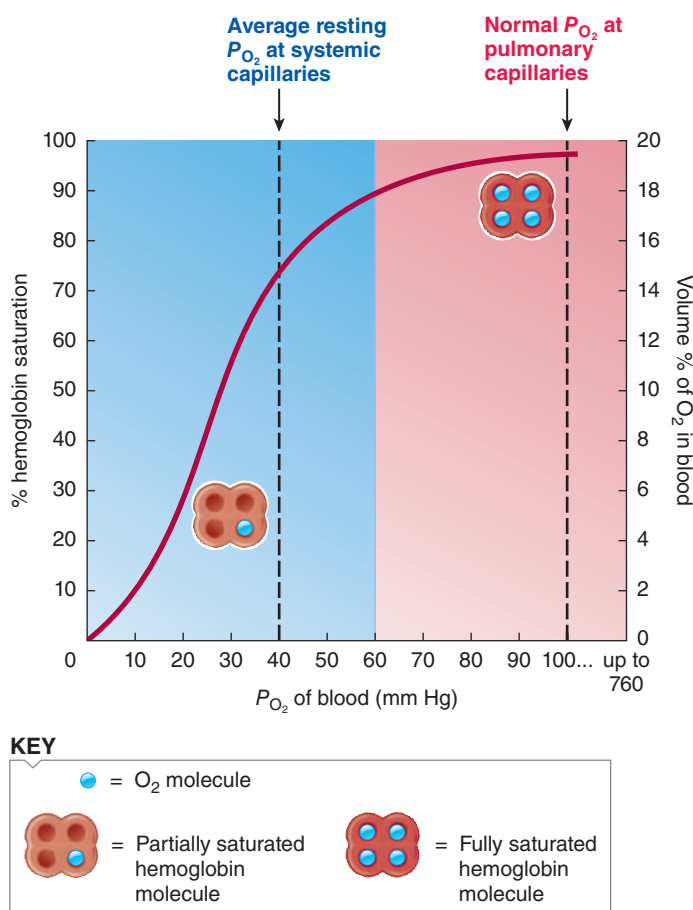
Each of the four atoms of iron within the heme portions of a hemoglobin molecule can combine with an  $O_2$  molecule, so each Hb molecule can carry up to four molecules of  $O_2$ . Hemoglobin is considered *fully saturated* when all the Hb present is carrying its maximum  $O_2$  load. The **percent hemoglobin (% Hb) saturation**, a measure of the extent to which the Hb present is combined with  $O_2$ , can vary from 0% to 100%.

The most important factor determining the % Hb saturation is the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood, which in turn is related to the concentration of  $O_2$  physically dissolved in the blood. According to the **law of mass action**, if the concentration of one substance involved in a reversible reaction is increased, the reaction is driven toward the opposite side. Conversely, if the concentration of one substance is decreased, the reaction is driven toward that side. Applying this law to the reversible reaction involving Hb and  $O_2$  ( $Hb + O_2 \rightleftharpoons HbO_2$ ), when blood  $P_{O_2}$  increases, as in the pulmonary capillaries, the reaction is driven toward the right side of the equation, increasing formation of  $HbO_2$  (increased % Hb saturation). When blood  $P_{O_2}$  decreases, as in the systemic capillaries, the reaction is driven toward the left side of the equation and oxygen is released from Hb as  $HbO_2$  dissociates (decreased % Hb saturation). Thus, because of the difference in  $P_{O_2}$  at the lungs and other tissues, Hb automatically “loads up” on  $O_2$  in the lungs, where ventilation is continually providing fresh supplies of  $O_2$ , and “unloads” it in the tissues, which are constantly using up  $O_2$ .

**$O_2$ -Hb DISSOCIATION CURVE** The relationship between blood  $P_{O_2}$  and % Hb saturation is not linear, however, a point that is important physiologically. Doubling the partial pressure does not double the % Hb saturation. Rather, the relationship between these variables follows an S-shaped curve, the  **$O_2$ -Hb dissociation (or saturation) curve** (● Figure 12-21). At the upper end, between a blood  $P_{O_2}$  of 60 mm Hg and one of 100 mm Hg, the curve flattens off, or plateaus. Within this pressure range, a rise in  $P_{O_2}$  produces only a small increase in the extent to which Hb is bound with  $O_2$ . In the  $P_{O_2}$  range of 0 to 60 mm Hg, in contrast, a small change in  $P_{O_2}$  results in a large change in the extent to which Hb is combined with  $O_2$ , as shown by the steep lower part of the curve. Both the upper plateau and the lower steep portion of the curve have physiological significance.

### SIGNIFICANCE OF THE PLATEAU PORTION OF THE $O_2$ -Hb CURVE

The plateau portion of the curve is in the blood  $P_{O_2}$  range at the pulmonary capillaries where  $O_2$  is being loaded onto Hb. The



● **FIGURE 12-21 Oxygen-hemoglobin ( $O_2$ -Hb) dissociation (saturation) curve.** The % hemoglobin saturation (the scale on the left side of the graph) depends on the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood. The relationship between these two variables is depicted by an S-shaped curve with a plateau region between a blood  $P_{O_2}$  of 60 mm Hg and one of 100 mm Hg and a steep portion between 0 and 60 mm Hg. Another way of expressing the effect of blood  $P_{O_2}$  on the amount of  $O_2$  bound with hemoglobin is the volume % of  $O_2$  in the blood (number of milliliters of  $O_2$  bound with hemoglobin in each 100 ml of blood). That relationship is represented by the scale on the right side of the graph.

systemic arterial blood leaving the lungs, having equilibrated with alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ , normally has a  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg. Looking at the  $O_2$ -Hb curve, note that at a blood  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg, Hb is 97.5% saturated. Therefore, Hb in the systemic arterial blood normally is almost fully saturated.

If the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and, consequently, the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  fall below normal, there is little reduction in the total amount of  $O_2$  transported by the blood until the  $P_{O_2}$  falls below 60 mm Hg. This is because of the plateau region of the curve. If the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls 40%, from 100 to 60 mm Hg, the concentration of dissolved  $O_2$  as reflected by the  $P_{O_2}$  is likewise reduced 40%. At a blood  $P_{O_2}$  of 60 mm Hg, however, the % Hb saturation is still remarkably high, at 90%. Accordingly, the total  $O_2$  content of the blood is only slightly decreased despite the 40% reduction in  $P_{O_2}$ , because Hb is still carrying an almost full load of  $O_2$ , and, as mentioned before, the vast majority of  $O_2$  is transported by Hb rather than dissolved. However, even if the blood  $P_{O_2}$  is greatly increased—say, to 600 mm Hg—by breathing pure  $O_2$ , little additional  $O_2$  is added to the blood. A small extra amount of  $O_2$  dissolves, but the % Hb saturation can be maximally increased by only another 2.5%, to 100% saturation. Therefore, in the  $P_{O_2}$  range between 60 and 600 mm Hg or even higher, there is only a 10% difference in the amount of  $O_2$  carried by Hb. Thus, the plateau portion of the  $O_2$ -Hb curve provides a good margin of safety in  $O_2$ -carrying capacity of the blood.



Arterial  $P_{O_2}$  may be reduced by pulmonary diseases accompanied by inadequate ventilation or defective gas exchange or by circulatory disorders that result in inadequate blood flow to the lungs. It may also fall in healthy people under two circumstances: (1) at high altitudes, where total atmospheric pressure and hence the  $P_{O_2}$  of the inspired air are reduced, or (2) in  $O_2$ -deprived environments at sea level, such as if someone were accidentally locked in a vault. Unless the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  becomes markedly reduced (falls below 60 mm Hg) in either pathological conditions or abnormal circumstances, near-normal amounts of  $O_2$  can still be carried to the tissues.

### SIGNIFICANCE OF THE STEEP PORTION OF THE $O_2$ -Hb CURVE

The steep portion of the curve between 0 and 60 mm Hg is in the blood  $P_{O_2}$  range at the systemic capillaries, where  $O_2$  is unloaded from Hb. In the systemic capillaries, the blood equilibrates with the surrounding tissue cells at an average  $P_{O_2}$  of 40 mm Hg. Note in ● Figure 12-21 that at a  $P_{O_2}$  of 40 mm Hg the % Hb saturation is 75%. The blood arrives in the tissue capillaries at a  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg with 97.5% Hb saturation. Because Hb can only be 75% saturated at the  $P_{O_2}$  of 40 mm Hg in the systemic capillaries, nearly 25% of the  $HbO_2$  must dissociate, yielding reduced Hb and  $O_2$ . This released  $O_2$  is free to diffuse down its partial pressure gradient from the red blood cells through the plasma and the interstitial fluid into the tissue cells.

The Hb in the venous blood returning to the lungs is still normally 75% saturated. If the tissue cells are metabolizing more actively, the  $P_{O_2}$  of the systemic capillary blood falls (for example, from 40 to 20 mm Hg) because the cells are consuming  $O_2$  more rapidly. Note on the curve that this drop of 20 mm Hg in decreases the % Hb saturation from 75% to 30%; that is,

about 45% more of the total  $HbO_2$  than normal gives up its  $O_2$  for tissue use. The normal 60 mm Hg drop in  $P_{O_2}$  from 100 to 40 mm Hg in the systemic capillaries causes about 25% of the total  $HbO_2$  to unload its  $O_2$ . In comparison, a further drop in  $P_{O_2}$  of only 20 mm Hg results in an additional 45% of the total  $HbO_2$  unloading its  $O_2$  because the  $O_2$  partial pressures in this range are operating in the steep portion of the curve. In this range, only a small drop in systemic capillary  $P_{O_2}$  can automatically make large amounts of  $O_2$  immediately available to meet the  $O_2$  needs of more actively metabolizing tissues. As much as 85% of the Hb may give up its  $O_2$  to actively metabolizing cells during strenuous exercise. In addition to this more thorough withdrawal of  $O_2$  from the blood, even more  $O_2$  is made available to actively metabolizing cells, such as exercising muscles, by circulatory and respiratory adjustments that increase the flow rate of oxygenated blood through the active tissues.

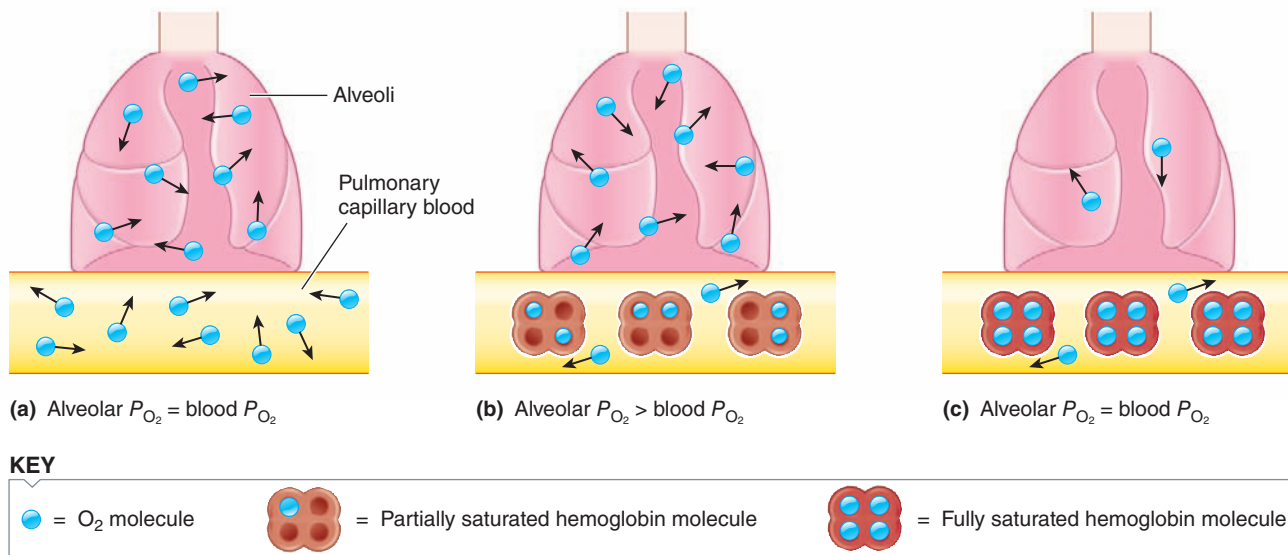
### Hemoglobin promotes the net transfer of $O_2$ at both the alveolar and the tissue levels.

We still have not really clarified the role of Hb in gas exchange. Because blood  $P_{O_2}$  depends entirely on the concentration of dissolved  $O_2$ , we could ignore the  $O_2$  bound to Hb in our earlier discussion of  $O_2$  being driven from the alveoli to the blood by a  $P_{O_2}$  gradient. However, Hb does play a crucial role in permitting the transfer of large quantities of  $O_2$  before blood  $P_{O_2}$  equilibrates with the surrounding tissues (● Figure 12-22).

**ROLE OF HEMOGLOBIN AT THE ALVEOLAR LEVEL** Hemoglobin acts as a “storage depot” for  $O_2$ , removing  $O_2$  from solution as soon as it enters the blood from the alveoli. Because only dissolved  $O_2$  contributes to  $P_{O_2}$ , the  $O_2$  stored in Hb cannot contribute to blood  $P_{O_2}$ . When systemic venous blood enters the pulmonary capillaries, its  $P_{O_2}$  is considerably lower than alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ , so  $O_2$  immediately diffuses into the blood, raising blood  $P_{O_2}$ . As soon as the blood  $P_{O_2}$  increases, the percentage of Hb that can bind with  $O_2$  likewise increases, as indicated by the  $O_2$ -Hb curve. Consequently, most of the  $O_2$  that has diffused into the blood combines with Hb and no longer contributes to blood  $P_{O_2}$ . As  $O_2$  is removed from solution by combining with Hb, blood  $P_{O_2}$  falls to about the same level it was when the blood entered the lungs, even though the total quantity of  $O_2$  in the blood actually has increased. Because blood  $P_{O_2}$  is again considerably below alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ , more  $O_2$  diffuses from the alveoli into the blood, only to be soaked up by Hb again.

Even though we have considered this process stepwise for clarity, net diffusion of  $O_2$  from alveoli to blood occurs continuously until Hb becomes as saturated with  $O_2$  as it can be at that particular  $P_{O_2}$ . At a normal  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg, Hb is 97.5% saturated. Thus, by soaking up  $O_2$ , Hb keeps blood  $P_{O_2}$  low and prolongs the existence of a partial pressure gradient so that a large net transfer of  $O_2$  into the blood can take place. Not until Hb can store no more  $O_2$  (that is, Hb is maximally saturated for that  $P_{O_2}$ ) does all the  $O_2$  transferred into the blood remain dissolved and directly contribute to the  $P_{O_2}$ . Only now does blood  $P_{O_2}$  rapidly equilibrate with alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and bring further  $O_2$





● **FIGURE 12-22 Hemoglobin facilitating a large net transfer of  $O_2$  by acting as a storage depot to keep  $P_{O_2}$  low.** (a) In the hypothetical situation in which no hemoglobin is present in the blood, the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and the pulmonary capillary blood  $P_{O_2}$  are at equilibrium. (b) Hemoglobin has been added to the pulmonary capillary blood. As the Hb starts to bind with  $O_2$ , it removes  $O_2$  from solution. Because only dissolved  $O_2$  contributes to blood  $P_{O_2}$ , the blood  $P_{O_2}$  falls below that of the alveoli, even though the same number of  $O_2$  molecules are present in the blood as in part (a). By “soaking up” some of the dissolved  $O_2$ , Hb favors the net diffusion of more  $O_2$  down its partial pressure gradient from the alveoli to the blood. (c) Hemoglobin is fully saturated with  $O_2$ , and the alveolar and blood  $P_{O_2}$  are at equilibrium again. The blood  $P_{O_2}$  resulting from dissolved  $O_2$  is equal to the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ , despite the total  $O_2$  content in the blood being greater than in part (a), when blood  $P_{O_2}$  was equal to alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  in the absence of Hb.

transfer to a halt, but this point is not reached until Hb is already loaded to the maximum extent possible. Once blood  $P_{O_2}$  equilibrates with alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ , no further  $O_2$  transfer can take place, no matter how little or how much total  $O_2$  has already been transferred.

**ROLE OF HEMOGLOBIN AT THE TISSUE LEVEL** The reverse situation occurs at the tissue level. Because the  $P_{O_2}$  of blood entering the systemic capillaries is considerably higher than the  $P_{O_2}$  of the surrounding tissue,  $O_2$  immediately diffuses from the blood into the tissues, lowering blood  $P_{O_2}$ . When blood  $P_{O_2}$  falls, Hb must unload some stored  $O_2$  because the % Hb saturation is reduced. As the  $O_2$  released from Hb dissolves in the blood, blood  $P_{O_2}$  increases and again exceeds the  $P_{O_2}$  of the surrounding tissues. This favors further movement of  $O_2$  out of the blood, although the total quantity of  $O_2$  in the blood has already fallen. Only when Hb can no longer release any more  $O_2$  into solution (when Hb is unloaded to the greatest extent possible for the  $P_{O_2}$  existing at the systemic capillaries) can blood  $P_{O_2}$  fall as low as in surrounding tissue. At this time, further transfer of  $O_2$  stops. Hemoglobin, because it stores a large quantity of  $O_2$  that can be freed by a slight reduction in  $P_{O_2}$  at the systemic capillary level, permits the transfer of tremendously more  $O_2$  from the blood into the cells than would be possible in its absence.

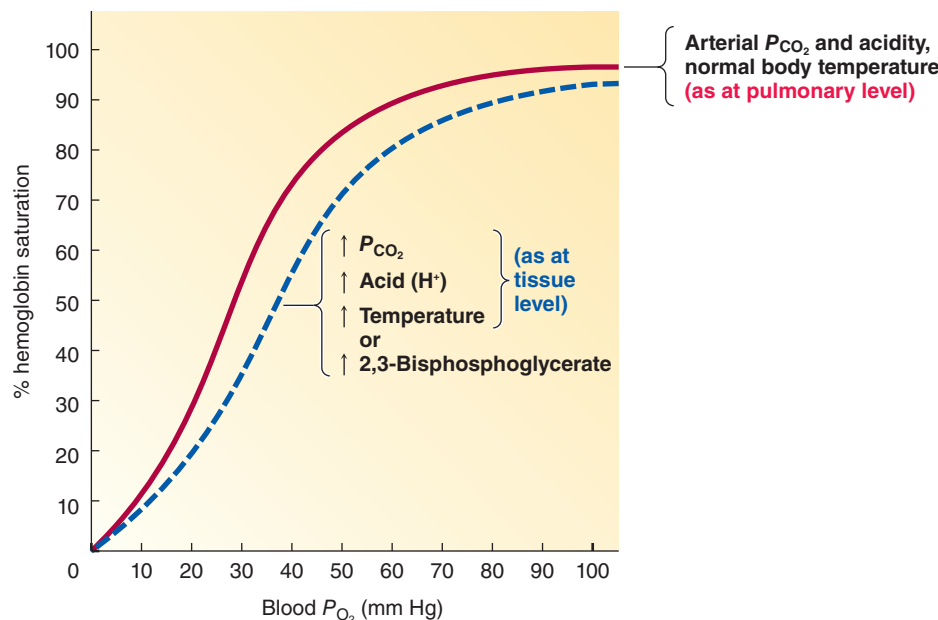
Thus, Hb plays an important role in the *total quantity* of  $O_2$  that the blood can pick up in the lungs and drop off in the tis-

ues. If Hb levels fall to one half of normal, as in a severely anemic patient (see p. 301), the  $O_2$ -carrying capacity of the blood falls by 50% even though the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  is the normal 100 mm Hg with 97.5% Hb saturation. Only half as much Hb is available to be saturated, emphasizing again how critical Hb is in determining how much  $O_2$  can be picked up at the lungs and made available to tissues.

### Factors at the tissue level promote the unloading of $O_2$ from hemoglobin.

Even though the main factor determining the % Hb saturation is the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood, other factors can affect the affinity, or bond strength, between Hb and  $O_2$  and, accordingly, can shift the  $O_2$ -Hb curve (that is, change the % Hb saturation at a given  $P_{O_2}$ ). These other factors are  $CO_2$ , acidity, temperature, and 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate, which we examine separately. The  $O_2$ -Hb dissociation curve with which you are already familiar (see ● Figure 12-21) is a typical curve at normal arterial  $CO_2$  and acidity levels, normal body temperature, and normal 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate concentration.

**EFFECT OF  $CO_2$  ON % Hb SATURATION** An increase in  $P_{CO_2}$  shifts the  $O_2$ -Hb curve to the right (● Figure 12-23). The % Hb saturation still depends on the  $P_{O_2}$ , but for any given  $P_{O_2}$  less  $O_2$  and Hb can be combined. This effect is important, because the  $P_{CO_2}$



● **FIGURE 12-23** Effect of increased  $P_{CO_2}$ ,  $H^+$ , temperature, and 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate on the  $O_2$ -Hb curve. Increased  $P_{O_2}$ , acid, and temperature, as found at the tissue level, shift the  $O_2$ -Hb curve to the right. As a result, less  $O_2$  and Hb can be combined at a given  $P_{O_2}$  so that more  $O_2$  is unloaded from Hb for use by the tissues. Similarly, 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate, whose production is increased in red blood cells when arterial  $HbO_2$  is chronically below normal, shifts the  $O_2$ -Hb curve to the right, making more of the limited  $O_2$  available at the tissue level.

of the blood increases in the systemic capillaries as  $CO_2$  diffuses down its gradient from the cells into the blood. The presence of this additional  $CO_2$  in the blood in effect decreases the affinity of Hb for  $O_2$ , so Hb unloads even more  $O_2$  at the tissue level than it would if the reduction in  $P_{O_2}$  in the systemic capillaries were the only factor affecting % Hb saturation.

**EFFECT OF ACID ON % Hb SATURATION** An increase in acidity also shifts the curve to the right. Because  $CO_2$  generates carbonic acid, the blood becomes more acidic at the systemic capillary level as it picks up  $CO_2$  from the tissues. The resulting reduction in Hb affinity for  $O_2$  in the presence of increased acidity aids in releasing even more  $O_2$  at the tissue level for a given  $P_{O_2}$ . In actively metabolizing cells, such as exercising muscles, not only is more carbonic acid—generating  $CO_2$  produced, but lactate (lactic acid) also may be produced if the cells resort to anaerobic metabolism (see pp. 30 and 210). The resultant local elevation of acid in the working muscles facilitates further unloading of  $O_2$  in the very tissues that need the most  $O_2$ .

**EFFECT OF TEMPERATURE ON % Hb SATURATION** In a similar manner, a rise in temperature shifts the  $O_2$ -Hb curve to the right, resulting in more unloading of  $O_2$  at a given  $P_{O_2}$ . An exercising muscle or other actively metabolizing cell produces heat. The resulting local rise in temperature enhances  $O_2$  release from Hb for use by more active tissues.

**COMPARISON OF THESE FACTORS AT THE TISSUE AND PULMONARY LEVELS** As you just learned, increases in  $CO_2$ , acidity, and temperature at the tissue level, all of which are associated with

increased cellular metabolism and increased  $O_2$  consumption, enhance the effect of a drop in  $P_{O_2}$  in facilitating the release of  $O_2$  from Hb. These effects are largely reversed at the pulmonary level, where the extra acid-forming  $CO_2$  is blown off and the local aerated environment is cooler. Appropriately, therefore, Hb has a higher affinity for  $O_2$  in the pulmonary capillary environment, enhancing the effect of raised  $P_{O_2}$  in loading  $O_2$  onto Hb.

**EFFECT OF 2,3-BISPHOSPHOGLYCERATE ON % Hb SATURATION** The preceding changes take place in the environment of the red blood cells, but a factor inside the red blood cells can also affect the degree of  $O_2$ -Hb binding: **2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (BPG)**. This erythrocyte constituent, which is produced during red blood cell metabolism, can bind reversibly with Hb and reduce its affinity for  $O_2$ , just as  $CO_2$  and  $H^+$  do. Thus, an increased level of BPG, like the other factors,

shifts the  $O_2$ -Hb curve to the right, enhancing  $O_2$  unloading as the blood flows through the tissues.

BPG production by red blood cells gradually increases whenever Hb in the arterial blood is chronically undersaturated—that is, when arterial  $HbO_2$  is below normal. This condition may occur in people living at high altitudes or in those suffering from certain types of circulatory or respiratory diseases or anemia. By helping unload  $O_2$  from Hb at the tissue level, increased BPG helps maintain  $O_2$  availability for tissue use even though arterial  $O_2$  supply is chronically reduced.

### Hemoglobin has a much higher affinity for carbon monoxide than for $O_2$ .



**Carbon monoxide (CO)** and  $O_2$  compete for the same binding sites on Hb, but Hb's affinity for CO is 240 times that of its affinity for  $O_2$ . The combination of CO and Hb is known as **carboxyhemoglobin (HbCO)**. Because Hb preferentially latches onto CO, even small amounts of CO can tie up a disproportionately large share of Hb, making Hb unavailable for  $O_2$  transport. Even though the Hb concentration and  $P_{O_2}$  are normal, the  $O_2$  content of the blood is seriously reduced.

Fortunately, CO is not a normal constituent of inspired air. It is a poisonous gas produced during the incomplete combustion (burning) of carbon products such as automobile gasoline, coal, wood, and tobacco. Carbon monoxide is especially dangerous because it is so insidious. If CO is being produced in a closed environment so that its concentration continues to increase (for example, in a parked car with the motor running and windows closed), it can reach lethal levels without the victim

ever being aware of the danger. Because it is odorless, colorless, tasteless, and nonirritating, CO is not detectable. Furthermore, for reasons described later, the victim has no sensation of breathlessness and makes no attempt to increase ventilation, even though the cells are O<sub>2</sub> starved.

### Most CO<sub>2</sub> is transported in the blood as bicarbonate.

When arterial blood flows through the tissue capillaries, CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses down its partial pressure gradient from the tissue cells into the blood. Carbon dioxide is transported in the blood in three ways (as described in the following list and shown with corresponding numbers in ● Figure 12-24; see also ▲ Table 12-3, p. 365):

1. *Physically dissolved.* As with dissolved O<sub>2</sub>, the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> physically dissolved in the blood depends on the P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>. Because CO<sub>2</sub> is more soluble than O<sub>2</sub> in plasma water, a greater proportion of the total CO<sub>2</sub> than of O<sub>2</sub> in the blood is physically dissolved. Even so, only 10% of the blood's total CO<sub>2</sub> content is carried this way at the normal systemic venous P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> level.
2. *Bound to hemoglobin.* Another 30% of the CO<sub>2</sub> combines with Hb to form **carbamino hemoglobin (HbCO<sub>2</sub>)**. Carbon dioxide binds with the globin portion of Hb, in contrast to O<sub>2</sub>,

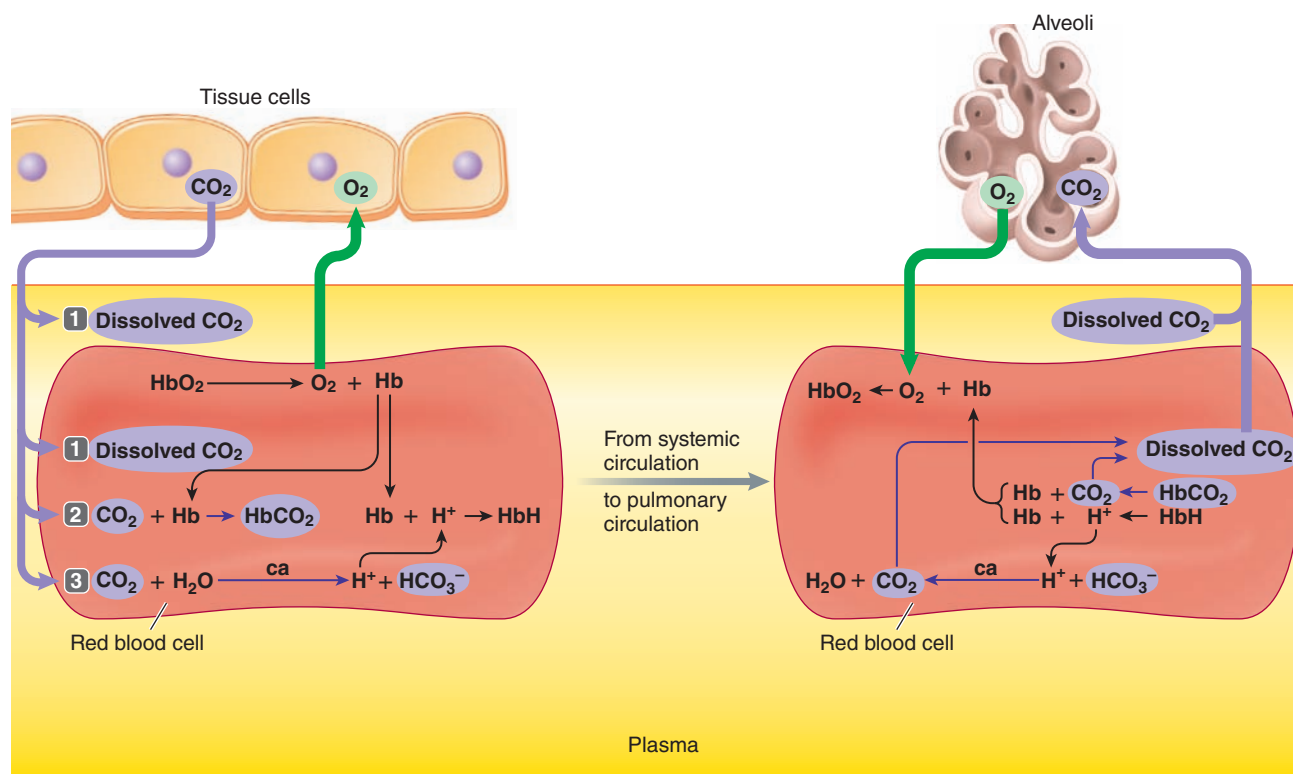
which combines with the heme portions. Reduced Hb has a greater affinity for CO<sub>2</sub> than HbO<sub>2</sub> does. The unloading of O<sub>2</sub> from Hb in the tissue capillaries therefore facilitates the picking up of CO<sub>2</sub> by Hb.

3. *As bicarbonate.* By far the most important means of CO<sub>2</sub> transport is as **bicarbonate (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>)**, with 60% of the CO<sub>2</sub> being converted into HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> by the following chemical reaction:



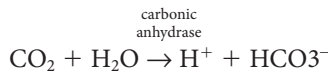
In the first step of the reaction, CO<sub>2</sub> combines with H<sub>2</sub>O to form **carbonic acid (H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>)**. As is characteristic of acids, some of the carbonic acid molecules spontaneously dissociate into hydrogen ions (H<sup>+</sup>) and bicarbonate ions (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>). The one carbon and two oxygen atoms of the original CO<sub>2</sub> molecule are thus present in the blood as an integral part of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>. This is beneficial because HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> is more soluble in the blood than CO<sub>2</sub> is.

This reaction takes place slowly in the plasma, but it proceeds swiftly within the red blood cells because of the presence of the erythrocyte enzyme **carbonic anhydrase**, which catalyzes (speeds up) the reaction. In fact, under the influence of carbonic anhydrase, the reaction proceeds directly from CO<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O to H<sup>+</sup> + HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> without the intervening H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> step:



ca = Carbonic anhydrase

● **FIGURE 12-24 Carbon dioxide transport in the blood.** Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) picked up at the tissue level is transported in the blood to the lungs in three ways: (1) physically dissolved, (2) bound to hemoglobin (Hb), and (3) as bicarbonate ion (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>). Hemoglobin is present only in the red blood cells, as is carbonic anhydrase, the enzyme that catalyzes the production of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>. The H<sup>+</sup> generated during the production of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> also binds to Hb. The reactions that occur at the tissue level are reversed at the pulmonary level, where CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses out of the blood to enter the alveoli.



Hemoglobin binds with most of the  $\text{H}^+$  formed within the erythrocytes. As with  $\text{CO}_2$ , reduced Hb has a greater affinity for  $\text{H}^+$  than  $\text{HbO}_2$  does. Therefore, unloading  $\text{O}_2$  facilitates Hb pickup of  $\text{CO}_2$ -generated  $\text{H}^+$ . Because only free, dissolved  $\text{H}^+$  contributes to the acidity of a solution, venous blood would be considerably more acidic than arterial blood if Hb did not mop up most of the  $\text{H}^+$  generated at the tissue level.

Note how hemoglobin's unloading of  $\text{O}_2$  and its uptake of  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$ -generated  $\text{H}^+$  at the tissue level work in synchrony. Increased  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}^+$  cause increased  $\text{O}_2$  release from Hb, and increased  $\text{O}_2$  release from Hb in turn causes increased  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}^+$  uptake by Hb. The entire process is efficient. Reduced Hb must be carried back to the lungs to refill on  $\text{O}_2$  anyway. After  $\text{O}_2$  is released, Hb picks up new passengers— $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}^+$ —that are going in the same direction to the lungs.

The reactions at the tissue level as  $\text{CO}_2$  enters the blood from the tissues are reversed once the blood reaches the lungs and  $\text{CO}_2$  leaves the blood to enter the alveoli (● Figure 12-24).

### Various respiratory states are characterized by abnormal blood-gas levels.

▲ Table 12-4 is a glossary of terms used to describe various states associated with respiratory abnormalities, most of which

## ▲ Table 12-4 Miniglossary of Clinically Important Respiratory States

<b>Apnea</b>	Transient cessation of breathing
<b>Asphyxia</b>	$\text{O}_2$ starvation of tissues, caused by a lack of $\text{O}_2$ in the air, respiratory impairment, or inability of the tissues to use $\text{O}_2$
<b>Cyanosis</b>	Blueness of the skin resulting from insufficiently oxygenated blood in the arteries
<b>Dyspnea</b>	Subjective sensation of shortness of breath, often accompanying labored or difficult breathing
<b>Eupnea</b>	Normal breathing
<b>Hypercapnia</b>	Excess $\text{CO}_2$ in the arterial blood
<b>Hyperpnea</b>	Increased pulmonary ventilation that matches increased metabolic demands, as in exercise
<b>Hyperventilation</b>	Increased pulmonary ventilation in excess of metabolic requirements, resulting in decreased $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ and respiratory alkalosis
<b>Hypocapnia</b>	Below-normal $\text{CO}_2$ in the arterial blood
<b>Hypoventilation</b>	Underventilation in relation to metabolic requirements, resulting in increased $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ and respiratory acidosis
<b>Hypoxia</b>	Insufficient $\text{O}_2$ at the cellular level
<b>Respiratory arrest</b>	Permanent cessation of breathing (unless clinically corrected)
<b>Suffocation</b>	$\text{O}_2$ deprivation as a result of an inability to breathe oxygenated air

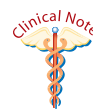
are discussed in more detail here and in the final section of this chapter.



**ABNORMALITIES IN ARTERIAL  $P_{\text{O}_2}$**  The term **hypoxia** refers to the condition of having insufficient  $\text{O}_2$  at the cell level. There are four general categories of hypoxia:

1. *Hypoxic hypoxia* is characterized by a low arterial blood  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  accompanied by inadequate Hb saturation. It is caused by (a) a respiratory malfunction involving inadequate gas exchange, typified by a normal alveolar  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  but a reduced arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ , or (b) exposure to high altitude or to a suffocating environment where atmospheric  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  is reduced so that alveolar and arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  are likewise reduced.
2. *Anemic hypoxia* is a reduced  $\text{O}_2$ -carrying capacity of the blood. It can result from (a) a decrease in circulating red blood cells, (b) an inadequate amount of Hb within the red blood cells, or (c) CO poisoning. In all cases of anemic hypoxia, arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  is normal but the  $\text{O}_2$  content of the arterial blood is lower than normal because of inadequate available Hb.
3. *Circulatory hypoxia* arises when too little oxygenated blood is delivered to the tissues. Circulatory hypoxia can be restricted to a limited area by a local vascular blockage. Or the body may experience circulatory hypoxia in general from congestive heart failure or circulatory shock. Arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  and  $\text{O}_2$  content are typically normal, but too little oxygenated blood reaches the cells.
4. In *histotoxic hypoxia*,  $\text{O}_2$  delivery to the tissues is normal, but the cells cannot use the  $\text{O}_2$  available to them. The classic example is *cyanide poisoning*. Cyanide blocks enzymes essential for cellular respiration (enzymes in the electron transport system; see p. 30).

**Hyperoxia**, an above-normal arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ , cannot occur when a person is breathing atmospheric air at sea level. However, breathing supplemental  $\text{O}_2$  can increase alveolar and consequently, arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ . Because more of the inspired air is  $\text{O}_2$ , more of the total pressure of the inspired air is attributable to the  $\text{O}_2$  partial pressure, so more  $\text{O}_2$  dissolves in the blood before arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  equilibrates with alveolar  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ . Even though arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  increases, the total blood  $\text{O}_2$  content does not significantly increase because Hb is nearly fully saturated at the normal arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ . In certain pulmonary diseases associated with a reduced arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ , however, breathing supplemental  $\text{O}_2$  can help establish a larger alveoli-to-blood driving gradient, improving arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ . Far from being advantageous, a markedly elevated arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  can be dangerous. If arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  is too high, **oxygen toxicity** can occur. Even though the total  $\text{O}_2$  content of the blood is only slightly increased, exposure to a high  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  can cause brain damage and blindness-causing damage to the retina. Therefore,  $\text{O}_2$  therapy must be administered cautiously.



**ABNORMALITIES IN ARTERIAL  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$**  The term **hypercapnia** refers to the condition of having excess  $\text{CO}_2$  in arterial blood; it is caused by **hypoventilation** (ventilation inadequate to meet metabolic needs for  $\text{O}_2$

## Beyond the Basics

Our bodies are optimally equipped for existence at normal atmospheric pressure. Ascent into mountains high above sea level or descent into the depths of the ocean can have adverse effects on the body.

### Effects of High Altitude on the Body

Atmospheric pressure progressively declines as altitude increases. At 18,000 feet above sea level, atmospheric pressure is only 380 mm Hg—half of its normal sea-level value. Because the proportion of  $O_2$  and  $N_2$  in the air remains the same, the  $P_{O_2}$  of inspired air at this altitude is 21% of 380 mm Hg, or 80 mm Hg, with alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  being even lower at 45 mm Hg. At any altitude above 10,000 feet, the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls into the steep portion of the  $O_2$ -Hb curve, below the safety range of the plateau region. As a result, the % Hb saturation in arterial blood declines precipitously with further increases in altitude.

People who rapidly ascend to altitudes of 10,000 feet or more experience symptoms of **acute mountain sickness** attributable to hypoxic hypoxia and the resultant hypocapnia-induced alkalosis. The increased ventilatory drive to obtain more  $O_2$  causes respiratory alkalosis, because acid-forming  $CO_2$  is blown off more rapidly than it is produced. Sym-

## Effects of Heights and Depths on the Body



© F. Westmarland/Photo Researchers, Inc.

ptoms of mountain sickness include fatigue, nausea, loss of appetite, labored breathing, rapid heart rate (triggered by hypoxia as a compensatory measure to increase circulatory delivery of available  $O_2$  to the tissues), and nerve dysfunction characterized by poor judgment, dizziness, and incoordination.

Despite these acute responses to high altitude, millions of people live at elevations above 10,000 feet, with some villagers even residing in the Andes at altitudes higher than 16,000 feet. How do they live and function normally?

They do so through the process of **acclimatization**. When a person remains at high altitude, the acute compensatory responses of increased ventilation and increased cardiac output are gradually replaced over a period of days by more slowly developing compensatory measures that permit adequate oxygenation of the tissues and restoration of normal acid-base balance. Red blood cell (RBC) production increases, stimulated by erythropoietin in response to reduced  $O_2$  delivery to the kidneys (see p. 300). The rise in the number of RBCs increases the  $O_2$ -carrying capacity of the blood. Hypoxia also promotes the synthesis of BPG within the RBCs so that  $O_2$  is unloaded from Hb more easily at the tissues (see p. 369). The number of capillaries within the tissues increases, reducing the distance that  $O_2$  must diffuse from the blood to reach the cells. Also, the high-altitude inhabitants' endothelial cells release up to 10 times more nitric oxide (NO) than is released in those dwelling

delivery and  $CO_2$  removal). With most lung diseases,  $CO_2$  accumulates in arterial blood concurrently with an  $O_2$  deficit.

**Hypocapnia**, below-normal arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  levels, is brought about by hyperventilation. **Hyperventilation** occurs when a person “overbreathes,” that is, when the rate of ventilation exceeds the body’s metabolic needs for  $CO_2$  removal. As a result,  $CO_2$  is blown off to the atmosphere more rapidly than it is produced in the tissues, and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  falls. Hyperventilation can be triggered by anxiety states, fever, and aspirin poisoning.

Hyperventilation significantly affects  $CO_2$  levels in the body but has little effect on the body’s  $O_2$  content. Even though extra fresh  $O_2$  is inspired during hyperventilation and alveolar and arterial  $P_{O_2}$  subsequently increase, little additional  $O_2$  is added to the blood, because Hb is almost fully saturated at the normal arterial  $P_{O_2}$ . Except for the small extra amount of dissolved  $O_2$ , blood  $O_2$  content remains essentially unchanged during hyperventilation.

Increased ventilation is not synonymous with hyperventilation. Increased ventilation that matches an increased metabolic demand, such as the increased need for  $O_2$  delivery and

$CO_2$  elimination during exercise, is termed **hyperpnea**. During exercise, alveolar and arterial  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  remain constant, with the increased atmospheric exchange just keeping pace with the increased  $O_2$  consumption and  $CO_2$  production.

### CONSEQUENCES OF ABNORMALITIES IN ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES

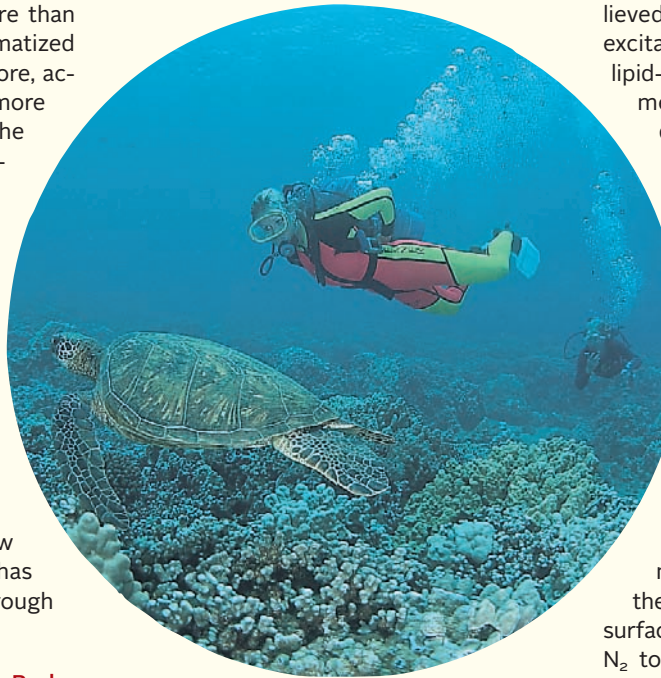
The consequences of reduced  $O_2$  availability to the tissues during hypoxia are apparent. The cells need adequate  $O_2$  to sustain energy-generating metabolic activities. The consequences of abnormal blood  $CO_2$  levels are less obvious. Changes in blood  $CO_2$  concentration primarily affect acid-base balance. Hypercapnia elevates production of  $CO_2$ -generated  $H^+$ . The subsequent generation of excess  $H^+$  produces an acidic condition termed **respiratory acidosis**. Conversely, less-than-normal amounts of  $H^+$  are generated from  $CO_2$  in conjunction with hypocapnia. The resultant alkalotic (less acidic than normal) condition is called **respiratory alkalosis** (see Chapter 14). (To learn about the effects of mountain climbing and deep sea diving on blood gases, see the accompanying boxed feature, **Beyond the Basics**.)

near sea level. This extra NO more than doubles blood flow in the acclimatized individuals (see p. 272). Furthermore, acclimatized cells are able to use O<sub>2</sub> more efficiently through an increase in the number of mitochondria, the energy organelles (see p. 26). The kidneys restore arterial pH to nearly normal by conserving acid that normally would have been lost in the urine (see p. 432).

These compensatory measures come with undesirable trade-offs. For example, the greater number of RBCs increases blood viscosity (makes the blood “thicker”), thereby increasing resistance to blood flow (see p. 263). As a result, the heart has to work harder to pump blood through the vessels.

### Effects of Deep-Sea Diving on the Body

When a deep-sea diver, with the help of a self-contained underwater breathing apparatus (scuba), descends underwater, the body is exposed to greater than atmospheric pressure. Pressure rapidly increases with sea depth as a result of the weight of the water. Pressure is already doubled about 30 feet below sea level. The air provided by scuba equipment is delivered to the lungs at these high pressures. Recall that (1) the amount of a gas in solution is directly proportional to the partial pressure of the gas and (2) air is



composed of 79% N<sub>2</sub>. Nitrogen is poorly soluble in body tissues, but the high P<sub>N<sub>2</sub></sub> that occurs during deep-sea diving causes more of this gas than normal to dissolve in the body tissues. The small amount of N<sub>2</sub> dissolved in the tissues at sea level has no known effect, but as more N<sub>2</sub> dissolves at greater depths, **nitrogen narcosis**, or “**rapture of the deep**,” develops. Nitrogen narcosis is be-

lieved to result from a reduction in the excitability of neurons when the highly lipid-soluble N<sub>2</sub> dissolves in their lipid membranes. At 150 feet underwater, divers experience a feeling of euphoria and become drowsy, similar to the effect of having a few cocktails. At lower depths, divers become weak and clumsy, and at 350 to 400 feet, they lose consciousness. Oxygen toxicity resulting from the high P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> is another possible detrimental effect of descending deep underwater.

Another problem associated with deep-sea diving occurs during ascent. If a diver who has been submerged long enough for a significant amount of N<sub>2</sub> to dissolve in the tissues suddenly ascends to the surface, the rapid reduction in P<sub>N<sub>2</sub></sub> causes N<sub>2</sub> to quickly come out of solution and form bubbles of gaseous N<sub>2</sub> in the body, much as bubbles of gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> form in a bottle of champagne when the cork is popped. The consequences depend on the amount and location of N<sub>2</sub> bubble formation in the body. This condition is called **decompression sickness** or “**the bends**” because the victim often bends over in pain. Decompression sickness can be prevented by ascending slowly to the surface or by decompressing gradually in a decompression tank so that the excess N<sub>2</sub> can slowly escape through the lungs without bubble formation.

## Control of Respiration

Like the heartbeat, breathing must occur in a continuous, cyclic pattern to sustain life processes. Cardiac muscle must rhythmically contract and relax to alternately empty blood from the heart and fill it again. Similarly, inspiratory muscles must rhythmically contract and relax to alternately fill the lungs with air and empty them. Both of these activities are accomplished automatically, without conscious effort. However, the underlying mechanisms and control of these two systems are remarkably different.

### Respiratory centers in the brain stem establish a rhythmic breathing pattern.

Whereas the heart can generate its own rhythm by means of its intrinsic pacemaker activity, the respiratory muscles, being skeletal muscles, contract only when stimulated by their nerve supply. The rhythmic pattern of breathing is established by cyclic neural activity to the respiratory muscles. In other words,

the pacemaker activity that establishes breathing rhythm resides in the respiratory control centers in the brain, not in the lungs or respiratory muscles themselves. The nerve supply to the heart, not being needed to initiate the heartbeat, only modifies the rate and strength of cardiac contraction. In contrast, the nerve supply to the respiratory system is essential in maintaining breathing and in reflexly adjusting the level of ventilation to match changing needs for O<sub>2</sub> uptake and CO<sub>2</sub> removal. Furthermore, unlike cardiac activity, which is not subject to voluntary control, respiratory activity can be voluntarily modified to accomplish speaking, singing, whistling, playing a wind instrument, or holding one’s breath while swimming.

**COMPONENTS OF NEURAL CONTROL OF RESPIRATION** Neural control of respiration involves three distinct components: (1) factors that generate the alternating inspiration–expiration rhythm, (2) factors that regulate the magnitude of ventilation (that is, the rate and depth of breathing) to match body needs, and (3) factors that modify respiratory activity to serve other

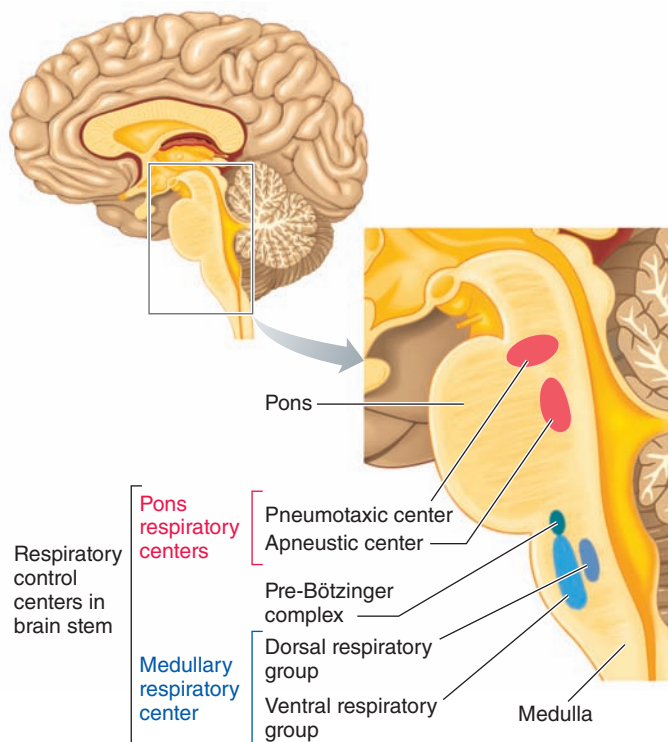
purposes. The latter modifications may be either voluntary, as in the breath control required for speech, or involuntary, as in the respiratory maneuvers involved in a cough or sneeze.

Respiratory control centers housed in the brain stem generate the rhythmic pattern of breathing. The primary respiratory control center, the *medullary respiratory center*, consists of several aggregations of neuronal cell bodies within the medulla that provide output to the respiratory muscles. In addition, two other respiratory centers lie higher in the brain stem in the pons—the *pneumotaxic center* and the *apneustic center*. These pontine centers influence output from the medullary respiratory center (● Figure 12-25). Here is a description of how these various regions interact to establish respiratory rhythmicity.

**INSPIRATORY AND EXPIRATORY NEURONS IN THE MEDULLARY CENTER** We rhythmically breathe in and out during quiet breathing because of alternate contraction and relaxation of the inspiratory muscles, namely, the diaphragm and external intercostal muscles. Contraction and relaxation of these muscles in turn is commanded by the medullary respiratory center, which sends impulses to the motor neurons supplying these muscles.

The **medullary respiratory center** consists of two neuronal clusters known as the *dorsal respiratory group* and the *ventral respiratory group* (● Figure 12-25):

- The **dorsal respiratory group (DRG)** consists mostly of *inspiratory neurons* whose descending fibers terminate on the motor neurons that supply the inspiratory muscles. When the DRG inspiratory neurons fire, inspiration takes place; when they cease firing, expiration occurs. Expiration is brought to an end as the inspiratory neurons fire again. The DRG has important interconnections with the ventral respiratory group.



● **FIGURE 12-25** Respiratory control centers in the brain stem.

- The **ventral respiratory group (VRG)** is composed of *inspiratory neurons* and *expiratory neurons*, both of which remain inactive during normal quiet breathing. This region is called into play by the DRG as an “overdrive” mechanism during periods when demands for ventilation are increased. It is especially important in active expiration. No impulses are generated in the descending pathways from the expiratory neurons during quiet breathing. Only during active expiration do the expiratory neurons stimulate the motor neurons supplying the expiratory muscles (the abdominal and internal intercostal muscles). Furthermore, the VRG inspiratory neurons, when stimulated by the DRG, rev up inspiratory activity when demands for ventilation are high.

**GENERATION OF RESPIRATORY RHYTHM** Until recently, the DRG was generally thought to generate the basic rhythm of ventilation. However, generation of respiratory rhythm is now widely believed to lie in the **pre-Bötzinger complex**, a region located near the upper (head) end of the medullary respiratory center (● Figure 12-25). A network of neurons in this region display pacemaker activity, undergoing self-induced action potentials similar to those of the SA node of the heart. Scientists believe the rate at which the DRG inspiratory neurons rhythmically fire is driven by synaptic input from this complex.

**INFLUENCES FROM THE PNEUMOTAXIC AND APNEUSTIC CENTERS** The respiratory centers in the pons exert “fine-tuning” influences over the medullary center to help produce normal, smooth inspirations and expirations. The **pneumotaxic center** sends impulses to the DRG that help “switch off” the inspiratory neurons, limiting the duration of inspiration. In contrast, the **apneustic center** prevents the inspiratory neurons from being switched off, thus providing an extra boost to the inspiratory drive. In this check-and-balance system, the pneumotaxic center dominates over the apneustic center, helping halt inspiration and letting expiration occur normally. Without the pneumotaxic brakes, the breathing pattern consists of prolonged inspiratory gasps abruptly interrupted by brief expirations. This abnormal breathing pattern is known as **apneusis**; hence, the center that promotes this type of breathing is the apneustic center. Apneusis occurs in certain types of severe brain damage.

**HERING-BREUER REFLEX** When the tidal volume is large (greater than 1 liter), as during exercise, the **Hering-Breuer reflex** is triggered to prevent overinflation of the lungs. **Pulmonary stretch receptors** within the smooth muscle layer of the airways are activated by stretching of the lungs at large tidal volumes. Action potentials from these stretch receptors travel through afferent nerve fibers to the medullary center and inhibit the inspiratory neurons. This negative feedback from the highly stretched lungs helps cut inspiration short before the lungs become overinflated.

**The magnitude of ventilation is adjusted in response to three chemical factors:  $P_{O_2}$ ,  $P_{CO_2}$ , and  $H^+$ .**

No matter how much  $O_2$  is extracted from the blood or how much  $CO_2$  is added to it at the tissue level, the  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  of the systemic arterial blood leaving the lungs are normally held

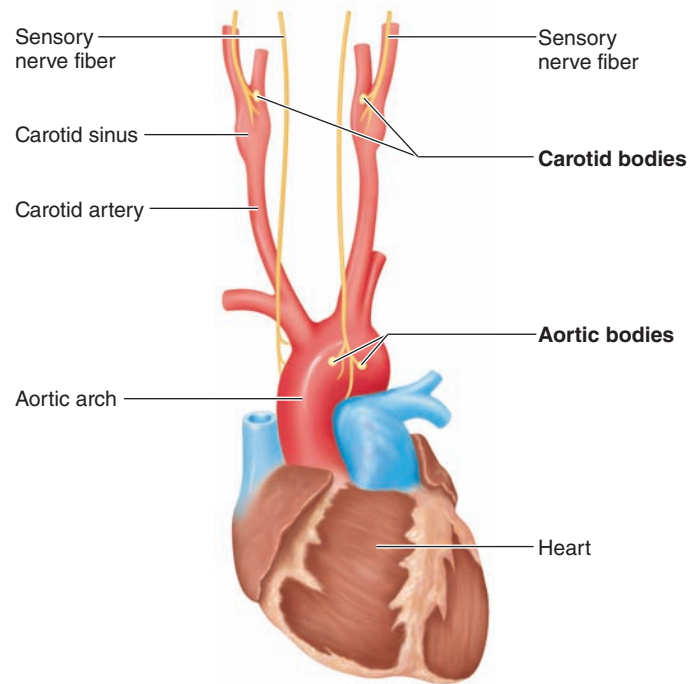
remarkably constant, indicating that arterial blood-gas content is precisely regulated. Arterial blood gases are maintained within the normal range by varying the magnitude of ventilation (rate and depth of breathing) to match the body's needs for  $O_2$  uptake and  $CO_2$  removal. If more  $O_2$  is extracted from the alveoli and more  $CO_2$  is dropped off by the blood because the tissues are metabolizing more actively, ventilation increases correspondingly to bring in more fresh  $O_2$  and blow off more  $CO_2$ .

The medullary respiratory center receives inputs that provide information about the body's needs for gas exchange. It responds by sending appropriate signals to the motor neurons supplying the respiratory muscles, to adjust the rate and depth of ventilation to meet those needs. The two most obvious signals to increase ventilation are a decreased arterial  $P_{O_2}$  or an increased arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ . These two factors do indeed influence the magnitude of ventilation, but not to the same degree nor through the same pathway. Also, a third chemical factor,  $H^+$ , notably influences the level of respiratory activity. We examine the role of each of these important chemical factors in the control of ventilation (▲ Table 12-5).

### Decreased arterial $P_{O_2}$ increases ventilation only as an emergency mechanism.

Arterial  $P_{O_2}$  is monitored by **peripheral chemoreceptors** known as the **carotid bodies** and **aortic bodies**, which lie at the fork of the common carotid arteries (that supply the brain) on both the right and the left sides and in the arch of the aorta, respectively (● Figure 12-26). These chemoreceptors respond to specific changes in the chemical content of the arterial blood that bathes them. They are distinctly different from the carotid sinus and aortic arch baroreceptors located in the same vicinity. The latter monitor pressure changes rather than chemical changes and are important in regulating systemic arterial blood pressure (see p. 289).

**EFFECT OF A LARGE DECREASE IN  $P_{O_2}$  ON THE PERIPHERAL CHEMORECEPTORS** The peripheral chemoreceptors are not sensitive to modest reductions in arterial  $P_{O_2}$ . Arterial  $P_{O_2}$  must fall below 60 mm Hg (>40% reduction) before the peripheral chemoreceptors respond by sending afferent impulses to the medul-



● **FIGURE 12-26** Location of the peripheral chemoreceptors. The carotid bodies are located in the carotid sinus, and the aortic bodies are located in the aortic arch.

lary inspiratory neurons, thereby reflexly increasing ventilation. Because arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls below 60 mm Hg only in the unusual circumstances of severe pulmonary disease or reduced atmospheric  $P_{O_2}$ , it does not play a role in the normal ongoing regulation of respiration. This fact may seem surprising at first because a primary function of ventilation is to provide enough  $O_2$  for uptake by the blood. However, there is no need to increase ventilation until arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls below 60 mm Hg, because of the safety margin in % Hb saturation afforded by the plateau portion of the  $O_2$ -Hb curve. Hemoglobin is still 90% saturated at an arterial  $P_{O_2}$  of 60 mm Hg, but the % Hb saturation drops precipitously when  $P_{O_2}$  falls below this level. Therefore, reflex stimulation of respiration by the peripheral chemoreceptors is an important emergency mechanism in dangerously low arterial  $P_{O_2}$  states.

## ▲ Table 12-5 Influence of Chemical Factors on Respiration

Chemical Factor	Effect on the Peripheral Chemoreceptors	Effect on the Central Chemoreceptors
↓ $P_{O_2}$ in the Arterial Blood	Stimulates only when the arterial $P_{O_2}$ has fallen to the point of being life threatening (<60 mm Hg); is an emergency mechanism	Directly depresses the central chemoreceptors and the respiratory center itself when < 60 mm Hg
↑ $P_{CO_2}$ in the Arterial Blood (↑ $H^+$ in the Brain ECF)	Weakly stimulates	Strongly stimulates; is the dominant control of ventilation (Levels > 70–80 mm Hg directly depress the respiratory center and central chemoreceptors)
↑ $H^+$ in the Arterial Blood	Stimulates; is important in acid–base balance	Does not affect; cannot penetrate the blood–brain barrier



**DIRECT EFFECT OF A LARGE DECREASE IN  $P_{O_2}$  ON THE RESPIRATORY CENTER** The reflex increase in ventilation brought about by the peripheral chemoreceptors when arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls below 60 mm Hg is a lifesaver because a low arterial  $P_{O_2}$  tends to directly depress the respiratory center, as it does all the rest of the brain. Were it not for stimulatory intervention of the peripheral chemoreceptors when arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls threateningly low, a vicious cycle ending in cessation of breathing would develop. Direct depression of the respiratory center by the markedly low arterial  $P_{O_2}$  would further reduce ventilation, leading to an even greater fall in arterial  $P_{O_2}$ , which would even further depress the respiratory center until ventilation ceased and death occurred.



Because the peripheral chemoreceptors respond to the  $P_{O_2}$  of the blood, *not* the total  $O_2$  content of the blood,  $O_2$  content in the arterial blood can fall to dangerously low or even fatal levels without the peripheral chemoreceptors ever responding to reflexly stimulate respiration. Remember that only physically dissolved  $O_2$  contributes to blood  $P_{O_2}$ . The total  $O_2$  content in the arterial blood can be reduced in anemic states, in which  $O_2$ -carrying Hb is reduced, or in CO poisoning, when Hb preferentially binds to this molecule rather than to  $O_2$ . In both cases, arterial  $P_{O_2}$  is normal, so respiration is not stimulated, even though  $O_2$  delivery to the tissues may be so reduced that the person dies from cellular  $O_2$  deprivation.

### Carbon dioxide-generated $H^+$ in the brain is normally the main regulator of ventilation.

In contrast to arterial  $P_{O_2}$ , which does not contribute to the minute-to-minute regulation of respiration, arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  is the most important input regulating the magnitude of ventilation under resting conditions. This role is appropriate, because changes in alveolar ventilation have an immediate and pronounced effect on arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ . By contrast, changes in ventilation have little effect on % Hb saturation and  $O_2$  availability to the tissues until arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls by more than 40%. Even slight alterations from normal in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  bring about a significant reflex effect on ventilation. An increase in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  reflexly stimulates the respiratory center, with the resultant increase in ventilation promoting elimination of the excess  $CO_2$  to the atmosphere. Conversely, a fall in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  reflexly reduces the respiratory drive. The subsequent decrease in ventilation lets metabolically produced  $CO_2$  accumulate so that  $P_{CO_2}$  can be returned to normal.

### EFFECT OF INCREASED $P_{CO_2}$ ON THE CENTRAL CHEMORECEPTORS

Surprisingly, given the key role of arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  in regulating respiration, no important receptors monitor arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  per se. The carotid and aortic bodies are only weakly responsive to changes in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ , so they play only a minor role in reflexly stimulating ventilation in response to an elevation in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ . More important in linking changes in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  to compensatory adjustments in ventilation are the **central chemoreceptors**, located in the medulla near the respiratory center. These central chemoreceptors do not monitor  $CO_2$  itself; however, they are sensitive to changes in  $CO_2$ -induced  $H^+$  con-

centration in the brain extracellular fluid (ECF) that bathes them.

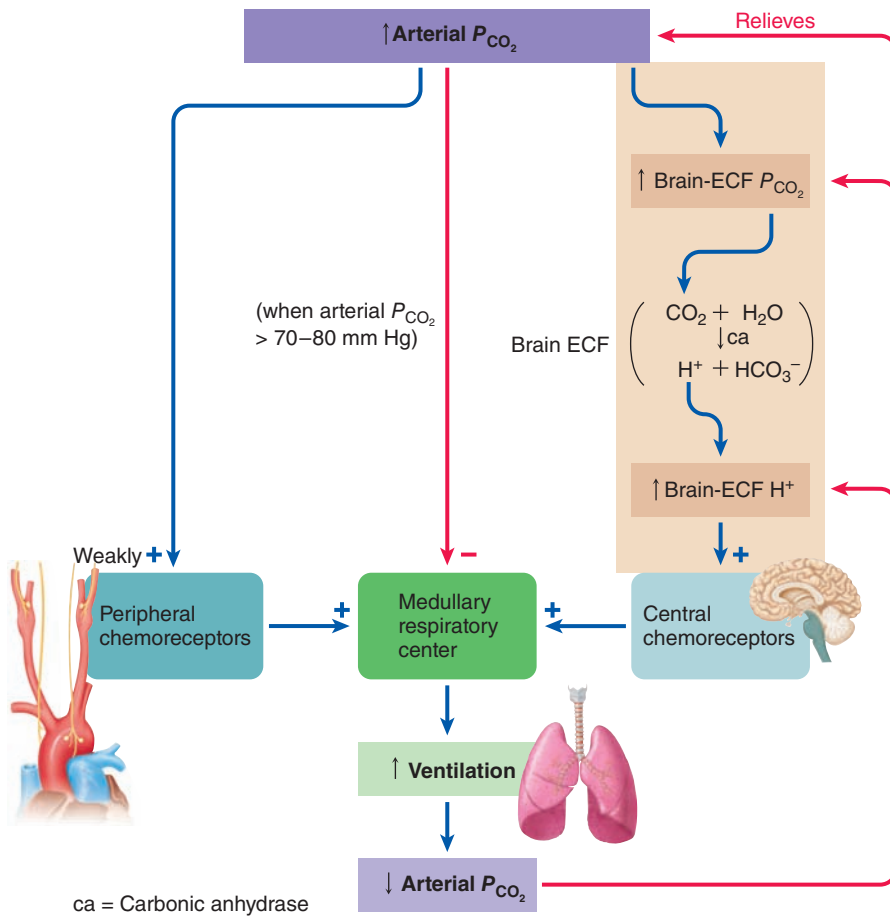
Movement of materials across the brain capillaries is restricted by the blood–brain barrier (see p. 112). Because this barrier is readily permeable to  $CO_2$ , any increase in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  causes a similar rise in brain-ECF  $P_{CO_2}$  as  $CO_2$  diffuses down its pressure gradient from the cerebral blood vessels into the brain ECF. Under the influence of carbonic anhydrase, the increased  $P_{CO_2}$  within the brain ECF correspondingly raises the concentration of  $H^+$  according to the law of mass action as it applies to this reaction:  $CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^-$ . An elevation in  $H^+$  concentration in the brain ECF directly stimulates the central chemoreceptors, which in turn increase ventilation by stimulating the respiratory center through synaptic connections (● Figure 12-27). As the excess  $CO_2$  is subsequently blown off, arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and brain-ECF  $P_{CO_2}$  and  $H^+$  concentration return to normal. Conversely, a decline in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  below normal is paralleled by a fall in  $P_{CO_2}$  and  $H^+$  in the brain ECF, the result of which is a central chemoreceptor-mediated decrease in ventilation. As  $CO_2$  produced by cell metabolism is consequently allowed to accumulate, arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and brain-ECF  $P_{CO_2}$  and  $H^+$  are restored toward normal.

Unlike  $CO_2$ ,  $H^+$  cannot readily permeate the blood–brain barrier, so  $H^+$  in the plasma cannot gain access to the central chemoreceptors. Accordingly, the central chemoreceptors respond only to  $H^+$  generated within the brain ECF itself as a result of  $CO_2$  entry. Thus, the major mechanism controlling ventilation under resting conditions is specifically aimed at regulating the brain-ECF  $H^+$  concentration, which in turn directly reflects the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ . Unless there are extenuating circumstances such as reduced availability of  $O_2$  in the inspired air, arterial  $P_{O_2}$  is coincidentally also maintained at its normal value by the brain-ECF  $H^+$  ventilatory driving mechanism.

The powerful influence of the central chemoreceptors on the respiratory center is responsible for your inability to deliberately hold your breath for more than about a minute. While you hold your breath, metabolically produced  $CO_2$  continues to accumulate in your blood and then to build up the  $H^+$  concentration in your brain ECF. Finally, the increased  $P_{CO_2}$ – $H^+$  stimulant to respiration becomes so powerful that central chemoreceptor excitatory input overrides voluntary inhibitory input to respiration, so breathing resumes despite deliberate attempts to prevent it. Breathing resumes long before arterial  $P_{O_2}$  falls to the threateningly low levels that trigger the peripheral chemoreceptors. Therefore, you cannot deliberately hold your breath long enough to create a dangerously high level of  $CO_2$  or low level of  $O_2$  in the arterial blood.

### DIRECT EFFECT OF A LARGE INCREASE IN $P_{CO_2}$ ON THE RESPIRATORY CENTER

In contrast to the normal reflex stimulatory effect of the increased  $P_{CO_2}$ – $H^+$  mechanism on respiratory activity, very high levels of  $CO_2$  directly depress the entire brain, including the respiratory center, just as very low levels of  $O_2$  do. Up to a  $P_{CO_2}$  of 70 to 80 mm Hg, progressively higher  $P_{CO_2}$  levels promote correspondingly more vigorous respiratory efforts in an attempt to blow off the excess  $CO_2$ . A further increase in  $P_{CO_2}$  beyond 70 to 80 mm Hg, however, does not further increase



● **FIGURE 12-27** Effect of increased arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  on ventilation.

ventilation but actually depresses the respiratory neurons. For this reason,  $\text{CO}_2$  must be removed and  $\text{O}_2$  supplied in closed environments such as closed-system anesthesia machines, submarines, or space capsules. Otherwise,  $\text{CO}_2$  could reach lethal levels, not only because it depresses respiration but also because it produces severe respiratory acidosis.

### Adjustments in ventilation in response to changes in arterial $\text{H}^+$ are important in acid–base balance.

Changes in arterial  $\text{H}^+$  concentration cannot influence the central chemoreceptors because  $\text{H}^+$  does not readily cross the blood–brain barrier. However, the aortic and carotid body peripheral chemoreceptors are highly responsive to fluctuations in arterial  $\text{H}^+$  concentration, in contrast to their weak sensitivity to deviations in arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and their unresponsiveness to arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  until it falls 40% below normal. In many situations, even though  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  is normal, arterial  $\text{H}^+$  concentration is changed by the addition or loss of non- $\text{CO}_2$ -generated acid from the body. For example, arterial  $\text{H}^+$  concentration increases during diabetes mellitus because excess  $\text{H}^+$ -generating keto acids are abnormally produced and added to the blood. A rise in arterial  $\text{H}^+$  concentration reflexly stimulates ventilation by means of the peripheral chemoreceptors. Conversely, the peripheral chemoreceptors reflexly suppress respiratory activity in response to a fall in arterial  $\text{H}^+$

concentration resulting from nonrespiratory causes. Changes in ventilation by this mechanism are extremely important in regulating the body's acid–base balance. Changing the magnitude of ventilation can vary the amount of  $\text{H}^+$ -generating  $\text{CO}_2$  eliminated. The resulting adjustment in the amount of  $\text{H}^+$  added to the blood from  $\text{CO}_2$  can compensate for the nonrespiratory-induced abnormality in arterial  $\text{H}^+$  concentration that first elicited the respiratory response. (See Chapter 14 for further details.)

### During apnea, a person “forgets to breathe.”

**Apnea** is the transient interruption of ventilation, with breathing resuming spontaneously. If breathing does not resume, the condition is called **respiratory arrest**. Because ventilation is normally decreased and the central chemoreceptors are less sensitive to the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  drive during sleep, apnea is most likely to occur during this time. Victims of **sleep apnea** may stop breathing for a few seconds or up to 1 or 2 minutes as many as 500 times a night. Mild sleep apnea is not dangerous unless the sufferer has pulmonary or

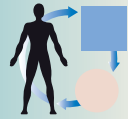
circulatory disease, which can be worsened by recurrent bouts of apnea.



**SUDDEN INFANT DEATH SYNDROME** In exaggerated cases of sleep apnea, the victim may be unable to recover from an apneic period, and death results. This is the case in **sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS)**, or “crib death,” the leading cause of death in the first year of life. With this tragic form of sleep apnea, a previously healthy 2- to 4-month-old infant is found dead in his or her crib for no apparent reason. The underlying cause of SIDS is the subject of intense investigation. Most evidence suggests that the baby “forgets to breathe” because the respiratory control mechanisms are immature, either in the brain stem or in the chemoreceptors that monitor the body's respiratory status. Abnormal lung development has been suggested as being responsible for at least some cases.

Whatever the underlying cause, certain risk factors make babies more vulnerable to SIDS. Among them are sleeping position (an almost 40% higher incidence of SIDS is associated with sleeping on the abdomen rather than on the back or side) and exposure to nicotine during fetal life or after birth. Infants whose mothers smoked during pregnancy or who breathe cigarette smoke in the home are three times more likely to die of SIDS than those not exposed to smoke.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



The respiratory system contributes to homeostasis by obtaining  $O_2$  from and eliminating  $CO_2$  to the external environment. All body cells ultimately need an adequate supply of  $O_2$  to use in oxidizing nutrient molecules to generate ATP. Brain cells, which especially depend on a continual supply of  $O_2$ , die if deprived of  $O_2$  for more than 4 minutes. Even cells that can

resort to anaerobic (“without  $O_2$ ”) metabolism for energy production, such as strenuously exercising muscles, can do so only transiently by incurring an  $O_2$  deficit that must be made up during the period of excess postexercise  $O_2$  consumption (see p. 211).

As a result of these energy-yielding metabolic reactions, the body produces large quantities of  $CO_2$  that must be eliminated. Because  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  form carbonic acid, adjustments in the rate of  $CO_2$  elimination by the respiratory system are important in regulating acid–base balance in the internal environment. Cells can survive only within a narrow pH range.

### REVIEW EXERCISES

#### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-46)

- Breathing is accomplished by alternate contraction and relaxation of muscles within the lung tissue. (*True or false?*)
- Normally, the alveoli empty completely during maximal expiratory efforts. (*True or false?*)
- Alveolar ventilation does not always increase when pulmonary ventilation increases. (*True or false?*)
- Hemoglobin has a higher affinity for  $O_2$  than for any other substance. (*True or false?*)
- Rhythmicity of breathing is brought about by pacemaker activity displayed by the respiratory muscles. (*True or false?*)
- The expiratory neurons send impulses to the motor neurons controlling the expiratory muscles during normal quiet breathing. (*True or false?*)
- The two forces that tend to keep the alveoli open are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- The two forces that promote alveolar collapse are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a measure of the magnitude of change in lung volume accomplished by a given change in the transmural pressure gradient.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the phenomenon of the lungs snapping back to their resting size after having been stretched.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the erythrocytic enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of  $CO_2$  into  $HCO_3^-$ .
- Which of the following reactions take(s) place at the pulmonary capillaries?
  - $Hb + O_2 \rightarrow HbO_2$
  - $CO_2 + H_2O \rightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-$
  - $Hb + CO_2 \rightarrow HbCO_2$
  - $Hb + H^+ \rightarrow HbH$
- Using the answer code on the right, indicate which chemoreceptors are being described:
 

_____ 1. stimulated by an arterial $P_{O_2}$ of 80 mm Hg	(a) peripheral chemoreceptors
_____ 2. stimulated by an arterial $P_{O_2}$ of 55 mm Hg	(b) central chemoreceptors
_____ 3. directly depressed by an arterial $P_{O_2}$ of 55 mm Hg	(c) both peripheral and central chemoreceptors
_____ 4. weakly stimulated by an elevated arterial $P_{CO_2}$	(d) neither peripheral nor central chemoreceptors
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. strongly stimulated by an elevated brain-ECF  $H^+$  concentration induced by an elevated arterial  $P_{CO_2}$
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. stimulated by an elevated arterial  $H^+$  concentration
- Indicate the  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  partial pressure relationships important in gas exchange by circling  $>$  (greater than),  $<$  (less than), or  $=$  (equal to) as appropriate in each of the following statements:
  - $P_{O_2}$  in blood entering the pulmonary capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{O_2}$  in the alveoli.
  - $P_{CO_2}$  in blood entering the pulmonary capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{CO_2}$  in the alveoli.
  - $P_{O_2}$  in the alveoli is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{O_2}$  in blood leaving the pulmonary capillaries.
  - $P_{CO_2}$  in the alveoli is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{CO_2}$  in blood leaving the pulmonary capillaries.
  - $P_{O_2}$  in blood leaving the pulmonary capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{O_2}$  in blood entering the systemic capillaries.
  - $P_{CO_2}$  in blood leaving the pulmonary capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{CO_2}$  in blood entering the systemic capillaries.
  - $P_{O_2}$  in blood entering the systemic capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{O_2}$  in the tissue cells.
  - $P_{CO_2}$  in blood entering the systemic capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{CO_2}$  in the tissue cells.
  - $P_{O_2}$  in the tissue cells is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or approximately  $=$ )  $P_{O_2}$  in blood leaving the systemic capillaries.
  - $P_{CO_2}$  in the tissue cells is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or approximately  $=$ )  $P_{CO_2}$  in blood leaving the systemic capillaries.
  - $P_{O_2}$  in blood leaving the systemic capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{O_2}$  in blood entering the pulmonary capillaries.
  - $P_{CO_2}$  in blood leaving the systemic capillaries is ( $>$ ,  $<$ , or  $=$ )  $P_{CO_2}$  in blood entering the pulmonary capillaries.

#### Essay Questions

- Distinguish between cellular and external respiration. List the steps in external respiration.
- Describe the components of the respiratory system. What is the site of gas exchange?
- Compare atmospheric, intra-alveolar, and intrapleural pressures.

- Why are the lungs normally stretched even during expiration?
- Explain why air enters the lungs during inspiration and leaves during expiration.
- Why is inspiration normally active and expiration normally passive?
- Why does airway resistance become an important determinant of airflow rates in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease?
- Explain pulmonary elasticity in terms of compliance and elastic recoil.
- State the source and function of pulmonary surfactant.
- Define the various lung volumes and capacities.
- Compare pulmonary and alveolar ventilation. What is the consequence of anatomic dead space?
- What determines the partial pressures of a gas in air and in blood?
- List the methods of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  transport in the blood.
- What is the primary factor that determines the percent hemoglobin saturation? What are the significances of the plateau and the steep portions of the  $O_2$ -Hb dissociation curve?
- How does hemoglobin promote the net transfer of  $O_2$  from the alveoli to the blood?
- Define the following: hypoxic hypoxia, anemic hypoxia, circulatory hypoxia, histotoxic hypoxia, hypercapnia, hypocapnia, hyperventilation, hypoventilation, hyperpnea, and apnea.
- What are the locations and functions of the three respiratory control centers? Distinguish between the dorsal respiratory group (DRG) and the ventral respiratory group (VRG).
- What brain region establishes the rhythmicity of breathing?

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-46)

- Why is it important that airplane interiors are pressurized (that is, the pressure is maintained at sea-level atmospheric pressure even though the atmospheric pressure surrounding the plane is substantially lower)? Explain the physiological value of using  $O_2$  masks if the pressure in the airplane interior cannot be maintained.
- Would hypercapnia accompany the hypoxia produced in each of the following situations? Why or why not?
  - cyanide poisoning
  - pulmonary edema
  - restrictive lung disease
  - high altitude
  - severe anemia
  - congestive heart failure
  - obstructive lung disease
- At body temperature, the partial pressure of water vapor is 47 mm Hg. If a person lives 1 mile above sea level in Denver, Colorado, where the atmospheric pressure is 630 mm Hg, what would the  $P_{O_2}$  of the inspired air be once it is humidified in the respiratory airways before it reaches the alveoli?
- Based on what you know about the control of respiration, explain why it is dangerous to voluntarily hyperventilate to lower the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  before going underwater. The purpose of the hyperventilation is to stay under longer before  $P_{CO_2}$  rises above normal and drives the swimmer to surface for a breath of air.
- If a person whose alveolar membranes are thickened by disease has an alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  of 100 mm Hg and an alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  of 40 mm Hg, which of the following values of systemic arterial blood gases are most likely to exist?
  - $P_{O_2} = 105$  mm Hg,  $P_{CO_2} = 35$  mm Hg
  - $P_{O_2} = 100$  mm Hg,  $P_{CO_2} = 40$  mm Hg
  - $P_{O_2} = 90$  mm Hg,  $P_{CO_2} = 45$  mm Hg
 If the person is administered 100%  $O_2$ , will the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  increase, decrease, or remain the same? Will the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  increase, decrease, or remain the same?

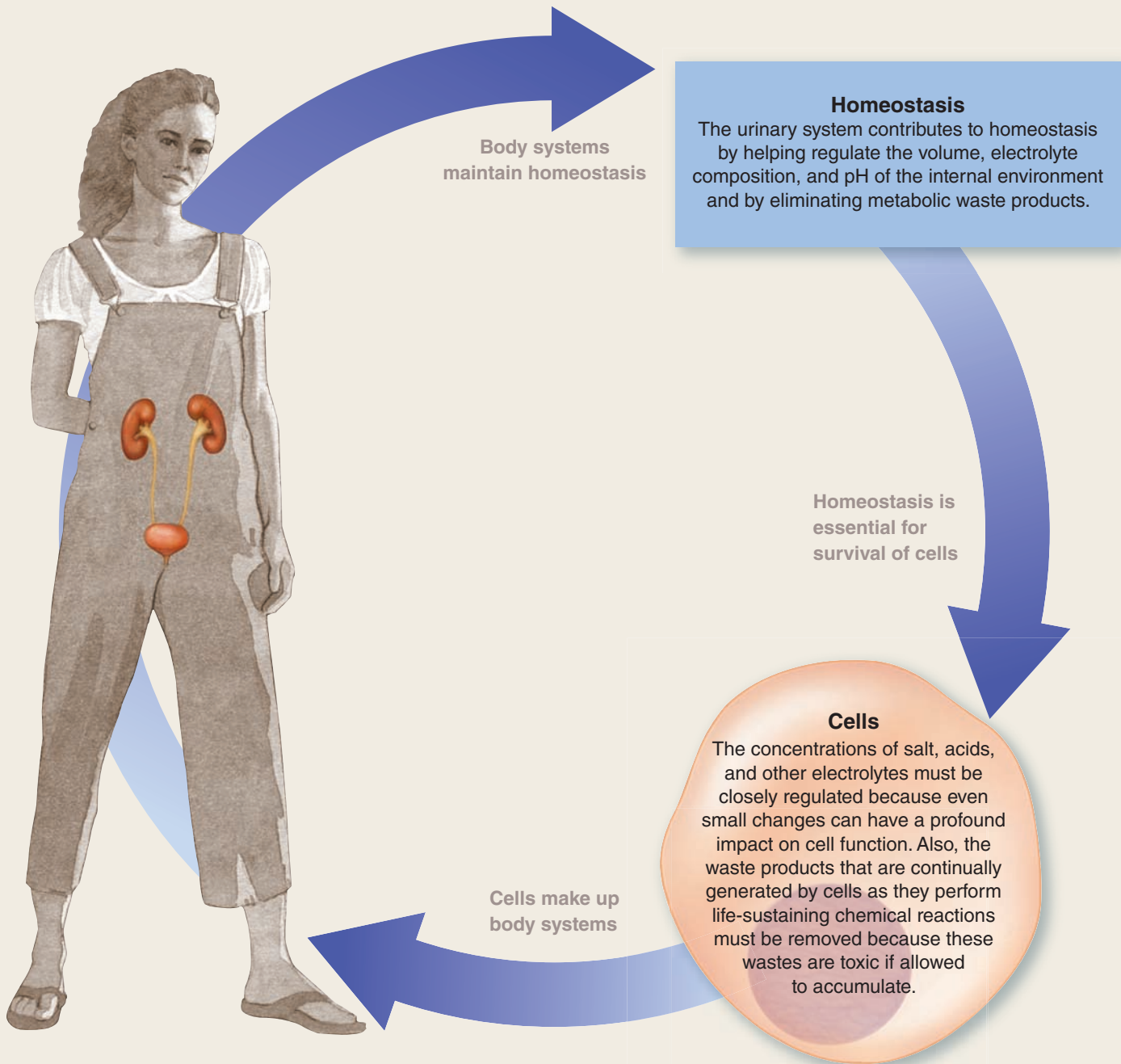
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-47)

Keith M., a former heavy cigarette smoker, has severe emphysema. How does this condition affect his airway resistance? How does this change in airway resistance influence Keith's inspiratory and expiratory efforts? Describe how his respiratory muscle activity and intra-alveolar pressure changes compare to normal to accomplish a normal tidal volume. How would his spirogram compare to normal? What influence would Keith's condition have on gas exchange in his lungs? What blood gas abnormalities are likely to be present? Some patients like Keith who have severe chronic lung disease lose their sensitivity to an elevated arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ . In a prolonged increase in  $H^+$  generation in the brain ECF, from long-standing  $CO_2$  retention, enough  $HCO_3^-$  may cross the blood-brain barrier to buffer, or "neutralize," the excess  $H^+$ . The additional  $HCO_3^-$  combines with the ex-

cess  $H^+$ , removing it from solution so that it no longer contributes to free  $H^+$  concentration. When brain-ECF  $HCO_3^-$  concentration rises, brain-ECF  $H^+$  concentration returns to normal, although arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and brain-ECF  $P_{CO_2}$  remain high. The central chemoreceptors are no longer aware of the elevated  $P_{CO_2}$ , because brain-ECF  $H^+$  is normal. Because the central chemoreceptors no longer reflexly stimulate the respiratory center in response to the elevated  $P_{CO_2}$ , the drive to eliminate  $CO_2$  is blunted in such patients; that is, their level of ventilation is abnormally low considering their high arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ . In these patients, the hypoxic drive to ventilation becomes their primary respiratory stimulus, in contrast to normal individuals, in whom arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  level is the dominant factor governing the magnitude of ventilation. Given this situation, would it be appropriate to administer  $O_2$  to Keith to relieve his hypoxic condition?

## Urinary System



The survival and proper functioning of cells depend on maintaining stable concentrations of salt, acids, and other electrolytes in the internal fluid environment. Cell survival also depends on continuous removal of toxic metabolic wastes that cells produce as they perform life-sustaining chemical reactions. The kidneys play a major role in maintaining homeostasis by regulating the concentration of many plasma constituents, especially electrolytes and water, and by eliminating all metabolic wastes (except  $\text{CO}_2$ , which

is removed by the lungs). As plasma repeatedly filters through the kidneys, they retain constituents of value for the body and eliminate undesirable or excess materials in the urine. Of special importance is the kidneys' ability to regulate the volume and osmolarity (solute concentration) of the internal fluid environment by controlling salt and water balance. Also crucial is their ability to help regulate pH by controlling elimination of acid and base in the urine.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Kidneys: Functions, Anatomy, and Basic Processes**

Functions of the kidneys

Anatomic considerations

Basic renal processes

**Glomerular Filtration**

Forces responsible for glomerular filtration

Magnitude and regulation of the GFR

Renal blood flow; filtration fraction

**Tubular Reabsorption**

Transepithelial transport

Active versus passive reabsorption

Process and control of active  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption

Secondary active reabsorption of glucose and amino acids

Tubular maximum; renal threshold

Regulated reabsorption of  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ Passive reabsorption of  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and urea**Tubular Secretion**

Hydrogen ion secretion

Potassium ion secretion

Organic ion secretion

**Urine Excretion and Plasma Clearance**

Urine excretion rate

Plasma clearance

Excretion of urine of varying concentrations; medullary countercurrent system

Vasopressin-controlled  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption

Renal failure

Micturition

# The Urinary System

## Kidneys: Functions, Anatomy, and Basic Processes

The composition of the fluid bathing all the cells could be notably altered by exchanges between the cells and this internal fluid environment if mechanisms did not exist to keep the extracellular fluid (ECF) stable.

**The kidneys perform a variety of functions aimed at maintaining homeostasis.**

The kidneys, in concert with hormonal and neural inputs that control their function, are the organs primarily responsible for maintaining the stability of ECF volume, electrolyte composition, and osmolarity (solute concentration). By adjusting the quantity of water and various plasma constituents that are either conserved for the body or eliminated in the urine, the kidneys can maintain water and electrolyte balance within the narrow range compatible with life, despite a wide range of intake and losses of these constituents through other avenues. The kidneys not only adjust for variations in ingestion of water ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ), salt, and other electrolytes but also adjust urinary output of these ECF constituents to compensate for abnormal losses through heavy sweating, vomiting, diarrhea, or hemorrhage. Thus, as the kidneys do what they can to maintain homeostasis, urine composition varies greatly.

When the ECF has a surplus of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  or a particular electrolyte such as salt ( $\text{NaCl}$ ), the kidneys can eliminate the excess in the urine. If a deficit exists, the kidneys cannot provide additional quantities of the depleted constituent, but they can limit urinary losses of the material in short supply and thus conserve it until the person can take in more of the depleted substance. Accordingly, the kidneys can compensate more efficiently for excesses than for deficits. In fact, in some instances the kidneys cannot halt the loss of a valuable substance in the urine, even though the substance may be in short supply. A prime example is a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  deficit. Even if a person is not consuming any  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , the kidneys must put out about half a liter of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the urine each day to fill another major role as the body's "cleaners."

In addition to the kidneys' important regulatory role in maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance, they are the main route for eliminating potentially toxic metabolic wastes and foreign compounds from the body. These wastes cannot be eliminated as solids; they must be excreted in solution, thus obligating the kidneys to produce a minimum volume of around 500 ml of waste-filled urine per day. Because  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  eliminated in the urine is derived from the blood plasma, a person stranded without  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  eventually urinates to death: The plasma volume falls to a fatal level as  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is unavoidably removed to accompany the wastes.

**OVERVIEW OF KIDNEY FUNCTIONS** The kidneys perform the following specific functions, most of which help preserve the constancy of the internal fluid environment:

1. *Maintaining  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance in the body* (see Chapter 14).
2. *Maintaining the proper osmolarity of body fluids, primarily through regulating  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance.* This function is important to prevent osmotic fluxes into or out of the cells,

which could lead to detrimental swelling or shrinking of the cells, respectively (see Chapter 14).

3. *Regulating the quantity and concentration of most ECF ions*, including sodium ( $\text{Na}^+$ ), chloride ( $\text{Cl}^-$ ), potassium ( $\text{K}^+$ ), calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ), hydrogen ion ( $\text{H}^+$ ), bicarbonate ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ), phosphate ( $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ), sulfate ( $\text{SO}_4^{2-}$ ), and magnesium ( $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ). Even minor fluctuations in the ECF concentrations of some of these electrolytes can have profound influences. For example, changes in the ECF concentration of  $\text{K}^+$  can potentially lead to fatal cardiac dysfunction.
4. *Maintaining proper plasma volume*, which is important in the long-term regulation of arterial blood pressure. This function is accomplished through the kidneys' regulatory role in salt ( $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance (see Chapter 14).
5. *Helping maintain the proper acid–base balance* of the body by adjusting urinary output of  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (see Chapter 14).
6. *Excreting (eliminating) the end products (wastes) of bodily metabolism*, such as urea (from proteins), uric acid (from nucleic acids), creatinine (from muscle creatine), bilirubin (from hemoglobin), and hormone metabolites. If allowed to accumulate, many of these wastes are toxic, especially to the brain.
7. *Excreting many foreign compounds*, such as drugs, food additives, pesticides, and other exogenous nonnutritive materials that have entered the body.
8. *Producing erythropoietin*, a hormone that stimulates red blood cell production (see Chapter 11).
9. *Producing renin*, an enzymatic hormone that triggers a chain reaction important in salt conservation by the kidneys.
10. *Converting vitamin D into its active form* (see Chapter 17).

### The kidneys form the urine; the rest of the urinary system carries the urine to the outside.

The **urinary system** consists of the urine-forming organs—the **kidneys**—and the structures that carry the urine from the kidneys to the outside for elimination from the body (● Figure 13-1a). The kidneys are a pair of bean-shaped organs about 4 to 5 in. long that lie behind the abdominal cavity (between the abdominal cavity and the back muscles), one on each side of the vertebral column, slightly above the waistline. Each kidney is supplied by a **renal artery** and a **renal vein**, which, respectively, enters and leaves the kidney at the medial indentation that gives this organ its beanlike form. The kidney acts on the plasma flowing through it to produce urine, conserving materials to be retained in the body and eliminating unwanted materials into the urine.

After urine is formed, it drains into a central collecting cavity, the **renal pelvis**, located at the medial inner core of each kidney (● Figure 13-1b). From there urine is channeled into the **ureter**, a smooth muscle-walled duct that exits at the medial border close to the renal artery and vein. There are two ureters, one carrying urine from each kidney to the single urinary bladder.

The **urinary bladder**, which temporarily stores urine, is a hollow, distensible, smooth muscle-walled sac. Periodically, urine is emptied from the bladder to the outside through an-

other tube, the **urethra**, as a result of bladder contraction. The urethra in females is straight and short, passing directly from the neck of the bladder to the outside (see ● Figure 18-2, p. 548). In males, the urethra is longer and follows a curving course from the bladder to the outside, passing through both the prostate gland and the penis (● Figure 13-1a; see also ● Figure 18-1, p. 547). The male urethra serves the dual function of providing both a route for eliminating urine from the bladder and a passageway for semen from the reproductive organs. The prostate gland lies below the neck of the bladder and completely encircles the urethra.



Prostatic enlargement, which often occurs during middle to older age, can partially or completely occlude the urethra, impeding the flow of urine.

The parts of the urinary system beyond the kidneys merely serve as “ductwork” to transport urine to the outside. Once formed by the kidneys, urine is not altered in composition or volume as it moves downstream through the rest of the tract.

### The nephron is the functional unit of the kidney.

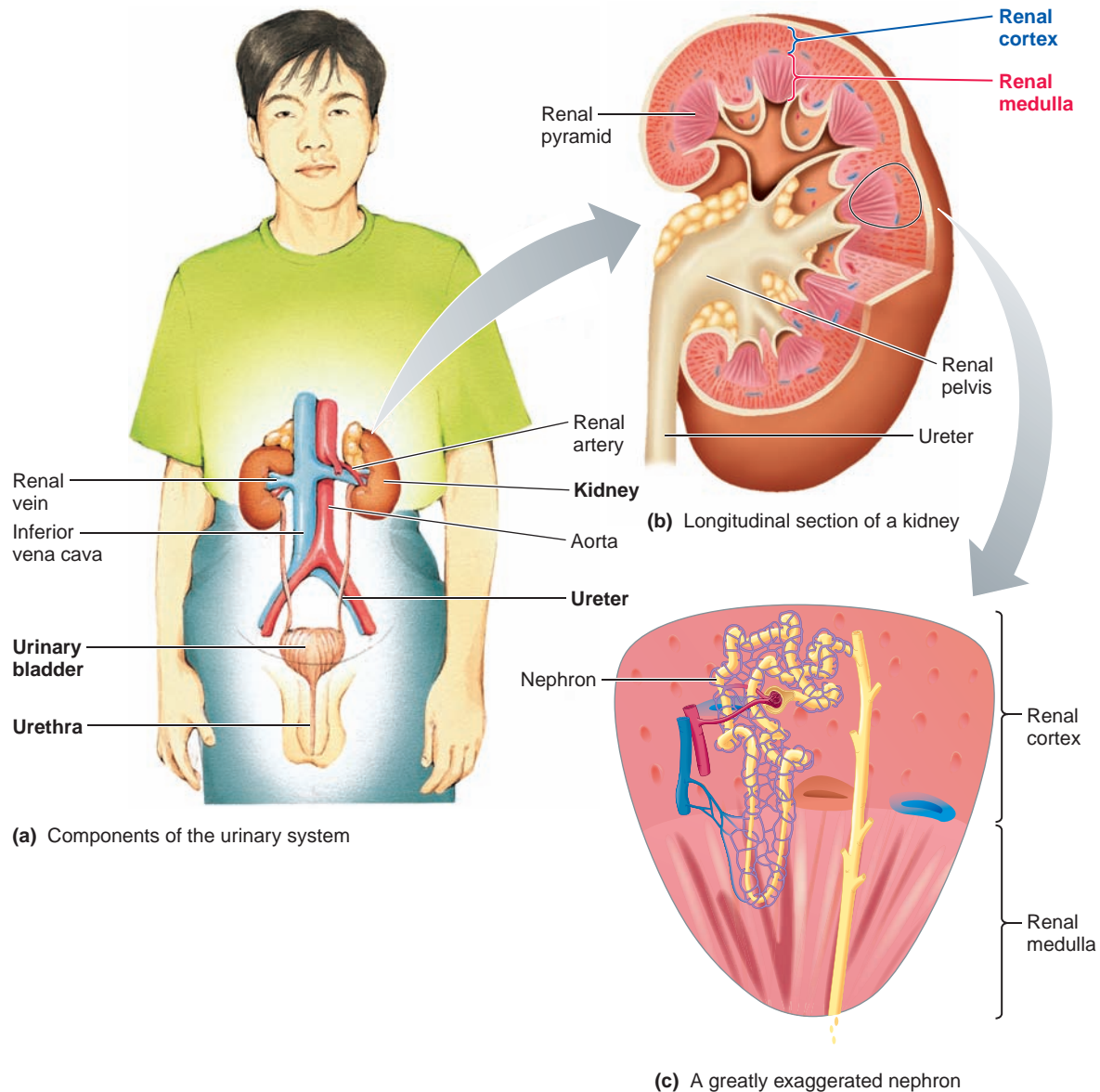
Each kidney consists of about 1 million microscopic functional units known as **nephrons**, which are bound together by connective tissue (● Figure 13-1c). Recall that a functional unit is the smallest unit within an organ capable of performing all of that organ's functions. Because the main function of the kidneys is to produce urine and, in so doing, maintain constancy in the ECF composition, a nephron is the smallest unit capable of forming urine.

The arrangement of nephrons within the kidneys gives rise to two distinct regions—an outer region called the **renal cortex**, which looks granular, and an inner region, the **renal medulla**, which is made up of striated triangles, the **renal pyramids** (● Figure 13-1b and c).

Knowledge of the structural arrangement of an individual nephron is essential for understanding the distinction between the cortical and the medullary regions of the kidney and, more important, for understanding renal function. Each nephron consists of a *vascular component* and a *tubular component*, both of which are intimately related structurally and functionally (● Figure 13-2).

**VASCULAR COMPONENT OF THE NEPHRON** The dominant part of the nephron's vascular component is the **glomerulus**, a ball-like tuft of capillaries through which part of the water and solutes is filtered from blood passing through. This filtered fluid, which is almost identical in composition to plasma, then passes through the nephron's tubular component, where various transport processes convert it into urine.

On entering the kidney, the renal artery subdivides to ultimately form many small vessels known as **afferent arterioles**, one of which supplies each nephron. The afferent arteriole delivers blood to the glomerulus. The glomerular capillaries rejoin to form another arteriole, the **efferent arteriole**, through which blood that was not filtered into the tubular component leaves the glomerulus (● Figures 13-2 and 13-3). The efferent arterioles are the only arterioles in the body that drain from capillar-



● **FIGURE 13-1 The urinary system.** (a) The pair of kidneys produce urine, which the ureters carry to the urinary bladder. Urine is stored in the bladder and periodically emptied to the exterior through the urethra. (b) The kidney consists of an outer, granular-appearing renal cortex and an inner, striated-appearing renal medulla. The renal pelvis at the medial inner core of the kidney collects urine after it is formed. (c) Each kidney has a million nephrons. One of these microscopic functional units is shown here, greatly exaggerated, in a medullary renal pyramid capped by a section of renal cortex.

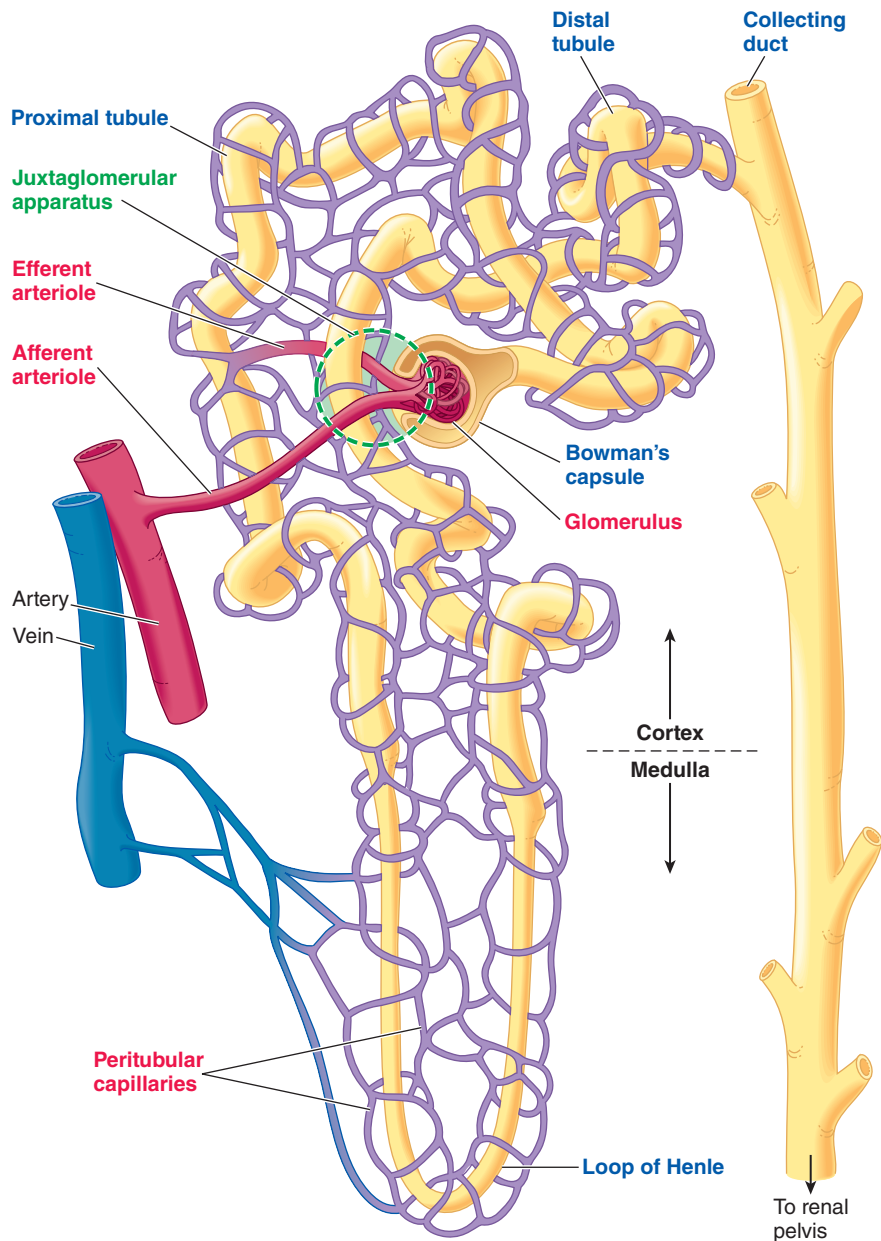
ies. Typically, arterioles break up into capillaries that rejoin to form venules. At the glomerular capillaries, no  $O_2$  or nutrients are extracted from the blood for use by the kidney tissues, nor are waste products picked up from the surrounding tissue. Thus, arterial blood enters the glomerular capillaries through the afferent arteriole, and arterial blood leaves the glomerulus through the efferent arteriole.

The efferent arteriole quickly subdivides into a second set of capillaries, the **peritubular capillaries**, which supply the renal tissue with blood and are important in exchanges between the tubular system and the blood during conversion of the filtered fluid into urine. These peritubular capillaries, as their name implies, are intertwined around the tubular system (*peri*

means “around”). The peritubular capillaries rejoin to form venules that ultimately drain into the renal vein, by which blood leaves the kidney.

**TUBULAR COMPONENT OF THE NEPHRON** The nephron’s tubular component is a hollow, fluid-filled tube formed by a single layer of epithelial cells. Even though the tubule is continuous from its beginning near the glomerulus to its ending at the renal pelvis, it is arbitrarily divided into various segments based on differences in structure and function along its length (● Figure 13-2). The tubular component begins with **Bowman’s capsule**, an expanded, double-walled “cup” that surrounds the glomerulus to collect fluid filtered from the glomerular capillaries. The





### Overview of Functions of Parts of a Nephron

#### Vascular component

- **Afferent arteriole**—carries blood to the glomerulus
- **Glomerulus**—a tuft of capillaries that filters a protein-free plasma into the tubular component
- **Efferent arteriole**—carries blood from the glomerulus
- **Peritubular capillaries**—supply the renal tissue; involved in exchanges with the fluid in the tubular lumen

#### Tubular component

- **Bowman's capsule**—collects the glomerular filtrate
- **Proximal tubule**—uncontrolled reabsorption and secretion of selected substances occur here
- **Loop of Henle**—establishes an osmotic gradient in the renal medulla that is important in the kidney's ability to produce urine of varying concentration
- **Distal tubule and collecting duct**—variable, controlled reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and secretion of  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{H}^+$  occur here; fluid leaving the collecting duct is urine, which enters the renal pelvis

#### Combined vascular/tubular component

- **Juxtaglomerular apparatus**—produces substances involved in the control of kidney function

● **FIGURE 13-2** A nephron.

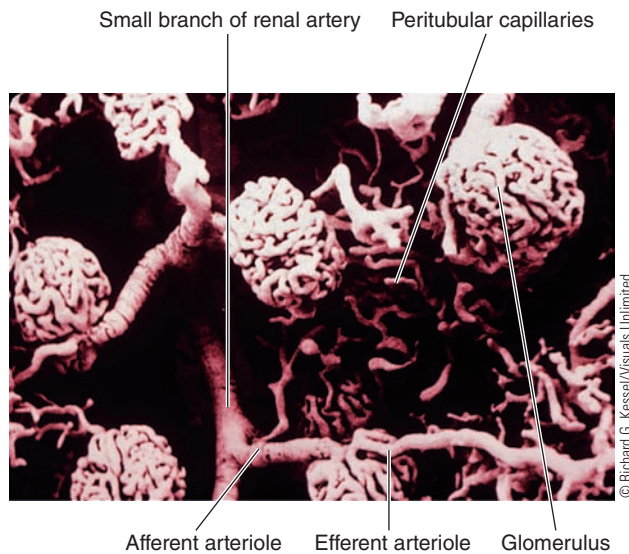
presence of all glomeruli and associated Bowman's capsules in the cortex produces this region's granular appearance.

From Bowman's capsule, the filtered fluid passes into the **proximal tubule**, which lies entirely within the cortex and is highly coiled or convoluted throughout much of its course. The next segment, the **loop of Henle**, forms a sharp U-shaped or hairpin loop that dips into the renal medulla. The *descending limb* of the loop of Henle plunges from the cortex into the medulla; the *ascending limb* traverses back up into the cortex. The ascending limb returns to the glomerular region of its own nephron, where it passes through the fork formed by the afferent and efferent arterioles. Both the tubular and the vascular cells at this point are specialized to form the **juxtaglomerular apparatus**, a structure that lies next to the glomerulus (*juxta* means "next to"). This specialized region plays an important role in regulating kidney function. Beyond the juxtaglomerular

apparatus, the tubule again coils tightly to form the **distal tubule**, which also lies entirely within the cortex. The distal tubule empties into a **collecting duct or tubule**, with each collecting duct draining fluid from up to eight separate nephrons. Each collecting duct plunges down through the medulla to empty its fluid contents (now converted into urine) into the renal pelvis. The parallel arrangement of long loops of Henle and collecting ducts in the medulla creates this region's striated appearance.

### The three basic renal processes are glomerular filtration, tubular reabsorption, and tubular secretion.

Three basic processes are involved in forming urine: *glomerular filtration*, *tubular reabsorption*, and *tubular secretion*. To aid in visualizing the relationships among these renal processes, it is useful to unwind the nephron schematically, as in ● Figure 13-4.

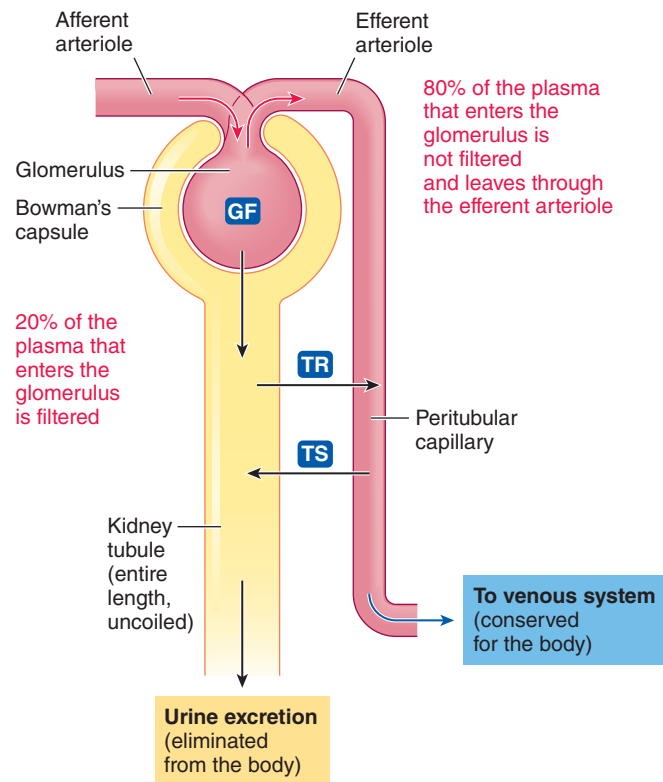


● **FIGURE 13-3** Scanning electron micrograph of glomeruli and associated arterioles.

**GLOMERULAR FILTRATION** As blood flows through the glomerulus, protein-free plasma filters through the glomerular capillaries into Bowman's capsule. Normally, about 20% of the plasma that enters the glomerulus is filtered. This process, known as **glomerular filtration**, is the first step in urine formation. On average, 125 ml of glomerular filtrate (filtered fluid) are formed collectively through all the glomeruli each minute. This amounts to 180 liters (about 47.5 gallons) each day. Considering that the average plasma volume in an adult is 2.75 liters, this means that the kidneys filter the entire plasma volume about 65 times per day. If everything filtered passed out in the urine, the total plasma volume would be urinated in less than half an hour! This does not happen, however, because the kidney tubules and peritubular capillaries are intimately related throughout their lengths so that materials can be transferred between the fluid inside the tubules and the blood within the peritubular capillaries.

**TUBULAR REABSORPTION** As the filtrate flows through the tubules, substances of value to the body are returned to the peritubular capillary plasma. This selective movement of substances from inside the tubule (the tubular lumen) into the blood is called **tubular reabsorption**. Reabsorbed substances are not lost from the body in the urine but instead are carried by the peritubular capillaries to the venous system and then to the heart to be recirculated. Of the 180 liters of plasma filtered per day, 178.5 liters, on average, are reabsorbed. The remaining 1.5 liters left in the tubules pass into the renal pelvis to be eliminated as urine. In general, substances the body needs to conserve are selectively reabsorbed, whereas unwanted substances that must be eliminated stay in the urine.

**TUBULAR SECRETION** The third renal process, **tubular secretion**, is the selective transfer of substances from the peritubular capillary blood into the tubular lumen. It provides a second route for substances to enter the renal tubules from the blood,



**GF** = **Glomerular filtration**—nondiscriminant filtration of a protein-free plasma from the glomerulus into Bowman's capsule

**TR** = **Tubular reabsorption**—selective movement of filtered substances from the tubular lumen into the peritubular capillaries

**TS** = **Tubular secretion**—selective movement of nonfiltered substances from the peritubular capillaries into the tubular lumen

● **FIGURE 13-4** **Basic renal processes.** Anything filtered or secreted but not reabsorbed is excreted in the urine and lost from the body. Anything filtered and subsequently reabsorbed, or not filtered at all, enters the venous blood and is saved for the body.

the first being by glomerular filtration. Only about 20% of the plasma flowing through the glomerular capillaries is filtered into Bowman's capsule; the remaining 80% flows on through the efferent arteriole into the peritubular capillaries. Tubular secretion provides a mechanism for more rapidly eliminating selected substances from the plasma by extracting an additional quantity of a particular substance from the 80% of unfiltered plasma in the peritubular capillaries and adding it to the quantity of the substance already present in the tubule as a result of filtration.

**URINE EXCRETION** **Urine excretion** is the elimination of substances from the body in the urine. It is not a separate process but the result of the first three processes. All plasma constituents filtered or secreted but not reabsorbed remain in the tubules and pass into the renal pelvis to be excreted as urine and eliminated from the body (● Figure 13-4). (Do not confuse excretion with secretion.) Note that anything filtered and subsequently reabsorbed, or not filtered at all, enters the venous blood from the peritubular capillaries and thus is conserved for the body instead of being excreted in urine, despite passing through the kidneys.

**THE BIG PICTURE OF THE BASIC RENAL PROCESSES** Glomerular filtration is largely an indiscriminate process. With the exception of blood cells and plasma proteins, all constituents within the blood—H<sub>2</sub>O, nutrients, electrolytes, wastes, and so on—nonselectively enter the tubular lumen as a bulk unit during filtration. That is, of the 20% of the plasma filtered at the glomerulus, everything in that part of the plasma enters Bowman's capsule except for the plasma proteins. The highly discriminating tubular processes then work on the filtrate to return to the blood a fluid of the composition and volume necessary to maintain constancy of the internal fluid environment. The unwanted filtered material is left behind in the tubular fluid to be excreted as urine. Glomerular filtration can be thought of as pushing a part of the plasma, with all its essential components, as well as those that need to be eliminated from the body, onto a tubular "conveyor belt" that terminates at the renal pelvis, which is the collecting point for urine within the kidney. All plasma constituents that enter this conveyor belt and are not subsequently returned to the plasma by the end of the line are spilled out of the kidney as urine. It is up to the tubular system to salvage by reabsorption the filtered materials that need to be preserved for the body while leaving behind substances that must be excreted. In addition, some substances not only are filtered but also are secreted onto the tubular conveyor belt, so the amounts of these substances excreted in the urine are greater than the amounts that were filtered. For many substances, these renal processes

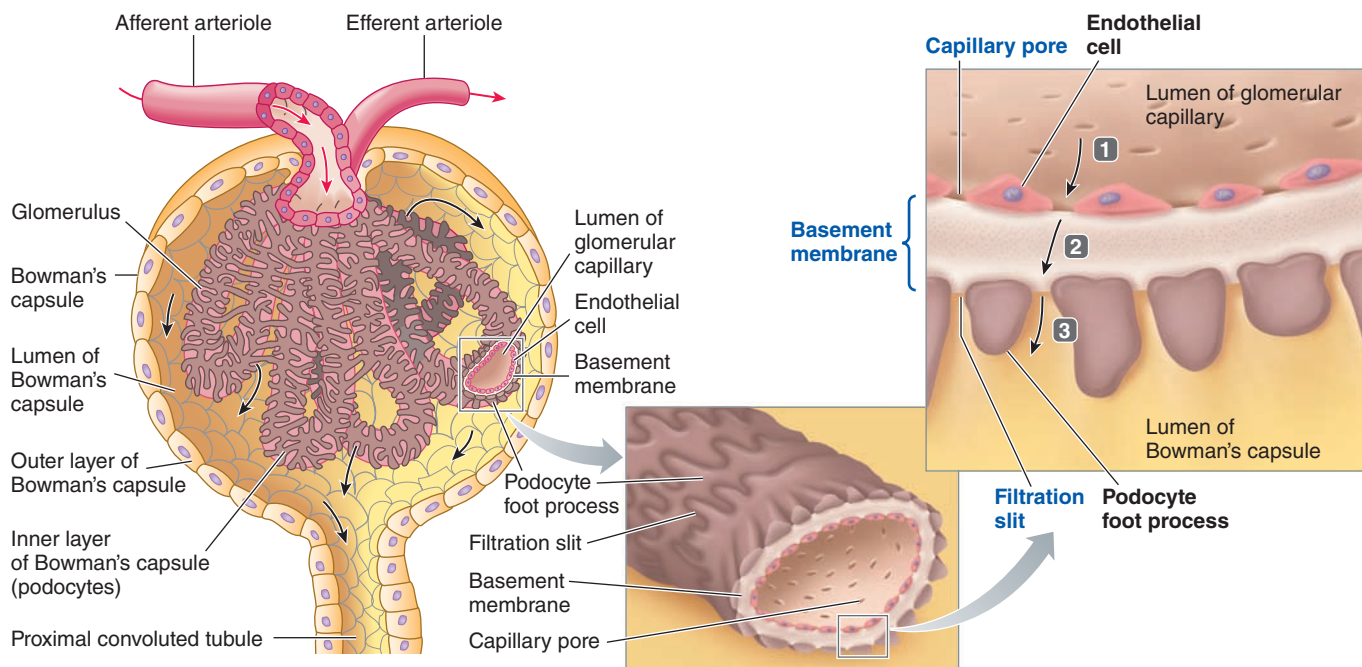
are subject to physiologic control. Thus, the kidneys handle each constituent in the plasma by a particular combination of filtration, reabsorption, and secretion.

The kidneys act only on the plasma, yet the ECF consists of both the plasma and the interstitial fluid. The interstitial fluid is the true internal fluid environment of the body, because it is the only component of the ECF that comes into direct contact with the cells. However, because of the free exchange between the plasma and the interstitial fluid across the capillary walls (with the exception of plasma proteins), interstitial fluid composition reflects the composition of plasma. Thus, by performing their regulatory and excretory roles on plasma, the kidneys maintain the proper interstitial fluid environment for optimal cell function. Most of the rest of this chapter is devoted to considering how the basic renal processes are accomplished and the mechanisms by which they are carefully regulated to help maintain homeostasis.

## Glomerular Filtration

Fluid filtered from the glomerulus into Bowman's capsule must pass through the three layers that make up the **glomerular membrane** (● Figure 13-5):

1. The *glomerular capillary wall* consists of a single layer of flattened endothelial cells. It is perforated by many large pores



To be filtered, a substance must pass through

- 1 the pores between the endothelial cells of the glomerular capillary
- 2 an acellular basement membrane
- 3 the filtration slits between the foot processes of the podocytes in the inner layer of Bowman's capsule

● **FIGURE 13-5** Layers of the glomerular membrane.

(or fenestrations; see p. 277) that make it more than 100 times more permeable to H<sub>2</sub>O and solutes than capillaries elsewhere in the body.

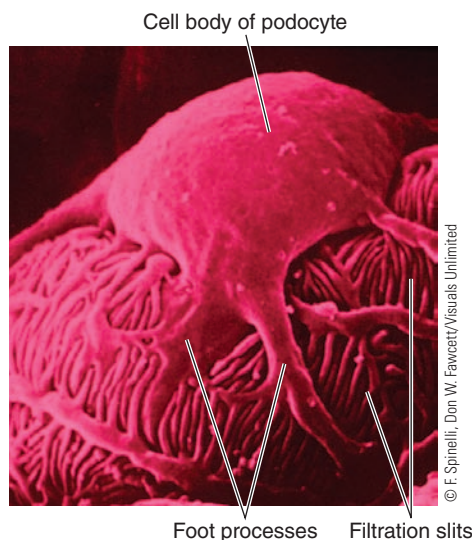
2. The *basement membrane* is an acellular (lacking cells) gelatinous layer sandwiched between the glomerulus and Bowman's capsule.

3. The *inner layer of Bowman's capsule* consists of **podocytes**, octopus-like cells that encircle the glomerular tuft. Each podocyte bears many elongated foot processes (*podo* means "foot"; a *process* is a projection or appendage) that interdigitate with foot processes of adjacent podocytes, much as you interlace your fingers between each other when you cup your hands around a ball (● Figure 13-6). The narrow slits between adjacent foot processes, known as **filtration slits**, provide a pathway through which fluid leaving the glomerular capillaries can enter the lumen of Bowman's capsule.

Thus, the route that filtered substances take across the glomerular membrane is completely extracellular—first through capillary pores, then through the acellular basement membrane, and finally through capsular filtration slits (see ● Figure 13-5). Collectively, these layers function as a fine molecular sieve that retains the blood cells and plasma proteins but permits H<sub>2</sub>O and solutes to filter through.

### Glomerular capillary blood pressure is the major force that causes glomerular filtration.

To accomplish glomerular filtration, a force must drive a part of the plasma in the glomerulus through the openings in the glomerular membrane. No active transport mechanisms or local energy expenditures are involved in moving fluid from the plasma across the glomerular membrane into Bowman's capsule. Passive physical forces similar to those acting across capillaries elsewhere accomplish glomerular filtration. Because the glomerulus is a tuft of capillaries, the same principles of fluid



● **FIGURE 13-6** Bowman's capsule podocytes with foot processes and filtration slits. Note the filtration slits between adjacent foot processes on this scanning electron micrograph. The podocytes and their foot processes encircle the glomerular capillaries.

dynamics apply here that cause ultrafiltration across other capillaries (see p. 279), except for two important differences: (1) The glomerular capillaries are more permeable than capillaries elsewhere, so more fluid is filtered for a given filtration pressure, and (2) the balance of forces across the glomerular membrane is such that filtration occurs the entire length of the capillaries. In contrast, the balance of forces in other capillaries shifts so that filtration occurs in the beginning part of the vessel but reabsorption occurs toward the vessel's end (see ● Figure 10-18, p. 280).

**FORCES INVOLVED IN GLOMERULAR FILTRATION** Three physical forces are involved in glomerular filtration (▲ Table 13-1): glomerular capillary blood pressure, plasma-colloid osmotic pressure, and Bowman's capsule hydrostatic pressure. Let us examine the role of each.

1. *Glomerular capillary blood pressure* is the fluid (hydrostatic) pressure exerted by the blood within the glomerular capillaries. It ultimately depends on contraction of the heart (the source of energy that produces glomerular filtration) and the resistance to blood flow offered by the afferent and efferent arterioles. Glomerular capillary blood pressure, at an estimated average value of 55 mm Hg, is higher than capillary blood pressure elsewhere. The reason for the higher pressure is the larger diameter of the afferent arteriole compared to that of the efferent

### ▲ Table 13-1 Forces Involved in Glomerular Filtration

Force	Effect	Magnitude (mm Hg)
<b>Glomerular Capillary Blood Pressure</b>	Favors filtration	55
<b>Plasma-Colloid Osmotic Pressure</b>	Opposes filtration	30
<b>Bowman's Capsule Hydrostatic Pressure</b>	Opposes filtration	15
<b>Net Filtration Pressure (difference between force favoring and forces opposing filtration)</b>	Favors filtration	10

$55 - (30 + 15) = 10$

arteriole. Because blood can flow more rapidly into the glomerulus through the wide afferent arteriole than it can leave through the narrower efferent arteriole, glomerular capillary blood pressure is maintained high as a result of blood damming up in the glomerular capillaries. Also, because of the high resistance offered by the efferent arterioles, blood pressure does not have the same tendency to fall along the length of the glomerular capillaries as it does along other capillaries. This elevated, nondecremental glomerular blood pressure tends to push fluid out of the glomerulus into Bowman's capsule along the glomerular capillaries' entire length, and it is the major force producing glomerular filtration.

Whereas glomerular capillary blood pressure favors filtration, the two other forces acting across the glomerular membrane (plasma-colloid osmotic pressure and Bowman's capsule hydrostatic pressure) oppose filtration.

2. *Plasma-colloid osmotic pressure* is caused by the unequal distribution of plasma proteins across the glomerular membrane. Because plasma proteins cannot be filtered, they are in the glomerular capillaries but not in Bowman's capsule. Accordingly, the concentration of H<sub>2</sub>O is higher in Bowman's capsule than in the glomerular capillaries. The resulting tendency for H<sub>2</sub>O to move by osmosis down its own concentration gradient from Bowman's capsule into the glomerulus opposes glomerular filtration. This opposing osmotic force averages 30 mm Hg, which is slightly higher than across other capillaries. It is higher because more H<sub>2</sub>O is filtered out of the glomerular blood, so the concentration of plasma proteins is higher than elsewhere.

3. *Bowman's capsule hydrostatic pressure*, the pressure exerted by the fluid in this initial part of the tubule, is estimated to be about 15 mm Hg. This pressure, which tends to push fluid out of Bowman's capsule, opposes the filtration of fluid from the glomerulus into Bowman's capsule.

**GLOMERULAR FILTRATION RATE** As can be seen in ▲ Table 13-1, the forces acting across the glomerular membrane are not in balance. The total force favoring filtration is the glomerular capillary blood pressure at 55 mm Hg. The total of the two forces opposing filtration is 45 mm Hg. The net difference favoring filtration (10 mm Hg of pressure) is called the **net filtration pressure**. This modest pressure forces large volumes of fluid from the blood through the highly permeable glomerular membrane.

Normally, about 20% of the plasma that enters the glomerulus is filtered at the net filtration pressure of 10 mm Hg, producing collectively through all glomeruli 180 liters of glomerular filtrate each day for an average **glomerular filtration rate (GFR)** of 125 ml/min in males (160 liters of filtrate per day for an average GFR of 115 ml/min in females).

### Changes in the GFR result primarily from changes in glomerular capillary blood pressure.

Because the net filtration pressure that accomplishes glomerular filtration is simply the result of an imbalance of opposing physical forces between the glomerular capillary plasma and

Bowman's capsule fluid, alterations in any of these physical forces can affect the GFR. We now examine the effect that changes in each of these physical forces have on the GFR.

**UNREGULATED INFLUENCES ON THE GFR** Plasma-colloid osmotic pressure and Bowman's capsule hydrostatic pressure are not subject to regulation and, under normal conditions, do not vary much.



However, they can change pathologically and thus inadvertently affect the GFR. Because plasma-colloid osmotic pressure opposes filtration, a decrease in plasma protein concentration, by reducing this pressure, leads to an increase in the GFR. An uncontrollable reduction in plasma protein concentration might occur, for example, in severely burned patients who lose a large quantity of protein-rich, plasma-derived fluid through the exposed burned surface of their skin. Conversely, when plasma-colloid osmotic pressure is elevated, such as in cases of dehydrating diarrhea, the GFR is reduced.

Bowman's capsule hydrostatic pressure can become uncontrollably elevated, and filtration subsequently can decrease, given a urinary tract obstruction, such as a kidney stone or enlarged prostate. The damming up of fluid behind the obstruction elevates capsular hydrostatic pressure.

**CONTROLLED ADJUSTMENTS IN THE GFR** Unlike plasma-colloid osmotic pressure and Bowman's capsule hydrostatic pressure—which may be uncontrollably altered in various disease states and thereby may inappropriately alter the GFR—glomerular capillary blood pressure can be controlled to adjust the GFR to suit the body's needs. Assuming that all other factors stay constant, as the glomerular capillary blood pressure goes up, the net filtration pressure increases and the GFR increases correspondingly. The magnitude of the glomerular capillary blood pressure depends on the rate of blood flow within each of the glomeruli. The amount of blood flowing into a glomerulus per minute is determined largely by the resistance offered by the afferent arterioles. If resistance increases in the afferent arteriole, less blood flows into the glomerulus, decreasing the GFR. Controlled changes in the GFR are brought about by the sympathetic nervous system, which adjusts glomerular blood flow by regulating the caliber of the afferent arterioles. The parasympathetic nervous system does not have any influence on the kidneys.

Sympathetic control of the GFR is aimed at long-term regulation of arterial blood pressure. If plasma volume is decreased—for example, by hemorrhage—the resulting fall in arterial blood pressure is detected by the arterial carotid sinus and aortic arch baroreceptors, which initiate neural reflexes to raise blood pressure toward normal (see p. 289). These reflex responses are coordinated by the cardiovascular control center in the brain stem and are mediated primarily through increased sympathetic activity to the heart and blood vessels. Although the resulting increase in both cardiac output and total peripheral resistance helps raise blood pressure toward normal in the short term, plasma volume is still reduced. In the long term, plasma volume must be restored to normal. One compensation

for a depleted plasma volume is reduced urine output so that more fluid than normal is conserved for the body. Urine output is reduced in part by reducing the GFR; if less fluid is filtered, less is available to excrete.

**ROLE OF THE BARORECEPTOR REFLEX IN EXTRINSIC CONTROL OF THE GFR** No new mechanism is needed to decrease the GFR. It is reduced by the baroreceptor reflex response to a fall in blood pressure (● Figure 13-7). During this reflex, sympathetically induced vasoconstriction occurs in most arterioles throughout the body (including the afferent arterioles) as a compensatory mechanism to increase total peripheral resistance. When the afferent arterioles carrying blood to the glomeruli constrict from increased sympathetic activity, less blood flows into the glomeruli than normal, lowering glomerular capillary blood

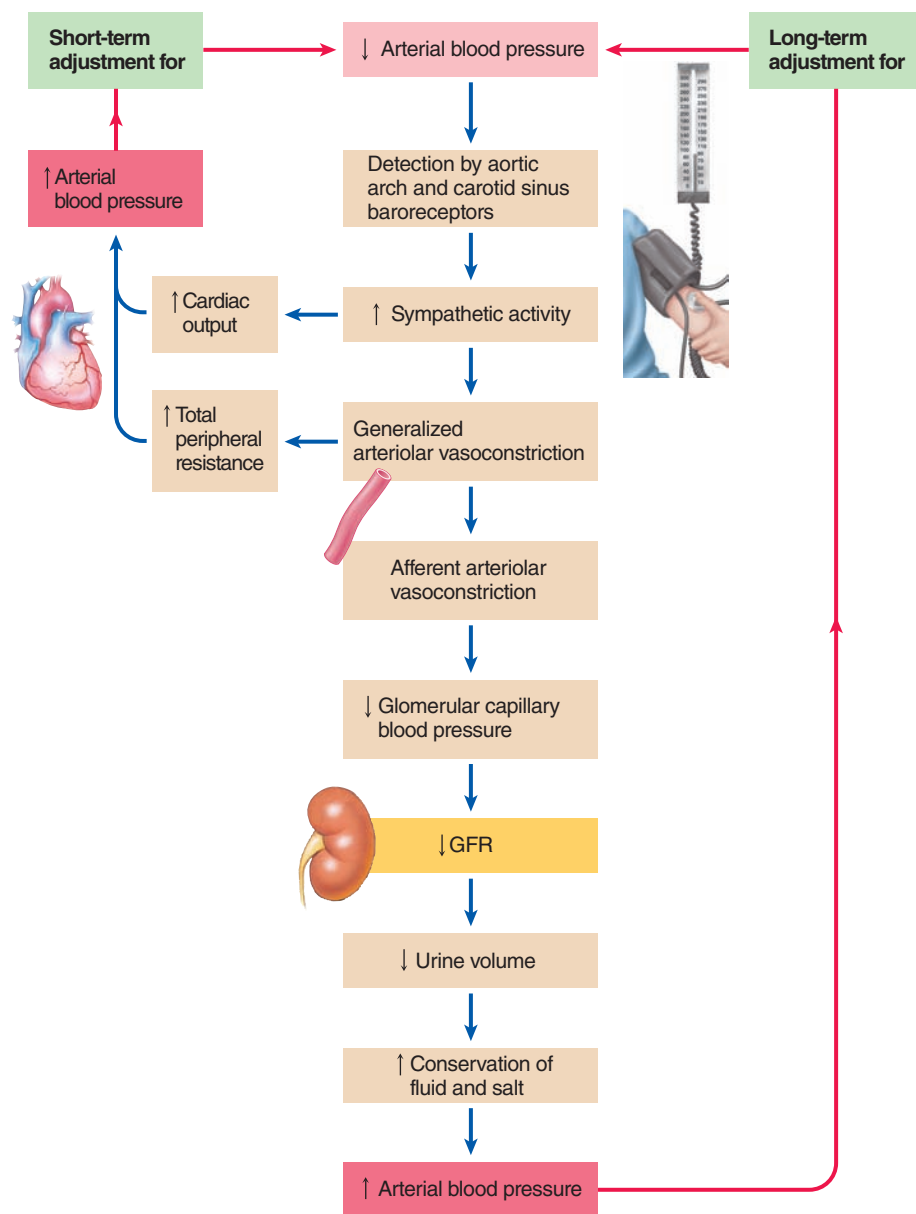
pressure (● Figure 13-8a). The resulting decrease in GFR, in turn, reduces urine volume. In this way, some of the H<sub>2</sub>O and salt that would otherwise have been lost in the urine are saved for the body, helping restore plasma volume to normal in the long term so that short-term cardiovascular adjustments that have been made are no longer necessary. Other mechanisms, such as increased tubular reabsorption of H<sub>2</sub>O and salt, as well as increased thirst (described more thoroughly elsewhere), also contribute to long-term maintenance of blood pressure, despite a loss of plasma volume, by helping restore plasma volume.

Conversely, if blood pressure is elevated (for example, because of an expansion of plasma volume following ingestion of excessive fluid), the opposite responses occur. When the baroreceptors detect a rise in blood pressure, sympathetic vasoconstrictor activity to the arterioles, including the renal afferent arterioles, is reflexly reduced, allowing afferent arteriolar vasodilation to occur. As more blood enters the glomeruli through the dilated afferent arterioles, glomerular capillary blood pressure rises, increasing the GFR (● Figure 13-8b). As more fluid is filtered, more fluid is available to be eliminated in the urine. A hormonally adjusted reduction in the tubular reabsorption of H<sub>2</sub>O and salt also contributes to the increase in urine volume. These two renal mechanisms—increased glomerular filtration and decreased tubular reabsorption of H<sub>2</sub>O and salt—increase urine volume and eliminate the excess fluid from the body. Reduced thirst and fluid intake also help restore an elevated blood pressure to normal in the long term.

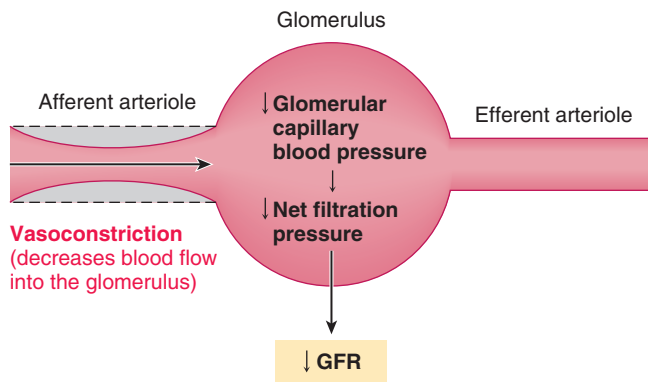
Before turning to the process of tubular reabsorption, we examine the percentage of cardiac output that goes to the kidneys. This further reinforces the concept of how much blood flows through the kidneys and how much of that fluid is filtered and subsequently acted on by the tubules.

**The kidneys normally receive 20% to 25% of the cardiac output.**

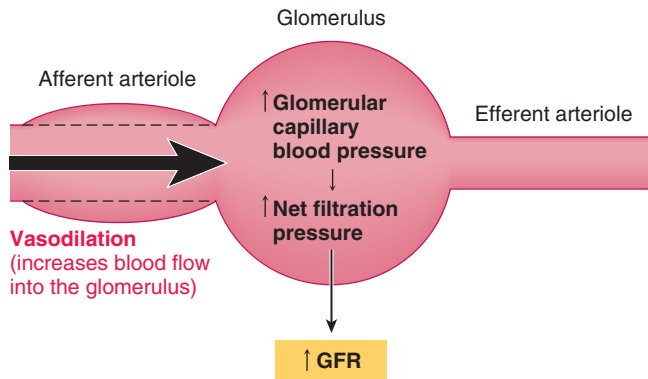
At the average net filtration pressure, 20% of the plasma that enters the kidneys is converted into glomerular filtrate. That means at an average GFR of 125 ml/min, the total renal plasma flow must average about 625 ml/min. Because 55% of whole blood consists of plasma (that is, hematocrit = 45; see p. 297), the total flow of blood through the kidneys averages 1140 ml/min. This quantity is about 22% of the total cardiac output of



● **FIGURE 13-7** Baroreceptor reflex influence on the GFR in long-term regulation of arterial blood pressure.



(a) Arteriolar vasoconstriction decreases the GFR



(b) Arteriolar vasodilation increases the GFR

● **FIGURE 13-8** Adjustments of afferent arteriole caliber to alter the GFR.

5 L/min (5000 ml/min), although the kidneys compose less than 1% of total body weight.

The kidneys receive such a seemingly disproportionate share of the cardiac output because they must continuously perform their regulatory and excretory functions on the huge volumes of plasma delivered to them to maintain stability in the internal fluid environment. Most of the blood goes to the kidneys not to supply the renal tissue but to be adjusted and purified by the kidneys. On average, 20% to 25% of the blood pumped out by the heart each minute “goes to the cleaners” instead of serving its normal purpose of exchanging materials with the tissues. Only by continuously processing such a large proportion of the blood can the kidneys precisely regulate the volume and electrolyte composition of the internal environment and adequately eliminate the large quantities of metabolic waste products that are constantly produced.

## Tubular Reabsorption

All plasma constituents except the plasma proteins are indiscriminately filtered together through the glomerular capillaries. In addition to waste products and excess materials that the body must eliminate, the filtered fluid contains nutrients, electrolytes, and other substances that the body cannot afford to lose in the urine. Indeed, through ongoing glomerular filtra-

tion, greater quantities of these materials are filtered per day than are even present in the entire body. The essential materials that are filtered are returned to the blood by *tubular reabsorption*, the discrete transfer of substances from the tubular lumen into the peritubular capillaries.

### Tubular reabsorption is tremendous, highly selective, and variable.

Tubular reabsorption is a highly selective process. All constituents except plasma proteins are at the same concentration in the glomerular filtrate as in plasma. In most cases, the quantity reabsorbed of each substance is the amount required to maintain the proper composition and volume of the internal fluid environment. In general, the tubules have a high reabsorptive capacity for substances needed by the body and little or no reabsorptive capacity for substances of no value. Accordingly, only a small percentage, if any, of filtered plasma constituents that are useful to the body are present in the urine, most having been reabsorbed and returned to the blood. Only excess amounts of essential materials such as electrolytes are excreted in the urine. For the essential plasma constituents regulated by the kidneys, absorptive capacity may vary depending on the body’s needs. In contrast, a large percentage of filtered waste products are present in the urine. These wastes, which are useless or even potentially harmful to the body if allowed to accumulate, are not reabsorbed to any extent. Instead, they stay in the tubules to be eliminated in the urine. As H<sub>2</sub>O and other valuable constituents are reabsorbed, the waste products remaining in the tubular fluid become highly concentrated.

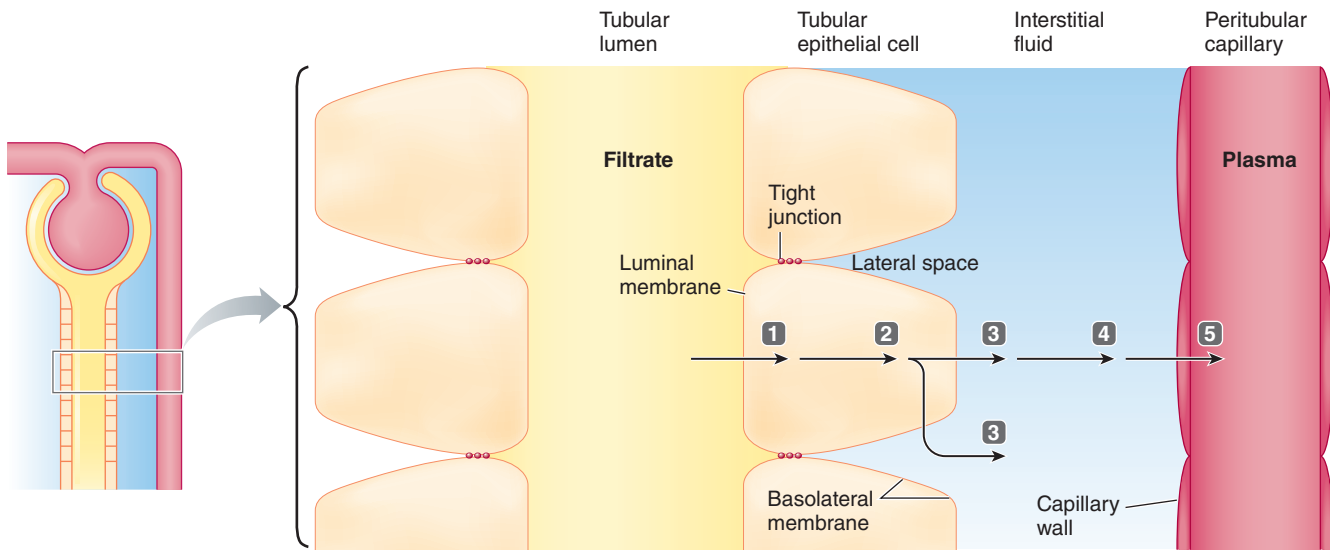
Of the 125 ml of fluid filtered per minute, typically 124 ml/min are reabsorbed. Considering the magnitude of glomerular filtration, the extent of tubular reabsorption is tremendous: The tubules typically reabsorb 99% of the filtered water (47 gallons per day), 100% of the filtered sugar (2.5 pounds per day), and 99.5% of the filtered salt (0.36 pounds per day).

### Tubular reabsorption involves transepithelial transport.

Throughout its length, the tubule wall is one cell thick and is close to a surrounding peritubular capillary (● Figure 13-9). Adjacent tubular cells do not come into contact with each other except where they are joined by tight junctions (see p. 48) at their lateral edges near their *luminal membranes*, which face the tubular lumen. The interstitial fluid lies in the gaps between adjacent cells—the **lateral spaces**—as well as between the tubules and the capillaries. The *basolateral membrane* faces the interstitial fluid at the base and lateral edges of the cell. The tight junctions largely prevent substances from moving *between* the cells, so materials must pass *through* the cells to leave the tubular lumen and gain entry to the blood.

**TRANSEPIHELIAL TRANSPORT** To be reabsorbed, a substance must go across five distinct barriers (the following numbers correspond to the numbered barriers in ● Figure 13-9):

1. It must leave the tubular fluid by crossing the luminal membrane of the tubular cell.



To be reabsorbed (to move from the filtrate to the plasma), a substance must cross five distinct barriers:

- |                             |                                 |                      |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 the luminal cell membrane | 3 the basolateral cell membrane | 5 the capillary wall |
| 2 the cytosol               | 4 the interstitial fluid        |                      |

● **FIGURE 13-9** Steps of transepithelial transport.

2. It must pass through the cytosol from one side of the tubular cell to the other.
3. It must cross the basolateral membrane of the tubular cell to enter the interstitial fluid.
4. It must diffuse through the interstitial fluid.
5. It must penetrate the capillary wall to enter the blood plasma.

This entire sequence of steps is known as **transepithelial transport** (*transepithelial* means “across the epithelium”).

**PASSIVE VERSUS ACTIVE REABSORPTION** The two types of tubular reabsorption—passive and active—depend on whether local energy expenditure is needed for reabsorbing a particular substance. In *passive reabsorption*, all steps in the transepithelial transport of a substance from the tubular lumen to the plasma are passive; that is, no energy is spent for the substance’s net movement, which occurs down electrochemical or osmotic gradients (see p. 52). In contrast, *active reabsorption* takes place if any step in the transepithelial transport of a substance requires energy, even if the four other steps are passive. With active reabsorption, net movement of the substance from the tubular lumen to the plasma occurs *against* an electrochemical gradient. Substances that are actively reabsorbed are of particular importance to the body, such as glucose, amino acids, and other organic nutrients, as well as  $\text{Na}^+$  and other electrolytes, such as  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ . Rather than specifically describing the reabsorptive process for each of the many filtered substances returned to the plasma, we provide illustrative examples of the general mechanisms involved, after first highlighting the unique and important case of  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption.

### An active $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$ ATPase pump in the basolateral membrane is essential for $\text{Na}^+$ reabsorption.

Sodium reabsorption is unique and complex. Of the total energy spent by the kidneys, 80% is used for  $\text{Na}^+$  transport, indicating the importance of this process. Unlike most filtered solutes,  $\text{Na}^+$  is reabsorbed throughout most of the tubule, but this occurs to varying extents in different regions. Of the  $\text{Na}^+$  filtered, 99.5% is normally reabsorbed. Of the  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorbed, on average 67% is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule, 25% in the loop of Henle, and 8% in the distal and collecting tubules. Sodium reabsorption plays different important roles in each of these segments, as will become apparent as our discussion continues. Here is a preview of these roles:

- Sodium reabsorption in the *proximal tubule* plays a pivotal role in reabsorbing glucose, amino acids,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , and urea.
- Sodium reabsorption in the ascending limb of the *loop of Henle*, along with  $\text{Cl}^-$  reabsorption, plays a critical role in the kidneys’ ability to produce urine of varying concentrations and volumes, depending on the body’s need to conserve or eliminate  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
- Sodium reabsorption in the *distal* and *collecting tubules* is variable and subject to hormonal control. It plays a key role in regulating ECF volume, which is important in long-term control of arterial blood pressure, and is also linked in part to  $\text{K}^+$  secretion.

Sodium is reabsorbed throughout the tubule with the exception of the descending limb of the loop of Henle. You will learn about the significance of this exception later. Throughout all  $\text{Na}^+$ -reabsorbing segments of the tubule, the active step in



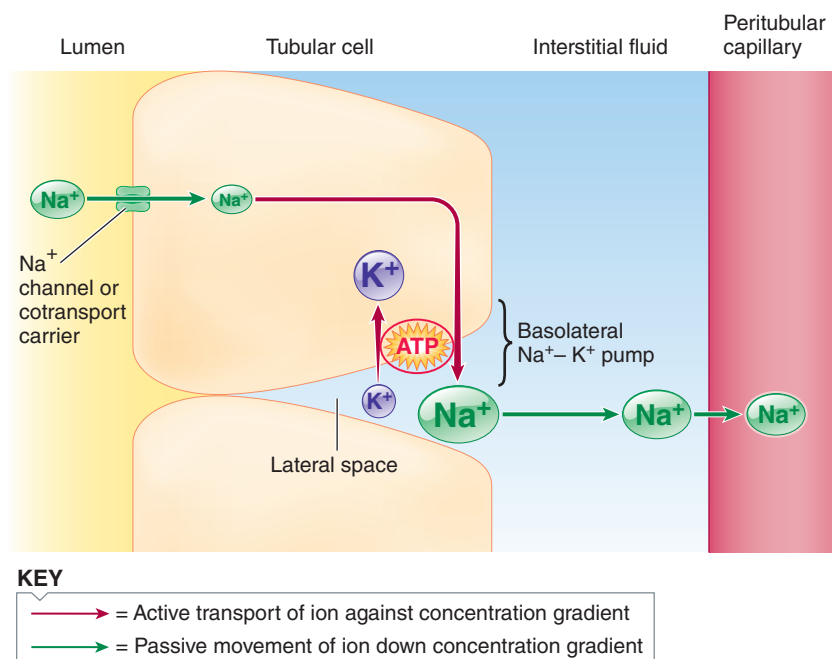
Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption involves the energy-dependent Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> ATPase carrier located in the tubular cell's basolateral membrane (● Figure 13-10). This carrier is the same Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> pump present in all cells that actively extrudes Na<sup>+</sup> from the cell (see p. 59). As this basolateral pump transports Na<sup>+</sup> out of the tubular cell into the lateral space, it keeps the intracellular Na<sup>+</sup> concentration low while it simultaneously builds up the concentration of Na<sup>+</sup> in the lateral space; that is, it moves Na<sup>+</sup> against a concentration gradient. Because the intracellular Na<sup>+</sup> concentration is kept low by basolateral pump activity, a concentration gradient is established that favors the passive movement of Na<sup>+</sup> from its higher concentration in the tubular lumen across the luminal border into the tubular cell. The nature of the luminal Na<sup>+</sup> channels and transport carriers that permit movement of Na<sup>+</sup> from the lumen into the cell varies for different parts of the tubule, but in each case, movement of Na<sup>+</sup> across the luminal membrane is always a passive step. For example, in the proximal tubule, Na<sup>+</sup> crosses the luminal border by a symport carrier that simultaneously moves Na<sup>+</sup> and an organic nutrient such as glucose from the lumen into the cell. You will learn more about this cotransport process shortly. By contrast, in the collecting duct, Na<sup>+</sup> crosses the luminal border through a Na<sup>+</sup> leak channel (see p. 45). Once Na<sup>+</sup> enters the cell across the luminal border by whatever means, it is actively extruded to the lateral space by the basolateral Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> pump. This step is the same throughout the tubule. Sodium continues to diffuse down a concentration gradient from its high concentration in the lateral space into the surrounding interstitial fluid and finally into the peritubular capillary blood. Thus, net transport of Na<sup>+</sup> from the tubular lumen into the blood occurs at the expense of energy.

First, let us consider the importance of regulating Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the distal portion of the nephron and examine how this control is accomplished. Later, we explore in further detail the roles of Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the proximal tubule and in the loop of Henle.

### Aldosterone stimulates Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the distal and collecting tubules.

In the proximal tubule and loop of Henle, a constant percentage of the filtered Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed regardless of the Na<sup>+</sup> load (*the total amount of Na<sup>+</sup> in the body fluids, not the concentration of Na<sup>+</sup> in the body fluids*). In the distal and collecting tubules, the reabsorption of a small percentage of the filtered Na<sup>+</sup> is subject to hormonal control. The extent of this controlled, discretionary reabsorption is inversely related to the magnitude of the Na<sup>+</sup> load in the body. If there is too much Na<sup>+</sup>, little of this controlled Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed; instead, it is lost in the urine, thereby removing excess Na<sup>+</sup> from the body. If Na<sup>+</sup> is depleted, most or all of this controlled Na<sup>+</sup> is reabsorbed, conserving for the body Na<sup>+</sup> that otherwise would be lost in the urine.

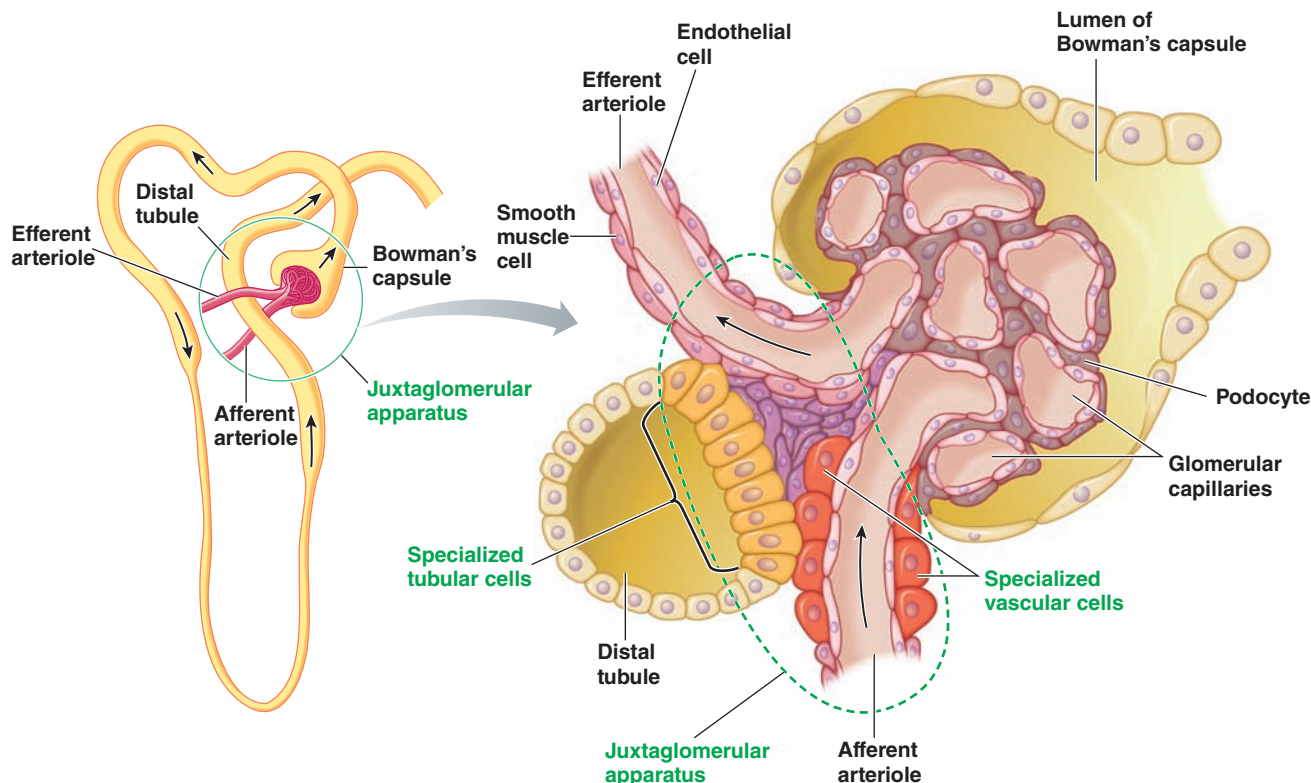
The Na<sup>+</sup> load in the body is reflected by the ECF volume. Sodium and its accompanying anion Cl<sup>-</sup> account for more than 90% of the ECF's osmotic activity. Whenever we speak of Na<sup>+</sup> load, we tacitly mean salt load, too, because Cl<sup>-</sup> goes along with Na<sup>+</sup>. (NaCl is common table salt.) The Na<sup>+</sup> load is subject to regulation; Cl<sup>-</sup> passively follows along. Recall that osmotic pressure can be thought of loosely as a "pulling" force that attracts and holds H<sub>2</sub>O (see p. 53). When the Na<sup>+</sup> load is above normal and the ECF's osmotic activity is therefore increased, the extra Na<sup>+</sup> "holds" extra H<sub>2</sub>O, expanding the ECF volume. Conversely, when the Na<sup>+</sup> load is below normal, thereby decreasing ECF osmotic activity, less H<sub>2</sub>O than normal can be held in the ECF, so the ECF volume is reduced. Because plasma is part of the ECF, the most important result of a change in ECF volume is the matching change in blood pressure with expansion (increased blood pressure) or reduction (decreased blood pressure) of the plasma volume. Thus, long-term control of arterial blood pressure ultimately depends on Na<sup>+</sup>-regulating mechanisms. We now turn our attention to these mechanisms.



● **FIGURE 13-10 Sodium reabsorption.** The basolateral Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> pump actively transports Na<sup>+</sup> from the tubular cell into the interstitial fluid within the lateral space. This process establishes a concentration gradient for passive movement of Na<sup>+</sup> from the lumen into the tubular cell and from the lateral space into the peritubular capillary, accomplishing net transport of Na<sup>+</sup> from the tubular lumen into the blood at the expense of energy.

### ACTIVATION OF THE RENIN-ANGIOTENSIN-ALDOSTERONE SYSTEM

The most important and best-known hormonal system involved in regulating Na<sup>+</sup> is the **renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS)**. This system is initiated by the *juxtaglomerular apparatus*, the specialized combination of tubular and vascular cells where the tubule, after having bent back on itself, passes through the angle formed by the afferent and efferent arterioles as they join the glomerulus (● Figure 13-11). The juxtaglomerular apparatus secretes an enzymatic



● **FIGURE 13-11** The juxtaglomerular apparatus. The juxtaglomerular apparatus consists of specialized vascular cells and specialized tubular cells at a point where the distal tubule passes through the fork formed by the afferent and efferent arterioles of the same nephron.

hormone, **renin**, into the blood in response to a fall in NaCl, ECF volume, and arterial blood pressure. These interrelated signals for increased renin secretion all indicate the need to expand the plasma volume to increase the arterial pressure to normal in the long term. Through a complex series of events involving the RAAS, increased renin secretion brings about increased Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption by the distal and collecting tubules (with Cl<sup>-</sup> passively following Na<sup>+</sup>'s active movement). The ultimate benefit of this salt retention is osmotically induced H<sub>2</sub>O retention, which helps restore the plasma volume.

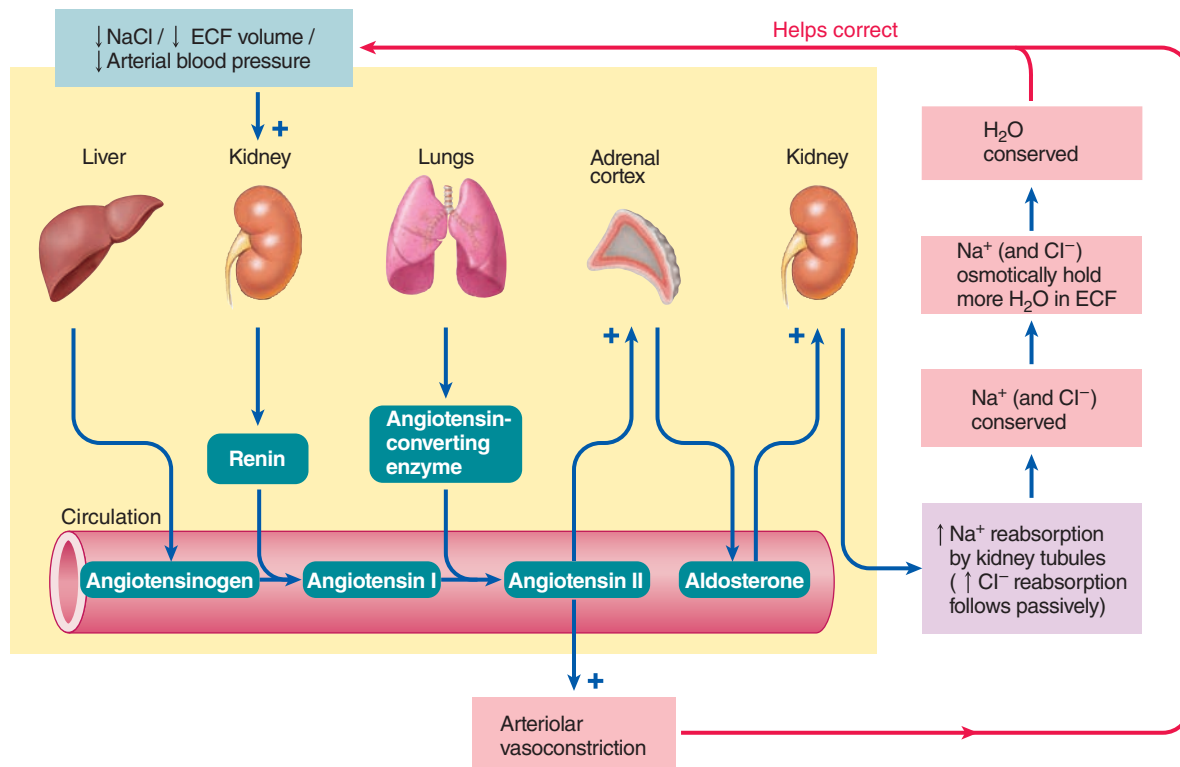
Let us examine in further detail the RAAS mechanism that ultimately leads to increased Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption (● Figure 13-12). Once secreted into the blood, renin acts as an enzyme to activate **angiotensinogen** into **angiotensin I**. Angiotensinogen is a plasma protein synthesized by the liver and always present in the plasma in high concentration. On passing through the lungs via the pulmonary circulation, angiotensin I is converted into **angiotensin II** by **angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)**, which is abundant in the pulmonary capillaries. Angiotensin II is the main stimulus for secretion of the hormone *aldosterone* from the adrenal cortex. The *adrenal cortex* is an endocrine gland that produces several hormones, each secreted in response to different stimuli.

**FUNCTIONS OF THE RENIN-ANGIOTENSIN-ALDOSTERONE SYSTEM** Among its actions, **aldosterone** increases Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption by the distal and collecting tubules. It does so by promoting

the insertion of additional Na<sup>+</sup> leak channels into the luminal membranes and additional Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> pumps into the basolateral membranes of the distal and collecting tubular cells. The net result is greater passive movement of Na<sup>+</sup> into the tubular cells from the lumen and increased active pumping of Na<sup>+</sup> out of the cells into the plasma—that is, an increase in Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption, with Cl<sup>-</sup> following passively. RAAS thus promotes salt retention and a resulting H<sub>2</sub>O retention and rise in arterial blood pressure. Acting in a negative-feedback fashion, this system alleviates the factors that triggered the initial release of renin—namely, salt depletion, plasma volume reduction, and decreased arterial blood pressure.

In addition to stimulating aldosterone secretion, angiotensin II is a potent constrictor of the systemic arterioles, directly increasing blood pressure by increasing total peripheral resistance (see p. 273).

The opposite situation exists when the Na<sup>+</sup> load, ECF and plasma volume, and arterial blood pressure are above normal. Under these circumstances, renin secretion is inhibited. Therefore, because angiotensinogen is not activated to angiotensin I and II, aldosterone secretion is not stimulated. Without aldosterone, the small aldosterone-dependent part of Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption in the distal segments of the tubule does not occur. Instead, this nonreabsorbed Na<sup>+</sup> is lost in the urine. In the absence of aldosterone, the ongoing loss of this small percentage of filtered Na<sup>+</sup> can rapidly remove excess Na<sup>+</sup> from the body. Even though only about 8% of the filtered Na<sup>+</sup> depends on aldoste-



● **FIGURE 13-12 Renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system (RAAS).** The kidneys secrete the enzymatic hormone renin in response to reduced NaCl, ECF volume, and arterial blood pressure. Renin activates angiotensinogen, a plasma protein produced by the liver, into angiotensin I. Angiotensin I is converted into angiotensin II by angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) produced in the lungs. Angiotensin II stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete the hormone aldosterone, which stimulates Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption by the kidneys. The resulting retention of Na<sup>+</sup> exerts an osmotic effect that holds more H<sub>2</sub>O in the ECF. Together, the conserved Na<sup>+</sup> and H<sub>2</sub>O help correct the original stimuli that activated this hormonal system. Angiotensin II also exerts other effects that help rectify the original stimuli, such as by promoting arteriolar vasoconstriction.

rone for reabsorption, this small loss, multiplied many times as the entire plasma volume is filtered through the kidneys many times per day, can lead to a sizable loss of Na<sup>+</sup>.

In the complete absence of aldosterone, 20 g of salt may be excreted per day. With maximum aldosterone secretion, all the filtered Na<sup>+</sup> (and, accordingly, all the filtered Cl<sup>-</sup>) is reabsorbed, so salt excretion in the urine is zero. The amount of aldosterone secreted, and consequently the relative amount of salt conserved versus salt excreted, usually varies between these extremes, depending on the body's needs. For example, an average salt consumer typically excretes about 10 g of salt per day in the urine, a heavy salt consumer excretes more, and someone who has lost considerable salt during heavy sweating excretes less urinary salt. By varying the amount of renin and aldosterone secreted in accordance with the salt-determined fluid load in the body, the kidneys can finely adjust the amount of salt conserved or eliminated. In doing so, they maintain the salt load, ECF volume, and arterial blood pressure at a relatively constant level despite wide variations in salt consumption and abnormal losses of salt-laden fluid. It should not be surprising that some cases of hypertension (high blood pressure) are due to abnormal increases in RAAS activity.



Many **diuretics**, therapeutic agents that cause *diuresis* (increased urinary output) and thus promote loss of fluid from the body, function by inhibiting tubular reabsorption of Na<sup>+</sup>. As more Na<sup>+</sup> is excreted, more H<sub>2</sub>O is also lost from the body, helping remove excess ECF. Diuretics are often beneficial in treating congestive heart failure (see p. 252), as well as certain cases of hypertension.

**ACE inhibitor drugs**, which block the action of angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), and **aldosterone receptor blockers**, are both also beneficial in treating these conditions. By blocking the generation of angiotensin II and by blocking the binding of aldosterone with its renal receptors, respectively, these two classes of drugs halt the ultimate salt- and fluid-conserving actions and arteriolar constrictor effects of RAAS.

#### Atrial natriuretic peptide inhibits Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption.

Whereas RAAS exerts the most powerful influence on the renal handling of Na<sup>+</sup>, this Na<sup>+</sup>-retaining, blood pressure-raising system is opposed by a Na<sup>+</sup>-losing, blood pressure-lowering system that involves the hormone **atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)** (*natriuretic* means “inducing excretion of large amounts

of sodium in the urine”). The heart, in addition to its pump action, produces ANP, which is stored in specialized cardiac atrial muscle cells and is released when the heart muscle cells are mechanically stretched by an expansion of the circulating plasma volume when the ECF volume is increased. This expansion, which occurs as a result of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  retention, increases arterial blood pressure. In turn, the main action of ANP is to inhibit  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption in the distal parts of the nephron, thus increasing  $\text{Na}^+$  excretion and thereby promoting accompanying osmotic  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  excretion in the urine. This natriuresis and accompanying diuresis indirectly lower blood pressure by reducing the  $\text{Na}^+$  load and hence the fluid load in the body. In addition, ANP directly lowers blood pressure by decreasing the cardiac output and reducing peripheral vascular resistance by inhibiting sympathetic nervous activity to the heart and blood vessels.

The relative contributions of ANP in maintaining salt and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance and blood pressure regulation are presently being intensively investigated. Recent studies suggest that a deficiency of the counterbalancing natriuretic system may underlie some cases of long-term hypertension by leaving the powerful  $\text{Na}^+$ -conserving system unopposed. The resulting salt retention, especially in association with high salt intake, could expand ECF volume and elevate blood pressure.

We now shift our attention to the reabsorption of other filtered solutes. Nevertheless, we continue to discuss  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption, because the reabsorption of many other solutes is linked in some way to  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption.

### Glucose and amino acids are reabsorbed by $\text{Na}^+$ -dependent secondary active transport.

Large quantities of nutritionally important organic molecules such as glucose and amino acids are filtered each day. Because these substances normally are completely reabsorbed into the blood by energy- and  $\text{Na}^+$ -dependent mechanisms located in the proximal tubule, none of these materials are usually excreted in the urine. This rapid and thorough reabsorption early in the tubules protects against the loss of these important organic nutrients.

Reabsorption of glucose and amino acids involves **secondary active transport**. With this process, specialized *symport carriers*, such as the *sodium and glucose cotransporter (SGLT)*, located only in the proximal tubule, simultaneously transfer both  $\text{Na}^+$  and the specific organic molecule from the lumen into the cell (see p. 60). This luminal cotransport carrier is the means by which  $\text{Na}^+$  passively crosses the luminal membrane in the proximal tubule. The lumen-to-cell  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient maintained by the energy-consuming basolateral  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$  pump drives this cotransport system and pulls the organic molecule against its concentration gradient into the tubular cell without the direct expenditure of energy. Because the overall process of glucose and amino acid reabsorption depends on the use of energy, these organic molecules are considered to be actively reabsorbed, even though energy is not used directly to transport them across the luminal membrane into the cell. In essence, glucose and amino acids get a “free ride” at

the expense of energy already used in the reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$ . Once transported into the tubular cell, glucose and amino acids passively diffuse down their concentration gradients across the basolateral membrane into the plasma, facilitated by a carrier, such as the *glucose transporter (GLUT)*, which does not depend on energy (see p. 530; also see ● Figure 3-17, p. 61).

### In general, actively reabsorbed substances exhibit a tubular maximum.

All actively reabsorbed substances bind with plasma membrane carriers that transfer them across the membrane against a concentration gradient. Each carrier is specific for the types of substances it can transport; for example, SGLT can transport glucose but not amino acids. Because a limited number of each carrier type is present in the tubular cells, there is an upper limit on how much of a particular substance can be actively transported from the tubular fluid in a given period. The maximum reabsorption rate is reached when all of the carriers specific for a particular substance are fully occupied or saturated so that they cannot handle additional passengers at that time (see p. 56). This maximum reabsorption rate is designated as the **tubular maximum**, or  $T_m$ .<sup>1</sup> Any quantity of a substance filtered beyond its  $T_m$  is not reabsorbed and escapes instead into the urine. With the exception of  $\text{Na}^+$ , all actively reabsorbed substances have a  $T_m$ . (Even though individual  $\text{Na}^+$  transport carriers can become saturated, the tubules as a whole do not display a  $T_m$  for  $\text{Na}^+$ , because aldosterone promotes the insertion of more active  $\text{Na}^+$ - $\text{K}^+$  carriers in the distal and collecting tubular cells as needed.)

The plasma concentrations of some substances that display carrier-limited reabsorption are regulated by the kidneys. How can the kidneys regulate some actively reabsorbed substances but not others, when the renal tubules limit the quantity of each of these substances that can be reabsorbed and returned to the plasma? We compare glucose, a substance that has a  $T_m$  but is *not regulated* by the kidneys, with phosphate, a  $T_m$ -limited substance that is *regulated* by the kidneys.

### Glucose is an example of an actively reabsorbed substance that is not regulated by the kidneys.

The normal plasma concentration of glucose is 100 mg of glucose for every 100 ml of plasma. Because glucose is freely filterable at the glomerulus, it passes into Bowman’s capsule at the same concentration it has in the plasma. Accordingly, 100 mg of glucose are present in every 100 ml of plasma filtered. With 125 ml of plasma normally being filtered each minute (average GFR = 125 ml/min), 125 mg of glucose pass into Bowman’s

<sup>1</sup> For clarification, although both are designated as  $T_m$ , *transport maximum* refers to the upper limit on transport of a particular substance across a cell’s plasma membrane that occurs when all of the carriers specific for the substance are saturated (see p. 56), whereas *tubular maximum* refers to the upper limit on transepithelial transport across the kidney tubules when all of the carriers specific for the substance are saturated.

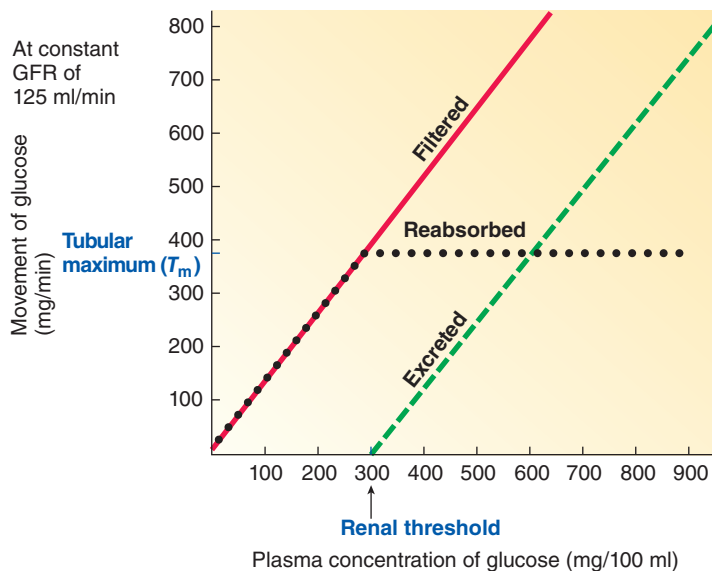
capsule with this filtrate every minute. The quantity of any substance filtered per minute, known as its **filtered load**, can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Filtered load of a substance} = \text{plasma concentration} \times \text{GFR of the substance}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Filtered load of glucose} &= 100 \text{ mg/100 ml} \times 125 \text{ ml/min} \\ &= 125 \text{ mg/min} \end{aligned}$$

At a constant GFR, the filtered load of glucose is directly proportional to the plasma glucose concentration. Doubling the plasma glucose concentration to 200 mg/100 ml doubles the filtered load of glucose to 250 mg/min, and so on (● Figure 13-13).

**TUBULAR MAXIMUM FOR GLUCOSE** The  $T_m$  for glucose averages 375 mg/min; that is, the glucose carrier mechanism is capable of actively reabsorbing up to 375 mg of glucose per minute before it reaches its maximum transport capacity. At a normal plasma glucose concentration of 100 mg/100 ml, the 125 mg of glucose filtered per minute can readily be reabsorbed by the glucose carrier mechanism, because the filtered load is well below the  $T_m$  for glucose. Ordinarily, therefore, no glucose appears in the urine. Not until the filtered load of glucose exceeds 375 mg/min is the  $T_m$  reached. When more glucose is filtered per minute than can be reabsorbed because the  $T_m$  has been exceeded, the maximum amount is reabsorbed, while the rest stays in the filtrate to be excreted. Accordingly, the plasma glucose concentration must be greater than 300 mg/100 ml—more than three times normal—before the amount filtered exceeds 375 mg/min and glucose starts spilling into the urine.



● **FIGURE 13-13 Renal handling of glucose as a function of plasma glucose concentration.** At a constant GFR, the quantity of glucose filtered per minute is directly proportional to the plasma concentration of glucose. All the filtered glucose can be reabsorbed up to the tubular maximum ( $T_m$ ). If the amount of glucose filtered per minute exceeds the  $T_m$ , the maximum amount of glucose is reabsorbed (a  $T_m$  worth) and the rest stays in the filtrate to be excreted in the urine. The renal threshold is the plasma concentration at which the  $T_m$  is reached and glucose first starts appearing in the urine.

**RENAL THRESHOLD FOR GLUCOSE** The plasma concentration at which the  $T_m$  of a particular substance is reached and the substance first starts appearing in the urine is called the **renal threshold**. At the average  $T_m$  of 375 mg/min and GFR of 125 ml/min, the renal threshold for glucose is 300 mg/100 ml.<sup>2</sup> Beyond the  $T_m$ , reabsorption stays constant at its maximum rate, and any further increase in the filtered load leads to a directly proportional increase in the amount of the substance excreted. For example, at a plasma glucose concentration of 400 mg/100 ml, the filtered load of glucose is 500 mg/min, 375 mg/min of which can be reabsorbed (a  $T_m$  worth) and 125 mg/min of which are excreted in the urine. At a plasma glucose concentration of 500 mg/100 ml, the filtered load is 625 mg/min, still only 375 mg/min can be reabsorbed, and 250 mg/min spill into the urine (● Figure 13-13).



The plasma glucose concentration can become extremely high in *diabetes mellitus*, an endocrine disorder involving inadequate insulin action. Insulin is a pancreatic hormone that facilitates transport of glucose into many body cells. When cellular glucose uptake is impaired, glucose that cannot gain entry into cells stays in the plasma, elevating the plasma glucose concentration. Consequently, although glucose does not normally appear in urine, it is found in the urine of people with untreated diabetes when the plasma glucose concentration exceeds the renal threshold, even though renal function has not changed.

What happens when plasma glucose concentration falls below normal? The renal tubules reabsorb all filtered glucose, because the glucose reabsorptive capacity is far from being exceeded. The kidneys cannot do anything to raise a low plasma glucose level to normal. They simply return all filtered glucose to the plasma.

**WHY THE KIDNEYS DO NOT REGULATE GLUCOSE** The kidneys do not influence plasma glucose concentration over a range of values, from abnormally low levels up to three times the normal level. Because the  $T_m$  for glucose is well above the normal filtered load, the kidneys usually conserve all the glucose, thereby protecting against loss of this important nutrient in the urine. The kidneys do not regulate glucose, because they do not maintain glucose at some specific plasma concentration. Instead, this concentration is normally regulated by endocrine and liver mechanisms, with the kidneys merely maintaining whatever plasma glucose concentration is set by these other mechanisms' (except when excessively high levels overwhelm the kidneys'

<sup>2</sup>This is an idealized situation. In reality, glucose often starts spilling into the urine at glucose concentrations of 180 mg/100 ml and above. Glucose is often excreted before the average renal threshold of 300 mg/100 ml is reached for two reasons. First, not all nephrons have the same  $T_m$ , so some nephrons may have exceeded their  $T_m$  and may be excreting glucose while others have not yet reached their  $T_m$ . Second, the efficiency of the glucose cotransport carrier may not be working at its maximum capacity at elevated values less than the true  $T_m$ , so some of the filtered glucose may fail to be reabsorbed and spill into the urine even though the average renal threshold has not been reached.

reabsorptive capacity). The same principle holds true for other organic plasma nutrients, such as amino acids and water-soluble vitamins.

### Phosphate is an example of an actively reabsorbed substance that is regulated by the kidneys.

The kidneys do directly contribute to the regulation of many electrolytes, such as phosphate ( $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ) and calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ), because the renal thresholds of these inorganic ions equal their normal plasma concentrations. We can use  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  as an example. Our diets are generally rich in  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ , but because the tubules can reabsorb up to the normal plasma concentration's worth of  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and no more, the excess ingested  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  is quickly spilled into the urine, restoring the plasma concentration to normal. The greater the amount of  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  ingested beyond the body's needs, the greater the amount excreted. In this way, the kidneys maintain the desired plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  concentration while eliminating any excess  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  ingested.

Unlike the reabsorption of organic nutrients, the reabsorption of  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is also subject to hormonal control. Parathyroid hormone can alter the renal thresholds for  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , thus adjusting the quantity of these electrolytes conserved, depending on the body's momentary needs (see Chapter 17).

### Active $\text{Na}^+$ reabsorption is responsible for the passive reabsorption of $\text{Cl}^-$ , $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and urea.

Not only is secondary active reabsorption of glucose and amino acids linked to the basolateral  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump, but passive reabsorption of  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , and urea also depends on this active  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption mechanism.

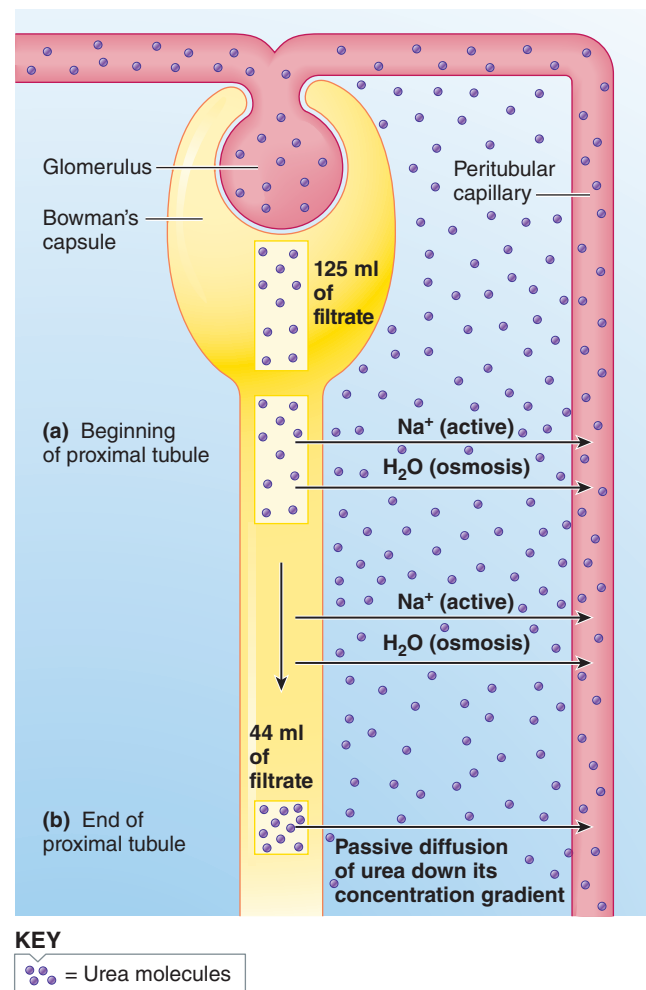
**CHLORIDE REABSORPTION** The negatively charged chloride ions are passively reabsorbed down the electrical gradient created by the active reabsorption of the positively charged sodium ions. For the most part, chloride ions pass between, not through, the tubular cells (through "leaky" tight junctions). The amount of  $\text{Cl}^-$  reabsorbed is determined by the rate of active  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption instead of being directly controlled by the kidneys.

**WATER REABSORPTION** Water is passively reabsorbed throughout the length of the tubule as  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  osmotically follows  $\text{Na}^+$  that is actively reabsorbed. Of the  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  filtered, 65%—117 L per day—is passively reabsorbed by the end of the proximal tubule. Another 15% of the filtered  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is obligatorily reabsorbed from the loop of Henle. This 80% of the filtered  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule and Henle's loop regardless of the  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  load in the body and is not subject to regulation. Variable amounts of the remaining 20% are reabsorbed in the distal portions of the tubule; the extent of reabsorption in the distal and collecting tubules is under direct hormonal control, depending on the body's state of hydration. No part of the tubule directly requires energy for this tremendous reabsorption of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

During reabsorption,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  passes primarily through **aquaporins**, or **water channels**, formed by specific plasma membrane proteins in the tubular cells. Different types of water

channels are present in various parts of the nephron. The water channels in the proximal tubule are always open, accounting for the high  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  permeability of this region. The channels in the distal parts of the nephron, in contrast, are regulated by the hormone *vasopressin*, accounting for the variable  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption in this region. The mechanisms of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption beyond the proximal tubule are described later.


**UREA REABSORPTION** Passive reabsorption of urea, in addition to  $\text{Cl}^-$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is indirectly linked to active  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption. **Urea** is a waste product from the breakdown of protein. The osmotically induced reabsorption of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the proximal tubule secondary to active  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption produces a concentration gradient for urea that favors passive reabsorption of this waste, as follows (● Figure 13-14): Extensive reabsorption of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the proximal tubule gradually reduces the original 125 ml/min of filtrate until only 44 ml/min of fluid remain in



● **FIGURE 13-14** Passive reabsorption of urea at the end of the proximal tubule. (a) In Bowman's capsule and at the beginning of the proximal tubule, urea is at the same concentration as in the plasma and the surrounding interstitial fluid. (b) By the end of the proximal tubule, 65% of the original filtrate has been reabsorbed, concentrating the filtered urea in the remaining filtrate. This establishes a concentration gradient favoring passive reabsorption of urea.

the lumen by the end of the proximal tubule (65% of the H<sub>2</sub>O in the original filtrate, or 81 ml/min, has been reabsorbed). Substances that have been filtered but not reabsorbed become progressively more concentrated in the tubular fluid as H<sub>2</sub>O is reabsorbed while they are left behind. Urea is one such substance.

Urea's concentration as it is filtered at the glomerulus is identical to its concentration in the plasma entering the peritubular capillaries. The quantity of urea present in the 125 ml of filtered fluid at the beginning of the proximal tubule, however, is concentrated almost threefold in the 44 ml left at the end of the proximal tubule. As a result, the urea concentration within the tubular fluid becomes greater than the urea concentration in the adjacent capillaries. Therefore, a concentration gradient is created for urea to passively diffuse from the tubular lumen into the peritubular capillary plasma. Because the walls of the proximal tubules are only somewhat permeable to urea, only about 50% of the filtered urea is passively reabsorbed by this means.

 Even though only half of the filtered urea is eliminated from the plasma with each pass through the nephrons, this removal rate is adequate. The urea concentration in the plasma becomes elevated only in impaired kidney function, when much less than half of the urea is removed. An elevated urea level was one of the first chemical characteristics to be identified in the plasma of patients with severe renal failure. Accordingly, clinical measurement of **blood urea nitrogen (BUN)** came into use as a crude assessment of kidney function. It is now known that the most serious consequences of renal failure are not attributable to the retention of urea, which itself is not especially toxic, but rather to the accumulation of other substances (as discussed in a later section about renal failure). Health professionals still often refer to renal failure as “uremia” (“urea in the blood”), indicating excess urea in the blood, even though urea retention is not this condition's major threat.

### In general, unwanted waste products are not reabsorbed.

The other filtered waste products besides urea, such as *uric acid* and *creatinine*, are likewise concentrated in the tubular fluid as H<sub>2</sub>O leaves the filtrate to enter the plasma. But urea molecules, being the smallest of the waste products, are the only wastes passively reabsorbed by this concentrating effect. The other wastes cannot leave the lumen down their concentration gradients to be passively reabsorbed, because they cannot permeate the tubular wall. Therefore, these waste products generally remain in the tubules and are excreted in the urine in highly concentrated form. This excretion of metabolic wastes is not subject to physiologic control, but when renal function is normal, the excretory processes proceed at a satisfactory rate.

We have now completed discussion of tubular reabsorption and are going to shift to the other basic renal process carried out by the tubules—tubular secretion.

## Tubular Secretion

Like tubular reabsorption, tubular secretion involves transepithelial transport, but now the steps are reversed. By providing a second route of entry into the tubules for selected substances,

*tubular secretion*, the discrete transfer of substances from the peritubular capillaries into the tubular lumen, is a supplemental mechanism that hastens elimination of these compounds from the body. Anything that gains entry to the tubular fluid, whether by glomerular filtration or tubular secretion, and fails to be reabsorbed is eliminated in the urine.

The most important substances secreted by the tubules are *hydrogen ion (H<sup>+</sup>)*, potassium ion (K<sup>+</sup>), and *organic anions and cations*, many of which are compounds foreign to the body.

### Hydrogen ion secretion is important in acid–base balance.

Renal H<sup>+</sup> secretion is extremely important in regulating acid–base balance in the body. Hydrogen ion secreted into the tubular fluid is eliminated from the body in the urine. Hydrogen ion can be secreted by the proximal, distal, and collecting tubules, with the extent of H<sup>+</sup> secretion depending on the acidity of the body fluids. When the body fluids are too acidic, H<sup>+</sup> secretion increases. Conversely, H<sup>+</sup> secretion is reduced when the H<sup>+</sup> concentration in the body fluids is too low. (See Chapter 14 for further details.)

### Potassium ion secretion is controlled by aldosterone.

Potassium is one of the most abundant cations in the body, but about 98% of the K<sup>+</sup> is in the intracellular fluid, because the Na<sup>+</sup>–K<sup>+</sup> pump actively transports K<sup>+</sup> into the cells. Because only a relatively small amount of K<sup>+</sup> is in the ECF, even slight changes in the ECF K<sup>+</sup> load can have a pronounced effect on the plasma K<sup>+</sup> concentration. Changes in the plasma K<sup>+</sup> concentration have a marked influence on membrane excitability. Therefore, plasma K<sup>+</sup> concentrations are tightly controlled, primarily by the kidneys.

Potassium ion is selectively moved in opposite directions in different parts of the tubule; it is actively reabsorbed in the proximal tubule and actively secreted in the distal and collecting tubules. Early in the tubule, K<sup>+</sup> is constantly reabsorbed without regulation, whereas K<sup>+</sup> secretion later in the tubule is variable and subject to regulation.

During K<sup>+</sup> depletion, K<sup>+</sup> secretion in the distal parts of the nephron is reduced to a minimum, so only the small percentage of filtered K<sup>+</sup> that escapes reabsorption in the proximal tubule is excreted in the urine. In this way, K<sup>+</sup> that normally would have been lost in urine is conserved for the body. Conversely, when plasma K<sup>+</sup> levels are elevated, K<sup>+</sup> secretion is adjusted so that just enough K<sup>+</sup> is added to the filtrate for elimination to reduce the plasma K<sup>+</sup> concentration to normal. Thus, K<sup>+</sup> secretion, not the filtration or reabsorption of K<sup>+</sup>, is varied in a controlled fashion to regulate the rate of K<sup>+</sup> excretion and maintain the desired plasma K<sup>+</sup> concentration.

**MECHANISM OF K<sup>+</sup> SECRETION** Potassium ion secretion in the distal and collecting tubules is coupled to Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption by the energy-dependent basolateral Na<sup>+</sup>–K<sup>+</sup> pump (● Figure 13-15). This pump not only moves Na<sup>+</sup> out of the cell into the lateral space but also transports K<sup>+</sup> from the lateral space into the tubular cells. The resulting high intracellular K<sup>+</sup> concentration favors net movement of K<sup>+</sup> from the cells into the tubular lumen. Movement

across the luminal membrane occurs passively through the large number of  $K^+$  leak channels in this barrier in the distal and collecting tubules. By keeping the interstitial fluid concentration of  $K^+$  low as it transports  $K^+$  into the tubular cells from the surrounding interstitial fluid, the basolateral pump encourages passive movement of  $K^+$  out of the peritubular capillary plasma into the interstitial fluid. A potassium ion leaving the plasma in this manner is later pumped into the cells, from which it passively moves into the lumen. In this way, the basolateral pump actively induces the net secretion of  $K^+$  from the peritubular capillary plasma into the tubular lumen in the distal parts of the nephron.

Because  $K^+$  secretion is linked with  $Na^+$  reabsorption by the  $Na^+-K^+$  pump, why isn't  $K^+$  secreted throughout the  $Na^+$ -reabsorbing segments of the tubule instead of taking place only in the distal parts of the nephron? The answer lies in the location of the passive  $K^+$  leak channels. In the distal and collecting tubules, the  $K^+$  channels are concentrated in the luminal membrane, providing a route for  $K^+$  pumped into the cell to exit into the lumen, thus being secreted. In the other tubular segments, the  $K^+$  leak channels are located primarily in the basolateral membrane. As a result,  $K^+$  pumped into the cell from the lateral space by the  $Na^+-K^+$  pump simply moves back out into the lateral space through these channels. This  $K^+$  recycling permits the ongoing operation of the  $Na^+-K^+$  pump to accomplish  $Na^+$  reabsorption with no local net effect on  $K^+$ .

**CONTROL OF  $K^+$  SECRETION** Several factors can alter the rate of  $K^+$  secretion, the most important being aldosterone. This hormone stimulates  $K^+$  secretion by the tubular cells late in the nephron while simultaneously enhancing these cells' reabsorp-

tion of  $Na^+$ . A rise in plasma  $K^+$  concentration directly stimulates the adrenal cortex to increase its output of aldosterone, which in turn promotes the secretion and ultimate urinary excretion and elimination of excess  $K^+$ . Conversely, a decline in plasma  $K^+$  concentration causes a reduction in aldosterone secretion and a corresponding decrease in aldosterone-stimulated renal  $K^+$  secretion.

Note that a rise in plasma  $K^+$  concentration *directly* stimulates aldosterone secretion by the adrenal cortex, whereas a fall in plasma  $Na^+$  concentration stimulates aldosterone secretion by means of the complex RAAS pathway. Thus, aldosterone secretion can be stimulated by two separate pathways (● Figure 13-16).

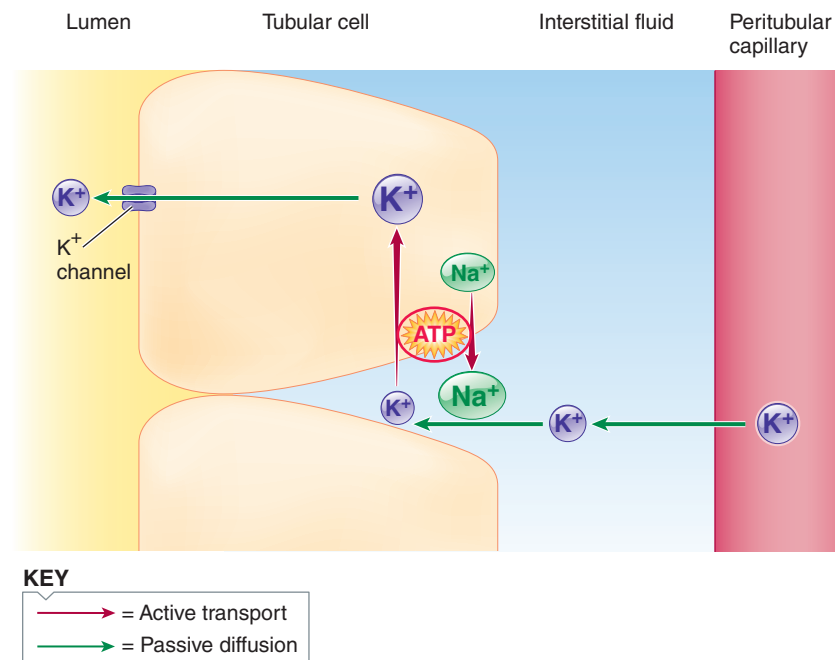
The kidneys usually exert a fine degree of control over plasma  $K^+$  concentration. This is extremely important because even minor fluctuations in plasma  $K^+$  concentration can detrimentally influence the membrane electrical activity of excitable tissues, adversely affecting their performance. For example, a change in ECF  $K^+$  concentration in either direction causes cardiac malfunction, which can lead to fatal cardiac arrhythmias.

### Organic anion and cation secretion helps efficiently eliminate foreign compounds from the body.

The proximal tubule contains two distinct types of secretory carriers, one for the secretion of organic anions and a separate system for secretion of organic cations.

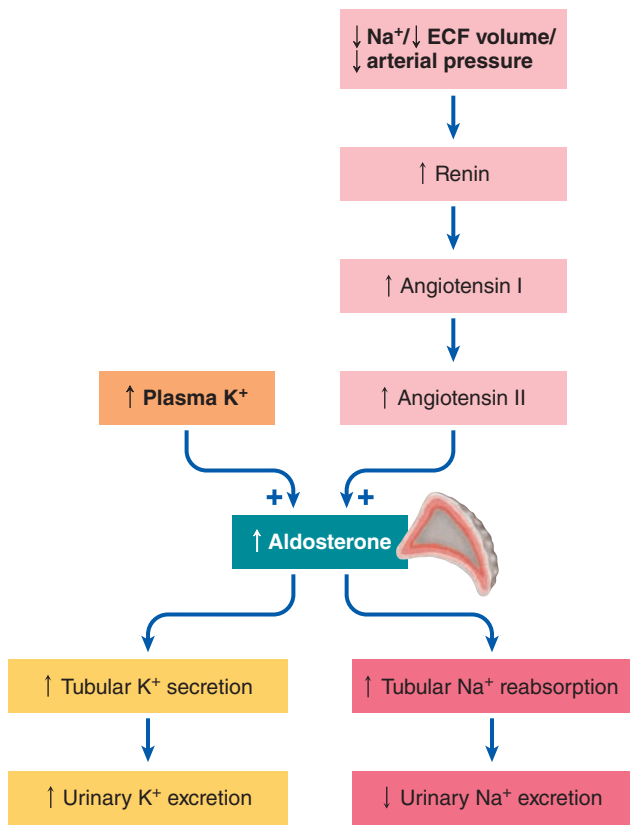
**FUNCTIONS OF ORGANIC ION SECRETORY SYSTEMS** The organic ion secretory systems serve two major functions:

1. By adding more of a particular type of organic ion to the quantity that has already gained entry to the tubular fluid by glomerular filtration, the organic secretory pathways facilitate excretion of these substances. Included among these organic ions are certain blood-borne chemical messengers such as prostaglandins and epinephrine, which, having served their purpose, must be rapidly removed from the blood so that their biological activity is not unduly prolonged.
2. The proximal tubule organic ion secretory systems play a key role in eliminating many foreign compounds from the body. These systems can secrete a large number of different organic ions, both those produced within the body and those foreign organic ions that have gained access to the body fluids. This nonselectivity permits the organic ion secretory systems to hasten removal of many foreign organic chemicals, including food additives, environmental pollutants (for example, pesticides), drugs, and other nonnutritive organic substances that have entered the body. Even though this mechanism helps rid the body of potentially harmful foreign compounds, it is not



● **FIGURE 13-15 Potassium ion secretion.** The basolateral pump simultaneously transports  $Na^+$  into the lateral space and  $K^+$  into the tubular cell. In the parts of the tubule that secrete  $K^+$ , this ion leaves the cell through leak channels located in the luminal border, thus being secreted. (In the parts of the tubule that do not secrete  $K^+$ , the  $K^+$  pumped into the cell during  $Na^+$  reabsorption leaves the cell through leak channels located in the basolateral border, thus being retained in the body.)





● **FIGURE 13-16** Dual control of aldosterone secretion by  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$ .

subject to physiologic adjustments. The carriers cannot pick up their secretory pace when confronting an elevated load of these organic ions.



Many drugs, such as penicillin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), are eliminated from the body by the organic ion secretory systems. To keep the plasma concentration of these drugs at effective levels, the dosage must be repeated frequently to keep pace with the rapid removal of these compounds in the urine.

**SUMMARY OF REABSORPTIVE AND SECRETORY PROCESSES** This completes our discussion of the reabsorptive and secretory processes that occur across the proximal and distal portions of the nephron. These processes are summarized in ▲ Table 13-2. To generalize, the proximal tubule does most of the reabsorbing. This mass reabsorber transfers much of the filtered water and needed solutes back into the blood in unregulated fashion. Similarly, the proximal tubule is the major site of secretion, with the exception of  $K^+$  secretion. The distal and collecting tubules then determine the final amounts of  $H_2O$ ,  $Na^+$ ,  $K^+$ , and  $H^+$  excreted in the urine and thus eliminated from the body. They do so by fine-tuning the amount of  $Na^+$  and  $H_2O$  reabsorbed and the amount of  $K^+$  and  $H^+$  secreted. These processes in the distal part of the nephron are all subject to control, depending on the body's momentary needs. The unwanted filtered waste products are left behind to be eliminated in the urine, along

## ▲ Table 13-2 Summary of Transport Across Proximal and Distal Portions of the Nephron

PROXIMAL TUBULE	
Reabsorption	Secretion
67% of filtered $Na^+$ actively reabsorbed, not subject to control; $Cl^-$ follows passively	Variable $H^+$ secretion, depending on acid–base status of body
All filtered glucose and amino acids reabsorbed by secondary active transport; not subject to control	Organic ion secretion; not subject to control
Variable amounts of filtered $PO_4^{3-}$ and other electrolytes reabsorbed; subject to control	
65% of filtered $H_2O$ osmotically reabsorbed; not subject to control	
50% of filtered urea passively reabsorbed; not subject to control	
Almost all filtered $K^+$ reabsorbed; not subject to control	
DISTAL TUBULE AND COLLECTING DUCT	
Reabsorption	Secretion
Variable $Na^+$ reabsorption, controlled by aldosterone; $Cl^-$ follows passively	Variable $H^+$ secretion, depending on acid–base status of body
Variable $H_2O$ reabsorption, controlled by vasopressin	Variable $K^+$ secretion, controlled by aldosterone

with excess amounts of filtered or secreted nonwaste products that fail to be reabsorbed.

We next focus on the end result of the basic renal processes—what's left in the tubules to be excreted in urine, and, as a consequence, what has been cleared from plasma.

## Urine Excretion and Plasma Clearance

Of the 125 ml of plasma filtered per minute, typically 124 ml/min are reabsorbed, so the final quantity of urine formed averages 1 ml/min. Thus, of the 180 liters filtered per day, 1.5 liters of urine are excreted.

Urine contains high concentrations of various waste products plus variable amounts of the substances regulated by the kidneys, with any excess quantities having spilled into the urine. Useful substances are conserved by reabsorption, so they do not appear in the urine.

A relatively small change in the quantity of filtrate reabsorbed can bring about a large change in the volume of urine formed. For example, a reduction of less than 1% in the total

reabsorption rate, from 124 to 123 ml/min, increases the urinary excretion rate by 100%, from 1 to 2 ml/min.

### Plasma clearance is the volume of plasma cleared of a particular substance per minute.

Compared to plasma entering the kidneys through the renal arteries, plasma leaving the kidneys through the renal veins lacks the materials that were left behind to be eliminated in the urine. By excreting substances in the urine, the kidneys clean or “clear” the plasma flowing through them of these substances. The **plasma clearance** of any substance is defined as the volume of plasma completely cleared of that substance by the kidneys per minute.<sup>3</sup> It refers not to the *amount of the substance* removed but to the *volume of plasma* from which that amount was removed. Plasma clearance is actually a more useful measure than urine excretion; it is more important to know what effect urine excretion has on removing materials from body fluids than to know the volume and composition of discarded urine. Plasma clearance expresses the kidneys’ effectiveness in removing various substances from the internal fluid environment.

Plasma clearance can be calculated for any plasma constituent as follows:

$$\text{Clearance rate of a substance (ml/min)} = \frac{\text{urine concentration of the substance (quantity/ml urine)} \times \text{urine flow rate (ml/min)}}{\text{plasma concentration of the substance (quantity/ml plasma)}}$$

The plasma clearance rate varies for different substances, depending on how the kidneys handle each substance.

### If a substance is filtered but not reabsorbed or secreted, its plasma clearance rate equals the GFR.

Assume that a plasma constituent, substance X, is freely filterable at the glomerulus but is not reabsorbed or secreted. As 125 ml/min of plasma are filtered and subsequently reabsorbed, the quantity of substance X originally contained within the 125 ml is left behind in the tubules to be excreted. Thus, 125 ml of plasma are cleared of substance X each minute (● Figure 13-17a). (Of the 125 ml/min of plasma filtered, 124 ml/min of the filtered fluid are returned, through reabsorption, to the plasma minus substance X, thus clearing this 124 ml/min of substance X. In addition, the 1 ml/min of fluid lost in urine is eventually replaced by an equivalent volume of ingested H<sub>2</sub>O

<sup>3</sup>Actually, plasma clearance is an artificial concept, because when a particular substance is excreted in the urine, that substance’s concentration in the plasma as a whole is uniformly decreased as a result of thorough mixing in the circulatory system. However, it is useful for comparative purposes to consider clearance in effect as the volume of plasma that would have contained the total quantity of the substance (at the substance’s concentration prior to excretion) that the kidneys excreted in 1 minute—that is, the hypothetical volume of plasma completely cleared of that substance per minute.

that is already clear of substance X. Therefore, 125 ml of plasma cleared of substance X are, in effect, returned to the plasma for every 125 ml of plasma filtered per minute.)



No normally occurring chemical in the body has the characteristics of substance X. All substances naturally present in the plasma, even wastes, are reabsorbed or secreted to some extent. However, **inulin** (do not confuse with insulin), a harmless foreign carbohydrate, is freely filtered and not reabsorbed or secreted—an ideal substance X. Inulin can be injected and its plasma clearance determined as a clinical means of finding out the GFR. Because all glomerular filtrate formed is cleared of inulin, the volume of plasma cleared of inulin per minute equals the volume of plasma filtered per minute—that is, the GFR.

### If a substance is filtered and reabsorbed but not secreted, its plasma clearance rate is always less than the GFR.

Some or all of a reabsorbable substance that has been filtered is returned to the plasma. Because less than the filtered volume of plasma will have been cleared of the substance, the plasma clearance rate of a reabsorbable substance is always less than the GFR. For example, the plasma clearance for glucose is normally zero. All the filtered glucose is reabsorbed with the rest of the returning filtrate, so none of the plasma is cleared of glucose (● Figure 13-17b).

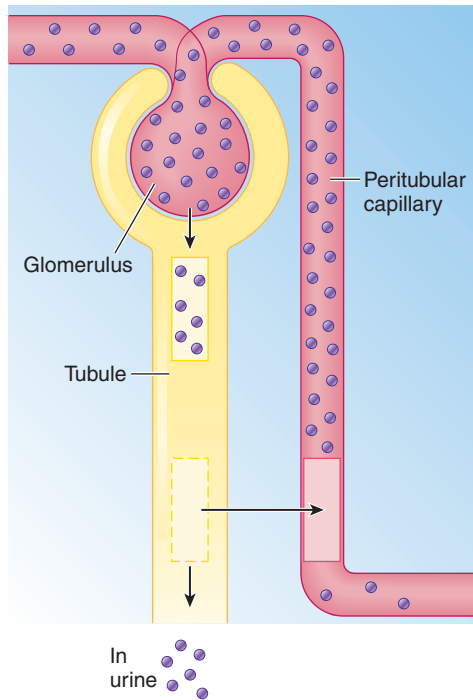
For a substance that is partially reabsorbed, such as urea, only part of the filtered plasma is cleared of that substance. With about 50% of the filtered urea being passively reabsorbed, only half of the filtered plasma, or 62.5 ml, is cleared of urea each minute (● Figure 13-17c).

### If a substance is filtered and secreted but not reabsorbed, its plasma clearance rate is always greater than the GFR.

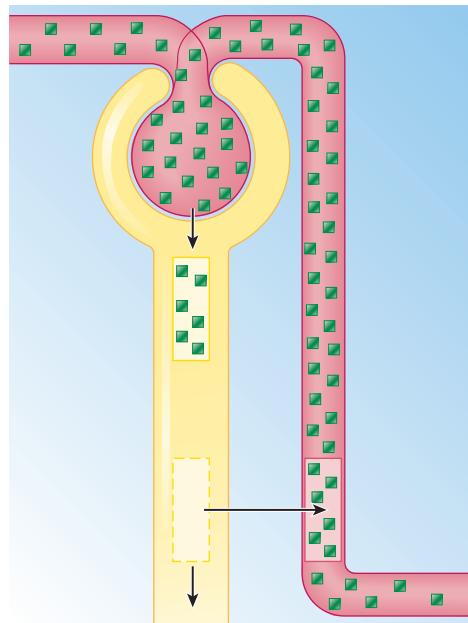
Tubular secretion allows the kidneys to clear certain materials from the plasma more efficiently. Only 20% of the plasma entering the kidneys is filtered. The remaining 80% passes unfiltered into the peritubular capillaries. The only means by which this unfiltered plasma can be cleared of any substance during the trip through the kidneys before being returned to the general circulation is by secretion. An example is H<sup>+</sup>. Not only is filtered plasma cleared of nonreabsorbable H<sup>+</sup>, but the plasma from which H<sup>+</sup> is secreted is also cleared of H<sup>+</sup>. For example, if the quantity of H<sup>+</sup> secreted is equivalent to the quantity of H<sup>+</sup> present in 25 ml of plasma, the clearance rate for H<sup>+</sup> will be 150 ml/min at the normal GFR of 125 ml/min. Every minute 125 ml of plasma will lose its H<sup>+</sup> through filtration and failure of reabsorption, and an additional 25 ml of plasma will lose its H<sup>+</sup> through secretion. The plasma clearance for a secreted substance is always greater than the GFR (● Figure 13-17d).



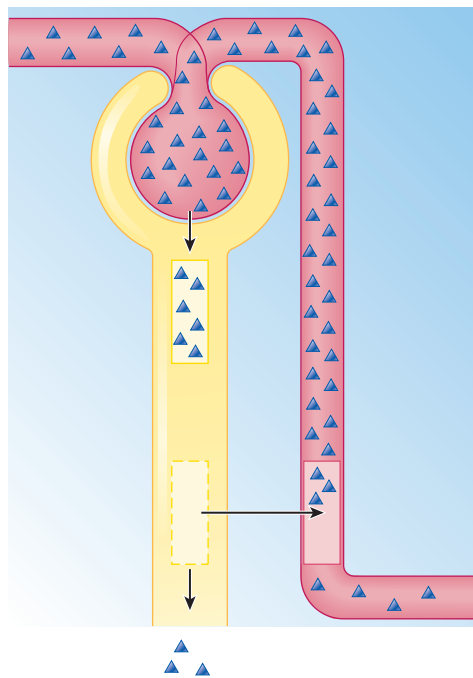
Just as inulin can be used clinically to determine the GFR, plasma clearance of another foreign compound, the organic anion **para-aminohippuric acid (PAH)**, can be used to measure renal plasma flow. Like inulin, PAH is freely filterable and nonreabsorbable. It differs, however, in that all the PAH in the plasma that escapes filtration is secreted from the peritubular capillaries by the



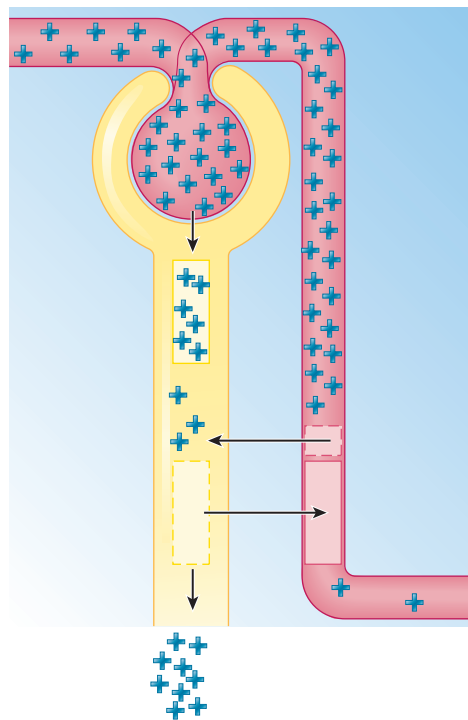
(a) For a substance filtered and not reabsorbed or secreted, such as inulin, all of the filtered plasma is cleared of the substance.



(b) For a substance filtered, not secreted, and completely reabsorbed, such as glucose, none of the filtered plasma is cleared of the substance.



(c) For a substance filtered, not secreted, and partially reabsorbed, such as urea, only a portion of the filtered plasma is cleared of the substance.



(d) For a substance filtered and secreted but not reabsorbed, such as hydrogen ion, all of the filtered plasma is cleared of the substance, and the peritubular plasma from which the substance is secreted is also cleared.

● **FIGURE 13-17** Plasma clearance for substances handled in different ways by the kidneys.

organic anion secretory pathway in the proximal tubule. Thus, PAH is removed from all the plasma that flows through the kidneys—both from plasma that is filtered and subsequently reabsorbed without its PAH and from unfiltered plasma that continues on in the peritubular capillaries and loses its PAH by active secretion into the tubules. Because all the plasma that flows through the kidneys is cleared of PAH, the plasma clearance for PAH is a reasonable estimate of the rate of plasma flow through the kidneys. Typically, renal plasma flow averages 625 ml/min, for a renal blood flow (plasma plus blood cells) of 1140 ml/min—more than 20% of the cardiac output.

**FILTRATION FRACTION** If you know PAH clearance (renal plasma flow) and inulin clearance (GFR), you can easily determine the **filtration fraction**, the fraction of plasma flowing through the glomeruli that is filtered into the tubules:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Filtration fraction} &= \frac{\text{GFR (plasma inulin clearance)}}{\text{renal plasma flow (plasma PAH clearance)}} \\ &= \frac{125 \text{ ml/min}}{625 \text{ ml/min}} = 20\% \end{aligned}$$

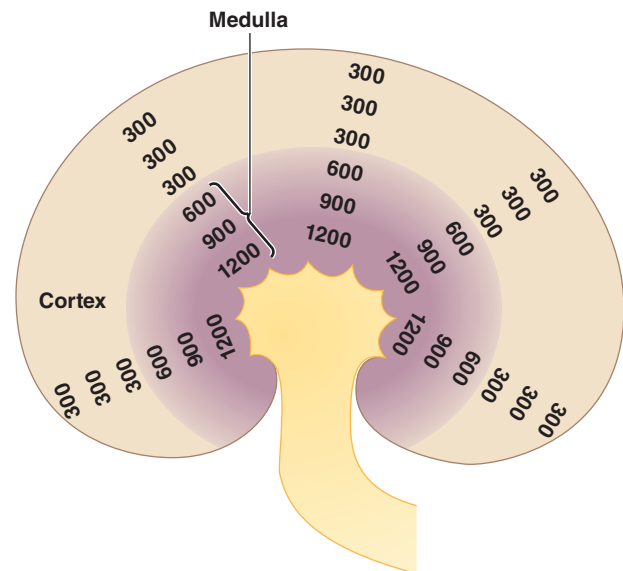
Thus, 20% of the plasma that enters the glomeruli is typically filtered.

### The kidneys can excrete urine of varying concentrations depending on the body's state of hydration.

Having considered how the kidneys deal with a variety of solutes in the plasma, we now concentrate on renal handling of plasma H<sub>2</sub>O. The ECF osmolarity (solute concentration) depends on the relative amount of H<sub>2</sub>O compared to solute. At normal fluid balance and solute concentration, the body fluids are **isotonic** at an osmolarity of 300 milliosmols per liter (mOsm) (see pp. 55 and A-9). If too much H<sub>2</sub>O is present relative to the solute load, the body fluids are **hypotonic**, which means they are too dilute at an osmolarity less than 300 mOsm. However, if a H<sub>2</sub>O deficit exists relative to the solute load, the body fluids are too concentrated or are **hypertonic**, having an osmolarity greater than 300 mOsm.

Knowing that the driving force for H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption the entire length of the tubules is an osmotic gradient between the tubular lumen and the surrounding interstitial fluid, you would expect, given osmotic considerations, that the kidneys could not excrete urine more or less concentrated than the body fluids. Indeed, this would be the case if the interstitial fluid surrounding the tubules in the kidneys were identical in osmolarity to the rest of the body fluids. Water reabsorption would proceed only until the tubular fluid equilibrated osmotically with the interstitial fluid, and the body would have no way to eliminate excess H<sub>2</sub>O when the body fluids were hypotonic or to conserve H<sub>2</sub>O in the presence of hypertonicity.

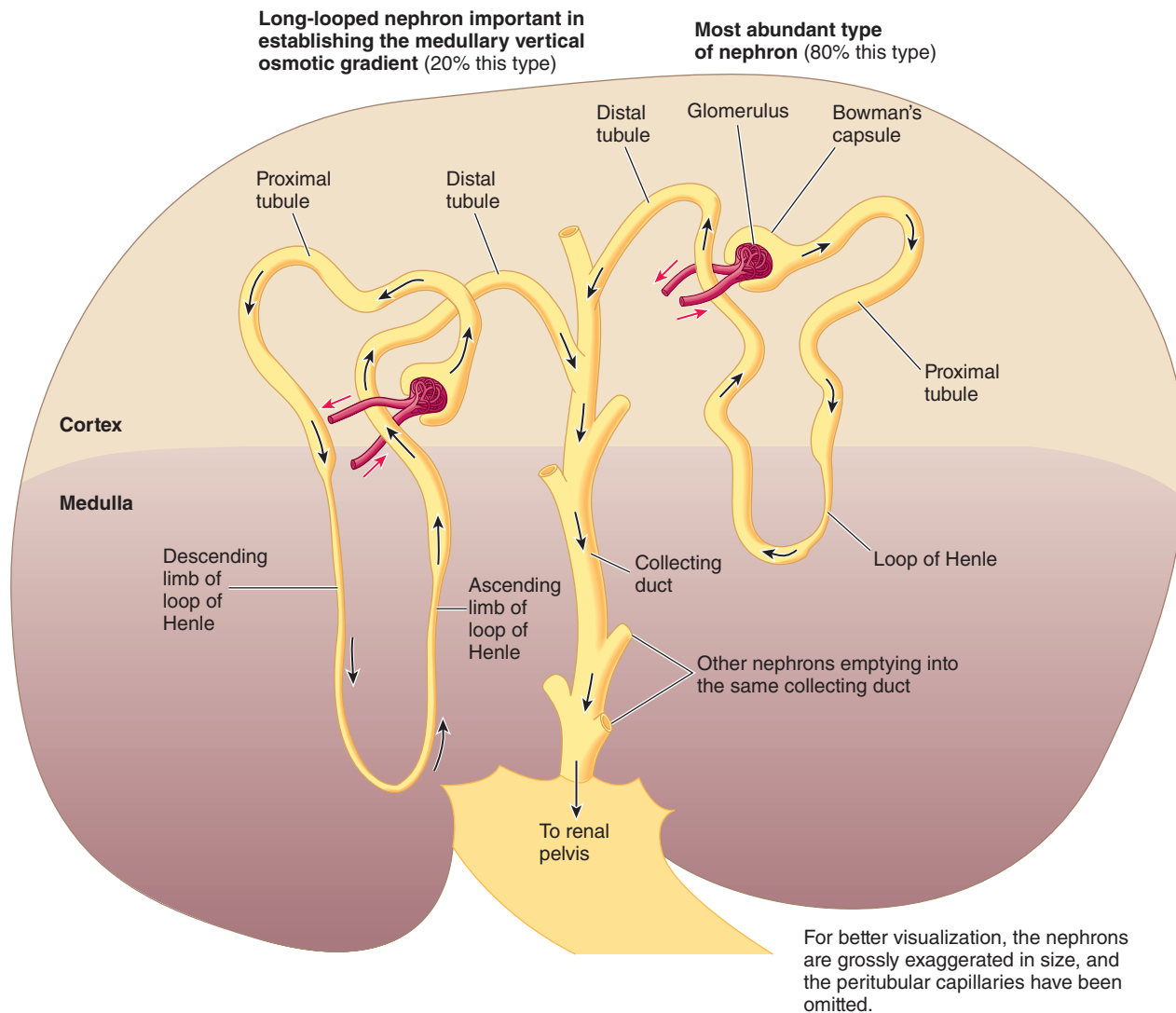
Fortunately, a large **vertical osmotic gradient** is uniquely maintained in the interstitial fluid of the medulla of each kidney. The concentration of the interstitial fluid progressively increases from the cortical boundary down through the depth of the renal medulla until it reaches a maximum of 1200 mOsm in humans at the junction with the renal pelvis (● Figure 13-18).



● **FIGURE 13-18 Vertical osmotic gradient in the renal medulla.** Schematic representation of the kidney rotated 90° from its normal position in an upright person for better visualization of the vertical osmotic gradient in the renal medulla. All values are in mOsm. The osmolarity of the interstitial fluid throughout the renal cortex is isotonic at 300 mOsm, but the osmolarity of the interstitial fluid in the renal medulla increases progressively from 300 mOsm at the boundary with the cortex to a maximum of 1200 mOsm at the junction with the renal pelvis.

By a mechanism described shortly, this gradient enables the kidneys to produce urine that ranges in concentration from 100 to 1200 mOsm, depending on the body's state of hydration. When the body is in ideal fluid balance, 1 ml/min of isotonic urine is formed. When the body is overhydrated (too much H<sub>2</sub>O), the kidneys can produce a large volume of dilute urine (up to 25 ml/min and hypotonic at 100 mOsm), eliminating the excess H<sub>2</sub>O in the urine. Conversely, the kidneys can put out a small volume of concentrated urine (down to 0.3 ml/min and hypertonic at 1200 mOsm) when the body is dehydrated (too little H<sub>2</sub>O), conserving H<sub>2</sub>O for the body.

Unique anatomic arrangements and complex functional interactions among the various nephron components in the renal medulla establish and use the vertical osmotic gradient. In most nephrons the hairpin loop of Henle dips only slightly into the medulla, but in about 20% of nephrons the loop plunges through the entire depth of the medulla so that the tip of the loop lies near the renal pelvis (● Figure 13-19). Flow in the long loop of Henle is considered *countercurrent* because the flow in the two closely adjacent limbs of the loop moves in opposite directions. Also running through the medulla in the descending direction only, on their way to the renal pelvis, are the collecting ducts that serve both types of nephrons. This arrangement, coupled with the permeability and transport characteristics of these tubular segments, plays a key role in the kidneys' ability to produce urine of varying concentrations, depending on the body's needs for water conservation or elimination. Briefly, the long loops of Henle *establish* the vertical osmotic gradient and the collecting ducts of all nephrons *use*



● **FIGURE 13-19** Schematic representation of the two types of nephrons. Note that the loop of Henle of long-looped nephrons plunges deep into the medulla.

the gradient, in conjunction with the hormone vasopressin, to produce urine of varying concentrations. Collectively, this entire functional organization is known as the **medullary countercurrent system**. We next examine each of its facets in greater detail.

### The medullary vertical osmotic gradient is established by countercurrent multiplication.

We now follow the filtrate through a long-looped nephron to see how this structure establishes a vertical osmotic gradient in the medulla. Immediately after the filtrate is formed, uncontrolled osmotic reabsorption of filtered  $H_2O$  occurs in the proximal tubule secondary to active  $Na^+$  reabsorption. As a result, by the end of the proximal tubule, about 65% of the filtrate has been reabsorbed, but the 35% remaining in the tubular lumen still has the same osmolarity as the body fluids. Therefore, the fluid entering the loop of Henle is still isotonic. An additional 15% of the filtered  $H_2O$  is obligatorily reabsorbed

from the loop of Henle during the establishment and maintenance of the vertical osmotic gradient, with the osmolarity of the tubular fluid being altered in the process.

### PROPERTIES OF THE DESCENDING AND ASCENDING LIMBS OF A LONG HENLE'S LOOP

The following functional distinctions between the descending limb of a long Henle's loop (which carries fluid from the proximal tubule down into the depths of the medulla) and the ascending limb (which carries fluid up and out of the medulla into the distal tubule) are crucial for establishing the incremental osmotic gradient in the medullary interstitial fluid.

#### The descending limb

1. is highly permeable to  $H_2O$  (via abundant, always-open water channels).
2. does not actively extrude  $Na^+$ . (That is, it does not reabsorb  $Na^+$ . It is the only segment of the entire tubule that does not do so.)

### The ascending limb

1. actively transports NaCl out of the tubular lumen into the surrounding interstitial fluid.
2. is always impermeable to H<sub>2</sub>O, so salt leaves the tubular fluid without H<sub>2</sub>O osmotically following along.

**MECHANISM OF COUNTERCURRENT MULTIPLICATION** The proximity and countercurrent flow of the two limbs allow important interactions between them. Even though the flow of fluids is continuous through the loop of Henle, we can visualize what happens step by step, much like an animated film run so slowly that each frame can be viewed.

Initially, before the vertical osmotic gradient is established, the medullary interstitial fluid concentration is uniformly 300 mOsm, as are the rest of the body fluids (● Figure 13-20).

The active salt pump in the ascending limb can transport NaCl out of the lumen until the surrounding interstitial fluid is 200 mOsm more concentrated than the tubular fluid in this limb. When the ascending limb pump starts actively extruding NaCl, the medullary interstitial fluid becomes hypertonic. Water cannot follow osmotically from the ascending limb, because this limb is impermeable to H<sub>2</sub>O. However, net diffusion of H<sub>2</sub>O does occur from the descending limb into the interstitial fluid. The tubular fluid entering the descending limb from the proximal tubule is isotonic. Because the descending limb is highly permeable to H<sub>2</sub>O, net diffusion of H<sub>2</sub>O occurs by osmosis out of the descending limb into the more concentrated interstitial fluid. The passive movement of H<sub>2</sub>O out of the descending limb continues until the osmolarities of the fluid in the descending limb and the interstitial fluid become equilibrated. Thus, the tubular fluid entering the loop of Henle immediately starts to become more concentrated as it loses H<sub>2</sub>O. At equilibrium, the osmolarity of the ascending limb fluid is 200 mOsm and the osmolarities of the interstitial fluid and descending limb fluid are equal at 400 mOsm (● Figure 13-20, step 1).

If we now advance the entire column of fluid in the loop of Henle several frames (step 2), a mass of 200 mOsm fluid exits from the top of the ascending limb into the distal tubule, and a new mass of isotonic fluid at 300 mOsm enters the top of the descending limb from the proximal tubule. At the bottom of the loop, a comparable mass of 400 mOsm fluid from the descending limb moves forward around the tip into the ascending limb, placing it opposite a 400 mOsm region in the descending limb. Note that the 200 mOsm concentration difference has been lost at both the top and the bottom of the loop.

The ascending limb pump again transports NaCl out while H<sub>2</sub>O passively leaves the descending limb until a 200 mOsm difference is reestablished between the ascending limb and both the interstitial fluid and the descending limb at each horizontal level (step 3). Note, however, that the concentration of tubular fluid is progressively increasing in the descending limb and progressively decreasing in the ascending limb.

As the tubular fluid is advanced still farther (step 4), the 200 mOsm concentration gradient is disrupted again at all horizontal levels. Again, active extrusion of NaCl from the ascending limb, coupled with the net diffusion of H<sub>2</sub>O out of the

descending limb, reestablishes the 200 mOsm gradient at each horizontal level (step 5).

As the fluid flows slightly forward again and this stepwise process continues (step 6), the fluid in the descending limb becomes progressively more hypertonic until it reaches a maximum concentration of 1200 mOsm at the bottom of the loop, four times the normal concentration of body fluids. Because the interstitial fluid always achieves equilibrium with the descending limb, an incremental vertical concentration gradient ranging from 300 to 1200 mOsm is likewise established in the medullary interstitial fluid. In contrast, the concentration of the tubular fluid progressively decreases in the ascending limb as NaCl is pumped out but H<sub>2</sub>O is unable to follow. In fact, the tubular fluid even becomes hypotonic before leaving the ascending limb to enter the distal tubule at a concentration of 100 mOsm, one third the normal concentration of body fluids.

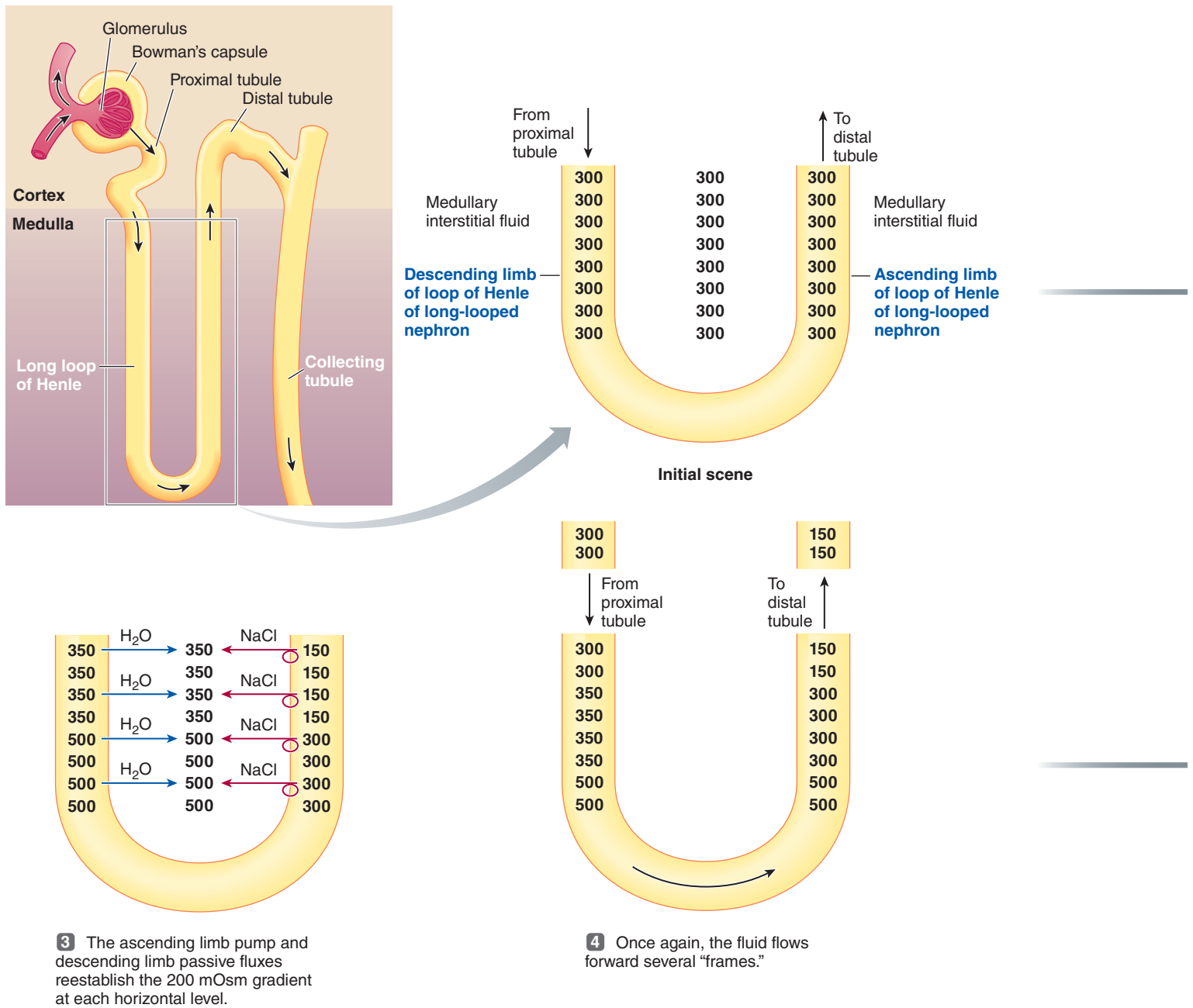
Note that although a gradient of only 200 mOsm exists between the ascending limb and the surrounding fluids at each medullary horizontal level, a larger vertical gradient exists from the top to the bottom of the medulla. Even though the ascending limb pump can generate a gradient of only 200 mOsm, this effect is multiplied into a large vertical gradient because of the countercurrent flow within the loop. This concentrating mechanism accomplished by the loop of Henle is known as **countercurrent multiplication**.

We have artificially described countercurrent multiplication in a stop-and-flow, stepwise fashion to facilitate understanding. It is important to realize that once the incremental medullary gradient is established, it stays constant because of the continuous flow of fluid, coupled with the ongoing ascending limb active transport and the accompanying descending limb passive fluxes.

**BENEFITS OF COUNTERCURRENT MULTIPLICATION** If you consider only what happens to the tubular fluid as it flows through the loop of Henle, the whole process seems an exercise in futility. The isotonic fluid that enters the loop becomes progressively more concentrated as it flows down the descending limb, achieving a maximum concentration of 1200 mOsm, only to become progressively more diluted as it flows up the ascending limb, finally leaving the loop at a minimum concentration of 100 mOsm. What is the point of concentrating the fluid fourfold and then turning around and diluting it until it leaves at one third the concentration at which it entered? Such a mechanism offers two benefits. First, it establishes a vertical osmotic gradient in the medullary interstitial fluid. This gradient, in turn, is used by the collecting ducts to concentrate the tubular fluid so that a urine *more concentrated* than normal body fluids can be excreted. Second, because the fluid is hypotonic as it enters the distal parts of the tubule, the kidneys can excrete a urine *more dilute* than normal body fluids. Let us see how.

### Vasopressin-controlled, variable H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption occurs in the final tubular segments.

After obligatory H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption from the proximal tubule (65% of the filtered H<sub>2</sub>O) and loop of Henle (15% of the filtered H<sub>2</sub>O), 20% of the filtered H<sub>2</sub>O remains in the lumen to enter the distal and collecting tubules for variable reabsorption under



● **FIGURE 13-20** Countercurrent multiplication in the renal medulla. All values are in mOsm.

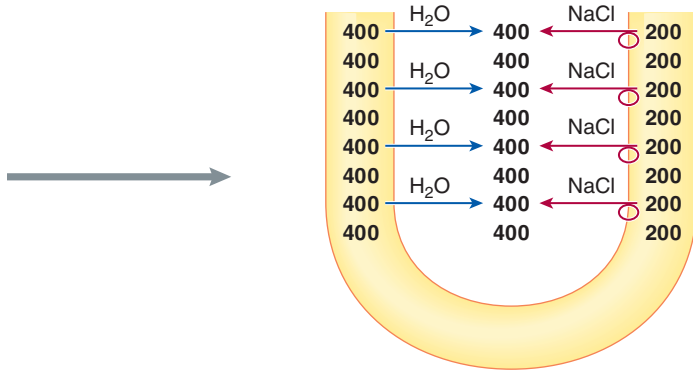
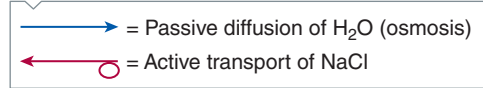
hormonal control. This is still a large volume of filtered H<sub>2</sub>O subject to regulated reabsorption; 20% × GFR (180 L per day) = 36 L per day to be reabsorbed to varying extents, depending on the body’s state of hydration. This is more than 13 times the amount of plasma H<sub>2</sub>O in the entire circulatory system.

The fluid leaving the loop of Henle enters the distal tubule at 100 mOsm, so it is hypotonic to the surrounding isotonic (300 mOsm) interstitial fluid of the renal cortex through which the distal tubule passes. The distal tubule then empties into the collecting duct, which is bathed by progressively increasing concentrations (300 to 1200 mOsm) of the surrounding interstitial fluid as it descends through the medulla.

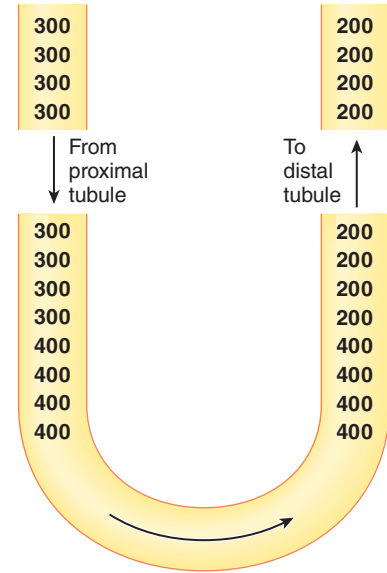
**ROLE OF VASOPRESSIN** For H<sub>2</sub>O absorption to occur across a segment of the tubule, two criteria must be met: (1) an osmotic gradient must exist across the tubule, and (2) the tubular segment must be permeable to H<sub>2</sub>O. The distal and collecting tubules are *impermeable* to H<sub>2</sub>O except in the presence of **vasopressin**, also known as **antidiuretic hormone** (*anti* means “against”; *diuretic* means “increased urine output”),<sup>4</sup> which increases their perme-

<sup>4</sup>Even though textbooks traditionally tend to use the name *antidiuretic hormone* for this hormone, especially when discussing its actions on the kidney, investigators in the field now prefer *vasopressin*.

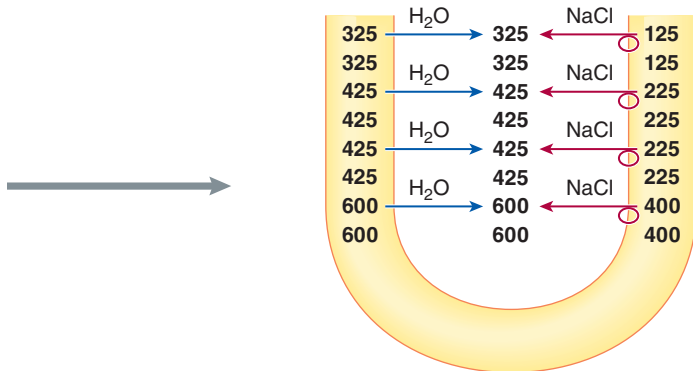
**KEY**



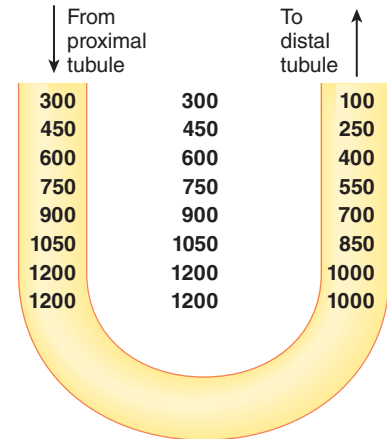
**1** The active salt pump in the ascending limb establishes a 200 mOsm gradient at each horizontal level.



**2** As the fluid flows forward several “frames,” a mass of 200 mOsm fluid exits into the distal tubule and a new mass of 300 mOsm fluid enters from the proximal tubule.



**5** The 200 mOsm gradient at each horizontal level is established once again.



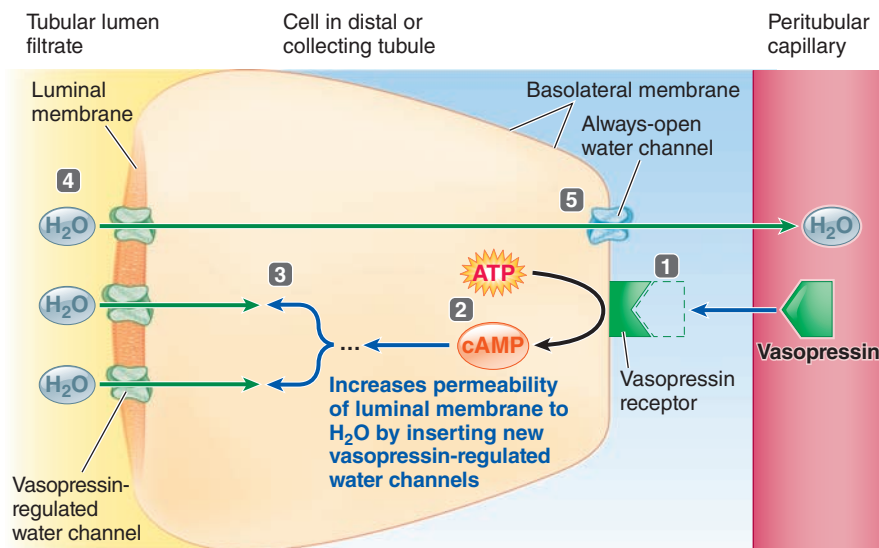
**6** The final vertical osmotic gradient is established and maintained by the ongoing countercurrent multiplication of the long loops of Henle.

ability to H<sub>2</sub>O. Vasopressin is produced by several specific neuronal cell bodies in the *hypothalamus* and then stored in the *posterior pituitary gland*, which is attached to the hypothalamus by a thin stalk (see ● Figure 17-4, p. 502). The hypothalamus controls release of vasopressin from the posterior pituitary into the blood. In a negative-feedback fashion, vasopressin secretion is stimulated by a H<sub>2</sub>O deficit when the ECF is too concentrated (that is, hypertonic) and H<sub>2</sub>O must be conserved for the body, and it is inhibited by a H<sub>2</sub>O excess when the ECF is too dilute (that is, hypotonic) and surplus H<sub>2</sub>O must be eliminated in urine.

Vasopressin reaches the basolateral membrane of the tubular cells lining the distal and collecting tubules through the circulatory system. Here, it binds with receptors specific for it (● Figure 13-21). This binding activates the cyclic AMP (cAMP) second-messenger system within these tubular cells

(see p. 96). This binding ultimately increases permeability of the opposite luminal membrane to H<sub>2</sub>O by promoting insertion of vasopressin-regulated water channels in this membrane by means of exocytosis. Without these water channels, the luminal membrane is impermeable to H<sub>2</sub>O. Once H<sub>2</sub>O enters the tubular cells from the filtrate through these vasopressin-regulated luminal water channels, it passively leaves the cells down the osmotic gradient across the cells’ basolateral membrane to enter the interstitial fluid. The water channels in the basolateral membrane of the distal and collecting tubule are always present and open, so this membrane is always permeable to H<sub>2</sub>O. By permitting more H<sub>2</sub>O to permeate from the lumen into the tubular cells, the additional vasopressin-regulated luminal channels thus increase H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption from the filtrate into the interstitial fluid. The tubular response to vasopressin is graded: The





- 1 Blood-borne vasopressin binds with its receptor sites on the basolateral membrane of a cell in the distal or collecting tubule.
- 2 This binding activates the cyclic AMP (cAMP) second-messenger system within the cell.
- 3 Cyclic AMP increases the opposite luminal membrane's permeability to H<sub>2</sub>O by promoting the insertion of vasopressin-regulated water channels into the membrane. This membrane is impermeable to water in the absence of vasopressin.
- 4 Water enters the tubular cell from the tubular lumen through the inserted water channels.
- 5 Water exits the cell through a different, always-open water channel permanently positioned at the basolateral border, and then enters the blood, in this way being reabsorbed.

● **FIGURE 13-21 Mechanism of action of vasopressin.**

more vasopressin present, the more luminal water channels inserted, and the greater the permeability of the distal and collecting tubules to H<sub>2</sub>O. The increase in luminal membrane water channels is not permanent, however. The channels are retrieved by endocytosis when vasopressin secretion decreases and cAMP activity is similarly decreased. Accordingly, H<sub>2</sub>O permeability is reduced when vasopressin secretion decreases. These H<sub>2</sub>O channels are stored in the internalized vesicles ready for reinsertion the next time vasopressin secretion increases. This shuttling of regulated water channels into and out of the luminal membrane under vasopressin command provides a means of rapidly controlling H<sub>2</sub>O permeability of the distal and collecting tubules, depending on the body's momentary needs.

Vasopressin influences H<sub>2</sub>O permeability only in the distal and collecting tubules. It has no influence over the 80% of the filtered H<sub>2</sub>O that is obligatorily reabsorbed without control in the proximal tubule and loop of Henle. The ascending limb of Henle's loop is always impermeable to H<sub>2</sub>O, even in the presence of vasopressin.

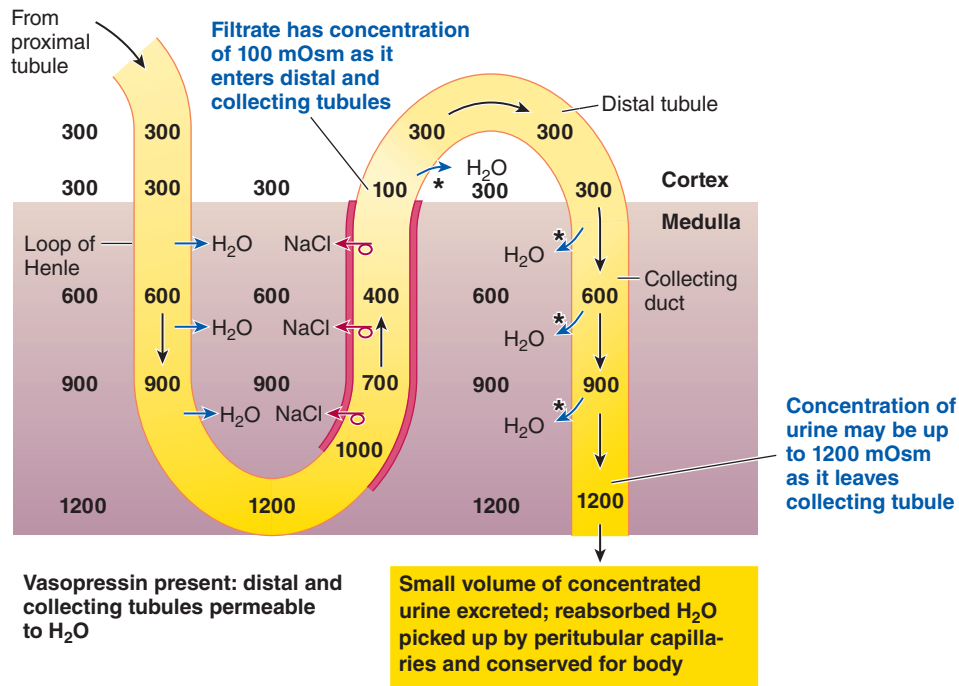
**REGULATION OF H<sub>2</sub>O REABSORPTION IN RESPONSE TO A H<sub>2</sub>O DEFICIT** When vasopressin secretion increases in response to a H<sub>2</sub>O deficit and the permeability of the distal and collecting tubules to H<sub>2</sub>O accordingly increases, the hypotonic tubular fluid entering the distal part of the nephron can lose progressively more H<sub>2</sub>O by osmosis into the interstitial fluid as the tu-

bular fluid first flows through the isotonic cortex and then is exposed to the ever-increasing osmolarity of the medullary interstitial fluid as it plunges toward the renal pelvis (● Figure 13-22a). As the 100 mOsm tubular fluid enters the distal tubule and is exposed to a surrounding interstitial fluid of 300 mOsm, H<sub>2</sub>O leaves the tubular fluid by osmosis across the now-permeable tubular cells until the tubular fluid reaches a maximum concentration of 300 mOsm by the end of the distal tubule. As this 300 mOsm tubular fluid progresses farther into the collecting duct, it is exposed to even higher osmolarity in the surrounding medullary interstitial fluid. Consequently, the tubular fluid loses more H<sub>2</sub>O by osmosis and becomes further concentrated; only to move farther forward, be exposed to an even higher interstitial fluid osmolarity, and lose even more H<sub>2</sub>O; and so on.

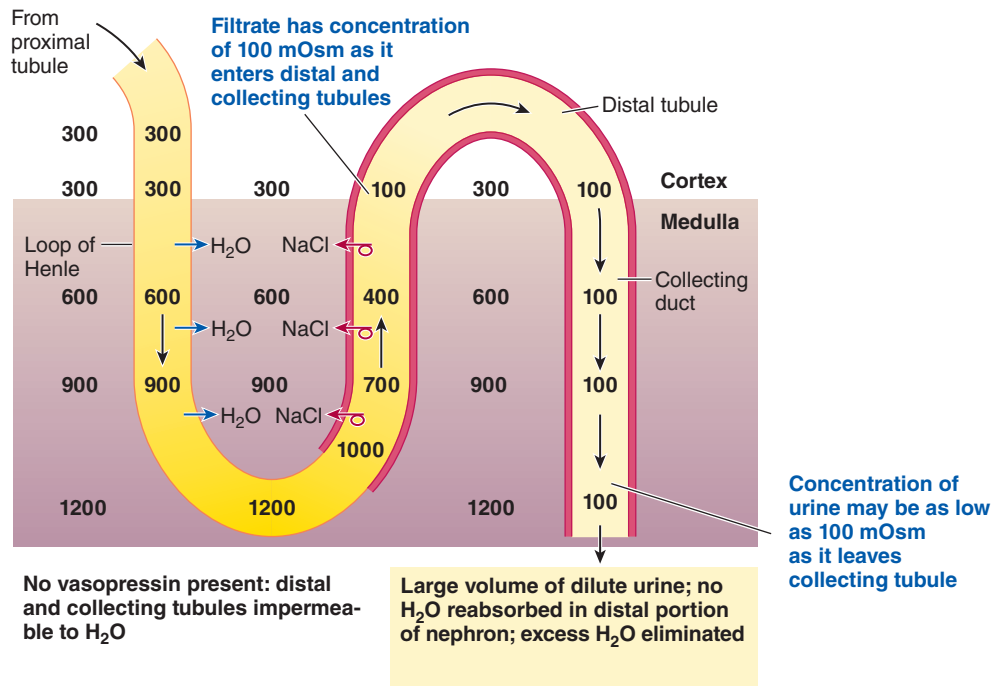
Under the influence of maximum levels of vasopressin, the tubular fluid can be concentrated up to 1200 mOsm by the end of the collecting ducts. The fluid is not modified any further beyond the collecting duct, so what remains in the tubules at this point is urine. As a result of this extensive vasopressin-promoted reabsorption of H<sub>2</sub>O in the late segments of the tubule, a small volume of urine concentrated up to 1200 mOsm can be excreted. As little as 0.3 ml of urine may be formed each minute, less than one third the normal urine flow rate of 1 ml/min. The reabsorbed H<sub>2</sub>O entering the medullary interstitial fluid is picked up by the peritubular capillaries and returned to the general circulation, thus being conserved for the body.

Although vasopressin promotes H<sub>2</sub>O conservation by the body, it cannot halt urine production, even when a person is not taking in any H<sub>2</sub>O, because a minimum volume of H<sub>2</sub>O must be excreted with the solute wastes. Collectively, the waste products and other constituents eliminated in the urine average 600 milliosmols each day. Because the maximum urine concentration is 1200 mOsm (milliosmols per liter), the minimum volume of urine required to excrete these wastes is 500 ml per day (600 milliosmols of wastes per day ÷ 1200 milliosmols per liter of urine = 0.5 L, (500 ml) per day, or 0.3 ml/min). Thus, under maximal vasopressin influence, 99.7% of the 180 L of plasma H<sub>2</sub>O filtered per day is returned to the blood, with an obligatory H<sub>2</sub>O loss of 0.5 L.

The kidneys' ability to tremendously concentrate urine to minimize H<sub>2</sub>O loss when necessary is possible only because of the presence of the vertical osmotic gradient in the medulla. If this gradient did not exist, the kidneys could not produce a urine more concentrated than the body fluids no matter how much vasopressin was secreted, because the only driving force for H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption is a concentration differential between the tubular fluid and the interstitial fluid.



(a) In the face of a water deficit



**KEY**

- = Passive diffusion of H<sub>2</sub>O (osmosis)
- = Active transport of NaCl
- = Portions of tubule impermeable to H<sub>2</sub>O
- = Permeability to H<sub>2</sub>O increased by vasopressin

● **FIGURE 13-22 Excretion of urine of varying concentration depending on the body's needs.** All values are in mOsm.

**REGULATION OF H<sub>2</sub>O REABSORPTION IN RESPONSE TO A H<sub>2</sub>O EXCESS** Conversely, when a person consumes large quantities of H<sub>2</sub>O, the excess H<sub>2</sub>O must be removed from the body without simultaneously losing solutes that are critical for maintaining homeostasis. Under these circumstances, no vasopressin is secreted, so the distal and collecting tubules remain impermeable to H<sub>2</sub>O. The tubular fluid entering the distal tubule is hypotonic (100 mOsm), having lost salt without an accompanying loss of H<sub>2</sub>O in the ascending limb of Henle's loop. As this hypotonic fluid passes through the distal and collecting tubules (● Figure 13-22b), the medullary osmotic gradient cannot exert any influence because the late tubule is impermeable to H<sub>2</sub>O. In other words, none of the H<sub>2</sub>O remaining in the tubules can leave the lumen to be reabsorbed, even though the tubular fluid is less concentrated than the surrounding interstitial fluid. Thus, in the absence of vasopressin, the 20% of the filtered fluid that reaches the distal tubule is not reabsorbed. Meanwhile, excretion of wastes and other urinary solutes remains constant. The net result is a large volume of dilute urine, which helps rid the body of excess H<sub>2</sub>O. Urine osmolarity may be as low as 100 mOsm, the same as in the fluid entering the distal tubule. Urine flow may be increased up to 25 ml/min in the absence of vasopressin, compared to the normal urine production of 1 ml/min.

The ability to produce urine less concentrated than the body fluids depends on the tubular fluid being hypotonic as it enters the distal part of the nephron. This dilution is accomplished in the ascending limb, as NaCl is actively extruded but H<sub>2</sub>O cannot follow. Therefore, the loop of Henle, by simultaneously establishing the medullary osmotic gradient and diluting the tubular fluid before it enters the distal segments, plays a key role in allowing the kidneys to excrete urine that ranges in concentration from 100 to 1200 mOsm.

Note that through the combined effects of the medullary vertical osmotic gradient and vasopressin-controlled variability in permeability to H<sub>2</sub>O in the distal parts of the nephron, the body is able to retain or lose **free H<sub>2</sub>O** (that is, H<sub>2</sub>O not accompanied by solutes.) Thus, free H<sub>2</sub>O can be reabsorbed without comparable solute reabsorption to correct for hypertonicity of the body fluids. Conversely, a large quantity of free H<sub>2</sub>O can be excreted unaccompanied by comparable solute excretion to rid the body of excess pure H<sub>2</sub>O, thus correcting for hypotonicity of the body fluids.

The kidneys inappropriately lose too much H<sub>2</sub>O following alcohol ingestion because alcohol inhibits vasopressin secretion. Typically, more fluid is lost in the urine than is consumed in the alcoholic beverage, so the body becomes dehydrated despite substantial fluid ingestion.

### Renal failure has wide-ranging consequences.

Urine excretion and the resulting clearance of wastes and excess electrolytes from the plasma are crucial for maintaining homeostasis. When the functions of both kidneys are so disrupted that they cannot perform their regulatory and excretory functions sufficiently to maintain homeostasis, **renal failure** has set in. Renal failure can manifest itself either as *acute renal failure*,

characterized by a sudden onset with rapidly reduced urine formation until less than the essential minimum of around 500 ml of urine is being produced per day, or as *chronic renal failure*, characterized by slow, progressive, insidious loss of renal function. A person may die from acute renal failure, or the condition may be reversible and lead to full recovery. Chronic renal failure, in contrast, is not reversible. Gradual, permanent destruction of renal tissue eventually proves fatal. Chronic renal failure is insidious because up to 75% of the kidney tissue can be destroyed before the loss of kidney function is even noticeable. Because of the abundant reserve of kidney function, only 25% of kidney tissue is needed to adequately maintain all the essential renal excretory and regulatory functions. With less than 25% of functional kidney tissue remaining, however, renal insufficiency becomes apparent. *End-stage renal failure* results when 90% of kidney function has been lost. More than 20 million people in the United States have some extent of kidney disease, which leads to more than 80,000 deaths per year.

We will not sort out the stages and symptoms associated with various renal disorders, but ▲ Table 13-3, which summarizes the potential consequences of renal failure, gives you an idea of the broad effects that kidney impairment can have. The extent of these effects should not be surprising, considering the central role the kidneys play in maintaining homeostasis. When the kidneys cannot maintain a normal internal environment, widespread disruption of cell activities can bring about abnormal function in other organ systems as well. By the time end-stage renal failure occurs, literally every body system has become impaired to some extent. The most life-threatening consequences of renal failure are retention of H<sup>+</sup> (causing metabolic acidosis) and K<sup>+</sup> (leading to cardiac malfunction), because these ions are not adequately secreted and eliminated in the urine.

Because chronic renal failure is irreversible and eventually fatal, treatment is aimed at maintaining renal function by alternative methods, such as dialysis and kidney transplantation. (For further explanation of these procedures, see the boxed feature on p. 412, ► Beyond the Basics.)

This finishes our discussion of kidney function. For the remainder of the chapter, we focus on the plumbing that stores and carries the urine formed by the kidneys to the outside.

### Urine is temporarily stored in the bladder, from which it is emptied by micturition.

Once urine has been formed by the kidneys, it is transmitted through the ureters to the urinary bladder. Urine does not flow through the ureters by gravitational pull alone. Peristaltic (forward-pushing) contractions of the smooth muscle within the ureteral wall propel the urine forward from the kidneys to the bladder.

**ROLE OF THE BLADDER** The bladder can accommodate large fluctuations in urine volume. The bladder wall consists of smooth muscle, which can stretch tremendously without building up bladder wall tension (see p. 224). In addition, the highly folded bladder wall flattens out during filling to increase bladder storage capacity. Because the kidneys continuously form

## ▲ Table 13-3 Potential Ramifications of Renal Failure

**Uremic toxicity** caused by retention of waste products

- Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and ulcers caused by a toxic effect on the digestive system
- Bleeding tendency arising from a toxic effect on platelet function
- Mental changes—such as reduced alertness, insomnia, and shortened attention span, progressing to convulsions and coma—caused by toxic effects on the central nervous system
- Abnormal sensory and motor activity caused by a toxic effect on the peripheral nerves

**Metabolic acidosis** caused by the inability of the kidneys to adequately secrete  $H^+$  that is continually being added to the body fluids as a result of metabolic activity (*among most life-threatening consequences of renal failure*)

- Altered enzyme activity caused by the action of too much acid on enzymes
- Depression of the central nervous system caused by the action of too much acid interfering with neuronal excitability

**Potassium retention** resulting from inadequate tubular secretion of  $K^+$  (*among most life-threatening consequences of renal failure*)

- Altered cardiac and neural excitability as a result of changing the resting membrane potential of excitable cells

**Sodium imbalances** caused by the inability of the kidneys to adjust  $Na^+$  excretion to balance changes in  $Na^+$  consumption

- Elevated blood pressure, generalized edema, and congestive heart failure if too much  $Na^+$  is consumed
- Hypotension and, if severe enough, circulatory shock if too little  $Na^+$  is consumed

**Phosphate and calcium imbalances** arising from impaired reabsorption of these electrolytes

- Disturbances in skeletal structures caused by abnormalities in deposition of calcium phosphate crystals, which harden bone

**Loss of plasma proteins** as a result of increased “leakiness” of the glomerular membrane

- Edema caused by a reduction in plasma-colloid osmotic pressure

**Inability to vary urine concentration** as a result of impairment of the countercurrent system

- Hypotonicity of body fluids if too much  $H_2O$  is ingested
- Hypertonicity of body fluids if too little  $H_2O$  is ingested

**Hypertension** arising from the combined effects of salt and fluid retention and vasoconstrictor action of excess angiotensin II

**Anemia** caused by inadequate erythropoietin production

**Depression of the immune system**, most likely caused by toxic levels of wastes and acids

- Increased susceptibility to infections

urine, the bladder must have enough storage capacity to preclude the need to continuously get rid of the urine.

The bladder smooth muscle is richly supplied by parasympathetic fibers, stimulation of which causes bladder contraction. If the passageway through the urethra to the outside is open, bladder contraction empties urine from the bladder. The exit from the bladder, however, is guarded by two sphincters, the *internal urethral sphincter* and the *external urethral sphincter*.

**ROLE OF THE URETHRAL SPHINCTERS** A *sphincter* is a ring of muscle that can variably close off or permit passage through an opening. The **internal urethral sphincter** is smooth muscle and, accordingly, under involuntary control. It is not really a separate muscle but instead consists of the last part of the bladder. When the bladder is relaxed, the anatomic arrangement of the internal urethral sphincter region closes the outlet of the bladder.

Farther down the passageway, the urethra is encircled by a layer of skeletal muscle, the **external urethral sphincter**. The motor neuron that supplies the external sphincter fires continuously at a moderate rate unless it is inhibited, keeping this muscle tonically contracted so that it prevents urine from es-

caping through the urethra. Normally, when the bladder is relaxed and filling, both the internal and the external urethral sphincters are closed to keep urine from dribbling out. Furthermore, because the external sphincter is skeletal muscle and thus under voluntary control, the person can deliberately tighten it to prevent urination from occurring even when the bladder is contracting and the internal sphincter is open.

**MICTURITION REFLEX** Micturition, or **urination**, the process of bladder emptying, is governed by two mechanisms: the micturition reflex and voluntary control. The **micturition reflex** is initiated when stretch receptors within the bladder wall are stimulated (● Figure 13-23). The bladder in an adult can accommodate 250 to 400 ml of urine before the tension within its walls begins to rise sufficiently to activate the stretch receptors. The greater the distension beyond this, the greater is the extent of receptor activation. Afferent fibers from the stretch receptors carry impulses into the spinal cord and eventually, via interneurons, stimulate the parasympathetic supply to the bladder and inhibit the motor-neuron supply to the external sphincter. Parasympathetic stimulation of the bladder causes it to contract. No special mechanism is required to open the internal sphincter;

## Beyond the Basics

Because chronic renal failure is irreversible and eventually fatal, treatment is aimed at maintaining renal function by alternative methods, such as dialysis and kidney transplantation. More than 300,000 people in the United States are currently on dialysis, and this number is expected to climb as the population ages and the incidence of diabetes mellitus, one of the leading causes of kidney failure, continues to rise. End-stage renal failure (less than 10% kidney function) caused by diabetes mellitus is increasing at a rate of more than 11% annually.

The process of dialysis bypasses the kidneys to maintain normal fluid and electrolyte balance and remove wastes artificially. In the original method of dialysis, **hemodialysis**, a patient's blood is pumped through cellophane tubing that is surrounded by a large volume of fluid similar in composition to normal plasma. After dialysis, the blood is returned to the patient's circulatory system. During hemodialysis, about 250 ml of blood is outside of the body at any given time.

Like capillaries, cellophane is highly permeable to most plasma constituents but is impermeable to plasma proteins. As blood flows through the tubing, solutes move across the cellophane down their individual concentration gradients; plasma proteins, however, stay in the blood. Urea and other wastes, which are absent in the dialysis fluid, diffuse out of the plasma into the surrounding fluid, cleaning the blood of these wastes. Plasma constituents that are not regulated by the kidneys and are at normal concentration, such as glucose, do not move across the cellophane into the dialysis fluid, because there is no driving force to produce their movement. (The dialysis fluid's glucose concentration is the same as normal plasma glucose concentration.) Electrolytes, such as  $K^+$  and  $PO_4^{3-}$ , which are higher than their normal plasma concentrations because the diseased kidneys cannot eliminate excess quantities of these substances, move out of the plasma until equilibrium is achieved between the plasma and the dialysis fluid.

## Dialysis: Cellophane Tubing or Abdominal Lining as an Artificial Kidney

Because the dialysis fluid's solute concentrations are maintained at normal plasma values, the solute concentration of the blood returned to the patient after dialysis is essentially normal. Hemodialysis is repeated as often as necessary to maintain the plasma composition within an acceptable level. Conventionally, it is done three times per week for several hours at each session at a treatment center or at home, but newer, more user-friendly, at-home methods dialyze the blood up to six times per week during the day or at night while the person is sleeping. The more frequent methods maintain better stability in plasma constituents than the less frequent methods do.

Another method of dialysis, **continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD)**, uses the peritoneal membrane (the lining of the abdominal cavity) as the dialysis membrane. With this method, 2 liters of dialysis fluid are inserted into the patient's abdominal cavity through a permanently implanted catheter. Urea,  $K^+$ , and other wastes and excess electrolytes diffuse from the plasma across the peritoneal membrane into the dialysis fluid, which is drained off and replaced several times a day. The CAPD method offers several advantages: The patient can self-administer it, the patient's blood is continuously purified and adjusted, and the patient can engage in normal activities while dialysis is being accomplished. One drawback is the increased risk of peritoneal infections.

Although dialysis can remove metabolic wastes and foreign compounds and help maintain fluid and electrolyte balance within acceptable limits, this plasma-cleansing technique cannot make up for the failing kidneys' reduced ability to produce hormones (erythropoietin and renin) and to activate vitamin D. One new experimental technique incorporates living kidney cells derived from pigs within a dialysis-like machine. Standard ultrafiltration technology like that used in

hemodialysis purifies and adjusts the plasma as usual. Importantly, the living cells not only help maintain even better control of plasma constituents, especially  $K^+$ , but also add the deficient renal hormones to the plasma passing through the machine and activate vitamin D. This promising new technology has not yet been tested in large-scale clinical trials.

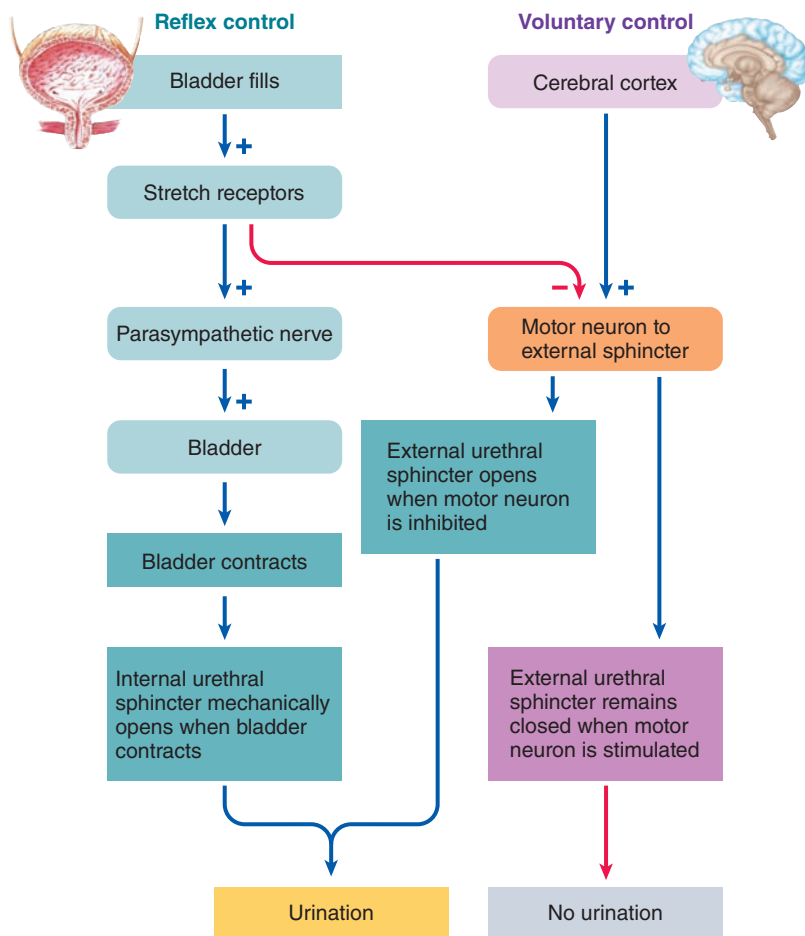
For now, transplanting a healthy kidney from a donor is another option for treating chronic renal failure. A kidney is one of the few transplants that can be provided by a living donor. Because 25% of the total kidney tissue can maintain the body, both the donor and the recipient have ample renal function with only one kidney each. The biggest problem with transplants is the possibility that the patient's immune system will reject the organ. Risk of rejection can be minimized by matching the tissue types of the donor and the recipient as closely as possible (the best donor choice is usually a close relative), coupled with immunosuppressive drugs. More than 15,000 kidney transplants are performed in the United States each year, with 60,000 more people on waiting lists for a donor kidney.

Another new technique on the horizon for treating end-stage renal failure is a continuously functioning artificial kidney that mimics natural renal function. Using nanotechnology (very small-scale devices), researchers are working on a device that contains two membranes, the first for filtering blood like the glomerulus does and the second for mimicking the renal tubules by selectively altering the filtrate. The device, which will directly process the blood on an ongoing basis without using dialysis fluid, will return important substances to the body while discharging unneeded substances to a discardable bag that will serve as an external bladder. Scientists have developed computer models for such a device and thus far have created the filtering membrane.

changes in the shape of the bladder during contraction mechanically pull the internal sphincter open. Simultaneously, the external sphincter relaxes as its motor neuron supply is inhibited. Now both sphincters are open, and urine is expelled through the urethra by the force of bladder contraction. This micturition reflex, which is entirely a spinal reflex, governs

bladder emptying in infants. As soon as the bladder fills enough to trigger the reflex, the baby automatically wets.

**VOLUNTARY CONTROL OF MICTURITION** In addition to triggering the micturition reflex, bladder filling gives rise to the conscious urge to urinate. The perception of bladder fullness



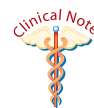
● **FIGURE 13-23** Reflex and voluntary control of micturition.

appears before the external sphincter reflexly relaxes, warning that micturition is imminent. As a result, voluntary control of micturition, learned during toilet training in early childhood, can override the micturition reflex so that bladder emptying can take place at the person's convenience rather than when bladder filling first activates the stretch receptors. If the time when the micturition reflex is initiated is inopportune for urination, the person can voluntarily prevent bladder emptying by deliberately tightening the external sphincter. Voluntary excitatory impulses from the cerebral cortex override the reflex inhibitory input from the stretch receptors to the involved motor neurons (the relative balance of EPSPs and IPSPs), keeping these muscles contracted so that no urine is expelled (see p. 89).

Urination cannot be delayed indefinitely. As the bladder continues to fill, reflex input from the stretch receptors increases with time. Finally, reflex inhibitory input to the external sphincter motor neuron becomes so powerful that it can no longer be overridden by voluntary excitatory input, so the sphincter relaxes and the bladder uncontrollably empties.

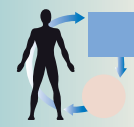
Micturition can also be deliberately initiated, even though the bladder is not distended, by voluntarily relaxing the external sphincter. Lowering of the pelvic floor allows the bladder to drop downward, which simultaneously pulls open the internal

urethral sphincter and stretches the bladder wall. The subsequent activation of the stretch receptors brings about bladder contraction by the micturition reflex. Voluntary bladder emptying may be further assisted by contracting the abdominal wall and respiratory diaphragm. The resulting increase in intra-abdominal pressure squeezes down on the bladder to facilitate its emptying.



**URINARY INCONTINENCE** Urinary incontinence, or inability to prevent discharge of urine, occurs when descending pathways in the spinal cord that mediate voluntary control of the external sphincter are disrupted, as in spinal-cord injury. Because the components of the micturition reflex arc are still intact in the lower spinal cord, bladder emptying is governed by an uncontrollable spinal reflex, as in infants. A lesser degree of incontinence characterized by urine escaping when bladder pressure suddenly increases transiently, such as during coughing or sneezing, can result from impaired sphincter function. This is common in women who have borne children or in men whose sphincters have been injured during prostate surgery.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



The kidneys contribute to homeostasis more extensively than any other single organ. They regulate the electrolyte composition, volume, osmolarity, and pH of the internal environment and eliminate all the waste products of bodily metabolism except for respiration-removed CO<sub>2</sub>. They accomplish these regulatory functions by eliminating in the urine substances the body doesn't need, such as metabolic wastes and excess quantities of ingested salt or water, while conserving useful substances. The kidneys can maintain the plasma constituents they regulate within the narrow range compatible with life, despite wide variations in intake and losses of these substances through other avenues. Illustrating the magnitude of the kidneys' task, about a quarter of the blood pumped into the systemic circulation goes to the kidneys to be adjusted and purified, with only three quarters of the blood being used to supply all the other tissues.

The kidneys contribute to homeostasis in the following specific ways.

### Regulatory Functions

- The kidneys regulate the quantity and concentration of most ECF electrolytes, including those important in maintaining proper neuromuscular excitability.

- They help maintain proper pH by eliminating excess  $H^+$  (acid) or  $HCO_3^-$  (base) in the urine.
- They help maintain proper plasma volume, which is important in long-term regulation of arterial blood pressure, by controlling salt balance in the body. The ECF volume, including plasma volume, reflects total salt load in the ECF, because  $Na^+$  and its attendant anion,  $Cl^-$ , are responsible for more than 90% of the ECF's osmotic (water-holding) activity.
- The kidneys maintain water balance in the body, which is important in maintaining proper ECF osmolarity (concentration of solutes). This role is important in maintaining stability of cell volume by keeping water from osmotically moving into or out of the cells, thus preventing them from swelling or shrinking, respectively.

### Excretory Functions

- The kidneys excrete the end products of metabolism in the urine. If allowed to accumulate, these wastes are toxic to cells.
- The kidneys also excrete many foreign compounds that enter the body.

### Hormonal Functions

- The kidneys produce erythropoietin, the hormone that stimulates the bone marrow to produce red blood cells. This action contributes to homeostasis by helping maintain the optimal  $O_2$  content of blood. More than 98% of  $O_2$  in the blood is bound to hemoglobin within red blood cells.
- They also produce renin, the hormone that initiates the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone pathway for controlling renal tubular  $Na^+$  reabsorption, which is important in long-term maintenance of plasma volume and arterial blood pressure.

### Metabolic Functions

- The kidneys help convert vitamin D into its active form. Vitamin D is essential for  $Ca^{2+}$  absorption from the digestive tract. Calcium, in turn, exerts a variety of homeostatic functions.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-48)

- Part of the kidneys' energy supply is used to accomplish glomerular filtration. (*True or false?*)
- Sodium reabsorption is under hormonal control throughout the length of the tubule. (*True or false?*)
- Glucose and amino acids are reabsorbed by secondary active transport. (*True or false?*)
- Water excretion can occur without comparable solute excretion. (*True or false?*)
- The functional unit of the kidneys is the \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the only ion actively reabsorbed in the proximal tubule and actively secreted in the distal and collecting tubules.
- The daily minimum volume of obligatory  $H_2O$  loss that must accompany excretion of wastes is \_\_\_\_\_ ml.
- Which of the following filtered substances is normally *not* present in the urine?
  - $Na^+$
  - $PO_4^{3-}$
  - $H^+$
  - glucose
  - urea
- Reabsorption of which of the following substances is *not* linked in some way to active  $Na^+$  reabsorption?
  - glucose
  - $PO_4^{3-}$
  - $H_2O$
  - urea
  - $Cl^-$

In Questions 10 through 12, indicate, by writing the identifying letters in the proper order in the blanks, the proper sequence through which fluid flows as it traverses the structures in question.
- \_\_\_\_\_
  - ureter
  - kidney
  - urethra
  - bladder
  - renal pelvis
- \_\_\_\_\_
  - efferent arteriole
  - peritubular capillaries
  - renal artery
  - glomerulus
  - afferent arteriole
  - renal vein
- \_\_\_\_\_
  - loop of Henle
  - collecting duct
  - Bowman's capsule
  - proximal tubule
  - renal pelvis
  - distal tubule
  - glomerulus
- Using the answer code on the right, indicate what the osmolarity of the tubular fluid is at each of the designated points in a nephron:
 

___ 1. Bowman's capsule	(a) isotonic (300 mOsm)
___ 2. end of the proximal tubule	(b) hypotonic (100 mOsm)
___ 3. tip of Henle's loop of a long-looped nephron (at the bottom of the U-turn)	(c) hypertonic (1200 mOsm)
___ 4. end of Henle's loop of a long-looped nephron (before entry into distal tubule)	(d) ranging from hypotonic to hypertonic (100 to 1200 mOsm)
___ 5. end of the collecting duct	

## Essay Questions

1. List the functions of the kidneys.
2. Describe the anatomy of the urinary system. Describe the components of a nephron.
3. Describe the three basic renal processes; indicate how they relate to urine excretion.
4. Distinguish between *secretion* and *excretion*.
5. Discuss the forces involved in glomerular filtration. What is the average GFR?
6. How is GFR regulated as part of the baroreceptor reflex?
7. Why do the kidneys receive a seemingly disproportionate share of the cardiac output? What percentage of renal blood flow is normally filtered?
8. List the steps in transepithelial transport.
9. Distinguish between active and passive reabsorption.
10. Describe all the tubular transport processes that are linked to the basolateral  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  ATPase carrier.
11. Describe the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system (RAAS). What are the functions of aldosterone and angiotensin II? Discuss the source and function of atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP).
12. To what do the terms *tubular maximum* ( $T_m$ ) and *renal threshold* refer? Compare two substances that display a  $T_m$ , one substance that *is* and one that *is not* regulated by the kidneys.
13. What is the importance of tubular secretion? What are the most important secretory processes?
14. What is the average rate of urine formation?
15. Define *plasma clearance*.
16. What establishes a vertical osmotic gradient in the medullary interstitial fluid? Of what importance is this gradient?
17. Discuss the source, function, and mechanism of action of vasopressin.
18. Describe the transfer of urine to, the storage of urine in, and the emptying of urine from the bladder.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-48)

1. The long-looped nephrons of animals adapted to survive with minimal water consumption, such as desert rats, have relatively longer loops of Henle than humans have. Of what benefit would these longer loops be?
2. Using the data provided, indicate the rate of filtration, reabsorption, and excretion for hypothetical substance X. (a) If the plasma concentration of substance X is 200 mg/100 ml and the GFR is 125 ml/min, what is the filtered load of this substance? (b) If the  $T_m$  for substance X is 200 mg/min, how much of the substance will be reabsorbed at a plasma concentration of 200 mg/100 ml and a GFR of 125 ml/min? (c) How much of substance X will be excreted?
3. *Conn's syndrome* is an endocrine disorder brought about by a tumor of the adrenal cortex that secretes excessive aldosterone in uncontrolled fashion. Given what you know about the functions of aldosterone, describe what the most prominent features of this condition would be.
4. Because of a mutation, a child was born with an ascending limb of Henle that was water permeable. What would be the minimum and maximum urine osmolarities (in units of mOsm) the child could produce?
  - a. 100/300
  - b. 300/1200
  - c. 100/100
  - d. 1200/1200
  - e. 300/300
5. An accident victim suffers permanent damage of the lower spinal cord and is paralyzed from the waist down. Describe what governs bladder emptying in this individual.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

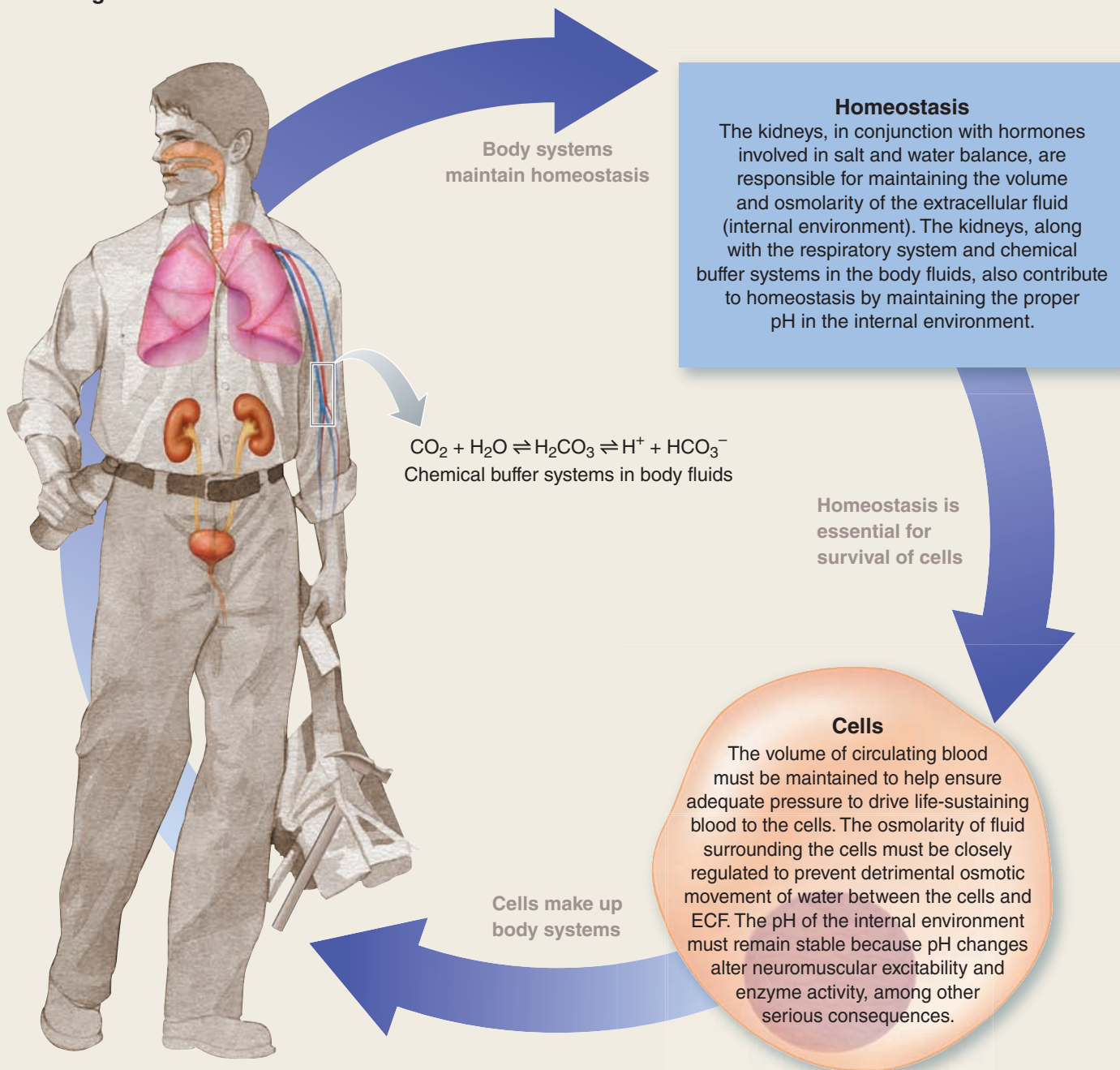
### (Explanation on p. A-48)

Marcus T. has noted a gradual decrease in his urine flow rate and is now experiencing difficulty in initiating micturition. He needs to urinate frequently, and often he feels as if

his bladder is not empty even though he has just urinated. Analysis of Marcus's urine reveals no abnormalities. Are his urinary tract symptoms most likely caused by kidney disease, a bladder infection, or prostate enlargement?



## Systems of Major Importance in Maintaining Fluid and Acid-Base Balance



Homeostasis depends on maintaining a balance between the input and the output of all constituents in the internal fluid environment. Regulation of **fluid balance** involves two separate components: *control of extracellular fluid (ECF) volume*, of which circulating plasma volume is a part, and *control of ECF osmolarity* (solute concentration). The kidneys control ECF volume by maintaining **salt balance** and control ECF osmolarity by maintaining **water balance**. The kidneys maintain this balance by adjusting the

output of salt and water in the urine as needed to compensate for variable input and abnormal losses of these constituents.

Similarly, the kidneys help maintain **acid-base balance** by adjusting the urinary output of hydrogen ion (acid) and bicarbonate ion (base) as needed. Also contributing to acid-base balance are the buffer systems in the body fluids, which chemically compensate for changes in hydrogen ion concentration, and the lungs, which can adjust the rate at which they excrete hydrogen ion-generating  $\text{CO}_2$ .

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Balance Concept**

Internal pool of a substance  
Balance of input and output

**Fluid Balance**

Body-fluid compartments  
Importance of regulating ECF volume  
Control of ECF volume by regulating salt balance  
Importance of regulating ECF osmolarity  
Control of ECF osmolarity by regulating water balance

**Acid–Base Balance**

Acid–base chemistry; pH  
Consequences of changes in  $[H^+]$   
Sources of  $H^+$   
Lines of defense against changes in  $[H^+]$   
Chemical buffer systems  
Respiratory control of pH  
Renal control of pH  
Acid–base imbalances

# Fluid and Acid–Base Balance

## Balance Concept

The cells of complex multicellular organisms are able to survive and function only within a narrow range of composition of the extracellular fluid (ECF), the internal fluid environment that bathes them.

### The internal pool of a substance is the amount of that substance in the ECF.

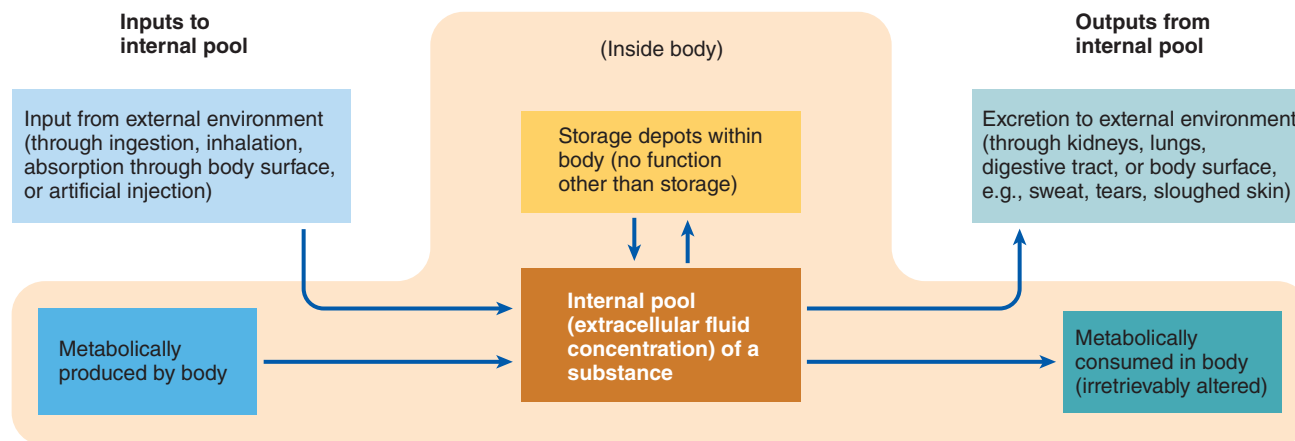
The quantity of any particular substance in the ECF is a readily available internal **pool**. The amount of the substance in the pool may be increased either by transferring more in from the external environment (most commonly by ingestion) or by metabolically producing it within the body (● Figure 14-1). Substances may be removed from the body by being excreted to the outside or by being used up in a metabolic reaction. If the quantity of a substance is to remain stable within the body, its **input** through ingestion or metabolic production must be balanced by an equal **output** through excretion or metabolic consumption. This relationship, known as the **balance concept**, is extremely important in maintaining homeostasis. Not all input and output pathways are applicable for every body-fluid constituent. For example, salt is not synthesized or consumed by the body, so the stability of salt concentration in the body fluids depends entirely on a balance between salt ingestion and salt excretion.

The ECF pool can further be altered by transferring a particular ECF constituent into storage within the body. If the body as a whole has a surplus or deficit of a particular stored substance, the storage site can be expanded or partially depleted to maintain the ECF concentration of the substance within homeostatically prescribed limits. For example, after absorption of a meal, when more glucose is entering the plasma than is being consumed by the cells, the extra glucose can be temporarily stored, in the form of glycogen, in muscle and liver cells. This storage depot can then be tapped between meals as needed to maintain the plasma glucose level when no new nutrients are being added to the blood by eating.

### To maintain stable balance of an ECF constituent, its input must equal its output.

When total body input of a particular substance equals its total body output, a **stable balance** exists. When the gains via input for a substance exceed its losses via output, a **positive balance** exists. The result is an increase in the total amount of the substance in the body. In contrast, when losses for a substance exceed its gains, a **negative balance** exists and the total amount of the substance in the body decreases.

Changing the magnitude of any of the input or output pathways for a given substance can alter its plasma concentration. To maintain homeostasis, any change in input must be balanced by a corresponding change in output (for example, increased salt intake must be matched by a corresponding increase in salt output in the urine), and



● **FIGURE 14-1** Inputs to and outputs from the internal pool of a body constituent.

conversely, increased losses must be compensated for by increased intake. Thus, maintaining a stable balance requires control. The rest of this chapter is devoted to discussing the regulation of fluid balance (maintaining salt and H<sub>2</sub>O balance) and acid–base balance (maintaining H<sup>+</sup> balance).

## Fluid Balance

Water is by far the most abundant component of the human body, constituting 60% of body weight on average. The H<sub>2</sub>O content of an individual remains fairly constant, largely because the kidneys efficiently regulate H<sub>2</sub>O balance.

### Body water is distributed between the ICF and the ECF compartments.

Body H<sub>2</sub>O is distributed between two major fluid compartments: fluid within the cells, or **intracellular fluid (ICF)**, and fluid surrounding the cells, or **extracellular fluid (ECF)** (▲ Table 14-1). (The terms *water (H<sub>2</sub>O)* and *fluid* are commonly used interchangeably. Although this usage is not entirely accurate, because it ignores the solutes in body fluids, it is acceptable

▲ **Table 14-1** Classification of Body Fluid

Compartment	Volume of Fluid (in liters)	Percentage of Body Fluid	Percentage of Body Weight
<b>Total Body Fluid</b>	42	100	60
<b>Intracellular fluid (ICF)</b>	28	67	40
<b>Extracellular fluid (ECF)</b>	14	33	20
<i>Plasma</i>	2.8	6.6 (20% of ECF)	4
<i>Interstitial fluid</i>	11.2	26.4 (80% of ECF)	16

when discussing total volume of fluids because the major proportion of these fluids consists of H<sub>2</sub>O.)

The ICF compartment composes about two thirds of the total body H<sub>2</sub>O. Even though each cell contains a unique mixture of constituents, these trillions of minute fluid compartments are similar enough to be considered collectively as one large fluid compartment.

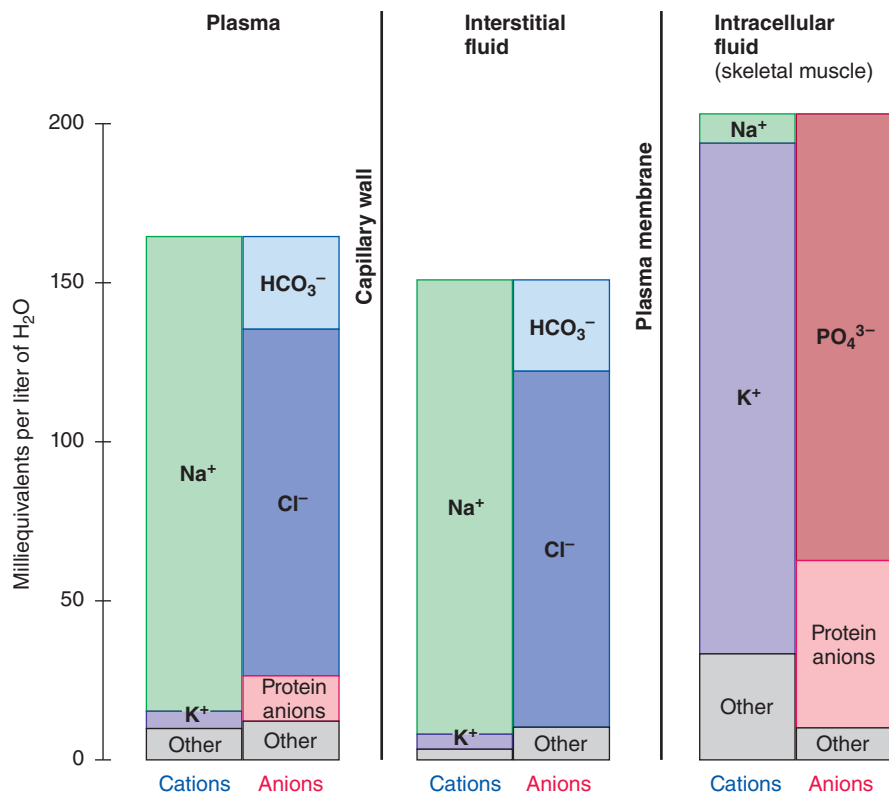
The remaining third of the body H<sub>2</sub>O found in the ECF compartment is further subdivided into plasma and interstitial fluid. The **plasma**, which makes up about a fifth of the ECF volume, is the fluid portion of blood. The **interstitial fluid**, which represents the other four fifths of the ECF compartment, is the fluid in the spaces between cells. It bathes and makes exchanges with tissue cells.

### The plasma and interstitial fluid are similar in composition, but the ECF and ICF differ markedly.

Several barriers separate the body-fluid compartments, limiting the movement of H<sub>2</sub>O and solutes among the various compartments to differing degrees.

**THE BARRIER BETWEEN PLASMA AND INTERSTITIAL FLUID: BLOOD VESSEL WALLS** The two components of the ECF—plasma and interstitial fluid—are separated by the walls of the blood vessels. However, H<sub>2</sub>O and all plasma constituents except for plasma proteins are continuously and freely exchanged between plasma and interstitial fluid by passive means across the thin, pore-lined capillary walls. Accordingly, plasma and interstitial fluid are nearly identical in composition, except that interstitial fluid lacks plasma proteins. Any change in one of these ECF compartments is quickly reflected in the other compartment because they are constantly mixing.

**THE BARRIER BETWEEN THE ECF AND THE ICF: CELLULAR PLASMA MEMBRANES** In contrast to the similar composition of plasma and interstitial fluid compartments, the composition of the ECF differs considerably from that of the ICF (● Figure 14-2). Each cell is surrounded by a highly selective plasma membrane that permits passage of certain materials while excluding others. Movement through the membrane barrier occurs by both passive and active means and may be highly discriminating (see Table



● **FIGURE 14-2** Ionic composition of the major body-fluid compartments.

3-2, p. 63). Among the major differences between the ECF and the ICF are (1) the presence of cell proteins in the ICF that cannot permeate the enveloping membranes to leave the cells and (2) the unequal distribution of Na<sup>+</sup> and K<sup>+</sup> and their attendant anions as a result of the action of the membrane-bound Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> pump present in all cells. Because this pump actively transports Na<sup>+</sup> out of and K<sup>+</sup> into cells, Na<sup>+</sup> is the primary ECF cation and K<sup>+</sup> is the primary ICF cation (see p. 59, also see ▲ Table 3-3, p. 64).

Except for the extremely small, electrically unbalanced portion of the total intracellular and extracellular ions involved in membrane potential, most ECF and ICF ions are electrically balanced. In the ECF, Na<sup>+</sup> is accompanied primarily by the anion chloride (Cl<sup>-</sup>) and to a lesser extent by bicarbonate (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>). The major intracellular anions are phosphate (PO<sub>4</sub><sup>3-</sup>) and the negatively charged proteins trapped within the cell.

The movement of H<sub>2</sub>O between plasma and interstitial fluid across capillary walls is governed by relative imbalances between capillary blood pressure (a fluid, or hydrostatic, pressure) and colloid osmotic pressure (see p. 279). The net transfer of H<sub>2</sub>O between the interstitial fluid and the ICF across the cellular plasma membranes occurs as a result of osmotic effects alone (see p. 54). The hydrostatic pressures of the interstitial fluid and ICF are both extremely low and fairly constant.

### Fluid balance is maintained by regulating ECF volume and osmolarity.

Extracellular fluid serves as an intermediary between the cells and the external environment. All exchanges of H<sub>2</sub>O and other constituents between the ICF and the external world must oc-

cur through the ECF. Water added to the body fluids always enters the ECF compartment first, and fluid always leaves the body via the ECF.

Plasma is the only fluid that can be acted on directly to control its volume and composition. This fluid circulates through all the reconditioning organs that perform homeostatic adjustments (see p. 261). However, because of the free exchange across the capillary walls, if the volume and composition of the plasma are regulated, the volume and composition of the interstitial fluid bathing the cells are likewise regulated. Thus, any control mechanism that operates on plasma in effect regulates the entire ECF. The ICF in turn is influenced by changes in the ECF to the extent permitted by the permeability of membrane barriers surrounding the cells.

Two factors are regulated to maintain **fluid balance** in the body: ECF volume and ECF osmolarity. Although regulation of these two factors is interrelated, both depending on the relative NaCl and H<sub>2</sub>O load in the body, the reasons why and the mechanisms by which they are controlled are significantly different:

1. *ECF volume* must be closely regulated to help *maintain blood pressure*. Maintaining *salt balance* is of primary importance in the long-term regulation of ECF volume.
2. *ECF osmolarity* must be closely regulated to *prevent swelling or shrinking of cells*. Maintaining *water balance* is of primary importance in regulating ECF osmolarity.

### Control of ECF volume is important in the long-term regulation of blood pressure.

A reduction in ECF volume causes a fall in arterial blood pressure by decreasing plasma volume. Conversely, expanding ECF volume raises arterial blood pressure by increasing plasma volume. Two compensatory measures come into play to transiently adjust blood pressure until the ECF volume can be restored to normal. Let us review them.

#### SHORT-TERM CONTROL MEASURES TO MAINTAIN BLOOD PRESSURE

1. *The baroreceptor reflex alters both cardiac output and total peripheral resistance* to adjust blood pressure in the proper direction through autonomic nervous system effects on the heart and blood vessels (see p. 289). Cardiac output and total peripheral resistance are both increased to raise blood pressure when it falls too low, and conversely, both are decreased to reduce blood pressure when it rises too high.
2. *Fluid shifts occur temporarily and automatically between plasma and interstitial fluid* as a result of changes in the balance of hydrostatic and osmotic forces acting across the capillary

walls that arise when plasma volume deviates from normal (see p. 280). A reduction in plasma volume is partially compensated for by a shift of fluid out of the interstitial compartment into the blood vessels, expanding the circulating plasma volume at the expense of the interstitial compartment. Conversely, when plasma volume is too large, much of the excess fluid shifts into the interstitial compartment.

These two measures provide temporary relief to help keep blood pressure fairly constant, but they are not long-term solutions. Furthermore, these short-term compensatory measures have a limited ability to minimize a change in blood pressure. For example, if plasma volume is too inadequate, blood pressure remains too low no matter how vigorous the pump action of the heart, how constricted the resistance vessels, or what proportion of interstitial fluid shifts into the blood vessels.

**LONG-TERM CONTROL MEASURES TO MAINTAIN BLOOD PRESSURE** It is important, therefore, that other compensatory measures come into play in the long run to restore the ECF volume to normal. Long-term regulation of blood pressure rests with the kidneys and the thirst mechanism, which control urinary output and fluid intake, respectively. In so doing, they make needed fluid exchanges between the ECF and the external environment to regulate the body's total fluid volume. Accordingly, they have an important long-term influence on arterial blood pressure. Of these measures, control of urinary output by the kidneys is the most crucial for maintaining blood pressure. You will see why as we discuss these long-term mechanisms in more detail.

**Control of salt balance is primarily important in regulating ECF volume.**

By way of review, sodium and its attendant anions account for more than 90% of the ECF osmotic activity. As the kidneys conserve salt, they automatically conserve H<sub>2</sub>O because H<sub>2</sub>O follows Na<sup>+</sup> osmotically. This retained salt solution is isotonic (see p. 55). The more salt there is in the ECF, the more H<sub>2</sub>O there is in the ECF. The concentration of salt is not changed by changing the amount of salt in the body, because H<sub>2</sub>O always follows salt to maintain osmotic equilibrium—that is, to maintain the normal concentration of salt. A reduced salt load leads to decreased H<sub>2</sub>O retention, so the ECF remains isotonic but reduced in volume. The total mass of Na<sup>+</sup> salts in the ECF—that is, the *Na<sup>+</sup> load*—therefore determines the ECF volume, and appropriately, regulation of ECF volume depends primarily on controlling salt balance.

To maintain salt balance at a set level, salt input must equal salt output, thus preventing salt accumulation or deficit in the body. We now look at the avenues and control of salt input and output.

**POOR CONTROL OF SALT INTAKE** The only avenue for salt input is ingestion, which typically is well in excess of the body's need for replacing obligatory salt losses. In our example of a typical daily salt balance (▲ Table 14-2) salt intake is 10.5 g per day. (The average American salt intake is about 10 to 15 g per day,

▲ **Table 14-2 Daily Salt Balance**

SALT INPUT		SALT OUTPUT	
Avenue	Amount (g/day)	Avenue	Amount (g/day)
Ingestion	10.5	Obligatory loss in sweat and feces	0.5
		Controlled excretion in urine	10.0
Total input	10.5	Total output	10.5

although many people are consciously reducing their salt intake.) Yet 0.5 g of salt per day is adequate to replace the small amounts of salt usually lost in the feces and sweat.

Because humans typically consume salt in excess of our needs, obviously our salt intake is not well controlled. Carnivores (meat eaters) and omnivores (eaters of meat and plants, like humans), which naturally get enough salt in fresh meat (meat contains an abundance of salt-rich ECF), normally do not display a physiologic appetite to seek additional salt. In contrast, herbivores (plant eaters), which lack salt naturally in their diets, develop salt hunger and will travel miles to a salt lick. Humans generally have a hedonistic (pleasure-seeking) rather than a regulatory appetite for salt; we consume salt because we like it rather than because we have a physiologic need, except in the unusual circumstance of severe salt depletion caused by a deficiency of aldosterone, the salt-conserving hormone.

**PRECISE CONTROL OF SALT OUTPUT IN THE URINE** To maintain salt balance, excess ingested salt must be excreted in the urine. The three avenues for salt output are obligatory loss of salt in *sweat* and *feces* and controlled excretion of salt in *urine* (▲ Table 14-2). The total amount of sweat produced is unrelated to salt balance, being determined instead by factors that control body temperature. The small salt loss in feces is not subject to control. Except when sweating heavily or during diarrhea, the body uncontrollably loses only about 0.5 g of salt per day. This amount is the only salt that normally needs to be replaced by salt intake.

Because salt consumption is typically far more than the meager amount needed to compensate for uncontrolled losses, the kidneys precisely excrete the excess salt in the urine to maintain salt balance. In our example, 10 g of salt are eliminated in the urine per day so that total salt output exactly equals salt input. By regulating the rate of urinary salt excretion (that is, by regulating the rate of Na<sup>+</sup> excretion, with Cl<sup>-</sup> following along), the kidneys normally keep the total Na<sup>+</sup> mass in the ECF constant despite any notable changes in dietary intake of salt or unusual losses through sweating or diarrhea. As a reflection of keeping the total Na<sup>+</sup> mass (tacitly including the total Cl<sup>-</sup> mass) in the ECF constant, the ECF volume, in turn, is

maintained within the narrowly prescribed limits essential for normal circulatory function.

Deviations in the ECF volume accompanying changes in the salt load trigger renal compensatory responses that quickly bring the  $\text{Na}^+$  load and ECF volume back into line. Sodium is freely filtered at the glomerulus and actively reabsorbed, but it is not secreted by the tubules, so the amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  excreted in the urine represents the amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  filtered but not subsequently reabsorbed:

$$\text{Na}^+ \text{ excreted} = \text{Na}^+ \text{ filtered} - \text{Na}^+ \text{ reabsorbed}$$

The kidneys accordingly adjust the amount of salt excreted by controlling two processes: (1) the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and (2) more important, the tubular reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$ . You have already learned about these regulatory mechanisms, but we are pulling them together here as they relate to the long-term control of ECF volume and blood pressure.

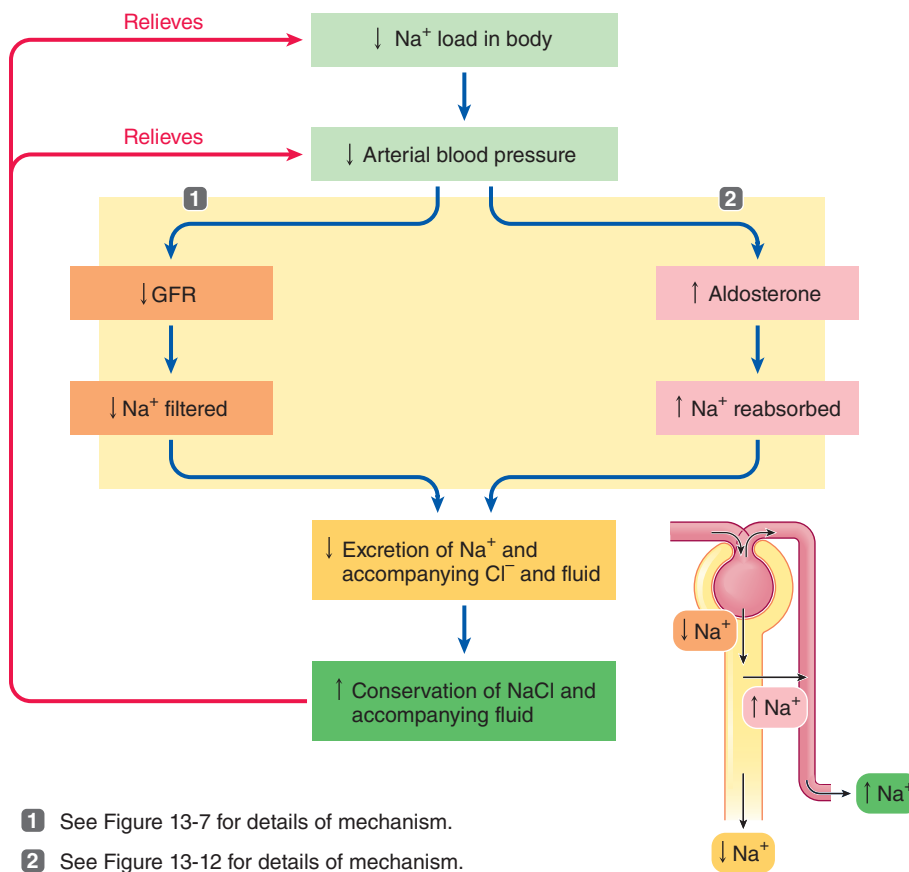
■ *The amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  filtered is controlled by regulating the GFR.* The amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  filtered is equal to the plasma  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration times the GFR. At any given plasma  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration, any change in the GFR correspondingly changes the amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  and accompanying fluid that are filtered. Thus, control of the GFR can adjust the amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  filtered each minute. Recall that the GFR is deliberately changed to alter the amount of salt and fluid filtered, as part of the general baroreceptor reflex response to a change in blood pressure (see ● Figure 13-7, p. 389). Changes in  $\text{Na}^+$  load in the body are not sensed as such; instead,

they are monitored indirectly through the effect that the  $\text{Na}^+$  load ultimately has on blood pressure. Fittingly, baroreceptors that monitor fluctuations in blood pressure bring about adjustments in the amounts of  $\text{Na}^+$  filtered and eventually excreted.

■ *The amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorbed is controlled through the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system.* The amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorbed also depends on regulatory systems that play an important role in controlling blood pressure. Although  $\text{Na}^+$  is reabsorbed throughout most of the tubule's length, only its reabsorption in the late parts of the tubule is subject to control. The main factor controlling the extent of  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption in the distal and collecting tubules is the powerful renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS), which promotes  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption and thereby  $\text{Na}^+$  retention. Sodium retention, in turn, promotes osmotic retention of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and subsequent expansion of plasma volume and elevation of arterial blood pressure. Appropriately, this  $\text{Na}^+$ -conserving system is activated by a reduction in  $\text{NaCl}$ , ECF volume, and arterial blood pressure (see ● Figure 13-12, p. 394).

Thus, control of GFR and  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption are interrelated, and both are intimately tied in with long-term regulation of ECF volume as reflected by blood pressure. For example, a fall in arterial blood pressure brings about (1) a reflex reduction in the GFR to decrease the amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  filtered and (2) a hormonally adjusted increase in the amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorbed (● Figure 14-3). Together, these effects reduce the amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  excreted, thereby conserving for the body the  $\text{Na}^+$  and accompanying  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  needed to compensate for the fall in arterial pressure. (To look at

how exercising muscles and cooling mechanisms compete for an inadequate plasma volume, see the boxed feature on p. 422, ► Beyond the Basics.)



● **FIGURE 14-3** Dual effect of a fall in arterial blood pressure on renal handling of  $\text{Na}^+$ .

### Controlling ECF osmolarity prevents changes in ICF volume.

Maintaining fluid balance depends on regulating both ECF volume and ECF osmolarity. Whereas regulating ECF volume is important in long-term control of blood pressure, regulating ECF osmolarity is important in preventing changes in cell volume. The **osmolarity** of a fluid is a measure of the concentration of the individual solute particles dissolved in it. The higher the osmolarity, the higher the concentration of solutes or, to look at it differently, the lower the concentration of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Recall that water tends to move by osmosis down its own concentration gradient from an area of lower solute (higher  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) concentration to an area of higher solute (lower  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) concentration (see p. 53).

**IONS RESPONSIBLE FOR ECF AND ICF OSMOLARITY** Osmosis occurs across the cellular plasma membranes only when a

## Beyond the Basics

An increasing number of people of all ages are participating in walking or jogging programs to improve their level of physical fitness and decrease their risk of cardiovascular disease. For people living in environments that undergo seasonal temperature changes, fluid loss can make exercising outdoors dangerous during the transition from the cool days of spring to the hot, humid days of summer. If exercise intensity is not modified until the participant gradually adjusts to the hotter environmental conditions, dehydration and salt loss can indirectly lead to heat cramps, heat exhaustion, or ultimately heat stroke and death.

The term **acclimatization** refers to the gradual adaptations the body makes to maintain long-term homeostasis in response to a prolonged physical change in the surrounding environment, such as a change in temperature. When a person exercises in the heat without gradually adapting to the hotter environment, the body faces a terrible dilemma. During exercise, large amounts of blood must be delivered to the muscles to supply  $O_2$  and nutrients and to remove the wastes that accumulate from their high rate of activity. Exercising muscles also produce heat. To maintain body temperature in the face of this extra heat, blood flow to the skin is increased so that heat from the warmed blood can be lost through the skin to the surrounding environment. If the environmental temperature is hotter than the body temperature, heat cannot be lost from the blood to the surrounding environment despite maximal skin vasodilation. Instead, the body gains heat from its warmer surroundings, further adding to the dilemma. Because extra

## A Potentially Fatal Clash: When Exercising Muscles and Cooling Mechanisms Compete for an Inadequate Plasma Volume

blood is diverted to both the muscles and the skin when a person exercises in the heat, less blood is returned to the heart, and the heart pumps less blood per beat in accordance with the Frank-Starling mechanism (see p. 249). Therefore, the heart must beat faster than it would in a cool environment to deliver the same amount of blood per minute. The increased rate of cardiac pumping further contributes to heat production.

The sweat rate also increases so that evaporative cooling can take place to help maintain the body temperature during periods of excessive heat gain. In an unacclimatized person, maximal sweat rate is about 1.5 liters per hour. During sweating, water-retaining salt, as well as water, is lost. The resulting loss of plasma volume through sweating further depletes the blood supply available for muscular exercise and for cooling through skin vasodilation.

The heart has a maximum rate at which it can pump. If exercise continues at a high intensity and this maximal rate is reached, the exercising muscles win the contest for blood supply. Cooling is sacrificed as skin blood flow decreases. If exercise continues, body heat continues to rise, and heat exhaustion (rapid, weak pulse; hypotension; profuse sweating; and disorientation) or heat stroke (failure of the temperature control center in the hypothalamus; hot, dry skin; extreme confusion or unconsciousness; and possibly death) can occur (see p. 491). Every year people die of heat stroke in marathons run during hot, humid weather.

(Some people make matters worse by adding a caffeine-containing energy drink to their workout or competition. Caffeine may provide a jolt of energy, but it also acts as a diuretic and can lead to performance-reducing dehydration, the opposite effect of what the people might think they are accomplishing by drinking these beverages.)

By contrast, if a person exercises in the heat 2 weeks at reduced, safe intensities, the body makes the following adaptations so that after acclimatization the person can do the same amount of work as was possible in a cool environment: (1) The plasma volume is increased by as much as 12%. Expansion of the plasma volume provides enough blood to both supply the exercising muscles and direct blood to the skin for cooling. (2) The person begins sweating at a lower temperature so that the body does not get so hot before cooling begins. (3) The maximal sweat rate increases nearly three times, to 4 liters per hour, with a more even distribution over the body. This increase in evaporative cooling reduces the need for cooling by skin vasodilation. (4) The sweat becomes more dilute so that less salt is lost in the sweat. The retained salt exerts an osmotic effect to hold water in the body and help maintain circulating plasma volume. These adaptations take 14 days and occur only if the person exercises in the heat. Being patient until these changes take place can enable the person to exercise safely throughout the summer months.

difference in concentration of nonpenetrating solutes exists between the ECF and the ICF. Solute that can penetrate a barrier separating two fluid compartments quickly become equally distributed between the two compartments and thus do not contribute to osmotic differences.

Sodium and its attendant anions, being by far the most abundant solutes in the ECF in terms of numbers of particles, account for the vast majority of the ECF osmotic activity. In contrast,  $K^+$  and its accompanying intracellular anions are responsible for the ICF osmotic activity. Even though small amounts of  $Na^+$  and  $K^+$  passively diffuse across the plasma membrane all the time, these ions behave as if they were nonpenetrating because of  $Na^+-K^+$  pump activity. Any  $Na^+$  that passively diffuses down its electrochemical gradient into the cell

is promptly pumped back outside, so the result is the same as if  $Na^+$  were barred from the cells. In reverse,  $K^+$  in effect remains trapped within the cells.

Normally, the osmolarities of the ECF and ICF are the same, because the total concentration of  $K^+$  and other effectively nonpenetrating solutes inside the cells is equal to the total concentration of  $Na^+$  and other effectively nonpenetrating solutes in the fluid surrounding the cells. Even though nonpenetrating solutes in the ECF and ICF differ, their concentrations are normally identical, and the number (not the nature) of the unequally distributed particles per volume determines the fluid's osmolarity. Because the osmolarities of the ECF and ICF are normally equal, no net movement of  $H_2O$  usually occurs into or out of the cells. Therefore, cell volume normally remains constant.

**IMPORTANCE OF REGULATING ECF OSMOLARITY** Any circumstance that results in a loss or gain of *free H<sub>2</sub>O* (that is, loss or gain of H<sub>2</sub>O that is not accompanied by comparable solute deficit or excess) leads to changes in ECF osmolality. If there is a deficit of free H<sub>2</sub>O in the ECF, the solutes become too concentrated and ECF osmolality becomes abnormally high; that is, it becomes *hypertonic* (see p. 55). If there is excess free H<sub>2</sub>O in the ECF, the solutes become too dilute and ECF osmolality becomes abnormally low; that is, it becomes *hypotonic*. When ECF osmolality changes with respect to ICF osmolality, osmosis takes place, with H<sub>2</sub>O either leaving or entering the cells, depending on whether the ECF is more concentrated or less concentrated, respectively, than the ICF.

The osmolality of the ECF must therefore be regulated to prevent these undesirable shifts of H<sub>2</sub>O out of or into the cells. As far as the ECF itself is concerned, the concentration of its solutes does not really matter. However, it is crucial that ECF osmolality be maintained within narrow limits to prevent the cells from shrinking or swelling.

Let us examine the fluid shifts that occur between the ECF and the ICF when ECF osmolality becomes hypertonic or hypotonic relative to the ICF. Then we consider how water balance and consequently ECF osmolality are normally maintained to minimize harmful changes in cell volume.

### During ECF hypertonicity, the cells shrink as H<sub>2</sub>O leaves them.

**Hypertonicity** of the ECF, the excessive concentration of ECF solutes, is usually associated with **dehydration**, or a negative free H<sub>2</sub>O balance.

**CAUSES OF HYPERTONICITY (DEHYDRATION)** Dehydration with accompanying hypertonicity can be brought about in three major ways:

1. *Insufficient H<sub>2</sub>O intake*, such as might occur during desert travel or might accompany difficulty in swallowing
2. *Excessive H<sub>2</sub>O loss*, such as might occur during heavy sweating, vomiting, or diarrhea

3. **Diabetes insipidus**, a disease characterized by a deficiency of vasopressin



*Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone)* increases the permeability of the distal and collecting tubules to H<sub>2</sub>O and thus enhances water conservation by reducing urinary output of water (see p. 406). Without adequate vasopressin, the kidneys cannot conserve H<sub>2</sub>O because they cannot reabsorb H<sub>2</sub>O from the distal parts of the nephron. Such patients typically produce up to 20 liters of very dilute urine daily, compared to the normal average of 1.5 liters per day. Unless H<sub>2</sub>O intake keeps pace with this tremendous loss of H<sub>2</sub>O in the urine, the person quickly dehydrates. Such patients complain that they spend an extraordinary amount of time day and night going to the bathroom and getting drinks. Fortunately, they can be treated with replacement vasopressin administered by nasal spray.



### DIRECTION AND RESULTING SYMPTOMS OF WATER MOVEMENT DURING HYPERTONICITY

Whenever the ECF compartment becomes hypertonic, H<sub>2</sub>O moves out of the cells by osmosis into the more concentrated ECF until the ICF osmolality equilibrates with the ECF. As H<sub>2</sub>O leaves them, the cells shrink. Of particular concern is that considerable shrinking of brain neurons disturbs brain function, which can be manifested as mental confusion and irrationality in moderate cases and as possible delirium, convulsions, or coma in more severe hypertonic conditions.

Rivaling the neural symptoms in seriousness are circulatory disturbances that arise from a reduction in plasma volume in association with dehydration. Circulatory problems may range from a slight lowering of blood pressure to circulatory shock and death.

Other more common symptoms become apparent even in mild cases of dehydration. For example, dry skin and sunken eyeballs indicate loss of H<sub>2</sub>O from the underlying soft tissues, and the tongue becomes dry and parched because salivary secretion is suppressed.

### During ECF hypotonicity, the cells swell as H<sub>2</sub>O enters them.

**Hypotonicity** of the ECF is usually associated with **overhydration**; that is, excess free H<sub>2</sub>O. When a positive free H<sub>2</sub>O balance exists, the ECF is less concentrated (more dilute) than normal.

**CAUSES OF HYPOTONICITY (OVERHYDRATION)** Usually, any surplus free H<sub>2</sub>O is promptly excreted in the urine, so hypotonicity generally does not occur. However, hypotonicity can arise in three ways:

1. Patients with *renal failure* who cannot excrete a dilute urine become hypotonic when they consume relatively more H<sub>2</sub>O than solutes.
2. Hypotonicity can occur transiently in healthy people if *H<sub>2</sub>O is rapidly ingested* to such an excess that the kidneys cannot respond quickly enough to eliminate the extra H<sub>2</sub>O.
3. Hypotonicity can occur when excess H<sub>2</sub>O without solute is retained in the body as a result of the *syndrome of inappropriate vasopressin secretion*.

Vasopressin is normally secreted in response to a H<sub>2</sub>O deficit, which is relieved by increasing H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption in the distal part of the nephrons. However, vasopressin secretion, and therefore hormonally controlled tubular H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption, can be increased in response to pain, trauma, and other stressful situations, even when the body has no H<sub>2</sub>O deficit. The increased vasopressin secretion and resulting H<sub>2</sub>O retention elicited by stress are appropriate in anticipation of potential blood loss in the stressful situation. The extra retained H<sub>2</sub>O could minimize the effect a loss of blood volume would have on blood pressure. However, because modern-day stressful situations generally do not involve blood loss, the increased vasopressin secretion is inappropriate as far as the body's fluid balance is concerned. The reabsorption and retention of too much H<sub>2</sub>O dilute the body's solutes.





### DIRECTION AND RESULTING SYMPTOMS OF WATER MOVEMENT DURING HYPOTONICITY

Excess free H<sub>2</sub>O retention first dilutes the ECF compartment, making it hypotonic. The resulting difference in osmotic activity between the ECF and the ICF causes H<sub>2</sub>O to move by osmosis from the more dilute ECF into the cells, with the cells swelling as H<sub>2</sub>O moves into them. Like the shrinking of cerebral neurons, pronounced swelling of brain cells also leads to brain dysfunction. Symptoms include confusion, irritability, lethargy, headache, dizziness, vomiting, drowsiness, and in severe cases, convulsions, coma, and death.

Nonneural symptoms of overhydration include weakness caused by swelling of muscle cells and circulatory disturbances, including hypertension and edema, caused by expansion of plasma volume.

Let us now contrast the situations of hypertonicity and hypotonicity with what happens as a result of isotonic fluid gain or loss.

### No water moves into or out of cells during an ECF isotonic fluid gain or loss.



An example of an isotonic fluid gain is therapeutic intravenous administration of an isotonic solution, such as isotonic saline. When isotonic fluid is injected into the ECF compartment, ECF volume increases, but the concentration of ECF solutes remains unchanged; in other words, the ECF is still isotonic. Because the ECF osmolarity has not changed, the ECF and ICF are still in osmotic equilibrium, so no net fluid shift occurs between the two compartments. The ECF compartment has increased in volume without shifting H<sub>2</sub>O into the cells.

Similarly, in an isotonic fluid loss such as hemorrhage, the loss is confined to the ECF, with no corresponding loss of fluid from the ICF. Fluid does not shift out of the cells, because the ECF remaining within the body is still isotonic, so no osmotic gradient draws H<sub>2</sub>O out of the cells. Many other mechanisms counteract loss of blood, but the ICF compartment is not directly affected by the loss.

We now look at how free H<sub>2</sub>O balance is normally maintained.

### Control of water balance by means of vasopressin is important in regulating ECF osmolarity.

Control of free H<sub>2</sub>O balance is crucial for regulating ECF osmolarity. Because increases in free H<sub>2</sub>O cause the ECF to become too dilute and deficits of free H<sub>2</sub>O cause the ECF to become too concentrated, the osmolarity of the ECF must be immediately corrected by restoring stable free H<sub>2</sub>O balance to avoid harmful osmotic fluid shifts into or out of the cells.

To maintain a stable H<sub>2</sub>O balance, H<sub>2</sub>O input must equal H<sub>2</sub>O output.

### SOURCES OF H<sub>2</sub>O INPUT

In a person's typical daily H<sub>2</sub>O balance (▲ Table 14-3), a little more than a liter of H<sub>2</sub>O is added to the body by *drinking liquids*.

▲ Table 14-3 Daily Water Balance

WATER INPUT		WATER OUTPUT	
Avenue	Quantity (ml/day)	Avenue	Quantity (ml/day)
Fluid intake	1250	Insensible loss (from lungs and nonsweating skin)	900
H <sub>2</sub> O in food intake	1000	Sweat	100
Metabolically produced H <sub>2</sub> O	350	Feces	100
		Urine	1500
Total input	2600	Total output	2600

Surprisingly, an amount almost equal to that is obtained from *eating solid food*. Muscles consist of about 75% H<sub>2</sub>O; meat (animal muscle) is 75% H<sub>2</sub>O. Fruits and vegetables consist of 60% to 90% H<sub>2</sub>O. Therefore, people normally get almost as much H<sub>2</sub>O from solid foods as from the liquids they drink.

The third source of H<sub>2</sub>O input is *metabolically produced H<sub>2</sub>O*. Chemical reactions within the cells convert food and O<sub>2</sub> into energy, producing CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O in the process. This **metabolic H<sub>2</sub>O** produced during cell metabolism and released into the ECF averages about 350 ml per day.

The average H<sub>2</sub>O intake from these three sources totals 2600 ml per day.

### SOURCES OF H<sub>2</sub>O OUTPUT

On the output side of the H<sub>2</sub>O balance tally, the body loses nearly a liter of H<sub>2</sub>O daily without being aware of it. This **insensible loss** (loss of which the person has no sensory awareness) occurs from the *lungs* and *nonsweating skin*. During respiration, inspired air becomes saturated with H<sub>2</sub>O within the airways. This H<sub>2</sub>O is lost when the moistened air is subsequently expired (see p. 345). Normally, we are not aware of this H<sub>2</sub>O loss, but we can recognize it on cold days, when H<sub>2</sub>O vapor condenses so that we can “see our breath.” The other insensible loss is continual loss of H<sub>2</sub>O from the skin even in the absence of sweating. Water molecules can diffuse through skin cells and evaporate without being noticed. Fortunately, the skin is fairly waterproofed by its keratinized exterior layer, which protects against a greater loss of H<sub>2</sub>O by this avenue (see p. 337).

Sensible loss (loss of which the person is aware) of H<sub>2</sub>O from the skin occurs through *sweating*, which represents another avenue of H<sub>2</sub>O output. At an air temperature of 68°F, an average of 100 ml of H<sub>2</sub>O is lost daily through sweating. Loss of water from sweating can vary substantially, depending on the environmental temperature and humidity and the degree of physical activity; it may range from zero up to as much as several liters per hour in very hot weather.

■ Another passageway for H<sub>2</sub>O loss from the body is through the feces. Normally, only about 100 ml of H<sub>2</sub>O are lost this way each day. During fecal formation in the large intestine, most H<sub>2</sub>O is absorbed out of the digestive tract lumen into the blood, thereby conserving fluid and solidifying the digestive tract's contents for elimination. Additional H<sub>2</sub>O can be lost from the digestive tract through vomiting or diarrhea.

■ By far the most important output mechanism is *urine excretion*, with 1500 ml (1.5 L) of urine being produced daily on average.

The total H<sub>2</sub>O output is 2600 ml per day, the same as the volume of H<sub>2</sub>O input in our example. This balance is not by chance. Normally, H<sub>2</sub>O input matches H<sub>2</sub>O output so that the H<sub>2</sub>O in the body remains in balance.

**FACTORS REGULATED TO MAINTAIN WATER BALANCE** Of the many sources of H<sub>2</sub>O input and output, only two can be regulated to maintain H<sub>2</sub>O balance. On the intake side, thirst influences the amount of fluid ingested; and on the output side, the kidneys can adjust how much urine is formed. Controlling H<sub>2</sub>O output in the urine is the most important mechanism in controlling H<sub>2</sub>O balance.

Some of the other factors are regulated, but not for maintaining H<sub>2</sub>O balance. Food intake is subject to regulation to maintain energy balance, and control of sweating is important in maintaining body temperature. Metabolic H<sub>2</sub>O production and insensible losses are unregulated.

**CONTROL OF WATER OUTPUT IN THE URINE BY VASOPRESSIN** Fluctuations in ECF osmolarity caused by imbalances between H<sub>2</sub>O input and H<sub>2</sub>O output are quickly compensated for by adjusting urinary excretion of H<sub>2</sub>O without changing the usual excretion of salt. That is, H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption and excretion are partially dissociated from solute reabsorption and excretion, so the amount of free H<sub>2</sub>O retained or eliminated can be varied to quickly restore ECF osmolarity to normal. Free H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption and excretion are adjusted through changes in vasopressin secretion (see ● Figure 13-22, p. 409). Throughout most of the nephron, H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption is important in regulating ECF volume because salt reabsorption is accompanied by comparable H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption. In the distal and collecting tubules, however, variable free H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption can take place without comparable salt reabsorption because of the vertical osmotic gradient in the renal medulla to which this part of the tubule is exposed. Vasopressin increases the permeability of this late part of the tubule to H<sub>2</sub>O. Depending on the amount of vasopressin present, the amount of free H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorbed can be adjusted as necessary to restore ECF osmolarity to normal.

**CONTROL OF WATER INPUT BY THIRST** Thirst is the subjective sensation that drives you to ingest H<sub>2</sub>O. The **thirst center** is located in the hypothalamus close to the vasopressin-secreting cells.

We now elaborate on the mechanisms that regulate vasopressin secretion and thirst.

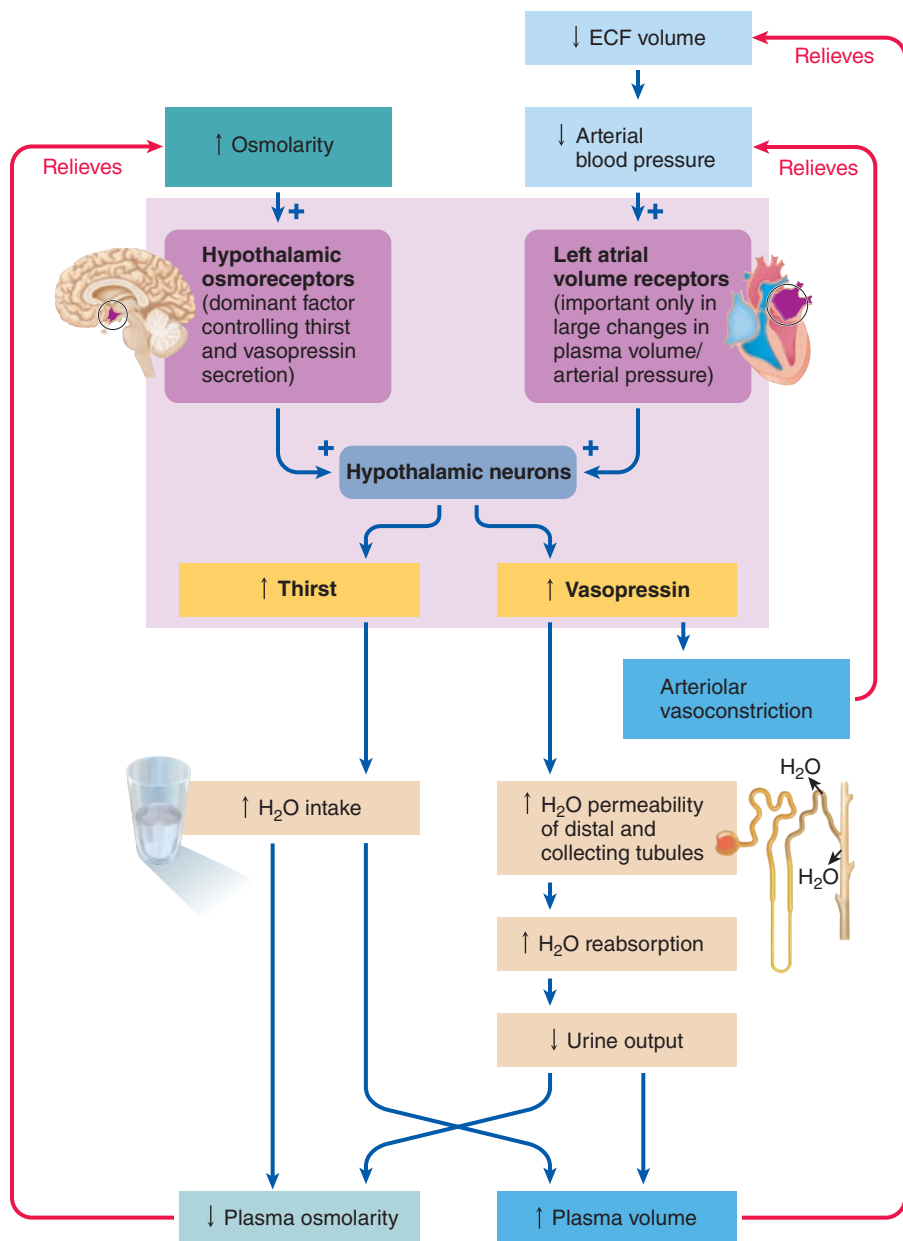
### Vasopressin secretion and thirst are largely triggered simultaneously.

The hypothalamic control centers that regulate vasopressin secretion (and thus urinary output) and thirst (and thus drinking) act in concert. Vasopressin secretion and thirst are both stimulated by a free H<sub>2</sub>O deficit and suppressed by a free H<sub>2</sub>O excess. Thus, appropriately, the same circumstances that call for reducing urinary output to conserve body H<sub>2</sub>O give rise to the sensation of thirst to replenish body H<sub>2</sub>O.

**ROLE OF HYPOTHALAMIC OSMORECEPTORS** The predominant excitatory input for both vasopressin secretion and thirst comes from **hypothalamic osmoreceptors** located near the vasopressin-secreting cells and thirst center. These osmoreceptors monitor the osmolarity of fluid surrounding them, which in turn reflects the concentration of the entire internal fluid environment. As the osmolarity increases (too little H<sub>2</sub>O) and the need for H<sub>2</sub>O conservation increases, vasopressin secretion and thirst are both stimulated (● Figure 14-4). As a result, reabsorption of H<sub>2</sub>O in the distal and collecting tubules is increased so that urinary output is reduced and H<sub>2</sub>O is conserved, while H<sub>2</sub>O intake is simultaneously encouraged. These actions restore depleted H<sub>2</sub>O stores, thus relieving the hypertonic condition by diluting the solutes to normal concentration. In contrast, H<sub>2</sub>O excess, manifested by reduced ECF osmolarity, prompts increased urinary output (through decreased vasopressin release) and suppresses thirst, which together reduce the water load in the body.

**ROLE OF LEFT ATRIAL VOLUME RECEPTORS** Even though the major stimulus for vasopressin secretion and thirst is an increase in ECF osmolarity, the vasopressin-secreting cells and thirst center are both influenced to a moderate extent by changes in ECF volume mediated by input from the **left atrial volume receptors**. Located in the left atrium, these volume receptors respond to pressure-induced stretch caused by blood flowing through, which reflects the ECF volume. That is, they monitor the “fullness” of the vascular system. In contrast, the aortic arch and carotid sinus baroreceptors monitor the mean driving pressure in the vascular system (see p. 289). In response to a major reduction in ECF volume, and accordingly in arterial pressure, as during hemorrhage, the left atrial volume receptors reflexly stimulate both vasopressin secretion and thirst. Outpouring of vasopressin and increased thirst lead to decreased urine output and increased fluid intake, respectively. Furthermore, vasopressin, at the circulating levels elicited by a large decline in ECF volume and arterial pressure, exerts a potent vasoconstrictor (that is, a “vaso” “pressor”) effect on arterioles (thus giving rise to its name; see p. 274). Both by helping expand the ECF and plasma volume and by increasing total peripheral resistance, vasopressin helps relieve the low blood pressure that elicited vasopressin secretion. Simultaneously, the low blood pressure is detected by the aortic arch and carotid sinus baroreceptors, which help raise the pressure by increasing sympathetic activity to the heart and blood vessels (see ● Figure 10-33, p. 291).

Conversely, vasopressin and thirst are both inhibited when ECF volume (and, accordingly, plasma volume) and arterial



● **FIGURE 14-4** Control of increased vasopressin secretion and thirst during a H<sub>2</sub>O deficit.

blood pressure are elevated. The resultant suppression of H<sub>2</sub>O intake, coupled with elimination of excess ECF and plasma volume in the urine, helps restore blood pressure to normal.

Recall that low ECF and plasma volume and low arterial blood pressure also reflexly increase aldosterone secretion via RAAS. The resulting increase in Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption leads to osmotic retention of H<sub>2</sub>O, expansion of ECF volume, and an increase in arterial blood pressure. Aldosterone-controlled Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption is the most important factor in regulating ECF volume, with the vasopressin and thirst mechanism playing only a supportive role.

**NONPHYSIOLOGIC INFLUENCES ON FLUID INTAKE** Even though the thirst mechanism exists to control H<sub>2</sub>O intake, fluid consumption by humans is often influenced more by habit and so-

biological factors than by the need to regulate H<sub>2</sub>O balance. Thus, even though H<sub>2</sub>O intake is critical in maintaining fluid balance, it is not precisely controlled in humans, who err especially on the side of excess H<sub>2</sub>O consumption. We usually drink when we are thirsty, but we often drink even when we are not thirsty because, for example, we are on a coffee break.

With H<sub>2</sub>O intake being inadequately controlled and indeed even contributing to H<sub>2</sub>O imbalances in the body, the primary factor involved in maintaining H<sub>2</sub>O balance is urinary output regulated by the kidneys. Accordingly, *vasopressin-controlled H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption is of primary importance in regulating ECF osmolarity.*

Before we shift our attention to acid–base balance, examine ▲ Table 14-4, which summarizes the regulation of ECF volume and osmolarity, the two factors important in maintaining fluid balance.

## Acid–Base Balance

Note: The scope of this topic has been limited to what can be understood by students with no college chemistry background. Students who have the background and need a more chemistry-oriented coverage of acid–base balance should refer to Appendix D, pp. A-30–A-37, which covers the chemistry in more detail.

The term **acid–base balance** refers to the precise regulation of **free** (that is, unbound) **hydrogen ion (H<sup>+</sup>) concentration** in the body fluids. To indicate the concentration of a chemical, its symbol is enclosed in square brackets. Thus, [H<sup>+</sup>] designates H<sup>+</sup> concentration.

### Acids liberate free hydrogen ions, whereas bases accept them.

**Acids** are a special group of hydrogen-containing substances that *dissociate*, or separate, when in solution to liberate free H<sup>+</sup> and anions (negatively charged ions). Many other substances (for example, carbohydrates) also contain hydrogen, but they are not classified as acids, because the hydrogen is tightly bound within their molecular structure and is never liberated as free H<sup>+</sup>.

A strong acid has a greater tendency to dissociate in solution than a weak acid does; that is, a greater percentage of a strong acid's molecules separate into free H<sup>+</sup> and anions. Hydrochloric acid (HCl) is an example of a strong acid; every HCl molecule dissociates into free H<sup>+</sup> and chloride (Cl<sup>-</sup>) when dissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O. With a weaker acid such as carbonic acid

## ▲ Table 14-4 Summary of the Regulation of ECF Volume and Osmolarity

Regulated Variable	Importance of Regulating the Variable	Outcomes of Abnormal Variable	Regulation Mechanism
<b>ECF Volume</b>	For long-term control of arterial blood pressure	<p>↓ ECF volume → ↓ arterial blood pressure</p> <p>↑ ECF volume → ↑ arterial blood pressure</p>	Maintenance of salt balance (salt osmotically “holds” H <sub>2</sub> O, so the Na <sup>+</sup> load determines the ECF volume), accomplished primarily by aldosterone-controlled adjustments in urinary Na <sup>+</sup> excretion
<b>ECF Osmolarity</b>	For prevention of detrimental osmotic movement of H <sub>2</sub> O between the ECF and the ICF	<p>↓ ECF osmolarity (hypotonicity) → H<sub>2</sub>O enters the cells → cells swell</p> <p>↑ ECF osmolarity (hypertonicity) → H<sub>2</sub>O leaves the cells → cells shrink</p>	Maintenance of free H <sub>2</sub> O balance, accomplished primarily by vasopressin-controlled adjustments in excretion of H <sub>2</sub> O in the urine

(H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>), only a portion of the molecules dissociate in solution into H<sup>+</sup> and bicarbonate anions (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>). The remaining H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> molecules remain intact. Because only free H<sup>+</sup> contributes to the acidity of a solution, H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> is a weaker acid than HCl because H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> does not yield as many free H<sup>+</sup> per number of acid molecules present in solution (● Figure 14-5).

A **base** is a substance that can combine with a free H<sup>+</sup> and thus remove it from solution. A strong base can bind H<sup>+</sup> more readily than a weak base can.

### The pH designation is used to express [H<sup>+</sup>].

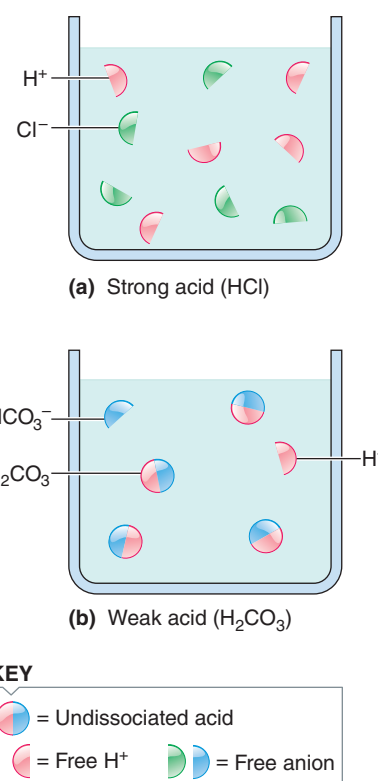
The concept of pH was developed to express the low value of [H<sup>+</sup>] more conveniently. Specifically, **pH** equals the logarithm (log) to the base 10 of the reciprocal of [H<sup>+</sup>].

$$\text{pH} = \log \frac{1}{[\text{H}^+]}$$

This formula may seem intimidating, but you only need to glean one important point from it: Because [H<sup>+</sup>] is in the denominator, *a high [H<sup>+</sup>] corresponds to a low pH, and a low [H<sup>+</sup>] corresponds to a high pH*. The greater the [H<sup>+</sup>], the larger the number by which 1 must be divided, and the lower the pH. You do not need to know what a log is to recognize this relationship.

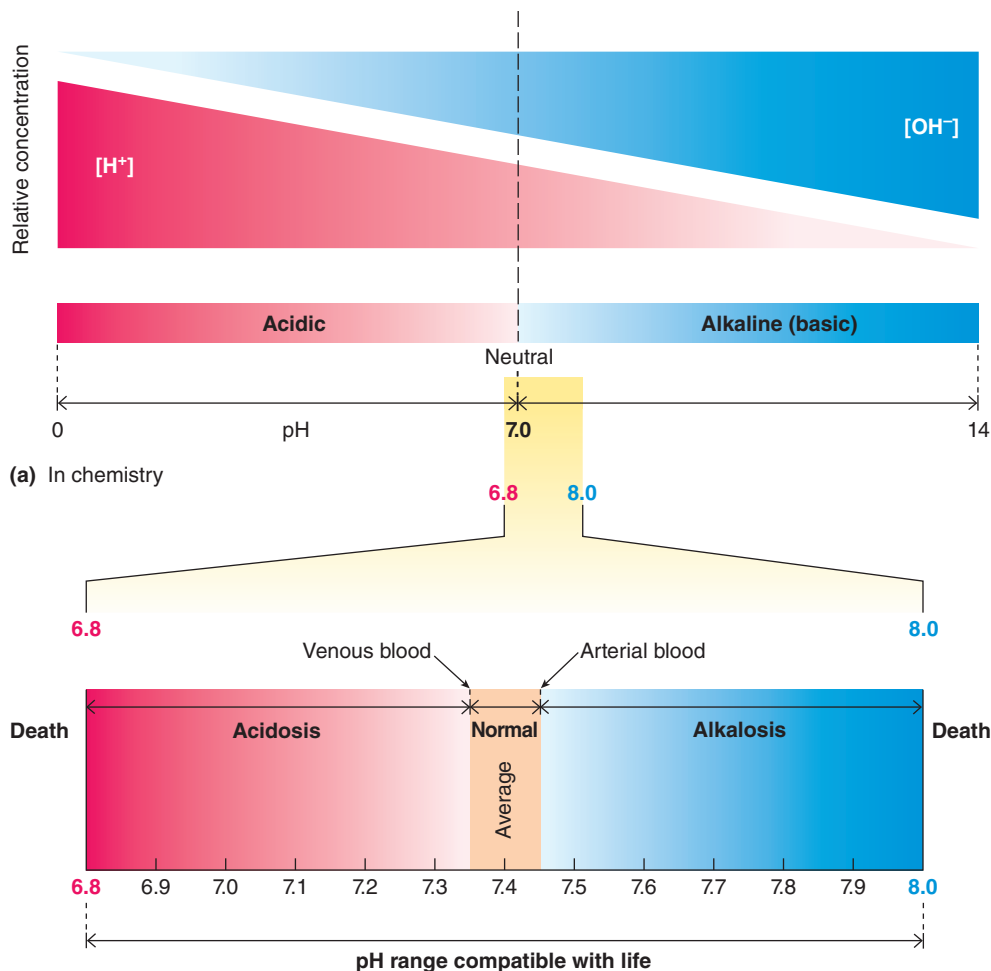
**ACIDIC AND BASIC SOLUTIONS IN CHEMISTRY** The pH of pure H<sub>2</sub>O is 7.0, which is considered chemically neutral. An extremely small proportion of H<sub>2</sub>O molecules dissociate into H<sup>+</sup> and hydroxyl (OH<sup>-</sup>) ions. Because an equal number of acidic H<sup>+</sup> and basic OH<sup>-</sup> are formed, H<sub>2</sub>O is neutral, being neither acidic nor basic. Solutions having a pH less than 7.0 contain a higher [H<sup>+</sup>] than pure H<sub>2</sub>O and are considered acidic. Conversely, solutions having a pH value greater than 7.0 have a lower [H<sup>+</sup>] and are considered **basic**, or **alkaline** (● Figure 14-6a). ● Figure 14-7 compares the pH values of common solutions.

**ACIDOSIS AND ALKALOSIS IN THE BODY** The pH of arterial blood is normally 7.45 and the pH of venous blood is 7.35, for an average blood pH of 7.4. The pH of venous blood is slightly lower (more acidic) than that of arterial blood because H<sup>+</sup> is gener-



● **FIGURE 14-5 Comparison of a strong and a weak acid.** (a) Five molecules of a strong acid. A strong acid such as hydrochloric acid (HCl) completely dissociates into free H<sup>+</sup> and anions in solution. (b) Five molecules of a weak acid. A weak acid such as carbonic acid (H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>) only partially dissociates into free H<sup>+</sup> and anions in solution.

ated by the formation of H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> from CO<sub>2</sub> picked up at the tissue capillaries. **Acidosis** exists whenever blood pH falls below 7.35, whereas **alkalosis** occurs when blood pH is above 7.45 (see ● Figure 14-6b). Note that the reference point for determining the body’s acid–base status is not the chemically neutral pH of 7.0 but the normal blood pH of 7.4. Thus, a blood pH of 7.2 is considered acidotic even though in chemistry a pH of 7.2 is considered basic.



**(a) In chemistry**  
**(b) In the body**  
**● FIGURE 14-6 pH considerations in chemistry and physiology.** (a) Relationship of pH to the relative concentrations of acidic hydrogen ion ( $H^+$ ) and basic hydroxyl ion ( $OH^-$ ) under chemically neutral, acidic, and alkaline conditions. (b) Blood pH range under normal, acidotic, and alkalic conditions.

An arterial pH of less than 6.8 or greater than 8.0 is not compatible with life. Because death occurs if arterial pH falls outside the range of 6.8 to 8.0 for more than a few seconds,  $[H^+]$  in the body fluids must be carefully regulated.

### Fluctuations in $[H^+]$ alter nerve, enzyme, and $K^+$ activity.

Only a narrow pH range is compatible with life, because even small changes in  $[H^+]$  have dramatic effects on normal cell function, as the following consequences indicate:

1. *Changes in excitability of nerve and muscle cells are among the major clinical manifestations of pH abnormalities.*

- The major clinical effect of increased  $[H^+]$  (acidosis) is depression of the central nervous system (CNS). Acidotic patients become disoriented and, in more severe cases, eventually die in a state of coma.
- In contrast, the major clinical effect of decreased  $[H^+]$  (alkalosis) is overexcitability of the nervous system, first the peripheral nervous system and later the CNS. Peripheral

nerves become so excitable that they fire even in the absence of normal stimuli. Such overexcitability of the afferent (sensory) nerves gives rise to abnormal “pins-and-needles” tingling sensations. Overexcitability of efferent (motor) nerves brings about muscle twitches and, in more pronounced cases, severe muscle spasms. Death may occur in extreme alkalosis because spasm of the respiratory muscles seriously impairs breathing. Alternatively, severely alkalic patients may die of convulsions resulting from overexcitability of the CNS. In less serious situations, CNS overexcitability is manifested as extreme nervousness.

2. *Hydrogen ion concentration exerts a marked influence on enzyme activity.* Even slight deviations in  $[H^+]$  alter the shape and activity of protein molecules. Because enzymes are proteins, a shift in the body’s acid–base balance disturbs the normal pattern of metabolic activity catalyzed by these enzymes.

3. *Changes in  $[H^+]$  influence  $K^+$  levels in the body.* When reabsorbing  $Na^+$  from the filtrate, the renal tubular cells secrete either  $K^+$  or  $H^+$  in exchange. Normally, they secrete a preponderance of  $K^+$  compared to  $H^+$ . Because of the intimate relationship between secretion of  $H^+$  and that of  $K^+$  by the kidneys, when  $H^+$  secretion increases to compensate for acidosis, less  $K^+$  than usual can be secreted; conversely, when  $H^+$  secretion is reduced during alkalosis, more  $K^+$  is secreted than normal. The resulting changes in ECF  $[K^+]$  can lead to cardiac abnormalities, among other detrimental consequences (see p. 399).

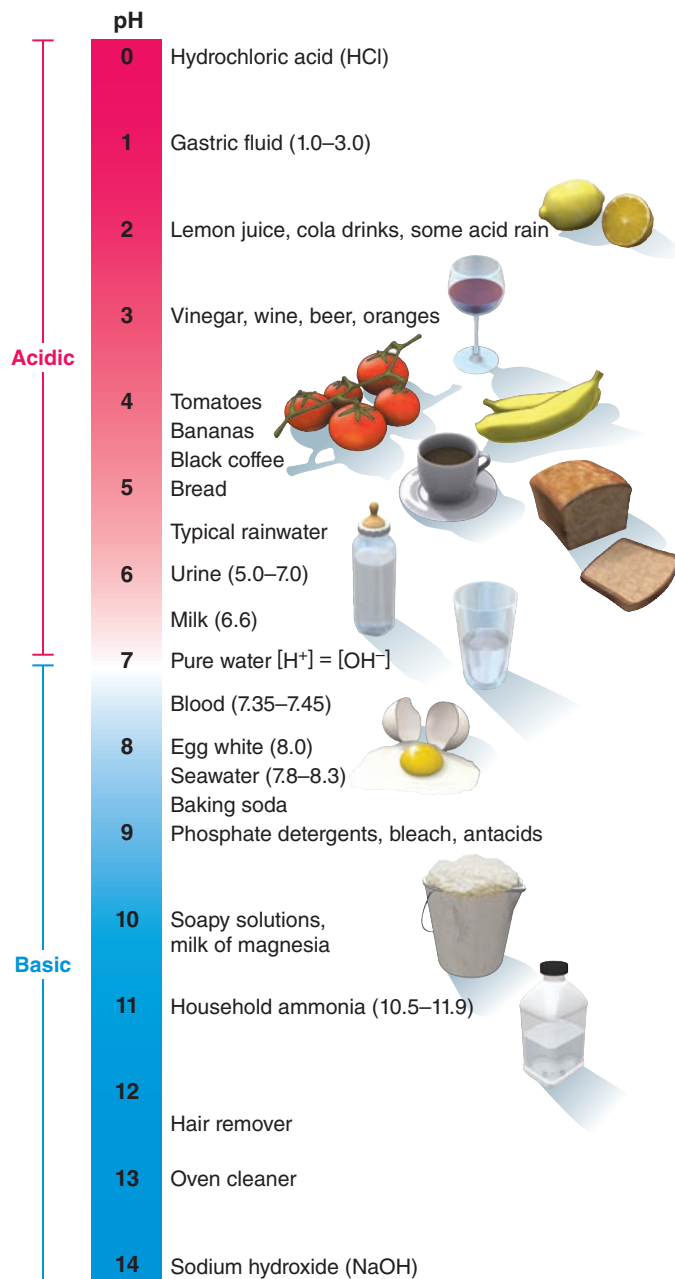
As with any other constituent, input of hydrogen ions must be balanced by an equal output to maintain a constant  $[H^+]$  in the body fluids. On the input side, only a small amount of acid capable of dissociating to release  $H^+$  is taken in with food, such as the weak citric acid found in oranges. Most  $H^+$  in the body fluids is generated internally from metabolic activities.

### Hydrogen ions are continually added to the body fluids as a result of metabolic activities.

As with any other constituent, input of hydrogen ions must be balanced by an equal output to maintain a constant  $[H^+]$  in the body fluids. On the input side, only a small amount of acid capable of dissociating to release  $H^+$  is taken in with food, such as the weak citric acid found in oranges. Most  $H^+$  in the body fluids is generated internally from metabolic activities.

**SOURCES OF  $H^+$  IN THE BODY** Normally,  $H^+$  is continuously being added to the body fluids from the three following sources:

1. *Carbonic acid formation.* The major source of  $H^+$  is from metabolically produced  $CO_2$ . Cellular oxidation of nutrients

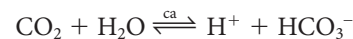


● **FIGURE 14-7** Comparison of pH values of common solutions.

yields energy, with  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  as end products. Without catalyst influence,  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  slowly form  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ , which then rapidly partially dissociates to liberate free  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ :



The slow first reaction is the rate-limiting step in the plasma, but the hydration (combination with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) of  $\text{CO}_2$  is greatly accelerated by the enzyme *carbonic anhydrase*, which is abundant in red blood cells (see p. 370). Under the influence of carbonic anhydrase (represented by *ca* in the next equation), these cells directly convert  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  into  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (with no intervening production of  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ ) as follows:



These reactions are reversible because they can proceed in either direction, depending on the concentrations of the substances involved as dictated by the *law of mass action* (see p. 366). Within the systemic capillaries, the  $\text{CO}_2$  level in the blood increases as metabolically produced  $\text{CO}_2$  enters from the tissues. This drives the reaction (with or without carbonic anhydrase) to the  $\text{H}^+$  side. In the lungs, the reaction is reversed:  $\text{CO}_2$  diffuses from the blood flowing through the pulmonary capillaries into the alveoli (air sacs), from which it is expired to the atmosphere. The resultant reduction in blood  $\text{CO}_2$  drives the reaction toward the  $\text{CO}_2$  side. Hydrogen ion and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  form  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  again. The  $\text{CO}_2$  is exhaled while the hydrogen ions generated at the tissue level are incorporated into  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  molecules.

When the respiratory system can keep pace with the rate of metabolism, there is no net gain or loss of  $\text{H}^+$  in the body fluids from metabolically produced  $\text{CO}_2$ . When the rate of  $\text{CO}_2$  removal by the lungs does not match the rate of  $\text{CO}_2$  production at the tissue level, however, the resulting accumulation or deficit of  $\text{CO}_2$  leads to an excess or shortage, respectively, of free  $\text{H}^+$  in the body fluids.

**2. Inorganic acids produced during breakdown of nutrients.** Dietary proteins found abundantly in meat contain a large quantity of sulfur and phosphorus. When these nutrient molecules are broken down, sulfuric acid and phosphoric acid are produced as by-products. Being moderately strong acids, these two inorganic acids largely dissociate, liberating free  $\text{H}^+$  into the body fluids.

**3. Organic acids resulting from intermediary metabolism.** Numerous organic acids are produced during normal intermediary metabolism. For example, fatty acids are produced during fat metabolism, and lactic acid (lactate) is produced by muscles during heavy exercise (see p. 211). These acids partially dissociate to yield free  $\text{H}^+$ .

Hydrogen ion generation therefore normally goes on continuously, as a result of ongoing metabolic activities. In certain disease states, additional acids may be produced that further contribute to the total body pool of  $\text{H}^+$ . For example, in diabetes mellitus, large quantities of keto acids may be produced by abnormal fat metabolism (see p. 532). Thus, input of  $\text{H}^+$  is unceasing, highly variable, and essentially unregulated.

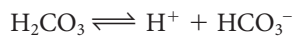
**THREE LINES OF DEFENSE AGAINST CHANGES IN  $[\text{H}^+]$**  The key to  $\text{H}^+$  balance is maintaining normal alkalinity of the ECF (pH 7.4) despite this constant onslaught of acid. The generated free  $\text{H}^+$  must be largely removed from solution while in the body and ultimately must be eliminated so that the pH of body fluids can remain within the narrow range compatible with life. Mechanisms must also exist to compensate rapidly for the occasional situation in which the ECF becomes too alkaline.

Three lines of defense against changes in  $[\text{H}^+]$  operate to maintain  $[\text{H}^+]$  of body fluids at a nearly constant level despite unregulated input: (1) the *chemical buffer systems*, (2) the *respiratory mechanism of pH control*, and (3) the *renal mechanism of pH control*. We now look at each of these methods.

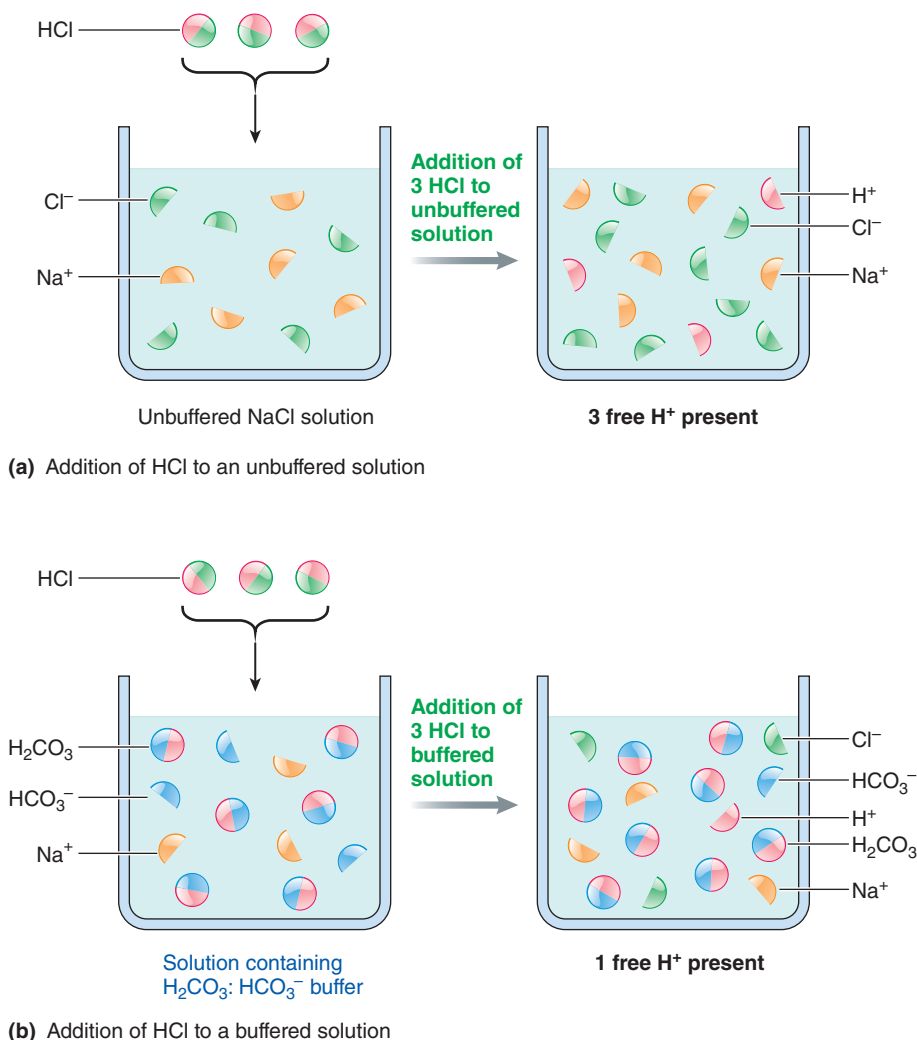
## Chemical buffer systems minimize changes in pH by binding with or yielding free H<sup>+</sup>.

A **chemical buffer system** is a mixture in a solution of two chemical compounds that minimize pH changes when either an acid or a base is added to or removed from the solution. A buffer system consists of a pair of substances involved in a reversible reaction—one substance that can yield free H<sup>+</sup> as the [H<sup>+</sup>] starts to fall and another that can bind with free H<sup>+</sup> (thus removing it from solution) when [H<sup>+</sup>] starts to rise.

An important example of such a buffer system is the carbonic acid–bicarbonate (H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>) buffer pair, which is involved in the following reversible reaction:



When a strong acid such as HCl is added to an unbuffered solution, all the dissociated H<sup>+</sup> remains free in the solution (● Figure 14-8a). In contrast, when HCl is added to a solution containing the H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer pair, the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> immedi-



● **FIGURE 14-8 Action of chemical buffers.** (a) Addition of HCl to an unbuffered solution. All the added hydrogen ions (H<sup>+</sup>) remain free and contribute to the acidity of the solution. (b) Addition of HCl to a buffered solution. Bicarbonate ions (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>), the basic member of the buffer pair, bind with some of the added H<sup>+</sup> and remove them from solution so that they do not contribute to its acidity.

ately binds with the free H<sup>+</sup> to form H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (● Figure 14-8b). This weak H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> dissociates only slightly compared to the marked reduction in pH that occurred when the buffer system was not present and the additional H<sup>+</sup> remained unbound. In the opposite case, when the pH of the solution starts to rise from the addition of base or loss of acid, the H<sup>+</sup>-yielding member of the buffer pair, H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, releases H<sup>+</sup> to minimize the rise in pH.

The body has four buffer systems: (1) the H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer system, (2) the protein buffer system, (3) the hemoglobin buffer system, and (4) the phosphate buffer system. Each buffer system serves an important role, as described next.

**THE H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> BUFFER SYSTEM** The H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer pair is the primary ECF buffer for noncarbonic acids. It is the most important buffer system in the ECF for buffering pH changes brought about by causes other than fluctuations in CO<sub>2</sub>-generated H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. It is an effective ECF buffer system for

two reasons. First, H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> and HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> are abundant in the ECF, so this system is readily available to resist changes in pH. Second, and more importantly, each component of this buffer pair is closely regulated. The kidneys regulate HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>, and the respiratory system regulates CO<sub>2</sub>, which generates H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>.

**THE PROTEIN BUFFER SYSTEM** The protein buffer system is primarily important intracellularly. The most plentiful buffers of the body fluids are the proteins, including the intracellular proteins and the plasma proteins. Proteins are excellent buffers, because they contain both acidic and basic groups that can give up or take up H<sup>+</sup>. Quantitatively, the protein system is most important in buffering changes in [H<sup>+</sup>] in the ICF because of the sheer abundance of the intracellular proteins. The more limited number of plasma proteins reinforces the H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> system in extracellular buffering.

**THE HEMOGLOBIN BUFFER SYSTEM** Hemoglobin (Hb) buffers the H<sup>+</sup> generated from metabolically produced CO<sub>2</sub> in transit between the tissues and the lungs. At the systemic capillary level, CO<sub>2</sub> continuously diffuses into the blood from the tissue cells where it is being produced. The greatest percentage of this CO<sub>2</sub>, along with H<sub>2</sub>O, forms H<sup>+</sup> and HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> under the influence of carbonic anhydrase within the red blood cells. Most H<sup>+</sup> generated from CO<sub>2</sub> at the tissue level becomes bound to reduced Hb

and no longer contributes to acidity of body fluids (see p. 371). Were it not for Hb, blood would become too acidic after picking up CO<sub>2</sub> at the tissues. With the tremendous buffering capacity of the Hb system, venous blood is only slightly more acidic than arterial blood despite the large volume of H<sup>+</sup>-generating CO<sub>2</sub> carried in venous blood. At the lungs, the reactions are reversed and the resulting CO<sub>2</sub> is exhaled.

**THE PHOSPHATE BUFFER SYSTEM** The phosphate buffer system is an important urinary buffer. It consists of an acid phosphate salt that can donate a free H<sup>+</sup> when the [H<sup>+</sup>] falls and a basic phosphate salt that can accept a free H<sup>+</sup> when the [H<sup>+</sup>] rises. Even though the phosphate pair is a good buffer, its concentration in the ECF is rather low, so it is not very important as an ECF buffer. Because phosphates are most abundant within the cells, this system contributes significantly to intracellular buffering, being rivaled only by the more plentiful intracellular proteins.

Even more important, the phosphate system serves as an excellent urinary buffer. Humans normally consume more phosphate than needed. The excess phosphate filtered through the kidneys is not reabsorbed but remains in the tubular fluid to be excreted (because the renal threshold for phosphate is exceeded; see p. 396). This excreted phosphate buffers urine as it is being formed by removing from solution the H<sup>+</sup> secreted into the tubular fluid. None of the other body-fluid buffer systems are present in the tubular fluid to play a role in buffering urine during its formation. Most or all of the filtered HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and CO<sub>2</sub> (alias H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>) are reabsorbed, whereas Hb and plasma proteins are not even filtered.

### Chemical buffer systems act as the first line of defense against changes in [H<sup>+</sup>].

All chemical buffer systems act immediately, within fractions of a second, to minimize changes in pH. When [H<sup>+</sup>] is altered, the reversible chemical reactions of the involved buffer systems shift at once (by the law of mass action) to compensate for the change in [H<sup>+</sup>]. Accordingly, the buffer systems are the *first line of defense* against changes in [H<sup>+</sup>] because they are the first mechanism to respond.

Through the mechanism of buffering, most hydrogen ions seem to disappear from the body fluids between the times of their generation and those of their elimination. It must be emphasized, however, that none of the chemical buffer systems actually elimi-

nate H<sup>+</sup> from the body. These ions are merely removed from solution by being incorporated within one member of the buffer pair, thus preventing them from contributing to body-fluid acidity. Because each buffer system has a limited capacity to soak up H<sup>+</sup>, the H<sup>+</sup> that is unceasingly produced must ultimately be removed from the body. If H<sup>+</sup> were not eventually eliminated, soon all the body-fluid buffers would already be bound with H<sup>+</sup> and there would be no further buffering ability.

The respiratory and renal mechanisms of pH control actually eliminate acid from the body instead of merely suppressing it, but they respond more slowly than chemical buffer systems. We now turn to these other defenses against changes in acid–base balance.

### The respiratory system regulates [H<sup>+</sup>] by controlling the rate of CO<sub>2</sub> removal.

The respiratory system plays an important role in acid–base balance through its ability to alter pulmonary ventilation and consequently to alter excretion of H<sup>+</sup>-generating CO<sub>2</sub>. The level of respiratory activity is governed in part by arterial [H<sup>+</sup>], as follows (▲ Table 14-5):

- When arterial [H<sup>+</sup>] increases as the result of a *nonrespiratory* (or *metabolic*) cause, the respiratory center in the brain stem is reflexly stimulated to increase pulmonary ventilation (the rate at which gas is exchanged between the lungs and the atmosphere; see p. 377). As the rate and depth of breathing increase, more CO<sub>2</sub> than usual is blown off. Because hydration of CO<sub>2</sub> generates H<sup>+</sup>, removal of CO<sub>2</sub> in essence removes acid from this source from the body, offsetting extra H<sup>+</sup> present from a nonrespiratory source.
- Conversely, when arterial [H<sup>+</sup>] falls, pulmonary ventilation is reduced. As a result of slower, shallower breathing, metabolically produced CO<sub>2</sub> diffuses from the cells into the blood faster than it is removed from the blood by the lungs, so higher-than-usual amounts of acid-forming CO<sub>2</sub> accumulate in the blood, thus restoring [H<sup>+</sup>] toward normal.

### The respiratory system serves as the second line of defense against changes in [H<sup>+</sup>].

Respiratory regulation acts at a moderate speed, coming into play only when chemical buffer systems alone cannot minimize [H<sup>+</sup>] changes. When deviations in [H<sup>+</sup>] occur, the buffer sys-

▲ **Table 14-5** Respiratory Adjustments to Acidosis and Alkalosis Induced by Nonrespiratory Causes

Respiratory Compensations	ACID–BASE STATUS		
	Normal (pH 7.4)	Nonrespiratory (metabolic) Acidosis (pH 7.1)	Nonrespiratory (metabolic) Alkalosis (pH 7.7)
Ventilation	Normal	↑	↓
Rate of CO <sub>2</sub> Removal	Normal	↑	↓
Rate of H <sup>+</sup> Generation from CO <sub>2</sub>	Normal	↓	↑



tems respond immediately, whereas adjustments in ventilation require a few minutes to be initiated. If a deviation in  $[H^+]$  is not swiftly and completely corrected by the buffer systems, the respiratory system comes into action a few minutes later, thus serving as the *second line of defense* against changes in  $[H^+]$ .

When changes in  $[H^+]$  stem from  $[CO_2]$  fluctuations that arise from respiratory abnormalities, the respiratory mechanism cannot contribute to pH control. For example, if acidosis exists because of  $CO_2$  accumulation caused by lung disease, the impaired lungs cannot possibly compensate for acidosis by increasing the rate of  $CO_2$  removal. The buffer systems (other than the  $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$  pair) plus renal regulation are the only mechanisms available for defending against respiratory-induced acid-base abnormalities.

Let us now see how the kidneys help maintain acid-base balance.

### The kidneys help maintain acid-base balance by adjusting their rate of $H^+$ excretion, $HCO_3^-$ excretion, and $NH_3$ secretion.

The kidneys control the pH of body fluids by adjusting three interrelated factors: (1)  $H^+$  excretion, (2)  $HCO_3^-$  excretion, and (3) ammonia ( $NH_3$ ) secretion. We examine each of these mechanisms in further detail.

**RENAL  $H^+$  EXCRETION** Acids are continuously being added to body fluids as a result of metabolic activities, yet the generated  $H^+$  must not be allowed to accumulate. Although the body's buffer systems can resist changes in pH by removing  $H^+$  from solution, the persistent production of acidic metabolic products would eventually overwhelm the limits of this buffering capacity. Therefore, the constantly generated  $H^+$  must ultimately be eliminated from the body. The lungs can remove only  $CO_2$ -generated  $H^+$  by eliminating  $CO_2$ . The task of eliminating  $H^+$  derived from sulfuric, phosphoric, lactic, and other acids rests with the kidneys. Furthermore, the kidneys can eliminate extra  $H^+$  derived from  $CO_2$ .

All the filtered  $H^+$  is excreted, but most of the excreted  $H^+$  enters the urine via secretion (see p. 398). Energy-dependent carriers in the membrane of the tubular cells secrete the extra  $H^+$  from the peritubular capillary plasma into the tubular fluid. The proximal, distal, and collecting tubules all secrete  $H^+$ . Because the kidneys normally excrete  $H^+$ , urine is usually acidic, having an average pH of 6.0.

The magnitude of  $H^+$  secretion depends primarily on a direct effect of the plasma's acid-base status on the kidneys' tubular cells (● Figure 14-9). No neural or hormonal control is involved.

■ When the  $[H^+]$  of the plasma passing through the peritubular capillaries is elevated above normal, the tubular cells respond by secreting greater-than-usual amounts of  $H^+$  from the plasma into the tubular fluid to be excreted in the urine.

■ Conversely, when plasma  $[H^+]$  is lower than normal, the kidneys conserve  $H^+$  by reducing its secretion and subsequent excretion in the urine.

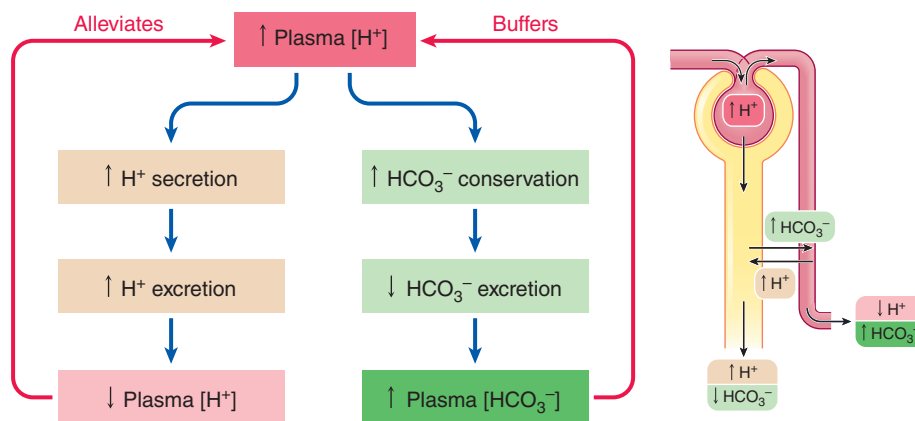
**RENAL  $HCO_3^-$  EXCRETION** Before being eliminated by the kidneys,  $H^+$  generated from noncarbonic acids is buffered to a large extent by plasma  $HCO_3^-$ . Appropriately, therefore, renal handling of acid-base balance also involves adjustment of  $HCO_3^-$  excretion, depending on the  $H^+$  load in the plasma (● Figure 14-9).

■ When plasma  $[H^+]$  is higher than normal, the kidneys reabsorb more  $HCO_3^-$  than usual, making it available to help buffer the extra  $H^+$  load in the body, rather than excreting it in the urine.

■ When plasma  $[H^+]$  is below normal, a smaller proportion of the  $HCO_3^-$  pool than usual is tied up buffering  $H^+$ , so plasma  $[HCO_3^-]$  is elevated above normal. The kidneys compensate by reabsorbing less  $HCO_3^-$ , thus excreting more  $HCO_3^-$  in the urine and removing the excess, unused  $HCO_3^-$  from the plasma.

Note that to compensate for acidosis, the kidneys acidify urine (by getting rid of extra  $H^+$ ) and alkalize plasma (by conserving  $HCO_3^-$ ) to bring plasma pH to normal. In the opposite case—alkalosis—the kidneys make urine alkaline (by eliminating excess  $HCO_3^-$ ) while acidifying plasma (by conserving  $H^+$ ) (▲ Table 14-6).

**RENAL  $NH_3$  SECRETION** The energy-dependent  $H^+$  carriers in the tubular cells can secrete  $H^+$  against a concentration gradient until the tubular fluid (urine) becomes 800 times more acidic than the plasma. At this point, further  $H^+$  secretion stops because the gradient becomes too great for the secretory process to continue. The kidneys cannot acidify urine beyond a gradient-limited urinary pH of 4.5. If left unbuffered as free  $H^+$ , only about 1% of the excess  $H^+$  typically excreted daily would produce a urinary pH of this magnitude at normal urine flow rates, and elimination of the other 99% of the usually secreted  $H^+$  load would be prevented—a situation that would be intolerable. For  $H^+$  secretion to proceed, most secreted  $H^+$  must be buffered in the tubular fluid so that it does not exist as free  $H^+$  and, accordingly, does not contribute to tubular acidity.



● FIGURE 14-9 Control of the rate of tubular  $H^+$  secretion and  $HCO_3^-$  reabsorption.

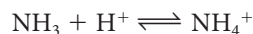
## ▲ Table 14-6 Summary of Renal Responses to Acidosis and Alkalosis

Acid-Base Abnormality	H <sup>+</sup> Secretion	H <sup>+</sup> Excretion	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> Reabsorption	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup> Excretion	pH of Urine	Compensatory Change in Plasma pH
Acidosis	↑	↑	↑	↓	Acidic	Alkalinization toward normal
Alkalosis	↓	↓	↓	↑	Alkaline	Acidification toward normal

Bicarbonate cannot buffer urinary H<sup>+</sup> as it does H<sup>+</sup> in the ECF, because HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> is not excreted in the urine simultaneously with H<sup>+</sup>. (Whichever of these substances is in excess in the plasma is excreted in the urine.) There are, however, two important urinary buffers: (1) filtered phosphate buffers and (2) secreted ammonia.

■ **Filtered phosphate as a urinary buffer.** Normally, secreted H<sup>+</sup> is first buffered by the phosphate buffer system, which is in the tubular fluid because excess ingested phosphate has been filtered but not reabsorbed. When H<sup>+</sup> secretion is high, the buffering capacity of urinary phosphates is exceeded, but the kidneys cannot respond by excreting more basic phosphate. Only the quantity of phosphate reabsorbed, not the quantity excreted, is subject to control. As soon as all basic phosphate ions that are coincidentally excreted have soaked up H<sup>+</sup>, the acidity of the tubular fluid quickly rises as more H<sup>+</sup> ions are secreted. Without additional buffering capacity from another source, H<sup>+</sup> secretion would soon halt abruptly as the free [H<sup>+</sup>] in the tubular fluid quickly rose to the critical limiting level.

■ **Secreted NH<sub>3</sub> as a urinary buffer.** When acidosis exists, the tubular cells secrete **ammonia (NH<sub>3</sub>)** into the tubular fluid once the normal urinary phosphate buffers are saturated. This NH<sub>3</sub> enables the kidneys to continue secreting additional H<sup>+</sup> ions because NH<sub>3</sub> combines with free H<sup>+</sup> in the tubular fluid to form **ammonium ion (NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>)** as follows:



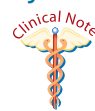
The tubular membranes are not very permeable to NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup>, so the ammonium ions remain in the tubular fluid and are lost in the urine, each one taking a H<sup>+</sup> with it. Thus, NH<sub>3</sub> secreted during acidosis buffers excess H<sup>+</sup> in the tubular fluid so that large amounts of H<sup>+</sup> can be secreted into the urine before the pH falls to the limiting value of 4.5. Were it not for NH<sub>3</sub> secretion, the extent of H<sup>+</sup> secretion would be limited to whatever phosphate-buffering capacity coincidentally happened to be present as a result of dietary excess.

### The kidneys are a powerful third line of defense against changes in [H<sup>+</sup>].

The kidneys require hours to days to compensate for changes in body-fluid pH, compared to the immediate responses of the buffer systems and the few minutes of delay before the respiratory system responds. Therefore, they are the *third line of de-*

*fense* against [H<sup>+</sup>] changes in body fluids. However, the kidneys are the most potent acid-base regulatory mechanism; they can not only vary removal of H<sup>+</sup> from any source but also can variably conserve or eliminate HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> depending on the acid-base status of the body. By simultaneously removing acid (H<sup>+</sup>) from and adding base (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>) to body fluids, the kidneys are able to restore the pH toward normal more effectively than the lungs, which can adjust only the amount of H<sup>+</sup>-forming CO<sub>2</sub> in the body.

### Acid-base imbalances can arise from either respiratory dysfunction or metabolic disturbances.



Deviations from normal acid-base status are divided into four categories, depending on the source and direction of the abnormal change in [H<sup>+</sup>]. These categories are *respiratory acidosis*, *respiratory alkalosis*, *metabolic acidosis*, and *metabolic alkalosis*. An acid-base imbalance that has a respiratory cause is associated with an abnormal [CO<sub>2</sub>]. A deviation in pH resulting from any cause other than an abnormal [CO<sub>2</sub>] is considered a metabolic (or nonrespiratory) acid-base imbalance.

**RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS** **Respiratory acidosis** is the result of abnormal CO<sub>2</sub> retention arising from *hypoventilation* (see p. 371). As less-than-normal amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> are lost through the lungs, the resulting increase in CO<sub>2</sub> generates more H<sup>+</sup> from this source. Possible causes include lung disease, depression of the respiratory center by drugs or disease, nerve or muscle disorders that reduce respiratory muscle ability, or (transiently) even the simple act of holding one's breath.

**RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS** **Respiratory alkalosis** occurs when excessive CO<sub>2</sub> is lost from the body as a result of *hyperventilation* (see p. 372). When pulmonary ventilation increases out of proportion to the rate of CO<sub>2</sub> production, too much CO<sub>2</sub> is blown off. Consequently, less [H<sup>+</sup>] is formed from this source. Possible causes of respiratory alkalosis include fever, anxiety, and aspirin poisoning, all of which excessively stimulate ventilation without regard to the status of O<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>, or H<sup>+</sup> in the body fluids. Respiratory alkalosis also occurs as a result of physiological mechanisms at high altitude. When the low concentration of O<sub>2</sub> in arterial blood reflexly stimulates ventilation to obtain more O<sub>2</sub>, too much CO<sub>2</sub> is blown off, inadvertently leading to an alkalotic state (see p. 372).

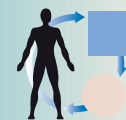
**METABOLIC ACIDOSIS** Metabolic (or nonrespiratory) acidosis encompasses all types of acidosis besides that caused by excess  $\text{CO}_2$  in body fluids. Metabolic acidosis is the type of acid–base disorder most frequently encountered. Here are its most common causes:

1. *Severe diarrhea.* During digestion, a  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ -rich digestive juice is normally secreted into the digestive tract by the pancreas and is later reabsorbed back into the plasma when digestion is completed. During diarrhea, this  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is lost from the body rather than reabsorbed. Because of the loss of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , less  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is available to buffer  $\text{H}^+$ , leading to more free  $\text{H}^+$  in the body fluids.
2. *Diabetes mellitus.* Abnormal fat metabolism resulting from the inability of cells to preferentially use glucose because of inadequate insulin action leads to formation of excess keto acids whose dissociation increases plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$ .
3. *Strenuous exercise.* When muscles resort to anaerobic glycolysis during strenuous exercise, excess lactic acid (lactate) is produced, raising plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$ .
4. *Uremic acidosis.* In severe renal failure (uremia), the kidneys cannot rid the body of even the normal amounts of  $\text{H}^+$  generated from noncarbonic acids formed by ongoing metabolic processes, so  $\text{H}^+$  starts to accumulate in the body fluids. Also, the kidneys cannot conserve an adequate amount of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  for buffering the normal acid load.

**METABOLIC ALKALOSIS** Metabolic (or nonrespiratory) alkalosis is a reduction in plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  caused by a relative deficiency of noncarbonic acids. This condition arises most commonly from the following:

1. *Vomiting* causes abnormal loss of  $\text{H}^+$  from the body as a result of lost acidic gastric juices. Hydrochloric acid is secreted into the stomach lumen during digestion and is usually later reabsorbed back into the plasma.
2. *Ingestion of alkaline drugs* can produce alkalosis, such as when baking soda ( $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , which dissociates in solution into  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ) is used as a self-administered remedy for treating gastric hyperacidity. By neutralizing excess acid in the stomach,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  relieves the symptoms of stomach irritation and heartburn; but when more  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  than needed is ingested, the extra  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is absorbed from the digestive tract and increases plasma  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ . The extra  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  binds with some of the free  $\text{H}^+$  normally present in plasma from noncarbonic acid sources, reducing free  $[\text{H}^+]$ . (In contrast, commercial alkaline products for treating gastric hyperacidity are not absorbed from the digestive tract to any extent and therefore do not alter the body's acid–base status.)

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



Homeostasis depends on maintaining a balance between the input and the output of all constituents present in the internal fluid environment. Regulation of fluid balance involves two separate components: control of salt balance and control of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance. Control of salt balance is primarily important in the long-term regulation of arterial blood pressure because the body's salt load osmotically holds  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , thereby determining the ECF volume, of which plasma volume is a part. An increased salt load in the ECF leads to an expansion in ECF volume, including plasma volume, which in turn causes a rise in blood pressure. Conversely, a reduction in the ECF salt load brings about a fall in blood pressure. Salt balance is maintained by constantly adjusting salt output in the urine to match unregulated, variable salt intake.

Control of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance is important in preventing changes in ECF osmolarity, which would induce detrimental osmotic shifts of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  between the cells and the ECF. Such shifts of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  into or out of the cells would cause the cells to swell or shrink, respectively. Cells, especially brain neurons, do not function normally when swollen or shrunken. Water balance is largely maintained by controlling the volume of free  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  not accompanied by solute) lost in the urine to compensate for uncontrolled losses of variable volumes of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  from other avenues, such as through sweating or diarrhea, and for poorly regulated  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  intake. Even though a thirst mechanism exists to control  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  intake based on need, the amount a person drinks is often influenced by social custom and habit instead of thirst alone.

A balance between input and output of  $\text{H}^+$  is critical to maintaining the body's acid–base balance within the narrow limits compatible with life. Deviations in the internal fluid environment's pH lead to altered neuromuscular excitability, to changes in enzymatically controlled metabolic activity, and to  $\text{K}^+$  imbalances, which can cause cardiac arrhythmias. These effects are fatal if the pH falls outside the range of 6.8 to 8.0.

Hydrogen ions are uncontrollably and continuously added to the body fluids as a result of ongoing metabolic activities, yet the ECF pH must be kept constant at a slightly alkaline level of 7.4 for optimal body function. Like salt and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance, control of  $\text{H}^+$  output by the kidneys is the main regulatory factor in achieving  $\text{H}^+$  balance. The lungs, which can adjust their rate of excretion of  $\text{H}^+$ -generating  $\text{CO}_2$ , also help eliminate  $\text{H}^+$  from the body. Furthermore, chemical buffer systems can take up or liberate  $\text{H}^+$ , transiently keeping its concentration constant within the body until its output can be brought into line with its input. Such a mechanism is not available for salt or  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-48)

1. The only avenue by which materials can be exchanged between the cells and the external environment is the ECF. (*True or false?*)
2. Water is driven into the cells when the ECF volume is expanded by an isotonic fluid gain. (*True or false?*)
3. Salt balance in humans is poorly regulated because of our hedonistic salt appetite. (*True or false?*)
4. The largest body-fluid compartment is the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Of the two members of the  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3\text{:HCO}_3^-$  buffer system, \_\_\_\_\_ is regulated by the lungs and \_\_\_\_\_ is regulated by the kidneys.
6. Which of the following factors does *not* increase vasopressin secretion?
  - a. ECF hypertonicity
  - b. an ECF volume deficit following hemorrhage
  - c. an increase in arterial blood pressure
  - d. stressful situations
7. Indicate all correct answers:
  - a.  $\text{pH} = \log 1/[\text{H}^+]$ .
  - b. pH is high in acidosis.
  - c. pH falls as  $[\text{H}^+]$  increases.
8. Indicate all correct answers:
  - a. Acidosis causes overexcitability of the nervous system.
  - b. Acidosis exists when the plasma pH falls below 7.35.
  - c. Acidosis occurs when  $\text{CO}_2$  is blown off more rapidly than it is being produced by metabolic activities.
  - d. Acidosis occurs when excessive  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is lost from the body, as in diarrhea.
9. Indicate all correct answers that complete the following sentence: The kidney tubular cells secrete  $\text{NH}_3$ 
  - a. when the urinary pH becomes too high.
  - b. when the body is in a state of alkalosis.
  - c. to enable further renal secretion of  $\text{H}^+$  to occur.

- d. to buffer excess filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ .
  - e. when there is excess  $\text{NH}_3$  in the body fluids
10. Match each acid–base imbalance with a possible cause:
- |                              |                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ___ 1. respiratory acidosis  | (a) vomiting          |
| ___ 2. respiratory alkalosis | (b) diabetes mellitus |
| ___ 3. metabolic acidosis    | (c) pneumonia         |
| ___ 4. metabolic alkalosis   | (d) aspirin poisoning |

### Essay Questions

1. Explain the balance concept.
2. Outline the distribution of body  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .
3. Compare the ionic composition of plasma, interstitial fluid, and intracellular fluid.
4. What factors are regulated to maintain the body's fluid balance?
5. Why is regulation of ECF volume important? How is it regulated?
6. Why is regulation of ECF osmolarity important? How is it regulated? What are the causes and consequences of ECF hypertonicity and ECF hypotonicity?
7. Outline the sources of input and output in a daily salt balance and a daily  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance. Which are subject to control to maintain the body's fluid balance?
8. Distinguish between an acid and a base.
9. What is the relationship between  $[\text{H}^+]$  and pH?
10. What is the normal pH of body fluids? How does this compare to the pH of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ? Define acidosis and alkalosis.
11. What are the consequences of fluctuations in  $[\text{H}^+]$ ?
12. What are the body's sources of  $\text{H}^+$ ?
13. Describe the three lines of defense against changes in  $[\text{H}^+]$  in terms of their mechanisms and speed of action.
14. List and indicate the functions of each of the body's chemical buffer systems.
15. What are the causes of the four categories of acid–base imbalances?

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-48)

1. Alcoholic beverages inhibit vasopressin secretion. Given this fact, predict the effect of alcohol on the rate of urine formation. Predict the actions of alcohol on ECF osmolarity. Explain why a person still feels thirsty after excessive consumption of alcoholic beverages.
2. If a person loses 1500 ml of salt-rich sweat and drinks 1000 ml of water during the same period, what will happen to vasopressin secretion? Why is it important to replace both the water and the salt?
3. If a solute that can penetrate the plasma membrane, such as dextrose (a type of sugar), is dissolved in sterile water at a concentration equal to that of normal body fluids and then is injected intravenously, what is the impact on the body's fluid balance?
4. Explain why a buffer system cannot buffer itself. For example, why can't the  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3\text{:HCO}_3^-$  buffer system compensate for increased plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  arising from  $\text{CO}_2$  retention as a result of a respiratory problem?

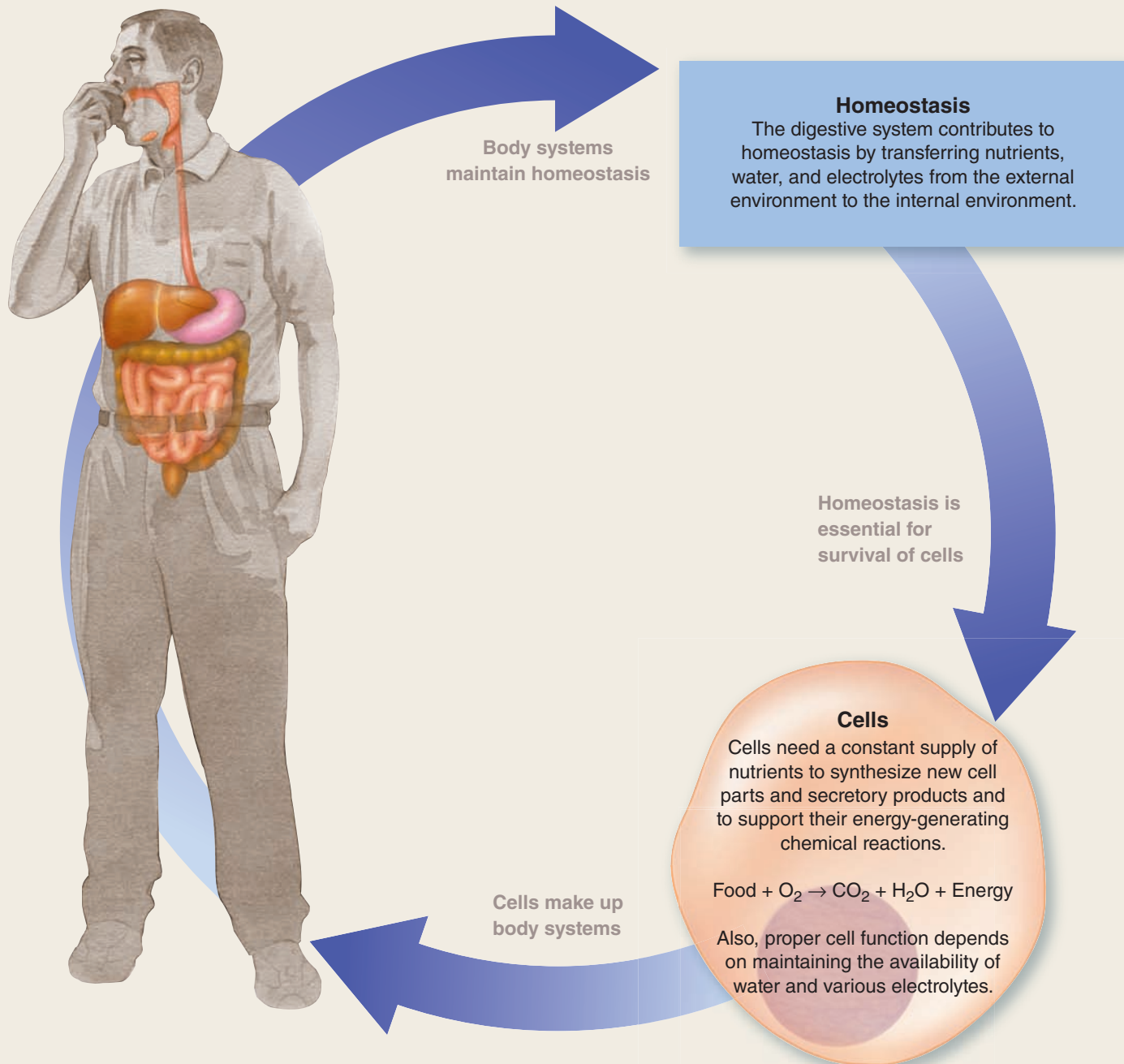
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-49)

Marilyn Y. has had pronounced diarrhea for more than a week as a result of having acquired salmonellosis, a bacterial intestinal infection, from improperly handled food. What

impact has this prolonged diarrhea had on her fluid and acid–base balance? In what ways has Marilyn's body been trying to compensate for these imbalances?

## Digestive System



To maintain homeostasis, nutrient molecules used for energy production must continually be replaced by new, energy-rich nutrients. Also, nutrient molecules, especially proteins, are needed for ongoing synthesis of new cells and cell parts in the course of growth and tissue turnover. Similarly, water and electrolytes constantly lost in urine and sweat and through other avenues must be replenished regularly. The **digestive system** contributes to ho-

meostasis by transferring nutrients, water, and electrolytes from the external environment to the internal environment. The digestive system does not directly regulate the concentration of any of these constituents in the internal environment. It does not vary nutrient, water, or electrolyte uptake based on body needs (with few exceptions); rather, it optimizes conditions for digesting and absorbing what is ingested.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

## General Aspects of Digestion

Basic digestive processes  
 Components of the digestive system  
 General mechanisms of regulating digestive function

## Mouth

Chewing  
 Salivary secretion

## Pharynx and Esophagus

Swallowing

## Stomach

Gastric motility  
 Gastric secretion  
 Digestion in the stomach  
 Absorption by the stomach

## Pancreatic and Biliary Secretions

Exocrine pancreas  
 Liver and biliary system

## Small Intestine

Small-intestine motility  
 Small-intestine secretion  
 Digestion in the small intestine  
 Absorption by the small intestine

## Large Intestine

Large-intestine motility  
 Large-intestine secretion  
 Colonic bacteria  
 Absorption by the large intestine  
 Composition and elimination of feces

## Overview of the Gastrointestinal Hormones

## The Digestive System

## General Aspects of Digestion

The primary function of the digestive system is to transfer nutrients, water, and electrolytes from the food we eat into the body's internal environment. Ingested food is essential as an energy source, or fuel, from which the cells can generate adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to carry out their particular energy-dependent activities, such as active transport, contraction, synthesis, and secretion. Food is also a source of building supplies for the renewal and addition of body tissues.

The act of eating does not automatically make the preformed organic molecules in food available to the body cells. The food first must be digested, or biochemically broken down, into small, simple molecules that can be absorbed from the digestive tract into the circulatory system for distribution to the cells. Normally, about 95% of the ingested food is made available for the body's use.

We provide an overview of the digestive system, examining the common features of the various components of the system, before we begin a detailed tour of the tract from beginning to end.

## The digestive system performs four basic digestive processes.

There are four basic digestive processes: *motility*, *secretion*, *digestion*, and *absorption*.

**MOTILITY** The term **motility** refers to the digestive tract's muscular contractions, of which there are two basic types: propulsive movements and mixing movements. *Propulsive movements* propel or push the contents forward through the digestive tract, with the rate of propulsion varying depending on the functions accomplished by the different regions. For example, transit of food through the esophagus is rapid, which is appropriate because this structure merely serves as a passageway from the mouth to the stomach. In comparison, in the small intestine—the main site of digestion and absorption—the contents are moved forward slowly, allowing time for the breakdown and absorption of food.

*Mixing movements* have a twofold function. First, by mixing food with the digestive juices, these movements promote digestion of the food. Second, they facilitate absorption by exposing all parts of the intestinal contents to the absorbing surfaces of the digestive tract.

Contraction of the smooth muscle within the walls of the digestive organs accomplishes movement of material through most of the digestive tract. The exceptions are at the ends of the tract—the mouth through the early part of the esophagus at the beginning and the external anal sphincter at the end—where motility involves skeletal muscle rather than smooth muscle activity. Accordingly, the acts of chewing, swallowing, and defecation have voluntary components, because skeletal muscle is under voluntary control. By contrast, motility accomplished by smooth muscle throughout the rest of the tract is controlled by complex involuntary mechanisms.

**SECRETION** A number of digestive juices are secreted into the digestive tract lumen by exocrine glands (see p. 4) along the route, each with a specific secretory product. Each **digestive secretion** consists of water, electrolytes, and specific organic constituents important in the digestive process, such as enzymes, bile salts, or mucus. The secretory cells extract from the plasma large volumes of water and the raw materials necessary to produce their particular secretion. Secretion of all digestive juices requires energy, both for active transport of some of the raw materials into the cell (others diffuse in passively) and for synthesis of secretory products by the endoplasmic reticulum. On appropriate neural or hormonal stimulation, the secretions are released into the digestive tract lumen. Normally, the digestive secretions are reabsorbed in one form or another back into the blood after their participation in digestion. Failure to do so (because of vomiting or diarrhea, for example) results in loss of this fluid that has been “borrowed” from the plasma.

**DIGESTION** Humans consume three categories of energy-rich foodstuffs: *carbohydrates*, *proteins*, and *fats*. These large molecules cannot cross plasma membranes intact to be absorbed from the lumen of the digestive tract into the blood or lymph. The term **digestion** refers to the biochemical breakdown of the structurally complex foodstuffs of the diet into smaller, absorbable units by the digestive enzymes as follows:

1. The simplest **carbohydrates** are the simple sugars or **monosaccharides** (“one-sugar” molecules), such as **glucose**, **fructose**, and **galactose**, few of which are normally found in the diet (see p. A-11). Most ingested carbohydrates are in the form of **polysaccharides** (“many-sugar” molecules), which consist of chains of interconnected glucose molecules. The most commonly consumed polysaccharide is **starch** derived from plant sources. In addition, meat contains **glycogen**, the polysaccharide storage form of glucose in muscle. **Cellulose**, another dietary polysaccharide, found in plant walls, cannot be digested into its constituent monosaccharides by the digestive juices humans secrete; thus, it represents the indigestible *fiber* or “bulk” of our diets. Besides polysaccharides, a lesser source of dietary carbohydrate is in the form of **disaccharides** (“two-sugar” molecules), including **sucrose** (table sugar, which consists of one glucose and one fructose molecule) and **lactose** (milk sugar made up of one glucose and one galactose molecule). Through the process of digestion, starch, glycogen, and disaccharides are converted into their constituent monosaccharides, principally glucose with small amounts of fructose and galactose. These monosaccharides are the absorbable units for carbohydrates.

2. Dietary **proteins** consist of various combinations of **amino acids** held together by peptide bonds (see p. A-14). Through the process of digestion, proteins are degraded into their constituent amino acids, which are the absorbable units for protein.

3. Most dietary **fats** are in the form of **triglycerides**, which are neutral fats, each consisting of a glycerol with three **fatty acid** molecules attached (*tri* means “three”; see p. A-12). During digestion, two of the fatty acid molecules are split off, leaving a **monoglyceride**, a glycerol molecule with one fatty acid molecule attached (*mono* means “one”). Thus, the end products of fat digestion are monoglycerides and free fatty acids, which are the absorbable units of fat.

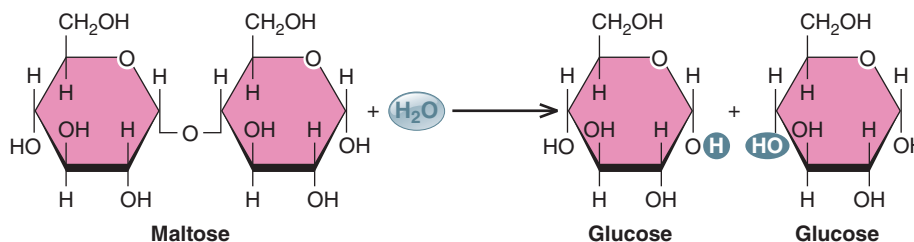
Digestion is accomplished by enzymatic **hydrolysis** (breakdown by water; see p. A-16). By adding H<sub>2</sub>O at the bond site, enzymes in the digestive secretions break down the bonds that hold the small molecular subunits within the nutrient molecules together, thus setting the small molecules free (● Figure 15-1). Removal of H<sub>2</sub>O at the bond sites originally joined these small subunits to form nutrient molecules. Hydrolysis replaces the H<sub>2</sub>O and frees the small absorbable units. Digestive enzymes are specific in the bonds they can hydrolyze. As food moves through the digestive tract, it is subjected to various enzymes, each of which breaks down the food molecules even further. In this way, large food molecules are converted to simple absorbable units in a progressive, stepwise fashion, like an assembly line in reverse, as the digestive tract contents are propelled forward.

**ABSORPTION** In the small intestine, digestion is completed and most absorption occurs. Through the process of **absorption**, the small absorbable units that result from digestion, along with water, vitamins, and electrolytes, are transferred from the digestive tract lumen into the blood or lymph.

As we examine the digestive tract from beginning to end, we discuss the four processes of motility, secretion, digestion, and absorption as they take place within each digestive organ (▲ Table 15-1).

### The digestive tract and accessory digestive organs make up the digestive system.

The digestive system consists of the *digestive* (or *gastrointestinal*) tract plus the accessory digestive organs (*gastro* means “stomach”). The accessory digestive organs include the *salivary glands*, the *exocrine pancreas*, and the *biliary system*, which is composed of the *liver* and *gallbladder*. These exocrine organs lie outside the digestive tract and empty their secretions through ducts into the digestive tract lumen.



● **FIGURE 15-1** An example of hydrolysis. In this example, the disaccharide maltose (the intermediate breakdown product of polysaccharides) is broken down into two glucose molecules by the addition of H<sub>2</sub>O at the bond site.

The digestive tract is essentially a tube about 4.5 m (15 feet) in length in its normal contractile state.<sup>1</sup> Running through the middle of the body, the digestive tract includes the following organs (▲ Table 15-1): *mouth*, *pharynx* (throat), *esophagus*, *stomach*, *small intestine* (consisting of the *duodenum*, *jejunum*, and *ileum*), *large intestine* (the *cecum*, *appendix*, *colon*, and *rectum*), and *anus*. Although these organs are continuous with one another, they are considered as separate entities because of their regional modifications, which allow them to specialize in particular digestive activities.

Because the digestive tract is continuous from the mouth to the anus, the lumen of this tube, like the lumen of a straw, is continuous with the external environment. As a result, the contents within the lumen of the digestive tract are technically outside the body, just as the soda you suck through a straw is not a part of the straw. Only after a substance has been absorbed from the lumen across the digestive tract wall is it considered part of the body. This is important, because conditions essential to the digestive process can be tolerated in the digestive tract lumen that could not be tolerated in the body proper. Consider the following examples:

- The pH of the stomach contents falls as low as 2.0 as a result of gastric secretion of hydrochloric acid (HCl), yet in the body fluids the pH range compatible with life is 6.8 to 8.0.
- The digestive enzymes that hydrolyze the protein in food could also destroy the body's own tissues that produce them. (Protein is the main structural component of cells.) Therefore, once these enzymes are synthesized in inactive form, they are not activated until they reach the lumen, where they actually attack the food outside the body (that is, within the lumen), thereby protecting the body tissues against self-digestion.
- Quadrillions of microorganisms live in the large intestine, where they are normally harmless and even beneficial, yet if these same microorganisms enter the body proper (as may happen with a ruptured appendix), they may be extremely harmful or even lethal.
- Foodstuffs are complex foreign particles that would be attacked by the immune system if they were in contact with the body proper. However, the foodstuffs are digested within the lumen into absorbable units such as glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids that are indistinguishable from these simple energy-rich molecules already present in the body.

### The digestive tract wall has four layers.

The digestive tract wall has the same general structure throughout most of its length from the esophagus to the anus, with some local variations characteristic for each region. A cross section of the digestive tube reveals four major tissue layers

<sup>1</sup>Because the uncontracted digestive tract in a cadaver is about twice as long as the contracted tract in a living person, anatomy texts indicate that the digestive tract is 30 feet long compared to the length of 15 feet indicated in physiology texts.

(● Figure 15-2). From the innermost layer outward they are the *mucosa*, the *submucosa*, the *muscularis externa*, and the *serosa*.

**MUCOSA** The **mucosa** lines the luminal surface of the digestive tract. The primary component of the mucosa is a **mucous membrane**, an inner epithelial layer that serves as a protective surface. The mucous membrane is also modified in particular areas for secretion and absorption: It contains *exocrine gland cells* for secretion of digestive juices, *endocrine gland cells* for secretion of blood-borne gastrointestinal hormones, and *epithelial cells* specialized for absorbing digested nutrients.

**SUBMUCOSA** The **submucosa** (“under the mucosa”) is a thick layer of connective tissue that provides the digestive tract with its distensibility and elasticity. It contains the larger blood and lymph vessels, both of which send branches inward to the mucosal layer and outward to the surrounding thick muscle layer. Also, a nerve network known as the *submucosal plexus* lies within the submucosa (*plexus* means “network”).

**MUSCULARIS EXTERNA** The **muscularis externa**, the major smooth muscle coat of the digestive tube, surrounds the submucosa. In most parts of the tract, the muscularis externa consists of two layers: an *inner circular layer* and an *outer longitudinal layer*. The fibers of the inner smooth muscle layer (adjacent to the submucosa) run circularly around the tube. Contraction of these circular fibers decreases the diameter of the lumen, constricting the tube at the point of contraction. Contraction of the fibers in the outer layer, which run longitudinally along the length of the tube, shortens the tube. Together, contractile activity of these smooth muscle layers produces the propulsive and mixing movements. Another nerve network, the *myenteric plexus*, lies between the two muscle layers (*myo* means “muscle”; *enteric* means “intestine”). Together, the submucosal and myenteric plexuses, along with hormones and local chemical mediators, help regulate local gut activity.

**SEROSA** The outer connective tissue covering of the digestive tract is the **serosa**, which secretes a watery, slippery fluid that lubricates and prevents friction between the digestive organs and the surrounding viscera.

### Regulation of digestive function is complex and synergistic.

Digestive motility and secretion are carefully regulated to maximize digestion and absorption of ingested food. Four factors are involved in regulating digestive system function: (1) autonomous smooth muscle function, (2) intrinsic nerve plexuses, (3) extrinsic nerves, and (4) gastrointestinal hormones.

**AUTONOMOUS SMOOTH MUSCLE FUNCTION** Like self-excitabile cardiac muscle cells, some specialized cells in digestive smooth muscle are pacemaker cells that display rhythmic, spontaneous variations in membrane potential. The prominent type of self-induced electrical activity in digestive smooth muscle is **slow-wave potentials** (see p. 222), alternatively referred to as the



▲ **Table 15-1** Anatomy and Functions of Components of the Digestive System

Digestive Organ	Motility
Mouth and Salivary Glands	Chewing
Pharynx and Esophagus	Swallowing
Stomach	Receptive relaxation; peristalsis
Exocrine Pancreas	Not applicable
Liver	Not applicable
Small Intestine*	Segmentation; migrating motility complex
Large Intestine†	Haustral contractions; mass movements

Nasal passages	
Mouth	
Salivary glands	
Pharynx	
Pharyngoesophageal sphincter	
Trachea	
Esophagus	
Gastroesophageal sphincter	
Liver	
Stomach	
Gallbladder	
Pancreas	
Duodenum	
Descending colon	
Transverse colon	
Ascending colon	
Jejunum	
Cecum	
Ileum	
Appendix	
Sigmoid colon	
Rectum	
Anus	

\*The small intestine includes the duodenum, the jejunum, and the ileum.

†The large intestine includes the cecum, appendix, ascending colon, transverse colon, descending colon, sigmoid colon, and rectum.

Secretion	Digestion	Absorption
Saliva <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Amylase</li> <li>• Mucus</li> <li>• Lysozyme</li> </ul>	Carbohydrate digestion begins.	No foodstuffs; a few medications (e.g., nitroglycerin)
Mucus	None	None
Gastric juice <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HCl</li> <li>• Pepsin</li> <li>• Mucus</li> <li>• Intrinsic factor</li> </ul>	Carbohydrate digestion continues in the body of the stomach; protein digestion begins in the antrum of the stomach.	No foodstuffs; a few lipid-soluble substances (e.g., alcohol, aspirin)
Pancreatic digestive enzymes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Trypsin, chymotrypsin, carboxypeptidase</li> <li>• Amylase</li> <li>• Lipase</li> </ul> Pancreatic aqueous NaHCO <sub>3</sub> secretion	These pancreatic enzymes accomplish digestion in the duodenal lumen.	Not applicable
Bile <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bile salts</li> <li>• Alkaline secretion</li> <li>• Bilirubin</li> </ul>	Bile does not digest anything, but bile salts facilitate fat digestion and absorption in the duodenal lumen.	Not applicable
Intestinal juice <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mucus</li> <li>• Salt</li> </ul> (Small intestine enzymes—disaccharidases and aminopeptidases—are not secreted but function intracellularly in the brush border)	In the lumen, under the influence of pancreatic enzymes and bile, carbohydrate and protein digestion continues and fat digestion is completely accomplished; in the brush border, carbohydrate and protein digestion is completed.	All nutrients, most electrolytes, and water
Mucus	None	Salt and water, converting the contents to feces

digestive tract's **basic electrical rhythm (BER)**. The pacemaker cells, which are noncontractile cells known as the **interstitial cells of Cajal**, lie at the boundary between the longitudinal and the circular smooth muscle layers. These pacemaker cells are connected with surrounding smooth muscle cells by gap junctions through which charge-carrying ions can flow (see p. 49). Thus, once electrical activity is initiated by a pacemaker cell it spreads to the adjacent contractile cells. Slow waves are not action potentials and do not directly induce muscle contraction; they are rhythmic, wavelike fluctuations in membrane potential that cyclically bring the membrane closer to or further from threshold potential. If these waves reach threshold at the peaks of depolarization, a volley of action potentials is triggered at each peak, resulting in rhythmic cycles of muscle contraction.

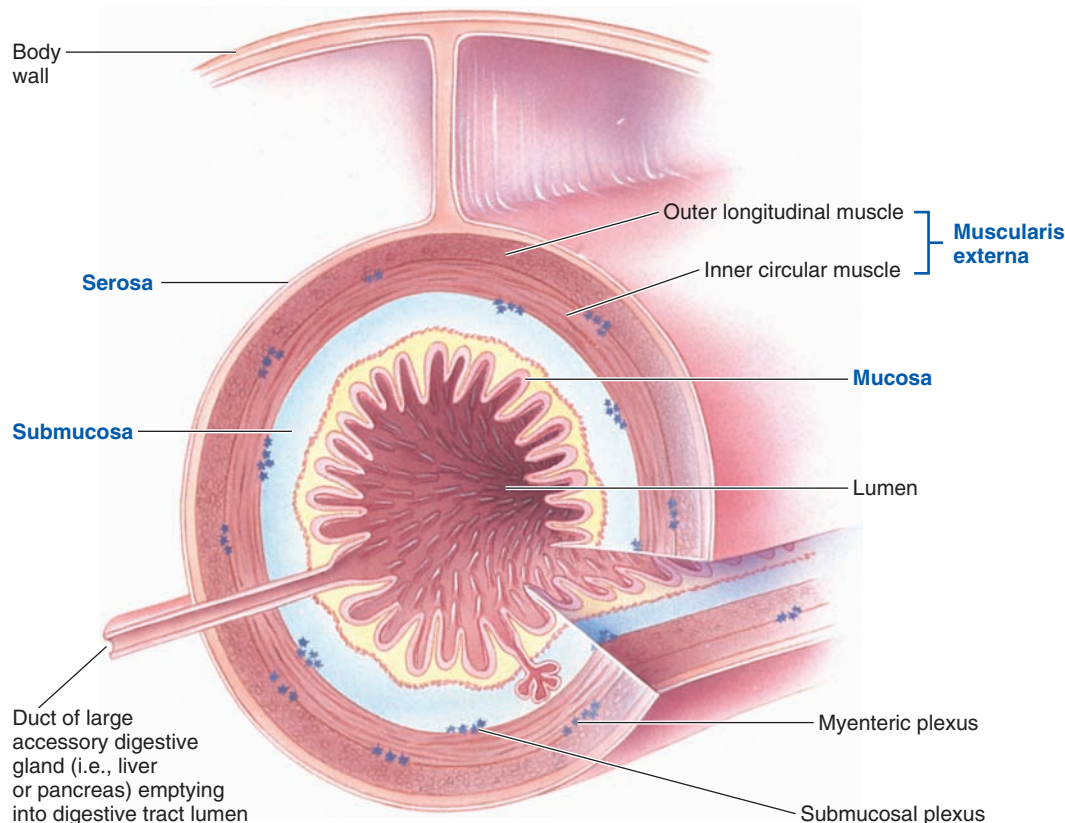
Like cardiac muscle, sheets of digestive smooth muscle cells are connected by gap junctions so that the whole muscle sheet behaves like a functional syncytium, becoming excited and contracting as a unit when threshold is reached (see p. 222). If threshold is not achieved, the oscillating slow-wave electrical activity continues to sweep across the muscle sheet without being accompanied by contractile activity.

Whether threshold is reached depends on the effect of various mechanical, neural, and hormonal factors that influence the starting point around which the slow-wave rhythm oscillates. If the starting point is nearer the threshold level, as it is when food is present in the digestive tract, the depolarizing slow-wave peak reaches threshold, so action potential frequency and its accompanying contractile activity increase. Conversely, if the starting point is further from threshold, as when no food is present, there is less likelihood of reaching threshold, so action potential frequency and contractile activity are reduced.

Self-induced rhythmic digestive contractile activities include *peristalsis* in the stomach, *segmentation* in the small intestine, and *haustral contractions* in the large intestine. Specific details about these rhythmic contractions are discussed when we examine the organs involved.

**INTRINSIC NERVE PLEXUSES** The **intrinsic nerve plexuses** are the two major networks of nerve fibers—the **submucosal plexus** and the **myenteric plexus**—that lie entirely within the digestive tract wall and run its entire length. Thus, unlike any other body system, the digestive tract has its own intramural (“within-wall”) nervous system, which contains as many neurons as the spinal cord (about 100 million neurons) and endows the tract with a considerable degree of self-regulation. Together, these two plexuses are often termed the **enteric nervous system** (see p. 108).

The intrinsic plexuses influence all facets of digestive tract activity. Various types of neurons are present in the intrinsic plexuses. Some are sensory neurons, which have receptors that respond to specific local stimuli in the digestive tract, such as the presence of ingested protein. Other local neurons innervate the smooth muscle cells and exocrine and endocrine cells of the digestive tract to directly affect digestive tract motility, secretion of digestive juices, and secretion of gastrointestinal hormones. As with the central nervous system, these input and output neurons of the enteric nervous system are linked by interneurons. Some of the output neurons are excitatory, and some are inhibitory. These



● **FIGURE 15-2** Layers of the digestive tract wall. The digestive tract wall consists of four major layers: from the innermost outward, they are the mucosa, submucosa, muscularis externa, and serosa.

intrinsic nerve networks primarily coordinate local activity within the digestive tract. To illustrate, if a large piece of food gets stuck in the esophagus, the intrinsic plexuses coordinate local responses to push the food forward. Adding to the complexity of control and accomplishing extensive coordination throughout the digestive tract, intrinsic nerve activity can be influenced by a vast array of endocrine, paracrine, and extrinsic nerve signals.

**EXTRINSIC NERVES** The **extrinsic nerves** are the nerve fibers from both branches of the autonomic nervous system that originate outside the digestive tract and innervate the various digestive organs. The autonomic nerves influence digestive tract motility and secretion either by modifying ongoing activity in the intrinsic plexuses, altering the level of gastrointestinal hormone secretion, or, in some instances, by acting directly on the smooth muscle and glands.

Recall that, in general, the sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves supplying any given tissue exert opposing actions on that tissue. The sympathetic system, which dominates in “fight-or-flight” situations, tends to inhibit or slow digestive tract contraction and secretion. This action is appropriate, considering that digestive processes are not of highest priority when the body faces an emergency. The parasympathetic nervous system, by contrast, dominates in quiet, “rest-and-digest” situations, when maintenance types of activities such as digestion can proceed optimally. Accordingly, the parasympathetic nerve fibers supplying the digestive tract, which arrive primarily by way of the vagus

nerve (see p. 130), tend to increase smooth muscle motility and promote secretion of digestive enzymes and hormones.

In addition to being called into play during generalized sympathetic or parasympathetic discharge, the autonomic nerves, especially the vagus nerve, can be discretely activated to modify only digestive activity. One of the major purposes of specific activation of extrinsic innervation is to coordinate activity among different regions of the digestive system. For example, the act of chewing food reflexly increases not only salivary secretion but also stomach, pancreatic, and liver secretion via vagal reflexes in anticipation of the arrival of food.

**GASTROINTESTINAL HORMONES** Tucked within the mucosa of certain regions of the digestive tract are endocrine gland cells that, on appropriate stimulation, release hormones into the blood. These **gastrointestinal hormones** are carried through the blood to other areas of the digestive tract, where they exert either excitatory or inhibitory influences on smooth muscle and exocrine gland cells.

### Receptor activation alters digestive activity through neural reflexes and hormonal pathways.

The digestive tract wall contains three types of sensory receptors that respond to local changes in the digestive tract: (1) *chemoreceptors* sensitive to chemical components within the lumen, (2) *mechanoreceptors* (pressure receptors) sensitive to

stretch or tension within the wall, and (3) *osmoreceptors* sensitive to the osmolarity of the luminal contents.

Stimulation of these receptors elicits neural reflexes or secretion of hormones, both of which alter the level of activity in the digestive system's effector cells. These effector cells include smooth muscle cells (for modifying motility), exocrine gland cells (for controlling secretion of digestive juices), and endocrine gland cells (for varying secretion of gastrointestinal hormones (● Figure 15-3).

From this overview, you can see that regulation of gastrointestinal function is complex, being influenced by many synergistic, interrelated pathways designed to ensure that the appropriate responses occur to digest and absorb the ingested food. Nowhere else in the body is so much overlapping control exercised.

We are now going to take a “tour” of the digestive tract, beginning with the mouth and ending with the anus. We examine the four basic digestive processes of motility, secretion, digestion, and absorption at each digestive organ along the way. Again, ▲ Table 15-1 summarizes these activities and serves as a useful reference throughout the rest of the chapter.

## Mouth

**The oral cavity is the entrance to the digestive tract.**

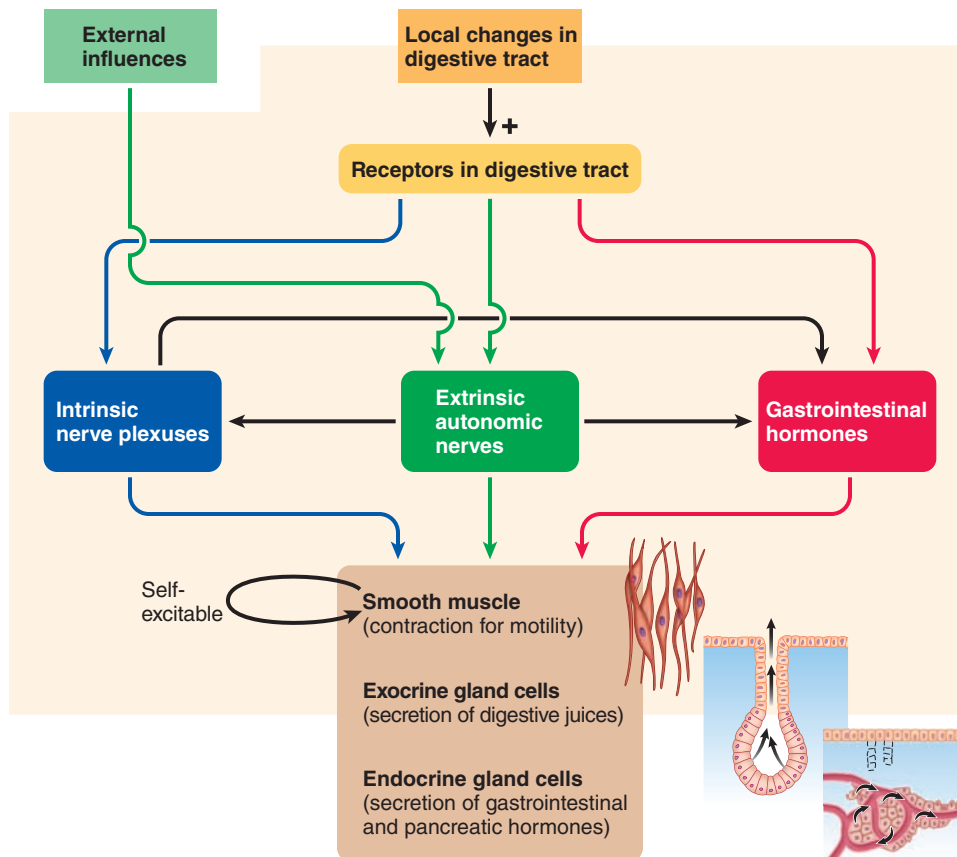
Entry to the digestive tract is through the **mouth** or **oral cavity**. The opening is formed by the muscular **lips**, which help procure, guide, and contain the food in the mouth. The lips also

have nondigestive functions; they are important in speech (articulation of many sounds depends on a particular lip formation) and as a sensory receptor in interpersonal relationships (for example, as in kissing).

The **palate**, which forms the arched roof of the oral cavity, separates the mouth from the nasal passages. Its presence allows breathing and chewing or sucking to take place simultaneously. Hanging from the palate in the rear of the throat is a dangling projection, the **uvula**, which plays an important role in sealing off the nasal passages during swallowing. (The uvula is the structure you elevate when you say “ahhh” so that the physician can better see your throat.)

The **tongue**, which forms the floor of the oral cavity, is composed of voluntarily controlled skeletal muscle. Movements of the tongue are important in guiding food within the mouth during chewing and swallowing, and they play an important role in speech. Furthermore, the major **taste buds** are located on the tongue (see p. 171).

The **pharynx** is the cavity at the rear of the throat. It acts as a common passageway for both the digestive system (by serving as the link between the mouth and the esophagus, for food) and the respiratory system (by providing access between the nasal passages and the trachea, for air). This arrangement necessitates mechanisms (to be described shortly) to guide food and air into the proper passageways beyond the pharynx. Housed within the side walls of the pharynx are the **tonsils**, lymphoid tissues that are part of the body's defense team (see p. 311).



● **FIGURE 15-3** Summary of pathways controlling digestive system activities.

### The teeth are responsible for chewing.

The first step in the digestive process is **mastication**, or **chewing**, the motility of the mouth that involves the slicing, tearing, grinding, and mixing of ingested food by the **teeth**. The teeth are firmly embedded in and protrude from the jawbones. The exposed part of a tooth is covered by **enamel**, the hardest structure of the body. Enamel forms before the tooth's eruption by special cells that are lost as the tooth erupts.



Because enamel cannot be regenerated after the tooth has erupted, any defects (**dental caries**, or “cavities”) that develop in the enamel must be patched by artificial fillings, or else the surface will continue to erode into the underlying living pulp.

The functions of chewing are (1) to grind and break food into smaller pieces to facilitate swallowing and to increase the food surface area on which salivary enzymes will

act, (2) to mix food with saliva, and (3) to stimulate the taste buds. The third function not only gives rise to the pleasurable subjective sensation of taste but also reflexly increases salivary, gastric, pancreatic, and bile secretion to prepare for the arrival of food.

### Saliva begins carbohydrate digestion, is important in oral hygiene, and facilitates speech.

**Saliva**, the secretion associated with the mouth, is produced largely by three major pairs of salivary glands that lie outside the oral cavity and discharge saliva through short ducts into the mouth.

Saliva is about 99.5% H<sub>2</sub>O and 0.5% electrolytes and protein. The salivary salt (NaCl) concentration is only one seventh of that in the plasma, which is important in perceiving salty tastes. Similarly, discrimination of sweet tastes is enhanced by the absence of glucose in the saliva. The most important salivary proteins are *amylase*, *mucus*, and *lysozyme*. They contribute to the functions of saliva, which are as follows:

1. Saliva begins digestion of carbohydrate in the mouth through action of **salivary amylase**, an enzyme that breaks polysaccharides down into **maltose**, a disaccharide consisting of two glucose molecules (see ● Figure 15-1).
2. Saliva facilitates swallowing by moistening food particles, thereby holding them together, and by providing lubrication through the presence of **mucus**, which is thick and slippery.
3. Saliva exerts some antibacterial action by a twofold effect—first by **lysozyme**, an enzyme that lyses, or destroys, certain bacteria by breaking down their cell walls, and second by rinsing away material that may be a food source for bacteria.
4. Saliva serves as a solvent for molecules that stimulate the taste buds. Only molecules in solution can react with taste bud receptors. You can demonstrate this for yourself: Dry your tongue and then drop some sugar on it—you cannot taste the sugar until it is moistened.
5. Saliva aids speech by facilitating movements of the lips and tongue. It is difficult to talk when your mouth feels dry.
6. Saliva plays an important role in oral hygiene by helping keep the mouth and teeth clean. The constant flow of saliva helps flush away food residues, foreign particles, and old epithelial cells that have shed from the oral mucosa. Saliva's contribution in this regard is apparent to anyone who has experienced a foul taste in the mouth when salivation is suppressed for a while, such as during a fever or states of prolonged anxiety.
7. Saliva is rich in bicarbonate buffers, which neutralize acids in food, as well as acids produced by bacteria in the mouth, thereby helping prevent dental caries.

Despite these many functions, saliva is not essential for digesting and absorbing foods, because enzymes produced by the pancreas and small intestine can complete food digestion even in the absence of salivary and gastric secretion.

The main problems associated with diminished salivary secretion, a condition known as **xerostomia**, are difficulty in chewing and swallowing, inarticulate speech unless frequent sips of water are taken when



talking, and a rampant increase in dental caries unless special precautions are taken.

### Salivary secretion is continuous and can be reflexly increased.

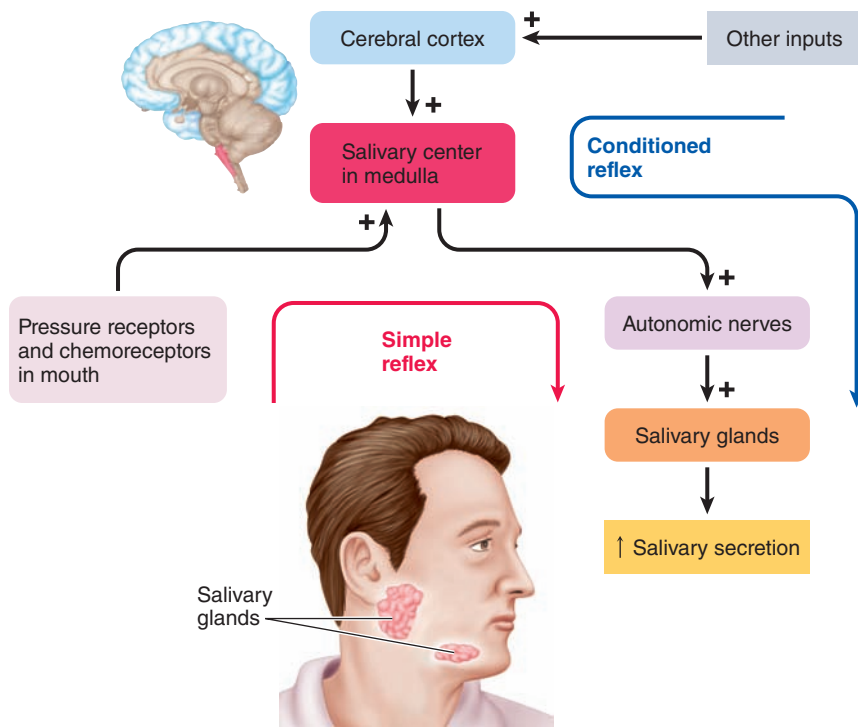
On average, about 1 to 2 liters of saliva are secreted per day, ranging from a continuous spontaneous basal rate of 0.5 ml/min to a maximum flow rate of about 5 ml/min in response to a potent stimulus such as sucking on a lemon. The continuous basal secretion of saliva in the absence of apparent stimuli is brought about by constant low-level stimulation by the parasympathetic nerve endings that terminate in the salivary glands. This basal secretion is important in keeping the mouth and throat moist at all times. In addition to this continuous, low-level secretion, salivary secretion may be increased by two types of salivary reflexes, simple and conditioned (● Figure 15-4).

**SIMPLE AND CONDITIONED SALIVARY REFLEXES** The **simple salivary reflex** occurs when chemoreceptors and pressure receptors within the oral cavity respond to the presence of food. On activation, these receptors initiate impulses in afferent nerve fibers that carry the information to the **salivary center**, which is located in the medulla of the brain stem, as are all the brain centers that control digestive activities. The salivary center, in turn, sends impulses via the extrinsic autonomic nerves to the salivary glands to promote increased salivation.

With the **conditioned, or acquired, salivary reflex**, salivation occurs without oral stimulation. Just thinking about, seeing, smelling, or hearing the preparation of pleasant food initiates salivation through this reflex. All of us have experienced such “mouth watering” in anticipation of something delicious to eat. This reflex is a learned response based on previous experience. Inputs that arise outside the mouth and are mentally associated with the pleasure of eating, act through the cerebral cortex to stimulate the medullary salivary center.

**AUTONOMIC INFLUENCE ON SALIVARY SECRETION** The salivary center controls the degree of salivary output by means of the autonomic nerves that supply the salivary glands. Unlike the autonomic nervous system elsewhere in the body, sympathetic and parasympathetic responses in the salivary glands are not antagonistic. Both sympathetic and parasympathetic stimulation increase salivary secretion, but the quantity, characteristics, and mechanisms differ. Parasympathetic stimulation, which exerts the dominant role in salivary secretion, produces a prompt and abundant flow of watery saliva that is rich in enzymes. Sympathetic stimulation, by contrast, produces a smaller volume of thick saliva that is rich in mucus. Because sympathetic stimulation elicits a smaller volume of saliva, the mouth feels drier than usual when the sympathetic system is dominant, such as in stressful situations. For example, people often experience a dry feeling in the mouth when they are nervous about giving a speech.

Salivary secretion is the only digestive secretion entirely under neural control. All other digestive secretions are regulated by both nervous system reflexes and hormones.



● FIGURE 15-4 Control of salivary secretion.

### Digestion in the mouth is minimal; no absorption of nutrients occurs.

Digestion in the mouth involves the hydrolysis of polysaccharides into disaccharides by amylase. However, most digestion by this enzyme is accomplished in the body of the stomach after the food mass and saliva have been swallowed. Acid inactivates amylase, but in the center of the food mass, where stomach acid has not yet reached, this salivary enzyme continues to function for several more hours.

No absorption of foodstuff occurs from the mouth. Importantly, some drugs can be absorbed by the oral mucosa, a prime example being *nitroglycerin*, a vasodilator drug sometimes used by cardiac patients to relieve anginal attacks (see p. 254) associated with myocardial ischemia (see p. 243).

## Pharynx and Esophagus

The motility associated with the pharynx and esophagus is **swallowing**. Most of us think of swallowing as the limited act of moving food out of the mouth into the esophagus. However, swallowing actually is the entire process of moving food from the mouth through the esophagus into the stomach.

### Swallowing is a sequentially programmed all-or-none reflex.

Swallowing is initiated when a **bolus**, or ball of chewed or liquid food, is voluntarily forced by the tongue to the rear of the mouth and into the pharynx. The pressure of the bolus stimulates pharyngeal pressure receptors, which send afferent impulses to the **swallowing center** located in the medulla of the brain stem. The swallowing center then reflexly activates in the appropriate se-

quence the muscles involved in swallowing. Swallowing is the most complex reflex in the body. Multiple highly coordinated responses are triggered in a specific all-or-none pattern over a period of time to accomplish the act of swallowing. Swallowing is initiated voluntarily, but once begun it cannot be stopped. Perhaps you have experienced this when a large piece of hard candy inadvertently slipped to the rear of your throat, triggering an unintentional swallow.

Next we describe the two stages of swallowing: the *oropharyngeal stage* and the *esophageal stage*.

### During the oropharyngeal stage of swallowing, food is prevented from entering the wrong passageways.

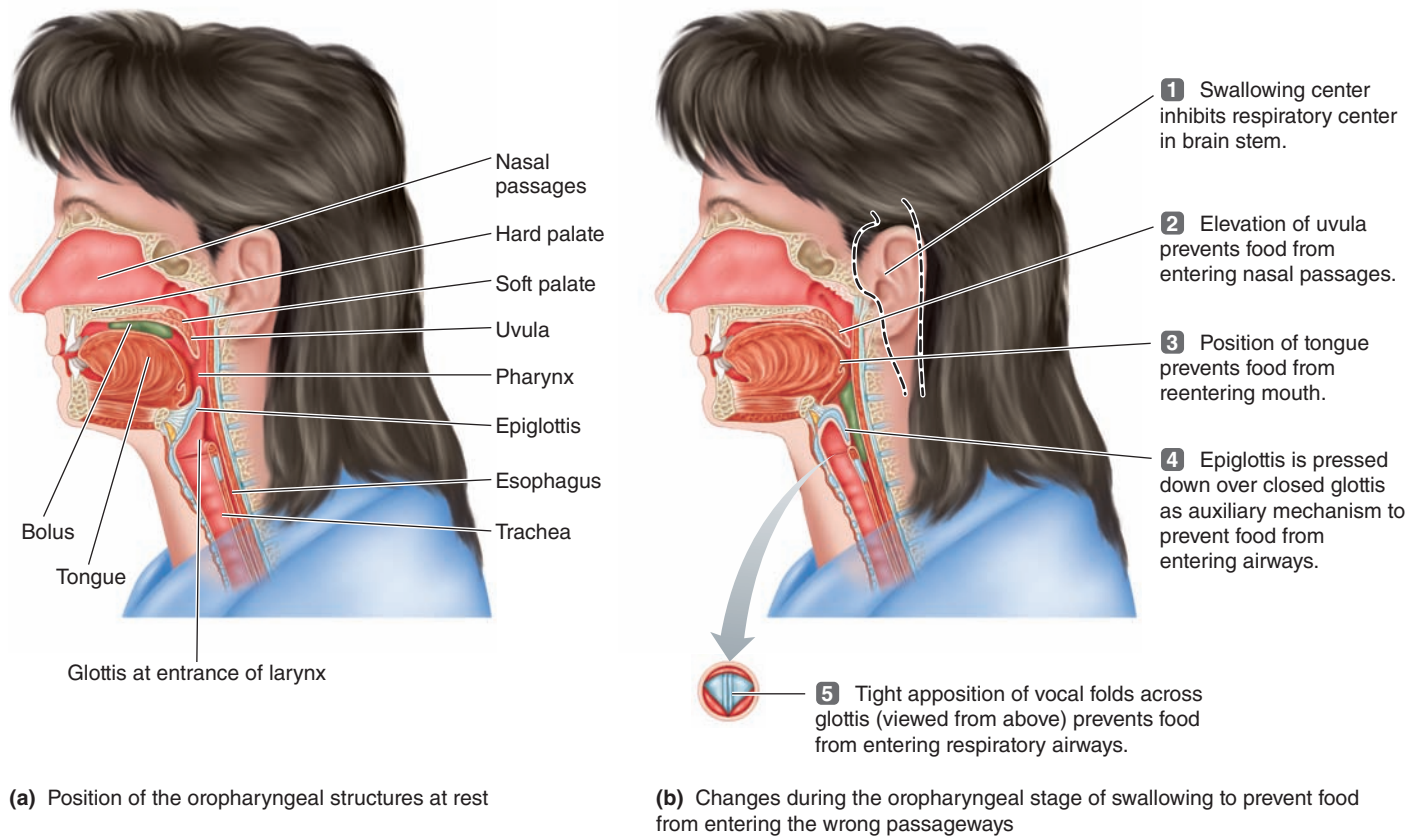
The **oropharyngeal stage** lasts about 1 second and consists of moving the bolus from the mouth through the pharynx and into the esophagus. When the bolus enters the pharynx, it must be directed into the esophagus and prevented from entering the other openings that communicate with the pharynx. In

other words, food must be kept from reentering the mouth and from entering the nasal passages and trachea. All of this is managed by the following coordinated activities (● Figure 15-5):

- The position of the tongue against the hard palate keeps food from reentering the mouth during swallowing.
- The uvula is elevated and lodges against the back of the throat, sealing off the nasal passage from the pharynx so that food does not enter the nose.
- Food is prevented from entering the trachea primarily by elevation of the larynx and tight closure of the vocal folds across the laryngeal opening, or **glottis**. The first part of the trachea is the *larynx*, or *voice box*, across which the *vocal folds* are stretched. During swallowing, the vocal folds serve a purpose unrelated to speech. Contraction of laryngeal muscles aligns the vocal folds in tight apposition to each other, thus sealing the glottis entrance (see ● Figure 12-3, p. 347). Also, the bolus tilts a small flap of cartilaginous tissue, the **epiglottis** (*epi* means “upon”), backward down over the closed glottis as further protection from food entering the respiratory airways.
- The person does not attempt futile respiratory efforts when the respiratory passages are temporarily sealed off during swallowing, because the swallowing center briefly inhibits the nearby respiratory center.
- With the larynx and trachea sealed off, pharyngeal muscles contract to force the bolus into the esophagus.

### The pharyngoesophageal sphincter keeps air from entering the digestive tract during breathing.

The esophagus is a fairly straight muscular tube that extends between the pharynx and the stomach (see ▲ Table 15-1, p. 440). Lying mostly in the thoracic cavity, it penetrates the



(a) Position of the oropharyngeal structures at rest

(b) Changes during the oropharyngeal stage of swallowing to prevent food from entering the wrong passageways

● **FIGURE 15-5** Oropharyngeal stage of swallowing.

diaphragm and joins the stomach in the abdominal cavity a few centimeters below the diaphragm.

The esophagus is guarded at both ends by sphincters. A sphincter is a ringlike muscular structure that, when closed, prevents passage through the tube it guards. The upper esophageal sphincter is the *pharyngoesophageal sphincter*, and the lower esophageal sphincter is the *gastroesophageal sphincter*. We first discuss the role of the pharyngoesophageal sphincter, then the process of esophageal transit of food, and finally the importance of the gastroesophageal sphincter.

Except during a swallow, the **pharyngoesophageal sphincter** keeps the entrance to the esophagus closed to prevent large volumes of air from entering the esophagus and stomach during breathing. Instead, air is directed only into the respiratory airways. Otherwise, the digestive tract would be subjected to large volumes of gas, which would lead to excessive burping. During swallowing, this sphincter opens and allows the bolus to pass into the esophagus. Once the bolus has entered the esophagus, the pharyngoesophageal sphincter closes, the respiratory airways are opened, and breathing resumes. The oropharyngeal stage is complete, and about 1 second has passed since the swallow was first initiated.

**Peristaltic waves push food through the esophagus.**

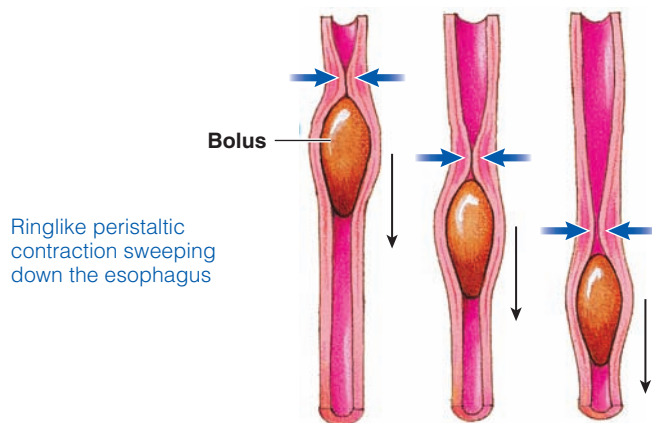
The **esophageal stage** of the swallow now begins. The swallowing center triggers a **primary peristaltic wave** that sweeps from the beginning to the end of the esophagus, forcing the bolus

ahead of it through the esophagus to the stomach. The term **peristalsis** refers to ringlike contractions of the circular smooth muscle that move progressively forward, pushing the bolus into a relaxed area ahead of the contraction (● Figure 15-6). The peristaltic wave takes about 5 to 9 seconds to reach the lower end of the esophagus.

If a large or sticky swallowed bolus, such as a bite of peanut butter sandwich, fails to be carried along to the stomach by the primary peristaltic wave, the lodged bolus distends the esophagus, stimulating pressure receptors within its walls. As a result, a second, more forceful peristaltic wave is initiated, mediated by the intrinsic nerve plexuses at the level of the distension. These **secondary peristaltic waves** do not involve the swallowing center, nor is the person aware of their occurrence. Distension of the esophagus also reflexly increases salivary secretion. The trapped bolus is eventually dislodged and moved forward through the combination of lubrication by the extra swallowed saliva and the forceful secondary peristaltic waves.

**The gastroesophageal sphincter prevents reflux of gastric contents.**

Except during swallowing, the **gastroesophageal sphincter** stays contracted to keep a barrier between the stomach and the esophagus, reducing the chance of reflux of acidic gastric contents into the esophagus. If gastric contents do flow backward despite the sphincter, the acidity of these contents irritates the



● **FIGURE 15-6 Peristalsis in the esophagus.** As the wave of peristaltic contraction sweeps down the esophagus, it pushes the bolus into the relaxed area ahead of it, propelling the bolus toward the stomach.

esophagus, causing the esophageal discomfort known as **heartburn**. (The heart itself is not involved.)

As the peristaltic wave sweeps down the esophagus, the gastroesophageal sphincter relaxes so that the bolus can pass into the stomach. After the bolus has entered the stomach, the swallow is complete and this lower esophageal sphincter again contracts.

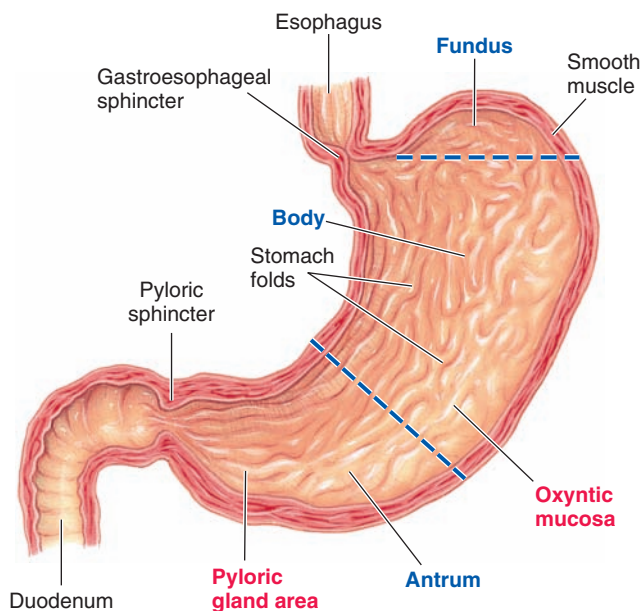
### Esophageal secretion is entirely protective.

Esophageal secretion is entirely mucus. In fact, mucus is secreted throughout the length of the digestive tract by mucus-secreting gland cells in the mucosa. By lubricating the passage of food, esophageal mucus lessens the likelihood that the esophagus will be damaged by any sharp edges in the newly entering food. Furthermore, it protects the esophageal wall from acid and enzymes in gastric juice if gastric reflux occurs.

The entire transit time in the pharynx and esophagus averages a mere 6 to 10 seconds, too short a time for any digestion or absorption in this region. We now move on to our next stop, the stomach.

## Stomach

The **stomach** is a J-shaped saclike chamber lying between the esophagus and the small intestine. It is divided into three sections based on structural and functional distinctions (● Figure 15-7). The **fundus** is the part of the stomach that lies above the esophageal opening. The middle or main part of the stomach is the **body**. The smooth muscle layers in the fundus and body are relatively thin, but the lower part of the stomach, the **antrum**, has heavier musculature. This difference in muscle thickness plays an important role in gastric motility in these two regions, as you will see shortly. There are also glandular differences in the mucosa of these regions, as described later. The end part of the stomach is the **pyloric sphincter**, which acts as a barrier between the stomach and the upper part of the small intestine, the duodenum.



● **FIGURE 15-7 Anatomy of the stomach.** The stomach is divided into three sections based on structural and functional distinctions—the fundus, body, and antrum. The mucosal lining of the stomach is divided into the oxyntic mucosa and the pyloric gland area based on differences in glandular secretion.

### The stomach stores food and begins protein digestion.

The stomach performs three main functions:

1. The stomach's most important function is to store ingested food until it can be emptied into the small intestine at a rate appropriate for optimal digestion and absorption. It takes hours to digest and absorb a meal that was consumed in only a matter of minutes. Because the small intestine is the primary site for this digestion and absorption, it is important that the stomach store the food and meter it into the duodenum at a rate that does not exceed the small intestine's capacities.
2. The stomach secretes hydrochloric acid (HCl) and enzymes that begin protein digestion.
3. Through the stomach's mixing movements, the ingested food is pulverized and mixed with gastric secretions to produce a thick liquid mixture known as **chyme**. The stomach contents must be converted to chyme before they can be emptied into the duodenum.

Next we discuss how the stomach accomplishes these functions as we examine the four basic digestive processes—motility, secretion, digestion, and absorption—as they relate to the stomach. Starting with motility, gastric motility is complex and subject to multiple regulatory inputs.

The four aspects of gastric motility are (1) filling, (2) storage, (3) mixing, and (4) emptying. We begin with gastric filling.

### Gastric filling involves receptive relaxation.

When empty, the stomach has a volume of about 50 ml, but it can expand to a capacity of about 1 liter (1000 ml) during a meal. The stomach can accommodate such a 20-fold change in volume with little change in tension in its walls and little rise in



intra-gastric pressure through the following mechanism: The interior of the stomach is thrown into deep folds. During a meal, the folds get smaller and nearly flatten out as the stomach relaxes slightly with each mouthful, much like the gradual expansion of a collapsed ice bag as it is being filled. This reflex relaxation of the stomach as it is receiving food is called **receptive relaxation**; it allows the stomach to accommodate the meal with little rise in pressure. If more than a liter of food is consumed, however, the stomach becomes overdistended and the person experiences discomfort. Receptive relaxation is triggered by the act of eating and is mediated by the vagus nerve.

### Gastric storage takes place in the body of the stomach.

A group of pacemaker cells located in the upper fundus region of the stomach generate slow-wave potentials that sweep down the length of the stomach toward the pyloric sphincter at a rate of three per minute. This rhythmic pattern of spontaneous depolarizations—the basic electrical rhythm, or BER, of the stomach—occurs continuously and may or may not be accompanied by contraction of the stomach's circular smooth muscle layer. Depending on the level of excitability in the smooth muscle, it may be brought to threshold by this flow of current and undergo action potentials, which in turn initiate peristaltic waves that sweep over the stomach in pace with the BER at a rate of three per minute.

Once initiated, the peristaltic wave spreads over the fundus and body to the antrum and pyloric sphincter. Because the muscle layers are thin in the fundus and body, the peristaltic contractions in this region are weak. When the waves reach the antrum, they become stronger and more vigorous, because the muscle there is thicker.

Because only feeble mixing movements occur in the body and fundus, food delivered to the stomach from the esophagus is stored in the relatively quiet body without being mixed. The fundic area usually does not store food but contains only a pocket of gas. Food is gradually fed from the body into the antrum, where mixing does take place.

### Gastric mixing takes place in the antrum of the stomach.

The strong antral peristaltic contractions mix the food with gastric secretions to produce chyme. Each antral peristaltic wave propels chyme forward toward the pyloric sphincter (● Figure 15-8). Tonic contraction (see p. 224) of the pyloric sphincter normally keeps it almost, but not completely, closed. The opening is large enough for water and other fluids to pass through with ease but too small for the thicker chyme to pass through except when a strong antral peristaltic contraction pushes it through. Even then, of the 30 ml of chyme that the antrum can hold, usually only a few milliliters of antral contents are pushed into the duodenum with each peristaltic wave. Before more chyme can be squeezed out, the peristaltic wave reaches the pyloric sphincter and causes it to contract more forcefully, sealing off the exit and blocking further passage into the duodenum. The bulk of the antral chyme that was being propelled forward but failed to be pushed into the duodenum is abruptly halted at the closed sphincter and is tumbled back into

the antrum, only to be propelled forward and tumbled back again as the new peristaltic wave advances. This tossing back and forth thoroughly mixes the chyme in the antrum.

### Gastric emptying is controlled by factors in the duodenum.

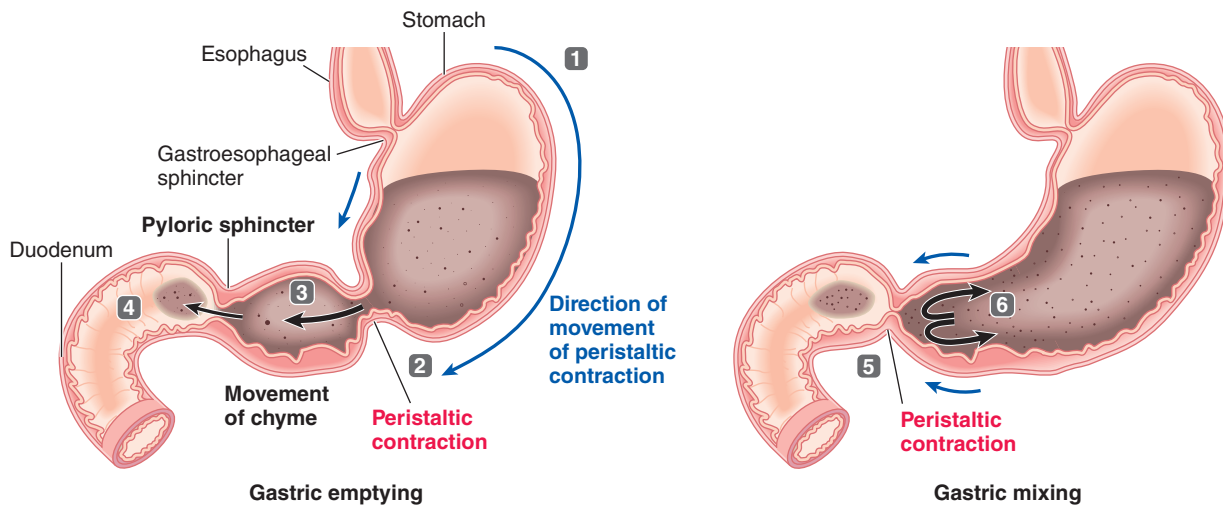
In addition to mixing gastric contents, the antral peristaltic contractions are the driving force for gastric emptying (● Figure 15-8). The amount of chyme that escapes into the duodenum with each peristaltic wave before the pyloric sphincter tightly closes depends largely on the strength of antral peristalsis. The intensity of antral peristalsis can vary markedly under the influence of various signals from the duodenum.

The duodenum must be ready to receive the chyme and can delay gastric emptying by reducing the strength of antral peristalsis until the duodenum is ready to accommodate more chyme. The four most important duodenal factors that influence gastric emptying are *fat*, *acid*, *hypertonicity*, and *distension*. The presence of one or more of these stimuli in the duodenum activates appropriate duodenal receptors, triggering either a neural or a hormonal response that puts brakes on antral peristaltic activity, thereby slowing the rate of gastric emptying:

- The *neural response* is mediated through both the intrinsic nerve plexuses and the autonomic nerves. Collectively, these reflexes are called the **enterogastric reflex**.
- The *hormonal response* involves the release from the small-intestine mucosa of several hormones collectively known as **enterogastrones**. The blood carries these hormones to the stomach, where they inhibit antral contractions to reduce gastric emptying. The two most important enterogastrones are **secretin** and **cholecystokinin (CCK)**. Secretin was the first hormone discovered (in 1902). Because it was a secretory product that entered the blood, it was termed *secretin*. The name *cholecystokinin* derives from this same hormone also causing contraction of the bile-containing gallbladder (*chole* means “bile”; *cysto* means “bladder”; and *kinin* means “contraction”). Secretin and CCK are major gastrointestinal hormones that perform other important functions, in addition to serving as enterogastrones.

Let us examine why it is important that each of these stimuli in the duodenum (fat, acid, hypertonicity, and distension) delays gastric emptying:

- *Fat*. Fat is digested and absorbed more slowly than the other nutrients. Furthermore, fat digestion and absorption take place only within the lumen of the small intestine. Therefore, when fat is already in the duodenum, further gastric emptying of more fatty stomach contents into the duodenum is prevented until the small intestine has processed the fat already there. Fat is the most potent stimulus for inhibition of gastric motility. This is evident when you compare the rate of emptying of a high-fat meal (after 6 hours, some of a bacon-and-eggs meal may still be in the stomach) with that of a protein and carbohydrate meal (a meal of lean meat and potatoes may empty in 3 hours).



- 1 A peristaltic contraction originates in the upper fundus and sweeps down toward the pyloric sphincter.
- 2 The contraction becomes more vigorous as it reaches the thick-muscled antrum.
- 3 The strong antral peristaltic contraction propels the chyme forward.
- 4 A small portion of chyme is pushed through the partially open sphincter into the duodenum. The stronger the antral contraction, the more chyme is emptied with each contractile wave.

- 5 When the peristaltic contraction reaches the pyloric sphincter, the sphincter is tightly closed and no further emptying takes place.
- 6 When chyme that was being propelled forward hits the closed sphincter, it is tossed back into the antrum. Mixing of chyme is accomplished as chyme is propelled forward and tossed back into the antrum with each peristaltic contraction.

● **FIGURE 15-8** Gastric emptying and mixing as a result of antral peristaltic contractions.

■ **Acid.** Because the stomach secretes HCl, highly acidic chyme is emptied into the duodenum, where it is neutralized by sodium bicarbonate ( $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ) secreted into the duodenal lumen primarily from the pancreas. Unneutralized acid irritates the duodenal mucosa and inactivates the pancreatic digestive enzymes that are secreted into the duodenal lumen. Appropriately, therefore, unneutralized acid in the duodenum inhibits further emptying of acidic gastric contents until complete neutralization can be accomplished.

■ **Hypertonicity.** As molecules of protein and starch are digested in the duodenal lumen, large numbers of amino acid and glucose molecules are released. If absorption of these amino acid and glucose molecules does not keep pace with the rate at which protein and carbohydrate digestion proceeds, these large numbers of molecules remain in the chyme and increase the osmolarity of the duodenal contents. Osmolarity depends on the number of molecules present, not on their size, and one protein molecule may be split into several hundred amino acid molecules, each of which has the same osmotic activity as the original protein molecule. The same holds true for one large starch molecule, which yields many smaller but equally osmotically active glucose molecules. Because water is freely diffusible across the duodenal wall, it enters the duodenal lumen from the plasma as the duodenal osmolarity rises. Large volumes of water entering the intestine from the plasma lead to intestinal distension, and more important, circulatory disturbances result because of the reduction in plasma volume. To prevent these effects, gastric emptying is reflexly inhibited when the

osmolarity of the duodenal contents starts to rise. Thus, the amount of food entering the duodenum for further digestion into a multitude of additional osmotically active particles is reduced until absorption processes have had an opportunity to catch up.

■ **Distension.** Too much chyme in the duodenum inhibits the emptying of even more gastric contents, giving the distended duodenum time to cope with the excess volume of chyme it already contains before it gets any more.

#### Emotions can influence gastric motility.

Other factors unrelated to digestion, such as emotions, can alter gastric motility by acting through the autonomic nerves to influence the degree of gastric smooth muscle excitability. Even though the effect of emotions on gastric motility varies from one person to another and is not always predictable, sadness and fear generally tend to decrease motility, whereas anger and aggression tend to increase it. In addition to emotional influences, intense pain from any part of the body tends to inhibit motility, not just in the stomach but throughout the digestive tract. This response is brought about by increased sympathetic activity.

#### The stomach does not actively participate in vomiting.



**Vomiting**, or **emesis**, the forceful expulsion of gastric contents out through the mouth, is not accomplished by reverse peristalsis in the stomach, as might be pre-

dicted. Actually, the stomach, the esophagus, and associated sphincters are all relaxed during vomiting. The major force for expulsion comes, surprisingly, from contraction of the respiratory muscles—namely, the diaphragm (the major inspiratory muscle) and the abdominal muscles (the muscles of active expiration) (see ● Figure 12-12, pp. 354 and 355).

The complex act of vomiting is coordinated by a **vomiting center** in the medulla of the brain stem. Vomiting begins with a deep inspiration and closure of the glottis. The contracting diaphragm descends downward on the stomach while simultaneous contraction of the abdominal muscles compresses the abdominal cavity, increasing the intra-abdominal pressure and forcing the abdominal viscera upward. As the flaccid stomach is squeezed between the diaphragm from above and the compressed abdominal cavity from below, the gastric contents are forced upward through the relaxed sphincters and esophagus and out through the mouth. The glottis is closed, so vomited material does not enter the respiratory airways. Also, the uvula is raised to close off the nasal cavity. The vomiting cycle may be repeated several times until the stomach is emptied. Vomiting is usually preceded by profuse salivation, sweating, rapid heart rate, and sensation of nausea, all of which are characteristic of a generalized discharge of the autonomic nervous system.

**CAUSES OF VOMITING** Vomiting can be initiated by afferent input to the vomiting center from a number of receptors throughout the body. The causes of vomiting include the following:

- Tactile (touch) stimulation of the back of the throat, which is one of the most potent stimuli. For example, sticking a finger in the back of the throat or even the presence of a tongue depressor or dental instrument in the back of the mouth is enough stimulation to cause gagging and even vomiting in some people.
- Irritation or distension of the stomach and duodenum.
- Elevated intracranial pressure, such as that caused by cerebral hemorrhage. Thus, vomiting after a head injury is considered a bad sign; it suggests swelling or bleeding within the cranial cavity.
- Rotation or acceleration of the head producing dizziness, such as in motion sickness.
- Chemical agents, including drugs or noxious substances that initiate vomiting (that is, **emetics**) either by acting in the upper parts of the gastrointestinal tract or by stimulating chemoreceptors in a specialized **chemoreceptor trigger zone** next to the vomiting center in the brain. Activation of this zone triggers the vomiting reflex. For example, chemotherapeutic agents used in treating cancer often cause vomiting by acting on the chemoreceptor trigger zone.
- Psychogenic vomiting induced by emotional factors, including those accompanying nauseating sights and odors and anxiety, as before taking an examination or in other stressful situations.

**EFFECTS OF VOMITING** With excessive vomiting, the body experiences large losses of secreted fluids and acids that normally would be reabsorbed. The resulting reduction in plasma volume can lead to dehydration and circulatory problems, and the loss

of acid from the stomach can lead to metabolic alkalosis (see p. 434).

We have completed our discussion of gastric motility and now shift to gastric secretion.

### Gastric digestive juice is secreted by glands located at the base of gastric pits.

Each day, the stomach secretes about 2 liters of gastric juice. The cells that secrete gastric juice are in the lining of the stomach, the gastric mucosa, which is divided into two distinct areas: (1) the **oxyntic mucosa**, which lines the body and fundus, and (2) the **pyloric gland area (PGA)**, which lines the antrum. The luminal surface of the stomach is pitted with deep pockets formed by infoldings of the gastric mucosa. The first parts of these invaginations are called **gastric pits**, at the base of which lie the **gastric glands**. A variety of secretory cells line these invaginations, some exocrine and some endocrine or paracrine (▲ Table 15-2). Let us look at the gastric exocrine secretory cells first.

Three types of gastric exocrine secretory cells are found in the walls of the pits and glands in the oxyntic mucosa.

- **Mucous cells** line the gastric pits and the entrance of the glands. They secrete a thin, watery *mucus*. (*Mucous* is the adjective; *mucus* is the noun.)
- The deeper parts of the gastric glands are lined by chief and parietal cells. The more numerous **chief cells** secrete the enzyme precursor *pepsinogen*.
- The **parietal cells** in the oxyntic mucosa secrete *HCl* and *intrinsic factor* (*oxyntic* means “sharp,” a reference to these cells’ potent HCl secretory product).

These exocrine secretions are all released into the gastric lumen. Collectively, they make up the gastric digestive juice.

A few **stem cells** are also found in the gastric pits. These cells rapidly divide and are the parent cells of all new cells of the gastric mucosa. The daughter cells that result from cell division either migrate out of the pit to become surface epithelial cells or migrate deeper to the gastric glands, where they differentiate into chief or parietal cells. Through this activity, the entire stomach mucosa is replaced about every 3 days. This frequent turnover is important, because the harsh acidic stomach contents expose the mucosal cells to lots of wear and tear.

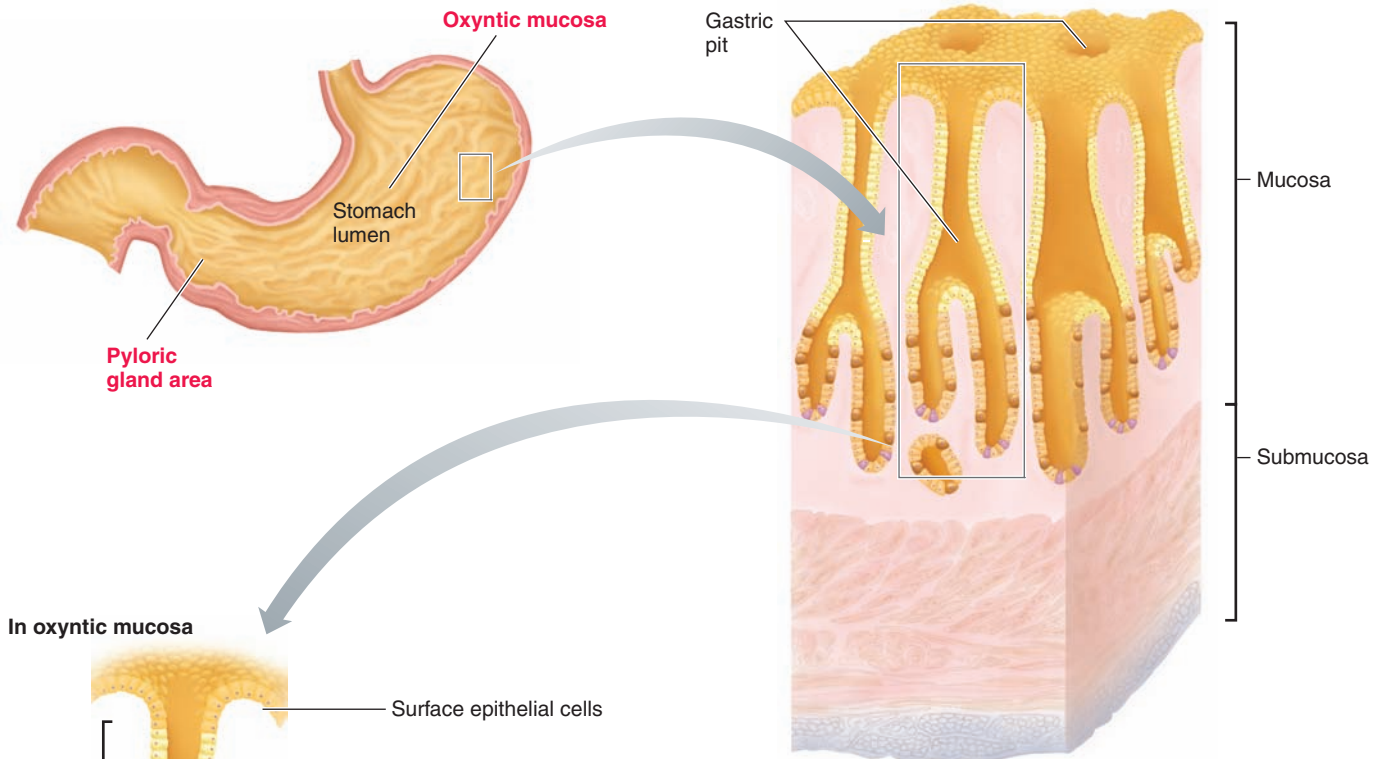
Between the gastric pits, the gastric mucosa is covered by **surface epithelial cells**, which secrete a thick, viscous, alkaline mucus that forms a visible layer several millimeters thick over the surface of the mucosa.

The gastric glands of the PGA primarily secrete mucus and a small amount of pepsinogen; no acid is secreted in this area, in contrast to the oxyntic mucosa.

Let us consider these exocrine products and their roles in digestion in further detail.

### Hydrochloric acid activates pepsinogen.

The parietal cells actively secrete HCl into the lumen of the gastric pits, which in turn empty into the lumen of the stomach. As a result of this HCl secretion, the pH of the luminal contents falls as low as 2.0. Hydrogen ion ( $H^+$ ) and chloride ion ( $Cl^-$ ) are



▲ **Table 15-2 The Stomach Mucosa and the Gastric Glands**

Type of Secretory Cell	Product Secreted	Stimuli for Secretion	Function(s) of Secretory Product
<b>Exocrine Cells</b>			
<b>Mucous cells</b>	Alkaline mucus	Mechanical stimulation by contents	Protects mucosa against mechanical, pepsin, and acid injury
<b>Chief cells</b>	Pepsinogen	Acetylcholine (ACh), gastrin	When activated, begins protein digestion
<b>Parietal cells</b>	Hydrochloric acid	ACh, gastrin, histamine	Activates pepsinogen, denatures proteins, and kills microorganisms
	Intrinsic factor		Facilitates absorption of vitamin B <sub>12</sub>
<b>Endocrine or Paracrine Cells</b>			
<b>Enterochromaffin-like (ECL) cells</b>	Histamine	ACh, gastrin	Stimulates parietal cells
<b>G cells</b>	Gastrin	Protein products, ACh	Stimulates parietal, chief, and ECL cells
<b>D cells</b>	Somatostatin	Acid	Inhibits parietal, G, and ECL cells

actively transported by separate pumps in the parietal cells' plasma membrane. Hydrogen ion is actively transported against a tremendous concentration gradient, with the  $H^+$  concentration being as much as 3 million times greater in the lumen than in the blood. Chloride is secreted by a secondary active-transport mechanism against a much smaller concentration gradient of only 1.5 times (see p. 60).

Although HCl does not actually digest anything (that is, it does not break apart nutrient chemical bonds), it performs these specific functions that aid digestion:

1. HCl activates the enzyme precursor pepsinogen to an active enzyme, pepsin, and provides an acid environment optimal for pepsin action.
2. It denatures protein; that is, it uncoils proteins from their highly folded final form, thus exposing more of the peptide bonds for enzymatic attack (see p. A-16).
3. Along with salivary lysozyme, HCl kills most of the microorganisms ingested with food, although some escape and then grow and multiply in the large intestine.

### Pepsinogen is activated to pepsin, which initiates protein digestion.

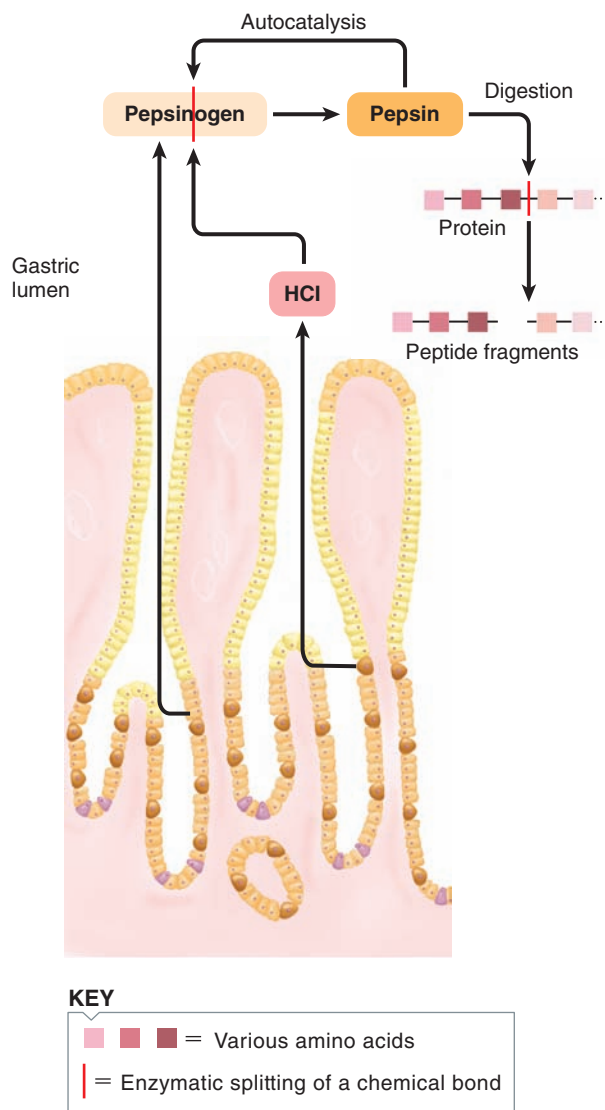
The major digestive constituent of gastric secretion is **pepsinogen**, an inactive enzymatic molecule produced by the chief cells. Pepsinogen, once activated, begins protein digestion. It is stored in the chief cells' cytoplasm within secretory vesicles, from which it is released by exocytosis on appropriate stimulation (see p. 24). When pepsinogen is secreted into the gastric lumen, HCl cleaves off a small fragment of the molecule, converting it to the active form of the enzyme **pepsin** (● Figure 15-9). Once formed, pepsin acts on other pepsinogen molecules to produce more pepsin, a mechanism called an **autocatalytic process** (*autocatalytic* means "self-activating").

Pepsin initiates protein digestion by splitting certain amino acid linkages in proteins to yield peptide fragments (small amino acid chains). Because pepsin can digest protein, it must be stored and secreted in an inactive form so that it does not digest the proteins of the cells in which it is formed. Therefore, pepsin is maintained in the inactive form of pepsinogen until it reaches the gastric lumen, where it is activated by HCl secreted into the lumen by a different cell type.

### Mucus is protective.

The surface of the gastric mucosa is covered by a layer of mucus derived from the surface epithelial cells and mucous cells. This mucus is a protective barrier against several forms of potential injury to the gastric mucosa:

- Through its lubricating properties, mucus protects the gastric mucosa against mechanical injury.
- It helps protect the stomach wall from self-digestion because pepsin is inhibited when it comes in contact with the layer of mucus coating the stomach lining. (However, mucus does not affect pepsin activity in the lumen, where digestion of dietary protein proceeds without interference.)



● **FIGURE 15-9 Pepsinogen activation in the stomach lumen.** In the lumen, hydrochloric acid (HCl) activates pepsinogen to its active form, pepsin, by cleaving off a small fragment. Once activated, pepsin autocatalytically activates more pepsinogen and begins protein digestion. Secretion of pepsinogen in the inactive form prevents it from digesting the protein structures of the cells in which it is produced.

- Being alkaline, mucus helps protect against acid injury by neutralizing HCl in the vicinity of the gastric lining, but it does not interfere with the function of HCl in the lumen.

### Intrinsic factor is essential for absorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.

**Intrinsic factor**, another secretory product of the parietal cells in addition to HCl, is important in the absorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>. This vitamin can be absorbed only when combined with intrinsic factor. Binding of intrinsic factor with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> triggers the receptor-mediated endocytosis of this complex in the terminal ileum, the last part of the small intestine (see p. 24).

Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is essential for the normal formation of red blood cells. In the absence of intrinsic factor, vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is not

absorbed, so erythrocyte production is defective and *pernicious anemia* results (see p. 301).

### Multiple regulatory pathways influence the parietal and chief cells.

In addition to the gastric exocrine secretory cells, other secretory cells in the gastric glands release endocrine and paracrine regulatory factors instead of products involved in the digestion of nutrients in the gastric lumen (see p. 92). These other secretory cells are also shown in ▲ Table 15-2:

- Endocrine cells known as **G cells**, found in the gastric pits only in the PGA, secrete the hormone *gastrin* into the blood.
- **Enterochromaffin-like (ECL) cells**, dispersed among the parietal and chief cells in the gastric glands of the oxyntic mucosa, secrete the paracrine *histamine*.
- **D cells**, which are scattered in glands near the pylorus but are more numerous in the duodenum, secrete the paracrine *somatostatin*.

These three regulatory factors from the gastric pits, along with the neurotransmitter *acetylcholine (ACh)*, primarily control the secretion of gastric digestive juices. Parietal cells have separate receptors for each of these chemical messengers. Three of them—ACh, gastrin, and histamine—stimulate HCl secretion. The fourth regulatory agent—somatostatin—inhibits HCl secretion. ACh and gastrin also increase pepsinogen secretion through their stimulatory effect on the chief cells. We now consider each of these chemical messengers in further detail.

- **Acetylcholine** is a neurotransmitter released from the intrinsic nerve plexuses in response to both local reflexes and vagal stimulation. ACh stimulates both the parietal and the chief cells, as well as the G cells and the ECL cells.
- The G cells secrete the hormone **gastrin** into the blood in response to protein products in the stomach lumen and in response to ACh. Like secretin and CCK, gastrin is a major gastrointestinal hormone. After being carried by the blood back to the body and fundus of the stomach, gastrin stimulates the parietal and chief cells, promoting secretion of a highly acidic gastric juice. In addition to directly stimulating the parietal cells, gastrin indirectly promotes HCl secretion by stimulating the ECL cells to release histamine, which also stimulates the parietal cells. Gastrin is the main factor that brings about increased HCl secretion during meal digestion.
- **Histamine**, a paracrine, is released from the ECL cells in response to ACh and gastrin. Histamine acts locally on nearby parietal cells to speed up HCl secretion.
- **Somatostatin** is released from the D cells in response to acid. It acts locally as a paracrine in negative-feedback fashion to inhibit secretion by the parietal cells, G cells, and ECL cells, thus turning off the HCl-secreting cells and their most potent stimulatory pathway.

From this list, it is obvious not only that multiple chemical messengers influence the parietal and chief cells but also that these chemicals influence one another. As we examine the

phases of gastric secretion, you will see under what circumstances each of these regulatory agents is released.

### Control of gastric secretion involves three phases.

The rate of gastric secretion can be influenced by (1) factors arising before food ever reaches the stomach, (2) factors resulting from the presence of food in the stomach, and (3) factors in the duodenum after food has left the stomach. Accordingly, gastric secretion is divided into three phases: cephalic, gastric, and intestinal.

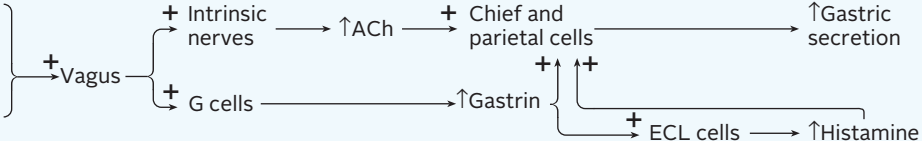
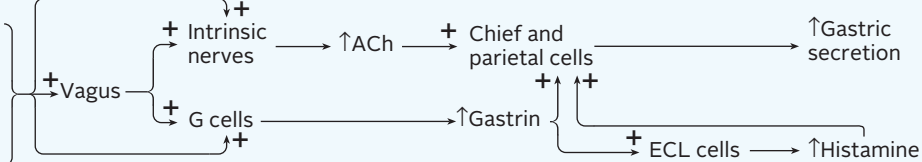
**CEPHALIC PHASE OF GASTRIC SECRETION** The cephalic phase of gastric secretion refers to the increased secretion of HCl and pepsinogen that occurs in anticipatory fashion in response to stimuli acting in the head even before food reaches the stomach (*cephalic* means “head”). Thinking about, seeing, smelling, tasting, chewing, and swallowing food increases gastric secretion by vagal nerve activity in two ways. First, vagal stimulation of the intrinsic plexuses promotes increased secretion of ACh, which leads to increased secretion of HCl and pepsinogen by the secretory cells. Second, vagal stimulation of the G cells within the PGA causes the release of gastrin, which further enhances secretion of HCl and pepsinogen, with the effect on HCl being potentiated (made stronger) by gastrin promoting the release of histamine (▲ Table 15-3).

**GASTRIC PHASE OF GASTRIC SECRETION** The gastric phase of gastric secretion begins when food actually reaches the stomach. Stimuli acting in the stomach—namely, *protein, distension, caffeine, and alcohol*—increase gastric secretion by overlapping efferent pathways. For example, protein in the stomach, the most potent stimulus, stimulates chemoreceptors that activate the intrinsic nerve plexuses, which in turn stimulate the secretory cells. Furthermore, protein brings about activation of the extrinsic vagal fibers to the stomach. Vagal activity further enhances intrinsic nerve stimulation of the secretory cells and triggers the release of gastrin. Protein also directly stimulates the release of gastrin. Gastrin, in turn, is a powerful stimulus for further HCl and pepsinogen secretion and calls forth release of histamine, which also increases HCl secretion. Through these synergistic and overlapping pathways, protein promotes the secretion of a highly acidic, pepsin-rich gastric juice, which continues digestion of the protein that first initiated the process (▲ Table 15-3).

When the stomach is distended with protein-rich food that needs to be digested, these secretory responses are appropriate. Caffeine and, to lesser extent, alcohol also stimulate the secretion of a highly acidic gastric juice, even when no food is present. This unnecessary acid can irritate the linings of the stomach and duodenum. For this reason, people with ulcers or gastric hyperacidity should avoid caffeinated and alcoholic beverages.

**INTESTINAL PHASE OF GASTRIC SECRETION** The intestinal phase of gastric secretion encompasses the factors originating in the small intestine that influence gastric secretion. Whereas the

## ▲ Table 15-3 Stimulation of Gastric Secretion

Phase	Stimuli	Excitatory Mechanism for Enhancing Gastric Secretion
<b>Cephalic Phase of Gastric Secretion</b>	In the head—seeing, smelling, tasting, chewing, swallowing food	
<b>Gastric Phase of Gastric Secretion</b>	In the stomach—protein, distension, caffeine, alcohol	

other phases are excitatory, this phase is inhibitory. The intestinal phase is important in helping shut off the flow of gastric juices as chyme begins to be emptied into the small intestine, a topic to which we now turn.

### Gastric secretion gradually decreases as food empties from the stomach into the intestine.

You now know what factors turn on gastric secretion before and during a meal, but how is the flow of gastric juices shut off when they are no longer needed? Gastric secretion is gradually reduced in three ways as the stomach empties (▲ Table 15-4):

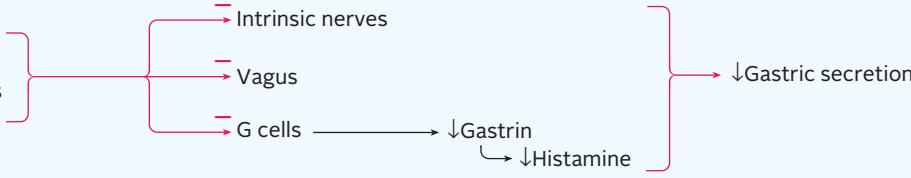
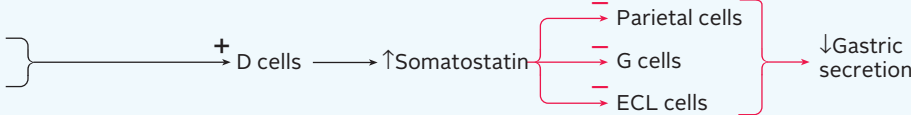
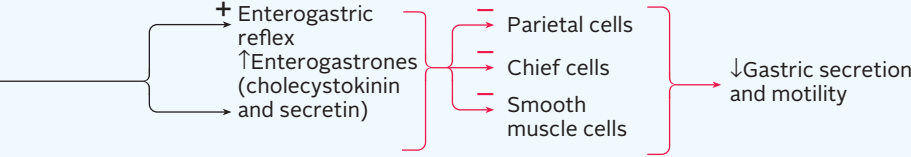
1. As the meal is gradually emptied into the duodenum, the major stimulus for enhanced gastric secretion—the presence of protein in the stomach—is withdrawn.
2. After foods leave the stomach and gastric juices accumulate to such an extent that gastric pH falls to a very low point, somatostatin is released. As a result of somatostatin's inhibitory effects, gastric secretion declines.

3. The same stimuli that inhibit gastric motility (fat, acid, hypertonicity, or distension in the duodenum brought about by emptying of stomach contents into the duodenum) inhibit gastric secretion as well. The enterogastric reflex and the entero-gastrones suppress the gastric secretory cells while they simultaneously reduce the strength of antral peristalsis. This inhibitory response is the intestinal phase of gastric secretion.

### The gastric mucosal barrier protects the stomach lining from gastric secretions.

How can the stomach contain strong acid contents and proteolytic enzymes without destroying itself? You already learned that mucus provides a protective physical coating. Furthermore, the surface mucus-secreting cells secrete  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  that is trapped in the mucus and neutralizes acid in the vicinity. Other barriers to mucosal acid damage are provided by the mucosal lining itself. First, the luminal membranes of the gastric mucosal cells are almost impermeable to  $\text{H}^+$ , so acid cannot penetrate into the cells and damage them. Second, the lateral edges

## ▲ Table 15-4 Inhibition of Gastric Secretion

Region	Stimuli	Inhibitory Mechanism for Reducing Gastric Secretion
<b>Body and Antrum</b>	Removal of protein and distension as the stomach empties	
<b>Antrum and Duodenum</b>	Accumulation of acid	
<b>Duodenum (Intestinal Phase of Gastric Secretion)</b>	Fat Acid Hypertonicity Distension	

of these cells are joined near their luminal borders by tight junctions, so acid cannot diffuse between the cells from the lumen into the underlying submucosa (see p. 48). The properties of the gastric mucosa that enable the stomach to contain acid without injuring itself constitute the **gastric mucosal barrier** (● Figure 15-10). These protective mechanisms are further enhanced by replacement of the entire stomach lining every 3 days. Because of rapid mucosal turnover, cells are usually replaced before they are exposed to the wear and tear of harsh gastric conditions long enough to suffer damage.

The gastric mucosal barrier occasionally is broken and the gastric wall is injured by its acidic and enzymatic contents. When this occurs, an erosion, or **peptic ulcer**, of the stomach wall results. Excessive gastric reflux into the esophagus and dumping of excessive acidic gastric contents into the duodenum can lead to peptic ulcers in these locations as well. (For a further discussion of ulcers, see the boxed feature on p. 456, Beyond the Basics.)

We now turn to the remaining two digestive processes in the stomach, gastric digestion and absorption.

### Carbohydrate digestion continues in the body of the stomach; protein digestion begins in the antrum.

Two separate digestive processes take place within the stomach. In the body of the stomach, food remains in a semisolid mass because peristaltic contractions in this region are too weak for mixing to occur. Because food is not mixed with gastric secretions in the body of the stomach, little protein digestion occurs here. In the interior of the mass, however, carbohydrate digestion continues under the influence of salivary amylase. Even though acid inactivates salivary amylase, the unmixed interior of the food mass is free of acid. Food is not mixed with HCl until the gastric contents reach the antrum.

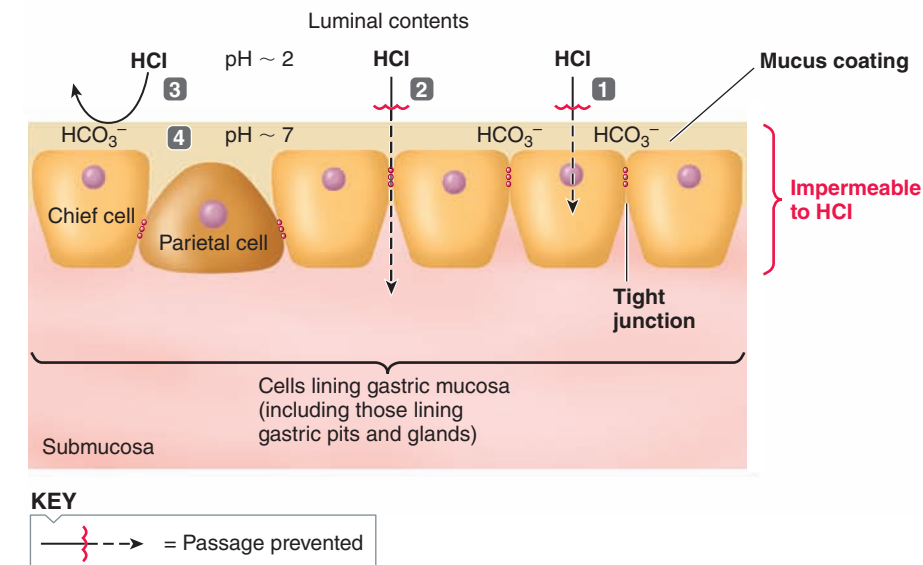
Digestion by the gastric juice itself is accomplished in the antrum of the stomach, where the food is thoroughly mixed with HCl and pepsin, beginning protein digestion.

### The stomach absorbs alcohol and aspirin but no food.

No food or water is absorbed into the blood through the stomach mucosa. However, two noteworthy nonnutrient substances are absorbed directly by the stomach—*ethyl alcohol* and *aspirin*. Alcohol is somewhat lipid soluble, so it can diffuse through the lipid membranes of the epithelial cells that line the stomach and can enter the blood through the submucosal capillaries. Although alcohol can be absorbed by the gastric mucosa, it can be absorbed even more rapidly by the small-intestine mucosa because the surface area for absorption in the small intestine is greater than in the stomach. Thus, alcohol absorption occurs more slowly if gastric emptying is delayed so that the alcohol remains in the more slowly absorbing stomach longer. Because fat is the most potent duodenal stimulus for inhibiting gastric motility, consuming fat-rich foods (for example, whole milk, pizza, or nuts) before or during alcohol ingestion delays gastric emptying and prevents the alcohol from producing its effects as rapidly.

Another category of substances absorbed by the gastric mucosa includes weak acids, most notably *acetylsalicylic acid* (aspirin). In the highly acidic environment of the stomach lumen, weak acids are lipid soluble, so they can be absorbed quickly by crossing the plasma membranes of the epithelial cells that line the stomach. Most other drugs are not absorbed until they reach the small intestine, so they do not begin to take effect as quickly.

Having completed our coverage of the stomach, we move to the next part of the digestive tract, the small intestine and the accessory digestive organs that release their secretions into the small-intestine lumen.



The components of the gastric mucosal barrier enable the stomach to contain acid without injuring itself:

- 1 The luminal membranes of the gastric mucosal cells are impermeable to H<sup>+</sup> so that HCl cannot penetrate into the cells.
- 2 The cells are joined by tight junctions that prevent HCl from penetrating between them.
- 3 A mucus coating over the gastric mucosa serves as a physical barrier to acid penetration.
- 4 The HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>-rich mucus also serves as a chemical barrier that neutralizes acid in the vicinity of the mucosa. Even when luminal pH is 2, the mucus pH is 7.

● FIGURE 15-10 Gastric mucosal barrier.



## Beyond the Basics

**Peptic ulcers** are erosions that typically begin in the mucosal lining of the stomach and may penetrate into the deeper layers of the stomach wall. They occur when the gastric mucosal barrier is disrupted; thus, pepsin and HCl act on the stomach wall instead of food in the lumen. Frequent backflow of acidic gastric juices into the esophagus or excess unneutralized acid from the stomach in the duodenum can lead to peptic ulcers in these sites as well.

In a surprising discovery in the early 1990s, the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori* was pinpointed as the cause of more than 80% of all peptic ulcers. In the United States, 30% of the population harbors *H. pylori*. Those who have this slow bacterium have a risk of developing an ulcer within 10 to 20 years of acquiring the infection that is 3 to 12 times greater than the risk for those without the bacterium. They are also at increased risk of developing stomach cancer.

For years, scientists had overlooked the possibility that ulcers could be triggered by an infectious agent, because bacteria typically cannot survive in a strongly acidic environment such as the stomach lumen. As an exception, *H. pylori* exploits several strategies to survive in this hostile environment. First, these organisms are motile, being equipped with four to six flagella (whiplike appendages; see the accompanying figure), which enable them to tunnel through and take up residence under the stomach's thick layer of alkaline mucus. Here, they are protected from the highly acidic gastric contents. Second, *H. pylori* preferentially settles in the antrum, which has no acid-producing parietal cells, although HCl from the upper parts of the stomach does reach the antrum. Third, these bacteria produce *urease*, an enzyme that breaks down urea, an end product of protein metabolism, into ammonia (NH<sub>3</sub>) and CO<sub>2</sub>. Ammonia serves as a buffer (see p. 433) that neutralizes stomach acid locally in the vicinity of the *H. pylori*.

*H. pylori* contributes to ulcer formation in part by secreting toxins that cause

## Ulcers: When Bugs Break the Barrier



***Helicobacter pylori*.** *Helicobacter pylori*, the bacterium responsible for most cases of peptic ulcers, has flagella that enable it to tunnel beneath the protective layer of mucus that coats the stomach lining, protecting it from the harsh luminal contents.

a persistent inflammation, or *chronic superficial gastritis*, at the site it colonizes. *H. pylori* further weakens the gastric mucosal barrier by disrupting the tight junctions between the gastric epithelial cells, thereby making the gastric mucosa leakier than normal.

Alone or in conjunction with this infectious culprit, other factors are known to contribute to ulcer formation. Frequent exposure to some chemicals can break the gastric mucosal barrier; the most important of these are ethyl alcohol and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), such as aspirin, ibuprofen, or more potent medications for the treatment of arthritis or other chronic inflammatory processes. The barrier frequently breaks in patients with preexisting debilitating conditions, such as severe injuries or infections. Persistent stressful

situations are often associated with ulcer formation, presumably because emotional response to stress can stimulate excessive gastric secretion.

When the gastric mucosal barrier is broken, acid and pepsin diffuse into the mucosa and underlying submucosa, with serious pathophysiological consequences. The surface erosion, or ulcer, progressively enlarges as increasing levels of acid and pepsin continue to damage the stomach wall. Two of the most serious consequences of ulcers are (1) hemorrhage resulting from damage to submucosal capillaries and (2) perforation, or complete erosion through the stomach wall, resulting in the escape of potent gastric contents into the abdominal cavity.

Treatment of ulcers includes antibiotics, H-2 histamine receptor blockers, and proton-pump inhibitors. With the discovery of the infectious component of most ulcers, antibiotics are now a treatment of choice. The other drugs are also used alone or in combination with antibiotics.

Two decades before the discovery of *H. pylori*, researchers discovered an antihistamine (*cimetidine*) that specifically blocks H-2 receptors, the type of receptors that bind histamine released from the stomach. These receptors differ from H-1 receptors, which bind the histamine involved in allergic respiratory disorders. Accordingly, traditional antihistamines used for respiratory allergies (such as hay fever and asthma) are not effective against ulcers, nor is cimetidine useful for respiratory problems.

Another recent class of drugs used in treating ulcers inhibits acid secretion by directly blocking the pump that transports H<sup>+</sup> into the stomach lumen. These so-called proton-pump inhibitors (H<sup>+</sup> is a naked proton without its electron) help reduce the corrosive effect of HCl on the exposed tissue.

## Pancreatic and Biliary Secretions

When gastric contents are emptied into the small intestine, they are mixed not only with juice secreted by the small-intestine mucosa but also with the secretions of the exocrine pancreas and liver that are released into the duodenal lumen. We discuss the roles of each of these accessory digestive organs before we examine the contributions of the small intestine itself.

### The pancreas is a mixture of exocrine and endocrine tissue.

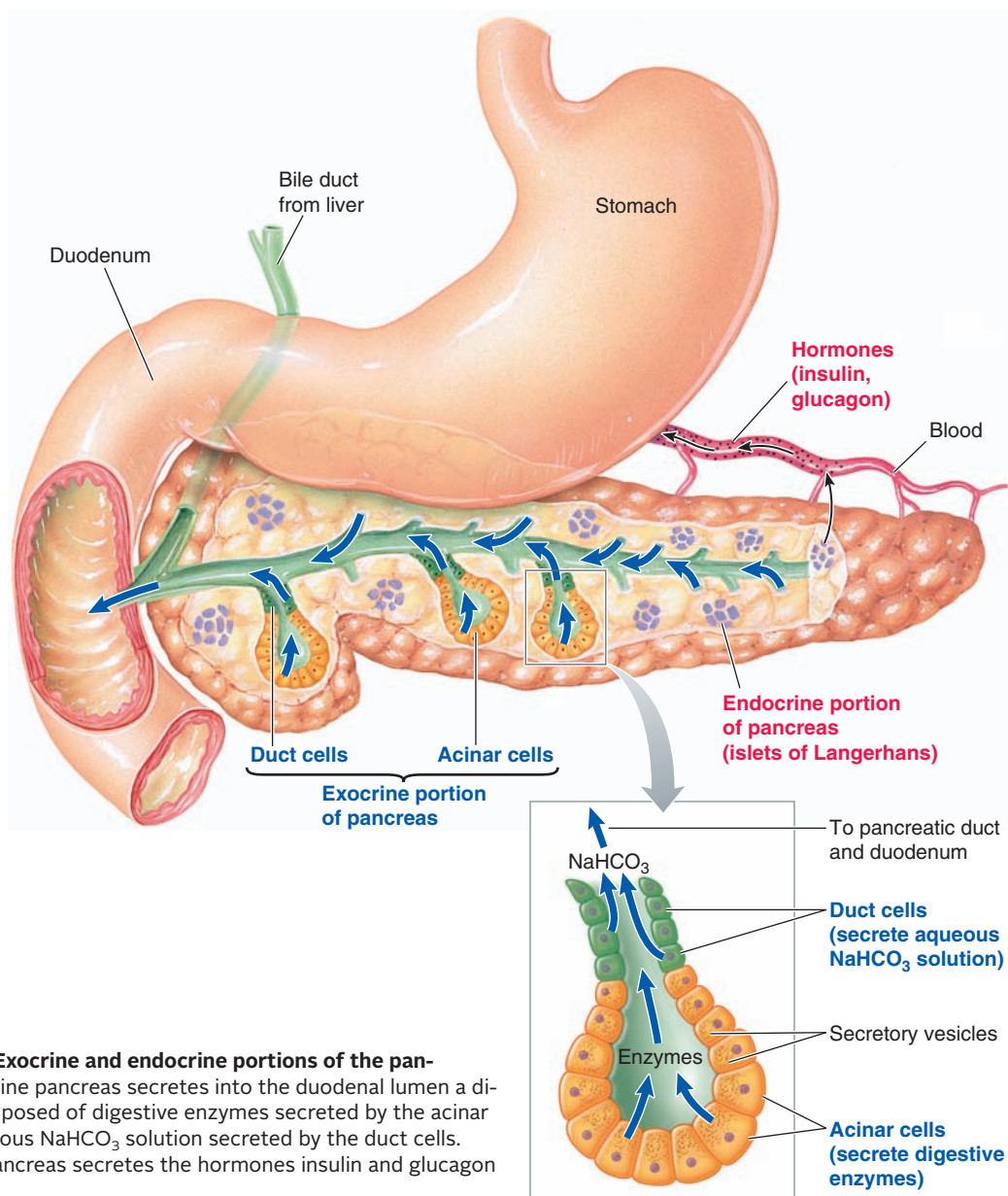
The **pancreas** is an elongated gland that lies behind and below the stomach, above the first loop of the duodenum (● Figure 15-11). This mixed gland contains both exocrine and endocrine tissue. The predominant exocrine part consists of grapelike clusters of secretory cells that form sacs known as **acini**, which

connect to ducts that eventually empty into the duodenum. The smaller endocrine part consists of isolated islands of endocrine tissue, the **islets of Langerhans**, which are dispersed throughout the pancreas. The most important hormones secreted by the islet cells are insulin and glucagon (see Chapter 17).

### The exocrine pancreas secretes digestive enzymes and an aqueous alkaline fluid.

The **exocrine pancreas** secretes a pancreatic juice consisting of two components: (1) *pancreatic enzymes* actively secreted by the *acinar cells* that form the acini and (2) an *aqueous alkaline solution* actively secreted by the *duct cells* that line the pancreatic ducts. The aqueous (watery) alkaline component is rich in sodium bicarbonate ( $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ).

Like pepsinogen, pancreatic enzymes are stored within secretory vesicles after being produced and then are released by



● **FIGURE 15-11 Exocrine and endocrine portions of the pancreas.** The exocrine pancreas secretes into the duodenal lumen a digestive juice composed of digestive enzymes secreted by the acinar cells and an aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution secreted by the duct cells. The endocrine pancreas secretes the hormones insulin and glucagon into the blood.

exocytosis as needed. These pancreatic enzymes are important because they can almost completely digest food in the absence of all other digestive secretions. The acinar cells secrete three types of pancreatic enzymes capable of digesting all three categories of foodstuffs: (1) *proteolytic enzymes* for protein digestion, (2) *pancreatic amylase* for carbohydrate digestion, and (3) *pancreatic lipase* for fat digestion.

**PANCREATIC PROTEOLYTIC ENZYMES** The three major pancreatic **proteolytic enzymes** are *trypsinogen*, *chymotrypsinogen*, and *procarboxypeptidase*, each of which is secreted in an inactive form. When **trypsinogen** is secreted into the duodenal lumen, it is activated to its active enzyme form, **trypsin**, by **enterokinase**, an enzyme embedded in the luminal membrane of the cells that line the duodenal mucosa. Trypsin then autocatalytically activates more trypsinogen. Like pepsinogen, trypsinogen must remain inactive within the pancreas to prevent this proteolytic enzyme from digesting the proteins of the cells in which it is formed. Trypsinogen remains inactive, therefore, until it reaches the duodenal lumen, where enterokinase triggers the activation process, which then proceeds autocatalytically. As further protection, the pancreas also produces a chemical known as **trypsin inhibitor**, which blocks trypsin's actions if spontaneous activation of trypsinogen inadvertently occurs within the pancreas.

**Chymotrypsinogen** and **procarboxypeptidase**, the other pancreatic proteolytic enzymes, are converted by trypsin to their active forms, **chymotrypsin** and **carboxypeptidase**, respectively, within the duodenal lumen. Thus, once enterokinase has activated some of the trypsin, trypsin carries out the rest of the activation process.

Each of these proteolytic enzymes attacks different peptide linkages. The end products that result from this action are a mixture of small peptide chains and amino acids. Mucus secreted by the intestinal cells protects against digestion of the small-intestine wall by the activated proteolytic enzymes.

**PANCREATIC AMYLASE** Like salivary amylase, **pancreatic amylase** contributes to carbohydrate digestion by converting polysaccharides into the disaccharide maltose. Amylase is secreted in the pancreatic juice in an active form because active amylase does not endanger the secretory cells. These cells do not contain any polysaccharides.

**PANCREATIC LIPASE** **Pancreatic lipase** is extremely important because it is the only enzyme secreted throughout the entire digestive system that can digest fat. (In humans, insignificant amounts of lipase are secreted in the saliva and gastric juice.) Pancreatic lipase hydrolyzes dietary triglycerides into monoglycerides and free fatty acids, which are the absorbable units of fat. Like amylase, lipase is secreted in its active form because there is no risk of pancreatic self-digestion by lipase. Triglycerides are not a structural component of pancreatic cells.



**PANCREATIC INSUFFICIENCY** When pancreatic enzymes are deficient, digestion of food is incomplete. Because the pancreas is the only significant source of

lipase, pancreatic enzyme deficiency results in serious maldigestion of fats. The main clinical manifestation of pancreatic exocrine insufficiency is **steatorrhea**, or excessive undigested fat in the feces. Digestion of protein and carbohydrates is impaired to a lesser degree because salivary, gastric, and small-intestinal enzymes contribute to the digestion of these two foodstuffs.

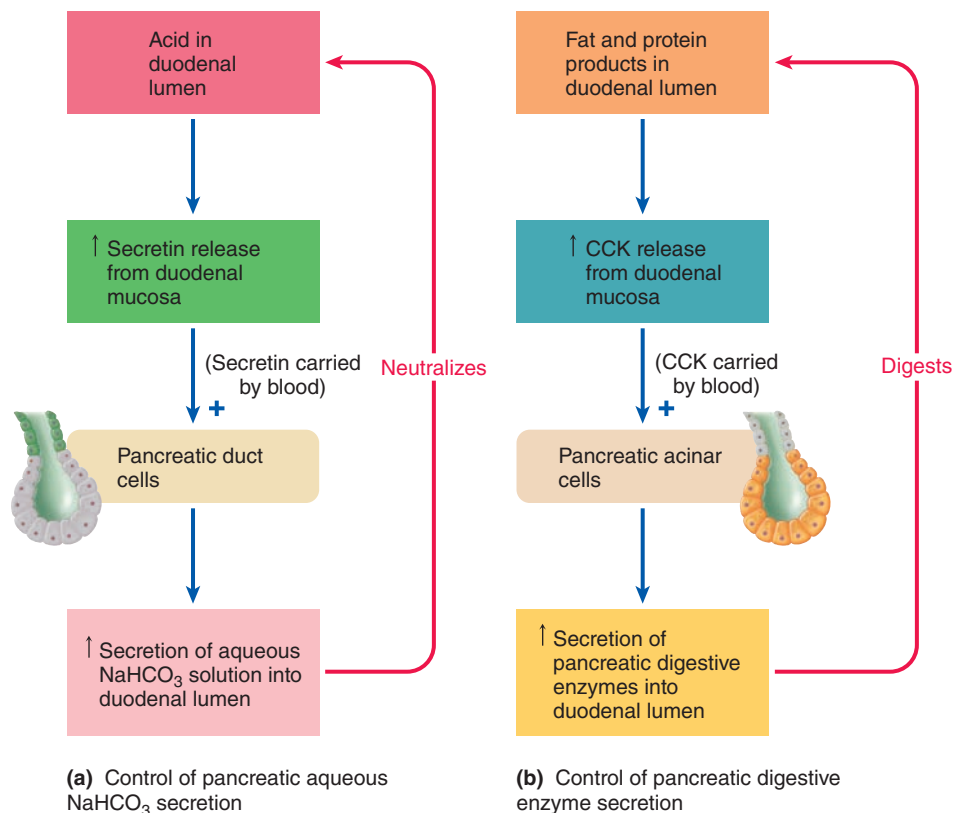
**PANCREATIC AQUEOUS ALKALINE SECRETION** Pancreatic enzymes function best in a neutral or slightly alkaline environment, yet the highly acidic gastric contents are emptied into the duodenal lumen in the vicinity of pancreatic enzyme entry into the duodenum. This acidic chyme must be neutralized quickly in the duodenal lumen, not only to allow optimal functioning of the pancreatic enzymes but also to prevent acid damage to the duodenal mucosa. The alkaline ( $\text{NaHCO}_3$ -rich) fluid secreted by the pancreatic duct cells into the duodenal lumen serves the important function of neutralizing the acidic chyme as the latter is emptied into the duodenum from the stomach. This aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  secretion is by far the largest component of pancreatic secretion. The volume of pancreatic secretion ranges between 1 and 2 liters per day, depending on the type and degree of stimulation.

#### Pancreatic exocrine secretion is regulated by secretin and CCK.

Pancreatic exocrine secretion is regulated primarily by hormonal mechanisms. A small amount of parasympathetically induced pancreatic secretion occurs during the cephalic phase of digestion. However, the predominant stimulation of pancreatic secretion occurs during the intestinal phase of digestion when chyme is in the small intestine. The release of the two major enterogastrones, secretin and cholecystokinin (CCK), in response to chyme in the duodenum plays the central role in controlling pancreatic secretion (● Figure 15-12).

**ROLE OF SECRETIN IN PANCREATIC SECRETION** Of the factors that stimulate enterogastrone release (fat, acid, hypertonicity, and distension), the primary stimulus specifically for secretin release is acid in the duodenum. Secretin, in turn, is carried by the blood to the pancreas, where it stimulates the duct cells to markedly increase their secretion of a  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ -rich aqueous fluid into the duodenum. Even though other stimuli may cause the release of secretin, it is appropriate that the most potent stimulus is acid, because secretin promotes the alkaline pancreatic secretion that neutralizes the acid. This mechanism provides a control system for maintaining neutrality of the chyme in the intestine.

**ROLE OF CCK IN PANCREATIC SECRETION** Cholecystokinin is important in regulating pancreatic digestive enzyme secretion. The main stimulus for release of CCK from the duodenal mucosa is the presence of fat and, to a lesser extent, protein products. The circulatory system transports CCK to the pancreas, where it stimulates the pancreatic acinar cells to increase digestive enzyme secretion. Among these enzymes are lipase and the



● **FIGURE 15-12** Hormonal control of pancreatic exocrine secretion.

proteolytic enzymes, which appropriately further digest the fat and protein that initiated the response and help digest carbohydrate. In contrast to fat and protein, carbohydrate does not directly influence pancreatic digestive enzyme secretion.

We now look at the contributions of the remaining accessory digestive unit, the liver and gallbladder.

### The liver performs various important functions, including bile production.

Besides pancreatic juice, the other secretory product emptied into the duodenal lumen is **bile**. The **biliary system** includes the *liver*, the *gallbladder*, and associated ducts.

**LIVER FUNCTIONS** The **liver** is the largest and most important metabolic organ in the body; it can be viewed as the body's major biochemical factory. Its importance to the digestive system is its secretion of *bile salts*, which aid fat digestion and absorption. The liver also performs a variety of functions not related to digestion, including the following:

1. Metabolic processing of the major categories of nutrients (carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids) after their absorption from the digestive tract (see p. 471)
2. Detoxifying or degrading body wastes and hormones, as well as drugs and other foreign compounds
3. Synthesizing plasma proteins, including those needed for blood clotting (see p. 306), those that transport steroid and thyroid hormones and cholesterol in the blood (see pp. 96 and 256), and angiotensinogen important in the salt-conserving

renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system (see p. 393)

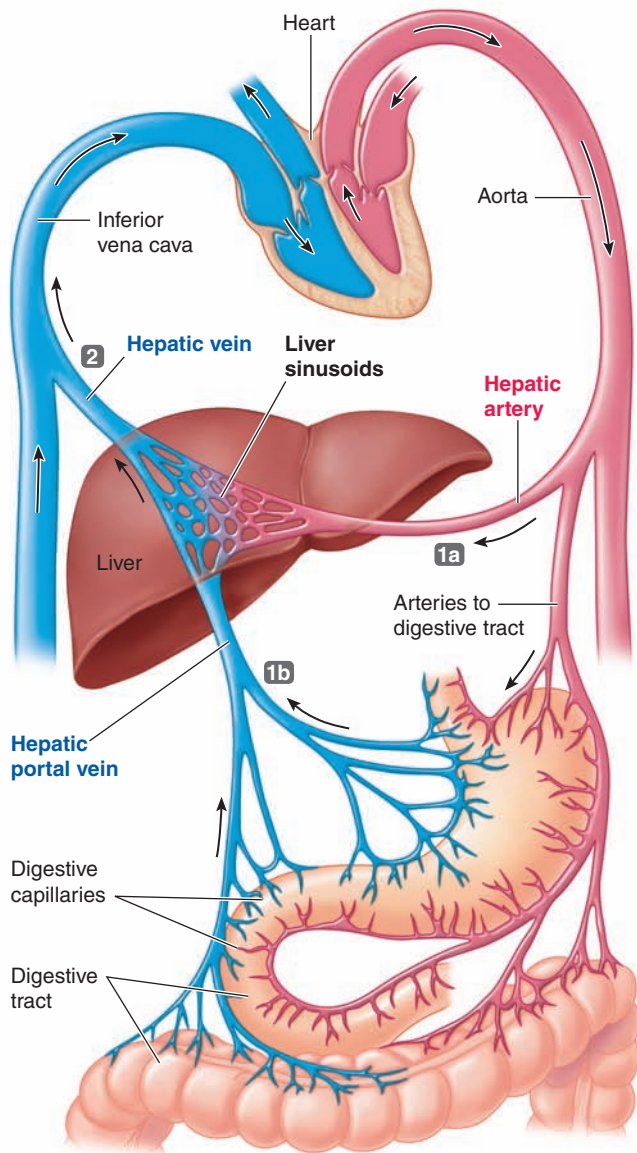
4. Storing glycogen, fats, iron, copper, and many vitamins (see p. 35)
5. Activating vitamin D, which the liver does in conjunction with the kidneys (see p. 539)
6. Removing bacteria and worn-out red blood cells, thanks to its resident macrophages (see p. 310)
7. Secreting the hormones thrombopoietin (stimulates platelet production; see p. 304) and insulin-like growth factor (stimulates growth; see p. 507)
8. Excreting cholesterol and bilirubin, the latter being a breakdown product derived from the destruction of worn-out red blood cells (see pp. 24 and 300).

Given this range of complex functions, there is amazingly little specialization among cells within the liver. Each liver cell, or **hepatocyte**, performs the same wide variety of

metabolic and secretory tasks (*hepato* means “liver”; *cyte* means “cell”). The specialization comes from the highly developed organelles within each hepatocyte. The only liver function not accomplished by the hepatocytes is the phagocytic activity carried out by the resident macrophages.

**LIVER BLOOD FLOW** To carry out these wide-ranging tasks, the anatomic organization of the liver permits each hepatocyte to be in direct contact with blood from two sources: arterial blood coming from the aorta and venous blood coming directly from the digestive tract. Like other cells, the hepatocytes receive fresh arterial blood via the hepatic artery, which supplies their oxygen and delivers blood-borne metabolites for hepatic processing. Venous blood also enters the liver by the **hepatic portal system**, a unique and complex vascular connection between the digestive tract and the liver (● Figure 15-13). The veins draining the digestive tract do not directly join the inferior vena cava, the large vein that returns blood to the heart. Instead, the veins from the stomach and intestine enter the *hepatic portal vein*, which carries the products absorbed from the digestive tract directly to the liver for processing, storage, or detoxification before they gain access to the general circulation. Within the liver, the portal vein again breaks up into a capillary network (the liver *sinusoids*) to permit exchange between the blood and the hepatocytes before draining into the hepatic vein, which joins the inferior vena cava.

**LIVER ORGANIZATION** The liver is organized into functional units known as **lobules**, which are hexagonal arrangements of tissue surrounding a central vein and delineated by vascular



The liver receives blood from two sources:

**1a** Arterial blood, which provides the liver's  $O_2$  supply and carries blood-borne metabolites for hepatic processing, is delivered by the **hepatic artery**.

**1b** Venous blood draining the digestive tract is carried by the **hepatic portal vein** to the liver for processing and storage of newly absorbed nutrients.

**2** Blood leaves the liver via the **hepatic vein**.

● **FIGURE 15-13** Schematic representation of liver blood flow.

and bile channels (● Figure 15-14a). At each of the six outer corners of the lobule are three vessels: a branch of the hepatic artery, a branch of the hepatic portal vein, and a bile duct. Blood from the branches of both the hepatic artery and the portal vein flows from the periphery of the lobule into large, expanded capillary spaces called **sinusoids**, which run between rows of liver cells to the central vein like spokes on a bicycle wheel (● Figure 15-14b). The hepatocytes are arranged between the

sinusoids in plates two cell layers thick so that each lateral edge faces a sinusoidal pool of blood. The central veins of all the liver lobules converge to form the hepatic vein, which carries the blood away from the liver. The thin bile-carrying channel, a **bile canaliculus**, runs between the cells within each hepatic plate. Hepatocytes continuously secrete bile into these thin channels, which carry the bile to a bile duct at the periphery of the lobule. The bile ducts from the various lobules converge to eventually form the *common bile duct*, which transports the bile from the liver to the duodenum. Each hepatocyte is in contact with a sinusoid on one side and a bile canaliculus on the other side.

**Bile is continuously secreted by the liver and is diverted to the gallbladder between meals.**

The liver continuously secretes bile, even between meals. The opening of the bile duct into the duodenum is guarded by the **sphincter of Oddi**, which prevents bile from entering the duodenum except during digestion of meals (● Figure 15-15). When this sphincter is closed, bile secreted by the liver hits the closed sphincter and is diverted back up into the **gallbladder**, a small, saclike structure tucked beneath but not directly connected to the liver. Thus, bile is not transported directly from the liver to the gallbladder. Bile is subsequently stored and concentrated in the gallbladder between meals. After a meal, bile enters the duodenum as a result of the combined effects of relaxation of the sphincter of Oddi, gallbladder contraction, and increased bile secretion by the liver. The amount of bile secreted per day ranges from 250 ml to 1 liter, depending on the degree of stimulation.

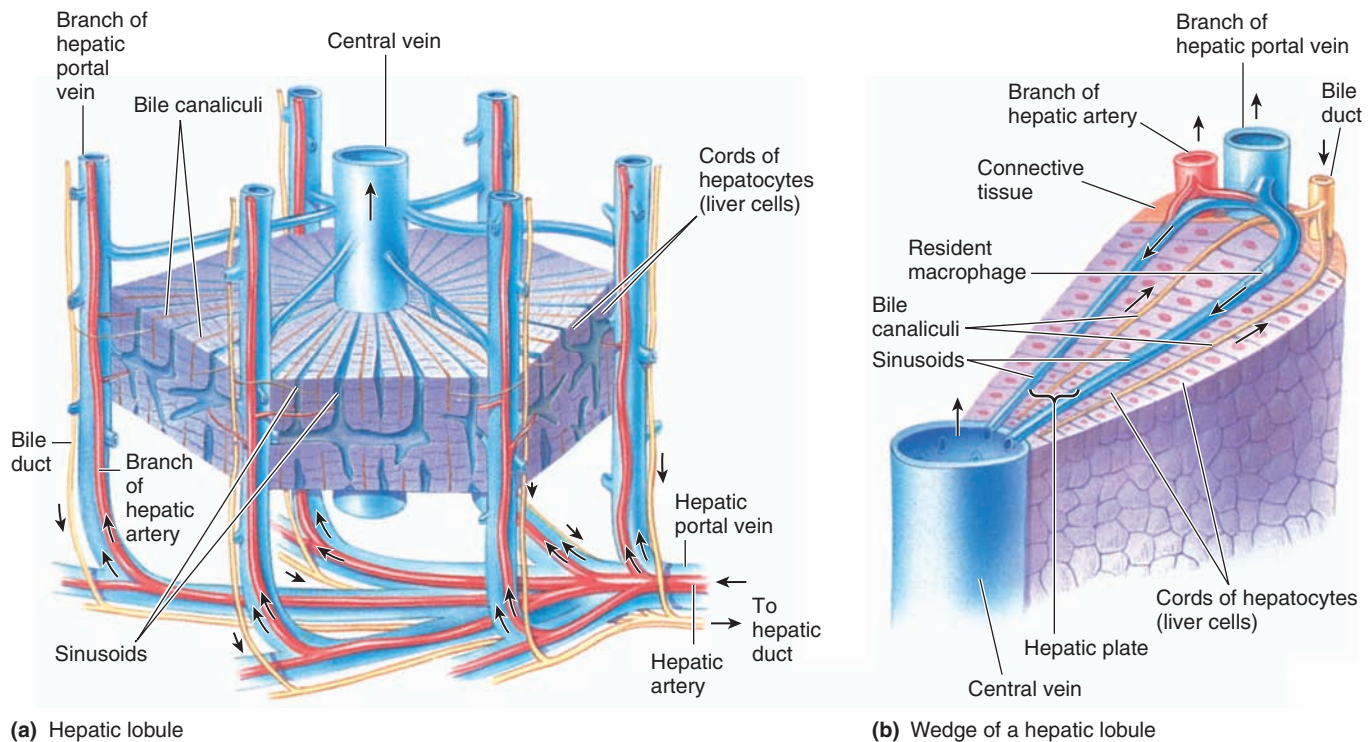


Because the gallbladder stores concentrated bile, it is the primary site for precipitation of concentrated bile constituents into **gallstones**. Fortunately, the gallbladder does not play an essential digestive role, so its removal as a treatment for gallstones or other gallbladder disease presents no particular problem. After gallbladder removal, the bile secreted between meals is stored instead in the common bile duct, which becomes dilated.

**Bile salts are recycled through the enterohepatic circulation.**

Bile contains several organic constituents, namely, *bile salts*, *cholesterol*, *lecithin* (a phospholipid), and *bilirubin* (all derived from hepatocyte activity) in an *aqueous alkaline fluid* (added by the duct cells). Even though bile does not contain any digestive enzymes, it is important for the digestion and absorption of fats, primarily through the activity of bile salts.

**Bile salts** are derivatives of cholesterol. They are actively secreted into the bile and eventually enter the duodenum, along with the other biliary constituents. Following their participation in fat digestion and absorption, most bile salts are reabsorbed into the blood by special active-transport mechanisms located only in the terminal ileum. From here, bile salts are returned by the hepatic portal system to the liver, which resecreted them into the bile. This recycling of bile salts between the small intestine and the liver is called the **enterohepatic circulation** (*entero* means “intestine”; *hepatic* means “liver”) (● Figure 15-15).



(a) Hepatic lobule

(b) Wedge of a hepatic lobule

● **FIGURE 15-14** Anatomy of the liver.

The total amount of bile salts in the body averages about 3 to 4 g, yet 3 to 15 g of bile salts may be emptied into the duodenum in a single meal. On average, bile salts cycle between the liver and the small intestine twice during the digestion of a typical meal. Usually, only about 5% of the secreted bile escapes into the feces daily. These lost bile salts are replaced by new bile salts synthesized by the liver; thus, the size of the pool of bile salts is kept constant.

### Bile salts aid fat digestion and absorption.

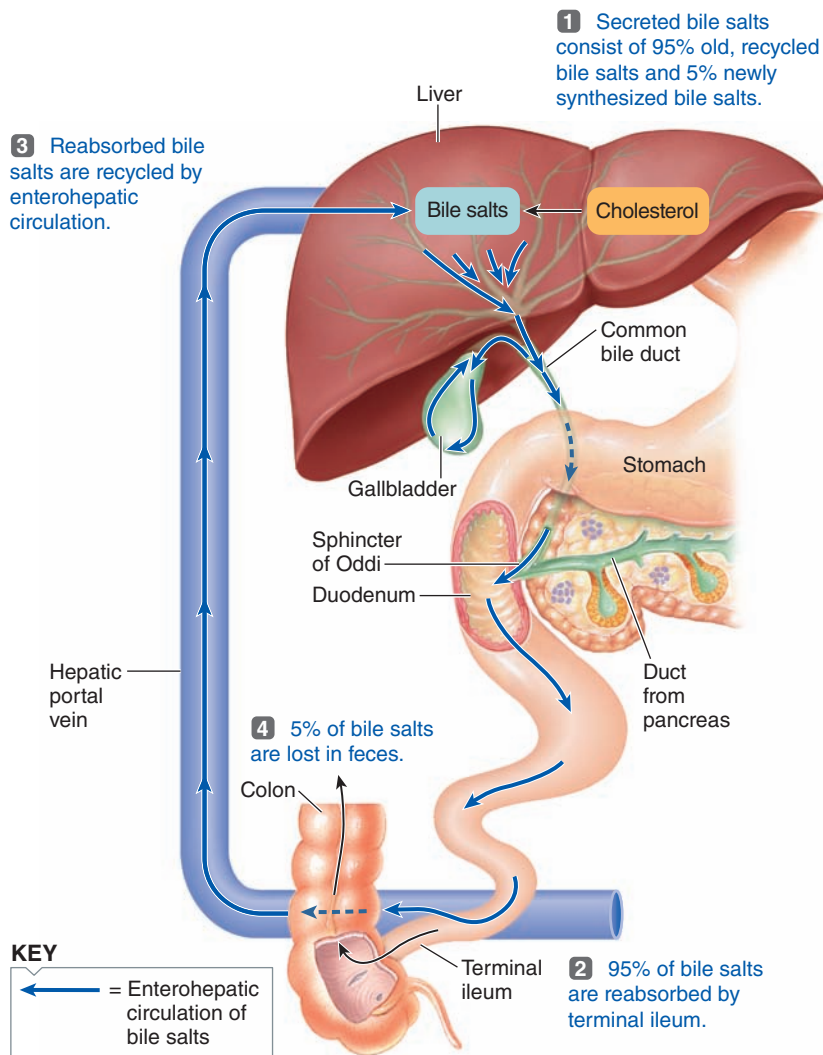
Bile salts aid fat digestion through their detergent action (emulsification) and facilitate fat absorption by participating in the formation of micelles. Both functions are related to the structure of bile salts. Let us see how.

**DETERGENT ACTION OF BILE SALTS** The term **detergent action** refers to bile salts' ability to convert large fat globules into a **lipid emulsion** consisting of many small fat droplets suspended in the aqueous chyme, thus increasing the surface area available for attack by pancreatic lipase. Fat globules, no matter their size, are made up primarily of undigested triglyceride molecules. To digest fat, lipase must come into direct contact with the triglyceride molecule. Because triglycerides are not soluble in water, they tend to aggregate into large droplets in the watery environment of the small-intestine lumen. If bile salts did not emulsify these large droplets, lipase could act on the triglyceride molecules only at the surface of the large droplets, and fat digestion would be greatly prolonged.

Bile salts exert a detergent action similar to that of the detergent you use to break up grease when you wash dishes. A bile salt molecule contains a lipid-soluble part (a steroid derived

from cholesterol) plus a negatively charged, water-soluble part. Bile salts *adsorb* on the surface of a fat droplet; that is, the lipid-soluble part of the bile salt dissolves in the fat droplet, leaving the charged water-soluble part projecting from the surface of the droplet (● Figure 15-16a). Intestinal mixing movements break up large fat droplets into smaller ones. These small droplets would quickly recombine were it not for bile salts adsorbing on the surface of each droplet and creating a shell of water-soluble negative charges. Because like charges repel, these negatively charged groups on the droplet surfaces cause the fat droplets to repel one another (● Figure 15-16b). This electrical repulsion prevents the small droplets from recombining into large fat droplets and thus produces a lipid emulsion that increases the surface area available for lipase action.

**MICELLAR FORMATION** Bile salts—along with cholesterol and lecithin, which are also constituents of bile—play an important role in facilitating fat absorption through micellar formation. Like bile salts, lecithin (a phospholipid similar to the ones in the lipid bilayer of the plasma membrane) has both a lipid-soluble and a water-soluble part, whereas cholesterol is almost insoluble in water. In a micelle, the bile salts and lecithin aggregate in small clusters with their fat-soluble parts huddled together in the middle to form a hydrophobic (“water-fearing”) core, while their water-soluble parts form an outer hydrophilic (“water-loving”) shell (● Figure 15-17). A micelle is 3 to 10 nm in diameter, compared to an average diameter of 1000 nm for an emulsified lipid droplet. Micelles are water soluble because of their hydrophilic shells, but they can dissolve water-insoluble (and hence lipid-soluble) substances in their lipid-soluble cores. Micelles thus provide a handy vehicle for carrying water-insoluble substances through the watery luminal contents. The most im-



● **FIGURE 15-15 Enterohepatic circulation of bile salts.** The majority of bile salts are recycled between the liver and the small intestine through the enterohepatic circulation (blue arrows). After participating in fat digestion and absorption, most bile salts are reabsorbed by active transport in the terminal ileum and returned through the hepatic portal vein to the liver, which resecreted them in the bile.

portant lipid-soluble substances carried within micelles are the products of fat digestion (monoglycerides and free fatty acids), as well as fat-soluble vitamins, which are all transported to their sites of absorption by this means. If they did not hitch a ride in the water-soluble micelles, these nutrients would float on the surface of the aqueous chyme (just as oil floats on top of water), never reaching the absorptive surfaces of the small intestine.

In addition, cholesterol, a highly water-insoluble substance, dissolves in the micelle's hydrophobic core. This mechanism is important in cholesterol homeostasis.

### Bile salts are the most potent stimulus for increased bile secretion; CCK promotes gallbladder emptying.

Bile secretion by the liver may be increased by chemical, hormonal, and neural mechanisms:

- **Chemical mechanism (bile salts).** Any substance that increases bile secretion is called a **choleric**. The most potent

choleric is bile salts themselves. Between meals bile is stored in the gallbladder, but during a meal bile is emptied into the duodenum as the gallbladder contracts. After bile salts participate in fat digestion and absorption, they are reabsorbed and returned by the enterohepatic circulation to the liver, where they act as potent choleric to stimulate further bile secretion. Therefore, during a meal, when bile salts are needed and being used, bile secretion by the liver is enhanced.

- **Hormonal mechanism (secretin).** Besides increasing the aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  secretion by the pancreas, secretin stimulates an aqueous alkaline bile secretion by the liver ducts without any corresponding increase in bile salts.

- **Neural mechanism (vagus nerve).** Vagal stimulation of the liver plays a minor role in bile secretion during the cephalic phase of digestion, promoting an increase in liver bile flow before food ever reaches the stomach or intestine.

During digestion of a meal, when chyme reaches the small intestine, the presence of food, especially fat products, in the duodenal lumen triggers the release of CCK. This hormone stimulates relaxation of the sphincter of Oddi and contraction of the gallbladder, so bile is discharged into the duodenum, where it appropriately aids in the digestion and absorption of the fat that initiated the release of CCK.

### Bilirubin is a waste product excreted in the bile.

**Bilirubin**, the other major constituent of bile, does not play a role in digestion but instead is a waste product excreted in the bile. Bilirubin is the primary bile pigment derived from the breakdown of worn-out red blood cells. The typical life span of a red blood cell in the circulatory system is 120 days. Worn-out red blood cells are removed from the blood by the macrophages that line the liver sinusoids and reside in other areas in the body. Bilirubin is the end product from degradation of the heme (iron-containing) part of the hemoglobin contained within these old red blood cells (see p. 299). This bilirubin is extracted from the blood by the hepatocytes and is actively excreted into the bile.

Bilirubin is a yellow pigment that gives bile its color. Within the intestinal tract, this pigment is modified by bacterial enzymes, giving rise to the characteristic brown color of feces. When bile secretion does not occur, as when the bile duct is completely obstructed by a gallstone, the feces are grayish white. A small amount of bilirubin is normally reabsorbed by the intestine back into the blood, and when it is eventually excreted in the urine, it is largely responsible for the urine's yellow color. The kidneys cannot excrete bilirubin until after it has been modified during its passage through the liver and intestine.



If bilirubin is formed more rapidly than it can be excreted, it accumulates in the body and causes **jaundice**. Patients with this condition appear yellowish, with this color being seen most easily in the whites of their eyes. Jaundice can be brought about in three ways:

1. *Prehepatic* (the problem occurs “before the liver”), or *hemolytic jaundice* arises from excessive breakdown (hemolysis) of red blood cells, which results in the liver being presented with more bilirubin than it is capable of excreting.
2. *Hepatic* (the problem is the “liver”) *jaundice* occurs when the liver is diseased and cannot deal with even the normal load of bilirubin.
3. *Posthepatic* (the problem occurs “after the liver”), or *obstructive jaundice* occurs when the bile duct is obstructed, such as by a gallstone, so that bilirubin cannot be eliminated in the feces.

Having looked at the accessory digestive organs that empty their exocrine products into the small-intestine lumen, we now examine the contributions of the small intestine itself.

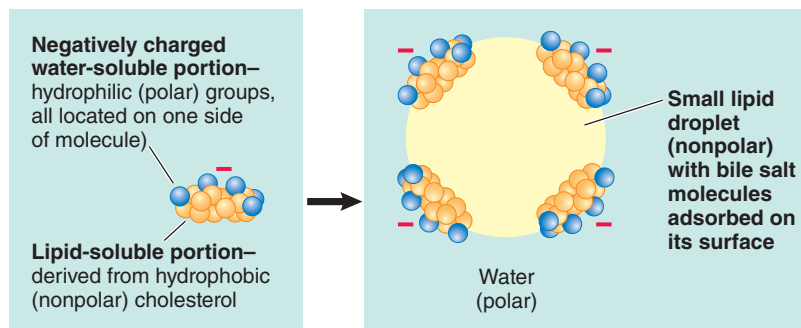
## Small Intestine

The **small intestine** is the site where most digestion and absorption take place. No further digestion is accomplished after the luminal contents pass beyond the small intestine, and no further absorption of ingested nutrients occurs, although the large intestine does absorb small amounts of salt and water. The small intestine lies coiled within the abdominal cavity, extending between the stomach and the large intestine. It is arbitrarily divided into three segments—the **duodenum**, the **jejunum**, and the **ileum**.

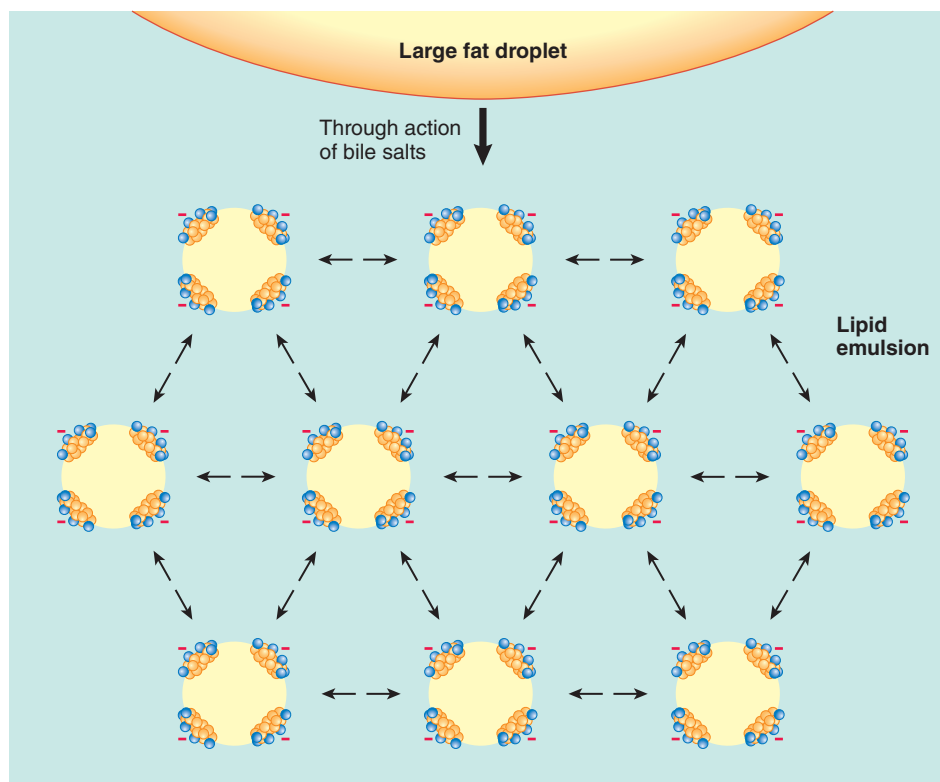
As usual, we examine motility, secretion, digestion, and absorption in the small intestine, in that order. Small-intestine motility includes *segmentation* and the *migrating motility complex*.

### Segmentation contractions mix and slowly propel the chyme.

**Segmentation**, the small intestine’s primary method of motility during digestion of a meal, both mixes and slowly propels the chyme. Segmentation consists of oscillating, ringlike contrac-



(a) Structure of bile salts and their adsorption on the surface of a small lipid droplet

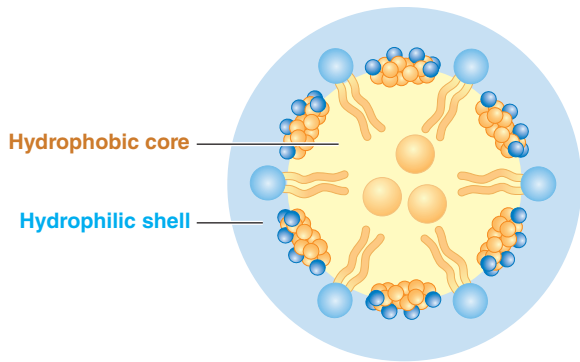


(b) Formation of a lipid emulsion through the action of bile salts

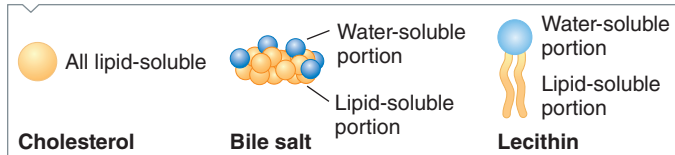
● **FIGURE 15-16 Schematic structure and function of bile salts.** (a) A bile salt consists of a lipid-soluble part that dissolves in the fat droplet and a negatively charged, water-soluble part that projects from the surface of the droplet. (b) When a large fat droplet is broken up into smaller fat droplets by intestinal contractions, bile salts adsorb on the surface of the small droplets, creating shells of negatively charged, water-soluble bile salt components that cause the fat droplets to repel one another. This emulsifying action holds the fat droplets apart and prevents them from re-coalescing, increasing the surface area of exposed fat available for digestion by pancreatic lipase.

tions of the circular smooth muscle along the small intestine’s length; between the contracted segments are relaxed areas containing a small bolus of chyme. The contractile rings occur every few centimeters, dividing the small intestine into segments like a chain of sausages. These contractile rings do not sweep along the length of the intestine as peristaltic waves do. Rather, after a brief period, the contracted segments relax, and ringlike contractions appear in the previously relaxed areas (● Figure 15-18). The new contraction forces the chyme in a previously relaxed segment to move in both directions into the now relaxed adjacent segments. A newly relaxed segment therefore





#### KEY



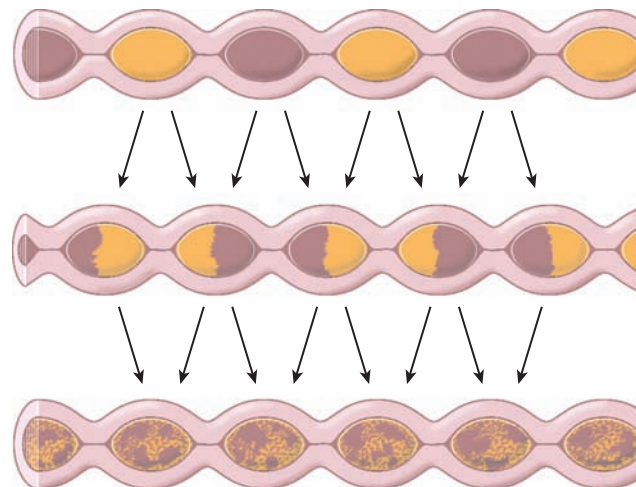
● **FIGURE 15-17 A micelle.** Bile constituents (bile salts, lecithin, and cholesterol) aggregate to form micelles that consist of a hydrophilic (water-soluble) shell and a hydrophobic (lipid-soluble) core. Because the outer shell of a micelle is water soluble, the products of fat digestion, which are not water soluble, can be carried through the watery luminal contents to the absorptive surface of the small intestine by dissolving in the micelle's lipid-soluble core. This figure is not drawn to scale compared to the lipid emulsion droplets in Figure 15-16b. An emulsified fat droplet averages 1000 nm in diameter compared to a micelle, which is 3 to 10 nm in diameter.

receives chyme from both the contracting segment immediately ahead of it and the one immediately behind it. Shortly thereafter, the areas of contraction and relaxation alternate again. In this way, the chyme is chopped, churned, and thoroughly mixed. These contractions can be compared to squeezing a pastry tube with your hands to mix the contents.

**INITIATION AND CONTROL OF SEGMENTATION** Segmentation contractions are initiated by the small intestine's pacemaker cells, which produce a BER similar to the gastric BER that governs peristalsis in the stomach. If the small-intestine BER brings the circular smooth muscle layer to threshold, segmentation contractions are induced, with the frequency of segmentation following the frequency of the BER.

Segmentation is slight or absent between meals but becomes vigorous immediately after a meal. Both the duodenum and the ileum start to segment simultaneously when the meal first enters the small intestine. The duodenum starts to segment primarily in response to local distension caused by the presence of chyme. Segmentation of the empty ileum, in contrast, is brought about by gastrin secreted in response to the presence of chyme in the stomach, a mechanism known as the **gastroileal reflex**. Extrinsic nerves can modify the strength of these contractions. Parasympathetic stimulation enhances segmentation, whereas sympathetic stimulation depresses segmental activity.

**FUNCTIONS OF SEGMENTATION** Segmentation not only mixes but also slowly moves chyme through the small intestine. How can this be, when each segmental contraction propels chyme



● **FIGURE 15-18 Segmentation.** Segmentation consists of ringlike contractions along the length of the small intestine. Within a matter of seconds, the contracted segments relax and the previously relaxed areas contract. These oscillating contractions thoroughly mix the chyme within the small-intestine lumen.

both forward and backward? The chyme slowly progresses forward because the frequency of segmentation declines along the length of the small intestine. The pacemaker cells in the duodenum spontaneously depolarize faster than those farther down the tract, with segmentation contractions occurring in the duodenum at a rate of 12 per minute, compared to only 9 per minute in the terminal ileum. Because segmentation occurs with greater frequency in the upper part of the small intestine than in the lower part, more chyme, on average, is pushed forward than is pushed backward. As a result, chyme is moved slowly from the upper to the lower part of the small intestine, being shuffled back and forth to accomplish thorough mixing and absorption in the process. This slow propulsive mechanism is advantageous because it allows ample time for the digestive and absorptive processes to take place. The contents usually take 3 to 5 hours to move through the small intestine.

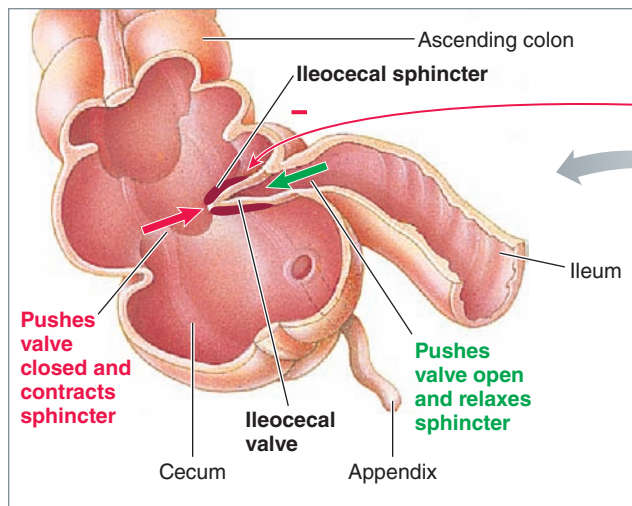
#### The migrating motility complex sweeps the intestine clean between meals.

When most of the meal has been absorbed, segmentation contractions cease and are replaced between meals by the **migrating motility complex**, or "**intestinal housekeeper**." This between-meal motility consists of weak, repetitive peristaltic waves that move a short distance down the intestine before dying out. The waves start at the stomach and migrate down the intestine; that is, each new peristaltic wave is initiated at a site a little farther down the small intestine. These short peristaltic waves take about 100 to 150 minutes to gradually migrate from the stomach to the end of the small intestine, with each contraction sweeping any remnants of the preceding meal plus mucosal debris and bacteria forward toward the colon, just like a good "intestinal housekeeper." After the end of the small intestine is reached, the cycle begins again and continues to repeat itself until the next meal. The migrating motility complex is regulated between meals by the hormone *motilin*, which is secreted dur-

ing the unfed state by endocrine cells of the small-intestine mucosa. When the next meal arrives, segmental activity is triggered again, and the migrating motility complex ceases. Motilin release is inhibited by feeding.

### The ileocecal junction prevents contamination of the small intestine by colonic bacteria.

At the junction between the small and the large intestines, the last part of the ileum empties into the cecum (● Figure 15-19). Two factors contribute to this region's ability to act as a barrier between the small and the large intestines. First, the anatomic arrangement is such that valvelike folds of tissue protrude from the ileum into the lumen of the cecum. When the ileal contents are pushed forward, this **ileocecal valve** is easily pushed open, but the folds of tissue are forcibly closed when the cecal contents attempt to move backward. Second, the smooth muscle within the last several centimeters of the ileal wall is thickened, forming a sphincter that is under neural and hormonal control. Most of the time, this **ileocecal sphincter** remains at least mildly constricted. Pressure on the cecal side of the sphincter causes it to contract more forcibly; distension of the ileal side causes the sphincter to relax, a reaction mediated by the intrinsic plexuses in the area. In this way, the ileocecal junction prevents the bacteria-laden contents of the large intestine from contaminating the small intestine yet lets the ileal contents pass into the colon. If the colonic bacteria gained access to the nutrient-rich small intestine, they would multiply rapidly. Relaxation of the sphincter is enhanced by release of gastrin at the onset of a meal, when increased gastric activity is taking place. This relaxation allows the undigested fibers and unabsorbed solutes from the preceding meal to be moved forward as the new meal enters the tract.



● **FIGURE 15-19 Control of the ileocecal valve and sphincter.** The juncture between the ileum and the large intestine is the ileocecal valve, which is surrounded by thickened smooth muscle, the ileocecal sphincter. Pressure on the cecal side pushes the valve closed and contracts the sphincter, preventing the bacteria-laden colonic contents from contaminating the nutrient-rich small intestine. The valve–sphincter opens and allows ileal contents to enter the large intestine in response to pressure on the ileal side of the valve and to the hormone gastrin secreted as a new meal enters the stomach.

### Small-intestine secretions do not contain any digestive enzymes.

Each day, the exocrine gland cells in the small-intestine mucosa secrete into the lumen about 1.5 liters of an aqueous salt and mucus solution. Secretion increases after a meal in response to local stimulation of the small-intestine mucosa by the presence of chyme.

The mucus in the secretion provides protection and lubrication. Furthermore, this aqueous secretion provides plenty of H<sub>2</sub>O to participate in the enzymatic digestion of food. Recall that digestion involves hydrolysis—bond breakage by reaction with H<sub>2</sub>O—which proceeds most efficiently when all the reactants are in solution.

No digestive enzymes are secreted into this intestinal juice. The small intestine does synthesize digestive enzymes, but they act intracellularly within the borders of the epithelial cells that line the lumen instead of being secreted directly into the lumen.

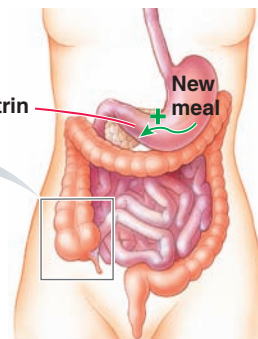
### The small-intestine enzymes complete digestion within the brush-border membrane.

Digestion within the small-intestine lumen is accomplished by the pancreatic enzymes, with fat digestion being enhanced by bile secretion. As a result of pancreatic enzymatic activity, fats are completely reduced to their absorbable units of monoglycerides and free fatty acids, proteins are broken down into small peptide fragments and some amino acids, and carbohydrates are reduced to disaccharides and some monosaccharides. Thus, fat digestion is completed within the small-intestine lumen, but carbohydrate and protein digestion have not been brought to completion.

Special hairlike projections on the luminal surface of the small-intestine epithelial cells, the **microvilli**, form the **brush border** (see p. 38). The brush-border plasma membrane contains three categories of membrane-bound enzymes:

1. **Enterokinase**, which activates the pancreatic proteolytic enzyme trypsinogen
2. The **disaccharidases** (**maltase**, **sucrase**, and **lactase**), which complete carbohydrate digestion by hydrolyzing the remaining disaccharides (maltose, sucrose, and lactose, respectively) into their constituent monosaccharides
3. The **aminopeptidases**, which hydrolyze the small peptide fragments into their amino acid components, thereby completing protein digestion

Thus, carbohydrate and protein digestion are completed within the confines of the brush border. (▲ Table 15-5 provides a summary of the digestive processes for the three major categories of nutrients.)



## ▲ Table 15-5 Digestive Processes for the Three Major Categories of Nutrients

Nutrients	Enzymes for Digesting the Nutrients	Source of Enzymes	Site of Action of Enzymes	Action of Enzymes	Absorbable Units of the Nutrients
<b>Carbohydrates</b>	Amylase	Salivary glands	Mouth and (mostly) body of stomach	Hydrolyzes polysaccharides to disaccharides (maltose)	
		Exocrine pancreas	Small-intestine lumen		
	Disaccharidases (maltase, sucrase, lactase)	Small-intestine epithelial cells	Small-intestine brush border	Hydrolyze disaccharides to monosaccharides	Monosaccharides, especially glucose
<b>Proteins</b>	Pepsin	Stomach chief cells	Stomach antrum	Hydrolyzes protein to peptide fragments	
	Trypsin, chymotrypsin, carboxypeptidase	Exocrine pancreas	Small-intestine lumen	Attack different peptide fragments	
	Aminopeptidases	Small-intestine epithelial cells	Small-intestine brush border	Hydrolyze peptide fragments to amino acids	Amino acids
<b>Fats</b>	Lipase	Exocrine pancreas	Small-intestine lumen	Hydrolyzes triglycerides to fatty acids and monoglycerides	Fatty acids and monoglycerides
	Bile salts (not an enzyme)	Liver	Small-intestine lumen	Emulsify large fat globules for attack by pancreatic lipase	



A fairly common disorder, **lactose intolerance**, involves a deficiency of lactase, the disaccharidase specific for the digestion of lactose, or milk sugar. Most children under 4 years of age have adequate lactase, but this may be gradually lost so that, in many adults, lactase activity is diminished or absent. When lactose-rich milk or dairy products are consumed by a person with lactase deficiency, the undigested lactose remains in the lumen and has several related consequences. First, accumulation of undigested lactose creates an osmotic gradient that draws H<sub>2</sub>O into the intestinal lumen. Second, bacteria living in the large intestine have lactose-splitting ability, so they eagerly attack the lactose as an energy source, producing large quantities of CO<sub>2</sub> and methane gas in the process. Distension of the intestine by both fluid and gas produces pain (cramping) and diarrhea. Infants with lactose intolerance may also suffer from malnutrition.

Finally, we are ready to discuss absorption of nutrients. Up to this point, no food, water, or electrolytes have been absorbed.

### The small intestine is remarkably well adapted for its primary role in absorption.

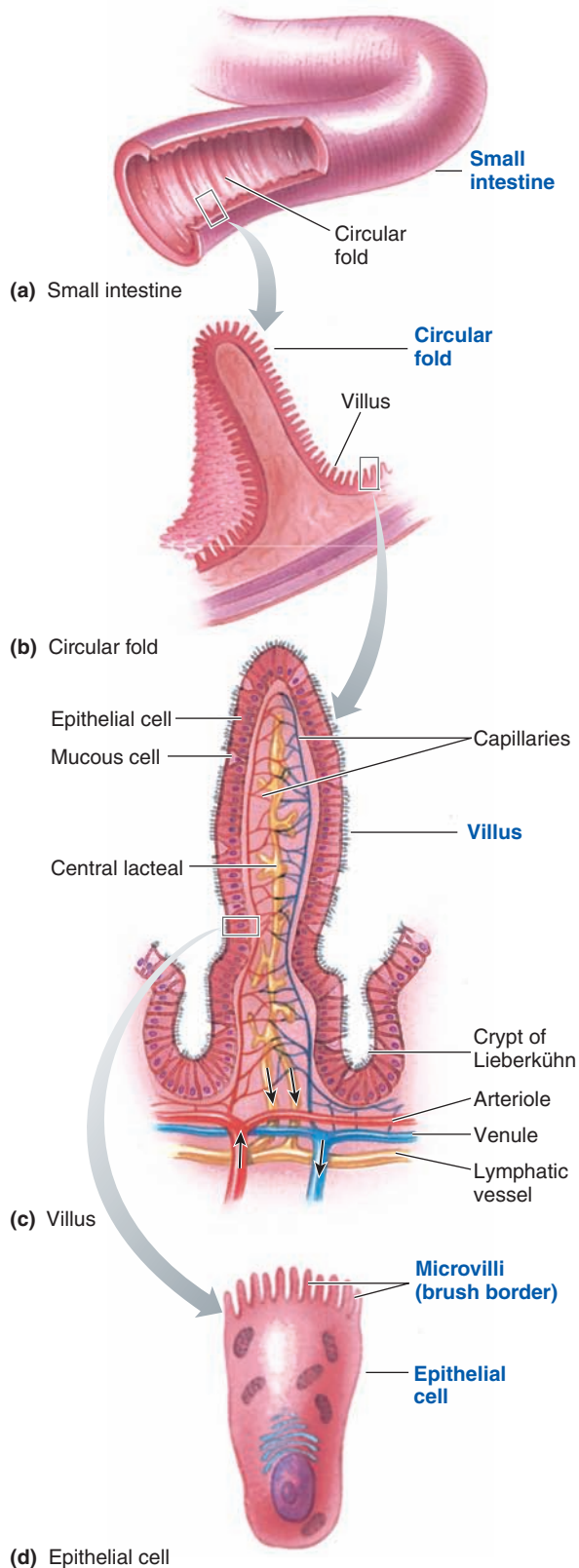
All products of carbohydrate, protein, and fat digestion, as well as most of the ingested electrolytes, vitamins, and water, are normally absorbed by the small intestine indiscriminately. Usually, only the absorption of calcium and iron is adjusted to the body's needs. Thus, the more food consumed, the more that will be digested and absorbed, as people who are trying to control their weight are all too painfully aware.

The mucous lining of the small intestine is remarkably well adapted for its special absorptive function for two reasons: (1) it has a large surface area, and (2) the epithelial cells in this lining have a variety of specialized transport mechanisms.

**ADAPTATIONS THAT INCREASE THE SMALL INTESTINE'S SURFACE AREA** The following special modifications of the small-intestine mucosa greatly increase the surface area available for absorption (● Figure 15-20):

- The inner surface of the small intestine is thrown into permanent circular folds that are visible to the naked eye and increase the surface area threefold.
- Extending from this folded surface are microscopic, finger-like projections known as **villi**, which give the lining a velvety appearance and increase the surface area another 10 times (● Figure 15-21). The surface of each villus is covered by epithelial cells interspersed occasionally with mucous cells.
- Even smaller hairlike projections, the *brush border* or *microvilli*, arise from the luminal surface of these epithelial cells, increasing the surface area another 20-fold. Each epithelial cell has as many as 3000 to 6000 of these microvilli, which are visible only with an electron microscope. The small-intestine enzymes perform their functions within the membrane of this brush border.

Altogether, the folds, villi, and microvilli provide the small intestine with a luminal surface area 600 times greater than if it were a tube of the same length and diameter lined by a flat sur-



● **FIGURE 15-20 Small-intestine absorptive surface.** (a) Gross structure of the small intestine. (b) The circular folds of the small-intestine mucosa collectively increase the absorptive surface area threefold. (c) Microscopic, fingerlike projections known as villi collectively increase the surface area another 10-fold. (d) Each epithelial cell on a villus has microvilli on its luminal border; the microvilli increase the surface area another 20-fold. Together, these surface modifications increase the small intestine's absorptive surface area 600-fold.



● **FIGURE 15-21 Scanning electron micrograph of villi projecting from the small-intestine mucosa.**

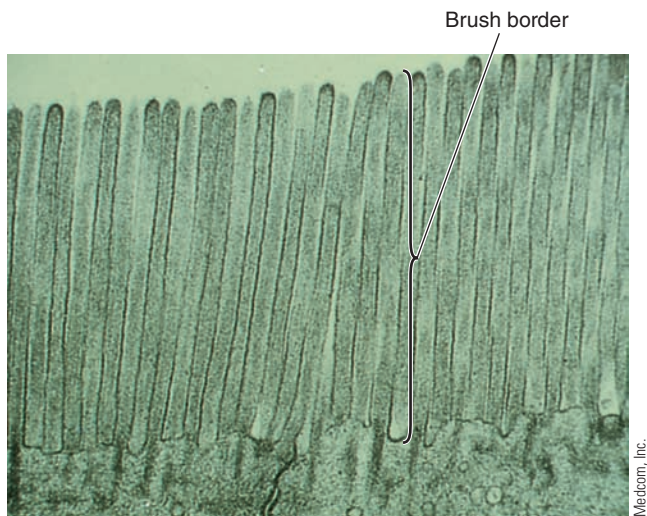
face. If the surface area of the small intestine were spread out flat, it would cover an entire tennis court.



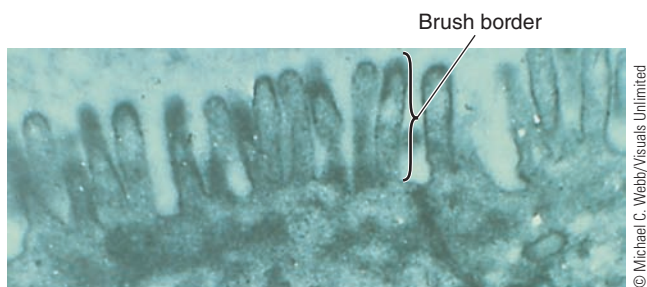
**Malabsorption** (impairment of absorption) may be caused by damage to or reduction of the surface area of the small intestine. One of the most common causes is **gluten enteropathy**, also known as **celiac disease**. In this condition, the person's small intestine is abnormally sensitive to *gluten*, a protein constituent of wheat, barley, and rye. These grain products are widely prevalent in processed foods. This condition is a complex immunological disorder in which exposure to gluten erroneously activates a T-cell response (see p. 325) that damages the intestinal villi: The normally luxuriant array of villi is reduced, the mucosa becomes flattened, and the brush border becomes short and stubby (● Figure 15-22). Because this loss of villi decreases the surface area available for absorption, absorption of all nutrients is impaired. The condition is treated by eliminating gluten from the diet.

**STRUCTURE OF A VILLUS** Absorption across the digestive tract wall involves transepithelial transport similar to movement of material across the kidney tubules (see p. 391). Each villus has the following major components (see ● Figure 15-20c):

- **Epithelial cells that cover the surface of the villus.** The epithelial cells are joined at their lateral borders by tight junctions, which limit passage of luminal contents between the cells, although the tight junctions in the small intestine are leakier than those in the stomach. Within their luminal brush borders, these epithelial cells have carriers for absorption of specific nutrients and electrolytes from the lumen, as well as the membrane-bound digestive enzymes that complete carbohydrate and protein digestion.
- **A connective tissue core**
- **A capillary network.** Each villus is supplied by an arteriole that breaks up into a capillary network within the villus core.



(a) Normal



(b) Gluten enteropathy

● **FIGURE 15-22 Reduction in the brush border with gluten enteropathy.** (a) Electron micrograph of the brush border of a small-intestine epithelial cell in a normal individual. (b) Electron micrograph of the short, stubby brush border of a small-intestine epithelial cell in a patient with gluten enteropathy. (Source: Thomas W. Sheehy, M.D.; Robert L. Slaughter, M.D.: *The Malabsorption Syndrome* by Medcom, Inc. Reproduced by permission of Medcom, Inc.)

The capillaries rejoin to form a venule that drains away from the villus.

■ A *terminal lymphatic vessel*. Each villus is supplied by a single blind-ended lymphatic vessel known as the **central lacteal**, which occupies the center of the villus core.

During the process of absorption, digested substances enter the capillary network or the central lacteal. To be absorbed, a substance must pass completely through the epithelial cell, diffuse through the interstitial fluid within the connective tissue core of the villus, and then cross the wall of a capillary or lymph vessel. Like renal transport, intestinal absorption may be active or passive, with active absorption involving energy expenditure during at least one of the transepithelial transport steps.

### The mucosal lining experiences rapid turnover.

Dipping down into the mucosal surface between the villi are shallow invaginations known as the **crypts of Lieberkühn** (see ● Figure 15-20c). Unlike the gastric pits, these intestinal crypts do not secrete digestive enzymes, but they do secrete water and

salt, which, along with the mucus secreted by the cells on the villus surface, constitute the intestinal juice.

Furthermore, the crypts function as nurseries. The epithelial cells lining the small intestine slough off and are replaced at a rapid rate as a result of high mitotic activity of *stem cells* in the crypts. New cells that are continually being produced in the crypts migrate up the villi and, in the process, push off the older cells at the tips of the villi into the lumen. In this manner, more than 100 million intestinal cells are shed per minute. The entire trip from crypt to tip averages about 3 days, so the epithelial lining of the small intestine is replaced approximately every 3 days. Because of this high rate of cell division, the crypt stem cells are very sensitive to damage by radiation and anticancer drugs, both of which may inhibit cell division.

The new cells undergo several changes as they migrate up the villus. The concentration of brush-border enzymes increases and the capacity for absorption improves, so the cells at the tip of the villus have the greatest digestive and absorptive capability. Just at their peak, these cells are pushed off by the newly migrating cells. Thus, the luminal contents are constantly exposed to cells that are optimally equipped to complete the digestive and absorptive functions efficiently. Furthermore, just as in the stomach, the rapid turnover of cells in the small intestine is essential because of the harsh luminal conditions. Cells exposed to the abrasive and corrosive luminal contents are easily damaged and cannot live for long, so they must be continually replaced by a fresh supply of newborn cells.

The old cells sloughed off into the lumen are not entirely lost to the body. These cells are digested, with the cell constituents being absorbed into the blood and reclaimed for synthesis of new cells, among other things.

In addition to stem cells, *defensive cells* are found in the crypts. These cells produce lysozyme and other chemicals that thwart bacteria.

We now turn our attention to the ways in which the epithelial lining of the small intestine is specialized to accomplish absorption of luminal contents and the mechanisms through which the specific dietary constituents are normally absorbed.

### Energy-dependent $\text{Na}^+$ absorption drives passive $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ absorption.

Sodium may be absorbed both passively and actively. When the electrochemical gradient favors movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  from the lumen to the blood, passive diffusion of  $\text{Na}^+$  can occur *between* the intestinal epithelial cells through the “leaky” tight junctions into the interstitial fluid within the villus. Movement of  $\text{Na}^+$  *through* the cells is energy dependent, being driven by the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pumps located at the cells’ basolateral borders, similar to the process of  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption across the kidney tubules (see p. 390).

As with the renal tubules in the early part of the nephron, the absorption of  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , glucose, and amino acids from the small intestine is linked to this energy-dependent  $\text{Na}^+$  absorption. Chloride passively follows down the electrical gradient created by  $\text{Na}^+$  absorption and can be actively absorbed if needed. Water is reabsorbed passively down the osmotic gradient produced by active reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$ .

### Digested carbohydrates and proteins are both absorbed by secondary active transport and enter the blood.

Absorption of the digestion end products of both carbohydrates and proteins is accomplished by  $\text{Na}^+$ - and energy-dependent secondary active transport (see p. 60), and both categories of end products are absorbed into the blood.

**CARBOHYDRATE ABSORPTION** Dietary carbohydrates are presented to the small intestine for absorption mainly in the forms of the disaccharides maltose (the product of polysaccharide digestion), sucrose, and lactose. The disaccharides located in the brush-border membrane of the small intestine cells further reduce these disaccharides into the absorbable monosaccharide units of glucose (mostly), galactose, and fructose.

Glucose and galactose are both absorbed by secondary active transport, in which symport carriers, such as the *sodium and glucose cotransporter (SGLT)*; see ● Figure 3-17, p. 61) on the luminal membrane transport both the monosaccharide and  $\text{Na}^+$  from the lumen into the interior of the intestinal cell. Glucose (or galactose), having been concentrated in the cell by these symporters, leaves the cell down its concentration gradient by facilitated diffusion to enter the capillary network within the villus. Fructose is absorbed into the blood solely by facilitated diffusion.

**PROTEIN ABSORPTION** Both ingested proteins and endogenous (within the body) proteins that have entered the digestive tract lumen from the following sources are digested and absorbed:

- Digestive enzymes, all of which are proteins, that have been secreted into the lumen
- Proteins within the cells that are pushed off from the villi into the lumen during the process of mucosal turnover

About 20 to 40 g of endogenous proteins enter the lumen each day from these sources. This quantity can amount to more than the quantity of proteins in ingested food. All endogenous proteins must be digested and absorbed, along with the dietary proteins, to prevent depletion of the body's protein stores. The amino acids absorbed from both food and endogenous proteins are used primarily to synthesize new proteins in the body.

The proteins presented to the small intestine for absorption are in the form of amino acids. Amino acids are absorbed into the intestinal cells by symporters, similar to glucose and galactose absorption. Like monosaccharides, amino acids leave the intestinal cells by facilitated diffusion and enter the capillary network within the villus.

### Digested fat is absorbed passively and enters the lymph.

Fat absorption is quite different from carbohydrate and protein absorption because the insolubility of fat in water presents a special problem. Fat must be transferred from the watery chyme through the watery body fluids, even though fat is not water soluble. Therefore, fat must undergo a series of physical and chemical transformations to circumvent this problem during its digestion and absorption (● Figure 15-23).

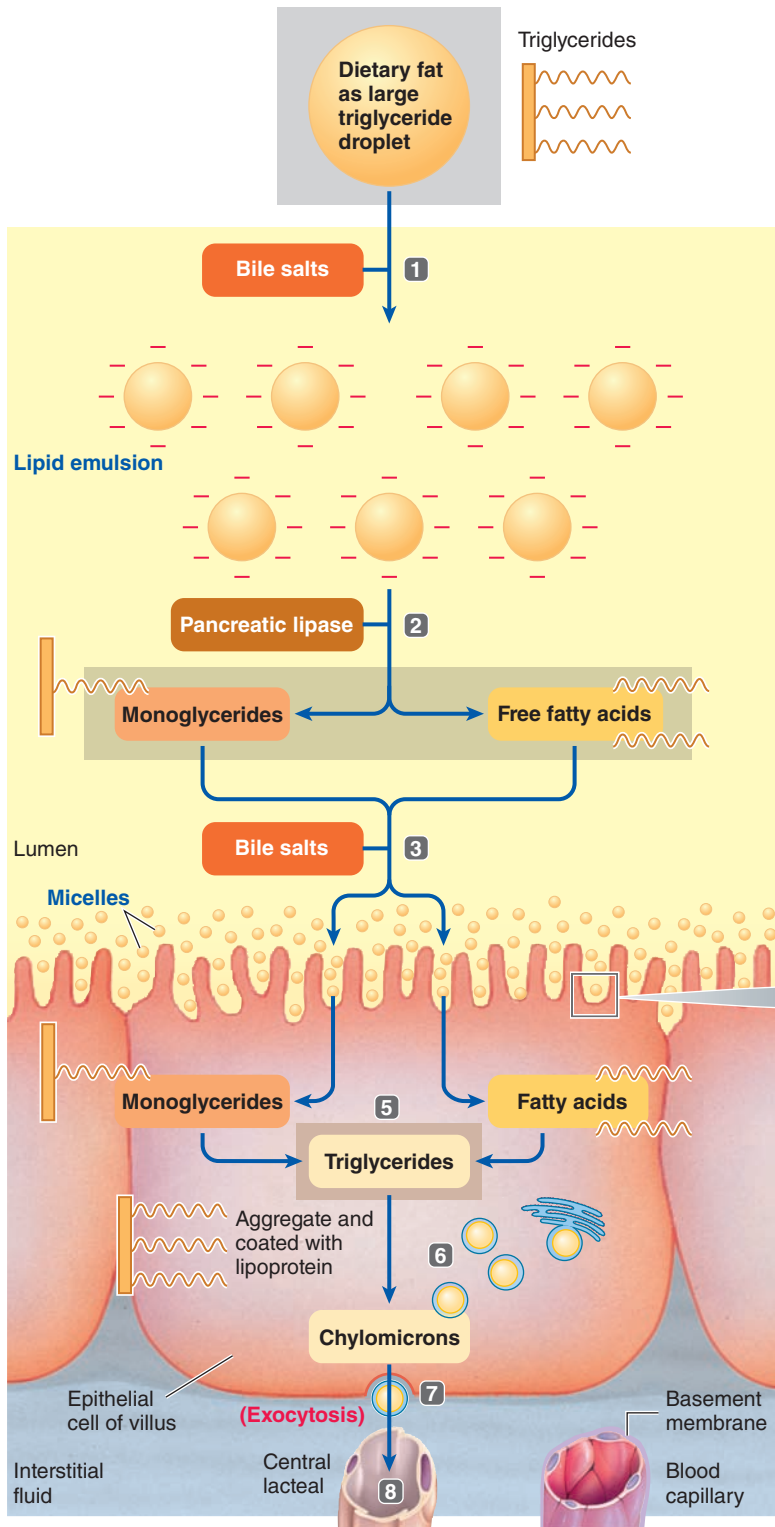
**A REVIEW OF FAT EMULSIFICATION AND DIGESTION** When the stomach contents are emptied into the duodenum, the ingested fat is aggregated into large, oily triglyceride droplets that float in the chyme. Recall that through the bile salts' detergent action in the small-intestine lumen, the large droplets are dispersed into a lipid emulsification of small droplets, exposing a greater surface area of fat for digestion by pancreatic lipase (● Figure 15-23, step 1). The products of lipase digestion (monoglycerides and free fatty acids; step 2) are also not very water soluble, so little of these end products of fat digestion can diffuse through the aqueous chyme to reach the absorptive lining. However, biliary components facilitate absorption of these fatty end products by forming micelles.

**FAT ABSORPTION** Remember that micelles are water-soluble particles that can carry the end products of fat digestion within their lipid-soluble interiors (● Figure 15-23, step 3). Once these micelles reach the luminal membranes of the epithelial cells, the monoglycerides and free fatty acids passively diffuse from the micelles through the lipid component of the epithelial cell membranes to enter the interior of these cells (step 4). As these fat products leave the micelles and are absorbed across the epithelial cell membranes, the micelles can pick up more monoglycerides and free fatty acids, which have been produced from digestion of other triglyceride molecules in the fat emulsion.

Bile salts continuously repeat their fat-solubilizing function down the length of the small intestine until all fat is absorbed. Then the bile salts themselves are reabsorbed in the terminal ileum by special active transport. This is an efficient process because relatively small amounts of bile salts can facilitate digestion and absorption of large amounts of fat, with each bile salt performing its ferrying function repeatedly before it is reabsorbed.

Once within the interior of the epithelial cells, the monoglycerides and free fatty acids are resynthesized into triglycerides (step 5). These triglycerides conglomerate into droplets and are coated with a layer of lipoprotein (synthesized by the endoplasmic reticulum of the epithelial cell), which makes the fat droplets water soluble (step 6). The large, coated fat droplets, known as **chylomicrons**, are extruded by exocytosis from the epithelial cells into the interstitial fluid within the villus (step 7). Chylomicrons are 75 to 500 nm in diameter, compared to micelles, which are 3 to 10 nm in diameter. The chylomicrons subsequently enter the central lacteals rather than the capillaries because of the structural differences between these two vessels (step 8). Capillaries have a basement membrane (an outer layer of polysaccharides) that prevents the chylomicrons from entering, but the lymph vessels do not have this barrier. Thus, fat can be absorbed into the lymphatics but not directly into the blood.

The actual absorption of monoglycerides and free fatty acids from the chyme across the luminal membrane of the small-intestinal epithelial cells is a passive process because the lipid-soluble fatty end products merely dissolve in and pass through the lipid part of the membrane. However, the overall sequence of events needed for fat absorption requires energy. For example, bile salts are actively secreted by the liver, the resynthesis of triglycerides and formation of chylomicrons within the epithelial cells are active processes, and the exocytosis of chylomicrons requires energy.

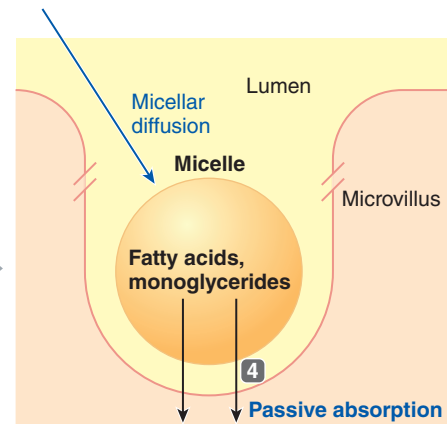


**1** Dietary fat in the form of large fat globules composed of triglycerides is emulsified by the detergent action of bile salts into a suspension of smaller fat droplets. This lipid emulsion prevents the fat droplets from coalescing and thereby increases the surface area available for attack by pancreatic lipase.

**2** Lipase hydrolyzes the triglycerides into monoglycerides and free fatty acids.

**3** These water-insoluble products are carried to the luminal surface of the small-intestine epithelial cells within water-soluble micelles, which are formed by bile salts and other bile constituents.

**4** When a micelle approaches the absorptive epithelial surface, the monoglycerides and fatty acids leave the micelle and passively diffuse through the lipid bilayer of the luminal membranes.



**5** The monoglycerides and free fatty acids are resynthesized into triglycerides inside the epithelial cells.

**6** These triglycerides aggregate and are coated with a layer of lipoprotein from the endoplasmic reticulum to form water-soluble chylomicrons.

**7** Chylomicrons are extruded through the basal membrane of the cells by exocytosis.

**8** Chylomicrons are unable to cross the basement membrane of capillaries, so instead they enter the lymphatic vessels, the central lacteals.

● **FIGURE 15-23 Fat digestion and absorption.** Because fat is not soluble in water, it must undergo a series of transformations to be digested and absorbed.

### Vitamin absorption is largely passive.

Water-soluble vitamins are primarily absorbed passively with water, whereas fat-soluble vitamins are carried in the micelles and absorbed passively with the end products of fat digestion. Some of the vitamins can also be absorbed by carriers, if necessary. Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> is unique in that it must be in combination with gastric intrinsic factor for absorption by receptor-mediated endocytosis in the terminal ileum.

### Iron and calcium absorption is regulated.

In contrast to the almost complete, unregulated absorption of other ingested electrolytes, dietary iron and calcium may not be absorbed completely because their absorption is subject to regulation, depending on the body's needs for these electrolytes. Normally, only enough iron and calcium are actively absorbed into the blood to maintain the homeostasis of these electrolytes, with excess ingested quantities being lost in the feces.

### Most absorbed nutrients immediately pass through the liver for processing.

The venules that leave the small-intestine villi, along with those from the rest of the digestive tract, empty into the hepatic portal vein, which carries the blood to the liver. Consequently, anything absorbed into the digestive capillaries first must pass through the hepatic biochemical factory before entering the general circulation. Thus, the products of carbohydrate and protein digestion are channeled into the liver, where many of these energy-rich products are subjected to immediate metabolic processing. Furthermore, harmful substances that may have been absorbed are detoxified by the liver before gaining access to the general circulation. After passing through the portal circulation, the venous blood from the digestive system empties into the vena cava and returns to the heart to be distributed throughout the body, carrying glucose and amino acids for use by the tissues.

Fat, which cannot penetrate the intestinal capillaries, is picked up by the central lacteal and enters the lymphatic system instead. Contractions of the villi periodically compress the central lacteal and “milk” the lymph out of this vessel. The smaller lymph vessels converge and eventually form a large lymph duct that empties into the venous system within the chest. In this way, fat gains access to the blood for distribution throughout the body.

### Extensive absorption by the small intestine keeps pace with secretion.

The small intestine normally absorbs about 9 L of fluid per day in the form of H<sub>2</sub>O and solutes, including the absorbable units of nutrients, vitamins, and electrolytes. How can that be, when humans normally ingest only about 1250 ml of fluid and consume 1250 g of solid food (80% of which is H<sub>2</sub>O) per day (see p. 424)? ▲ Table 15-6 illustrates the tremendous daily absorption performed by the small intestine. Each day, about 9500 ml of H<sub>2</sub>O and solutes enter the small intestine. Note that of this 9500 ml, only 2500 ml are ingested from the external environ-

## ▲ Table 15-6 Volumes Absorbed by the Small and Large Intestine per Day


Volume entering the small intestine per day			
Sources	Ingested	Food eaten	1250 g*
		Fluid drunk	1250 ml
	Secreted from the plasma	Saliva	1500 ml
		Gastric juice	2000 ml
		Pancreatic juice	1500 ml
		Bile	500 ml
		Intestinal juice	1500 ml
			9500 ml
Volume absorbed by the small intestine per day			9000 ml
Volume entering the colon from the small intestine per day			500 ml
Volume absorbed by the colon per day			350 ml
Volume of feces eliminated from the colon per day			150 g*

\*One milliliter of H<sub>2</sub>O weighs 1 g. Therefore, because a high percentage of food and feces is H<sub>2</sub>O, we can roughly equate grams of food or feces with milliliters of fluid.

ment. The remaining 7000 ml (7 L) of fluid are digestive juices derived from the plasma. Recall that plasma is the ultimate source of digestive secretions because the secretory cells extract from the plasma the necessary raw materials for their secretory product. Considering that the entire plasma volume is only about 2.75 liters, absorption must closely parallel secretion to keep the plasma volume from falling sharply.

Of the 9500 ml of fluid entering the small-intestine lumen per day, about 95%, or 9000 ml of fluid, is normally absorbed by the small intestine back into the plasma, with only 500 ml of the small-intestine contents passing on into the colon. Thus, the body normally does not lose the digestive juices. After the constituents of the juices are secreted into the digestive tract lumen and perform their function, they are returned to the plasma. The only secretory product that escapes from the body is bilirubin, a waste product that must be eliminated.

### Diarrhea results in loss of fluid and electrolytes.

 **Diarrhea** is characterized by passage of a highly fluid fecal matter, often with increased frequency of defecation. The abnormal fluidity of the feces usually occurs because the small intestine is unable to absorb fluid as extensively as normal. This extra unabsorbed fluid passes out in the feces. The most common cause of diarrhea is excessive small-intestinal motility, which arises either from local irritation of the gut wall by bacterial or viral infection of the small intestine or from emotional stress. Rapid transit of the small-intestine contents does not allow enough time for adequate absorption of fluid to occur. Not only are some of the ingested materials lost, but some of the secreted materials that normally would have been reabsorbed are lost as well. Excessive loss of intestinal contents causes dehydration, loss of unabsorbed nutrients, and metabolic acidosis resulting from the loss of HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> (see p. 434).



## Large Intestine

The **large intestine** consists of the colon, cecum, appendix, and rectum (● Figure 15-24). The **cecum** forms a blind-ended pouch below the junction of the small and large intestines at the ileocecal valve. The small, fingerlike projection at the bottom of the cecum is the **appendix**, a lymphoid tissue that houses lymphocytes (see p. 311). The **colon**, which makes up most of the large intestine, is not coiled like the small intestine but consists of three relatively straight parts—the *ascending colon*, the *transverse colon*, and the *descending colon*. The end part of the descending colon becomes S shaped, forming the *sigmoid colon* (*sigmoid* means “S shaped”), and then straightens out to form the **rectum** (meaning “straight”).

### The large intestine is primarily a drying and storage organ.

The colon normally receives about 500 ml of chyme from the small intestine each day. Because most digestion and absorption have been accomplished in the small intestine, the contents delivered to the colon consist of indigestible food residues (such as cellulose), unabsorbed biliary components, and the remaining fluid. The colon extracts more H<sub>2</sub>O and salt from the contents. What remains to be eliminated is known as **feces**. The primary function of the large intestine is to store feces before defecation. Cellulose and other indigestible substances in the diet provide bulk and help maintain regular bowel movements by contributing to the volume of the colonic contents.

### Haustral contractions slowly shuffle the colonic contents back and forth.

Most of the time, movements of the large intestine are slow and nonpropulsive, as is appropriate for its absorptive and storage functions. The colon's main motility is **haustral contractions** initiated by the autonomous rhythmicity (BER) of colonic smooth muscle cells. These contractions, which throw the large intestine into pouches or sacs called **haustra**, are similar to small-intestine segmentations but occur less frequently. Thirty minutes may elapse between haustral contractions, whereas segmentation contractions in the small intestine occur at rates of between 9 and 12 per minute. The location of the haustral sacs gradually changes as a relaxed segment that has formed a sac slowly contracts while a previously contracted area simultaneously relaxes to form a new sac. These movements are nonpropulsive; they slowly shuffle the contents in a back-and-forth mixing movement that exposes the colonic contents to the absorptive mucosa. Haustral contractions are largely controlled by locally mediated reflexes involving the intrinsic plexuses.

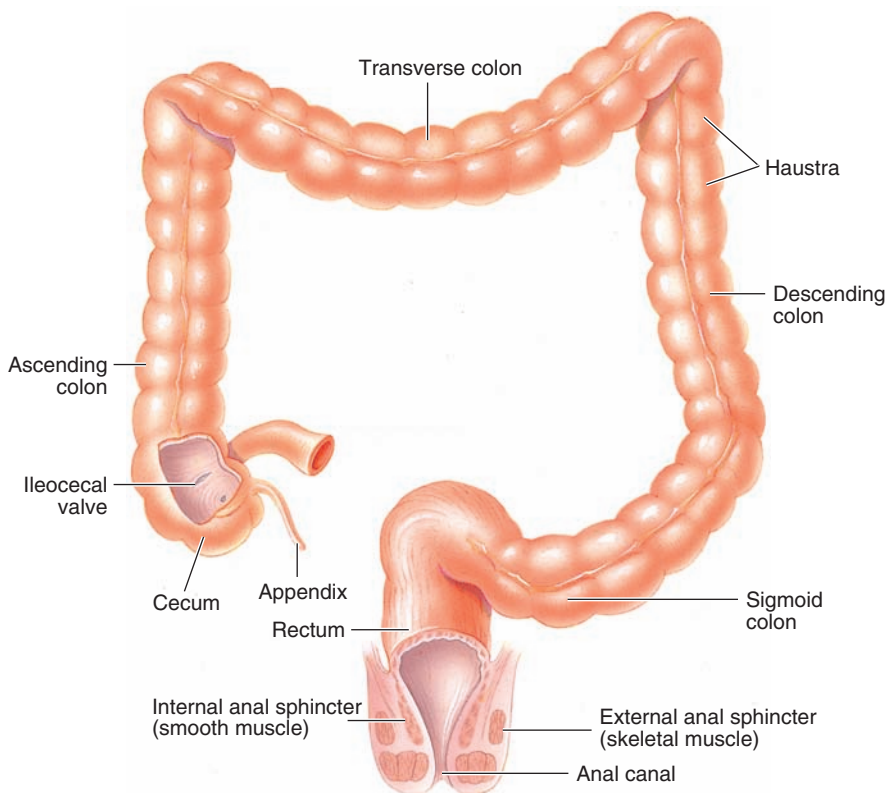
### Mass movements propel feces long distances.

Three to four times a day, generally after meals, a marked increase in motility takes place during which large segments of the ascending and transverse colon contract simultaneously, driving the feces one third to three fourths of the length of the colon in a few seconds. These massive contractions, appropriately called **mass movements**, drive the colonic contents into the distal part of the large intestine, where material is stored until defecation occurs.

When food enters the stomach, mass movements are triggered in the colon primarily by the **gastrocolic reflex**, which is mediated from the stomach to the colon by gastrin and by the extrinsic autonomic nerves. In many people, this reflex is most evident after the first meal of the day and is often followed by the urge to defecate. Thus, when a new meal enters the digestive tract, reflexes are initiated to move the existing contents farther along the tract to make way for the incoming food. The gastroileal reflex moves the remaining small-intestine contents into the large intestine, and the gastrocolic reflex pushes the colonic contents into the rectum, triggering the defecation reflex.

### Feces are eliminated by the defecation reflex.

When mass movements of the colon move feces into the rectum, the resultant distension of the rectum stimulates stretch receptors in the rectal wall, initiating the **defecation reflex**. This reflex causes the **internal anal sphincter** (which is smooth muscle) to relax and the rectum and sigmoid colon to contract more vigorously. If the **external**



● **FIGURE 15-24** Anatomy of the large intestine.

**anal sphincter** (which is skeletal muscle) is also relaxed, defecation occurs. Being skeletal muscle, the external anal sphincter is under voluntary control. The initial distension of the rectal wall is accompanied by the conscious urge to defecate. If circumstances are unfavorable for defecation, voluntary tightening of the external anal sphincter can prevent defecation despite the defecation reflex. If defecation is delayed, the distended rectal wall gradually relaxes, and the urge to defecate subsides until the next mass movement propels more feces into the rectum, again distending the rectum and triggering the defecation reflex. During periods of inactivity, both anal sphincters remain contracted to ensure fecal continence.

When defecation does occur, it is usually assisted by voluntary straining movements that involve simultaneous contraction of the abdominal muscles and a forcible expiration against a closed glottis. This maneuver greatly increases intra-abdominal pressure, which helps expel the feces.

### Constipation occurs when the feces become too dry.

If defecation is delayed too long, **constipation** may result. When colonic contents are retained for longer periods than normal, more than the usual amount of H<sub>2</sub>O is absorbed from the feces, so they become hard and dry. Possible causes for delayed defecation that might lead to constipation include (1) ignoring the urge to defecate; (2) decreased colon motility accompanying aging, emotion, or a low-bulk diet; (3) obstruction of fecal movement in the large bowel caused by a local tumor or colonic spasm; and (4) impairment of the defecation reflex, such as through injury of the nerve pathways involved.



If hardened fecal material becomes lodged in the appendix, it may obstruct normal circulation and mucus secretion in this narrow, blind-ended appendage. This blockage leads to **appendicitis**. The inflamed appendix often becomes swollen and filled with pus, and the tissue may die as a result of local circulatory interference. If not surgically removed, the diseased appendix may rupture, spewing its infectious contents into the abdominal cavity.

### Large-intestine secretion is entirely protective.

The large intestine does not secrete any digestive enzymes. None are needed, because digestion is completed before chyme ever reaches the colon. Colonic secretion consists of an alkaline (NaHCO<sub>3</sub>) mucus solution, whose function is to protect the large-intestine mucosa from mechanical and chemical injury. The mucus provides lubrication to facilitate passage of feces, whereas the NaHCO<sub>3</sub> neutralizes irritating acids produced by local bacterial fermentation.

No digestion takes place within the large intestine because there are no digestive enzymes. However, the colonic bacteria do digest some of the cellulose for their use.

### The colon contains myriad beneficial bacteria.

Because of slow colonic movement, bacteria have time to grow and accumulate in the large intestine. In contrast, in the small intestine the contents are moved through too rapidly for bacte-

rial growth to occur. Furthermore, the mouth, stomach, and small intestine secrete antibacterial agents, but the colon does not. Not all ingested bacteria are destroyed by lysozyme and HCl, however. The surviving bacteria continue to thrive in the large intestine. About 10 times more bacteria live in the human colon than the human body has cells. An estimated 500 to 1000 species of bacteria typically live in the colon. These colonic microorganisms not only are typically harmless but actually are beneficial. Indigenous bacteria (1) enhance intestinal immunity by competing with potentially pathogenic microbes for nutrients and space (see p. 339), (2) promote colonic motility, (3) help maintain colonic mucosal integrity, and (4) make nutritional contributions. For example, bacteria synthesize absorbable vitamin K and raise colonic acidity, thereby promoting the absorption of calcium, magnesium, and zinc.

### The large intestine absorbs salt and water, converting the luminal contents into feces.

Some absorption takes place within the colon, but not to the same extent as in the small intestine. Because the luminal surface of the colon is fairly smooth, it has considerably less absorptive surface area than the small intestine. Furthermore, the colon is not equipped with extensive specialized transport mechanisms as the small intestine is. When excessive small-intestine motility delivers the contents to the colon before absorption of nutrients has been completed, the colon cannot absorb most of these materials and they are lost in diarrhea.

The colon normally absorbs salt and H<sub>2</sub>O. Sodium is actively absorbed, Cl<sup>-</sup> follows passively down the electrical gradient, and H<sub>2</sub>O follows osmotically. The colon absorbs token amounts of other electrolytes, as well as vitamin K synthesized by colonic bacteria.

Through absorption of salt and H<sub>2</sub>O, a firm fecal mass is formed. Of the 500 ml of material entering the colon per day from the small intestine, the colon normally absorbs about 350 ml, leaving 150 g of feces to be eliminated from the body each day (see ▲ Table 15-6). This fecal material normally consists of 100 g of H<sub>2</sub>O and 50 g of solid, including undigested cellulose, bilirubin, bacteria, and small amounts of salt. Thus, contrary to popular thinking, the digestive tract is not a major excretory passageway for eliminating wastes from the body. The main waste product excreted in the feces is bilirubin. The other fecal constituents are unabsorbed food residues and bacteria, which were never actually a part of the body. Bacteria account for nearly one third the dry weight of feces.

### Intestinal gases are absorbed or expelled.

Occasionally, instead of feces passing from the anus, intestinal gas, or **flatus**, passes out. Most gas in the colon is due to bacterial activity, with the quantity and nature of the gas depending on the type of food eaten and the characteristics of the colonic bacteria. Some foods, such as beans, contain types of carbohydrates that humans cannot digest but that can be attacked by gas-producing bacteria. Much of the gas is absorbed through the intestinal mucosa. The rest is expelled through the anus.

To selectively expel gas when feces are also present in the rectum, the person voluntarily contracts the abdominal muscles and external anal sphincter at the same time. When abdominal contraction raises the pressure against the contracted anal sphincter sufficiently, the pressure gradient forces air out at a high velocity through a slitlike anal opening that is too narrow for solid feces to escape through. This passage of air at high velocity causes the edges of the anal opening to vibrate, giving rise to the characteristic low-pitched sound accompanying passage of gas.

## Overview of the Gastrointestinal Hormones

Throughout our discussion of digestion, we have repeatedly mentioned different functions of the three major gastrointestinal hormones: gastrin, secretin, and CCK. Let us now fit all of these functions together so that you can appreciate the overall adaptive importance of these interactions. Furthermore, we introduce a more recently identified gastrointestinal hormone, GIP.

**GASTRIN** Protein in the stomach stimulates the release of gastrin, which performs the following functions:

1. It acts in multiple ways to increase secretion of HCl and pepsinogen, two substances of primary importance in initiating digestion of the protein that promoted their secretion.
2. It enhances gastric motility, stimulates ileal motility, relaxes the ileocecal sphincter, and induces mass movements in the colon—all functions aimed at keeping the contents moving through the tract on arrival of a new meal.

Predictably, gastrin secretion is inhibited by an accumulation of acid in the stomach and by the presence in the duodenal lumen of acid and other constituents that necessitate a delay in gastric secretion.

**SECRETIN** As the stomach empties into the duodenum, the presence of acid in the duodenum stimulates the release of secretin, which performs the following interrelated functions:

1. It inhibits gastric emptying to prevent further acid from entering the duodenum until the acid already present is neutralized.
2. It inhibits gastric secretion to reduce the amount of acid being produced.
3. It stimulates the pancreatic duct cells to produce a large volume of aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  secretion, which is emptied into the duodenum to neutralize the acid. Neutralization of the acidic chyme in the duodenum helps prevent damage to the duodenal walls and provides a suitable environment for optimal functioning of the pancreatic digestive enzymes, which are inhibited by acid.
4. It stimulates secretion by the liver of a  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ -rich bile, which likewise is emptied into the duodenum to assist in the neutralization process.

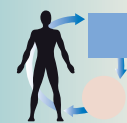
**CCK** As chyme empties from the stomach, fat and other nutrients enter the duodenum. These nutrients, especially fat and, to a lesser extent, protein products, cause the release of CCK, which performs the following interrelated functions:

1. It inhibits gastric motility and secretion, thereby allowing adequate time for the nutrients already in the duodenum to be digested and absorbed.
2. It stimulates the pancreatic acinar cells to increase secretion of pancreatic enzymes, which continue the digestion of these nutrients in the duodenum (this action is especially important for fat digestion, because pancreatic lipase is the only enzyme that digests fat).
3. It causes contraction of the gallbladder and relaxation of the sphincter of Oddi so that bile is emptied into the duodenum to aid fat digestion and absorption. Bile salts' detergent action is particularly important in enabling pancreatic lipase to perform its digestive task. Again, the multiple effects of CCK are remarkably well adapted to dealing with the fat whose presence in the duodenum triggered this hormone's release.
4. Besides facilitating the digestion of ingested nutrients, CCK is an important regulator of food intake. It plays a key role in satiety, the sensation of having had enough to eat (see p. 484).

**GIP** A more recently recognized hormone released by the duodenum, GIP, helps promote metabolic processing of the nutrients once they are absorbed. This hormone was originally named *gastric inhibitory peptide (GIP)* for its presumed role as an enterogastrone. It was believed to inhibit gastric motility and secretion, similar to secretin and CCK. Its contribution in this regard is now considered minimal. Instead, this hormone stimulates insulin release by the pancreas, so it is now called **glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide** (again, **GIP**). This action is remarkably adaptive. As soon as the meal is absorbed, the body has to shift its metabolic gears to use and store the newly arriving nutrients. The metabolic activities of this absorptive phase are largely under the control of insulin (see pp. 528 and 530). Stimulated by the presence of a meal, especially glucose, in the digestive tract, GIP initiates the release of insulin in anticipation of absorption of the meal. Insulin is especially important in promoting the uptake and storage of glucose.

This overview of the multiple, integrated, adaptive functions of the gastrointestinal hormones provides an excellent example of the remarkable efficiency of the human body.

### Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



To maintain constancy in the internal environment, materials that are used up in the body (such as energy-rich nutrients and  $\text{O}_2$ ) or uncontrollably lost from the body (such as evaporative  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  loss from the airways or salt loss in sweat) must constantly be replaced by new supplies of these materials from the external environment. Fresh supplies of  $\text{O}_2$  are

transferred to the internal environment by the respiratory system, but all the nutrients, H<sub>2</sub>O, and various electrolytes needed to maintain homeostasis are acquired through the digestive system. The large, complex food that is ingested is broken down by the digestive system into small absorbable units. These small energy-rich nutrient molecules are transferred across the small-intestine epithelium into the blood for delivery to the cells to replace the nutrients constantly used for ATP production and for repair and growth of body tissues. Likewise, ingested H<sub>2</sub>O, salt, and other electrolytes are absorbed by the intestine into the blood.

Unlike regulation in most body systems, regulation of digestive system activities is not aimed at maintaining homeostasis. The quantity of nutrients and H<sub>2</sub>O ingested is subject to control, but the quantity of ingested materials absorbed by the digestive tract is not subject to control, with few exceptions. The hunger mechanism governs food intake to help maintain energy balance (see Chapter 16), and the thirst mechanism controls H<sub>2</sub>O intake to help maintain H<sub>2</sub>O balance (see Chapter 14). However, we often do not heed these con-

trol mechanisms, eating and drinking even when we are not hungry or thirsty. Once these materials are in the digestive tract, the digestive system does not vary its rate of nutrient, H<sub>2</sub>O, or electrolyte uptake according to body needs (with the exception of iron and calcium); rather, it optimizes conditions for digesting and absorbing what is ingested. Truly, what you eat is what you get. The digestive system is subject to many regulatory processes, but these are not influenced by the nutritional or hydration state of the body. Instead, these control mechanisms are governed by the composition and volume of digestive tract contents so that the rate of motility and secretion of digestive juices are optimal for digestion and absorption of the ingested food.

If excess energy-rich nutrients are ingested and absorbed, the extra nutrients are placed in storage, such as in adipose tissue (fat), so that the blood level of nutrient molecules is kept at a constant level. Excess ingested H<sub>2</sub>O and electrolytes are eliminated in the urine to homeostatically maintain the blood levels of these constituents.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-49)

- The extent of nutrient uptake from the digestive tract depends on the body's needs. (*True or false?*)
- The stomach is relaxed during vomiting. (*True or false?*)
- Acid cannot normally penetrate into or between the cells lining the stomach, which enables the stomach to contain acid without injuring itself. (*True or false?*)
- Protein is continually lost from the body through digestive secretions and sloughed epithelial cells, which pass out in the feces. (*True or false?*)
- Foodstuffs not absorbed by the small intestine are absorbed by the large intestine. (*True or false?*)
- The endocrine pancreas secretes secretin and CCK. (*True or false?*)
- When food is mechanically broken down and mixed with gastric secretions, the resultant thick, liquid mixture is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
- The entire lining of the small intestine is replaced approximately every \_\_\_\_\_ days.
- The two substances absorbed by specialized transport mechanisms located only in the terminal ileum are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- The most potent choleric is \_\_\_\_\_.
- Which of the following is *not* a function of saliva?
  - begins digestion of carbohydrate
  - facilitates absorption of glucose across the oral mucosa
  - facilitates speech
  - exerts an antibacterial effect
  - plays an important role in oral hygiene
- Match the following:
 

___ 1. prevents reentry of food into the mouth during swallowing	(a) closure of the pharyngoesophageal sphincter
___ 2. triggers the swallowing reflex	(b) elevation of the uvula
___ 3. seals off the nasal passages during swallowing	(c) position of the tongue against the hard palate
___ 4. prevents air from entering the esophagus during breathing	(d) closure of the gastroesophageal sphincter
___ 5. closes off the respiratory airways during swallowing	(e) bolus pushed to the rear of the mouth by the tongue
___ 6. prevents gastric contents from backing up into the esophagus	(f) tight apposition of the vocal folds
- Use the answer code on the right to identify the characteristics of the listed substances:
 

___ 1. activates pepsinogen	(a) pepsin
___ 2. inhibits amylase	(b) mucus
___ 3. is essential for vitamin B <sub>12</sub> absorption	(c) HCl
___ 4. can act autocatalytically	(d) intrinsic factor
___ 5. is a potent stimulant for acid secretion	(e) histamine
___ 6. denatures protein	
___ 7. begins protein digestion	
___ 8. serves as a lubricant	
___ 9. kills ingested bacteria	
___ 10. is alkaline	
___ 11. is deficient in pernicious anemia	
___ 12. coats the gastric mucosa	

## Essay Questions

1. Describe the four basic digestive processes.
2. List the three categories of energy-rich foodstuffs and the absorbable units of each.
3. List the components of the digestive system. Describe the cross-sectional anatomy of the digestive tract.
4. What four general factors are involved in regulating digestive system function? What is the role of each?
5. Describe the types of motility in each component of the digestive tract. What factors control each type of motility?
6. State the composition of the digestive juice secreted by each component of the digestive system. Describe the factors that control each digestive secretion.
7. List the enzymes involved in digesting each category of foodstuff. Indicate the source and control of secretion of each of the enzymes.
8. Why are some digestive enzymes secreted in inactive form? How are they activated?
9. What absorption processes take place within each component of the digestive tract? What special adaptations of the small intestine enhance its absorptive capacity?
10. Describe the absorptive mechanisms for salt, water, carbohydrate, protein, and fat.
11. What are the contributions of the accessory digestive organs? What are the nondigestive functions of the liver?
12. Summarize the functions of each of the three major gastrointestinal hormones. What is the role of GIP?
13. What waste product is excreted in the feces?
14. How is vomiting accomplished? What are the causes and consequences of vomiting and diarrhea?

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-49)

1. Why do patients who have had a large part of their stomachs removed for treatment of stomach cancer or severe peptic ulcer disease have to eat small quantities of food frequently instead of consuming three meals a day?
2. The number of immune cells in the *gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT)* housed in the mucosa is estimated to be equal to the total number of these defense cells in the rest of the body. Speculate on the adaptive significance of this extensive defense capability of the digestive system.
3. How would defecation be accomplished in a patient paralyzed from the waist down by a lower spinal-cord injury?
4. After bilirubin is extracted from the blood by the liver, it is conjugated (combined) with glucuronic acid by the enzyme *glucuronyl transferase* within the liver. Only when conjugated can bilirubin be actively excreted into the bile. For the first few days of life, the liver does not make adequate quantities of glucuronyl transferase. Explain how this transient enzyme deficiency leads to the common condition of jaundice in newborns.
5. Explain why removal of either the stomach or the terminal ileum leads to pernicious anemia.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

**(Explanation on p. A-50)**

Thomas W. experiences a sharp pain in his upper right abdomen after eating a high-fat meal. Also, he has noted that

his feces are grayish white instead of brown. What is the most likely cause of his symptoms? Explain why each of these symptoms occurs with this condition.

## Components Important in Energy Balance and Temperature Regulation



Body systems maintain homeostasis

### Homeostasis

Among the factors that are homeostatically maintained are the availability of energy-rich nutrients to the cells and the temperature of the internal environment. The hypothalamus helps regulate food intake, which is of primary importance in energy balance. The hypothalamus also helps maintain body temperature. It can vary heat production by the skeletal muscles and can adjust heat loss from the skin surface by varying the amount of warmed blood flowing through the skin vessels and by controlling sweat production.

Homeostasis is essential for survival of cells

### Cells

Each cell needs energy to perform the functions essential for its own survival and to carry out its specialized contribution toward maintaining homeostasis. All energy used by cells is ultimately provided by food intake, which is regulated to maintain energy balance. Body temperature must be maintained at a fairly constant level to prevent unwanted changes in the rate of chemical reactions within cells and to prevent damage to cell proteins from heat.

Cells make up body systems

Food intake is essential to power cell activities. For body weight to remain constant, the caloric value of food must equal total energy needs. **Energy balance** and thus body weight are maintained primarily by controlling food intake.

Energy expenditure generates heat, which is important in **temperature regulation**. Humans, usually in environments cooler than their bodies, must constantly generate heat to maintain their body temperatures. Also, they must have mechanisms to cool the

body if it gains too much heat from heat-generating skeletal muscle activity or from a hot external environment. Body temperature must be regulated because the rate of cellular chemical reactions depends on temperature and because overheating damages cell proteins.

The hypothalamus is the major integrating center for maintaining both energy balance and body temperature.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Energy Balance**

Sources of energy input and output  
 Metabolic rate  
 Neutral, positive, and negative energy balance  
 Maintenance of energy balance and control of food intake

**Temperature Regulation**

Body temperature  
 Sources of heat gain and heat loss  
 Physical mechanisms of heat exchange  
 Sweating  
 The hypothalamus as a thermostat  
 Control of heat production; shivering  
 Control of heat loss; skin vasomotor activity  
 Integrated responses to cold and heat exposure  
 Fever

# Energy Balance and Temperature Regulation

## Energy Balance

Each cell in the body needs energy to perform the functions essential for the cell's own survival (such as active transport and cellular repair) and to carry out its specialized contributions toward maintaining homeostasis (such as gland secretion or muscle contraction). All energy used by cells is ultimately provided by food intake.

### Most food energy is ultimately converted into heat in the body.

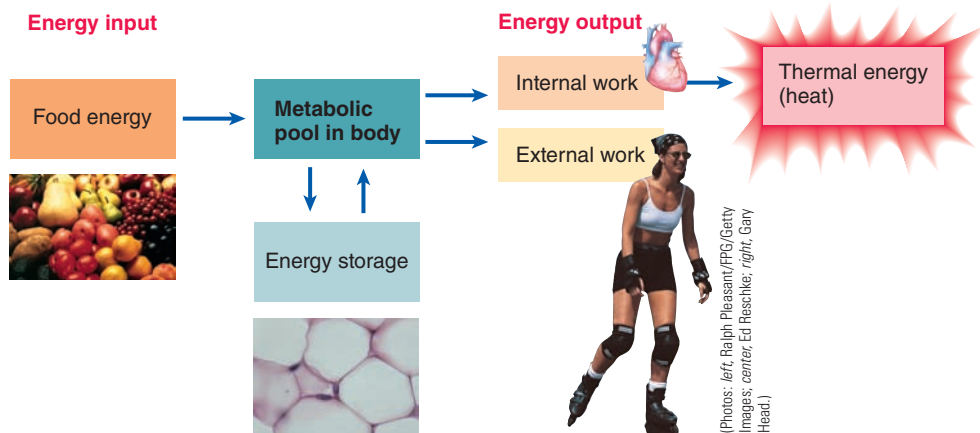
According to the **first law of thermodynamics**, energy can be neither created nor destroyed. Therefore, energy is subject to the same kind of input–output balance as are the chemical components of the body, such as H<sub>2</sub>O and salt (see p. 417).

**ENERGY INPUT AND OUTPUT** The energy in ingested food constitutes *energy input* to the body. Chemical energy locked in the bonds that hold the atoms together in nutrient molecules is released when these molecules are broken down in the body. Cells capture a portion of this nutrient energy in the high-energy phosphate bonds of adenosine triphosphate (ATP; see pp. 27 and A-17). Energy harvested from biochemical processing of ingested nutrients is either used immediately to perform biological work or stored in the body for later use as needed during periods when food is not being digested and absorbed.

*Energy output* or *expenditure* by the body falls into two categories (● Figure 16-1): external work and internal work. **External work** is the energy expended when skeletal muscles contract to move external objects or to move the body in relation to the environment. **Internal work** constitutes all other forms of biological energy expenditure that do not accomplish mechanical work outside the body. Internal work encompasses two types of energy-dependent activities: (1) skeletal muscle activity used for purposes other than external work, such as the contractions associated with postural maintenance and shivering, and (2) all energy-expending activities that must go on all the time just to sustain life. The latter include the work of pumping blood and breathing, the energy required for active transport of critical materials across plasma membranes, and the energy used during synthetic reactions essential for the maintenance, repair, and growth of cellular structures—in short, the “metabolic cost of living.”

**CONVERSION OF NUTRIENT ENERGY TO HEAT** Not all energy in nutrient molecules can be harnessed to perform biological work. Energy cannot be created or destroyed, but it can be converted from one form to another. The energy in nutrient molecules not used to energize work is transformed into **thermal energy**, or **heat**. During biochemical processing, only about 50% of the energy in nutrient molecules is transferred to ATP; the other 50% of nutrient energy is immediately lost as heat. When the cells expend ATP, another 25% of the energy derived from ingested food becomes heat.





● **FIGURE 16-1** Energy input and output.

Because the body is not a heat engine, it cannot convert heat into work. Therefore, not more than 25% of nutrient energy is available for work, either external or internal. The remaining 75% is lost as heat during the sequential transfer of energy from nutrient molecules to ATP to cellular systems.

Furthermore, of the energy actually captured for use by the body, almost all expended energy eventually becomes heat. To exemplify, energy expended by the heart to pump blood is gradually changed into heat by friction as blood flows through the vessels. Likewise, energy used in synthesizing structural protein eventually appears as heat when that protein is degraded during the normal course of turnover of bodily constituents. Even in performing external work, skeletal muscles convert chemical energy into mechanical energy inefficiently; as much as 75% of the expended energy is lost as heat. Thus, all energy liberated from ingested food that is not directly used for moving external objects or stored in fat (adipose tissue) deposits (or, in the case of growth, as protein) eventually becomes body heat. This heat is not entirely wasted energy, however, because much of it is used to maintain body temperature.

### The metabolic rate is the rate of energy use.

The rate at which energy is expended by the body during both external and internal work is known as the **metabolic rate**:

$$\text{Metabolic rate} = \text{energy expenditure/unit of time}$$

Because most of the body's energy expenditure eventually appears as heat, the metabolic rate is normally expressed in terms of the rate of heat production in kilocalories per hour. The basic unit of heat energy is the **calorie**, which is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 g of H<sub>2</sub>O by 1°C. This unit is too small to be convenient when discussing the human body because of the magnitude of heat involved, so the **kilocalorie** or **Calorie**, which is equivalent to 1000 calories, is used. When nutritionists speak of "calories" in quantifying the energy content of various foods, they are actually referring to kilocalories or Calories. Four kilocalories of heat energy are released when 1 g of glucose is oxidized or "burned," whether the oxidation takes place inside or outside the body.

**CONDITIONS FOR MEASURING THE BASAL METABOLIC RATE** The metabolic rate and, consequently, the rate of heat production vary depending on several factors, such as exercise, anxiety, shivering, and food intake. Increased skeletal muscle activity is the factor that can increase metabolic rate to the greatest extent. Even slight increases in muscle tone notably elevate the metabolic rate, and various levels of physical activity markedly alter energy expenditure and heat production (▲ Table 16-1). For this reason, a person's metabolic rate is determined under standardized

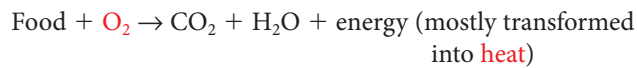
basal conditions established to control as many variables that can alter metabolic rate as possible. Specifically, the person should be at physical and mental rest at comfortable room temperature and should not have eaten within the last 12 hours. In this way, the metabolic activity necessary to maintain the basic body functions at rest can be determined. The **basal metabolic rate (BMR)** is a reflection of the body's "idling speed," or the minimal waking rate of internal energy expenditure.

**METHODS OF MEASURING THE BASAL METABOLIC RATE** The rate of heat production in BMR determinations can be measured directly or indirectly. To directly measure heat production, the

▲ **Table 16-1** Rate of Energy Expenditure for a 70-kg (154-Pound) Person during Different Activities

Activity	Energy Expenditure (kcal/hr)
Sleeping	65
Awake, lying still	77
Sitting at rest	100
Standing relaxed	105
Getting dressed	118
Typing	140
Walking slowly on level ground (2.6 mi/hr)	200
Carpentry or painting a house	240
Sexual intercourse	280
Bicycling on level ground (5.5 mi/hr)	304
Shoveling snow or sawing wood	480
Swimming	500
Jogging (5.3 mi/hr)	570
Rowing (20 strokes/min)	828
Walking up stairs	1100

person sits in an insulated chamber with water circulating through the walls. The difference in the temperature of the water entering and leaving the chamber reflects the amount of heat liberated by the person and picked up by the water as it passes through the chamber. However, a more convenient method of indirectly determining the rate of heat production was developed for widespread use. With the indirect method, only the person's  $O_2$  uptake per unit of time is measured, which is a simple task using minimal equipment. Recall that



Accordingly, a direct relationship exists between the volume of  $O_2$  used and the quantity of heat produced. This relationship also depends on the type of food being oxidized. Although carbohydrates, proteins, and fats require different amounts of  $O_2$  for their oxidation and yield different amounts of kilocalories when oxidized, an average estimate can be made of the quantity of heat produced per liter of  $O_2$  consumed on a typical mixed American diet. This approximate value, known as the **energy equivalent of  $O_2$** , is 4.8 kcal of energy liberated per liter of  $O_2$  consumed. Using this method, the metabolic rate of a person consuming 15 L/hr of  $O_2$  can be estimated as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 15 \quad \text{L/hr} = O_2 \text{ consumption} \\ \times 4.8 \quad \text{kcal/L} = \text{energy equivalent of } O_2 \\ \hline 72 \quad \text{kcal/hr} = \text{estimated metabolic rate} \end{array}$$

Once the rate of heat production is determined under the prescribed basal conditions, it must be compared with normal values for people of the same sex, age, height, and weight, because these factors all affect the basal rate of energy expenditure. For example, a large man has a higher rate of heat production than a smaller man, but expressed in terms of total surface area (which is a reflection of height and weight), the output in kilocalories per hour per square meter of surface area is normally about the same.

**FACTORS INFLUENCING THE BASAL METABOLIC RATE** Thyroid hormone is the primary but not sole determinant of the rate of basal metabolism. As thyroid hormone increases, the BMR increases correspondingly.

Surprisingly, the BMR is not the body's lowest metabolic rate. The rate of energy expenditure during sleep is 10% to 15% lower than the BMR, presumably because of the more complete muscle relaxation that occurs during the paradoxical stage of sleep (see p. 131).

### Energy input must equal energy output to maintain a neutral energy balance.

Because energy cannot be created or destroyed, energy input must equal energy output, as follows:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Energy input} = \text{energy output} \\ \text{Energy in food} = \text{external} + \text{internal heat} \pm \text{stored} \\ \text{consumed} \quad \text{work} \quad \text{production} \quad \text{energy} \end{array}$$

There are three possible states of energy balance:

- **Neutral energy balance.** If the amount of energy in food intake exactly equals the amount of energy expended by the muscles in performing external work plus the basal internal energy expenditure that eventually appears as body heat, then energy input and output are exactly in balance, and body weight remains constant.
- **Positive energy balance.** If the amount of energy in food intake is greater than the amount of energy expended by means of external work and internal functioning, the extra energy taken in but not used is stored in the body, primarily as adipose tissue, so body weight increases.
- **Negative energy balance.** Conversely, if the energy derived from food intake is less than the body's immediate energy requirements, the body must use stored energy to supply energy needs, and body weight decreases accordingly.

For a person to maintain a constant body weight (with the exception of minor fluctuations caused by changes in  $H_2O$  content), energy acquired through food intake must equal energy expenditure by the body. Because the average adult maintains a fairly constant weight over long periods, this implies that precise homeostatic mechanisms exist to maintain a long-term balance between energy intake and energy expenditure. Theoretically, total body energy content could be maintained at a constant level by regulating the magnitude of food intake, physical activity, or internal work and heat production. Control of food intake to match changing metabolic expenditures is the major means of maintaining a neutral energy balance. The level of physical activity is principally under voluntary control, and mechanisms that alter the degree of internal work and heat production are aimed primarily at regulating body temperature rather than total energy balance.

However, after several weeks of eating less or more than the body's desired amount, small counteracting changes in metabolism may occur. For example, a compensatory increase in the body's efficiency of energy use in response to underfeeding partially explains why some dieters become stuck at a plateau after having lost the first 10 or so pounds of weight fairly easily. Similarly, a compensatory reduction in the efficiency of energy use in response to overfeeding accounts in part for the difficulty experienced by very thin people who are deliberately trying to gain weight. Despite these modest compensatory changes in metabolism, regulation of food intake is the most important factor in the long-term maintenance of energy balance and body weight.

### Food intake is controlled primarily by the hypothalamus.

Even though food intake is adjusted to balance changing energy expenditures over time, there are no calorie receptors per se to monitor energy input, energy output, or total body energy content. Instead, various blood-borne chemical factors that signal the body's nutritional state, such as how much fat is stored or the feeding status, are important in regulating food intake. Control of food intake does not depend on changes in a single signal but is determined by the integration of many inputs that pro-

vide information about the body's energy status. Multiple molecular signals together ensure that feeding behavior is synchronized with the body's immediate and long-term energy needs. Some information is used for short-term regulation of food intake, helping to control meal size and frequency. Even so, over a 24-hour period the energy in ingested food rarely matches energy expenditure for that day. The correlation between total caloric intake and total energy output is excellent, however, over long periods. As a result, the total energy content of the body—and, consequently, body weight—remains relatively constant long term. Thus, energy homeostasis, that is, energy balance, is carefully regulated.

#### ROLE OF THE ARCUATE NUCLEUS: NPY AND MELANOCORTINS

The **arcuate nucleus** of the hypothalamus plays a central role in both the long-term control of energy balance and body weight and the short-term control of food intake from meal to meal. The arcuate nucleus is an arc-shaped collection of neurons located adjacent to the floor of the third ventricle. Multiple, highly integrated, redundant pathways crisscross into and out of the arcuate nucleus, indicative of the complex systems involved in feeding and satiety. **Feeding, or appetite, signals** give rise to the sensation of **hunger**, driving us to eat. By contrast, **satiety** is the feeling of being full. **Satiety signals** tell us when we have had enough and suppress the desire to eat.

The arcuate nucleus has two subsets of neurons that function in an opposing manner. One subset releases *neuropeptide Y*, and the other releases *melanocortins* derived from proopiomelanocortin (POMC), a precursor molecule that can be cleaved in different ways to produce several hormone products (see p. 502).<sup>1</sup> **Neuropeptide Y (NPY)**, one of the most potent appetite stimulators ever found, leads to increased food intake, thus promoting weight gain. **Melanocortins**, a group of hormones traditionally known to be important in varying the skin color for the purpose of camouflage in some species, have been shown to exert an unexpected role in energy homeostasis in humans. Melanocortins, most notably *melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH)* from the hypothalamus, suppress appetite, thus leading to reduced food intake and weight loss.

But NPY and melanocortins are not the final effectors in appetite control. These arcuate-nucleus chemical messengers, in turn, influence the release of neuropeptides in other parts of the brain that exert more direct control over food intake. Scientists are trying to unravel the other factors that act upstream and downstream from NPY and melanocortins to regulate appetite. Based on current evidence, the following regulatory in-

puts to the arcuate nucleus and beyond are important in the long-term maintenance of energy balance and the short-term control of food intake at meals (● Figure 16-2).

#### REGULATORY INPUTS TO THE ARCUATE NUCLEUS IN LONG-TERM MAINTENANCE OF ENERGY BALANCE: LEPTIN AND INSULIN

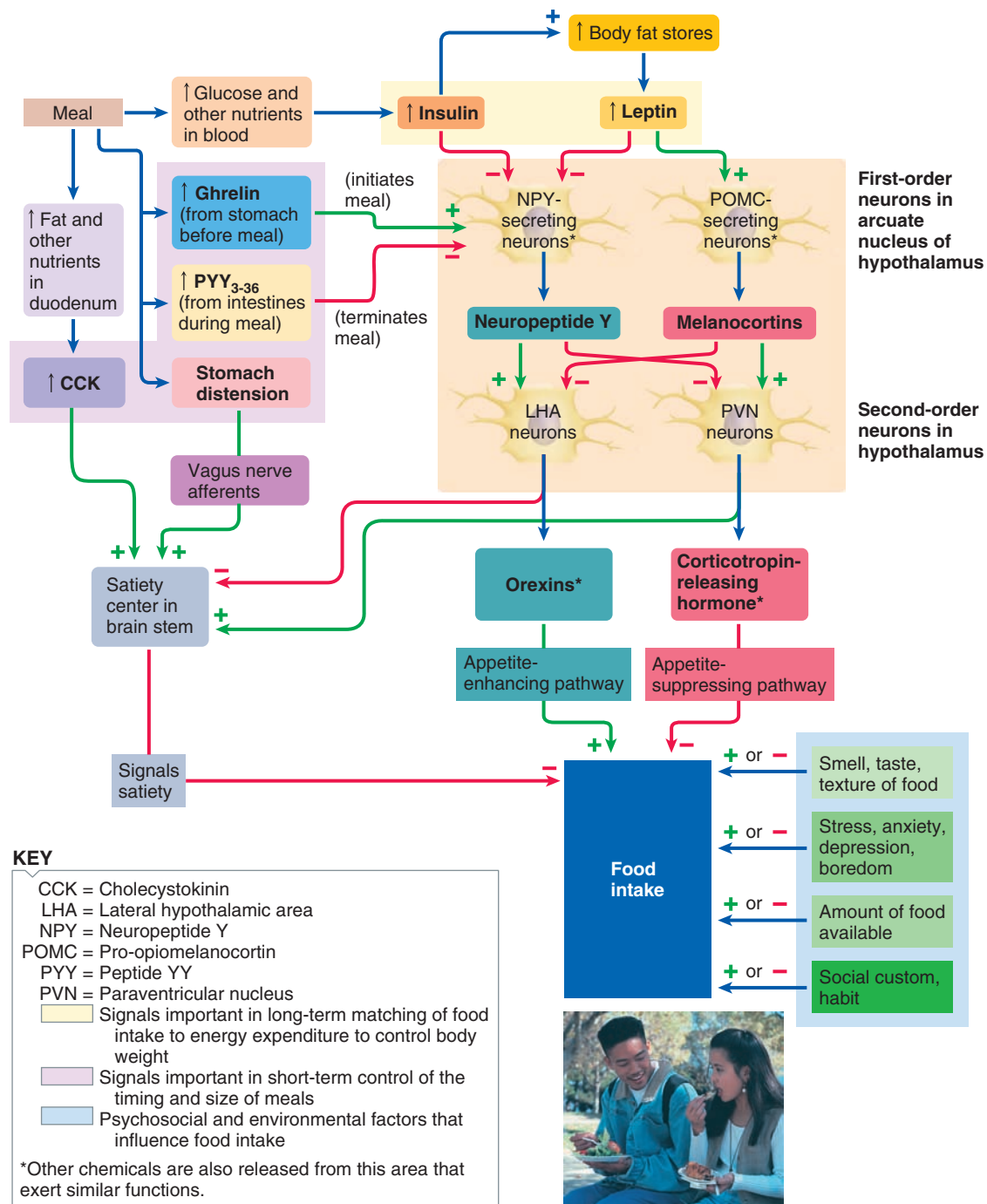
Scientists' notion of fat cells (**adipocytes**) in adipose tissue as merely storage space for triglyceride fat underwent a dramatic change late in the last century with the discovery of their active role in energy homeostasis. Adipocytes secrete several hormones, collectively termed **adipokines**, that play important roles in energy balance and metabolism. Thus, adipose tissue is now considered an endocrine gland. Some adipokines are released only from stored fat; *leptin*, for example, plays an important role in energy balance. Some, like inflammatory-related *tumor necrosis factor* and *interleukin 6*, are released from adipose tissue and immune cells and contribute to chronic, low-grade inflammation in excessive fat stores. Some, like *visfatin*, are released only from **visceral fat**, the deep, "bad" fat that surrounds the abdominal organs. Visceral fat is more likely to be chronically inflamed and is associated with increased heart disease, in contrast to the more superficial and less harmful **subcutaneous fat** that is deposited under the skin. (Subcutaneous fat is the fat you can pinch.)

One of the most important adipokines is **leptin**, a hormone essential for normal body-weight regulation (*leptin* means "thin"). The amount of leptin in the blood is an excellent indicator of the total amount of triglyceride fat stored in adipose tissue: The larger the fat stores, the more leptin released into the blood. This blood-borne signal, discovered in the mid-1990s, was the first molecular satiety signal identified. This finding touched off a flurry of research responsible for greatly expanding our knowledge in recent years of the complex interplay of chemical signals that regulate food intake and body size.

The arcuate nucleus is the major site for leptin action. Acting in negative-feedback fashion, increased leptin from burgeoning fat stores serves as a "trim-down" signal. Leptin suppresses appetite, thus decreasing food consumption and promoting weight loss, by inhibiting hypothalamic output of appetite-stimulating NPY and stimulating output of appetite-suppressing melanocortins. Conversely, a decrease in fat stores and the resultant decline in leptin secretion bring about an increase in appetite, leading to weight gain. The leptin signal is generally considered the dominant factor responsible for the long-term matching of food intake to energy expenditure so that total body energy content remains balanced and body weight remains constant.

Another blood-borne signal besides leptin that plays an important role in long-term control of body weight is **insulin**. Insulin, a hormone secreted by the pancreas in response to a rise in the concentration of glucose and other nutrients in the blood following a meal, stimulates cellular uptake, use, and storage of these nutrients (see p. 530). Thus, the increase in insulin secretion that accompanies nutrient abundance, use, and storage appropriately inhibits the NPY-secreting cells of the arcuate nucleus, thus suppressing further food intake.

<sup>1</sup>The two subsets of neurons in the arcuate nucleus are the **NPY/AgRP** population and the **POMC/CART** population. *AgRP* stands for *agouti-related protein*. Both NPY and AgRP stimulate appetite. *CART* stands for *cocaine- and amphetamine-related transcript*. Melanocortins and CART both suppress appetite. For simplicity's sake, we discuss only the role of NPY and melanocortins but recognize that other chemical signals released from the arcuate nucleus exert similar functions.



● **FIGURE 16-2** Factors that influence food intake.

**BEYOND THE ARCUATE NUCLEUS: OREXINS AND OTHERS** Two hypothalamic areas are richly supplied by axons from the NPY- and melanocortin-secreting neurons of the arcuate nucleus. These second-order neuronal areas involved in energy balance and food intake are the **lateral hypothalamic area (LHA)** and **paraventricular nucleus (PVN)**. The LHA and PVN release chemical messengers in response to input from the arcuate nucleus neurons. These messengers act downstream from the NPY and melanocortin signals to regulate appetite. The LHA

produces **orexins** (ore-EKS-ins), which are potent stimulators of food intake (*orexis* means “appetite”). NPY stimulates and melanocortins inhibit the release of appetite-enhancing orexins. By contrast, the PVN releases chemical messengers, for example, **corticotropin-releasing hormone**, that decrease appetite and food intake. (As its name implies, corticotropin-releasing hormone is better known for its role as a hormone; see p. 504.) Melanocortins stimulate and NPY inhibits the release of these appetite-suppressing chemicals.

In addition to these signals that are important in the long-term control of body weight, other factors play a role in controlling the timing and size of meals. Several blood-borne messengers from the digestive tract and pancreas are important in regulating how often and how much we eat in a given day.

**SHORT-TERM EATING BEHAVIOR: GHRELIN AND PYY<sub>3-36</sub> SECRETION** Two peptides important in the short-term control of food intake are *ghrelin* and *peptide YY<sub>3-36</sub>*, which signify hunger and fullness, respectively. Both are secreted by the digestive tract. **Ghrelin** (GRELL-in), the so-called hunger hormone, is a potent appetite stimulator produced by the stomach and regulated by the feeding status (*ghrelin* is the Hindu word for “growth”). Secretion of this mealtime stimulator peaks before meals and makes people feel like eating, and then it falls once food is eaten. Ghrelin stimulates appetite by activating the hypothalamic NPY-secreting neurons.

**Peptide YY<sub>3-36</sub> (PYY<sub>3-36</sub>)** is a counterpart of ghrelin. The secretion of PYY<sub>3-36</sub>, which is produced by the small and large intestines, is at its lowest level before a meal but rises during meals and signals satiety. This peptide acts by inhibiting the appetite-stimulating NPY-secreting neurons in the arcuate nucleus. By thwarting appetite, PYY<sub>3-36</sub> is believed to be an important mealtime terminator.

The following other factors are also involved in signaling where the body is on the hunger–satiety scale.

**SATIETY CENTER** In addition to the key role the hypothalamus plays in maintaining energy balance, a **satiety center** in the brain stem processes signals important in the feeling of being full and thus contributes to short-term control of meals. Not only does the satiety center receive input from the higher hypothalamic neurons involved in energy homeostasis, but it also receives afferent inputs from the digestive tract (for example, afferent input indicating the extent of stomach distension) and elsewhere that signal satiety. We now turn to cholecystokinin, the most important of these satiety signals.

**CHOLECYSTOKININ AS A SATIETY SIGNAL** **Cholecystokinin (CCK)**, one of the gastrointestinal hormones released from the duodenal mucosa during digestion of a meal, is an important satiety signal for regulating the size of meals. CCK is secreted in response to the presence of nutrients in the small intestine. Through multiple effects on the digestive system, CCK facilitates digestion and absorption of these nutrients (see p. 474). It is appropriate that this blood-borne signal, whose rate of secretion is correlated with the amount of nutrients ingested, contributes to the sense of being filled after a meal has been consumed but before it has been digested and absorbed. We feel satisfied when adequate food to replenish the stores is in the digestive tract even though the body’s energy stores are still low. This explains why we stop eating before the ingested food is made available to meet the body’s energy needs.

▲ Table 16-2 summarizes the effect of involuntary regulatory signals on appetite.

**PSYCHOSOCIAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL INFLUENCES** Thus far, we have described involuntary signals that automatically occur to

▲ **Table 16-2** Effects of Involuntary Regulatory Signals on Appetite

Regulatory Signal	Source of Signal	Effect of Signal on Appetite
Neuropeptide Y	Arcuate nucleus of hypothalamus	↑
Melanocortins	Arcuate nucleus of hypothalamus	↓
Leptin	Adipose tissue	↓
Insulin	Endocrine pancreas	↓
Orexins	Lateral hypothalamus	↑
Corticotropin-releasing hormone	Paraventricular nucleus of hypothalamus	↓
Ghrelin	Stomach	↑
Peptide YY <sub>3-36</sub>	Small and large intestines	↓
Stomach distension	Stomach	↓
Cholecystokinin	Small intestine	↓

control food intake. However, as with water intake, people’s eating habits are also shaped by psychological, social, and environmental factors. Often our decision to eat or stop eating is not determined merely by whether we are hungry or full, respectively. Frequently, we eat out of habit (eating three meals a day on schedule no matter what our status on the hunger–satiety continuum) or because of social custom (food often plays a prime role in entertainment, leisure, and business activities). Even well-intentioned family pressure—“Clean your plate before you leave the table”—can affect the amount consumed.

Furthermore, the amount of pleasure derived from eating can reinforce feeding behavior. Eating foods with an enjoyable taste, smell, and texture can increase appetite and food intake. This has been demonstrated in an experiment in which rats were offered their choice of highly palatable human foods. They overate by as much as 70% to 80% and became obese. When the rats returned to eating their regular monotonous but nutritionally balanced rat chow, their obesity was rapidly reversed, as their food intake was controlled again by physiological drives rather than by hedonistic urges for the tastier offerings.

Stress, anxiety, depression, and boredom have also been shown to alter feeding behavior in ways unrelated to energy needs in both experimental animals and humans. People often eat to satisfy psychological needs rather than to satisfy hunger. Furthermore, environmental influences, such as the amount of food available, play an important role in determining the extent of food intake. Thus, any comprehensive explanation of how food intake is controlled must take into account these voluntary eating acts that can reinforce or override the internal signals governing feeding behavior.

## Obesity occurs when more kilocalories are consumed than are burned up.



**Obesity** is defined as excessive fat content in the adipose tissue stores; the arbitrary boundary for obesity is generally considered to be greater than 20% overweight compared to normal standards. More than two thirds of the adults in the United States are now clinically overweight, with one third being clinically obese. To make matters worse, obesity is on the rise. The number of obese adults in the United States is 75% higher now than it was 15 years ago. And much of the world is following the same trend, leading the World Health Organization to coin the word *globesity* to describe the worldwide situation.

Obesity occurs when, over time, more kilocalories are ingested in food than are used to support the body's energy needs, with the excessive energy being stored as triglycerides in adipose tissue. The causes of obesity are many, and some remain obscure.

**POSSIBLE CAUSES OF OBESITY** Some factors that may be involved in the development of obesity include the following:

- *Disturbances in the leptin-signaling pathway.* Some cases of obesity have been linked to leptin resistance. Some investigators suggest that the hypothalamic centers involved in maintaining energy homeostasis are “set at a higher level” in obese people. For example, the problem may lie with faulty leptin receptors in the brain that do not respond appropriately to the high levels of circulating leptin from abundant adipose stores. Thus, the brain does not detect leptin as a signal to turn down appetite until a higher set point (and accordingly greater fat storage) is achieved. This could explain why overweight people tend to maintain their weight but at a heavier-than-normal level.

- *Lack of exercise.* Numerous studies have shown that, on average, fat people do not eat more than thin people. One possible explanation is that overweight people do not overeat but underexercise—the “couch potato” syndrome. Low levels of physical activity typically are not accompanied by comparable reductions in food intake.

For this reason, modern technology is partly to blame for the current obesity epidemic. Our ancestors had to exert physical effort to eke out a subsistence. By comparison, we now have machines to replace much manual labor, remote controls to operate our machines with minimal effort, and computers that encourage long hours of sitting. We have to make a conscious effort to exercise.

- *Differences in the “fidget factor.”* **Nonexercise activity thermogenesis (NEAT)**, or the “fidget factor,” might explain some variation in fat storage among people. Those who engage in toe tapping or other types of repetitive, spontaneous physical activity expend a substantial number of kilocalories throughout the day without a conscious effort.

- *Differences in extracting energy from food.* Another reason lean people and obese people may have dramatically different body weights despite consuming the same number of kilocalo-

ries may lie in the efficiency with which each extracts energy from food. Studies suggest that leaner individuals tend to derive less energy from the food they consume because they convert more of the food's energy into heat than into energy for immediate use or for storage.

- *Hereditary tendencies.* Often, differences in the regulatory pathways for energy balance—either those governing food intake or those influencing energy expenditure—arise from genetic variations.

- *Development of an excessive number of fat cells as a result of overfeeding.* One of the problems in fighting obesity is that once fat cells are created they do not disappear with dieting and weight loss. Even if a dieter loses a large portion of the triglyceride fat stored in these cells, the depleted cells remain, ready to refill. Therefore, rebound weight gain after losing weight is difficult to avoid and discouraging for the dieter.

- *Certain endocrine disorders such as hypothyroidism.* Hypothyroidism involves a deficiency of thyroid hormone, the main factor that bumps up the BMR so that the body burns more calories in its idling state (see p. 516).

- *Too little sleep.* Some studies suggest that decreased time sleeping may be a contributing factor in the recent rise of obesity. On average, people in the United States are sleeping 1 to 2 hours less per night now than they did 40 years ago. Researchers found that those who typically sleep 6 hours a night are 23% more likely to be obese, those who average 5 hours of sleep are 50% more likely to be obese, and those who sleep 4 hours nightly are 75% more likely to be obese than “traditional” sleepers who sleep for 7 to 8 hours. Studies have shown that levels of leptin (a signal to stop eating) are lower and levels of ghrelin (a signal to start eating) are higher in people who sleep less compared with those who sleep the traditional 8 hours.

- *A possible virus link.* One intriguing proposal links a relatively common cold virus to a propensity to become overweight and may account for a portion of the current obesity epidemic.

- *An abundance of convenient, highly palatable, energy-dense, relatively inexpensive foods.*

- *Emotional disturbances in which overeating replaces other gratifications.*

Despite this rather lengthy list, our knowledge about the causes and control of obesity is still rather limited, as evidenced by the number of people who are constantly trying to stabilize their weight at a more desirable level. This is important from more than an aesthetic viewpoint. It is known that obesity, especially of the android type, can predispose an individual to illness and premature death from a multitude of diseases.



**ANDROID AND GYNOID OBESITY** There are different ways to be fat, and one way is more dangerous than the other. Obese patients can be classified into two categories—*android*, a male-type of adipose tissue distribution, and *gynoid*, a female-type distribution—based on the anatomic distribution of adipose tissue measured as the ratio of

waist circumference to hip circumference. **Android obesity** is characterized by abdominal fat distribution (people shaped like “apples”), whereas **gynoid obesity** is characterized by fat distribution in the hips and thighs (people shaped like “pears”). Both sexes can display either android or gynoid obesity.

Android obesity is associated with a number of disorders, including insulin resistance, Type 2 (adult-onset) diabetes mellitus, excess blood lipid levels, high blood pressure, coronary heart disease, and stroke. “Apple” people have a greater proportion of visceral fat, which is more worrisome than accumulation of subcutaneous fat, because visceral fat releases more of the bad adipokines that promote insulin resistance and boost the low-level inflammation that underlies the development of atherosclerosis (see p. 253). Gynoid obesity is not associated with the high risk of these diseases.

### People suffering from anorexia nervosa have a pathological fear of gaining weight.



The converse of obesity is generalized nutritional deficiency. The obvious causes for reduction of food intake below energy needs are lack of availability of food, interference with swallowing or digestion, and impairment of appetite.

One poorly understood disorder in which lack of appetite is a prominent feature is **anorexia nervosa**. Patients with this disorder, most commonly adolescent girls and young women, have a morbid fear of becoming fat. They have a distorted body image, tending to visualize themselves as being heavier than they actually are. Because they have an aversion to food, they eat little and consequently lose considerable weight, perhaps even starving themselves to death. Other characteristics of the condition include altered secretion of many hormones, absence of menstrual periods, and low body temperature. It is unclear whether these symptoms occur secondarily as a result of general malnutrition or arise independently of the eating disturbance as a part of a primary hypothalamic malfunction. Many investigators think the underlying problem may be psychological rather than biological. Some experts suspect that anorexics may suffer from addiction to endogenous opiates, self-produced morphinelike substances (see p. 146) thought to be released during prolonged starvation.

## Temperature Regulation

Humans are usually in environments cooler than their bodies, but they constantly generate heat internally, which helps maintain body temperature. Heat production ultimately depends on the oxidation of metabolic fuel derived from food.

Changes in body temperature in either direction alter cell activity—an increase in temperature speeds up cellular chemical reactions, whereas a fall in temperature slows down these reactions. Because cell function is sensitive to fluctuations in internal temperature, humans homeostatically maintain body temperature at a level optimal for stable cellular metabolism. Overheating is more serious than cooling. Even moderate elevations of body temperature begin to cause nerve malfunction and irreversible

protein denaturation. Most people suffer convulsions when the internal body temperature reaches about 106°F (41°C); 110°F (43.3°C) is considered the upper limit compatible with life.



By contrast, most of the body’s tissues can transiently withstand substantial cooling. This characteristic is useful during cardiac surgery when the heart must be stopped. For such surgery, the patient’s body temperature is deliberately lowered; the cooled tissues need less nourishment than they do at normal body temperature because of their reduced metabolic activity. However, a pronounced, prolonged fall in body temperature slows metabolism to a fatal level.

### Internal core temperature is homeostatically maintained at 100°F (37.8°C).

Normal body temperature taken orally (by mouth) has traditionally been considered 98.6°F (37°C). However, a recent study indicates that normal body temperature varies among individuals and varies throughout the day, ranging from 96.0°F (35.5°C) in the morning to 99.9°F (37.7°C) in the evening, with an overall average of 98.2°F (36.7°C). This variation is largely due to an innate biological rhythm or “biological clock.”

Furthermore, there is no one body temperature because the temperature varies from organ to organ. From a thermoregulatory viewpoint, the body may conveniently be viewed as a *central core* surrounded by an *outer shell*. The temperature within the central core, which consists of the abdominal and thoracic organs, the central nervous system, and the skeletal muscles, generally remains fairly constant. This internal **core temperature** is subject to precise regulation to maintain its homeostatic constancy. The core tissues function best at a relatively constant temperature of around 100°F (37.8°C).

The skin and subcutaneous fat constitute the outer shell. In contrast to the constant high temperature in the core, the temperature within the shell is generally cooler and may vary substantially. For example, skin temperature may fluctuate between 68°F and 104°F (20°C and 40°C) without damage. As you will see, the temperature of the skin is deliberately varied as a control measure to help maintain the core’s thermal constancy.

**SITES FOR MONITORING BODY TEMPERATURE** Several easily accessible sites are used for monitoring body temperature. The oral and axillary (under the armpit) temperatures are comparable, whereas rectal temperature averages about 1°F (0.56°C) higher. Also available is a temperature-monitoring instrument that scans the heat generated by the eardrum and converts this temperature into an oral equivalent. A more recent device is the temporal scanner that measures the temperature in the temporal artery. A computerized instrument is gently stroked from one side to the other across the forehead over the temporal artery, which lies less than 2 mm below the skin surface in this region. Temporal temperature is the best determinant of core temperature because it is nearly identical to the temperature of the blood exiting the heart. However, none of these measurements is an absolute indication of the internal core temperature, which is a bit higher, at 100°F, than the monitored sites.

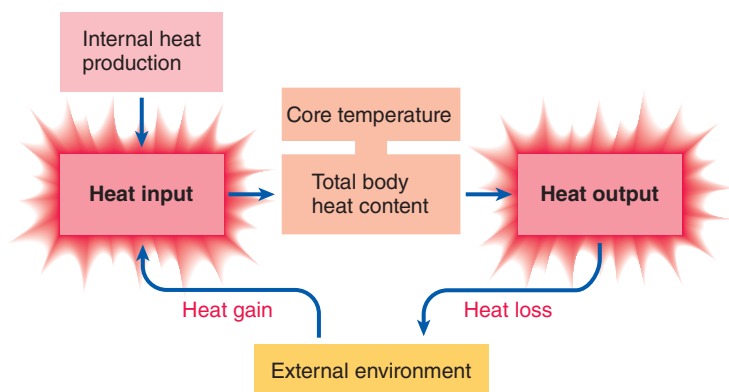
### Heat input must balance heat output to maintain a stable core temperature.

The core temperature is a reflection of the body's total heat content. Heat input to the body must balance heat output to maintain a constant total heat content and thus a stable core temperature (● Figure 16-3). *Heat input* occurs by way of heat gain from the external environment and internal heat production, the latter being the most important source of heat for the body. Recall that most of the body's energy expenditure ultimately appears as heat. This heat is important in maintaining core temperature. Usually, more heat is generated than required to maintain normal body temperature, so the excess heat must be eliminated. *Heat output* occurs by way of heat loss from exposed body surfaces to the external environment.

Balance between heat input and heat output is frequently disturbed by (1) changes in internal heat production for purposes unrelated to regulation of body temperature—most notably by exercise, which markedly increases heat production—and (2) changes in the external environmental temperature that influence the degree of heat gain or heat loss that occurs between the body and its surroundings. Compensatory adjustments must take place in heat-loss and heat-gain mechanisms to maintain body temperature within narrow limits, despite changes in metabolic heat production and changes in environmental temperature. We now elaborate how these adjustments are made.

### Heat exchange takes place by radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation.

All heat loss or heat gain between the body and the external environment must take place between the body surface and its surroundings. The same physical laws of nature that govern heat transfer between inanimate objects control the transfer of heat between the body surface and the environment. The temperature of an object is a measure of the concentration of heat within the object. Heat always moves down its concentration gradient—that is, down a **thermal gradient** from a warmer to a cooler region (*thermo* means “heat”). The body uses four mechanisms of heat transfer: *radiation*, *conduction*, *convection*, and *evaporation*.



● FIGURE 16-3 Heat input and output.

**RADIATION** Radiation is the emission of heat energy from the surface of a warm body in the form of **electromagnetic waves**, or **heat waves**, which travel through space (● Figure 16-4a). When radiant energy strikes an object and is absorbed, the energy of the wave motion is transformed into heat within the object. The human body both emits (source of heat loss) and absorbs (source of heat gain) radiant energy. Whether the body loses or gains heat by radiation depends on the difference in temperature between the skin surface and the surfaces of other objects in the body's environment. Because net transfer of heat by radiation is always from warmer objects to cooler ones, the body gains heat by radiation from objects warmer than the skin surface, such as the sun, a radiator, or burning logs. By contrast, the body loses heat by radiation to objects in its environment whose surfaces are cooler than the surface of the skin, such as building walls, furniture, or trees. On average, humans lose close to half of their heat energy through radiation.

**CONDUCTION** Conduction is the transfer of heat between objects of differing temperatures that are in direct contact with each other, with heat moving down its thermal gradient from the warmer to the cooler object (● Figure 16-4b). When you hold a snowball, for example, your hand becomes cold because heat moves by conduction from your hand to the snowball. Conversely, when you apply a heating pad to a body part, the part is warmed up as heat is transferred directly from the pad to the body.

Similarly, you either lose or gain heat by conduction to the layer of air in direct contact with your body. The direction of heat transfer depends on whether the air is cooler or warmer, respectively, than your skin. Only a small percentage of total heat exchange between the skin and the environment takes place by conduction alone, however, because air is not a good conductor of heat. (For this reason, swimming pool water at 80°F (26.7°C) feels cooler than air at the same temperature; heat is conducted more rapidly from the body surface into the water, which is a good conductor, than into the air, which is a poor conductor.)

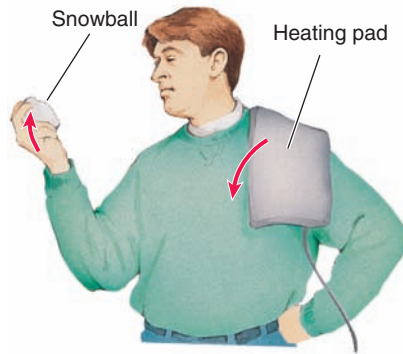
**CONVECTION** The term **convection** refers to the transfer of heat energy by *air* (or *water*) *currents*. As the body loses heat by conduction to the surrounding cooler air, the air in immediate contact with the skin is warmed. Because warm air is lighter (less dense) than cool air, the warmed air rises while cooler air moves in next to the skin to replace the vacating warm air. The process is then repeated (● Figure 16-4c). These air movements, known as *convection currents*, help carry heat away from the body. Without convection currents, no further heat could be dissipated from the skin by conduction once the temperature of the layer of air immediately around the body equilibrated with skin temperature.

The combined conduction–convection process of dissipating heat from the body is enhanced by forced movement of air across the body surface, either by external air movements, such as those caused by the wind or a fan, or by movement of the body through the air, as during bicycle riding. Because forced air movement sweeps away the air warmed by conduction and

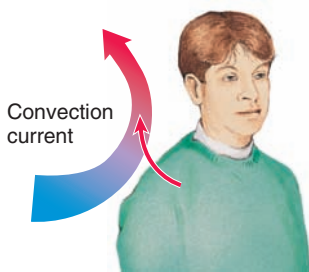




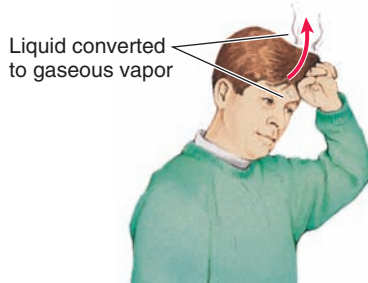
(a) **Radiation**—the transfer of heat energy from a warmer object to a cooler object in the form of electromagnetic waves (“heat waves”), which travel through space.



(b) **Conduction**—the transfer of heat from a warmer to a cooler object that is in direct contact with the warmer one. The heat is transferred through the movement of thermal energy from molecule to adjacent molecule.



(c) **Convection**—the transfer of heat energy by air currents. Cool air warmed by the body through conduction rises and is replaced by more cool air. This process is enhanced by the forced movement of air across the body surface.



(d) **Evaporation**—conversion of a liquid such as sweat into a gaseous vapor, a process that requires heat (the heat of vaporization), which is absorbed from the skin.

● **FIGURE 16-4 Mechanisms of heat transfer.** The direction of the arrows depicts the direction of heat transfer.

replaces it with cooler air more rapidly, a greater total amount of heat can be carried away from the body over a given period. Thus, wind makes us feel cooler on hot days, and windy days in the winter are more chilling than calm days at the same cold temperature. For this reason, weather forecasters have developed the concept of *wind chill factor* (how cold it feels).

**EVAPORATION** During **evaporation** from the skin surface, the heat required to transform water from a liquid to a gaseous state is absorbed from the skin, thereby cooling the body (● Figure 16-4d). Evaporative heat loss makes you feel cooler when your bathing suit is wet than when it is dry. Evaporative heat loss occurs continually from the linings of the respiratory airways and from the surface of the skin. Heat is continuously lost in expired air as a result of the air being humidified (gaining water vapor) during its passage through the respiratory system (see p. 345). Similarly, because the skin is not completely waterproof, water molecules constantly diffuse through the skin and evaporate (see p. 424). This ongoing evaporation from the skin is unrelated to the sweat glands. These passive evaporative heat-loss processes are not subject to physiological control and go on even in very cold weather, when the problem is one of conserving body heat.

### Sweating is a regulated evaporative heat-loss process.

**Sweating** is an active evaporative heat-loss process under sympathetic nervous control. The rate of evaporative heat loss can be deliberately adjusted by varying the extent of sweating, which is an important homeostatic mechanism to eliminate excess heat as needed. At normal temperature, an average of 100 ml of sweat is produced per day; this value increases to 1.5 liters during hot weather and climbs to 4 liters during heavy exercise.

**Sweat** is a dilute salt solution actively extruded to the surface of the skin by sweat glands dispersed all over the body. Sweat must be evaporated from the skin for heat loss to occur. If sweat merely drips from the surface of skin or is wiped away, no heat loss is accomplished. The most important factor determining the extent of evaporation of sweat is the *relative humidity* of the surrounding air (the percentage of  $H_2O$  vapor actually present in the air compared to the greatest amount that the air can possibly hold at that temperature; for example, a relative humidity of 70% means that the air contains 70% of the  $H_2O$  vapor it is capable of holding). When the relative humidity is high, the air is already almost fully saturated with  $H_2O$ , so it has limited ability to take up additional moisture from the skin. Thus, little evaporative heat loss can occur on hot, humid days. The sweat glands continue to secrete, but the sweat simply remains on the skin or drips off instead of evaporating and producing a cooling effect. As a measure of the discomfort associated with combined heat and high humidity, meteorologists have devised the *temperature–humidity index*, or *heat index* (how hot it feels).

already almost fully saturated with  $H_2O$ , so it has limited ability to take up additional moisture from the skin. Thus, little evaporative heat loss can occur on hot, humid days. The sweat glands continue to secrete, but the sweat simply remains on the skin or drips off instead of evaporating and producing a cooling effect. As a measure of the discomfort associated with combined heat and high humidity, meteorologists have devised the *temperature–humidity index*, or *heat index* (how hot it feels).

### The hypothalamus integrates a multitude of thermosensory inputs.

The hypothalamus is the body’s thermostat. The home thermostat keeps track of the temperature in a room and triggers a heating mechanism (the furnace) or a cooling mechanism (the air conditioner) as necessary to maintain room temperature at the indicated setting. Similarly, the hypothalamus, as the body’s thermoregulatory integrating center, receives afferent information about the temperature in various regions of the body and initiates extremely complex, coordinated adjustments in heat-gain and heat-loss mechanisms as necessary to correct any deviations in core temperature from normal. The hypothalamus is

far more sensitive than your home thermostat. It can respond to changes in blood temperature as small as 0.01°C.

To appropriately adjust the delicate balance between the heat-loss mechanisms and the opposing heat-producing and heat-conserving mechanisms, the hypothalamus must be apprised continuously of both the core and the skin temperature by specialized temperature-sensitive receptors called **thermoreceptors**. The core temperature is monitored by *central thermoreceptors*, which are located in the hypothalamus itself, as well as in the abdominal organs and elsewhere. *Peripheral thermoreceptors* monitor skin temperature throughout the body.

Two centers for temperature regulation are in the hypothalamus. The *posterior region*, activated by cold, triggers reflexes that mediate heat production and heat conservation. The *anterior region*, activated by warmth, initiates reflexes that mediate heat loss. Let us examine the means by which the hypothalamus fulfills its thermoregulatory functions.

### Shivering is the primary involuntary means of increasing heat production.

The body can gain heat as a result of internal heat production generated by metabolic activity or from the external environment if the latter is warmer than body temperature. Because body temperature usually is higher than environmental temperature, metabolic heat production is the primary source of body heat. In a resting person, most body heat is produced by the thoracic and abdominal organs as a result of ongoing, cost-of-living metabolic activities. Beyond this basal level, the rate of metabolic heat production can be variably increased primarily by changes in skeletal muscle activity or, to a lesser extent, by certain hormonal actions. Thus, changes in skeletal muscle activity constitute the major way heat gain is controlled for temperature regulation.

**ADJUSTMENTS IN HEAT PRODUCTION BY SKELETAL MUSCLES** In response to a fall in core temperature caused by exposure to cold, the hypothalamus takes advantage of increased skeletal muscle activity generating more heat. Acting through descending pathways that terminate on the motor neurons controlling the skeletal muscles, the hypothalamus first gradually increases skeletal muscle tone. (Muscle tone is the constant level of tension within the muscles.) Soon shivering begins. **Shivering** consists of rhythmic, oscillating skeletal muscle contractions that occur at a rapid rate of 10 to 20 per second. This mechanism is efficient and effective in increasing heat production; all energy liberated during these muscle tremors is converted to heat because no external work is accomplished. Within seconds to minutes, internal heat production may increase two- to five-fold as a result of shivering.

Frequently, these reflex changes in skeletal muscle activity are augmented by increased voluntary, heat-producing actions such as bouncing up and down or hand clapping. The hypothalamus influences these behavioral responses, as well as the involuntary physiological responses. As part of the limbic system, the hypothalamus is extensively involved with controlling motivated behavior (see p. 124).

In the opposite situation—a rise in core temperature caused by heat exposure—two mechanisms reduce heat-producing skeletal muscle activity: Muscle tone is reflexly decreased, and voluntary movement is curtailed. When the air becomes very warm, people often complain it is “too hot even to move.”

**NONSHIVERING THERMOGENESIS** Although reflex and voluntary changes in muscle activity are the major means of increasing the rate of heat production, **nonshivering (chemical) thermogenesis** also plays a role in thermoregulation. In most experimental animals, chronic cold exposure brings about an increase in metabolic heat production independent of muscle contraction, instead being brought about by changes in heat-generating chemical activity. In humans, nonshivering thermogenesis is most important in newborns because they lack the ability to shiver. Nonshivering thermogenesis is mediated by the hormones epinephrine and thyroid hormone, both of which increase heat production by stimulating fat metabolism. Newborns have deposits of a special type of adipose tissue known as **brown fat**, which is especially capable of converting chemical energy into heat. The role of nonshivering thermogenesis in adults remains controversial.

Having examined the mechanisms for adjusting heat production, we now turn to the other side of the equation: adjustments in heat loss.

### The magnitude of heat loss can be adjusted by varying the flow of blood through the skin.

Heat-loss mechanisms are subject to control, again largely by the hypothalamus. When we are hot, we need to increase heat loss to the environment; when we are cold, we need to decrease heat loss. The amount of heat lost to the environment by radiation and the conduction–convection process is largely determined by the temperature gradient between the skin and the external environment. To maintain a constant core temperature, the insulative capacity and temperature of the skin can be adjusted to vary the temperature gradient between the skin and the external environment, thereby influencing the extent of heat loss.

The insulative capacity of the skin can be varied by controlling the amount of blood flowing through. Skin blood flow serves two functions. First, it provides a nutritive blood supply to the skin. Second, most skin blood flow is for the function of temperature regulation; at normal room temperature, 20 to 30 times more blood flows through the skin than is needed for skin nutrition. In the process of thermoregulation, skin blood flow can vary tremendously, from 400 to 2500 ml/min. The more blood that reaches the skin from the warm core, the closer the skin's temperature is to the core temperature. The skin's blood vessels diminish the effectiveness of the skin as an insulator by carrying heat to the surface, where it can be lost from the body by radiation and the conduction–convection process. Accordingly, skin arteriolar vasodilation, which permits increased flow of heated blood through the skin, increases heat loss. Conversely, skin vasoconstriction, which reduces skin blood flow, decreases heat loss by keeping the warm blood in the central

core, where it is insulated from the external environment. This response conserves heat that otherwise would have been lost.

These skin vasomotor responses are coordinated by the hypothalamus by means of sympathetic nervous system output. Increased sympathetic activity to the skin arterioles produces heat-conserving vasoconstriction in response to cold exposure, whereas decreased sympathetic activity produces heat-losing vasodilation of these vessels in response to heat exposure.

### The hypothalamus simultaneously coordinates heat-production and heat-loss mechanisms.

Let us now pull together the coordinated adjustments in heat production and heat loss in response to exposure to either a cold or a hot environment (▲ Table 16-3). (For a discussion of the effects of extreme cold or heat exposure, see the accompanying boxed feature, ► Beyond the Basics.)

**COORDINATED RESPONSES TO COLD EXPOSURE** In response to cold exposure, the posterior region of the hypothalamus directs increased heat production, such as by shivering, while simultaneously decreasing heat loss (that is, conserving heat) by skin vasoconstriction and other measures.

Because there is a limit to the body's ability to reduce skin temperature through vasoconstriction, even maximum vasoconstriction is not sufficient to prevent excessive heat loss when the external temperature falls too low. Accordingly, other measures must be instituted to further reduce heat loss. In animals with dense fur or feathers, the hypothalamus, acting through the sympathetic nervous system, brings about contraction of the tiny muscles at the base of the hair or feather shafts to lift the hair or feathers off the skin surface. This puffing up traps a layer of poorly conductive air between the skin surface and the environment, thus increasing the insulating barrier between the core and the cold air and reducing heat loss. Even though the hair-shaft muscles contract in humans in response to cold exposure, this heat-retention mechanism is ineffective because of the low density and fine texture of most human body hair. The result instead is useless *goose bumps*.

After maximum skin vasoconstriction has been achieved as a result of exposure to cold, further heat dissipation in hu-

mans can be prevented only by behavioral adaptations, such as postural changes that reduce as much as possible the exposed surface area from which heat can escape. These postural changes include maneuvers such as hunching over, clasping the arms in front of the chest, or curling up in a ball.

Putting on warmer clothing further insulates the body from too much heat loss. Clothing entraps layers of poorly conductive air between the skin surface and the environment, thereby diminishing loss of heat by conduction from the skin to the cold external air and curtailing the flow of convection currents.

**COORDINATED RESPONSES TO HEAT EXPOSURE** Under the opposite circumstance—heat exposure—the anterior part of the hypothalamus reduces heat production by decreasing skeletal muscle activity and promotes increased heat loss by inducing skin vasodilation. When even maximal skin vasodilation is inadequate to rid the body of excess heat, sweating is brought into play to accomplish further heat loss through evaporation. If the air temperature rises above the temperature of maximally vasodilated skin, the temperature gradient reverses itself so that heat is gained from the environment. Sweating is the only means of heat loss under these conditions.

Humans also employ voluntary measures, such as using fans, wetting the body, drinking cold beverages, and wearing cool clothing, to further enhance heat loss. Contrary to popular belief, wearing light-colored, loose clothing is cooler than being nude. Naked skin absorbs almost all the radiant energy that strikes it, whereas light-colored clothing reflects almost all the radiant energy that falls on it. Thus, if light-colored clothing is loose and thin enough to permit convection currents and evaporative heat loss to occur, wearing it is actually cooler than going without any clothes.

### During a fever, the hypothalamic thermostat is “reset” at an elevated temperature.



The term **fever** refers to an elevation in body temperature as a result of infection or inflammation. In response to microbial invasion, certain phagocytic cells (macrophages) release chemicals that serve as an

▲ **Table 16-3** Coordinated Adjustments in Response to Cold or Heat Exposure

RESPONSE TO COLD EXPOSURE (COORDINATED BY THE POSTERIOR HYPOTHALAMUS)		RESPONSE TO HEAT EXPOSURE (COORDINATED BY THE ANTERIOR HYPOTHALAMUS)	
Increased Heat Production	Decreased Heat Loss (Heat Conservation)	Decreased Heat Production	Increased Heat Loss
Increased muscle tone	Skin vasoconstriction	Decreased muscle tone	Skin vasodilation
Shivering	Postural changes to reduce exposed surface area (hunching shoulders, etc.)*	Decreased voluntary exercise*	Sweating
Increased voluntary exercise*	Warm clothing*		Cool clothing*
Nonshivering thermogenesis			

\*Behavioral adaptations.

## Beyond the Basics

Prolonged exposure to temperature extremes in either direction can overtax the body's thermoregulatory mechanisms, leading to disorders and even death.

### Cold-Related Disorders

The body can be harmed by cold exposure in two ways: frostbite and generalized hypothermia. **Frostbite** involves excessive cooling of a particular part of the body to the point at which tissue in that area is damaged. If exposed tissues actually freeze, tissue damage results from disruption of the cells by formation of ice crystals or by lack of liquid water.

**Hypothermia**, a fall in body temperature, occurs when generalized cooling of the body exceeds the ability of the normal heat-producing and heat-conserving regulatory mechanisms to match the excessive heat loss. As hypothermia sets in, the rate of all metabolic processes slows because of the declining temperature. Higher cerebral functions are the first affected by body cooling, leading to loss of judgment, apathy, disorientation, and tiredness, all of which diminish the cold victim's ability to initiate voluntary mechanisms to reverse the falling body temperature. As body temperature continues to plummet, depression of the respiratory center occurs, reducing the ventilatory drive so that breathing becomes slow and weak. Activity of the cardiovascular system also is gradually reduced. The heart is slowed, and cardiac output is decreased. Cardiac rhythm is disturbed, eventually leading to ventricular fibrillation and death.

### Heat-Related Disorders

At the other extreme, two disorders related to excessive heat exposure are heat exhaustion and heat stroke. **Heat**

## The Extremes of Cold and Heat Can Be Fatal

**exhaustion** is a state of collapse, usually manifested by fainting, that is caused by reduced blood pressure brought about as a result of overtaxing the heat-loss mechanisms. Extensive sweating reduces cardiac output by depleting the plasma volume, and pronounced skin vasodilation causes a drop in total peripheral resistance. Because blood pressure is determined by cardiac output times total peripheral resistance, blood pressure falls, an insufficient amount of blood is delivered to the brain, and fainting takes place. Thus, heat exhaustion is a consequence of overactivity of the heat-loss mechanisms rather than a breakdown of these mechanisms. Because the heat-loss mechanisms have been very active, body temperature is only mildly elevated in heat exhaustion. By forcing cessation of activity when the heat-loss mechanisms are no longer able to cope with heat gain through exercise or a hot environment, heat exhaustion serves as a safety valve to help prevent the more serious consequences of heat stroke.

**Heat stroke** is an extremely dangerous situation that arises from the complete breakdown of the hypothalamic thermoregulatory systems. Heat exhaustion may progress into heat stroke if the heat-loss mechanisms continue to be overtaxed. Heat stroke is more likely to occur on overexertion during prolonged exposure to a hot, humid environment. The elderly, in whom thermoregulatory responses are generally slower and less efficient, are particularly vulnerable to heat stroke during prolonged, stifling heat waves. So too are individuals who

are taking certain common tranquilizers, such as Valium, because these drugs interfere with the hypothalamic thermoregulatory centers' neurotransmitter activity.

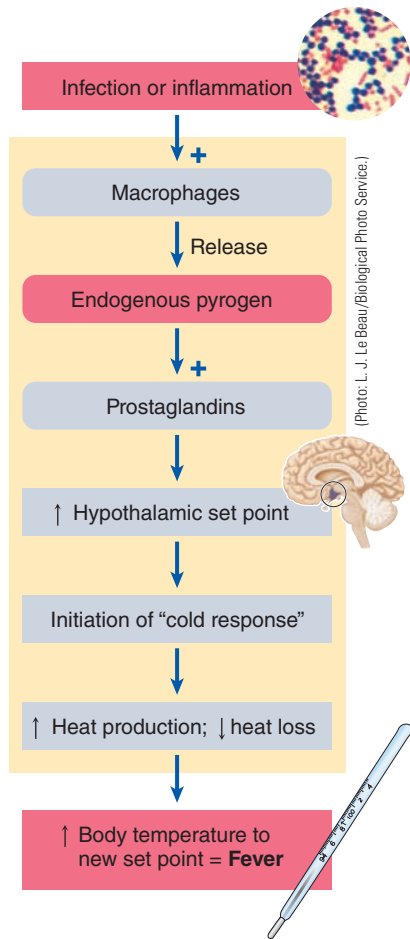
The most striking feature of heat stroke is a lack of compensatory heat loss measures, such as sweating, in the face of a rapidly rising body temperature (**hyperthermia**). No sweating occurs, despite a markedly elevated body temperature, because the hypothalamic thermoregulatory control centers are not functioning properly and cannot initiate heat-loss mechanisms. During the development of heat stroke, body temperature starts to climb as the heat-loss mechanisms are eventually overwhelmed by prolonged, excessive heat gain. Once the core temperature reaches the point at which the hypothalamic temperature-control centers are damaged by the heat, body temperature rapidly rises even higher because of the complete shutdown of heat-loss mechanisms. Furthermore, as the body temperature increases, the rate of metabolism increases correspondingly, because higher temperatures speed up the rate of all chemical reactions; the result is even greater heat production. This positive-feedback state sends the temperature spiraling upward. Heat stroke is a dangerous situation that is rapidly fatal if untreated. Even with treatment to halt and reverse the rampant rise in body temperature, there is still a high rate of mortality. The rate of permanent disability in survivors is also high because of irreversible protein denaturation caused by the high internal heat.

**endogenous pyrogen**, which acts on the hypothalamic thermoregulatory center to raise the thermostat setting (● Figure 16-5; also see p. 316). The hypothalamus now maintains the temperature at the new set level instead of maintaining normal body temperature. If, for example, endogenous pyrogen raises the set point to 102°F (38.9°C), the hypothalamus senses that the normal prefever temperature is too cold, so it initiates the cold-response mechanisms to raise the temperature to 102°F. Specifically, it initiates shivering to rapidly increase heat production and promotes skin vasoconstriction to rapidly reduce heat loss, both of which drive the temperature upward. These events account for the sudden cold chills often experienced at the onset of a fever. Feeling cold, the person may voluntarily pile on more blankets to help raise body temperature by con-

serving body heat. Once the new temperature is achieved, body temperature is regulated as normal in response to cold and heat—but at a higher setting. Thus, fever production in response to an infection is a deliberate outcome and is not caused by a breakdown of thermoregulation. Although the physiological significance of a fever is still unclear, many medical experts believe that a rise in body temperature has a beneficial role in fighting infection. A fever augments the inflammatory response and may interfere with bacterial multiplication.

During fever production, endogenous pyrogen raises the set point of the hypothalamic thermostat by triggering the local release of *prostaglandins*, which are local chemical mediators that act directly on the hypothalamus. Aspirin reduces a fever by inhibiting the synthesis of prostaglandins. Aspirin does not

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



● **FIGURE 16-5** Fever production.

lower the temperature in a nonfebrile person, because in the absence of endogenous pyrogen, prostaglandins are not present in the hypothalamus in appreciable quantities.

The exact molecular cause of a fever “breaking” naturally is unknown, although it presumably results from reduced pyrogen release or decreased prostaglandin synthesis. When the hypothalamic set point is restored to normal, the temperature at 102°F (in this example) is too high. The heat-response mechanisms are instituted to cool the body. Skin vasodilation occurs, and sweating commences. The person feels hot and throws off extra covers. The gearing up of these heat-loss mechanisms by the hypothalamus reduces the temperature to normal.

Because energy can be neither created nor destroyed, for body weight and body temperature to remain constant, input must equal output in the case of, respectively, the body’s total energy balance and its heat energy balance. If total energy input exceeds total energy output, the extra energy is stored in the body and body weight increases. Similarly, if the input of heat energy exceeds its output, body temperature increases. Conversely, if output exceeds input, body weight decreases or body temperature falls. The hypothalamus is the major integrating center for maintaining both a constant total energy balance (and thus a constant body weight) and a constant heat energy balance (and thus a constant body temperature).

Body temperature, which is one of the homeostatically regulated factors of the internal environment, must be maintained within narrow limits, because the structure and reactivity of the chemicals that compose the body are temperature sensitive. Deviations in body temperature outside a limited range result in protein denaturation and death of the individual if the temperature rises too high or metabolic slowing and death if the temperature falls too low.

Body weight, in contrast, varies widely among individuals. Only the extremes of imbalances between total energy input and total energy output become incompatible with life. For example, in the face of insufficient energy input in the form of ingested food during prolonged starvation, the body resorts to breaking down muscle protein to meet its needs for energy expenditure once the adipose stores are depleted. Body weight dwindles because of this self-cannibalistic mechanism until death finally occurs as a result of loss of heart muscle, among other things. At the other extreme, when the food energy consumed greatly exceeds the energy expended, the extra energy input is stored as adipose tissue and body weight increases. The resultant gross obesity can also lead to heart failure. Not only must the heart work harder to pump blood to the excess adipose tissue, but obesity also predisposes the person to atherosclerosis and heart attacks (see p. 256).

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-50)

1. If more food energy is consumed than is expended, the excess energy is lost as heat. (*True or false?*)
2. All energy within nutrient molecules can be harnessed to perform biological work. (*True or false?*)
3. Each liter of O<sub>2</sub> contains 4.8 kcal of heat energy. (*True or false?*)
4. A body temperature greater than 98.2°F is always indicative of a fever. (*True or false?*)
5. Core temperature is relatively constant, but skin temperature can vary markedly. (*True or false?*)
6. Sweat that drips off the body has no cooling effect. (*True or false?*)
7. Production of “goose bumps” has no value in regulating body temperature. (*True or false?*)
8. The posterior region of the hypothalamus triggers shivering and skin vasoconstriction. (*True or false?*)

9. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the hypothalamus contains two populations of neurons, one that secretes appetite-enhancing NPY and another that secretes appetite-suppressing melanocortins.
10. The primary means of involuntarily increasing heat production is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Increased heat production independent of muscle contraction is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The only means of heat loss when the environmental temperature exceeds the core temperature is \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Which of the following statements concerning heat exchange between the body and the external environment is *incorrect*?
  - a. Heat gain is primarily by means of internal heat production.
  - b. Radiation serves as a means of heat gain but not of heat loss.
  - c. Heat energy always moves down its concentration gradient from warmer to cooler objects.
  - d. The temperature gradient between the skin and the external air is subject to control.
  - e. Little body heat is lost by conduction alone.
14. Which of the following statements concerning fever production is *incorrect*?
  - a. Endogenous pyrogen is released by macrophages in response to microbial invasion.
  - b. The hypothalamic set point is elevated.
  - c. The hypothalamus initiates cold-response mechanisms to increase the body temperature.
  - d. Prostaglandins mediate the effect.
  - e. The hypothalamus is not effective in regulating body temperature during a fever.
15. Using the answer code on the right, indicate which mechanism of heat transfer is being described:
 

___ 1. sitting on a cold metal chair	(a) Radiation
___ 2. sunbathing on the beach	(b) Conduction
___ 3. being in a gentle breeze	(c) Convection
___ 4. sitting in front of a fireplace	(d) Evaporation
___ 5. sweating	
___ 6. riding in a car with the windows open	
___ 7. lying under an electric blanket	
___ 8. sitting in a wet bathing suit	
___ 9. fanning yourself	
___ 10. immersing yourself in cold water	

### Essay Questions

1. Differentiate between external and internal work.
2. Define *metabolic rate* and *basal metabolic rate*. Explain the process of indirectly measuring metabolic rate.
3. Describe the three states of energy balance.
4. By what means is energy balance primarily maintained?
5. List the sources of heat input and output for the body.
6. Describe the source and role of the following in the long-term regulation of energy balance and the short-term control of the timing and size of meals: neuropeptide Y, melanocortins, leptin, insulin, orexins, corticotropin-releasing hormone, ghrelin, peptide YY<sub>3-36</sub>, cholecystokinin (CCK), and stomach distension.
7. Discuss the compensatory measures that occur in response to a fall in core temperature as a result of cold exposure and in response to a rise in core temperature as a result of heat exposure.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-50)

1. Explain how drugs that selectively inhibit CCK increase feeding behavior in experimental animals.
2. What advice would you give an overweight friend who asks for your help in designing a safe, sensible, inexpensive program for losing weight?
3. Why is it dangerous to engage in heavy exercise on a hot, humid day?
4. Describe the avenues for heat loss in a person soaking in a hot bath.
5. Consider the difference between you and a fish in a local pond with regard to control of body temperature. Humans are *thermoregulators*; they can maintain a remarkably constant, rather high internal body temperature despite the body's exposure to a range of environ-

mental temperatures. To maintain thermal homeostasis, humans physiologically manipulate mechanisms within their bodies to adjust heat production, conservation, and loss. In contrast, fish are *thermoconformers*; their body temperatures conform to the temperature of their surroundings. Thus, their body temperatures vary capriciously with changes in the environmental temperature. Even though fish produce heat, they cannot physiologically regulate internal heat production, nor can they control heat exchange with their environment to maintain a constant body temperature when the temperature in their surroundings rises or falls. Knowing this, do you think fish run a fever when they have a systemic infection? Why or why not?

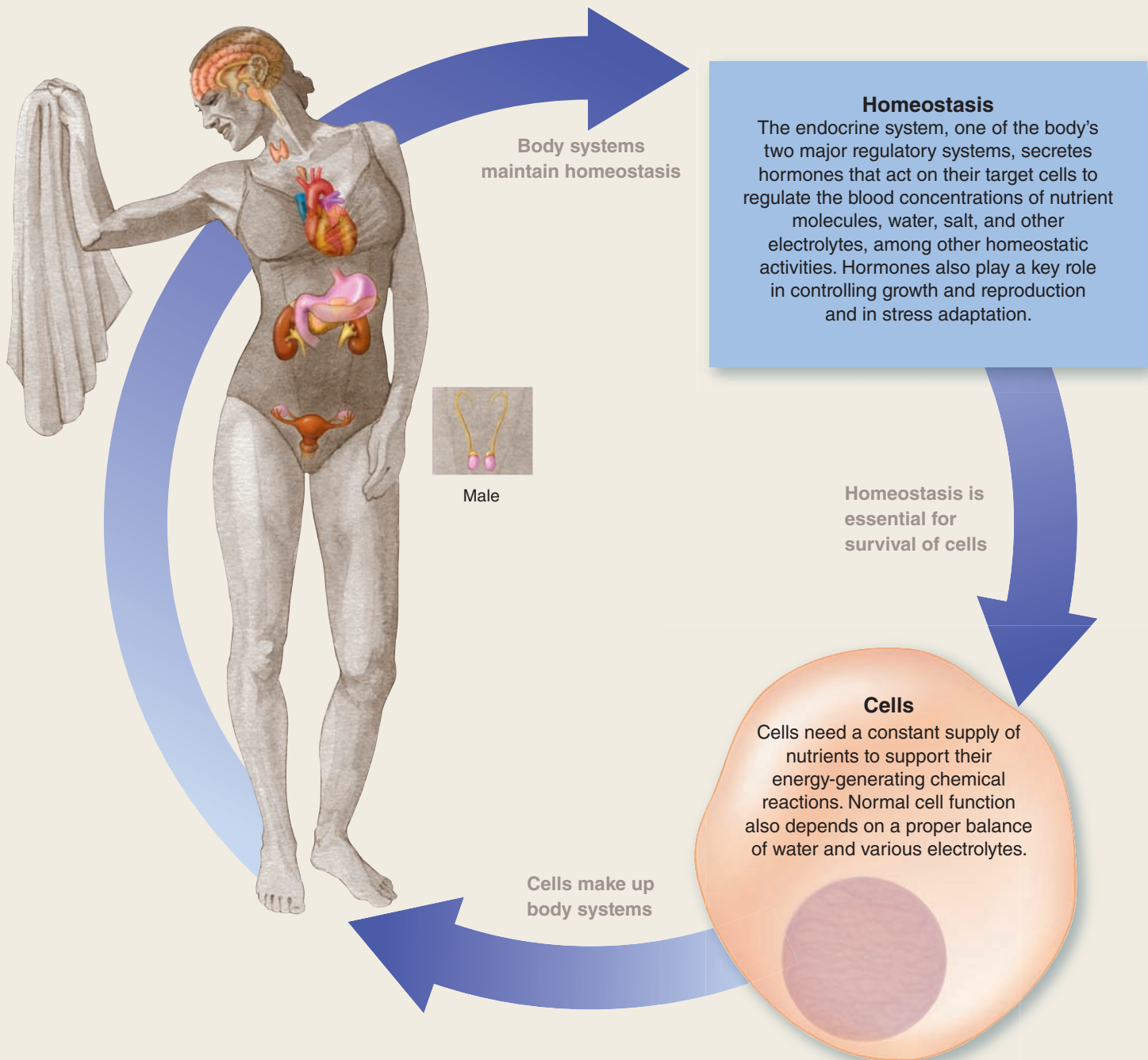
## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-51)

Michael F., a near-drowning victim, was pulled from the icy water by rescuers 15 minutes after he fell through thin ice when skating. Michael is now alert and recuperating in the hospital. How can you explain his “miraculous” survival even

though he was submerged without breathing air for 15 minutes, yet irreversible brain damage, soon followed by death, normally occurs if the brain is deprived of O<sub>2</sub> for more than 4 or 5 minutes?

## Endocrine System



The **endocrine system**, by means of the blood-borne **hormones** it secretes, generally regulates activities that require duration rather than speed. Most target-cell activities under hormonal control are directed toward maintaining homeostasis. The **hypothalamus** (a part of the brain) and **posterior pituitary gland** act as a unit to release hormones essential for maintaining water balance and for giving birth and breast-feeding. The **anterior pituitary gland** secretes hormones that promote growth and control the

hormonal output of several other endocrine glands. The **pineal gland** secretes a hormone important in establishing the body's biological rhythms. The **thyroid gland** controls the body's basal metabolic rate. The **adrenal glands** secrete hormones important in metabolizing nutrient molecules, in adapting to stress, and in maintaining salt balance. The **endocrine pancreas** secretes hormones important in metabolizing nutrient molecules. The **parathyroid glands** secrete a hormone important in  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  metabolism.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

## General Principles of Endocrinology

## Hypothalamus and Pituitary

Hypothalamus–posterior pituitary relationship

Hypothalamus–anterior pituitary relationship

Anterior pituitary and hypophysiotropic hormones

## Endocrine Control of Growth

Factors influencing growth

Functions and control of growth hormone

## Pineal Gland and Circadian Rhythms

Suprachiasmatic nucleus as the master biological clock

Functions of melatonin

## Thyroid Gland

Anatomy of the thyroid gland

Thyroid hormone

## Adrenal Glands

Adrenocortical steroids

Adrenal medullary catecholamines

## Integrated Stress Response

Hormonal and neural roles in the stress response

## Endocrine Pancreas and Control of Fuel Metabolism

Metabolism, anabolism, catabolism

Absorptive and postabsorptive states

Endocrine pancreas: insulin and glucagon

Metabolic effects of other hormones

## Parathyroid Gland and Control of Calcium Metabolism

Importance of free ECF calcium

Bone remodeling

Parathyroid hormone

Calcitonin

Vitamin D

## The Endocrine System

## General Principles of Endocrinology

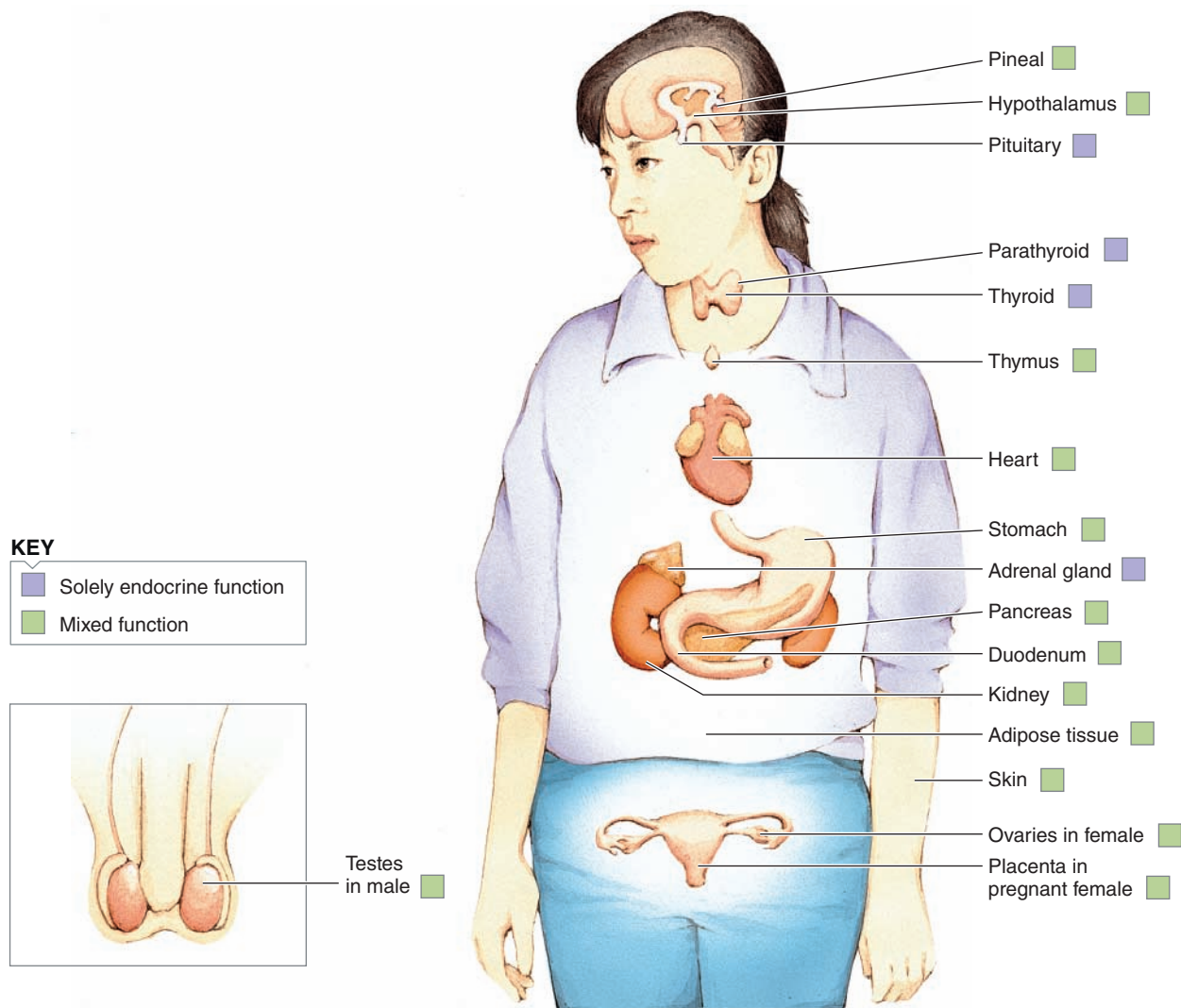
The **endocrine system** consists of the ductless endocrine glands (see p. 4) scattered throughout the body (● Figure 17-1). Even though the endocrine glands for the most part are not connected anatomically, they constitute a system in a functional sense. They all accomplish their functions by secreting hormones into the blood, and many functional interactions take place among the various endocrine glands. Once secreted, a **hormone** travels in the blood to its distant target cells, where it regulates or directs a particular function (see p. 93). **Endocrinology** is the study of the homeostatic chemical adjustments and other activities that hormones accomplish. Even though the blood distributes hormones throughout the body, only specific **target cells** can respond to each hormone because only the target cells have receptors for binding with the particular hormone (see p. 101).

The binding of a hormone with its specific target-cell receptors initiates a chain of events within the target cells to bring about the hormone's final effect. Recall that the means by which a hormone brings about its ultimate physiologic effect depends on whether the hormone is hydrophilic (peptide hormones and catecholamines) or lipophilic (steroid hormones and thyroid hormone). *Peptide hormones*, the most abundant chemical category of hormone, are chains of amino acids of varying length. *Catecholamines*, produced by the adrenal medulla, are derived from the amino acid tyrosine. *Steroid hormones*, produced by the adrenal cortex and reproductive endocrine glands, are neutral lipids derived from cholesterol. *Thyroid hormone*, produced by the thyroid gland, is an iodinated tyrosine derivative. To review, hydrophilic hormones on binding with surface membrane receptors primarily act through second-messenger systems to alter the activity of preexisting proteins, such as enzymes, within the target cell to produce their physiologic response. Lipophilic steroid hormones and thyroid hormone, by contrast, activate genes on binding with receptors inside the cell, thus bringing about formation of new proteins in the target cell that carry out the desired response. Hydrophilic hormones circulate in the blood largely dissolved in the plasma, whereas lipophilic hormones are largely bound to plasma proteins. (See pp. 94–100 for further detail.)

**Hormones exert a variety of regulatory effects throughout the body.**

The endocrine system is one of the body's two major regulatory systems, the other being the nervous system, with which you are already familiar (Chapters 4 through 7). Recall that the endocrine and nervous systems are specialized for controlling different types of activities. In general, the nervous system coordinates rapid, precise responses and is especially important in mediating the body's interactions with the external environment. The endocrine system, by contrast, primarily controls activities that require duration rather than speed.





● **FIGURE 17-1** The endocrine system.

**OVERALL FUNCTIONS OF THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM** In its regulatory role, the endocrine system exerts wide-ranging effects throughout the body, including the following:

1. Regulating nutrient metabolism and H<sub>2</sub>O and electrolyte balance, which are important collectively in maintaining a constant internal environment
2. Inducing adaptive changes to help the body cope with stressful situations
3. Promoting smooth, sequential growth and development
4. Controlling reproduction
5. Regulating red blood cell production
6. Along with the autonomic nervous system, controlling and integrating activities of both the circulatory and the digestive systems

**TROPIC HORMONES** Some hormones regulate the production and secretion of another hormone. A hormone that has as its primary function the regulation of hormone secretion by another endocrine gland is classified functionally as a **tropic hormone**

(*tropic* means “nourishing” and is pronounced “trō-pik”). Tropic hormones stimulate and maintain their endocrine target tissues. For example, thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), a tropic hormone from the anterior pituitary, stimulates thyroid hormone secretion by the thyroid gland and maintains the structural integrity of this gland. In the absence of TSH, the thyroid gland atrophies (shrinks) and produces very low levels of its hormones.

**MIXED FUNCTION GLANDS** Some glands of the endocrine system are solely endocrine in function (they specialize in hormone secretion alone, the anterior pituitary being an example), whereas other endocrine organs perform nonendocrine functions, in addition to secreting hormones. For example, the testes produce sperm and secrete the male sex hormone testosterone.

**The effective plasma concentration of a hormone is normally regulated by changes in its rate of secretion.**

The primary function of most hormones is regulation of various homeostatic activities. Because hormones’ effects are proportional to their concentrations in the plasma, these concentrations

are subject to control according to homeostatic need. Normally, the plasma concentration of a hormone is regulated by appropriate adjustments in the rate of its secretion. Endocrine glands do not secrete their hormones at a constant rate; the secretion rates of all hormones vary subject to control, often by a combination of several complex mechanisms. Furthermore, the magnitude of the hormonal response depends on the availability and sensitivity of the target cells' receptors for the hormone. We examine the factors that influence the plasma concentration of hormones before turning our attention to the target cells' responsiveness to hormones. The regulatory system for each hormone is considered in detail in later sections. For now, we address these general mechanisms of controlling secretion that are common to many hormones: negative-feedback control, neuroendocrine reflexes, and diurnal (circadian) rhythms.

**NEGATIVE-FEEDBACK CONTROL** Negative feedback is a prominent feature of hormonal control systems. Stated simply, *negative feedback exists when the output of a system counteracts a change in input*, maintaining a controlled variable within a narrow range around a set level (see p. 11). Negative feedback maintains the plasma concentration of a hormone at a given level, similar to the way in which a home heating system maintains the room temperature at a given set point. Control of hormonal secretion provides some classic physiologic examples of negative feedback. For example, when the plasma concentration of free circulating thyroid hormone falls below a given “set point,” the anterior pituitary secretes TSH, which stimulates the thyroid to increase its secretion of thyroid hormone. Thyroid hormone in turn inhibits further secretion of TSH by the anterior pituitary. Negative feedback ensures that once thyroid gland secretion has been “turned on” by TSH, it will not continue unabated but instead will be “turned off” when the appropriate level of free circulating thyroid hormone has been achieved. The feedback loops often become quite complex.

**NEUROENDOCRINE REFLEXES** Many endocrine control systems involve neuroendocrine reflexes, which include neural, as well as hormonal, components. The purpose of such reflexes is to produce a sudden increase in hormone secretion (that is, “turn up the thermostat setting”) in response to a specific stimulus, frequently a stimulus external to the body. Some endocrine control systems include both feedback control (which maintains a constant basal level of the hormone) and neuroendocrine reflexes (which cause sudden bursts in secretion in response to a sudden increased need for the hormone). An example is the increased secretion of cortisol, the “stress hormone,” by the adrenal cortex during a stress response (see ● Figure 17-19, p. 520).

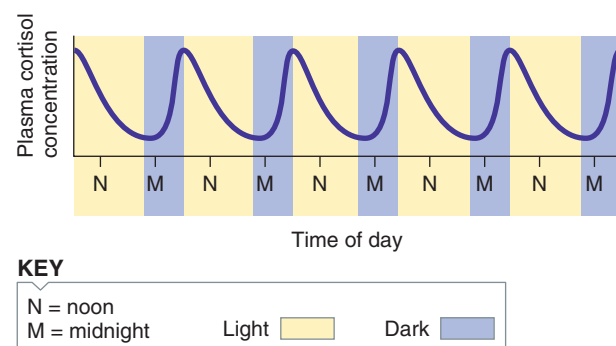
**DIURNAL (CIRCADIAN) RHYTHM** The secretion rates of many hormones rhythmically fluctuate up and down as a function of time. The most common endocrine rhythm is the **diurnal** (“day-night”) or **circadian** (“around a day”) **rhythm**, which is characterized by regular, repetitive oscillations in hormone levels that cycle once every 24 hours. Endocrine rhythms are locked on, or

**entrained**, to external cues such as the light–dark cycle. That is, the inherent 24-hour cycles of peak and ebb of hormone secretion are set to “march in step” with cycles of light and dark. For example, cortisol secretion rises during the night, reaching its peak secretion in the morning before a person gets up, and then falls throughout the day to its lowest level at bedtime (● Figure 17-2). Inherent hormonal rhythmicity and entrainment are not accomplished by the endocrine glands themselves but result from the central nervous system (CNS) changing the set point of these glands. We discuss in a later section the master biological clock responsible for this timing. Negative-feedback control mechanisms operate to maintain whatever set point is established for that time of day. Some endocrine cycles operate on time scales other than a circadian rhythm, a well-known example being the monthly menstrual cycle.

### The plasma concentration of a hormone is influenced by its rate of excretion.

Even though the plasma concentration of a hormone is normally regulated by adjusting its rate of secretion, alterations in its rate of inactivation and excretion in the urine can also influence the hormone's plasma concentration, sometimes inappropriately. In contrast to the tight controls on hormone secretion, hormone inactivation and excretion are not regulated.

All hormones are eventually inactivated by enzymes in the liver, kidneys, blood, or target cells. The amount of time after a hormone is secreted before it is inactivated, and the means by which this takes place, differ among the classes of hormones. In general, the hydrophilic peptides and catecholamines are easy targets for blood and tissue enzymes, so they remain in the blood only briefly (a few minutes to a few hours) before being enzymatically inactivated. In contrast, binding of lipophilic hormones to plasma proteins makes them less vulnerable to metabolic inactivation and keeps them from escaping into the urine. Therefore, lipophilic hormones are removed from plasma more slowly: They may persist in the blood for hours (steroids) or up to a week (thyroid hormone). Lipophilic hormones typically undergo a series of reactions that reduce their biological activity and make them more water soluble so that they can be freed from their plasma protein carriers and be eliminated in the urine.



● **FIGURE 17-2** Diurnal rhythm of cortisol secretion.

(Source: Adapted from George A. Hedge, Howard D. Colby, and Robert L. Goodman, *Clinical Endocrine Physiology*, Figure 1-13, p. 28. © 1987, with permission from Elsevier.)



Because the liver and kidneys are important in removing hormones from the plasma, patients with liver or kidney disease may suffer from excess activity of certain hormones solely because hormone inactivation and elimination are reduced.

When liver and kidney function are normal, measuring urinary concentrations of hormones and their metabolites provides a useful, noninvasive way to assess endocrine function because the rate of excretion of these products in the urine directly reflects their rate of secretion by the endocrine glands.

### Endocrine disorders result from hormone excess or deficiency or decreased target-cell responsiveness.



Endocrine disorders most commonly result from abnormal plasma concentrations of a hormone caused by inappropriate rates of secretion—that is, too little hormone secreted (**hyposecretion**) or too much hormone secreted (**hypersecretion**). Occasionally, endocrine dysfunction arises because target-cell responsiveness to the hormone is abnormally low, even though plasma concentration of the hormone is normal. This unresponsiveness may be caused, for example, by an inborn lack of receptors for the hormone, as in **testicular feminization syndrome**. In this condition, receptors for testosterone, a masculinizing hormone produced by the male testes, are not produced because of a specific genetic defect. Although adequate testosterone is available, masculinization does not take place, just as if no testosterone were present. Abnormal responsiveness may also occur if the target cells for a particular hormone lack an enzyme essential to carrying out the response.

### The responsiveness of a target cell can be varied by regulating the number of hormone-specific receptors.

In contrast to endocrine dysfunction caused by *unintentional* receptor abnormalities, the target-cell receptors for a particular hormone can be *deliberately altered* as a result of physiologic control mechanisms. A target cell's response to a hormone is correlated with the number of the cell's receptors occupied by molecules of that hormone, which in turn depends not only on the plasma concentration of the hormone but also on the number of receptors in the target cell for that hormone. Thus, the response of a target cell to a given plasma concentration can be fine-tuned up or down by varying the number of receptors available for hormone binding.

**DOWN REGULATION** As an illustration of this fine-tuning, when the plasma concentration of insulin is chronically elevated, the total number of target-cell receptors for insulin is gradually reduced as a direct result of the effect a sustained elevation of insulin has on the insulin receptors. This phenomenon, known as **down regulation**, constitutes an important locally acting negative-feedback mechanism that prevents the target cells from overreacting to a prolonged high concentration of insulin; that is, the target cells are *desensitized* to insulin, helping blunt the effect of insulin hypersecretion.

**PERMISSIVENESS, SYNERGISM, AND ANTAGONISM** A given hormone's effects are influenced not only by the concentration of the hormone itself but also by the concentrations of other hormones that interact with it. Because hormones are widely distributed through the blood, target cells may be exposed simultaneously to many different hormones, giving rise to numerous complex hormonal interactions on target cells. Hormones frequently alter the receptors for other kinds of hormones as part of their normal physiologic activity. A hormone can influence the activity of another hormone at a given target cell in one of three ways: permissiveness, synergism, and antagonism.

With **permissiveness**, one hormone must be present in adequate amounts for the full exertion of another hormone's effect. In essence, the first hormone, by enhancing a target cell's responsiveness to another hormone, “permits” this other hormone to exert its full effect. For example, thyroid hormone increases the number of receptors for epinephrine in epinephrine's target cells, increasing the effectiveness of epinephrine. In the absence of thyroid hormone, epinephrine is only marginally effective.

**Synergism** occurs when the actions of several hormones are complementary and their combined effect is greater than the sum of their separate effects. An example is the synergistic action of follicle-stimulating hormone and testosterone, both of which are needed to maintain the normal rate of sperm production. Synergism results from each hormone's influence on the number or affinity (attraction) of receptors for the other hormone.

**Antagonism** occurs when one hormone causes the loss of another hormone's receptors, reducing the effectiveness of the second hormone. To illustrate, progesterone (a hormone secreted during pregnancy that decreases contractions of the uterus) inhibits uterine responsiveness to estrogen (another hormone secreted during pregnancy that increases uterine contractions). By causing loss of estrogen receptors on uterine smooth muscle, progesterone prevents estrogen from exerting its excitatory effects during pregnancy and thus keeps the uterus as a quiet (noncontracting) environment suitable for the developing fetus.

Having completed our discussion of the general principles of endocrinology, we now begin to examine the individual endocrine glands and their hormones. ▲ Table 17-1 on pp. 500–501 summarizes the most important specific functions of the major hormones. Some of these hormones are presented in other chapters and not discussed further here; these are the renal hormones (erythropoietin in Chapter 11 and renin in Chapter 13), thrombopoietin from the liver (Chapter 11), thymosin from the thymus (Chapter 11), atrial natriuretic peptide from the heart (Chapter 13), the gastrointestinal hormones (Chapter 15), leptin and other adipokines from adipose tissue (Chapter 16), hunger and satiety signals from the digestive tract (Chapter 16), and the sex hormones from the gonads (Chapter 18). The remaining hormones are described in greater detail in this chapter. We start with those in or in close association with the brain—namely, the hypothalamus, the pituitary gland, and the pineal gland.

# Hypothalamus and Pituitary

The **pituitary gland**, or **hypophysis**, is a small endocrine gland located in a bony cavity at the base of the brain just below the hypothalamus (● Figure 17-3). The pituitary is connected to the hypothalamus by a thin stalk. If you point one finger between your eyes and another finger toward one of your ears, the imaginary point where these lines would intersect is about where your pituitary is located.

## The pituitary gland consists of anterior and posterior lobes.

The pituitary has two anatomically and functionally distinct lobes, the **posterior pituitary** and the **anterior pituitary**. The posterior pituitary is composed of nervous tissue and thus is also termed the **neurohypophysis**. The anterior pituitary consists of glandular epithelial tissue and accordingly is also called the **adenohypophysis** (*adeno* means “glandular”). The posterior and anterior pituitary lobes have only their location in common. They arise from different tissues embryonically, serve different functions, and are subject to different control mechanisms.

The release of hormones from both the posterior and the anterior pituitary is directly controlled by the hypothalamus, but the natures of these relationships are entirely different. The posterior pituitary connects to the hypothalamus by a neural pathway, whereas the anterior pituitary connects to the hypothalamus by a unique blood-vessel link. We look first at the posterior pituitary.

## The hypothalamus and posterior pituitary act as a unit to secrete vasopressin and oxytocin.

The hypothalamus and posterior pituitary form a neuroendocrine system that consists of a population of neurosecretory neurons whose cell bodies lie in two well-defined clusters in the

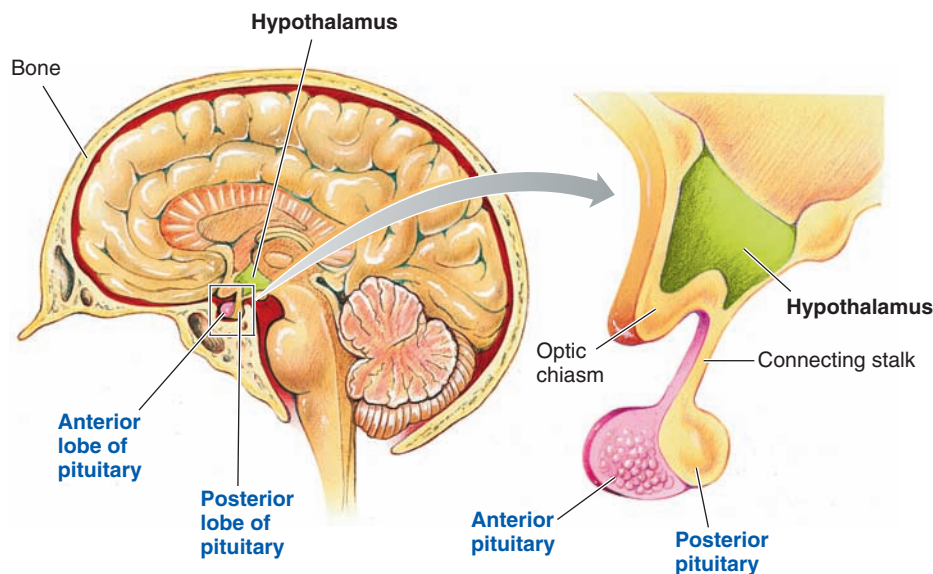
hypothalamus and whose axons pass down through the thin connecting stalk to terminate on capillaries in the posterior pituitary (● Figure 17-4). The posterior pituitary consists of these neuronal terminals plus glial-like supporting cells (see p. 109). Functionally as well as anatomically, the posterior pituitary is simply an extension of the hypothalamus.

The posterior pituitary does not produce any hormones. It simply stores and, on appropriate stimulation, releases into the blood two small peptide hormones, *vasopressin* and *oxytocin*, which are synthesized by the neuronal cell bodies in the hypothalamus. The synthesized hormones are packaged in secretory granules that are transported by molecular motors down the cytoplasm of the axon (see p. 36) and stored in the neuronal terminals within the posterior pituitary. Each terminal stores either vasopressin or oxytocin. Thus, these hormones can be released independently as needed. On stimulatory input to the hypothalamus, either vasopressin or oxytocin is released into the systemic blood from the posterior pituitary by exocytosis of the appropriate secretory granules. This hormonal release is triggered in response to action potentials that originate in the hypothalamic cell body and sweep down the axon to the neuronal terminal in the posterior pituitary. As in any other neuron, action potentials are generated in these neurosecretory neurons in response to synaptic input to their cell bodies.

The actions of vasopressin and oxytocin are briefly summarized here to make our endocrine story complete. They are described more thoroughly elsewhere—vasopressin in Chapter 13 and oxytocin in Chapter 18.

**VASOPRESSIN** Vasopressin (**antidiuretic hormone, ADH**) has two major effects that correspond to its two names: (1) it conserves H<sub>2</sub>O during urine formation (an antidiuretic effect; *diuresis* means increased urine output) by the kidney nephrons (the functional units of the kidney), and (2) it causes contraction of smooth muscle in arterioles (a vessel pressor effect), the blood vessels whose caliber is an important determinant of blood pressure. The first effect has more physiologic importance. Under normal conditions, vasopressin is the primary endocrine factor that regulates urinary H<sub>2</sub>O loss and overall H<sub>2</sub>O balance. In contrast, typical levels of vasopressin play only a minor role in regulating blood pressure by means of the hormone's pressor (blood vessel-constricting) effect.

**OXYTOCIN** Oxytocin stimulates contraction of uterine smooth muscle to help expel the infant during childbirth, and it promotes ejection of milk from the mammary glands (breasts) during breast-feeding.



(a) Relation of pituitary gland to hypothalamus and rest of brain

(b) Enlargement of pituitary gland and its connection to hypothalamus

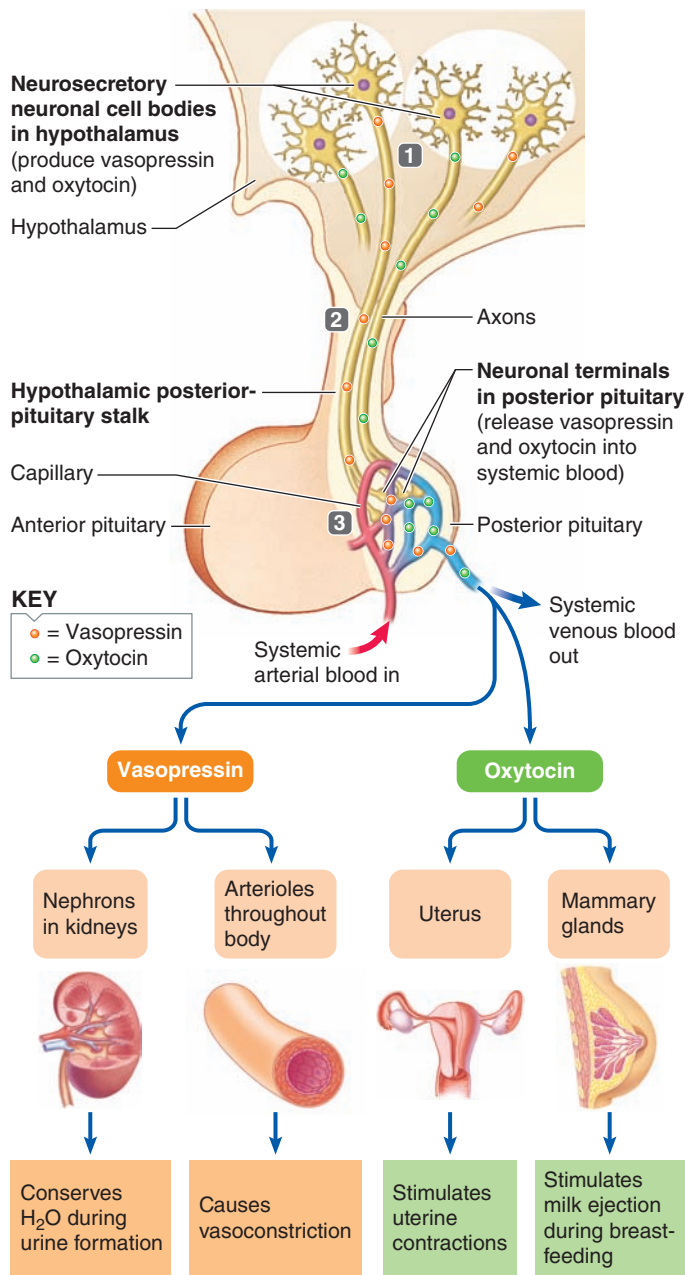
● **FIGURE 17-3** Anatomy of the pituitary gland.

▲ **Table 17-1 Summary of the Major Hormones**

Endocrine Gland	Hormones	Target Cells	Major Hormone Functions
<b>Hypothalamus</b>	Releasing and inhibiting hormones (TRH, CRH, GnRH, GHRH, somatostatin, PRH, dopamine)	Anterior pituitary	Control release of anterior pituitary hormones
<b>Posterior Pituitary (hormones stored in)</b>	Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone, ADH)	Kidney tubules	Increases H <sub>2</sub> O reabsorption
	Oxytocin	Arterioles Uterus Mammary glands (breasts)	Produces vasoconstriction Increases contractility Causes milk ejection
<b>Anterior Pituitary</b>	Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	Thyroid follicular cells	Stimulates T <sub>3</sub> and T <sub>4</sub> secretion
	Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)	Zona fasciculata and zona reticularis of the adrenal cortex	Stimulates cortisol secretion
	Growth hormone (GH)	Bone and soft tissues	Is essential but not solely responsible for growth; by means of IGF, indirectly stimulates protein anabolism and growth of bones and soft tissues; direct metabolic effects include fat mobilization and glucose conservation
		Liver	Stimulates IGF secretion
	Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Females: Ovarian follicles	Promotes follicular growth and development; stimulates estrogen secretion
		Males: Seminiferous tubules in testes	Stimulates sperm production
	Luteinizing hormone (LH)	Females: Ovarian follicle and corpus luteum	Stimulates ovulation, corpus luteum development, and estrogen and progesterone secretion
	Males: Interstitial cells of Leydig in testes	Stimulates testosterone secretion	
	Prolactin (PRL)	Females: Mammary glands	Promotes breast development; stimulates milk secretion
		Males	Uncertain
<b>Pineal Gland</b>	Melatonin	Brain, anterior pituitary, reproductive organs, immune system, and possibly others	Entrains body's biological rhythm with external cues; inhibits gonadotropins; its reduction likely initiates puberty; acts as an antioxidant; enhances immunity
<b>Thyroid Gland Follicular Cells</b>	Tetraiodothyronine (T <sub>4</sub> or thyroxine); triiodothyronine (T <sub>3</sub> )	Most cells	Increases metabolic rate; is essential for normal growth and nerve development
<b>Thyroid Gland C Cells</b>	Calcitonin	Bone	Decreases plasma Ca <sup>2+</sup> concentration
<b>Adrenal Cortex</b>			
<i>Zona glomerulosa</i>	Aldosterone (mineralocorticoid)	Kidney tubules	Increases Na <sup>+</sup> reabsorption and K <sup>+</sup> secretion
<i>Zona fasciculata and zona reticularis</i>	Cortisol (glucocorticoid)	Most cells	Increases blood glucose at the expense of protein and fat stores; contributes to stress adaptation
	Androgen (dehydroepiandrosterone)	Females: Bone and brain	Is responsible for pubertal growth spurt and sex drive
<b>Adrenal medulla</b>	Epinephrine and norepinephrine	Sympathetic receptor sites throughout the body	Reinforce sympathetic nervous system; contribute to stress adaptation and blood pressure regulation

▲ **Table 17-1 Summary of the Major Hormones—cont'd**

Endocrine Gland	Hormones	Target Cells	Major Hormone Functions
<b>Endocrine Pancreas (Islets of Langerhans)</b>	Insulin ( $\beta$ cells)	Most cells	Promotes cellular uptake, use, and storage of absorbed nutrients
	Glucagon ( $\alpha$ cells)	Most cells	Is important for maintaining nutrient levels in blood during the postabsorptive state
	Somatostatin (D cells)	Digestive system	Inhibits digestion and absorption of nutrients
<b>Parathyroid Gland</b>	Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Bone, kidneys, and intestine	Increases plasma $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ concentration; decreases plasma $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ concentration; stimulates vitamin D activation
<b>Gonads</b>			
<i>Female: Ovaries</i>	Estrogen	Female sex organs and body as a whole	Promotes follicular development; governs development of female secondary sexual characteristics; stimulates uterine and breast growth
		Bone	Promotes closure of the epiphyseal plate
	Progesterone	Uterus	Prepares for pregnancy
<i>Male: Testes</i>	Testosterone	Male sex organs and body as a whole	Stimulates sperm production; governs development of male secondary sexual characteristics; promotes sex drive
		Bone	Enhances pubertal growth spurt; promotes closure of the epiphyseal plate
<i>Testes and ovaries</i>	Inhibin	Anterior pituitary	Inhibits secretion of FSH
<b>Placenta</b>	Estrogen and progesterone	Female sex organs	Help maintain pregnancy; prepare breasts for lactation
	Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)	Ovarian corpus luteum	Maintains corpus luteum of pregnancy
<b>Kidneys</b>	Renin (by activating angiotensin)	Zona glomerulosa of the adrenal cortex (acted on by angiotensin, which is activated by renin)	Stimulates aldosterone secretion; angiotensin II is also a potent vasoconstrictor
<b>Stomach</b>	Erythropoietin	Bone marrow	Stimulates erythrocyte production
	Ghrelin	Hypothalamus	Signals hunger; stimulates appetite
	Gastrin	Digestive tract exocrine glands and smooth muscles, pancreas, liver, and gallbladder	Control motility and secretion to facilitate digestive and absorptive processes
<b>Small Intestine</b>	Secretin and cholecystokinin (CCK)		
	Glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide (GIP)	Endocrine pancreas	Stimulates insulin secretion
	Peptide YY <sub>3-36</sub>	Hypothalamus	Signals satiety; suppresses appetite
<b>Liver</b>	Insulin-like growth factor (IGF)	Bone and soft tissues	Promotes growth
	Thrombopoietin	Bone marrow	Stimulates platelet production
<b>Skin</b>	Vitamin D	Intestine	Increases absorption of ingested $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$
<b>Thymus</b>	Thymosin	T lymphocytes	Enhances T lymphocyte proliferation and function
<b>Heart</b>	Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)	Kidney tubules	Inhibits $\text{Na}^+$ reabsorption
<b>Adipose Tissue</b>	Leptin	Hypothalamus	Suppresses appetite; is important in long-term control of body weight
	Other adipokines	Multiple sites	Play a role in metabolism and inflammation



**1** Two clusters of neurosecretory neuronal cell bodies in the hypothalamus produce either vasopressin or oxytocin depending on the neuron.

**2** The hormone travels down the axon to be stored in the neuronal terminals within the posterior pituitary.

**3** When the neuron is excited, the stored hormone is released from the terminals into the systemic blood for distribution throughout the body.

● **FIGURE 17-4** Relationship of the hypothalamus and posterior pituitary.

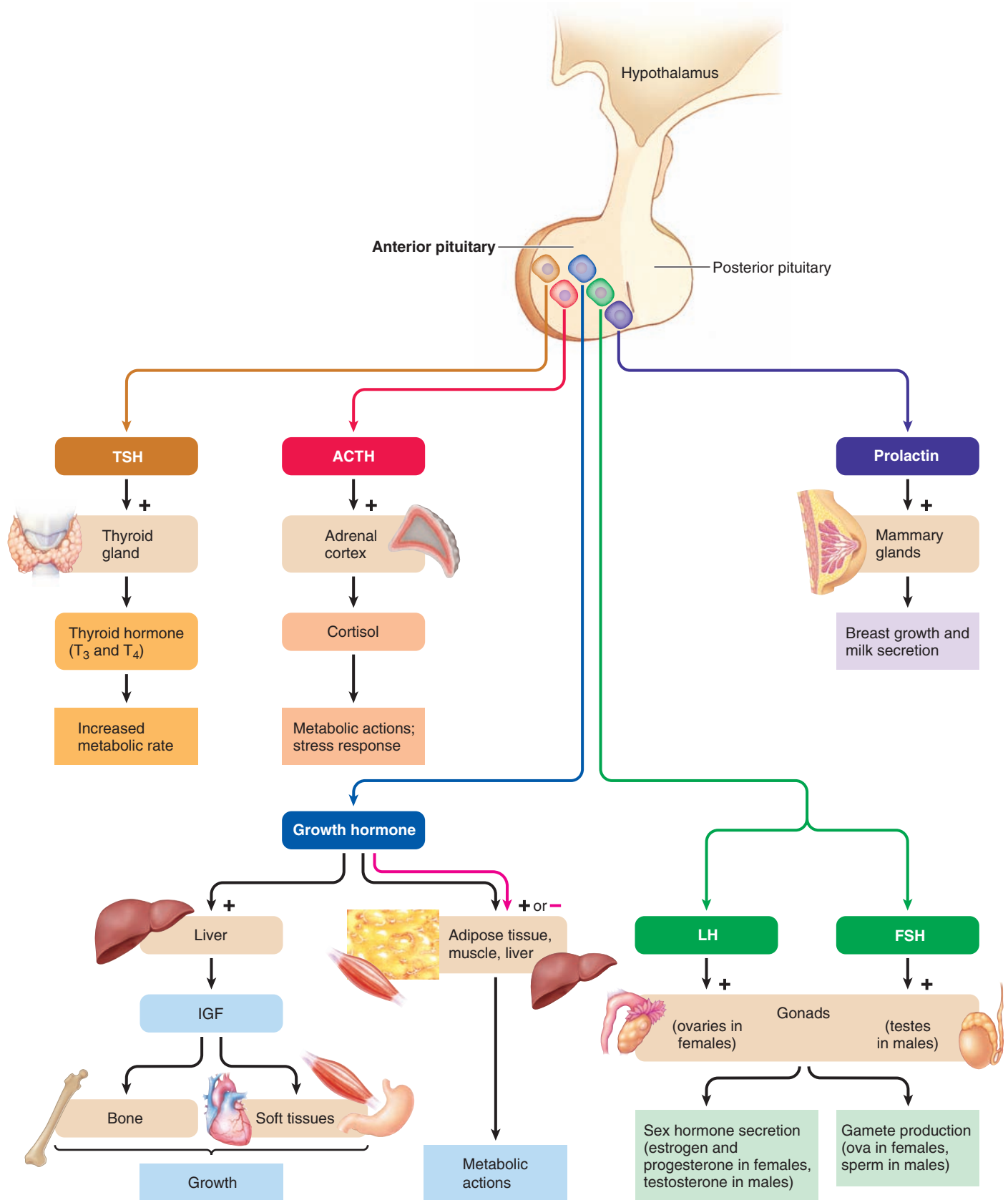
### Most anterior pituitary hormones are tropic.

Unlike the posterior pituitary, which releases hormones synthesized by the hypothalamus, the anterior pituitary itself synthesizes the hormones it releases into the blood. Five different cell populations within the anterior pituitary secrete six major peptide hormones. The actions of each of these hormones are de-

scribed in detail in later sections. For now, this brief statement of their source and primary effects provides a rationale for their names (● Figure 17-5):

1. The anterior pituitary cells known as **somatotropes** secrete **growth hormone (GH, somatotropin)**, the primary hormone responsible for regulating overall body growth (*somato* means “body”). GH also exerts important metabolic actions.
2. **Thyrotropes** secrete **thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH, thyrotropin)**, which stimulates secretion of thyroid hormone and growth of the thyroid gland.
3. **Corticotropes** produce and release **adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH, adrenocorticotropin)**, the hormone that stimulates cortisol secretion by the adrenal cortex and promotes growth of the adrenal cortex.
4. **Gonadotropes** secrete two hormones that act on the gonads (reproductive organs, namely, the ovaries and testes)—follicle-stimulating hormone and luteinizing hormone. **Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)** helps regulate gamete (reproductive cells, namely, ova and sperm) production in both sexes. In females, it stimulates growth and development of ovarian follicles, within which the ova, or eggs, develop. It also promotes secretion of the hormone estrogen by the ovaries. In males, FSH is required for sperm production.
5. **Luteinizing hormone (LH)** helps control sex hormone secretion in both sexes, among other important actions in females. LH regulates ovarian secretion of the female sex hormones, estrogen and progesterone. In males, the same hormone stimulates the interstitial cells of Leydig in the testes to secrete the male sex hormone, testosterone. In females, LH is also responsible for ovulation (egg release) and luteinization (formation of a hormone-secreting corpus luteum in the ovary following ovulation). Note that both FSH and LH are named for their functions in females.
6. **Lactotropes** secrete **prolactin (PRL)**, which enhances breast development and lactation (milk production) in females. Its reproductive function in males is uncertain. Recent studies suggest that PRL may enhance the immune system in both sexes.

Interestingly, ACTH is synthesized as part of a large precursor molecule known as **pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC)**. POMC can be cleaved into three active products: *ACTH*, *melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH)*, and *endorphin*. Several diverse cell types produce POMC and slice it in unique ways, depending on the processing enzymes they possess, to yield different active products, along with peptide “scraps” that have no known function. For example, as their major active product from this same precursor molecule, corticotropes produce ACTH; in response to UV light from the sun, keratinocytes in the skin produce MSH, which promotes dispersal from nearby melanocytes of the pigment melanin to cause tanning (see p. 339); appetite-suppressing neurons in the hypothalamus secrete MSH to control food intake (see p. 482), and other



● **FIGURE 17-5 Functions of the anterior pituitary hormones.** Five different endocrine cell types produce the six anterior pituitary hormones—TSH, ACTH, growth hormone, LH and FSH (produced by the same cell type), and prolactin—which exert a range of effects throughout the body.



neurons in the CNS produce endorphin, an endogenous opiate that suppresses pain (see p. 146).

GH, TSH, ACTH, FSH, and LH are all tropic hormones because they each regulate secretion of another specific endocrine gland. FSH and LH are collectively referred to as **gonadotropins** because they control secretion of the sex hormones by the gonads. Because GH exerts its growth-promoting effects indirectly by stimulating the release of a liver hormone, *insulin-like growth factor (IGF)*, it too is a tropic hormone. Among the anterior pituitary hormones, PRL is the only one that does not stimulate secretion of another hormone. It acts directly on non-endocrine tissue to exert its effects. Of the tropic hormones, FSH, LH, and GH exert effects on nonendocrine target cells in addition to stimulating secretion of other hormones.

### Hypothalamic releasing and inhibiting hormones help regulate anterior pituitary hormone secretion.

None of the anterior pituitary hormones are secreted at a constant rate. Even though each of these hormones has a unique control system, there are some common regulatory patterns. The two most important factors that regulate anterior pituitary hormone secretion are (1) hypothalamic hormones and (2) feedback by target-gland hormones.

Because the anterior pituitary secretes hormones that control the secretion of various other hormones, it long held the undeserved title of “master gland.” Scientists now know that the release of each anterior pituitary hormone is largely controlled by still other hormones produced by the hypothalamus. The secretion of these regulatory neurohormones, in turn, is controlled by a variety of neural and hormonal inputs to the hypothalamic neurosecretory cells.

**ROLE OF THE HYPOTHALAMIC RELEASING AND INHIBITING HORMONES** The secretion of each anterior pituitary hormone is stimulated or inhibited by one or more of seven hypothalamic **hypophysiotropic hormones** (*hypophysis* means “pituitary”; *tropic* means “nourishing”). These small peptide hormones are listed in ▲ Table 17-2. Depending on their actions, these hormones are called **releasing hormones** or **inhibiting hormones**. In each case, the primary action of the hormone is apparent from its name. For example, **thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH)** stimulates the release of TSH (alias thyrotropin) from the anterior pituitary, whereas **prolactin-inhibiting hormone (PIH)**, which is **dopamine** (the same as the neurotransmitter in the “pleasure” pathways in the brain; see p. 125), inhibits the release of PRL from the anterior pituitary. Note that hypophysiotropic hormones in most cases are involved in a three-hormone hierarchic chain of command (● Figure 17-6a): The hypothalamic hypophysiotropic hormone (*hormone 1*) controls the output of an anterior-pituitary tropic hormone (*hormone 2*). This tropic hormone, in turn, regulates secretion of the target endocrine gland’s hormone (*hormone 3*), which exerts the final physiologic effect. This three-hormone sequence is called an **endocrine axis**, as in the hypothalamus–pituitary–thyroid axis.

Although endocrinologists originally speculated that there was one hypophysiotropic hormone for each anterior pituitary

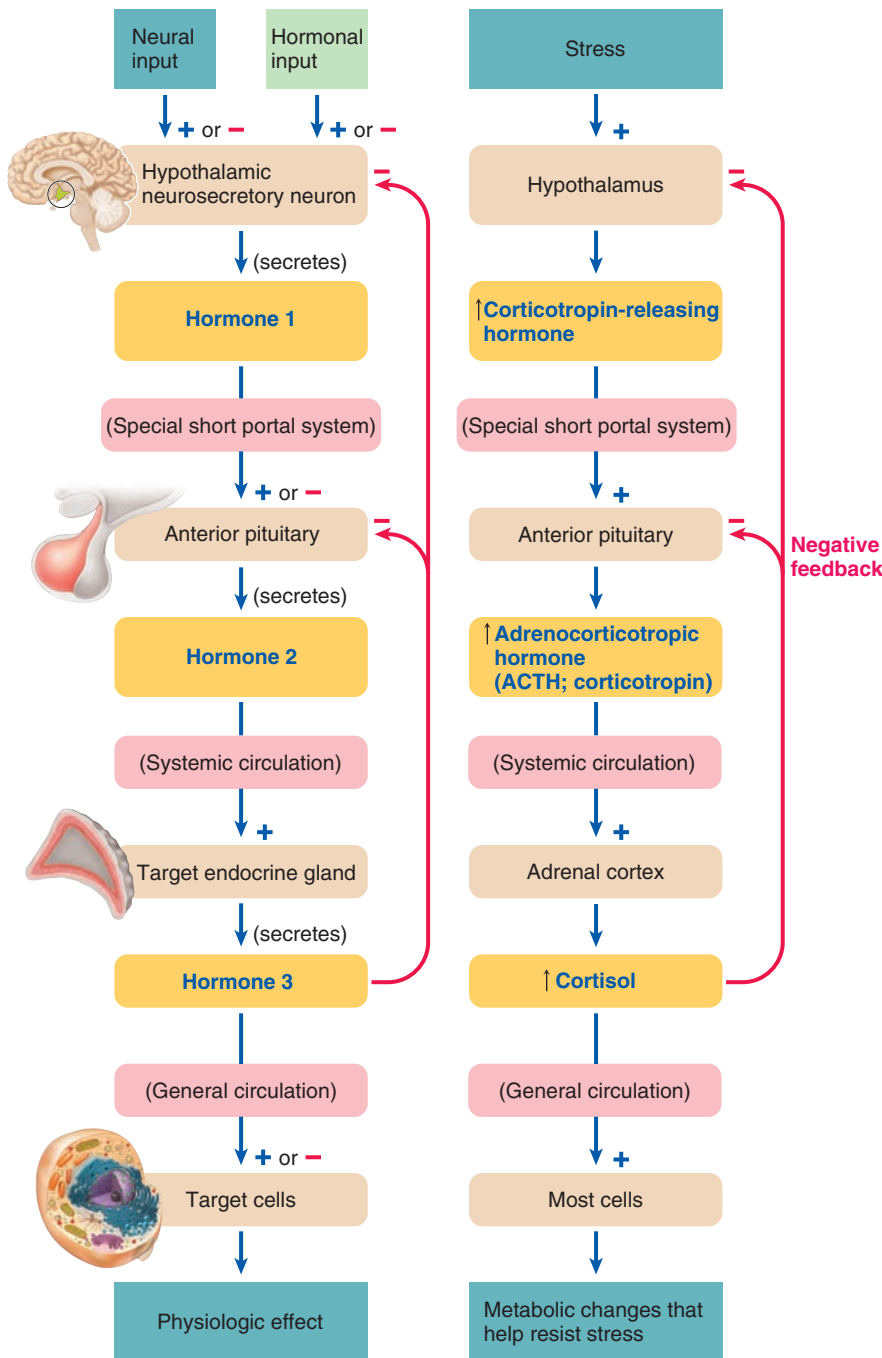
## ▲ Table 17-2 Major Hypophysiotropic Hormones

Hormone	Effect on the Anterior Pituitary
<b>Thyrotropin-Releasing Hormone (TRH)</b>	Stimulates release of TSH (thyrotropin) and prolactin (PRL)
<b>Corticotropin-Releasing Hormone (CRH)</b>	Stimulates release of ACTH (corticotropin)
<b>Gonadotropin-Releasing Hormone (GnRH)</b>	Stimulates release of FSH and LH (gonadotropins)
<b>Growth Hormone–Releasing Hormone (GHRH)</b>	Stimulates release of growth hormone (GH)
<b>Growth Hormone–Inhibiting Hormone (GHIH, Somatostatin)</b>	Inhibits release of GH and TSH
<b>Prolactin-Releasing Hormone (PRH)</b>	Stimulates release of PRL
<b>Prolactin-Inhibiting Hormone (PIH, Dopamine)</b>	Inhibits release of PRL

hormone, many hypothalamic hormones have more than one effect, so their names indicate only the function first identified. Moreover, a single anterior pituitary hormone may be regulated by two or more hypophysiotropic hormones, which may even exert opposing effects. For example, **growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH)** stimulates growth hormone secretion, whereas **growth hormone–inhibiting hormone (GHIH)**, also known as **somatostatin**, inhibits it.

### ROLE OF THE HYPOTHALAMIC–HYPOPHYSICAL PORTAL SYSTEM

The hypothalamic regulatory hormones reach the anterior pituitary by means of a unique vascular link. In contrast to the direct neural connection between the hypothalamus and the posterior pituitary, the anatomic and functional link between the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary is an unusual capillary-to-capillary connection, the **hypothalamic–hypophyseal portal system**. A portal system is a vascular arrangement in which venous blood flows directly from one capillary bed through a connecting vessel to another capillary bed. The largest and best-known portal system is the hepatic portal system, which drains intestinal venous blood directly into the liver for immediate processing of absorbed nutrients (see p. 459). Although much smaller, the hypothalamic–hypophyseal portal system is no less important, because it provides a critical link between the brain and much of the endocrine system. It begins in the base of the hypothalamus with a group of capillaries that recombine into small portal vessels, which pass down through the connecting stalk into the anterior pituitary. Here, the portal vessels branch to form most of the anterior pituitary capillaries, which in turn drain into the systemic venous system (● Figure 17-7).



● **FIGURE 17-6 Hierarchic chain of command and negative feedback in endocrine control.** The general pathway involved in the hierarchic chain of command in the hypothalamus–anterior pituitary–peripheral target endocrine gland axis is depicted on the left. The pathway on the right leading to cortisol secretion provides a specific example of this endocrine chain of command. The hormone ultimately secreted by the target endocrine gland, such as cortisol, acts in negative-feedback fashion to reduce secretion of the regulatory hormones higher in the chain of command.

As a result, almost all blood supplied to the anterior pituitary must first pass through the hypothalamus. Because materials can be exchanged between blood and surrounding tissue only at the capillary level, the hypothalamic–hypophyseal portal system provides a “private” route through which releasing and inhibiting hormones can be picked up at the hypothalamus and delivered immediately and directly to the anterior pituitary

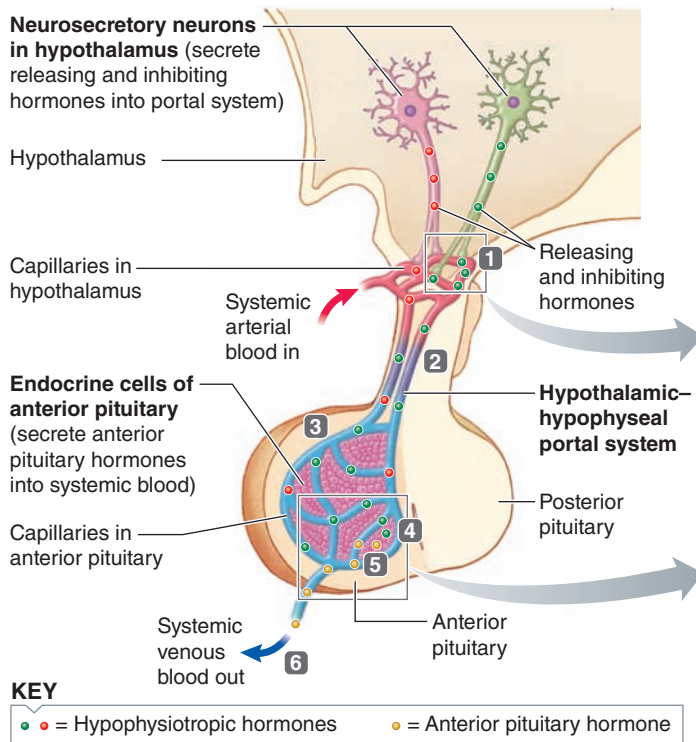
at relatively high concentrations, bypassing the general circulation. If the portal system did not exist, once the hypophysiotropic hormones were picked up in the hypothalamus, they would be returned to the heart by the systemic venous system. From here, they would travel to the lungs, move back to the heart through the pulmonary circulation, and finally enter the systemic arterial system for delivery throughout the body, including the anterior pituitary. Not only would this process take longer, but the hypophysiotropic hormones would also be considerably diluted by the much larger volume of blood flowing through this usual circulatory route.

The axons of the neurosecretory neurons that produce the hypothalamic regulatory hormones terminate on the capillaries at the origin of the portal system. These hypothalamic neurons secrete their hormones in the same way as the hypothalamic neurons that produce vasopressin and oxytocin. The hormone is synthesized in the cell body and then transported in vesicles by molecular motors to the axon terminal. It is stored there until its release by exocytosis into an adjacent capillary on appropriate stimulation. The major difference is that the hypophysiotropic hormones are released into the portal vessels, which deliver them to the anterior pituitary, where they control the release of anterior pituitary hormones into the general circulation. In contrast, the hypothalamic hormones stored in the posterior pituitary are themselves released into the general circulation.

#### CONTROL OF HYPOTHALAMIC RELEASING AND INHIBITING HORMONES

What regulates secretion of these hypophysiotropic hormones? Like other neurons, the neurons secreting these regulatory hormones receive abundant input of information (both neural and hormonal and both excitatory and inhibitory) that they must integrate. Studies are still in progress to unravel the complex neural input from many diverse areas of the brain to the hypophysiotropic secretory neurons. Some of these inputs carry information

about a variety of environmental conditions. One example is the marked increase in secretion of corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) in response to stress (see ● Figure 17-6). Numerous neural connections also exist between the hypothalamus and the portions of the brain concerned with emotions (the limbic system; see p. 124). Thus, emotions greatly influence secretion of hypophysiotropic hormones. The



**1** Hypophysiotropic hormones (releasing hormones and inhibiting hormones) produced by neurosecretory neurons in the hypothalamus enter the hypothalamic capillaries.

**2** These hypothalamic capillaries rejoin to form the hypothalamic–hypophyseal portal system, a vascular link to the anterior pituitary.

**3** The portal system branches into the capillaries of the anterior pituitary.

**4** The hypophysiotropic hormones, which leave the blood across the anterior pituitary capillaries, control the release of anterior pituitary hormones.

**5** When stimulated by the appropriate hypothalamic releasing hormone, the anterior pituitary secretes a given hormone into these capillaries.

**6** The anterior pituitary capillaries rejoin to form a vein, through which the anterior pituitary hormones leave for ultimate distribution throughout the body by the systemic circulation.

● **FIGURE 17-7** Vascular link between the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary.

menstrual irregularities sometimes experienced by women who are emotionally upset are a common manifestation of this relationship.

In addition to being regulated by different regions of the brain, the hypophysiotropic neurons are controlled by various chemical inputs that reach the hypothalamus through the blood. The most common blood-borne factors that influence hypothalamic neurosecretion are the negative-feedback effects of target-gland hormones, to which we now turn our attention.

### Target-gland hormones inhibit hypothalamic and anterior pituitary hormone secretion via negative feedback.

Typically, in addition to producing its physiologic effects, the target-gland hormone suppresses secretion of the tropic hormone that is driving it. This negative feedback is accomplished by the target-gland hormone acting directly on the pituitary and on the release of hypothalamic hormones, which in turn regulate anterior pituitary function (see ● Figure 17-6). As an example, consider the CRH–ACTH–cortisol system. Hypothalamic CRH (corticotropin-releasing hormone) stimulates the anterior pituitary to secrete ACTH (adrenocorticotropic hormone, alias corticotropin), which in turn stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete cortisol. The final hormone in the system, cortisol, inhibits the hypothalamus to reduce CRH secretion and acts directly on the corticotropes in the anterior pituitary to reduce ACTH secretion. Through this double-barreled approach, cortisol exerts negative-feedback control to stabilize its own plasma concentration. If plasma cortisol levels start to rise above a prescribed level, cortisol suppresses its own secretion by its inhibitory actions at the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary.

ity. This mechanism ensures that once a hormonal system is activated its secretion does not continue unabated. If plasma cortisol levels fall below the desired set point, cortisol's inhibitory actions at the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary are reduced, so the driving forces for cortisol secretion (CRH–ACTH) increase accordingly. The other target-gland hormones act by similar negative-feedback loops to maintain their plasma levels relatively constant at the set point.

Diurnal rhythms are superimposed on this type of stabilizing negative-feedback regulation; that is, the set point changes as a function of the time of day. Furthermore, other controlling inputs may break through the negative-feedback control to alter hormone secretion (that is, change the set level) at times of special need. For example, stress raises the set point for cortisol secretion.

The detailed functions and control of all the anterior pituitary hormones except growth hormone are discussed elsewhere in conjunction with the target tissues that they influence; for example, thyroid-stimulating hormone is covered with the discussion of the thyroid gland. Accordingly, growth hormone is the only anterior pituitary hormone we elaborate on at this time.

## Endocrine Control of Growth

In growing children, continuous net protein synthesis occurs under the influence of growth hormone (GH) as the body steadily gets larger. Weight gain alone is not synonymous with growth, because weight gain may occur from retaining excess H<sub>2</sub>O or storing fat without true structural growth of tissues. Growth requires net synthesis of proteins and includes length-

ening of the long bones (the bones of the extremities), as well as increases in the size and number of cells in the soft tissues.

### Growth depends on GH but is influenced by other factors.

Although, as the name implies, growth hormone is essential for growth, it is not wholly responsible for determining the rate and final magnitude of growth in a given individual. The following factors affect growth:

- *Genetic determination* of an individual's maximum growth capacity. Attaining this full growth potential further depends on the other factors listed here.
- *Adequate diet*, including enough total protein and ample essential amino acids to accomplish the protein synthesis necessary for growth. Malnourished children never achieve their full growth potential. By contrast, a person cannot exceed his or her genetically determined maximum by eating a more-than-adequate diet. The excess food intake produces obesity instead of growth.
- *Freedom from chronic disease and stressful environmental conditions*. Stunted growth under adverse circumstances is largely a result of the prolonged stress-induced secretion of cortisol from the adrenal cortex. Cortisol exerts several potent antigrowth effects, such as promoting protein breakdown, inhibiting growth in the long bones, and blocking the secretion of GH.
- *Normal levels of growth-influencing hormones*. In addition to the essential GH, other hormones including thyroid hormone, insulin, and the sex hormones play secondary roles in promoting growth.

### GH is essential for growth, but it also directly exerts metabolic effects not related to growth.

GH is the most abundant hormone produced by the anterior pituitary, even in adults in whom growth has already ceased, although GH secretion typically starts to decline after middle age. The continued high secretion of GH beyond the growing period implies that this hormone has important influences beyond its influence on growth, such as metabolic effects. We briefly describe GH's metabolic actions before turning to its growth-promoting actions.

To exert its metabolic effects, GH binds directly with its target organs, namely, adipose tissue, skeletal muscles, and liver. GH increases fatty acid levels in the blood by enhancing the breakdown of triglyceride fat stored in adipose tissue, and it increases blood glucose levels by decreasing glucose uptake by muscles and increasing glucose output by the liver. Muscles use the mobilized fatty acids instead of glucose as a metabolic fuel. Thus, the overall metabolic effect of GH is to mobilize fat stores as a major energy source while conserving glucose for glucose-dependent tissues such as the brain. The brain can use only glucose as its metabolic fuel, yet nervous tissue cannot store glycogen (stored glucose) to any extent. The metabolic pattern induced by GH is suitable for maintaining the body during

prolonged fasting or other situations when the body's energy needs exceed available glucose stores. GH also stimulates amino acid uptake and protein synthesis, but it does not act directly to accomplish these growth-promoting metabolic actions or any other growth-related actions. Before examining the means by which GH promotes growth, let us summarize its metabolic effects: It increases blood fatty acids, increases blood glucose and spares glucose for the brain, and stimulates protein synthesis (decreasing blood amino acids in the process).

### GH exerts its growth-promoting effects indirectly by stimulating insulin-like growth factor.

GH does not act directly to bring about its growth-producing actions (increased cell division, enhanced protein synthesis, and bone growth). Instead, GH's growth-promoting actions are directly mediated by **insulin-like growth factor (IGF)**, which acts on the target cells to cause growth of both soft tissues and bones.

The major source of circulating IGF is the liver, which releases this peptide product into the blood in response to GH stimulation. IGF is also produced by most other tissues, although they do not release it into the blood to any extent. Researchers propose that IGF produced locally in target tissues may act through paracrine means (see p. 92). Such a mechanism could explain why blood levels of GH are no higher, and indeed circulating levels are lower, during the first several years of life compared to adult values, even though growth is quite rapid during the postnatal (after birth) period. Local production of IGF in target tissues may be more important than delivery of blood-borne IGF during this time.

Production of IGF is controlled by a number of factors other than GH, including nutritional status, age, and tissue-specific factors. Thus, control of IGF production is complex and subject to a variety of systemic and local factors.

We now describe GH's growth-promoting effects, mediated by IGF.

### GH, through IGF, promotes growth of soft tissues by stimulating hyperplasia and hypertrophy.

When tissues are responsive to its growth-promoting effects, GH (acting through IGF) stimulates growth of both the soft tissues and the skeleton. GH promotes growth of soft tissues by (1) increasing the number of cells (**hyperplasia**) and (2) increasing the size of cells (**hypertrophy**). GH increases the number of cells by stimulating cell division and by preventing apoptosis (programmed cell death; see p. 98). It increases the size of cells by favoring synthesis of proteins, the main structural component of cells. GH stimulates almost all aspects of protein synthesis while it simultaneously inhibits protein degradation. It promotes the uptake of amino acids (the raw materials for protein synthesis) by cells, decreasing blood amino acid levels in the process. Furthermore, it stimulates the cellular machinery responsible for accomplishing protein synthesis according to the cell's genetic code.

Growth of the long bones resulting in increased height is the most dramatic effect of GH. Before you can understand the

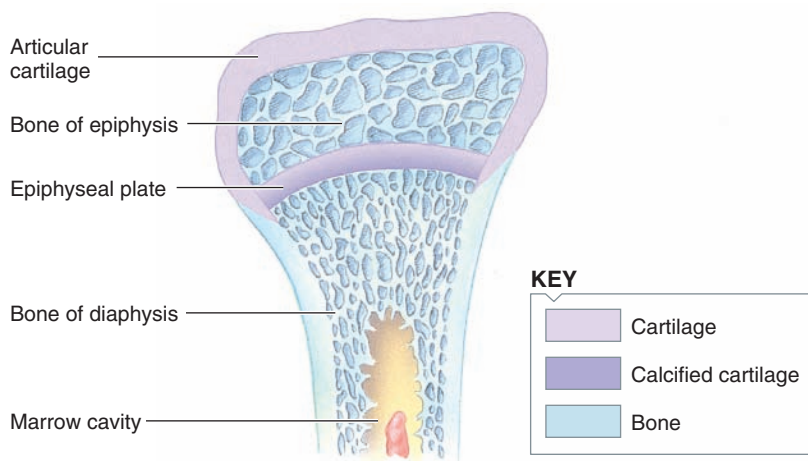
means by which GH stimulates bone growth, you must become familiar with the structure of bone and how growth of bone is accomplished.

### Bone grows in thickness and in length by different mechanisms, both stimulated by GH.

**Bone** is a living tissue. Being a form of connective tissue, it consists of cells and an extracellular organic matrix known as **osteoid** produced by the cells. The bone cells that produce the organic matrix are known as **osteoblasts** (*osteo* means “bone;” *blasts* means “formers”). Osteoid is composed of collagen fibers (see p. 48) in a semisolid gel. This organic matrix has a rubbery consistency and is responsible for bone’s tensile strength (the resilience of bone to breakage when tension is applied). Bone is made hard by precipitation of *calcium phosphate crystals* within the osteoid. These inorganic crystals provide the bone with compressional strength (the ability of bone to hold its shape when squeezed or compressed). If bones consisted entirely of inorganic crystals, they would be brittle, like pieces of chalk. Bones have structural strength approaching that of reinforced concrete, yet they are not brittle and weigh much less because they have the structural blending of an organic scaffolding hardened by inorganic crystals. **Cartilage** is similar to bone, except that living cartilage is not calcified.

A long bone basically consists of a fairly uniform cylindrical shaft, the **diaphysis**, with a flared articulating knob at either end, an **epiphysis**. In a growing bone, the diaphysis is separated at each end from the epiphysis by a layer of cartilage known as the **epiphyseal plate** (● Figure 17-8). The central cavity of the bone is filled with bone marrow, the site of blood cell production (see p. 300).

**MECHANISMS OF BONE GROWTH** Growth in *thickness* of bone is achieved by adding new bone on top of the outer surface of existing bone. This growth is produced by osteoblasts within the connective tissue sheath that covers the outer bone. As osteoblast activity deposits new bone on the external surface, other cells within the bone, the **osteoclasts** (“bone breakers”), dissolve the bony tissue on the inner surface next to the marrow cavity. In this way, the marrow cavity enlarges to keep pace with the increased circumference of the bone shaft.



● **FIGURE 17-8** Anatomy of long bones.

Growth in *length* of long bones is accomplished by a different mechanism. Bones lengthen as a result of activity of the cartilage cells in the epiphyseal plates. During growth, cartilage cells on the outer edge of the plate next to the epiphysis divide and multiply, temporarily widening the epiphyseal plate. As new cartilage cells are formed on the epiphyseal border, the older cartilage cells toward the diaphyseal border die and are replaced by osteoblasts, which swarm upward from the diaphysis, trailing their capillary supply with them. These new tenants lay down bone around the persisting remnants of disintegrating cartilage until bone entirely replaces the inner region of cartilage on the diaphyseal side of the plate. When this **ossification** (“bone formation”) is complete, the bone on the diaphyseal side has lengthened and the epiphyseal plate has returned to its original thickness. The cartilage that bone has replaced on the diaphyseal end of the plate is as thick as the new cartilage on the epiphyseal end of the plate. Thus, bone growth is made possible by the growth and death of cartilage, which acts like a “spacer” to push the epiphysis farther out while it provides a framework for future bone formation on the end of the diaphysis.

**MATURE, NONGROWING BONE** As the extracellular matrix produced by an osteoblast calcifies, the osteoblast becomes entombed by the matrix it has deposited around itself. Osteoblasts trapped within a calcified matrix do not die, because they are supplied by nutrients transported to them through small canals that the osteoblasts themselves form by sending out cytoplasmic extensions around which the bony matrix is deposited. Thus, within the final bony product, a network of permeating tunnels radiates from each entrapped osteoblast, serving as a lifeline system for nutrient delivery and waste removal. The entrapped osteoblasts, now called **osteocytes**, retire from active bone-forming duty because their imprisonment prevents them from laying down new bone. However, they are involved in the hormonally regulated exchange of calcium between bone and blood. This exchange is under the control of parathyroid hormone (discussed later in the chapter), not GH.

**GH CONTROL OF BONE GROWTH** GH causes bones to grow both in length and in thickness. GH, via IGF, stimulates proliferation of epiphyseal cartilage, thereby making space for more bone formation, and stimulates osteoblast activity. It can promote lengthening of long bones as long as the epiphyseal plate remains cartilaginous, or is “open.” At the end of adolescence, under the influence of the sex hormones, these plates completely ossify, or “close,” so that the bones cannot lengthen any further despite the presence of GH. Thus, after the plates are closed, the individual does not grow any taller.

### GH secretion is regulated by two hypophysiotropic hormones.

The control of GH secretion is complex, with two hypothalamic hypophysiotropic hormones playing a key role.

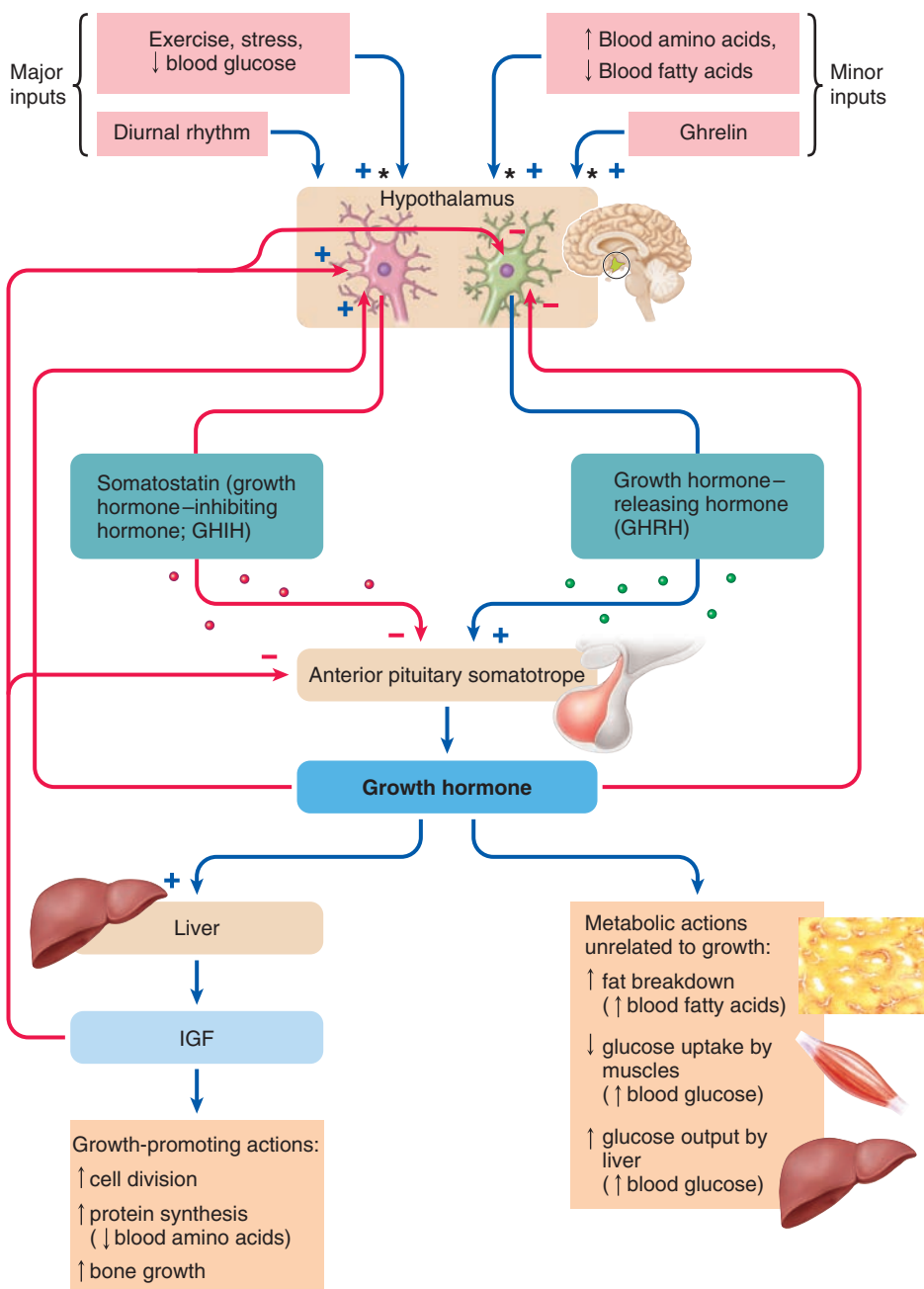
**GROWTH HORMONE–RELEASING AND GROWTH HORMONE–INHIBITING HORMONES** Two antagonistic regulatory hormones from the hypothalamus are involved in controlling GH secretion: growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH), which is stimulatory and the dominant influence, and growth hormone–inhibiting hormone (GHIH, or somatostatin), which is inhibitory (● Figure 17-9).

As with control of other anterior pituitary hormones, negative-feedback loops participate in controlling GH secretion. Complicating the feedback loops for the hypothalamus–pituitary–liver axis is direct regulation of GH secretion by both stimulatory and inhibitory factors. Therefore, negative-feedback loops involve both inhibition of stimulatory factors and stimulation of inhibitory factors. GH stimulates IGF secretion by the liver, and IGF in turn is the primary inhibitor of GH secretion by the anterior pituitary. IGF inhibits the somatotropes in the pituitary directly and further decreases GH secretion by inhibiting GHRH-secreting cells and stimulating the somatostatin-secreting cells in the hypothalamus, thus decreasing hypothalamic stimulation of the somatotropes. Furthermore, GH itself inhibits hypothalamic GHRH secretion and stimulates somatostatin release.

**FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE GH SECRETION** A number of factors influence GH secretion by acting on the hypothalamus. GH secretion displays a well-characterized diurnal rhythm. Through most of the day, GH levels tend to be low and fairly constant. About an hour after the onset of deep sleep, however, GH secretion markedly increases up to five times the low daytime value.

Superimposed on this diurnal fluctuation in GH secretion are further bursts in secretion that occur in response to exercise, stress, and low blood glucose, the major stimuli for increased secretion. The benefits of increased GH secretion during these situations when energy demands outstrip the body’s glucose reserves are presumably that glucose is conserved for the brain and fatty acids are provided as an alternative energy source for muscle.

A rise in blood amino acids after a high-protein meal enhances GH secretion. In turn, GH promotes the use of these amino acids for protein synthesis. GH is also stimulated by a



\*These factors all increase growth hormone secretion, but it is unclear whether they do so by stimulating GHRH or inhibiting GHIH somatostatin, or both.

● **FIGURE 17-9** Control of growth hormone secretion.

decline in blood fatty acids. Because GH mobilizes fat, such regulation helps maintain fairly constant blood fatty acid levels.

Finally, ghrelin, a potent appetite stimulator released from the stomach, also stimulates GH secretion (see p. 484). This “hunger hormone” may play a role in coordinating growth with nutrient acquisition.

Note that the known regulatory inputs for GH secretion are aimed at adjusting the levels of glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids in the blood. No known growth-related signals influence GH secretion. The whole issue of what really controls growth is complicated by GH levels during early childhood, a period of

quite rapid growth in height, being similar to those in normal adults. As mentioned earlier, the poorly understood control of local IGF activity may be important in this regard. Another related question is, Why aren't adult tissues still responsive to GH's growth-promoting effects? We know we do not grow any taller after adolescence because the epiphyseal plates have closed, but why do soft tissues not continue to grow through hypertrophy and hyperplasia under the influence of GH? Further research is needed to unravel these mysteries.

### Abnormal GH secretion results in aberrant growth patterns.



Diseases related to both deficiencies and excesses of GH can occur. The effects on the pattern of growth are more pronounced than the metabolic consequences.

**GH DEFICIENCY** GH deficiency may be caused by a pituitary defect (lack of GH) or may occur secondary to hypothalamic dysfunctions (lack of GHRH). Hyposecretion of GH in a child is one cause of **dwarfism**. The predominant feature is short stature caused by retarded skeletal growth (● Figure 17-10).

In addition, growth may be thwarted because the tissues fail to respond normally to GH. An example is *Laron dwarfism*, which is characterized by abnormal GH receptors that are unresponsive to the hormone. The symptoms of this condition resemble those of severe GH deficiency even though blood levels of GH are actually high. In some instances, GH levels are



● **FIGURE 17-10** Examples of the effect of abnormalities in growth hormone secretion on growth. The man at the right displays pituitary dwarfism resulting from underproduction of growth hormone in childhood. The man at the center of the photograph has gigantism caused by excessive growth hormone secretion in childhood. The man at the left is of average height.

adequate and target-cell responsiveness is normal, but IGF is lacking, as is the case with *African pygmies*.

The onset of GH deficiency in adulthood after growth is already complete produces relatively few symptoms. GH-deficient adults tend to have reduced skeletal muscle mass and strength (less muscle protein), as well as decreased bone density (less osteoblast activity during ongoing bone remodeling).

**GH Excess** Hypersecretion of GH is most often caused by a tumor of the GH-producing cells of the anterior pituitary. The symptoms depend on the age of the individual when the abnormal secretion begins. If overproduction of GH begins in childhood before the epiphyseal plates close, the principal manifestation is a rapid growth in height without distortion of body proportions. Appropriately, this condition is known as **gigantism** (● Figure 17-10). If not treated by removal of the tumor or by drugs that block the effect of GH, the person may reach a height of 8 feet or more. All the soft tissues grow correspondingly, so the body is still well proportioned.

If GH hypersecretion occurs after adolescence when the epiphyseal plates have already closed, further growth in height is prevented. Under the influence of excess GH, however, the bones become thicker and the soft tissues, especially connective tissue and skin, proliferate. This disproportionate growth pattern produces a disfiguring condition known as **acromegaly** (*acro* means “extremity”; *megaly* means “large”). Bone thickening is most obvious in the extremities and face. A marked coarsening of the features to an almost apelike appearance gradually develops as the jaws and cheekbones become more prominent because of thickening of the facial bones and the skin (● Figure 17-11). The hands and feet enlarge, and the fingers and toes become greatly thickened.

We now shift our attention to the other endocrine gland in the brain—the pineal gland.

## Pineal Gland and Circadian Rhythms

The **pineal gland**, (PIN-ē-ul) a tiny, pinecone-shaped structure located in the center of the brain (see ● Figure 5-6b, p. 116, and ● Figure 17-1), secretes the hormone **melatonin**. (Do not confuse melatonin with the skin-darkening pigment, *melanin*.) Although melatonin was discovered in 1959, investigators have only recently begun to unravel its many functions. One of melatonin's most widely accepted roles is helping keep the body's inherent circadian rhythm in synchrony with the light-dark cycle. We examine circadian rhythm in general before looking at the role of melatonin in this regard and considering other functions of this hormone.

### The suprachiasmatic nucleus is the master biological clock.

Hormone secretion rates are not the only factor in the body that fluctuates cyclically over a 24-hour period. Humans have similar biological clocks for many other bodily functions, ranging from



Age 13



Age 21



Age 35

Dean Warchak/www.acromegaly-support.com

● **FIGURE 17-11 Progressive development of acromegaly.** In this series of photos from childhood to the present, note how the patient's brow bones, cheekbones, and jawbones become progressively more prominent as a result of ongoing thickening of the bones and skin caused by excessive GH secretion.

gene expression, to physiologic processes such as temperature regulation (see p. 486), to behavior. The master biological clock that serves as the pacemaker for the body's circadian rhythm is the **suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN)**. It consists of a cluster of nerve cell bodies in the hypothalamus above the optic chiasm, the point at which part of the nerve fibers from each eye cross to the opposite half of the brain (*supra* means "above"; *chiasm* means "cross") (see ● Figures 17-3, p. 501, and 6-22, p. 159). The self-induced rhythmic firing of the SCN neurons plays a major role in establishing many of the body's inherent daily rhythms.

**ROLE OF CLOCK PROTEINS** Scientists have now unraveled the underlying molecular mechanisms responsible for the SCN's circadian oscillations. Specific self-starting genes within the nuclei of SCN neurons set in motion a series of events that brings about the synthesis of **clock proteins** in the cytosol surrounding the nucleus. As the day wears on, these clock proteins continue to accumulate, finally reaching a critical mass, at which time they are transported into the nucleus. Here, they block the genetic process responsible for their own production. The level of clock proteins gradually dwindles as they degrade within the nucleus, thus removing their inhibitory influence from the clock-protein genetic machinery. No longer being blocked, these genes again rev up the production of more clock proteins as the cycle repeats itself. Each cycle takes about a day. The fluctuating levels of clock proteins bring about cyclic changes in neural output from the SCN that, in turn, lead to cyclic changes in effector organs throughout the day. An example is the diurnal variation in cortisol secretion (see ● Figure 17-2, p. 497). In this way, internal timekeeping (circadian rhythm) is a self-sustaining mechanism built into the genetic makeup of the SCN neurons.

**SYNCHRONIZATION OF THE BIOLOGICAL CLOCK WITH ENVIRONMENTAL CUES** On its own, this biological clock generally cycles a bit slower than the 24-hour environmental cycle. Without any

external cues, the SCN sets up cycles that average about 25 hours. The cycles are consistent for a given individual but vary somewhat among different people. If this master clock were not continually adjusted to keep pace with the world outside, the body's circadian rhythm would become progressively out of sync with the cycles of light (periods of activity) and dark (periods of rest). Thus, the SCN must be reset daily by external cues so that biological rhythms are synchronized with the activity levels driven by the surrounding environment.

The effect of not keeping the internal clock synchronized with the environment is well known by people who experience **jet lag** when their inherent rhythm is out of step with external cues. The SCN works with the pineal gland and its hormonal product melatonin to synchronize the circadian rhythm with the 24-hour day–night cycle. (For a discussion of problems associated with being out of sync with environmental cues, see the boxed feature on p. 512, ► Beyond the Basics.)

### Melatonin helps keep the body's circadian rhythm in time with the light–dark cycle.

Daily changes in light intensity are the major environmental cue used to adjust the SCN master clock. Special photoreceptors in the eye contain **melanopsin**, a protein that responds to light to keep the body in tune with external time. These special photoreceptors, which are distinct from the rod and cone photoreceptors used to see light (that is, for vision; see p. 152), transmit their signals about the presence or absence of light along a specific neural pathway directly to the SCN. The SCN relays the message regarding light status to the pineal gland. This is the major way the internal clock is coordinated to a 24-hour day. Melatonin is the hormone of darkness. Melatonin secretion increases up to 10-fold during the darkness of night and then falls to low levels during the light of day. Fluctuations in melatonin secretion, in turn, help entrain the body's biological rhythms with the external light–dark cues.

Proposed roles of melatonin, besides regulating the body's biological clock, include the following:

- Taken exogenously (in a pill), melatonin induces a natural sleep without the side effects that accompany hypnotic sedatives, so it may play a normal role in promoting sleep.
- Melatonin is believed to inhibit the hormones that stimulate reproductive activity. Puberty may be initiated by a reduction in melatonin secretion.



## Beyond the Basics

Research shows that the hectic pace of modern life, stress, noise, pollution, and the irregular schedules many workers follow can upset internal rhythms, illustrating how a healthy external environment affects our own internal environment—and our health.

Dr. Richard Restak, a neurologist and author, notes that the “usual rhythms of wakefulness and sleep . . . seem to exert a stabilizing effect on our physical and psychological health.” The greatest disrupter of our natural circadian rhythms is the variable work schedule, surprisingly common in industrialized countries. Today, one out of every four working men and one out of every six working women has a variable work schedule—shifting frequently between day and night work. In many industries, to make optimal use of equipment and buildings, workers are on the job day and night. As a spin-off, more restaurants and stores stay open 24 hours a day and more health-care workers must be on duty at night to care for accident victims.

To spread the burden, many companies that maintain shifts round the clock alter their workers' schedules. One week, employees work the day shift. The next week, they move to the “graveyard shift” from midnight to 8 A.M. The next week, they work the night shift from 4 P.M. to midnight. Many shift workers feel tired most of the time and have trouble staying awake at the job. Work performance suffers because of the workers' fatigue. When workers arrive home for bed, they're exhausted but cannot sleep, because they are trying to doze off when the body is trying to wake them up. Unfortunately, the weekly changes in schedule never permit workers' internal alarm clocks to fully adjust. Most people require 4 to 14 days to adjust to a new schedule.

Workers on alternating shifts suffer more ulcers, insomnia, irritability, depres-

## Tinkering with Our Biological Clocks

sion, and tension than workers on unchanging shifts. Their lives are never the same. To make matters worse, tired, irritable workers whose judgment is impaired by fatigue pose a threat to society. Consider two examples.

At 4 A.M. in the control room of the Three Mile Island nuclear reactor in Pennsylvania, three operators made the first mistake in a series of errors that led to the worst nuclear accident in U.S. history. The operators did not notice warning lights and failed to observe that a crucial valve had remained open. When the morning-shift operators entered the control room the next day, they quickly discovered the problems, but it was too late. Pipes in the system had burst, sending radioactive steam and water into the air and into two buildings. Ironically, this 1979 accident occurred 12 days after release of a popular movie, *The China Syndrome*, about a nuclear reactor accident, pumping up public awareness and alarm. Fortunately, no surrounding residents were immediately injured and no long-term studies have found a conclusive link between an increased incidence of cancer and the low level of radiation to which those living near the troubled reactor were exposed. Cleanup of the accident lasted from 1970 until 1993 and cost \$975 million.

Late in April 1986, another nuclear power plant went amok. This accident, in Chernobyl in the former Soviet Union, was far more severe than the U.S. reactor incident. In the early hours of the morning, two engineers were testing the reactor. Violating standard operational protocol, they deactivated key safety systems. This single error in judgment (possibly caused by fatigue) led to the largest and most costly nuclear accident in world history. Steam built up inside the reactor

and blew the roof off the containment building. A thick cloud of radiation rose skyward and then spread throughout Europe and the world. For 10 days the reactor burned, disgoring 400 times more radiation than was released from the atomic bomb dropped on Hiroshima in World War II. While workers battled to cover the molten radioactive core that spewed radiation into the sky, the world watched in horror.

The Chernobyl disaster, like the accident at Three Mile Island, may have been the result of workers operating at a time unsuitable for clear thinking. One has to wonder how many plane crashes, auto accidents, and acts of medical malpractice can be traced to judgment errors resulting from our insistence on working against inherent body rhythms.

Thanks to studies of biological rhythms, researchers are finding ways to reset biological clocks, which could help lessen the misery and suffering of shift workers and could improve the performance of the graveyard-shift workers. For instance, one simple measure is to put shift workers on 3-week cycles to give their clocks time to adjust. And instead of shifting workers from daytime to graveyard shifts, companies could transfer them forward rather than backward (for example, from a daytime to a nighttime shift). A forward transfer is an easier adjustment. Bright lights can also be used to reset the biological clock. It is a small price to pay for a healthy workforce and a safer society. Furthermore, use of supplemental melatonin, the hormone that sets the internal clock to march in step with environmental cycles, may prove useful in resetting the body's clock when that clock is out of sync with external cues.

- Melatonin appears to be an effective **antioxidant**, a defense tool against biologically damaging free radicals. *Free radicals* are very unstable electron-deficient particles that are highly reactive and destructive. Free radicals have been implicated in several chronic diseases, such as coronary artery disease (see p. 254) and cancer, and are believed to contribute to the aging process.
- Evidence suggests that melatonin may slow the aging process, perhaps by removing free radicals or by other means.
- Melatonin appears to enhance immunity.



Because of melatonin's many proposed roles, use of supplemental melatonin for a variety of conditions is promising. However, most researchers are cautious about recommending supplemental melatonin until its effectiveness as a drug is further substantiated. Meanwhile, many people are turning to melatonin as a health food supplement; as such, it is not regulated by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for safety and effectiveness. The two biggest self-prescribed uses of melatonin are as a prevention for jet lag and as a sleep aid.

# Thyroid Gland

The **thyroid gland** consists of two lobes of endocrine tissue joined in the middle by a narrow portion of the gland, giving it a bow-tie shape (● Figure 17-12a). The gland is even located in the appropriate place for a bow tie, lying over the trachea in the neck.

## The major cells that secrete thyroid hormone are organized into colloid-filled follicles.

The major thyroid secretory cells, known as **follicular cells**, are arranged into hollow spheres, each of which forms a functional unit called a **follicle**. On microscopic section (● Figure 17-12b), the follicles appear as rings consisting of a single layer of follicular cells enclosing an inner lumen filled with **colloid**, a substance that serves as an extracellular storage site for thyroid hormone. Note that the colloid within the follicular lumen is extracellular (that is, outside the thyroid cells), even though it is located within the interior of the follicle. Colloid is not in direct contact with the extracellular fluid (ECF) that surrounds the follicle, similar to an inland lake that is not in direct contact with the oceans that surround a continent.

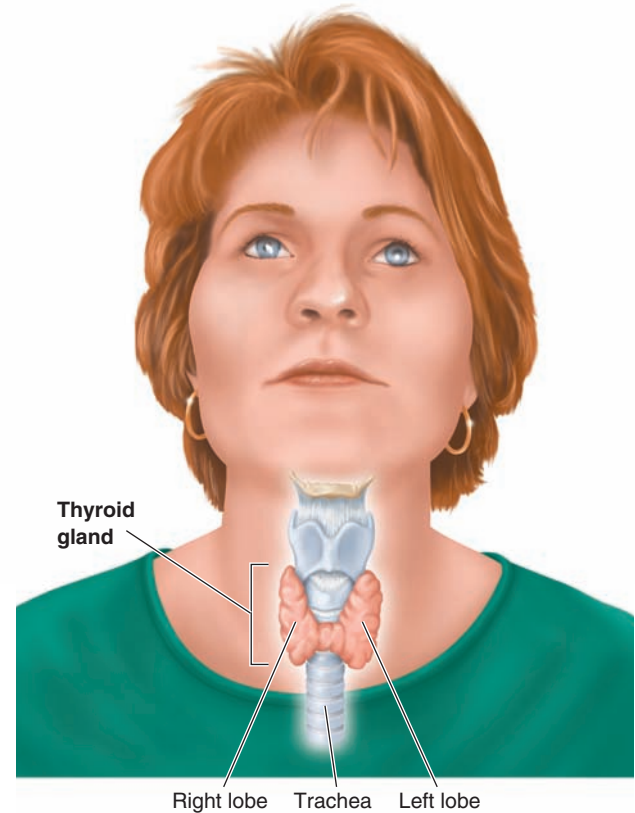
The chief constituent of colloid is a large glycoprotein molecule known as **thyroglobulin (Tg)**, within which are incorporated the thyroid hormones in their various stages of synthesis. The follicular cells produce two iodine-containing hormones derived from the amino acid tyrosine: **tetraiodothyronine (T<sub>4</sub>, or thyroxine)** and **tri-iodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>)**. The prefixes *tetra* and *tri* and the subscripts 4 and 3 denote the number of iodine atoms incorporated into each of these hormones. These two hormones, collectively referred to as **thyroid hormone**, are important regulators of overall basal metabolic rate.

Interspersed in the interstitial spaces between the follicles is another secretory cell type, the **C cells**, which secrete the peptide hormone **calcitonin**. Calcitonin plays a role in calcium metabolism and is not related to T<sub>4</sub> and T<sub>3</sub>. We discuss T<sub>4</sub> and T<sub>3</sub> here and talk about calcitonin later in a section dealing with endocrine control of calcium balance.

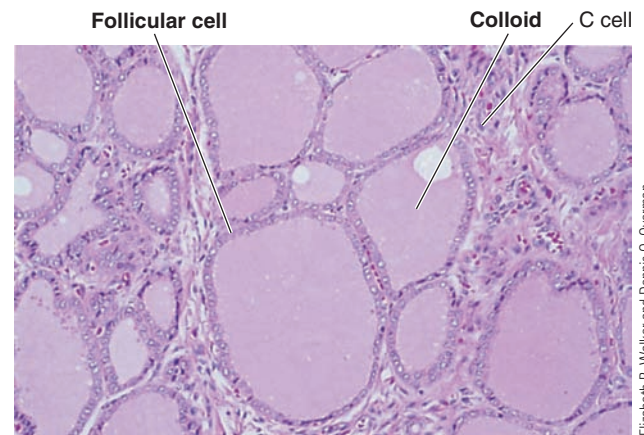
## Thyroid hormone is synthesized and stored on the thyroglobulin molecule.

The basic ingredients for thyroid hormone synthesis are tyrosine and iodine, both of which must be taken up from the blood by the follicular cells. Tyrosine, an amino acid, is synthesized in sufficient amounts by the body, so it is not essential to the diet. By contrast, the iodine needed for thyroid hormone synthesis must be obtained from dietary intake. Dietary iodine (I) is reduced to iodide (I<sup>-</sup>) prior to absorption by the small intestine. We now examine the steps involved in the synthesis, storage, secretion, and transport of thyroid hormone.

Most steps of thyroid hormone synthesis take place on the thyroglobulin molecules within the colloid. Thyroglobulin itself is produced by the endoplasmic reticulum–Golgi complex of the thyroid follicular cells. The amino acid tyrosine becomes incorporated in the much larger thyroglobulin molecules as the



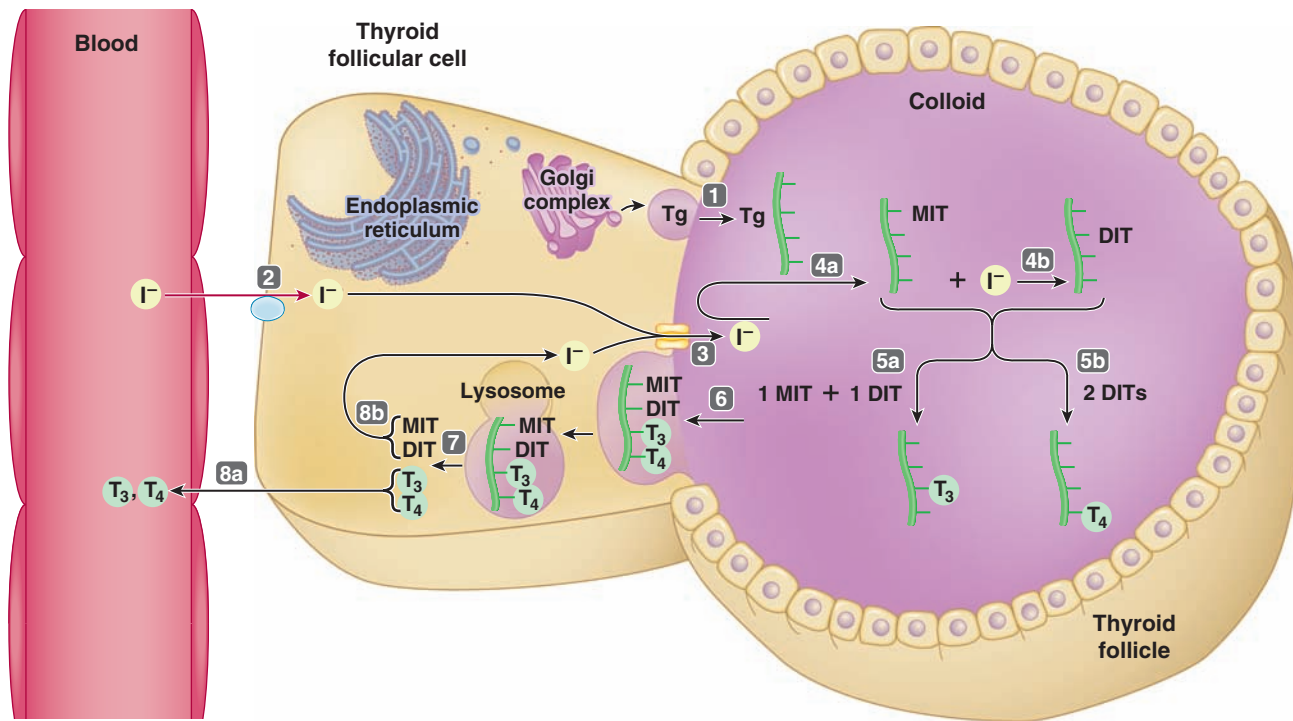
(a) Gross anatomy of thyroid gland




(b) Light-microscopic appearance of thyroid gland

● **FIGURE 17-12 Anatomy of the thyroid gland.** (a) Gross anatomy of the thyroid gland, anterior view. The thyroid gland lies over the trachea just below the larynx (voice box) and consists of two lobes connected by a thin strip. (b) Light-microscope appearance of the thyroid gland. The thyroid gland is composed primarily of colloid-filled spheres enclosed by a single layer of follicular cells.

latter are being produced. Once produced, tyrosine-containing thyroglobulin is exported in vesicles from the follicular cells into the colloid by exocytosis (● Figure 17-13, step 1). The thyroid captures I<sup>-</sup> from the blood and transfers it into the colloid by an *iodide pump*—the powerful, energy-requiring carrier proteins in the outer membranes of the follicular cells (step 2). These carriers are secondary active transport symporters (see



#### KEY

	= Iodide pump (symporter)	$I^-$ = Iodide	$T_3$ = Tri-iodothyronine
<b>Tg</b>	= Thyroglobulin	<b>MIT</b>	= Monoiodotyrosine
		<b>DIT</b>	= Di-iodotyrosine
			$T_4$ = Tetraiodothyronine (thyroxine)

- 1** Tyrosine-containing Tg produced within the thyroid follicular cells by the endoplasmic reticulum–Golgi complex is transported by exocytosis into the colloid.
- 2** Iodide is carried by the energy-requiring iodide pump from the blood into the follicular cell across the basolateral membrane.
- 3** Iodide exits the cell through a luminal channel to enter the colloid.
- 4a** Attachment of one iodide to tyrosine within the Tg molecule yields MIT.
- 4b** Attachment of two iodides to tyrosine yields DIT.
- 5a** Coupling of one MIT and one DIT yields  $T_3$ .
- 5b** Coupling of two DITs yields  $T_4$ .
- 6** On appropriate stimulation, the thyroid follicular cells engulf a portion of Tg-containing colloid by phagocytosis.
- 7** Lysosomes attack the engulfed vesicle and split the iodinated products from Tg.
- 8a**  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  diffuse into the blood (secretion).
- 8b** MIT and DIT are deiodinated, and the freed iodide is recycled for synthesizing more hormone.

● **FIGURE 17-13 Synthesis, storage, and secretion of thyroid hormone.** Note that the organelles are not drawn to scale. The endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi complex are proportionally too small.

p. 60). Almost all iodide in the body is moved against its concentration gradient to become trapped in the thyroid for thyroid hormone synthesis. Iodide serves no other function in the body. Iodide exits the follicular cell through a channel in the luminal membrane to enter the colloid (step **3**).

Within the colloid, iodide is quickly attached to a tyrosine within the thyroglobulin molecule. Attachment of one iodide to tyrosine yields **monoiodotyrosine (MIT)** (step **4a**). Attachment of two iodides to tyrosine yields **di-iodotyrosine (DIT)** (step **4b**). After MIT and DIT are formed, a coupling process occurs within the thyroglobulin molecule between the iodinated

tyrosine molecules to form the thyroid hormones. Coupling of one MIT (with one iodide) and one DIT (with two iodides) yields **tri-iodothyronine**, or  $T_3$  (with three iodides) (step **5a**). Coupling of two DITs (each bearing two iodides) yields **tetraiodothyronine ( $T_4$ , or thyroxine)**, the four-iodide form of thyroid hormone (step **5b**). Coupling does not occur between two MIT molecules. All these products remain attached to thyroglobulin. Thyroid hormones remain stored in this form in the colloid until they are split off and secreted. Sufficient thyroid hormone is normally stored to supply the body's needs for several months.

### To secrete thyroid hormone, the follicular cells phagocytize thyroglobulin-laden colloid.

The release of thyroid hormone into the systemic circulation is a rather complex process for two reasons. First, before their release,  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  are still bound within the thyroglobulin molecule. Second, these hormones are stored at an inland extracellular site, in the colloid in the follicular lumen, so they must be transported completely across the follicular cells to reach the capillaries that course through the interstitial spaces between the follicles.

The process of thyroid hormone secretion essentially involves the follicular cells “biting off” a piece of colloid, breaking the thyroglobulin molecule down into its component parts, and “spitting out” the freed  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  into the blood. On appropriate stimulation for thyroid hormone secretion, the follicular cells internalize a portion of the thyroglobulin-hormone complex by phagocytizing a piece of colloid (● Figure 17-13, step 6). Within the cells, the membrane-enclosed droplets of colloid coalesce with lysosomes, whose enzymes split off the biologically active thyroid hormones,  $T_3$  and  $T_4$ , as well as the inactive MIT and DIT (step 7). The thyroid hormones, being very lipophilic, pass freely through the outer membranes of the follicular cells and into the blood (step 8a).

MIT and DIT are of no endocrine value. The follicular cells contain an enzyme that swiftly removes the iodide from MIT and DIT, allowing the freed iodide to be recycled for synthesis of more hormone (step 8b). This highly specific enzyme will remove iodide only from the worthless MIT and DIT, not the valuable  $T_3$  or  $T_4$ .

### Most of the secreted $T_4$ is converted into $T_3$ outside the thyroid.

About 90% of the secretory product released from the thyroid gland is in the form of  $T_4$ , yet  $T_3$  is about 10 times more potent in its biological activity. However, most of the secreted  $T_4$  is converted into  $T_3$ , or *activated*, by being stripped of one of its iodides outside the thyroid gland, primarily in the liver and kidneys. About 80% of the circulating  $T_3$  is derived from secreted  $T_4$  that has been peripherally stripped. Therefore,  $T_3$  is the major biologically active form of thyroid hormone at the cellular level, even though the thyroid gland secretes mostly  $T_4$ .

### Thyroid hormone is the main determinant of the basal metabolic rate and exerts other effects.

All body cells are affected either directly or indirectly by thyroid hormone. The effects of  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  can be grouped into several overlapping categories.

**EFFECT ON METABOLIC RATE AND HEAT PRODUCTION** Thyroid hormone increases the body's overall basal metabolic rate (BMR), or “idling speed” (see p. 480). It is the most important regulator of the body's rate of  $O_2$  consumption and energy expenditure under resting conditions.

Closely related to thyroid hormone's overall metabolic effect is its **calorigenic effect** (*calorigenic* means “heat-producing”). Increased metabolic activity results in increased heat production.

**SYMPATHOMIMETIC EFFECT** Any action similar to one produced by the sympathetic nervous system is known as a **sympathomimetic effect** (*sympathomimetic* means “sympathetic-mimicking”). Thyroid hormone increases target-cell responsiveness to catecholamines (epinephrine and norepinephrine), the chemical messengers used by the sympathetic nervous system and its hormonal reinforcements from the adrenal medulla. Thyroid hormone accomplishes this permissive action by causing a proliferation of catecholamine target-cell receptors. Because of this action, many of the effects observed when thyroid hormone secretion is elevated are similar to those that accompany activation of the sympathetic nervous system.

**EFFECT ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM** Through its effect of increasing the heart's responsiveness to catecholamines, thyroid hormone increases heart rate and force of contraction, thus increasing cardiac output (see ● Figure 9-22, p. 251).

**EFFECT ON GROWTH AND THE NERVOUS SYSTEM** Thyroid hormone is essential for normal growth because of its effects on GH and IGF. Thyroid hormone not only stimulates GH secretion and increases production of IGF by the liver but also promotes the effects of GH and IGF on the synthesis of new structural proteins and on skeletal growth. Thyroid-deficient children have stunted growth that can be reversed by thyroid replacement therapy. Unlike excess GH, however, excess thyroid hormone does not produce excessive growth.

Thyroid hormone plays a crucial role in the normal development of the nervous system, especially the CNS, an effect impeded in children who have thyroid deficiency from birth. Thyroid hormone is also essential for normal CNS activity in adults.

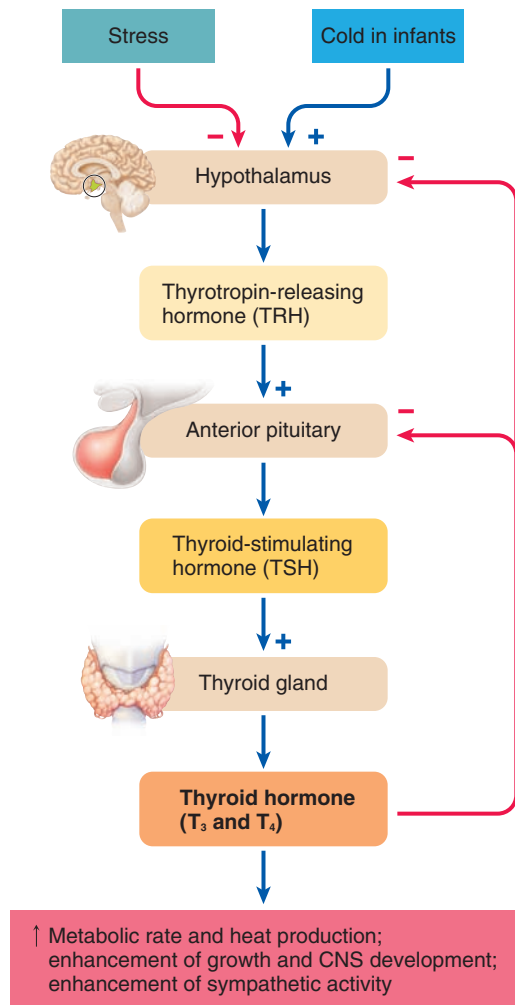
### Thyroid hormone is regulated by the hypothalamus–pituitary–thyroid axis.

Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), the thyroid tropic hormone from the anterior pituitary, is the most important physiologic regulator of thyroid hormone secretion (● Figure 17-14). Almost every step of thyroid hormone synthesis and release is stimulated by TSH.

In addition to enhancing thyroid hormone secretion, TSH maintains the structural integrity of the thyroid gland. In the absence of TSH, the thyroid atrophies (decreases in size) and secretes its hormones at a very low rate. Conversely, it undergoes hypertrophy (increases the size of each follicular cell) and hyperplasia (increases the number of follicular cells) in response to excess TSH stimulation.

The hypothalamic **thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH)**, in tropic fashion, “turns on” TSH secretion by the anterior pituitary, whereas thyroid hormone, in negative-feedback fashion, “turns off” TSH secretion by inhibiting the anterior pituitary and hypothalamus. Like other negative-feedback loops, the one between thyroid hormone and TSH tends to maintain a stable thyroid hormone output.

The only known factor that increases TRH secretion (and, accordingly, TSH and thyroid hormone secretion) is exposure



● **FIGURE 17-14** Regulation of thyroid hormone secretion.

to cold in newborn infants, a highly adaptive mechanism. Scientists think the dramatic increase in heat-producing thyroid hormone secretion helps maintain body temperature during the abrupt drop in surrounding temperature at birth as the infant passes from the mother's warm body to the cooler environmental air. A similar TSH response to cold exposure does not occur in adults, although it would make sense physiologically and does occur in many types of experimental animals.

Various types of stress, including physical stress, starvation, and infection, inhibit TSH and thyroid hormone secretion, presumably through neural influences on the hypothalamus, although the adaptive importance of this inhibition is unclear.

### Abnormalities of thyroid function include both hypothyroidism and hyperthyroidism.



Abnormalities of thyroid function are among the most common endocrine disorders. They fall into two major categories—**hypothyroidism** and **hyperthyroidism**—reflecting deficient and excess thyroid hormone secretion, respectively. The consequences of too little or too much thyroid hormone secretion are largely predictable, given knowledge of the functions of thyroid hormone.

**HYPOTHYROIDISM** Hypothyroidism can result (1) from primary failure of the thyroid gland; (2) secondary to a deficiency of TRH, TSH, or both; or (3) from an inadequate dietary supply of iodine.

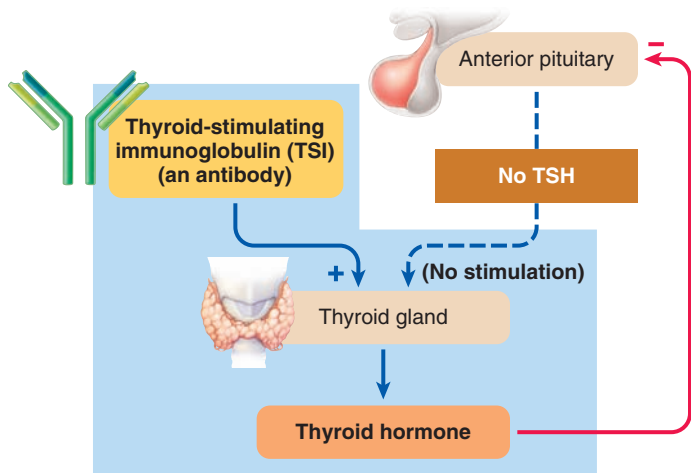
The symptoms of hypothyroidism are largely caused by a reduction in overall metabolic activity. Among other things, a patient with hypothyroidism has a reduced BMR (less energy expenditure at rest); displays poor tolerance of cold (lack of the calorogenic effect); has a tendency to gain excessive weight (not burning fuels at a normal rate); is easily fatigued (lower energy production); has a slow, weak pulse (caused by a reduction in the rate and strength of cardiac contraction and a lowered cardiac output); and exhibits slow reflexes and slow mental responsiveness (because of the effect on the nervous system). The mental effects are characterized by diminished alertness, slow speech, and poor memory.

Another notable characteristic is an edematous condition caused by infiltration of the skin with complex, water-retaining carbohydrate molecules, presumably as a result of altered metabolism. The resultant puffy appearance, primarily of the face, hands, and feet, is known as **myxedema**. If a person has hypothyroidism from birth, a condition known as **cretinism** develops. Because adequate levels of thyroid hormone are essential for normal growth and CNS development, cretinism is characterized by dwarfism and mental retardation, as well as general symptoms of thyroid deficiency. The mental retardation is preventable if replacement therapy is started promptly, but it is not reversible once it has developed for a few months after birth, even with later treatment with thyroid hormone.

**HYPERTHYROIDISM** The most common cause of hyperthyroidism is **Graves' disease**. This is an autoimmune disease in which the body erroneously produces **thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI)**, also known as **long-acting thyroid stimulator (LATS)**, an antibody whose target is the TSH receptors on the thyroid cells. (An *autoimmune disease* is one in which the immune system produces antibodies for one of the body's own tissues.) TSI stimulates both secretion and growth of the thyroid in a manner similar to TSH. Unlike TSH, however, TSI is not subject to negative-feedback inhibition by thyroid hormone, so thyroid secretion and growth continue unchecked (● Figure 17-15). Less frequently, hyperthyroidism occurs secondary to excess TRH or TSH or in association with a hypersecreting thyroid tumor.

As expected, the hyperthyroid patient has an elevated BMR. The resultant increase in heat production leads to excessive perspiration and poor tolerance of heat. Body weight typically falls because the body is burning fuel at an abnormally rapid rate. Heart rate and strength of contraction may increase so much that the individual has palpitations (an unpleasant awareness of the heart's activity).

A prominent feature of Graves' disease but not of the other types of hyperthyroidism is **exophthalmos** (bulging eyes) (● Figure 17-16). Complex, water-retaining carbohydrates are deposited behind the eyes, although why this happens is still unclear. The resulting fluid retention pushes the eyeballs forward so that they bulge from their bony orbit.



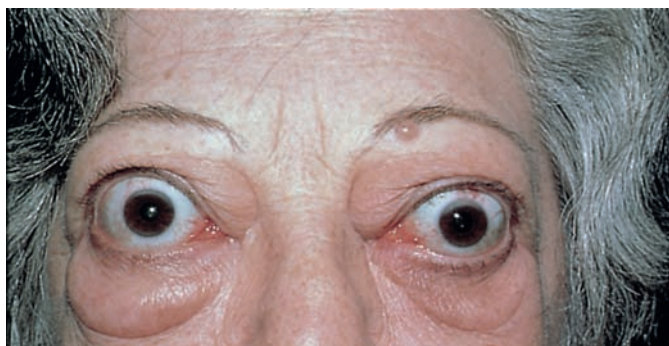
● **FIGURE 17-15** Role of thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin in Graves' disease. Thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI), an antibody erroneously produced in the autoimmune condition of Graves' disease, binds with the TSH receptors on the thyroid gland and continuously stimulates thyroid hormone secretion outside the normal negative-feedback control system.

### A goiter develops when the thyroid gland is overstimulated.



A **goiter** is an enlarged thyroid gland. Because the thyroid lies over the trachea, a goiter is readily palpable and usually highly visible (● Figure 17-17). A goiter occurs whenever either TSH or TSI excessively stimulates the thyroid gland. A goiter may accompany hypothyroidism or hyperthyroidism, but it need not be present in either condition. Knowing the axis and feedback control, we can predict which types of thyroid dysfunction will produce a goiter. Let us consider hypothyroidism first:

- Hypothyroidism secondary to hypothalamic or anterior pituitary failure will not be accompanied by a goiter, because the thyroid gland is not being adequately stimulated, let alone excessively stimulated.
- With hypothyroidism caused by thyroid gland failure or lack of iodine, a goiter does develop because the circulating level of thyroid hormone is so low that there is little negative-feedback inhibition on the anterior pituitary and hypothalamus; TSH secretion is therefore elevated. TSH acts on the thy-



● **FIGURE 17-16** Patient displaying exophthalmos. Abnormal fluid retention behind the eyeballs causes them to bulge forward.



● **FIGURE 17-17** Patient with a goiter.

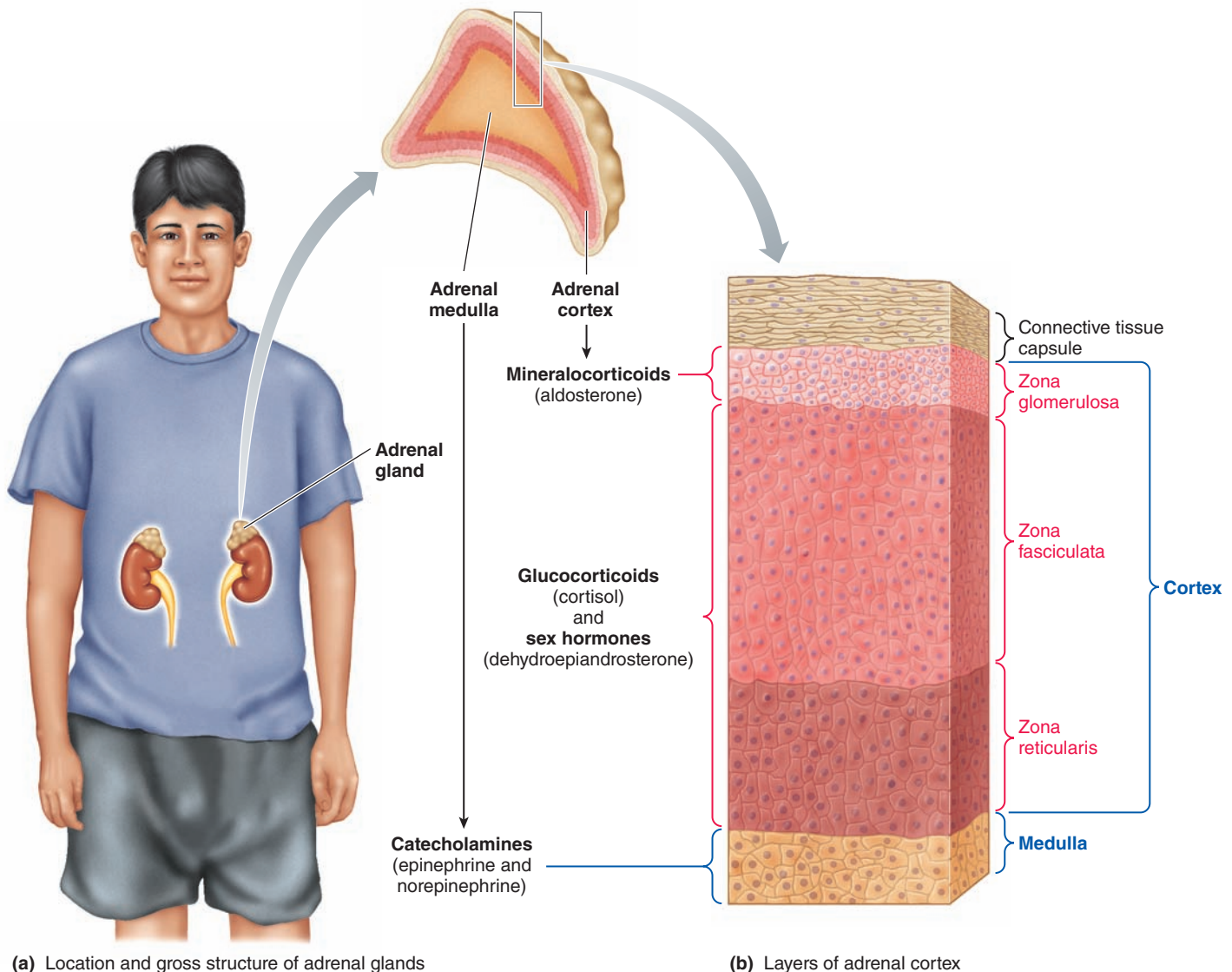
roid to increase the size and number of follicular cells and to increase their rate of secretion. If the thyroid cells cannot secrete hormone because of a lack of a critical enzyme or lack of iodine, no amount of TSH will be able to induce these cells to secrete  $T_3$  and  $T_4$ . However, TSH can still promote hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the thyroid, with a consequent paradoxical enlargement of the gland (that is, a goiter), even though the gland is still underproducing.

Similarly, a goiter may or may not accompany hyperthyroidism:

- Excessive TSH secretion resulting from a hypothalamic or anterior pituitary defect would obviously be accompanied by a goiter and excess  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  secretion because of overstimulation of thyroid growth.
- In Graves' disease, a hypersecreting goiter occurs because TSI promotes growth of the thyroid, as well as enhancing secretion of thyroid hormone. Because the high levels of circulating  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  inhibit the anterior pituitary, TSH secretion itself is low.
- Hyperthyroidism resulting from overactivity of the thyroid in the absence of overstimulation, such as caused by an uncontrolled thyroid tumor, is not accompanied by a goiter. The spontaneous secretion of excessive amounts of  $T_3$  and  $T_4$  inhibits TSH, so there is no stimulatory input to promote growth of the thyroid. (Even though a goiter does not develop, a tumor may cause enlargement of the thyroid, depending on the nature or size of the tumor.)

## Adrenal Glands

There are two **adrenal glands**, one embedded above each kidney in a capsule of fat (*ad* means “next to”; *renal* means “kidney”) (● Figure 17-18a).



● **FIGURE 17-18** Anatomy of and hormonal secretion by the adrenal glands.

**Each adrenal gland consists of a steroid-secreting cortex and a catecholamine-secreting medulla.**

Each adrenal is composed of two endocrine glands, one surrounding the other. The outer layers composing the **adrenal cortex** secrete a variety of steroid hormones; the inner portion, the **adrenal medulla**, secretes catecholamines. We examine the adrenal cortex before turning to the adrenal medulla.

**The adrenal cortex secretes mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, and sex hormones.**

The adrenal cortex consists of three layers, or zones: the **zona glomerulosa**, the outermost layer; the **zona fasciculata**, the middle and largest portion; and the **zona reticularis**, the innermost zone (● Figure 17-18b). The adrenal cortex produces a number of different **adrenocortical hormones**, all of which are steroids. On the basis of their primary actions, the adrenal steroids can be divided into three categories:

1. **Mineralocorticoids**, mainly *aldosterone*, influence mineral (electrolyte) balance, specifically  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  balance.
2. **Glucocorticoids**, primarily *cortisol*, play a major role in glucose metabolism, as well as in protein and lipid metabolism and in adaptation to stress.
3. **Sex hormones** are identical or similar to those produced by the gonads (testes in males, ovaries in females). The most abundant and physiologically important of the adrenocortical sex hormones is *dehydroepiandrosterone*, an androgen, or “male” sex hormone.

Of the two major adrenocortical hormones, aldosterone is produced exclusively in the zona glomerulosa, whereas cortisol synthesis is limited to the two inner layers of the cortex, with the zona fasciculata being the major source of this glucocorticoid (see ● Figure 17-18b). No other steroidogenic tissues have the capability of producing either mineralocorticoids or gluco-

corticoids. In contrast, the adrenal sex hormones, also produced by the two inner cortical zones, are produced in far greater abundance in the gonads.

### The major effects of mineralocorticoids are on Na<sup>+</sup> and K<sup>+</sup> balance and blood pressure homeostasis.

The actions and regulation of the primary adrenocortical mineralocorticoid, **aldosterone**, are described thoroughly elsewhere (Chapter 13). Aldosterone promotes Na<sup>+</sup> retention and enhances K<sup>+</sup> elimination during the formation of urine. The promotion of Na<sup>+</sup> retention by aldosterone secondarily induces osmotic retention of H<sub>2</sub>O, expanding the ECF volume (including the plasma volume), which is important in the long-term regulation of blood pressure.

Mineralocorticoids are *essential for life*. Without aldosterone, a person rapidly dies from circulatory shock because of the marked fall in plasma volume caused by excessive losses of H<sub>2</sub>O-holding Na<sup>+</sup>. With most other hormonal deficiencies, death is not imminent, even though a chronic hormonal deficiency may eventually lead to a premature death.

Aldosterone secretion is increased (1) by factors related to a reduction in Na<sup>+</sup> and a fall in blood pressure via the complex renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system (RAAS) (see ● Figure 13-12, p. 394), and (2) by direct stimulation of the adrenal cortex by a rise in plasma K<sup>+</sup> concentration (see ● Figure 13-16, p. 400). Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) from the anterior pituitary promotes the secretion of cortisol, not aldosterone. Thus, unlike cortisol regulation, the regulation of aldosterone secretion is independent of anterior pituitary control.

### Glucocorticoids exert metabolic effects and play a key role in adaptation to stress.

**Cortisol**, the primary glucocorticoid, plays an important role in carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism; executes significant permissive actions for other hormonal activities; and helps people resist stress.

**METABOLIC EFFECTS** The overall effect of cortisol's metabolic actions is to increase the concentration of blood glucose at the expense of protein and fat stores. Specifically, cortisol performs the following functions:

- It stimulates hepatic **gluconeogenesis**, the conversion of noncarbohydrate sources (namely, amino acids) into carbohydrate within the liver (*gluco* means “glucose”; *neo* means “new”; *genesis* means “production”). Between meals or during periods of fasting, when no new nutrients are being absorbed into the blood for use and storage, the glycogen (stored glucose) in the liver tends to become depleted as it is broken down to release glucose into the blood. Gluconeogenesis is an important factor in replenishing hepatic glycogen stores and thus in maintaining normal blood glucose levels between meals. This is essential because the brain can use only glucose as its metabolic fuel, yet nervous tissue cannot store glycogen to any extent. The concentration of glucose in the blood must therefore be maintained at an appropriate level to adequately supply the glucose-dependent brain with nutrients.

- Cortisol inhibits glucose uptake and use by many tissues, but not the brain, thus sparing glucose for use by the brain, which requires it as a metabolic fuel. This action contributes to the increase in blood glucose concentration brought about by gluconeogenesis.

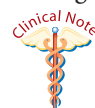
- It stimulates protein degradation in many tissues, especially muscle. By breaking down a portion of muscle proteins into their constituent amino acids, cortisol increases the blood amino acid concentration. These mobilized amino acids are available for use in gluconeogenesis or wherever else they are needed, such as for repair of damaged tissue or synthesis of new cellular structures.

- Cortisol facilitates lipolysis, the breakdown of lipid (fat) stores in adipose tissue, thus releasing free fatty acids into the blood (*lysis* means “breakdown”). The mobilized fatty acids are available as an alternative metabolic fuel for tissues that can use this energy source in lieu of glucose, thereby conserving glucose for the brain.

**PERMISSIVE ACTIONS** Cortisol is extremely important for its permissiveness. For example, cortisol must be present in adequate amounts to permit the catecholamines to induce vasoconstriction (blood vessel narrowing). A person lacking cortisol, if untreated, may go into circulatory shock in a stressful situation that demands immediate widespread vasoconstriction.

**ROLE IN ADAPTATION TO STRESS** Cortisol plays a key role in adaptation to stress. Stress of any kind is one of the major stimuli for increased cortisol secretion. Although cortisol's precise role in adapting to stress is not known, a speculative but plausible explanation might be as follows: A primitive human or an animal wounded or faced with a life-threatening situation must forgo eating. A cortisol-induced shift away from protein and fat stores in favor of expanded carbohydrate stores and increased availability of blood glucose would help protect the brain from malnutrition during the imposed fasting period. Also, the amino acids liberated by protein degradation would provide a readily available supply of building blocks for tissue repair if physical injury occurred. Thus, an increased pool of glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids is available for use as needed.

**ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND IMMUNOSUPPRESSIVE EFFECTS** When stress is accompanied by tissue injury, inflammatory and immune responses accompany the stress response. Cortisol exerts *anti-inflammatory* and *immunosuppressive* effects to help hold these immune system responses in a check-and-balance fashion. An exaggerated inflammatory response has the potential of causing harm. Cortisol interferes with almost every step of inflammation. It inhibits immune responses by interfering with white blood cells that produce antibodies, among other actions.



Synthetic glucocorticoids (drugs) have been developed that maximize the anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive effects of these steroids while minimizing the metabolic effects (see p. 317). When



these drugs are administered therapeutically at pharmacologic levels (that is, at higher-than-physiologic concentrations), they are effective in treating conditions in which the inflammatory response itself has become destructive, such as *rheumatoid arthritis*. Glucocorticoids used in this manner do not affect the underlying disease process; they merely suppress the body's response to the disease. Because glucocorticoids also exert multiple inhibitory effects on the overall immune process, these agents have proved useful in managing various allergic disorders (inappropriate immune attacks) and in preventing organ transplant rejections (immune attack against foreign cells).

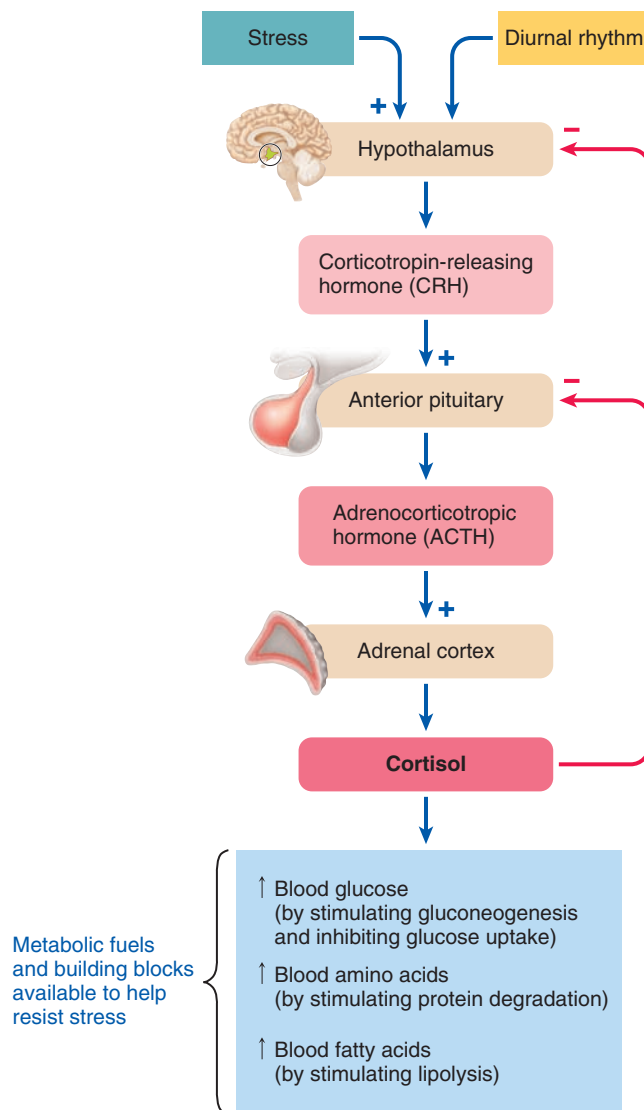
However, these steroids should be used only when warranted, and then only sparingly, for several important reasons. First, because these drugs suppress the normal inflammatory and immune responses that form the backbone of the body's defense system, a glucocorticoid-treated person has limited ability to resist infections. Second, troublesome side effects may occur with prolonged exposure to higher-than-normal concentrations of glucocorticoids. These effects include development of gastric ulcers, high blood pressure, atherosclerosis, menstrual irregularities, and bone thinning. Third, high levels of exogenous glucocorticoids act in negative-feedback fashion to suppress the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis that drives normal glucocorticoid secretion and maintains the integrity of the adrenal cortex. Prolonged suppression of this axis can lead to irreversible atrophy of the cortisol-secreting cells of the adrenal gland and thus to permanent inability of the body to produce its own cortisol. That is why *nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)*, such as aspirin and ibuprofen, are used as alternative anti-inflammatory therapy.

### Cortisol secretion is regulated by the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal cortex axis.

Cortisol secretion by the adrenal cortex is regulated by a negative-feedback system involving the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary (● Figure 17-19). ACTH from the anterior pituitary stimulates the adrenal cortex to secrete cortisol. ACTH-producing cells, in turn, secrete only at the command of **corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)** from the hypothalamus. The feedback control loop is completed by cortisol's inhibitory actions on CRH and ACTH secretion by the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary, respectively.

The negative-feedback system for cortisol maintains the level of cortisol secretion relatively constant around the set point. Superimposed on the basic negative-feedback control system are two additional factors that influence plasma cortisol concentrations by changing the set point: *diurnal rhythm* and *stress*, both of which act on the hypothalamus to vary the secretion rate of CRH.

**INFLUENCE OF DIURNAL RHYTHM ON CORTISOL SECRETION** Recall that the plasma cortisol concentration displays a characteristic diurnal rhythm, with the highest level occurring in the morning and the lowest level at night (see ● Figure 17-2, p. 497). This diurnal rhythm, which is governed by the suprachiasmatic nucleus, is related primarily to the sleep-wake cycle. The peak and low levels are reversed in a person who works at night and sleeps during the day. The linking of cortisol secre-



● FIGURE 17-19 Control of cortisol secretion.

tion to day-night activity patterns raises serious questions about the common practice of swing shifts at work (that is, constantly switching day and night shifts among employees).

**INFLUENCE OF STRESS ON CORTISOL SECRETION** The other major factor that is independent of, and can override, the stabilizing negative-feedback control of cortisol is stress. Dramatic increases in cortisol secretion, mediated by the CNS through enhanced activity of the CRH-ACTH-cortisol system, occur in response to all kinds of stressful situations. The magnitude of the increase in plasma cortisol concentration is generally proportional to the intensity of the stressful stimulation: A greater increase in cortisol levels takes place in response to severe stress than to mild stress.

### The adrenal cortex secretes both male and female sex hormones in both sexes.

In both sexes, the adrenal cortex produces both *androgens*, or “male” sex hormones, and *estrogens*, or “female” sex hormones. The main site of production for the sex hormones is the gonads:

the testes for androgens and the ovaries for estrogens. Accordingly, males have a preponderance of circulating androgens, whereas in females estrogens predominate. However, no hormones are unique to either males or females (except those from the placenta during pregnancy), because the adrenal cortex in both sexes produces small amounts of the sex hormone of the opposite sex.

Under normal circumstances, the adrenal androgens and estrogens are not sufficiently abundant or powerful to induce masculinizing or feminizing effects, respectively. The only adrenal sex hormone that has any biological importance is the androgen **dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)**. The testes' primary androgen product is the potent testosterone, but the most abundant adrenal androgen is the weaker DHEA. (Testosterone exerts about 100 times greater "androgenicity" than DHEA.) Adrenal DHEA is overpowered by testicular testosterone in males but is of physiologic significance in females, who otherwise have little androgens. DHEA governs androgen-dependent processes in the female such as growth of pubic and axillary (armpit) hair, enhancement of the pubertal growth spurt, and development and maintenance of the female sex drive.

In addition to controlling cortisol secretion, ACTH (not the pituitary gonadotropic hormones) controls adrenal androgen secretion. However, adrenal androgens feed back outside the hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal axis. Instead of inhibiting CRH, DHEA inhibits the gonadotropin-releasing hormone, just as testicular androgens do.

A surge in DHEA secretion begins at puberty and peaks between the ages of 25 and 30. After 30, DHEA secretion slowly tapers off until, by the age of 60, the plasma DHEA concentration is less than 15% of its peak level.



Some scientists suspect that the age-related decline of DHEA and other hormones such as GH and melatonin plays a role in some problems of aging. Early studies with DHEA replacement therapy demonstrated some physical improvement, such as an increase in lean muscle mass and a decrease in fat, but the most pronounced effect was a marked increase in psychological well-being and an improved ability to cope with stress. Advocates for DHEA replacement therapy do not suggest that maintaining youthful levels of this hormone is a fountain of youth (that is, it is not going to extend the life span), but they do propose that it may help people feel and act younger as they age. Other scientists caution that evidence supporting DHEA as an anti-aging therapy is still sparse. Also, they are concerned about DHEA supplementation until it has been thoroughly studied for possible harmful side effects. For example, some research suggests a potential increase in the risk of heart disease among women taking DHEA because of an observed reduction in high-density lipoproteins (HDL), the "good" cholesterol (see p. 256). Also, some experts fear that DHEA supplementation may raise the odds of acquiring ovarian or breast cancer in women and prostate cancer in men.

Ironically, although the FDA banned sales of DHEA as an over-the-counter drug in 1985 because of concerns about very real risks coupled with little proof of benefits, the product is

widely available today as an unregulated food supplement. DHEA can be marketed as a dietary supplement without approval by the FDA as long as the product label makes no specific medical claims.

### The adrenal cortex may secrete too much or too little of any of its hormones.



Although uncommon, there are a number of different disorders of adrenocortical function. Excessive secretion may occur with any of the three categories of adrenocortical hormones: aldosterone hypersecretion, cortisol hypersecretion, and adrenal androgen hypersecretion.

**ALDOSTERONE HYPERSECRETION** Excess aldosterone secretion may be caused by (1) a hypersecreting adrenal tumor made up of aldosterone-secreting cells (**Conn's syndrome**) or (2) inappropriately high activity of RAAS (the primary aldosterone-stimulating mechanism). The symptoms are related to the exaggerated effects of aldosterone—namely, excessive  $\text{Na}^+$  retention (*hyponatremia*) and  $\text{K}^+$  depletion (*hypokalemia*). Also, high blood pressure (hypertension) is generally present, at least partially because of excessive  $\text{Na}^+$  and fluid retention.

**CORTISOL HYPERSECRETION** Excessive cortisol secretion (**Cushing's syndrome**) can be caused by (1) overstimulation of the adrenal cortex by excessive amounts of CRH, ACTH, or both, or (2) adrenal tumors that uncontrollably secrete cortisol independent of ACTH. The prominent characteristics of this syndrome are related to the exaggerated effects of glucocorticoid, with the main symptoms caused by excessive gluconeogenesis. When too many amino acids are converted into glucose, the body suffers from combined glucose excess (high blood glucose) and protein shortage. For example, loss of structural protein within the walls of the small blood vessels leads to easy bruisability. For reasons that are unclear, some of the extra glucose is deposited as body fat in locations characteristic for this disease, typically in the abdomen, above the shoulder blades, and in the face. The abnormal fat distributions in the latter two locations are descriptively called a "buffalo hump" and a "moon face," respectively (● Figure 17-20). The appendages, in contrast, remain thin because of muscle breakdown.

**ADRENAL ANDROGEN HYPERSECRETION** Excess adrenal androgen secretion, a masculinizing condition, is more common than the extremely rare feminizing condition of excess adrenal estrogen secretion. Either condition is referred to as **adrenogenital syndrome**, emphasizing the pronounced effects that excessive adrenal sex hormones have on the genitalia and associated sexual characteristics. Adrenogenital syndrome is most commonly the result of an enzymatic defect that causes the cortisol-secreting cells to produce androgen instead of cortisol.

The symptoms that result from excess androgen secretion depend on the sex of the individual and the age at which the hyperactivity first begins.

■ *In adult females.* Because androgens exert masculinizing effects, a woman with this disease tends to develop a male pat-



(a) Young boy prior to onset of the condition



(b) Only four months later, the same boy displaying a “moon face” characteristic of Cushing’s syndrome

Elsevier Science

● **FIGURE 17-20 Patient with Cushing’s syndrome.**

tern of body hair, a condition referred to as **hirsutism**. She usually also acquires other male secondary sexual characteristics, such as deepening of the voice and more muscular arms and legs. The breasts become smaller, and menstruation may cease as a result of androgen suppression of the woman’s hypothalamus–pituitary–ovarian axis for her own female sex-hormone secretion.

■ *In newborn females.* Female infants born with adrenogenital syndrome manifest male-type external genitalia because excessive androgen secretion occurs early enough during fetal life to induce development of their genitalia along male lines, similar to the development of males under the influence of testicular androgen (see p. 549). The clitoris, which is the female homologue of the male penis, enlarges under androgen influence and takes on a penile appearance, so in some cases it is difficult at first to determine the child’s sex. Thus, this hormonal abnormality is one of the major causes of **female pseudohermaphroditism**, a condition in which female gonads (ovaries) are present but the external genitalia resemble those of a male. (A true hermaphrodite has the gonads of both sexes.)

■ *In prepubertal males.* Excessive adrenal androgen secretion in prepubertal boys causes them to prematurely develop male secondary sexual characteristics—for example, deep voice, beard, enlarged penis, and sex drive. This condition is referred to as **precocious pseudopuberty** to differentiate it from true puberty, which occurs as a result of increased testicular activity. In precocious pseudopuberty, the androgen secretion from the adrenal cortex is not accompanied by sperm production or any other gonadal activity, because the testes are still in their non-functional prepubertal state.

■ *In adult males.* Overactivity of adrenal androgens in adult males has no apparent effect, because any masculinizing effect induced by the weak DHEA, even when in excess, is unnoticeable in the face of the powerful masculinizing effects of the

much more abundant and potent testosterone from the testes.

**ADRENOCORTICAL INSUFFICIENCY** If one adrenal gland is nonfunctional or removed, the other healthy organ can take over the function of both through hypertrophy and hyperplasia. Therefore, both glands must be affected before adrenocortical insufficiency occurs.

In **Addison’s disease**, all layers of the adrenal cortex are undersecreting. This condition is most commonly caused by autoimmune destruction of the cortex by erroneous production of adrenal cortex–attacking antibodies, in which case both aldosterone and cortisol are deficient. Adrenocortical insufficiency may also occur because of a pituitary or hypothalamic abnormality, resulting in insufficient ACTH

secretion. In this case, only cortisol is deficient because aldosterone secretion does not depend on ACTH stimulation.

The symptoms associated with aldosterone deficiency in Addison’s disease are the most threatening. If severe enough, the condition is fatal because aldosterone is essential for life. However, the loss of adrenal function may develop slowly and insidiously so that aldosterone secretion may be subnormal but not totally lacking. Patients with aldosterone deficiency display  $K^+$  retention (*hyperkalemia*), caused by reduced  $K^+$  loss in the urine, and  $Na^+$  depletion (*hyponatremia*), caused by excessive urinary loss of  $Na^+$ . The former disturbs cardiac rhythm. The latter reduces ECF volume, including circulating blood volume, which in turn lowers blood pressure (hypotension).

Symptoms of cortisol deficiency are as would be expected: poor response to stress, hypoglycemia (low blood glucose) caused by reduced gluconeogenic activity, and lack of permissive action for many metabolic activities.

Having completed discussion of the adrenal cortex, we now shift our attention to the adrenal medulla.

**The adrenal medulla consists of modified sympathetic postganglionic neurons.**

The adrenal medulla is actually a modified part of the sympathetic nervous system. A sympathetic pathway consists of two neurons in sequence. A preganglionic neuron originating in the CNS has an axonal fiber that terminates on a second peripherally located postganglionic neuron, which in turn terminates on the effector organ (see p. 179). The neurotransmitter released by sympathetic postganglionic fibers is norepinephrine.

The adrenal medulla consists of modified postganglionic sympathetic neurons. Unlike ordinary postganglionic sympathetic neurons, those in the adrenal medulla do not have axonal fibers that terminate on effector organs. Instead, on stimulation by the preganglionic fiber the ganglionic cell bodies within the

adrenal medulla release their chemical transmitter directly into the blood (see ● Figure 7-2, p. 181). In this case, the transmitter qualifies as a hormone instead of a neurotransmitter. Like sympathetic fibers, the adrenal medulla does release norepinephrine, but its most abundant secretory output is a similar chemical messenger known as **epinephrine**. Both epinephrine and norepinephrine belong to the chemical class of catecholamines, which are derived from the amino acid tyrosine (see p. 94).

Epinephrine and norepinephrine are synthesized within the cytosol of the adrenomedullary secretory cells. Once produced, these catecholamines are stored in **chromaffin granules**, which are similar to the transmitter storage vesicles found in sympathetic nerve endings. Catecholamines are secreted into the blood by exocytosis of chromaffin granules.

Of the total adrenomedullary catecholamine output, epinephrine accounts for 80% and norepinephrine for 20%. Whereas epinephrine is produced exclusively by the adrenal medulla, the bulk of norepinephrine is produced by sympathetic postganglionic fibers. Adrenomedullary norepinephrine is generally secreted in quantities too small to exert significant effects on target cells. Therefore, for practical purposes we can assume that norepinephrine effects are predominantly mediated directly by the sympathetic nervous system and that epinephrine effects are brought about exclusively by the adrenal medulla.

### Epinephrine reinforces the sympathetic nervous system and exerts additional metabolic effects.

Together, the sympathetic nervous system and adrenomedullary epinephrine mobilize the body's resources to support peak physical exertion in emergency or stressful situations. The sympathetic and epinephrine actions constitute a fight-or-flight response that prepares the person to combat an enemy or flee from danger (see p. 183). Epinephrine, by circulating in the blood, can reach catecholamine target cells that are not directly innervated by the sympathetic nervous system, such as the liver and adipose tissue. Accordingly, even though epinephrine and norepinephrine exert similar effects in many tissues, with epinephrine generally reinforcing sympathetic nervous activity, epinephrine can exert some unique effects because it gets into places not supplied by sympathetic fibers. For example, epinephrine prompts the mobilization of stored carbohydrate from the liver and stored fat from adipose tissue to provide immediately available energy for use as needed to fuel muscular work.

Realize, however, that epinephrine functions only at the bidding of the sympathetic nervous system, which is solely responsible for stimulating its secretion from the adrenal medulla. When the sympathetic system is activated under conditions of fear or stress, it simultaneously triggers a surge of adrenomedullary catecholamine release. The concentration of epinephrine in the blood may increase up to 300 times normal, with the amount of epinephrine released depending on the type and intensity of the stressful stimulus. Thus, sympathetic activity indirectly controls actions of epinephrine. By having the more versatile circulating epinephrine at its call, the sym-

thetic nervous system has a means of reinforcing its own neurotransmitter effects plus a way of executing additional actions on tissues that it does not directly innervate.

Because both components of the adrenal gland play an extensive role in responding to stress, this is an appropriate place to pull together the major factors involved in the stress response.

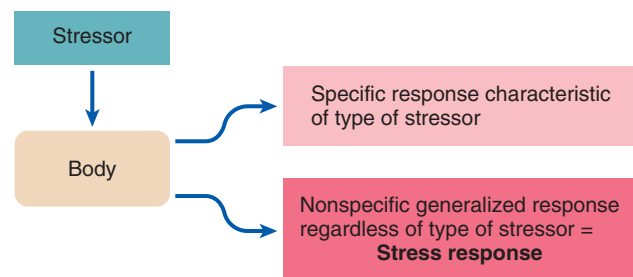
## Integrated Stress Response

**Stress** is the generalized, nonspecific response of the body to any factor that overwhelms, or threatens to overwhelm, the body's compensatory abilities to maintain homeostasis. Contrary to popular usage, the agent inducing the response is correctly called a *stressor*, whereas *stress* refers to the state induced by the stressor. The following types of noxious stimuli illustrate the range of factors that can induce a stress response: *physical* (trauma, surgery, intense heat or cold); *chemical* (reduced O<sub>2</sub> supply, acid-base imbalance); *physiologic* (heavy exercise, hemorrhagic shock, pain); *psychological* or *emotional* (anxiety, fear, sorrow); and *social* (personal conflicts, change in lifestyle).

### The stress response is a generalized pattern of reactions to any situation that threatens homeostasis.

Different stressors may produce some specific responses characteristic of that stressor; for example, the body's specific response to cold exposure is shivering and skin vasoconstriction, whereas the specific response to bacterial invasion includes increased phagocytic activity and antibody production. In addition to their specific response, however, all stressors produce a similar nonspecific, generalized response (● Figure 17-21). This set of responses common to all noxious stimuli is called the **general adaptation syndrome**. When a stressor is recognized, both nervous and hormonal responses bring about defensive measures to cope with the emergency. The result is a state of intense readiness and mobilization of biochemical resources.

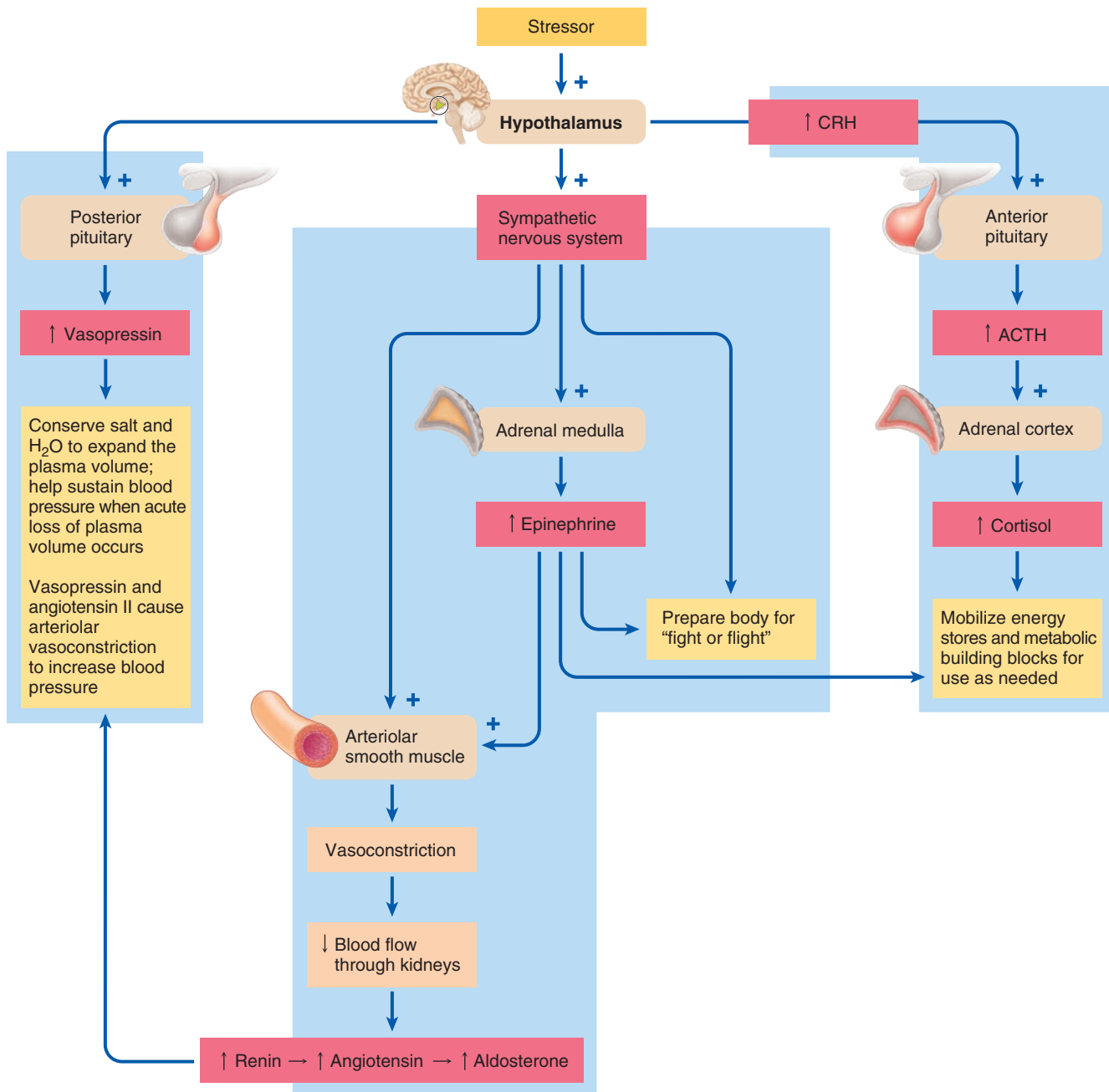
To appreciate the value of the multifaceted stress response, imagine a primitive cave dweller who has just seen a large wild beast lurking in the shadows. We consider both the neural and the hormonal responses that would take place in this scenario. The body responds in the same way to modern-day stressors. We cover all these responses in further detail elsewhere. At this time, we are just examining how they work together.



● FIGURE 17-21 Action of a stressor on the body.

**ROLES OF THE SYMPATHETIC NERVOUS SYSTEM AND EPINEPHRINE IN STRESS** The major neural response to such a stressful stimulus is generalized activation of the sympathetic nervous system. The resultant increase in cardiac output and breathing—as well as the diversion of blood from vasoconstricted regions of suppressed activity, such as the digestive tract and kidneys, to the more active vasodilated skeletal muscles and heart—prepares the body for a fight-or-flight response. Simultaneously, the sympathetic system calls forth hormonal reinforcements in the form of a massive outpouring of epinephrine from the adrenal medulla. Epinephrine strengthens sympathetic responses and mobilizes carbohydrate and fat stores.

**ROLES OF THE CRH–ACTH–CORTISOL SYSTEM IN STRESS** Besides epinephrine, a number of other hormones are involved in the overall stress response. The predominant hormonal response is activation of the CRH–ACTH–cortisol system. Recall that cortisol's role in helping the body cope with stress is presumed to be related to its metabolic effects. Cortisol breaks down fat and protein stores while expanding carbohydrate stores and increasing the availability of blood glucose. A logical assumption is that the increased pool of glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids is available for use as needed, such as to sustain nourishment to the brain and provide building blocks for repair of damaged tissues.



● **FIGURE 17-22** Integration of the stress response by the hypothalamus.

**ROLE OF BLOOD PRESSURE—SUSTAINING HORMONAL RESPONSES IN STRESS** In addition to the hormonal changes that mobilize energy stores during stress, other hormones are simultaneously called into play to sustain plasma volume and blood pressure during the emergency. The sympathetic system and epinephrine play major roles in acting directly on the heart and blood vessels to improve circulatory function. In addition, the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system is activated as a consequence of a sympathetically induced reduction of blood supply to the kidneys (see p. 393). Vasopressin secretion is also increased during stressful situations (see p. 423). Collectively, these hormones expand the plasma volume by promoting retention of salt and H<sub>2</sub>O. Presumably, the enlarged plasma volume is a protective measure to help sustain blood pressure should acute loss of plasma fluid occur through hemorrhage or heavy sweating during the impending period of danger. Vasopressin and angiotensin also have direct vasopressor effects, which would be of benefit in maintaining an adequate blood pressure in the event of acute blood loss (see p. 274).

**The multifaceted stress response is coordinated by the hypothalamus.**

All the individual responses to stress just described are either directly or indirectly influenced by the hypothalamus (● Figure 17-22). The hypothalamus receives input concerning physical and emotional stressors from virtually all areas of the brain and from many receptors throughout the body. In response, the hypothalamus directly activates the sympathetic nervous system, secretes CRH to stimulate ACTH and cortisol release, and triggers the release of vasopressin. Sympathetic stimulation, in turn, brings about secretion of epinephrine. Furthermore, vasoconstriction of the renal afferent arterioles by the catecholamines triggers secretion of renin by reducing blood flow through the kidneys (a stimulus for renin secretion). Renin, in turn, sets in motion the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system. In this way, the hypothalamus integrates the responses of both the sympathetic nervous system and the endocrine system during stress.

**Activation of the stress response by chronic psychosocial stressors may be harmful.**

Acceleration of cardiovascular and respiratory activity, retention of salt and H<sub>2</sub>O, and mobilization of metabolic fuels and building blocks can be of benefit in response to a physical stressor, such as an athletic competition. Most of the stressors in our everyday lives are psychosocial in nature; however, they induce these same magnified responses. Stressors such as anxiety about an exam, conflicts with loved ones, or impatience while sitting in a traffic jam can elicit a stress response. Although the rapid mobilization of body resources is appropriate in the face of real or threatened physical injury, it is generally inappropriate in response to nonphysical stress. If no extra energy is demanded, no tissue is damaged, and no blood lost, body stores are being broken down and fluid retained needlessly, probably to the detriment of the emotionally stressed individual.

**Endocrine Pancreas and Control of Fuel Metabolism**

We have just discussed the metabolic changes elicited during the stress response. Now we concentrate on the metabolic patterns that occur in the absence of stress, including the hormonal factors that govern this normal metabolism.

**Fuel metabolism includes anabolism, catabolism, and interconversions among energy-rich organic molecules.**

The term **metabolism** refers to all the chemical reactions that occur within the cells of the body. Those reactions involving the degradation, synthesis, and transformation of the three classes of energy-rich organic molecules—protein, carbohydrate, and fat—are collectively known as **intermediary metabolism**, or **fuel metabolism** (▲ Table 17-3).

During the process of digestion, large nutrient molecules (**macromolecules**) are broken down into their smaller absorbable subunits as follows: Proteins are converted into amino

▲ **Table 17-3 Summary of Reactions in Fuel Metabolism**

Metabolic Process	Reaction	Consequence
<b>Glycogenesis</b>	Glucose → glycogen	↓ Blood glucose
<b>Glycogenolysis</b>	Glycogen → glucose	↑ Blood glucose
<b>Gluconeogenesis</b>	Amino acids → glucose	↑ Blood glucose
<b>Protein Synthesis</b>	Amino acids → protein	↓ Blood amino acids
<b>Protein Degradation</b>	Protein → amino acids	↑ Blood amino acids
<b>Fat Synthesis (Lipogenesis, or Triglyceride Synthesis)</b>	Fatty acids and glycerol → triglycerides	↓ Blood fatty acids
<b>Fat Breakdown (Lipolysis, or Triglyceride Degradation)</b>	Triglycerides → fatty acids and glycerol	↑ Blood fatty acids

acids, complex carbohydrates into monosaccharides (mainly glucose), and triglycerides (dietary fats) into monoglycerides and free fatty acids. These absorbable units are transferred from the digestive tract lumen into the blood, either directly or by way of the lymph (Chapter 15).

**ANABOLISM AND CATABOLISM** Once absorbed, the organic subunits are constantly exchanged between the blood and the body cells. The chemical reactions in which these small organic molecules participate within the cells are categorized into two metabolic processes: anabolism and catabolism (● Figure 17-23). **Anabolism** is the buildup or synthesis of larger organic macromolecules from small organic molecular subunits. Anabolic reactions generally require energy input in the form of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). These reactions result in either (1) the manufacture of materials needed by the cell, such as cellular structural proteins or secretory products, or (2) the storage of excess ingested nutrients not immediately needed for energy production or as cellular building blocks. Storage is in the form of glycogen (the storage form of glucose) or fat reservoirs. **Catabolism** is the breakdown, or degradation, of large, energy-rich organic molecules within cells. Catabolism encompasses two levels of breakdown: (1) hydrolysis (see pp. 438 and A-16) of large cellular organic macromolecules into their smaller subunits, similar to the process of digestion except that the reactions take place within the body cells instead of within the digestive tract lumen (for example, release of glucose by the catabolism of stored glycogen), and (2) oxidation of the smaller subunits, such as glucose, to yield energy for ATP production (see p. 30).

As an alternative to energy production, the smaller, multi-potential organic subunits derived from intracellular hydrolysis may be released into the blood. These mobilized glucose, fatty acid, and amino acid molecules can then be used as needed for energy production or cellular synthesis elsewhere in the body.

In an adult, the rates of anabolism and catabolism are generally in balance, so the adult body remains in a dynamic steady state and appears unchanged even though the organic molecules that determine its structure and function are continuously being turned over. During growth, anabolism exceeds catabolism.

**INTERCONVERSIONS AMONG ORGANIC MOLECULES** In addition to being able to resynthesize catabolized organic molecules back into the same type of molecules, many cells of the body, especially liver cells, can convert most types of small organic molecules into other types—as in, for example, transforming amino acids into glucose or fatty acids. Because of these interconversions, adequate nourishment can be provided by a range of molecules present in different types of foods. There are limits, however. **Essential nutrients**, such as the essential amino acids and vitamins, cannot be formed in the body by conversion from another type of organic molecule.

The major fate of both ingested carbohydrates and ingested fats is catabolism to yield energy. Amino acids are predominantly used for protein synthesis but can be used to supply energy after being converted to carbohydrate or fat. Thus, all three categories of foodstuff can be used as fuel, and excesses of any foodstuff can be deposited as stored fuel, as you will see shortly.

At a superficial level, fuel metabolism appears relatively simple: The amount of nutrients in the diet must be sufficient to meet the body's needs for energy production and cellular synthesis. This apparently simple relationship is complicated, however, by two important considerations: (1) nutrients taken in at meals must be stored and then released between meals, and (2) the brain must be continuously supplied with glucose. Let us examine the implications of each.

### Because food intake is intermittent, nutrients must be stored for use between meals.

Dietary fuel intake is intermittent, not continuous. As a result, excess energy must be absorbed during meals and stored for use during fasting periods between meals, when dietary sources of metabolic fuel are not available. Despite intermittent energy intake, the body cells' demand for energy is ever-present and fluctuating. That is, energy must constantly be available for cells to use as needed no matter what the status of food intake is. Stored energy fills in the gaps between meals. Energy storage takes three forms (▲ Table 17-4):

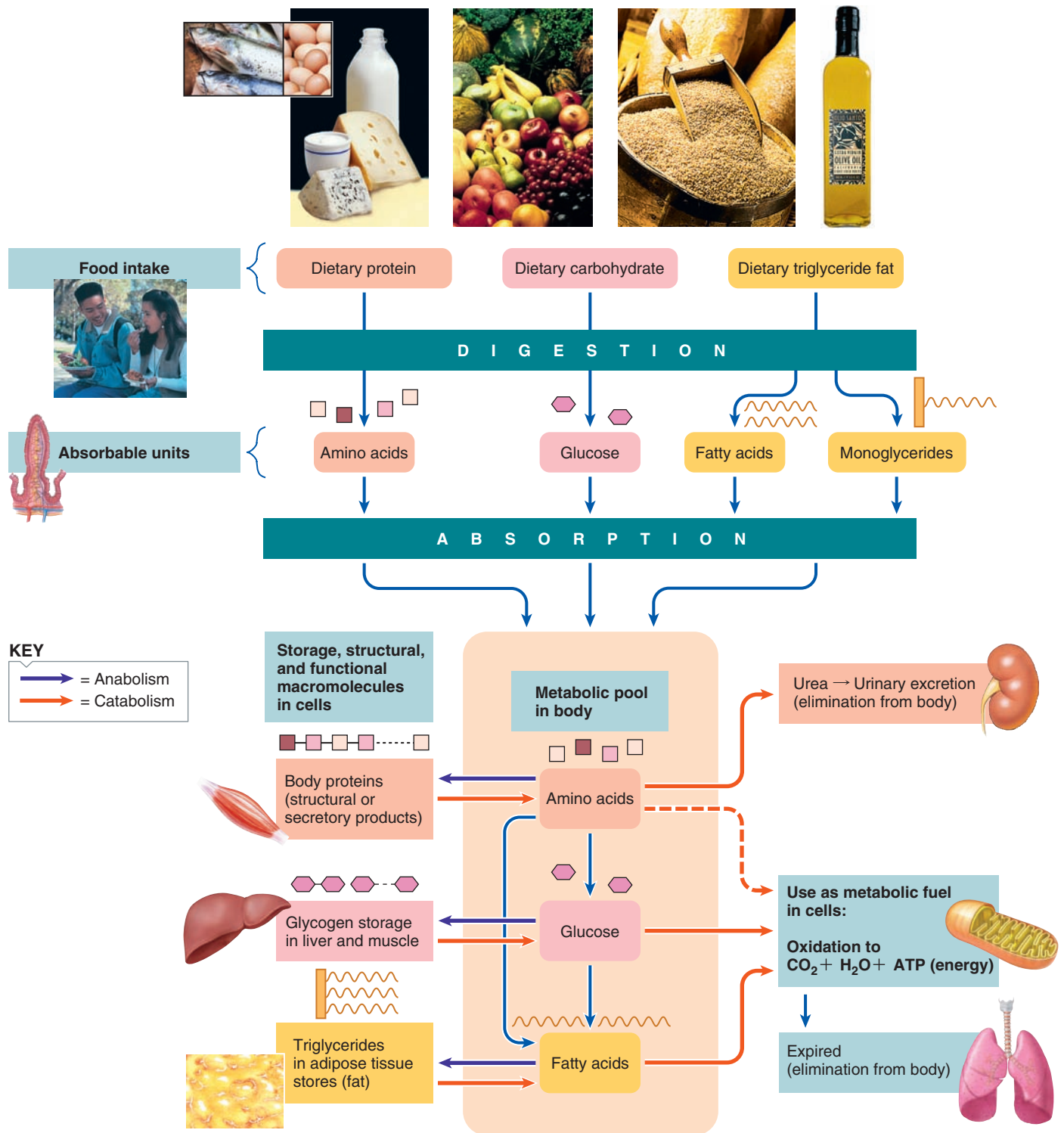
- *Excess circulating glucose* is stored in the liver and muscle as *glycogen*, a large molecule consisting of interconnected glucose molecules. Because glycogen is a relatively small energy reservoir, less than a day's energy needs can be stored in this form. Once the liver and muscle glycogen stores are "filled up," additional glucose is transformed into fatty acids and glycerol, which are used to synthesize *triglycerides* (glycerol with three fatty acids attached), primarily in adipose tissue (fat).
- *Excess circulating fatty acids* derived from dietary intake also become incorporated into triglycerides.
- *Excess circulating amino acids* not needed for protein synthesis are not stored as extra protein but are converted to glucose and fatty acids, which ultimately end up being stored as triglycerides.

Thus, the major site of energy storage for excess nutrients of all three classes is adipose tissue. Normally, enough triglyceride is stored to provide energy for about 2 months, with more stored in an overweight person. Consequently, during any prolonged period of fasting, the fatty acids released from triglyceride catabolism are the primary source of energy for most tissues.

As a third energy reservoir, a substantial amount of energy is stored as *structural protein*, primarily in muscle, the most abundant protein mass in the body. Protein is not the first choice to tap as an energy source, however, because it serves other essential functions; in contrast, the glycogen and triglyceride reservoirs are solely energy depots.

### The brain must be continuously supplied with glucose.

The second factor complicating fuel metabolism (besides intermittent nutrient intake and the resultant necessity of storing nutrients) is that the brain normally depends on delivery of adequate blood glucose as its sole source of energy. Consequently, the blood glucose concentration must be maintained above a critical level. The blood glucose concentration is typically 100 mg



● **FIGURE 17-23** Summary of the major pathways involving organic nutrient molecules.

of glucose for every 100 ml of plasma and is normally kept within the narrow limits of 70 to 110 mg per 100 ml. Liver glycogen is an important reservoir for maintaining blood glucose levels during a short fast. However, liver glycogen is depleted relatively rapidly, so during a longer fast other mechanisms must meet the energy requirements of the glucose-dependent brain. First, when no new dietary glucose is entering the blood, tissues not obligated

to use glucose shift their metabolic gears to burn fatty acids instead, sparing glucose for the brain. Fatty acids are made available by catabolism of triglyceride stores as an alternative energy source for tissues that are not glucose dependent. Second, amino acids can be converted to glucose by gluconeogenesis, whereas fatty acids cannot. Thus, once glycogen stores are depleted despite glucose sparing, new glucose supplies for the brain are



## ▲ Table 17-4 Stored Metabolic Fuel in the Body

Metabolic Fuel	Circulating Form	Storage Form	Major Storage Site	Percentage of Total Energy Content (and Calories*)	Reservoir Capacity	Role
<b>Carbohydrate</b>	Glucose	Glycogen	Liver and muscle	1% (1500 Calories)	Less than a day's worth of energy	First energy source; essential for the brain
<b>Fat</b>	Free fatty acids	Triglycerides	Adipose tissue	77% (143,000 Calories)	About 2 months' worth of energy	Primary energy reservoir; energy source during a fast
<b>Protein</b>	Amino acids	Body proteins	Muscle	22% (41,000 Calories)	Death results long before capacity is fully used because of structural and functional impairment	Source of glucose for the brain during a fast; last resort to meet other energy needs

\*Refers to kilocalories; see p. 480.

provided by the catabolism of body proteins and conversion of the freed amino acids into glucose.

### Metabolic fuels are stored during the absorptive state and mobilized during the postabsorptive state.

The preceding discussion should make clear that how the body deals with organic molecules depends on the body's metabolic state. The two functional metabolic states—the *absorptive state* and the *postabsorptive state*—are related to eating and fasting cycles, respectively (▲ Table 17-5).

**ABSORPTIVE STATE** After a meal, ingested nutrients are being absorbed and entering the blood during the **absorptive**, or **fed**, **state**. During this time, glucose is plentiful and is the major energy source. Very little of the absorbed fat and amino acids is used for energy during the absorptive state, because most cells preferentially use glucose when it is available. Extra nutrients not immediately used for energy or structural repairs are channeled into storage as glycogen or triglycerides.

**POSTABSORPTIVE STATE** The average meal is completely absorbed in about 4 hours. Therefore, on a typical three-meals-a-day diet, no nutrients are being absorbed from the digestive tract during late morning and late afternoon and throughout the night. These times constitute the **postabsorptive**, or **fasting**, **state**. During this state, endogenous energy stores are mobilized to provide energy, whereas gluconeogenesis and glucose sparing maintain the blood glucose at an adequate level to nourish the brain. Synthesis of protein and fat is curtailed. Instead, stores of these organic molecules are catabolized for glucose formation and energy production, respectively. Carbohydrate synthesis does occur through gluconeogenesis, but the use of glucose for energy is greatly reduced.

Note that the blood concentration of nutrients does not fluctuate markedly between the absorptive and the postabsorptive states. During the absorptive state, the glut of absorbed nutrients is swiftly removed from the blood and placed into storage; during the postabsorptive state, these stores are catabo-

## ▲ Table 17-5 Comparison of Absorptive and Postabsorptive States

Metabolic Fuel	Absorptive State	Postabsorptive State
<b>Carbohydrate</b>	Glucose providing the major energy source Glycogen synthesis and storage Excess converted and stored as triglyceride fat	Glycogen degradation and depletion Glucose sparing to conserve glucose for the brain Production of new glucose through gluconeogenesis
<b>Fat</b>	Triglyceride synthesis and storage	Triglyceride catabolism Fatty acids providing the major energy source for non-glucose-dependent tissues
<b>Protein</b>	Protein synthesis Excess converted and stored as triglyceride fat	Protein catabolism Amino acids used for gluconeogenesis

lized to maintain the blood concentrations at levels necessary to fill tissue energy demands.

**ROLES OF KEY TISSUES IN METABOLIC STATES** During these alternating metabolic states, various tissues play different roles, as summarized here:

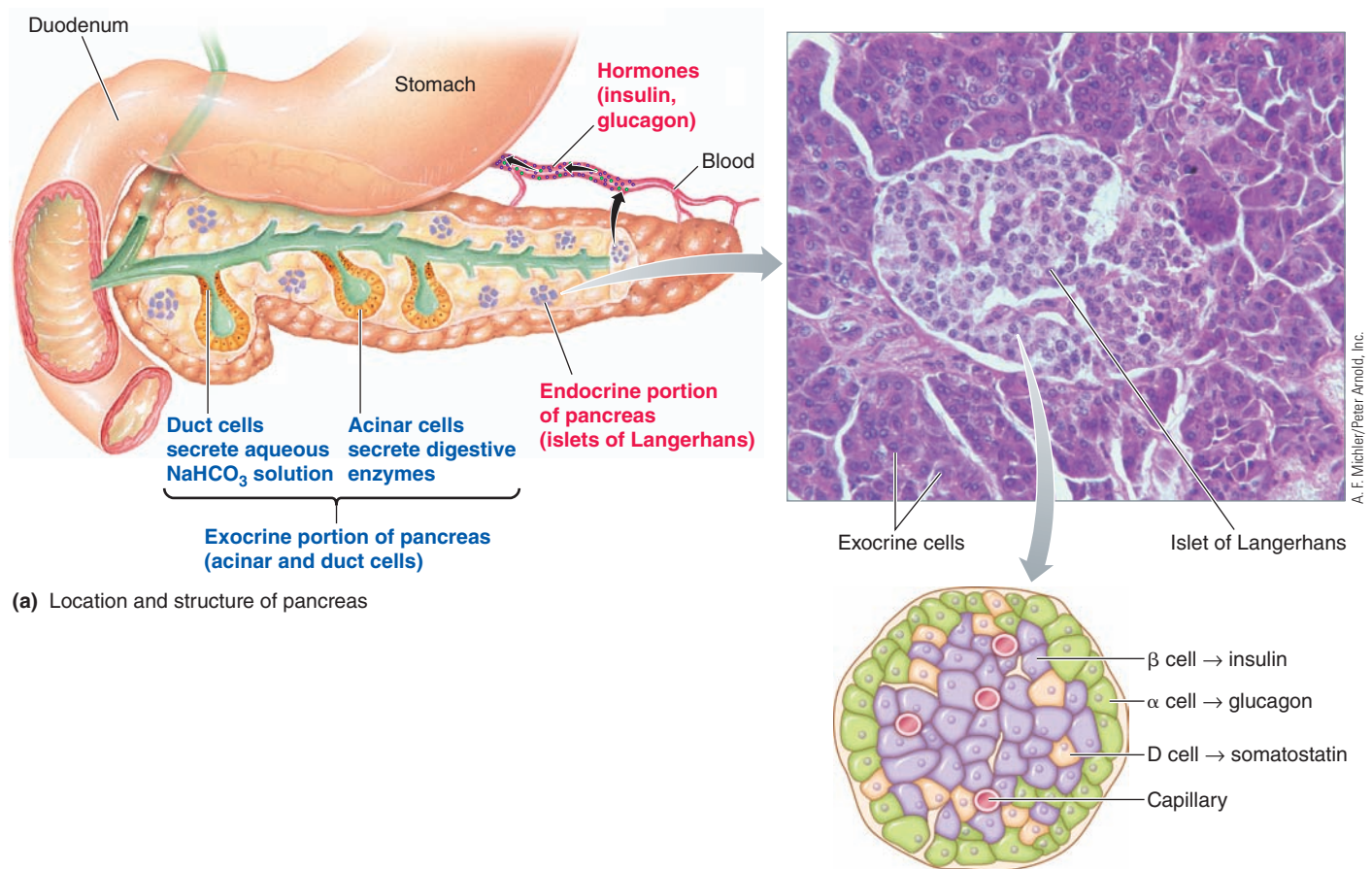
- The *liver* plays the primary role in maintaining normal blood glucose levels. It stores glycogen when excess glucose is available, releases glucose into the blood when needed, and is the principal site for metabolic interconversions such as gluconeogenesis.
- *Adipose tissue* serves as the primary energy storage site and is important in regulating fatty acid levels in the blood.
- *Muscle* is the primary site of amino acid storage and is the major energy user.
- The *brain* normally can use only glucose as an energy source, yet it does not store glycogen, making it mandatory that adequate blood glucose levels be maintained.

**The pancreatic hormones, insulin and glucagon, are most important in regulating fuel metabolism.**

How does the body “know” when to shift its metabolic gears from a system of net anabolism and nutrient storage to one of net catabolism and glucose sparing? The flow of organic nutri-

ents along metabolic pathways is influenced by a variety of hormones, including insulin, glucagon, epinephrine, cortisol, and GH. Under most circumstances, the pancreatic hormones, insulin and glucagon, are the dominant hormonal regulators that shift the metabolic pathways from net anabolism to net catabolism and glucose sparing, or vice versa, depending on whether the body is feasting or fasting, respectively.

**ISLETS OF LANGERHANS** The **pancreas** is an organ composed of both exocrine and endocrine tissues. The exocrine portion secretes a watery, alkaline solution and digestive enzymes through the pancreatic duct into the digestive tract lumen (see p. 457). Scattered throughout the pancreas between the exocrine cells are about a million clusters, or “islands,” of endocrine cells known as the **islets of Langerhans** (● Figure 17-24a). The islets make up about 1% to 2% of the total pancreatic mass. The most abundant pancreatic endocrine cells are the **β (beta) cells**, which are the site of *insulin* synthesis and secretion and the **α (alpha) cells**, which produce *glucagon*. Less common the **D (delta) cells** are the pancreatic site of *somatostatin* synthesis. The β cells are concentrated centrally in the islets, with the other cells clustered around the periphery (● Figure 17-24b). We briefly highlight somatostatin now, and then we pay attention to insulin and glucagon, the most important hormones in the regulation of fuel metabolism.



● **FIGURE 17-24** Location and structure of the pancreas and cell types in the islets of Langerhans.

(b) Cell types in islet of Langerhans

**SOMATOSTATIN** Acting as a hormone, pancreatic **somatostatin** inhibits the digestive system in a variety of ways, the overall effects of which are to inhibit digestion of nutrients and to decrease nutrient absorption. Somatostatin is released from the pancreatic D cells in direct response to an increase in blood glucose and blood amino acids during absorption of a meal. By exerting its inhibitory effects, pancreatic somatostatin acts in negative-feedback fashion to put the brakes on the rate at which the meal is being digested and absorbed, thereby preventing excessive plasma levels of nutrients.

Somatostatin is also produced by cells lining the digestive tract, where it acts locally as a paracrine to inhibit most digestive processes (see p. 453). Furthermore, somatostatin (alias GHIH) is produced by the hypothalamus, where it inhibits the secretion of GH and TSH.

We next consider insulin and then glucagon, followed by a discussion of how insulin and glucagon function as an endocrine unit to shift metabolic gears between the absorptive and the postabsorptive states.

### Insulin lowers blood glucose, fatty acid, and amino acid levels and promotes their storage.

**Insulin** has important effects on carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism. It lowers the blood levels of glucose, fatty acids, and amino acids and promotes their storage. As these nutrient molecules enter the blood during the absorptive state, insulin promotes their cellular uptake and conversion into glycogen, triglycerides, and protein, respectively. Insulin exerts its many effects by altering either transport of specific blood-borne nutrients into cells or activity of the enzymes involved in specific metabolic pathways.

**ACTIONS ON CARBOHYDRATE** Maintaining blood glucose homeostasis is a particularly important function of the pancreas. Insulin exerts four effects that lower blood glucose levels and promote carbohydrate storage:

1. Insulin facilitates glucose transport into most cells. (The mechanism of this increased glucose uptake is explained after insulin's other blood-glucose lowering effects are listed.)
2. Insulin stimulates **glycogenesis**, the production of glycogen from glucose, in both skeletal muscle and the liver.
3. Insulin inhibits **glycogenolysis**, the breakdown of glycogen into glucose.
4. Insulin inhibits gluconeogenesis, the conversion of amino acids into glucose in the liver.

Thus, insulin decreases the concentration of blood glucose by promoting the cells' uptake of glucose from the blood for use and storage while simultaneously blocking the two mechanisms by which the liver releases glucose into the blood (glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis). Insulin is the only hormone capable of lowering blood glucose. Insulin promotes the uptake of glucose by most cells through glucose *transporter recruitment*, a topic to which we now turn.

Glucose transport between blood and cells is accomplished by means of a plasma membrane carrier known as a **glucose transporter (GLUT)**. Fourteen forms of glucose transporters have been identified, named in the order they were discovered—GLUT-1, GLUT-2, and so on. All accomplish passive facilitated diffusion of glucose across the plasma membrane (see p. 58). Each member of the GLUT family performs slightly different functions. For example, *GLUT-1* transports glucose across the blood–brain barrier, and *GLUT-3* is the main transporter of glucose into neurons. The transporter responsible for the majority of glucose uptake by most body cells is *GLUT-4*, which operates only at the bidding of insulin. Glucose molecules cannot readily penetrate most cell membranes in the absence of insulin, making most tissues highly dependent on insulin for uptake of glucose from the blood and for its subsequent use. GLUT-4 is especially abundant in the tissues that account for the bulk of glucose uptake from the blood during the absorptive state, namely, resting skeletal muscle and adipose tissue cells.

GLUT-4 is the only type of transporter that responds to insulin. Unlike the other types of GLUT molecules, which are always present in the plasma membranes at the sites where they perform their functions, GLUT-4 is not present in the plasma membrane in the absence of insulin. Insulin promotes glucose uptake by **transporter recruitment**. Insulin-dependent cells maintain a pool of intracellular vesicles containing GLUT-4. Insulin induces these vesicles to move to the plasma membrane and fuse with it, thus inserting GLUT-4 molecules into the plasma membrane. In this way, increased insulin secretion promotes a rapid 10- to 30-fold increase in glucose uptake by insulin-dependent cells. When insulin secretion decreases, these GLUTs are retrieved from the membrane by endocytosis and returned to the intracellular pool.

Several tissues do not depend on insulin for their glucose uptake—namely, the brain, working muscles, and liver. The brain, which requires a constant supply of glucose for its minute-to-minute energy needs, is freely permeable to glucose at all times by means of GLUT-1 and GLUT-3 molecules. Skeletal muscle cells do not depend on insulin for their glucose uptake during exercise, even though they are dependent at rest. Muscle contraction triggers the insertion of GLUT-4 into the plasma membranes of exercising muscle cells in the absence of insulin. This fact is important in managing diabetes mellitus (insulin deficiency), as described later. The liver also does not depend on insulin for glucose uptake, because it does not use GLUT-4.

**ACTIONS ON FAT** Insulin exerts multiple effects to lower blood fatty acids and promote triglyceride storage:

1. It enhances the entry of fatty acids from the blood into adipose tissue cells.
2. It increases the transport of glucose into adipose tissue cells by means of GLUT-4 recruitment. Glucose serves as a precursor for the formation of fatty acids and glycerol, which are the raw materials for triglyceride synthesis.
3. It promotes chemical reactions that ultimately use fatty acids and glucose derivatives for triglyceride synthesis.

4. It inhibits lipolysis (fat breakdown), reducing the release of fatty acids from adipose tissue into the blood.

Collectively, these actions favor removal of fatty acids and glucose from the blood and promote their storage as triglycerides.

**ACTIONS ON PROTEIN** Insulin lowers blood amino acid levels and enhances protein synthesis through several effects:

1. It promotes the active transport of amino acids from the blood into muscles and other tissues. This effect decreases the circulating amino acid level and provides the building blocks for protein synthesis within the cells.
2. It increases the rate of amino acid incorporation into protein by stimulating the cells' protein-synthesizing machinery.
3. It inhibits protein degradation.

The collective result of these actions is a protein anabolic effect. For this reason, insulin is essential for normal growth.

**SUMMARY OF INSULIN'S ACTIONS** In short, insulin primarily exerts its effects by acting on the liver, adipose tissue, and non-working skeletal muscle. It stimulates biosynthetic pathways that lead to increased glucose use, increased carbohydrate and fat storage, and increased protein synthesis. In so doing, this hormone lowers the blood glucose, fatty acid, and amino acid levels. This metabolic pattern is characteristic of the absorptive state. Indeed, insulin secretion rises during this state and shifts metabolic pathways to net anabolism.

When insulin secretion is low, the opposite effects occur. The rate of glucose entry into cells is reduced, and net catabolism occurs rather than net synthesis of glycogen, triglycerides, and protein. This pattern is reminiscent of the postabsorptive state; indeed, insulin secretion is reduced during the postabsorptive state. However, the other major pancreatic hormone, glucagon, also plays an important role in shifting from absorptive to postabsorptive metabolic patterns, as described later.

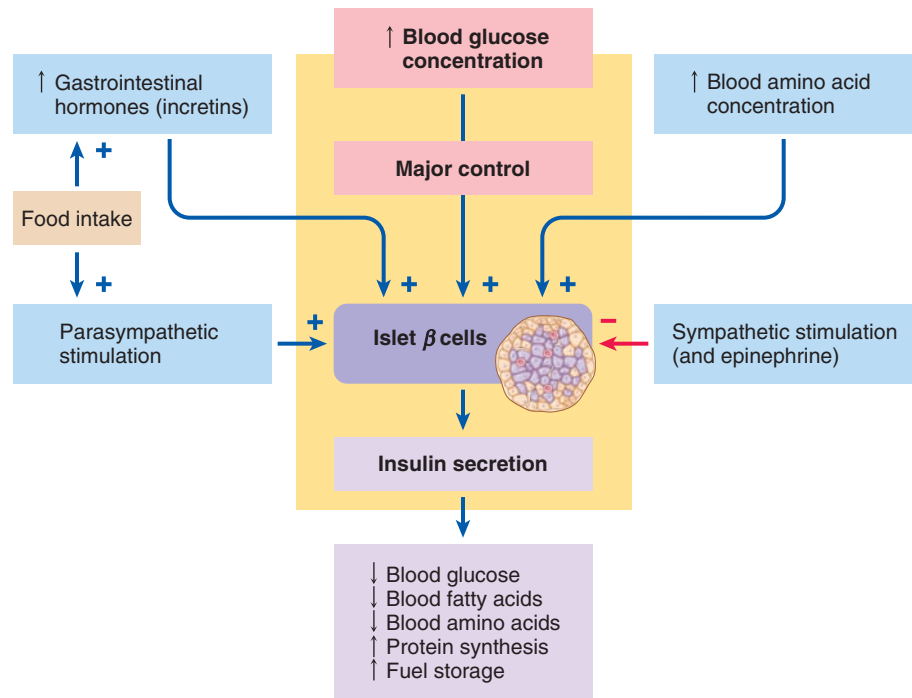
### The primary stimulus for increased insulin secretion is an increase in blood glucose concentration.

The primary control of insulin secretion is a direct negative-feedback system between the pancreatic  $\beta$  cells and the concentration of glucose in the blood flowing to them. An elevated blood glucose level, such as during absorption of a meal, directly stimulates the  $\beta$  cells to synthesize and release insulin. The increased insulin, in turn, reduces blood glucose to normal and promotes use and storage of this nutrient. Conversely, a fall in blood glucose below normal, such as during fasting, directly inhibits insulin secretion. Lowering the rate of insulin secretion shifts metabo-

lism from the absorptive to the postabsorptive pattern. Thus, this simple negative-feedback system can maintain a relatively constant supply of glucose to the tissues without requiring the participation of nerves or other hormones.

In addition to blood glucose concentration, which is the major controlling factor, other inputs are involved in regulating insulin secretion, as follows (● Figure 17-25):

- An elevated blood amino acid level, such as after a high-protein meal, directly stimulates the  $\beta$  cells to increase insulin secretion. In negative-feedback fashion, the increased insulin enhances the entry of these amino acids into the cells, lowering the blood amino acid level while promoting protein synthesis.
- Gastrointestinal hormones secreted by the digestive tract in response to the presence of food, especially glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide (GIP) (see p. 474), stimulate pancreatic insulin secretion, in addition to having direct regulatory effects on the digestive system. Through this control, insulin secretion is increased in “feedforward,” or anticipatory, fashion even before nutrient absorption increases the blood concentration of glucose and amino acids. Hormones released from the digestive tract that “notify” the pancreatic  $\beta$  cell of the impending rise in blood nutrients (primarily blood glucose) are termed **incretins**.
- The autonomic nervous system also directly influences insulin secretion. The islets are richly innervated by both parasympathetic (vagal) and sympathetic nerve fibers. The increase in parasympathetic activity that occurs in response to food in the digestive tract stimulates insulin release. This, too, is a feedforward response in anticipation of nutrient absorption. In contrast, sympathetic stimulation and the concurrent increase in epinephrine both inhibit insulin secretion. The fall in insulin level allows the blood glucose level to rise, an appropriate re-



● **FIGURE 17-25** Factors controlling insulin secretion.

sponse to the circumstances under which generalized sympathetic activation occurs—namely, stress (fight-or-flight) and exercise. In both situations, extra fuel is needed for increased muscle activity.

### The symptoms of diabetes mellitus are characteristic of an exaggerated postabsorptive state.



**Diabetes mellitus** is by far the most common of all endocrine disorders. The acute symptoms of diabetes mellitus are attributable to inadequate insulin action.

Because insulin is the only hormone capable of lowering blood glucose levels, one of the most prominent features of diabetes mellitus is elevated blood glucose levels, or *hyperglycemia*. *Diabetes* literally means “siphon” or “running through,” a reference to the large urine volume accompanying this condition. A large urine volume occurs in both diabetes mellitus (a result of insulin insufficiency) and diabetes insipidus (a result of vasopressin deficiency; see p. 423). *Mellitus* means “sweet”; *insipidus* means “tasteless.” The urine of patients with diabetes mellitus acquires its sweetness from excess blood glucose that spills into the urine, whereas the urine of patients with diabetes insipidus contains no sugar, so it is tasteless. (Aren’t you glad you were not a health professional at the time when these two conditions were distinguished on the basis of the taste of the urine?)

**TYPES OF DIABETES MELLITUS** There are two distinct types of diabetes mellitus. **Type 1 (insulin-dependent, or juvenile-onset) diabetes mellitus**, which accounts for about 10% of all cases of diabetes, is characterized by a lack of insulin secretion because of erroneous autoimmune attack against the pancreatic  $\beta$  cells. Because their  $\beta$  cells secrete no insulin, Type 1 diabetics require exogenous insulin for survival. In **Type 2 (non-insulin-dependent, or maturity-onset) diabetes mellitus**, insulin secretion may be normal or even increased, but insulin’s target cells are less sensitive than normal to this hormone for elusive reasons presently under intense investigation. Ninety percent of diabetics have the Type 2 form. Although either type can first be manifested at any age, Type 1 is more prevalent in children, whereas Type 2 more generally arises in adulthood, hence the age-related designations.

Many Type 2 diabetics have *metabolic syndrome*, or *syndrome X*, as a forerunner of diabetes. **Metabolic syndrome** encompasses a cluster of features that predispose the person to developing Type 2 diabetes and atherosclerosis (see p. 253). These features include obesity, large waist circumference (that is, “apple” shapes; see p. 486), high triglyceride levels, low HDL levels (the “good” cholesterol; see p. 256), high blood glucose, and high blood pressure.

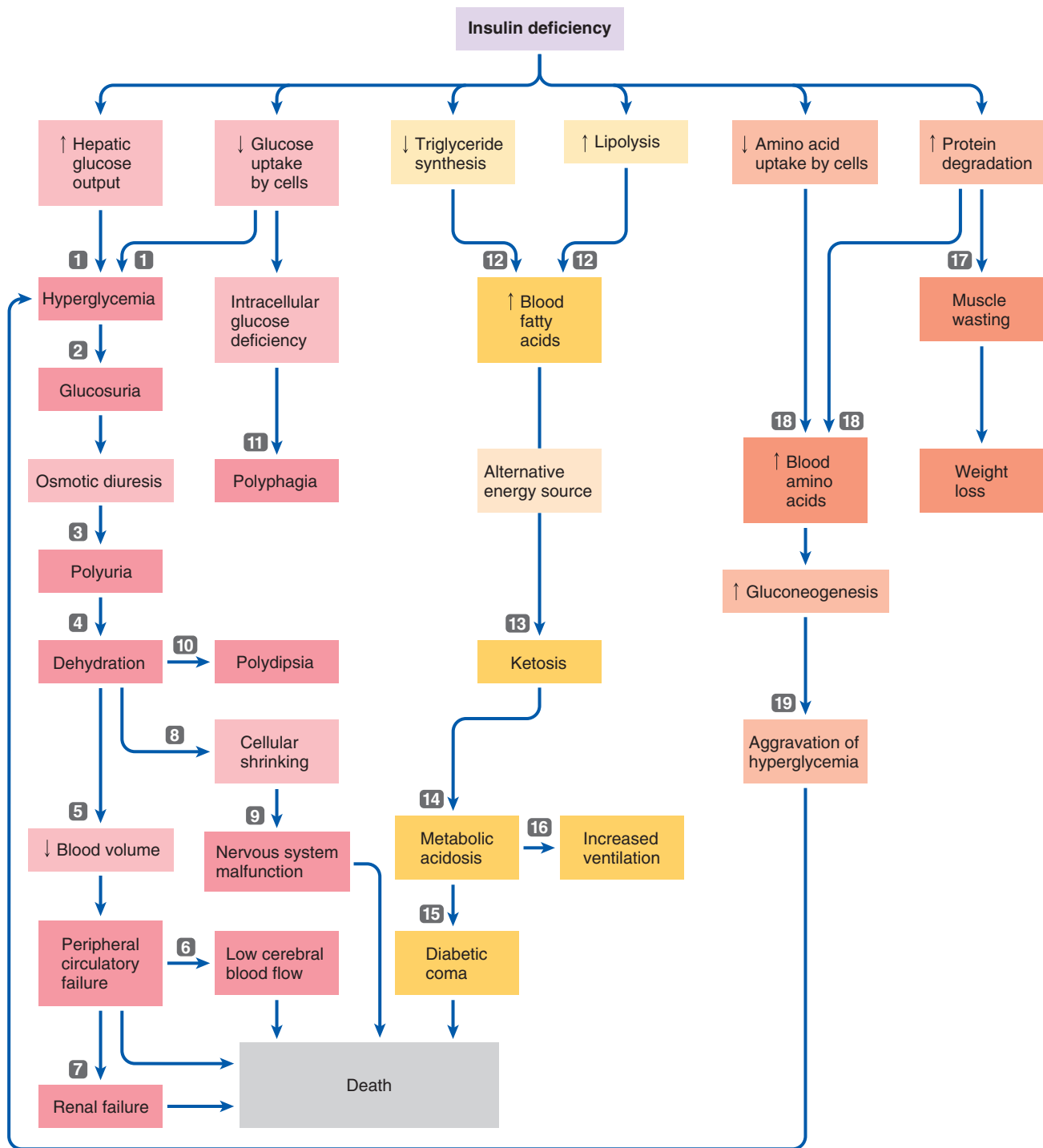
The acute consequences of diabetes mellitus can be grouped according to the effects of inadequate insulin action on carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism (● Figure 17-26). The figure may look overwhelming, but the numbers, which correspond to the numbers in the following discussion, help you work your way through this complex disease step by step.

**CONSEQUENCES RELATED TO EFFECTS ON CARBOHYDRATE METABOLISM** Because the postabsorptive metabolic pattern is induced by low insulin activity, the changes that occur in diabetes mellitus are an exaggeration of this state, with the exception of hyperglycemia. In the usual fasting state, the blood glucose level is slightly below normal. Hyperglycemia, the hallmark of diabetes mellitus, arises from reduced glucose uptake by cells, coupled with increased output of glucose from the liver (● Figure 17-26, step 1). As the glucose-yielding processes of glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis proceed unchecked in the absence of insulin, hepatic output of glucose increases. Because many of the body’s cells cannot use glucose without the help of insulin, an ironic extracellular glucose excess occurs coincident with an intracellular glucose deficiency—“starvation in the midst of plenty.” Even though the non-insulin-dependent brain is adequately nourished during diabetes mellitus, further consequences of the disease lead to brain dysfunction, as you will see shortly.

When blood glucose rises to the level where the amount of glucose filtered by the kidney nephrons during urine formation exceeds their capacity for reabsorption (that is, when the  $T_m$  for glucose is exceeded; see p. 395), glucose appears in the urine (*glucosuria*) (step 2). Glucose in the urine exerts an osmotic effect that draws  $H_2O$  with it, producing an osmotic diuresis characterized by *polyuria* (frequent urination) (step 3). The excess fluid lost from the body leads to dehydration (step 4), which in turn can lead to peripheral circulatory failure because of the marked reduction in blood volume (step 5). Circulatory failure, if uncorrected, can lead to death because of low cerebral blood flow (step 6) or secondary renal failure resulting from inadequate filtration pressure (step 7). Furthermore, cells lose water as the body becomes dehydrated by an osmotic shift of water from the cells into the hypertonic (too concentrated) extracellular fluid (step 8). Brain cells are especially sensitive to shrinking, so nervous system malfunction ensues (step 9) (see p. 423). Another characteristic symptom of diabetes mellitus is *polydipsia* (excessive thirst) (step 10), which is actually a compensatory mechanism to counteract the dehydration.

The story is not complete. In intracellular glucose deficiency, appetite is stimulated, leading to *polyphagia* (excessive food intake) (step 11). Despite increased food intake, however, progressive weight loss occurs from the effects of insulin deficiency on fat and protein metabolism.

**CONSEQUENCES RELATED TO EFFECTS ON FAT METABOLISM** Triglyceride synthesis decreases while lipolysis increases, resulting in large-scale mobilization of fatty acids from triglyceride stores (step 12). The increased blood fatty acids are largely used by the cells as an alternative energy source. Increased liver use of fatty acids results in the release of excessive ketone bodies into the blood, causing *ketosis* (step 13). Ketone bodies include several different acids, such as acetoacetic acid, that result from incomplete breakdown of fat during hepatic energy production. Therefore, this developing ketosis leads to progressive metabolic acidosis (step 14). Acidosis depresses the brain and, if severe enough, can lead to diabetic coma and death (step 15).



● **FIGURE 17-26 Acute effects of diabetes mellitus.** The acute consequences of diabetes mellitus can be grouped according to the effects of inadequate insulin action on carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism. These effects ultimately cause death through a variety of pathways. See pp. 532–534 for an explanation of the numbers.

A compensatory measure for metabolic acidosis is increased ventilation to blow off extra, acid-forming  $\text{CO}_2$  (step 16). Exhalation of one of the ketone bodies, acetone, causes a “fruity” breath odor that smells like a combination of Juicy Fruit gum and nail polish remover. Sometimes, because of this odor, passersby unfortunately mistake a patient collapsed in a diabetic coma for a “wino” passed out in a state of drunkenness. (This situation illustrates the

merits of medical alert identification tags.) People with Type 1 diabetes are more prone to develop ketosis than are Type 2 diabetics.

#### CONSEQUENCES RELATED TO EFFECTS ON PROTEIN METABOLISM

The effects of a lack of insulin on protein metabolism result in a net shift toward protein catabolism. The net breakdown of muscle proteins leads to muscle wasting and weakness, as well

as weight loss (step 17) and, in child diabetics, a reduction in overall growth. Reduced amino acid uptake coupled with increased protein degradation results in excess amino acids in the blood (step 18). The increased circulating amino acids can be used for additional gluconeogenesis, which further aggravates the hyperglycemia (step 19).

As you can readily appreciate from this overview, diabetes mellitus is a complicated disease that can disturb both carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism and fluid and acid–base balance. It can also have repercussions on the circulatory system, kidneys, respiratory system, and nervous system.

**LONG-TERM COMPLICATIONS** In addition to these potential acute consequences of untreated diabetes, which can be explained on the basis of insulin's short-term metabolic effects, numerous long-range complications of this disease frequently occur after 15 to 20 years despite treatment to prevent the short-term effects. These chronic complications, which account for the shorter life expectancy of diabetics, primarily involve degenerative disorders of the blood vessels and nervous system. Cardiovascular lesions are the most common cause of premature death in diabetics. Heart disease and strokes occur with greater incidence than in nondiabetics. Because vascular lesions often develop in the kidneys and retinas of the eyes, diabetes is the leading cause of both kidney failure and blindness in the United States. Impaired delivery of blood to the extremities may cause these tissues to become gangrenous, and toes or even whole limbs may have to be amputated. In addition to circulatory problems, degenerative lesions in nerves lead to multiple neuropathies that result in dysfunction of the brain, spinal cord, and peripheral nerves. The latter is most often characterized by pain, numbness, and tingling, especially in the extremities.

Regular exposure of tissues to excess blood glucose over a prolonged time leads to tissue alterations responsible for the development of these long-range vascular and neural degenerative complications. Thus, the best management for diabetes mellitus is to continuously keep blood glucose levels within normal limits to diminish the incidence of these chronic abnormalities.

**TREATMENT** The treatment for Type 1 diabetes is a controlled balance of regular insulin injections timed around meals, management of the amounts and types of food consumed, and exercise. Insulin is injected because if it were swallowed, this peptide hormone would be digested by protein-digesting enzymes in the stomach and small intestine. Exercise is useful in managing both types of diabetes, because working muscles are not insulin dependent. Exercising muscles take up some of the excess glucose in the blood, reducing the overall need for insulin.

Several newer approaches are currently available for insulin-dependent diabetics that preclude the need for insulin injections. Implanted *insulin pumps* can deliver a prescribed amount of insulin regularly, but the recipient must time meals with care to match the automatic insulin delivery. *Pancreas transplants* are also being performed more widely now, with increasing success rates. On the downside, recipients of pancreas transplants must take immunosuppressive drugs for life to prevent rejection of their donated organs. Also, donor organs are in short supply.

Whereas Type 1 diabetics are permanently insulin dependent, dietary control and weight reduction may be all that is necessary to completely reverse the symptoms in Type 2 diabetics. Various blood-glucose lowering oral medications are available if needed for treating Type 2 diabetes in conjunction with a dietary and exercise regime. These pills help the patient's body use its own insulin more effectively by diverse mechanisms, for example by (1) stimulating the  $\beta$  cells to secrete more insulin than they do on their own (*sulfonylureas*); (2) suppressing liver output of glucose (*metformin*); (3) blocking enzymes that digest carbohydrates, thus slowing glucose absorption into the blood from the digestive tract and blunting the surge of glucose immediately after a meal ( *$\alpha$ -glycosidase inhibitors*); (4) making muscle and fat cells more receptive to insulin (*thiazolidinediones*); (5) mimicking a naturally occurring incretin (*incretin mimetics*); or (6) prolonging the action of a naturally occurring incretin (*DPP-4 inhibitors*). Sometimes Type 2 diabetics eventually are no longer able to produce insulin, in which case they must be placed on insulin therapy.

#### Insulin excess causes brain-starving hypoglycemia.



Let us now look at the opposite of diabetes mellitus, insulin excess, which is characterized by *hypoglycemia* (low blood glucose) and can arise in two ways. First, insulin excess can occur in a diabetic patient when too much insulin has been injected for the person's caloric intake and exercise level, resulting in **insulin shock**. Second, blood insulin level may rise abnormally high in a nondiabetic individual whose  $\beta$  cells are overresponsive to glucose, a condition called **reactive hypoglycemia**. Such  $\beta$  cells "overshoot" and secrete more insulin than necessary in response to elevated blood glucose after a high-carbohydrate meal. The excess insulin drives too much glucose into the cells, resulting in hypoglycemia.

The consequences of insulin excess are primarily manifestations of the effects of hypoglycemia on the brain. Recall that the brain relies on a continuous supply of blood glucose for its nourishment and that glucose uptake by the brain does not depend on insulin. With insulin excess, more glucose than necessary is driven into the other insulin-dependent cells. The result is a lowering of the blood glucose level so that not enough glucose is left in the blood to be delivered to the brain. In hypoglycemia, the brain literally starves. The symptoms, therefore, are primarily referable to depressed brain function, which, if severe enough, may rapidly progress to unconsciousness and death. People with overresponsive  $\beta$  cells usually do not become sufficiently hypoglycemic to manifest these more serious consequences, but they do show milder symptoms of depressed CNS activity.

The treatment of hypoglycemia depends on the cause. At the first indication of a hypoglycemic attack with insulin overdose, the diabetic person should eat or drink something sugary. Prompt treatment of severe hypoglycemia is imperative to prevent brain damage.

Ironically, even though reactive hypoglycemia is characterized by a low blood glucose level, people with this disorder are treated by limiting their intake of sugar and other glucose-

yielding carbohydrates to prevent their  $\beta$  cells from over-responding to a high glucose intake. Giving a symptomatic individual with reactive hypoglycemia something sugary temporarily alleviates the symptoms. The blood glucose level is transiently restored to normal so that the brain's energy needs are again satisfied. However, as soon as the extra glucose triggers further insulin release, the situation is merely aggravated.

### Glucagon in general opposes the actions of insulin.

Even though insulin plays a central role in controlling metabolic adjustments between the absorptive and the postabsorptive states, the secretory product of the pancreatic islet  $\alpha$  cells, **glucagon**, is also important. Many physiologists view the insulin-secreting  $\beta$  cells and the glucagon-secreting  $\alpha$  cells as a coupled endocrine system whose combined secretory output is a major factor in regulating fuel metabolism.

Glucagon affects many of the same metabolic processes that insulin influences, but in most cases glucagon's actions are opposite to those of insulin. The major site of action of glucagon is the liver, where it exerts a variety of effects on carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism.

**ACTIONS ON CARBOHYDRATE** The overall effects of glucagon on carbohydrate metabolism result in an increase in hepatic glucose production and release and thus in an increase in blood glucose levels. Glucagon exerts its hyperglycemic effects by decreasing glycogen synthesis, promoting glycogenolysis, and stimulating gluconeogenesis.

**ACTIONS ON FAT** Glucagon also antagonizes the actions of insulin with regard to fat metabolism by promoting fat breakdown and inhibiting triglyceride synthesis. Thus, the blood levels of fatty acids increase under glucagon's influence.

**ACTIONS ON PROTEIN** Glucagon inhibits hepatic protein synthesis and promotes degradation of hepatic protein. Stimulation of gluconeogenesis further contributes to glucagon's catabolic effect on hepatic protein metabolism. Glucagon promotes protein catabolism in the liver, but it does not have any significant effect on blood amino acid levels because it does not affect muscle protein, the major protein store in the body.

### Glucagon secretion is increased during the postabsorptive state.

Considering the catabolic effects of glucagon on energy stores, you would be correct in assuming that glucagon secretion increases during the postabsorptive state and decreases during the absorptive state, just the opposite of insulin secretion. In fact, insulin is sometimes referred to as a "hormone of feasting" and glucagon as a "hormone of fasting." Insulin tends to put nutrients in storage when their blood lev-

els are high, such as after a meal, whereas glucagon promotes catabolism of nutrient stores between meals to keep up the blood nutrient levels, especially blood glucose.

As in insulin secretion, the major factor regulating glucagon secretion is a direct effect of the blood glucose concentration on the endocrine pancreas. In this case, the pancreatic  $\alpha$  cells increase glucagon secretion in response to a fall in blood glucose. The hyperglycemic actions of this hormone tend to raise the blood glucose level back to normal. Conversely, an increase in blood glucose concentration, such as after a meal, inhibits glucagon secretion, which tends to drop the blood glucose level back to normal.

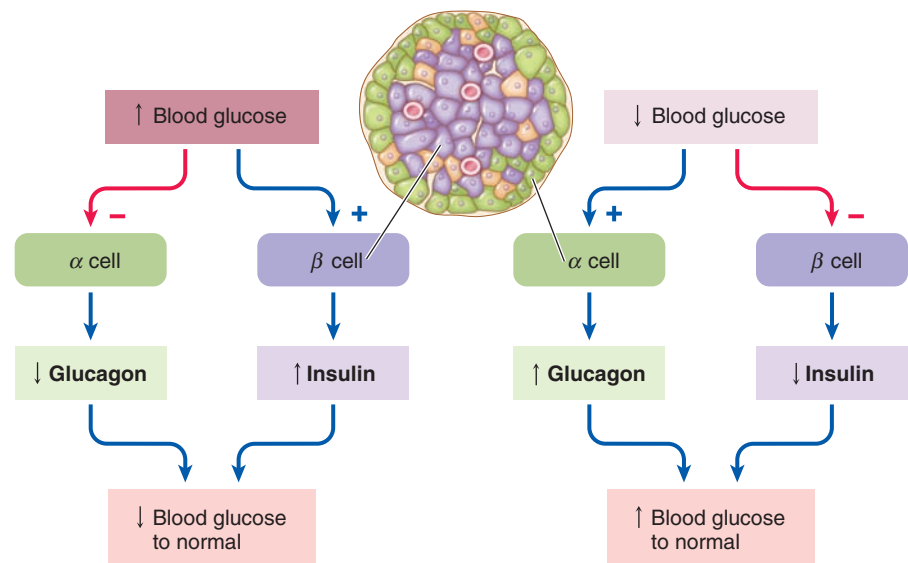
### Insulin and glucagon work as a team to maintain blood glucose and fatty acid levels.

Thus, a direct negative-feedback relationship exists between blood glucose concentration and both  $\beta$  cells' and  $\alpha$  cells' rates of secretion, but in opposite directions. An elevated blood glucose level stimulates insulin secretion but inhibits glucagon secretion, whereas a fall in blood glucose level leads to decreased insulin secretion and increased glucagon secretion (● Figure 17-27). Because insulin lowers and glucagon raises blood glucose, the changes in secretion of these pancreatic hormones in response to deviations in blood glucose work together homeostatically to restore blood glucose levels to normal.

### Epinephrine, cortisol, and GH also exert direct metabolic effects.

The pancreatic hormones are the most important regulators of normal fuel metabolism. However, several other hormones exert direct metabolic effects, even though control of their secretion is keyed to factors other than transitions in metabolism between feasting and fasting states (▲ Table 17-6).

The stress hormones, epinephrine and cortisol, both increase blood levels of glucose and fatty acids through a variety of metabolic effects. In addition, cortisol mobilizes amino acids by



● **FIGURE 17-27** Complementary interactions of glucagon and insulin.



▲ **Table 17-6 Summary of Hormonal Control of Fuel Metabolism**

Hormone	MAJOR METABOLIC EFFECTS				CONTROL OF SECRETION	
	Effect on Blood Glucose	Effect on Blood Fatty Acids	Effect on Blood Amino Acids	Effect on Muscle Protein	Major Stimuli for Secretion	Primary Role in Metabolism
Insulin	↓	↓	↓	↑	↑ Blood glucose	Primary regulator of absorptive and postabsorptive cycles
Glucagon	↑	↑	No effect	No effect	↓ Blood glucose	Regulation of absorptive and postabsorptive cycles in concert with insulin
Epinephrine	↑	↑	No effect	No effect	Sympathetic stimulation during stress	Provision of energy for emergencies
Cortisol	↑	↑	↑	↓	Stress	Mobilization of metabolic fuels and building blocks during adaptation to stress
Growth hormone	↑	↑	↓	↑	Deep sleep Exercise Stress ↓ Blood glucose	Promotion of growth; normally little role in metabolism; mobilization of fuels plus glucose sparing in extenuating circumstances

promoting protein catabolism. Neither hormone plays an important role in regulating fuel metabolism under resting conditions, but both are important for the metabolic responses to stress.

GH (acting through IGF) has protein anabolic effects in muscle. In fact, this is one of its growth-promoting features. Although GH can elevate the blood levels of glucose and fatty acids, it is normally of little importance to the overall regulation of fuel metabolism. Deep sleep (responsible for the marked nighttime diurnal increase in GH), exercise, stress, and severe hypoglycemia stimulate GH secretion, possibly to provide fatty acids as an energy source and spare glucose for the brain under these circumstances.

Note that, with the exception of the anabolic effects of GH on protein metabolism, all the metabolic actions of these other hormones are opposite to those of insulin. Insulin alone can reduce blood glucose and blood fatty acid levels, whereas glucagon, epinephrine, cortisol, and GH all increase blood levels of these nutrients. These other hormones are therefore considered **insulin antagonists**. Thus, the main reason diabetes mellitus has such devastating metabolic consequences is that no other control mechanism is available to pick up the slack to promote anabolism when insulin activity is insufficient, so the catabolic reactions promoted by other hormones proceed unchecked. The only exception is protein anabolism stimulated by GH.

## Parathyroid Gland and Control of Calcium Metabolism

Besides regulating the concentration of organic nutrient molecules in the blood by manipulating anabolic and catabolic pathways, the endocrine system regulates the plasma concentration

of a number of inorganic electrolytes. As you already know, aldosterone controls  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  concentrations in the ECF. Three other hormones—*parathyroid hormone*, *calcitonin*, and *vitamin D*—control calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) and phosphate ( $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ ) metabolism. These hormonal agents concern themselves with regulating plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ; in the process, plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  is maintained. Plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration is one of the most tightly controlled variables in the body. The need for the precise regulation of plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stems from its critical influence on so many body activities.

### Plasma $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ must be closely regulated to prevent changes in neuromuscular excitability.

About 99% of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the body is in crystalline form within the skeleton and teeth. Of the remaining 1%, about 0.9% is found intracellularly within the soft tissues; less than 0.1% is present in the ECF. Approximately half of the ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  either is bound to plasma proteins and therefore restricted to the plasma or is complexed with  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and therefore not free to participate in chemical reactions. The other half of the ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is freely diffusible and can readily pass from the plasma into the interstitial fluid and interact with the cells. The free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the plasma and interstitial fluid is considered a single pool. Only this free ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is biologically active and subject to regulation; it constitutes less than one thousandth of the total  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  in the body.

This small, free fraction of ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  plays a vital role in a number of essential activities, including neuromuscular excitability, excitation–contraction coupling in smooth and cardiac muscle (see pp. 221 and 239), secretion of neurotransmitter and hydrophilic hormones (see p. 86), and blood clotting (see

p. 306). The most profound and immediate impact of even minor deviations from normal of ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels is the effect on neuromuscular excitability. A fall in free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  results in overexcitability of nerves and muscles; conversely, a rise in free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  depresses neuromuscular excitability. These effects result from the influence of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on membrane permeability to  $\text{Na}^+$ . A decrease in free  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  increases  $\text{Na}^+$  permeability, with the resultant influx of  $\text{Na}^+$  moving the resting potential closer to threshold. Consequently, in the presence of *hypocalcemia* (low blood  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) excitable tissues may be brought to threshold by normally ineffective physiologic stimuli so that skeletal muscles discharge and contract (go into spasm) “spontaneously” (in the absence of normal stimulation). If severe enough, spastic contraction of the respiratory muscles results in death by asphyxiation. *Hypercalcemia* (elevated blood  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ ) is also life threatening, because it causes cardiac arrhythmias and generalized depression of neuromuscular excitability.

Note that a *rise in cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  within a muscle cell causes contraction (see p. 200), whereas an *increase in free ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$*  decreases neuromuscular excitability and reduces the likelihood of contraction. Unless one keeps this point in mind, it is difficult to understand why low plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels cause muscle hyperactivity when  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is necessary to switch on the contractile apparatus. We are talking about two  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pools that exert different effects.

Because of the profound effects of deviations in free ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , especially on neuromuscular excitability, the plasma concentration of this electrolyte is regulated with extraordinary precision via hormonal control of exchanges between the ECF and three other compartments: bone, kidneys, and intestine. Let us see how.

### Parathyroid hormone raises free plasma $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ levels by its effects on bone, kidneys, and intestine.

**Parathyroid hormone (PTH)**, a peptide hormone secreted by the **parathyroid glands**, is the principal regulator of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  metabolism. The four rice grain-sized parathyroid glands are located on the back surface of the thyroid gland, one in each corner (see ● Figure 17-29, p. 539). Like aldosterone, PTH is *essential for life*. The overall effect of PTH is to increase the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration of plasma (and, accordingly, of the entire ECF), thereby preventing hypocalcemia. In the complete absence of PTH, death ensues within a few days, usually because of asphyxiation caused by hypocalcemic spasm of respiratory muscles. By its actions on bone, kidneys, and intestine, PTH raises plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration when it starts to fall, so hypocalcemia and its effects are normally avoided. This hormone also lowers plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  concentration. We consider each of these mechanisms, beginning with an overview of bone remodeling and the actions of PTH on bone.

### Bone continuously undergoes remodeling.

Recall that bone is a living tissue composed of an organic extracellular matrix (osteoid) made hard by precipitation of calcium phosphate— $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$ —crystals, with 99% of the body’s  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  being found in the skeleton. By mobilizing some of these  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$

stores in bone, PTH raises plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration when it starts to fall.

Despite the apparent inanimate nature of bone, its constituents are continually being turned over. **Bone deposition** (formation) and **bone resorption** (removal) normally go on concurrently so that bone is constantly being remodeled, much as people remodel buildings by tearing down walls and replacing them. Through remodeling, the adult human skeleton is completely regenerated an estimated every 10 years. Bone remodeling serves two purposes: (1) it keeps the skeleton appropriately “engineered” for maximum effectiveness in its mechanical uses, and (2) it helps maintain the plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level. Let us examine in more detail the underlying mechanisms for each of these purposes.

Recall that three types of bone cells are present in bone. The *osteoblasts* secrete the extracellular organic matrix within which the  $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$  crystals precipitate. The *osteocytes* are the retired osteoblasts imprisoned within the bony wall they have deposited around themselves. The *osteoclasts* resorb bone in their vicinity by releasing acids that dissolve the  $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$  crystals and enzymes that break down the organic matrix. Thus, a constant cellular tug-of-war goes on in bone, with bone-forming osteoblasts countering the efforts of the bone-destroying osteoclasts. After it has created a cavity, an osteoclast moves on to an adjacent site to burrow another hole. Osteoblasts move into the cavity and secrete osteoid to fill in the hole. Subsequent mineralization of this organic matrix results in new bone to replace the bone dissolved by the osteoclast. These construction and demolition crews, working side by side, continuously remodel bone. At any given time, about a million microscopic-sized sites throughout the skeleton are undergoing resorption or deposition. Throughout most of adult life, the rates of bone formation and bone resorption are about equal, so total bone mass remains fairly constant during this period.

### Mechanical stress favors bone deposition.

As a child grows, the bone builders keep ahead of the bone destroyers under the influence of GH and IGF. Mechanical stress also tips the balance in favor of bone deposition, causing bone mass to increase and the bones to strengthen. Mechanical factors adjust the strength of bone in response to the demands placed on it. The greater the physical stress and compression to which a bone is subjected, the greater the rate of bone deposition. For example, the bones of athletes are stronger and more massive than those of sedentary people.

By contrast, bone mass diminishes and the bones weaken when bone resorption gains a competitive edge over bone deposition in response to removal of mechanical stress. For example, bone mass decreases in people who undergo prolonged bed confinement or those in spaceflight. Early astronauts lost up to 20% of their bone mass during their time in orbit. Therapeutic exercise can limit or prevent such loss of bone.



Bone mass also decreases as a person ages. Bone density peaks when a person is in the 30s and then starts to decline after age 40. By 50 to 60 years of age, bone resorption often exceeds bone formation. The

result is a reduction in bone mass known as **osteoporosis** (meaning “porous bones”) (● Figure 17-28). This bone-thinning condition is characterized by a diminished laying down of organic matrix as a result of reduced osteoblast activity, increased osteoclast activity, or both rather than abnormal bone calcification. The underlying cause of osteoporosis is uncertain. Plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  levels are normal, as is PTH. Osteoporosis occurs with greatest frequency in postmenopausal women because of the associated withdrawal of bone-preserving estrogen (a female sex hormone). Osteoporosis is treated by regular weight-bearing exercise, a  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -rich diet and supplementation, and if needed, drugs that halt or reverse bone loss (for example, *Fosamax*, which blocks osteoclasts’ bone-destroying actions).

### PTH raises plasma $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ by withdrawing $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ from the bone bank.

In addition to the factors geared toward controlling the mechanical effectiveness of bone, throughout life PTH uses bone as a “bank” from which it withdraws  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  as needed to maintain plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level. PTH has two major effects on bone that raise plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration:

1. As an immediate effect, PTH promotes rapid movement of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the plasma from  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -rich bone fluid. Recall that long cytoplasmic processes extend out from the entombed osteocytes into an extensive network of small canals in the bone to permit exchange of substances between the trapped osteocytes and the circulation. **Bone fluid** surrounds these cytoplasmic extensions within the canals. PTH accomplishes the fast exchange of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  between bone fluid and plasma by activating membrane-bound  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  pumps located in the plasma membranes of these cytoplasmic extensions. These pumps promote movement of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  from the bone fluid into the osteocytes, from which the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is transferred into the plasma circulating through the bone. Through this means, PTH draws  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  out of the “quick-

cash branch” of the bone bank and rapidly increases the plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level without actually entering the bank (that is, without breaking down mineralized bone itself). Under normal conditions, this exchange is sufficient for maintaining plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration.

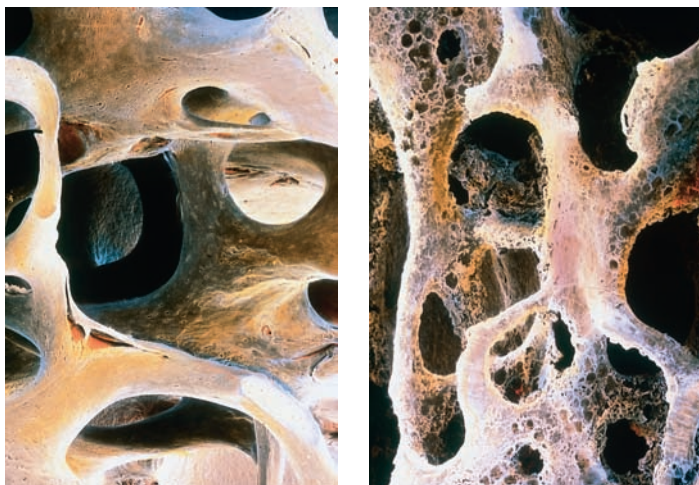
2. Under conditions of chronic hypocalcemia, such as may occur with dietary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  deficiency, PTH stimulates actual localized dissolution of bone, promoting a slower transfer into the plasma of both  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  from the minerals within the bone itself. It does so by stimulating osteoclasts to gobble up bone and transiently inhibiting the bone-forming activity of the osteoblasts. Bone contains so much  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  compared to the plasma (more than 1000 times as much) that even when PTH promotes increased bone resorption, no immediate effects on the skeleton are discernible, because such a tiny amount of bone is affected. Yet the negligible amount of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  “borrowed” from the bone bank can be lifesaving in terms of restoring the free plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level to normal. The borrowed  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is then redeposited in the bone at another time when  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  supplies are more abundant. Meanwhile, the plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level has been maintained without sacrificing bone integrity. However, prolonged excess PTH secretion over months or years eventually leads to the formation of holes throughout the skeleton, which are filled with very large, overstuffed osteoclasts.

When PTH promotes dissolution of the  $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$  crystals in bone to harvest their  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  content, both  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  are released into the plasma. An elevation in plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  is undesirable, but PTH deals with this dilemma by its actions on the kidneys.

### PTH acts on the kidneys to conserve $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and eliminate $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ .

PTH promotes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  conservation and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  elimination by the kidneys during urine formation. Under the influence of PTH, the kidneys can reabsorb more of the filtered  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , so less  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  escapes into urine. This effect increases the plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level and decreases urinary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  losses. (It would be counterproductive to dissolve bone to obtain more  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  only to lose it in urine.) By contrast, PTH decreases  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  reabsorption, thus increasing urinary  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  excretion. As a result, PTH reduces plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  levels at the same time it increases plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentrations.

This PTH-induced removal of extra  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  from the body fluids is essential for preventing reprecipitation of the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  freed from bone. Because PTH is secreted only when plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  falls below normal, the released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is needed to restore plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  to normal, yet the released  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  tends to raise plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  levels above normal. Because of the solubility characteristics of  $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$  salt, if plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels were allowed to increase simultaneously, some of the released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  would be forced back into bone through  $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$  crystal formation. This self-defeating redeposition of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  would lower plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , just the opposite of the needed effect. Therefore, PTH acts on the kidneys to decrease the reabsorption of  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  by



Normal bone

Osteoporotic bone

● **FIGURE 17-28** Comparison of normal and osteoporotic bone.

the renal tubules. This action increases urinary excretion of  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and lowers its plasma concentration, even though extra  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  is being released from bone into the plasma.

The third important action of PTH on the kidneys (besides increasing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  reabsorption and decreasing  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  reabsorption) is to enhance the activation of vitamin D by the kidneys.

### PTH indirectly promotes absorption of $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ and $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ by the intestine.

Although PTH has no direct effect on the intestine, it indirectly increases both  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  absorption from the small intestine by helping activate vitamin D. This vitamin, in turn, directly increases intestinal absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ , a topic we discuss more thoroughly shortly.

### The primary regulator of PTH secretion is plasma concentration of free $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .

All the effects of PTH raise plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels. Appropriately, PTH secretion increases when plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  falls and decreases when plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  rises. The secretory cells of the parathyroid glands are directly and exquisitely sensitive to changes in free plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . Because PTH regulates plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, this relationship forms a simple negative-feedback loop for controlling PTH secretion without involving any nervous or other hormonal intervention (● Figure 17-29).

### Calcitonin lowers plasma $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ concentration but is not important in the normal control of $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ metabolism.

**Calcitonin**, the hormone produced by the C cells of the thyroid gland, also exerts an influence on plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels. Like PTH, calcitonin has two effects on bone, but in this case both effects *decrease* plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels: Short term, calcitonin decreases  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  movement from the bone fluid into the plasma. Long term, calcitonin decreases bone resorption by inhibiting the activity of osteoclasts. The suppression of bone resorption low-

ers plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  levels, as well as reducing plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. Calcitonin also inhibits  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  reabsorption from the kidney tubules during urine formation, further reinforcing its hypocalcemic and hypophosphatemic effects. Calcitonin has no effect on the intestine.

As with PTH, the primary regulator of calcitonin release is free plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, but unlike with PTH, an increase in plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  stimulates calcitonin secretion and a fall in plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  inhibits calcitonin secretion (● Figure 17-29). Because calcitonin reduces plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  levels, this system constitutes a second simple negative-feedback control over plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, one opposed to the PTH system.

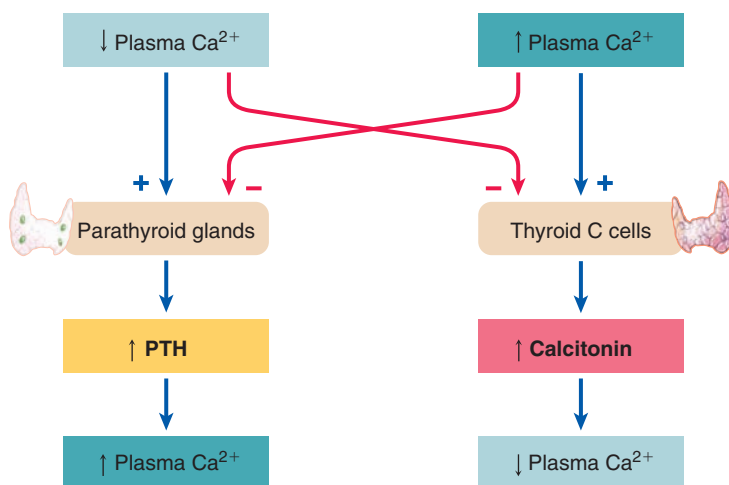
Most evidence suggests, however, that calcitonin plays little or no role in the normal control of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  metabolism. Although calcitonin protects against hypercalcemia, this condition rarely occurs under normal circumstances. Moreover, neither thyroid removal nor calcitonin-secreting tumors alter circulating levels of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ , implying that this hormone is not normally essential for maintaining  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  or  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  homeostasis. Calcitonin may, however, play a role in protecting skeletal integrity when there is a large  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  demand, such as during pregnancy or breast-feeding.

### Vitamin D is actually a hormone that increases $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ absorption in the intestine.

The final factor involved in regulating  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  metabolism is **cholecalciferol**, or **vitamin D**, a steroidlike compound essential for  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption in the intestine. Strictly speaking, vitamin D should be considered a hormone because the body can produce it in the skin from a precursor related to cholesterol on exposure to sunlight. It is subsequently released into the blood to act at a distant target site, the intestine. The skin, therefore, is actually an endocrine gland and vitamin D is a hormone. Traditionally, however, this chemical messenger has been considered a vitamin for two reasons. First, it was originally discovered and isolated from a dietary source and tagged as a vitamin. Second, even though the skin would be an adequate source of vitamin D if it were exposed to sufficient sunlight, indoor dwelling and clothing in response to cold weather and social customs preclude significant exposure of the skin to sunlight in the United States and many other parts of the world most of the time. At least part of the essential vitamin D must therefore be derived from dietary sources.

**ACTIVATION OF VITAMIN D** Regardless of its source, vitamin D is biologically inactive when it first enters the blood from either the skin or the digestive tract. It must be activated by two sequential biochemical alterations. The first of these reactions occurs in the liver, and the second takes place in the kidneys. The kidney enzymes involved in the second step of vitamin D activation are stimulated by PTH in response to a fall in plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . To a lesser extent, a fall in plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  also enhances the activation process.

**FUNCTIONS OF VITAMIN D** The most dramatic effect of activated vitamin D is to increase  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  absorption by the intestine. Un-



● **FIGURE 17-29** Negative-feedback loops controlling parathyroid hormone (PTH) and calcitonin secretion.

like most dietary constituents, dietary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is not indiscriminately absorbed by the digestive system. In fact, the majority of ingested  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is typically not absorbed but is lost in the feces. When needed, more dietary  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is absorbed into the plasma under the influence of vitamin D. Independently of its effects on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  transport, the active form of vitamin D increases intestinal  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  absorption. Furthermore, vitamin D increases the responsiveness of bone to PTH. Thus, vitamin D and PTH are closely interdependent (● Figure 17-30).

Recent research indicates that vitamin D's functions are more far reaching than its effects on uptake of ingested  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ . Vitamin D, at higher blood concentrations than those sufficient to protect bone, appears to bolster muscle strength and is an important force in energy metabolism and immune health. It helps thwart development of diabetes mellitus, fights some types of cancer, and counters autoimmune diseases like multiple sclerosis by presently unknown mechanisms. Because of these newly found actions, scientists and dietitians are reevaluating the recommended daily allowance (RDA) for vitamin D in the diet, especially when sufficient sun exposure is not possible. The RDA will likely be bumped up, but the optimal value needs to be determined by further study.

### Disorders in $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ metabolism may arise from abnormal levels of PTH or vitamin D.



The primary disorders that affect  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  metabolism are too much or too little PTH or a deficiency of vitamin D.

**PTH HYPERSECRETION** Excess PTH secretion, or **hyperparathyroidism**, which is usually caused by a hypersecreting tumor in one of the parathyroid glands, is characterized by hypercalcemia and hypophosphatemia. The affected individual can be asymptomatic or symptoms can be severe, depending on the magnitude of the problem. The following are among the possible consequences:

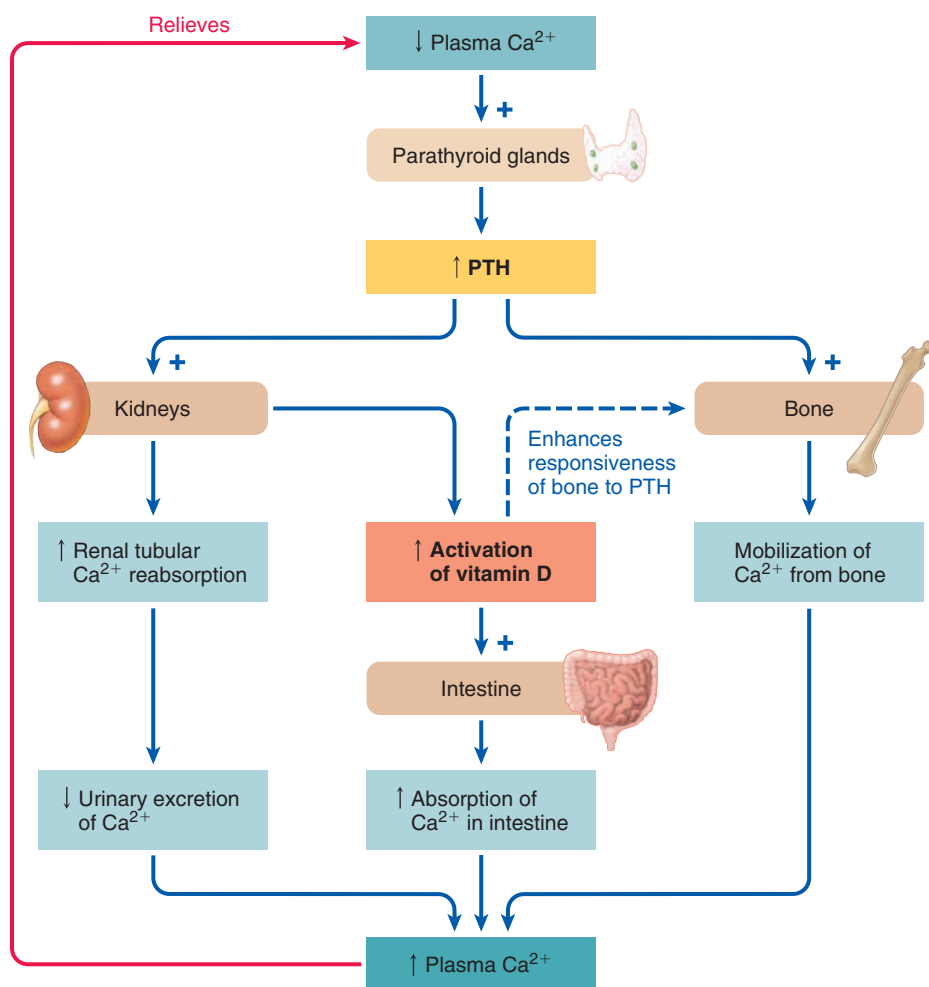
- Hypercalcemia reduces the excitability of muscle and nervous tissue, leading to muscle weakness and neurologic disorders, including decreased alertness, poor memory, and depression. Cardiac disturbances may also occur.
- Excessive mobilization of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  from skeletal stores leads to thinning of bone, which may result in skeletal deformities and increased incidence of fractures.
- An increased incidence of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ -containing kidney stones occurs because the excess quantity of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  being filtered through the kidneys may precipitate and form stones. These stones may impair renal function. Passage of the stones through the ureters causes extreme pain. Because of these potential multiple consequences, hyperparathyroidism has been called a disease of “bones, stones, and abdominal groans.”

To further account for the “abdominal groans,” hypercalcemia can cause peptic ulcers, nausea, and constipation.

■ To further account for the “abdominal groans,” hypercalcemia can cause peptic ulcers, nausea, and constipation.

**PTH HYPOSECRETION** Because of the parathyroid glands' close anatomic relation to the thyroid, the most common cause of deficient PTH secretion, or **hypoparathyroidism**, used to be inadvertent removal of the parathyroid glands (before doctors knew about their existence) during surgical removal of the thyroid gland (to treat thyroid disease). If all the parathyroid tissue was removed, these patients died, of course, because PTH is essential for life. Physicians were puzzled why some patients died soon after thyroid removal but others did not. Now that the location and importance of the parathyroid glands are known, surgeons are careful to leave parathyroid tissue during thyroid removal.

Hypoparathyroidism leads to hypocalcemia and hyperphosphatemia.



● FIGURE 17-30 Interactions between PTH and vitamin D in controlling plasma calcium.

The symptoms are mainly caused by increased neuromuscular excitability from the reduced level of free plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . In the complete absence of PTH, death is imminent. With a relative deficiency of PTH, milder symptoms of increased neuromuscular excitability become evident. Muscle cramps and twitches occur from spontaneous activity in the motor nerves, whereas tingling and pins-and-needles sensations result from spontaneous activity in the sensory nerves. Mental changes include irritability and paranoia.

**VITAMIN D DEFICIENCY** The major consequence of vitamin D deficiency is impaired intestinal absorption of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . In the face of reduced  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  uptake, PTH maintains the plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  level at the expense of the bones. As a result, the bone matrix is not properly mineralized, because  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  salts are not available for deposition. The demineralized bones become soft and deformed, bowing under the pressures of weight bearing, especially in children. This condition is known as **rickets** in children and **osteomalacia** in adults (● Figure 17-31).



Biophoto Assoc/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc.

● **FIGURE 17-31 Rickets.**

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



The endocrine system is one of the body's two major regulatory systems, the other being the nervous system. Through its relatively slowly acting hormone messengers, the endocrine system generally regulates activities that require duration rather than speed. Endocrine glands secrete hormones in response to specific stimuli. The hormones, in turn, exert effects that act in negative-feedback fashion to resist the change that induced their secretion, thus maintaining stability

in the internal environment. The specific contributions of the endocrine glands to homeostasis include the following:

- The hypothalamus–posterior pituitary unit secretes vasopressin, which acts on the kidneys to help maintain  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance. Control of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  balance in turn is essential for maintaining ECF osmolarity and proper cell volume.
- For the most part, the hormones secreted by the anterior pituitary do not directly contribute to homeostasis. Instead, most are tropic; that is, they stimulate the secretion of other hormones.
- The pineal gland secretes melatonin, which helps entrain the body's circadian rhythm to the environmental cycle of light (period of activity) and dark (period of inactivity).
- Two closely related hormones secreted by the thyroid gland, tetraiodothyronine ( $\text{T}_4$ ) and tri-iodothyronine ( $\text{T}_3$ ), increase the overall basal metabolic rate. This action not only influences the rate at which cells use nutrient molecules and  $\text{O}_2$  within the internal environment but also produces heat, which helps maintain body temperature.
- The adrenal cortex secretes three classes of hormones. Aldosterone, the primary mineralocorticoid, is essential for  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  balance. Because of the osmotic effect of  $\text{Na}^+$ , its balance is critical to maintaining the proper ECF volume and arterial blood pressure. This action is essential for life. Without aldosterone's  $\text{Na}^+$ - and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ -conserving effect, so much plasma volume would be lost in the urine that death would quickly ensue. Maintaining  $\text{K}^+$  balance is essential for homeostasis because changes in extracellular  $\text{K}^+$  profoundly affect neuromuscular excitability, jeopardizing normal heart function, among other detrimental effects.
- Cortisol, the primary glucocorticoid secreted by the adrenal cortex, increases the plasma concentrations of glucose, fatty acids, and amino acids above normal. Although these actions destabilize the concentrations of these molecules in the internal environment, they indirectly contribute to homeostasis by making the molecules readily available as energy sources or building blocks for tissue repair to help the body adapt to stressful situations.
- The sex hormones secreted by the adrenal cortex do not contribute to homeostasis.
- The major hormone secreted by the adrenal medulla, epinephrine, generally reinforces activities of the sympathetic nervous system. It contributes to homeostasis directly by its role in blood pressure regulation. Epinephrine also contributes to homeostasis indirectly by helping prepare the body for peak physical responsiveness in fight-or-flight situations. This includes increasing the plasma concentrations of glucose and fatty acids above normal, which provides additional energy sources for increased physical activity.
- The two major hormones secreted by the endocrine pancreas, insulin and glucagon, are important in shifting metabolic pathways between the absorptive and the postabsorptive states, which maintains the appropriate plasma levels of nutrient molecules.
- Parathyroid hormone from the parathyroid glands is critical to maintaining plasma concentration of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . PTH is essential for life because of the effect of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  on neuromuscular excitability. In the absence of PTH, death rapidly occurs from asphyxiation caused by pronounced spasms of the respiratory muscles.

Unrelated to homeostasis, hormones direct the growing process and control most aspects of the reproductive system.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-51)

- All endocrine glands are exclusively endocrine in function. (*True or false?*)
- Growth hormone levels in the blood are no higher during the early childhood growing years than during adulthood. (*True or false?*)
- “Male” sex hormones are produced in both males and females by the adrenal cortex. (*True or false?*)
- Excess glucose and amino acids, as well as fatty acids, can be stored as triglycerides. (*True or false?*)
- Insulin is the only hormone that can lower blood glucose levels. (*True or false?*)
- All ingested  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is indiscriminately absorbed in the intestine. (*True or false?*)
- A hormone that has as its primary function the regulation of another endocrine gland is classified functionally as a \_\_\_\_\_ hormone.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ in the hypothalamus is the body’s master biological clock.
- Activity within the cartilaginous layer of bone known as the \_\_\_\_\_ brings about lengthening of long bones.
- The lumen of the thyroid follicle is filled with \_\_\_\_\_, the chief constituent of which is a large protein molecule known as \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the conversion of glucose into glycogen. \_\_\_\_\_ is the conversion of glycogen into glucose. \_\_\_\_\_ is the conversion of amino acids into glucose.
- The three compartments with which ECF  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is exchanged are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- Among the bone cells, \_\_\_\_\_ are bone builders, \_\_\_\_\_ are bone dissolvers, and \_\_\_\_\_ are entombed.
- Indicate the relationships among the hormones in the hypothalamic–anterior pituitary–adrenal cortex system by using the following answer code to identify which hormone belongs in each blank:
  - cortisol
  - ACTH
  - CRH
 (1) \_\_\_\_\_ from the hypothalamus stimulates the secretion of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ from the anterior pituitary. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in turn stimulates the secretion of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ from the adrenal cortex. In negative-feedback fashion, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ inhibits secretion of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

- Indicate the primary circulating form and the storage form of each of the three classes of organic nutrients:

	Primary Circulating Form	Primary Storage Form
Carbohydrate	1. _____	2. _____
Fat	3. _____	4. _____
Protein	5. _____	6. _____

### Essay Questions

- List the overall functions of the endocrine system.
- How is the plasma concentration of a hormone normally regulated?
- List and briefly state the functions of the posterior pituitary hormones.
- List and briefly state the functions of the anterior pituitary hormones.
- Compare the relationship between the hypothalamus and the posterior pituitary with the relationship between the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary. Describe the role of the hypothalamic–hypophyseal portal system and the hypothalamic releasing and inhibiting hormones.
- Describe the metabolic actions of growth hormone (GH) that are unrelated to growth. What are GH’s growth-promoting actions? What is the role of IGF?
- Discuss the control of GH secretion.
- Describe the steps of thyroid hormone synthesis.
- What are the effects of  $\text{T}_3$  and  $\text{T}_4$ ? Which is the more potent? What is the source of most circulating  $\text{T}_3$ ?
- Describe the regulation of thyroid hormone.
- What hormones are secreted by the adrenal cortex? What are the functions and control of each of these hormones?
- What is the relationship of the adrenal medulla to the sympathetic nervous system? What are the functions of epinephrine? How is epinephrine release controlled?
- Define stress. Describe the neural and hormonal responses to a stressor.
- Define *fuel metabolism*, *anabolism*, and *catabolism*.
- Distinguish between the absorptive and the postabsorptive states with regard to the handling of nutrient molecules.
- Name the two major cell types of the islets of Langerhans, and indicate the hormonal product of each.
- Compare the functions and control of insulin secretion with those of glucagon secretion.
- Why must plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  be closely regulated?
- Discuss the contributions of parathyroid hormone (PTH), calcitonin, and vitamin D to  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  metabolism. Describe the source and control of each of these hormones.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-51)

1. Why would males with testicular feminization syndrome be unusually tall?
2. Gigantism caused by a pituitary tumor is usually treated by surgically removing the pituitary gland. What hormonal replacement therapy would have to be instituted following this procedure?
3. Iodine is naturally present in saltwater and is abundant in soil along coastal regions. Fish and shellfish living in the ocean and plants grown in coastal soil take up iodine from their environment. Fresh water does not contain iodine, and the soil becomes more iron poor the farther inland it is. Knowing this, explain why the midwestern United States was once known as an endemic goiter belt. Why is this region no longer an endemic goiter belt even though the soil is still iodine poor?
4. Why would an infection tend to raise the blood glucose level of a diabetic individual?
5. Tapping the facial nerve at the angle of the jaw in a patient with moderate hyposecretion of a particular hormone elicits a characteristic grimace on that side of the face. What endocrine abnormality could give rise to this *Chvostek's sign*?

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

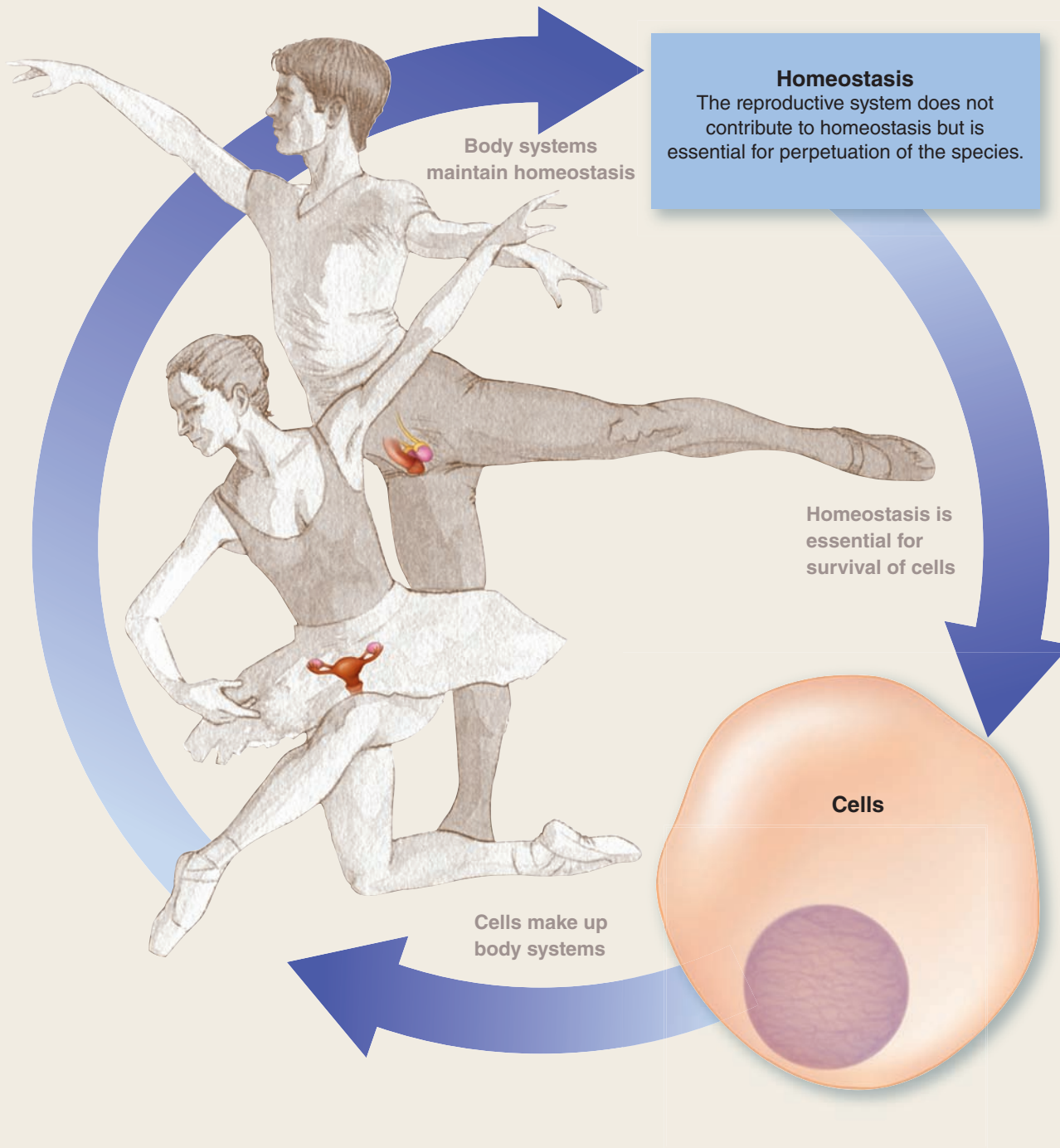
### (Explanation on p. A-51)

Najma G. sought medical attention after her menstrual periods ceased and she started growing excessive facial hair. Also, she had been thirstier than usual and urinated more frequently. A clinical evaluation revealed that Najma was hy-

perglycemic. Her physician told her that she had an endocrine disorder dubbed “diabetes of bearded ladies.” Based on her symptoms and your knowledge of the endocrine system, what underlying defect do you think she has?



## Reproductive System



Normal functioning of the **reproductive system** is not aimed at homeostasis and is not necessary for survival of an individual, but it is essential for survival of the species. Only through reproduc-

tion can the complex genetic blueprint of each species survive beyond the lives of individual members of the species.

## CHAPTER AT A GLANCE

**Uniqueness of the Reproductive System**

Unique among body systems: no contribution to homeostasis

Unique anatomy of the reproductive systems between the sexes

Unique sex determination and sexual differentiation between males and females

**Male Reproductive Physiology**

Scrotal location of the testes

Testosterone secretion

Spermatogenesis

Puberty

Male reproductive tract

Male accessory sex glands

Prostaglandins

**Sexual Intercourse between Males and Females**

Male sex act

Female sex act

**Female Reproductive Physiology**

Ovarian function

Menstrual cycle

Puberty; menopause

Fertilization

Implantation; placentation

Gestation

Parturition

Lactation

# The Reproductive System

## Uniqueness of the Reproductive System

The central theme of this book has been the physiologic processes aimed at maintaining homeostasis to ensure survival of the individual. We are now going to leave this theme to discuss the reproductive system, which serves primarily the purpose of perpetuating the species.

### Unique among body systems, the reproductive system does not contribute to homeostasis but exerts other important effects.

Even though the reproductive system does not contribute to homeostasis and is not essential for survival of an individual, it still plays an important role in a person's life. For example, the manner in which people relate as sexual beings contributes in significant ways to psychosocial behavior and has important influences on how people view themselves and how they interact with others. Reproductive function also has a profound effect on society. The universal organization of societies into family units provides a stable environment that is conducive for perpetuating our species.

Reproductive capability depends on intricate relationships among the hypothalamus, anterior pituitary, reproductive organs, and target cells of the sex hormones. In addition to these basic biological processes, sexual behavior and attitudes are deeply influenced by emotional factors and the sociocultural mores of the society in which the individual lives. We concentrate on the basic sexual and reproductive functions under nervous and hormonal control and do not examine the psychological and social ramifications of sexual behavior.

### The reproductive system includes the gonads, reproductive tract, and accessory sex glands, all of which are different in males and females.

**Reproduction** depends on the union of male and female **gametes (reproductive, or germ, cells)**, each with a half set of chromosomes, to form a new individual with a full, unique set of chromosomes. Unlike the other body systems, which are essentially identical in the two sexes, the reproductive systems of males and females are markedly different, befitting their different roles in the reproductive process. The **male and female reproductive systems** are designed to enable union of genetic material from the two sexual partners, and the female system is equipped to house and nourish the offspring to the developmental point at which it can survive independently in the external environment.

The **primary reproductive organs, or gonads**, consist of a pair of **testes** in the male and a pair of **ovaries** in the female. In both sexes, the mature gonads perform the dual function of (1) producing gametes (**gametogenesis**), that is, **spermatozoa (sperm)** in the male and **ova (eggs)** in the female, and (2) secreting sex hormones, specifically, **testosterone** in males and **estrogen** and **progesterone** in females.

In addition to the gonads, the reproductive system in each sex includes a **reproductive tract** encompassing a system of ducts specialized to transport or house the gametes after they are produced, plus **accessory sex glands** that empty their supportive

secretions into these passageways. In females, the *breasts* are also considered accessory reproductive organs. The externally visible portions of the reproductive system are known as **external genitalia**.

**SECONDARY SEXUAL CHARACTERISTICS** The **secondary sexual characteristics** are the many external characteristics not directly involved in reproduction that distinguish males and females, such as body configuration and hair distribution. In humans, for example, males have broader shoulders, whereas females have curvier hips, and males have beards, whereas females do not. Testosterone in the male and estrogen in the female govern the development and maintenance of these characteristics. Progesterone has no influence on secondary sexual characteristics. Even though growth of axillary and pubic hair is promoted at puberty in both sexes by androgens—testosterone in males and adrenocortical dehydroepiandrosterone in females (see p. 521)—this hair growth is not a secondary sexual characteristic, because both sexes display this feature.

In some species, the secondary sexual characteristics are of great importance in courting and mating behavior; for example, the rooster's comb attracts the female's attention, and the stag's antlers are useful to ward off other males. In humans, the differentiating marks between males and females do attract the opposite sex, but attraction is also strongly influenced by the complexities of human society and cultural behavior.

#### OVERVIEW OF MALE REPRODUCTIVE FUNCTIONS AND ORGANS

The essential reproductive functions of the male are as follows:

1. Production of sperm (*spermatogenesis*)
2. Delivery of sperm to the female

The sperm-producing organs, the testes, are suspended outside the abdominal cavity in a skin-covered sac, the **scrotum**, which lies within the angle between the legs. The male reproductive system is designed to deliver sperm to the female reproductive tract in a liquid vehicle, *semen*, which is conducive to sperm viability. The major **male accessory sex glands**, whose secretions provide the bulk of the semen, are the *seminal vesicles*, *prostate gland*, and *bulbourethral glands* (● Figure 18-1). The **penis** is the organ used to deposit semen in the female. Sperm exit each testis through the **male reproductive tract**, consisting on each side of an *epididymis* and *ductus (vas) deferens*. These pairs of reproductive tubes empty into a single *urethra*, the canal that runs the length of the penis and empties to the exterior. These parts of the male reproductive system are described more thoroughly when their functions are discussed.

#### OVERVIEW OF FEMALE REPRODUCTIVE FUNCTIONS AND ORGANS

The female's role in reproduction is more complicated than the male's. The essential female reproductive functions include the following:

1. Production of ova (*oogenesis*)
2. Reception of sperm
3. Transport of the sperm and ovum to a common site for union (*fertilization*, or *conception*)

4. Maintenance of the developing fetus until it can survive in the outside world (*gestation*, or *pregnancy*), including formation of the *placenta*, the organ of exchange between mother and fetus
5. Giving birth to the baby (*parturition*)
6. Nourishing the infant after birth by milk production (*lactation*)

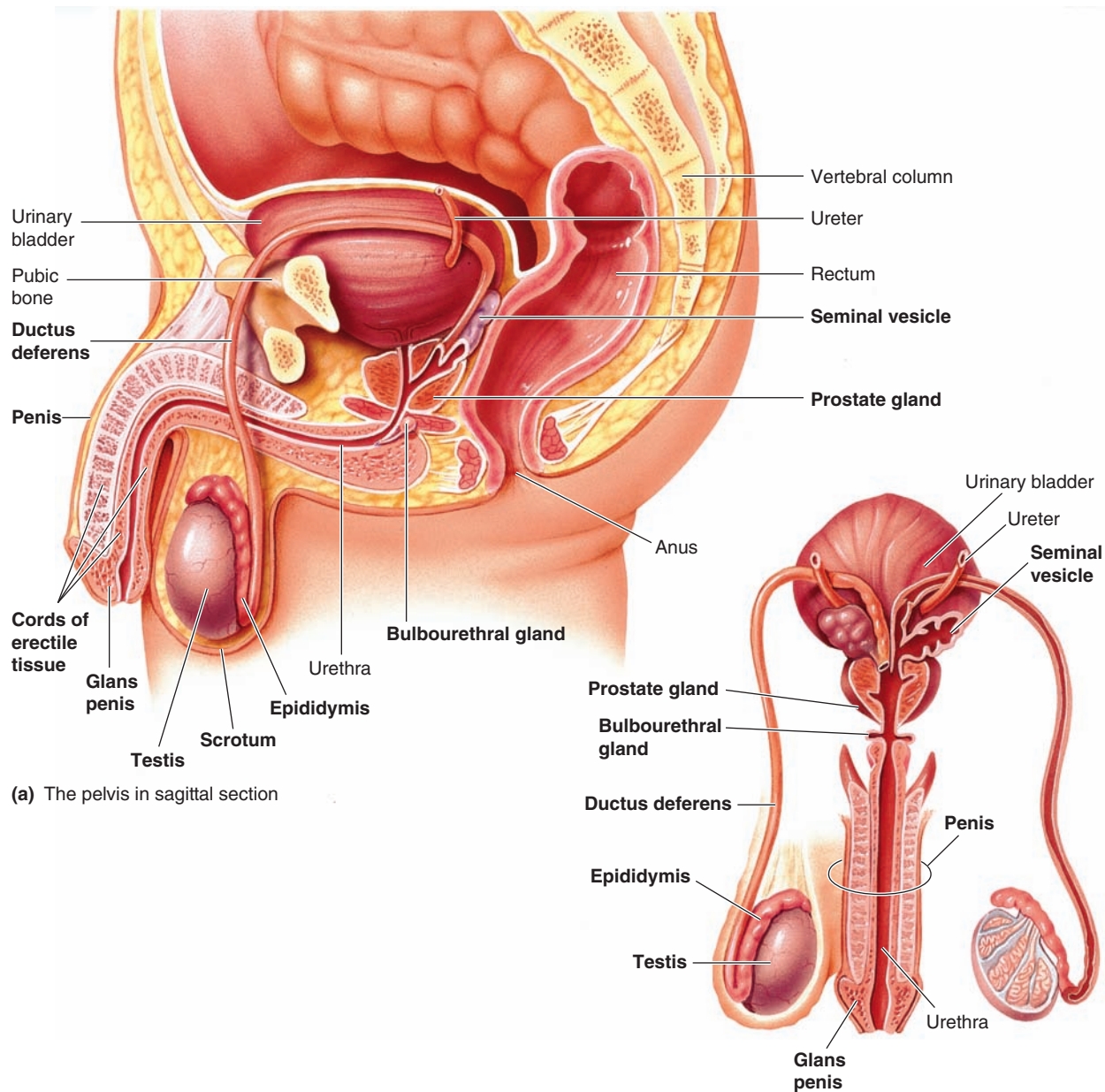
The product of fertilization is known as an **embryo** during the first 2 months of intrauterine development, when tissue differentiation is taking place. Beyond this time, the developing living being is recognizable as human and is known as a **fetus** during the remainder of gestation. Although no further tissue differentiation takes place during fetal life, it is a time of tremendous tissue growth and maturation.

The ovaries and female reproductive tract lie within the pelvic cavity. The female reproductive tract consists of the following components (● Figure 18-2a and b): Two **oviducts (uterine, or Fallopian tubes)**, which are in close association with the two ovaries, pick up ova on ovulation (ovum release from an ovary) and serve as the site for fertilization. The thick-walled, hollow **uterus** is primarily responsible for maintaining the fetus during its development and expelling it at the end of pregnancy. The **vagina** is a muscular, expandable tube that connects the uterus to the external environment. The lowest portion of the uterus, the **cervix**, projects into the vagina and contains a single, small opening, the **cervical canal**. Sperm are deposited in the vagina by the penis during sexual intercourse. The cervical canal is a pathway for sperm through the uterus to the site of fertilization in the oviduct and, when greatly dilated during parturition, is the passageway for delivery of the baby from the uterus.

The vaginal opening is located in the **perineal region** between the urethral opening anteriorly and the anal opening posteriorly (● Figure 18-2c). It is partially covered by a thin mucous membrane, the **hymen**, which typically is physically disrupted by the first sexual intercourse. The vaginal and urethral openings are surrounded laterally by two pairs of skin folds, the **labia minora** and **labia majora**. The smaller labia minora are located medially to the more prominent labia majora. The **clitoris**, an erotic structure composed of tissue similar to that of the penis, lies at the anterior end of the folds of the labia minora. The female external genitalia are collectively referred to as the **vulva**.

#### Reproductive cells each contain a half set of chromosomes.

The deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) molecules that carry the cell's genetic code are not randomly crammed into the nucleus but are precisely organized into **chromosomes** (see p. A-18). Each chromosome consists of a different DNA molecule that contains a unique set of genes. **Somatic cells** contain 46 chromosomes (the **diploid number**), which can be sorted into 23 pairs on the basis of various distinguishing features (*somatic* means "body"). Chromosomes composing a matched pair are termed **homologous chromosomes**, one member of each pair having



● **FIGURE 18-1** The male reproductive system.

(b) Posterior view of the reproductive organs

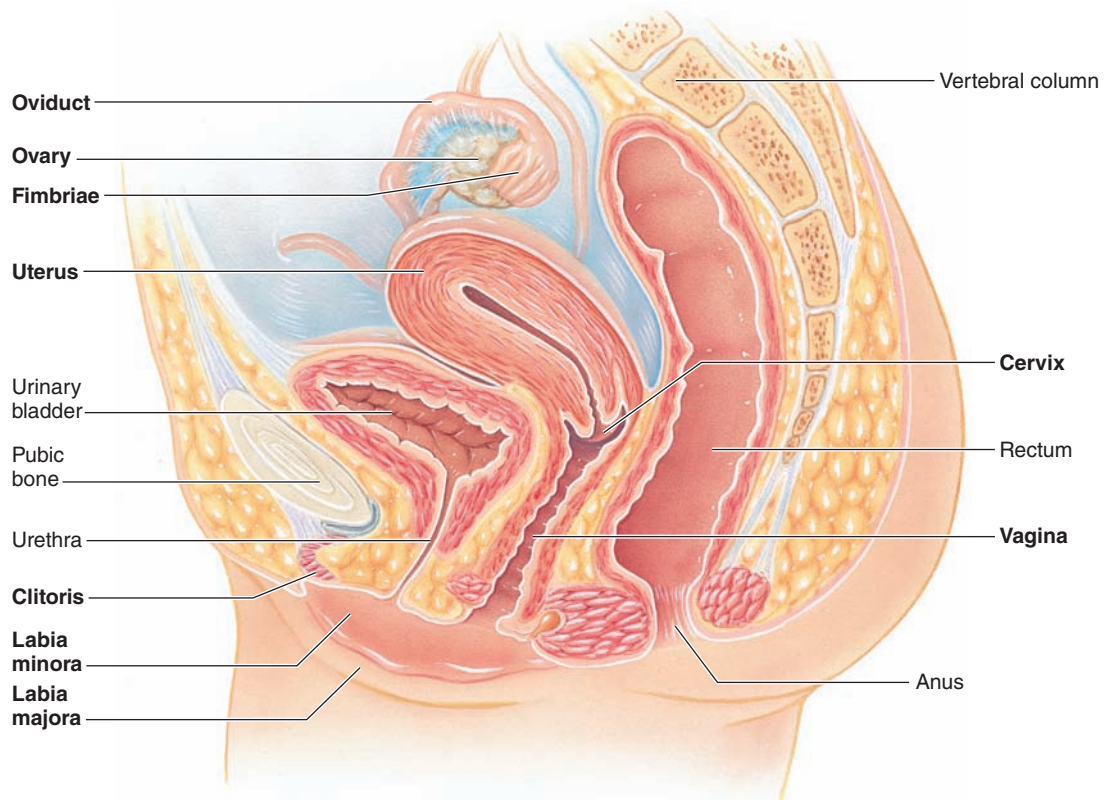
been derived from the individual's mother and the other member from the father. Gametes (that is, sperm and eggs) contain only one member of each homologous pair for a total of 23 chromosomes (the **haploid number**).

### Gametogenesis is accomplished by meiosis, resulting in genetically unique sperm and ova.

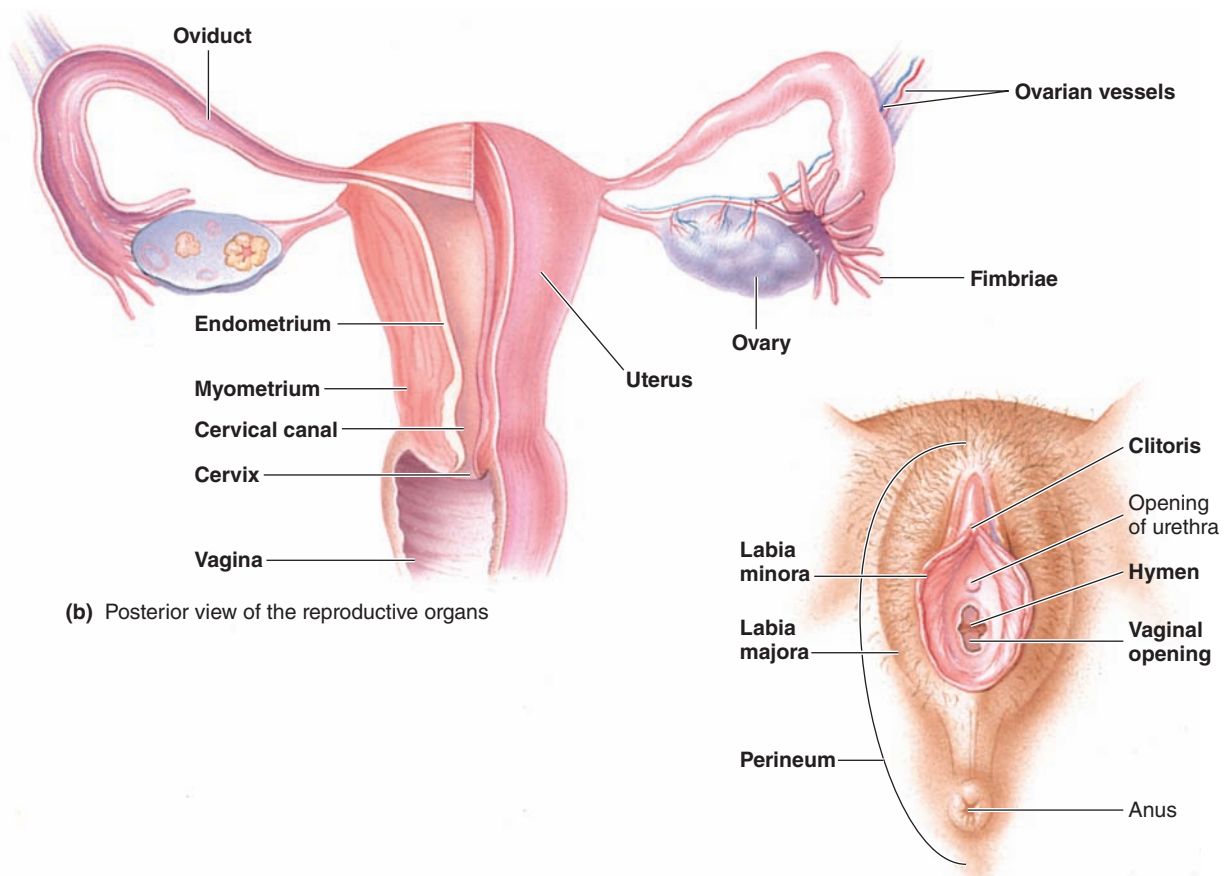
Most cells in the human body have the ability to reproduce themselves, a process important in growth, replacement, and repair of tissues. Cell division involves two components: division of the nucleus and division of the cytoplasm. Nuclear division in somatic cells is accomplished by **mitosis**. In mitosis, the chromosomes replicate (make duplicate copies of themselves); then, the identical chromosomes are separated so that a complete set of genetic information (that is, a diploid number of

chromosomes) is distributed to each of the two new daughter cells. Nuclear division in the specialized case of gametes is accomplished by **meiosis**, in which only a half set of genetic information (that is, a haploid number of chromosomes) is distributed to each of four new daughter cells (see p. A-27).

During meiosis, a specialized diploid germ cell undergoes one chromosome replication followed by two nuclear divisions. In the first meiotic division, the replicated chromosomes do not separate into two individual, identical chromosomes but remain joined. The doubled chromosomes sort themselves into homologous pairs, and the pairs separate so that each of two daughter cells receives a half set of doubled chromosomes. During the second meiotic division, the doubled chromosomes within each of the two daughter cells separate and are distributed into two cells, yielding four daughter cells, each containing a half set of chromosomes, a single member of each pair. During this process,



(a) The pelvis in sagittal section



(b) Posterior view of the reproductive organs

(c) Perineal view of the external genitalia

● **FIGURE 18-2** The female reproductive system.

the maternally and paternally derived chromosomes of each homologous pair are distributed to the daughter cells in random assortments containing one member of each chromosome pair without regard for its original derivation. That is, not all of the mother-derived chromosomes go to one daughter cell and the father-derived chromosomes to the other cell. More than 8 million ( $2^{23}$ ) mixtures of the 23 paternal and maternal chromosomes are possible. This genetic mixing provides novel combinations of chromosomes. Crossing-over contributes even further to genetic diversity. *Crossing-over* refers to the physical exchange of chromosome material between the homologous pairs prior to their separation during the first meiotic division (see p. A-27).

Thus, sperm and ova each have a unique haploid number of chromosomes. When fertilization takes place, a sperm and ovum fuse to form the start of a new individual with 46 chromosomes, one member of each chromosomal pair having been inherited from the mother and the other member from the father.

### The sex of an individual is determined by the combination of sex chromosomes.

Whether individuals are destined to be males or females is a genetic phenomenon determined by the sex chromosomes they possess. As the 23 chromosome pairs are separated during meiosis, each sperm or ovum receives only one member of each chromosome pair. Of the chromosome pairs, 22 are **autosomal chromosomes** that code for general human characteristics, as well as for specific traits such as eye color. The remaining pair of chromosomes consists of the **sex chromosomes**, of which there are two genetically different types—a larger **X chromosome** and a smaller **Y chromosome**.

**Sex determination** depends on the combination of sex chromosomes: **Genetic males** have both an X and a Y sex chromosome; **genetic females** have two X sex chromosomes. Thus, the genetic difference responsible for all the anatomic and functional distinctions between males and females is the single Y chromosome. Males have it; females do not.

As a result of meiosis during gametogenesis, all chromosome pairs are separated so that each daughter cell contains only one member of each pair, including the sex chromosome pair. When the XY sex chromosome pair separates during sperm formation, half the sperm receive an X chromosome and the other half a Y chromosome. In contrast, during oogenesis, every ovum receives an X chromosome because separation of the XX sex chromosome pair yields only X chromosomes. During fertilization, combination of an X-bearing sperm with an X-bearing ovum produces a genetic female, XX, whereas union of a Y-bearing sperm with an X-bearing ovum results in a genetic male, XY. Thus, genetic sex is determined at the time of conception and depends on which type of sex chromosome is contained within the fertilizing sperm.

### Sexual differentiation along male or female lines depends on the presence or absence of masculinizing determinants.

Differences between males and females exist at three sex levels: genetic, gonadal, and phenotypic (anatomic) (● Figure 18-3).

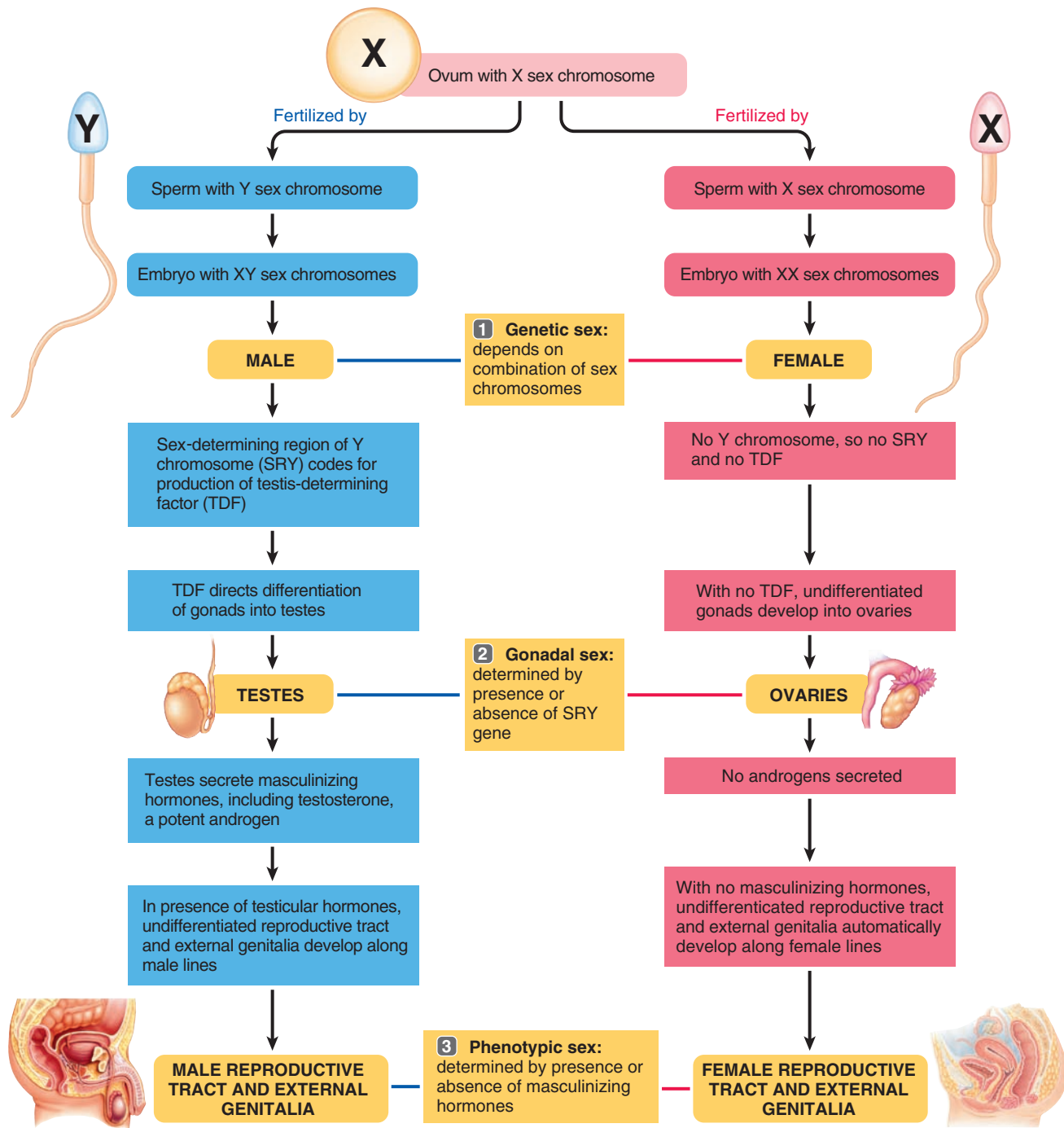
**GENETIC AND GONADAL SEX** **Genetic sex**, which depends on the combination of sex chromosomes at the time of conception, in turn determines **gonadal sex**, that is, whether testes or ovaries develop. The presence or absence of a Y chromosome determines gonadal differentiation. For the first month and a half of gestation, all embryos have the potential to differentiate along either male or female lines because the developing reproductive tissues of both sexes are identical and indifferent. Gonadal specificity appears during the seventh week of intrauterine life when the indifferent gonadal tissue of a genetic male begins to differentiate into testes under the influence of the **sex-determining region of the Y chromosome (SRY)**, the single gene responsible for sex determination. This gene triggers a chain of reactions that leads to physical development of a male. SRY “masculinizes” the gonads by coding for production of **testis-determining factor (TDF)** within primitive gonadal cells. TDF directs a series of events that leads to differentiation of the gonads into testes. Because genetic females lack the SRY gene and consequently do not produce TDF, their gonadal cells never receive a signal for testes formation, so by default during the ninth week the undifferentiated gonadal tissue starts developing into ovaries instead.

**PHENOTYPIC SEX** **Phenotypic sex**, the apparent anatomic sex of an individual, is hormonally mediated and depends on the genetically determined gonadal sex. The term **sexual differentiation** refers to the embryonic development of the external genitalia and reproductive tract along either male or female lines. As with the undifferentiated gonads, embryos of both sexes have the potential to develop male or female external genitalia and reproductive tracts. For example, the same embryonic tissue can develop into either a penis or a clitoris. Differentiation into a male-type reproductive system is induced by androgens, which are masculinizing hormones secreted by the developing testes. Testosterone is the most potent androgen. The absence of these testicular hormones in female fetuses results in the development of a female-type reproductive system. By 10 to 12 weeks of gestation, the sexes can easily be distinguished by the anatomic appearance of the external genitalia.

Note that the undifferentiated embryonic reproductive tissue passively develops into a female structure unless actively acted on by masculinizing factors. In the absence of male testicular hormones, a female reproductive tract and external genitalia develop regardless of the genetic sex of the individual. For feminization of the fetal genital tissue, ovaries do not even need to be present. Such a control pattern for determining sexual differentiation is appropriate, considering that fetuses of both sexes are exposed to high concentrations of female sex hormones throughout gestation. If female sex hormones influenced the development of the reproductive tract and external genitalia, all fetuses would be feminized.



**ERRORS IN SEXUAL DIFFERENTIATION** Genetic sex and phenotypic sex are usually compatible; that is, a genetic male anatomically appears to be a male and functions as a male, and the same compatibility holds true for females. Occasionally, however, discrepancies occur



(a) Male sex determination and sexual differentiation

(b) Female sex determination and sexual differentiation

● **FIGURE 18-3** Sex determination and sexual differentiation.

between genetic and anatomic sexes because of errors in sexual differentiation, as the following examples illustrate:

- Genetic males whose target cells lack receptors for testosterone are feminized (develop into an apparent anatomic female), even though their testes secrete adequate testosterone (*testicular feminization syndrome*; see p. 498).
- The adrenal gland normally secretes a weak androgen, *dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)*, in insufficient quantities to masculinize females. However, pathologically excessive secretion of

this hormone in a genetically female fetus during critical developmental stages imposes differentiation of the reproductive tract and genitalia along male lines (*adrenogenital syndrome*; see p. 521).

Sometimes these discrepancies between genetic sex and apparent anatomic sex are not recognized until puberty, when the discovery produces a psychologically traumatic gender identity crisis. For example, a masculinized genetic female with ovaries but with male-type external genitalia may be reared as a

boy until puberty, when breast enlargement (caused by estrogen secretion by the awakening ovaries) and lack of beard growth (caused by lack of testosterone secretion in the absence of testes) signal an apparent problem. Therefore, it is important to diagnose any problems in sexual differentiation in infancy. Once a sex has been assigned, it can be reinforced, if necessary, with surgical and hormonal treatment so that psychosexual development can proceed as normally as possible. Less dramatic cases of inappropriate sexual differentiation often appear as sterility problems.

## Male Reproductive Physiology

In the embryo, the testes develop from the gonadal ridge located at the rear of the abdominal cavity. In the last months of fetal life, they begin a slow descent, passing out of the abdominal cavity through the **inguinal canal** into the scrotum, one testis dropping into each pocket of the scrotal sac. Testosterone from the fetal testes induces descent of the testes into the scrotum. Although the time varies somewhat, descent is usually complete by the seventh month of gestation. As a result, descent is complete in 98% of full-term baby boys.



However, in a substantial percentage of premature male infants, the testes are still within the inguinal canal at birth. In most instances of retained testes, descent occurs naturally before puberty or can be encouraged with administration of testosterone. Rarely, a testis remains undescended into adulthood, a condition known as **cryptorchidism** (*crypt* means “hidden”; *orchid* means “testis”).

### The scrotal location of the testes provides a cooler environment essential for spermatogenesis.

The temperature within the scrotum averages several degrees Celsius less than normal body (core) temperature. Descent of the testes into this cooler environment is essential because spermatogenesis is temperature sensitive and cannot occur at normal body temperature. Therefore, a cryptorchid is unable to produce viable sperm.

The position of the scrotum in relation to the abdominal cavity can be varied by a spinal reflex mechanism that plays an important role in regulating testicular temperature. Reflex contraction of scrotal muscles on exposure to a cold environment raises the scrotal sac to bring the testes closer to the warmer abdomen. Conversely, relaxation of the muscles on exposure to heat permits the scrotal sac to become more pendulous, moving the testes farther from the warm core of the body.

### The testicular Leydig cells secrete masculinizing testosterone.

The testes perform the dual function of producing sperm and secreting testosterone. About 80% of the testicular mass consists of highly coiled **seminiferous tubules**, within which spermatogenesis takes place (● Figure 18-4a). The endocrine cells that produce testosterone—the **Leydig**, or **interstitial**, cells—lie in the connective tissue (interstitial tissue) between the

seminiferous tubules (● Figure 18-4b). Thus, the portions of the testes that produce sperm and secrete testosterone are structurally and functionally distinct.

Testosterone is a steroid hormone derived from a cholesterol precursor molecule, as are the female sex hormones, estrogen and progesterone. Once produced, some of the testosterone is secreted into the blood, where it is transported to its target sites of action. A substantial portion of the newly synthesized testosterone goes into the lumen of the seminiferous tubules, where it plays an important role in sperm production.

Most of testosterone’s actions ultimately function to ensure delivery of sperm to the female. The effects of testosterone can be grouped into five categories: (1) effects on the reproductive system before birth, (2) effects on sex-specific tissues after birth, (3) other reproduction-related effects, (4) effects on secondary sexual characteristics, and (5) nonreproductive actions (▲ Table 18-1).

**EFFECTS ON THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM BEFORE BIRTH** Before birth, testosterone secretion by the Leydig cells of the fetal testes masculinizes the reproductive tract and external genitalia and promotes descent of the testes into the scrotum, as already described. After birth, testosterone secretion ceases, and the testes and remainder of the reproductive system remain small and nonfunctional until puberty.

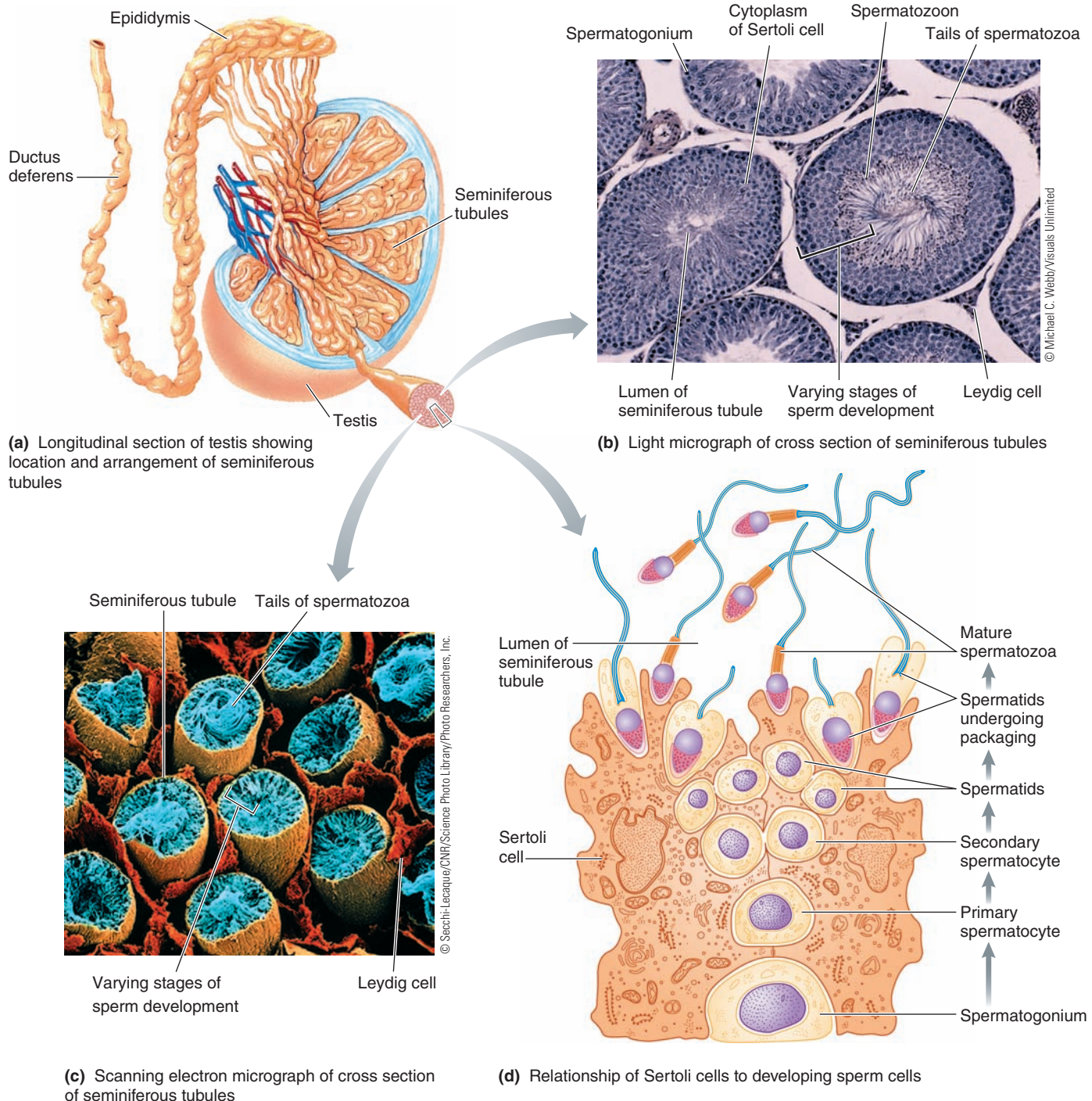
**EFFECTS ON SEX-SPECIFIC TISSUES AFTER BIRTH** **Puberty** is the period of arousal and maturation of the previously nonfunctional reproductive system, culminating in sexual maturity and the ability to reproduce. It usually begins sometime between the ages of 10 and 14; on average, it begins about 2 years earlier in females than in males. Usually lasting 3 to 5 years, puberty encompasses a complex sequence of endocrine, physical, and behavioral events. **Adolescence** is a broader concept that refers to the entire transition period between childhood and adulthood, not just to sexual maturation. In both sexes, the reproductive changes that take place during puberty are (1) enlargement and maturation of gonads, (2) development of secondary sexual characteristics, (3) achievement of fertility (gamete production), (4) growth and maturation of the reproductive tract, and (5) attainment of libido (sex drive).

At puberty in males, the Leydig cells start secreting testosterone again. Testosterone is responsible for growth and maturation of the entire male reproductive system. Under the influence of the pubertal surge in testosterone secretion, the testes enlarge and start producing sperm for the first time, the accessory sex glands enlarge and become secretory, and the penis and scrotum enlarge.

Ongoing testosterone secretion is essential for spermatogenesis and for maintaining a mature male reproductive tract throughout adulthood. Once initiated at puberty, testosterone secretion and spermatogenesis occur continuously throughout the male’s life.

**OTHER REPRODUCTION-RELATED EFFECTS** Testosterone governs the development of sexual libido at puberty and helps maintain the sex drive in the adult male. Stimulation of this behavior by testosterone is important for facilitating delivery of sperm to





● **FIGURE 18-4 Anatomy of testis depicting the site of spermatogenesis.** (a) The seminiferous tubules are the sperm-producing portion of the testis. (b) The undifferentiated germ cells (the spermatogonia) lie in the periphery of the tubule, and the differentiated spermatozoa are in the lumen, with the various stages of sperm development between. (c) Note the presence of the highly differentiated spermatozoa (recognizable by their tails) in the lumen of the seminiferous tubules. (d) Relationship of the Sertoli cells to the developing sperm cells.

females. In humans, libido is also influenced by many interacting social and emotional factors.

In another reproduction-related function, testosterone participates in the normal negative-feedback control of gonadotropin hormone secretion by the anterior pituitary, a topic covered more thoroughly later.

**EFFECTS ON SECONDARY SEXUAL CHARACTERISTICS** All male secondary sexual characteristics depend on testosterone for their development and maintenance. These nonreproductive male characteristics induced by testosterone include (1) the male pattern of hair growth (for example, beard and chest hair), (2) a deep voice caused by enlargement of the larynx and thick-

## ▲ Table 18-1 Effects of Testosterone

### Effects before Birth

Masculinizes the reproductive tract and external genitalia  
Promotes descent of the testes into the scrotum

### Effects on Sex-Specific Tissues after Birth

Promotes growth and maturation of the reproductive system at puberty

Is essential for spermatogenesis

Maintains the reproductive tract throughout adulthood

### Other Reproduction-Related Effects

Develops the sex drive at puberty

Controls gonadotropin hormone secretion

### Effects on Secondary Sexual Characteristics

Induces the male pattern of hair growth (e.g., beard)

Causes the voice to deepen because vocal folds thicken

Promotes muscle growth responsible for the male body configuration

### Nonreproductive Actions

Exerts a protein anabolic effect

Promotes bone growth at puberty

Closes the epiphyseal plates after being converted to estrogen by aromatase

May induce aggressive behavior

ening of the vocal folds, (3) thick skin, and (4) the male body configuration (for example, broad shoulders and heavy arm and leg musculature) as a result of protein deposition.

**NONREPRODUCTIVE ACTIONS** Testosterone exerts several important effects not related to reproduction. It has a general protein anabolic (synthesis) effect and promotes bone growth, thus contributing to the more muscular physique of males and to the pubertal growth spurt. Ironically, testosterone not only stimulates bone growth but also eventually prevents further growth by sealing the growing ends of the long bones (that is, ossifying, or “closing,” the epiphyseal plates; see p. 508).

In animals, testosterone induces aggressive behavior, but whether it influences human behavior other than in the area of sexual behavior is an unresolved issue. Even though some athletes and bodybuilders who (illegally) take testosterone-like anabolic androgenic steroids to increase muscle mass have been observed to display more aggressive behavior (see p. 213), it is unclear to what extent general behavioral differences between the sexes are hormonally induced or result from social conditioning.

**CONVERSION OF TESTOSTERONE TO ESTROGEN IN MALES** Although testosterone is classically considered the male sex hormone and estrogen a female sex hormone, the distinctions are not as clear-cut as once thought. In addition to the small amount of estrogen produced by the adrenal cortex (see p. 520), a portion of the testosterone secreted by the testes is converted to estrogen

outside the testes by the enzyme **aromatase**, which is widely distributed but most abundant in adipose tissue. Because of this conversion, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish effects of testosterone itself and those of testosterone-turned-estrogen inside cells. For example, scientists recently learned that closure of the epiphyseal plates in males is induced not by testosterone per se but by testosterone turned into estrogen by aromatization. Estrogen receptors have been identified in the testes, prostate, bone, and elsewhere in males. The depth, breadth, and mechanisms of action of estrogen in males are only beginning to be explored. (Likewise, in addition to the weak androgenic hormone DHEA produced by the adrenal cortex in both sexes, the ovaries in females secrete a small amount of testosterone, the functions of which remain unclear.)

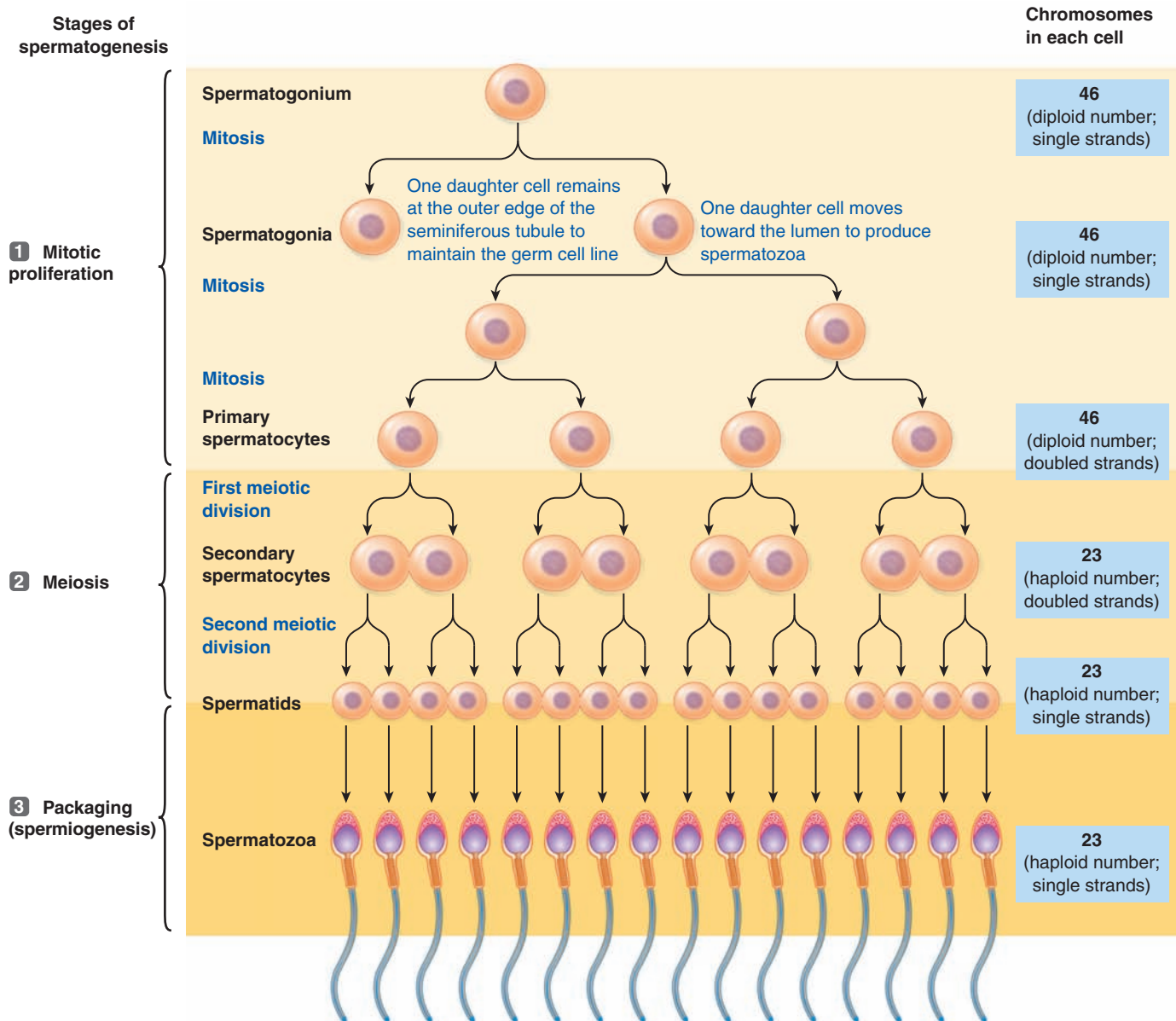
We now shift our attention from testosterone secretion to the other function of the testes—sperm production.

### Spermatogenesis yields an abundance of highly specialized, mobile sperm.

About 250 m (800 ft) of sperm-producing seminiferous tubules are packed within the testes (● Figure 18-4a, b, and c). Two functionally important cell types are present in these tubules: *germ cells*, most of which are in various stages of sperm development, and *Sertoli cells*, which provide crucial support for spermatogenesis (● Figure 18-4b and d). **Spermatogenesis** is a complex process by which relatively undifferentiated primordial (primitive or initial) germ cells, the **spermatogonia** (each of which contains a diploid complement of 46 chromosomes), proliferate and are converted into extremely specialized, motile spermatozoa (sperm), each bearing a randomly distributed haploid set of 23 chromosomes.

Microscopic examination of a seminiferous tubule reveals layers of germ cells in an anatomic progression of sperm development, starting with the least differentiated in the outer layer and moving inward through various stages of division to the lumen, where the highly differentiated sperm are ready for exit from the testis (● Figure 18-4b, c, and d). Spermatogenesis takes 64 days for development from a spermatogonium to a mature sperm. Up to several hundred million sperm may reach maturity daily. Spermatogenesis encompasses three major stages: *mitotic proliferation*, *meiosis*, and *packaging* (● Figure 18-5).

**MITOTIC PROLIFERATION** Spermatogonia located in the outermost layer of the tubule continuously divide mitotically, with all new cells bearing the full complement of 46 chromosomes identical to those of the parent cell. Such proliferation provides a continual supply of new germ cells. Following mitotic division of a spermatogonium, one of the daughter cells remains at the outer edge of the tubule as an undifferentiated spermatogonium, thus maintaining the germ-cell line. The other daughter cell starts moving toward the lumen while undergoing the various steps required to form sperm, which will be released into the lumen. In humans, the sperm-forming daughter cell divides mitotically twice more to form four identical primary **spermatocytes**. After the last mitotic division, the primary



● **FIGURE 18-5** Spermatogenesis.

spermatocytes enter a resting phase during which the chromosomes are duplicated and the doubled strands remain together in preparation for the first meiotic division.

**MEIOSIS** During meiosis, each primary spermatocyte (with a diploid number of 46 doubled chromosomes) forms two **secondary spermatocytes** (each with a haploid number of 23 doubled chromosomes) during the first meiotic division, finally yielding four **spermatids** (each with 23 single chromosomes) as a result of the second meiotic division.

No further division takes place beyond this stage of spermatogenesis. Each spermatid is remodeled into a single spermatozoon. Because each sperm-producing spermatogonium mitotically produces four primary spermatocytes and each primary spermatocyte meiotically yields four spermatids (spermatozoa-to-be), the spermatogenic sequence in humans can theoretically produce 16 spermatozoa each time a spermatogonium initiates

this process. Usually, however, some cells are lost at various stages, so the efficiency of productivity is rarely this high.

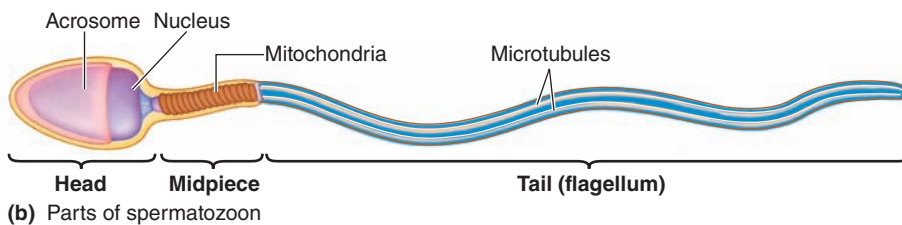
**PACKAGING** Even after meiosis, spermatids still resemble undifferentiated spermatogonia structurally, except for their half complement of chromosomes. Production of extremely specialized, mobile spermatozoa from spermatids requires extensive remodeling, or **packaging**, of cell elements, a process alternatively known as **spermiogenesis**. Sperm are essentially “stripped-down” cells in which most of the cytosol and any organelles not needed for delivering the sperm’s genetic information to an ovum have been extruded. Thus, sperm travel lightly, taking with them only the bare essentials to accomplish fertilization.

A **spermatozoon** has three parts (● Figure 18-6): a head capped with an acrosome, a midpiece, and a tail. The **head** consists primarily of the nucleus, which contains the sperm’s complement of genetic information. The **acrosome**, an enzyme-



David Phillips/Visuals Unlimited

(a) Photomicrograph of human spermatozoa



(b) Parts of spermatozoon

● **FIGURE 18-6 Anatomy of a spermatozoon.** (a) A phase-contrast photomicrograph of human spermatozoa. (b) A spermatozoon has three functional parts: a head with its acrosome “cap,” a midpiece, and a tail.

filled vesicle that caps the tip of the head, is used as an “enzymatic drill” for penetrating the ovum. The acrosomal enzymes remain inactive until the sperm contacts an egg, at which time the enzymes are released. Mobility for the spermatozoon is provided by a long, whiplike **tail** (a flagellum; see p. 36), movement of which is powered by energy generated by the mitochondria concentrated within the **midpiece** of the sperm.

### Throughout their development, sperm remain intimately associated with Sertoli cells.

The seminiferous tubules house the **Sertoli cells**, which are epithelial cells, in addition to the developing sperm cells. The Sertoli cells lie side by side and form a ring around the tubule lumen, with each Sertoli cell spanning the entire distance from the outer surface of the seminiferous tubule to the fluid-filled lumen. Developing sperm cells are tucked between adjacent Sertoli cells, with spermatogonia lying at the outer perimeter of the tubule (see ● Figure 18-4b and d). During spermatogenesis, developing sperm cells arising from spermatogonial mitotic activity migrate toward the lumen in close association with the adjacent Sertoli cells, undergoing their further divisions during this migration. The cytoplasm of the Sertoli cells envelops the migrating sperm cells, which remain buried within these cytoplasmic recesses throughout their development.

Sertoli cells perform the following functions essential for spermatogenesis:

1. The Sertoli cells form a **blood–testes barrier** that prevents blood-borne substances from passing between the cells to gain entry to the lumen of the seminiferous tubule. Because of this barrier, only selected molecules that can pass through the Sertoli cells reach the intratubular fluid. As a result, the composition of the intratubular fluid varies considerably from that of the blood. The unique composition of this fluid that bathes the germ cells is critical for later stages of sperm development. The blood–testes barrier also prevents the antibody-producing cells in the ECF from reaching the tubular sperm factory, thus preventing the formation of antibodies against the highly differentiated spermatozoa.
2. Because the secluded developing sperm cells do not have direct access to blood-borne nutrients, the “nurse” Sertoli cells provide nourishment for them.
3. The Sertoli cells have an important phagocytic function. They engulf the cytoplasm extruded from the spermatids during their remodeling, and they destroy defective germ cells that fail to successfully complete all stages of spermatogenesis.

4. The Sertoli cells secrete into the lumen **seminiferous tubule fluid**, which “flushes” the released sperm from the tubule into the epididymis for storage and further processing.

5. An important component of this Sertoli secretion is **androgen-binding protein**. As the name implies, this protein binds androgens (that is, testosterone), thus maintaining a very high level of this hormone within the seminiferous tubule lumen. Testosterone is 100 times more concentrated in the seminiferous tubule fluid than in the blood. This high local concentration of testosterone is essential for sustaining sperm production. Androgen-binding protein is necessary to retain testosterone within the lumen because this steroid hormone is lipid soluble and could easily diffuse across the plasma membranes and leave the lumen. Testosterone itself stimulates production of androgen-binding protein.

6. The Sertoli cells are the site of action for control of spermatogenesis by both testosterone and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). The Sertoli cells themselves release another hormone, *inhibin*, which acts in negative-feedback fashion to regulate FSH secretion.

### LH and FSH from the anterior pituitary control testosterone secretion and spermatogenesis.

The testes are controlled by the two gonadotropic hormones secreted by the anterior pituitary, **luteinizing hormone (LH)** and **follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)**, which are named for their functions in females (see p. 502).

**FEEDBACK CONTROL OF TESTICULAR FUNCTION** LH and FSH act on separate components of the testes (● Figure 18-7). LH acts on the Leydig cells to regulate testosterone secretion. FSH acts on the Sertoli cells to enhance spermatogenesis. Secretion of both LH and FSH from the anterior pituitary is stimulated in turn by a single hypothalamic hormone, **gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH)** (see p. 504). However, LH and FSH are segregated to a large extent into separate secretory vesicles in the gonadotrope and are not secreted in equal amounts because other regulatory factors influence how much of each gonadotropin is secreted.

Two factors—*testosterone* and *inhibin*—differentially influence the secretory rate of LH and FSH. Testosterone, the product of LH stimulation of the Leydig cells, acts in negative-feedback fashion to inhibit LH secretion in two ways. The predominant negative-feedback effect of testosterone is to decrease GnRH release by acting on the hypothalamus, thus indirectly decreasing both LH and FSH release by the anterior pituitary. In addition, testosterone acts directly on the anterior pituitary to selectively reduce LH secretion.

The testicular inhibitory signal specifically directed at controlling FSH secretion is the peptide hormone **inhibin**, which is secreted by the Sertoli cells. Inhibin acts directly on the anterior pituitary to selectively inhibit FSH secretion. This feedback inhibition of FSH by a Sertoli cell product is appropriate, because FSH stimulates spermatogenesis by acting on the Sertoli cells.

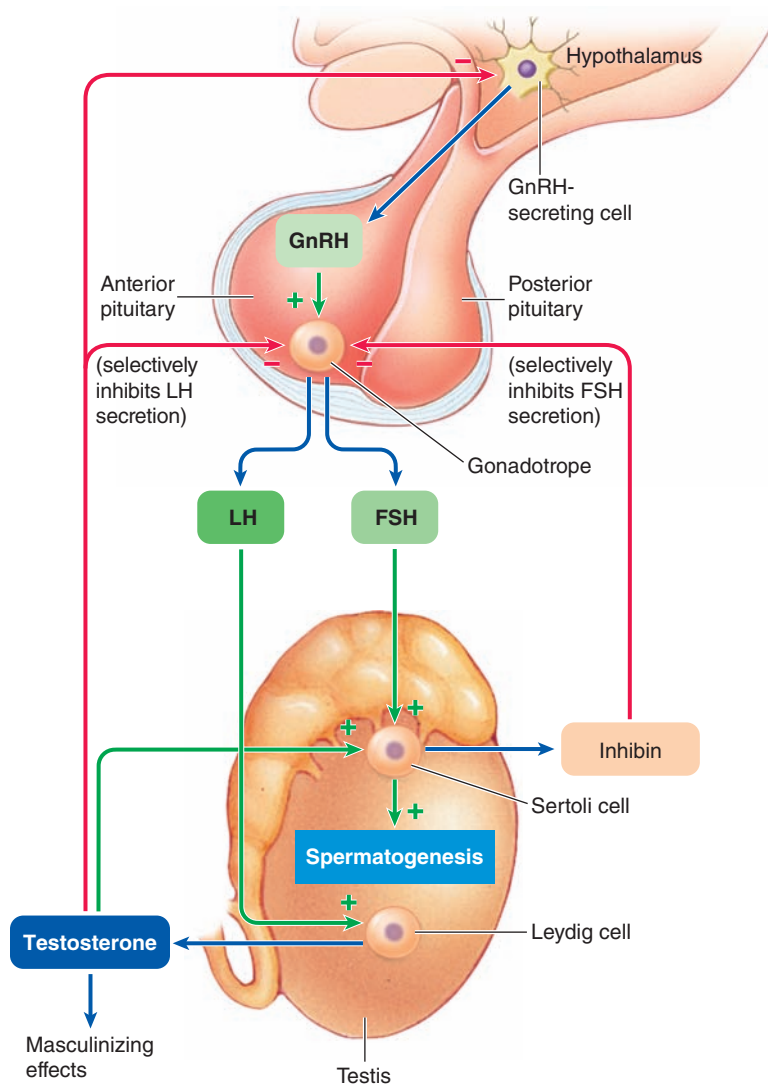
**ROLES OF TESTOSTERONE AND FSH IN SPERMATOGENESIS** Both testosterone and FSH play critical roles in controlling spermatogenesis, each exerting its effect by acting on the Sertoli cells. Testosterone is essential for both mitosis and meiosis of the germ cells, whereas FSH is needed for spermatid remodeling. Testosterone concentration is much higher in the testes than in the blood because a substantial portion of this hormone produced locally by the Leydig cells is retained in the intratubular fluid complexed with androgen-binding protein secreted by the Sertoli cells. Only this high concentration of testicular testosterone is adequate to sustain sperm production.

### GnRH activity increases at puberty.

Even though the fetal testes secrete testosterone, which directs masculine development of the reproductive system, after birth the testes become dormant until puberty. During the prepubertal period, LH and FSH are not secreted at adequate levels to stimulate any significant testicular activity. The prepubertal delay in the onset of reproductive capability allows time for the individual to mature physically (although not necessarily psychologically) enough to handle child rearing. (This physical maturation is especially important in the female, whose body must support the developing fetus.)

During the prepubertal period, GnRH activity is inhibited. The pubertal process is initiated by an increase in GnRH activity sometime between 8 and 12 years of age. Early in puberty, GnRH secretion occurs only at night, causing a brief nocturnal increase in LH secretion and accordingly, testosterone secretion. The extent of GnRH secretion gradually increases as puberty progresses until the adult pattern of GnRH, FSH, LH, and testosterone secretion is established. Under the influence of the rising levels of testosterone during puberty, the physical changes that encompass the secondary sexual characteristics and reproductive maturation become evident.

The factors responsible for initiating puberty in humans remain unclear. The leading proposal focuses on a potential role for the hormone *melatonin*, which is secreted by the *pineal gland* within the brain (see p. 510). Melatonin, whose secretion decreases during exposure to the light and increases during exposure to the dark, has an antigonadotropic effect in many species. Light striking the eyes inhibits the nerve pathways that stimulate melatonin secretion. In many seasonally breeding species, the overall decrease in melatonin secretion in connec-



● **FIGURE 18-7** Control of testicular function.

tion with longer days and shorter nights initiates the mating season. Some researchers suggest that an observed reduction in the overall rate of melatonin secretion at puberty in humans—particularly during the night, when the peaks in GnRH secretion first occur—is the trigger for the onset of puberty.

Having completed our discussion of testicular function, we now shift to the roles of the other components of the male reproductive system.

### The reproductive tract stores and concentrates sperm and increases their fertility.

The remainder of the male reproductive system (besides the testes) is designed to deliver sperm to the female reproductive tract. Essentially, it consists of (1) a tortuous pathway of tubes (the reproductive tract), which transports sperm from the testes to outside the body; (2) several accessory sex glands, which contribute secretions important to the viability and motility of the sperm; and (3) the penis, which is designed to penetrate and deposit the sperm within the vagina of the female. We examine each of these parts in greater detail, beginning with the reproductive tract.

**COMPONENTS OF THE MALE REPRODUCTIVE TRACT** A comma-shaped **epididymis** is loosely attached to the rear surface of each testis (see ● Figures 18-1, p. 547, and 18-4a, p. 552). After sperm are produced in the seminiferous tubules, they are swept into the epididymis as a result of the pressure created by the continual secretion of tubular fluid by the Sertoli cells. The epididymal ducts from each testis converge to form a large, thick-walled, muscular duct called the **ductus (vas) deferens**. The ductus deferens from each testis passes up out of the scrotal sac and runs back through the inguinal canal into the abdominal cavity, where it eventually empties into the urethra at the neck of the bladder (see ● Figure 18-1). The urethra carries sperm out of the penis during ejaculation, the forceful expulsion of semen from the body.

**FUNCTIONS OF THE EPIDIDYMIS AND DUCTUS DEFERENS** These ducts perform several important functions. The epididymis and ductus deferens serve as the exit route for sperm from the testis. As they leave the testis, sperm are not capable of either moving or fertilizing. They gain both capabilities during their passage through the epididymis. This maturational process is stimulated by the testosterone retained within the tubular fluid bound to androgen-binding protein. The capacity of sperm to fertilize is further enhanced by exposure to secretions of the female reproductive tract. The epididymis also concentrates the sperm 100-fold by absorbing most of the fluid that enters from the seminiferous tubules. The maturing sperm are slowly moved through the epididymis into the ductus deferens by rhythmic contractions of the smooth muscle in the walls of these tubes.

The ductus deferens is an important site for sperm storage. Because the tightly packed sperm are relatively inactive and their metabolic needs are accordingly low, they can be stored in the ductus deferens for up to 2 months, even though they have no nutrient blood supply and are nourished only by simple sugars present in the tubular secretions.



**VASECTOMY** In a **vasectomy**, a common sterilization procedure in males, a small segment of each ductus deferens (alias vas deferens, hence the term *vasectomy*) is surgically removed after it passes from the testis but before it enters the inguinal canal, thus blocking the exit of sperm from the testes. Sperm that build up behind the tied-off testicular end of the severed ductus are removed by phagocytosis. Although this procedure blocks sperm exit, it does not interfere with testosterone activity, because the Leydig cells secrete testosterone into the blood, not through the ductus deferens. Thus, testosterone-dependent masculinity or libido should not diminish after a vasectomy.

### The accessory sex glands contribute the bulk of the semen.

Several accessory sex glands—the seminal vesicles and prostate—empty their secretions into the duct system before it joins the urethra (see ● Figure 18-1). A pair of saclike *seminal vesicles* empties into the last portion of the two ductus deferens, one on each side. The *prostate* is a large single gland that completely surrounds the urethra. Another pair of accessory sex glands, the *bulbourethral glands*, drains into the urethra after this canal has passed through the prostate and just before it enters the penis. Numerous mucus-secreting glands also lie along the length of the urethra.



In a significant number of men, the prostate enlarges in middle to older age (a condition called **benign prostatic hypertrophy**, or **BPH**). Difficulty in urinating often occurs as the enlarging prostate impinges on the portion of the urethra that passes through the prostate.

**SEMEN** During ejaculation, the accessory sex glands contribute secretions that provide support for the continuing viability of sperm inside the female reproductive tract. These secretions constitute the bulk of the **semen**, which is a mixture of accessory sex gland secretions, sperm, and mucus. Sperm make up only a small percentage of the total ejaculated fluid.

**FUNCTIONS OF THE MALE ACCESSORY SEX GLANDS** Although the accessory sex gland secretions are not absolutely essential for fertilization, they do greatly facilitate the process.

- The **seminal vesicles** (1) supply fructose, which is the primary energy source for ejaculated sperm; (2) secrete *prostaglandins*, which stimulate contractions of the smooth muscle in both the male and the female reproductive tracts, thereby helping transport sperm from their storage site in the male to the site of fertilization in the female oviduct; (3) provide about 60% of the semen volume, which helps wash the sperm into the urethra and dilutes the thick mass of sperm, enabling them to become mobile; and (4) secrete fibrinogen, a precursor of fibrin, which forms the meshwork of a clot (see p. 306).
- The **prostate gland** (1) secretes an alkaline fluid that neutralizes the acidic vaginal secretions, an important function because sperm are more viable in a slightly alkaline environment; (2) provides clotting enzymes; and (3) releases **prostate-specific antigen (PSA)**. The prostatic clotting enzymes act on

fibrinogen from the seminal vesicles to produce fibrin, which “clots” the semen, thus helping keep the ejaculated sperm in the female reproductive tract during withdrawal of the penis. Shortly thereafter, the seminal clot is broken down by PSA, a fibrin-degrading enzyme from the prostate, thus releasing mobile sperm within the female tract.



Because PSA is produced only in the prostate gland, measurement of PSA levels in the blood is used as one type of screening test for possible prostate cancer. Elevated levels of PSA in the blood are associated with prostate cancer, benign prostatic hypertrophy, or prostate infections.

■ During sexual arousal, the **bulbourethral glands** secrete a mucuslike substance that provides lubrication for sexual intercourse.

▲ Table 18-2 summarizes the locations and functions of the components of the male reproductive system.

Before turning to the act of delivering sperm to the female (sexual intercourse), we briefly digress to discuss the diverse roles of prostaglandins, which were first discovered in semen but are abundant throughout the body.

### Prostaglandins are ubiquitous, locally acting chemical messengers.

Although **prostaglandins** were first identified in the semen and were believed to be of prostate gland origin (hence their name, even though they are actually secreted into the semen by the seminal vesicles), their production and actions are not limited to the reproductive system. These chemical messengers are found throughout the body, because they are produced in virtually all

tissues from arachidonic acid, a fatty acid constituent of the phospholipids within the plasma membrane. On appropriate stimulation, arachidonic acid is split from the plasma membrane by a membrane-bound enzyme and then is converted into the appropriate prostaglandin, which acts as a paracrine locally within or near its site of production (see p. 92). After prostaglandins act, they are rapidly inactivated by local enzymes before they gain access to the blood; if they do reach the circulatory system, they are swiftly degraded on their first pass through the lungs so that they are not dispersed through the systemic arterial system.

Prostaglandins and other closely related arachidonic-acid derivatives—namely, *prostaglandins*, *thromboxanes*, and *leukotrienes*—are collectively known as **eicosanoids** and are among the most biologically active compounds known. Prostaglandins exert a bewildering variety of effects. Not only are slight variations in prostaglandin structure accompanied by profound differences in biological action, but the same prostaglandin molecule may even exert opposite effects in different tissues. Besides enhancing sperm transport in semen, these abundant chemical messengers are known or suspected to exert other actions in the female reproductive system and in the respiratory, urinary, digestive, nervous, and endocrine systems, in addition to affecting platelet aggregation, fat metabolism, and inflammation (▲ Table 18-3).



As prostaglandins’ various actions are better understood, new ways of manipulating them therapeutically are becoming available. A classic example is the use of aspirin, which blocks the conversion of arachidonic acid into prostaglandins, for fever reduction and pain relief. Prostaglandin action is also therapeutically inhibited in the treatment of premenstrual symptoms and menstrual cramping. Furthermore, specific prostaglandins have been medically

▲ **Table 18-2** Location and Functions of the Components of the Male Reproductive System

Component	Number and Location	Functions
<b>Testis</b>	Pair; located in the scrotum, a skin-covered sac suspended within the angle between the legs	Produces sperm Secretes testosterone
<b>Epididymis and Ductus Deferens</b>	Pair; one epididymis attached to the rear of each testis; one ductus deferens travels from each epididymis up out of the scrotal sac through the inguinal canal and empties into the urethra at the neck of the bladder	Serve as an exit route for sperm from the testis Serve as the site for maturation of sperm for motility and fertility Concentrate and store sperm
<b>Seminal Vesicle</b>	Pair; both empty into the last portion of the ductus deferens, one on each side	Supplies fructose to nourish ejaculated sperm Secretes prostaglandins that stimulate motility to help transport sperm within the male and female Provides the bulk of the semen Provides precursors for the clotting of semen
<b>Prostate Gland</b>	Single; completely surrounds the urethra at the neck of the bladder	Secretes an alkaline fluid that neutralizes the acidic vaginal secretions Triggers clotting of the semen to keep the sperm in the vagina during penis withdrawal
<b>Bulbourethral Gland</b>	Pair; both empty into the urethra, one on each side, just before the urethra enters the penis	Secretes mucus for lubrication

▲ **Table 18-3** Actions of Prostaglandins

Body System Affected	Actions of Prostaglandins
<b>Reproductive System</b>	Promote sperm transport by action on smooth muscle in the male and female reproductive tracts Play a role in ovulation Play an important role in menstruation Contribute to preparation of the maternal portion of the placenta Contribute to parturition
<b>Respiratory System</b>	Some promote bronchodilation, others bronchoconstriction
<b>Urinary System</b>	Increase renal blood flow Increase excretion of water and salt
<b>Digestive System</b>	Inhibit HCl secretion by the stomach Stimulate intestinal motility
<b>Nervous System</b>	Influence neurotransmitter release and action Act at the hypothalamic “thermostat” to increase body temperature Intensify the sensation of pain
<b>Endocrine System</b>	Enhance cortisol secretion Influence tissue responsiveness to hormones in many instances
<b>Circulatory System</b>	Influence platelet aggregation
<b>Fat Metabolism</b>	Inhibit fat breakdown
<b>Defense System</b>	Promote many aspects of inflammation, including development of fever

administered in such diverse situations as inducing labor, treating asthma, and treating gastric ulcers.

Next, before considering the female in greater detail, we examine the means by which males and females come together to accomplish reproduction.

## Sexual Intercourse Between Males and Females

Ultimately, union of male and female gametes to accomplish reproduction in humans requires delivery of sperm-laden semen into the female vagina through the **sex act**, also known as **sexual intercourse**, **coitus**, or **copulation**.

### The male sex act is characterized by erection and ejaculation.

The *male sex act* involves two components: (1) **erection**, or hardening of the normally flaccid penis to permit its entry into the vagina, and (2) **ejaculation**, or forceful expulsion of semen into the urethra and out of the penis (▲ Table 18-4). In addition to these strictly reproduction-related components, the **sexual response cycle** encompasses broader physiologic responses that can be divided into four phases:

1. The *excitement phase* includes erection and heightened sexual awareness.
2. The *plateau phase* is characterized by intensification of these responses, plus more generalized body responses, such as steadily increasing heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and muscle tension.
3. The *orgasmic phase* includes ejaculation, as well as other responses that culminate the mounting sexual excitement and are collectively experienced as an intense physical pleasure.
4. The *resolution phase* returns the genitalia and body systems to their prearousal state.

The human sexual response is a multicomponent experience that, in addition to these physiologic phenomena, encompasses emotional, psychological, and sociological factors. We examine only the physiologic aspects of sex.

### Erection is accomplished by penis vasocongestion.

Erection is accomplished by engorgement of the penis with blood. The penis consists almost entirely of **erectile tissue** made up of three columns of spongelike vascular spaces extending the length of the organ (see ● Figure 18-1, p. 547). In the absence

▲ **Table 18-4** Components of the Male Sex Act

Components of the Male Sex Act	Definition	Accomplished by
<b>Erection</b>	Hardening of the normally flaccid penis to permit its entry into the vagina	Engorgement of the penis erectile tissue with blood as a result of marked parasympathetically induced vasodilation of the penile arterioles and mechanical compression of the veins
<b>Ejaculation</b>		
<i>Emission Phase</i>	Emptying of sperm and accessory sex-gland secretions (semen) into the urethra	Sympathetically induced contraction of the smooth muscle in the walls of the reproductive ducts and accessory sex glands
<i>Expulsion Phase</i>	Forceful expulsion of semen from the penis	Motor neuron-induced contraction of the skeletal muscles at the base of the penis



of sexual excitement, the erectile tissues contain little blood, because the arterioles that supply these vascular chambers are constricted. As a result, the penis remains small and flaccid. During sexual arousal, these arterioles reflexly dilate and the erectile tissue fills with blood, causing the penis to enlarge both in length and in width and to become more rigid. The veins that drain the erectile tissue are mechanically compressed by this engorgement and expansion of the vascular spaces, reducing venous outflow and thereby contributing even further to the buildup of blood, or *vasocongestion*. These local vascular responses transform the penis into a hardened, elongated organ capable of penetrating the vagina.

**ERECTION REFLEX** The erection reflex is a spinal reflex triggered by stimulation of highly sensitive mechanoreceptors located in the *glans penis*, which caps the tip of the penis. An **erection-generating center** lies in the lower spinal cord. Tactile stimulation of the glans reflexly triggers, by means of this center, increased parasympathetic vasodilator activity and decreased sympathetic vasoconstrictor activity to the penile arterioles. The result is rapid, pronounced vasodilation of these arterioles and an ensuing erection (● Figure 18-8). As long as this spinal reflex arc remains intact, erection is possible even in men paralyzed by a higher spinal-cord injury.

This parasympathetically induced vasodilation is the major instance of direct parasympathetic control over blood vessel diameter in the body. Parasympathetic stimulation brings about relaxation of penile arteriolar smooth muscle by nitric oxide, which causes arteriolar vasodilation in response to local tissue changes elsewhere in the body (see p. 274). Arterioles are typically supplied only by sympathetic nerves, with increased sympathetic activity producing vasoconstriction and decreased sympathetic activity resulting in vasodilation (see p. 273). Concurrent parasympathetic stimulation and sympathetic inhibition of penile arterioles accomplish vasodilation more rapidly and in greater magnitude than is possible in other arterioles supplied only by sympathetic nerves. Through this efficient means of rapidly increasing blood flow into the penis, the penis can become completely erect in as little as 5 seconds. At the same time, parasympathetic impulses promote secretion of lubricating mucus from the bulbourethral glands and the urethral glands in preparation for coitus.

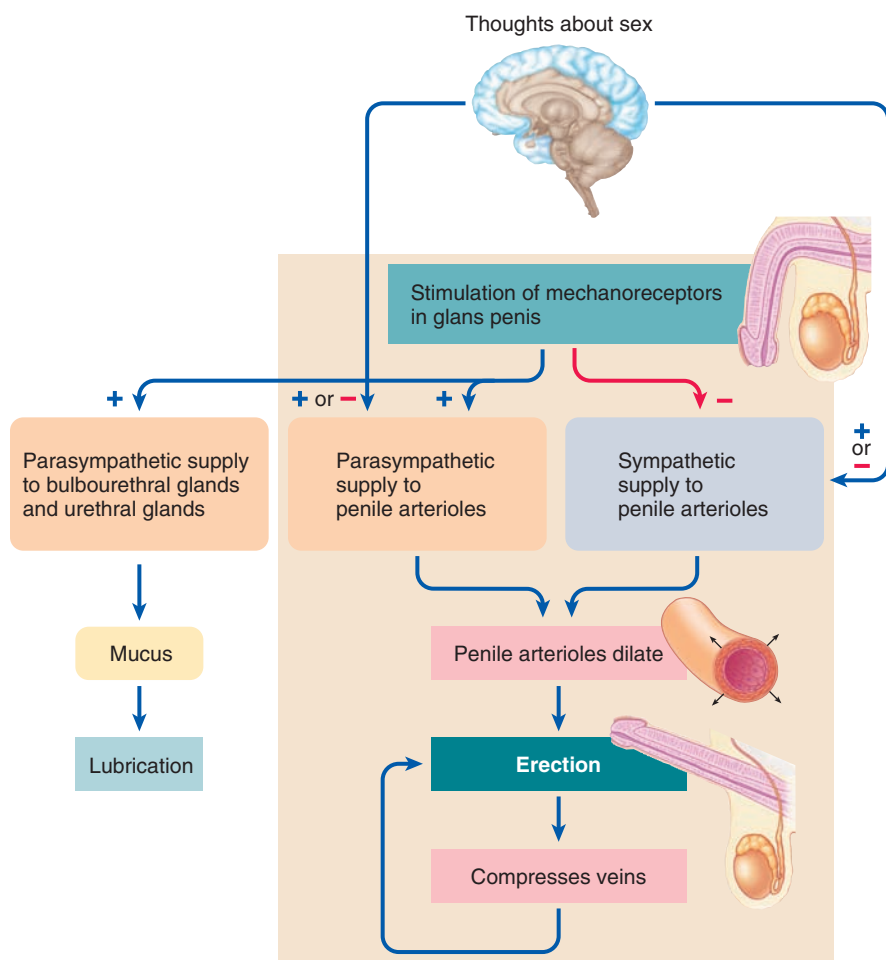
A flurry of recent research has led to the discovery of numerous regions throughout the brain that can influence the male sexual response. The erection-influencing brain sites appear extensively interconnected and function as a unified network to either facilitate or inhibit the basic spinal erection reflex, depending on the momentary circumstances. As an example of facilitation, psychic stimuli, such as viewing something sexually exciting, can induce an erection in the absence of tactile stimulation of the penis. In contrast, failure to achieve an erection despite appropriate stimulation may result from inhibition of the erection reflex by higher brain centers. Let us examine erectile dysfunction in more detail.



**ERECTILE DYSFUNCTION** A pattern of failing to achieve or maintain an erection suitable for sexual intercourse—**erectile dysfunction (ED)** or **impotence**—may be attributable to psychological or physical factors. An occasional episode of a failed erection does not constitute impotence, but a man who becomes overly anxious about his ability to perform the sex act may well be on his way to chronic failure. Anxiety can lead to ED, which fuels the man's anxiety level and thus perpetuates the problem. Impotence may also arise from physical limitations, including nerve damage, certain medications that interfere with autonomic function, and problems with blood flow through the penis.

ED is widespread. More than 50% of men between ages 40 and 70 experience some impotence, climbing to nearly 70% by age 70. No wonder, then, that more prescriptions were written for the much-publicized drug *sildenafil (Viagra)* during its first year on the market after its approval in 1998 for treating

ED is widespread. More than 50% of men between ages 40 and 70 experience some impotence, climbing to nearly 70% by age 70. No wonder, then, that more prescriptions were written for the much-publicized drug *sildenafil (Viagra)* during its first year on the market after its approval in 1998 for treating



● **FIGURE 18-8** Erection reflex.

ED than for any other new drug in history. Sildenafil does not produce an erection, but it amplifies and prolongs an erectile response triggered by usual means of stimulation. Here is how the drug works: Nitric oxide released in response to parasympathetic stimulation activates a membrane-bound enzyme, *guanylate cyclase*, within nearby arteriolar smooth muscle cells. This enzyme activates *cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cyclic GMP or cGMP)*, an intracellular second messenger similar to cAMP. Cyclic GMP, in turn, leads to relaxation of the penile arteriolar smooth muscle, bringing about pronounced local vasodilation. Under normal circumstances, once cGMP is activated and brings about an erection, this second messenger is broken down by the intracellular enzyme *phosphodiesterase 5*. Sildenafil inhibits this enzyme. As a result, cGMP remains active longer so that penile arteriolar vasodilation continues and the erection is sustained long enough for a formerly impotent man to accomplish the sex act. Just as pushing a pedal on a piano will not cause a note to be played but will prolong a played note, sildenafil cannot cause the release of nitric oxide and subsequent activation of erection-producing cGMP, but it can prolong the triggered response. The drug has no benefit for those who do not have ED, but its success rate has been high among sufferers of the condition. Side effects have been limited because the drug concentrates in the penis, thus having more impact on this organ than elsewhere in the body.

### Ejaculation includes emission and expulsion.

The second component of the male sex act is ejaculation. Like erection, ejaculation is a spinal reflex. The same types of tactile and psychic stimuli that induce erection cause ejaculation when the level of excitation intensifies to a critical peak. The overall ejaculatory response occurs in two phases: *emission* and *expulsion* (see ▲ Table 18-4).

**EMISSION** First, sympathetic impulses cause sequential contraction of smooth muscles in the prostate, reproductive ducts, and seminal vesicles. This contractile activity delivers prostatic fluid, then sperm, and finally seminal vesicle fluid (collectively, semen) into the urethra. This phase of the ejaculatory reflex is called **emission**. During this time, the sphincter at the neck of the bladder is tightly closed to prevent semen from entering the bladder and urine from being expelled, along with the ejaculate, through the urethra.

**EXPULSION** Second, filling of the urethra with semen triggers nerve impulses that activate skeletal muscles at the base of the penis. Rhythmic contractions of these muscles occur at 0.8-second intervals and increase the pressure within the penis, forcibly expelling the semen through the urethra to the exterior. This is the **expulsion** phase of ejaculation.

### Orgasm and resolution complete the sexual response cycle.

Ejaculation is part of the sexual response cycle. The third phase of the cycle, orgasm, accompanies the expulsion part of the ejaculatory response and is followed by the resolution phase of the cycle.

**ORGASM** The rhythmic contractions that occur during semen expulsion are accompanied by involuntary rhythmic throbbing of pelvic muscles and peak intensity of the overall body responses that were climbing during the earlier phases. Heavy breathing, a heart rate of up to 180 beats per minute, marked generalized skeletal muscle contraction, and heightened emotions are characteristic. These pelvic and overall systemic responses that culminate the sex act are associated with an intense pleasure characterized by a feeling of release and complete gratification, an experience known as **orgasm**.

**RESOLUTION** During the resolution phase following orgasm, sympathetic vasoconstrictor impulses slow the inflow of blood into the penis, causing the erection to subside. A deep relaxation ensues, often accompanied by a feeling of fatigue. Muscle tone returns to normal, while the cardiovascular and respiratory systems return to their prearousal level of activity. Once ejaculation has occurred, a temporary refractory period of variable duration ensues before sexual stimulation can trigger another erection. Males therefore cannot experience multiple orgasms within a matter of minutes, as females sometimes do.

### Volume and sperm content of the ejaculate vary.

The volume and sperm content of the ejaculate depend on the length of time between ejaculations. The average volume of semen is 2.75 ml, ranging from 2 to 6 ml, the higher volumes following periods of abstinence. An average human ejaculate contains about 165 million sperm (60 million/ml), but some ejaculates contain as many as 400 million sperm.



Both quantity and quality of sperm are important determinants of fertility. A man is considered clinically infertile if his sperm concentration falls below 20 million/ml of semen. Even though only one spermatozoon actually fertilizes the ovum, large numbers of accompanying sperm are needed to provide sufficient acrosomal enzymes to break down the barriers surrounding the ovum until the victorious sperm penetrates into the ovum's cytoplasm. The quality of sperm also must be taken into account when assessing the fertility potential of a semen sample. The presence of substantial numbers of sperm with abnormal motility or structure, such as sperm with distorted tails, reduces the chances of fertilization. (For a discussion of how environmental estrogens may be decreasing sperm counts, as well as negatively affecting the male and female reproductive systems in other ways, see the boxed feature on pp. 562–563, ► Beyond the Basics.)

### The female sexual cycle is similar to the male cycle.

Both sexes experience the same four phases of the sexual response cycle—excitement, plateau, orgasm, and resolution. Furthermore, the physiologic mechanisms responsible for orgasm are fundamentally the same in males and females.

The excitement phase in females can be initiated by either physical or psychological stimuli. Tactile stimulation of the clitoris and surrounding perineal area is an especially powerful sexual stimulus. These stimuli trigger spinal reflexes that bring about parasympathetically induced vasodilation of arte-

## Beyond the Basics

Unknowingly, during the last 70 years we humans have been polluting our environment with synthetic endocrine-disrupting chemicals as an unintended side effect of industrialization. Known as **endocrine disrupters**, these hormone-like pollutants bind with the receptor sites normally reserved for the naturally occurring hormones. Depending on how they interact with the receptors, these disrupters can either mimic or block normal hormonal activity. Most endocrine disrupters exert feminizing effects. Many of these environmental contaminants mimic or alter the action of estrogen, the feminizing steroid hormone produced by the female ovaries. Although not yet conclusive, laboratory and field studies suggest that these estrogen disrupters might be responsible for some disturbing trends in reproductive health problems, such as falling sperm counts in males and an increased incidence of breast cancer in females.

Estrogenic pollutants are everywhere. They contaminate our food, drinking water, and air. Proved feminizing synthetic compounds include (1) certain weed killers and insecticides, (2) some detergent breakdown products, (3) petroleum by-products found in car exhaust, (4) a common food preservative used to retard rancidity, and (5) softeners that make plastics flexible. These plastic softeners are commonly found in food packaging and can readily leach into food with which they come in contact, especially during

## Environmental “Estrogens”: Bad News for the Reproductive System

heating. They were also found to leach from some babies' plastic teething toys into the saliva. They are in numerous medical products, such as the bags in which blood is stored. Plastic softeners are among the most plentiful industrial contaminants in our environment.

Investigators are only beginning to identify and understand the implications for reproductive health of myriad synthetic chemicals that have become such an integral part of modern societies. An estimated 87,000 synthetic chemicals are already in our environment. Scientists suspect that the estrogen-mimicking chemicals among these may underlie a spectrum of reproductive disorders that have been rising in the past 70 years—the same period during which large amounts of these pollutants have been introduced into our environment. Here are examples of male reproductive dysfunctions that may be circumstantially linked to exposure to environmental **estrogen disrupters**:

- *Falling sperm counts.* The average sperm count has fallen from 113 million sperm per milliliter of semen in 1940 to 60 million/ml now. Making matters worse, the volume of a single ejaculate has declined from 3.40 to 2.75 ml. This means that men, on average, are now ejaculating less than half the number of sperm as men did

70 years ago—a drop from more than 380 million sperm to about 165 million sperm per ejaculate. Furthermore, the number of motile sperm has dipped. Importantly, the sperm count has not declined in the less polluted areas of the world during the same period.

- *Increased incidence of testicular and prostate cancer.* Cases of testicular cancer have tripled since 1940, and the rate continues to climb. Prostate cancer has also been on the rise over the same period.
- *Rising number of male reproductive tract abnormalities at birth.* The incidence of cryptorchidism (undescended testis) nearly doubled from the 1950s to the 1970s. The number of cases of hypospadias, a malformation of the penis, more than doubled between the mid-1960s and the mid-1990s.
- *Evidence of gender bending in animals.* Some fish and wild animal populations severely exposed to environmental estrogens—such as those living in or near water heavily polluted with hormone-mimicking chemical wastes—display a high rate of grossly impaired reproductive systems. Examples include male fish that are hermaphrodites (having both male and female reproductive parts) and male alligators with abnormally small penises. Similar reproductive abnormalities have been

rioles throughout the vagina and external genitalia, especially the clitoris. The resultant inflow of blood becomes evident as swelling of the labia and erection of the clitoris. The latter—like its male homologue (meaning of the same embryonic origin), the penis—is composed largely of erectile tissue. Vasocongestion of the vaginal capillaries forces fluid out of the vessels into the vaginal lumen. This fluid, which is the first positive indication of sexual arousal, is the primary lubricant for intercourse. Additional lubrication is provided by the mucus secretions from the male and by mucus released during sexual arousal from glands located at the outer opening of the vagina.

During the plateau phase, the changes initiated during the excitement phase intensify, while systemic responses similar to those in the male (such as increased heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and muscle tension) occur. Further vasocongestion of the lower third of the vagina during this time reduces its inner capacity so that it tightens around the thrusting penis, heightening tactile sensation for both the female and the male.

Simultaneously, the uterus raises upward, lifting the cervix and enlarging the upper two thirds of the vagina. This ballooning creates a space for ejaculate deposition.

If erotic stimulation continues, the sexual response culminates in orgasm as sympathetic impulses trigger rhythmic contractions of pelvic musculature at 0.8-second intervals, the same rate as in males. The contractions occur most intensely in the engorged lower third of the vaginal canal. Systemic responses identical to those of the male orgasm also occur. In fact, the orgasmic experience in females parallels that of males with two exceptions. First, there is no female counterpart to ejaculation. Second, females do not become refractory following an orgasm, so they can respond immediately to continued erotic stimulation and achieve multiple orgasms.

During resolution, pelvic vasocongestion and the systemic manifestations gradually subside. As with males, this is a time of great physical relaxation for females.

We now examine how females fulfill their part of the reproductive process.

identified in land mammals. Presumably, excessive estrogen exposure is emasculating these populations.

- **Decline in male births.** Many countries are reporting a slight decline in the ratio of baby boys to baby girls being born. In the United States, 17 fewer males were born per 10,000 births in 2007 compared to 1970, and Japan has seen an overall drop of 37 males per 10,000 births during the same period. Although several plausible explanations have been put forth, many researchers attribute this troubling trend to disruption of normal male fetal development by environmental estrogens. In one compelling piece of circumstantial evidence, people inadvertently exposed to the highest level of an endocrine-disrupting agent during an industrial accident have subsequently had all daughters and no sons, whereas those least exposed have had the normal ratio of girls and boys. Similarly, a 2004 study in the Russian Arctic found a remarkable ratio of 2.5 to 1 female-to-male births among women who had blood concentrations of 4 mg/L or greater of a known estrogen-mimicking pollutant.

Environmental estrogens are also implicated in the rising incidence of breast cancer in females. Breast cancer is 25% to 30% more prevalent now than in the 1940s. Many of the established risk factors for breast cancer, such as starting to

menstruate earlier than usual and undergoing menopause later than usual, are associated with an elevation in the total lifetime exposure to estrogen. Because increased exposure to natural estrogen bumps up the risk for breast cancer, prolonged exposure to environmental estrogens may be contributing to the rising prevalence of this malignancy among women (and men).

In addition to the estrogen disrupters, scientists have recently identified a new class of chemical offenders—**androgen disrupters** that either mimic or suppress the action of male hormones. For example, studies suggest that bacteria in wastewater from pulp mills can convert the sterols in pine pulp into androgens. By contrast, anti-androgen compounds have been found in the fungicides commonly sprayed on vegetable and fruit crops. Yet another cause for concern comes from the androgens used by the livestock industry to enhance the production of muscle (that is, meat) in feedlot cattle. (Androgens have a protein anabolic effect.) These drugs do not end up in the meat, but they can get into drinking water and other food as hormone-laden feces contaminate rivers and streams.

In response to the growing evidence that has emerged circumstantially linking numerous environmental pollutants to disturbing reproductive abnormalities, the U.S. Congress legally mandated the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in 1996 to determine which synthetic chemi-

cals might be endocrine disrupters. In response, the EPA formed an advisory committee, which in 1998 proposed an ambitious plan to begin comprehensive testing of manufactured compounds for their potential to disrupt hormones in humans and wildlife. Although eventually all the 87,000 existing synthetic compounds will be tested, the initial screening was narrowed to evaluating the endocrine-disrupting potential of 15,000 widely used chemicals. Declaring this a national health priority, the government has allocated millions of dollars for this research. Yet in this time-consuming process, only a few thousand chemicals were tested in the first 10 years of investigation as the EPA's *Toxic Release Inventory* slowly grows and other chemicals have been deemed safe. Complicating the situation further, scientists recently learned that individual chemicals present at harmless levels in the body may have synergistic effects and exert detrimental effects when they interact. Therefore, it might not be sufficient to evaluate the risk of synthetic chemicals one by one. Scientists and regulatory agencies might have to take into account the cumulative risk of mixtures of chemicals. Increasingly, environmental watchdogs are calling for increased measures to limit exposure to synthetic chemicals (such as switching from plastic to glass baby bottles) and better labeling from manufacturers so that consumers can make more informed decisions about products they use.

## Female Reproductive Physiology

Female reproductive physiology is more complex than male reproductive physiology.

### Complex cycling characterizes female reproductive physiology.

Unlike the continuous sperm production and essentially constant testosterone secretion characteristic of the male, release of ova is intermittent, and secretion of female sex hormones displays wide cyclic swings. The tissues influenced by these sex hormones also undergo cyclic changes, the most obvious of which is the monthly menstrual cycle (*menstruus* means “monthly”). During each cycle, the female reproductive tract is prepared for the fertilization and implantation of an ovum released from the ovary at ovulation. If fertilization does not occur, the cycle repeats. If fertilization does occur, the cycles are interrupted while the female system adapts to nurture and pro-

tect the newly conceived human until it has developed into an individual capable of living outside the maternal environment. Furthermore, the female continues her reproductive functions after birth by producing milk (lactation) for the baby's nourishment. Thus, the female reproductive system is characterized by complex cycles that are interrupted by even more complex changes should pregnancy occur.

The ovaries perform the dual function of producing ova (oogenesis) and secreting the female sex hormones, estrogen and progesterone. These hormones act together to promote fertilization of the ovum and to prepare the female reproductive system for pregnancy. Estrogen in the female governs many functions similar to those carried out by testosterone in the male, such as maturation and maintenance of the entire female reproductive system and establishment of female secondary sexual characteristics. In general, the actions of estrogen are important to preconception events. Estrogen is essential for ova maturation and release, development of physical characteristics that are sexually attractive to males, and transport of sperm

from the vagina to the site of fertilization in the oviduct. Furthermore, estrogen contributes to breast development in anticipation of lactation. The other ovarian steroid, progesterone, is important in preparing a suitable environment for nourishing a developing embryo and then fetus and for contributing to the breasts' ability to produce milk.

As in males, reproductive capability begins at puberty in females, but unlike males, who have reproductive potential throughout life, female reproductive potential ceases during middle age at menopause.

### The steps of gametogenesis are the same in both sexes, but the timing and outcome differ sharply.

**Oogenesis** contrasts sharply with spermatogenesis in several important aspects, even though the identical steps of chromosome replication and division take place during gamete production in both sexes. The undifferentiated primordial germ cells in the fetal ovaries, the **oogonia** (comparable to the spermatogonia), divide mitotically to give rise to 6 million to 7 million oogonia by the fifth month of gestation, when mitotic proliferation ceases.

#### FORMATION OF PRIMARY OOCYTES AND PRIMARY FOLLICLES

During the last part of fetal life, the oogonia begin the early steps of the first meiotic division but do not complete it. Known now as **primary oocytes**, they contain the diploid number of 46 replicated chromosomes, which are gathered into homologous pairs but do not separate. The primary oocytes remain in this state of **meiotic arrest** for years until they are prepared for ovulation.

Before birth, each primary oocyte is surrounded by a single layer of connective tissue–derived **granulosa cells**. Together, an oocyte and surrounding granulosa cells make up a **primary follicle**. Oocytes that are not incorporated into follicles self-destruct by apoptosis (cell suicide). At birth, only about 2 million primary follicles remain, each containing a single primary oocyte capable of producing a single ovum. No new oocytes or follicles appear after birth, with the follicles already present in the ovaries at birth serving as a reservoir from which all ova throughout the reproductive life of a female arise. The follicular pool gradually dwindles away as a result of processes that “use up” the oocyte-containing follicles.

Even before puberty, the pool of primary follicles gives rise to an ongoing trickle of developing follicles, stimulated by poorly understood paracrine factors produced by both oocytes and granulosa cells. Once it starts to develop, a follicle is destined for one of two fates: It will reach maturity and ovulate, or it will degenerate to form scar tissue, a process known as **atresia**. Until puberty, all the follicles that start to develop undergo atresia in the early stages without ever ovulating. Of the original total pool of follicles at birth, about 300,000 remain at puberty, and only about 400 will mature and release ova, with the rest undergoing atresia at some stage of development. By menopause, which occurs on average in a woman's early 50s, few primary follicles remain, having either already ovulated or become atretic. From this point on, the woman's reproductive capacity ceases.

This limited gamete potential in females is in sharp contrast to the continual process of spermatogenesis in males, who have the potential to produce several hundred million sperm in a single day. Furthermore, considerable chromosome wastage occurs in oogenesis compared with spermatogenesis. Let us see how.

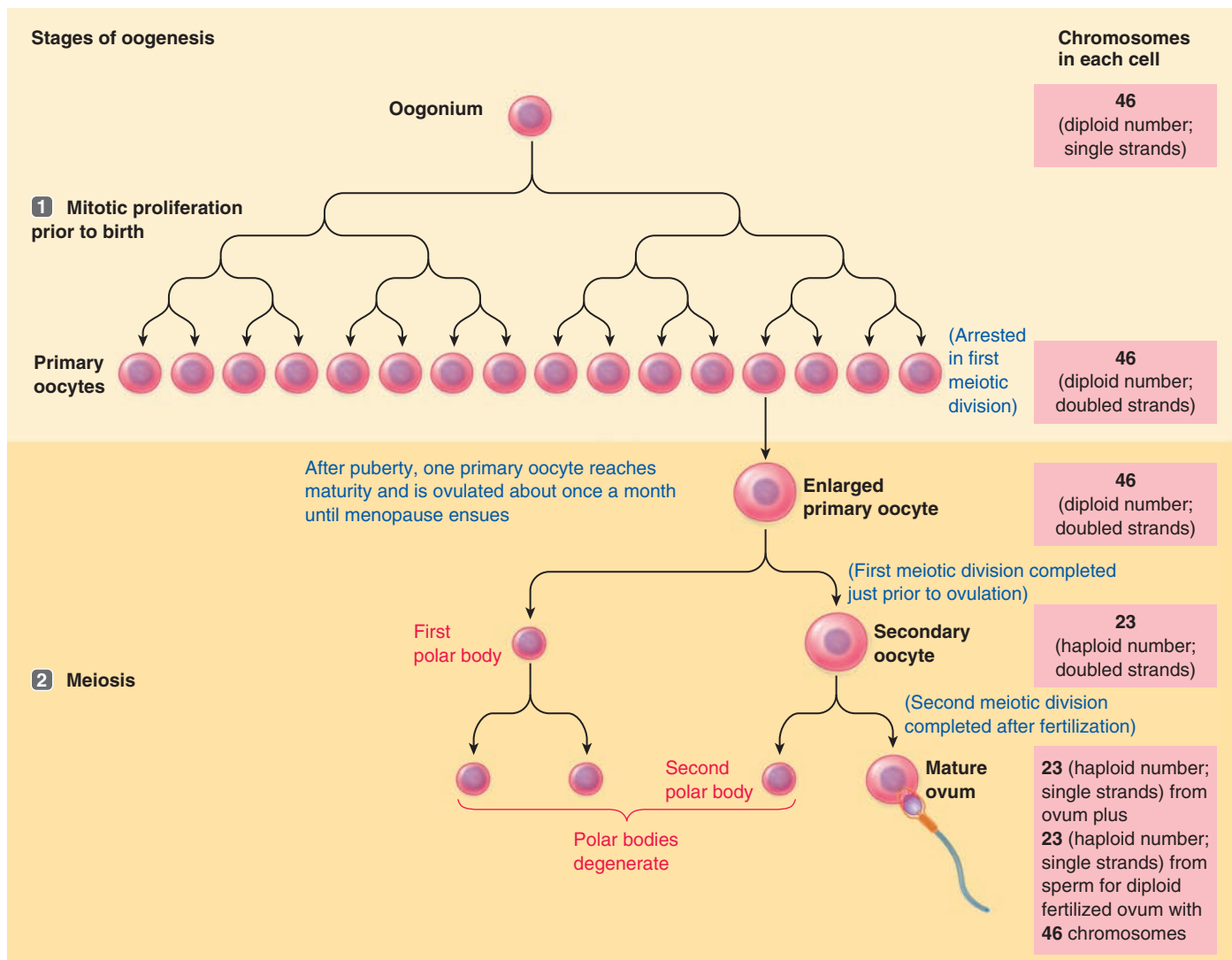
**FORMATION OF SECONDARY OOCYTES** The primary oocyte within a primary follicle is still a diploid cell that contains 46 doubled chromosomes. From puberty until menopause, a portion of the developing follicles in the pool progress cyclically into more advanced follicles. The mechanisms determining which follicles in the pool will develop during a given cycle are unknown. Further development of a follicle is characterized by growth of the primary oocyte and by expansion and differentiation of the surrounding cell layers. The oocyte enlarges about a thousandfold. This oocyte enlargement is caused by a buildup of cytoplasmic materials that will be needed by the early embryo.

Just before ovulation, the primary oocyte, whose nucleus has been in meiotic arrest for years, completes its first meiotic division. This division yields two daughter cells, each receiving a haploid set of 23 doubled chromosomes, analogous to the formation of secondary spermatocytes (● Figure 18-9). However, almost all the cytoplasm remains with one of the daughter cells, now called the **secondary oocyte**, which is destined to become the ovum. The chromosomes of the other daughter cell, together with a small share of cytoplasm, form the **first polar body**. In this way, the ovum-to-be loses half of its chromosomes to form a haploid gamete but retains all of its nutrient-rich cytoplasm. The nutrient-poor polar body soon degenerates.

**FORMATION OF A MATURE OVUM** Actually, the secondary oocyte, and not the mature ovum, is ovulated and fertilized, but common usage refers to the developing female gamete as an *ovum* even in its primary and secondary oocyte stages. Sperm entry into the secondary oocyte is needed to trigger the second meiotic division. Unfertilized secondary oocytes never complete this final division. During this division, a half set of chromosomes, along with a thin layer of cytoplasm, is extruded as the **second polar body**. The other half set of 23 unpaired chromosomes remains behind in what is now the **mature ovum** (sometimes called the *ootid*, comparable to the spermatid, until the polar bodies disintegrate and the mature ovum alone remains). These 23 maternal chromosomes unite with the 23 paternal chromosomes of the penetrating sperm to complete fertilization. If the first polar body has not already degenerated, it too undergoes the second meiotic division at the same time the fertilized secondary oocyte is dividing its chromosomes.

#### COMPARISON OF STEPS IN OOGENESIS AND SPERMATOGENESIS

The steps involved in chromosome distribution during oogenesis parallel those of spermatogenesis, except that the cytoplasmic distribution and time span for completion differ sharply (● Figure 18-10). Just as four haploid spermatids are produced by each primary spermatocyte, four haploid daughter cells are produced by each primary oocyte (if the first polar body does not degenerate before it completes the second meiotic division). In spermatogenesis, each daughter cell develops into a highly



● **FIGURE 18-9 Oogenesis.** Compare with Figure 18-5, p. 554, spermatogenesis.

specialized, motile spermatozoon unencumbered by unessential cytoplasm and organelles, its only destiny being to supply half of the genes for a new individual. In oogenesis, however, of the four daughter cells, only the one destined to become the mature ovum receives cytoplasm. This uneven distribution of cytoplasm is important because the ovum, in addition to providing half the genes, provides all of the cytoplasmic components needed to support early development of the fertilized ovum. The large, relatively undifferentiated ovum contains numerous nutrients, organelles, and structural and enzymatic proteins. The three other cytoplasm-scarce daughter cells, the polar bodies, rapidly degenerate, their chromosomes being deliberately wasted.

Note also the considerable difference in time to complete spermatogenesis and oogenesis. It takes about 2 months for a spermatogonium to develop into fully remodeled spermatozoa. In contrast, development of an oogonium (present before birth) to a mature ovum requires anywhere from 11 years (beginning of ovulation at onset of puberty) to 50 years (end of ovulation at onset of menopause). The actual length of the active steps in

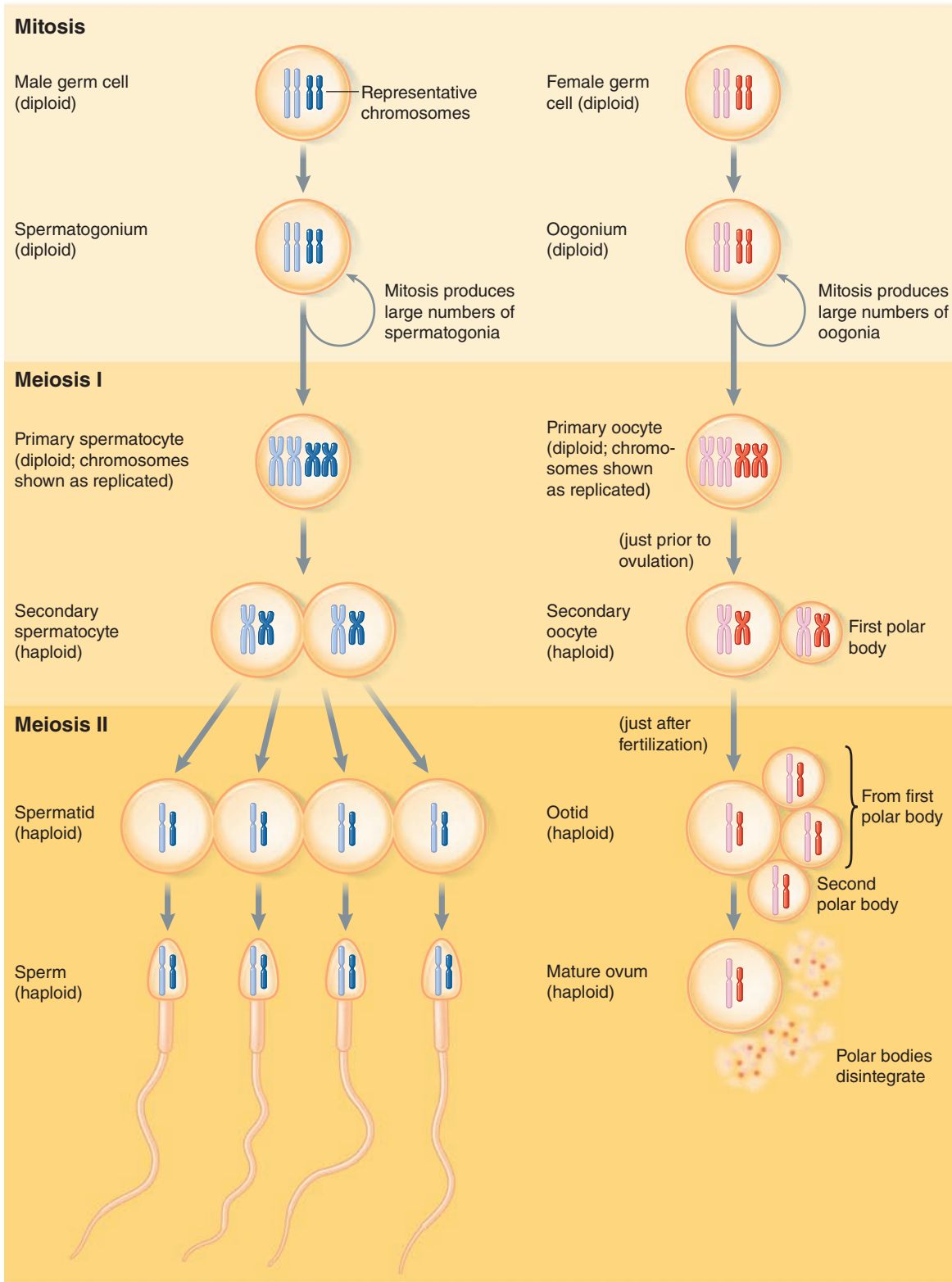
meiosis is the same in both males and females, but in females the developing eggs remain in meiotic arrest for a variable number of years.



The older age of ova released by women in their late 30s and 40s is believed to account for the higher incidence of genetic abnormalities, such as Down syndrome, in children born to women in this age range.

### The ovarian cycle consists of alternating follicular and luteal phases.

After the onset of puberty, the ovary constantly alternates between two phases: the **follicular phase**, which is dominated by the presence of *maturing follicles*, and the **luteal phase**, which is characterized by the presence of the *corpus luteum* (to be described shortly). Normally, this cycle is interrupted only if pregnancy occurs and is finally terminated by menopause. The average ovarian cycle lasts 28 days, but this varies among women and among cycles in any particular woman. The follicle operates in the first half of the cycle to produce a mature egg



(a) Spermatogenesis

(b) Oogenesis

● **FIGURE 18-10** Comparison of mitotic and meiotic divisions producing spermatozoa and eggs from germ cells.

ready for ovulation at midcycle. The corpus luteum takes over during the last half of the cycle to prepare the female reproductive tract for pregnancy in case fertilization of the released egg occurs.

### The follicular phase is characterized by the development of maturing follicles.

At any given time throughout the cycle, a portion of the primary follicles is starting to develop (● Figure 18-11b, step 1). However, only those that do so during the follicular phase, when the hormonal environment is right to promote their maturation, continue beyond the early stages of development. The others, lacking hormonal support, undergo atresia. During follicular development, as the primary oocyte is synthesizing and storing materials for future use if fertilized, important changes take place in the cells surrounding the reactivated oocyte in preparation for the egg's release from the ovary.

**PROLIFERATION OF GRANULOSA CELLS AND FORMATION OF THE ZONA PELLUCIDA** First, the single layer of granulosa cells in a primary follicle proliferates to form several layers that surround the oocyte. These granulosa cells secrete a thick, gel-like “rind” that covers the oocyte and separates it from the surrounding granulosa cells. This intervening membrane is known as the **zona pellucida** (step 2).

**PROLIFERATION OF THECAL CELLS; ESTROGEN SECRETION** As the oocyte is enlarging and granulosa cells are proliferating, specialized ovarian connective tissue cells in contact with the expanding granulosa cells proliferate and differentiate to form an outer layer of **thecal cells** (step 3). Thecal and granulosa cells, collectively known as **follicular cells**, function as a unit to secrete estrogen.

**FORMATION OF THE ANTRUM** The early stages of follicular development that occur without gonadotropin influence take about 2 months and are not part of the follicular phase of the ovarian cycle. Only follicles that have developed sufficiently to respond to FSH stimulation (now called **preantral follicles**) are “recruited” at the beginning of the follicular phase when FSH levels rise. Typically during each cycle, about 15 to 20 follicles are recruited. The hormonal environment of the follicular phase promotes rapid enlargement and development of the recruited follicular cells' secretory capacity, converting the preantral follicle into an **antral**, or **secondary, follicle** capable of estrogen secretion (step 4). During this stage of follicular development, a fluid-filled cavity, or **antrum**, forms in the middle of the granulosa cells (● Figure 18-12). As the follicular cells start producing estrogen, some of this hormone is secreted into the blood for distribution throughout the body. However, a portion of the estrogen collects in the hormone-rich antral fluid.

The oocyte has reached full size by the time the antrum begins to form. The shift from a preantral follicle to an antral follicle initiates a period of rapid follicular growth (see ● Figure 18-11, step 5). During this time, the follicle increases in size from a diameter of less than 1 mm to one of 12 to 16 mm

shortly before ovulation. Part of the follicular growth is the result of continued proliferation of the granulosa and thecal cells, but most results from a dramatic expansion of the antrum. As the follicle grows, estrogen is produced in increasing quantities.

**FORMATION OF A MATURE FOLLICLE** One of the follicles, the “dominant” follicle, usually grows more rapidly than the others, developing into a **mature (preovulatory, tertiary, or Graafian) follicle** within about 14 days after the onset of follicular development (step 6). The antrum occupies most of the space in a mature follicle. The oocyte, surrounded by the zona pellucida and a single layer of granulosa cells, is displaced asymmetrically at one side of the growing follicle, in a little mound that protrudes into the antrum.

**OVULATION** The greatly expanded mature follicle bulges on the ovarian surface, creating a thin area that ruptures to release the oocyte at ovulation (step 7). Rupture of the follicle is facilitated by release from the follicular cells of enzymes (triggered by a burst in LH secretion, which is described later) that digest the connective tissue in the follicular wall. The bulging wall, thus weakened, balloons out even farther to the point that it can no longer contain the rapidly expanding follicular contents.

Just before ovulation, the oocyte completes its first meiotic division. The ovum (secondary oocyte), still surrounded by its tightly adhering zona pellucida and granulosa cells (now called the **corona radiata**, meaning “radiating crown”), is swept out of the ruptured follicle into the abdominal cavity by the leaking antral fluid (see ● Figure 18-11c). The released ovum is quickly drawn into the oviduct, where fertilization may or may not take place.

The other developing follicles that failed to reach maturation and ovulate undergo degeneration, never to be reactivated. Occasionally, two (or perhaps more) follicles reach maturation and ovulate around the same time. If both are fertilized, **fraternal twins** result. Because fraternal twins arise from separate ova fertilized by separate sperm, they share no more in common than any other two siblings except for the same birth date. **Identical twins**, in contrast, develop from a single fertilized ovum that completely divides into two separate, genetically identical embryos at an early stage of development.

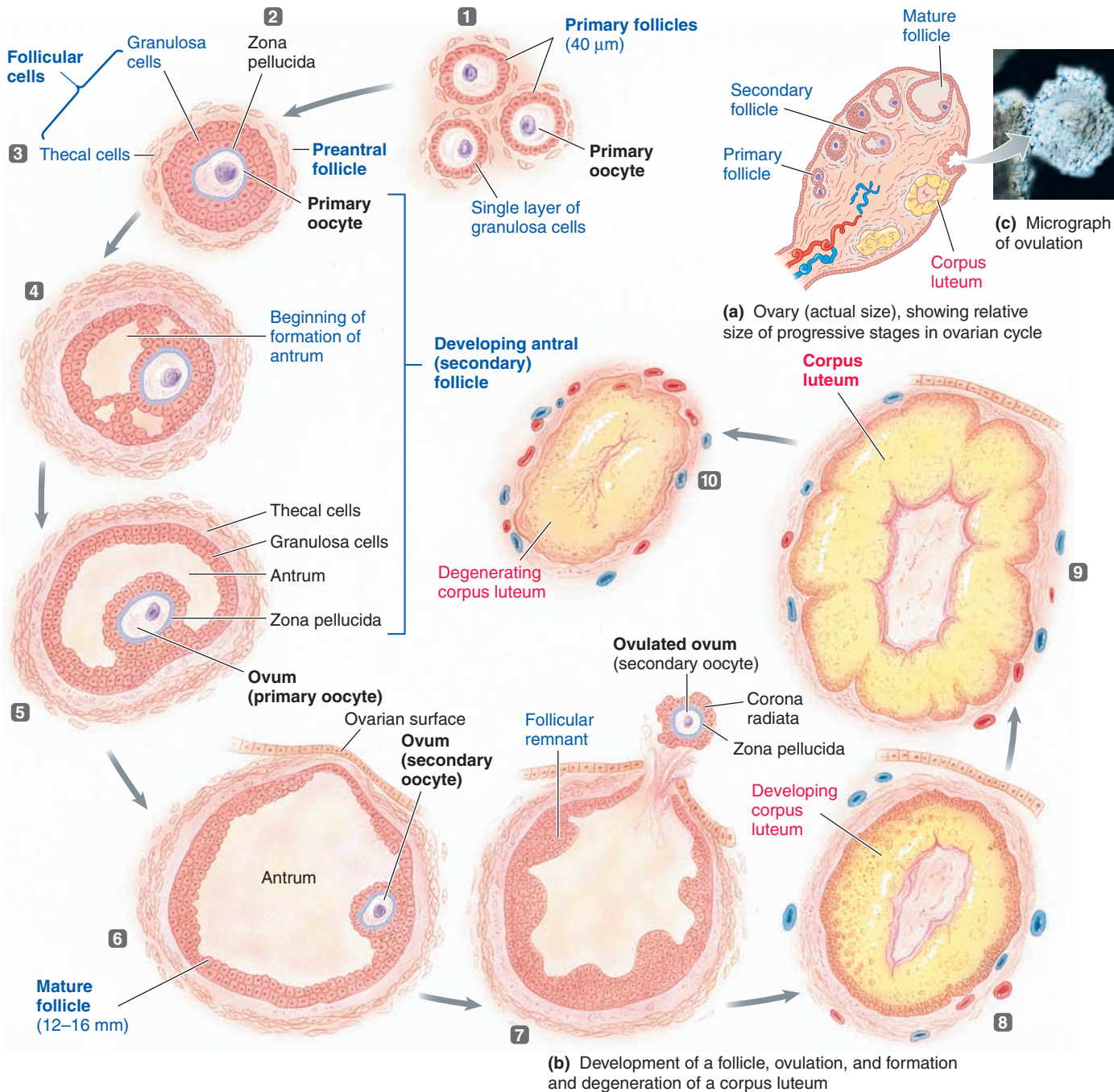
Rupture of the follicle at ovulation signals the end of the follicular phase and ushers in the luteal phase.

### The luteal phase is characterized by the presence of a corpus luteum.

The ruptured follicle left behind in the ovary after release of the ovum changes rapidly as the granulosa and thecal cells remaining in the remnant follicle undergo a dramatic structural and functional transformation.

**FORMATION OF THE CORPUS LUTEUM; ESTROGEN AND PROGESTERONE SECRETION** These old follicular cells form the **corpus luteum (CL)** (step 8), a process called *luteinization*. The follicular-turned-luteal cells enlarge and are converted into very active steroid hormone-producing tissue. Abundant





Lennart Nilsson/Alber Bonniers  
Forlag Aliba AB

- 1** In a primary follicle, a primary oocyte is surrounded by a single layer of granulosa cells.
- 2** Under the influence of local paracrines, granulosa cells proliferate and form the zona pellucida around the oocyte.
- 3** Surrounding ovarian connective tissue differentiates into thecal cells, converting a primary follicle into a preantral follicle.
- 4** Follicles reaching the preantral stage are recruited for further development under the influence of FSH at the beginning of the follicular phase of the ovarian cycle. A recruited follicle develops into an antral, or secondary,

- follicle as an estrogen-rich antrum starts to form.
- 5** The antrum continues to expand as the secondary follicle rapidly grows.
- 6** After about 2 weeks of rapid growth under the influence of FSH, the follicle has developed into a mature follicle, which has a greatly expanded antrum; the oocyte, which by now has developed into a secondary oocyte, is displaced to one side.
- 7** At midcycle, in response to a burst in LH secretion, the mature follicle, bulging on the ovarian surface, ruptures and releases the

- oocyte, resulting in ovulation and ending the follicular phase.
- 8** Ushering in the luteal phase, the ruptured follicle develops into a corpus luteum under the influence of LH.
- 9** The corpus luteum continues to grow and secrete progesterone and estrogen that prepare the uterus for implantation of a fertilized ovum.
- 10** After 14 days, if a fertilized ovum does not implant in the uterus, the corpus luteum degenerates, the luteal phase ends, and a new follicular phase begins under the influence of a changing hormonal milieu.

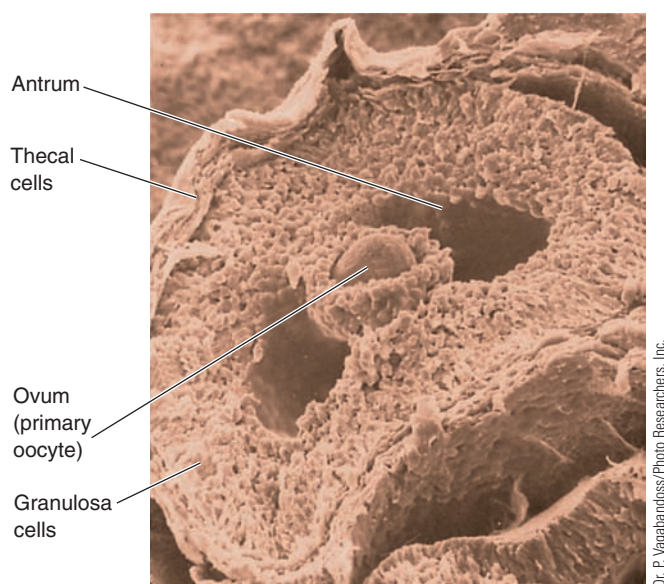
● **FIGURE 18-11 Ovarian cycle.** (a) Ovary showing progressive stages in one ovarian cycle. All of these stages occur sequentially at one site, but the stages are represented in a loop in the periphery of the ovary so that all of the stages can be seen in progression simultaneously. (b) Enlarged view of the stages in one ovarian cycle. (c) Micrograph of a secondary oocyte being released (ovulation).

storage of cholesterol, the steroid precursor molecule, in lipid droplets within the corpus luteum gives this tissue a yellowish appearance, hence its name (*corpus* means “body”; *luteum* means “yellow”).

The corpus luteum secretes into the blood abundant quantities of progesterone, along with smaller amounts of estrogen. Estrogen secretion in the follicular phase followed by progesterone secretion in the luteal phase is essential for preparing the uterus for implantation of a fertilized ovum. The CL becomes fully functional within 4 days after ovulation, but it continues to increase in size for another 4 or 5 days (step 9).

**DEGENERATION OF THE CORPUS LUTEUM** If the released ovum is not fertilized and does not implant, the corpus luteum degenerates within about 14 days after its formation (step 10). The luteal phase is now over, and one ovarian cycle is complete. A new wave of follicular development, which begins when degeneration of the old CL is completed, signals the onset of a new follicular phase.

**CORPUS LUTEUM OF PREGNANCY** If fertilization and implantation do occur, the corpus luteum continues to grow and produce increasing quantities of progesterone and estrogen instead of degenerating. Now called the *corpus luteum of pregnancy*, this ovarian structure persists until pregnancy ends. It provides the hormones essential for maintaining pregnancy until the developing placenta can take over this crucial function. You will learn more about the role of these structures later.



● **FIGURE 18-12 Scanning electron micrograph of a developing secondary follicle.**

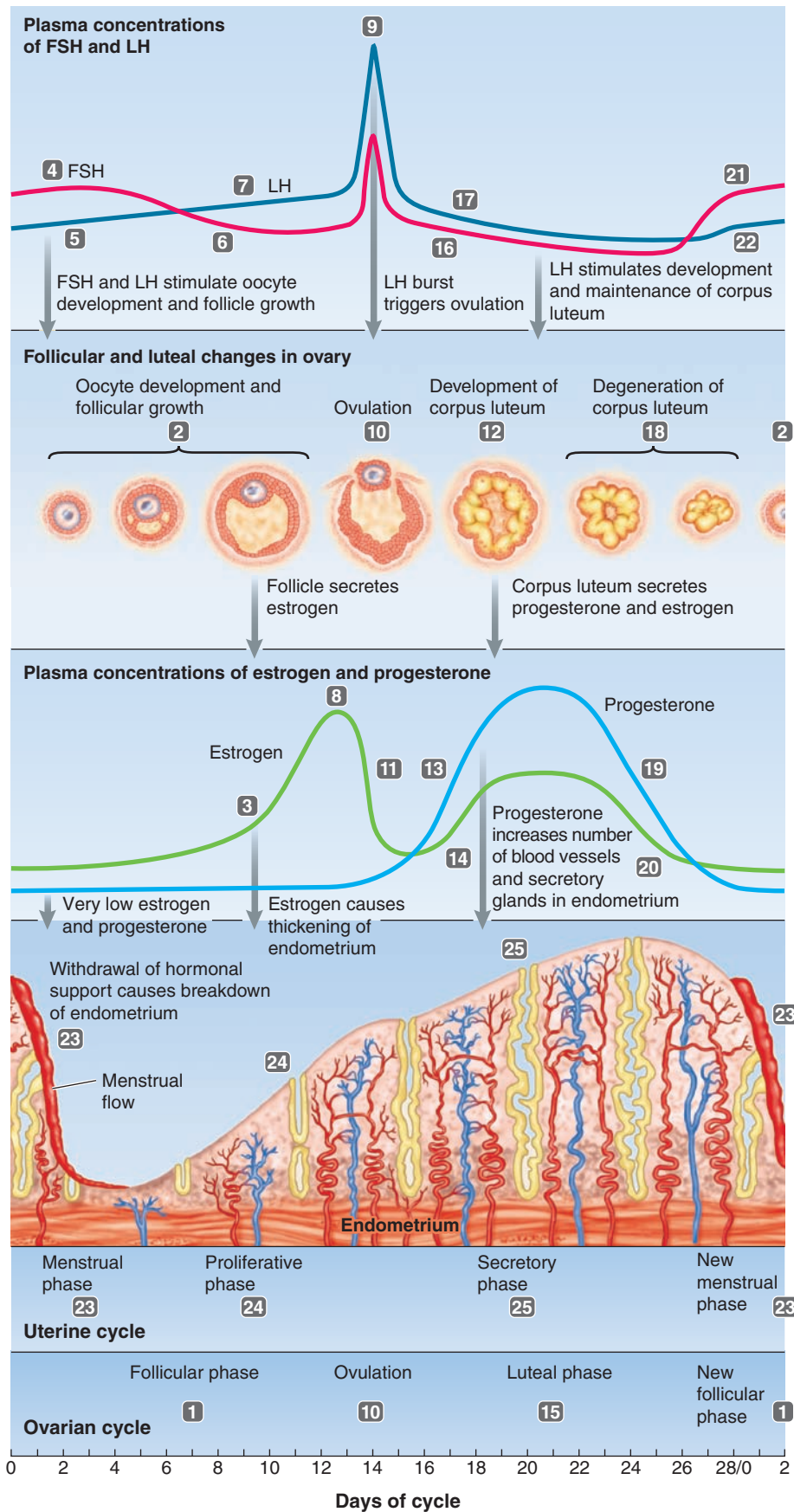
## The ovarian cycle is regulated by complex hormonal interactions.

The ovary has two related endocrine units: (1) the estrogen-secreting follicle during the first half of the cycle and (2) the corpus luteum, which secretes both progesterone and estrogen, during the last half of the cycle. These units are sequentially triggered by complex cyclic hormonal relationships among the hypothalamus, anterior pituitary, and these two ovarian endocrine units.

As in the male, gonadal function in the female is directly controlled by the anterior pituitary gonadotropic hormones, namely, follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH). These hormones, in turn, are regulated by hypothalamic gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and feedback actions of gonadal hormones. Unlike in the male, however, control of the female gonads is complicated by the cyclic nature of ovarian function. For example, the effects of FSH and LH on the ovaries depend on the stage of the ovarian cycle. Furthermore, as you will see, estrogen exerts negative-feedback effects during part of the cycle and positive-feedback effects during another part of the cycle, depending on the concentration of estrogen. Also in contrast to the male, FSH is not strictly responsible for gametogenesis, nor is LH solely responsible for gonadal hormone secretion. We consider control of follicular function, ovulation, and the corpus luteum separately, using ● Figure 18-13 as a means of integrating the various concurrent and sequential activities that take place throughout the cycle. To facilitate correlation between this rather intimidating figure and the accompanying text description of this complex cycle, the numbers in the figure and its legend correspond to the numbers in the text description.

**CONTROL OF FOLLICULAR FUNCTION** We begin with the follicular phase of the ovarian cycle (● Figure 18-13, step 1). The early stages of preantral follicular growth and oocyte maturation do not require gonadotropic stimulation. Hormonal support is required, however, for further follicular development and antrum formation (step 2) and for estrogen secretion (step 3). Estrogen, FSH (step 4), and LH (step 5) are all needed. Antrum formation is induced by FSH. Both FSH and estrogen stimulate proliferation of the granulosa cells. Both LH and FSH are required for synthesis and secretion of estrogen by the follicle. LH stimulates the thecal cells to synthesize androgen, which diffuses into the adjacent granulosa cells. FSH stimulates the granulosa cells to convert this androgen into estrogen. Part of the estrogen produced by the growing follicle is secreted into the blood and is responsible for the steadily increasing plasma estrogen levels during the follicular phase (step 8). The remainder of the estrogen remains within the follicle, contributing to the antral fluid and stimulating further granulosa cell proliferation.

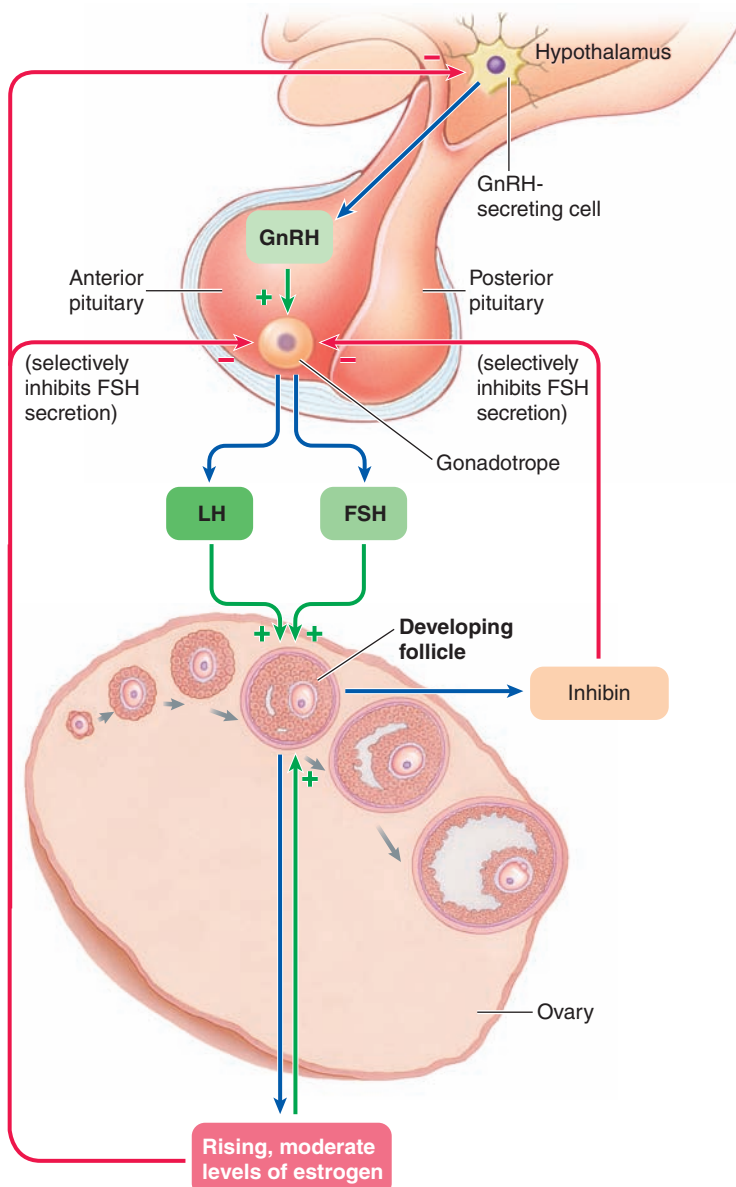
The secreted estrogen, in addition to acting on sex-specific tissues such as the uterus, inhibits the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary in typical negative-feedback fashion (● Figure 18-14). The rising, moderate levels of estrogen characterizing the follicular phase act directly on the hypothalamus to inhibit GnRH secretion, thus suppressing GnRH-prompted release of



● **FIGURE 18-13 Correlation between hormonal levels and cyclic ovarian and uterine changes.** During the first half of the ovarian cycle, the follicular phase (step 1), the ovarian follicle (step 2) secretes estrogen (step 3) under the influence of FSH (step 4), LH (step 5), and estrogen itself. The rising, moderate levels of estrogen inhibit FSH secretion, which declines (step 6) during the last part of the follicular phase, and incompletely suppress tonic LH secretion, which continues to rise (step 7) throughout the follicular phase. When the follicular output of estrogen reaches its peak (step 8), the high levels of estrogen trigger a surge in LH secretion at midcycle (step 9). This LH surge brings about ovulation of the mature follicle (step 10). Estrogen secretion plummets (step 11) when the follicle meets its demise at ovulation.

The old follicular cells are transformed into the corpus luteum (step 12), which secretes progesterone (step 13), as well as estrogen (step 14), during the last half of the ovarian cycle, the luteal phase (step 15). Progesterone strongly inhibits both FSH (step 16) and LH (step 17), which continue to decrease throughout the luteal phase. The corpus luteum degenerates (step 18) in about 2 weeks if the released ovum has not been fertilized and implanted in the uterus. Progesterone (step 19) and estrogen (step 20) levels sharply decrease when the corpus luteum degenerates, removing the inhibitory influences on FSH and LH. As these anterior pituitary hormone levels start to rise again (steps 21 and 22) when no longer inhibited, they stimulate the development of a new batch of follicles as a new follicular phase is ushered in (steps 1 and 2).

Concurrent uterine phases reflect the influences of the ovarian hormones on the uterus. Early in the follicular phase, the highly vascularized, nutrient-rich endometrial lining is sloughed off (the uterine menstrual phase) (step 23). This sloughing results from the withdrawal of estrogen and progesterone (steps 19 and 20) when the old corpus luteum degenerated at the end of the preceding luteal phase (step 18). Late in the follicular phase, the rising levels of estrogen (step 3) cause the endometrium to thicken (the uterine proliferative phase) (step 24). After ovulation (step 10), progesterone from the corpus luteum (step 13) brings about vascular and secretory changes in the estrogen-primed endometrium to produce a suitable environment for implantation (the uterine secretory, or progestational, phase) (step 25). When the corpus luteum degenerates (step 18), a new ovarian follicular phase (steps 1 and 2) and uterine menstrual phase (step 23) begin.



● **FIGURE 18-14** Feedback control of FSH and tonic LH secretion during the follicular phase.

FSH and LH from the anterior pituitary. However, estrogen's primary effect is directly on the pituitary. Estrogen selectively inhibits FSH secretion by the gonadotropes.

This differential secretion of FSH and LH by the gonadotropes induced by estrogen is in part responsible for the declining plasma FSH level, unlike the rising plasma LH concentration, during the follicular phase as the estrogen level rises (see ● Figure 18-13, step 6). Another contributing factor to the fall in FSH during the follicular phase is secretion of *inhibin* by the follicular cells. Inhibin preferentially inhibits FSH secretion by acting at the anterior pituitary, just as it does in the male (● Figure 18-14). The decline in FSH secretion brings about atresia of all but the single dominant, most mature of the developing follicles.

In contrast to FSH, LH secretion continues to rise slowly during the follicular phase (see ● Figure 18-13, step 7) despite inhibition of GnRH (and thus, indirectly, LH) secretion. This

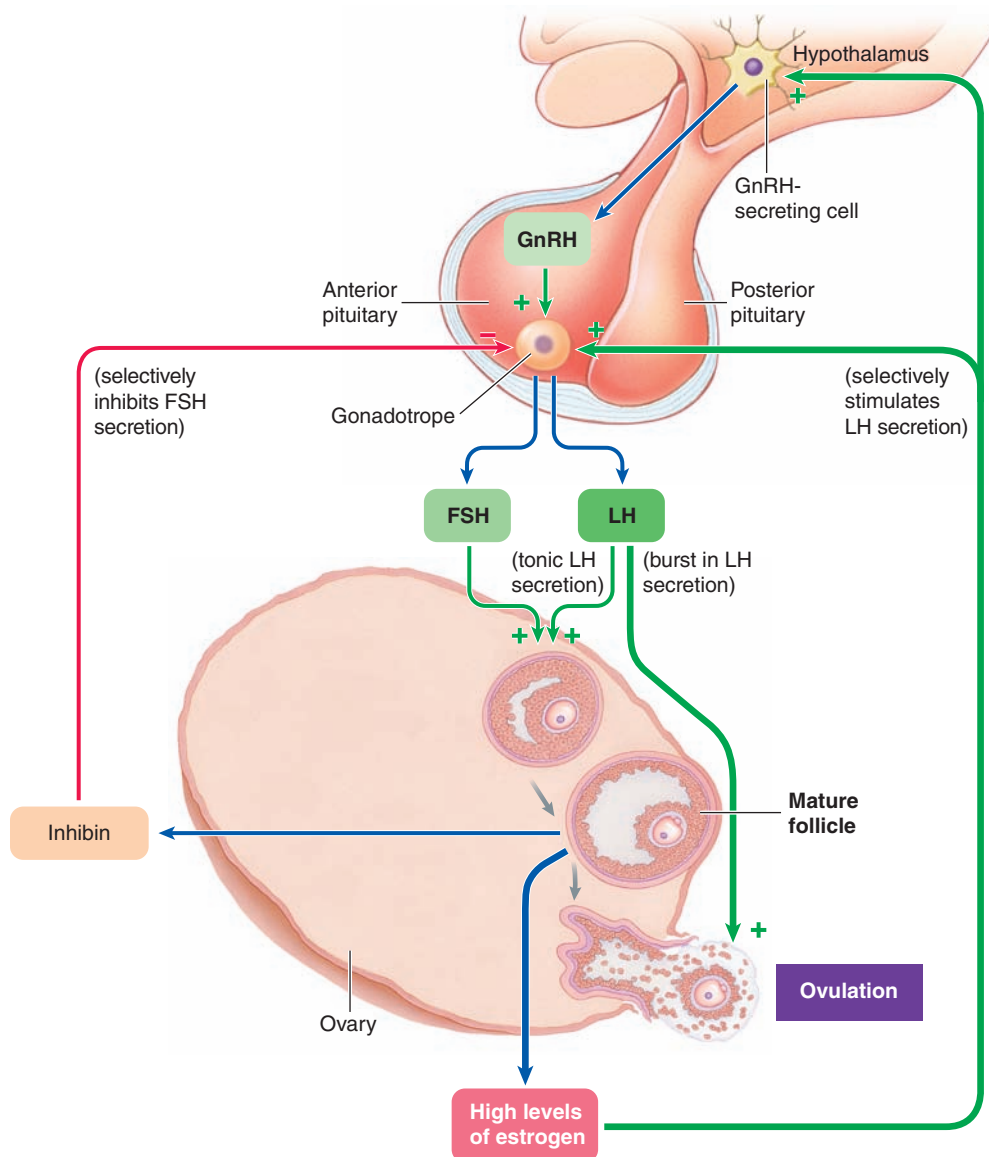
seeming paradox occurs because estrogen alone cannot completely suppress **tonic** (low-level, ongoing) **LH secretion**; to completely inhibit tonic LH secretion, both estrogen and progesterone are required. Because progesterone does not appear until the luteal phase of the cycle, the basal level of circulating LH slowly increases during the follicular phase under incomplete inhibition by estrogen alone.

**CONTROL OF OVULATION** Ovulation and subsequent luteinization of the ruptured follicle are triggered by an abrupt, massive increase in LH secretion (step 9). This **LH surge** brings about four major changes in the follicle:

1. It halts estrogen synthesis by the follicular cells (step 11).
2. It reinitiates meiosis in the mature follicle's oocyte, which had been in meiotic arrest since fetal development.
3. It triggers production of local prostaglandins, which induce ovulation by promoting vascular changes that cause rapid follicular swelling while inducing enzymatic digestion of the follicular wall. Together, these actions lead to rupture of the weakened wall that covers the bulging follicle (step 10).
4. It causes differentiation of follicular cells into luteal cells. Because the LH surge triggers both ovulation and luteinization, formation of the corpus luteum automatically follows ovulation (step 12). Thus, the midcycle burst in LH secretion is a dramatic point in the cycle; it terminates the follicular phase and initiates the luteal phase (step 15).

The two modes of LH secretion—tonic LH secretion (step 7) that promotes ovarian hormone secretion and the LH surge (step 9) that causes ovulation—not only occur at different times and produce different effects but also are controlled by different mechanisms. Tonic LH secretion is partially suppressed by the inhibitory action of the rising, moderate levels of estrogen (step 3) during the follicular phase and is completely suppressed (step 17) by the increasing levels of progesterone during the luteal phase (step 13). Because tonic LH secretion stimulates both estrogen and progesterone secretion, this is a typical negative-feedback effect.

In contrast, the LH surge is triggered by a *positive-feedback effect*. Whereas the rising, moderate level of estrogen early in the follicular phase *inhibits* LH secretion, the high level of estrogen that occurs during peak estrogen secretion late in the follicular phase (step 8) *stimulates* LH secretion and initiates the LH surge (● Figure 18-15). Thus, LH enhances estrogen production by the follicle, and the resultant peak estrogen concentration stimulates LH secretion. The high plasma concentration of estrogen acts directly on the hypothalamus to increase GnRH, thereby increasing both LH and FSH secretion. It also acts directly on the anterior pituitary to specifically increase LH secretion by the gonadotropes. The latter effect largely accounts for the much greater surge in LH secretion compared to FSH secretion at midcycle (see ● Figure 18-13, step 9). Also, continued inhibin secretion by the follicular cells preferentially inhibits FSH secretion, keeping the FSH levels from rising as high as the LH levels. There is no known role for the modest midcycle surge



● **FIGURE 18-15** Control of the LH surge at ovulation.

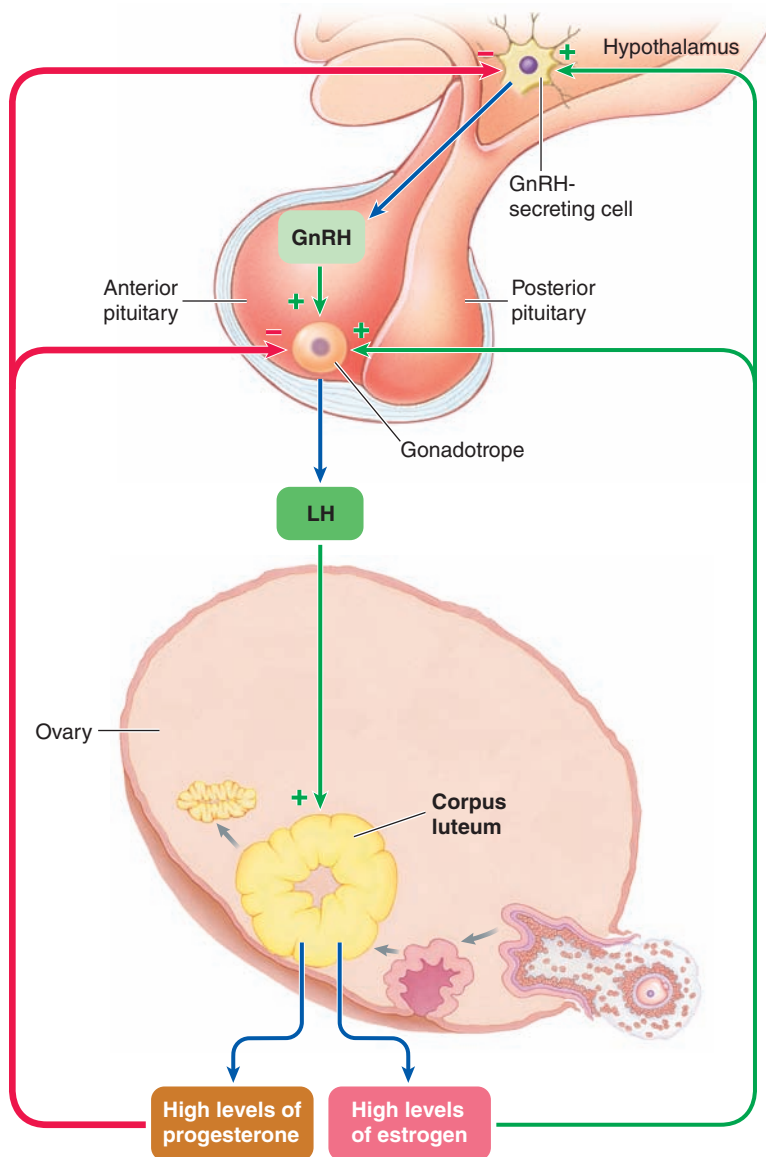
in FSH that accompanies the pronounced and pivotal LH surge. Because only a mature, preovulatory follicle, not follicles in earlier stages of development, can secrete high-enough levels of estrogen to trigger the LH surge, ovulation is not induced until a follicle has reached the proper size and degree of maturation. In a way, then, the follicle lets the hypothalamus know when it is ready to be stimulated to ovulate. The LH surge lasts for about a day at midcycle, just before ovulation.

**CONTROL OF THE CORPUS LUTEUM** LH “maintains” the corpus luteum; that is, after triggering development of the CL, LH stimulates ongoing steroid hormone secretion by this ovarian structure. Under the influence of LH, the CL secretes both progesterone (step 13) and estrogen (step 14), with progesterone being its most abundant hormonal product. The plasma progesterone level increases for the first time during the luteal phase. No progesterone is secreted during the follicular phase. Therefore, the

follicular phase is dominated by estrogen and the luteal phase by progesterone.

A transitory drop in the level of circulating estrogen occurs at midcycle (step 11) as the estrogen-secreting follicle meets its demise at ovulation. The estrogen level climbs again during the luteal phase because of the CL’s activity, although it does not reach the same peak as during the follicular phase. What keeps the modestly high estrogen level during the luteal phase from triggering another LH surge? Progesterone. Even though a high level of estrogen stimulates LH secretion, progesterone, which dominates the luteal phase, powerfully inhibits LH secretion (step 17), as well as FSH secretion (step 16) by acting at both the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary (● Figure 18-16). Inhibition of FSH and LH by progesterone prevents new follicular maturation and ovulation during the luteal phase. Under progesterone’s influence, the reproductive system is gearing up to support the just-released ovum, should it be fertilized, instead of preparing other ova for release. No inhibin is secreted by the luteal cells.

The corpus luteum functions for an average of 2 weeks and then degenerates if fertilization does not occur (see ● Figure 18-13, step 13). The mechanisms that govern degeneration of the CL are not fully understood. The declining level of circulating LH (step 17), driven down by inhibitory actions of progesterone, undoubtedly contributes to the CL’s downfall. Prostaglandins and estrogens released by the luteal cells themselves may play a role. Demise of the CL terminates the luteal phase and sets the stage for a new follicular phase. As the CL degenerates, plasma progesterone (step 19) and estrogen (step 20) levels fall rapidly because these hormones are no longer being produced. Withdrawal of the inhibitory effects of these hormones on the hypothalamus allows FSH (step 21) and tonic LH (step 22) secretion to modestly increase again. Under the influence of these gonadotropic hormones, another batch of primary follicles (step 2) is induced to mature as a new follicular phase begins (step 1).



● **FIGURE 18-16** Feedback control during the luteal phase.

### Cyclic uterine changes are caused by hormonal changes during the ovarian cycle.

The fluctuations in circulating levels of estrogen and progesterone during the ovarian cycle induce profound changes in the uterus, giving rise to the **menstrual**, or **uterine, cycle**. Because it reflects hormonal changes during the ovarian cycle, the menstrual cycle averages 28 days, as does the ovarian cycle, although even normal adults vary considerably from this mean. The outward manifestation of the cyclic changes in the uterus is the menstrual bleeding once during each menstrual cycle (that is, once a month). Less obvious changes take place throughout the cycle, however, as the uterus is prepared for implantation, should a released ovum be fertilized, and then is stripped clean of its prepared lining (menstruation) if implantation does not occur, only to repair itself and start preparing for the ovum that will be released during the next cycle.

We briefly examine the influences of estrogen and progesterone on the uterus and then consider the effects of cyclic fluctuations of these hormones on uterine structure and function.

**INFLUENCES OF ESTROGEN AND PROGESTERONE ON THE UTERUS** The uterus consists of two main layers: the **myometrium**, the outer smooth muscle layer, and the **endometrium**, the inner lining that contains numerous blood vessels and glands. Estrogen stimulates growth of both the myometrium and the endometrium. It also induces synthesis of progesterone receptors in the endometrium. Thus, progesterone can exert an effect on the endometrium only after it has been “primed” by estrogen. Progesterone acts on the estrogen-primed endometrium to convert it into a hospitable and nutritious lining suitable for implantation of a fertilized ovum. Under the influence of progesterone, the endometrial connective tissue becomes loose and edematous as a result of an accumulation of electrolytes and water, which facilitates implantation of the fertilized ovum. Progesterone further prepares the endometrium to sustain an early-developing embryo by stimulating the endometrial glands to secrete and store large quantities of glycogen (stored glucose) and by causing tremendous growth of the endometrial blood vessels. Progesterone also reduces the contractility of the uterus to provide a quiet environment for implantation and embryonic growth.

The menstrual cycle consists of three phases: the *menstrual phase*, the *proliferative phase*, and the *secretory*, or *progestational, phase*.

**MENSTRUAL PHASE** The **menstrual phase** is the most overt phase, characterized by discharge of blood and endometrial debris from the vagina (see ● Figure 18-13, step 23). By convention, the first day of menstruation is considered the start of a new cycle. It coincides with the end of the ovarian luteal phase and onset of a new follicular phase. As the corpus luteum degenerates because fertilization and implantation of the ovum released during the preceding cycle did not take place (step 18), circulating levels of progesterone and estrogen drop precipitously (steps 19 and 20). Because the net effect of progesterone and estrogen is to prepare the endometrium for implantation of a fertilized ovum, withdrawal of these steroids deprives the highly vascular, nutrient-rich uterine lining of its hormonal support.

The fall in ovarian hormone levels also stimulates release of a uterine prostaglandin that causes vasoconstriction of the endometrial vessels, disrupting the blood supply to the endometrium. The subsequent reduction in O<sub>2</sub> delivery causes death of the endometrium, including its blood vessels. The resulting bleeding through the disintegrating vessels flushes the dying endometrial tissue into the uterine lumen. Most of the uterine lining sloughs during each menstrual period except for a deep,

thin layer of epithelial cells and glands, from which the endometrium will regenerate. The same local uterine prostaglandin also stimulates mild rhythmic contractions of the uterine myometrium. These contractions help expel the blood and endometrial debris from the uterine cavity out through the vagina as **menstrual flow**. Excessive uterine contractions caused by prostaglandin overproduction produce the *menstrual cramps* some women experience.

The average blood loss during a single menstrual period is 50 to 150 ml. In addition to the blood and endometrial debris, large numbers of leukocytes are found in the menstrual flow. These white blood cells play an important defense role in helping the raw endometrium resist infection.

Menstruation typically lasts for about 5 to 7 days after degeneration of the CL, coinciding in time with the early portion of the ovarian follicular phase (steps 23 and 1). Withdrawal of progesterone and estrogen (steps 19 and 20) on degeneration of the CL leads simultaneously to sloughing of the endometrium (menstruation) (step 23) and development of new follicles in the ovary (steps 1 and 2) under the influence of rising gonadotropic hormone levels (steps 21 and 22). The drop in gonadal hormone secretion removes inhibitory influences from the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary, so FSH and LH secretion increases and a new follicular phase begins. After 5 to 7 days under the influence of FSH and LH, the newly growing follicles are secreting enough estrogen (step 3) to promote repair and growth of the endometrium.

**PROLIFERATIVE PHASE** Thus, menstrual flow ceases, and the **proliferative phase** of the uterine cycle begins concurrent with the last portion of the ovarian follicular phase as the endometrium starts to repair itself and proliferate (step 24) under the influence of estrogen from the newly growing follicles. When the menstrual flow ceases, a thin endometrial layer less than 1 mm thick remains. Estrogen stimulates proliferation of epithelial cells, glands, and blood vessels in the endometrium, increasing this lining to a thickness of 3 to 5 mm. The estrogen-dominant proliferative phase lasts from the end of menstruation to ovulation. Peak estrogen levels (step 8) trigger the LH surge (step 9) responsible for ovulation (step 10).

**SECRETORY, OR PROGESTATIONAL, PHASE** After ovulation, when a new corpus luteum is formed (step 12), the uterus enters the **secretory**, or **progestational, phase** (step 25), which coincides in time with the ovarian luteal phase (step 15). The CL secretes large amounts of progesterone (step 13) and estrogen (step 14). Progesterone converts the thickened, estrogen-primed endometrium to a richly vascularized, glycogen-filled tissue. This period is called either the *secretory phase*, because the endometrial glands are actively secreting glycogen into the uterine lumen for early nourishment of a developing embryo before it implants, or the *progestational* (“before pregnancy”) *phase*, referring to the development of a lush endometrial lining capable of supporting an early embryo after implantation. If fertilization and implantation do not occur, the CL degenerates and a new follicular phase and menstrual phase begin again.

### Oral contraceptives prevent ovulation.



**Oral contraceptives**, or **birth control pills**, prevent ovulation and thus unwanted pregnancy primarily by suppressing gonadotropin secretion. These pills, which contain synthetic estrogen-like and progesterone-like steroids, are taken for 3 weeks, either in combination or in sequence, and then are withdrawn for 1 week. These steroids, like the natural steroids produced during the ovarian cycle, inhibit GnRH and thus FSH and LH secretion. As a result, follicle maturation and ovulation do not take place, so conception is impossible. The endometrium responds to the exogenous steroids by thickening and developing secretory capacity, just as it would respond to the natural hormones. When these synthetic steroids are withdrawn after 3 weeks, the endometrial lining sloughs and menstruation occurs, as it normally would on degeneration of the corpus luteum.

### Pubertal changes in females are similar to those in males.

Regular menstrual cycles are absent in both young and aging females, but for different reasons. The female reproductive system does not become active until puberty. Unlike the fetal testes, the fetal ovaries need not be functional, because in the absence of fetal testosterone secretion in a female, the reproductive system is automatically feminized, without requiring the presence of female sex hormones. Puberty occurs in females around 12 years of age when hypothalamic GnRH activity increases for the first time. As in the male, the mechanisms that govern the onset of puberty are not clearly understood but are believed to involve the pineal gland and melatonin secretion.

GnRH begins stimulating release of anterior pituitary gonadotropic hormones, which in turn stimulate ovarian activity. The resulting secretion of estrogen by the activated ovaries induces growth and maturation of the female reproductive tract, as well as development of the female secondary sexual characteristics. Estrogen's prominent action in the latter regard is to promote fat deposition in strategic locations, such as the breasts, buttocks, and thighs, giving rise to the typical curvaceous female figure. Enlargement of the breasts at puberty is the result primarily of fat deposition in the breast tissue, not functional development of the mammary glands. The pubertal rise in estrogen also closes the epiphyseal plates, halting further growth in height, similar to the effect of testosterone-turned-estrogen in males. Three other pubertal changes in females—growth of axillary and pubic hair, the pubertal growth spurt, and development of libido—are attributable to a spurt in adrenal androgen secretion at puberty, not to estrogen.

### Menopause is unique to females.

The cessation of a woman's menstrual cycles at menopause sometime between the ages of 45 and 55 has traditionally been attributed to the limited supply of ovarian follicles present at birth. According to this proposal, once this reservoir is depleted, ovarian cycles, and hence menstrual cycles, cease. Thus, the termination of reproductive potential in a middle-aged woman is “preprogrammed” at her own birth. Recent evidence suggests, however, that a midlife hypothalamic change instead

of aging ovaries may trigger the onset of menopause. Evolutionarily, menopause may have developed as a mechanism that prevented pregnancy in women beyond the time that they could likely rear a child before their own death.

Menopause is preceded by a period of progressive ovarian failure characterized by increasingly irregular cycles and dwindling estrogen levels. In addition to the ending of ovarian and menstrual cycles, the loss of ovarian estrogen following menopause brings about many physical and emotional changes. These changes include vaginal dryness, which can cause discomfort during sex, and gradual atrophy of the genital organs. However, postmenopausal women still have a sex drive because of their adrenal androgens.

Males do not experience complete gonadal failure as females do, for two reasons. First, a male's germ cell supply is unlimited because mitotic activity of the spermatogonia continues. Second, gonadal hormone secretion in males is not inextricably dependent on gametogenesis, as it is in females. If female sex hormones were produced by separate tissues unrelated to those governing gametogenesis, as are male sex hormones, estrogen and progesterone secretion would not automatically stop when oogenesis stopped.

You have now learned about the events that take place if fertilization does not occur. Because the primary function of the reproductive system is, of course, reproduction, we next turn our attention to the sequence of events that take place when fertilization does occur.

### The oviduct is the site of fertilization.

**Fertilization**, the union of male and female gametes, normally occurs in the upper third of the oviduct (● Figure 18-17). Thus, both the ovum and the sperm must be transported from their gonadal site of production to the upper oviduct.

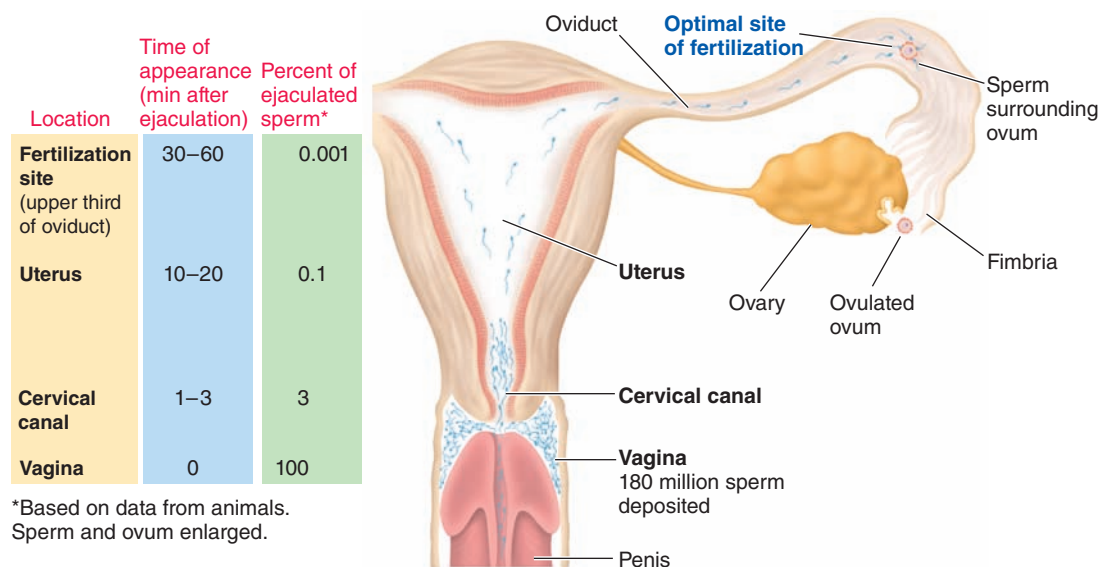
**OVUM TRANSPORT TO THE OVIDUCT** Unlike the male reproductive tract, which has a continuous lumen from the site of sperm production in the seminiferous tubules to exit of the sperm

from the urethra at ejaculation, the ovaries are not in direct contact with the reproductive tract. The ovum is released into the abdominal cavity at ovulation. Normally, however, the egg is quickly picked up by the oviduct. The dilated end of the oviduct cups around the ovary and contains **fimbriae**, fingerlike projections that contract in a sweeping motion to guide the released ovum into the oviduct (see ● Figures 18-2b, p. 548, and 18-17). Furthermore, the fimbriae are lined by cilia—fine, hairlike projections that beat in waves toward the interior of the oviduct—further assuring the ovum's passage into the oviduct (see p. 36).

Conception can take place during a limited time span in each cycle (the **fertile period**). If not fertilized, the ovum begins to disintegrate within 12 to 24 hours and is subsequently phagocytized by cells that line the reproductive tract. Fertilization must therefore occur within 24 hours after ovulation, when the ovum is still viable. Sperm typically survive about 48 hours but can survive up to 5 days in the female reproductive tract, so sperm deposited from 5 days before ovulation to 24 hours after ovulation may be able to fertilize the released ovum, although these times vary considerably.

**SPERM TRANSPORT TO THE OVIDUCT** After sperm are deposited in the vagina at ejaculation, they must travel through the cervical canal, through the uterus, and then up to the egg in the upper third of the oviduct (● Figure 18-17). The first sperm arrive in the oviduct within half an hour after ejaculation. Even though sperm are mobile by means of whiplike contractions of their tails, 30 minutes is too soon for a sperm's own mobility to transport it to the site of fertilization. To make this formidable journey, sperm need the help of the female reproductive tract.

The first hurdle is passage through the cervical canal. Throughout most of the cycle, the cervical mucus is too thick to permit sperm penetration. The cervical mucus becomes thin and watery enough to permit sperm to penetrate only when estrogen levels are high, as in the presence of a mature follicle about to ovulate. Sperm migrate up the cervical canal under



● **FIGURE 18-17** Ovum and sperm transport to the site of fertilization.



their own power. The canal remains penetrable for only 2 or 3 days during each cycle, around the time of ovulation.

Once sperm have entered the uterus, contractions of the myometrium churn them around in “washing-machine” fashion. This action quickly disperses sperm throughout the uterine cavity. When sperm reach the oviduct, they are propelled to the fertilization site in the upper end of the oviduct by upward contractions of the oviduct smooth muscle. These myometrial and oviduct contractions that facilitate sperm transport are induced by the high estrogen level just before ovulation, aided by seminal prostaglandins.

Even around ovulation time, when sperm can penetrate the cervical canal, of the 165 million sperm typically deposited in a single ejaculate, only a few thousand make it to the oviduct (● Figure 18-17). That only a very small percentage of the deposited sperm ever reach their destination is one reason sperm concentration must be so high (20 million/ml of semen) for a man to be fertile. The other reason is that the acrosomal enzymes of many sperm are needed to break down the barriers surrounding the ovum (● Figure 18-18).

**FERTILIZATION** The tail of the sperm is used to maneuver for final penetration of the ovum. To fertilize an ovum, a sperm must first pass through the corona radiata and zona pellucida surrounding it. The sperm penetrates the corona radiata by means of membrane-bound enzymes in the surface membrane that surrounds the head (● Figure 18-19a, step 1). Sperm can penetrate the zona pellucida only after binding with specific **ZP3 receptors** on the surface of this layer. Only sperm of the

same species can bind to these zona pellucida sites and pass through. Binding of sperm triggers the **acrosome reaction**, in which the acrosomal membrane disrupts and the acrosomal enzymes are released (step 2). The acrosomal enzymes digest the zona pellucida, enabling the sperm, with its tail still beating, to tunnel a path through this protective barrier (step 3). The first sperm to reach the ovum itself fuses with the plasma membrane of the ovum (actually a secondary oocyte), and its head (bearing its DNA) enters the ovum’s cytoplasm (step 4). The sperm’s tail is frequently lost in this process, but the head carries the crucial genetic information. Sperm–egg fusion triggers the exocytosis of enzyme-filled **cortical granules** that are located in the outermost, or cortical, region of the egg into the space between the egg membrane and the zona pellucida (step 5). These enzymes diffuse into the zona pellucida, where they inactivate the ZP3 receptors so that other sperm reaching the zona pellucida cannot bind with it. The enzymes also harden the zona pellucida and seal off tunnels in progress to keep other penetrating sperm from advancing. These chemical changes in the ovum’s surrounding membrane makes this outer layer impenetrable to the entry of any more sperm, a phenomenon is known as **block to polyspermy** (“many sperm”).

Sperm entry also triggers the second meiotic division of the egg, which is now ready to unite with the sperm to complete the fertilization process. Within an hour, the sperm and egg nuclei fuse, thanks to a molecular complex provided by the sperm that forms microtubules (see p. 35) to bring the male and female chromosome sets together for uniting. In addition to contributing its half of the chromosomes to the fertilized ovum, now called a **zygote**, the victorious sperm activates ovum enzymes essential for the early embryonic developmental program.

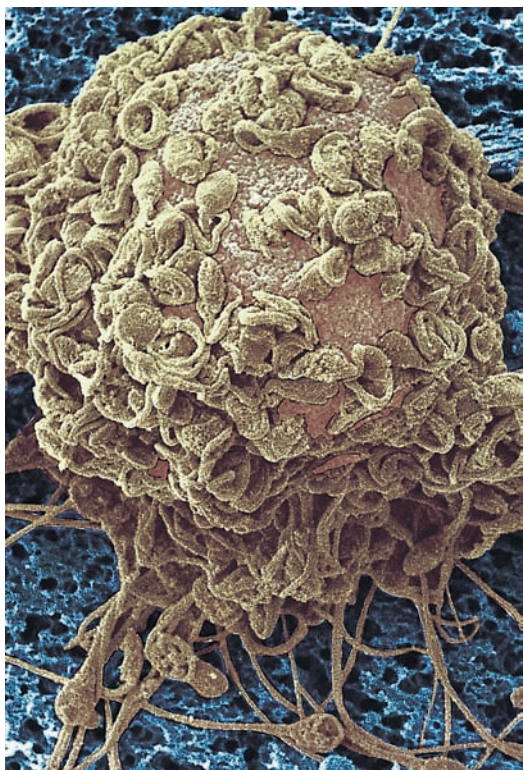
### The blastocyst implants in the endometrium through the action of its trophoblastic enzymes.

During the first 3 to 4 days following fertilization, the zygote remains within the oviduct. Then it descends and floats freely within the uterine cavity for another 3 to 4 days before implanting.

**THE BEGINNING STEPS** The zygote is not idle during this time. It rapidly undergoes a number of mitotic cell divisions to form a solid ball of cells called the *morula* (● Figure 18-20).

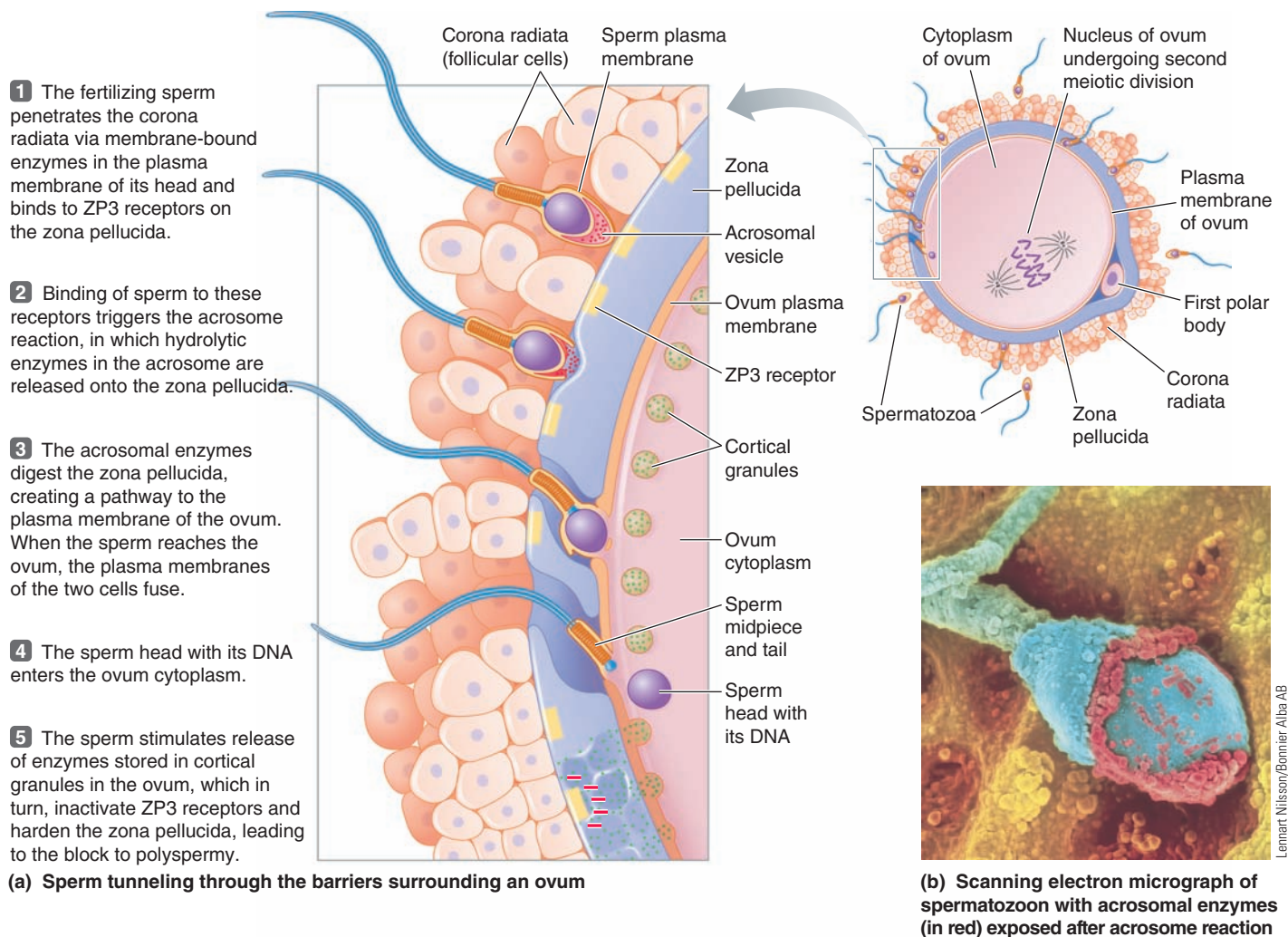
During the first 6 to 8 days, while the developing embryo is in transit in the oviduct and floating in the uterine lumen, the rising levels of progesterone from the newly developed corpus luteum that formed after ovulation stimulate release of glycogen from the endometrium into the reproductive tract lumen for use as energy by the early embryo. The nutrients stored in the cytoplasm of the ovum can sustain the embryo for less than a day. After that, the embryo relies on this secreted glycogen until implantation takes place.

Meanwhile, the uterine lining is simultaneously being prepared for implantation under the influence of luteal-phase progesterone. During this time, the uterus is in its secretory, or pregestational phase, storing up glycogen and becoming richly vascularized.

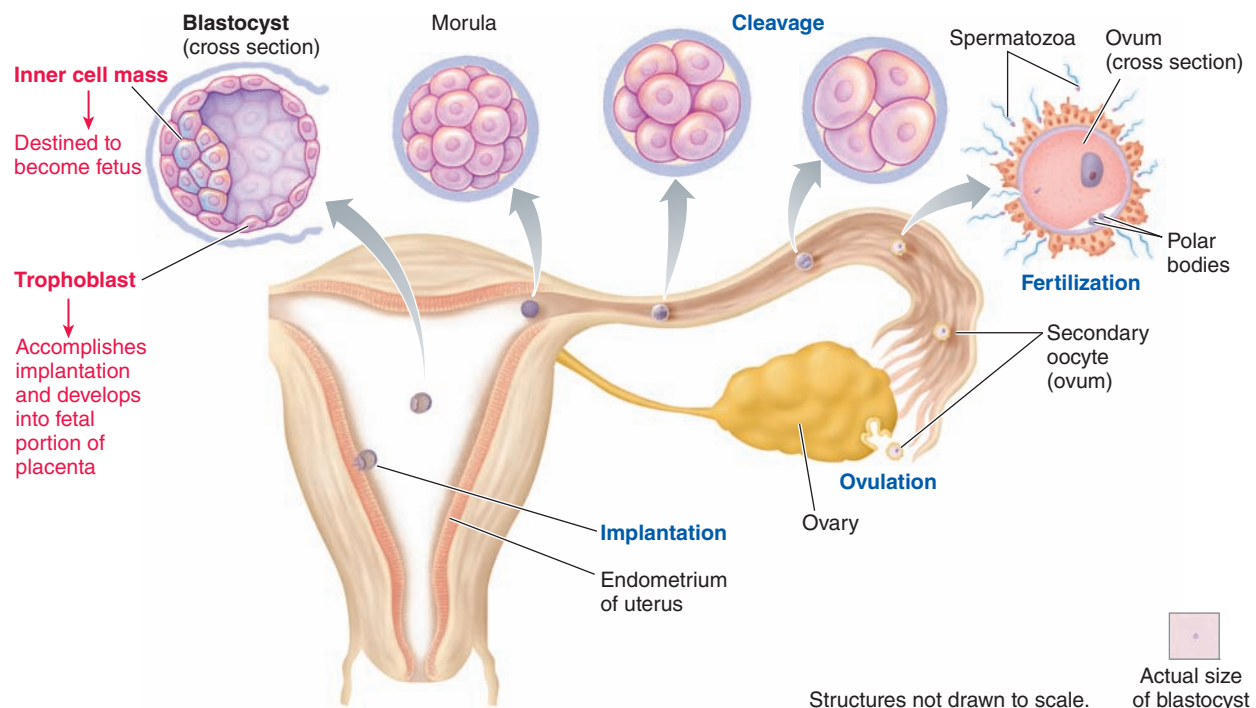


© David Scharf

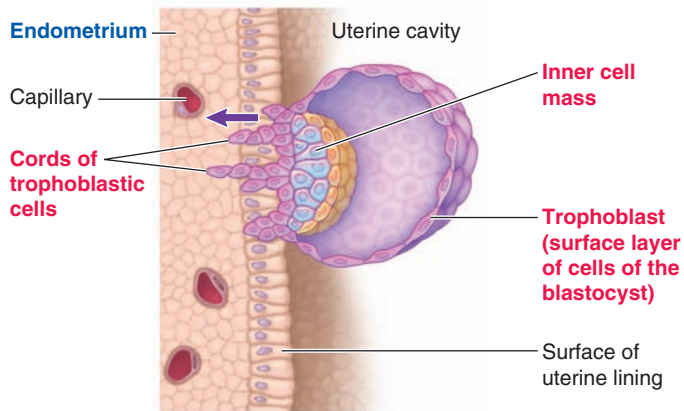
● **FIGURE 18-18** Scanning electron micrograph of sperm amassed at the surface of an ovum.



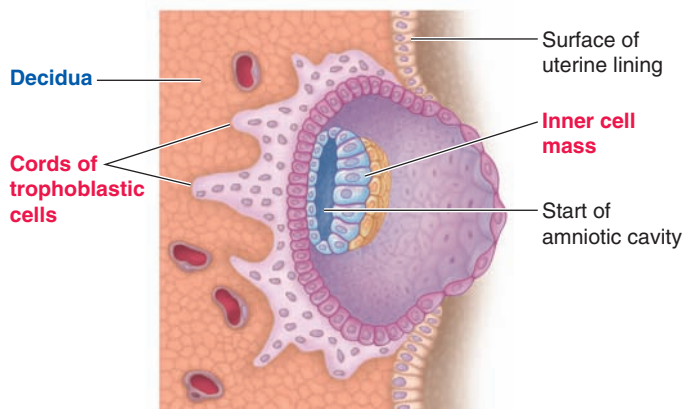
● **FIGURE 18-19** Process of fertilization.



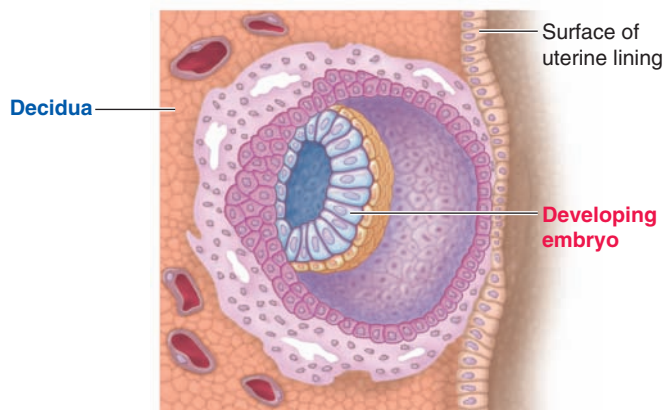
● **FIGURE 18-20** Early stages of development from fertilization to implantation. Note that the fertilized ovum progressively divides and differentiates into a blastocyst as it moves from the site of fertilization in the upper oviduct to the site of implantation in the uterus.



**1** When the free-floating blastocyst adheres to the endometrial lining, cords of trophoblastic cells begin to penetrate the endometrium.



**2** Advancing cords of trophoblastic cells tunnel deeper into the endometrium, carving out a hole for the blastocyst. The boundaries between the cells in the advancing trophoblastic tissue disintegrate.



**3** When implantation is finished, the blastocyst is completely buried in the endometrium.

● **FIGURE 18-21** Implantation of the blastocyst.

**IMPLANTATION OF THE BLASTOCYST IN THE PREPARED ENDOMETRIUM** By the time the endometrium is suitable for implantation (about a week after ovulation), the morula has descended to the uterus and continued to proliferate and differentiate into a *blastocyst* capable of implantation. The week's delay after fertilization and before implantation allows time for both the endometrium and the developing embryo to prepare for implantation.

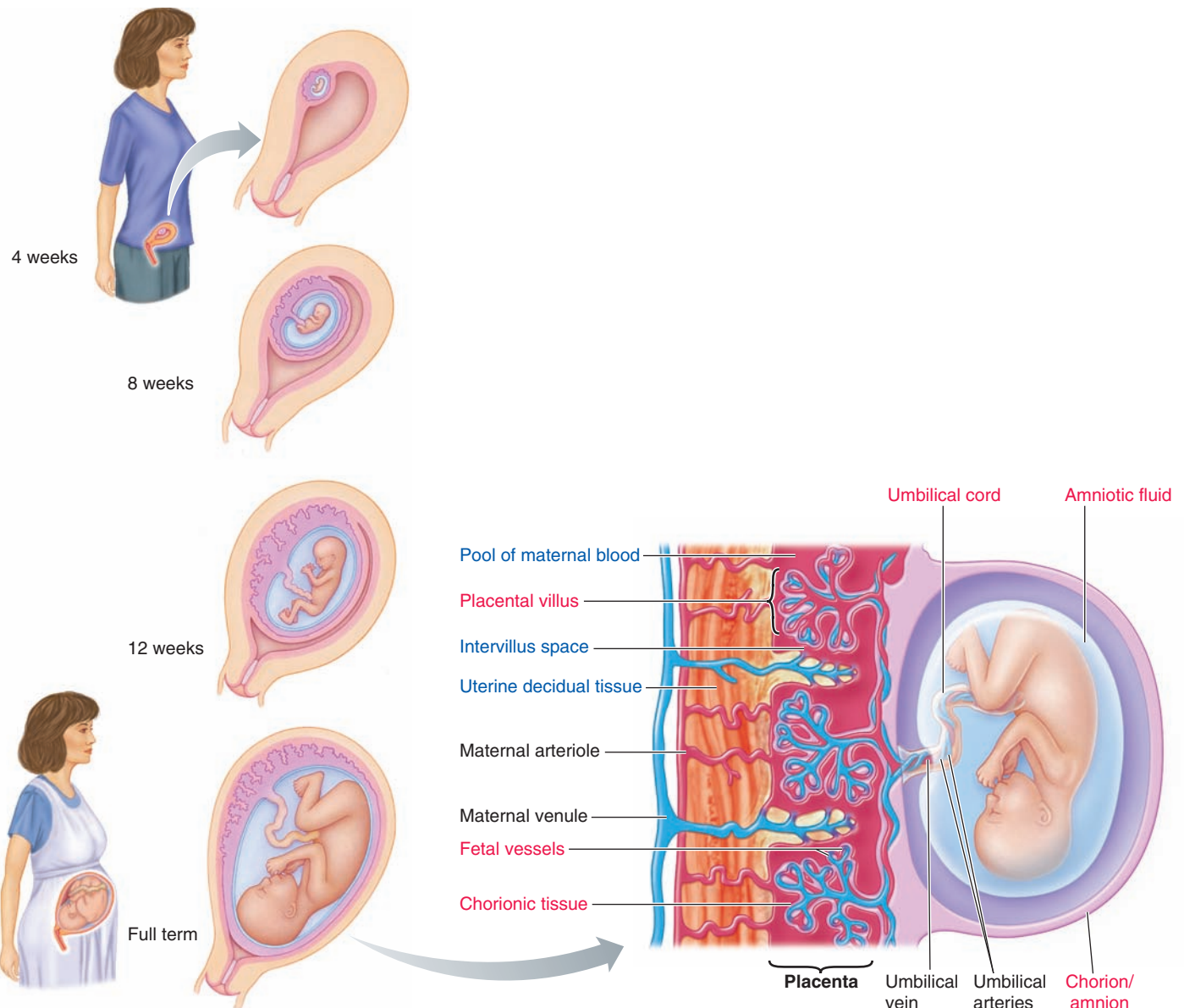
A **blastocyst** is a single-layer hollow ball of about 50 cells encircling a fluid-filled cavity, with a dense mass of cells grouped together at one side (● Figure 18-20). This dense mass, known as the **inner cell mass**, becomes the embryo and then fetus. The rest of the blastocyst is never incorporated into the fetus, instead serving a supportive role during intrauterine life. The thin outermost layer, the **trophoblast**, accomplishes implantation, after which it develops into the fetal portion of the placenta.

When the blastocyst is ready to implant, its surface becomes sticky. By this time, the endometrium is ready to accept the early embryo and it too has become more adhesive through increased formation of cell adhesion molecules (CAMs) that help “Velcro” the blastocyst when it first contacts the uterine lining. The blastocyst adheres to the uterine lining on the side of its inner cell mass (● Figure 18-21, step **1**). **Implantation** begins when, on contact with the endometrium, the trophoblastic cells overlying the inner cell mass release protein-digesting enzymes. These enzymes digest pathways between the endometrial cells, permitting fingerlike cords of trophoblastic cells to penetrate into the depths of the endometrium, where they continue to digest uterine cells (step **2**). Through its cannibalistic actions, the trophoblast performs the dual functions of accomplishing implantation as it carves out a hole in the endometrium for the blastocyst and making metabolic fuel and raw materials available for the developing embryo as the advancing trophoblastic projections break down the nutrient-rich endometrial tissue. The plasma membranes of the advancing trophoblastic cells degenerate, forming a multinucleated syncytium that will eventually become the fetal portion of the placenta.

Stimulated by the invading trophoblast, the endometrial tissue at the contact site undergoes dramatic changes that enhance its ability to support the implanting embryo, such as increased vascularization and enhanced nutrient storage. The endometrial tissue so modified at the implantation site is called the **decidua**. It is into this super-rich decidual tissue that the blastocyst becomes embedded. After the blastocyst burrows into the decidua by means of trophoblastic activity, a layer of endometrial cells covers over the surface of the hole, completely burying the blastocyst within the uterine lining (step **3**). The trophoblastic layer continues to digest the surrounding decidual cells, providing energy for the embryo until the placenta develops.

### The placenta is the organ of exchange between maternal and fetal blood.

The glycogen stores in the endometrium are sufficient to nourish the embryo only during its first few weeks. To sustain the growing embryo and then fetus for the duration of intrauterine life, the **placenta**, a specialized organ of exchange between ma-



(a) Relationship between developing fetus and uterus as pregnancy progresses

(b) Representation of interlocking maternal and fetal structures that form the placenta

● **FIGURE 18-22 Placentation.** Fingerlike projections of chorionic (fetal) tissue form the placental villi, which protrude into a pool of maternal blood. Decidual (maternal) capillary walls are broken down by the expanding chorion so that maternal blood oozes through the spaces between the placental villi. Fetal placental capillaries branch off the umbilical arteries and project into the placental villi. Fetal blood flowing through these vessels is separated from the maternal blood by only the capillary wall and thin chorionic layer that forms the placental villi. Maternal blood enters through the maternal arterioles and then percolates through the pool of blood in the intervillous spaces. Here, exchanges are made between fetal and maternal blood before the fetal blood leaves through the umbilical vein and maternal blood exits through the maternal venules.

ternal and fetal blood, rapidly develops (● Figure 18-22). The placenta is derived from both trophoblastic and decidual tissue. It is an unusual organ because it is composed of tissues of two organisms: the embryo–fetus and the mother.

**FORMATION OF THE PLACENTA AND AMNIOTIC SAC** By day 12, the embryo is completely embedded in the decidua. By this time, the trophoblastic layer is two cell layers thick and is called

the **chorion**. As the chorion continues to release enzymes and expand, it forms an extensive network of cavities within the decidua. As the expanding chorion erodes decidual capillary walls, maternal blood leaks from the capillaries and fills these cavities. Fingerlike projections of chorionic tissue extend into the pools of maternal blood. Soon the developing embryo sends out capillaries into these chorionic projections to form **placental villi**.

Each placental villus contains embryonic (later fetal) capillaries surrounded by a thin layer of chorionic tissue, which separates the embryonic–fetal blood from the pools of maternal blood in the intervillous (“between villi”) spaces. Maternal and fetal blood do not actually mingle, but the barrier between them is extremely thin. To visualize this relationship, think of your hands (the fetal capillary blood vessels) in rubber gloves (the chorionic tissue) immersed in water (the pool of maternal blood). Only the rubber gloves separate your hands from the water. In the same way, only the thin chorionic tissue (plus the capillary wall of the fetal vessels) separates the fetal and maternal blood. All exchanges between these two bloodstreams take place across this extremely thin barrier. This entire system of interlocking maternal (decidual) and fetal (chorionic) structures makes up the placenta.

Even though not fully developed, the placenta is well established and operational by 5 weeks after implantation. By this time, the heart of the developing embryo is pumping blood into the placental villi, as well as to the embryonic tissues. Throughout gestation, fetal blood continuously traverses between the placental villi and the circulatory system of the fetus by means of two **umbilical arteries** and one **umbilical vein**, which are wrapped within the **umbilical cord**, a lifeline between the fetus and the placenta (● Figure 18-22b). The maternal blood within the placenta is continuously replaced as fresh blood enters through the uterine arterioles; percolates through the intervillous spaces, where it exchanges substances with fetal blood in the surrounding villi; and then exits through the uterine vein.

Meanwhile, during the time of implantation and early placental development, the inner cell mass forms a fluid-filled **amniotic cavity** between the trophoblast–chorion and the portion of the inner cell mass destined to become the fetus (see ● Figure 18-21, step 2). The epithelial layer that encloses the amniotic cavity is called the **amniotic sac**, or **amnion**. As it continues to develop, the amniotic sac eventually fuses with the chorion, forming a single combined membrane that surrounds the embryo–fetus. The fluid in the amniotic cavity, the **amniotic fluid**, which is similar in composition to normal ECF, surrounds and cushions the fetus throughout gestation (● Figures 18-22 and 18-23).

**FUNCTIONS OF THE PLACENTA** During intrauterine life, the placenta performs the functions of the digestive system, the respiratory system, and the kidneys for the “parasitic” fetus. The fetus has these organ systems, but within the uterine environment they cannot (and do not need to) function. Nutrients and O<sub>2</sub> move from the maternal blood across the thin placental barrier into the fetal blood, whereas CO<sub>2</sub> and other metabolic wastes simultaneously move from the fetal blood into the maternal blood. The nutrients and O<sub>2</sub> brought to the fetus in the maternal blood are acquired by the mother’s digestive and respiratory systems, and the CO<sub>2</sub> and wastes transferred into the maternal blood are eliminated by the mother’s lungs and kidneys, respectively. Thus, the mother’s digestive tract, respiratory system, and kidneys serve the fetus’s needs, as well as her own.



Unfortunately, many drugs, environmental pollutants, other chemical agents, and microorganisms in the mother’s bloodstream also can cross the placental barrier, and some of them may harm the developing



Lennart Nilsson/Bonnier Alba AB

● **FIGURE 18-23** A human fetus surrounded by the amniotic sac. The fetus is near the end of the first trimester of development.

fetus. For example, newborns who have become “addicted” during gestation by their mother’s abuse of a drug such as heroin suffer withdrawal symptoms after birth. Even more common chemical agents such as aspirin, alcohol, and agents in cigarette smoke can reach the fetus and have adverse effects. Likewise, fetuses can acquire AIDS before birth if their mothers are infected with the virus. Pregnant women should therefore be cautious about potentially harmful exposure from any source.

The placenta has yet another important responsibility—it becomes a temporary endocrine organ during pregnancy, a topic to which we now turn. During pregnancy, three endocrine systems interact to support and enhance the growth and development of the fetus, to coordinate the timing of parturition, and to prepare the mammary glands for nourishing the baby after birth: placental hormones, maternal hormones, and fetal hormones.

### Hormones secreted by the placenta play a critical role in maintaining pregnancy.

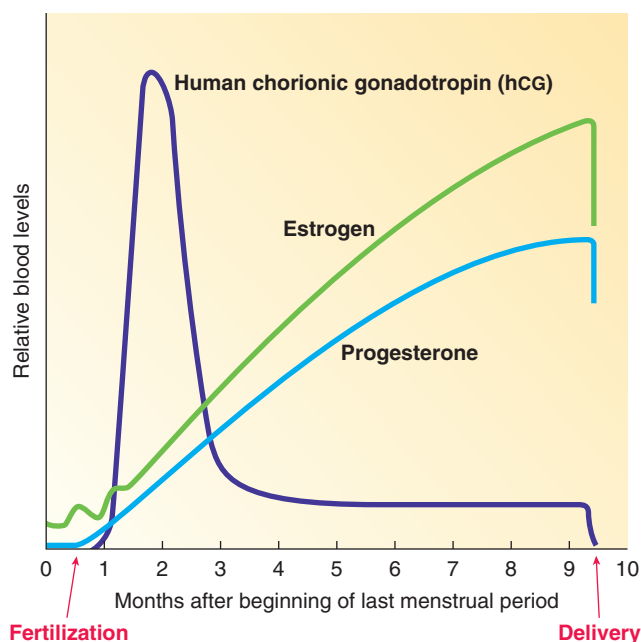
The fetally derived portion of the placenta has the remarkable capacity to secrete a number of peptide and steroid hormones essential for maintaining pregnancy. The most important are *human chorionic gonadotropin*, *estrogen*, and *progesterone*. Serving as the major endocrine organ of pregnancy, the placenta is unique among endocrine tissues in two regards. First, it is a transient tissue. Second, secretion of its hormones is not subject to extrinsic control, in contrast to the stringent, often complex

mechanisms that regulate the secretion of other hormones. Instead, the type and rate of placental hormone secretion depend primarily on the stage of pregnancy.

**SECRETION OF HUMAN CHORIONIC GONADOTROPIN** One of the first endocrine events is secretion by the developing chorion of **human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)**, a peptide hormone that prolongs the life span of the corpus luteum. Recall that, during the ovarian cycle, the CL degenerates and the highly prepared, luteal-dependent uterine lining sloughs off if fertilization and implantation do not occur. When fertilization does occur, the implanted blastocyst saves itself from being flushed out in menstrual flow by producing hCG. This hormone, which is similar to LH and binds to the same receptor as LH, stimulates and maintains the corpus luteum so that it does not degenerate. Now called the **corpus luteum of pregnancy**, this ovarian endocrine unit grows even larger and produces increasingly greater amounts of estrogen and progesterone for an additional 10 weeks until the placenta takes over secretion of these steroid hormones. Because of the persistence of estrogen and progesterone, the thick, pulpy endometrial tissue is maintained instead of sloughing. Accordingly, menstruation ceases during pregnancy.

Stimulation by hCG is necessary to maintain the corpus luteum of pregnancy because LH, which maintains the corpus luteum during the normal luteal phase of the uterine cycle, is suppressed through feedback inhibition by the high levels of progesterone. Maintenance of a normal pregnancy depends on high concentrations of progesterone and estrogen. Thus, hCG production is critical during the first trimester to maintain ovarian output of these hormones.

The secretion rate of hCG increases rapidly during early pregnancy to save the corpus luteum from demise. Peak secretion of hCG occurs about 60 days after the end of the last menstrual period (● Figure 18-24). By the 10th week of pregnancy,



● **FIGURE 18-24** Secretion rates of placental hormones.

hCG output declines to a low rate of secretion that is maintained for the duration of gestation. The fall in hCG occurs when the corpus luteum is no longer needed for its steroid hormone output because the placenta has begun to secrete substantial quantities of estrogen and progesterone.



Human chorionic gonadotropin is eliminated from the body in the urine. Pregnancy diagnosis tests can detect hCG in urine as early as the first month of pregnancy, about 2 weeks after the first missed menstrual period. Because this is before the growing embryo can be detected by physical examination, the test permits early confirmation of pregnancy.

A frequent early clinical sign of pregnancy is **morning sickness**, a daily bout of nausea and vomiting that often occurs in the morning but can take place at any time of day. Because this condition usually appears shortly after implantation and coincides with the time of peak hCG production, scientists speculate that this early placental hormone may trigger the symptoms, perhaps by acting on the chemoreceptor trigger zone next to the vomiting center (see p. 450).

**SECRETION OF ESTROGEN AND PROGESTERONE** Why does the developing placenta not start producing estrogen and progesterone in the first place instead of secreting hCG, which in turn stimulates the corpus luteum to secrete these two critical hormones? The answer is that, for different reasons, the placenta cannot produce enough estrogen or progesterone in the first trimester of pregnancy. In the case of estrogen, the placenta does not have all the enzymes needed for complete synthesis of this hormone. Estrogen synthesis requires a complex interaction between the placenta and the fetus. The placenta converts the androgen hormone produced by the fetal adrenal cortex, dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), into estrogen. The placenta cannot produce estrogen until the fetus has developed to the point that its adrenal cortex is secreting DHEA into the blood. The placenta extracts DHEA from the fetal blood and converts it into estrogen, which it then secretes into the maternal blood.



Estrogen comes in several variants. The primary estrogen synthesized by the placenta is **estriol**, in contrast to the main estrogen product of the ovaries, **estradiol**. Because estriol can only be synthesized from fetal DHEA, measurement of estriol levels in the maternal urine can be used clinically to assess the viability of the fetus.

In the case of progesterone, the placenta can synthesize this hormone soon after implantation. Even though the early placenta has the enzymes necessary to convert cholesterol extracted from the maternal blood into progesterone, it does not produce much of this hormone, because the amount of progesterone produced is proportional to placental weight. The placenta is simply too small in the first 10 weeks of pregnancy to produce enough progesterone to maintain the endometrial tissue. The notable increase in circulating progesterone in the last 7 months of gestation reflects placental growth during this period.

#### ROLES OF ESTROGEN AND PROGESTERONE DURING PREGNANCY

As noted earlier, high concentrations of estrogen and progesterone are essential to maintain a normal pregnancy. Estrogen

stimulates growth of the myometrium, which increases in size throughout pregnancy. The stronger uterine musculature is needed to expel the fetus during labor. Estrogen also promotes development of the ducts within the mammary glands, through which milk will be ejected during lactation.

Progesterone performs various roles throughout pregnancy. Its main function is to prevent miscarriage by suppressing contractions of the uterine myometrium. Progesterone also promotes formation of a thick mucus plug in the cervical canal to prevent vaginal contaminants from reaching the uterus. Finally, placental progesterone stimulates development of milk glands in the breasts in preparation for lactation.

### Maternal body systems respond to the increased demands of gestation.

The period of **gestation (pregnancy)** is about 38 weeks from conception (40 weeks from the end of the last menstrual period). During gestation, the embryo–fetus develops and grows to the point of being able to leave its maternal life-support system. Meanwhile, a number of physical changes within the mother accommodate the demands of pregnancy. The most obvious change is uterine enlargement. The uterus expands and increases in weight more than 20 times, exclusive of its contents. The breasts enlarge and develop the ability to produce milk. Body systems other than the reproductive system also make needed adjustments. The volume of blood increases by 30%, and the cardiovascular system responds to the increasing demands of the growing placental mass. Weight gain during pregnancy is the result only in part of the weight of the fetus. The remainder is mostly from increased weight of the uterus, including the placenta, and increased blood volume. Respiratory activity increases by about 20% to handle the additional fetal requirements for  $O_2$  use and  $CO_2$  removal. Urinary output increases, and the kidneys excrete the additional wastes from the fetus.

The increased metabolic demands of the growing fetus increase nutritional requirements for the mother. In general, the fetus takes what it needs from the mother, even if this leaves the mother with a nutritional deficit. For example, the placenta produces a hormone similar to growth hormone that decreases maternal use of glucose and mobilizes fatty acids, making available greater quantities of these nutrients for shunting to the fetus. Also, if the mother does not consume enough  $Ca^{2+}$ , yet another placental hormone similar to parathyroid hormone mobilizes  $Ca^{2+}$  from the maternal bones to ensure adequate calcification of the fetal bones.

### Changes during late gestation prepare for parturition.

**Parturition (labor, delivery, or birth)** requires (1) dilation of the cervical canal to accommodate passage of the fetus from the uterus through the vagina and to the outside and (2) contractions of the uterine myometrium that are sufficiently strong to expel the fetus.

Several changes take place during late gestation in preparation for the onset of parturition. During the first two trimesters of gestation, the uterus remains relatively quiet because of the

inhibitory effect of the high levels of progesterone on the uterine muscle. During the last trimester, however, the uterus becomes progressively more excitable, so mild contractions (**Braxton–Hicks contractions**) are experienced with increasing strength and frequency. Sometimes these contractions become regular enough to be mistaken for the onset of labor, a phenomenon called “false labor.”

Throughout gestation, the exit of the uterus remains sealed by the rigid, tightly closed cervix. As parturition approaches, the cervix begins to soften (or “ripen”) as a result of the dissociation of its tough connective tissue (collagen) fibers. Because of this softening, the cervix becomes malleable so that it can gradually yield, dilating the exit, as the fetus is forcefully pushed against it during labor. This cervical softening is caused largely by **relaxin**, a peptide hormone produced by the corpus luteum of pregnancy and by the placenta. Other factors to be described shortly contribute to cervical softening. Relaxin also “relaxes” the birth canal by loosening the connective tissue between pelvic bones.

Meanwhile, the fetus shifts downward (the baby “drops”) and is normally oriented so that the head is in contact with the cervix in preparation for exiting through the birth canal. In a **breech birth**, any part of the body other than the head approaches the birth canal first.

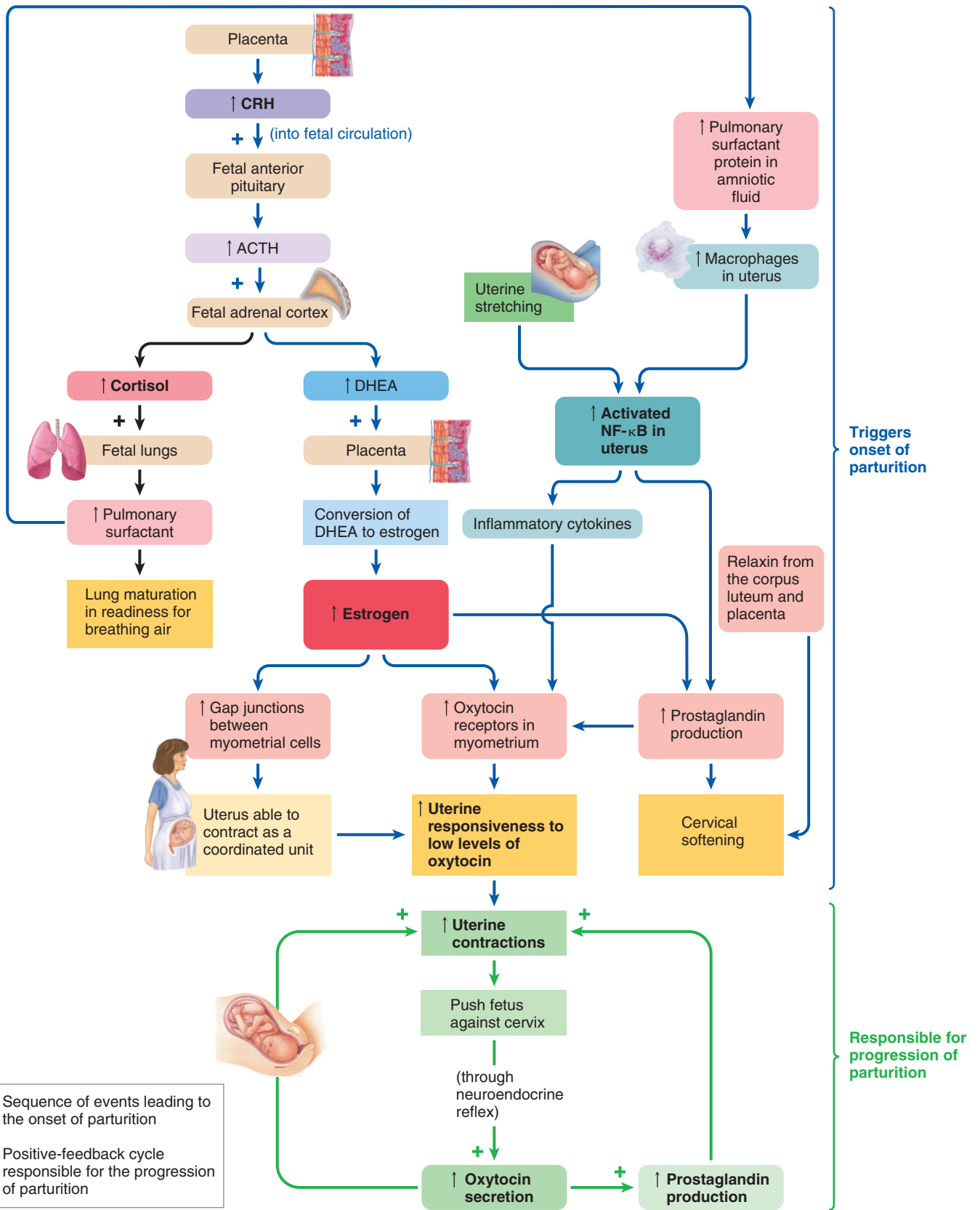
### Scientists are closing in on the factors that trigger the onset of parturition.

Rhythmic, coordinated contractions, usually painless at first, begin at the onset of labor. As labor progresses, the contractions increase in frequency, intensity, and discomfort. These strong, rhythmic contractions force the fetus against the cervix, dilating the cervix. Then, after having dilated the cervix enough for the fetus to pass through, these contractions force the fetus out through the birth canal.

The exact factors triggering the increase in uterine contractility and thus initiating parturition are not fully established, although much progress has been made in recent years in unraveling the sequence of events. Let us look at what is known about this process.

**ROLE OF HIGH ESTROGEN LEVELS** During early gestation, maternal estrogen levels are relatively low, but as gestation proceeds, placental estrogen secretion continues to rise. In the immediate days before the onset of parturition, soaring levels of estrogen bring about changes in the uterus and cervix to prepare them for labor and delivery (● Figures 18-24 and 18-25). First, high levels of estrogen promote the synthesis of connexons within the uterine smooth muscle cells. These myometrial cells are not functionally linked to any extent throughout most of gestation. The newly manufactured connexons are inserted in the myometrial plasma membranes to form gap junctions that electrically link together the uterine smooth muscle cells so that they become able to contract as a coordinated unit (see p. 49).

Simultaneously, high levels of estrogen dramatically and progressively increase the concentration of myometrial receptors for oxytocin. Together, these myometrial changes collec-



● **FIGURE 18-25** Initiation and progression of parturition.



tively bring about the increased uterine responsiveness to oxytocin that ultimately initiates labor.

In addition to preparing the uterus for labor, the increasing levels of estrogen promote production of local prostaglandins that contribute to cervical ripening by stimulating cervical enzymes that locally degrade collagen fibers. Furthermore, these prostaglandins themselves increase uterine responsiveness to oxytocin.

**ROLE OF OXYTOCIN** Oxytocin is a peptide hormone produced by the hypothalamus, stored in the posterior pituitary, and released into the blood from the posterior pituitary on nervous stimulation by the hypothalamus (see p. 501). A powerful uterine muscle stimulant, oxytocin plays the key role in the progression of labor. However, this hormone was once discounted as the trigger for parturition because the circulating levels of oxytocin remain constant prior to the onset of labor. The discovery that uterine responsiveness to oxytocin is 100 times greater at term than in nonpregnant women (because of the connexons and increased concentration of myometrial oxytocin receptors) led to the now widely accepted conclusion that labor begins when the myometrial responsiveness to oxytocin reaches a critical threshold that permits the onset of strong, coordinated contractions in response to ordinary levels of circulating oxytocin.

**ROLE OF CORTICOTROPIN-RELEASING HORMONE** Until recently, scientists were baffled by the factors that raise levels of placental estrogen secretion. Recent research has shed new light on the probable mechanism. Evidence suggests that *corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)* secreted by the fetal portion of the placenta into both the maternal and the fetal circulations not only drives the manufacture of placental estrogen, thus ultimately dictating the timing of the onset of labor, but also promotes changes in the fetal lungs needed for breathing air (● Figure 18-25). Recall that CRH is normally secreted by the hypothalamus and regulates the output of ACTH by the anterior pituitary (see pp. 504 and 520). In turn, ACTH stimulates production of both cortisol and DHEA by the adrenal cortex. In the fetus, much of the CRH comes from the placenta rather than solely from the fetal hypothalamus. The additional cortisol secretion summoned by the extra CRH promotes fetal lung maturation. Specifically, cortisol stimulates the synthesis of pulmonary surfactant, which facilitates lung expansion and reduces the work of breathing (see p. 357).

The bumped-up rate of DHEA secretion by the adrenal cortex in response to placental CRH leads to the rising levels of placental estrogen secretion, because the placenta converts DHEA from the fetal adrenal gland into estrogen, which enters the maternal bloodstream. When sufficiently high, this estrogen sets in motion the events that initiate labor. Thus, pregnancy duration and delivery timing are determined largely by the placenta's rate of CRH production. That is, a "placental clock" ticks out the length of time until parturition. When a critical level of placental CRH is reached, parturition is triggered. This critical CRH level ensures that when labor begins the infant is ready for life outside the womb. It does so by concurrently in-

creasing the fetal cortisol needed for lung maturation and the estrogen needed for the uterine changes that bring on labor. The remaining unanswered puzzle regarding the placental clock is, What controls placental secretion of CRH?

**ROLE OF INFLAMMATION** Surprisingly, recent research suggests that inflammation plays a central role in the labor process. Key to this inflammatory response is activation of **nuclear factor  $\kappa$ B (NF- $\kappa$ B)** in the uterus. NF- $\kappa$ B boosts production of inflammatory cytokines (see p. 316) and prostaglandins that increase the sensitivity of the uterus to contraction-inducing chemical messengers and help soften the cervix. What activates NF- $\kappa$ B, setting off an inflammatory cascade that helps prompt labor? Various factors can cause an upsurge in NF- $\kappa$ B. These include stretching of the uterine muscle and the presence of a specific pulmonary surfactant protein (stimulated by the action of CRH on the fetal lungs) in the amniotic fluid from the fetus. This pulmonary surfactant protein promotes migration of fetal macrophages (see p. 310) to the uterus. These macrophages, in turn, bring about activation of NF- $\kappa$ B. In this way, fetal lung maturation contributes to the onset of labor.



Bacterial infections and allergic reactions can lead to premature labor by activating NF- $\kappa$ B. Also, multiple-fetus pregnancies are at risk for premature labor, likely because the increased uterine stretching triggers earlier activation of NF- $\kappa$ B.

### Parturition is accomplished by a positive-feedback cycle.

Once uterine responsiveness to oxytocin reaches a critical level and regular uterine contractions begin, myometrial contractions progressively increase in frequency, strength, and duration throughout labor until they expel the uterine contents. At the beginning of labor, contractions lasting 30 seconds or less occur about every 25 to 30 minutes; by the end, they last 60 to 90 seconds and occur every 2 to 3 minutes.

As labor progresses, a positive-feedback cycle involving oxytocin and prostaglandin ensues, incessantly increasing myometrial contractions (● Figure 18-25). Each uterine contraction begins at the top of the uterus and sweeps downward, forcing the fetus toward the cervix. Pressure of the fetus against the cervix does two things. First, the fetal head pushing against the softened cervix wedges open the cervical canal. Second, stimulation of receptors in the cervix in response to fetal pressure sends a neural signal up the spinal cord to the hypothalamus, which in turn triggers oxytocin release from the posterior pituitary. This additional oxytocin promotes more powerful uterine contractions. As a result, the fetus is pushed more forcefully against the cervix, stimulating the release of even more oxytocin, and so on. This cycle is reinforced as oxytocin stimulates prostaglandin production by the decidua. As a powerful myometrial stimulant, prostaglandin further enhances uterine contractions. Oxytocin secretion, prostaglandin production, and uterine contractions continue to increase in positive-feedback fashion throughout labor until delivery relieves the pressure on the cervix.

**STAGES OF LABOR** Labor is divided into three stages: (1) cervical dilation, (2) delivery of the baby, and (3) delivery of the placenta (● Figure 18-26). At the onset of labor or sometime during the first stage, the amniotic sac, or “bag of waters,” ruptures. As amniotic fluid escapes out of the vagina, it helps lubricate the birth canal.

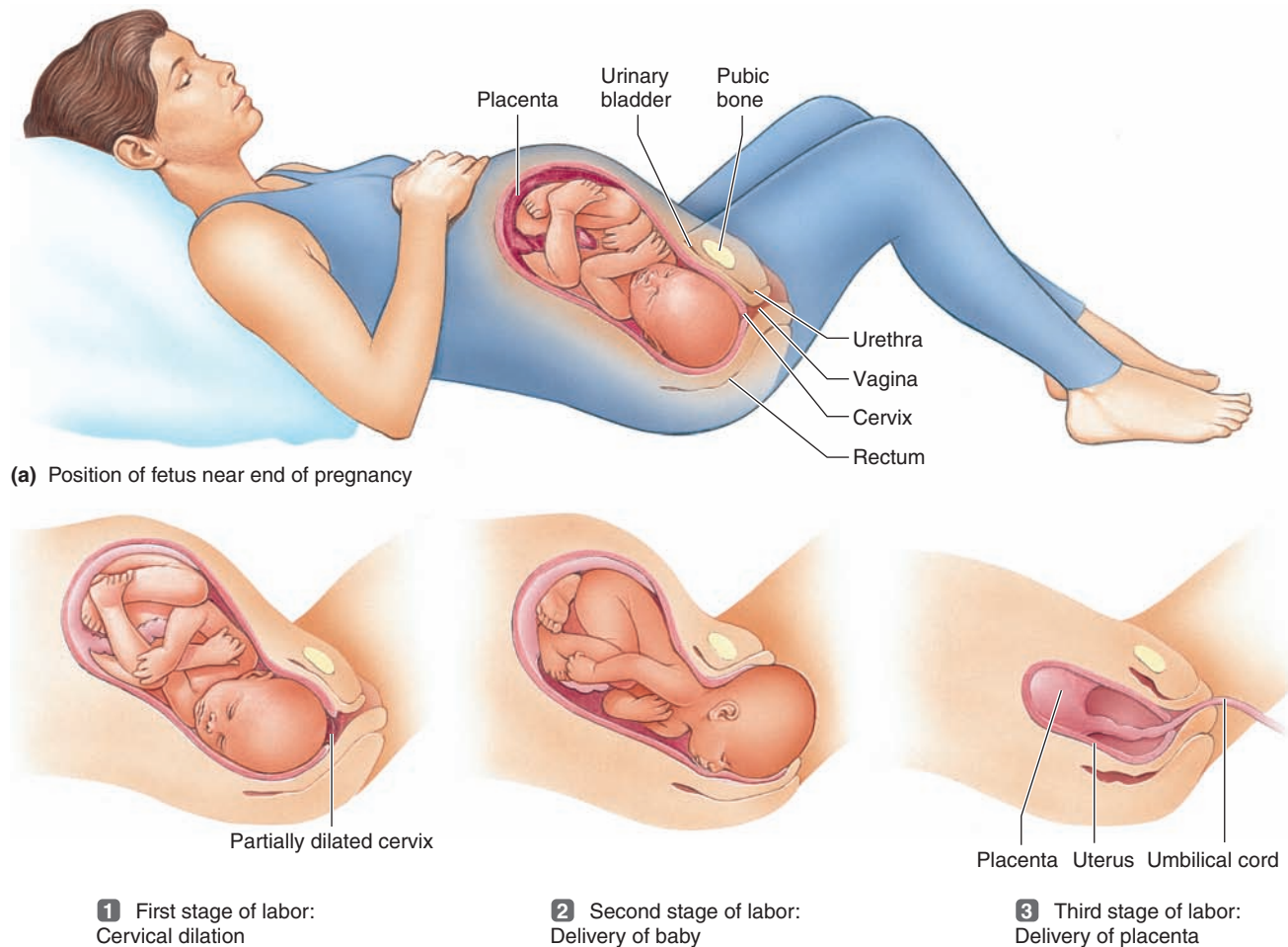
1. During the first stage, the cervix is forced to dilate to accommodate the diameter of the baby’s head, usually to a maximum of 10 cm. This stage is the longest, lasting from several hours to as long as 24 hours in a first pregnancy. If another part of the fetus’s body other than the head is oriented against the cervix, it is generally less effective than the head as a wedge. The head has the largest diameter of the baby’s body. If the baby approaches the birth canal feet first, the feet may not dilate the cervix enough to let the head pass. In such a case, without medical intervention the baby’s head would remain stuck behind the too-narrow cervical opening.

2. The second stage of labor, the actual birth of the baby, begins once cervical dilation is complete. When the infant begins to move through the cervix and vagina, stretch receptors in the vagina activate a neural reflex that triggers contractions of the abdominal wall in synchrony with the uterine contractions.

These abdominal contractions greatly increase the force pushing the baby through the birth canal. The mother can help deliver the infant by voluntarily contracting the abdominal muscles at this time in unison with each uterine contraction (that is, by “pushing” with each “labor pain”). Stage 2 is usually shorter than the first stage, lasting 30 to 90 minutes. The infant is still attached to the placenta by the umbilical cord at birth. The cord is tied and severed, with the stump shriveling up in a few days to form the **umbilicus (navel)**.

3. Shortly after delivery of the baby, a second series of uterine contractions separates the placenta from the myometrium and expels it through the vagina. Delivery of the placenta, or **after-birth**, constitutes the third stage of labor, typically the shortest stage, being completed within 15 to 30 minutes after the baby is born. After the placenta is expelled, continued contractions of the myometrium constrict the uterine blood vessels supplying the site of placental attachment to prevent hemorrhage.

**UTERINE INVOLUTION** After delivery, the uterus shrinks to its pregestational size, a process known as **involution**, which takes 4 to 6 weeks to complete. During involution, the remaining endometrial tissue not expelled with the placenta gradually



(b) Stages of labor  
● **FIGURE 18-26** Stages of labor.

disintegrates and sloughs off, producing a vaginal discharge that continues for 3 to 6 weeks following parturition. After this period, the endometrium is restored to its nonpregnant state.

Involution occurs largely because of the precipitous fall in circulating estrogen and progesterone when the placental source of these steroids is lost at delivery. The process is facilitated in mothers who breast-feed their infants because oxytocin is released in response to suckling. In addition to playing an important role in lactation, this periodic nursing-induced release of oxytocin promotes myometrial contractions that help maintain uterine muscle tone, enhancing involution. Involution is usually complete in about 4 weeks in nursing mothers but takes about 6 weeks in those who do not breast-feed.

### Lactation requires multiple hormonal inputs.

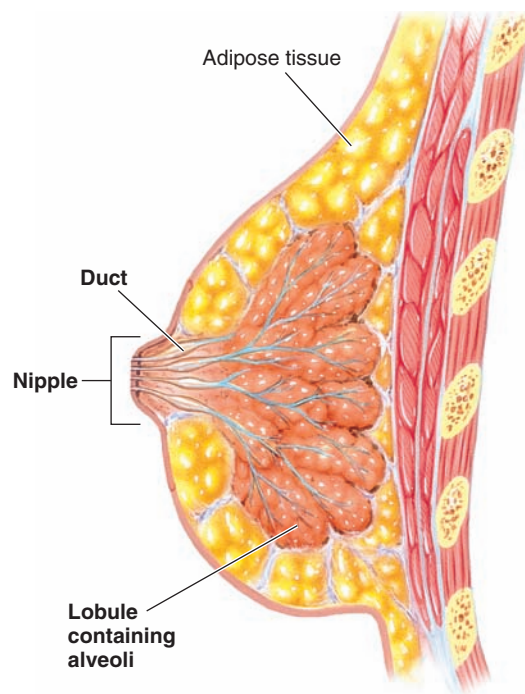
The female reproductive system supports the new being from the moment of conception through gestation and continues to nourish it during its early life outside the supportive uterine environment. Milk (or its equivalent) is essential for survival of the newborn. Accordingly, during gestation the **mammary glands**, or **breasts**, are prepared for **lactation (milk production)**.

The breasts in nonpregnant females consist mostly of adipose tissue and a rudimentary duct system. Breast size is determined by the amount of adipose tissue, which has nothing to do with the ability to produce milk.

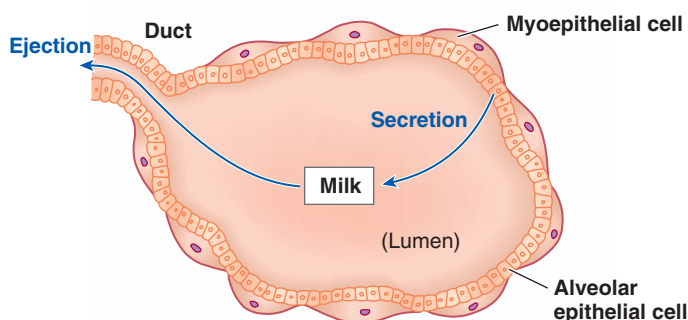
**PREPARATION OF THE BREASTS FOR LACTATION** Under the hormonal environment present during pregnancy, the mammary glands develop the internal glandular structure and function necessary for milk production. A breast capable of lactating has a network of progressively smaller ducts that branch out from the nipple and terminate in lobules (● Figure 18-27a). Each lobule is made up of a cluster of saclike epithelial-lined, milk-producing glands known as **alveoli**. Milk is synthesized by the epithelial cells and then secreted into the alveolar lumen, which is drained by a milk-collecting duct that transports the milk to the surface of the nipple (● Figure 18-27b).

During pregnancy, the high concentration of *estrogen* promotes extensive duct development, whereas the high level of *progesterone* stimulates abundant alveolar-lobular formation. Elevated concentrations of *prolactin* (an anterior pituitary hormone stimulated by the rising levels of estrogen) and a placental hormone that has a structure similar to prolactin also contribute to mammary gland development by inducing the synthesis of enzymes needed for milk production.

**PREVENTION OF LACTATION DURING GESTATION** Most of these changes in the breasts occur during the first half of gestation, so the mammary glands are fully capable of producing milk by the middle of pregnancy. However, milk secretion does not occur until parturition. The high estrogen and progesterone concentrations during the last half of pregnancy prevent lactation by blocking prolactin's stimulatory action on milk secretion. Prolactin is the primary stimulant of milk secretion. Thus, even though the high levels of placental steroids promote development of the milk-producing machinery in the breasts, they



(a) Internal structure of mammary gland, lateral view



(b) Alveolus within mammary gland

● **FIGURE 18-27 Mammary gland anatomy.** The alveolar epithelial cells secrete milk into the lumen. Contraction of the surrounding myoepithelial cells ejects the secreted milk out through the duct.

prevent these glands from becoming operational until the baby is born and milk is needed.

The abrupt decline in estrogen and progesterone that occurs with loss of the placenta at parturition initiates lactation. (We have now completed our discussion of the functions of estrogen and progesterone during gestation and lactation, as well as throughout the reproductive life of females. These functions are summarized in ▲ Table 18-5.)

**STIMULATION OF LACTATION VIA SUCKLING** Once milk production begins after delivery, two hormones are critical for maintaining lactation: (1) *oxytocin*, which causes milk ejection, and (2) *prolactin*, which promotes milk secretion. **Milk ejection**, or **milk letdown**, refers to the forced expulsion of milk from the lumen of the alveoli out through the ducts. Release of both of these hormones is stimulated by suckling (● Figure 18-28). Let us examine each of these hormones, including control of their secretion and their roles in further detail.

## ▲ Table 18-5 Actions of Estrogen and Progesterone

### Estrogen

#### *Effects on sex-specific tissues*

- Is essential for egg maturation and release
- Stimulates growth and maintenance of the entire female reproductive tract
- Stimulates follicle maturation
- Thins the cervical mucus to permit sperm penetration
- Enhances transport of sperm to the oviduct by stimulating upward contractions of the uterus and oviduct
- Stimulates growth of the endometrium and myometrium
- Induces synthesis of endometrial progesterone receptors
- Triggers onset of parturition by increasing uterine responsiveness to oxytocin during late gestation through a twofold effect: by inducing synthesis of myometrial oxytocin receptors and by increasing myometrial gap junctions so that the uterus can contract as a coordinated unit in response to oxytocin

#### *Other reproductive effects*

- Promotes development of secondary sexual characteristics
- Controls GnRH and gonadotropin secretion
  - Inhibits secretion if at a low or moderate level
  - Is responsible for triggering the LH surge if at a high level
- Stimulates duct development in the breasts during gestation
- Inhibits milk-secreting actions of prolactin during gestation

#### *Nonreproductive effects*

- Promotes fat deposition
- Increases bone density
- Closes the epiphyseal plates

### Progesterone

- Prepares a suitable environment for nourishment of a developing embryo and then fetus
- Causes a thick mucus plug to form in the cervical canal
- Inhibits hypothalamic GnRH and gonadotropin secretion
- Stimulates alveolar development in the breasts during gestation
- Inhibits milk-secreting actions of prolactin during gestation
- Inhibits uterine contractions during gestation

■ *Oxytocin release and milk ejection.* The infant cannot directly suck milk out of the alveolar lumen. Instead, milk must be actively squeezed out of the alveoli into the ducts, and hence toward the nipple, by contraction of specialized **myoepithelial cells** (musclelike epithelial cells) that surround each alveolus (see ● Figure 18-27b). The infant's suckling of the breast stimulates sensory nerve endings in the nipple, initiating action potentials that travel up the spinal cord to the hypothalamus. Thus activated, the hypothalamus triggers a burst of oxytocin release from the posterior pituitary. Oxytocin in turn stimulates contraction of the myoepithelial cells in the breasts to bring about

milk ejection. Milk letdown continues only as long as the infant continues to nurse. In this way, the milk ejection reflex ensures that the breasts release milk only when required and in the amount needed by the baby. Even though the alveoli may be full of milk, the milk cannot be released without oxytocin. The reflex can become conditioned to stimuli other than suckling, however. For example, the infant's cry can trigger milk letdown, causing a spurt of milk to leak from the nipples. In contrast, psychological stress, acting through the hypothalamus, can easily inhibit milk ejection. For this reason, a positive attitude toward breast-feeding and a relaxed environment are essential for successful breast-feeding.

■ *Prolactin release and milk secretion.* Suckling not only triggers oxytocin release but also stimulates prolactin secretion. Prolactin output by the anterior pituitary is controlled by two hypothalamic secretions: **prolactin-inhibiting hormone (PIH)** and **prolactin-releasing hormone (PRH)**. PIH is now known to be *dopamine*, which also serves as a neurotransmitter in the brain. The chemical nature of PRH has not been identified with certainty.

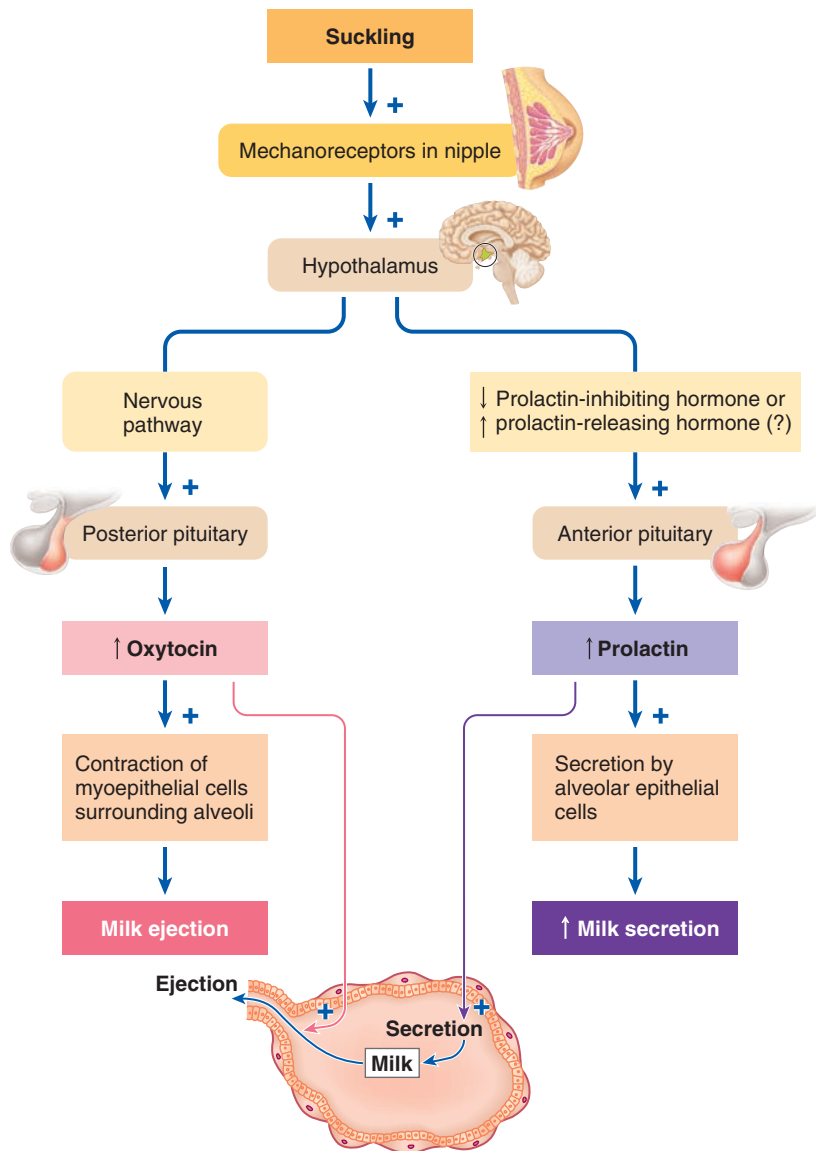
Throughout most of the female's life, PIH is the dominant influence, so prolactin concentrations normally remain low. During lactation, a burst in prolactin secretion occurs each time the infant suckles. Afferent impulses initiated in the nipple on suckling are carried by the spinal cord to the hypothalamus. This reflex ultimately leads to prolactin release by the anterior pituitary, although it is unclear whether this is from inhibition of PIH secretion, stimulation of PRH secretion, or both. Prolactin then acts on the alveolar epithelium to promote secretion of milk to replace the ejected milk (● Figure 18-28).

Concurrent stimulation by suckling of both milk ejection and milk production ensures that the rate of milk synthesis keeps pace with the baby's needs for milk. The more the infant nurses, the more milk is removed by letdown and the more milk is produced for the next feeding.

### Breast-feeding is advantageous to both the infant and the mother.

Nutritionally, **milk** is composed of water, triglyceride fat, the carbohydrate lactose (milk sugar), a number of proteins, vitamins, and the minerals calcium and phosphate.

**ADVANTAGES OF BREAST-FEEDING FOR THE INFANT** In addition to nutrients, milk contains a host of immune cells, antibodies, and other chemicals that help protect the infant against infection until it can mount an effective immune response on its own a few months after birth. **Colostrum**, the milk produced for the first 5 days after delivery, contains lower concentrations of fat and lactose but higher concentrations of immunoprotective components. All human babies acquire some passive immunity during gestation by antibodies passing across the placenta from the mother to the fetus. These antibodies are short lived, however, and they often do not persist until the infant can fend for itself immunologically. Breast-fed babies gain additional protection during this vulnerable period.



● **FIGURE 18-28** Suckling reflexes.

**ADVANTAGES OF BREAST-FEEDING FOR THE MOTHER** Breast-feeding is also advantageous for the mother. Oxytocin release triggered by nursing hastens uterine involution. In addition, suckling suppresses the menstrual cycle because prolactin (sometimes termed “nature’s contraceptive”) inhibits GnRH, thereby suppressing FSH and LH secretion. Lactation, therefore, tends to prevent ovulation, decreasing the likelihood of another pregnancy (although it is not a reliable means of contraception). This mechanism permits all the mother’s resources to be directed toward the newborn instead of being shared with a new embryo.

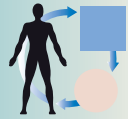
**CESSATION OF MILK PRODUCTION AT WEANING**

When the infant is weaned, two mechanisms contribute to the cessation of milk production. First, without suckling, prolactin secretion is not stimulated, removing the main stimulus for continued milk synthesis and secretion. Also, in the absence of suckling, oxytocin is not released and milk letdown does not occur. Because milk production does not immediately shut down, milk accumulates in the alveoli, engorging the breasts. The resulting pressure buildup acts directly on the alveolar epithelial cells to suppress further milk production.

**The end is a new beginning.**

Reproduction is an appropriate way to end our discussion of physiology. The single cell resulting from the union of male and female gametes divides mitotically and differentiates into a multicellular individual made up of a number of body systems that interact cooperatively to maintain homeostasis (that is, stability in the internal environment). All the life-supporting homeostatic processes introduced throughout this book begin again at the start of a new life.

## Chapter in Perspective: Focus on Homeostasis



The reproductive system is unique in that it is not essential for homeostasis or for survival of the individual but is essential for sustaining the thread of life from generation to generation. Reproduction depends on the union of male and female gametes (reproductive cells), each with a half set of chromosomes, to form a new individual with a full, one-of-a-kind set of chromosomes. Unlike the other body systems, which are essentially identical in the two sexes, the reproductive systems of males and females are remarkably different, befitting their different roles in the reproductive process.

The male system is designed to continuously produce huge numbers of mobile spermatozoa that are delivered to the female during the sex act. Male gametes must be produced in abundance for two reasons: (1) Only a small percentage of them survive the hazardous journey through the female reproductive tract to the site of fertilization, and (2) the cooperative effort of many spermatozoa is required to break down the barriers surrounding the female gamete (ovum or egg) to enable one spermatozoon to penetrate and unite with the ovum.

The female reproductive system undergoes complex changes on a cyclic monthly basis. During the first half of the cycle, a single nonmotile ovum is prepared for release. During the second half, the reproductive system is geared toward preparing a suitable environment for supporting the ovum if fertilization (union with a spermatozoon) occurs. If fertilization does not occur, the prepared supportive environment within the uterus sloughs off, and the cycle starts again as a new ovum is prepared for release. If fertilization occurs, the female reproductive system adjusts to support growth and development of the new individual until it can survive on its own on the outside.

There are three important parallels in the male and female reproductive systems, even though they differ considerably in structure and function. First, the same set of undifferentiated reproductive tissues in the embryo can develop into either a male or a female system, depending on the presence or absence, respectively, of male-determining factors. Second, the same hormones—namely, hypothalamic GnRH and anterior pituitary FSH and LH—control reproductive function in both sexes. In both cases, gonadal steroids and inhibin act in negative-feedback fashion to control hypothalamic and anterior pituitary output. Third, the same events take place in the developing gamete's nucleus during sperm formation and egg formation, although males produce millions of sperm in a day, whereas females produce only about 400 ova in a lifetime.

## REVIEW EXERCISES

### Objective Questions (Answers on p. A-51)

1. It is possible for a genetic male to have the anatomic appearance of a female. (*True or false?*)
2. Testosterone secretion essentially ceases from birth until puberty. (*True or false?*)
3. Prostaglandins are derived from arachidonic acid found in the plasma membrane. (*True or false?*)
4. Females do not experience erection. (*True or false?*)
5. Most of the lubrication for sexual intercourse is provided by the female. (*True or false?*)
6. If a follicle does not reach maturity during one ovarian cycle, it can finish maturing during the next cycle. (*True or false?*)
7. Rising, moderate levels of estrogen inhibit tonic LH secretion, whereas high levels of estrogen stimulate the LH surge. (*True or false?*)
8. Spermatogenesis takes place within the \_\_\_\_\_ of the testes, stimulated by the hormones \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The source of estrogen and progesterone during the first 10 weeks of gestation is the \_\_\_\_\_. The source of these hormones during the last two trimesters of gestation is the \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Detection of \_\_\_\_\_ in the urine is the basis of pregnancy diagnosis tests.
11. Which of the following statements concerning chromosomal distribution is *incorrect*?
  - a. All human somatic cells contain 23 chromosomal pairs for a total diploid number of 46 chromosomes.
  - b. Each gamete contains 23 chromosomes, one member of each chromosomal pair.
  - c. During meiotic division, the members of the chromosome pairs regroup themselves into the original combinations derived from the individual's mother and father for separation into haploid gametes.
  - d. Sex determination depends on the combination of sex chromosomes, an XY combination being a genetic male and XX a genetic female.
  - e. The sex chromosome content of the fertilizing sperm determines the sex of the offspring.
12. When the corpus luteum degenerates,
  - a. circulating levels of estrogen and progesterone rapidly decline.
  - b. FSH and LH secretion start to rise as the inhibitory effects of the gonadal steroids are withdrawn.
  - c. the endometrium sloughs off.
  - d. both (a) and (b) occur.
  - e. all of the above occur.

13. Match the following:
- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| ___ 1. secrete(s) prostaglandins                   | (a) epididymis and       |
| ___ 2. increase(s) motility and fertility of sperm | ductus deferens          |
| ___ 3. secrete(s) an alkaline fluid                | (b) prostate gland       |
| ___ 4. provide(s) fructose                         | (c) seminal vesicles     |
| ___ 5. act(s) as the storage site for sperm        | (d) bulbourethral glands |
| ___ 6. concentrate(s) the sperm a hundredfold      | (e) penis                |
| ___ 7. secrete(s) fibrinogen                       |                          |
| ___ 8. provide(s) clotting enzymes                 |                          |
| ___ 9. contain(s) erectile tissue                  |                          |
14. Using the following answer code, indicate when each event takes place during the ovarian cycle:
- (a) occurs during the follicular phase  
 (b) occurs during the luteal phase  
 (c) occurs during both the follicular and the luteal phases
- |  |
|--|
| ___ 1. development of antral follicles                                   |
| ___ 2. secretion of estrogen   |
| ___ 3. secretion of progesterone   |
| ___ 4. menstruation  |
| ___ 5. repair and proliferation of the endometrium                       |
| ___ 6. increased vascularization and glycogen storage in the endometrium |

### Essay Questions

1. What constitutes the primary reproductive organs, gametes, sex hormones, reproductive tract, accessory sex glands, external genitalia, and secondary sexual characteristics in males and in females?

2. List the essential reproductive functions of the male and of the female.
3. Discuss the differences between males and females with regard to genetic, gonadal, and phenotypic sex.
4. Of what functional significance is the scrotal location of the testes?
5. Discuss the source and functions of testosterone.
6. Describe the three major stages of spermatogenesis. Discuss the functions of each part of a spermatozoon. What are the roles of Sertoli cells?
7. Discuss the control of testicular function.
8. Compare the sex act in males and females.
9. Compare oogenesis with spermatogenesis.
10. Describe the events of the follicular and luteal phases of the ovarian cycle. Correlate the phases of the uterine cycle with those of the ovarian cycle.
11. How are the ovum and spermatozoa transported to the site of fertilization? Describe the process of fertilization.
12. Describe the process of implantation and placenta formation.
13. What are the functions of the placenta?
14. What is the role of human chorionic gonadotropin?
15. What factors contribute to the initiation of parturition? What are the stages of labor? What is the role of oxytocin?
16. Describe the hormonal factors that play a role in lactation.
17. Summarize the actions of estrogen and progesterone.

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Explanations on p. A-52)

1. The hypothalamus releases GnRH in pulsatile bursts once every 2 to 3 hours, with no secretion occurring between bursts. The blood concentration of GnRH depends on the frequency of these bursts of secretion. A promising line of research for a new method of contraception involves administration of GnRH-like drugs. In what way could such drugs act as contraceptives when GnRH is the hypothalamic hormone that triggers the chain of events leading to ovulation? (Hint: The anterior pituitary is "programmed" to respond only to the normal pulsatile pattern of GnRH.)
2. Occasionally, testicular tumors composed of interstitial cells of Leydig may secrete up to 100 times the normal amount of testosterone. When such a tumor develops in young children, they grow up much shorter than their genetic potential. Explain why. What other symptoms would be present?
3. What type of sexual dysfunction might arise in men taking drugs that inhibit sympathetic nervous system activity as part of the treatment for high blood pressure?
4. Explain the physiologic basis for administering a posterior pituitary extract to induce or facilitate labor.
5. The symptoms of menopause are sometimes treated with supplemental estrogen and progesterone. Why wouldn't treatment with GnRH or FSH and LH also be effective?

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Explanation on p. A-52)

Maria A., who is in her second month of gestation, has been experiencing severe abdominal cramping. Her physician has diagnosed her condition as a tubal pregnancy: The develop-

ing embryo is implanted in the oviduct instead of in the uterine endometrium. Why must this pregnancy be surgically terminated?

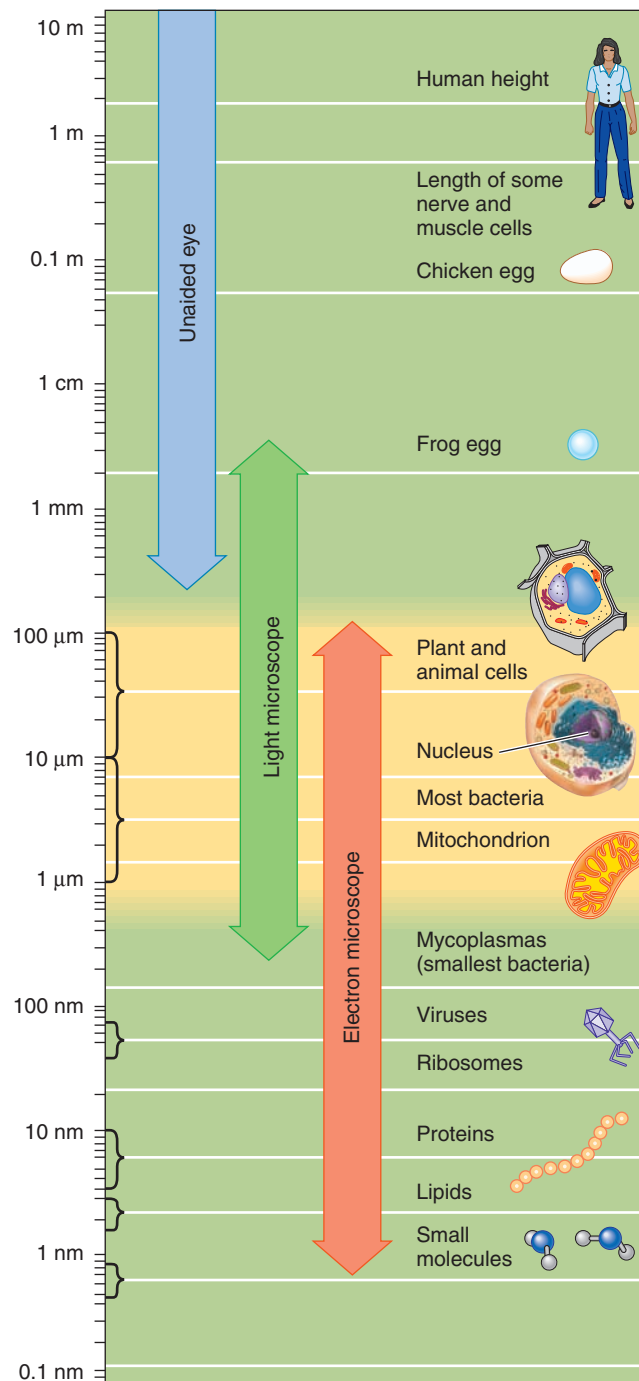
# Appendix A

## The Metric System

▲ **Table A-1 Metric Measures and English Equivalents**

Unit	Measure	Symbol	English Equivalent
<b>Linear Measure</b>			
1 kilometer	= 1000 meters	$10^3$ m km	0.62137 mile
1 meter		$10^0$ m m	39.37 inches
1 decimeter	= 1/10 meter	$10^{-1}$ m dm	3.937 inches
1 centimeter	= 1/100 meter	$10^{-2}$ m cm	0.3937 inch
1 millimeter	= 1/1000 meter	$10^{-3}$ m mm	Not used
1 micrometer (or micron)	= 1/1,000,000 meter	$10^{-6}$ m $\mu$ m (or $\mu$ )	Not used
1 nanometer	= 1/1,000,000,000 meter	$10^{-9}$ m nm	Not used
<b>Measures of Capacity (for fluids and gases)</b>			
1 liter		L	1.0567 U.S. liquid quarts
1 milliliter	= 1/1000 liter = volume of 1 gram of water at stp*	ml	
<b>Measures of Volume</b>			
1 cubic meter		$m^3$	
1 cubic decimeter	= 1/1000 cubic meter = 1 liter	$dm^3$	
1 cubic centimeter	= 1/1,000,000 cubic meter = 1 milliliter	$cm^3$	
1 cubic millimeter	= 1/100,000,000 cubic meter	$mm^3$	
<b>Measures of Mass</b>			
1 kilogram	= 1000 grams	kg	2.2046 pounds
1 gram		g	15.432 grains
1 milligram	= 1/1000 gram	mg	0.01 grain (about)
1 microgram	= 1/1,000,000 gram	$\mu$ g (or mcg)	

\*stp = standard temperature and pressure.



Comparison of human height in meters with the sizes of some biological and molecular structures.

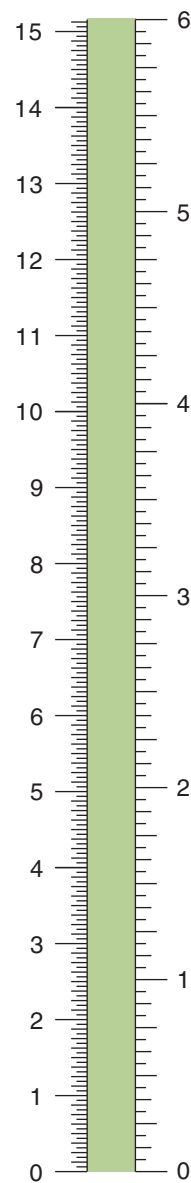


## ▲ Table A-2 Metric–English Conversions

LENGTH			
English		Metric	
Inch	=	2.54	centimeters
Foot	=	0.30	meter
Yard	=	0.91	meter
Mile (5280 feet)	=	1.61	kilometers
<b>To convert</b>	<b>multiply by</b>	<b>to obtain</b>	
Inches	2.54	centimeters	
Feet	30.00	centimeters	
Centimeters	0.39	inches	
Millimeters	0.039	inches	
MASS OR WEIGHT			
English		Metric	
Grain	=	64.80	milligrams
Ounce	=	28.35	grams
Pound	=	453.60	grams
Ton (short) (2000 pounds)	=	0.91	metric ton
<b>To convert</b>	<b>multiply by</b>	<b>to obtain</b>	
Ounces	28.3	grams	
Pounds	453.6	grams	
Pounds	0.45	kilograms	
Grams	0.035	ounces	
Kilograms	2.2	pounds	
VOLUME AND CAPACITY			
English		Metric	
Cubic inch	=	16.39	cubic centimeters
Cubic foot	=	0.03	cubic meter
Cubic yard	=	0.765	cubic meter
Ounce	=	0.03	liter
Pint	=	0.47	liter
Quart	=	0.95	liter
Gallon	=	3.79	liters
<b>To convert</b>	<b>multiply</b>	<b>to obtain</b>	
Fluid ounces	30.00	milliliters	
Quarts	0.95	liters	
Milliliters	0.03	fluid ounces	
Liters	1.06	quarts	

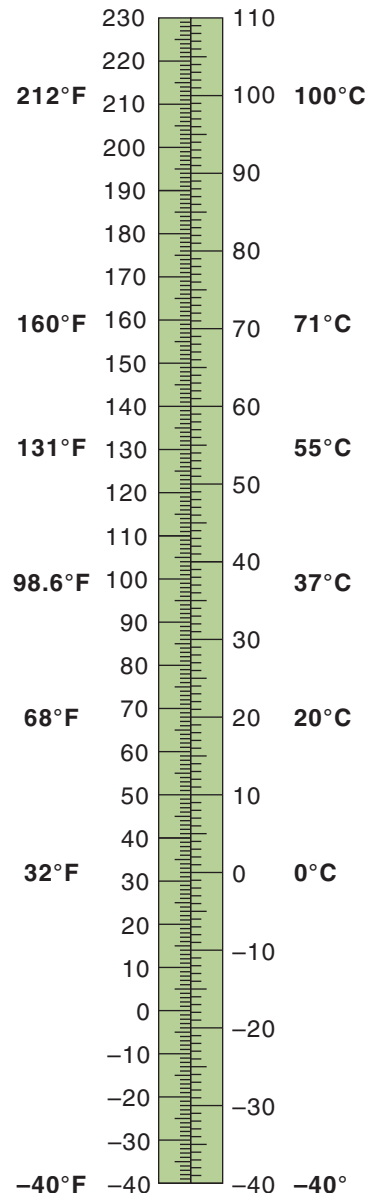
## Linear Measurement Comparison

Centimeters Inches



## Fahrenheit–Celsius Temperature Comparison

°F °C



## ▲ Table A-3 Temperature Conversions

**To convert Fahrenheit to Celsius:**

$$T_c = (T_f - 32) / 1.8$$

**To convert Celsius to Fahrenheit:**

$$T_f = (T_c \times 1.8) + 32$$

Key

$T_c$  = temperature in Celsius

$T_f$  = temperature in Fahrenheit

# Appendix B

## A Review of Chemical Principles

By Spencer Seager, Weber State University, and Lauralee Sherwood

### Chemical Level of Organization in the Body

**Matter** is anything that occupies space and has mass, including all living and nonliving things in the universe. **Mass** is the amount of matter in an object. **Weight**, in contrast, is the effect of gravity on that mass. The more gravity exerted on a mass, the greater the weight of the mass. An astronaut has the same mass whether on Earth or in space but is weightless in the zero gravity of space.

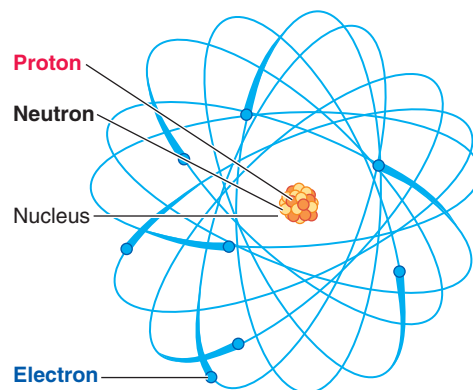
#### Atoms

All matter is made up of tiny particles called **atoms**. These particles are too small to be seen individually, even with the most powerful electron microscopes available today.

Even though extremely small, atoms consist of three types of even smaller subatomic particles. The types of atoms vary in the numbers of these subatomic particles they contain. **Protons** and **neutrons** are particles of nearly identical mass, with protons carrying a positive charge and neutrons having no charge. **Electrons** have a much smaller mass than protons and neutrons and are negatively charged. An atom consists of two regions—a dense, central *nucleus* made of protons and neutrons surrounded by a three-dimensional *electron cloud*, where electrons move rapidly around the nucleus in orbitals (● Figure B-1). The magnitude of the charge of a proton exactly matches that of an electron, but it is opposite in sign, being positive. In all atoms, the number of protons in the nucleus is equal to the number of electrons moving around the nucleus, so their charges balance and the atoms are neutral.

#### Elements and atomic symbols

A pure substance composed of only one type of atom is called an **element**. A pure sample of the element carbon contains only carbon atoms, even though the atoms might be arranged in the form of diamond or in the form of graphite (pencil “lead”). Each element is designated by an **atomic symbol**, a one- or two-letter chemical shorthand form of the element’s name. Usually these symbols are easy to follow, because they are derived from the English name for the element. Thus, H stands for *hydrogen*, C for *carbon*, and O for *oxygen*. In a few cases, the atomic symbol is based on the element’s Latin name—for



● **FIGURE B-1 The atom.** The atom consists of two regions. The central nucleus contains protons and neutrons and makes up 99.9% of the mass. Surrounding the nucleus is the electron cloud, where the electrons move rapidly around the nucleus. (Figure not drawn to scale.)

example, Na for *sodium* (*natrium* in Latin) and K for *potassium* (*kalium*). Of the 109 known elements, 26 are normally found in the body. Four elements—hydrogen, carbon, oxygen, and nitrogen—compose 96% of the body’s mass.

#### Compounds and molecules

Pure substances composed of more than one type of atom are known as **compounds**. Pure water, for example, is a compound that contains atoms of hydrogen and atoms of oxygen in a 2:1 ratio, regardless of whether the water is in the form of liquid, solid (ice), or vapor (steam). A **molecule** is the smallest unit of a pure substance that has the properties of that substance and is capable of a stable, independent existence. For example, a molecule of water consists of two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen, held together by chemical bonds.

#### Atomic number

Exactly what are we talking about when we refer to a “type” of atom? That is, what makes hydrogen, carbon, and oxygen atoms different? The answer is the number of protons in the nucleus. Regardless of where they are found, all hydrogen atoms have 1 proton in the nucleus, all carbon atoms have 6, and all oxygen atoms have 8. These numbers also represent the number of electrons moving around each nucleus, because the number of electrons and number of protons in an atom are equal. The

## ▲ Table B-1 Characteristics of Selected Elements

Name and Symbol	Number of Protons	Atomic Number	Atomic Weight (amu)
Hydrogen (H)	1	1	1.01
Carbon (C)	6	6	12.01
Nitrogen (N)	7	7	14.01
Oxygen (O)	8	8	16.00
Sodium (Na)	11	11	22.99
Magnesium (Mg)	12	12	24.31
Phosphorus (P)	15	15	30.97
Sulfur (S)	16	16	32.06
Chlorine (Cl)	17	17	35.45
Potassium (K)	19	19	39.10
Calcium (Ca)	20	20	40.08

number of protons in the nucleus of an atom of an element is called the **atomic number** of the element.

### Atomic weight

As expected, tiny atoms have tiny masses. For example, the actual mass of a hydrogen atom is  $1.67 \times 10^{-24}$  g, that of a carbon atom is  $1.99 \times 10^{-23}$  g, and that of an oxygen atom is  $2.66 \times 10^{-23}$  g. These very small numbers are inconvenient to work with in calculations, so a system of relative masses has been developed. These relative masses simply compare the actual masses of the atoms with one another. Suppose the actual masses of two people were determined to be 45.50 and 113.75 kg. Their relative masses are determined by dividing each mass by the smaller mass of the two:  $45.50/45.50 = 1.00$ , and  $113.75/45.50 = 2.50$ . Thus, the relative masses of the two people are 1.00 and 2.50; these numbers simply express that the mass of the heavier person is 2.50 times that of the other person. The relative masses of atoms are called **atomic masses**, or **atomic weights**, and they are given in *atomic mass units (amu)*. In this system, hydrogen atoms, the least massive of all atoms, have an atomic weight of 1.01 amu. The atomic weight of carbon atoms is 12.01 amu, and that of oxygen atoms is 16.00 amu. Thus, oxygen atoms have a mass about 16 times that of hydrogen atoms. ▲ Table B-1 gives the atomic weights and some other characteristics of the elements that are most important physiologically.

## Chemical Bonds

Because all matter is made up of atoms, atoms must somehow be held together to form matter. The forces holding atoms together are called *chemical bonds*. Not all chemical bonds are formed in the same way, but all involve the electrons of atoms. Whether one atom will bond with another depends on the number and arrangement of its electrons. An atom's elec-

trons are arranged in electron shells, to which we now turn our attention.

### Electron shells

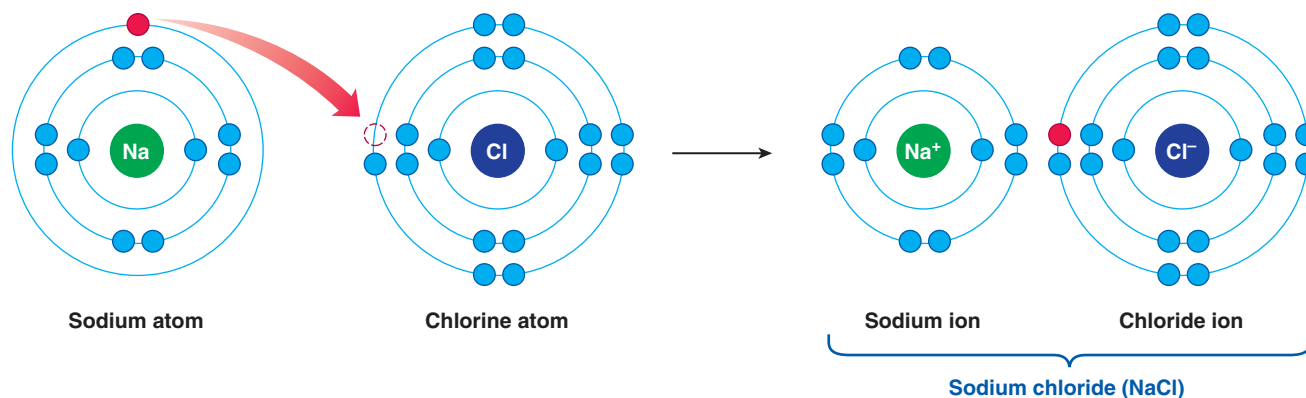
Electrons tend to move around the nucleus in a specific pattern. The orbitals, or pathways traveled by electrons around the nucleus, are arranged in an orderly series of concentric layers known as **electron shells**, which consecutively surround the nucleus. Each electron shell can hold a specific number of electrons. The first shell, closest to the nucleus (innermost), can contain a maximum of only 2 electrons, no matter what the element is. The second shell can hold a total of 8 more electrons. The third shell also can hold a maximum of 8 electrons. As the number of electrons increases with increasing atomic number, still more electrons occupy successive shells, each at a greater distance from the nucleus. Each successive shell from the nucleus has a higher **energy level**. Because the negatively charged electrons are attracted to the positively charged nucleus, it takes more energy for an electron to overcome the nuclear attraction and orbit farther from the nucleus. Thus, the first electron shell has the lowest energy level and the outermost shell of an atom has the highest energy level.

In general, electrons belong to the lowest energy shell possible, up to the maximum capacity of each shell. For example, hydrogen atoms have only 1 electron, so it is in the first shell. Helium atoms have 2 electrons, which are both in the first shell and fill it. Carbon atoms have 6 electrons, 2 in the first shell and 4 in the second shell, whereas the 8 electrons of oxygen are arranged with 2 in the first shell and 6 in the second shell.

### Bonding characteristics of an atom and valence

Atoms tend to undergo processes that result in a filled outermost electron shell. Thus, the electrons of the outer or higher-energy shell determine the bonding characteristics of an atom and its ability to interact with other atoms. Atoms that have a vacancy in their outermost shell tend to give up, accept, or share electrons with other atoms (whichever is most favorable energetically) so that all participating atoms have filled outer shells. For example, an atom that has only 1 electron in its outermost shell may empty this shell so that its remaining shells are full. By contrast, another atom that lacks only 1 electron in its outer shell may acquire the deficient electron from the first atom to fill all its shells to the maximum. The number of electrons an atom loses, gains, or shares to achieve a filled outer shell is known as the atom's **valence**. A **chemical bond** is the force of attraction that holds participating atoms together as a result of an interaction between their outermost electrons.

Consider sodium atoms (Na) and chlorine atoms (Cl) (● Figure B-2). Sodium atoms have 11 electrons: 2 in the first shell, 8 in the second shell, and 1 in the third shell. Chlorine atoms have 17 electrons: 2 in the first shell, 8 in the second shell, and 7 in the third shell. Because 8 electrons are required to fill the second and third shells, sodium atoms have 1 electron more than is needed to provide a filled second shell, whereas chlorine atoms have 1 fewer electron than is needed to fill the third shell. Each sodium atom can lose an electron to a chlorine atom, leav-



● **FIGURE B-2 Ions and ionic bonds.** Sodium (Na) and chlorine (Cl) atoms both have partially filled outermost shells. Therefore, sodium tends to give up its lone electron in the outer shell to chlorine, filling chlorine's outer shell. As a result, sodium becomes a positively charged ion, and chlorine becomes a negatively charged ion known as chloride. The oppositely charged ions attract each other, forming an ionic bond.

ing each sodium atom with 10 electrons; 8 of these are in the second shell, which is full and is now the outer shell occupied by electrons. By accepting 1 electron, each chlorine atom now has a total of 18 electrons, with 8 of them in the third, or outer, shell, which is now full.

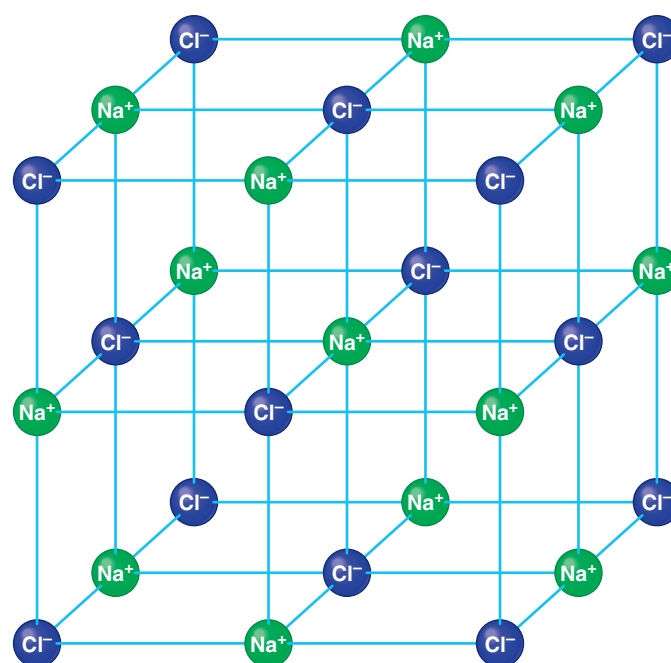
### Ions; ionic bonds

Recall that atoms are electrically neutral because they have an identical number of positively charged protons and negatively charged electrons. By giving up and accepting electrons, the sodium atoms and chlorine atoms have achieved filled outer shells, but now each atom is unbalanced electrically. Although each sodium atom now has 10 electrons, it still has 11 protons in the nucleus and a net electrical charge, or valence, of +1. Similarly, each chlorine atom now has 18 electrons but only 17 protons. Thus, each chlorine atom has a  $-1$  charge. Such charged atoms are called **ions**. Positively charged ions are called **cations**; negatively charged ions are called **anions**. As a helpful hint to keep these terms straight, imagine the “t” in *cation* as standing for a “+” sign and the first “n” in *anion* as standing for “negative.”

Note that both a cation and an anion are formed whenever an electron is transferred from one atom to another. Because opposite charges attract, sodium ions ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) and charged chlorine atoms, now called *chloride* ions ( $\text{Cl}^-$ ), are attracted toward each other. This electrical attraction that holds cations and anions together is known as an **ionic bond**. Ionic bonds hold  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  together in the compound **sodium chloride**,  $\text{NaCl}$ , which is common table salt. A sample of sodium chloride actually contains sodium and chloride ions in a three-dimensional geometrical arrangement called a *crystal lattice*. The ions of opposite charge occupy alternate sites within the lattice (● Figure B-3).

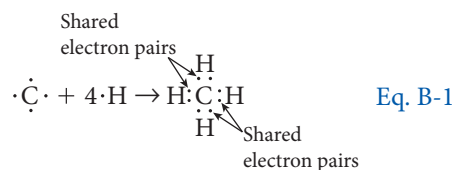
### Covalent bonds

It is not favorable, energywise, for an atom to give up or accept more than three electrons. Nevertheless, carbon atoms, which have four electrons in their outer shell, form compounds. They do so by another bonding mechanism, *covalent bonding*. Atoms that would have to lose or gain four or more electrons to achieve

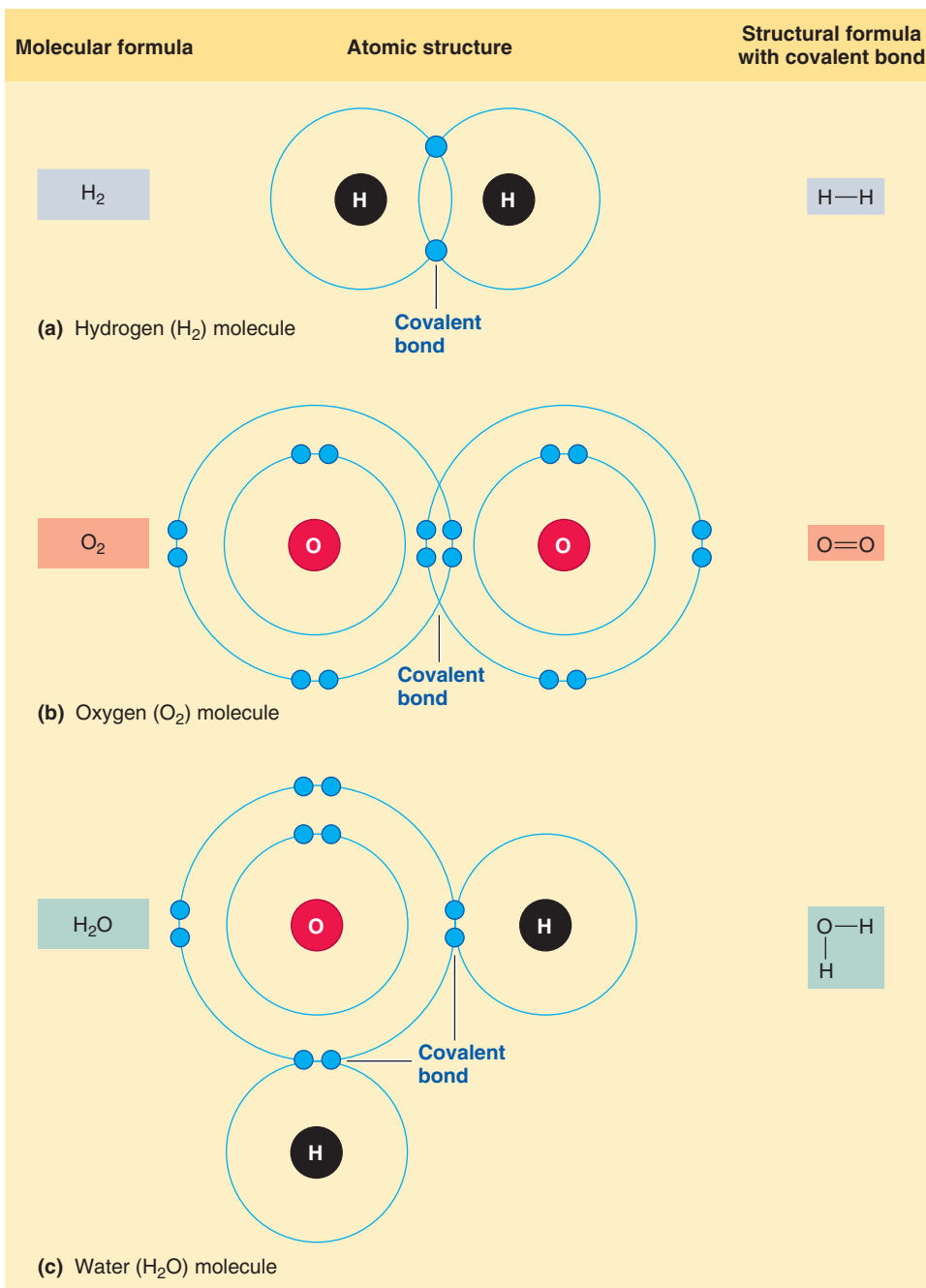


● **FIGURE B-3 Crystal lattice for sodium chloride (table salt).**

outer-shell stability usually bond by *sharing* electrons. Shared electrons actually orbit around *both* atoms. Thus, a carbon atom can share its 4 outer electrons with the 4 electrons of 4 hydrogen atoms, as shown in Equation B-1, where the outer-shell electrons are shown as dots around the symbol of each atom. (The resulting compound is methane,  $\text{CH}_4$ , a gas made up of individual  $\text{CH}_4$  molecules.)



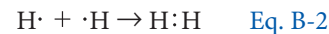
Each electron that is shared by two atoms is counted toward the number of electrons needed to fill the outer shell of each atom.



● **FIGURE B-4 A covalent bond.** A covalent bond is formed when atoms that share a pair of electrons are both attracted toward the shared pair.

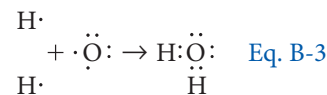
Thus, each carbon atom shares four pairs, or 8 electrons, and thus has 8 in its outer shell. Each hydrogen atom shares one pair, or 2 electrons, and thus has a filled outer shell. (Remember, hydrogen atoms need only two electrons to complete their outer shell, which is the first shell.) The sharing of a pair of electrons by atoms binds them together by means of a **covalent bond** (● Figure B-4). Covalent bonds are the strongest of chemical bonds; that is, they are the hardest to break.

Covalent bonds also form between some identical atoms. For example, two hydrogen atoms can complete their outer shells by sharing one electron pair made from the single electrons of each atom, as shown in Equation B-2:



Thus, hydrogen gas consists of individual H<sub>2</sub> molecules (● Figure B-4a). (A subscript following a chemical symbol indicates the number of that type of atom present in the molecule.) Several other nonmetallic elements also exist as molecules because covalent bonds form between identical atoms; oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) is an example (● Figure B-4b).

Often, an atom can form covalent bonds with more than one atom. One of the most familiar examples is water (H<sub>2</sub>O), consisting of two hydrogen atoms each forming a single covalent bond with one oxygen atom (● Figure B-4c). Equation B-3 represents the formation of water's covalent bonds:



The water molecule is sometimes represented as



where the nonshared electron pairs are not shown and the covalent bonds, or shared pairs, are represented by dashes.

### Nonpolar and polar molecules

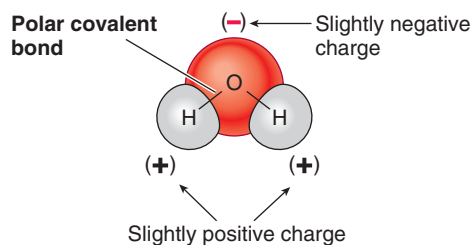
The electrons between two atoms in a covalent bond are not always shared equally. When the atoms sharing an electron pair are identical, such as two oxygen atoms, the electrons are attracted equally by both atoms and so are shared equally. The result is a **nonpolar molecule**. The term *nonpolar* implies no difference at the two ends (two “poles”) of the bond. Because both atoms within the molecule exert the same pull on the shared electrons, each shared electron spends the same amount of time orbiting each atom. Thus, both atoms remain electrically neutral in a nonpolar molecule such as O<sub>2</sub>.

When the sharing atoms are not identical, unequal sharing of electrons occurs because atoms of different elements do not exert the same pull on shared electrons. For example, an oxygen atom strongly attracts electrons when it is bonded to other atoms. A **polar molecule** results from the unequal sharing of electrons

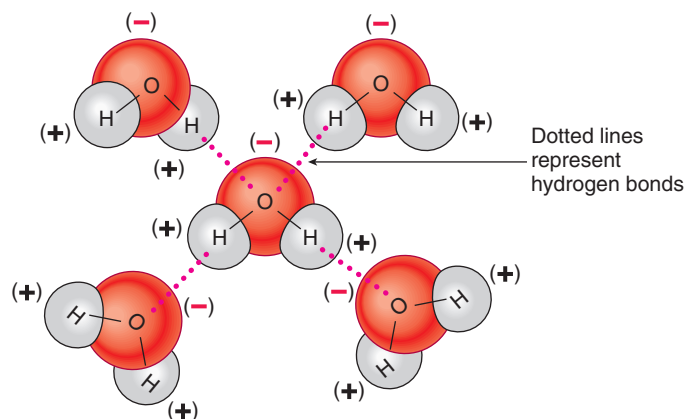
between different types of atoms covalently bonded together. The water molecule is a good example of a polar molecule. The oxygen atom pulls the shared electrons more strongly than do the hydrogen atoms within each of the two covalent bonds. Consequently, the electron of each hydrogen atom tends to spend more time away orbiting around the oxygen atom than at home around the hydrogen atom. Because of this nonuniform distribution of electrons, the oxygen side of the water molecule where the shared electrons spend more time is slightly negative, and the two hydrogens that are visited less frequently by the electrons are slightly more positive (● Figure B-5). Note that the entire water molecule has the same number of electrons as it has protons, so as a whole it has no net charge. This is unlike ions, which have an electron excess or deficit. Polar molecules have a balanced number of protons and electrons but an unequal distribution of the shared electrons among the atoms making up the molecule.

### Hydrogen bonds

Polar molecules are attracted to other polar molecules. In water, for example, an attraction exists between the positive hydrogen ends of some molecules and the negative oxygen ends of others. Hydrogen is not a part of all polar molecules, but when it is covalently bonded to an atom that strongly attracts electrons to form a covalent molecule, the attraction of the positive (hydrogen) end of the polar molecule to the negative end of another polar molecule is called a **hydrogen bond** (● Figure B-6). Thus,



● **FIGURE B-5 A polar molecule.** A water molecule is an example of a polar molecule, in which the distribution of shared electrons is not uniform. Because the oxygen atom pulls the shared electrons more strongly than the hydrogen atoms do, the oxygen side of the molecule is slightly negatively charged and the hydrogen sides are slightly positively charged.



● **FIGURE B-6 A hydrogen bond.** A hydrogen bond is formed by the attraction of a positively charged hydrogen end of a polar molecule to the negatively charged end of another polar molecule.

the polar attractions of water molecules to each other are an example of hydrogen bonding.

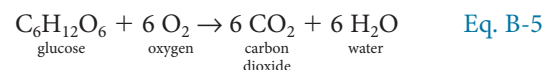
## Chemical Reactions

Processes in which chemical bonds are broken, formed, or both are called **chemical reactions**. Reactions are represented by equations in which the reacting substances (**reactants**) are typically written on the left, the newly produced substances (**products**) are written on the right, and an arrow meaning “yields” points from the reactants to the products. These conventions are illustrated in Equation B-4:



### Balanced equations

A chemical equation is a “chemical bookkeeping” ledger that describes what happens in a reaction. By the **law of conservation of mass**, the total mass of all materials entering a reaction equals the total mass of all the products. Thus, the total number of atoms of each element must always be the same on the left and right sides of the equation, because no atoms are lost. Such equations in which the same number of atoms of each type appears on both sides are called **balanced equations**. When writing a balanced equation, the number *preceding* a chemical symbol designates the number of independent (unjoined) atoms, ions, or molecules of that type, whereas a number written as a subscript *following* a chemical symbol denotes the number of a particular atom within a molecule. The absence of a number indicates “one” of that particular chemical. Let us look at a specific example, the oxidation of glucose (the sugar that cells use as fuel), as shown in Equation B-5:



According to this equation, 1 molecule of glucose reacts with 6 molecules of oxygen to produce 6 molecules of carbon dioxide and 6 molecules of water. Note the following balance in this reaction:

- 6 carbon atoms on the left (in 1 glucose molecule) and 6 carbon atoms on the right (in 6 carbon dioxide molecules)
- 12 hydrogen atoms on the left (in 1 glucose molecule) and 12 on the right (in 6 water molecules, each containing 2 hydrogen atoms)
- 18 oxygen atoms on the left (6 in 1 glucose molecule plus 12 more in the 6 oxygen molecules) and 18 on the right (12 in 6 carbon dioxide molecules, each containing 2 oxygen atoms, and 6 more in the 6 water molecules, each containing 1 oxygen atom)

### Reversible and irreversible reactions

Under appropriate conditions, the products of a reaction can be changed back to the reactants. For example, carbon dioxide gas dissolves in and reacts with water to form carbonic acid,  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ :



Carbonic acid is not very stable, however, and as soon as some is formed, part of it decomposes to give carbon dioxide and water:



Reactions that go in both directions are called **reversible reactions**. They are usually represented by double arrows pointing in both directions:



Theoretically, every reaction is reversible. Often, however, conditions are such that a reaction, for all practical purposes, goes in only one direction; such a reaction is called **irreversible**. For example, an irreversible reaction takes place when an explosion occurs, because the products do not remain in the vicinity of the reaction site to get together to react.

### Catalysts; enzymes

The rates (speeds) of chemical reactions are influenced by a number of factors, of which catalysts are one of the most important. A **catalyst** is a “helper” molecule that speeds up a reaction without being used up in the reaction. Living organisms use catalysts known as **enzymes**. These enzymes exert amazing influence on the rates of chemical reactions that take place in the organisms. Reactions that take weeks or even months to occur under normal laboratory conditions take place in seconds under the influence of enzymes in the body. One of the fastest-acting enzymes is **carbonic anhydrase**, which catalyzes the reaction between carbon dioxide and water to form carbonic acid. This reaction is important in the transport of carbon dioxide from tissue cells, where it is produced metabolically, to the lungs, where it is excreted. The equation for the reaction was shown in Equation B-6.<sup>1</sup> Each molecule of carbonic anhydrase catalyzes the conversion of 36 million  $\text{CO}_2$  molecules per minute! Enzymes are important in essentially every chemical reaction that takes place in living organisms.

## Molecular and Formula Weight and the Mole

Because molecules are made up of atoms, the relative mass of a molecule is simply the sum of the relative masses (atomic weights) of the atoms found in the molecule. The relative masses of molecules are called **molecular masses** or **molecular weights**. The molecular weight of water,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , is thus the sum of the atomic weights of two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom, or  $1.01 \text{ amu} + 1.01 \text{ amu} + 16.00 \text{ amu} = 18.02 \text{ amu}$ .

Not all compounds exist in the form of molecules. Ionically bonded substances such as sodium chloride consist of three-

dimensional arrangements of sodium ions ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) and chloride ions ( $\text{Cl}^-$ ) in a 1:1 ratio. The formulas for ionic compounds reflect only the ratio of the ions in the compound and should not be interpreted in terms of molecules. Thus, the formula for sodium chloride,  $\text{NaCl}$ , indicates that the ions combine in a 1:1 ratio. It is convenient to apply the concept of relative masses to ionic compounds even though they do not exist as molecules. The **formula weight** for such compounds is defined as the sum of the atomic weights of the atoms found in the formula. Thus, the formula weight of  $\text{NaCl}$  is equal to the sum of the atomic weights of one sodium atom and one chlorine atom, or  $22.99 \text{ amu} + 35.45 \text{ amu} = 58.44 \text{ amu}$ .

As you have seen, chemical reactions can be represented by equations and discussed in terms of numbers of molecules, atoms, and ions reacting with one another. To carry out reactions in the laboratory, however, a scientist cannot count out numbers of reactant particles but instead must be able to weigh the correct amount of each reactant. Using the mole concept makes this task possible. A **mole** (abbreviated *mol*) of a pure element or compound is the amount of material contained in a sample of the pure substance that has a mass in grams equal to the substance's atomic weight (for elements) or the molecular weight or formula weight (for compounds). Thus, 1 mol of potassium, K, would be a sample of the element with a mass of 39.10 g. Similarly, 1 mol of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  would have a mass of 18.02 g, and 1 mol of  $\text{NaCl}$  would be a sample with a mass of 58.44 g.

Atomic weights, molecular weights, and formula weights are relative masses, which leads to a fundamental characteristic of moles. For example, 1 mol of oxygen atoms has a mass of 16.00 g, and 1 mol of hydrogen atoms has a mass of 1.01 g. Thus, the ratio of the masses of 1 mol of each element is 16.00 to 1.01, the same as the ratio of the atomic weights for the two elements. Recall that these atomic weights compare the relative masses of oxygen and hydrogen. Accordingly, the number of oxygen atoms present in 16 g of oxygen (1 mol of oxygen) is the same as the number of hydrogen atoms present in 1.01 g of hydrogen. Therefore, 1 mol of oxygen contains exactly the same number of oxygen atoms as the number of hydrogen atoms in 1 mol of hydrogen. Thus, it is possible and sometimes useful to think of a mole as a specific number of particles. This number, called **Avogadro's number**, is equal to  $6.02 \times 10^{23}$ .

## Solutions, Colloids, and Suspensions

In contrast to a compound, a **mixture** consists of two or more types of elements or molecules physically blended together (intmixed) instead of being linked by chemical bonds. A compound has very different properties from the individual elements of which it is composed. For example, the solid, white  $\text{NaCl}$  (table salt) crystals you use to flavor your food are different from either sodium (a silvery white metal) or chlorine (a poisonous yellow-green gas found in bleach). By comparison, each component of a mixture retains its chemical properties. If you mix salt and sugar together, each retains a distinct taste and other individual properties. The constituents of a compound

<sup>1</sup> Carbonic anhydrase (ca) indirectly catalyzes this reaction by swiftly converting  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$  directly to  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , which can combine to form  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$  (see p. 429). In the absence of ca,  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$  slowly, directly form  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ . The reactions both with and without catalyst are commonly shown as in Equation B-6.

can only be separated by chemical means—bond breakage. By contrast, the components of a mixture can be separated by physical means, such as filtration or evaporation. The most common mixtures in the body are mixtures of water and various other substances. These mixtures are categorized as *solutions*, *colloids*, or *suspensions*, depending on the size and nature of the substance mixed with water.

## Solutions

Most chemical reactions in the body take place between reactants that have dissolved to form solutions. **Solutions** are homogenous mixtures containing a relatively large amount of one substance called the **solvent** (the dissolving medium) and smaller amounts of one or more substances called **solutes** (the dissolved particles). Saltwater, for example, contains mostly water, which is thus the solvent, and a smaller amount of salt, which is the solute. Water is the solvent in most solutions found in the human body.

## Electrolytes versus nonelectrolytes

When ionic solutes are dissolved in water to form solutions, the resulting solution will conduct electricity. This is not true for most covalently bonded solutes. For example, a salt–water solution conducts electricity, but a sugar–water solution does not. When salt dissolves in water, the solid lattice of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  is broken down, and the individual ions are separated and distributed uniformly throughout the solution. These mobile, charged ions conduct electricity through the solution. Solute particles that form ions in solution and conduct electricity are called **electrolytes**. When sugar dissolves, however, individual covalently bonded sugar molecules leave the solid and become uniformly distributed throughout the solution. These uncharged molecules cannot conduct a current. Solute particles that do not form conductive solutions are called **nonelectrolytes**.

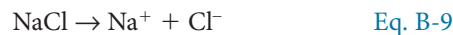
## Measures of concentration

The amount of solute dissolved in a specific amount of solution can vary. For example, a salt–water solution might contain 1 g of salt in 100 ml of solution, or it could contain 10 g of salt in 100 ml of solution. Both solutions are salt–water solutions, but they have different concentrations of solute. The **concentration** of a solution indicates the relationship between the amount of solute and the amount of solution. Concentrations can be given in various units.

**MOLARITY** Concentrations given in terms of **molarity (M)** give the number of moles of solute in exactly 1 liter of solution. Thus, a half molar (0.5 M) solution of NaCl would contain 0.5 mol, or 29.22 g, of NaCl in each liter of solution.

**NORMALITY** When the solute is an electrolyte, it is sometimes useful to express the concentration of the solution in a unit that gives information about the amount of ionic charge in the solution. This is done by expressing concentration in terms of **normality (N)**. The normality of a solution gives the number of

equivalents of solute in exactly 1 liter of solution. An **equivalent** of an electrolyte is the amount that produces 1 mole of positive (or negative) charges when it dissolves. The number of equivalents of an electrolyte can be calculated by multiplying the number of moles of electrolyte by the total number of positive charges produced when one formula unit of the electrolyte dissolves. Consider NaCl and calcium chloride ( $\text{CaCl}_2$ ) as examples. The ionization reactions for one formula unit of each solute are



Thus, 1 mol of NaCl produces 1 mole of positive charges ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) and so contains 1 equivalent:

$$(1 \text{ mol NaCl}) \times 1 = 1 \text{ equivalent}$$

where the number 1 used to multiply the 1 mol of NaCl came from the +1 charge on  $\text{Na}^+$ .

One mole of  $\text{CaCl}_2$  produces 1 mol of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , which is 2 moles of positive charge. Thus, 1 mol of  $\text{CaCl}_2$  contains 2 equivalents:

$$(1 \text{ mol CaCl}_2) \times 2 = 2 \text{ equivalents}$$

where the number 2 used in the multiplication came from the +2 charge on  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ .

If two solutions were made such that one contained 1 mol of NaCl per liter and the other contained 1 mol of  $\text{CaCl}_2$  per liter, the NaCl solution would contain 1 equivalent of solute per liter and would be 1 normal (1 N). The  $\text{CaCl}_2$  solution would contain 2 equivalents of solute per liter and would be 2 normal (2 N).

**OSMOLARITY** Another expression of concentration frequently used in physiology is osmolarity (Osm), which indicates the total *number* of solute particles in a liter of solution instead of the relative weights of the specific solutes. The osmolarity of a solution is the product of molarity (M) and *n*, where *n* is the number of moles of solute particles obtained when 1 mole of solute dissolves. Because nonelectrolytes such as glucose do not dissociate in solution,  $n = 1$  and the osmolarity ( $n \times M$ ) is equal to the molarity of the solution. For electrolyte solutions, the osmolarity exceeds the molarity by a factor equal to the number of ions produced on dissociation of each molecule in solution. For example, because a NaCl molecule dissociates into two ions,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ , the osmolarity of a 1 M solution of NaCl is  $2 \times 1 \text{ M} = 2 \text{ Osm}$ .

## Colloids and suspensions

In solutions, solute particles are ions or small molecules. By contrast, the particles in colloids and suspensions are much larger than ions or small molecules. In colloids and suspensions, these particles are known as **dispersed-phase particles** instead of *solutes*. When the dispersed-phase particles are no more than about 100 times the size of the largest solute particles found in a solution, the mixture is called a **colloid**. The dispersed-phase particles of colloids generally do not settle out.



All dispersed-phase particles of colloids carry electrical charges of the same sign. Thus, they repel each other. The constant buffeting from these collisions keeps the particles from settling. The most abundant colloids in the body are small functional proteins that are dispersed in the body fluids. An example is the colloidal dispersion of the plasma proteins in the blood (see p. 298).

When dispersed-phase particles are larger than those in colloids, if the mixture is left undisturbed the particles will settle out because of the force of gravity. Such mixtures are usually called **suspensions**. The major example of a suspension in the body is the mixture of blood cells suspended in the plasma. The constant movement of blood as it circulates through the blood vessels keeps the blood cells rather evenly dispersed within the plasma. However, if a blood sample is placed in a test tube and treated to prevent clotting, the heavier blood cells gradually settle to the bottom of the tube.

## Inorganic and Organic Chemicals

Chemicals are commonly classified into two categories: inorganic and organic.

### Distinction between inorganic and organic chemicals

The original criterion used for this classification was the origin of the chemicals. Those that came from living or once-living sources were *organic*, and those that came from other sources were *inorganic*. Today, the basis for classification is the element carbon. **Organic** chemicals are generally those that contain carbon. All others are classified as **inorganic**. A few carbon-containing chemicals are also classified as inorganic; the most common are pure carbon in the form of diamond and graphite, carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), carbon monoxide (CO), carbonates such as limestone (CaCO<sub>3</sub>), and bicarbonates such as baking soda (NaHCO<sub>3</sub>).

The unique ability of carbon atoms to bond to one another and form networks of carbon atoms results in an interesting fact. Even though organic chemicals all contain carbon, millions of these compounds have been identified. Some were isolated from natural plant or animal sources, and many have been synthesized in laboratories. Inorganic chemicals include all the other 108 elements and their compounds. The number of known inorganic chemicals made up of all these other elements is estimated to be about 250,000, compared to millions of organic compounds made up predominantly of carbon.

### Monomers and polymers

Another result of carbon's ability to bond to itself is the large size of some organic molecules. Organic molecules range in size from methane (CH<sub>4</sub>), a small, simple molecule with one carbon atom, to molecules such as DNA that contain as many as a million carbon atoms. Organic molecules that are essential for life are called **biological molecules**, or **biomolecules** for short. Some biomolecules are rather small organic compounds, including *simple sugars*, *fatty acids*, *amino acids*, and *nucleotides*.

These small, single units, known as **monomers** (meaning "single unit"), are building blocks for the synthesis of larger biomolecules, including *complex carbohydrates*, *lipids*, *proteins*, and *nucleic acids*, respectively. These larger organic molecules are called **polymers** (meaning "many units"), reflecting that they are made by the bonding together of a number of smaller monomers. For example, starch is formed by linking many glucose molecules together. Very large organic polymers are often referred to as **macromolecules**, reflecting their large size (*macro* means "large"). Macromolecules include many naturally occurring molecules, such as DNA and structural proteins, as well as many molecules that are synthetically produced, such as synthetic textiles (for example, nylon) and plastics.

## Acids, Bases, and Salts

Acids, bases, and salts may be inorganic or organic compounds.

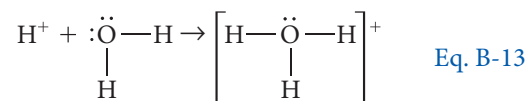
### Acids and bases

Acids and bases are chemical opposites, and salts are produced when acids and bases react with each other. In 1887, Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius proposed a theory defining acids and bases. He said that an *acid* is any substance that will dissociate, or break apart, when dissolved in water and in the process release a hydrogen ion (H<sup>+</sup>). Similarly, *bases* are substances that dissociate when dissolved in water and in the process release a hydroxyl ion (OH<sup>-</sup>). Hydrogen chloride (HCl) and sodium hydroxide (NaOH) are examples of Arrhenius acids and bases; their dissociations in water are represented in Equations B-11 and B-12, respectively:



Note that the hydrogen ion is a bare proton, the nucleus of a hydrogen atom. Also note that both HCl and NaOH would behave as electrolytes.

Arrhenius did not know that free hydrogen ions cannot exist in water. They covalently bond to water molecules to form hydronium ions, as shown in Equation B-13:



In 1923, Johannes Brønsted in Denmark and Thomas Lowry in England proposed an acid–base theory that took this behavior into account. They defined an **acid** as any hydrogen-containing substance that donates a proton (hydrogen ion) to another substance (an acid is a *proton donor*) and a **base** as any substance that accepts a proton (a base is a *proton acceptor*). According to these definitions, the acidic behavior of HCl given in Equation B-11 is rewritten as shown in Equation B-14:

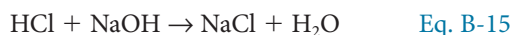


Note that this reaction is reversible, and the hydronium ion is represented as H<sub>3</sub>O<sup>+</sup>. In Equation B-14, the HCl acts as an acid

in the forward (left-to-right) reaction, whereas water acts as a base. In the reverse reaction (right-to-left), the hydronium ion gives up a proton and thus is an acid, whereas the chloride ion,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , accepts the proton and so is a base. It is still a common practice to use equations such as Equation B-11 to simplify the representation of the dissociation of an acid, even though scientists recognize that equations like Equation B-14 are more correct.

### Salts; neutralization reactions

At room temperature, **inorganic salts** are crystalline solids that contain the positive ion (cation) of an Arrhenius base such as  $\text{NaOH}$  and the negative ion (anion) of an acid such as  $\text{HCl}$ . Salts can be produced by mixing solutions of appropriate acids and bases, allowing a **neutralization reaction** to occur. In neutralization reactions, the acid and base react to form a salt and water. Most salts that form are water soluble and can be recovered by evaporating the water. Equation B-15 is a neutralization reaction:

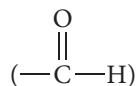


When acids or bases are used as solutes in solutions, the concentrations can be expressed as normalities just as they were earlier for salts. An equivalent of acid is the amount that gives up 1 mol of  $\text{H}^+$  in solution. Thus, 1 mol of  $\text{HCl}$  is also 1 equivalent, but 1 mol of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  is 2 equivalents. Bases are described in a similar way, but an equivalent is the amount of base that gives 1 mol of  $\text{OH}^-$ .

See Chapter 14 and Appendix D for further discussion of acid–base balance in the body.

## Functional Groups of Organic Molecules

Organic molecules consist of carbon and one or more additional elements covalently bonded to one another in “Tinker Toy” fashion. The simplest organic molecules, hydrocarbons (such as methane and petroleum products), have only hydrogen atoms attached to carbon backbones of varying lengths. All biomolecules always have elements besides hydrogen added to the carbon backbone. The carbon backbone forms the stable portion of most biomolecules. Other atoms covalently bonded to the carbon backbone, either alone or in clusters, form functional groups. **Functional groups** are specific combinations of atoms that generally react in the same way, regardless of the number of carbon atoms in the molecule to which they are attached. All organic compounds can be classified according to the functional group or groups they contain. For example, all *aldehydes* contain a functional group that includes one carbon atom, one oxygen atom, and one hydrogen atom covalently bonded in a specific way:



The carbon atom in an aldehyde group forms a single covalent bond with the hydrogen atom and a **double bond** (a bond

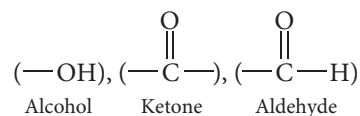
in which two covalent bonds are formed between the same atoms, designated by a double line between the atoms) with the oxygen atom. The aldehyde group is attached to the rest of the molecule by a single covalent bond extending to the left of the carbon atom. Most aldehyde reactions are the same regardless of the size and nature of the rest of the molecule to which the aldehyde group is attached. Reactions of physiological importance often occur between two functional groups or between one functional group and a small molecule such as water.

## Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates are organic compounds of tremendous biological and commercial importance. They are widely distributed in nature and include such familiar substances as starch, table sugar, and cellulose. Carbohydrates have five important functions in living organisms: They provide energy, serve as a stored form of chemical energy, provide dietary fiber, supply carbon atoms for the synthesis of cell components, and form part of the structural elements of cells.

### Chemical composition of carbohydrates

**Carbohydrates** contain carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. They acquired their name because most of them contain these three elements in an atomic ratio of one carbon to two hydrogens to one oxygen. This ratio suggests that the general formula is  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$  and that the compounds are simply carbon hydrates (“watered” carbons), or carbohydrates. It is now known that they are not hydrates of carbon, but the name persists. All carbohydrates have a large number of functional groups per molecule. The most common functional groups in carbohydrates are *alcohol*, *ketone*, and *aldehyde*

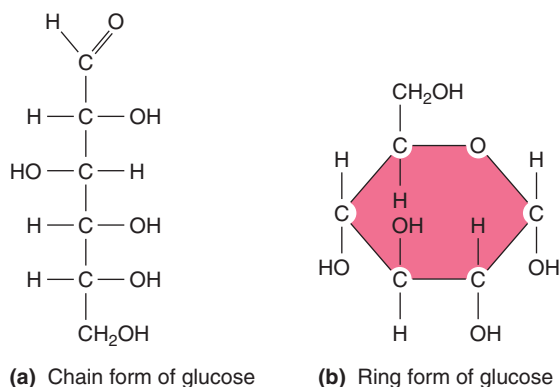


or functional groups formed by reactions between pairs of these three.

### Types of carbohydrates

The simplest carbohydrates are simple sugars, also called **monosaccharides**. As their name indicates, they consist of single, simple-sugar units called saccharides (*mono* means “one”). The molecular structure of glucose, an important monosaccharide, is shown in ● Figure B-7a. In solution, most glucose molecules assume the ring form shown in ● Figure B-7b. Other common monosaccharides are *fructose*, *galactose*, and *ribose*.

**Disaccharides** are sugars formed by linking two monosaccharide molecules together through a covalent bond (*di* means “two”). Some common examples of disaccharides are *sucrose* (common table sugar) and *lactose* (milk sugar). Sucrose molecules are formed from one glucose and one fructose molecule. Lactose molecules each contain one glucose and one galactose unit.



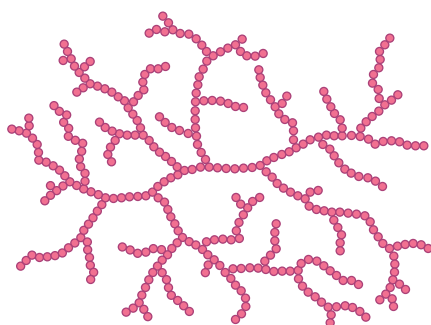
● **FIGURE B-7** Forms of glucose.

Because of the many functional groups on carbohydrate molecules, large numbers of simple carbohydrate molecules are able to bond together and form long chains and branched networks. The resultant substances, **polysaccharides**, contain many saccharide units (*poly* means “many”). Three common polysaccharides made up entirely of glucose units are glycogen, starch, and cellulose:

- *Glycogen* is a storage carbohydrate found in animals. It is a highly branched polysaccharide that averages a branch every 8 to 12 glucose units. The structure of glycogen is represented in ● Figure B-8, where each circle represents one glucose unit.

- *Starch*, a storage carbohydrate of plants, consists of two fractions, amylose and amylopectin. Amylose consists of long, essentially unbranched chains of glucose units. Amylopectin is a highly branched network of glucose units averaging 24 to 30 glucose units per branch. Thus, it is less highly branched than glycogen.

- *Cellulose*, a structural carbohydrate of plants, exists in the form of long, unbranched chains of glucose units. The bonding between the glucose units of cellulose is slightly different from the bonding between the glucose units of glycogen and starch. Humans have digestive enzymes that catalyze the breaking (hydrolysis) of the glucose-to-glucose bonds in starch but lack the necessary enzymes to hydrolyze cellulose glucose-to-glucose bonds. Thus, starch is a food for humans, but cellulose is not. Cellulose is the indigestible fiber in our diets.



● **FIGURE B-8** A simplified representation of glycogen. Each circle represents a glucose molecule.

## Lipids

Lipids are a diverse group of organic molecules made up of substances with widely different compositions and molecular structures. Unlike carbohydrates, which are classified on the basis of their *molecular structure*, substances are classified as lipids on the basis of their *solubility*. **Lipids** are insoluble in water but soluble in nonpolar solvents such as alcohol.

Lipids are the waxy, greasy, or oily compounds found in plants and animals. These compounds repel water, a useful characteristic of the protective wax coatings found on some plants. Fats and oils are energy rich and have relatively low densities. These properties account for the use of fats and oils as stored energy in plants and animals. Still other lipids occur as structural components, especially in cellular membranes. The oily plasma membrane that surrounds each cell serves as a barrier that separates the intracellular contents from the surrounding extracellular fluid (see pp. 2, 20, and 43).

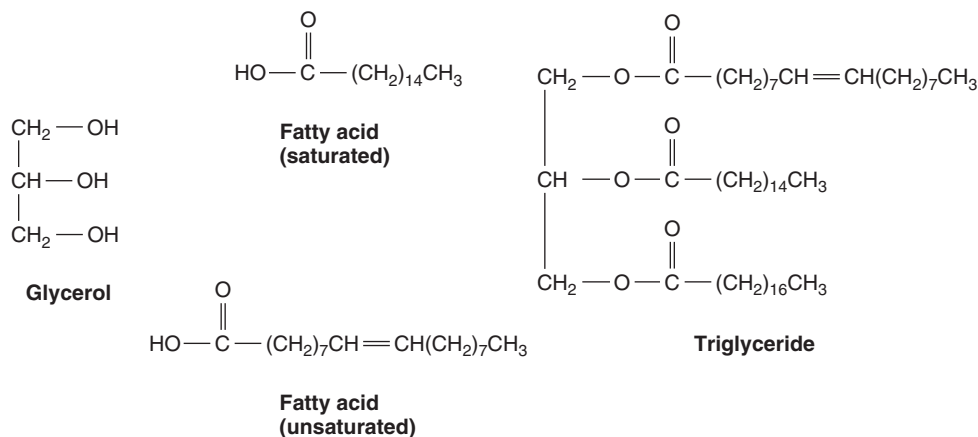
### Simple lipids

Simple lipids contain just two types of components: fatty acids and alcohols. **Fatty acid molecules** consist of a hydrocarbon chain with a *carboxyl* functional group ( $-\text{COOH}$ ) on the end. The hydrocarbon chain can be of variable length, but natural fatty acids always contain an even number of carbon atoms. The hydrocarbon chain can also contain one or more double bonds between carbon atoms. Fatty acids with no double bonds are called **saturated fatty acids**, whereas those with double bonds are called **unsaturated fatty acids**. The more double bonds present, the higher the degree of unsaturation. Saturated fatty acids predominate in dietary animal products (for example, meat, eggs, and dairy products), whereas unsaturated fatty acids are more prevalent in plant products (for example, grains, vegetables, and fruits). Consumption of a greater proportion of saturated than unsaturated fatty acids is linked with a higher incidence of cardiovascular disease (see p. 256).

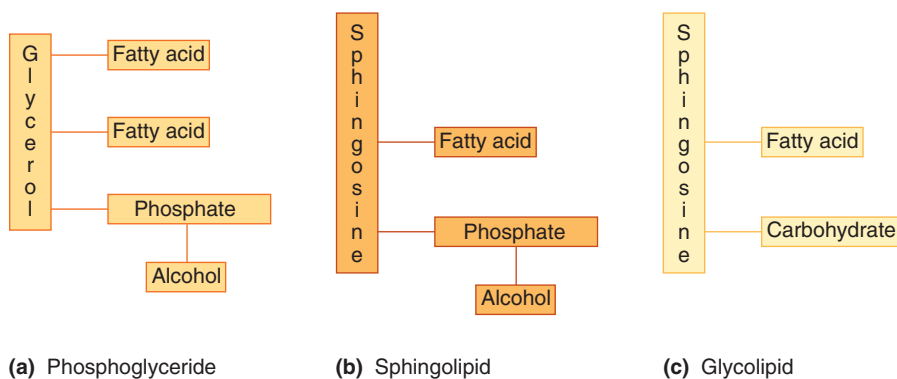
The most common alcohol found in simple lipids is **glycerol** (glycerin), a three-carbon alcohol that has three alcohol functional groups ( $-\text{OH}$ ).

Simple lipids called fats and oils are formed by a reaction between the carboxyl group of three fatty acids and the three alcohol groups of glycerol. The resulting lipid is an E-shaped molecule called a **triglyceride**. Such lipids are classified as fats or oils on the basis of their melting points. *Fats* are solids at room temperature, whereas *oils* are liquids. Their melting points depend on the degree of unsaturation of the fatty acids of the triglyceride. The melting point goes down with increasing degree of unsaturation. Thus, oils contain more unsaturated fatty acids than fats do. Examples of the components of fats and oils and a typical triglyceride molecule are shown in ● Figure B-9.

When triglycerides form, a molecule of water is released as each fatty acid reacts with glycerol. Adipose tissue in the body contains triglycerides. When the body uses adipose tissue as an energy source, the triglycerides react with water to release free fatty acids into the blood. The fatty acids can be used as an immediate energy source by many organs. In the liver, free fatty



● **FIGURE B-9** Triglyceride components and structure.



● **FIGURE B-10** Examples of complex lipids. In parts (b) and (c), sphingosine is an alcohol similar to glycerol.

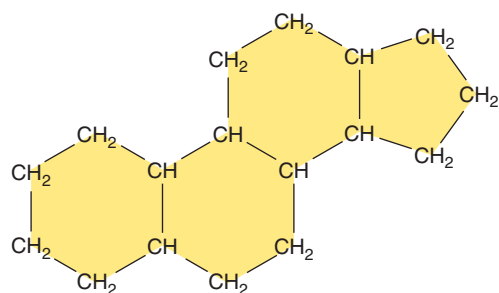
acids are converted into compounds called **ketone bodies**. Two of the ketone bodies are acids, and one is the ketone called *acetone*. Excess ketone bodies are produced during diabetes mellitus, a condition in which most cells resort to using fatty acids as an energy source because the cells are unable to take up adequate amounts of glucose in the face of inadequate insulin action (see p. 532).

### Complex lipids

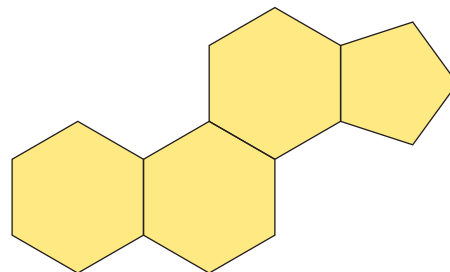
Complex lipids have more than two types of components. The different complex lipids usually contain three or more of the following components: glycerol, fatty acids, a phosphate group, an alcohol other than glycerol, and a carbohydrate. Those that contain phosphate are called **phospholipids**. ● Figure B-10 contains representations of a few complex lipids; it emphasizes the components but does not give details of the molecular structures.

**Steroids** are lipids that have a unique structural feature consisting of a fused carbon ring system that contains three six-membered rings and a single five-membered ring (● Figure B-11). Different steroids possess this characteristic ring structure but have different functional groups and carbon chains attached.

**Cholesterol**, a steroidal alcohol, is the most abundant steroid in the human body. It is a component of cell membranes and is used by the body to produce other important steroids



(a) Detailed steroid ring system



(b) Simplified steroid ring system

● **FIGURE B-11** The steroid ring system.

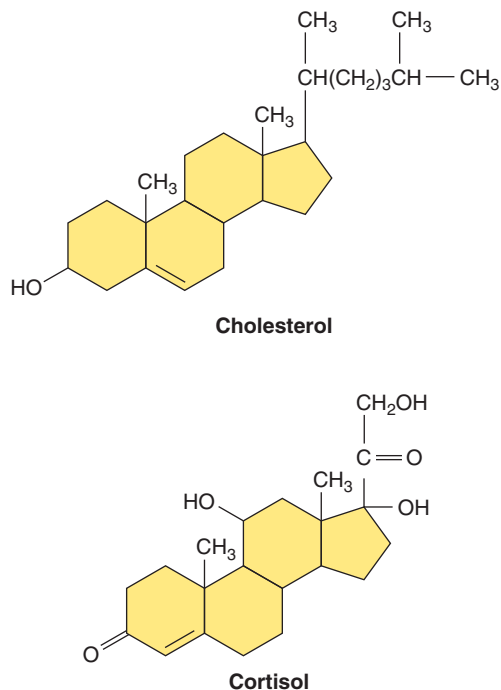
that include bile salts, male and female sex hormones, and adrenocortical hormones. The structures of cholesterol and cortisol, an important adrenocortical hormone, are given in ● Figure B-12.

## Proteins

The name *protein* is derived from the Greek word *proteios*, which means “of first importance.” It is certainly an appropriate term for these important biological compounds. Proteins are indispensable components of all living things, where they play crucial roles in all biological processes. Proteins are the main structural component of cells, and all chemical reactions in the body are catalyzed by enzymes, all of which are proteins.

### Chemical composition of proteins

**Proteins** are macromolecules made up of monomers called **amino acids**. Hundreds of different amino acids, both natural and synthetic, are known, but only 20 are commonly found in natural proteins. From this limited pool of 20 amino acids, cells build thousands of types of proteins, each with a distinct function, in much the same

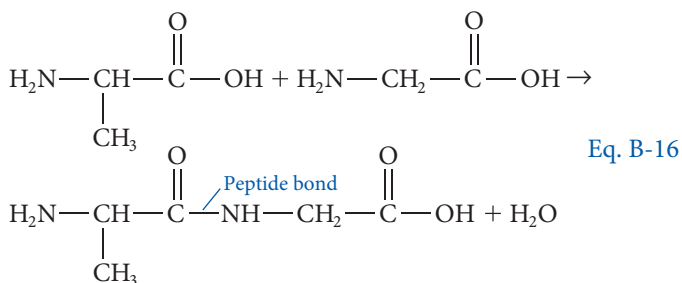


● **FIGURE B-12** Examples of steroidal compounds.

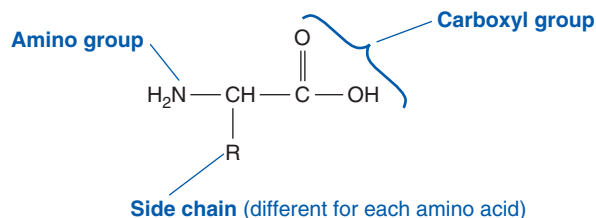
way that composers create diverse music from a relatively small number of notes. Different proteins are constructed by varying the types and numbers of amino acids used and by varying the order in which they are linked together. However, proteins are not built haphazardly, by randomly linking together amino acids. Every protein in the body is deliberately and precisely synthesized under the direction of the blueprint laid down in the person's genes. Thus, amino acids are assembled in a specific pattern to produce a given protein that can accomplish a particular structural or functional task in the body. (More information about protein synthesis can be found in Appendix C.)

### Peptide bonds

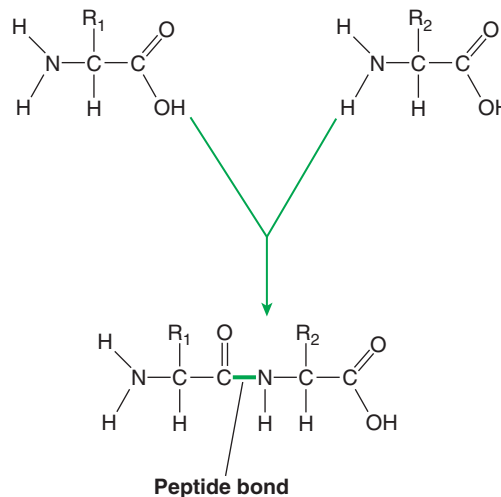
Each amino acid molecule has three important parts: an amino functional group ( $-\text{NH}_2$ ), a carboxyl functional group ( $-\text{COOH}$ ), and a characteristic side chain or R group. These components are shown in expanded form in ● Figure B-13. Amino acids form long chains as a result of reactions between the amino group of one amino acid and the carboxyl group of another amino acid. This reaction is illustrated in Equation B-16:



The covalent bond formed in the reaction is called a **peptide bond** (● Figure B-14). Notice that after the two molecules



● **FIGURE B-13** The general structure of amino acids.



● **FIGURE B-14** A peptide bond. In forming a peptide bond, the carboxyl group of one amino acid reacts with the amino group of another amino acid.

react, the ends of the product still have an amino group and a carboxyl group that can react to extend the chain length.

On a molecular scale, proteins are immense molecules. Their size can be illustrated by comparing a glucose molecule to a molecule of hemoglobin, a protein. Glucose has a molecular weight of 180 amu and a molecular formula of  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$ . Hemoglobin, a relatively small protein, has a molecular weight of 65,000 amu and a molecular formula of  $\text{C}_{2952}\text{H}_{4664}\text{O}_{832}\text{N}_{812}\text{S}_8\text{Fe}_4$ .

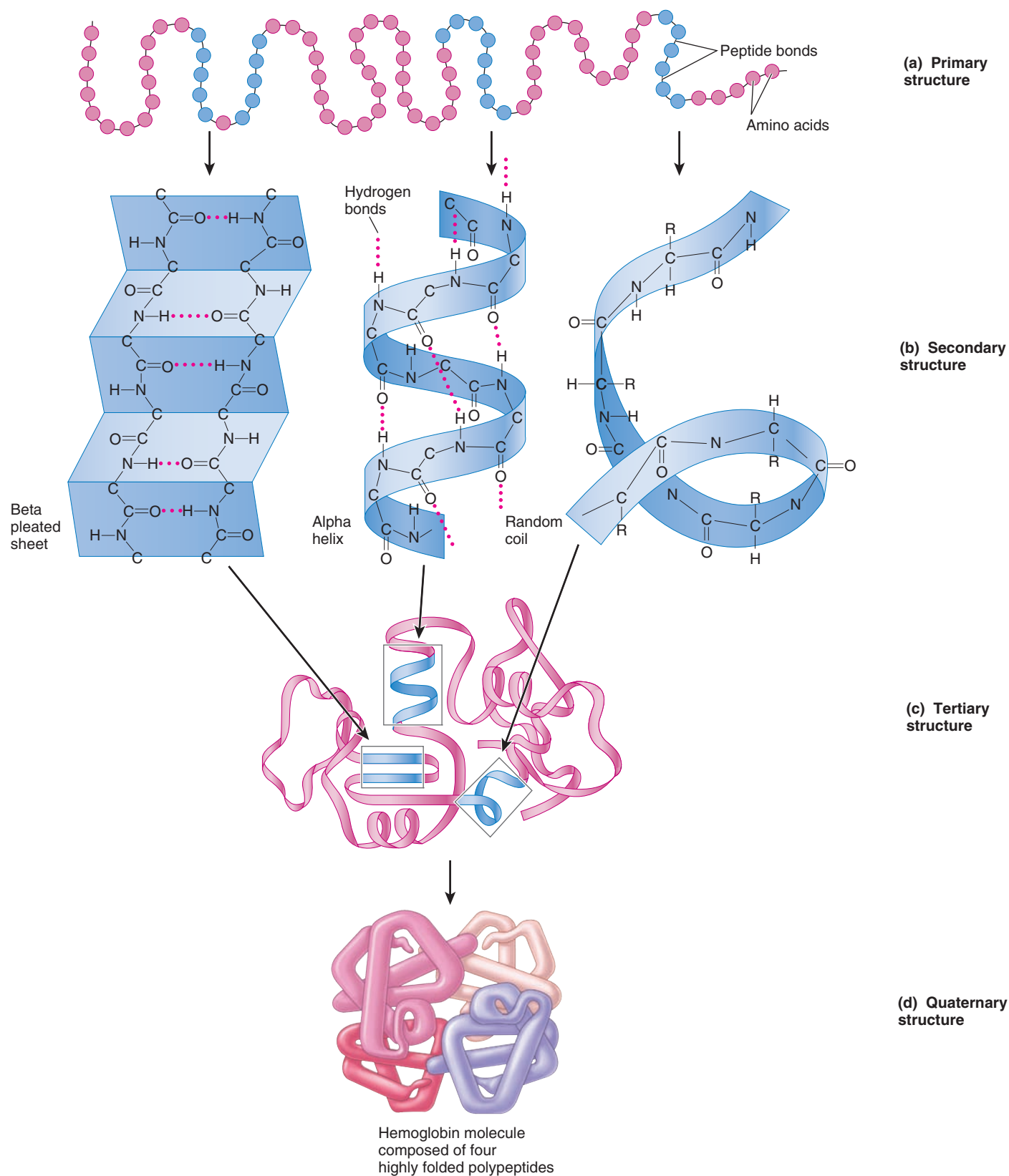
### Levels of protein structure

The many atoms in a protein are not arranged randomly. In fact, proteins have a high degree of structural organization that plays an important role in their behavior in the body.

**PRIMARY STRUCTURE** The first level of protein structure is called the **primary structure**. It is simply the order in which amino acids are bonded together to form the protein chain. Amino acids are frequently represented by three-letter abbreviations, such as Gly for glycine and Arg for arginine. When this practice is followed, the primary structure of a protein can be represented as in ● Figure B-15, which shows part of the primary structure of human insulin, or as in ● Figure B-16a, which depicts a portion of the primary structure of hemoglobin.

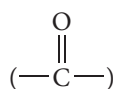


● **FIGURE B-15** A portion of the primary protein structure of human insulin.



● **FIGURE B-16 Levels of protein structure.** Proteins can have four levels of structure. (a) The primary structure is a particular sequence of amino acids bonded in a chain. (b) At the secondary level, hydrogen bonding occurs between various amino acids within the chain, causing the chain to assume a particular shape. The most common secondary protein structure in the body is the alpha helix. (c) The tertiary structure is formed by the folding of the secondary structure into a functional three-dimensional configuration. (d) Many proteins have a fourth level of structure composed of several polypeptides, as exemplified by hemoglobin.

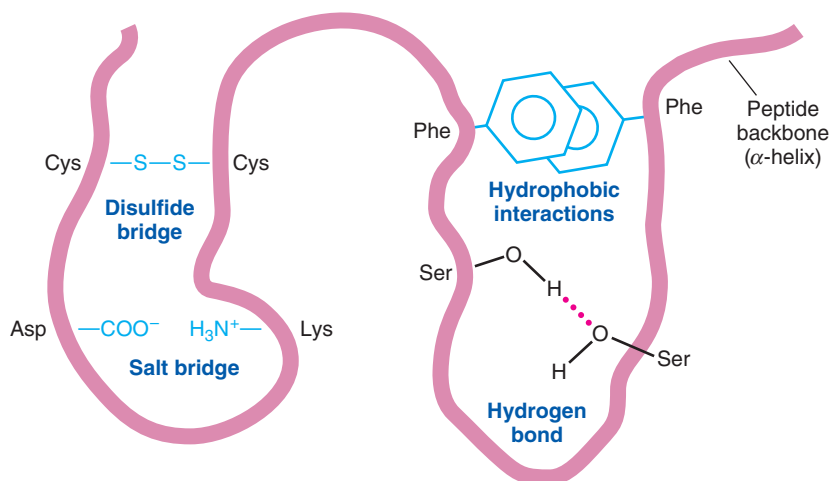
**SECONDARY STRUCTURE** The second level of protein structure, called the **secondary structure**, results when hydrogen bonding occurs between the amino hydrogen of one amino acid and the carboxyl oxygen of another amino acid in the same chain:



As a result of this hydrogen bonding, the involved portion of the chain typically assumes a coiled, helical shape called an *alpha* ( $\alpha$ ) *helix*, which is by far the most common secondary structure found in the body (● Figure B-16b). Other secondary structures such as *beta* ( $\beta$ ) *pleated sheets* and *random coils* can also form, depending on the pattern of hydrogen bonding between amino acids located in different parts of the same chain.

**TERTIARY AND QUATERNARY STRUCTURE** The third level of structure in proteins is the **tertiary structure**. It results when functional groups of the side chains of amino acids in the protein chain react with each other. Several types of interactions are possible, as shown in ● Figure B-17. Tertiary structures can be visualized by letting a length of wire represent the chain of amino acids in the primary structure of a protein. Next imagine that the wire is wound around a pencil to form a helix, which represents the secondary structure. The pencil is removed, and the helical structure is now folded back on itself or carefully wadded into a ball. Such folded or spherical structures represent the tertiary structure of a protein (see ● Figure B-16c).

All functional proteins exist in at least a tertiary structure. Sometimes, several polypeptides interact with one another to form a fourth level of protein structure, the **quaternary structure**. For example, hemoglobin contains four highly folded polypeptide chains (the **globin** portion) (see ● Figure B-16d). Four iron-containing *heme* groups, one tucked within the interior of each of the folded polypeptide subunits, complete the quaternary structure of hemoglobin (see ● Figure 11-2, p. 299).



● **FIGURE B-17** Side chain interactions leading to the tertiary protein structure.

## Hydrolysis and denaturation

In addition to serving as enzymes that catalyze the many essential chemical reactions of the body, proteins can undergo reactions themselves. Two of the most important are hydrolysis and denaturation.

**HYDROLYSIS** Notice that according to Equation B-16, the formation of peptide bonds releases water molecules. Under appropriate conditions, it is possible to reverse such reactions by adding water to the peptide bonds and breaking them. **Hydrolysis** (“breakdown by  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ”) reactions of this type convert large proteins into smaller fragments or even into individual amino acids. Hydrolysis is the means by which digestive enzymes break down ingested food into small units that can be absorbed from the digestive tract lumen into the blood.

**DENATURATION** **Denaturation** of proteins occurs when the bonds holding a protein in its characteristic shape are broken so that the protein chain takes on a random, disorganized conformation. Denaturation can result when proteins are heated (including when body temperature rises too high; see p. 486), subjected to extremes of pH (see p. 428), or treated with specific chemicals such as alcohol. In some instances, denaturation is accompanied by coagulation or precipitation, as illustrated by the changes that occur in the white of an egg as it is fried.

## Nucleic Acids

**Nucleic acids** are high-molecular-weight macromolecules responsible for storing and using genetic information in living cells and passing it on to future generations. These important biomolecules are classified into two categories: **deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)** and **ribonucleic acid (RNA)**. DNA is found primarily in the cell’s nucleus, and RNA is found primarily in the cytoplasm that surrounds the nucleus.

Both types of nucleic acid are made up of units called **nucleotides**, which in turn are composed of three simpler components: Each nucleotide contains an organic nitrogenous base, a sugar, and a phosphate group. The three components are chemically bonded together, with the sugar molecule lying between the base and the phosphate. In RNA the sugar is ribose, whereas in DNA it is deoxyribose. When nucleotides bond together to form nucleic acid chains, the bonding is between the phosphate of one nucleotide and the sugar of another. The resulting nucleic acids consist of chains of alternating phosphates and sugar molecules, with a base molecule extending out of the chain from each sugar molecule (see ● Figure C-1, p. A-19).

The chains of nucleic acids have structural features somewhat like those found in proteins. DNA takes the form of two chains that mutually coil around each other to form the well-known double helix. Some RNA occurs in essentially straight chains, whereas in other types the chain

forms specific loops or helices. See Appendix C for further details.

## High-Energy Biomolecules

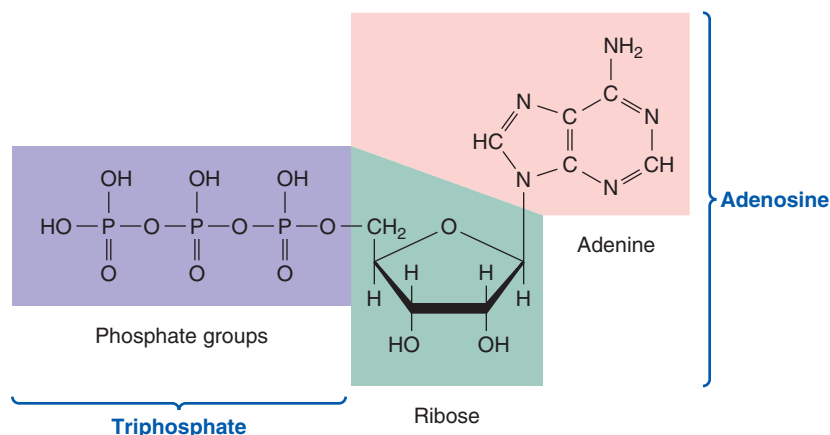
Not all nucleotides are used to construct nucleic acids. One important nucleotide—**adenosine triphosphate (ATP)**—is used as the body's primary energy carrier. Certain bonds in ATP temporarily store energy that is harnessed during the metabolism of foods and make it available to the parts of the cells where it is needed to do specific cellular work (see pp. 27–33). Let us see how ATP functions in this role. Structurally, ATP is a modified RNA (ribose-containing) nucleotide that has adenine as its base and two additional phosphates bonded in sequence to the original nucleotide phosphate. Thus, as its name implies, adenosine

triphosphate has three phosphates attached in a string to *adenosine*, the composite of ribose and adenine (● Figure B-18). Attaching these additional phosphates requires considerable energy input. The high-energy input used to create these **high-energy phosphate bonds** is “stored” in the bonds for later use. Most energy transfers in the body involve ATP's terminal phosphate bond. When energy is needed, the third phosphate is cleaved off by hydrolysis, yielding *adenosine diphosphate (ADP)* and an inorganic phosphate ( $P_i$ ) and releasing energy in the process (Equation B-17):



Why use ATP as an energy currency that cells can cash in by splitting the high-energy phosphate bonds as needed? Why not just directly use the energy released during the oxidation of nutrient molecules such as glucose? If all the chemical energy stored in glucose were to be released at once, most of the energy would be squandered because the cell could not capture much of the energy for immediate use. Instead, the energy trapped within the glucose bonds is gradually released and harnessed as cellular “bite-size pieces” in the form of the high-energy phosphate bonds of ATP.

Under the influence of an enzyme, ATP can be converted to a cyclic form of adenosine monophosphate (AMP), which contains only one phosphate group, the other two having been cleaved off. The resultant molecule, called **cyclic AMP** or **cAMP**, serves as an intracellular messenger, affecting the activities of a number of enzymes involved in important reactions in the body (see p. 96).





# Appendix C

## Storage, Replication, and Expression of Genetic Information

### Deoxyribonucleic Acid and Chromosomes

The nucleus of the cell houses **deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)**, the genetic blueprint that is unique for each individual.

#### Functions of DNA

As genetic material, DNA serves two essential functions. First, it contains “instructions” for assembling the structural and enzymatic proteins of the cell. Cellular enzymes in turn control the formation of other cellular structures and determine the functional activity of the cell by regulating the rate at which metabolic reactions proceed. The nucleus serves as the cell’s control center by directly or indirectly controlling almost all cell activities through the role its DNA plays in governing protein synthesis. Because cells make up the body, the DNA code determines the structure and the function of the body as a whole. The DNA an organism has not only dictates whether the organism is a human, a toad, or a pea but also determines the unique physical and functional characteristics of that individual, all of which ultimately depend on the proteins produced under DNA control.

Second, by replicating (making copies of itself), DNA perpetuates the genetic blueprint within all new cells formed within the body and is responsible for passing on genetic information from parents to children. We first examine the structure of DNA and the coding mechanism it uses, and then we turn our attention to the means by which DNA replicates itself and controls protein synthesis.

#### Structure of DNA

DNA is a huge molecule, composed in humans of millions of nucleotides arranged into two long, paired strands that spiral around each other to form a double helix. Each **nucleotide** has three components: (1) a *nitrogenous base*, a ring-shaped organic molecule containing nitrogen; (2) a five-carbon ring-shaped sugar molecule, which in DNA is *deoxyribose*; and (3) a phosphate group. Nucleotides are joined end to end by linkages between the sugar of one nucleotide and the phosphate group of the adjacent nucleotide to form a long *polynucleotide* (“many nucleotide”) strand with a sugar–phosphate backbone and bases projecting out one side (● Figure C-1). The four bases in DNA

are the double-ringed bases **adenine (A)** and **guanine (G)** and the single-ringed bases **cytosine (C)** and **thymine (T)**. The two polynucleotide strands within a DNA molecule are wrapped around each other so that their bases all project to the interior of the helix. The strands are held together by weak hydrogen bonds formed between the bases of adjoining strands (see ● Figure B-6, p. A-7). Base pairing is highly specific: Adenine pairs only with thymine, and guanine pairs only with cytosine (● Figure C-2).

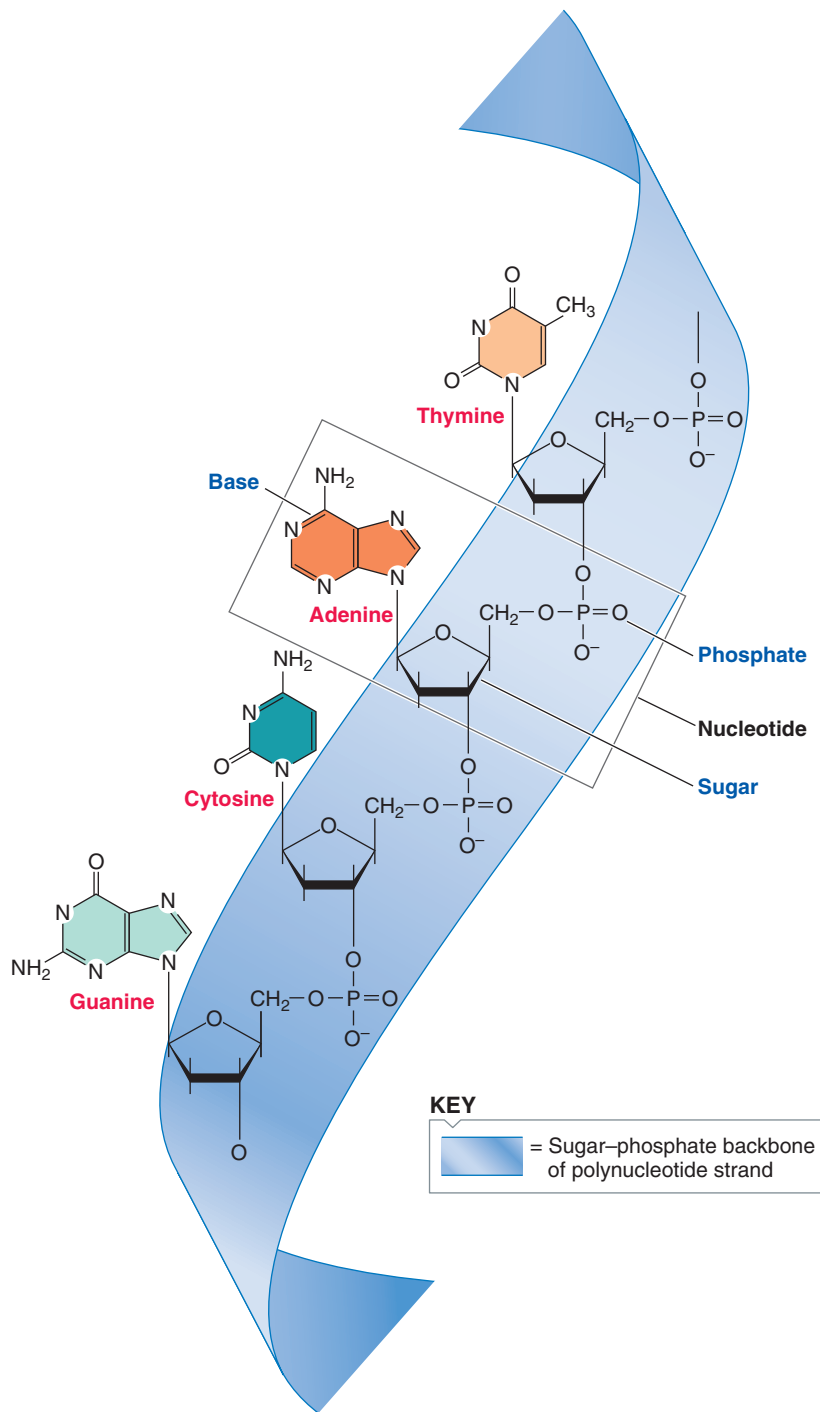
#### Genes in DNA

The composition of the repetitive sugar–phosphate backbones that form the “sides” of the DNA “ladder” is identical for every molecule of DNA, but the sequence of the linked bases that form the “rungs” varies among DNA molecules. The particular sequence of bases in a DNA molecule serves as “instructions” or a “code,” dictating the assembly of amino acids into a given order for the synthesis of specific **polypeptides** (chains of amino acids linked by peptide bonds; see p. A-14). A **gene** is a stretch of DNA that codes for the synthesis of a particular polypeptide. Polypeptides, in turn, are folded into a three-dimensional configuration to form a functional protein. Not all portions of a DNA molecule code for structural or enzymatic proteins. Some stretches of DNA code for proteins that regulate genes. Other segments appear important in organizing and packaging DNA within the nucleus. Still other regions are “nonsense” base sequences that have no apparent significance.

#### Packaging of DNA into chromosomes

The DNA molecules within each human cell, if lined up end to end, would extend more than 2 m (2,000,000  $\mu\text{m}$ ), yet these molecules are packed into a nucleus that is only 5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. These molecules are not randomly crammed into the nucleus but are precisely organized into **chromosomes**. Each chromosome consists of a different DNA molecule and contains a unique set of genes.

**Somatic (body) cells** contain 46 chromosomes (the **diploid number**), which can be sorted into 23 pairs on the basis of various distinguishing features. Chromosomes composing a matched pair are termed **homologous chromosomes**, one member of each pair having been derived from the individual’s mother and the other member from the father. **Germ (reproductive) cells** (that is, sperm and eggs) contain only one mem-



● **FIGURE C-1 Polynucleotide strand.** Sugar-phosphate bonds link adjacent nucleotides together to form a polynucleotide strand with bases projecting to one side. The sugar-phosphate backbone is identical in all polynucleotides, but the sequence of the bases varies.

ber of each homologous pair for a total of 23 chromosomes (the **haploid number**). Union of a sperm and an egg results in a new diploid cell with 46 chromosomes, consisting of a set of 23 chromosomes from the mother and another set of 23 chromosomes from the father (see ● Figure 18-9, p. 565).

DNA molecules are packaged and compressed into discrete chromosomal units in part by nuclear proteins associated

with DNA. Two classes of proteins—histone and nonhistone—bind with DNA. **Histones** form bead-shaped bodies that play a key role in packaging DNA into its chromosomal structure. The **nonhistones** are important in gene regulation. The complex formed between the DNA and its associated proteins is known as **chromatin**. The long threads of DNA within a chromosome are wound around histones at regular intervals, thus compressing a given DNA molecule to about one sixth of its fully extended length. This “beads-on-a-string” structure is folded and supercoiled into ever higher levels of organization to further condense DNA into rodlike chromosomes that are readily visible through a light microscope during cell division (● Figure C-3). When the cell is not dividing, the chromosomes partially “unravel” or decondense to a less compact form of chromatin that is indistinct under a light microscope but appears as thin strands and clumps with an electron microscope. The decondensed form of DNA is its working form; that is, it is the form used as a template for protein assembly. Let us turn our attention to this working form of DNA in operation.

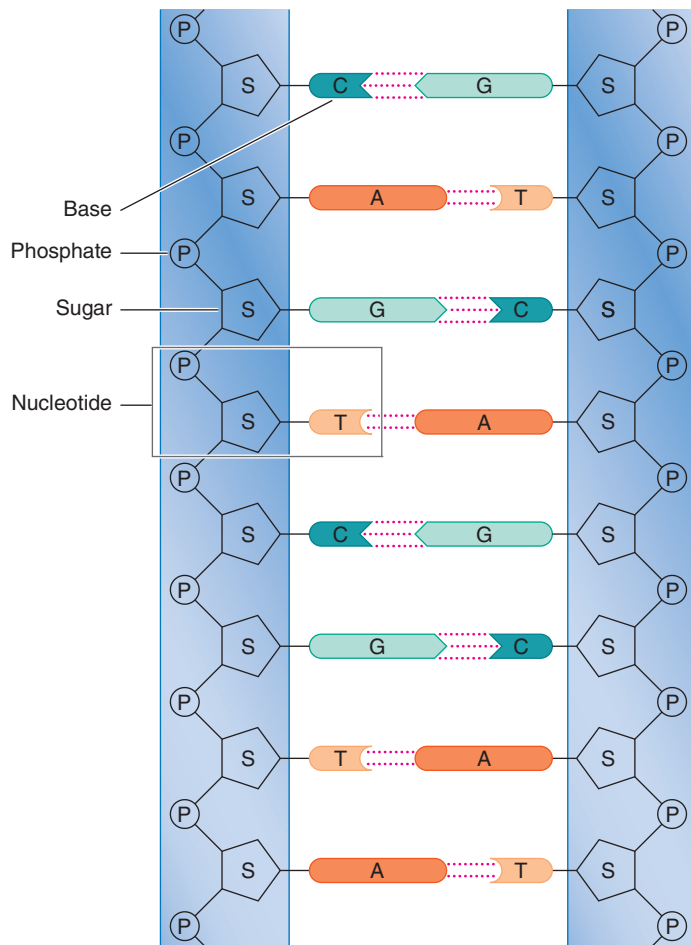
## Complementary Base Pairing, Replication, and Transcription

Complementary base pairing serves as the foundation for both the replication of DNA and the initial step of protein synthesis. We examine the mechanism and significance of complementary base pairing in each of these circumstances, starting with DNA replication.

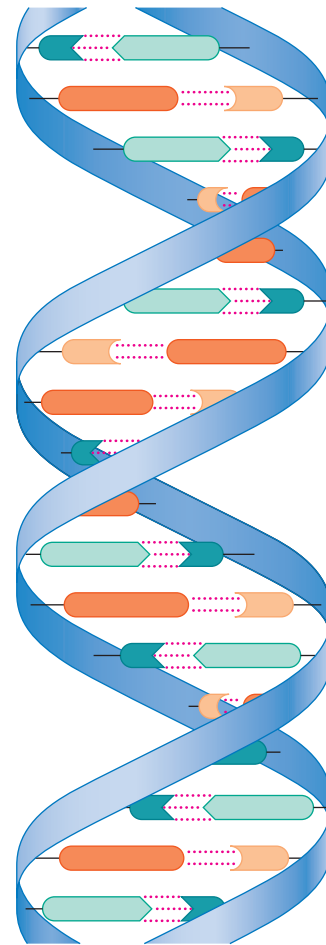
### DNA replication

During DNA replication, the two decondensed DNA strands “unzip” as the weak bonds between the paired bases are enzymatically broken. Then **complementary base pairing** takes place: New nucleotides present within the nucleus pair with the exposed bases from each unzipped strand (● Figure C-4). For example, new adenine-bearing nucleotides pair with exposed thymine-bearing nucleotides in an old strand, and new guanine-

bearing nucleotides pair with exposed cytosine-bearing nucleotides in an old strand. This complementary base pairing is initiated at one end of the two old strands and proceeds in an orderly fashion to the other end. The new nucleotides attracted to and thus aligned in a prescribed order by the old nucleotides are sequentially joined by sugar-phosphate linkages to form two new strands that are complementary to each of the old strands. This replication process results in two complete double-stranded DNA molecules, one strand within each molecule having come



(a) Polynucleotide strands held together by weak bonds between complementary bases



(b) DNA molecule showing arrangement of polynucleotide strands

#### KEY

= Adenine	= Guanine	= Sugar-phosphate backbone
= Thymine	= Cytosine	= Hydrogen bonds

● **FIGURE C-2 Complementary base pairing in DNA.** (a) Two polynucleotide strands held together by weak hydrogen bonds formed between the bases of adjoining strands—adenine always paired with thymine and guanine always paired with cytosine. (b) Arrangement of the two bonded polynucleotide strands of a DNA molecule into a double helix.

from the original DNA molecule and one strand having been newly formed by complementary base pairing. These two DNA molecules are both identical to the original DNA molecule, with the “missing” strand in each of the original separated strands having been produced as a result of the imposed pattern of base pairing. This replication process, which occurs only during cell division, is essential for perpetuating the genetic code in both new daughter cells. The duplicate copies of DNA are separated and evenly distributed to the two halves of the cell before it divides. We cover the topic of cell division in more detail later.

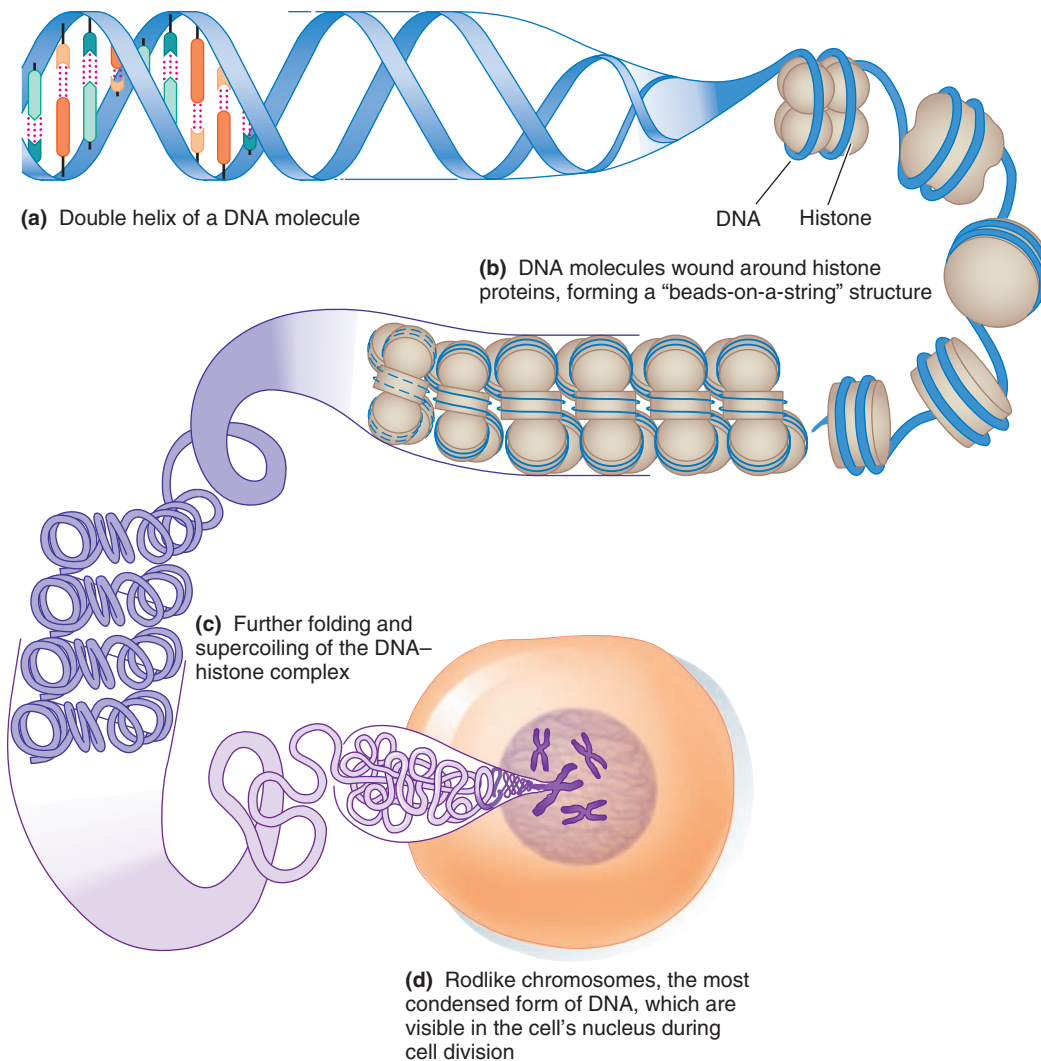
### DNA transcription and messenger ribonucleic acid

When DNA is not replicating in preparation for cell division, it serves as a blueprint for dictating cellular protein synthesis. How is this accomplished when DNA is confined to the nucleus

and protein synthesis is carried out by ribosomes within the cytoplasm? Several types of another nucleic acid, **ribonucleic acid (RNA)**, serve as the “go-betweens.”

**STRUCTURE OF RNA** RNA differs structurally from DNA in three regards: (1) The five-carbon sugar in RNA is ribose instead of deoxyribose, the only difference between them being the presence in ribose of a single oxygen atom that is absent in deoxyribose; (2) RNA contains the closely related base **uracil** instead of thymine, with the three other bases being the same as in DNA; and (3) RNA is single stranded and not self-replicating.

All RNA molecules are produced in the nucleus using DNA as a template and then exit the nucleus through openings in the nuclear membrane, called *nuclear pores* (see p. 20), which are large enough for passage of RNA molecules but block the much larger DNA molecules.



● **FIGURE C-3** Levels of organization of DNA.

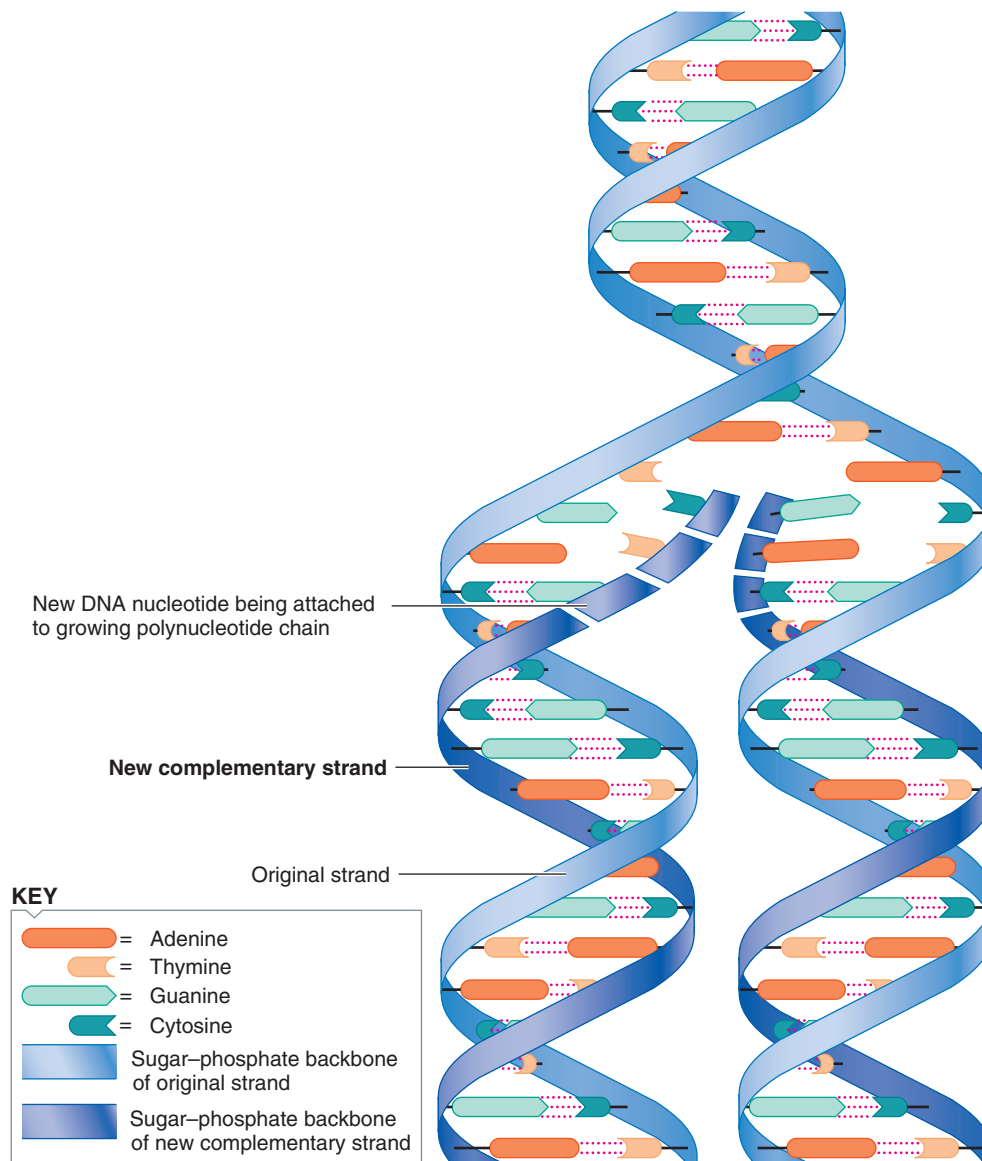
The DNA instructions for assembling a particular protein coded in the base sequence of a given gene are "transcribed" into a molecule of **messenger RNA (mRNA)**. The segment of the DNA molecule to be copied uncoils, and the base pairs separate to expose the particular sequence of bases in the gene. In any given gene, only one of the DNA strands is used as a template for transcribing RNA, with the copied strand varying for different genes along the same DNA molecule. The beginning and end of a gene within a DNA strand are designated by particular base sequences that serve as "start" and "stop" signals.

**TRANSCRIPTION** Transcription is accomplished by complementary base pairing of free RNA nucleotides with their DNA counterparts in the exposed gene (● Figure C-5). The same pairing rules apply except that uracil, the RNA nucleotide substitute for thymine, pairs with adenine in the exposed DNA nucleotides. As soon as the RNA nucleotides pair with their DNA counterparts, sugar-phosphate bonds are formed to join the nucleotides together into a single-stranded RNA molecule that is released from DNA once transcription is complete. The original conformation of DNA is then restored. The RNA

strand is much shorter than a DNA strand because only a one-gene segment of DNA is transcribed into a single RNA molecule. The length of the finished RNA transcript varies, depending on the size of the gene. Within its nucleotide base sequence, this RNA transcript contains instructions for assembling a particular protein. Note that the message is coded in a base sequence that is *complementary to, not identical to*, the original DNA code.

The mRNA delivers the final coded message to the ribosomes for **translation** into a particular amino acid sequence to form a given protein. Thus, genetic information flows from DNA (which can replicate itself) through RNA to protein. This is accomplished first by *transcription* of the DNA code into a complementary RNA code, followed by *translation* of the RNA code into a specific protein (● Figure C-6). In the next section, you will learn more about the steps in translation. The structural and functional characteristics of the cell as determined by its protein composition can be varied, subject to control, depending on which genes are "switched on" to produce mRNA.

Free nucleotides present in the nucleus cannot be randomly joined together to form either DNA or RNA strands



● **FIGURE C-4 Complementary base pairing during DNA replication.** During DNA replication, the DNA molecule is unzipped, and each old strand directs the formation of a new strand; the result is two identical double-helix DNA molecules.

because the enzymes required to link together the sugar and phosphate components of nucleotides are active only when bound to DNA. This ensures that DNA, mRNA, and protein assembly occur only according to genetic plan.

## Translation and Protein Synthesis

Three forms of RNA participate in protein synthesis. Besides mRNA, two other forms of RNA are required for translation of the genetic message into cellular protein: ribosomal RNA and transfer RNA (see p. 20).

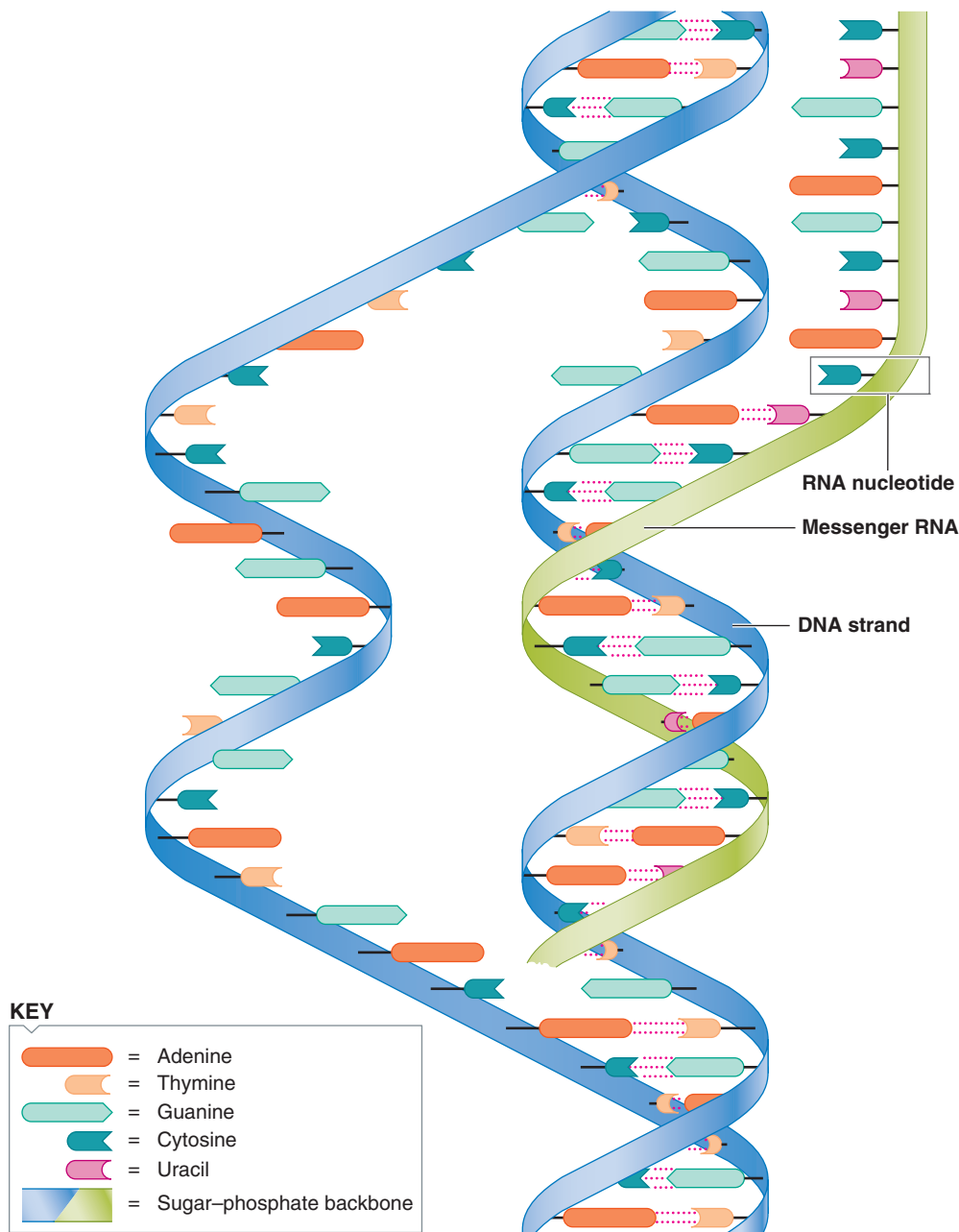
- The mRNA carries the coded message from nuclear DNA to a cytoplasmic ribosome, where it directs the synthesis of a particular protein.

- **Ribosomal RNA (rRNA)** is an essential component of *ribosomes*, the “workbenches” for protein synthesis (see p. 21). Ribosomes “read” the base sequence code of mRNA and translate it into the appropriate amino acid sequence during protein synthesis.

- **Transfer RNA (tRNA)** transfers the appropriate amino acids in the cytosol to their designated site in the amino acid sequence of the protein under construction.

### Triplet code; codon

Twenty amino acids are used to construct proteins, yet only four nucleotide bases are used to code for these amino acids. In the “genetic dictionary,” each amino acid is specified by a **triplet code** that consists of a specific sequence of three bases in the DNA nucleotide chain. For example, the DNA sequence

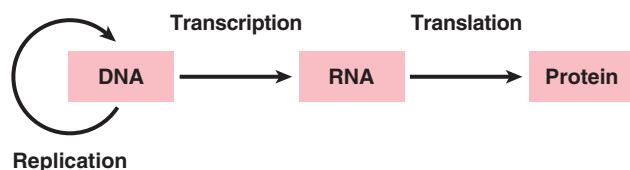


● **FIGURE C-5 Complementary base pairing during DNA transcription.** During DNA transcription, a messenger RNA molecule is formed as RNA nucleotides are assembled by complementary base pairing at a given segment of one strand of an unzipped DNA molecule (that is, a gene).

ACA (adenine, cytosine, adenine) specifies the amino acid cysteine, whereas the sequence ATA specifies the amino acid tyrosine. Each DNA triplet code is transcribed into mRNA as a complementary code word, or **codon**, consisting of a sequenced order of the three bases that pair with the DNA triplet. For example, the DNA triplet code ATA is transcribed as UAU (uracil, adenine, uracil) in mRNA.

Sixty-four DNA triplet combinations (and, accordingly, 64 mRNA codon combinations) are possible using the four nucleotide bases ( $4^3$ ). Of these possible combinations, 61 code for specific amino acids and the remaining 3 serve as “stop signals.” A stop signal acts as a “period” at the end of a “sentence.” The sentence consists of a series of triplet codes that specify the amino acid sequence in a particular protein. When the stop codon is reached, rRNA releases the finished polypeptide product. Because 61 triplet codes each specify a particular amino acid and there are 20 amino acids, a given amino acid may be specified by more than one base-triplet combination. For example, tyrosine is specified by the DNA sequence ATG, as well as by ATA. In addition, one DNA triplet code, TAC (mRNA codon sequence AUG) functions as a “start signal” in addition to specifying the amino acid methionine. This code marks the place on mRNA where translation is to begin so that the message is

started at the correct end and thus reads in the right direction. Interestingly, the same genetic dictionary is used universally; a given three-base code stands for the same amino acid in all living things, including microorganisms, plants, and animals.



● **FIGURE C-6 Flow of genetic information from DNA through RNA to protein by transcription and translation.**

### Ribosomes

A **ribosome** brings together all components that participate in protein synthesis—mRNA, tRNA, and amino acids—and provides the enzymes and energy required for linking the amino acids together. The nature of the protein synthesized by a given ribosome is determined by the mRNA message being translated. Each mRNA serves as a code for only one particular polypeptide.

A ribosome is an rRNA–protein structure organized into two subunits of unequal size. These subunits are brought together only when a protein is being synthesized (● Figure C-7, step 1). During assembly of a ribosome, an mRNA molecule attaches to the smaller of the ribosomal subunits by means of a *leader sequence*, a section of mRNA that precedes the start codon. The small subunit with mRNA attached then binds to a large subunit to form a complete, functional ribosome. When the two subunits unite, a groove is formed that accommodates the mRNA molecule as it is being translated.

### tRNA and anticodons

Free amino acids in the cytosol cannot “recognize” and bind directly with their specific codons in mRNA. The tRNA must bring the appropriate amino acid to its proper codon. Even though tRNA is single stranded, as are all RNA molecules, it is folded back onto itself into a T shape with looped ends (● Figure C-8). The open-ended stem portion recognizes and binds to a specific amino acid. There are at least 20 varieties of tRNA, each able to bind with only one of the 20 kinds of amino acids. A tRNA is said to be “charged” when it is carrying its passenger amino acid. The loop end of a tRNA opposite the amino acid binding site contains a sequence of three exposed bases, known as the **anticodon**, which is complementary to the mRNA codon that specifies the amino acid being carried. Through complementary base pairing, a tRNA can bind with mRNA and insert its amino acid into the protein under construction only at the site designated by the codon for the amino acid. For example, the tRNA molecule that binds with tyrosine bears the anticodon AUA, and this can pair only with the mRNA codon UAU, which specifies tyrosine. This dual binding function of tRNA molecules ensures that the correct amino acids are delivered to mRNA for assembly in the order specified by the genetic code. The tRNA can only bind with mRNA at a ribosome, so protein assembly does not occur except in the confines of a ribosome.

### Steps of protein synthesis

The three steps of protein synthesis are initiation, elongation, and termination.

**INITIATION** Protein synthesis is initiated when a charged tRNA molecule bearing the anticodon specific for the start codon binds at this site on mRNA (see ● Figure C-7, step 2).

**ELONGATION** A second charged tRNA bearing the anticodon specific for the next codon in the mRNA sequence then occupies the site next to the first tRNA (step 3). At any given time, a ribosome can accommodate only two tRNA molecules bound to adjacent codons. Through enzymatic action, a peptide bond is formed between the two amino acids that are linked to the stems of the adjacent tRNA molecules (step 4). The linkage is subsequently broken between the first tRNA and its amino acid passenger, leaving the second tRNA with a chain of two amino acids. The uncharged tRNA molecule (the one minus its amino acid passenger) is released from mRNA (step 5). The ribosome then moves along the mRNA molecule by precisely three bases,

a distance of one codon (step 6), so that the tRNA bearing the chain of two amino acids is moved into the number one ribosomal site for tRNA. Then, an incoming charged tRNA with a complementary anticodon for the third codon in the mRNA sequence occupies the number two ribosomal site that was vacated by the second tRNA (step 7). The chain of two amino acids subsequently binds with and is transferred to the third tRNA to form a chain of three amino acids (step 8). Through repetition of this process, amino acids are subsequently added one at a time to a growing polypeptide chain in the order designated by the codon sequence as the ribosomal translation machinery moves stepwise along the mRNA molecule one codon at a time (step 9). This process is rapid. As many as 10 to 15 amino acids can be added per second.

**TERMINATION** Elongation of the polypeptide chain continues until the ribosome reaches a stop codon in the mRNA molecule, at which time the polypeptide is released. The polypeptide is then folded and modified into a full-fledged protein. The ribosomal subunits dissociate and are free to reassemble into another ribosome for translation of other mRNA molecules.

### Energy cost of protein synthesis

Protein synthesis is expensive in terms of energy. Attachment of each new amino acid to the growing polypeptide chain requires a total investment of splitting four high-energy phosphate bonds—two to charge tRNA with its amino acid, one to bind tRNA to the rRNA–mRNA complex, and one to move the ribosome forward one codon.

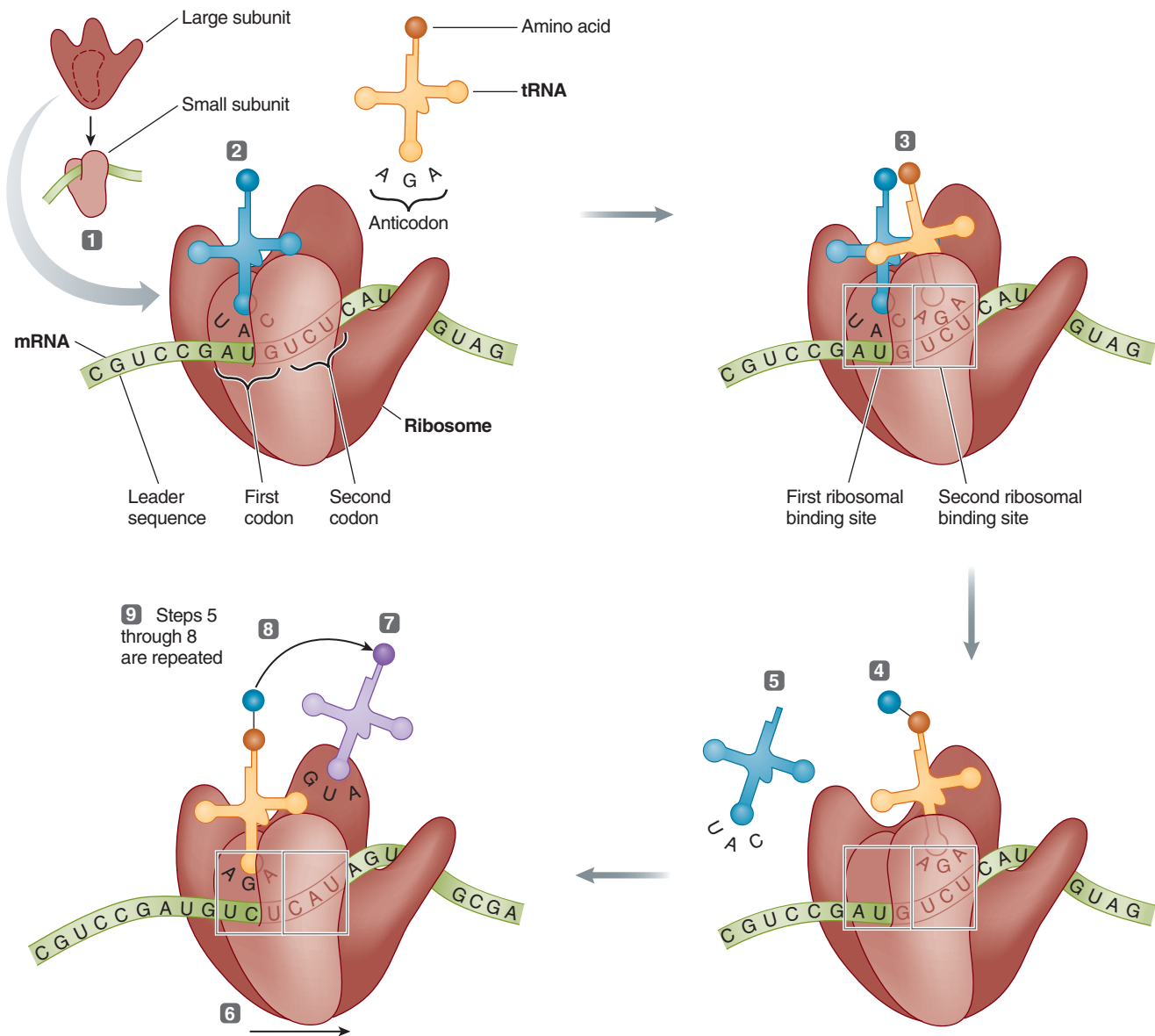
### Polyribosomes

A number of copies of a given protein can be produced from a single mRNA molecule before the latter is chemically degraded. As one ribosome moves forward along the mRNA molecule, a new ribosome attaches at the starting point on mRNA and starts translating the message. Attachment of many ribosomes to a single mRNA molecule results in a *polyribosome*. Multiple copies of the identical protein are produced as each ribosome moves along and translates the same message (● Figure C-9). The released proteins are used within the cytosol, except for the few that move into the nucleus through the nuclear pores.

In contrast to the cytosolic polyribosomes, ribosomes directed to bind with the rough endoplasmic reticulum (ER) feed their growing polypeptide chains into the ER lumen (see ● Figure 2-3, p. 23). The resultant proteins are subsequently packaged for export out of the cell or for new cellular membrane.

### Control of gene activity and protein transcription

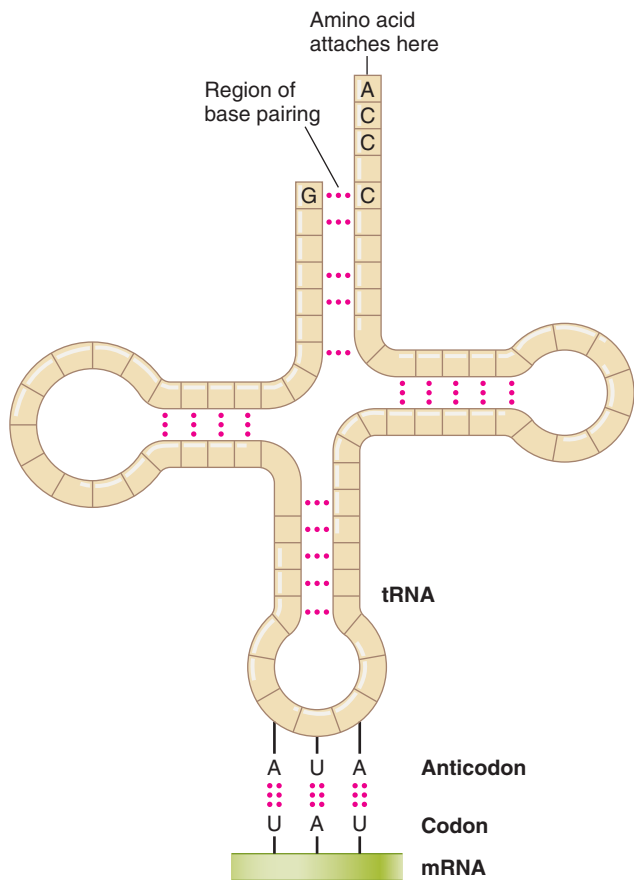
Because each somatic cell in the body has the identical DNA blueprint, you might assume that they would all produce the same proteins. This is not the case, however, because different cell types are able to transcribe different sets of genes and thus synthesize different sets of structural and enzymatic proteins. For example, only red blood cells can synthesize hemoglobin, even though all body cells carry the DNA instructions for



- 1 On binding with a messenger RNA (mRNA) molecule, the small ribosomal subunit joins with the large subunit to form a functional ribosome.
- 2 A transfer RNA (tRNA), charged with its specific amino acid passenger, binds to mRNA by means of complementary base pairing between the tRNA anticodon and the first mRNA codon positioned in the first ribosomal binding site.
- 3 Another tRNA molecule attaches to the next codon on mRNA positioned in the second ribosomal binding site.
- 4 The amino acid from the first tRNA is linked to the amino acid on the second tRNA.
- 5 The first tRNA detaches.
- 6 The ribosome shifts forward one codon (a distance of a three-base sequence) along the mRNA molecule.
- 7 Another charged tRNA moves in to attach with the next codon on mRNA, which has now moved into the second ribosomal binding site.
- 8 The amino acids from the tRNA in the first ribosomal site are linked with the amino acid in the second site.
- 9 This process continues (that is, steps 5 through 8 are repeated), with the polypeptide chain continuing to grow, until a stop codon is reached and the polypeptide chain is released.

● **FIGURE C-7 Ribosomal assembly and protein translation.**

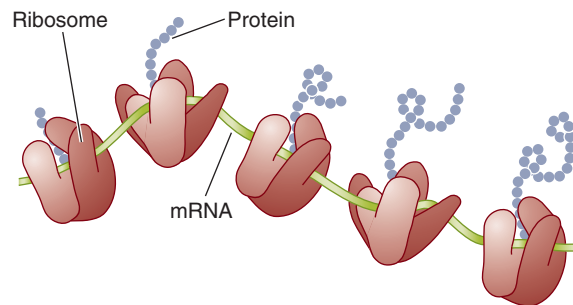




● **FIGURE C-8 Structure of a tRNA molecule.** The open end of a tRNA molecule attaches to free amino acids. The anticodon loop of the tRNA molecule attaches to a complementary mRNA codon.

hemoglobin synthesis. Only about 7% of the DNA sequences in a typical cell are ever transcribed into mRNA for ultimate expression as specific proteins.

Control of gene expression involves gene regulatory proteins that activate (“switch on”) or repress (“switch off”) the genes that code for specific proteins within a given cell. Various DNA segments that do not code for structural and enzymatic proteins code for synthesis of these regulatory proteins. The molecular mechanisms by which these regulatory genes in turn are controlled in human cells are only beginning to be understood. In some instances, regulatory proteins are controlled by **gene-signaling factors** that bring about differential gene activity among various cells to accomplish specialized tasks. Hormones are the largest group of known gene-signaling factors in humans. Some hormones exert their homeostatic effect by selectively altering the transcription rate of the genes that code for enzymes, which are in turn responsible for catalyzing the reaction or reactions regulated by the hormone. For example, the hormone cortisol promotes the breakdown of fat stores by stimulating synthesis of the enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of stored fat into its component fatty acids. In other cases, gene action is time specific; that is, certain genes are expressed only at a certain developmental stage in the individual. This is especially important during embryonic development.



● **FIGURE C-9 A polyribosome.** A polyribosome is formed by numerous ribosomes simultaneously translating mRNA.

## Cell Division

Most cells in the human body can reproduce themselves, a process important in growth, replacement, and repair of tissues. The rate at which cells divide is highly variable. Cells within the deeper layers of the intestinal lining divide every few days to replace cells that are continually sloughed off the surface of the lining into the digestive tract lumen. In this way, the entire intestinal lining is replaced about every three days (see p. 468). At the other extreme are nerve cells, which permanently lose the ability to divide beyond a certain period of fetal growth and development. Consequently, when nerve cells are lost through trauma or disease, they cannot be replaced (see p. 3). Between these two extremes are cells that divide infrequently except when needed to replace damaged or destroyed tissue. The factors that control the rate of cell division remain obscure.

### Mitosis

Recall that cell division involves two components: nuclear division and cytoplasmic division (*cytokinesis*) (see p. 38). Nuclear division in somatic cells is accomplished by **mitosis**, in which a complete set of genetic information (that is, a diploid number of chromosomes) is distributed to each of two new daughter cells.

A cell capable of dividing alternates between periods of mitosis and those of nondivision. The interval of time between cell divisions is known as **interphase**. Because mitosis takes less than an hour to complete, the vast majority of cells in the body at any given time are in interphase.

Replication of DNA and growth of the cell take place during interphase in preparation for mitosis. Although mitosis is a continuous process, it displays four distinct phases: *prophase*, *metaphase*, *anaphase*, and *telophase* (● Figure C-10, top).

### PROPHASE

1. Chromatin condenses and becomes microscopically visible as chromosomes. The condensed duplicate strands of DNA, known as *sister chromatids*, remain joined together within the chromosome at a point called the *centromere* (● Figure C-11).
2. Cells contain a pair of **centrioles**, short cylindrical structures that form the mitotic spindle during cell division (see ● Figure 2-1, p. 20). The centriole pair divides, and the daughter centrioles move to opposite ends of the cell, where

they assemble between them a mitotic spindle made up of microtubules (see p. 37).

3. The membrane surrounding the nucleus starts to break down.

#### METAPHASE

1. The nuclear membrane disappears.
2. The 46 chromosomes, each consisting of a pair of sister chromatids, align themselves at the midline, or equator, of the cell. Each chromosome becomes attached to the spindle by means of several spindle fibers that extend from the centriole to the centromere of the chromosome.

#### ANAPHASE

1. The centromeres split, converting each pair of sister chromatids into two identical chromosomes, which separate and move toward opposite poles of the spindle. Molecular motors pull the chromosomes along the spindle fibers toward the poles (see p. 36).
2. At the end of anaphase, an identical set of 46 chromosomes is present at each of the poles, for a transient total of 92 chromosomes in the soon-to-be-divided cell.

#### TELOPHASE

1. The cytoplasm divides through formation and gradual tightening of an actin contractile ring at the midline of the cell, thus forming two separate daughter cells, each with a full diploid set of chromosomes (see p. 38).
2. The spindle fibers disassemble.
3. The chromosomes uncoil to their decondensed chromatin form.
4. A nuclear membrane reforms in each new cell.

Cell division is complete with the end of telophase. Each of the new cells now enters interphase.

### Meiosis

Nuclear division in the specialized case of germ cells is accomplished by **meiosis**, in which only half a set of genetic information (that is, a haploid number of chromosomes) is distributed to each daughter cell. Meiosis differs from mitosis in several important regards (see ● Figure C-10, bottom). Specialized diploid germ cells undergo one chromosome replication followed by two nuclear divisions to produce four haploid germ cells.

#### MEIOSIS I

1. During prophase of the first meiotic division (prophase I), the members of each homologous pair of chromosomes line up side by side to form a **tetrad**, which is a group of four sister chromatids with two identical chromatids within each member of the pair.
2. The process of crossing over occurs during this period, when the maternal copy and the paternal copy of each chromosome are paired. **Crossing over** involves a physical exchange of chromosome material between nonsister chromatids

within a tetrad (● Figure C-12). This process yields new chromosome combinations, thus contributing to genetic diversity.

3. During metaphase I, the 23 tetrads line up at the equator.
4. At anaphase I, homologous chromosomes, each consisting of a pair of sister chromatids joined at the centromere, separate and move toward opposite poles. Maternally and paternally derived chromosomes migrate to opposite poles in random assortments of one member of each chromosome pair without regard for its original derivation. This genetic mixing provides novel combinations of chromosomes.
5. During telophase I, the cell divides into two cells. Each cell contains 23 chromosomes consisting of two sister chromatids.

#### MEIOSIS II

1. Following a brief interphase in which no further replication occurs, the 23 unpaired chromosomes line up at the equator, the centromeres split, and the sister chromatids separate for the first time into independent chromosomes that move to opposite poles (prophase II–telophase II in ● Figure C-10).
2. During cytokinesis, each of the daughter cells derived from the first meiotic division forms two new daughter cells. The end result is four daughter cells, each containing a haploid set of chromosomes.

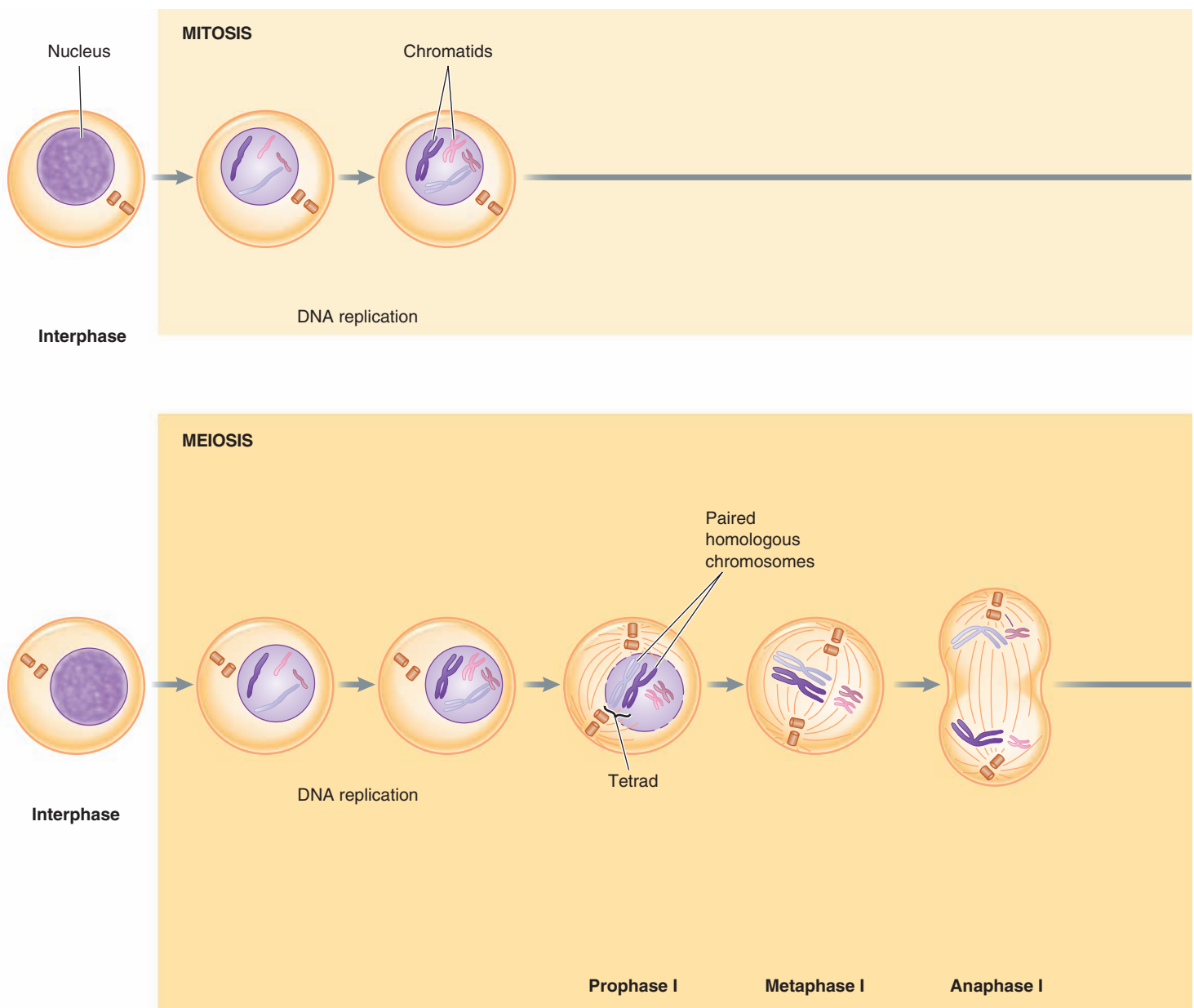
Union of a haploid sperm and haploid egg results in a zygote (fertilized egg) that contains the diploid number of chromosomes. Development of a new multicellular individual from the zygote is accomplished by mitosis and cell differentiation. Because DNA is normally faithfully replicated in its entirety during each mitotic division, all cells in the body possess an identical aggregate of DNA molecules. Structural and functional variations among cell types result from differential gene expression.

### Mutations

An estimated  $10^{16}$  cell divisions take place in the body during the course of a person's lifetime to accomplish growth, repair, and normal cell turnover. Because more than 3 billion nucleotides must be replicated during each cell division, it is no wonder that "copying errors" occasionally occur. Any change in the DNA sequence is known as a **point (gene) mutation**. A point mutation arises when a base is inadvertently substituted, added, or deleted during the replication process.

When a base is inserted in the wrong position during DNA replication, the mistake can often be corrected by a built-in "proofreading" system. Repair enzymes remove the newly replicated strand back to the defective segment, at which time normal base pairing resumes to resynthesize a corrected strand. Not all mistakes can be corrected, however.

Mutations can arise spontaneously by chance alone, or they can be induced by **mutagens**, which are factors that increase the rate at which mutations take place. Mutagens include various chemical agents, as well as ionizing radiation such as X-rays and atomic radiation. Mutagens promote mutations either by chemically altering the DNA base code through a variety of

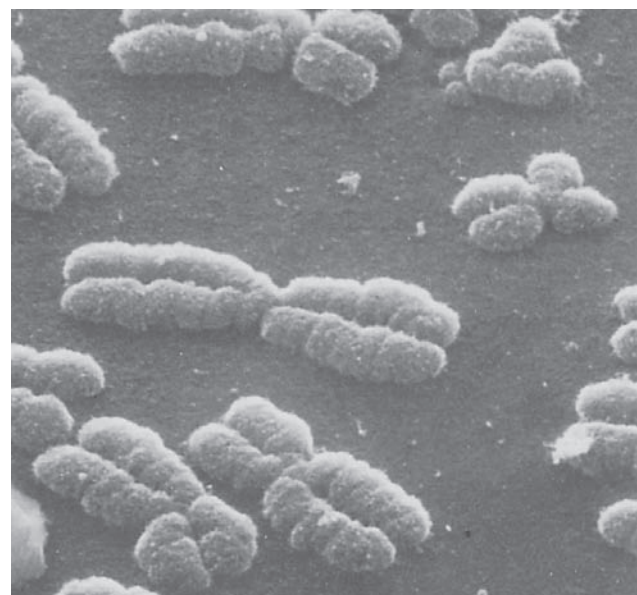


● **FIGURE C-10** A comparison of events in mitosis and meiosis.

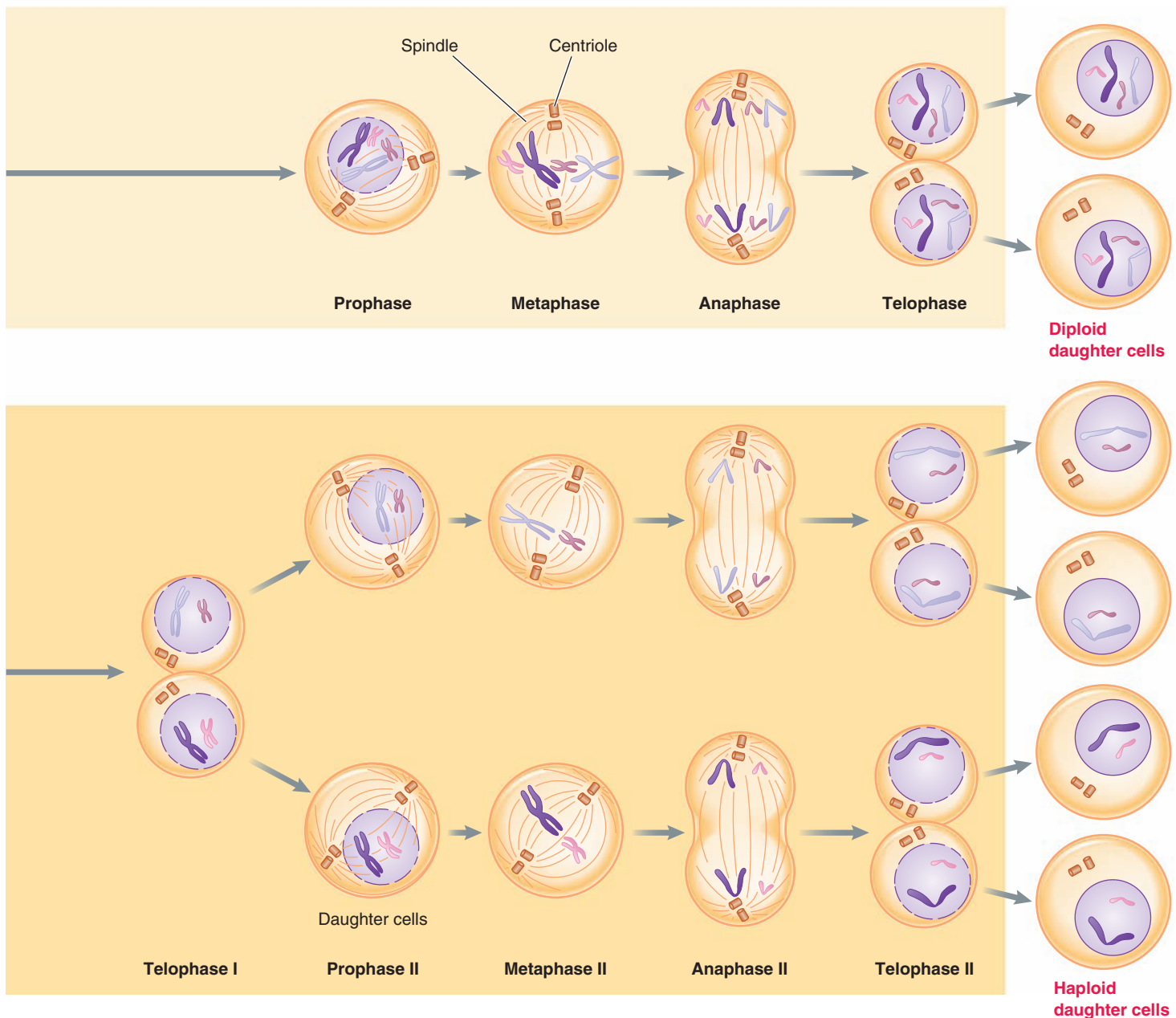
mechanisms or by interfering with the repair enzymes so that abnormal base segments cannot be cut out.

Depending on the location and nature of a change in the genetic code, a given mutation may (1) have no noticeable effect if it does not alter a critical region of a cellular protein; (2) adversely alter cell function if it impairs the function of a crucial protein; (3) be incompatible with the life of the cell, in which case the cell dies and the mutation is lost with it; or (4) in rare cases, prove beneficial if a more efficient structural or enzymatic protein results. If a mutation occurs in a body cell (a **somatic mutation**), the outcome will be reflected as an alteration in all future copies of the cell in the affected individual, but it will not be perpetuated beyond

● **FIGURE C-11** A scanning electron micrograph of human chromosomes from a dividing cell. The replicated chromosomes appear as double structures, with identical sister chromatids joined in the middle at a common centromere.



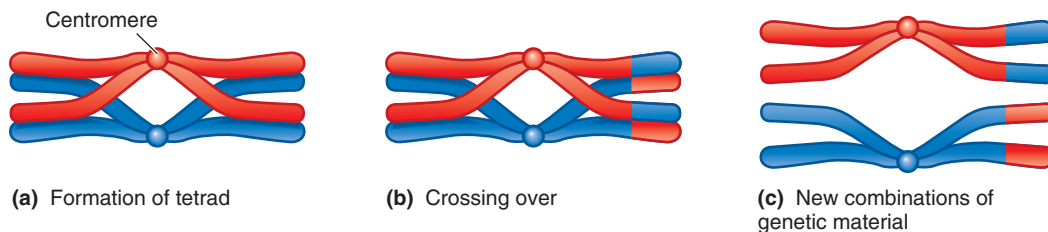
Dr. Christine J. Harrison and S. Karger AG, Basel.



the life of the individual. If, by contrast, a mutation occurs in a sperm- or egg-producing cell (**germ cell mutation**), the genetic alteration may be passed on to succeeding generations.

In most instances, **cancer** results from multiple somatic mutations that occur over time within DNA segments known as **proto-oncogenes**. Proto-oncogenes are normal genes whose

coded products are important in the regulation of cell growth and division. These genes have the potential of becoming overzealous **oncogenes** (“cancer genes”), which induce the uncontrolled cell proliferation characteristic of cancer. Proto-oncogenes can become cancer producing as a result of several sequential mutations in the gene itself or changes in adjacent



● **FIGURE C-12 Crossing over.** (a) During prophase I of meiosis, each homologous pair of chromosomes lines up side by side to form a tetrad. (b) Physical exchange of chromosome material occurs between nonsister chromatids. (c) As a result of this crossing over, new combinations of genetic material are formed within the chromosomes.

regions that regulate the proto-oncogenes. Less frequently, tumor viruses become incorporated in the DNA blueprint and act as oncogenes. Alternatively, cancer may arise from mutations that disable **tumor suppressor genes**, which normally restrain cell proliferation in check-and-balance fashion.

# Appendix D

## The Chemistry of Acid–Base Balance

### Dissociation Constants for Acids

**Acids** are a special group of hydrogen-containing substances that dissociate, or separate, when in solution to liberate free  $H^+$  and anions (negatively charged ions). The extent of dissociation for a given acid is always constant; that is, when in solution, the same proportion of a particular acid's molecules always separate to liberate free  $H^+$ , with the other portion always remaining intact. The constant degree of dissociation for a particular acid (in this example,  $H_2CO_3$ ) is expressed by its dissociation constant ( $K$ ) as follows:

$$[H^+][HCO_3^-]/[H_2CO_3] = K$$

where

$[H^+][HCO_3^-]$  represents the concentration of ions resulting from  $H_2CO_3$  dissociation.

$[H_2CO_3]$  represents the concentration of intact (undissociated)  $H_2CO_3$ .

The dissociation constant varies for different acids.

### The Logarithmic Nature of pH

Recall that **pH** equals the logarithm ( $\log$ ) to the base 10 of the reciprocal of the hydrogen ion concentration:

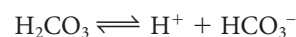
$$pH = \log 1/[H^+]$$

Every unit change in pH actually represents a 10-fold change in  $[H^+]$  because of the logarithmic relationship. A log to the base 10 indicates how many times 10 must be multiplied to produce a given number. For example, the log of 10 = 1, whereas the log of 100 = 2, because 1 ten equals 10 and 2 tens multiplied together equals 100 ( $10 \times 10 = 100$ ). Numbers less than 10 have logs less than 1. Numbers between 10 and 100 have logs between 1 and 2, and so on. Accordingly, each unit of change in pH indicates a 10-fold change in  $[H^+]$ . For example, a solution with a pH of 7 has a  $[H^+]$  10 times less than that of a solution with a pH of 6 (a 1-pH-unit difference) and 100 times less than that of a solution with a pH of 5 (a 2-pH-unit difference).

### Chemical Buffer Systems

Recall that a chemical buffer system consists of a pair of substances involved in a reversible reaction—one substance that can yield free  $H^+$  as the  $[H^+]$  starts to fall and another that can

bind with free  $H^+$  (thus removing it from solution) when  $[H^+]$  starts to rise. An important example of a buffer system is the **carbonic acid–bicarbonate ( $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$ ) buffer system**, which is the primary ECF buffer for noncarbonic acids and is involved in the following reversible reaction:



Because  $CO_2$  generates  $H_2CO_3$ , the  $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$  buffer system in the body involves  $CO_2$  by means of the following reaction, with which you are already familiar:



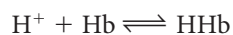
Chemical buffer systems function according to the law of mass action, which states that if the concentration of one of the substances involved in a reversible reaction is increased, the reaction is driven toward the opposite side; if the concentration of one of the substances is decreased, the reaction is driven toward that side.

Let us apply the law of mass action to the reversible reaction involving the  $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$  buffer system. When new  $H^+$  is added to the plasma from any source other than  $CO_2$  (for example, through lactic acid released into the ECF from exercising muscles), the preceding reaction is driven toward the left side of the equation. As the extra  $H^+$  binds with  $HCO_3^-$ , it no longer contributes to the acidity of body fluids, so the rise in  $[H^+]$  declines. In the converse situation, when the plasma  $[H^+]$  occasionally falls below normal for some reason other than a change in  $CO_2$  (such as the loss of plasma-derived HCl in the gastric juices during vomiting), the reaction is driven toward the right side of the equation. Dissolved  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  in the plasma form  $H_2CO_3$ , which generates additional  $H^+$  to make up for the  $H^+$  deficit. In so doing, the  $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$  buffer system resists the fall in  $[H^+]$ .

This system cannot buffer changes in pH induced by fluctuations in  $H_2CO_3$ . A buffer system cannot buffer itself. Consider, for example, the situation in which the plasma  $[H^+]$  is elevated by  $CO_2$  retention from a respiratory problem. The rise in  $CO_2$  drives the reaction to the right according to the law of mass action, elevating  $[H^+]$ . The increase in  $[H^+]$  occurs as a result of the reaction being driven to the *right* by an increase in  $CO_2$ , so the elevated  $[H^+]$  cannot drive the reaction to the *left* to buffer the increase in  $[H^+]$ . Only if the increase in  $[H^+]$  is brought about by some mechanism other than  $CO_2$  accumulation can this buffer system be shifted to the  $CO_2$  side of the equation and effectively reduce  $[H^+]$ . Likewise, in the opposite situation, the  $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$  buffer system cannot compensate

for a reduction in  $[H^+]$  from a deficit of  $CO_2$  by generating more  $H^+$ -yielding  $H_2CO_3$  when the problem in the first place is a shortage of  $H_2CO_3$ -forming  $CO_2$ .

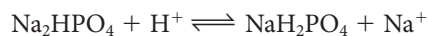
The **hemoglobin buffer system** resists fluctuations in pH caused by changes in  $CO_2$  levels. At the systemic capillary level,  $CO_2$  continuously diffuses into the blood from the tissue cells where it is produced. The greatest percentage of this  $CO_2$  in the plasma forms  $H_2CO_3$ , which partially dissociates into  $H^+$  and  $HCO_3^-$ . This process is hastened within the red blood cells by the erythrocytic enzyme *carbonic anhydrase*, which catalyzes the conversion of  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  directly to  $H^+$  and  $HCO_3^-$  (see p. 370). Simultaneously, some oxyhemoglobin ( $HbO_2$ ) releases  $O_2$ , which diffuses into the tissues. Reduced (unoxxygenated) Hb has a greater affinity for  $H^+$  than  $HbO_2$  does. Therefore, most  $H^+$  generated from  $CO_2$  at the tissue level becomes bound to reduced Hb and no longer contributes to the acidity of body fluids:



At the lungs, the reactions are reversed. As Hb picks up  $O_2$  diffusing from the alveoli (air sacs) into the red blood cells, the affinity of Hb for  $H^+$  is decreased, so  $H^+$  is released. This liberated  $H^+$  combines with  $HCO_3^-$  to generate  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  (with or without carbonic anhydrase).  $CO_2$  is exhaled, and the hydrogen ion has been reincorporated into a neutral  $H_2O$  molecule.

The intracellular proteins and plasma proteins constitute the protein buffer system. Their acidic and basic side groups enable them to give up and take up  $H^+$ , respectively.

The **phosphate buffer system** consists of an acidic phosphate salt ( $NaH_2PO_4$ ) that can donate a free  $H^+$  when the  $[H^+]$  falls and a basic phosphate salt ( $Na_2HPO_4$ ) that can accept a free  $H^+$  when the  $[H^+]$  rises. Basically, this buffer pair can alternately switch a  $H^+$  for a  $Na^+$  as demanded by the  $[H^+]$ .



## Henderson–Hasselbalch Equation

The relationship between the  $[H^+]$  and the members of a buffer pair can be expressed according to the **Henderson–Hasselbalch equation**, which, for the  $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$  buffer system is as follows:

$$pH = pK + \log [HCO_3^-]/[H_2CO_3]$$

Although you do not need to know the mathematical manipulations involved, it is helpful to understand how this formula is derived. Recall that the dissociation constant  $K$  for  $H_2CO_3$  is

$$[H^+][HCO_3^-]/[H_2CO_3] = K$$

and that the relationship between pH and  $[H^+]$  is

$$pH = \log 1/[H^+]$$

Then, by solving the dissociation constant formula for  $[H^+]$  (that is,  $[H^+] = K \times [H_2CO_3]/[HCO_3^-]$ ) and replacing this value for  $[H^+]$  in the pH formula, you come up with the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation.

Practically,  $[H_2CO_3]$  directly reflects the concentration of dissolved  $CO_2$ , henceforth referred to as  $[CO_2]$ , because most of the  $CO_2$  in the plasma is converted into  $H_2CO_3$ . (The dissolved  $CO_2$  concentration is equivalent to  $P_{CO_2}$ , as described in Chapter 12.)

$$pH = pK + \log [HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$$

The pK is the log of  $1/K$  and, like  $K$ , remains a constant for any given acid. For  $H_2CO_3$ , the pK is 6.1. Because the pK is always a constant, changes in pH are associated with changes in the ratio between  $[HCO_3^-]$  and  $[CO_2]$ .

Normally, the ratio between  $[HCO_3^-]$  and  $[CO_2]$  in the ECF is 20 to 1; that is, there is 20 times more  $HCO_3^-$  than  $CO_2$ . Plugging this ratio into the formula,

$$\begin{aligned} pH &= pK + \log [HCO_3^-]/[CO_2] \\ &= 6.1 + \log 20/1 \end{aligned}$$

The log of 20 is 1.3. Therefore,  $pH = 6.1 + 1.3 = 7.4$ , which is the normal pH of plasma.

- When the ratio of  $[HCO_3^-]$  to  $[CO_2]$  increases above 20/1, the pH increases. Accordingly, either a rise in  $[HCO_3^-]$  or a fall in  $[CO_2]$ , both of which increase the  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$  ratio if the other component remains constant, shifts the acid–base balance toward the alkaline side.

- In contrast, when the  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$  ratio decreases below 20/1, the pH decreases toward the acid side. This can occur either if the  $[HCO_3^-]$  decreases or if the  $[CO_2]$  increases while the other component remains constant.

Because  $[HCO_3^-]$  is regulated by the kidneys and  $[CO_2]$  by the lungs, plasma pH can be shifted up and down by kidney and lung influences. The kidneys and lungs regulate pH (and thus free  $[H^+]$ ) largely by controlling plasma  $[HCO_3^-]$  and  $[CO_2]$ , respectively, to restore their ratio to normal. Accordingly,

$$pH = \frac{[HCO_3^-] \text{ controlled by kidney function}}{[CO_2] \text{ controlled by respiratory function}}$$

Because of this relationship, not only do both the kidneys and the lungs normally participate in pH control, but renal or respiratory dysfunction can also induce acid–base imbalances by altering the  $[HCO_3^-]/[CO_2]$  ratio.

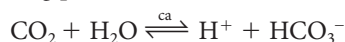
## Respiratory Regulation of Hydrogen Ion Concentration

The major source of  $H^+$  in the body fluids is from metabolically produced  $CO_2$ . Cellular oxidation of nutrients yields energy, with  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  as end products. Without catalyst influence,  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  slowly form  $H_2CO_3$ , which then rapidly dissociates to liberate free  $H^+$  and  $HCO_3^-$ .



The enzyme carbonic anhydrase (ca) is abundant in red blood cells and kidney tubular cells, among a few other specialized cell types. Under the influence of carbonic anhydrase,

these cells directly convert  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  into  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  with no intervening production of  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ .



Within the systemic capillaries, the  $\text{CO}_2$  level in the blood increases as metabolically produced  $\text{CO}_2$  enters from the tissues. This drives the reaction to the acid side (with or without carbonic anhydrase), generating  $\text{H}^+$ , as well as  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , in the process. In the lungs, the reaction is reversed:  $\text{CO}_2$  diffuses from the blood flowing through the pulmonary capillaries into the alveoli, from which it is expired to the atmosphere. The resultant reduction in blood  $\text{CO}_2$  drives the reaction toward the  $\text{CO}_2$  side. Hydrogen ion and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  generate  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  again. The  $\text{CO}_2$  is exhaled while the hydrogen ions generated at the tissue level are incorporated into  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  molecules.

The lungs are extremely important in maintaining the  $[\text{H}^+]$  of plasma. Every day, they remove from body fluids what amounts to 100 times more  $\text{H}^+$  derived from  $\text{CO}_2$  than the kidneys remove from sources other than  $\text{CO}_2\text{-H}^+$ . When the respiratory system can keep pace with the rate of metabolism, there is no net gain or loss of  $\text{H}^+$  in the body fluids from metabolically produced  $\text{CO}_2$ . When the rate of  $\text{CO}_2$  removal by the lungs does not match the rate of  $\text{CO}_2$  production at the tissue level, however, the resulting accumulation or deficit of  $\text{CO}_2$  leads to an excess or shortage, respectively, of free  $\text{H}^+$  from this source. Therefore, respiratory abnormalities can lead to acid-base imbalances.

On the other hand, the respiratory system, through its ability to regulate arterial  $[\text{CO}_2]$ , can adjust the amount of  $\text{H}^+$  added to body fluids from this source as needed to restore pH toward normal when fluctuations occur in  $[\text{H}^+]$  from sources other than  $\text{CO}_2\text{-H}^+$ .

However, the respiratory system alone can return the pH to only 50% to 75% of the way toward normal. Two reasons contribute to the respiratory system's inability to fully compensate for a non-respiratory-induced acid-base imbalance. First, during respiratory compensation for a deviation in pH, the peripheral chemoreceptors, which increase ventilation in response to an elevated arterial  $[\text{H}^+]$  (see p. 377), and the central chemoreceptors, which increase ventilation in response to a rise in  $[\text{CO}_2]$  (by monitoring  $\text{CO}_2$ -generated  $\text{H}^+$  in brain ECF; see p. 376), work at odds. Consider what happens in response to an acidosis arising from a nonrespiratory cause. When the peripheral chemoreceptors detect an increase in arterial  $[\text{H}^+]$ , they reflexly *stimulate* the respiratory center to step up ventilation, causing more acid-forming  $\text{CO}_2$  to be blown off. In response to the resultant fall in  $\text{CO}_2$ , however, the central chemoreceptors start to *inhibit* the respiratory center. By opposing the action of the peripheral chemoreceptors, the central chemoreceptors stop the compensatory increase in ventilation short of restoring pH all the way to normal.

Second, the driving force for the compensatory increase in ventilation is diminished as the pH moves toward normal. Ventilation is increased by the peripheral chemoreceptors in response to a rise in arterial  $[\text{H}^+]$ , but as the  $[\text{H}^+]$  is gradually reduced by stepped-up removal of  $\text{H}^+$ -forming  $\text{CO}_2$ , the enhanced ventilatory response is also gradually reduced.

## Renal Regulation of Hydrogen Ion Concentration

Renal control of  $[\text{H}^+]$  is the most potent acid-base regulatory mechanism; the kidneys not only can vary  $\text{H}^+$  removal but can also variably conserve or eliminate  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , depending on the acid-base status of the body. For example, during renal compensation for acidosis, not only is extra  $\text{H}^+$  excreted in urine, but extra  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  also is added to the plasma to buffer (by means of the  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3\text{:HCO}_3^-$  system) more  $\text{H}^+$  that remains in body fluids. By simultaneously removing acid ( $\text{H}^+$ ) from and adding base ( $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ) to body fluids, the kidneys can restore the pH toward normal more effectively than the lungs, which can adjust only the amount of  $\text{H}^+$ -forming  $\text{CO}_2$  in the body.

Also contributing to the kidneys' acid-base regulatory potency is their ability to return pH almost exactly to normal. In contrast to the respiratory system's inability to fully compensate for a pH abnormality, the kidneys can continue to respond to a change in pH until compensation is essentially complete.

The kidneys control pH of body fluids by adjusting three interrelated factors: (1)  $\text{H}^+$  excretion, (2)  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  excretion, and (3) ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) secretion. We examine each of these mechanisms in further detail.

**RENAL  $\text{H}^+$  EXCRETION** Almost all excreted  $\text{H}^+$  enters the urine via secretion. Recall that the filtration rate of  $\text{H}^+$  equals plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  times GFR. Because plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  is extremely low (less than in pure  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  except during extreme acidosis, when pH falls below 7.0), the filtration rate of  $\text{H}^+$  is likewise extremely low. This minute amount of filtered  $\text{H}^+$  is excreted in urine. However, most excreted  $\text{H}^+$  gains entry into tubular fluid by being actively secreted.

The  $\text{H}^+$  secretory process begins in the tubular cells with  $\text{CO}_2$  from three sources:  $\text{CO}_2$  diffused into the tubular cells from (1) the plasma or (2) the tubular fluid, or (3) the  $\text{CO}_2$  metabolically produced within the tubular cells, with  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  ultimately yielding  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . To secrete  $\text{H}^+$ , an energy-dependent carrier in the luminal membrane then transports  $\text{H}^+$  out of the cell into the tubular lumen.

The magnitude of  $\text{H}^+$  secretion depends primarily on a direct effect of the plasma's acid-base status on the kidneys' tubular cells. No neural or hormonal control is involved.

- When the  $[\text{H}^+]$  of plasma passing through the peritubular capillaries is elevated above normal, the tubular cells respond by secreting greater-than-usual amounts of  $\text{H}^+$  from the plasma into the tubular fluid to be excreted in urine.

- Conversely, when plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  is lower than normal, the kidneys conserve  $\text{H}^+$  by reducing its secretion and subsequent excretion in urine.

Because chemical reactions for  $\text{H}^+$  secretion begin with  $\text{CO}_2$ , the rate at which they proceed is also influenced by  $[\text{CO}_2]$ :

- When plasma  $[\text{CO}_2]$  increases, the rate of  $\text{H}^+$  secretion speeds up.

- Conversely, the rate of  $\text{H}^+$  secretion slows when plasma  $[\text{CO}_2]$  falls below normal.

These responses are especially important in renal compensations for acid–base abnormalities involving a change in  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$  caused by respiratory dysfunction. The kidneys can therefore adjust  $\text{H}^+$  excretion to compensate for changes in both carbonic and noncarbonic acids.

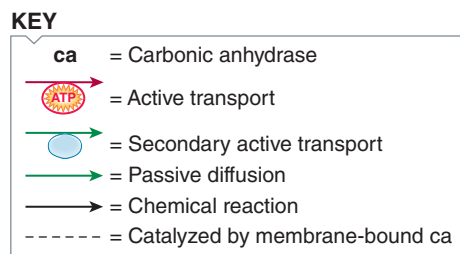
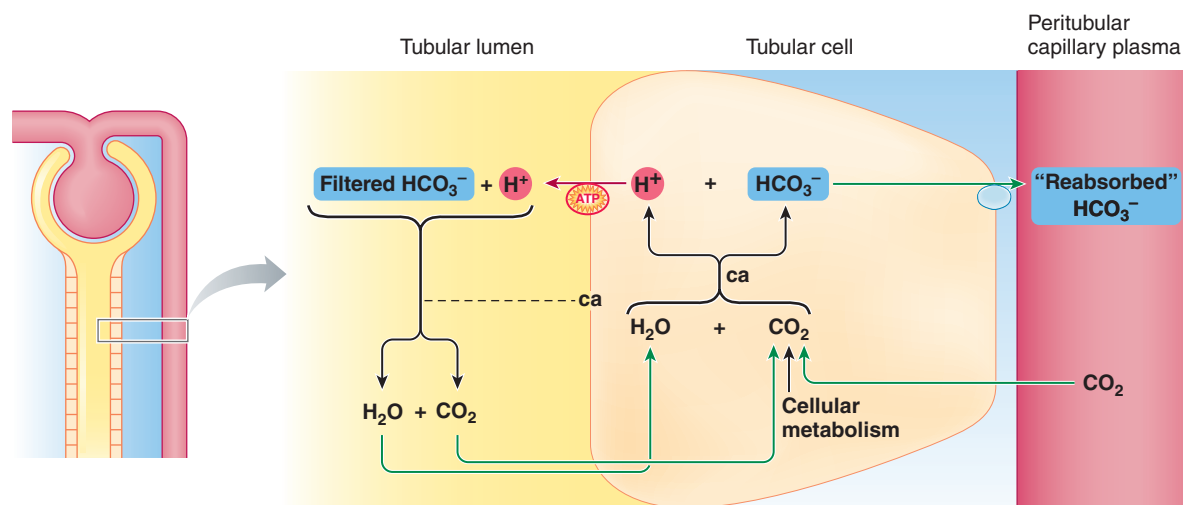
**RENAL HANDLING OF  $\text{HCO}_3^-$**  The kidneys regulate plasma  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  by two interrelated mechanisms: (1) variable reabsorption of filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  back into the plasma and (2) variable addition of new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to the plasma. Both mechanisms are inextricably linked with  $\text{H}^+$  secretion by the kidney tubules. Every time a  $\text{H}^+$  is secreted into the tubular fluid, a  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is simultaneously transferred into the peritubular capillary plasma. Whether a filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is reabsorbed or a new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is added to the plasma in accompaniment with  $\text{H}^+$  secretion depends on whether filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is present in the tubular fluid to react with the secreted  $\text{H}^+$  as follows:

■  *$\text{H}^+$  secretion coupled with  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  absorption.* Bicarbonate is freely filtered, but because the luminal membranes of tubular cells are impermeable to filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ , it cannot diffuse into these cells. Therefore, reabsorption of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  must occur indirectly (● Figure D-1). Under the influence of carbonic anhydrase, which is present on the surface of the luminal membrane,  $\text{H}^+$  secreted into the tubular fluid reacts with filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to form  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  within the filtrate. Unlike  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ ,  $\text{CO}_2$  can easily penetrate tubular cell membranes. Within the cells,  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , under the influence of intracellular carbonic anhydrase, form  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . Because  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  can permeate the tubular cells' basolateral membrane by secondary active trans-

port (see p. 60), it leaves the cells and enters the peritubular capillary plasma. Meanwhile, the generated  $\text{H}^+$  is actively secreted. Because the disappearance of a  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  from the tubular fluid is coupled with the appearance of another  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in the plasma, a  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  has, in effect, been “reabsorbed.” Even though the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  entering the plasma is not the same  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  that was filtered, the net result is the same as if  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  were directly reabsorbed.

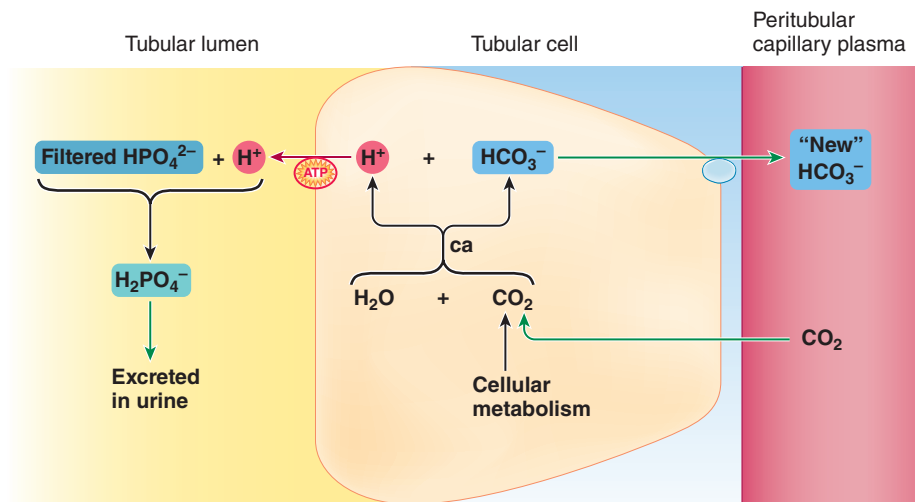
Normally, slightly more hydrogen ions are secreted into the tubular fluid than bicarbonate ions are filtered. Accordingly, all the filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is usually absorbed, because secreted  $\text{H}^+$  is available in the tubular fluid to combine with it to form highly reabsorbable  $\text{CO}_2$ . The vast majority of the secreted  $\text{H}^+$  combines with  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and is not excreted, because it is “used up” in  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  reabsorption. However, the slight excess of secreted  $\text{H}^+$  that is not matched by filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is excreted in the urine. This normal  $\text{H}^+$  excretion rate keeps pace with the normal rate of noncarbonic-acid  $\text{H}^+$  production.

■  *$\text{H}^+$  secretion and excretion coupled with addition of new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to the plasma.* Secretion of  $\text{H}^+$  that is excreted is coupled with the addition of new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to the plasma, in contrast to the secreted  $\text{H}^+$  that is coupled with  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  reabsorption and is not excreted, instead being incorporated into reabsorbable  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  molecules. When all the filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  has been reabsorbed and additional secreted  $\text{H}^+$  is generated from  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  produced by this reaction enters the plasma by secondary active transport as a “new”  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . It is “new” because its appearance in plasma is not associated with reabsorption of filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (● Figure D-2). Meanwhile, the secreted  $\text{H}^+$



● **FIGURE D-1** Hydrogen ion secretion coupled with bicarbonate reabsorption. Because the disappearance of a filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  from the tubular fluid is coupled with the appearance of another  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in the plasma,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is considered to have been “reabsorbed.”





● **FIGURE D-2 Hydrogen ion secretion and excretion coupled with the addition of new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to the plasma.** Secreted  $\text{H}^+$  does not combine with filtered  $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$  and is not subsequently excreted until all the filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  has been “reabsorbed,” as depicted in Figure D-1. Once all the filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  has combined with secreted  $\text{H}^+$ , further secreted  $\text{H}^+$  is excreted in the urine, primarily in association with urinary buffers such as basic phosphate. Excretion of  $\text{H}^+$  is coupled with the appearance of new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in the plasma. The “new”  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  represents a net gain rather than merely a replacement for filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ .

combines with urinary buffers, especially basic phosphate ( $\text{HPO}_4^{2-}$ ), and is excreted.

**RENAL HANDLING OF  $\text{H}^+$  AND  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  DURING ACIDOSIS AND ALKALOSIS** When plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  is elevated during acidosis, more  $\text{H}^+$  is secreted than normal. At the same time, less  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is filtered than normal because more of the plasma  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is used up in buffering the excess  $\text{H}^+$  in the ECF. This greater-than-usual inequity between filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and secreted  $\text{H}^+$  has two consequences. First, more of the secreted  $\text{H}^+$  is excreted in the urine, because more hydrogen ions are entering the tubular fluid when fewer are needed to reabsorb the reduced quantities of filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . In this way, extra  $\text{H}^+$  is eliminated from the body, making the urine more acidic than normal. Second, because excretion of  $\text{H}^+$  is linked with the addition of new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to the plasma, more  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  than usual enters the plasma passing through the kidneys. This additional  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is available to buffer excess  $\text{H}^+$  present in the body.

In the opposite situation of alkalosis, the rate of  $\text{H}^+$  secretion diminishes, while the rate of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  filtration increases compared to normal. When plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  is below normal, a smaller proportion of the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  pool is tied up buffering  $\text{H}^+$ , so plasma  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  is elevated above normal. As a result, the rate of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  filtration correspondingly increases. Not all the filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is reabsorbed, because bicarbonate ions are in excess of secreted hydrogen ions in the tubular fluid and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  cannot be reabsorbed without first reacting with  $\text{H}^+$ . Excess  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is left in the tubular fluid to be excreted in the urine, thus reducing plasma  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  while making the urine alkaline.

**SECRETED  $\text{NH}_3$  AS A URINARY BUFFER** In contrast to the phosphate buffers, which are in the tubular fluid because they have been filtered but not reabsorbed,  $\text{NH}_3$  is deliberately synthe-

sized from the amino acid *glutamine* within the tubular cells. Once synthesized,  $\text{NH}_3$  readily diffuses passively down its concentration gradient into the tubular fluid; that is, it is secreted. The rate of  $\text{NH}_3$  secretion is controlled by a direct effect on the tubular cells of the amount of excess  $\text{H}^+$  to be transported in the urine. When someone has been acidotic for more than two or three days, the rate of  $\text{NH}_3$  production increases substantially. This extra  $\text{NH}_3$  provides additional buffering capacity to allow  $\text{H}^+$  secretion to continue after the normal phosphate-buffering capacity is overwhelmed during renal compensation for acidosis.

## Acid–Base Imbalances

Because of the relationship between the  $[\text{H}^+]$  and the concentrations of the members of a buffer pair, changes in  $[\text{H}^+]$  are reflected by changes in the ratio of  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  to  $[\text{CO}_2]$ . Recall that the normal ratio is 20/1. Using the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation and with  $\text{pK}$  being 6.1 and the  $\log$  of 20 being 1.3, normal  $\text{pH} = 6.1 + 1.3 = 7.4$ . Determinations of  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  and  $[\text{CO}_2]$  provide more meaningful information about the underlying factors responsible for a particular acid–base status than do direct measurements of  $[\text{H}^+]$  alone. The following rules of thumb apply when examining acid–base imbalances *before any compensations take place*:

1. A change in  $\text{pH}$  that has a respiratory cause is associated with an abnormal  $[\text{CO}_2]$ , giving rise to a change in carbonic acid–generated  $\text{H}^+$ . In contrast, a  $\text{pH}$  deviation of metabolic origin will be associated with an abnormal  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  as a result of the participation of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in buffering abnormal amounts of  $\text{H}^+$  generated from noncarbonic acids.
2. Anytime the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio falls below 20/1, an acidosis exists. The  $\log$  of any number lower than 20 is less than 1.3 and, when added to the  $\text{pK}$  of 6.1, yields an acidotic  $\text{pH}$  below 7.4. Anytime the ratio exceeds 20/1, an alkalosis exists. The  $\log$  of any number greater than 20 is more than 1.3 and, when added to the  $\text{pK}$  of 6.1, yields an alkalotic  $\text{pH}$  above 7.4.

Putting these two points together, we can note the following:

- *Respiratory acidosis* has a ratio of less than 20/1 arising from an increase in  $[\text{CO}_2]$ .
- *Respiratory alkalosis* has a ratio greater than 20/1 because of a decrease in  $[\text{CO}_2]$ .
- *Metabolic acidosis* has a ratio of less than 20/1 associated with a fall in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ .
- *Metabolic alkalosis* has a ratio greater than 20/1 arising from an elevation in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ .

We examine each of these categories separately in more detail, paying particular attention to possible causes and the compensations that occur. The “balance beam” concept, presented in ● Figure D-3, in conjunction with the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation, will help you better visualize the contributions of the lungs and kidneys to the causes of and compensations for various acid–base disorders. The normal situation is represented in ● Figure D-3a.

**RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS** In uncompensated respiratory acidosis (● Figure D-3b, left),  $[\text{CO}_2]$  is elevated because of hypoventilation (in our example, it is doubled) whereas  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  is normal, so the ratio is 20/2 (10/1) and pH is reduced. Let us clarify a potentially confusing point. You might wonder why when  $[\text{CO}_2]$  is elevated and drives the reaction  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}^+ + \text{HCO}_3^-$  to the right, we say that  $[\text{H}^+]$  becomes elevated but  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  remains normal, although the same quantities of  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  are produced by this reaction. The answer depends on the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  normally being 600,000 times the  $[\text{H}^+]$ . For every one hydrogen ion and 600,000 bicarbonate ions present in the ECF, the generation of one additional  $\text{H}^+$  and one  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  doubles the  $[\text{H}^+]$  (a 100% increase) but only increases the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  0.00017% (from 600,000 to 600,001 ions). Therefore, an elevation in  $[\text{CO}_2]$  brings about a pronounced increase in  $[\text{H}^+]$ , but  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  remains essentially normal.

Compensatory measures act to restore pH to normal:

- The chemical buffer systems immediately take up additional  $\text{H}^+$ .
- The respiratory mechanism usually cannot respond with compensatory increased ventilation, because impaired respiration is the problem initially.
- Thus, the kidneys are most important in compensating for respiratory acidosis. They conserve all the filtered  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  and add new  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to the plasma while simultaneously secreting and, accordingly, excreting more  $\text{H}^+$ .

As a result,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  stores in the body become elevated. In our example (● Figure D-3b, right), the plasma  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  is doubled, so the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio is 40/2 rather than 20/2, as it was in the uncompensated state. A ratio of 40/2 is equivalent to a normal 20/1 ratio, so pH is again the normal 7.4. Enhanced renal conservation of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  has fully compensated for  $\text{CO}_2$  accumulation, thus restoring pH to normal, although both  $[\text{CO}_2]$  and  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  are now distorted. Note that maintaining normal pH depends on preserving a normal ratio between  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  and  $[\text{CO}_2]$ , no matter what the absolute values of each of these buffer components are. (Compensation is never fully complete because pH can be restored close to but not precisely to normal. In our examples, however, we assume full compensation, for ease in mathematical calculations. Also bear in mind that the values used are only representative. Deviations in pH actually occur over a range, and the degree to which compensation can be accomplished varies.)

**RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS** Looking at the biochemical abnormalities in uncompensated respiratory alkalosis (● Figure D-3c, left), the increase in pH reflects a reduction in  $[\text{CO}_2]$  (half the

normal value in our example) as a result of hyperventilation, whereas the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  remains normal. This yields an alkalotic ratio of 20/0.5, which is comparable to 40/1.

Compensatory measures act to shift pH back toward normal:

- The chemical buffer systems liberate  $\text{H}^+$  to diminish the severity of the alkalosis.
- As plasma  $[\text{CO}_2]$  and  $[\text{H}^+]$  fall below normal because of excessive ventilation, two of the normally potent stimuli for driving ventilation are removed. This effect tends to “put the brakes” on the extent to which some nonrespiratory factor such as fever or anxiety can overdrive ventilation. Therefore, hyperventilation does not continue completely unabated.
- If the situation continues for a few days, the kidneys compensate by conserving  $\text{H}^+$  and excreting more  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ .

If, as in our example (● Figure D-3c, right), the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  stores are reduced by half because of loss of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in the urine, the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio becomes 10/0.5, equivalent to the normal 20/1. Therefore, the pH is restored to normal by reducing the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  load to compensate for the  $\text{CO}_2$  loss.

**METABOLIC ACIDOSIS** Uncompensated metabolic acidosis (● Figure D-3d, left), is always characterized by a reduction in plasma  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  (in our example, it is halved), whereas  $[\text{CO}_2]$  remains normal, producing an acidotic ratio of 10/1. The problem may arise from excessive loss of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ -rich fluids from the body (as in diarrhea) or from an accumulation of noncarbonic acids (as in diabetes mellitus or uremic acidosis). In the case of accumulation of noncarbonic acids, plasma  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is used up in buffering the additional  $\text{H}^+$ .

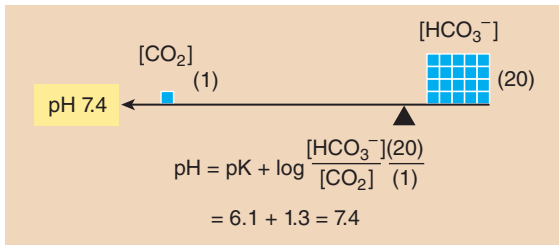
Except in uremic acidosis, metabolic acidosis is compensated for by both respiratory and renal mechanisms, as well as by chemical buffers:

- The chemical buffer systems take up extra  $\text{H}^+$ .
- The lungs blow off additional  $\text{H}^+$ -generating  $\text{CO}_2$ .
- The kidneys excrete more  $\text{H}^+$  and conserve more  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ .

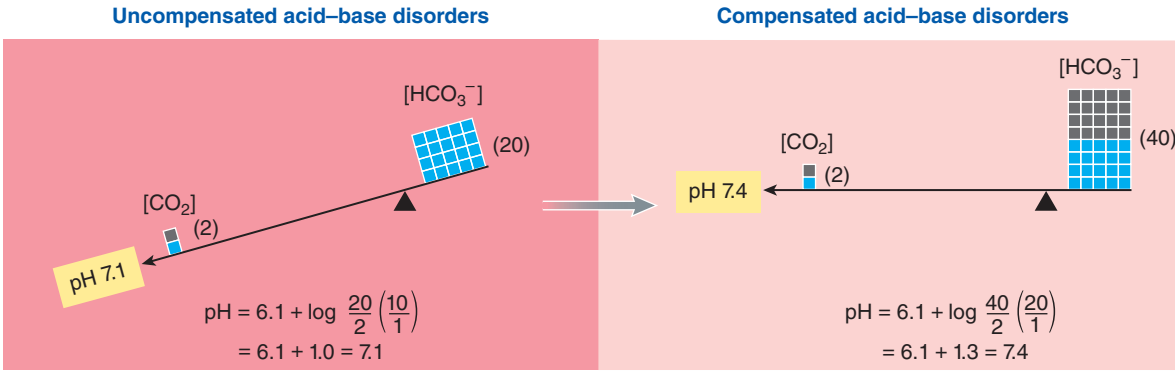
In our example (● Figure D-3d, right), these compensatory measures restore the ratio to normal by reducing  $[\text{CO}_2]$  to 75% of normal and by raising  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  halfway back toward normal (up from 50% to 75% of the normal value). This brings the ratio to 15/0.75 (equivalent to 20/1).

Note that in compensating for metabolic acidosis, the lungs deliberately displace  $[\text{CO}_2]$  from normal in an attempt to restore  $[\text{H}^+]$  toward normal. Whereas in respiratory-induced acid–base disorders an abnormal  $[\text{CO}_2]$  is the *cause* of the  $[\text{H}^+]$  imbalance, in metabolic acid–base disorders  $[\text{CO}_2]$  is intentionally shifted from normal as an important *compensation* for the  $[\text{H}^+]$  imbalance.

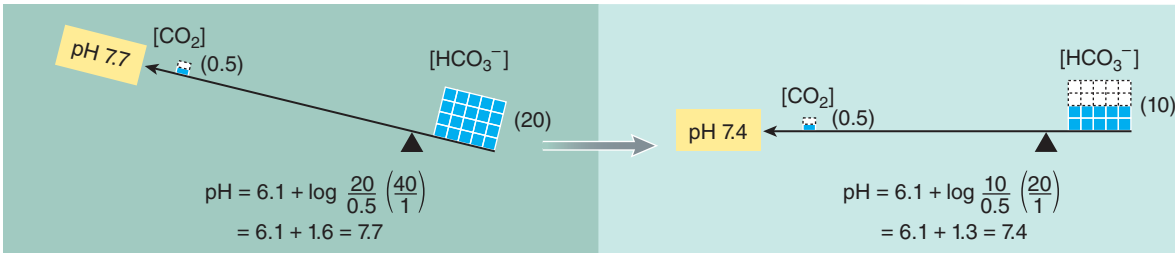
When kidney disease causes metabolic acidosis, complete compensation is not possible because the renal mechanism is not available for pH regulation. Recall that the respiratory system can compensate only up to 75% of the way toward normal. Uremic acidosis is very serious, because the kidneys cannot help restore pH all the way to normal.



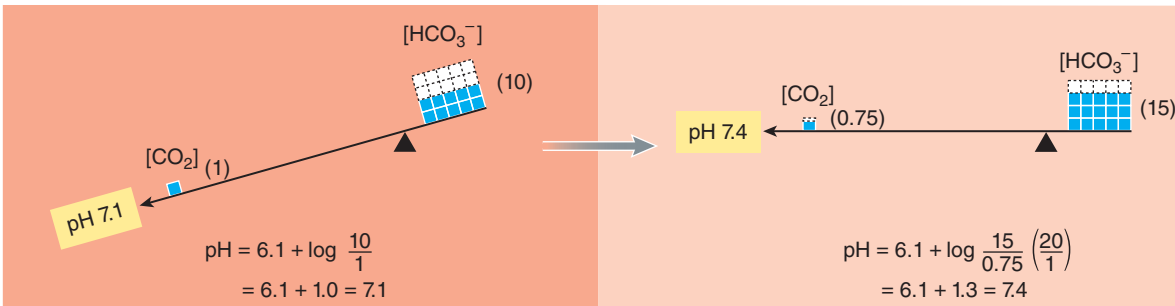
(a) Normal acid–base balance



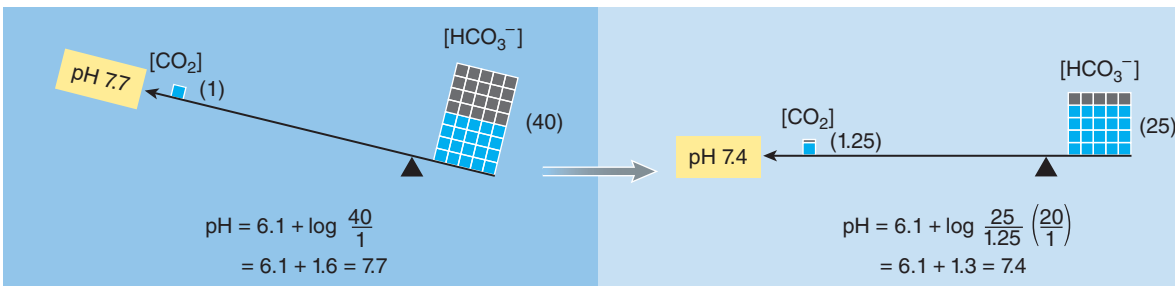
(b) Respiratory acidosis



(c) Respiratory alkalosis



(d) Metabolic acidosis



(e) Metabolic alkalosis

● **FIGURE D-3 Relationship of  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  and  $[\text{CO}_2]$  to pH in various acid–base statuses, shown visually as a balance beam and mathematically as a solution to the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation.** Note that the lengths of the arms of the balance beams are not to scale. (a) When acid–base balance is normal, the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio is 20/1. Each of the four types of acid–base disorders has an uncompensated state and a compensated state. (b) In uncompensated respiratory acidosis, the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio is reduced (20/2), because  $\text{CO}_2$  has accumulated. In compensated respiratory acidosis,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is retained to balance the  $\text{CO}_2$  accumulation, which restores the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio to a normal equivalent (40/2). (c) In uncompensated respiratory alkalosis, the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio is increased (20/0.5) by a reduction in  $\text{CO}_2$ . In compensated respiratory alkalosis,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is eliminated to balance the  $\text{CO}_2$  deficit, which restores the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio to a normal equivalent (10/0.5). (d) In uncompensated metabolic acidosis, the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio is reduced (10/1) by a  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  deficit. In compensated metabolic acidosis,  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is conserved, which partially makes up for the  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  deficit, and  $\text{CO}_2$  is reduced; these changes restore the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio to a normal equivalent (15/0.75). (e) In uncompensated metabolic alkalosis, the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio is increased (40/1) by excess  $\text{HCO}_3^-$ . In compensated metabolic alkalosis, some of the extra  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is eliminated, and  $\text{CO}_2$  is increased; these changes restore the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio to a normal equivalent (25/1.25).

**METABOLIC ALKALOSIS** Uncompensated metabolic alkalosis is associated with an increase in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ , which, in the uncompensated state, is not accompanied by a change in  $[\text{CO}_2]$ . In our example (● Figure D-3d, left),  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  is doubled, producing an alkalotic ratio of 40/1.

This condition arises most commonly from excess ingestion of alkaline drugs, such as when baking soda ( $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ) is

used as a self-administered remedy for the treatment of gastric hyperacidity, or from excessive vomiting of acidic gastric juices. Hydrochloric acid is secreted into the stomach lumen during digestion. Bicarbonate is added to the plasma during gastric HCl secretion. This  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  is neutralized by  $\text{H}^+$  as the gastric secretions are eventually reabsorbed back into the plasma, so normally there is no net addition of  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  to the plasma from this source. However, when this acid is lost from the body during vomiting not only is plasma  $[\text{H}^+]$  decreased, but reabsorbed  $\text{H}^+$  is also no longer available to neutralize the extra  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  added to the plasma during gastric HCl secretion. Thus, loss of HCl in effect increases plasma  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$ .

The following compensatory measures come into play to restore the pH toward normal:

- The chemical buffer systems immediately liberate  $\text{H}^+$ .
- Ventilation is reduced so that extra  $\text{H}^+$ -generating  $\text{CO}_2$  is retained in the body fluids.
- If the condition persists for several days, the kidneys conserve  $\text{H}^+$  and excrete the excess  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in the urine.

The resultant compensatory increase in  $[\text{CO}_2]$  (up 25% in our example; ● Figure D-3e, right) and the partial reduction in  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  (75% of the way back down toward normal in our example) together restore the  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]/[\text{CO}_2]$  ratio back to the equivalent of 20/1 at 25/1.25.

Thus, an individual's acid–base status cannot be assessed on the basis of pH alone. Even though the pH is essentially normal, determinations of  $[\text{HCO}_3^-]$  and  $[\text{CO}_2]$  can reveal compensated acid–base disorders.

# Appendix E

## Answers to End-of-Chapter Objective Questions, Points to Ponder, and Clinical Considerations

### Chapter 1 Introduction to Physiology and Homeostasis

#### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

##### (Questions on p. 15.)

1. e
2. b
3. F
4. T
5. muscle tissue, nervous tissue, epithelial tissue, connective tissue
6. secretion
7. exocrine, endocrine, hormones
8. intrinsic, extrinsic
9. 1. d, 2. g, 3. a, 4. e, 5. b, 6. j, 7. h, 8. i, 9. c, 10. f

#### POINTS TO PONDER

##### (Questions on p. 16.)

1. The respiratory system eliminates internally produced CO<sub>2</sub> to the external environment. A decrease in CO<sub>2</sub> in the internal environment brings about a reduction in respiratory activity (that is, slower, shallower breathing) so that CO<sub>2</sub> produced within the body accumulates instead of being blown off as rapidly as normal to the external environment. The extra CO<sub>2</sub> retained in the body increases the CO<sub>2</sub> levels in the internal environment to normal.
2. b, c, b
3. b
4. immune defense system
5. When a person is engaged in strenuous exercise, the temperature-regulating center in the brain brings about widening of the blood vessels of the skin. The resultant increased blood flow through the skin carries the extra heat generated by the contracting muscles to the body surface, where it can be lost to the surrounding environment.

#### CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

##### (Question on p. 17.)

Loss of fluids threatens the maintenance of proper plasma volume and blood pressure. Loss of acidic digestive juices threatens maintenance of the proper pH in the internal fluid environment. The urinary system helps restore the proper plasma volume and pH by reducing the amount of water and acid eliminated in the urine. The respiratory system helps restore the pH by adjusting the rate of removal of acid-forming CO<sub>2</sub>. Adjustments are made in the circulatory system to help maintain blood pressure despite fluid loss. Increased thirst encourages increased fluid intake to help restore plasma volume. These compensatory changes in the urinary, respiratory, and circulatory systems, as well as the sensation of thirst, are all controlled by the two regulatory systems, the nervous and endocrine systems. Furthermore, the endocrine system makes internal adjustments to help maintain the concentration of nutrients in the internal environment even though no new nutrients are being absorbed from the digestive system.

### Chapter 2 Cell Physiology

#### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

##### (Questions on p. 40.)

1. plasma membrane
2. deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), nucleus
3. organelles, cytosol, cytoskeleton
4. endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi complex
5. oxidative
6. adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
7. F
8. F
9. 1. b, 2. a, 3. b
10. 1. b, 2. c, 3. c, 4. a, 5. b, 6. c, 7. a, 8. c, 9. c

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Questions on p. 41.)

- $$24 \text{ moles O}_2/\text{day} \times 6 \text{ moles ATP/mole O}_2$$
$$= 144 \text{ moles ATP/day}$$
$$144 \text{ moles ATP/day} \times 507 \text{ g ATP/mole} = 73,000 \text{ g ATP/day}$$
$$1000 \text{ g}/2.2 \text{ lb} = 73,000 \text{ g}/x \text{ lb}$$
$$1000x = 160,600$$
$$x = \text{approximately } 160 \text{ lb}$$
- The chief cells have an extensive rough endoplasmic reticulum, with this organelle being responsible for synthesizing these cells' protein secretory product, namely, pepsinogen. Because the parietal cells do not secrete a protein product to the cells' exterior, they do not need an extensive rough endoplasmic reticulum.
- With cyanide poisoning, cell activities that depend on ATP expenditure could not continue, such as synthesis of new chemical compounds, membrane transport, and mechanical work. The resultant inability of the heart to pump blood and failure of the respiratory muscles to accomplish breathing would lead to imminent death.
- ATP is required for muscle contraction. Muscles can store limited supplies of nutrient fuel for use in generating ATP. During anaerobic exercise, muscles generate ATP from these nutrient stores by means of glycolysis, which yields two molecules of ATP per glucose molecule processed. During aerobic exercise, muscles can generate ATP by oxidative phosphorylation, which yields 32 molecules of ATP per glucose molecule processed. Because glycolysis inefficiently generates ATP from nutrient fuels, it rapidly depletes the muscle's limited stores of fuel, and ATP can no longer be produced to sustain the muscle's contractile activity. Aerobic exercise, in contrast, can be sustained for prolonged periods. Not only does oxidative phosphorylation use far less nutrient fuel to generate ATP, but it can be supported by nutrients delivered to the muscle by the blood instead of relying on fuel stored in the muscle. Intense anaerobic exercise outpaces the ability to deliver supplies to the muscle by the blood, so the muscle must rely on stored fuel and inefficient glycolysis, thus limiting anaerobic exercise to brief periods before energy sources are depleted.
- skin. The mutant keratin weakens the skin cells of patients with epidermolysis bullosa so that the skin blisters in response to even a light touch.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 41.)

Some hereditary forms of male sterility involving nonmotile sperm have been traced to defects in the cytoskeletal components of the sperm's flagella. These same individuals usually also have long histories of recurrent respiratory tract disease because the same types of defects are present in their respiratory cilia, which are unable to clear mucus and inhaled particles from the respiratory system.

## Chapter 3 The Plasma Membrane and Membrane Potential

## OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

### (Questions on p. 68.)

- T
- T
- T
- F
- negative, positive
1. b, 2. a, 3. b, 4. a, 5. c, 6. b, 7. a, 8. b
1. a, 2. a, 3. b, 4. a, 5. b, 6. a, 7. b
1. c, 2. b, 3. a, 4. a, 5. c, 6. b, 7. c, 8. a, 9. b

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Questions on p. 69.)

- Osmolarity refers to the concentration of all particles in a solution, both penetrating and nonpenetrating, yet only nonpenetrating solutes contribute to the tonicity of a solution. Therefore, a solution with a mixture of penetrating and nonpenetrating solutes may have an osmolarity of 300 mOsm, the same as in the ICF, but be hypotonic to the cells because the solution's concentration of nonpenetrating solutes is less than the concentration of nonpenetrating solutes inside the cells. The entire osmolarity of the ICF at 300 mOsm is attributable to nonpenetrating solutes.
- c. As  $\text{Na}^+$  moves from side 1 to side 2 down its concentration gradient,  $\text{Cl}^-$  remains on side 1, unable to permeate the membrane. The resultant separation of charges produces a membrane potential, negative on side 1 because of unbalanced chloride ions and positive on side 2 because of unbalanced sodium ions. Sodium does not continue to move to side 2 until its concentration gradient is dissipated because an opposing electrical gradient is developed.
- More positive. Because the electrochemical gradient for  $\text{Na}^+$  is inward, the membrane potential would become more positive as a result of an increased influx of  $\text{Na}^+$  into the cell if the membrane were more permeable to  $\text{Na}^+$  than to  $\text{K}^+$ . (Indeed, this is what happens during the rising phase of an action potential once threshold potential is reached—see Chapter 4).
- d. active transport. Leveling off of the curve designates saturation of a carrier molecule, so carrier-mediated transport is involved. The graph indicates that active transport is being used instead of facilitated diffusion, because the concentration of the substance in the intracellular fluid is greater than the concentration in the extracellular fluid at all points until after the transport maximum is reached. Thus, the substance is being moved *against* a concentration gradient, so active transport must be the transport method used.
- vesicular transport. The maternal antibodies in the infant's digestive tract lumen are taken up by the intestinal cells by pinocytosis and are extruded on the opposite side of the cell into the interstitial fluid by

exocytosis. The antibodies are picked up from the intestinal interstitial fluid by the blood supply to the region.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 69.)

As  $\text{Cl}^-$  is secreted by the intestinal cells into the intestinal tract lumen,  $\text{Na}^+$  follows passively along the established electrical gradient. Water passively accompanies this salt ( $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) secretion by osmosis. Increased secretion of  $\text{Cl}^-$  and the subsequent passively induced secretion of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water are responsible for the severe diarrhea that characterizes cholera.

## Chapter 4 Principles of Neural and Hormonal Communication

## OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

### (Questions on p. 103.)

1. T
2. F
3. F
4. F
5. T
6. F
7. refractory period
8. axon hillock
9. synapse
10. convergence, divergence
11. G protein
12. 1. b, 2. a, 3. a, 4. b, 5. b, 6. a
13. 1. a, 2. b, 3. a, 4. b, 5. d, 6. b, 7. b, 8. b, 9. a, 10. b, 11. a, 12. c

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Questions on p. 104.)

1. c. The action potentials would stop as they met in the middle. As the two action potentials moving toward each other both reached the middle of the axon, the two adjacent patches of membrane in the middle would be in a refractory period, so further propagation of either action potential would be impossible.
2. The hand could be pulled away from the hot stove by flexion of the elbow accomplished by summation of EPSPs at the cell bodies of the neurons controlling the biceps muscle, thus bringing these neurons to threshold. The subsequent action potentials generated in these neurons would stimulate contraction of the biceps. Simultaneous contraction of the triceps muscle, which would oppose the desired flexion of the elbow, could be prevented by generation of IPSPs at the cell bodies of the neurons controlling this muscle. These IPSPs would keep the triceps neurons from reaching threshold and firing so that the triceps would not be stimulated to contract.

The arm could deliberately be extended despite a painful finger prick by voluntarily generating EPSPs to override the reflex IPSPs at the neuronal cell bodies controlling the triceps while simultaneously generating IPSPs to override the reflex EPSPs at the neuronal cell bodies controlling the biceps.

3. A subthreshold stimulus would transiently depolarize the membrane but not sufficiently to bring the membrane to threshold, so no action potential would occur. Because a threshold stimulus would bring the membrane to threshold, an action potential would occur. An action potential of the same magnitude and duration would occur in response to a suprathreshold stimulus as to a threshold stimulus. Because of the all-or-none law, a stimulus larger than that necessary to bring the membrane to threshold would not produce a larger action potential. (The magnitude of the stimulus is coded in the *frequency* of action potentials generated in the neuron, not the *size* of the action potentials.)
4. An EPSP, being a graded potential, spreads decrementally from its site of initiation in the postsynaptic neuron. If presynaptic neuron A (near the axon hillock of the postsynaptic cell) and presynaptic neuron B (on the opposite side of the postsynaptic cell body) both initiate EPSPs of the same magnitude and frequency, the EPSPs from presynaptic neuron A will be of greater strength when they reach the axon hillock than will the EPSPs from presynaptic neuron B. An EPSP from presynaptic neuron B will decrease more in magnitude as it travels farther before reaching the axon hillock, the region of lowest threshold and thus the site of action potential initiation. Temporal summation of the larger EPSPs from presynaptic neuron A may bring the axon hillock to threshold and initiate an action potential in the postsynaptic neuron, whereas temporal summation of the weaker EPSPs from presynaptic neuron B at the axon hillock may not be sufficient to bring this region to threshold. Thus, the proximity of a presynaptic neuron to the axon hillock can bias its influence on the postsynaptic cell.
5. (1) Angiotensin receptor blockers decrease blood pressure by reducing the load of osmotically active (water holding) salt in the body, thereby decreasing the volume of circulating plasma. The greater the plasma volume, and accordingly the blood volume, the higher the blood pressure, all other factors being equal. (2)  $\beta_1$ -Adrenergic receptor blockers suppress the action of epinephrine on the heart, thereby reducing the rate and strength of contraction of the heart. The more rapidly and more forcefully the heart beats, the more blood pumped into the blood vessels per minute and the greater the pressure exerted by the blood on the vessel walls, all other factors being equal.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 105.)

Initiation and propagation of action potentials would not occur in nerve fibers acted on by local anesthetic because blockage of  $\text{Na}^+$  channels by the local anesthetic would prevent the massive opening of voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels at

threshold potential. As a result, pain impulses (action potentials in nerve fibers that carry pain signals) would not be initiated and propagated to the brain and reach the level of conscious awareness.

## Chapter 5 The Central Nervous System

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

(Questions on p. 137.)

1. F
2. F
3. F
4. T
5. F
6. consolidation
7. dorsal, ventral
8. 1. d, 2. c, 3. f, 4. e, 5. a, 6. b
9. 1. a, 2. c, 3. a and b, 4. b, 5. a, 6. c, 7. c

### POINTS TO PONDER

(Questions on p. 138.)

1. Only the left hemisphere has language ability. When sharing of information between the two hemispheres is prevented as a result of severance of the corpus callosum, visual information presented only to the right hemisphere cannot be verbally identified by the left hemisphere, because the left hemisphere is unaware of the information. However, the information can be recognized by nonverbal means, of which the right hemisphere is capable.
2. c. A severe blow to the back of the head is most likely to traumatize the visual cortex in the occipital lobe.
3. Insulin excess drives too much glucose into insulin-dependent cells so that the blood glucose falls below normal and insufficient glucose is delivered to the non-insulin-dependent brain. Therefore, the brain, which depends on glucose as its energy source, does not receive adequate nourishment.
4. Salivation when seeing or smelling food, striking the appropriate letter on the keyboard when typing, playing the correct note on a musical instrument, and many of the actions involved in driving a car are conditioned reflexes. You undoubtedly will have many other examples.
5. Strokes occur when a portion of the brain is deprived of its vital O<sub>2</sub> and glucose supply because the cerebral blood vessel supplying the area either is blocked by a clot or has ruptured. Although a clot-dissolving drug could be helpful in restoring blood flow through a cerebral vessel blocked by a clot, such a drug would be detrimental in the case of a ruptured cerebral vessel sealed by a clot. Dissolution of a clot sealing a ruptured vessel would lead to renewed hemorrhage through the vessel and make the problem worse.

### CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

(Question on p. 139.)

The deficits following the stroke—numbness and partial paralysis on the upper right side of the body and inability to speak—are indicative of damage to the left somatosensory cortex and left primary motor cortex in the regions devoted to the upper part of the body, as well as damage to Broca's area.

## Chapter 6 The Peripheral Nervous System: Afferent Division and Special Senses

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

(Questions on p. 176.)

1. transduction
2. adequate stimulus
3. F
4. T
5. T
6. F
7. T
8. F
9. F
10. 1. d, 2. f, 3. i, 4. g, 5. c, 6. a, 7. h, 8. e, 9. b
11. 1. a, 2. b, 3. c, 4. c, 5. c, 6. a, 7. b, 8. b

### POINTS TO PONDER

(Questions on p. 177.)

1. Pain is a conscious warning that tissue damage is occurring or is about to occur. A patient unable to feel pain because of a nerve disorder does not consciously take measures to withdraw from painful stimuli and thus prevent more serious tissue damage.
2. Pupillary dilation (mydriasis) can be deliberately induced by ophthalmic instillation (eye drops) of either an adrenergic drug (one that mimics sympathetic action, such as epinephrine or related compounds) or a cholinergic blocking drug (one that blocks parasympathetic action, such as atropine or related compounds). Adrenergic drugs produce mydriasis by causing contraction of the sympathetically supplied dilator muscle of the iris. Cholinergic blocking drugs cause pupillary dilation by blocking parasympathetic activity to the constrictor muscle of the iris so that action of the sympathetically controlled dilator muscle of the iris is unopposed.
3. The defect would be in the left optic tract or optic radiation.
4. Fluid accumulation in the middle ear in accompaniment with middle ear infections impedes the normal movement of the tympanic membrane, ossicles, and oval window in response to sound. All these structures



vibrate less vigorously in the presence of fluid, causing temporary hearing impairment. Chronic fluid accumulation in the middle ear is sometimes relieved by surgical implantation of drainage tubes in the eardrum. Hearing is restored to normal as the fluid drains to the exterior. Usually, the tube “falls out” as the eardrum heals and pushes out the foreign object.

5. The sense of smell is reduced when you have a cold, even though the cold virus does not directly adversely affect the olfactory receptor cells, because odorants do not reach the receptor cells as readily when the mucous membranes lining the nasal passageways are swollen and excess mucus is present.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 177.)

Syncopal most frequently occurs as a result of inadequate delivery of blood carrying sufficient oxygen and glucose supplies to the brain. Possible causes include circulatory disorders such as impaired pumping of the heart or low blood pressure; respiratory disorders resulting in poorly oxygenated blood; anemia, in which the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood is reduced; or low blood glucose from improper endocrine management of blood glucose levels. Vertigo, in contrast, typically results from a dysfunction of the vestibular apparatus, arising, for example, from viral infection or trauma, or abnormal neural processing of vestibular information, as, for example, with a brain tumor.

## Chapter 7 The Peripheral Nervous System: Efferent Division

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 192.)

1. T
2. F
3. c
4. c
5. sympathetic, parasympathetic
6. adrenal medulla
7. 1. a, 2. b, 3. a, 4. b, 5. a, 6. a, 7. b
8. 1. b, 2. b, 3. a, 4. a, 5. b, 6. b, 7. a

### POINTS TO PONDER

#### (Questions on p. 193.)

1. By promoting arteriolar constriction, epinephrine administered in conjunction with local anesthetics reduces blood flow to the region and thus helps the anesthetic stay in the region instead of being carried away by the blood.
2. No. Atropine blocks the effect of acetylcholine at muscarinic receptors but does not affect nicotinic receptors. Nicotinic receptors are present on the motor end plates of skeletal muscle fibers.

3. The voluntarily controlled external urethral sphincter is composed of skeletal muscle and supplied by the somatic nervous system.
4. By interfering with normal acetylcholine activity at the neuromuscular junction,  $\alpha$ -bungarotoxin leads to skeletal muscle paralysis, with death ultimately occurring as a result of an inability to contract the diaphragm and breathe.
5. If the motor neurons that control the respiratory muscles, especially the diaphragm, are destroyed by poliovirus or amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, the person is unable to breathe and dies (unless breathing is assisted by artificial means).

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 193.)

Drugs that block  $\beta_1$  receptors are useful for prolonged treatment of angina pectoris because they interfere with sympathetic stimulation of the heart during exercise or emotionally stressful situations. By preventing increased cardiac metabolism and thus an increased need for oxygen delivery to the cardiac muscle during these situations,  $\beta$  blockers can reduce the frequency and severity of angina attacks.

## Chapter 8 Muscle Physiology

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 226.)

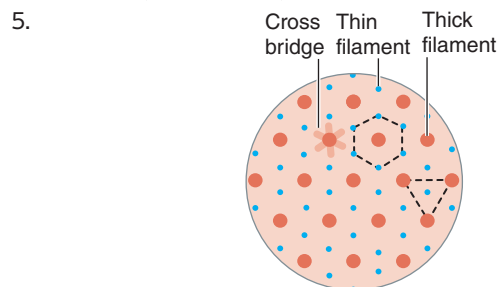
1. F
2. F
3. F
4. T
5. F
6. T
7. concentric, eccentric
8. alpha, gamma
9. a, b, e
10. b
11. 1. f, 2. d, 3. c, 4. e, 5. b, 6. g, 7. a
12. 1. a, 2. a, 3. a, 4. b, 5. b, 6. b

### POINTS TO PONDER

#### (Questions on p. 227.)

1. By placing increased demands on the heart to sustain increased delivery of  $O_2$  and nutrients to working skeletal muscles, regular aerobic exercise induces changes in cardiac muscle that enable it to use  $O_2$  more efficiently, such as increasing the number of capillaries supplying blood to the heart muscle. Intense exercise of short duration, such as weight training, in contrast, does not induce cardiac efficiency. Because this type of exercise relies on anaerobic glycolysis for ATP formation, no demands are placed on the heart for increased delivery of blood to the working muscles.

- The length of the thin filaments is represented by the distance between a Z line and the edge of the adjacent H zone. This distance remains the same in a relaxed and contracted myofibril, leading to the conclusion that the thin filaments do not change in length during muscle contraction.
- Regular bouts of anaerobic, short-duration, high-intensity resistance training would be recommended for competitive downhill skiing. By promoting hypertrophy of the fast glycolytic fibers, such exercise better adapts the muscles to activities that require intense strength for brief periods, such as a swift, powerful descent downhill. In contrast, regular aerobic exercise would be more beneficial for competitive cross-country skiers. Aerobic exercise induces metabolic changes within the oxidative fibers that enable the muscles to use  $O_2$  more efficiently. These changes, which include an increase in mitochondria and capillaries within the oxidative fibers, adapt the muscles to better endure the prolonged activity of cross-country skiing without fatiguing.
- Because the site of voluntary control to overcome the micturition reflex is at the external urethral sphincter and not the bladder, the external urethral sphincter must be skeletal muscle, which is innervated by the voluntarily controlled somatic nervous system, and the bladder must be smooth muscle, which is innervated by the involuntarily controlled autonomic nervous system. The only other type of involuntarily controlled muscle besides smooth muscle is cardiac muscle, which is found only in the heart. Therefore, the bladder must be smooth, not cardiac, muscle.



Schematic representation of the geometrical relationships among thick and thin filaments and cross bridges.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 227.)

The muscles in the immobilized leg have undergone disuse atrophy. The physician or physical therapist can prescribe regular resistance-type exercises that specifically use the atrophied muscles to help restore them to their normal size.

## Chapter 9 Cardiac Physiology

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 258.)

- intercalated discs, desmosomes, gap junctions
- F

- F
- T
- d
- d
- e
1. e, 2. a, 3. d, 4. b, 5. f, 6. c
- AV, systole, semilunar, diastole
- less than, greater than, less than, greater than, less than

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Questions on p. 259.)

- Because, at a given heart rate, the interval between a premature beat and the next normal beat is longer than the interval between two normal beats, the heart fills for a longer period following a premature beat before the next period of contraction and emptying begins. Because of the longer filling time, the end-diastolic volume is larger. According to the Frank–Starling law of the heart, the subsequent stroke volume will also be correspondingly larger.
- Trained athletes' hearts are stronger and can pump blood more efficiently so that the resting stroke volume is larger than it is in an untrained person. For example, if the resting stroke volume of a strong-hearted athlete is 100 ml, a resting heart rate of only 50 beats per minute produces a normal resting cardiac output of 5000 ml per minute. An untrained individual with a resting stroke volume of 70 ml, in contrast, must have a heart rate of about 70 beats per minute to produce a comparable resting cardiac output.
- In the fetus, blood is shunted from the pulmonary artery into the aorta through the ductus arteriosus, thus bypassing the nonfunctional lungs. Blood flows in this direction down its pressure gradient, with pulmonary artery pressure in the collapsed lungs being greater than aortic pressure during fetal life.

The direction of flow through a patent ductus arteriosus is the reverse of the flow that occurs through this vascular connection during fetal life. With a patent ductus arteriosus, some of the blood present in the aorta is shunted through the still-open ductus arteriosus into the pulmonary artery because, after birth, the aortic pressure is greater than the pulmonary artery pressure.

As a result of this abnormal shunting, only some of the blood pumped out by the left ventricle goes into the systemic circulation, and excessive blood enters the pulmonary circulation. If the condition is not corrected by tying off the patent ductus arteriosus, the left ventricle compensates by hypertrophying (enlarging and becoming stronger) so that it can pump out even more blood. This extra output provides adequate systemic circulation, even through part of the left ventricular output is diverted to the pulmonary circulation. The right ventricle also hypertrophies, enabling it to pump against the elevated pulmonary arterial pressure, which is increased due to the excess volume of blood shunted into the pulmonary circulation. If the condition is not corrected, this extra workload on the heart eventually leads to heart failure and premature death.

- A transplanted heart that does not have any innervation adjusts the cardiac output to meet the body's changing needs by means of both intrinsic control (the Frank–Starling mechanism) and extrinsic hormonal influences (such as the effect of epinephrine on the rate and strength of cardiac contraction).
- In left bundle-branch block, the right ventricle becomes completely depolarized more rapidly than the left ventricle. As a result, the right ventricle contracts before the left ventricle, and the right AV valve is forced closed prior to closure of the left AV valve. Because the two AV valves do not close in unison, the first heart sound is “split”; that is, two distinct sounds in close succession can be detected as closure of the left valve lags behind closure of the right valve.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 259.)

The most likely diagnosis is atrial fibrillation. This condition is characterized by rapid, irregular, uncoordinated depolarizations of the atria. Many of these depolarizations reach the AV node when it is not in its refractory period, thus bringing about frequent ventricular depolarizations and a rapid heartbeat. However, because impulses reach the AV node erratically, the ventricular rhythm and thus the heartbeat are irregular, as well as rapid.

Ventricular filling is only slightly reduced despite the fibrillating atria being unable to pump blood, because most ventricular filling occurs during diastole prior to atrial contraction. Because of the erratic heartbeat, variable lengths of time are available between ventricular beats for ventricular filling. However, the majority of ventricular filling occurs early in ventricular diastole after the AV valves first open, so even though the filling period may be shortened, the extent of filling may be near normal. Only when the ventricular filling period is very short is ventricular filling substantially reduced.

Cardiac output, which depends on stroke volume and heart rate, usually is not seriously impaired with atrial fibrillation. Because ventricular filling is only slightly reduced during most cardiac cycles, stroke volume, as determined by the Frank–Starling mechanism, is likewise only slightly reduced. Only when the ventricular filling period is very short and the cardiac muscle fibers are operating on the lower end of their length–tension curve is the resultant ventricular contraction weak. When the ventricular contraction becomes too weak, the ventricles eject a small or no stroke volume. During most cardiac cycles, however, the slight reduction in stroke volume is often offset by the increased heart rate, so cardiac output is usually near normal. Furthermore, if the mean arterial blood pressure falls because the cardiac output does decrease, increased sympathetic stimulation of the heart brought about by the baroreceptor reflex helps restore cardiac output to normal by shifting the Frank–Starling curve to the left.

On those cycles when ventricular contractions are too weak to eject enough blood to produce a palpable wrist pulse, if the heart rate is determined directly, either by the apex beat or via the ECG, and the pulse rate is taken concurrently at the wrist, the heart rate will exceed the pulse rate, producing a pulse deficit.

## Chapter 10 The Blood Vessels and Blood Pressure

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 294.)

- T
- F
- T
- T
- F
- T
- a, c, d, e, f
1. a, 2. a, 3. b, 4. a, 5. b
1. b, 2. a, 3. b, 4. a, 5. a, 6. a, 7. b, 8. a, 9. b, 10. a, 11. b, 12. a, 13. a

### POINTS TO PONDER

#### (Questions on p. 295.)

- An elastic support stocking increases external pressure on the remaining veins in the limb to produce a favorable pressure gradient that promotes venous return to the heart and minimizes swelling that would result from fluid retention in the extremity.
- 125 mm Hg
  - 77 mm Hg
  - 48 mm Hg; that is,  $125 \text{ mm Hg} - 77 \text{ mm Hg} = 48 \text{ mm Hg}$
  - 93 mm Hg; that is,  $77 \text{ mm Hg} + (1/3)48 \text{ mm Hg} = 77 \text{ mm Hg} + 16 \text{ mm Hg} = 93 \text{ mm Hg}$
  - no. No blood would be able to get through the brachial artery, so no sound would be heard.
  - yes. Blood would flow through the brachial artery when the arterial pressure was between 118 and 125 mm Hg and would not flow through when the arterial pressure fell below 118 mm Hg. The turbulence created by this intermittent blood flow would produce sounds.
  - no. Blood would flow continuously through the brachial artery in smooth, laminar fashion, so no sound would be heard.
- The classmate has apparently fainted because of insufficient blood flow to the brain as a result of pooling of blood in the lower extremities brought about by standing still for a prolonged time during the laboratory experiment. When the person faints and assumes a horizontal position, the pooled blood will quickly be returned to the heart, improving cardiac output and blood flow to his brain. Trying to get the person up would be counterproductive, so the classmate trying to get him up should be advised to let him remain lying down until he recovers on his own.
- The drug is apparently causing the arteriolar smooth muscle to relax by causing the release of a local vasoactive chemical mediator from the endothelial cells that induces relaxation of the underlying smooth muscle.
  - Because activation of  $\alpha_1$ -adrenergic receptors in vascular smooth muscle brings about vasoconstriction,

- tion, blockage of  $\alpha_1$ -adrenergic receptors reduces vasoconstrictor activity, thereby lowering the total peripheral resistance and arterial blood pressure.
- Because activation of  $\beta_1$ -adrenergic receptors, which are found primarily in the heart, increases the rate and strength of cardiac contraction, drugs that block  $\beta_1$ -adrenergic receptors reduce cardiac output and thus arterial blood pressure by decreasing the rate and strength of the heart beat.
  - Drugs that directly relax arteriolar smooth muscle lower arterial blood pressure by promoting arteriolar vasodilation and reducing total peripheral resistance.
  - Diuretic drugs reduce the plasma volume, thereby lowering arterial blood pressure, by increasing urinary output. Salt and water that normally would have been retained in the plasma are excreted in the urine.
  - Because sympathetic activity promotes generalized arteriolar vasoconstriction, thereby increasing total peripheral resistance and arterial blood pressure, drugs that block the release of norepinephrine from sympathetic endings lower blood pressure by preventing this sympathetic vasoconstrictor effect.
  - Similarly, drugs that act on the brain to reduce sympathetic output lower blood pressure by preventing the effect of sympathetic activity on promoting arteriolar vasoconstriction and the resultant increase in total peripheral resistance and arterial blood pressure.
  - Drugs that block  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels reduce the entry of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the vascular smooth-muscle cells from the ECF in response to excitatory input. Because the level of contractile activity in vascular smooth-muscle cells depends on their cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration, drugs that block  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels reduce the contractile activity of these cells by reducing  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  entry and lowering their cytosolic  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  concentration. Total peripheral resistance and, accordingly, arterial blood pressure are decreased as a result of reduced arteriolar contractile activity.
  - Drugs that interfere with the production of angiotensin II block activation of the hormonal pathway that promotes salt and water conservation (the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system). As a result, more salt and water are lost in the urine, and less fluid is retained in the plasma. The resultant reduction in plasma volume lowers the arterial blood pressure.
  - Drugs that block angiotensin receptors prevent angiotensin II from causing arteriolar vasoconstriction, thereby decreasing total peripheral resistance, and reduce the action of the salt- and water-conserving renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system, thereby decreasing plasma volume. Together, these effects lower arterial blood pressure.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 296.)

The abnormally elevated levels of epinephrine found with a pheochromocytoma bring about secondary hypertension by (1) increasing the heart rate; (2) increasing cardiac contrac-

tility, which increases stroke volume; (3) causing venous vasoconstriction, which increases venous return and subsequently stroke volume by means of the Frank–Starling mechanism; and (4) causing arteriolar vasoconstriction, which increases total peripheral resistance. Increased heart rate and stroke volume both lead to increased cardiac output. Increased cardiac output and increased total peripheral resistance both lead to increased arterial blood pressure.

## Chapter 11 The Blood and Body Defenses

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 341.)

- F
- T
- F
- F
- F
- F
- T
- toll-like receptors
- opsonin
- cytokines
- d
- a
- b
1. e, 2. c, 3. b, 4. d, 5. g, 6. f, 7. a, 8. h
1. c, 2. d, 3. a, 4. b
1. a, 2. a, 3. b, 4. b, 5. c, 6. c, 7. b, 8. a, 9. b, 10. b, 11. a, 12. b

### POINTS TO PONDER

#### (Questions on p. 342.)

- If the genes that direct fetal hemoglobin F synthesis could be reactivated in a patient with sickle cell anemia, a portion of the abnormal hemoglobin S that causes the erythrocytes to warp into defective sickle-shaped cells would be replaced by “healthy” hemoglobin F, thus sparing a portion of the RBCs from premature rupture. Hemoglobin F would not completely replace hemoglobin S because the gene for synthesis of hemoglobin S would still be active.
- Most heart-attack deaths are attributable to the formation of abnormal clots that prevent normal blood flow. The sought-after chemicals in the “saliva” of blood-sucking creatures are agents that break up or prevent the formation of these abnormal clots.

Although genetically engineered tissue–plasminogen activator (tPA) is already being used as a clot-busting drug, this agent brings about degradation of fibrinogen, as well as fibrin. Thus, even though the life-threatening clot in the coronary circulation is dissolved, the fibrinogen supplies in the blood are depleted for up to 24 hours until new fibrinogen is synthesized by the liver. If the patient sustains a

ruptured vessel in the interim, insufficient fibrinogen might be available to form a blood-staunching clot. For example, many patients treated with tPA suffer hemorrhagic strokes within 24 hours of treatment due to incomplete sealing of a ruptured cerebral vessel. Therefore, scientists are searching for better alternatives to combat abnormal clot formation by examining the naturally occurring chemicals produced by blood-sucking creatures that permit them to suck a victim's blood without the blood clotting.

- Failure of the thymus to develop embryonically would lead to an absence of T lymphocytes and no cell-mediated immunity after birth. This outcome would seriously compromise the individual's ability to defend against viral invasion and cancer.
- Researchers are working on ways to "teach" the immune system to view foreign tissue as "self" as a means of preventing the immune systems of organ transplant patients from rejecting the foreign tissue while leaving the patients' immune defense capabilities fully intact. The immunosuppressive drugs currently being used to prevent transplant rejection cripple the recipients' immune defense systems, leaving the patients more vulnerable to microbial invasion.
- The skin cells visible on the body surface are all dead.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 343.)

- Heather's firstborn Rh-positive child did not have hemolytic disease of the newborn, because the fetal and maternal blood did not mix during gestation. Consequently, Heather did not produce any maternal antibodies against the fetus's Rh factor during gestation.
- Because a small amount of the infant's blood likely entered the maternal circulation during the birthing process, Heather would produce antibodies against the Rh factor as she was first exposed to it at that time. During any subsequent pregnancies with Rh-positive fetuses, Heather's maternal antibodies against the Rh factor could cross the placental barrier and bring about destruction of fetal erythrocytes.
- If any Rh factor that accidentally mixed with the maternal blood during the birthing process were immediately tied up by Rh immunoglobulin administered to the mother, the Rh factor would not be available to induce maternal antibody production. Thus, no anti-Rh antibodies would be present in the maternal blood to threaten the RBCs of an Rh-positive fetus in a subsequent pregnancy. (The exogenously administered Rh immunoglobulin, being a passive form of immunity, is short lived. In contrast, the active immunity that would result if Heather were exposed to Rh factor would be long lived because of the formation of memory cells.)
- Rh immunoglobulin must be administered following the birth of every Rh-positive child Heather bears to sop up any Rh factor before it can induce antibody production. Once an immune attack against Rh factor is launched, subsequent treatment with Rh immunoglobulin will not reverse the situation. Thus, if Heather were not treated

with Rh immunoglobulin following the birth of a first Rh-positive child, and a second Rh-positive child developed hemolytic disease of the newborn, administration of Rh immunoglobulin following the second birth would not prevent the condition in a third Rh-positive child. Nothing could be done to eliminate the maternal antibodies already present.

## Chapter 12 The Respiratory System

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 378.)

- F
- F
- T
- F
- F
- F
- transmural pressure gradient, pulmonary surfactant action
- pulmonary elasticity, alveolar surface tension
- compliance
- elastic recoil
- carbonic anhydrase
- a
1. d, 2. a, 3. b, 4. a, 5. b, 6. a
- a. <, b. >, c. =, d. =, e. =, f. =, g. >, h., <, i. approximately =, j. approximately =, k. =, l. =

### POINTS TO PONDER

#### (Questions on p. 379.)

- Total atmospheric pressure decreases with increasing altitude, yet the percentage of  $O_2$  in the air remains the same. At an altitude of 30,000 feet, the atmospheric pressure is only 226 mm Hg. Because 21% of atmospheric air consists of  $O_2$ , the  $P_{O_2}$  of inspired air at 30,000 feet is only 47.5 mm Hg, and alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  is even lower: around 20 mm Hg. At this low  $P_{O_2}$ , hemoglobin is only about 30% saturated with  $O_2$ —much too low to sustain tissue needs for  $O_2$ .  
The  $P_{O_2}$  of inspired air can be increased by two means when flying at high altitude. First, by pressurizing the plane's interior to a pressure comparable to that of atmospheric pressure at sea level, the  $P_{O_2}$  of inspired air within the plane is 21% of 760 mm Hg, or the normal 160 mm Hg. Accordingly, alveolar and arterial  $P_{O_2}$  and percent hemoglobin saturation are likewise normal. In the emergency situation of failure to maintain internal cabin pressure, breathing pure  $O_2$  can raise the  $P_{O_2}$  considerably above that accomplished by breathing normal air. When a person is breathing pure  $O_2$ , the entire pressure of inspired air is attributable to  $O_2$ . For example, with a total atmospheric pressure of 226 mm Hg at an altitude of 30,000 feet, the  $P_{O_2}$  of inspired pure  $O_2$  is 226 mm Hg, which is more than adequate to maintain normal arterial hemoglobin saturation.

2. a. Hypercapnia would not accompany the hypoxia associated with cyanide poisoning. In fact,  $\text{CO}_2$  levels decline, because oxidative metabolism is blocked by the tissue poisons so that  $\text{CO}_2$  is not being produced.
  - b. Hypercapnia could but may not accompany the hypoxia associated with pulmonary edema. Pulmonary diffusing capacity is reduced in pulmonary edema, but  $\text{O}_2$  transfer suffers more than  $\text{CO}_2$  transfer because  $\text{CO}_2$  is more soluble than  $\text{O}_2$  in the body fluids; thus,  $\text{CO}_2$  diffuses more rapidly than  $\text{O}_2$ . Therefore, the blood is more likely to have equilibrated with alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  than with alveolar  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  by the end of the pulmonary capillaries. As a result, hypoxia occurs more readily than hypercapnia in these circumstances.
  - c. Hypercapnia would accompany the hypoxia associated with restrictive lung disease because ventilation is inadequate to meet the metabolic needs for both  $\text{O}_2$  delivery and  $\text{CO}_2$  removal. The  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  exchange between the lungs and the atmosphere are equally affected.
  - d. Hypercapnia would not accompany the hypoxia associated with high altitude. In fact, arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  levels actually decrease. One of the compensatory responses in acclimatization to high altitudes is reflex stimulation of ventilation as a result of the reduction in arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ . This compensatory hyperventilation to obtain more  $\text{O}_2$  blows off too much  $\text{CO}_2$  in the process, so arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  levels decline below normal.
  - e. Hypercapnia would not accompany the hypoxia associated with severe anemia. Reduced  $\text{O}_2$ -carrying capacity of the blood has no influence on blood  $\text{CO}_2$  content, so arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  levels are normal.
  - f. Hypercapnia would exist in accompaniment with circulatory hypoxia associated with congestive heart failure. Just as the diminished blood flow fails to deliver adequate  $\text{O}_2$  to the tissues, it also fails to remove sufficient  $\text{CO}_2$ .
  - g. Hypercapnia would accompany the hypoxic hypoxia associated with obstructive lung disease because ventilation would be inadequate to meet the metabolic needs for both  $\text{O}_2$  delivery and  $\text{CO}_2$  removal. The  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  exchange between the lungs and the atmosphere would be equally affected.
3.  $P_{\text{O}_2} = 122 \text{ mm Hg}$   
 $0.21(\text{atmospheric pressure} - \text{partial pressure of H}_2\text{O})$   
 $= 0.21(630 \text{ mm Hg} - 47 \text{ mm Hg})$   
 $= 0.21(583 \text{ mm Hg})$   
 $= 122 \text{ mm Hg}$
  4. Voluntarily hyperventilating before going underwater lowers the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  but does not increase the  $\text{O}_2$  content in the blood. Because the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  is below normal, the person can hold his or her breath longer than usual before the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  increases to the point that the swimmer is driven to surface for a breath. Therefore, the person can stay underwater longer. The risk, however, is that the  $\text{O}_2$  content of the blood, which was normal, not increased, before going underwater, continues to fall. Therefore, the  $\text{O}_2$  level in the blood can fall dangerously low before the  $\text{CO}_2$  level builds to the point of driving the person to take a breath. Low arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  does not stimulate respiratory activity until it has plummeted to 60 mm Hg. Meanwhile, the person may lose consciousness and drown due to inadequate  $\text{O}_2$  delivery to the brain. If the person does not hyperventilate so that both the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and the  $\text{O}_2$  content are normal before going underwater, the buildup of  $\text{CO}_2$  will drive the person to the surface for a breath before the  $\text{O}_2$  levels fall to a dangerous point.
5. c. The arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  will be less than the alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ , and the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  will be greater than the alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ . Because pulmonary diffusing capacity is reduced, arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  and  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  do not equilibrate with alveolar  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  and  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ .  
 If the person is administered 100%  $\text{O}_2$ , the alveolar  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  will increase; the arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  will increase accordingly. Even though arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  will not equilibrate with alveolar  $P_{\text{O}_2}$ , it will be higher than when the person is breathing atmospheric air.  
 The arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  will remain the same whether the person is administered 100%  $\text{O}_2$  or is breathing atmospheric air. The alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and thus the blood-to-alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  gradient are not changed by breathing 100%  $\text{O}_2$  because the  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  in atmospheric air and 100%  $\text{O}_2$  are both essentially zero ( $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  in atmospheric air = 0.23 mm Hg).

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 379.)

Emphysema is characterized by a collapse of smaller respiratory airways and a breakdown of alveolar walls. Because of the collapse of smaller airways, airway resistance is increased with emphysema. As with other chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases, expiration is impaired to a greater extent than inspiration because airways are naturally dilated slightly more during inspiration than during expiration as a result of the greater transmural pressure gradient during inspiration. Because airway resistance is increased, a patient with emphysema must produce larger-than-normal intra-alveolar pressure changes to accomplish a normal tidal volume. Unlike quiet breathing in a normal person, the accessory inspiratory muscles (neck muscles) and the muscles of active expiration (abdominal muscles and internal intercostal muscles) must be brought into play to inspire and expire a normal tidal volume of air.

The spiogram would be characteristic of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Because the patient experiences more difficulty emptying the lungs than filling them, the total lung capacity would be essentially normal, but the functional residual capacity and the residual volume would be elevated as a result of the additional air trapped in the lungs following expiration. Because the residual volume is increased, the inspiratory capacity and vital capacity will be reduced. Also, the  $\text{FEV}_1$  will be markedly reduced because the airflow rate is decreased by the airway obstruction.

Because of the reduced surface area for exchange as a result of a breakdown of alveolar walls, gas exchange would be impaired. Therefore, arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  would be elevated and arterial  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  would be reduced compared to normal.

Ironically, administering  $O_2$  to this patient to relieve his hypoxic condition would markedly depress his drive to breathe by elevating the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  and removing the primary driving stimulus for respiration. Because of this danger,  $O_2$  therapy either should not be administered or should be administered extremely cautiously.

## Chapter 13 The Urinary System

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

(Questions on p. 414.)

1. F
2. F
3. T
4. T
5. nephron
6. potassium
7. 500
8. d
9. b
10. b, e, a, d, c
11. c, e, d, a, b, f
12. g, c, d, a, f, b, e
13. 1. a, 2. a, 3. c, 4. b, 5. d

### POINTS TO PONDER

(Questions on p. 415.)

1. The longer loops of Henle in desert rats (known as *kangaroo rats*) permit a greater magnitude of counter-current multiplication and thus a larger medullary vertical osmotic gradient. As a result, these rodents can produce urine that is concentrated up to an osmolarity of almost 6000 mOsm, which is five times more concentrated than maximally concentrated human urine at 1200 mOsm. Because of this tremendous concentrating ability, kangaroo rats never have to drink; the  $H_2O$  produced metabolically within their cells during oxidation of foodstuff ( $food + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O + energy$ ) is sufficient for their needs.
2. a. 250 mg/min filtered  

$$\begin{aligned} \text{filtered load of substance} &= \text{plasma concentration} \\ &\quad \text{of substance} \times \text{GFR} \\ &= 200 \text{ mg}/100 \text{ ml} \times 125 \text{ ml}/\text{min} \\ &= 250 \text{ mg}/\text{min} \end{aligned}$$
 b. 200 mg/min reabsorbed. A  $T_m$  worth of the substance will be reabsorbed.  
 c. 50 mg/min excreted  

$$\begin{aligned} \text{amount of substance excreted} &= \text{amount of substance} \\ &\quad \text{filtered} - \text{amount of substance reabsorbed} \\ &= 250 \text{ mg}/\text{min} - 200 \text{ mg}/\text{min} \\ &= 50 \text{ mg}/\text{min} \end{aligned}$$
3. Aldosterone stimulates  $Na^+$  reabsorption and  $K^+$  secretion by the renal tubules. Therefore, the most prominent features of Conn's syndrome (hypersecretion of aldosterone) are hypernatremia (elevated  $Na^+$  levels in the blood) caused by excessive  $Na^+$  reabsorption, hypophosphatemia (below-normal  $K^+$  levels in the

blood) caused by excessive  $K^+$  secretion, and hypertension (elevated blood pressure) caused by excessive salt and water retention.

4. e. 300/300. If the ascending limb were permeable to water, it would not be possible to establish a vertical osmotic gradient in the medullary interstitial fluid, nor would the ascending-limb fluid become hypotonic before entering the distal tubule. As the ascending limb pumped NaCl into the interstitial fluid, water would osmotically follow, so both the interstitial fluid and the ascending limb would remain isotonic at 300 mOsm. With the tubular fluid entering the distal tubule being 300 mOsm instead of the normal 100 mOsm, it would not be possible to produce urine with an osmolarity less than 300 mOsm. Likewise, in the absence of the medullary vertical osmotic gradient, it would not be possible to produce urine more concentrated than 300 mOsm, no matter how much vasopressin was present.
5. Because the descending pathways between the brain and the motor neurons supplying the external urethral sphincter and pelvic diaphragm are no longer intact, the accident victim can no longer voluntarily control micturition. Therefore, bladder emptying in this individual will be governed entirely by the micturition reflex.

### CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

(Question on p. 415.)

prostate enlargement

## Chapter 14 Fluid and Acid–Base Balance

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

(Questions on p. 435.)

1. T
2. F
3. F
4. intracellular fluid
5.  $[H_2CO_3]$ ,  $[HCO_3^-]$
6. c
7. a, c
8. b, d
9. c
10. 1. c, 2. d, 3. b, 4. a

### POINTS TO PONDER

(Questions on p. 435.)

1. The rate of urine formation increases when alcohol inhibits vasopressin secretion and the kidneys are unable to reabsorb water from the distal and collecting tubules. Because extra free water that normally would have been reabsorbed from the distal parts of the tubule is lost from the body in the urine, the body becomes dehydrated and the ECF osmolarity increases following alcohol consumption. That is, more fluid is lost

in the urine than is consumed in the alcoholic beverage as a result of alcohol's action on vasopressin. Thus, the imbibing person experiences a water deficit and still feels thirsty, despite the recent fluid consumption.

- If a person loses 1500 ml of salt-rich sweat and drinks 1000 ml of water without replacing the salt during the same period, there will still be a volume deficit of 500 ml, and the body fluids will have become hypotonic (the remaining salt in the body will be diluted by the ingestion of 1000 ml of free H<sub>2</sub>O). As a result, the hypothalamic osmoreceptors (the dominant input) will signal the vasopressin-secreting cells to *decrease* vasopressin secretion and thus increase urinary excretion of the extra free water that is making the body fluids too dilute. Simultaneously, the left atrial volume receptors will signal the vasopressin-secreting cells to *increase* vasopressin secretion to conserve water during urine formation and thus help relieve the volume deficit. These two conflicting inputs to the vasopressin-secreting cells are counterproductive. This is why it is important to replace both water and salt following heavy sweating or abnormal loss of other salt-rich fluids. If salt is replaced along with water intake, the ECF osmolarity remains close to normal, and the vasopressin-secreting cells receive signals only to increase vasopressin secretion to help restore the ECF volume to normal.
- When a dextrose solution equal in concentration to that of normal body fluids is injected intravenously, the ECF volume is expanded but the ECF and ICF are still osmotically equal. Therefore, no net movement of water occurs between the ECF and the ICF. When the dextrose enters the cell and is metabolized, however, the ECF becomes hypotonic as this solute leaves the plasma. If the excess free water is not excreted in the urine rapidly enough, water will move into the cells by osmosis.
- A buffer system cannot buffer itself. Consider, for example, the H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer system in the situation in which the plasma [H<sup>+</sup>] is elevated by CO<sub>2</sub> retention from a respiratory problem. This rise in CO<sub>2</sub> drives the reaction  $\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}_2\text{CO}_3 \rightleftharpoons \text{H}^+ + \text{HCO}_3^-$  to the right according to the law of mass action, elevating H<sup>+</sup>. Thus, the increase in [H<sup>+</sup>] occurs as a result of the reaction being driven to the *right* by an increase in CO<sub>2</sub>, so the elevated [H<sup>+</sup>] cannot drive the reaction to the *left* to buffer the increase in [H<sup>+</sup>]. Only if the increase in [H<sup>+</sup>] is brought about by some mechanism other than CO<sub>2</sub> accumulation can this buffer system be shifted to the CO<sub>2</sub> side of the equation and effectively reduce [H<sup>+</sup>]. Likewise, in the opposite situation, the H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer system cannot compensate for a reduction in [H<sup>+</sup>] from a deficit of CO<sub>2</sub> by generating more H<sup>+</sup>-yielding H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> when the problem in the first place is a shortage of H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>-forming CO<sub>2</sub>.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 435.)

The resultant prolonged diarrhea will lead to dehydration and metabolic acidosis due to excessive loss in the feces of fluid and NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, respectively, that normally would have been absorbed into the blood.

Compensatory measures for dehydration have included increased vasopressin secretion, resulting in increased water reabsorption by the distal and collecting tubules and a subsequent reduction in urine output. Simultaneously, fluid intake has been encouraged by increased thirst. The metabolic acidosis has been combated by removal of excess H<sup>+</sup> from the ECF by the HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> member of the H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>:HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> buffer system, by increased ventilation to reduce the amount of acid-forming CO<sub>2</sub> in the body fluids, and by the kidneys excreting extra H<sup>+</sup> and conserving HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>.

## Chapter 15 The Digestive System

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 475.)

- F
- T
- T
- F
- F
- F
- chyme
- three
- vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, bile salts
- bile salts
- b
1. c, 2. e, 3. b, 4. a, 5. f, 6. d
1. c, 2. c, 3. d, 4. a, 5. e, 6. c, 7. a, 8. b, 9. c, 10. b, 11. d, 12. b

### POINTS TO PONDER

#### (Questions on p. 476.)

- Patients who have had their stomachs removed must eat small quantities of food frequently instead of consuming the typical three meals a day because they have lost the ability to store food in the stomach and meter it into the small intestine at an optimal rate. If a person without a stomach consumed a large meal that entered the small intestine all at once, the luminal contents would quickly become too hypertonic, as digestion of the large nutrient molecules into a multitude of small, osmotically active, absorbable units outpaced the more slowly acting process of absorption of these units. As a consequence of this increased luminal osmolarity, water would enter the small intestine lumen from the plasma by osmosis, resulting in circulatory disturbances, as well as intestinal distension. To prevent this "dumping syndrome" from occurring, the patient must "feed" the small intestine only small amounts of food at a time so that absorption of the digestive end products can keep pace with their rate of production. The person has to consciously take over metering the delivery of food into the small intestine because the stomach is no longer present to assume this responsibility.
- The gut-associated lymphoid tissue launches an immune attack against any pathogenic (disease-causing) microorganisms that enter the readily acces-



sible digestive tract and escape destruction by salivary lysozyme or gastric HCl. This action defends against entry of these potential pathogens into the body proper. The large number of immune cells in this tissue is adaptive as a first line of defense against foreign invasion when considering that the surface area of the digestive tract lining represents the largest interface between the body proper and the external environment.

3. Defecation would be accomplished entirely by the defecation reflex in a patient paralyzed from the waist down because of lower spinal cord injury. Voluntary control of the external anal sphincter would be impossible because of interruption in the descending pathway between the primary motor cortex and the motor neuron supplying this sphincter.
4. When insufficient glucuronyl transferase is available in the neonate to conjugate all of the bilirubin produced during erythrocyte degradation with glucuronic acid, the extra unconjugated bilirubin cannot be excreted into the bile. Therefore, this extra bilirubin remains in the body, giving rise to mild jaundice in the newborn.
5. Removal of the stomach leads to pernicious anemia because of the resultant lack of intrinsic factor, which is necessary for absorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>. Removal of the terminal ileum leads to pernicious anemia because this is the only site where vitamin B<sub>12</sub> can be absorbed.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 477.)

A person whose bile duct is blocked by a gallstone experiences a painful “gallbladder attack” after eating a high-fat meal because the ingested fat triggers the release of cholecystokinin (CCK), which stimulates gallbladder contraction. As the gallbladder contracts and bile is squeezed into the blocked bile duct, the duct becomes distended prior to the blockage. This distension is painful.

The feces are grayish white because no bilirubin-containing bile enters the digestive tract when the bile duct is blocked. Bilirubin, when acted on by bacterial enzymes, produces the brown color of feces, which are grayish white in its absence.

## Chapter 16 Energy Balance and Temperature Regulation

### OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

#### (Questions on p. 492.)

1. F
2. F
3. F
4. F
5. T
6. T
7. T
8. T

9. arcuate nucleus
10. shivering
11. nonshivering thermogenesis
12. sweating
13. b
14. e
15. 1. b, 2. a, 3. c, 4. a, 5. d, 6. c, 7. b, 8. d, 9. c, 10. b

### POINTS TO PONDER

#### (Questions on p. 493.)

1. Cholecystokinin (CCK), a hormone released from the duodenal mucosa during digestion of a meal, serves as a satiety signal. That is, it serves as a signal to stop eating when enough food has been consumed to meet the body's energy needs, even though the food is still in the digestive tract. Therefore, when drugs that inhibit CCK release are administered to experimental animals, the animals overeat because this satiety signal is not released.
2. Don't go on a “crash diet.” Be sure to eat a nutritionally balanced diet that provides all essential nutrients, but reduce total caloric intake, especially by cutting down on high-fat foods. Spread out consumption of the food throughout the day instead of just eating several large meals. Avoid bedtime snacks. Burn more calories through a regular exercise program.
3. Engaging in heavy exercise on a hot day is dangerous because of problems arising from trying to eliminate the extra heat generated by the exercising muscles. First, there will be conflicting demands for distribution of the cardiac output—temperature-regulating mechanisms will trigger skin vasodilation to promote heat loss from the skin surface, whereas metabolic changes within the exercising muscles will induce local vasodilation in the muscles to match the increased metabolic needs with increased blood flow. Further exacerbating the problem of conflicting demands for blood flow is the loss of effective circulating plasma volume resulting from the loss of a large volume of fluid through another important cooling mechanism, sweating. Therefore, it is difficult to maintain an effective plasma volume and blood pressure and simultaneously keep the body from overheating when engaging in heavy exercise in the heat, so heat exhaustion is likely to ensue.
4. When a person is soaking in a hot bath, loss of heat by radiation, conduction, convection, and evaporation is limited to the small surface area of the body exposed to the cooler air. Heat is being gained by conduction at the larger skin surface area exposed to the hotter water.
5. The thermoconforming fish would not run a fever when it has a systemic infection because it has no mechanisms for regulating internal heat production or for controlling heat exchange with its environment. The fish's body temperature varies capriciously with the external environment whether it has a systemic infection or not. It cannot maintain body temperature at a “normal” set point or an elevated set point (i.e., a fever).

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 493.)

Cooled tissues need less nourishment than they do at normal body temperature because of their pronounced reduction in metabolic activity. The lower  $O_2$  need of cooled tissues accounts for the occasional survival of drowning victims who have been submerged in icy water considerably longer than they could normally survive without  $O_2$ .

## Chapter 17 The Endocrine System

## OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

### (Questions on p. 542.)

1. F
2. T
3. T
4. T
5. T
6. F
7. tropic
8. suprachiasmatic nucleus
9. epiphyseal plate
10. colloid, thyroglobulin
11. glycogenesis, glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis
12. bone, kidneys, digestive tract
13. osteoblasts, osteoclasts, osteocytes
14. 1. c, 2. b, 3. b, 4. a, 5. a, 6. c, 7. b
15. 1. glucose, 2. glycogen, 3. free fatty acids, 4. triglycerides, 5. amino acids, 6. body proteins

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Questions on p. 543.)

1. Males with testicular feminization syndrome would be unusually tall because of the inability of testosterone to promote closure of the epiphyseal plates of the long bones in the absence of testosterone receptors.
2. Hormonal replacement therapy following pituitary gland removal should include thyroid hormone (the thyroid gland will not produce sufficient thyroid hormone in the absence of TSH) and glucocorticoid (because of the absence of ACTH), especially in stress situations. If indicated, male or female sex hormones can be replaced, even though these hormones are not essential for survival. For example, testosterone in males plays an important role in libido. Growth hormone and prolactin need not be replaced, because their absence will produce no serious consequences in this individual. Vasopressin may have to be replaced if the blood picks up insufficient quantities of this hormone at the hypothalamus in the absence of the posterior pituitary.
3. Because the soil in the midwestern United States is iodine poor, this region was once considered an endemic goiter belt because of the propensity of its residents to develop goiters as a result of consuming too

little iodine to produce sufficient thyroid hormone.

*Endemic* means peculiar to a particular locality. The Midwest is no longer an endemic goiter belt even though the soil is still iodine poor, because individuals living in this region obtain iodine from iodine-supplemented nutrients, such as iodinated salt, and from seafood and other naturally iodine-rich foods shipped from coastal regions.

4. An infection elicits the stress response, which brings about increased secretion of cortisol and epinephrine, both of which increase the blood glucose level. This can become a problem in managing the blood glucose level of a diabetic patient. When the blood glucose is elevated too high, the patient can reduce it by injecting additional insulin or, preferably, by reducing carbohydrate intake, exercising to use up some of the extra blood glucose, or both. In a normal individual, the check-and-balance system between insulin and other hormones that oppose insulin's actions helps maintain the blood glucose within reasonable limits during the stress response.
5. The presence of Chvostek's sign results from increased neuromuscular excitability caused by moderate hyposecretion of parathyroid hormone.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 543.)

"Diabetes of bearded ladies" is descriptive of both excess cortisol and excess adrenal androgen secretion. Excess cortisol secretion causes hyperglycemia and glucosuria. Glucosuria promotes osmotic diuresis, which leads to dehydration and a compensatory increased sensation of thirst. All these symptoms—hyperglycemia, glucosuria, polyuria, and polydipsia—mimic diabetes mellitus. Excess adrenal androgen secretion in females promotes masculinizing characteristics, such as beard growth. Simultaneous hypersecretion of both cortisol and adrenal androgen most likely occurs secondary to excess CRH or ACTH secretion, because ACTH stimulates both cortisol and androgen production by the adrenal cortex.

## Chapter 18 The Reproductive System

## OBJECTIVE QUESTIONS

### (Questions on p. 589.)

1. T
2. T
3. T
4. F
5. T
6. F
7. T
8. seminiferous tubules, FSH, testosterone
9. corpus luteum of pregnancy, placenta
10. human chorionic gonadotropin
11. c

12. e  
13. 1. c, 2. a, 3. b, 4. c, 5. a, 6. a, 7. c, 8. b, 9. e  
14. 1. a, 2. c, 3. b, 4. a, 5. a, 6. b

## POINTS TO PONDER

### (Questions on p. 590.)

1. The anterior pituitary responds only to the normal pulsatile pattern of GnRH and does not secrete gonadotropins in response to continuous exposure to GnRH. In the absence of FSH and LH secretion, ovulation and other events of the ovarian cycle do not ensue, so continuous GnRH administration may find use as a contraceptive technique.
2. Testosterone hypersecretion in a young boy causes premature closure of the epiphyseal plates so that he stops growing before he reaches his genetic potential for height. The child would also display signs of precocious pseudopuberty, characterized by premature development of secondary sexual characteristics, such as deep voice, beard, enlarged penis, and sex drive.
3. A potentially troublesome side effect of drugs that inhibit sympathetic nervous system activity as part of the treatment for high blood pressure is males' inability to carry out the sex act. Both divisions of the autonomic nervous system are required for the male sex act. Parasympathetic activity is essential for accomplishing

erection, and sympathetic activity is important for ejaculation.

4. Posterior pituitary extract contains an abundance of stored oxytocin, which can be administered to induce or facilitate labor by increasing uterine contractility. Exogenous oxytocin is most successful in inducing labor if the woman is near term, presumably because of the increasing concentration of myometrial oxytocin receptors at that time.
5. GnRH or FSH and LH are not effective in treating the symptoms of menopause because the ovaries are no longer responsive to the gonadotropins. Thus, treatment with these hormones would not cause estrogen and progesterone secretion. In fact, GnRH, FSH, and LH levels are already elevated in postmenopausal women because of lack of negative feedback by the ovarian hormones.

## CLINICAL CONSIDERATION

### (Question on p. 590.)

The first warning of a tubal pregnancy is pain caused by stretching of the oviduct by the growing embryo. A tubal pregnancy must be surgically terminated because the oviduct cannot expand as the uterus does to accommodate the growing embryo. If not removed, the enlarging embryo will rupture the oviduct, causing possibly lethal hemorrhage.

# Glossary

**A band** One of the dark bands that alternate with light (I) bands to create a striated appearance in a skeletal or cardiac muscle fiber when these fibers are viewed with a light microscope

**absorption** The transfer of digested nutrients and ingested liquids from the digestive tract lumen into the blood or lymph

**absorptive state** The metabolic state following a meal when nutrients are being absorbed and stored; fed state

**accessory digestive organs** Exocrine organs outside the wall of the digestive tract that empty their secretions through ducts into the digestive tract lumen

**accessory sex glands** Glands that empty their secretions into the reproductive tract

**accommodation** The ability to adjust the strength of the lens in the eye so that both near and far sources can be focused on the retina

**acetylcholine (ACh)** (as' -uh-teal-KŌ -lĕn) The neurotransmitter released from all autonomic preganglionic fibers, parasympathetic postganglionic fibers, and motor neurons

**acetylcholinesterase (AChE)** (as' -uh-teal-kŏ-luh-NES-tuh-rās) An enzyme present in the motor end-plate membrane of a skeletal muscle fiber that inactivates acetylcholine

**ACh** See *acetylcholine*

**AChE** See *acetylcholinesterase*

**acid** A hydrogen-containing substance that yields a free hydrogen ion and anion on dissociation

**acidosis** (as-i-DŌ-sus) Blood pH of less than 7.35

**acini** (ĀS-i-nī) The secretory component of saclike exocrine glands, such as digestive enzyme-producing pancreatic glands or milk-producing mammary glands

**acquired immune responses** Responses that are selectively targeted against particular foreign material to which the body has previously been exposed; see also *antibody-mediated immunity* and *cell-mediated immunity*

**ACTH** See *adrenocorticotrophic hormone*

**actin** The contractile protein forming the backbone of the thin filaments in muscle fibers

**action potential** A brief, rapid, large change in membrane potential that serves as a long-distance electrical signal in an excitable cell

**active expiration** Emptying of the lungs more completely than when at rest by contracting the expiratory muscles; also called *forced expiration*

**active force** A force that requires expenditure of cellular energy (ATP) in the transport of a substance across the plasma membrane

**active reabsorption** When any one of the five steps in the transepithelial transport of a substance reabsorbed across the kidney tubules requires energy expenditure

**active transport** Active carrier-mediated transport involving transport of a substance against its concentration gradient across the plasma membrane

**acuity** Discriminative ability; the ability to discern between two different points of stimulation

**adaptation** A reduction in receptor potential despite sustained stimulation of the same magnitude

**adenosine diphosphate (ADP)** (uh-DEN-uh-sĕn) The two-phosphate product formed from the splitting of ATP to yield energy for the cell's use

**adenosine triphosphate (ATP)** The body's common energy "currency," which consists of an adenosine with three phosphate groups attached; splitting of the high-energy, terminal phosphate bond provides energy to power cellular activities

**adenylyl cyclase** (ah-DEN-il-il sī-klās) The membrane-bound enzyme activated by a G protein intermediary in response to binding of an extracellular messenger with a surface membrane receptor that, in turn, activates cyclic AMP, an intracellular second messenger

**adequate stimulus** The type of stimulus to which a specific receptor type responds, such as a photoreceptor responding to light

**ADH** See *vasopressin*

**adipocytes** Fat cells in adipose tissue; store triglyceride fat and secrete hormones termed *adipokines*

**adipokines** Hormones secreted by adipose tissue that play important roles in energy balance and metabolism

**adipose tissue** The tissue specialized for storage of triglyceride fat; found under the skin in the hypodermis

**ADP** See *adenosine diphosphate*

**adrenal cortex** (uh-DRĒ-nul) The outer portion of the adrenal gland; secretes three classes of steroid hormones: glucocorticoids, mineralocorticoids, and sex hormones

**adrenal medulla** (muh-DUL-uh) The inner portion of the adrenal gland; secretes the hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine into the blood in response to sympathetic stimulation

**adrenergic fibers** (ad' -ruh-NUR-jik) Nerve fibers that release norepinephrine as their neurotransmitter

**adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)** (ad-rĕ'-nŏ-kor' -tuh-kŏ-TRŌP-ik) An anterior pituitary hormone that stimulates cortisol secretion by the adrenal cortex and promotes growth of the adrenal cortex

**aerobic** Referring to a condition in which oxygen is available

**aerobic exercise** Exercise that can be supported by ATP formation accomplished by oxidative phosphorylation because adequate O<sub>2</sub> is available to support the muscle's modest energy demands; also called *endurance-type exercise*

**afferent arteriole** (AF-er-ent ar-TIR-ĕ-ŏl) The vessel that carries blood into the glomerulus of the kidney's nephron

**afferent division** The portion of the peripheral nervous system that carries information from the periphery to the central nervous system

**afferent neuron** Neuron that possesses a sensory receptor at its peripheral ending and carries information to the central nervous system

**after hyperpolarization** (hī' -pur-pŏ-luh-ruh-ZĀ-shun) A slight, transient hyperpolarization that sometimes occurs at the end of an action potential

**agonist** A substance that binds to a neurotransmitter's receptors and mimics the neurotransmitter's response

**agranulocytes** (ā-GRAN-yuh-lŏ-sīts') Leukocytes that do not contain granules, including lymphocytes and monocytes

**albumin** (al-BEW-min) The smallest and most abundant plasma proteins; binds and transports many water-insoluble substances in the blood; contributes extensively to plasma-colloid osmotic pressure

**aldosterone** (al-dŏ-steer-OWN) or (al-DOS-tuh-rŏn) The adrenocortical hormone that stimulates Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption by the distal and collecting tubules of the kidney's nephron during urine formation

**alkalosis** (al' -kuh-LŌ-sus) Blood pH of greater than 7.45

**allergy** Acquisition of an inappropriate specific immune reactivity to a normally harmless environmental substance

**all-or-none law** An excitable membrane either responds to a stimulus with a maximal action potential that spreads nondcrementally throughout the membrane or does not respond with an action potential at all

**alpha (α) cells** The endocrine pancreatic cells that secrete the hormone glucagon

**alpha motor neuron** A motor neuron that innervates ordinary skeletal muscle fibers

**alveolar surface tension** (al-VĒ-ŏ-lur) The surface tension of the fluid lining the alveoli in the lungs; see *surface tension*

**alveolar ventilation** The volume of air exchanged between the atmosphere and alveoli per minute; alveolar ventilation = (tidal volume - dead space volume) × respiratory rate

**alveoli** (al-VĒ-ŏ-li) The air sacs across which O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> are exchanged between the blood and air in the lungs

**amines** (AH-mĕnz) Hormones derived from the amino acid tyrosine, including thyroid hormone and catecholamines

**amoeboid movement** (uh-MĒ-boid) "Crawling" movement of white blood cells, similar to the means by which amoebas move

**anabolism** (ah-NAB-ŏ-li-zum) The buildup, or synthesis, of larger organic molecules from small organic molecular subunits

**anaerobic** (an' -uh-RŌ-bik) Referring to a condition in which oxygen is not present

**anaerobic exercise** High-intensity exercise that can be supported by ATP formation accomplished by anaerobic glycolysis for brief periods of time when O<sub>2</sub> delivery to a muscle is inadequate to support oxidative phosphorylation

**analgesic** (an-al-JĒ-zic) Pain relieving

**anatomy** The study of body structure

**androgen** A masculinizing “male” sex hormone; includes testosterone from the testes and dehydroepiandrosterone from the adrenal cortex

**anemia** A reduction below normal in O<sub>2</sub>-carrying capacity of the blood

**anion** (AN-i-on) Negatively charged ion that has gained one or more electrons in its outer shell

**ANP** See *atrial natriuretic peptide*

**antagonism** Actions opposing each other; in the case of hormones, when one hormone causes the loss of another hormone’s receptors, reducing the effectiveness of the second hormone

**antagonist** A substance that blocks a neurotransmitter’s receptor, thus preventing the neurotransmitter from binding and producing a response

**anterior pituitary** The glandular portion of the pituitary that synthesizes, stores, and secretes growth hormone, TSH, ACTH, FSH, LH, and prolactin

**antibody** An immunoglobulin produced by a specific activated B lymphocyte (plasma cell) against a particular antigen; binds with the specific antigen against which it is produced and promotes the antigenic invader’s destruction by augmenting nonspecific immune responses already initiated against the antigen

**antibody-mediated immunity** A specific immune response accomplished by antibody production by B cells

**antidiuretic hormone (ADH)** (an’-ti-di’-yū-RET-ik) See *vasopressin*

**antigen** A large, complex molecule that triggers a specific immune response against itself when it gains entry into the body

**antioxidant** A substance that helps inactivate biologically damaging free radicals

**antiport** The form of secondary active transport in which the driving ion and transported solute move in opposite directions across the plasma membrane; also called *countertransport* or *exchange*

**antrum (of ovary)** The fluid-filled cavity formed within a developing ovarian follicle

**antrum (of stomach)** The lower portion of the stomach

**aorta** (a-OR-tah) The large vessel that carries blood from the left ventricle

**aortic valve** A one-way valve that permits the flow of blood from the left ventricle into the aorta during ventricular emptying but prevents the backflow of blood from the aorta into the left ventricle during ventricular relaxation

**apoptosis** (ā-pop-TŌ-sis) Programmed cell death; deliberate self-destruction of a cell.

**aquaporin** Water channel

**aqueous humor** (Ā-kwē-us) The clear, watery fluid in the anterior chamber of the eye; provides nourishment for the cornea and lens

**arcuate nucleus** (ARE-kyou-it’) The subcortical brain region housing neurons that secrete appetite-enhancing neuropeptide Y and those that secrete appetite-suppressing melanocortins

**aromatase** An enzyme that converts testosterone to estrogen outside of the testes

**arterioles** (ar-TIR-ē-ōlz) The highly muscular, high-resistance vessels that branch from arteries, the caliber of which can be changed to regulate the amount of blood distributed to the various tissues

**artery** A vessel that carries blood away from the heart

**ascending tract** A bundle of nerve fibers of similar function that travels up the spinal cord to transmit signals derived from afferent input to the brain

**astrocyte** A type of glial cell in the brain; major functions include holding the neurons together in proper spatial relationship, inducing the brain capillaries to form tight junctions important in the blood–brain barrier, and enhancing synaptic activity

**atmospheric pressure** The pressure exerted by the weight of the air in the atmosphere on objects on Earth’s surface; equals 760 mm Hg at sea level

**ATP** See *adenosine triphosphate*

**ATPase** An enzyme that can split ATP

**ATP synthase** The mitochondrial enzyme that catalyzes the synthesis of ATP from ADP and inorganic phosphate

**atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)** (Ā-trĕ-al NĀ-tree-ur-eh’tik) A peptide hormone released from the cardiac atria that promotes urinary loss of Na<sup>+</sup>

**atrioventricular (AV) node** (ā’t-rĕ-ō-ven-TRIK-yuh-lur) A small bundle of specialized cardiac cells at the junction of the atria and ventricles that is the only site of electrical contact between the atria and ventricles

**atrioventricular (AV) valve** A one-way valve that permits the flow of blood from the atrium to the ventricle during filling of the heart but prevents the backflow of blood from the ventricle to the atrium during emptying of the heart

**atrium (atria, plural)** (Ā-tree-um) An upper chamber of the heart that receives blood from the veins and transfers it to the ventricle

**atrophy** (AH-truh-fĕ) Decrease in mass of an organ

**autoimmune disease** Disease characterized by erroneous production of antibodies against one of the body’s own tissues

**autonomic nervous system** The portion of the efferent division of the peripheral nervous system that innervates smooth and cardiac muscle and exocrine glands; subdivided into the sympathetic and the parasympathetic nervous systems

**autoregulation** The ability of an organ to adjust its own rate of blood flow despite changes in the driving mean arterial blood pressure

**autorhythmicity** The ability of an excitable cell to rhythmically initiate its own action potentials

**AV nodal delay** The delay in impulse transmission between the atria and ventricles at the AV node, which allows enough time for the atria to become completely depolarized and contract, emptying their contents into the ventricles, before ventricular depolarization and contraction occur

**AV valve** See *atrioventricular valve*

**axon** A single, elongated tubular extension of a neuron that conducts action potentials away from the cell body; also known as a *nerve fiber*

**axon hillock** The first portion of a neuronal axon plus the region of the cell body from which the axon leaves; the site of action-potential initiation in most neurons

**axon terminals** The branched endings of a neuronal axon, which release a neurotransmitter that influences target cells in close association with the axon terminals

**balance concept** The balance between input of a substance through ingestion or metabolic production and its output through excretion or metabolic consumption

**baroreceptor reflex** An autonomically mediated reflex response that influences the heart and blood vessels to oppose a change in mean arterial blood pressure

**baroreceptors** Receptors located within the circulatory system that monitor blood pressure

**basal ganglia** See *basal nuclei*

**basal metabolic rate** (BĀ-sul) The minimal waking rate of internal energy expenditure; the body’s “idling speed”

**basal nuclei** Several masses of gray matter located deep within the white matter of the cerebrum of the brain; play an important inhibitory role in motor control

**base** A substance that can combine with a free hydrogen ion and remove it from solution

**basic electrical rhythm (BER)** Self-induced electrical activity of the digestive-tract smooth muscle

**basilar membrane** (BAS-ih-lar) The membrane that forms the floor of the middle compartment of the cochlea and bears the organ of Corti, the sense organ for hearing

**basophils** (BĀY-sō-fills) White blood cells that synthesize, store, and release histamine, which is important in allergic responses, and heparin, which hastens the removal of fat particles from the blood

**BER** See *basic electrical rhythm*

**beta (β) cells** The endocrine pancreatic cells that secrete the hormone insulin

**bicarbonate** (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>) The anion resulting from dissociation of carbonic acid, H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>

**bile** An alkaline solution containing bile salts and bilirubin secreted by the liver, stored in the gallbladder, and emptied into the small intestine lumen

**bile salts** Cholesterol derivatives secreted in the bile that facilitate fat digestion through their detergent action and facilitate fat absorption through their micellar formation

**biliary system** (BIL-ĕ-air’-ĕ) The bile-producing system, consisting of the liver, gallbladder, and associated ducts

**bilirubin** (bill-eh-RŪ-bin) A bile pigment, which is a waste product derived from the degradation of hemoglobin during the breakdown of old red blood cells

**blastocyst** The developmental stage of the fertilized ovum by the time it is ready to implant; consists of a single-layered sphere of cells encircling a fluid-filled cavity

**blood–brain barrier (BBB)** Special structural and functional features of the brain capillaries that limit access of materials from the blood into the brain tissue

**B lymphocytes (B cells)** White blood cells that produce antibodies against specific targets to which they have been exposed

**body of the stomach** The main, or middle, part of the stomach

**body system** A collection of organs that perform related functions and interact to accomplish a common activity that is essential for survival of the whole body; for example, the digestive system

**bone marrow** The soft, highly cellular tissue that fills the internal cavities of bones and is the source of most blood cells

**Bowman's capsule** The beginning of the tubular component of the kidney's nephron that cups around the glomerulus and collects the glomerular filtrate as it is formed

**Boyle's law** (boils) At any constant temperature, the pressure exerted by a gas varies inversely with the volume of the gas

**brain stem** The portion of the brain that is continuous with the spinal cord, serves as an integrating link between the spinal cord and higher brain levels, and controls many life-sustaining processes, such as breathing, circulation, and digestion

**bronchioles** (BRONG-kē-ōlz) The small, branching airways within the lungs

**bronchoconstriction** Narrowing of the respiratory airways

**bronchodilation** Widening of the respiratory airways

**brush border** The collection of microvilli projecting from the luminal border of epithelial cells lining the digestive tract and kidney tubules

**buffer** See *chemical buffer system*

**bulbourethral glands** (bul-bō-you-RĒTH-ral) Male accessory sex glands that secrete mucus for lubrication

**bulk flow** Movement in bulk of a protein-free plasma across the capillary walls between the blood and surrounding interstitial fluid; encompasses ultrafiltration and reabsorption

**bundle of His** (hiss) A tract of specialized cardiac cells that rapidly transmits an action potential down the interventricular septum of the heart

**calcitonin** (kal'-suh-TŌ-nun) A hormone secreted by the thyroid C cells that lowers plasma  $Ca^{2+}$  levels

**calcium-induced calcium release** When in cardiac and smooth muscle cells the excitation-induced entry of a small amount of  $Ca^{2+}$  from the ECF through voltage-gated surface membrane receptors triggers the opening of  $Ca^{2+}$ -release channels in the sarcoplasmic reticulum, causing a much larger release of  $Ca^{2+}$  into the cytosol from this intracellular store

**calmodulin** (kal'-MA-jew-lin) An intracellular  $Ca^{2+}$  binding protein that, on activation by  $Ca^{2+}$ , induces a change in structure and function of another intracellular protein; especially important in smooth-muscle excitation-contraction coupling

**cAMP** See *cyclic adenosine monophosphate*

**CAMs** See *cell adhesion molecules*

**capillaries** The thin-walled, pore-lined smallest of blood vessels, across which exchange between the blood and surrounding tissues takes place

**carbonic anhydrase** (an-HĪ-drās) The enzyme found in erythrocytes, kidney tubular cells, and a few other specialized cells that catalyzes the conversion of  $CO_2$  and  $H_2O$  into  $H^+$  and  $HCO_3^-$

**cardiac cycle** One period of systole and diastole

**cardiac muscle** The specialized muscle found only in the heart

**cardiac output (CO)** The volume of blood pumped by each ventricle each minute; equals stroke volume times heart rate

**cardiovascular control center** The integrating center located in the medulla of the brain stem that controls mean arterial blood pressure

**carrier-mediated transport** Transport of a substance across the plasma membrane facilitated by a carrier molecule

**carrier molecules** Membrane proteins that, by undergoing reversible changes in shape so that specific binding sites are alternately exposed at either side of the membrane, can bind with and transfer particular substances unable to cross the plasma membrane on their own

**cascade** A series of sequential reactions that culminates in a final product, such as a clot

**catabolism** (kuh-TAB-ō-li-zum) The breakdown, or degradation, of large, energy-rich molecules within cells

**catecholamines** (kat'-uh-KŌ-luh-means) Amine hormones derived from tyrosine and secreted largely by the adrenal medulla

**cations** (KAT-i-onz) Positively charged ions that have lost one or more electrons from their outer shell

**C cells** The thyroid cells that secrete calcitonin

**CCK** See *cholecystokinin*

**cell** The smallest unit capable of carrying out the processes associated with life; the basic unit of both structure and function in living organisms

**cell adhesion molecules (CAMs)** Proteins that protrude from the surface of the plasma membrane and form loops or other appendages that the cells use to grip one another and the surrounding connective tissue fibers

**cell body** The portion of a neuron that houses the nucleus and organelles

**cell-mediated immunity** A specific immune response accomplished by activated T lymphocytes, which directly attack unwanted cells

**cellular respiration** The entire series of chemical reactions involving the intracellular breakdown of nutrient-rich molecules to yield energy, using  $O_2$  and producing  $CO_2$  in the process

**center** A functional collection of cell bodies within the central nervous system

**central chemoreceptors** (kē-mō-rē-SEP-turz) Receptors located in the medulla near the respiratory center that respond to changes in ECF  $H^+$  concentration resulting from changes in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and adjust respiration accordingly

**central lacteal** (LAK-tē-ul) The initial lymphatic vessel that supplies each of the small-intestinal villi

**central nervous system (CNS)** The brain and spinal cord

**central sulcus** (SUL-kus) A deep infolding of the brain surface that runs roughly down the middle of the lateral surface of each cerebral hemisphere and separates the parietal and frontal lobes

**centrioles** (SEN-trē-ōlz) A pair of short, cylindrical structures within a cell that form the mitotic spindle during cell division

**cerebellum** (ser'-uh-BEL-um) The part of the brain attached at the rear of the brain stem and concerned with maintaining proper position of

the body in space and subconscious coordination of motor activity

**cerebral cortex** The outer shell of gray matter in the cerebrum; site of initiation of all voluntary motor output and final perceptual processing of all sensory input as well as integration of most higher neural activity

**cerebral hemispheres** The cerebrum's two halves, which are connected by a thick band of neuronal axons

**cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)** (ser'-uh-brō-SPI-nul) or (sah-REE-brō-SPI-nul) A special cushioning fluid that is produced by, surrounds, and flows through the central nervous system

**cerebrum** (SER-uh-brum) or (sah-REE-brum) The division of the brain that consists of the basal nuclei and cerebral cortex

**channels** Small, water-filled passageways through the plasma membrane; formed by membrane proteins that span the membrane and provide highly selective passage for small water-soluble substances such as ions

**chemical bonds** The forces holding atoms together

**chemical buffer system** A mixture in a solution of two or more chemical compounds that minimize pH changes when either an acid or a base is added to or removed from the solution

**chemically gated channels** Channels in the plasma membrane that open or close in response to the binding of a specific chemical messenger with a membrane receptor site that is in close association with the channel

**chemical mediator** A chemical that is secreted by a cell and that influences an activity outside the cell

**chemiosmosis** (kē-ma-OS-mō-sis) ATP production in mitochondria catalyzed by ATP synthase, which is activated by flow of  $H^+$  down a concentration gradient established by the electron transport system

**chemoreceptor** (kē-mō-rē-sep'-tur) A sensory receptor sensitive to specific chemicals

**chemotaxin** (kē-mō-TAK-sin) A chemical released at an inflammatory site that attracts phagocytes to the area

**chief cells** The cells in the gastric pits that secrete pepsinogen

**cholecystokinin (CCK)** (kō'-luh-sis-tuh-kī-nun) A hormone released from the duodenal mucosa primarily in response to the presence of fat; inhibits gastric motility and secretion, stimulates pancreatic enzyme secretion, stimulates gallbladder contraction, and acts as a satiety signal

**cholesterol** A type of fat molecule that serves as a precursor for steroid hormones and bile salts and is a stabilizing component of the plasma membrane

**cholinergic fibers** (kō'-lin-ER-jik) Nerve fibers that release acetylcholine as their neurotransmitter

**chromaffin granules** The granules that store catecholamines in adrenomedullary cells

**chyme** (kīm) A thick liquid mixture of food and digestive juices

**cilia** (SILL-ē-ah) Motile, hairlike protrusions from the surface of cells lining the respiratory airways and the oviducts

**ciliary body** The portion of the eye that produces aqueous humor and contains the ciliary muscle

**ciliary muscle** A circular ring of smooth muscle within the eye whose contraction increases the strength of the lens to accommodate for near vision

**circadian rhythm** (sir-KĀ-dē-un) Repetitive oscillations in the set point of various body activities, such as hormone levels and body temperature, that are very regular and have a frequency of one cycle every 24 hours, usually linked to light–dark cycles; diurnal rhythm; biological rhythm

**circulatory shock** When mean arterial blood pressure falls so low that adequate blood flow to the tissues can no longer be maintained

**citric acid cycle** A cyclic series of biochemical reactions that processes the intermediate breakdown products of nutrient molecules, generating carbon dioxide and preparing hydrogen carrier molecules for entry into the high-energy-yielding electron transport system

**CNS** See *central nervous system*

**cochlea** (KOK-lē-uh) The snail-shaped portion of the inner ear that houses the receptors for sound

**collecting tubule** The last portion of tubule in the kidney's nephron that empties into the renal pelvis

**colloid** (KOL-oid) The thyroglobulin-containing substance enclosed within the thyroid follicles

**colloid osmotic pressure** The osmotic force across the capillary wall resulting from the uneven colloidal dispersion of plasma proteins between the blood and interstitial fluid

**competition** When several closely related substances compete for the same carrier binding sites

**complement system** A collection of plasma proteins that are activated in cascade fashion on exposure to invading microorganisms, ultimately producing a membrane attack complex that destroys the invaders

**compliance** The distensibility of a hollow, elastic structure, such as a blood vessel or the lungs; a measure of how easily the structure can be stretched

**concave surface** Curved in, as a surface of a lens that diverges light rays

**concentration gradient** A difference in concentration of a particular substance between two adjacent areas

**conduction** The transfer of heat between objects of differing temperature that are in direct contact

**cones** The eye's photoreceptors used for color vision in the light

**connective tissue** Tissue that serves to connect, support, and anchor various body parts; distinguished by relatively few cells dispersed within an abundance of extracellular material

**contiguous conduction** The means by which an action potential is propagated throughout a non-myelinated nerve fiber; local current flow between an active and adjacent inactive area brings the inactive area to threshold, triggering an action potential in a previously inactive area

**contractility (of heart)** The strength of contraction of the heart at any given end-diastolic volume

**control center** See *integrator*

**controlled variable** Some factor that can vary but is held within a narrow range by a control system

**convection** Transfer of heat energy by air or water currents

**convergence** The converging of many presynaptic terminals from thousands of other neurons on a single neuronal cell body and its dendrites so that activity in the single neuron is influenced by the activity of many other neurons

**convex surface** Curved out, as a surface in a lens that converges light rays

**core temperature** The temperature within the inner core of the body (abdominal and thoracic organs, central nervous system, and skeletal muscles) that is homeostatically maintained at about 100°F

**cornea** (KOR-nē-ah) The clear, anteriormost outer layer of the eye through which light rays pass to the interior of the eye

**coronary circulation** The blood vessels that supply the heart muscle

**corpus callosum** (ka-LŌ-sum) The thick band of nerve fibers that connects the two cerebral hemispheres structurally and functionally

**corpus luteum** (LOO-tē-um) The ovarian structure that develops from a ruptured follicle after ovulation

**corticotropes** Anterior pituitary cells that secrete adrenocorticotrophic hormone

**cortisol** (KORT-uh-sol) The adrenocortical hormone that plays an important role in carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism and helps the body resist stress

**cotransport** See *symport*

**countercurrent multiplication** The means by which long loops of Henle establish the vertical osmotic gradient in the renal medulla, making it possible to put out urine of variable concentration depending on the body's needs

**countertransport** See *antiport*

**cranial nerves** The 12 pairs of peripheral nerves, the majority of which arise from the brain stem

**cross bridges** The myosin molecules' globular heads that protrude from a thick filament within a muscle fiber and interact with the actin molecules in the thin filaments to bring about shortening of the muscle fiber during contraction

**CSF** See *cerebrospinal fluid*

**current** The flow of electrical charge, such as by movement of positive charges toward a more negatively charged area

**cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cyclic AMP or cAMP)** An intracellular second messenger derived from ATP

**cyclic AMP** See *cyclic adenosine monophosphate*

**cytokines** All chemicals other than antibodies that are secreted by lymphocytes

**cytoplasm** (SĪ-tō-plaz'-um) The portion of the cell interior not occupied by the nucleus

**cytoskeleton** The complex intracellular protein network that acts as the "bone and muscle" of the cell

**cytosol** (SĪ-tuh-sol') The semiliquid portion of the cytoplasm not occupied by organelles

**cytotoxic T cells** (sī-tō-TOK-sik) The population of T cells that destroys host cells bearing foreign antigen, such as body cells invaded by viruses or cancer cells

**dead-space volume** The volume of air that occupies the respiratory airways as air is moved in and out and that is not available to participate in exchange of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> between the alveoli and atmosphere

**dehydration** A water deficit in the body

**dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)** (dē-HĪ-drō-epi-and-ro-steer-own) The androgen secreted by the adrenal cortex in both sexes

**dendrites** Projections from the surface of a neuron's cell body that carry signals toward the cell body

**deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)** (dē-OK-sē-rī-bō-new-klā-ik) The cell's genetic material, which is found within the nucleus and which provides codes for protein synthesis and serves as a blueprint for cell replication

**depolarization** (de'-pō-luh-ruh-ZĀ-shun) A reduction in membrane potential from resting potential; movement of the potential from resting toward 0 mV

**dermis** The connective tissue layer that lies under the epidermis in the skin; contains the skin's blood vessels and nerves

**descending tract** A bundle of nerve fibers of similar function that travels down the spinal cord to relay messages from the brain to efferent neurons

**desmosome** (dez'-muh-sōm) An adhering junction between two adjacent but nontouching cells formed by the extension of filaments between the cells' plasma membranes; most abundant in tissues that are subject to considerable stretching

**DHEA** See *dehydroepiandrosterone*

**diaphragm** (DIE-uh-fram) A dome-shaped sheet of skeletal muscle that forms the floor of the thoracic cavity; the major inspiratory muscle

**diastole** (dī-AS-tō-lē) The period of cardiac relaxation and filling

**diencephalon** (dī'-un-SEF-uh-lan) The division of the brain that consists of the thalamus and hypothalamus

**differentiation** The process of each type of cell becoming specialized during development of a multicellular organism to carry out a particular function

**diffusion** Random collisions and intermingling of molecules as a result of their continuous thermally induced random motion

**digestion** The process by which the structurally complex foodstuffs of the diet are broken down into smaller absorbable units by the enzymes produced within the digestive system

**diploid number** (DIP-loid) A complete set of 46 chromosomes (23 pairs), as found in all human somatic cells

**discriminative ability** See *acuity*

**distal tubule** A highly convoluted tubule that extends between the loop of Henle and the collecting duct in the kidney's nephron

**diurnal rhythm** (dī-URN'-ul) Repetitive oscillations in hormone levels that are very regular and have a frequency of one cycle every 24 hours, usually linked to the light–dark cycle; circadian rhythm; biological rhythm

**divergence** The diverging, or branching, of a neuron's axon terminals so that activity in this single neuron influences the many other cells with which its terminals synapse

**DNA** See *deoxyribonucleic acid*

**dorsal root ganglion** A cluster of afferent neuronal cell bodies located adjacent to the spinal cord

**down regulation** A reduction in the number of receptors for (and thereby the target cell's sensitivity to) a particular hormone as a direct result of the effect that an elevated level of the hormone has on its own receptors

**dynein** (DĪ-neen) The molecular motor that "walks" along microtubular "highways" toward the cell center, such as in transporting debris from the axon terminal to the cell body for destruction by lysosomes

**ECG** See *electrocardiogram*

**ECM** See *extracellular matrix*

**edema** (i-DĒ-muh) Swelling of tissues as a result of excess interstitial fluid

**EDV** See *end-diastolic volume*

**EEG** See *electroencephalogram*

**effector** The component of a control system that accomplishes the output commanded by the integrator

**effector organs** The muscles or glands innervated by the nervous system that carry out the nervous system's orders to bring about a desired effect, such as a particular movement or secretion

**efferent division** (EF-er-ent) The portion of the peripheral nervous system that carries instructions from the central nervous system to effector organs

**efferent neuron** Neuron that carries information from the central nervous system to an effector organ

**efflux** (Ē-flux) Movement out of the cell

**eicosanoids** (i-KŌ-sa-noydz) Derivatives of arachidonic acid in the phospholipid tails of the plasma membrane including the prostaglandins, prostacyclins, thromboxanes, and leukotrienes, that act as paracrines near their site of production throughout the body

**elastic recoil** Rebound of the lungs after having been stretched

**electrical gradient** A difference in charge between two adjacent areas

**electrocardiogram (ECG)** The graphic record of the electrical activity that reaches the surface of the body as a result of cardiac depolarization and repolarization

**electrochemical gradient** The simultaneous existence of an electrical gradient and concentration (chemical) gradient for a particular ion

**electroencephalogram (EEG)** (i-lek'-trō-in-SEF-uh-luh-gram') A graphic record of the collective postsynaptic potential activity in the cell bodies and dendrites located in the cortical layers of the brain under a recording electrode

**electrolytes** Solutes that form ions in solution and conduct electricity

**electron transport system** The series of electron carriers in the mitochondrial inner membrane that transfer electrons from higher to lower energy levels, with the released energy being used to establish the H<sup>+</sup> concentration gradient in the mitochondria that powers ATP synthesis

**embolus** (EM-bō-lus) A freely floating clot

**embryonic stem cells (ESCs)** Undifferentiated cells resulting from the early divisions of a fertil-

ized egg that ultimately give rise to all the mature, specialized cells of the body while at the same time renewing themselves

**end-diastolic volume (EDV)** The volume of blood in the ventricle at the end of diastole, when filling is complete

**endocrine axis** A three-hormone sequence consisting of (1) a hypothalamic hypophysiotropic hormone that controls the output of (2) an anterior pituitary tropic hormone that regulates secretion of (3) a target endocrine gland hormone, which exerts the final physiologic effect

**endocrine glands** Ductless glands that secrete hormones into the blood

**endocytic vesicle** A small, intracellular, membrane-enclosed vesicle in which extracellular material is trapped

**endocytosis** (en'-dō-sī-TŌ-sis) Internalization of extracellular material within a cell as a result of the plasma membrane forming a pouch that contains the extracellular material, then sealing at the surface of the pouch to form an endocytic vesicle

**endogenous opiates** (en-DAJ'-eh-nus Ō'-pē-ätz) Endorphins and enkephalins, which bind with opiate receptors and are important in the body's natural analgesic system

**endogenous pyrogen** (pī'-ruh-jun) A chemical released from macrophages during inflammation that acts by means of local prostaglandins to raise the set point of the hypothalamic thermostat to produce a fever

**endometrium** (en'-dō-MĒ-trē-um) The lining of the uterus

**endoplasmic reticulum (ER)** (en'-dō-PLAZ-mik-ri-TIK-yuh-lum) An organelle consisting of a continuous membranous network of fluid-filled tubules (smooth ER) and flattened sacs, partially studded with ribosomes (rough ER); synthesizes proteins and lipids for formation of new cell membrane and manufactures products for secretion

**endothelium** (en'-dō-THĒ-lē-um) The thin, single-celled layer of epithelial cells lining the entire circulatory system

**end-plate potential (EPP)** The graded receptor potential that occurs at the motor end plate of a skeletal muscle fiber in response to binding with acetylcholine

**end-systolic volume (ESV)** The volume of blood in the ventricle at the end of systole, when emptying is complete

**endurance-type exercise** See *aerobic exercise*

**energy balance** The balance between energy input by means of food intake and energy output by means of external work and internal work

**enteric nervous system** The extensive network of nerve fibers consisting of the myenteric plexus and submucous plexus within the digestive tract wall that endows the tract with considerable self-regulation

**enterogastrones** (ent'-uh-rō-GAS-trōnz) Hormones secreted by the duodenal mucosa that inhibit gastric motility and secretion; include secretin and cholecystokinin

**enterohepatic circulation** (en'-tur-ō-hi-PAT-ik) The recycling of bile salts and other bile constituents between the small intestine and liver by means of the hepatic portal vein

**enzyme** A special protein molecule that speeds up a particular chemical reaction in the body

**eosinophils** (ē'-uh-SIN-uh-fils) White blood cells that are important in allergic responses and in combating internal parasite infestations

**ependymal cells** (eh-PEN-dim-ul) The glial cells lining the ventricles of the brain, which serve as neural stem cells

**epidermis** (ep'-uh-DER-mus) The outer layer of the skin, consisting of numerous layers of epithelial cells, with the outermost layers being dead and flattened

**epididymis** The male accessory reproductive organ that stores sperm and increases their motility and fertility prior to ejaculation

**epinephrine** (ep'-uh-NEF-rin) The primary hormone secreted by the adrenal medulla; important in preparing the body for "fight-or-flight" responses and in regulating arterial blood pressure; adrenaline

**epiphyseal plate** (eh-pif-i-SĒ-al) A layer of cartilage that separates the diaphysis (shaft) of a long bone from the epiphysis (flared end); the site at which bones grow longer before the cartilage ossifies (turns into bone)

**epithelial tissue** (ep'-uh-THĒ-lē-ul) A functional grouping of cells specialized in the exchange of materials between the cell and its environment; lines and covers various body surfaces and cavities and forms secretory glands

**EPSP** See *excitatory postsynaptic potential*

**equilibrium potential (E<sub>x</sub>)** The potential that exists when the concentration gradient and opposing electrical gradient for a given ion exactly counterbalance each other so that there is no net movement of the ion

**erythrocytes** (i-RITH-ruh-sīts) Red blood cells, which are plasma membrane-enclosed bags of hemoglobin that transport O<sub>2</sub> and, to a lesser extent, CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sup>+</sup> in the blood

**erythropoiesis** (i-rith'-rō-poi-Ē-sus) Erythrocyte production by the bone marrow

**erythropoietin** The hormone released from the kidneys in response to a reduction in O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the kidneys; stimulates the bone marrow to increase erythrocyte production

**ESCs** See *embryonic stem cells*

**esophagus** (i-SOF-uh-gus) A straight muscular tube that extends between the pharynx and stomach

**estrogen** Feminizing "female" sex hormone

**ESV** See *end-systolic volume*

**evaporation** The transfer of heat from the body surface by the transformation of water from a liquid to a gaseous state

**exchange** See *antipart*

**excitable tissue** Tissue capable of producing electrical signals when excited; includes nervous and muscle tissue

**excitation-contraction coupling** The series of events linking muscle excitation (the presence of an action potential) to muscle contraction (filament sliding and sarcomere shortening)

**excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP)** (pōst'-si-NAP-tik) A small depolarization of the postsynaptic membrane in response to neurotransmitter binding, bringing the membrane closer to threshold



**excitatory synapse** (SIN-aps') Synapse in which the postsynaptic neuron's response to neurotransmitter release is a small depolarization of the postsynaptic membrane, bringing the membrane closer to threshold

**exocrine glands** Glands that secrete through ducts to the outside of the body or into a cavity that communicates with the outside

**exocytosis** (eks'-Ō-si-TŌ-sis) Fusion of a membrane-enclosed intracellular vesicle with the plasma membrane, followed by the opening of the vesicle and the emptying of its contents to the outside

**expiration** A breath out

**inspiratory muscles** The skeletal muscles whose contraction reduces the size of the thoracic cavity and lets the lungs recoil to a smaller size, bringing about movement of air from the lungs to the atmosphere

**external environment** The environment surrounding the body

**external genitalia** The externally visible portions of the reproductive system

**external intercostal muscles** Inspiratory muscles whose contraction elevates the ribs, thereby enlarging the thoracic cavity

**external work** Energy expended by contracting skeletal muscles to move external objects or to move the body in relation to the environment

**extracellular fluid (ECF)** All the fluid outside the cells of the body; consists of interstitial fluid and plasma

**extracellular matrix (ECM)** An intricate meshwork of fibrous proteins embedded in the interstitial fluid secreted by local cells

**extrinsic controls** Regulatory mechanisms initiated outside an organ that alter the activity of the organ; accomplished by the nervous and endocrine systems

**extrinsic nerves** The nerves originating outside the digestive tract that innervate the various digestive organs

**facilitated diffusion** Passive carrier-mediated transport involving transport of a substance down its concentration gradient across the plasma membrane

**fatigue** Inability to maintain muscle tension at a given level despite sustained stimulation

**feedback** A response that occurs after a change has been detected; may be *negative feedback* or *positive feedback*

**feedforward mechanism** A response designed to prevent an anticipated change in a controlled variable

**feeding signals** Appetite signals that give rise to the sensation of hunger and promote the desire to eat

**fibrinogen** (fi-BRIN-uh-jun) A large, soluble plasma protein that when converted into an insoluble, threadlike molecule forms the meshwork of a clot during blood coagulation

**Fick's law of diffusion** The rate of net diffusion of a substance across a membrane is directly proportional to the substance's concentration gradient, the lipid solubility of the substance, and the surface area of the membrane and inversely proportional to the substance's molecular weight and the diffusion distance

**fight-or-flight response** The changes in activity of the various organs innervated by the autonomic nervous system in response to sympathetic stimulation, which collectively prepare the body for strenuous physical activity in the face of an emergency or stressful situation, such as a physical threat from the outside environment

**firing** When an excitable cell undergoes an action potential

**first messenger** An extracellular messenger, such as a hormone, that binds with a surface membrane receptor and activates an intracellular second messenger to carry out the desired cellular response

**flagellum** (fluh-JEL-um) The single, long, whip-like appendage that serves as the tail of a spermatozoon

**flow rate (of blood or air)** The volume of blood or air passing through a blood vessel or airway, respectively, per unit of time

**fluid balance** Maintenance of ECF volume (for long-term control of blood pressure) and ECF osmolarity (for maintaining normal cell volume)

**follicle (of ovary)** A developing ovum and the surrounding specialized cells

**follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)** An anterior pituitary hormone that stimulates ovarian follicular development and estrogen secretion in females and stimulates sperm production in males

**follicular cells (of ovary)** (fah-LIK-you-lar) Collectively, the granulosa and thecal cells

**follicular cells (of thyroid gland)** The cells that form the walls of the colloid-filled follicles in the thyroid gland and secrete thyroid hormone

**follicular phase** The phase of the ovarian cycle dominated by the presence of maturing follicles prior to ovulation

**Frank-Starling law of the heart** Intrinsic control of the heart such that increased venous return resulting in increased end-diastolic volume leads to an increased strength of contraction and increased stroke volume; that is, the heart normally pumps out all the blood returned to it

**free radicals** Very unstable electron-deficient particles that are highly reactive and destructive

**frontal lobes** The lobes of the cerebral cortex at the top of the brain in front of the central sulcus, which are responsible for voluntary motor output, speaking ability, and elaboration of thought

**FSH** See *follicle-stimulating hormone*

**fuel metabolism** See *intermediary metabolism*

**functional syncytium** (sin-sish'-ē-um) A group of smooth or cardiac muscle cells that are interconnected by gap junctions and function electrically and mechanically as a single unit

**functional unit** The smallest component of an organ that can perform all the functions of the organ

**gametes** (GAM-ētz) Reproductive, or germ, cells, each containing a haploid set of chromosomes; sperm and ova

**gamma motor neuron** A motor neuron that innervates the fibers of a muscle-spindle receptor

**ganglion** (GAN-glē-un) A collection of neuronal cell bodies located outside the central nervous system

**ganglion cells** The nerve cells in the outermost layer of the retina whose axons form the optic nerve

**gap junction** A communicating junction formed between adjacent cells by small connecting tunnels that permit passage of charge-carrying ions between the cells so that electrical activity in one cell is spread to the adjacent cell

**gastrin** A hormone secreted by the pyloric gland area of the stomach that stimulates the parietal and chief cells to secrete a highly acidic gastric juice

**gastrointestinal hormone** Hormones secreted into the blood by the endocrine cells in the digestive tract mucosa that control motility and secretion in other parts of the digestive system

**gestation** Pregnancy

**ghrelin** (GRELL-in) The "hunger" hormone, a potent appetite stimulator secreted by the empty stomach

**glands** Epithelial tissue derivatives that are specialized for secretion

**glial cells** (glē-ul) Connective tissue cells of the CNS, which support the neurons both physically and metabolically, including astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, ependymal cells, and microglia

**glomerular filtration** (glow-MAIR-yū-lur) Filtration of a protein-free plasma from the glomerular capillaries into the tubular component of the kidney's nephron as the first step in urine formation

**glomerular filtration rate (GFR)** The rate at which glomerular filtrate is formed

**glomerulus (in kidney)** (glow-MAIR-yū-lus) A ball-like tuft of capillaries in the kidney's nephron that filters water and solute from the blood as the first step in urine formation

**glomerulus (in olfactory bulb)** A ball-like neural junction within the olfactory bulb that serves as a "smell file" sorting different scent components

**glucagon** (GLOO-kuh-gon) The pancreatic hormone that raises blood glucose and blood fatty-acid levels

**glucocorticoids** (gloo'-kō-KOR-ti-koidz) Adrenocortical hormones that are important in intermediary metabolism and in helping the body resist stress; primarily cortisol

**gluconeogenesis** (gloo'-kō-nē-ō-JEN-uh-sus) The conversion of amino acids into glucose

**glycogen** (GLĪ-kō-jen) The storage form of glucose in the liver and muscle

**glycogenesis** (glī'-kō-JEN-i-sus) The conversion of glucose into glycogen

**glycogenolysis** (glī'-kō-juh-NOL-i-sus) The conversion of glycogen to glucose

**glycolysis** (glī-KOL-uh-sus) A biochemical process taking place in the cell's cytosol that breaks down glucose into pyruvate molecules

**GnRH** See *gonadotropin-releasing hormone*

**Golgi complex** (GOL-jē) An organelle consisting of sets of stacked, flattened membranous sacs; processes raw materials transported to it from the endoplasmic reticulum into finished products and sorts and directs the finished products to their final destination

**gonadotropes** Anterior pituitary cells that secrete gonadotropin-releasing hormone

**gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH)** (gō-nad'-uh-TRŌ-pin) The hypothalamic hormone that stimulates the release of FSH and LH from the anterior pituitary

**gonadotropins** FSH and LH; hormones that control secretion of the sex hormones by the gonads

**gonads** (GŌ-nadz) The primary reproductive organs, which produce the gametes and secrete the sex hormones; testes and ovaries

**G protein** A membrane-bound intermediary, which, when activated on binding of an extracellular first messenger to a surface receptor, activates effector proteins on the intracellular side of the membrane in the cAMP second-messenger system

**G-protein coupled receptor** A type of receptor that activates the associated G protein on binding with an extracellular chemical messenger

**gradation of contraction** Variable magnitudes of tension produced in a single whole muscle

**graded potential** A local change in membrane potential that occurs in varying grades of magnitude; serves as a short-distance signal in excitable tissues

**grand postsynaptic potential (GPSP)** The total composite potential in a postsynaptic neuron resulting from the sum of all EPSPs and IPSPs occurring at the same time

**granulocytes** (gran'yuh-lō-sits) Leukocytes that contain granules, including neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils

**granulosa cells** (gran'yuh-LŌ-suh) The layer of cells immediately surrounding a developing oocyte within an ovarian follicle

**gray matter** The portion of the central nervous system composed primarily of densely packaged neuronal cell bodies and dendrites

**growth hormone (GH)** An anterior pituitary hormone that is primarily responsible for regulating overall body growth and is also important in intermediary metabolism; somatotropin

**H<sup>+</sup>** See *hydrogen ion*

**haploid number** (HAP-loid) The number of chromosomes found in gametes; a half set of chromosomes, one member of each pair, for a total of 23 chromosomes in humans

**Hb** See *hemoglobin*

**hCG** See *human chorionic gonadotropin*

**helper T cells** The population of T cells that enhances the activity of other immune-response effector cells

**hematocrit** (hi-MAT'uh-krit) The percentage of blood volume occupied by erythrocytes as they are packed down in a centrifuged blood sample

**hemoglobin** (HĒ-muh-glō'-bun) (**Hb**) A large iron-bearing protein molecule in erythrocytes that binds with and transports most O<sub>2</sub> in the blood; also carries some of the CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sup>+</sup> in the blood

**hemolysis** (hē-MOL-uh-sus) Rupture of red blood cells

**hemostasis** (hē'-mō-STĀ-sus) The stopping of bleeding from an injured vessel

**hepatic portal system** (hi-PAT-ik) A complex vascular connection between the digestive tract and liver such that venous blood from the digestive system drains into the liver for processing of absorbed nutrients before being returned to the heart

**hippocampus** (hip-ō-CAM-pus) The elongated, medial portion of the temporal lobe that is a part of the limbic system and is especially crucial for forming long-term memories

**histamine** A chemical released from mast cells or basophils that brings about vasodilation and increased capillary permeability; important in allergic responses and inflammation

**homeostasis** (hō'-mē-ō-STĀ-sus) Maintenance by the highly coordinated, regulated actions of the body systems of relatively stable chemical and physical conditions in the internal fluid environment that bathes the body cells

**homeostatic control system** A regulatory system that includes a sensor, integrator, and effectors that work together to bring about a corrective adjustment that opposes an original deviation from a normal set point

**hormone** A long-distance chemical mediator that is secreted by an endocrine gland into the blood, which transports it to its target cells

**hormone response element (HRE)** The specific attachment site on DNA for a given steroid hormone and its nuclear receptor

**host cell** A body cell infected by a virus

**HRE** See *hormone response element*

**human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)** (kō-rĒ-ON-ik gō-nad'uh-TRŌ-pin) A hormone secreted by the developing placenta that stimulates and maintains the corpus luteum of pregnancy

**hydrogen ion (H<sup>+</sup>)** The cationic portion of a dissociated acid

**hydrolysis** (hī-DROL-uh-sis) The digestion of a nutrient molecule by the addition of water at a bond site

**hydrostatic (fluid) pressure** (hī-drō-STAT-ik) The pressure exerted by fluid on the walls that contain it

**hyperglycemia** (hī'-pur-glī-SĒ-mē-uh) Elevated blood glucose concentration

**hyperplasia** (hī-pur-PLĀ-zē-uh) An increase in the number of cells

**hyperpolarization** An increase in membrane potential from resting potential; potential becomes even more negative than at resting potential

**hypersecretion** Too much of a particular hormone secreted

**hypertension** (hī'-pur-TEN-chun) Sustained, above-normal mean arterial blood pressure

**hypertonic solution** (hī'-pur-TON-ik) A solution with osmolarity greater than that of normal body fluids; more concentrated than normal

**hypertrophy** (hī-PUR-truh-fē) Increase in the size of an organ as a result of an increase in the size of its cells

**hyperventilation** Overbreathing; when the rate of ventilation is in excess of the body's metabolic needs for CO<sub>2</sub> removal

**hypophysiotropic hormones** (hi-PŌ-fiz-ē-ō-TRŌ-pik) Hormones secreted by the hypothalamus that regulate the secretion of anterior pituitary hormones; see also *releasing hormone* and *inhibiting hormone*

**hyposecretion** Too little of a particular hormone secreted

**hypotension** (hī-pō-TEN-chun) Sustained, below-normal mean arterial blood pressure

**hypothalamic-hypophyseal portal system** (hī-pō-thuh-LAM-ik hī-pō-FIZ-ē-ul) The vascular connection between the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary gland used for the pickup and delivery of hypophysiotropic hormones

**hypothalamus** (hī'-pō-THAL-uh-mus) The brain region beneath the thalamus that regulates many aspects of the internal fluid environment, such as water and salt balance and food intake; serves as an important link between the autonomic nervous system and endocrine system

**hypotonic solution** (hī'-pō-TON-ik) A solution with osmolarity less than that of normal body fluids; more dilute than normal

**hypoventilation** Underbreathing; ventilation inadequate to meet the metabolic needs for O<sub>2</sub> delivery and CO<sub>2</sub> removal

**hypoxia** (hī-POK-sē-uh) Insufficient O<sub>2</sub> at the cellular level

**I band** One of the light bands that alternate with dark (A) bands to create a striated appearance in a skeletal or cardiac muscle fiber when these fibers are viewed with a light microscope

**ICF** See *intracellular fluid*

**IGF** See *insulin-like growth factor*

**immune surveillance** Recognition and destruction of newly arisen cancer cells by the immune system

**immunity** The body's ability to resist or eliminate potentially harmful foreign materials or abnormal cells

**immunoglobulins** (im'ū-nō-GLOB-yū-lunz) Antibodies; gamma globulins

**impermeable** Prohibiting passage of a particular substance through the plasma membrane

**implantation** The burrowing of a blastocyst into the endometrial lining

**inclusion** A nonpermanent mass of stored material, such as glycogen or triglycerides (fat), in a cell

**incretin** A hormone released by the digestive tract that stimulates insulin secretion by the pancreas

**inflammation** An innate, nonspecific series of highly interrelated events, especially involving neutrophils, macrophages, and local vascular changes, that are set into motion in response to foreign invasion or tissue damage

**influx** Movement into the cell

**inhibin** (in-HIB-un) A hormone secreted by the Sertoli cells of the testes or by the ovarian follicles that inhibits FSH secretion

**inhibiting hormone** A hypothalamic hormone that inhibits the secretion of a particular anterior pituitary hormone

**inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP)** (pōst'si-NAP-tik) A small hyperpolarization of the postsynaptic membrane in response to neurotransmitter binding, thereby moving the membrane farther from threshold

**inhibitory synapse** (SIN-aps') Synapse in which the postsynaptic neuron's response to neurotransmitter release is a small hyperpolarization of the postsynaptic membrane, moving the membrane farther from threshold

**innate immune responses** Inherent defense responses that nonselectively defend against foreign or abnormal material, even on initial exposure to it; see also *inflammation*, *interferon*, *natural killer cells*, and *complement system*

**inorganic** Referring to substances that do not contain carbon; from nonliving sources

**insensible loss** Loss of water of which the person is not aware from the lungs or nonsweating skin

**inspiration** A breath in

**inspiratory muscles** The skeletal muscles whose contraction enlarges the thoracic cavity, bringing about lung expansion and movement of air into the lungs from the atmosphere

**insulin** (IN-suh-lin) The pancreatic hormone that lowers blood levels of glucose, fatty acids, and amino acids and promotes their storage

**insulin-like growth factor (IGF)** Synonymous with *somatomedin*; hormone secreted by the liver into the blood on stimulation by growth hormone that acts directly on target cells to promote growth, with other tissues producing IGF that acts locally as a paracrine to promote growth

**integrator** A region that determines efferent output based on processing of afferent input; also called a *control center*

**integument** (in-TEG-yuh-munt) The skin and underlying connective tissue

**intercostal muscles** (int-ur-KOS-tul) The muscles that lie between the ribs; see also *external intercostal muscles* and *internal intercostal muscles*

**interferon** (in'-tur-FĒR-on) A chemical released from virus-invaded cells that provides nonspecific resistance to viral infections by transiently interfering with replication of the same or unrelated viruses in other host cells

**intermediary metabolism** The collective set of intracellular chemical reactions that involve the degradation, synthesis, and transformation of small nutrient molecules; also known as *fuel metabolism*

**intermediate filaments** Threadlike cytoskeletal elements that play a structural role in parts of the cells subject to mechanical stress

**internal environment** The body's aqueous extracellular environment, which consists of the plasma and interstitial fluid and which must be homeostatically maintained for the cells to make life-sustaining exchanges with it

**internal intercostal muscles** Expiratory muscles whose contraction pulls the ribs downward and inward, thereby reducing the size of the thoracic cavity

**internal respiration** The intracellular metabolic processes carried out within the mitochondria that use O<sub>2</sub> and produce CO<sub>2</sub> during the derivation of energy from nutrient molecules

**internal work** All forms of biological energy expenditure that do not accomplish mechanical work outside the body

**interneuron** Neuron that lies entirely within the central nervous system and is important for integrating peripheral responses to peripheral information as well as for the abstract phenomena associated with the "mind"

**interstitial fluid** (in'-tur-STISH-ul) The portion of the extracellular fluid that surrounds and bathes all the body cells

**intra-alveolar pressure** (in'-truh-al-VĒ-uh-lur) The pressure within the alveoli

**intracellular fluid (ICF)** The fluid collectively contained within all the body cells

**intrapleural pressure** (in'-truh-PLOOR-ul) The pressure within the pleural sac

**intrinsic controls** Local control mechanisms inherent to an organ

**intrinsic factor** A special substance secreted by the parietal cells of the stomach that must be combined with vitamin B<sub>12</sub> for this vitamin to be

absorbed by the intestine; deficiency produces pernicious anemia

**intrinsic nerve plexuses** Interconnecting networks of nerve fibers within the digestive tract wall

**involuntary muscle** Muscle innervated by the autonomic nervous system and not subject to voluntary control; cardiac and smooth muscle

**ion** An atom that has gained or lost one or more of its electrons, so it is not electrically balanced

**IPSP** See *inhibitory postsynaptic potential*

**iris** A pigmented smooth muscle that forms the colored portion of the eye and controls pupillary size

**islets of Langerhans** (LAHNG-er-honz) The endocrine portion of the pancreas that secretes the hormones insulin and glucagon into the blood

**isometric contraction** (ī'-sō-MET-rik) A muscle contraction in which muscle tension develops at constant muscle length

**isotonic contraction** A muscle contraction in which muscle tension remains constant as the muscle fiber changes length

**isotonic solution** (ī'-sō-TON-ik) A solution with osmolarity equal to that of normal body fluids

**juxtaglomerular apparatus** (juks'-tuh-glō-MAIR-ū-lur) A cluster of specialized vascular and tubular cells at a point where the ascending limb of the loop of Henle passes through the fork formed by the afferent and efferent arterioles of the same nephron in the kidney

**keratin** (CARE-uh-tin) The protein found in the intermediate filaments in skin cells that give the skin strength and help form a waterproof outer layer

**killer (K) cells** Cells that destroy a target cell that has been coated with antibodies by lysing its membrane

**kinesin** (ki-NĒ'-sin) The molecular motor that transports secretory vesicles along the microtubular highway within neuronal axons by "walking" along the microtubule to the end of the axon

**lactate (lactic acid)** An end product formed from pyruvate (pyruvic acid) during the anaerobic process of glycolysis

**lactation** Milk production by the mammary glands

**larynx** (LARE-inks) The "voice box" at the entrance of the trachea; contains the vocal cords

**lateral sacs** The expanded saclike regions of a muscle fiber's sarcoplasmic reticulum; store and release calcium, which plays a key role in triggering muscle contraction

**law of mass action** If the concentration of one of the substances involved in a reversible reaction is increased, the reaction is driven toward the opposite side, and if the concentration of one of the substances is decreased, the reaction is driven toward that side

**leak channels** Unregulated, ungated channels that are open all the time

**left ventricle** The heart chamber that pumps blood into the systemic circulation

**length-tension relationship** The relationship between the length of a muscle fiber at the onset of

contraction and the tension the fiber can achieve on a subsequent tetanic contraction

**lens** A transparent, biconvex structure of the eye that refracts (bends) light rays and whose strength can be adjusted to accommodate for vision at different distances

**leptin** A hormone released from adipose tissue that plays a key role in long-term regulation of body weight by acting on the hypothalamus to suppress appetite

**leukocytes** (LOO-kuh-sits) White blood cells, which are the immune system's mobile defense units

**leukotrienes** (loo-ko-TRĪ-eenz) Local chemical mediators derived from the plasma membrane that are especially important in development of asthma

**Leydig cells** (LĪ-dig) The interstitial cells of the testes that secrete testosterone

**LH** See *luteinizing hormone*

**LH surge** The burst in LH secretion that occurs at midcycle of the ovarian cycle and triggers ovulation

**limbic system** (LIM-bik) A functionally interconnected ring of forebrain structures that surrounds the brain stem and is concerned with emotions, basic survival and sociosexual behavioral patterns, motivation, and learning

**lipase** (LĪ-payz) An enzyme secreted primarily by pancreatic acinar cells that digests dietary fat

**lipid emulsion** A suspension of small fat droplets held apart as a result of adsorption of bile salts on their surface

**loop of Henle** (HEN-lē) A hairpin loop that extends between the proximal and distal tubule of the kidney's nephron

**lumen** (LOO-men) The interior space of a hollow organ or tube

**luteal phase** (LOO-tē-ul) The phase of the ovarian cycle dominated by the presence of a corpus luteum

**luteinization** (loot'-ē-un-uh-ZĀ-shun) Formation of a postovulatory corpus luteum in the ovary

**luteinizing hormone (LH)** An anterior pituitary hormone that stimulates ovulation, luteinization, and secretion of estrogen and progesterone in females and testosterone secretion in males

**lymph** Interstitial fluid that is picked up by the lymphatic vessels and returned to the venous system, meanwhile passing through the lymph nodes for defense purposes

**lymphocytes** White blood cells that provide immune defense against targets for which they are specifically programmed

**lymphoid tissues** Tissues that produce and store lymphocytes, such as lymph nodes and tonsils

**lysosomes** (LĪ-sō-sōmz) Organelles consisting of membrane-enclosed sacs containing powerful hydrolytic enzymes that destroy unwanted material within the cell, such as internalized foreign material or cellular debris

**macrophages** (MAK-ruh-fājs) Large, tissue-bound phagocytes

**mast cells** Cells located within connective tissue that synthesize, store, and release histamine, as during allergic responses

**mean arterial blood pressure** The average pressure responsible for driving blood forward through the arteries into the tissues throughout the cardiac cycle; mean arterial blood pressure = cardiac output  $\times$  total peripheral resistance

**mechanically gated channels** Channels that open or close in response to stretching or other mechanical deformation

**mechanoreceptor** (meh-CAN-ō-rē-SEP-tur) or (mek'-uh-nō-rē-SEP-tur) A sensory receptor sensitive to mechanical energy, such as stretching or bending

**medullary respiratory center** (MED-you-LAIR-ē) Several aggregations of neuronal cell bodies within the medulla that provide output to the respiratory muscles and receive input important for regulating the magnitude of ventilation

**megakaryocyte** A large bone-marrow bound cell that sheds off blood-borne platelets from its outer edges

**meiosis** (mī-ō-sis) Cell division in which the chromosomes replicate followed by two nuclear divisions so that only a half set of chromosomes is distributed to each of four new daughter cells

**melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH)** (mel-AH-nō-sit) A hormone produced by the pituitary in lower vertebrates that regulates skin coloration for camouflage in these species; in humans, is secreted as a paracrine by the hypothalamus for control of food intake and by keratinocytes in the skin to control dispersion of melanin granules from melanocytes during tanning

**melatonin** (mel-uh-TŌ-nin) A hormone secreted by the pineal gland during darkness that helps entrain the body's biological rhythms with the external light and dark cues

**membrane attack complex** A collection of the five final activated components of the complement system that aggregate to form a porelike channel in the plasma membrane of an invading microorganism, with the resultant leakage leading to destruction of the invader

**membrane potential** A separation of charges across the membrane; a slight excess of negative charges lined up along the inside of the plasma membrane and separated from a slight excess of positive charges on the outside

**memory cells** B or T cells that are newly produced in response to a microbial invader but that do not participate in the current immune response against the invader; instead, they remain dormant, ready to launch a swift, powerful attack should the same microorganism invade again in the future

**meninges** (men-IN-gee-z) Three membranes that wrap the brain and spinal cord

**menstrual cycle** (men'-stroo-ul) The cyclic changes in the uterus that accompany the hormonal changes in the ovarian cycle

**menstrual phase** The phase of the menstrual cycle characterized by sloughing of endometrial debris and blood out through the vagina

**messenger RNA (mRNA)** Carries the transcribed genetic blueprint for synthesis of a particular protein from nuclear DNA to the cytoplasmic ribosomes where the protein is synthesized

**metabolic acidosis** (met-uh-bol'-ik) Acidosis resulting from any cause other than excess accumulation of carbonic acid in the body

**metabolic alkalosis** (al'-kuh-LŌ-sus) Alkalosis caused by a relative deficiency of noncarbonic acid

**metabolic rate** Energy expenditure per unit of time

**metabolism** All chemical reactions that occur within the body cells

**micelle** (mī-SEL) A water-soluble aggregation of bile salts, lecithin, and cholesterol that has a hydrophilic shell and a hydrophobic core; carries the water-insoluble products of fat digestion to their site of absorption

**microfilaments** Cytoskeletal elements made of actin molecules (and myosin molecules in muscle cells); play a major role in various cellular contractile systems and serve as a mechanical stiffener for microvilli

**microglia** The type of glial cells that serve as the immune defense cells of the CNS

**microtubules** Cytoskeletal elements made of tubulin molecules arranged into long, slender, unbranched tubes that help maintain asymmetric cell shapes and coordinate complex cell movements

**microvilli** (mī'-krō-VIL-ī) Actin-stiffened, non-motile, hairlike projections from the luminal surface of epithelial cells lining the digestive tract and kidney tubules; tremendously increase the surface area of the cell exposed to the lumen

**micturition** (mik-too-RISH-un) or (mik-chuh-RISH-un) The process of bladder emptying; urination

**milk ejection** The squeezing out of milk produced and stored in the alveoli of the breasts by means of contraction of the myoepithelial cells that surround each alveolus

**mineralocorticoids** (min-uh-rul-ō-KOR-ti-koidz) The adrenocortical hormones that are important in Na<sup>+</sup> and K<sup>+</sup> balance; primarily aldosterone

**mitochondria** (mī-tō-KON-drē-uh) The energy organelles, which contain the enzymes for oxidative phosphorylation

**mitosis** (mī-TŌ-sis) Cell division in which the chromosomes replicate before nuclear division so that each of the two daughter cells receives a full set of chromosomes

**mitotic spindle** The system of microtubules assembled during mitosis along which the replicated chromosomes are moved away from each other toward opposite sides of the cell prior to cell division

**modality** The energy form to which sensory receptors respond, such as heat, light, pressure, and chemical changes

**molecular motor** Specialized protein molecule with "feet" that can be alternately swung forward enabling the molecule to "walk" along a microtubular highway, carrying cargo from one part of the cell to another

**molecule** A chemical substance formed by the linking of atoms; the smallest unit of a given chemical substance

**monocytes** (MAH-nō-sits) White blood cells that emigrate from the blood, enlarge, and become macrophages

**monosaccharides** (mah'-nō-SAK-uh-rīdz) Simple sugars, such as glucose; the absorbable unit of digested carbohydrates

**motility** Muscular contractions of the digestive tract wall that mix and propel forward the luminal contents

**motor activity** Movement of the body accomplished by contraction of skeletal muscles

**motor end plate** The specialized portion of a skeletal muscle fiber that lies immediately underneath the terminal button of the motor neuron and possesses receptor sites for binding acetylcholine released from the terminal button

**motor neurons** The neurons that innervate skeletal muscle and whose axons constitute the somatic nervous system

**motor unit** One motor neuron plus all the muscle fibers it innervates

**motor unit recruitment** The progressive activation of a muscle fiber's motor units to accomplish increasing gradations of contractile strength

**mucosa** (mew-KŌ-sah) The innermost layer of the digestive tract that lines the lumen

**multiunit smooth muscle** A smooth muscle mass consisting of multiple discrete units that function independently of one another and that must be separately stimulated by autonomic nerves to contract

**muscarinic receptor** (MUS-ka-rin'-ik) Type of cholinergic receptor found at the effector organs of all parasympathetic postganglionic fibers

**muscle fiber** A single muscle cell, which is relatively long and cylindrical in shape

**muscle tension** See *tension*

**muscle tissue** A functional grouping of cells specialized for contraction and force generation

**myelin** (MĪ-uh-lun) An insulative lipid covering that surrounds myelinated nerve fibers at regular intervals along the axon's length; each patch of myelin is formed by a separate myelin-forming cell that wraps itself jelly-roll fashion around the neuronal axon

**myelinated fibers** Neuronal axons covered at regular intervals with insulative myelin

**myocardial ischemia** (mī-ō-KAR-dē-ul is-KĒ-mē-uh) Inadequate blood supply to the heart tissue

**myocardium** (mī'-ō-KAR-dē-um) The cardiac muscle within the heart wall

**myofibril** (mī'-ō-FĪB-rul) A specialized intracellular structure of muscle cells that contains the contractile apparatus

**myogenic activity** Muscle-produced, nerve-independent contractile activity

**myometrium** (mī'-ō-mē-TRĒ-um) The smooth muscle layer of the uterus

**myosin** (MĪ-uh-sun) The protein forming the thick filaments in muscle fibers

**Na<sup>+</sup>-K<sup>+</sup> pump** A carrier that actively transports Na<sup>+</sup> out of the cell and K<sup>+</sup> into the cell

**Na<sup>+</sup> load** See *sodium (Na<sup>+</sup>) load*

**natural killer cells** Naturally occurring, lymphocyte-like cells that nonspecifically destroy virus-infected cells and cancer cells by directly lysing their membranes on first exposure to them

**negative balance** Situation in which the losses for a substance exceed its gains so that the total amount of the substance in the body decreases

**negative feedback** A regulatory mechanism in which a change in a controlled variable triggers a response that opposes the change, thus maintaining a relatively steady set point for the regulated factor

**nephron** (NEF-ron´) The functional unit of the kidney; consisting of an interrelated vascular and tubular component, it is the smallest unit that can form urine

**nerve** A bundle of peripheral neuronal axons, some afferent and some efferent, enclosed by a connective tissue covering and following the same pathway

**nerve fiber** See *axon*

**nervous system** One of the two major regulatory systems of the body; in general, coordinates rapid activities of the body, especially those involving interactions with the external environment

**nervous tissue** A functional grouping of cells specialized for initiation and transmission of electrical signals

**net diffusion** The difference between the opposing movements of two types of molecules in a solution

**net filtration pressure** The net difference in the hydrostatic and osmotic forces acting across the glomerular membrane that favors the filtration of a protein-free plasma into Bowman's capsule

**neurogenic activity** Contractile activity in muscle cells initiated by nerves

**neuroglia** See *glial cells*

**neurohormones** Hormones released into the blood by neurosecretory neurons

**neuromodulators** (ner´ō-MA-jew-lā´-torz) Chemical messengers that bind to neuronal receptors at nonsynaptic sites and bring about long-term changes that subtly depress or enhance synaptic effectiveness

**neuromuscular junction** The juncture between a motor neuron and a skeletal muscle fiber

**neuron** (NER-on) A nerve cell specialized to initiate, propagate, and transmit electrical signals, typically consisting of a cell body, dendrites, and an axon

**neuropeptides** Large, slowly acting peptide molecules released from axon terminals along with classical neurotransmitters; most neuropeptides function as neuromodulators

**neuropeptide Y (NPY)** A potent appetite stimulator secreted by the hypothalamic arcuate nucleus

**neurotransmitter** The chemical messenger released from the axon terminal of a neuron in response to an action potential that influences another neuron or an effector with which the neuron is anatomically linked

**neutrophils** (new´-truh-filz) White blood cells that are phagocytic specialists and important in inflammatory responses and defense against bacterial invasion

**nicotinic receptor** (nick´-ō-TIN-ik) Type of cholinergic receptor found at all autonomic ganglia and the motor end plates of skeletal muscle fibers

**nitric oxide** A local chemical mediator released from endothelial cells and other tissues; its effects range from causing local arteriolar vasodilation to acting as a toxic agent against foreign invaders to serving as a unique type of neurotransmitter

**nociceptor** (nō-sē-SEP-tur) A pain receptor, sensitive to tissue damage

**nodes of Ranvier** (RAN-vē-ā) The portions of a myelinated neuronal axon between the segments of insulative myelin; the axonal regions where the axonal membrane is exposed to the ECF and membrane potential exists

**norepinephrine** (nor´-ep-uh-NEF-run) The neurotransmitter released from sympathetic postganglionic fibers; noradrenaline

**NPY** See *neuropeptide Y*

**nucleus (of brain)** (NŪ-klē-us) A functional aggregation of neuronal cell bodies within the brain

**nucleus (of cells)** A distinct spherical or oval structure, usually located near the center of a cell, that contains the cell's genetic material, deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)

**occipital lobes** (ok-SIP´-ut-ul) The posterior lobes of the cerebral cortex, which initially process visual input

**O<sub>2</sub>-Hb dissociation curve** A graphic depiction of the relationship between arterial P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> and percent hemoglobin saturation

**oligodendrocytes** (ol-i-gō´-DEN-drō-sitz) The myelin-forming cells of the central nervous system

**oogenesis** (ō´-ō-JEN-uh-sus) Egg production

**opsonin** (OP´-suh-nun) Body-produced chemical that links bacteria to macrophages, thereby making the bacteria more susceptible to phagocytosis

**optic nerve** The bundle of nerve fibers leaving the retina that relay information about visual input

**optimal length** The length before the onset of contraction of a muscle fiber at which maximal force can be developed on a subsequent tetanic contraction

**organ** A distinct structural unit composed of two or more types of primary tissue organized to perform one or more particular functions; for example, the stomach

**organelles** (or´-gan-ELZ) Distinct, highly organized, membrane-bound intracellular compartments, each containing a specific set of chemicals for carrying out a particular cellular function

**organic** Referring to substances that contain carbon; originally from living or once-living sources

**organism** A living entity, whether unicellular or multicellular

**organ of Corti** (KOR-tē) The sense organ of hearing within the inner ear that contains hair cells whose hairs are bent in response to sound waves, setting up action potentials in the auditory nerve

**osmolarity** (oz´-mo-LAIR-ut-ē) A measure of the concentration of a solution given in terms of milliosmoles/liter (mOsm), the number of millimoles of solute particles in a liter of solution

**osmosis** (os-MŌ-sis) Movement of water across a membrane down its own concentration gradient toward the area of higher solute concentration

**osmotic pressure** (os-MAH-tic) A measure of the tendency for osmotic flow of water into a solution resulting from its relative concentration of nonpenetrating solutes and water

**osteoblasts** (OS-tē-ō-blasts´) Bone cells that produce the organic matrix of bone

**osteoclasts** Bone cells that dissolve bone in their vicinity

**osteocytes** Retired osteoblasts entombed within the bone that they have laid down around themselves that continue to participate in calcium and phosphate exchange between the bone fluid and plasma

**otolith organs** (ŌT´-ul-ith) Sense organs in the inner ear that provide information about rota-

tional changes in head movement; include the utricle and saccule

**oval window** The membrane-covered opening that separates the air-filled middle ear from the upper compartment of the fluid-filled cochlea in the inner ear

**overhydration** Water excess in the body

**ovulation** (ov´-yuh-LĀ-shun) Release of an ovum from a mature ovarian follicle

**oxidative phosphorylation** (fos´-for-i-LĀ-shun) The entire sequence of mitochondrial biochemical reactions that uses oxygen to extract energy from the nutrients in food and transforms it into ATP, producing CO<sub>2</sub> and H<sub>2</sub>O in the process; includes the electron transport system and chemiosmosis

**oxyhemoglobin** (ok-si-HĒ-muh-glō-bun) Hemoglobin combined with O<sub>2</sub>

**oxyntic mucosa** (ok-SIN-tic) The mucosa lining the body and fundus of the stomach, which contains gastric pits that lead to the gastric glands lined by mucous neck cells, parietal cells, and chief cells

**oxytocin** (ok´-sē-TŌ-sun) A hypothalamic hormone stored in the posterior pituitary that stimulates uterine contraction and milk ejection

**pacemaker activity** Self-excitability of an excitable cell in which its membrane potential gradually depolarizes to threshold on its own

**pacemaker potential** A self-induced slow depolarization to threshold occurring in a pacemaker cell as a result of shifts in passive ionic fluxes across the membrane accompanying automatic changes in channel permeability

**pancreas** (PAN-krē-us) A mixed gland composed of an exocrine portion that secretes digestive enzymes and an aqueous alkaline secretion into the duodenal lumen and an endocrine portion that secretes the hormones insulin and glucagon into the blood

**paracrine** (PEAR-uh-krin) A local chemical messenger whose effect is exerted only on neighboring cells in the immediate vicinity of its site of secretion

**parasympathetic nervous system** (pear´-uh-simpuh-THET-ik) The subdivision of the autonomic nervous system that dominates in quiet, relaxed situations and promotes body maintenance activities such as digestion and emptying of the urinary bladder

**parathyroid glands** (pear´-uh-THĪ-roid) Four small glands located on the posterior surface of the thyroid gland that secrete parathyroid hormone

**parathyroid hormone (PTH)** A hormone that raises plasma Ca<sup>2+</sup> levels

**parietal cells** (puh-RĪ-ut-ul) The stomach cells that secrete hydrochloric acid and intrinsic factor

**parietal lobes** The lobes of the cerebral cortex that lie at the top of the brain behind the central sulcus, which contain the somatosensory cortex

**partial pressure** The individual pressure exerted independently by a particular gas within a mixture of gases

**partial pressure gradient** A difference in the partial pressure of a gas between two regions that promotes the movement of the gas from the region of higher partial pressure to the region of lower partial pressure

**parturition** (par'-too-RISH-un) Delivery of a baby

**passive expiration** Expiration accomplished during quiet breathing as a result of elastic recoil of the lungs on relaxation of the inspiratory muscles, with no energy expenditure required

**passive force** A force that does not require expenditure of cellular energy to accomplish transport of a substance across the plasma membrane

**passive reabsorption** Reabsorption when none of the steps in the transepithelial transport of a substance across the kidney tubules requires energy expenditure

**pathogens** (PATH-uh-junz) Disease-causing microorganisms, such as bacteria or viruses

**pathophysiology** (path'-ō-fiz-ē-OL-ō-gē) Abnormal functioning of the body associated with disease

**pepsin; pepsinogen** (pep-SIN-uh-jun) An enzyme secreted in inactive form by the stomach that, once activated, begins protein digestion

**peptide hormones** Hormones that consist of a chain of specific amino acids of varying length

**peptide YY<sub>3-36</sub>** A satiety signal secreted by the small and large intestines that inhibits appetite and serves as a mealtime terminator

**percent hemoglobin saturation** A measure of the extent to which the hemoglobin present is combined with O<sub>2</sub>

**perception** The conscious interpretation of the external world as created by the brain from a pattern of nerve impulses delivered to it from sensory receptors

**peripheral chemoreceptors** (kē'-mō-rē-SEP-turz) The carotid and aortic bodies, which respond to changes in arterial P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>, P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, and H<sup>+</sup> and adjust respiration accordingly

**peripheral nervous system (PNS)** Nerve fibers that carry information between the central nervous system and other parts of the body

**peristalsis** (per'-uh-STOL-sus) Ringlike contractions of the circular smooth muscle of a tubular organ that move progressively forward with a stripping motion, pushing the contents of the organ ahead of the contraction

**peritubular capillaries** (per'-i-TŪ-bū-lur) Capillaries that intertwine around the tubules of the kidney's nephron; they supply the renal tissue and participate in exchanges between the tubular fluid and blood during the formation of urine

**permeable** Permitting passage of a particular substance

**permissiveness** When one hormone must be present in adequate amounts for the full exertion of another hormone's effect

**peroxisomes** (puh-ROK'-suh-sōmz) Sac-like organelles containing powerful oxidative enzymes that detoxify various wastes produced within the cell or foreign compounds that have entered the cell

**pH** The logarithm to the base 10 of the reciprocal of the hydrogen ion concentration;  $\text{pH} = \log 1/[\text{H}^+]$

**phagocytosis** (fag'-ō-sī-TŌ-sus) A type of endocytosis in which large, multimolecular, solid particles are engulfed by a cell

**pharynx** (FARE-inks) The back of the throat, which serves as a common passageway for the digestive and respiratory systems

**phosphorylation** (fos'-for-i-LĀ-shun) Addition of a phosphate group to a molecule

**photoreceptor** A sensory receptor responsive to light

**phototransduction** The mechanism of converting light stimuli into electrical activity by the rods and cones of the eye

**physiology** (fiz-ē-OL-ō-gē) The study of body functions

**pineal gland** (PIN-ē-ul) A small endocrine gland located in the center of the brain that secretes the hormone melatonin

**pinocytosis** (pin-ō-cī-TŌ-sus) A type of endocytosis in which the cell internalizes fluid

**pitch** The tone of a sound, determined by the frequency of vibrations (that is, whether a sound is a C or G note)

**pituitary gland** (pih-TWO-ih-tair-ee) A small endocrine gland connected by a stalk to the hypothalamus; consists of the anterior pituitary and posterior pituitary

**placenta** (plah-SEN-tah) The organ of exchange between the maternal and fetal blood; also secretes hormones that support the pregnancy

**plaque** A deposit of cholesterol and other lipids, perhaps calcified, in thickened, abnormal smooth-muscle cells within blood vessels as a result of atherosclerosis

**plasma** The liquid portion of the blood

**plasma cell** An antibody-producing derivative of an activated B lymphocyte

**plasma clearance** The volume of plasma that is completely cleared of a given substance by the kidneys per minute

**plasma-colloid osmotic pressure** (KOL-oid os-MOT-ik) The force caused by the unequal distribution of plasma proteins between the blood and surrounding fluid that encourages fluid movement into the capillaries

**plasma membrane** A protein-studded lipid bilayer that encloses each cell, separating it from the extracellular fluid

**plasma proteins** The proteins in the plasma, which perform a number of important functions; include albumins, globulins, and fibrinogen

**plasticity** (plas-TIS-uh-tē) The ability of portions of the brain to assume new responsibilities in response to the demands placed on it

**platelets** (PLĀT-lets) Specialized cell fragments in the blood that participate in hemostasis by forming a plug at a vessel defect

**pleural sac** (PLOOR-ul) A double-walled, closed sac that separates each lung from the thoracic wall

**pluripotent stem cells** Precursor cells, for example those that reside in the bone marrow and continuously divide and differentiate to give rise to each of the types of blood cells

**polarization** The state of having membrane potential

**polycythemia** (pol-ē-sī-THĒ-mē-uh) Excess circulating erythrocytes, accompanied by an elevated hematocrit

**polysaccharides** (pol'-ē-SAK-uh-rīdz) Complex carbohydrates, consisting of chains of interconnected glucose molecules

**pool (of a substance)** Total quantity of any particular substance in the ECF

**positive balance** Situation in which the gains via input for a substance exceed its losses via output, so that the total amount of the substance in the body increases

**positive feedback** A regulatory mechanism in which the input and the output in a control system continue to enhance each other so that the controlled variable is progressively moved farther from a steady state

**postabsorptive state** The metabolic state after a meal is absorbed during which endogenous energy stores must be mobilized and glucose must be spared for the glucose-dependent brain; fasting state

**posterior pituitary** The neural portion of the pituitary that stores and releases into the blood on hypothalamic stimulation two hormones produced by the hypothalamus, vasopressin and oxytocin

**postganglionic fiber** (pōst'-gan-glē-ON-ik) The second neuron in the two-neuron autonomic nerve pathway; originates in an autonomic ganglion and terminates on an effector organ

**postsynaptic neuron** (pōst'-si-NAP-tik) The neuron that conducts its action potentials away from a synapse

**power stroke** The ATP-powered cross-bridge binding and bending that pulls the thin filaments in closer together between the thick filaments during contraction of a muscle fiber

**preganglionic fiber** The first neuron in the two-neuron autonomic nerve pathway; originates in the central nervous system and terminates on an autonomic ganglion

**pressure gradient** A difference in pressure between two regions that drives the movement of blood or air from the region of higher pressure to the region of lower pressure

**presynaptic neuron** (prē-si-NAP-tik) The neuron that conducts its action potentials toward a synapse

**primary active transport** A carrier-mediated transport system in which energy is directly required to operate the carrier and move the transported substance against its concentration gradient

**primary follicle** A primary oocyte surrounded by a single layer of granulosa cells in the ovary

**primary motor cortex** The portion of the cerebral cortex that lies anterior to the central sulcus and is responsible for voluntary motor output

**progestational phase** See *secretory phase*

**prolactin (PRL)** (prō-LAK-tun) An anterior pituitary hormone that stimulates breast development and milk production in females

**proliferative phase** The phase of the menstrual cycle during which the endometrium repairs itself and thickens following menstruation; lasts from the end of the menstrual phase until ovulation

**pro-opiomelanocortin** (prō-ōp'-Ē-ō-ma-LAN-ō-kor'-tin) A large precursor molecule that can be variably cleaved into adrenocorticotrophic hormone, melanocyte-stimulating hormone, and endorphin

**proprioception** (prō'-prē-ō-SEP-shun) Awareness of position of body parts in relation to one another and to surroundings

**prostaglandins** (pros'-tuh-GLAN-dins) Local chemical mediators that are derived from a component of the plasma membrane, arachidonic acid

**prostate gland** A male accessory sex gland that secretes an alkaline fluid, which neutralizes acidic vaginal secretions

**protein kinase** (KĪ-nase) An enzyme that phosphorylates and thereby induces a change in the shape and function of a particular intracellular protein

**proteolytic enzymes** (prōt'-ē-uh-LIT-ik) Enzymes that digest protein

**proximal tubule** (PROKS-uh-mul) A highly convoluted tubule that extends between Bowman's capsule and the loop of Henle in the kidney's nephron

**PTH** See *parathyroid hormone*

**pulmonary artery** (PULL-mah-nair-ē) The large vessel that carries blood from the right ventricle to the lungs

**pulmonary circulation** The closed loop of blood vessels carrying blood between the heart and lungs

**pulmonary surfactant** (sur-FAK-tunt) A phospholipoprotein complex secreted by the Type II alveolar cells that intersperses between the water molecules that line the alveoli, thereby lowering the surface tension within the lungs

**pulmonary valve** A one-way valve that permits the flow of blood from the right ventricle into the pulmonary artery during ventricular emptying but prevents the backflow of blood from the pulmonary artery into the right ventricle during ventricular relaxation

**pulmonary veins** The large vessels that carry blood from the lungs to the heart

**pulmonary ventilation** The volume of air breathed in and out in one minute; pulmonary ventilation = tidal volume × respiratory rate

**pupil** An adjustable round opening in the center of the iris through which light passes to the interior portions of the eye

**Purkinje fibers** (pur-KIN-jē) Small terminal fibers that extend from the bundle of His and rapidly transmit an action potential throughout the ventricular myocardium

**pyloric gland area (PGA)** (pī-LŌR-ik) The specialized region of the mucosa in the antrum of the stomach that secretes gastrin

**pyloric sphincter** (pī-LŌR-ik SFINGK-tur) The juncture between the stomach and duodenum

**RAAS** See *renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system*

**radiation** Emission of heat energy from the surface of a warm body in the form of electromagnetic waves

**reabsorption** The net movement of interstitial fluid into the capillary

**receptive field** The circumscribed region surrounding a sensory neuron within which the neuron responds to stimulus information

**receptor** See *sensory receptor* or *receptor (in membrane)*

**receptor-channel** A type of receptor that is an integral part of a channel that opens (or closes) on binding with an extracellular messenger

**receptor (in membrane)** Membrane protein that binds with a specific extracellular chemical messenger, bringing about membrane and intracellular events that alter the activity of the particular cell

**receptor-mediated endocytosis** Import of a particular large molecule from the ECF into a cell by formation and pinching off of an endocytic pouch in response to binding of the molecule to a surface membrane receptor specific for it

**receptor potential** The graded potential change that occurs in a sensory receptor in response to a stimulus; generates action potentials in the afferent neuron fiber

**reduced hemoglobin** Hemoglobin that is not combined with O<sub>2</sub>

**reflex** Any response that occurs automatically without conscious effort; the components of a reflex arc include a receptor, afferent pathway, integrating center, efferent pathway, and effector

**refraction** Bending of a light ray

**refractory period** (rē-FRAK-tuh-rē) The time period when a recently activated patch of membrane is refractory (unresponsive) to further stimulation, which prevents the action potential from spreading backward into the area through which it has just passed and ensures the unidirectional propagation of the action potential away from the initial site of activation

**regulatory T cells** A class of T lymphocytes that suppresses the activity of other lymphocytes

**releasing hormone** A hypothalamic hormone that stimulates the secretion of a particular anterior pituitary hormone

**renal cortex** An outer granular-appearing region of the kidney

**renal medulla** (RĒ-nul muh-DUL-uh) An inner striated-appearing region of the kidney

**renal threshold** The plasma concentration at which the  $T_m$  of a particular substance is reached and the substance first starts appearing in the urine

**renin** (RĒ-nin) An enzymatic hormone released from the kidneys in response to a decrease in NaCl or ECF volume or arterial blood pressure; activates angiotensinogen

**renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS)** (an'jē-ō-TEN-sun al-dō-steer-OWN) The salt-conserving system triggered by the release of renin from the kidneys, which activates angiotensin, stimulating aldosterone secretion and Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption by the kidney tubules during the formation of urine

**repolarization** (rē'-pō-luh-ruh-ZĀ-shun) Return of membrane potential to resting potential following a depolarization

**reproductive tract** The system of ducts specialized to transport or house the gametes after they are produced

**residual volume** The minimum volume of air remaining in the lungs even after a maximal expiration

**resistance** Hindrance of blood or air flow through a blood vessel or respiratory airway, respectively

**respiration** The sum of processes that accomplish ongoing passive movement of O<sub>2</sub> from the atmosphere to the tissues, as well as the continual passive movement of metabolically produced CO<sub>2</sub> from the tissues to the atmosphere

**respiratory acidosis** (as-i-DŌ-sus) Acidosis resulting from abnormal retention of CO<sub>2</sub> arising from hypoventilation

**respiratory airways** The system of tubes that conducts air between the atmosphere and the alveoli of the lungs

**respiratory alkalosis** (al'-kuh-LŌ-sus) Alkalosis caused by excessive loss of CO<sub>2</sub> from the body as a result of hyperventilation

**respiratory rate** Breaths per minute

**resting membrane potential** The membrane potential that exists when an excitable cell is not displaying an electrical signal

**reticular activating system (RAS)** (ri-TIK-ū-lur) Ascending fibers that originate in the reticular formation and carry signals upward to arouse and activate the cerebral cortex

**reticular formation** A network of interconnected neurons that runs throughout the brain stem and initially receives and integrates all synaptic input to the brain

**retina** The innermost layer in the posterior region of the eye that contains the eye's photoreceptors (rods and cones)

**ribonucleic acid (RNA)** (rī-bō-new-KLĀ-ik) A nucleic acid that exists in three forms (messenger RNA, ribosomal RNA, and transfer RNA), which participate in gene transcription and protein synthesis

**ribosomes** (RĪ-bō-sōmz) Special ribosomal RNA-protein complexes that synthesize proteins under the direction of nuclear DNA

**right atrium** (Ā-trē'-um) The heart chamber that receives venous blood from the systemic circulation

**right ventricle** The heart chamber that pumps blood into the pulmonary circulation

**RNA** See *ribonucleic acid*

**rods** The eye's photoreceptors used for night vision

**rough ER** The flattened, ribosome-studded sacs of the endoplasmic reticulum that synthesize proteins for export or for use in membrane construction

**round window** The membrane-covered opening that separates the lower chamber of the cochlea in the inner ear from the middle ear

**salivary amylase** (AM-uh-lās') An enzyme produced by the salivary glands that begins carbohydrate digestion in the mouth and continues it in the stomach after the food and saliva have been swallowed

**saltatory conduction** (SAL-tuh-tōr'-ē) The means by which an action potential is propagated throughout a myelinated fiber, with the impulse jumping over the myelinated regions from one node of Ranvier to the next

**salt balance** Balance between salt intake and salt output; important in controlling ECF volume

**SA node** See *sinoatrial node*

**sarcomere** (SAR-kō-mir) The functional unit of skeletal muscle; the area between two Z lines within a myofibril

**sarcoplasmic reticulum** (ri-TIK-yuh-lum) A fine meshwork of interconnected tubules that surrounds a muscle fiber's myofibrils; contains expanded lateral sacs, which store calcium that is released into the cytosol in response to a local action potential

**satiety signals** (suh-TĪ-ut-ē) Signals that lead to the sensation of fullness and suppress the desire to eat

**saturation** The condition in which all binding sites on a carrier molecule are occupied

**Schwann cells** (shwahn) The myelin-forming cells of the peripheral nervous system

**sclera** The visible, white, outer layer of the eye

**secondary active transport** A transport mechanism in which a carrier molecule for glucose or an amino acid is driven by a  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient established by the energy-dependent  $\text{Na}^+$  pump to transfer the glucose or amino acid uphill without directly expending energy to operate the carrier

**secondary follicle** A developing ovarian follicle that is secreting estrogen and forming an antrum

**secondary sexual characteristics** The many external characteristics that are not directly involved in reproduction but that distinguish males and females

**second messenger** An intracellular chemical that is activated by binding of an extracellular first messenger to a surface receptor site, triggering a preprogrammed series of biochemical events that alter activity of intracellular proteins controlling a particular cellular activity

**secretin** (si-KRĒT-'n) A hormone released from the duodenal mucosa primarily in response to the presence of acid; inhibits gastric motility and secretion and stimulates secretion of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution from the pancreas and liver

**secretion** Release to a cell's exterior, on appropriate stimulation, of substances produced by the cell

**secretory phase** The phase of the menstrual cycle characterized by the development of a lush endometrial lining capable of supporting a fertilized ovum; also known as the *progestational phase*

**secretory vesicles** (VES-i-kuls) Membrane-enclosed sacs containing proteins that have been synthesized and processed by the endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi complex of the cell and which will be released to the cell's exterior by exocytosis on appropriate stimulation

**segmentation** The small intestine's primary method of motility; consists of oscillating, ringlike contractions of the circular smooth muscle along the small intestine's length

**selectively permeable membrane** A membrane that permits some particles to pass through while excluding others

**self-antigens** Antigens that are characteristic of a person's own cells

**semen** (SĒ-men) A mixture of accessory sex gland secretions and sperm

**semicircular canal** Sense organ in the inner ear that detects rotational or angular acceleration or deceleration of the head

**semilunar valves** (sem-'i-LEW-nur) The aortic and pulmonary valves

**seminal vesicles** (VES-i-kuls) Male accessory sex glands that supply fructose to ejaculated sperm and secrete prostatic glands

**semiferous tubules** (sem-'uh-NIF-uh-rus) The highly coiled tubules within the testes that produce spermatozoa

**sensor** The component of a control system that monitors the magnitude of the controlled variable

**sensory afferent** Pathway into the central nervous system carrying information that reaches the level of consciousness

**sensory input** Input from somatic sensation and special senses

**sensory receptor** An afferent neuron's peripheral ending, which is specialized to respond to a particular stimulus in its environment

**sensory transduction** The conversion of stimulus energy into a receptor potential

**Sertoli cells** (sur-TÖL-lē) Cells located in the seminiferous tubules that support spermatozoa during their development

**serum** Plasma minus fibrinogen and other clotting precursors

**set point** The desired level at which homeostatic control mechanisms maintain a controlled variable

**sex hormones** The steroid hormones responsible for the development of masculine and feminine characteristics; testosterone in males and estrogens in females

**signal molecule** An extracellular chemical messenger that initiates signal transduction in a cell

**signal transduction** The sequence of events in which incoming signals from extracellular chemical messengers are conveyed into a target cell where they are transformed into the dictated cellular response

**single-unit smooth muscle** The most abundant type of smooth muscle; made up of muscle fibers interconnected by gap junctions so that they become excited and contract as a unit; also known as *visceral smooth muscle*

**sinoatrial (SA) node** (sī-nō-Ā-trē-ul) A small specialized autorhythmic region in the right atrial wall of the heart that has the fastest rate of spontaneous depolarizations and serves as the normal pacemaker of the heart

**skeletal muscle** Striated muscle, which is attached to the skeleton and is responsible for movement of the bones in purposeful relation to one another; innervated by the somatic nervous system and under voluntary control

**slow-wave potentials** Self-excitability activity of an excitable cell in which its membrane potential undergoes gradually alternating depolarizing and hyperpolarizing swings

**smooth ER** The tubules of the endoplasmic reticulum that package newly synthesized proteins in transport vesicles

**smooth muscle** Involuntary muscle in the walls of hollow organs and tubes innervated by the autonomic nervous system

**sodium ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) load** The total amount of  $\text{Na}^+$  in the body, which determines the ECF volume through its osmotic effect

**somatic cells** (sō-MAT-ik) Body cells, as contrasted with reproductive cells

**somatic nervous system** The portion of the efferent division of the peripheral nervous system that innervates skeletal muscles; consists of the axonal fibers of the alpha motor neurons

**somatic sensation** Sensory information arising from the body surface, including somesthetic sensation and proprioception

**somatostatin** (sō-'mat-uh-MĒ-din) See *insulin-like growth factor*

**somatosensory cortex** The region of the parietal lobe immediately behind the central sulcus; the site of initial processing of somesthetic and proprioceptive input

**somatotropes** Anterior pituitary cells that secrete growth hormone

**somesthetic sensations** (SŌ-mes-THEH-tik) Awareness of sensory input such as touch, pressure, temperature, and pain from the body's surface

**sound waves** Traveling vibrations of air in which regions of high pressure caused by compression of air molecules alternate with regions of low pressure caused by rarefaction of the molecules

**spatial summation** The summing of several postsynaptic potentials arising from the simultaneous activation of several excitatory (or several inhibitory) synapses

**special senses** Vision, hearing, equilibrium, taste, and smell

**specificity** Ability of carrier molecules to transport only specific substances across the plasma membrane

**spermatogenesis** (spur'-mat-uh-JEN-uh-sus) Sperm production

**sphincter** (sfink-tur) A voluntarily controlled ring of skeletal muscle that controls passage of contents through an opening into or out of a hollow organ or tube

**spinal reflex** A reflex that is integrated by the spinal cord

**spleen** A lymphoid tissue in the upper left part of the abdomen that stores lymphocytes and platelets and destroys old red blood cells

**state of equilibrium** State of a system in which no net change is occurring

**stem cells** Relatively undifferentiated cells that can give rise to highly differentiated, specialized cells while at the same time making new stem cells

**steroids** (STEER-oidz) Hormones derived from cholesterol

**stimulus** A detectable physical or chemical change in the environment of a sensory receptor

**stress** The generalized, nonspecific response of the body to any factor that overwhelms, or threatens to overwhelm, the body's compensatory abilities to maintain homeostasis

**stretch reflex** A monosynaptic reflex in which an afferent neuron originating at a stretch-detecting receptor in a skeletal muscle terminates directly on the efferent neuron supplying the same muscle to cause it to contract and counteract the stretch

**stroke volume (SV)** The volume of blood pumped out of each ventricle with each contraction, or beat, of the heart

**subcortical regions** The brain regions that lie under the cerebral cortex, including the basal nuclei, thalamus, and hypothalamus

**submucosa** The connective tissue layer of the digestive tract that lies under the mucosa and contains the larger blood and lymph vessels and a nerve network

**substance P** The neurotransmitter released from pain fibers

**subs synaptic membrane** (sub-sih-NAP-tik) The portion of the postsynaptic cell membrane that lies immediately underneath a synapse and contains receptor sites for the synapse's neurotransmitter



**suprachiasmatic nucleus** (souv´-ra-kī-as-MAT-ik) A cluster of nerve cell bodies in the hypothalamus that serves as the master biological clock, acting as the pacemaker establishing many of the body's circadian rhythms

**surface tension** The force at the liquid surface of an air-water interface resulting from the greater attraction of water molecules to the surrounding water molecules than to the air above the surface; a force that tends to decrease the area of a liquid surface and resists stretching of the surface

**sympathetic nervous system** The subdivision of the autonomic nervous system that dominates in emergency ("fight-or-flight") or stressful situations and prepares the body for strenuous physical activity

**symport** The form of secondary active transport in which the driving ion and transported solute move in the same direction across the plasma membrane; also called *cotransport*

**synapse** (SIN-aps´) The specialized junction between two neurons where an action potential in the presynaptic neuron influences the membrane potential of the postsynaptic neuron, typically by releasing a chemical messenger that diffuses across the small cleft between the neurons

**synergism** (SIN-er-jiz´-um) The result of several complementary actions in which the combined effect is greater than the sum of the separate effects

**systemic circulation** (sis-TEM-ik) The closed loop of blood vessels carrying blood between the heart and body systems

**stystole** (SIS-tō-lē) The period of cardiac contraction and emptying

T<sub>3</sub> See *tri-iodothyronine*

T<sub>4</sub> See *thyroxine*

T<sub>m</sub> See *transport maximum* and *tubular maximum*

**tactile** (TACK-til) Referring to touch

**target-cell receptors** Receptors located on a target cell that are specific for a particular chemical mediator

**target cells** The cells that a particular extracellular chemical messenger, such as a hormone or a neurotransmitter, influences

**temporal lobes** The lateral lobes of the cerebral cortex, which initially process auditory input

**temporal summation** The summing of several postsynaptic potentials that occur very close together in time because of successive firing of a single presynaptic neuron

**tension** The force produced during muscle contraction by shortening of the sarcomeres, resulting in stretching and tightening of the muscle's elastic connective tissue and tendon, which transmit the tension to the bone to which the muscle is attached

**terminal button** A motor neuron's enlarged knob-like ending that terminates near a skeletal muscle fiber and releases acetylcholine in response to an action potential in the neuron

**testosterone** (tes-TOS-tuh-rōn) The male sex hormone, secreted by the Leydig cells of the testes

**tetanus** (TET´-n-us) A smooth, maximal muscle contraction that occurs when the fiber is stimulated so rapidly that it does not have a chance to relax at all between stimuli

**tetraiodothyronine** See *thyroxine*

**thalamus** (THAL-uh-mus) The brain region that serves as a synaptic integrating center for preliminary processing of all sensory input on its way to the cerebral cortex

**thecal cells** (THĀY-kel) The outer layer of specialized ovarian connective tissue cells in a maturing follicle

**thermoreceptor** (thur´-mō-rē-SEP-tur) A sensory receptor sensitive to heat and cold

**thick filaments** Specialized cytoskeletal structures within skeletal muscle that are made up of myosin molecules and interact with the thin filaments to shorten the fiber during muscle contraction

**thin filaments** Specialized cytoskeletal structures within skeletal muscle that are made up of actin, tropomyosin, and troponin molecules and interact with the thick filaments to shorten the fiber during muscle contraction

**thoracic cavity** (thō-RAS-ik) Chest cavity

**threshold potential** The critical potential that must be reached before an action potential is initiated in an excitable cell

**thrombus** An abnormal clot attached to the inner lining of a blood vessel

**thymus** (THĪ-mus) A lymphoid gland located midline in the chest cavity that processes T lymphocytes and produces the hormone thymosin, which maintains the T-cell lineage

**thyroglobulin** (thī´-rō-GLOB-yuh-lun) A large, complex molecule on which all steps of thyroid hormone synthesis and storage take place

**thyroid gland** A bilobed endocrine gland that lies over the trachea and secretes the hormones thyroxine and tri-iodothyronine, which regulate overall basal metabolic rate, and calcitonin, which contributes to control of calcium balance

**thyroid hormone** Collectively, the hormones secreted by the thyroid follicular cells, namely, thyroxine and tri-iodothyronine

**thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)** An anterior pituitary hormone that stimulates secretion of thyroid hormone and promotes growth of the thyroid gland; thyrotropin

**thyrotropes** Anterior pituitary cells that secrete thyroid-stimulating hormone

**thyroxine** (thī-ROCKS-in) The most abundant hormone secreted by the thyroid gland; important in the regulation of overall metabolic rate; also known as *tetraiodothyronine* or T<sub>4</sub>

**tidal volume** The volume of air entering or leaving the lungs during a single breath

**tight junction** An impermeable junction between two adjacent epithelial cells formed by the sealing together of the cells' lateral edges near their luminal borders; prevents passage of substances between the cells

**tissue** (1) A functional aggregation of cells of a single specialized type, such as nerve cells forming nervous tissue; (2) the aggregate of various cellular and extracellular components that make up a particular organ, such as lung tissue

**tissue-specific stem cells** Partially differentiated cells that can generate the highly differentiated, specialized cell types composing a particular tissue

**T lymphocytes (T cells)** White blood cells that accomplish cell-mediated immune responses against targets to which they have been previously exposed; see also *cytotoxic T cells*, *helper T cells*, and *regulatory T cells*

**tone** The ongoing baseline of activity in a given system or structure, as in muscle tone, sympathetic tone, or vascular tone

**tonicity** A measure of the effect a solution has on cell volume when the solution surrounds the cell

**total peripheral resistance** The resistance offered by all the peripheral blood vessels, with arteriolar resistance contributing most extensively

**trachea** (TRĀ-kē-uh) The "windpipe"; the conducting airway that extends from the pharynx and branches into two bronchi, each entering a lung

**tract** A bundle of nerve fibers (axons of long interneurons) with a similar function within the spinal cord

**transduction** Conversion of stimuli into action potentials by sensory receptors

**transepithelial transport** (tranz-ep-i-THĒ-lē-al) The entire sequence of steps involved in the transfer of a substance across the epithelium between either the renal tubular lumen or digestive tract lumen and the blood

**transmural pressure gradient** The pressure difference across the lung wall (intra-alveolar pressure is greater than intrapleural pressure) that stretches the lungs to fill the thoracic cavity, which is larger than the unstretched lungs

**transporter recruitment** The phenomenon of inserting additional transporters (carriers) for a particular substance into the plasma membrane, thereby increasing membrane permeability to the substance, in response to an appropriate stimulus

**transport maximum (T<sub>m</sub>)** The maximum rate of a substance's carrier-mediated transport across the membrane when the carrier is saturated; known as *tubular maximum* in transepithelial transport across the kidney tubules

**transport vesicle** Membranous sac enclosing newly synthesized proteins that buds off the smooth endoplasmic reticulum and moves the proteins to the Golgi complex for further processing and packaging for their final destination

**transverse tubule (T tubule)** A perpendicular infolding of the surface membrane of a muscle fiber; rapidly spreads surface electric activity into the central portions of the muscle fiber

**triglycerides** (trī-GLIS-uh-rīdz) Neutral fats composed of one glycerol molecule with three fatty acid molecules attached

**tri-iodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>)** (trī-ī-ō-dō-THĪ-ro-nēn) The most potent hormone secreted by the thyroid follicular cells; important in the regulation of overall metabolic rate

**trophoblast** (TRŌF-uh-blast´) The outer layer of cells in a blastocyst that is responsible for accomplishing implantation and developing the fetal portion of the placenta

**tropic hormone** (TRŌ-pik) A hormone that regulates the secretion of another hormone

**tropomyosin** (trōp´-uh-MĪ-uh-sun) One of the regulatory proteins in the thin filaments of muscle fibers

**troponin** (trō-PŌ-nun) One of the regulatory proteins in the thin filaments of muscle fibers

**TSH** See *thyroid-stimulating hormone*

**T tubule** See *transverse tubule*

**tubular maximum (T<sub>m</sub>)** The maximum amount of a substance that the renal tubular cells can actively transport within a given time period; the kidney cells' equivalent of transport maximum

**tubular reabsorption** The selective transfer of substances from tubular fluid into peritubular capillaries during urine formation

**tubular secretion** The selective transfer of substances from peritubular capillaries into the tubular lumen during urine formation

**twitch** A brief, weak contraction that occurs in response to a single action potential in a muscle fiber

**twitch summation** The addition of two or more muscle twitches as a result of rapidly repetitive stimulation, resulting in greater tension in the fiber than that produced by a single action potential

**tympanic membrane** (tim-PAN-ik) The eardrum, which is stretched across the entrance to the middle ear and which vibrates when struck by sound waves funneled down the external ear canal

**Type I alveolar cells** (al-VĒ-ō-lur) The single layer of flattened epithelial cells that forms the wall of the alveoli within the lungs

**Type II alveolar cells** The cells within the alveolar walls that secrete pulmonary surfactant

**ultrafiltration** The net movement of a protein-free plasma out of the capillary into the surrounding interstitial fluid

**umami** A meaty or savory taste

**ureter** (yū-RĒ-tur) A duct that transmits urine from the kidney to the bladder

**urethra** (yū-RĒ-thruh) A tube that carries urine from the bladder out of the body

**urine excretion** The elimination of substances from the body in the urine; anything filtered or secreted and not reabsorbed is excreted

**vagus nerve** (VĀ-gus) The tenth cranial nerve, which serves as the major parasympathetic nerve

**varicosities** Swellings in autonomic postganglionic fibers that simultaneously release neurotransmitter over a large area of an innervated organ

**vascular tone** The state of partial constriction of arteriolar smooth muscle that establishes a baseline of arteriolar resistance

**vasoconstriction** (vā´zō-kun-STRIK-shun) The narrowing of a blood vessel lumen as a result of contraction of the vascular circular smooth muscle

**vasodilation** The enlargement of a blood vessel lumen as a result of relaxation of the vascular circular smooth muscle

**vasopressin** (vā-zō-PRES-sin) A hormone secreted by the hypothalamus, then stored and released from the posterior pituitary; increases the permeability of the distal and collecting tubules of the kidneys to water and promotes arteriolar vasoconstriction; also known as *antidiuretic hormone* (ADH)

**vein** A vessel that carries blood toward the heart

**vena cava** (**venae cavae, plural**) (VĒ-nah CĀV-ah; VĒ-nē cāv-ē) A large vein that empties blood into the right atrium

**venous return** (VĒ-nus) The volume of blood returned to each atrium per minute from the veins

**ventilation** The mechanical act of moving air in and out of the lungs; breathing

**ventricle** (VEN-tri-kul) (**of brain**) One of four interconnected chambers within the brain through which cerebrospinal fluid flows

**ventricle (of heart)** A lower chamber of the heart that pumps blood into the arteries

**vertical osmotic gradient** A progressive increase in the concentration of the interstitial fluid in the renal medulla from the cortical boundary down to the renal pelvis; important in the ability of the kidneys to put out urine of variable concentration, depending on the body's needs

**vesicle** (VES-i-kul) A small, intracellular, fluid-filled, membrane-enclosed sac

**vesicular transport** Movement of large molecules or multimolecular materials into or out of the cell within a vesicle, as in endocytosis or exocytosis

**vestibular apparatus** (veh-STIB-yuh-lur) The component of the inner ear that provides information essential for the sense of equilibrium and for coordinating head movements with eye and postural movements; consists of the semicircular canals, utricle, and saccule

**villus** (**villi, plural**) (VIL-us) Microscopic finger-like projections from the inner surface of the small intestine

**virulence** (VIR-you-lentz) The disease-producing power of a pathogen

**visceral afferent** A pathway into the central nervous system that carries subconscious information derived from the internal viscera

**visceral smooth muscle** (VIS-uh-rul) See *single-unit smooth muscle*

**viscosity** (vis-KOS-i-tē) The friction developed between molecules of a fluid as they slide over each other during flow of the fluid; the greater the viscosity, the greater the resistance to flow

**visible light** The portion of the electromagnetic spectrum to which the eyes' photoreceptors are responsive (wavelengths between 400 and 700 nanometers)

**vital capacity** The maximum volume of air that can be moved out during a single breath following a maximal inspiration

**vitreous humor** The jelly-like substance in the posterior cavity of the eye between the lens and retina

**voltage-gated channels** Channels in the plasma membrane that open or close in response to changes in membrane potential

**voluntary muscle** Muscle innervated by the somatic nervous system and subject to voluntary control; skeletal muscle

**water balance** The balance between water intake and water output; important in controlling ECF osmolarity

**white matter** The portion of the central nervous system composed of myelinated nerve fibers

**Z line** A flattened disclike cytoskeletal protein that connects the thin filaments of two adjoining sarcomeres

**zona fasciculata** (zō-nah fa-SIK-ū-lah-ta) The middle and largest layer of the adrenal cortex; major source of cortisol

**zona glomerulosa** (glō-MAIR-yū-lō-sah) The outermost layer of the adrenal cortex; sole source of aldosterone

**zona reticularis** (ri-TIK-yuh-lair-us) The innermost layer of the adrenal cortex; produces cortisol, along with the zona fasciculata



# Index

- 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (BPG) and percent hemoglobin saturation, 369
- A band of skeletal muscle, 196
- ABO blood group system, 302–303
- Absolute refractory period and action potential, 82
- Absorption, digestive, 438
- Absorptive state (metabolic), 528
- Acclimatization
  - defined, 422
  - process, 372
- Accommodation, visual, 150–151
- ACE inhibitor drugs and sodium reabsorption, 394
- Acetylcholine (ACh)
  - digestion and, 453
  - nerve pathway and, 180
  - neuromuscular junctions and, 186–188
- Acetylcholinesterase (AChE) and neuromuscular junctions, 188
- Acid (chemical)
  - defined, 426–427, A–10
  - dissociation constants, A–30
  - effect on percent hemoglobin saturation, 369
  - gastric emptying and, 448–449
  - hydrogen generation and, 429
- Acid–base balance
  - buffer systems and, 430–431
  - chemistry, A–30–A–37
  - diagram, A–36–A–37
  - disruptions, 433–434
  - hydrogen ion secretion and, 398
  - kidneys and, 416, 432–433
  - overview, 426–434
  - respiratory regulation of, 431–432
- Acid–base imbalance
  - diagram, A–36–A–37
  - rules of thumb, A–34
- Acidic solution, 427
- Acidosis
  - defined, 427
  - effects on the body, 428
  - renal responses, 433, A–34
  - respiratory adjustments to, 431
- Acini, 457
- Acquired salivary reflex, 444
- Acromegaly, 510, 511
- Acrosome, 554–555
- Acrosome reaction, 576
- Actin
  - cell contractile systems and, 38
  - defined, 37
  - smooth muscles and, 220
- Actin of skeletal muscle, 196
- Action potential
  - all-or-none law, 83
  - cardiac contractile cells, 238
  - compared to graded potential, 81
  - contiguous conduction, 80
  - defined, 74
  - frequency in afferent fibers, 143
  - initiation in excitable tissues, 223
  - initiation sites, 142
  - ion movement and, 75–78
  - membrane permeability and, 75–78
  - membrane potential changes and, 75
  - myelination and, 83
  - Na<sup>+</sup>–K<sup>+</sup> pump and, 78
  - nerve fibers and, 80
  - neuromuscular junctions and, 187
  - normal rate of discharge in heart, 236
  - propagation, 78–80
  - refractory period, 81–82
  - sensory receptor potential and, 142
  - skeletal muscle, 200
  - skeleton muscle fiber and, 204
  - stimulus strength and, 83
- Activated T cell and immunity, 325
- Active hyperemia, 271
- Active transport, 58–60
- Acupuncture analgesia (AA), 147
- Acupuncture endorphin hypothesis, 147
- Acute mountain sickness, 372
- Acute myocardial infarction
  - defined, 243
  - possible outcomes, 255
- Adaptive immunity
  - bacterial infection and, 331
  - function, 312, 313
  - general concepts, 319–320
- Addiction, steroidal, 213
- Addison's disease, 522
- Adenine (A) and DNA, A–18
- Adenohypophysis, 501
- Adenosine diphosphate (ADP)
  - ATP generation and, 27
  - energy cycle, 33
- Adenosine triphosphate (ATP). *See* ATP
- Adenylyl cyclase and cAMP second-messenger pathways, 97
- Adhesion, cell to cell, 47
- Adipocyte, 482
- Adipokine, 482
- Adipose tissue
  - defined, 338
  - hormonal function, 500
  - metabolic states and, 529
  - stored nutrients in, 34, 35
- Adolescence and testosterone, 551
- ADP
  - ATP generation and, 27
  - energy cycle, 33
- Adrenal androgen hypersecretion, 521–522
- Adrenal cortex
  - function, 499, 518
  - sex hormone secretion and, 520–522
- Adrenal gland
  - anatomy, 518
  - function, 494
  - hormonal function, 518
  - overview, 517–523
- Adrenal medulla
  - anatomy, 522–523
  - function, 184, 518
- Adrenaline source, 184
- Adrenergic fiber, 180
- Adrenergic receptor, 184
- Adrenocortical hormone and adrenal cortex, 518
- Adrenocortical insufficiency, 522
- Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)
  - adrenal androgen secretion and, 521
  - function, 502–504
- Adrenocorticotropin, 502
- Adrenogenital syndrome, 521–522, 550
- Aerobic, defined, 30
- Aerobic exercise
  - defined, 210
  - discussion, 34
- Afferent arteriole
  - function, 382–383
  - GFR control and, 390
- Afferent fiber
  - action potential frequency in, 143
  - pain processing, 145–146
  - visceral, 143–144
- Afferent fiber and spinal nerve, 133
- Afferent neuron
  - action potential and, 142
  - action potential initiation, 223
  - defined, 109
  - features, 188
  - sensory receptors on, 141
- Afferent pathway and reflex arc, 134
- After hyperpolarization, 75
- Afterbirth, 585
- Agglutination, 321
- Agranulocyte, 310
- Airflow and airway resistance, 353–355
- Aldosterone
  - deficiency, 522
  - function, 518–519
  - hypersecretion, 521
  - potassium ion secretion and, 398
  - sodium reabsorption and, 393–394
  - tubular reabsorption and, 392–394
- Aldosterone receptor blocker, 394
- Alkaline mucus and digestion, 451
- Alkaline solution, 427
- Alkalosis
  - defined, 427
  - effects on the body, 428
  - renal responses, 433, A–34
  - respiratory adjustments to, 431
- Allergen, 334
- Allergy, 334
- All-or-none law and action potential, 83
- Alpha cell, 529
- Alpha motor neuron, 215–216
- Alpha receptor, 184
- Altitude effects on the body, 371–372
- Alveolar air, 362–363
- Alveolar macrophage, 339
- Alveolar surface tension and lungs, 357
- Alveolar ventilation
  - anatomic dead space and, 360–361
  - breathing pattern effects, 361–362
- Alveolus
  - function, 586
  - hemoglobin and, 367
  - hemoglobin gas exchange and, 367–368
  - net diffusion of gasses, 365
  - overview, 347–348
  - pulmonary capillaries and, 348
- Alzheimer's disease (AD) and hippocampus, 128
- Amblyopia, 107
- Amine, 94
- Amino acid
  - digestion and, 438
  - GH secretion and, 509
  - insulin and, 530, 531
  - kidney function and, 395
  - proteins and, A–13–A–14
- Amino peptidase, 465
- Ammonia secretion, 432–433, A–34
- Ammonium ion formation, 433
- Amnesia, 127
- Amnion, 580

- Amniotic fluid, 580
- Amniotic sac  
parturition and, 585  
pregnancy and, 580
- Amoeboid movement, 38
- Amygdala and emotion, 124
- Amylase, salivary, 444
- Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 186
- Anabolic, defined, 213
- Anabolic androgenic steroid, 213
- Anabolism, 526
- Anaerobic, 30, 210
- Anaerobic exercise  
defined, 210  
discussion, 34
- Anal sphincter, 472–473
- Analgesic, 145
- Anaphase  
meiotic, A–27  
mitotic, A–26, A–27
- Anaphylactic shock, 335, 337
- Anatomic dead space and ventilation, 360–361
- Anatomy, 1
- Androgen  
defined, 520  
hypersecretion, 521–522  
sexual differentiation and, 549
- Androgen disrupter, 563
- Androgen-binding protein, 555
- Androgenic, 213
- Android obesity, 485–486
- Anemia  
causes, 301–302  
renal failure and, 411
- Anemic hypoxia, 371
- Angina pectoris and atherosclerosis, 254
- Angiogenesis and VEGF, 272
- Angiotensin I and sodium reabsorption, 393
- Angiotensin II and sodium reabsorption, 393
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), 393–394
- Angiotensinogen and sodium reabsorption, 393
- Anion, 52, A–5
- Anorexia nervosa, 486
- Antagonism (hormonal), 498
- Anterior pituitary gland  
defined, 501  
function, 502  
hypothalamus and, 504, 506
- Anterior pituitary hormones, 504
- Anterograde amnesia, 127
- Antibody  
constant (Fc) region, 320–321  
function, 302, 321  
microbe elimination process, 323  
production, 322–324  
structure, 322  
subclasses, 320–321
- Antibody-mediated immunity  
B lymphocytes and, 320–324  
defined, 319
- Anticodon and tRNA, A–24
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 406–407, 501
- Antigen  
adaptive immunity and, 319–320  
antibodies and, 321  
defined, 302
- Antigen-binding fragment (Fab), 320
- Antigen-presenting cell (APC)  
interactions, 331, 332  
T lymphocytes and, 328
- Antioxidant, 512
- Antiport  
carrier-mediated transport and, 60  
characteristics, 63
- Antral follicle, 567
- Antrum  
defined, 447  
formation, 567
- Aorta, 232
- Aortic arch baroreceptor, 289
- Aortic body and blood gas, 375
- Aortic valve, 233
- Aphasia, 120
- Aplastic anemia, 301
- Apnea, 371, 377
- Apneusis, 374
- Apneustic center, 374
- Apoptosis, 98–99
- Appendicitis, 473
- Appendix, 472
- Appetite signal  
defined, 482  
effects of involuntary, 484
- Aquaporin, 52, 397
- Aqueous humor  
formation and drainage, 148  
function, 147, 160
- Arcuate nucleus and energy balance, 482
- Aristotle, 265
- Aromatase, 553
- Arousal system and sleep, 132
- Arrhenius, Svante, A–10
- Arterial baroreceptor, 290
- Arteriolar radius  
cardiac output and, 271  
extrinsic sympathetic control of, 273  
factors affecting, 275  
metabolic influences on, 271
- Arteriole  
contributions to homeostasis, 260  
features, 266  
function, 269  
kidney, 382–383  
location, 264  
parasympathetic innervation and, 274  
response to stretch, 272–273  
temperature application effects, 273
- Artery  
contributions to homeostasis, 260  
defined, 230  
features, 266  
location, 264  
as pressure reservoir, 264, 266, 267
- Artificial pacemaker, 236
- Asphyxia, 371
- Aspirin  
peptic ulcers and, 456  
stomach and, 455
- Asthma, 335, 356
- Astigmatism, 150
- Astrocyte, 109–111
- Atherosclerosis  
C-reactive protein and, 257  
discussion, 256  
homocysteine and, 257  
process, 253–254
- Atherosclerotic plaque, 253
- Atmospheric air, 362
- Atmospheric pressure and ventilation, 349, 350
- Atom  
bonding characteristics, A–4–A–5  
defined, 2  
types, A–3
- Atomic mass, A–4
- Atomic mass unit (amu), A–4
- Atomic number, A–3
- Atomic symbol, A–3
- Atomic valence bonding characteristics,  
A–4–A–5
- Atomic weight, A–4
- ATP  
cross-bridge cycling power, 201, 203  
energy cycle, 33  
energy uses, 33  
function, A–17  
mitochondria and production, 27–33  
muscle contraction speed and, 211  
muscle motion and, 210  
production process, 32  
structure, A–17
- ATP synthase, 30
- Atresia, 564
- Atria, 230
- Atrial excitation, 238
- Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) and sodium  
reabsorption, 394–395
- Atrial volume receptor, 425
- Atrioventricular (AV) node, 235
- Atrioventricular (AV) valve, 232
- Atrophy, 212
- Auditory cortex, 165
- Auditory hair cell, 165
- Auditory nerve, 165
- Autocatalytic process and digestion, 452
- Autoimmune, 191
- Autoimmune disease, 332, 516
- Autonomic agonist, 185
- Autonomic antagonist, 185
- Autonomic nerve pathway, 179–180
- Autonomic nervous system  
defined, 178  
diagram, 181  
effects, 183  
features, 187  
insulin secretion and, 531–532  
overview, 179–185  
parasympathetic division, 108  
smooth muscle activity modification, 224  
sympathetic division, 108
- Autonomic neurotransmitter receptor types,  
184–185
- Autonomic receptor types, 184
- Autonomous smooth muscle function,  
439, 441
- Autoregulation, 272
- Autorhythmic cell, 234, 235
- Autorhythmicity, 234
- Autosomal chromosome, 549
- AV nodal delay, 238
- Avogadro's number, A–8
- Axon  
defined, 79  
efferent, 109
- Axon hillock, 78–80
- Axon terminal, 78–80
- Axonal transport  
example, 35  
process, 37
- B cell. *See* B lymphocyte; *specializations*
- B lymphocyte  
adaptive immunity and, 319  
antibody-mediated immunity and, 320  
characteristics, 334  
defined, 311  
interactions, 332  
as memory cells, 324  
origins, 320  
unactivated, 321
- Backbone, 229
- Bacteria  
colonic, 473  
immune system and, 309
- Balance beam concept and acid–base status,  
A–36–A–37

- Balance concept, 417
  - Balanced equation, A–7
  - Barometric pressure and ventilation, 349
  - Baroreceptor
    - See also *specific types*
    - adaptation during hypertension, 292
    - function, 289
  - Baroreceptor reflex
    - blood pressure and, 419
    - diagram, 291
    - function, 289
    - GFR control and, 389, 390
  - Basal ganglia, 122
  - Basal metabolic rate (BMR)
    - factors influencing, 481
    - measuring, 480–481
    - thyroid hormone and, 515
  - Basal nuclei
    - diagram, 122
    - location, 114
    - motor control and, 123
    - overview, 122
  - Base (chemical), 427, A–10
  - Basement membrane, 387
  - Basic electrical rhythm (BER) and digestive regulation, 441
  - Basic solution, 427
  - Basilar membrane
    - deflection, 165, 167
    - description, 165
    - function, 172
  - Basophil, 310
  - B-cell receptor (BCR)
    - diagram, 321
    - function, 320
  - Behavior
    - higher cortex and, 124
    - limbic system and, 124
    - neurotransmitters and, 125
    - patterns during sleep, 131
    - steroids and, 213
  - Bends, 373
  - Benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH), 557
  - Benign tumor, 332
  - Beta amyloid and Alzheimer’s disease, 128
  - Beta cell, 529
  - Beta receptor, 184
  - Beyond the Basics
    - acupuncture, 147
    - aerobic exercise, 34
    - altitude effects on the body, 371–372
    - atherosclerosis, 256
    - biological clock, 512
    - botulinum toxin’s reputation, 192
    - circulation history, 265
    - cystic fibrosis, 46
    - dialysis, 412
    - environmental “estrogens,” 562–563
    - extreme temperatures, 491
    - immunization, 325
    - plasma volume, 422
    - programmed cell suicide, 98
    - stem cell science and tissue engineering, 7
    - steroids, 213
    - strokes, 113
    - ulcers, 456
    - vaccination, 325
  - Bicarbonate
    - carbon dioxide transport and, 370–371
    - regulating reabsorption, 432
    - renal excretion, 433
    - renal regulation of, A–33–A–34
  - Bicuspid valve, 232
  - Bile, 459, 460
  - Bile canaliculus, 460
  - Bile salts
    - diagram, 463
    - fat absorption and, 469–470
    - function, 460–462
  - Bile secretion, stimulating, 462
  - Biliary secretion, 459–463
  - Bilirubin, 462–463
  - Binocular, 159
  - Biological clock, 511–512
  - Biological molecule, A–10
  - Biomolecule
    - defined, A–10
    - high-energy, A–17
  - Bipolar cell
    - function, 156–157, 160
    - retinal, 152
  - Birth. See Parturition
  - Birth control pill, 574
  - Birth decline and endocrine disrupters, 563
  - Bitter taste perception, 173
  - Black widow spider venom and neuromuscular junctions, 189
  - Bladder, 382, 410–411
  - Blastocyst implantation, 576–578
  - Blepharospasm, 192
  - Blind spot
    - defined, 152
    - diagram, 154
    - function, 160
  - Block to polyspermy, 576
  - Blood
    - cellular elements, 310
    - circulation circuit, 230–232
    - coagulation (See Clot formation)
    - components, 296, 297
    - constituent functions, 298
    - contributions to homeostasis, 296
    - defined, 229
    - gas transport, 365–373
    - reconditioning, 261
    - reconditioning organs, 261–262
    - storage percentages, 284
  - Blood cell
    - production, 312
    - types, 298
    - typical human count, 310
    - white, 38
  - Blood donor, universal, 303
  - Blood flow
    - blood vessel radius and, 263
    - capillaries and, 274–276
    - coronary, 252–253
    - dependencies, 262
    - laminar, 246
    - liver, 459–460
    - patterns, 260
    - physics, 260–269
    - pressure gradient and, 263
    - through the heart, 231
    - turbulent, 246
  - Blood gas. See Gas exchange; Gas transport; *specific types*
  - Blood glucose
    - diabetes and, 532
    - insulin and, 530, 531
    - insulin and glucagon and, 535
  - Blood pressure
    - See also *specific types*
    - cardiovascular control center and, 274
    - defined, 266
    - discussion, 287–293
    - ECF volume and, 419–420
    - fluctuations, 266–267
    - glomerular capillary, 387
    - mean arterial, 269
  - measuring, 267–268
  - regulating, 273–274
  - renal handling of sodium and, 421
  - stress and, 525
  - systemic, 269
- Blood recipient, universal, 303
  - Blood reservoir. veins as, 283–284
  - Blood type, 302–304
  - Blood vessel
    - contributions to homeostasis, 260
    - defined, 229
    - features, 266
    - flow and radius, 263
    - repair, 308
    - resistance and radius, 263
    - walls as barriers, 418
  - Blood–brain barrier (BBB), 112
  - Blood–testes barrier, 555
  - Body
    - cell components, A–18–A–19
    - cellular level, 2
    - chemical level, 2
    - levels of organization, 1–5
    - organ level, 4
    - organism level, 5
    - system level, 5
    - tissue level, 3
  - Body fluid, 418
    - See also *specific types*
  - Body system
    - See also *specific systems*
    - components, 6
    - contributions to homeostasis, 10, 11
    - defined, 5
    - homeostasis and, 8, 13
    - interdependencies, 9, 18
  - Body temperature, 486–492
  - Body water
    - distribution, 418
    - insensible loss, 424
    - movement, 419
    - sensible loss, 424
  - Bone
    - anatomy, 508
    - deposition, 537–538
    - mature, 508
    - nongrowing, 508
    - plasma calcium and, 537
    - resorption, 537
    - structure, 538
  - Bone fluid, 538
  - Bone growth
    - growth hormone and, 507–508
    - growth hormone control, 508
    - mechanisms, 508
    - testosterone and, 553
  - Bone marrow and erythrocytes, 300
  - Botox, 192
  - Botulinum toxin, 192
  - Botulinum toxin and neuromuscular junctions, 189
  - Bowman’s capsule
    - defined, 383–384
    - hydrostatic pressure, 387, 388
    - inner layer, 387
  - Boyle’s law, 351, 353
  - Bradycardia, 243
  - Brain
    - analgesic system, 146
    - component functions, 115
    - diagram, 116
    - frontal lobes, 115
    - frontal section, 122
    - glucose and, 526–528
    - lobe location, 116

- Brain (*Continued*)  
 metabolic states and, 529  
 motor neuron influence from, 214  
 nourishing, 112  
 occipital lobes, 115  
 parietal lobes, 115  
 protecting, 111–112  
 structure, 114  
 subcortical regions, 122  
 temporal lobes, 115  
 ventricles, 111
- Brain death, 121
- Brain stem  
 diagram, 116  
 function, 113, 130  
 location, 117  
 respiratory centers, 373–374
- Braxton–Hicks contraction, 582
- Breast and lactation, 586
- Breastbone  
 defined, 229  
 respiration and, 349
- Breast-feeding advantages, 587–588
- Breathing  
*See also* Respiration; Ventilation  
 defined, 345  
 gas exchange and, 362–365
- Breech birth, 582
- Broca’s area  
 diagram, 117  
 location, 120
- Bronchiole, 347
- Bronchitis, chronic, 356
- Bronchoconstriction, 354
- Bronchodilation, 354
- Bronchus, 347
- Brønsted, Johannes, A–10
- Brown fat, 489
- Brush border  
 defined, 465  
 function, 466–467  
 gluten enteropathy and, 468
- Bulbourethral gland  
 defined, 546  
 function, 557–558  
 location, 558
- Bulk flow  
 defined, 279  
 forces influencing, 279  
 function, 280
- Bundle of His, 235
- C cell and thyroid, 513
- Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent phosphorylation, 220
- Ca<sup>2+</sup>-induced Ca<sup>2+</sup> release, 239
- Calcitonin  
 function, 539  
 thyroid and, 513
- Calcium (Ca)  
 absorption in small intestine, 471  
 characteristics, A–4  
 imbalance and renal failure, 411  
 metabolic control, 536–539  
 metabolic disorders, 540  
 muscle contraction and, 222  
 muscle cross bridges and, 200
- Calmodulin, 220
- Calorie, 480
- Calorigenic effect of thyroid hormone, 515
- CAM  
 function, 578  
 plasma membrane and, 47
- cAMP  
 function, A–17  
 hydrophilic hormone effects and, 96–99
- Cancer  
 cell, 332–333  
 defined, 332, A–29  
 endocrine disrupters and, 562, 563  
 immune surveillance against, 333  
 interferon and, 317  
 T cells and, 333–334
- Cancer gene, A–29
- Capacitance vessel, 283
- Capacity metric–English conversions, A–2
- Capillary  
 alveoli and, 348  
 blood flow and, 274–276  
 contributions to homeostasis, 260  
 features, 266  
 location, 264  
 material exchange and, 277–278  
 net fluid exchange, 280  
 as sites of exchange, 274–276
- Capillary blood pressure, 279
- Capillary permeability  
 diffusion and, 277  
 inflammation and, 313–314
- Capillary pore, 277
- Capsaicin, 146
- Carbamino hemoglobin, 370
- Carbohydrate  
 absorption, 469  
 cells and, 44  
 digestion and, 438, 469  
 digestive process, 455, 466  
 glucagon and, 535  
 insulin and, 530  
 metabolism and diabetes, 532  
 overview, A–11–A–12
- Carbon (C) characteristics, A–4
- Carbon dioxide  
 alveolar, 362–363  
 effect on percent hemoglobin saturation, 368–369  
 hydrogen ion regulation and, 431  
 partial pressure of, 362  
 transport, 370–371
- Carbon monoxide and hemoglobin, 369–370
- Carbonic acid  
 carbon dioxide transport and, 370  
 hydrogen ions and, 428–429
- Carbonic acid/bicarbonate buffer system  
 function, A–30–A–31  
 hydrogen ions and, 430
- Carbonic anhydrase  
 carbon dioxide transport and, 370  
 function, A–8  
 hemoglobin buffer system and, A–31  
 hydrogen ion regulation and, A–31–A–32
- Carboxyhemoglobin (HbCO), 369
- Carcinogenic, 332
- Cardiac cycle, 243–247
- Cardiac excitation  
 coordination, 236–238  
 diagram of spread, 235
- Cardiac length–tension relationship, 249–260
- Cardiac muscle  
 action potential in contractile cells, 238–239  
 action potential initiation, 223  
 characteristics, 218–219  
 defined, 194  
 fiber interconnectivity, 233–234  
 fiber organization, 234  
 overview, 225
- Cardiac myopathy, 243
- Cardiac output (CO), 247–252  
 arteriolar radius and, 271  
 at rest, 262  
 summary of factors affecting, 250–251
- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 230
- Cardiovascular control center, 274  
 blood pressure and, 289
- Cardiovascular system  
 contributions to homeostasis, 260  
 organization, 264  
 steroids and, 213  
 thyroid hormone and, 515
- Carotid body and blood gas, 375
- Carotid sinus, 289
- Carotid sinus baroreceptor, 290
- Carrier molecule  
 carrier-mediated transport and, 56–60  
 plasma membrane and, 46
- Carrier-mediated transport, 56–58, 63
- Cartilage, 508
- Cascade as cellular response, 94
- Caspase, 98
- Catabolism, 526
- Catalyst, A–8
- Cataract, 152
- Catecholamine  
 adrenal medulla and, 523  
 defined, 495
- Catecholamine hormone  
 adrenal glands and, 518  
 properties, 95  
 receptor location, 96
- Catecholamine target-cell receptor, 515
- Cation, A–5, 52
- Cavity (dental), 443
- CD4 coreceptor, 329
- CD8 coreceptor, 329
- Cecum, 472
- Celiac disease, 467
- Cell  
*See also specific types*  
 activities requiring energy expenditure, 33  
 basic functions, 3  
 cholesterol uptake, 256  
 components, 18  
 crenated, 55  
 defined, 2  
 diagram, 18, 20  
 differentiation, 3  
 energy generation, 26–33  
 energy generation conditions, 30, 33  
 homeostatic needs, 13  
 homeostatically regulated factors, 9  
 interdependencies, 9, 18  
 intermediate filaments and, 39  
 mechanical support of, 38  
 membrane carbohydrates and, 47  
 membrane potential, 42  
 membrane proteins and, 45–47  
 movement, 38  
 net diffusion of gasses, 365  
 neuron, 78  
 overview, 19  
 specialized functions, 3  
 specialized junctions, 48, 49, 50  
 structure, 19–27, 33–39  
 tissue cohesion, 48  
 virus invaded and T, 326
- Cell adhesion molecule (CAM)  
 function, 578  
 plasma membrane and, 47
- Cell contractile system, 38
- Cell culture, 7
- Cell division, A–26–A–29
- Cell-mediated immunity, 319, 325
- Cell-to-cell adhesion, 47–50
- Cellular respiration  
 defined, 27, 345  
 diagram, 346  
 stages, 28

- Cellulose
  - defined, A-12
  - digestion and, 438
- Celsius to Fahrenheit comparison, A-2
- Celsius to Fahrenheit conversion formula, A-2
- Centimeters to inches comparison, A-2
- Central chemoreceptor, 375, 376
- Central lacteal, 468
- Central nervous system (CNS)
  - autonomic activity control, 185
  - contributions to homeostasis, 140
  - homeostasis and, 106
  - motor neurons and, 185-186
  - nucleus in, 122
  - organization, 108
  - overview, 107, 112-114
  - protecting, 112
- Central sulcus, 115, 117
- Centriole
  - microtubule formation and, 37
  - mitosis and, A-26-A-27
- Centromere, A-26
- Cephalic phase of gastric secretion, 453
- Cerebellum
  - diagram, 128-129
  - function, 113
  - location, 117, 123
  - overview, 128-129
  - procedural memories and, 128
  - voluntary movement and, 128-129
- Cerebral cortex
  - association areas, 120
  - function, 114
  - functional areas, 117
  - language control, 119-120
  - overview, 114-122
- Cerebral dysfunction, 121
- Cerebral hemisphere
  - description, 114
  - specializations, 121
- Cerebrocerebellum, 129
- Cerebrovascular accident (CVA), 113
- Cerebrum, 114
- Cervical canal, 546
- Cervix
  - defined, 546
  - parturition and, 584, 585
  - pregnancy and, 582
- Channel
  - See also specific types*
  - blockers, 45
  - ion movement and, 72
  - lipid bilayer and, 45
  - osmosis and, 56
  - positive-feedback cycle, 76
- Chemical bond
  - See also specific types*
  - defined, A-4
  - overview, A-4-A-7
- Chemical buffer system
  - function, A-30-A-31
  - hydrogen ions and, 430-431
- Chemical categories, A-10
- Chemical equation, A-7
- Chemical gradient
  - defined, 50
  - ion movement and, 52
- Chemical principle review, A-3
- Chemical reaction, A-7-A-8
- Chemical thermogenesis, 489
- Chemically gated channel and ion movement, 72
- Chemically gated receptor-channel and extracellular chemical messengers, 93
- Chemiosmosis, 30
- Chemoreceptor
  - defined, 142
  - digestive regulation and, 442-443
- Chemoreceptor trigger zone and vomiting, 450
- Chemotaxin, 315
- Chernobyl, 512
- Chest. *See* Thoracic cavity
- Chewing, 443-444
- Chief cell, 450, 451
- Chloride channel and cystic fibrosis, 46
- Chloride reabsorption and kidney function, 397
- Chlorine (Cl) characteristics, A-4
- Cholecalciferol, 539-540
- Cholecystokinin (CCK)
  - food intake and, 484
  - functions, 474
  - gastric motility and, 448
  - pancreatic secretion and, 458-459
- Choleric, 462
- Cholesterol
  - defined, A-13
  - plasma membrane and, 44
  - sources, 256
  - steroid hormone processing and, 95
  - types, 256
- Cholinergic fiber, 180
- Cholinergic receptor, 184
- Chordae tendineae, 232
- Chorion, 579
- Choroid, 146, 160
- Chromaffin granule, 523
- Chromatin, A-19
- Chromosome
  - See also specific types*
  - defined, 546
  - diagram, A-28
  - DNA and, A-18-A-19
  - homologous, 546-547
- Chronic bronchitis, 356
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 354, 355
- Chronic superficial gastritis, 456
- Chylomicron, 469
- Chyme
  - defined, 447
  - gastric motility and, 448
  - small intestine motility and, 464
- Chymotrypsin, 458
- Chymotrypsinogen, 458
- Cigarettes and immunity, 340
- Cilia
  - movement, 36
  - in the respiratory tract, 38
- Ciliary body
  - defined, 147
  - function, 160
- Ciliary muscle, 150-151, 160
- Cilium
  - movement, 36
  - in the respiratory tract, 38
- Cimetidine, 456
- Circadian rhythm
  - defined, 497, 511
  - resetting, 512
- Circulation
  - complete circuit, 230-232
  - history, 265
- Circulatory hypoxia, 371
- Circulatory shock and blood pressure, 292-293
- Circulatory system
  - components, 6, 229
  - contributions to homeostasis, 10, 12, 228, 260
- Citric acid cycle, 28-29
- Clitoris, 546
- Clock protein, 511
- Clonal energy, 331
- Clonal deletion, 331
- Clonal selection theory, 322-324
- Clostridium botulinum*, 192
- Clot
  - dissolution, 308
  - pathway, 306-307
  - retraction, 307-308
- Clot formation
  - hemostasis and, 306
  - preventing inappropriate, 308
- Clotting cascade, 306-307
- Coactivation of gamma and alpha motor neurons, 216
- Cocaine and synaptic transmission, 90
- Cochlea
  - function, 172
  - structure, 164-165
- Cochlear duct
  - description, 165
  - function, 172
- Cochlear nerve, 165
- Codon, A-23
- Cognition, 112
- Coitus, 559
- Cold exposure
  - responses to, 490
  - thyroid hormone and, 516
- Cold-related disorders, 491
- Collagen and ECM, 48
- Collecting duct
  - defined, 384
  - transport across, 400
- Collecting tubule
  - defined, 384
  - transport across, 400
- Colloid, 513, A-9-A-10
- Colon, 472, 473
- Color blindness, 158
- Color vision, 157-158
- Colostrum, 587
- Compensated heart failure, 251-252
- Complement system
  - activating, 322
  - immunity and, 317-319
  - inflammation and, 318
  - nonspecific activation, 331
- Complementary base pairing
  - during DNA replication, A-22
  - during DNA transcription, A-23
  - process, A-19-A-20
- Complete heart block, 236
- Complex lipid, A-13
- Compliance and respiration, 357
- Compound, A-3
- Concave surface, 150
- Concentration (solution), A-9
- Concentration gradient, 50, 52
- Concentration of solution, 50, 52
- Concentric isotonic contraction, 206
- Conditioned salivary reflex, 444
- Conduction and body heat exchange, 487, 488
- Conductive deafness, 168
- Cone (retinal)
  - See also* Photoreceptor
  - function, 146, 157, 160
  - structure, 152
  - vision properties, 157
- Congestive heart failure, 252
- Connective tissue, 4
- Connexin, 49
- Connexon, 49
- Conn's syndrome, 521
- Consciousness, 130
- Consolidation and memory, 126



- Constipation, 473
- Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD), 412
- Contractile activity, 209
- Contractile cell (heart), 234
- Contractility, 250
- Contractility and heart failure, 251
- Contraction  
*See also specific types*  
 calcium and, 222  
 cardiac muscle, 234  
 heart cycle and, 244  
 heart muscle, 236–237  
 muscle banding patterns during, 200  
 muscle metabolism and, 210–211  
 process, 205  
 skeletal muscle, 198–204  
 smooth muscle speed, 225  
 strength of muscle, 206–207
- Control center and negative feedback, 11
- Controlled variable, 11
- Convection and body heat exchange, 487, 488
- Convergence, neuronal, 91
- Convex surface, 149, 150
- Copulation, 559
- Core temperature, 486, 487
- Coreceptor, T cell, 329
- Cornea, 146, 150, 160
- Corona radiata, 567
- Coronary artery disease (CAD), 253
- Coronary circulation, 252–253
- Corpus callosum, 114
- Corpus luteum (CL)  
 controlling, 572  
 degeneration, 569  
 formation, 567, 569  
 menstruation and, 574  
 of pregnancy, 569, 581
- Cortical granule, 576
- Cortical gustatory area, 173
- Cortical lobe, 116
- Corticospinal motor system, 214
- Corticotrope, 502
- Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), 483, 584
- Cortisol  
 deficiency, 522  
 diurnal rhythm of secretion, 497  
 function, 518, 519  
 hypersecretion, 521  
 metabolic effects of, 535–536  
 secretion regulation, 520  
 stress and, 524
- Cotransport and carrier-mediated transport, 60
- Countercurrent multiplication  
 benefits, 405  
 mechanism, 405, 406, 407  
 vertical osmotic gradient and, 404–405
- Countertransport and carrier-mediated transport, 60
- Covalent bond, A–5–A–6
- Cranial nerve, 130
- Cranium as CNS protection, 112
- C-reactive protein and atherosclerosis, 257
- Creatine phosphate and muscle contractile activity, 210
- Creatinine and kidney function, 398
- Cretinism, 516
- CRH–ACTH–cortisol system, 524
- Cristae, 27
- Cross bridge  
 ATP-powered, 201  
 calcium and, 200  
 cycle activity, 201  
 cycle diagram, 203  
 of skeletal muscle, 196
- Crossing-over (genetic)  
 defined, 549, A–27  
 diagram, A–29
- Crypt of Lieberkühn, 468
- Cryptorchidism, 551
- Crystal lattice, A–5
- Cupula, 168
- Curare and neuromuscular junctions, 189–190
- Current (electrical) and graded potential, 73
- Cushing’s syndrome, 521, 522
- Cyanosis, 371
- Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (AMP)  
 function, A–17  
 hydrophilic hormone effects and, 96–99
- Cystic fibrosis (CF), 46
- Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR), 46
- Cytokine and inflammation, 316
- Cytokinesis  
 defined, 37  
 meiotic, A–27  
 process, 38
- Cytoplasm  
 component summaries, 36  
 defined, 18, 19  
 overview, 21
- Cytosine (C) and DNA, A–18
- Cytoskeletal element, 196
- Cytoskeleton  
 components, 35  
 defined, 18, 21  
 overview, 35–39
- Cytosol  
 defined, 18, 21  
 function, 36  
 glycolysis in, 27, 28  
 intermediary metabolism and, 34  
 nutrient storage and, 34  
 overview, 33–35  
 ribosomal protein synthesis and, 34  
 structure, 36
- Cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$ , twitch summation and, 208
- Cytotoxic T cell  
 function, 326  
 lysing diagram, 326  
 mechanism of killing, 327
- D cell, 451, 453
- Dark adaptation (visual), 158
- Dark current, 156
- Daughter cell, 564–566
- Deafness, 167–168
- Decibel (dB), 162
- Decidua, 578
- Declarative memory and hippocampus, 128
- Decompensated heart failure, 252
- Decompression sickness, 373
- Deep-sea diving, effects on the body, 373
- Defecation reflex, 472–473
- Defensin and cystic fibrosis, 46
- Defensive cell and gastric mucosa, 468
- Dehydration, 423
- Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)  
 defined, 521  
 function, 518  
 pregnancy and, 581, 584
- Delayed hypersensitivity  
 characteristics, 337  
 defined, 334–335  
 overview, 337
- Delivery (pregnancy). *See* Parturition
- Delta cell, 529
- Denaturation, A–16
- Dendrite  
 neuron, 78  
 synaptic input to, 85
- Dendritic cell, 329
- Dense body in smooth muscle, 220
- Dental caries, 443
- Deoxyhemoglobin, 366
- Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)  
*See also* DNA  
 defined, 546  
 structure, A–16
- Depolarization  
 membrane potential and, 72  
 smooth muscles and, 222
- Depolarization block, 189
- Depression and limbic system, 125
- Depth perception, 159–160
- Dermis, 338
- Desmosome  
 cell junctions and, 48  
 defined, 233
- Detergent action of bile salts, 461
- Diabetes insipidus and dehydration, 423
- Diabetes mellitus  
 acute effects of, 532–534  
 defined, 532  
 long-term complications of, 534  
 treatments, 534
- Dialysis, 412
- Diaphragm and respiration, 349
- Diaphysis, 508
- Diarrhea, 471
- Diastole  
 defined, 244  
 heart nourishment during, 252–253
- Diastolic murmur, 247
- Diastolic pressure, 267
- Diencephalon, 113, 123
- Diffusion  
 capillaries and, 274–278  
 carrier-mediated transport and, 57  
 characteristics, 63  
 membrane transport and, 50  
 process, 50
- Digestion  
 basic processes, 437–438  
 carbohydrate, 444, 455, 465, 466  
 defined, 438  
 fat, 455, 466  
 general aspects, 437–443  
 in the mouth, 445  
 processes, 466  
 protein, 455, 465, 466
- Digestive motility  
 defined, 437  
 regulating, 439, 441–443
- Digestive organ, accessory, 438
- Digestive secretion  
 absorption and, 471  
 defined, 438
- Digestive system  
 anatomy and functions, 440–441  
 components, 6, 438–439  
 contributions to homeostasis, 10, 12, 436  
 defenses of, 339  
 function, 437–438  
 pathways controlling, 443  
 regulating, 439, 441–443
- Digestive tract  
 description, 439  
 digestive system and, 438–439  
 wall layers, 439, 442
- Di-iodotyrosine (DIT), 514
- Diploid number, 546

- Direct intercellular communication, 91–92
- Disaccharidase, 465
- Disaccharide
  - defined, A–11
  - digestion and, 438
- Dispersed-phase particle, A–9–A–10
- Distal tubule
  - defined, 384
  - transport across, 400
- Distension, gastric emptying and, 448–449
- Diurnal rhythm
  - cortisol secretion and, 520
  - defined, 497
  - GH secretion and, 509
- Divergence, neuronal, 91
- DNA
  - chromosomes and, A–18–A–19
  - defined, 20
  - functions, A–18
  - levels of organization, A–21
  - molecule diagram, A–20
  - replication process, A–19–A–22
  - structure, A–16, A–18
- DNA transcription
  - mRNA and, A–20–A–21
  - process, A–21–A–22, A–23
- DNA translation
  - mRNA and, A–21, A–23
  - protein synthesis and, A–22–A–26
- Docking marker acceptor and plasma membrane, 47
- Dopamine
  - function, 504
  - milk secretion and, 587
- Dorsal respiratory group (DRG), 374
- Dorsal root, 133
- Dorsal root ganglion, 133
- Double bond, A–11
- Down regulation (hormonal), 498
- Dual innervation
  - advantages, 183
  - defined, 180
- Ductus deferens, 546, 557–558
- Duodenum
  - defined, 463
  - gastric motility and, 448
- Dwarfism, 510
- Dynein, 36
- Dynorphin, 146
- Dyslexia, causes, 120
- Dyspnea, 371, 378
- Dystonia, 192
  
- Ear
  - See also* External ear; Inner ear; Middle ear
  - function, 163, 172
  - major components functions, 172
  - structure, 161
- Ear canal
  - defined, 163
  - function, 172
- Eardrum, 163, 172
- Eccentric isotonic contraction, 206
- ECF. *See* Extracellular fluid (ECF)
- ECG. *See* Electrocardiogram (ECG)
- Ectopic focus, 236
- Edema
  - causes, 282–283
  - defined, 282
  - localized, immune system and, 314
- Effector
  - digestive regulation and, 442–443
  - immune surveillance, 333–334
  - negative feedback and, 11
  - reflex arc and, 134
- Effector organ, 108
- Effector protein, 94
- Efferent arteriole, 382–383
- Efferent axon, 109
- Efferent fiber, 133
- Efferent nervous system, 108
- Efferent neuron
  - action potential and, 142
  - action potential initiation, 223
  - defined, 109
  - features, 188
- Efferent pathway and reflex arc, 134
- Eicosanoid, 558
- Ejaculate, 561
- Ejaculation
  - defined, 559
  - phases, 561
- EKG. *See* Electrocardiogram (ECG)
- Elastic recoil, 357
- Elastin
  - ECM and, 48
  - function, 4
- Electrical gradient and ion movement, 52
- Electrocardiogram (ECG)
  - baseline points, 242–243
  - function, 240
  - leads, 240–241
  - uses, 243
  - waveforms, 241–242
- Electrochemical gradient and ion movement, 52
- Electroencephalogram (EEG)
  - overview, 121
  - sleep patterns, 131
- Electrolyte
  - defined, A–9
  - equivalent, A–9
- Electromagnetic wave
  - body heat exchange and, 487
  - properties, 148–149
- Electron, A–3
- Electron cloud, A–3
- Electron shell, A–4
- Electron transport system and oxidative phosphorylation, 30
- Element
  - characteristics of selected, A–4
  - defined, A–3
- Elephantiasis, 283
- Embolus, 308
- Embryo, 546
- Embryonic stem cells (ESCs), 7
- Emesis, stomach and, 449–450
- Emetic, 450
- Emission (ejaculatory), 561
- Emmetropia
  - defined, 152
  - diagram, 153
- Emotion
  - higher cortex and, 124
  - limbic system and, 124
  - neurotransmitters and, 125
- Empysema, 356, 365
- Enamel (dental), 443
- End-diastolic volume (EDV), 244
  - stroke volume and, 249
- Endocrine axis, 504
- Endocrine cell, 451
- Endocrine disorder
  - defined, 498
  - obesity and, 485
- Endocrine disrupter, 562–563
- Endocrine gland
  - diagram, 4
  - functions, 499
- Endocrine gland cell in digestive tract wall, 439
- Endocrine pancreas, 494, 500
  - See also* Pancreas
- Endocrine rhythm, 497
- Endocrine specificity and receptor specialization, 101
- Endocrine system
  - components, 6
  - contributions to homeostasis, 10, 13, 492
  - functions, 495–496
  - growth control and, 506–510
  - homeostasis and, 70
  - nervous system and, 100–102
  - properties, 101
  - specializations, 102
- Endocrinology
  - defined, 94
  - general principals, 495
- Endocytic vesicle, 24
- Endocytosis
  - characteristics, 63
  - defined, 24, 62
  - diagram, 25
  - forms, 26
  - receptor-mediated, 24, 26
- Endogenous opiate, 146
- Endogenous pyrogen (EP), 316
- Endogenous pyrogen and fever, 491
- Endometrium, 573
- Endoplasmic reticulum (ER)
  - See also* Rough ER; Smooth ER
  - diagram, 22
  - overview, 21–22
  - protein synthesis, 23
- Endorphin, 146, 504
- Endothelin and arteriolar smooth muscle contraction, 272
- Endothelium, 233, 253
- End-plate potential (EPP)
  - defined, 187
  - initiating action potentials in excitable tissues, 223
- End-systolic volume (ESV), 244
- Endurance exercise, 210
- Energy balance
  - See also* Food intake
  - hypothalamus and, 481–485
  - overview, 479–486
  - states, 481
- Energy equivalent of oxygen, 481
- Energy input
  - defined, 479
  - diagram, 480
- Energy level of electron shell, A–4
- Energy output
  - defined, 479
  - diagram, 480
  - rates for different activities, 480
- Energy storage forms, 526, 528
- Energy yield (cell)
  - anaerobic versus aerobic, 30, 33
  - uses, 33
- English-metric conversions, A–2
- Enkephalin, 146
- Enteric nervous system
  - defined, 108
  - digestive regulation and, 441
- Enterochromaffin-like (ECL) cell, 451, 453
- Enterogastric reflex, 448
- Enterogastrone and gastric motility, 448
- Enterohepatic circulation
  - defined, 460
  - diagram, 462
- Enterokinase
  - digestion and, 458
  - function, 465

- Entrainment, 497
- Environmental “estrogen,” 562–563
- Enzyme  
 defined, 3  
 digestive, 465  
 function, A–8  
 hydrogen ions and, 428  
 membrane-bound, 47  
 oxidative, 25
- Eosinophil, 310
- Eosinophil chemotactic factor and allergic reactions, 335
- Ependymal cell, 111
- Epicardium, 233
- Epidermis, 337–339
- Epididymis  
 defined, 546  
 function, 557, 558  
 location, 558
- Epiglottis, 445
- Epilepsy and EEGs, 121
- Epinephrine  
 function, 523  
 metabolic effects of, 535–536  
 source, 184  
 stress and, 524
- Epiphyseal plate, 508
- Epiphysis, 508
- Epithelial cell  
 in digestive tract wall, 439  
 in small intestine, 467–468
- Epithelial sheet, 3
- Epithelial tissue, 3
- Equilibrium  
 defined, 51, 168  
 process, 168–171
- Equilibrium potential for  $K^+$  and membrane potential, 65
- Equilibrium potential for  $Na^+$  and membrane potential, 65–66
- Equivalent electrolyte, A–9
- Erasistratus, 265
- Erectile dysfunction (ED), 560–561
- Erectile tissue, 559
- Erection  
 defined, 559  
 generating center, 560  
 process, 559–560  
 reflex, 560
- Erythroblast, 304
- Erythroblastosis fetalis, 303–304
- Erythrocyte  
 replacing, 300  
 structure, 299–300
- Erythropoiesis, 300–301
- Erythropoietin, 300–301
- ESC, 7
- Esophageal secretion, 447
- Esophageal swallowing stage, 446
- Esophagus, 445–447
- Essential hypertension, 290
- Estradiol, 581
- Estriol, 581
- Estrogen  
 actions, 587  
 defined, 520, 545  
 disrupter, 562–563  
 effects on the uterus, 573  
 follicular function control, 569–570  
 functions, 563–564  
 lactation and, 586  
 ovarian cycle and, 567, 572  
 as parturition trigger, 582, 584  
 pregnancy and, 580–582  
 testosterone and, 553
- Estrogen secretion, 569
- Estrogenic pollutant, 562–563
- Ethyl alcohol  
 peptic ulcers and, 456  
 stomach and, 455
- Eupnea, 371
- Eustachian tube, 163
- Evaporation and body heat exchange, 488
- Excess postexercise oxygen consumption (EPOC), 211
- Exchange, carrier-mediated transport and, 60
- Excitable tissue  
 membrane potential and, 62  
 neural communication and, 71
- Excitation–contraction coupling  
 cardiac cell contraction and, 239  
 diagram, 202  
 skeletal muscle contraction and, 199–203  
 smooth muscle contraction and, 220–221
- Excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP)  
 concurrent, 89  
 defined, 87  
 initiating action potentials in excitable tissues, 223
- Excitatory synapse, 86
- Excitotoxicity and stroke, 113
- Exercise  
*See also specific types*  
 oxygen consumption and, 211
- Exocrine cell, 451
- Exocrine gland  
 defined, 338  
 diagram, 4
- Exocrine gland cell in digestive tract wall, 439
- Exocrine pancreas, 457–458
- Exocytosis  
 characteristics, 63  
 defined, 24, 62  
 diagram, 25  
 Golgi complex and, 23
- Exophthalmos, 516, 517
- Expiration (respiratory)  
 active, 353  
 defined, 351  
 difficulties, 356  
 forced, 353  
 process, 352–353
- Expiratory muscle  
 activity during ventilation, 354, 355  
 diagram, 353  
 ventilation and, 352–353
- Expiratory neuron and respiratory control, 374
- Expiratory reserve volume (ERV), 358
- Expulsion (ejaculatory), 561
- Extension, 205
- External anal sphincter, 472–473
- External auditory meatus  
 defined, 163  
 function, 172
- External ear  
 defined, 161  
 function, 172  
 structure, 163
- External environment  
 defined, 5  
 homeostasis and, 12–13
- External genitalia, 545–546
- External respiration, 345, 346
- External work, 479
- Extracellular chemical messenger types, 92
- Extracellular fluid (ECF)  
*See also* Internal pool  
 compartment separation, 418–419  
 components, 9  
 defined, 5, 417, 418  
 fluid balance and, 424  
 hypertonicity, 423  
 hypotonicity, 423–424  
 internal pool, 417  
 ionic composition, 418–419  
 negative balance, 417  
 osmolarity regulation, 419, 421, 424, 427  
 positive balance, 417  
 separation from ICF, 418–419  
 stable balance, 417  
 volume and thirst, 425–426  
 volume regulation, 419–421, 427
- Extracellular matrix (ECM), 47
- Extracellular messenger and signal transduction, 93
- Extrafusal fiber, 215
- Extrapyramidal motor system, 214
- Extrinsic clot pathway, 306–307
- Extrinsic homeostatic control, 11
- Extrinsic nerve and digestive regulation, 442
- Eye  
 external muscle, 161  
 function, 152  
 light refraction, 148  
 light sensitivity, 158  
 major components functions, 160  
 refractive structures, 150  
 structure, 146, 148
- Facilitated diffusion  
 characteristics, 63  
 diagram, 57  
 process, 58
- Factor VI, 306
- Factor X, 306
- Factor XII, 306
- Fahrenheit to Celsius, A–2
- Fallopian tubes, 546
- Farsightedness  
 defined, 152  
 diagram, 153
- Fast pain pathway, 145
- Fasting state (metabolic), 528–529
- Fat  
 absorption, 469–470  
 bile salts and, 461–462  
 defined, A–12  
 digestion, 438, 469–470  
 digestive process, 466  
 emulsification, 469  
 gastric emptying and, 448  
 glucagon and, 535  
 insulin and, 530–531  
 metabolism and diabetes, 532–533  
 storage and cytosol, 34  
 types, 482, 489
- Fatigue, delaying, 207
- Fatty acid  
 digestion and, 438  
 insulin and, 530–531  
 insulin and glucagon and, 535
- Fatty acid molecule, A–12
- Feces, 472
- Fed state (metabolic), 528
- Feedback. *See* Negative feedback; Positive feedback
- Feeding signal, 482
- Female pseudohermaphroditism, 522
- Fenestration, capillary, 277
- Fertile period, 575
- Fertilization, 575–578
- Fetus  
 defined, 546  
 harmful influences, 580

- Fever, 490–491, 492  
 Fibrillation, 237  
 Fibrin, 306  
 Fibrinogen, 306  
 Fibrinolytic plasmin, 308  
 Fibroblast  
   atherosclerosis and, 254  
   blood clotting and, 308  
   defined, 38  
   ECM and, 48  
 Fick's Law of Diffusion  
   capillaries and, 274  
   defined, 51  
   factors, 52  
 Fidget factor and obesity, 485  
 Fight or flight response, 183  
 Filament  
   composition of thin, 199  
   skeletal muscle, 196  
   sliding mechanism, 198–199  
 Filtration fraction, 403  
 Filtration slit, 387  
 Fimbriae, 575  
 Firing, membrane potential changes and, 75  
 First law of thermodynamics and energy balance, 479  
 First messenger and signal transduction, 93  
 First polar body, 564  
 Flaccid paralysis, 214  
 Flagellum movement, 36  
 Flatus, 473  
 Flavine adenine dinucleotide (FAD) and citric acid cycle, 28  
 Flexion, 205  
 Flow rate (blood)  
   blood velocity and, 276  
   defined, 262  
   resistance and, 271  
 Fluid balance  
   blood pressure and, 419–420  
   components, 416  
   ECF and, 424  
   maintaining, 419  
   overview, 418–426  
 Fluid measures and English equivalents, A–1  
 Fluid mosaic model of membrane structure, 44, 45  
 Focal point (visual), 149  
 Follicle  
   hair, 338  
   reproductive, 564, 567  
   thyroid, 513  
 Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)  
   function, 502–504, 555–556  
   function in ovarian cycles, 569–572  
   menstruation and, 574  
 Follicular cell  
   defined, 513, 567  
   thyroid hormone secretion and, 515  
 Follicular phase (ovarian cycle)  
   controlling, 569–571  
   defined, 565, 567  
 Food intake  
   *See also* Energy balance  
   environmental influences, 484  
   factors influencing, 483  
   hypothalamus and, 481–485  
   involuntary regulatory signals and, 484  
   psychosocial influences, 484  
 Force and plasma membrane permeation, 50  
 Forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV<sub>1</sub>), 359  
 Forgetting, 127  
 Formula weight function, A–8  
 Fovea, 152, 160  
 Frank-Starling curve  
   heart failure and, 251, 252  
   normal, 249–250  
   sympathetic stimulation and, 250, 251  
 Frank-Starling law of the heart, 249  
 Fraternal twins, 567  
 Free hydrogen ion concentration, regulating. *See* Acid–base balance  
 Free lipophilic hormone and protein synthesis, 100  
 Free radical, 512  
 Frontal lobe, 117  
 Frostbite, 491  
 Fructose, 438  
 Fuel metabolism  
   defined, 525–526  
   enzymatic regulation of, 34  
   hormonal control, 535–536  
   reactions, 525  
 Functional groups of organic molecules, A–11  
 Functional residual capacity (FRC), 358  
 Functional syncytium, 222  
 Functional unit, 196  
 Fundus, 447  
 Funny channel, 234  
 G cell, 451, 453  
 G protein  
   defined, 94  
   hydrophilic hormone effects and, 96  
 Galactose, 438  
 Galen and circulatory system, 265  
 Gallbladder, 460  
 Gamete, 545, 547  
 Gametogenesis  
   comparison of types, 564–566  
   defined, 545  
   process, 547, 549, 564–565  
 Gamma motor neuron, 215–216  
 Ganglion cell  
   function, 160  
   retinal, 152  
 Gap junction  
   cells and, 49  
   intercellular communication and, 91  
 Gas exchange  
   conditions reducing, 364  
   hemoglobin and, 367–369  
   partial pressure gradients and, 362  
   rate factors, 363–364  
   respiration and, 362–364  
 Gas measures and English equivalents, A–1  
 Gas transport, 365–373  
 Gastric gland, 450, 451  
 Gastric inhibitory peptide (GIP), 492  
 Gastric juice secretion, 450  
 Gastric motility, 447–449  
 Gastric mucosa, 450  
 Gastric mucosal barrier, 454–455  
 Gastric phase of gastric secretion, 453  
 Gastric pit  
   defined, 450  
   gastric juice secretion and, 453  
 Gastric secretion  
   controlling, 453–454  
   inhibiting, 454  
   process, 450  
   stimulating, 454  
 Gastrin  
   digestion and, 451, 453  
   functions, 474  
 Gastrocolic reflex, 472  
 Gastroesophageal sphincter, 446–447  
 Gastroileal reflex, 464  
 Gastrointestinal hormone  
   digestive regulation and, 442  
   insulin secretion and, 531  
 Gastrointestinal hormones, 474  
 Gastrointestinal tract. *See* Digestive tract  
 Gated channel  
   ion movement and, 72  
   lipid bilayer and, 45  
 Gender bending and endocrine disrupters, 562  
 Gene activation  
   controlling, A–24, A–26  
   protein synthesis and, 100  
 Gene doping, 213  
 Gene in DNA, A–18  
 Gene mutation, A–27  
 General adaptation syndrome, 523  
 Gene-signaling factor, A–26  
 Genetic sex, 549  
 Germ cell (reproductive)  
   components, A–18–A–19  
   mutation, A–29  
   spermatogenesis and, 553  
 Gestation  
   *See also* Pregnancy  
   defined, 546, 581  
   lactation prevention during, 586  
 Ghrelin  
   food intake and, 484  
   GH secretion and, 509  
 Gigantism, 510  
 Gland, 4  
   *See also specific types*  
 Glans penis, 560  
 Glaucoma, 147  
 Glial cell  
   diagram, 110  
   interneurons and, 109  
   types, 109–111  
 Globin, 299  
 Glomerular capillary, 383  
 Glomerular capillary blood pressure, 387–388  
 Glomerular capillary wall, 386–387  
 Glomerular filtration  
   forces involved, 387–388  
   overview, 386–390  
   process, 385  
 Glomerular filtration rate (GFR)  
   changes, 387–388  
   defined, 387  
   plasma clearance and, 401  
   salt output and, 421  
 Glomerular membrane, 386–387  
 Glomerulus  
   diagram, 385  
   function, 174, 382–383  
 Glottis  
   defined, 346–347  
   swallowing and, 445  
 Glucagon, 535–536  
 Glucocorticoid, 518, 519  
 Gluconeogenesis  
   function, 519  
   insulin and, 530  
 Glucose  
   brain and, 526–528  
   brain nourishment, 112  
   digestion and, 438  
   forms, A–12  
   kidney function and, 395–397  
   symport, 61  
 Glucose transporter (GLUT), 530  
 Glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide (GIP)  
   function, 492  
   insulin secretion and, 531  
 Glucosuria, 532

- Gluten, 467
- Gluten enteropathy, 467
- Glycerin, A-12
- Glycerol, A-12
- Glycogen
  - defined, A-12
  - digestion and, 438
  - metabolism and, 526
  - storage and cytosol, 34, 35
- Glycogenesis, 530
- Glycogenolysis, 530
- Glycolysis
  - ATP generation and, 210
  - diagram, 28
  - process, 27
- Glycolytic muscle fiber, 211-212
- Glycoprotein, 329
- Goiter, 517
- Golgi complex
  - diagram, 24
  - exocytosis and, 23
  - functions, 22-23
  - overview, 22-24
  - secretory vesicles and, 23
  - transport vesicles and, 22
- Golgi tendon organ, 216-217
- Gonad
  - defined, 545
  - function, 500
  - sex hormone secretion and, 521
- Gonadal failure in males compared to menopause, 575
- Gonadal sex, 549
- Gonadotrope, 502
- Gonadotropin
  - function, 504
  - human chorionic, 580-581
- Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), 556-557, 569
- Goose bumps, 490
- G-protein-coupled receptor, 93-94
- Graafian follicle, 567
- Graded potential
  - compared to action potential, 81
  - membrane potential changes and, 72-74
- Grand postsynaptic potential (GPSP), 88-89
- Granstein cell and immunity, 339
- Granulocyte
  - colony-stimulating factor, 311
  - defined, 310
- Granulosa cell
  - defined, 564
  - proliferation, 567
- Granzyme, 327
- Graves' disease, 516-517
- Gravity and venous return, 285-286
- Gray matter, 115
  - See also* Basal nuclei
- Growth
  - factors affecting, 507
  - thyroid hormone and, 515
- Growth factor and immunity, 328
- Growth hormone (GH)
  - deficiency, 510
  - excess, 510
  - function, 502-504
  - growth and, 506-510
  - metabolic effects of, 507, 536
  - secretion, 508-510
  - thyroid hormone and, 515
- Growth hormone-inhibiting hormone (GHIH), 504, 509
- Growth hormone-releasing hormone (GHRH), 504, 509
- Guanine (G), A-18
- Gustation. *See* Taste
- Gynoid obesity, 485-486
- H zone of skeletal muscle, 196
- Hageman factor, 306
- Haploid number, 547, A-19
- Harvey, William, 265
- Haustra, 472
- Haustral contraction
  - digestive regulation and, 441
  - in large intestine, 472
- Hay fever, 335
- Hearing, 161-168
- Hearing loss, 167-168
- Hearing threshold, 162
- Heart
  - complete block, 236
  - conduction system, 235
  - contributions to homeostasis, 228
  - defined, 229
  - ECG patterns, 243
  - effect of parasympathetic stimulation, 248
  - effect of sympathetic stimulation, 248
  - electrical activity, 234-243
  - excitation coordination, 236-237
  - hormonal function, 500
  - normal rate of action potential discharge, 236
  - nourishing, 252-255
  - position, 229-230
  - pump action, 230-232
  - sounds, 246
  - structure, 230
- Heart attack
  - atherosclerosis and, 255
  - defined, 243
  - possible outcomes, 255
- Heart failure, 251-252
- Heart murmur, 246-247
- Heart rate
  - cardiac output and, 247
  - controls, 248-249
  - determinants, 247
- Heart valve
  - diagram, 233
  - function, 232
  - mechanism, 232
- Heart wall structure, 233
- Heartburn, 446-447
- Heat, 489
- Heat exchange, 487-488
- Heat exhaustion, 491
- Heat exposure, responses to, 490
- Heat input, 487
- Heat loss
  - blood flow and, 489-490
  - methods, 487-488
  - responses to, 490
- Heat output, 487
  - See also* Heat loss
- Heat production
  - increasing, 489
  - rate factors, 480-481
- Heat stroke, 491
- Heat wave and body heat exchange, 487
- Heat-related disorders, 491
- Helicobacter pylori*, 456
- Helicotrema, 165
- Helper T cell
  - activating, 330
  - function, 326, 327-328
  - interactions, 332
- Hematocrit
  - defined, 297
  - diagram, 298
- Heme group, 299
- Hemiplegia, 214
- Hemodialysis, 412
- Hemoglobin
  - carbon monoxide and, 369-370
  - effect of acid on percent saturation, 369
  - effect of BPG on percent saturation, 369
  - effect of carbon dioxide on percent saturation, 368-369
  - effect of temperature on percent saturation, 369
  - function, 299-300
  - gas transport, 365-371
    - as oxygen storage depot, 368
    - transport capacity, 299
- Hemoglobin buffer system
  - function, A-31
  - hydrogen ions and, 430-431
- Hemolysis, 301
- Hemolytic anemia, 301
- Hemolytic disease of the newborn, 303-304
- Hemolytic jaundice, 463
- Hemophilia, 309
- Hemorrhagic anemia, 301
- Hemostasis, 304-308
- Henderson-Hasselbalch equation
  - acid-base status and, A-36-A-37
  - defined, A-31
- Hepatic jaundice, 463
- Hepatic portal system, 459
- Hepatic portal vein, 459
- Hepatocyte, 459, 460
- Hering-Breuer reflex, 374
- High altitude, effects on the body, 372
- High-density lipoproteins (HDL), 256
- Higher cortex
  - behavior and, 124
  - learning and, 126
  - memory and, 126
- Higher motor area and motor control, 119
- High-intensity exercise, 210
- Hippocampus and declarative memories, 127-128
- Hirsutism, 521-522
- Histamine
  - allergic reactions and, 335
  - arteriolar dilation and, 272
  - digestion and, 451, 453
  - function, 93
- Histone, A-19
- Histotoxic hypoxia, 371
- Hives, 335
- Homeostasis
  - acid-base balance and, 416
  - blood and, 296
  - blood vessels and, 260
  - body system contributions, 10, 12-13
  - cardiovascular system and, 260
  - cells and, 13, 18
  - central nervous system and, 106
  - circulatory system and, 228, 260
  - control system, 11-15
  - defined, 8, 13
  - digestive system and, 436
  - disruptions, 15
  - endocrine system and, 70, 492
  - energy balance and, 478
  - factors maintained, 13
  - fluid balance and, 416
  - immune system and, 296
  - integumentary system and, 296
  - interdependencies, 9
  - introduction, 5
  - kidneys and, 381
  - muscular system and, 194
  - nervous system and, 70
  - peripheral nervous system and, 140, 178
  - plasma membrane and, 42

- Homeostasis (*Continued*)  
 reproductive system and, 544  
 respiratory system and, 344  
 skin and, 296  
 temperature regulation and, 478  
 urinary system and, 380
- Homeostatic control system, 11–15
- Homeostatic drive, 125
- Homocysteine and atherosclerosis, 257
- Homologous chromosome, 546–547, A–18
- Hormonal communication, 94–100
- Hormonal plasma concentration regulation, 496–498
- Hormonal stress response, 525
- Hormone  
*See also specific types*  
 blood pressure and, 274  
 defined, 4  
 effect process, 96  
 function, 93  
 functions, 495–496  
 hierarchic chain of command, 505, 506  
 hydrophilic (*See* Hydrophilic hormone)  
 hypothalamic inhibiting, 504  
 hypothalamic releasing, 504  
 lipophilic (*See* Lipophilic hormone)  
 ovarian cycle and, 569–572, 573–574  
 placental and pregnancy, 580–581  
 summary of major, 499–500  
 types, 94–95
- Hormone response element (HRE), 100
- Host cell and immune system, 309
- Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), 580–581
- Human height compared to other structures, A–1
- Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 328
- Humor (physical), 265
- Humoral immunity, 319
- Hydration and urine excretion, 403
- Hydrochloric acid (HCl), 447, 450–452
- Hydrogen bond, A–7
- Hydrogen (H) characteristics, A–4
- Hydrogen ion  
 acid–base balance and secretion, 398  
 acids and, 426  
 defenses against changes in, 429–433  
 fluctuations, 428  
 renal excretion, 432  
 renal regulation of, A–32–A–34  
 respiratory regulation of, A–31–A–32  
 sources, 428–429
- Hydrolysis  
 defined, 24, A–16  
 digestion and, 438
- Hydrolytic enzyme, 24
- Hydrophilic hormone  
 defined, 94  
 function, 495  
 means of action, 96  
 processing, 94  
 receptor location, 96  
 second-messenger systems and, 96  
 transport, 96
- Hydrophilic peptide hormone. *See* Hydrophilic hormone
- Hydrostatic pressure, 53
- Hymen, 546
- Hypercalcemia, effects on the body, 537
- Hypercapnia, 371
- Hyperglycemia, 532
- Hyperopia  
 defined, 152  
 diagram, 153
- Hyperoxia, 371
- Hyperparathyroidism, 540
- Hyperplasia, 507
- Hyperpnea, 371, 372
- Hyperpolarization  
 after, 75  
 membrane potential and, 72
- Hypersecretion, 498
- Hypersensitivity  
 allergic, 334–335  
 characteristics, 337
- Hypertension  
 baroreceptor adaptation during, 292  
 complications, 292  
 defined, 290  
 renal failure and, 411
- Hyperthermia, 491
- Hyperthyroidism, 516–517
- Hypertonic  
 defined, 403  
 ECF osmolarity, 423
- Hypertonic solution and osmosis, 55
- Hypertonicity  
 causes, 423  
 gastric emptying and, 448–449
- Hypertrophy, 212, 507
- Hyperventilation  
 acid–base imbalance and, 433  
 defined, 371, 372
- Hypocalcemia  
 effects on the body, 537  
 PTH and, 538
- Hypocapnia, 371, 372
- Hypocapnia-induced alkalosis and acute mountain sickness, 372
- Hypodermis, 338
- Hypoglycemia, 534–535
- Hypoparathyroidism, 540–541
- Hypophysiotropic hormone  
 function, 504  
 GH secretion and, 508–510  
 summary of major, 504
- Hypophysis. *See* Pituitary gland
- Hyposecretion, 498
- Hypotension, 290, 292
- Hypothalamic hypophysiotropic hormones, 508–510
- Hypothalamic inhibiting hormone, 504–506
- Hypothalamic osmoreceptor and thirst, 425
- Hypothalamic releasing hormone control, 504–506
- Hypothalamic–hypophyseal portal system, 504
- Hypothalamus  
 anterior pituitary gland and, 504, 506  
 body temperature and, 488–489  
 diagram, 122  
 fever and, 490–492  
 food intake and, 481–485  
 function, 113, 494, 499  
 functions, 124  
 location, 116, 123  
 overview, 504–506  
 posterior pituitary gland and, 501–502  
 stress response and, 524–525  
 temperature balance and, 490–492
- Hypothalamus–pituitary–adrenal cortex axis and cortisol secretion, 520
- Hypothalamus–pituitary–thyroid axis  
 defined, 504  
 thyroid hormone and, 515
- Hypothermia, 491
- Hypothyroidism, 516–517
- Hypotonic  
 defined, 403  
 ECF osmolarity and, 423
- Hypotonic solution and osmosis, 55
- Hypotonicity, 423–424
- Hypoventilation  
 acid–base imbalance and, 433  
 defined, 371
- Hypoxia, 371
- Hypoxic hypoxia, 371, 372
- I band of skeletal muscle, 196
- ICF. *See* Intracellular fluid (ICF)
- Identical twins, 567
- Idiopathic hypertension, 290
- IgE antibody and immediate hypersensitivity, 336
- Ileocecal juncture/valve/sphincter, 465
- Ileum, 463
- Immediate hypersensitivity  
 antibodies and mast cells in, 336  
 characteristics, 337  
 chemical mediators, 335  
 defined, 334  
 symptoms, 335  
 treatments, 335  
 triggers, 335
- Immune complex disease, 322
- Immune disease, 334–337
- Immune response  
 activation, 321–322  
 adaptive, 313, 319–331  
 to bacterial invasion, 313–316, 331  
 innate, 312, 313–318  
 primary, 324  
 secondary, 324  
 to viral invasion, 326–327, 328
- Immune surveillance  
 against cancer, 333–334  
 defined, 332  
 effectors, 333–334
- Immune system  
 acquired, 312, 313, 319–320  
 adaptive, 312, 313, 319–320  
 components, 6  
 contributions to homeostasis, 10, 13, 296  
 depression in renal failure, 411  
 external defenses, 337–340  
 function, 309  
 innate, 312–319  
 tolerance of self-antigens, 332
- Immunity, 309
- Immunization, 324–325
- Immunodeficiency disease, 334
- Immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 328
- Immunosuppressive drugs, 7
- Impermeable, 50
- Implantation (reproductive), 576–578
- Impotence, 560–561
- Inappropriate immune attack, 334–337
- Inches to centimeters comparison, A–2
- Inclusions, stored nutrients as, 34
- Incompetent valve, 246
- Incretin, 531
- Incus, 163  
 function, 172
- Indirect intercellular communication, 92–93
- Induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs), 8
- Inflammation  
 bacterial infection and, 331  
 chronic illnesses and, 316  
 complement system and, 318  
 drugs suppressing, 317  
 manifestations, 315  
 outcomes, 315  
 as parturition trigger, 584  
 process, 313–316  
 steps producing, 314
- Inguinal canal, 551

- Inhibin  
FSH and, 556  
function, 571
- Inhibiting hormone, 504
- Inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP), 87, 89
- Inhibitory synapse, 87
- Initial lymphatics, 281
- Innate immunity  
bacterial infection and, 331  
defenses, 313–319
- Inner cell mass (blastocyst), 578
- Inner ear  
defined, 161  
function, 163–165, 172
- Innervate, 85
- Inorganic chemical, A–10
- Inorganic salts, A–11
- Inspiration (respiratory), 351–352
- Inspiratory capacity (IC), 358
- Inspiratory muscle  
activity during ventilation, 354, 355  
diagram, 353  
expiration and, 352  
ventilation and, 351
- Inspiratory neuron and respiratory control, 374
- Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV), 358
- Insufficient valve, 246
- Insulin  
body-weight regulation and, 482  
function, 530–532  
glucagon and, 535  
metabolic effects of, 536  
secretion stimuli, 531–532
- Insulin antagonist, 536
- Insulin excess, 534–535
- Insulin shock, 534
- Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus  
defined, 532  
treatment, 534
- Insulin-like growth factor (IGF)  
growth hormone and, 507  
thyroid hormone and, 515
- Integrating center and reflex arc, 134
- Integrator and negative feedback, 11
- Integument. *See* Skin
- Integumentary system  
components, 6  
contributions to homeostasis, 10, 13, 296  
defined, 296
- Intensity (sound), 162–163
- Intensity discrimination, 167
- Interatrial pathway, 238
- Intercalated disc, 233
- Intercellular communication, 91–94
- Intercostal muscle, 352
- Interferon, 317  
effects, 318
- Intermediary metabolism. *See* Fuel metabolism
- Intermediate filament  
cells and, 39  
diagram, 35
- Internal anal sphincter, 472
- Internal core temperature  
defined, 486  
maintaining, 487
- Internal environment  
defined, 5  
homeostatically regulated factors, 9
- Internal pool  
defined, 417  
inputs, 418  
outputs, 418
- Internal work, 479
- Interneuron  
action potential and, 142  
action potential initiation, 223  
defined, 109  
features, 188  
glial cells and, 109
- Internodal pathway, 238
- Interphase in cell division, A–26
- Interstitial cell, 551
- Interstitial cells of Cajal, 441
- Interstitial fluid  
defined, 5, 418  
material exchange and, 277
- Interstitial fluid hydrostatic pressure and bulk flow, 279
- Interstitial fluid–colloid osmotic pressure and bulk flow, 279
- Intestinal gas and digestion, 473–474
- Intestinal housekeeper, 464–465
- Intestinal phase of gastric secretion, 453–454
- Intra-alveolar pressure  
changes during respiration, 355, 356  
ventilation and, 349, 351
- Intracellular fluid (ICF)  
defined, 5, 418  
ECF osmolarity and, 421–423  
ionic composition, 418–419  
separation from ECF, 418–419
- Intrafusal fiber, 215
- Intrapleural pressure  
changes during respiration, 356  
ventilation and, 349–350
- Intrinsic clot pathway, 306–307
- Intrinsic factor  
defined, 450  
digestion and, 451  
function, 452–453
- Intrinsic homeostatic control, 11
- Intrinsic nerve plexus, 441–442
- Inulin, 401
- Iodide pump, 513
- Iodine, 513
- Ion  
defined, A–5  
membrane potential and, 64  
plasma membrane permeation and, 52
- Ion movement  
action potential and, 75, 76, 77  
membrane potential changes and, 72
- Ionic bond, A–5
- iPSC. *See* Induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs)
- Iris, 147–148, 160
- Iron absorption in small intestine, 471
- Iron deficiency anemia, 301
- Irreversible shock, 293
- Islet of Langerhans  
cell types in, 529  
defined, 457  
function, 500, 529
- Isometric contraction, 205–206
- Isotonic defined, 55, 403
- Isotonic contraction, 206–207
- Isotonic solution and osmosis, 55
- Isovolumetric ventricular contraction, 244
- Isovolumetric ventricular relaxation, 246
- Jaundice, 463
- Jejunum, 463
- Jenner, Edward, 325
- Jet lag, 511
- Junction  
gap, 49–50  
tight, 48–49
- Juvenile-onset diabetes mellitus  
defined, 532  
treatment, 534
- Juxtaglomerular apparatus  
defined, 384  
sodium reabsorption and, 392–393
- K<sup>+</sup> level and hydrogen ions, 428
- K<sup>+</sup> movement and membrane potential, 66
- Keratin  
diagram, 35  
as intermediate filaments, 39
- Keratinized skin layer and immunity, 337–338
- Keratinocyte, 339
- Ketone body, A–12–A–13
- Kidney  
*See also* Renal  
cardiac output and, 389–390  
function, 382  
glucose regulation, 396–397  
hormonal function, 500  
hormones and, 498  
hydrogen ion changes and, 433  
overview, 381  
plasma pH and, A–31
- Kidney function  
acid–base balance and, 432–433  
heart failure and, 251  
overview, 381–382  
phosphate and, 397  
reabsorptive processes summary, 400  
salt output, 421  
secretory processes summary, 400  
urine concentration, 403, 409
- Kilocalorie, 480
- Kinesin  
description, 36  
movement, 37
- Knee-jerk reflex  
diagram, 217  
process, 215–216
- Krebs cycle. *See* Citric acid cycle
- Labeled line, 144
- Labia, 546
- Labor (pregnancy). *See* Parturition
- Lactase, 465
- Lactate and muscle energy, 210–211
- Lactation, 546  
defined, 586
- Lactose and digestion, 438
- Lactose intolerance, 466
- Lactotrope, 502
- Langerhans cell and immunity, 339
- Language  
cortex control, 119  
cortical pathways for speaking, 120
- Large intestine  
absorption and, 473  
anatomy, 472  
overview, 472–474  
secretion, 473  
volumes absorbed, 471
- Laron dwarfism, 99  
defined, 510
- Laryngeal opening, 445
- Larynx  
defined, 346–347  
swallowing and, 445
- Latch phenomenon, 225
- Lateral hypothalamic area (LHA) and energy balance, 483
- Lateral sac, 200
- Lateral space and tubular reabsorption, 390

- Law of conservation of mass, A-7
- Law of mass action
  - gas transport and, 366
  - hydrogen ions and, 429
- Leader sequence, A-24
- Leak channel
  - ion movement and, 72
  - lipid bilayer and, 45
- Leaky valve, 246
- Learning
  - higher cortex and, 126
  - limbic system and, 126
- Length English-metric conversions, A-2
- Length Metric-English conversions, A-2
- Length-tension relationship, 209
- Lens (eye)
  - defined, 147
  - function, 160
  - refraction and, 150
  - structure, 152
- Leptin, 482
- Leptin-signaling pathway and obesity, 485
- Leukemia, immune system and, 312
- Leukocyte
  - See also* White blood cell (WBC)
  - bacteria destruction by, 315
  - defined, 296, 309
  - emigration, immune system and, 315
  - function, 309
  - production, 311
  - production abnormalities, 311-312
  - proliferation, immune system and, 315
  - types, 309-311
- Leukotriene, 558
- Leydig cell
  - function, 551
  - LH and, 556
- LH surge, 571-572
- Light, 148-149
- Light adaptation (visual), 158
- Light chain, 220
- Light ray
  - defined, 149
  - focusing, 149-150
  - refraction and, 150
- Limbic association cortex
  - diagram, 117
  - overview, 121
- Limbic system
  - diagram, 124
  - functions, 124-125
  - learning and, 126
  - memory and, 126
  - motivation and, 125
- Linear measurement comparison, A-2
- Linear measures and English equivalents, A-1
- Lipid, A-12-A-13
- Lipid bilayer
  - channels, 45
  - functions, 45
  - in plasma membrane, 43
- Lipid emulsion and bile salts, 461
- Lipid-soluble substance and plasma membrane permeation, 50
- Lipolysis, 519
  - defined, 530-531
- Lipophilic hormone
  - defined, 94
  - means of action, 96
  - protein synthesis and, 100
  - receptor location, 96
- Lips, 443
- Liver
  - absorbed nutrients and, 471
  - anatomy, 461
  - blood flow, 459-460
  - functions, 459
  - hormonal function, 500
  - hormones and, 498
  - IGF and, 507
  - metabolic states and, 529
  - organization, 459-460
  - steroids and, 213
- Load and muscle movement, 205
- Lobule, 459-460
- Local homeostatic control, 11
- Long-acting thyroid stimulator (LATS) and Graves' disease, 516
- Long-term memory
  - defined, 126
  - molecular mechanisms, 127
  - short-term memory and, 126-127
- Loop of Henle
  - defined, 384
  - kidney function and, 403-404
  - properties, 404-405
- Lou Gehrig's disease, 186
- Loudness
  - defined, 162
  - relative magnitudes, 163
- Loudness discrimination, 167
- Low-density lipoprotein (LDL), 254, 256
- Low-level LH secretion suppression, 571
- Lowry, Thomas, A-10
- Lumen, 3
- Lung
  - capacity, 358-359
  - defined, 349
  - elastic behavior, 357
  - elastic recoil, 357
  - forces influencing, 357
  - hydrogen ions and, A-32
  - plasma pH and, A-31
  - stability, 357-358
  - volume, 358-359
  - volume changes during respiration, 355
- Luteal phase, 565, 567, 569
- Luteinization, 567
  - process, 569
- Luteinizing hormone (LH)
  - function, 502-504, 555-556
  - function in ovarian cycles, 569-572
  - menstruation and, 574
  - secretion modes, 571
- Lymph
  - defined, 281
  - flow of, 281
  - pickup of, 281
- Lymph node, 282
- Lymph vessel, 281
- Lymphatic system
  - functions, 281-282
  - interstitial fluid and, 281-283
- Lymphocyte
  - adaptive immunity and, 319
  - function, 311
- Lymphoid tissue, 311
- Lysosome
  - diagram, 25
  - organelles and, 25
  - overview, 24-25
- Lysozyme, 444
- M line of skeletal muscle, 196
- Macromolecule, A-10
  - defined, 525
- Macrophage
  - atherosclerosis and, 254
  - defined, 310-311
  - immunity and, 328
- Macula lutea
  - function, 160
  - structure, 152
- Macular degeneration, 152
- Magnesium (Mg), A-4
- Major histocompatibility complex (MHC), 329
- Malabsorption, 467
- Malignant tumor, 333
- Malleus, 163, 172
- Malpighi, Marcello, 265
- Maltase, 465
- Maltose and digestion, 444
- Mammary gland, 586
- Mass, A-3
  - Mass English-metric conversions, A-2
  - Mass measures and English equivalents, A-1
  - Mass Metric-English conversions, A-2
  - Mass movement and feces elimination, 472
- Mast cell and immediate hypersensitivity, 336
- Mastication, 443-444
- Matrix, 27
- Matter, A-3
- Mature follicle, 567
- Maturity-onset diabetes mellitus
  - defined, 532
  - treatment, 534
- Mean arterial pressure
  - calculating, 288
  - carotid sinus baroreceptor and, 290
  - defined, 269
  - determinants, 288-289
  - function, 287
  - nervous system effects on, 291
  - regulating, 288-290
  - total peripheral resistance on, 273
- Measures of capacity and English equivalents, A-1
- Mechanical stress and bone deposition, 537-538
- Mechanically gated channels and ion movement, 72
- Mechanoreceptor
  - defined, 141
  - digestive regulation and, 442-443
- Medulla, 116
- Medullary countercurrent system, 405-407
- Medullary respiratory center, 374-375
- Megakaryocyte, 304
- Meiosis
  - diagram, A-28-A-29
  - process, A-27, 547, 549, 554
  - reproductive system and, 566
- Meiotic arrest, 564
- Melanin, 339
- Melanocortin, 482
- Melanocyte, 339
- Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), 482
  - function, 504
- Melanopsin, 161
  - function, 511
- Melatonin
  - circadian rhythm and, 511-512
  - function, 510-512
  - puberty and, 556-557
- Membrane
  - See also* Plasma membrane
- Membrane attack complex (MAC) and complement system, 317-319
- Membrane permeability and action potential, 75
- Membrane potential
  - action potential and, 75
  - changes in, 72
  - defined, 42, 62
  - depolarization, 72
  - determining, 64
  - hyperpolarization, 72
  - ion characteristics, 64



- Membrane potential (*Continued*)  
 K<sup>+</sup> and Na<sup>+</sup> effects, 62–67  
 overview, 62–67  
 polarization, 71  
 repolarization, 72  
 triggering event, 72
- Memory  
 cerebellum and, 128  
 higher cortex and, 126  
 hippocampus and, 127–128  
 limbic system and, 126  
 prefrontal cortex and, 128  
 stages of, 126–127  
 storage capacity, 127
- Memory trace, 126
- Menopause, 574–575
- Menstrual cramp, 574
- Menstrual cycle  
 function, 563  
 process, 573–574
- Menstrual flow, 573–574
- Menstrual phase, 573–574
- Messenger RNA (mRNA)  
*See also* mRNA  
 DNA transcription and, A–20–A–21  
 protein synthesis and, A–22
- Metabolic acidosis  
 compensations, A–35  
 defined, 434  
 diagram, A–36–A–37  
 ratio, A–34  
 renal failure and, 411
- Metabolic alkalosis  
 compensations, A–37  
 defined, 434  
 diagram, A–36–A–37  
 ratio, A–34
- Metabolic fuel storage, 528
- Metabolic rate, 480  
 measuring basal, 480
- Metabolic state  
 comparison of types, 528–529  
 roles of tissues in, 529
- Metabolic syndrome, 532
- Metabolic water, 424
- Metabolism  
*See also* Fuel metabolism  
 cortisol and, 519  
 defined, 525  
 epinephrine and, 523  
 regulating, 529–530  
 thyroid hormone and, 515
- Metaphase  
 meiotic, A–27  
 mitotic, A–26, A–27
- Metric measures and English equivalents,  
 A–1
- Metric-English conversions, A–2
- MHC molecule, 329–330
- Micellar formation and bile salts,  
 461–462
- Micelle  
 diagram, 464  
 function, 461–462
- Microcirculation, 264
- Microfilament  
 diagram, 35  
 functions of, 38  
 importance of, 37
- Microglia, 111
- Microtubule  
 cilia and, 36  
 diagram, 35  
 flagella and, 36  
 functions, 35
- Microvilli  
 defined, 38  
 digestion and, 465  
 function, 466–467  
 in kidney, 39  
 in small intestine, 39
- Micturition, 411–413
- Micturition reflex, 411–412
- Midbrain, 116
- Middle ear  
 defined, 161  
 diagram, 164  
 function, 163, 172
- Midventricular diastole, 244
- Migrating motility complex and digestion, 464–465
- Milk  
 composition, 587  
 ejection, 586  
 letdown, 586  
 weaning and production, 588
- Mineralocorticoid, 518–519
- Mitochondria, 26–33
- Mitochondrial inner membrane, oxidative  
 phosphorylation in, 30, 31
- Mitochondrial matrix, citric acid cycle in, 28–29
- Mitochondrion. *See* Mitochondria
- Mitosis  
 defined, 37, 547  
 diagram, A–28–A–29  
 phases, A–26–A–27  
 process, 37  
 reproductive system and, 566
- Mitotic proliferation, 553–554
- Mitotic spindle, 37
- Mitral cell, 174
- Mitral valve, 232
- Mixed function gland, 496
- Mixing movement and digestion, 437
- Mixture (chemical), A–8
- Molarity, A–9
- Mole (chemical), A–8
- Molecular mass, A–8
- Molecular motor and vesicle transport, 36
- Molecular weight, A–8
- Molecule  
 biological, A–10  
 defined, 2, A–3  
 nonpolar, A–6  
 organic, A–11  
 organic nutrient, 526, 527  
 polar, A–6
- Monocyte, 310–311
- Monoglyceride and digestion, 438
- Monoiodotyrosine (MIT), 514
- Monomer, A–10
- Mononuclear agranulocyte, 310
- Monosaccharide  
 defined, A–11–A–12  
 digestion and, 438
- Monosynaptic reflex, 135
- Morning sickness, 581
- Morula, 576
- Motilin, 464–465
- Motility, 437
- Motion sickness, 170
- Motivation, 125
- Motor control  
 abnormalities, 214–215  
 higher motor areas, 119  
 primary motor cortex, 117
- Motor end plate, 186
- Motor homunculus  
 description, 117  
 diagram, 118  
 overview, 119
- Motor movement control, 214–217
- Motor neuron  
 alpha, 215, 216  
 function, 185  
 gamma, 215, 216  
 input for output control, 214  
 muscle innervation and, 206  
 skeletal muscle cell innervation, 189
- Motor program task coordination, 119
- Motor unit  
 defined, 206  
 diagram, 207  
 output influences, 214
- Motor unit recruitment, 207
- Mouth, 443–445
- mRNA  
 defined, 20  
 rough ER and, 21
- Mucosa  
 digestive tract, 439  
 gastric, 450  
 small intestine, 466–467  
 stomach, 451
- Mucous cell, 450–451
- Mucous membrane, 439
- Mucus and digestion, 444
- Multineuronal motor system, 214
- Multiple sclerosis (MS), 84
- Multiunit smooth muscle  
 characteristics, 218–219  
 properties, 221
- Muscarinic receptor, 184
- Muscle  
*See also specific types*  
 action potential and twitch, 204  
 atrophy, 212  
 categories, 195–196  
 characteristics, 195, 218–219  
 contractile component, 205  
 contraction strength, 206–207  
 exercise and cooling mechanisms,  
 422  
 function, 195  
 hypertrophy, 212  
 insertion, 205  
 length–tension relationship, 209  
 metabolic states and, 529  
 optimal length, 209  
 origin, 205  
 relaxation, 204  
 relaxation diagram, 202  
 series-elastic component, 205  
 structure, 204  
 tension, 205, 206  
 tension, maximal, 209  
 tissue, 3  
 types, 194, 195
- Muscle cell and membrane potential, 67
- Muscle fiber  
 adaptation, 212  
 ATP formation and, 210  
 defined, 186  
 genetic endowment of types, 212  
 red, 211  
 skeletal, 195–196  
 skeletal characteristics, 212  
 skeletal types, 211  
 tension development, 207  
 white, 212
- Muscle length  
 contractile activity and, 209  
 limitations, 209–210
- Muscle spindle  
 function, 216  
 structure, 215

- Muscular system
  - components, 6
  - contributions to homeostasis, 10, 13, 194
- Muscularis externa, 439
- Mutagen, A-27–A-28
- Mutation, cellular, A-27–A-29
- Myasthenia gravis, 191
- Myelinated fiber
  - action potential and, 83
  - diagram, 84
- Myenteric plexus
  - digestive regulation and, 441
  - in digestive tract wall, 439
- Myocardial infarction, acute, 243
- Myocardial ischemia, 243
- Myocardium, 233
- Myoepithelial cell, 587
- Myofibril, 195–196
- Myoglobin, 211
- Myometrium, 573
- Myopia
  - defined, 152
  - diagram, 153
- Myosin
  - actin microfilaments and, 38
  - diagram, 198
  - muscle cells and, 38
  - skeletal muscle and, 196
  - smooth muscle cross bridge, 221
  - smooth muscles and, 220
- Myxedema, 516
- Na<sup>+</sup>
  - blood pressure and renal handling, 421
  - osmosis in ECF and ICF and, 421–422
- Na<sup>+</sup> absorption in small intestine, 468
- Na<sup>+</sup> load, 392
- Na<sup>+</sup> movement and membrane potential, 65, 66
- Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption
  - kidney function and, 397–398
  - RAAS and, 421
  - urinary system and, 391–392
- Na<sup>+</sup>-dependent secondary active transport and kidney function, 395
- Na<sup>+</sup>–K<sup>+</sup> ATPase pump
  - action potential and, 78
  - membrane potential and, 65
  - process, 59
  - tubular reabsorption and, 391–392
- Nasal passage, 346
- Natural killer (NK) cell
  - function, 317
  - stimulating, 322
- Nearsightedness. *See* Myopia
- Necrosis
  - apoptosis compared with, 98
  - heart muscle, 243
- Negative feedback
  - components, 14
  - in endocrine control, 505
  - in homeostatic control systems, 11
  - process, 14
- Negative-feedback control, hormonal, 497
- Nephron
  - defined, 382
  - diagram, 384
  - in renal medulla, 403–404
  - transport across, 400
  - tubular component, 383–384
  - vascular component, 382–383
- Nerve, 133
- Nerve cell and membrane potential, 67
- Nerve fiber, 79
- Nervous system
  - See also specializations*
  - components, 6
  - contributions to homeostasis, 10, 12
  - digestive, 441
  - effects on blood pressure, 291
  - endocrine system and, 100–102
  - homeostasis and, 70
  - organization, 107–111
  - properties, 101
  - specializations, 101
  - thyroid hormone and, 515
- Nervous tissue, 3
- Net diffusion
  - Fick's Law, 51, 52
  - membrane transport and, 50
- Net filtration pressure, 387
- Neural presbycusis, 168
- Neural respiratory control, 373–374
- Neural specificity, 101
- Neural system and sleep stage control, 132
- Neural toxin and synaptic transmission, 91
- Neuritic plaque, 128
- Neuroendocrine reflex, 497
- Neuroendocrine system, 501
- Neurofibrillary tangle and Alzheimer's disease, 128
- Neurogenic, 221
- Neuroglia. *See* Glial cell
- Neurohormone, 93
- Neurohypophysis, 501
- Neuromodulator, 90
- Neuromuscular excitability, 537
- Neuromuscular junction
  - compared to synapses, 191
  - defined, 186
  - drugs and diseases affecting, 189–191
  - events diagram, 190
  - overview, 186–189
  - vulnerabilities, 189–191
- Neuron
  - See also specific types*
  - classes, 109
  - comparison of types, 188
  - hormones and, 102
  - initial segment, 79
  - labeled lines, 144
  - neurosecretory, 93
  - relationships, 91
  - secretions, 90
  - structure, 78–79
  - termination, 85
- Neuronal center, 130
- Neuronal cluster, 130
- Neuronal integration, 85–91
- Neuropeptide and synapses, 90
- Neuropeptide Y (NPY), 482
- Neurotransmitter
  - behavior and, 125
  - common, 87
  - emotions and, 125
  - function, 93
  - for neuromuscular junctions, 186
  - rate of release, 143
  - synaptic, 85, 86
  - synaptic cleft and, 88
- Neurotransmitter–receptor combination, 87
- Neutralization reaction, A-11
- Neutron, A-3
- Neutrophil, 310
- Newborn respiratory distress syndrome, 357–358
- Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD<sup>+</sup>) and citric acid cycle, 28
- Nicotinic receptor, 184
- Night blindness, 158
- Nitric oxide
  - arteriolar vasodilation and, 272
  - atherosclerosis and, 254
  - functions, 272
- Nitrogen (N), A-4
- Nitrogen narcosis, 373
- Nociceptor
  - defined, 142
  - function, 145–146
- Nodes of Ranvier and action potential, 83
- Nonelectrolyte, A-9
- Nonexercise activity thermogenesis (NEAT) and obesity, 485
- Nonhistone, A-19
- Non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus
  - defined, 532
  - treatment, 534
- Nonpolar molecule, A-6
- Nonrespiratory acidosis, 434
- Nonrespiratory alkalosis, 434
- Nonshivering (chemical) thermogenesis, 489
- Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) and peptic ulcers, 456
- Noradrenaline and nerve pathway, 180
- Norepinephrine
  - nerve pathway and, 180
  - producing, 523
- Normality (concentration), A-9
- Nuclear envelope, 20
- Nuclear factor kB (NF-kB) as parturition trigger, 584
- Nuclear pore, 20, A-20
- Nucleic acid, A-16
- Nucleotide, A-16
  - structure, A-18
- Nucleus
  - in CNS, 122
  - defined, 18, 19, A-3
  - overview, 20
- Nutrient energy
  - conversion to heat, 479–480
  - metabolism and, 526
- Nutrient storage
  - cytosol and, 34
  - forms, 526, 528
- Nutritional anemia, 301
- O<sub>2</sub>–Hb dissociation (saturation) curve and gas transport, 366–367
- Obesity, 485–486
- Obstructive jaundice, 463
- Occipital lobe, 117
- Occludin and cell junctions, 48
- Odor discrimination, 175
- Odorant, 173
- Off response, 143
- Off-center cell, 156
- Oil, A-12
- Olfaction. *See* Smell
- Olfactory bulb, 174–177
- Olfactory cortex, primary, 175
- Olfactory mucosa, 173
- Olfactory nerve, 173
- Olfactory receptor cell
  - defined, 173
  - diagram, 174
- Olfactory system adaptation, 175
- Oligodendrocyte
  - action potential and, 83
  - overview, 111
- Oncogene, A-29
- Ongoing LH secretion suppression, 571
- Oocyte formation, 564

- Oogenesis
  - compared to spermatogenesis, 564–566
  - defined, 546, 563
  - diagram, 565
  - process, 564–565
- Oogonia, 564
- Ootid, 564
- Opiate receptor, 146
- Opsin, 156
- Opsonin and inflammation, 315
- Optic chiasm, 159
- Optic disc
  - defined, 152
  - function, 160
- Optic nerve
  - function, 160
  - structure, 152
- Optic radiation, 159
- Optic tract, 159
- Optimal length of muscle, 209
- Oral cavity, 443–445
- Oral contraceptive, 574
- Orexin, 483
- Organ, 4
- Organ of Corti
  - diagram, 164
  - function, 165, 172
- Organ printing, 7
- Organelle
  - defined, 18
  - function, 36
  - lysosomes and, 25
  - overview, 21
  - structure, 36
- Organic chemical, A–10
- Organic ion secretory system, 399–400
- Organic molecule, A–11
- Organism, 3
- Organophosphate and neuromuscular junctions, 190
- Orgasm, 561
- Oropharyngeal swallowing stage, 445–446
- Orthostatic hypotension, 292
- Osmolarity
  - defined, 53, 421, A–9
  - regulating ECF, 423
- Osmoreceptor
  - defined, 142
  - digestive regulation and, 442–443
- Osmosis
  - characteristics, 63
  - defined, 52, 53
  - ECF, 421–423
  - ICF, 421–422
  - nonpenetrating solute and, 53, 54, 55
  - penetrating solute and, 54
  - processes, 52–54
- Osmotic movement and tonicity, 56
- Osmotic pressure, 53
- Ossicle, 163
- Osteoblast
  - defined, 508
  - function, 537
- Osteoclast
  - defined, 508
  - function, 537
- Osteocyte
  - defined, 508
  - function, 537
- Osteoid, 508
- Osteomalacia, 541
- Osteoporosis, 537–538
- Otolith, 170
- Otolith organ and equilibrium, 170–171
- Ova, 545
- Oval window, 163
  - function, 172
- Ovarian cycle
  - diagram, 568, 570
  - hormonal levels and, 569–572
  - overview, 565, 567–572
  - regulating, 569–572
- Ovary
  - defined, 545
  - diagram, 568
  - functions, 563–564
- Overhydration, 423
- Oviduct
  - defined, 546
  - fertilization and, 575–576
- Ovulation
  - controlling, 571–572
  - preventing, 574
  - process, 567
- Ovum
  - fertilization and, 576
  - formation of mature, 564
  - transport to the oviduct, 575
- Oxidation, 30, 32
- Oxidative capacity improvement, 212
- Oxidative enzyme, 25
- Oxidative muscle fiber, 211
- Oxidative phosphorylation
  - diagram, 31
  - muscle contractile activity and, 210
  - process, 30
- Oxygen
  - alveolar, 362–363
  - blood transport of, 365–373
  - bound to hemoglobin, 366
  - brain nourishment, 112
  - characteristics, A–4
  - deficit and exercise, 211
  - energy equivalent of, 481
  - hemoglobin storage, 368
  - partial pressure of, 362
  - physically dissolved, 365–366
- Oxyhemoglobin (HbO<sub>2</sub>), 366
- Oxyntic mucosa, 450
- Oxytocin
  - function, 501
  - milk ejection and, 586–587
  - as parturition trigger, 583
- P wave, 241
- Pacemaker (artificial), 236
- Pacemaker activity
  - abnormal, 236
  - analogy diagram, 237
  - cardiac autorhythmic cells and, 234–236
  - normal, 236
- Pacemaker potential
  - cardiac autorhythmic cells and, 234–235
  - initiating action potentials in excitable tissues, 223
  - smooth muscles and, 222–223
- Packaging (reproductive), 554
- Packed cell volume, 297
- Pain
  - defined, 145
  - perceiving, 145–146
  - referred, 133
- Pain receptor. *See* Nociceptor
- Palate, 443
- Pancreas
  - See also* Endocrine pancreas; Exocrine pancreas
  - anatomy, 457
  - cystic fibrosis and, 46
  - function, 529–530
  - location and structure, 529
- Pancreatic amylase, 458
- Pancreatic aqueous alkaline secretion, 457–458
- Pancreatic enzyme, 457–458
- Pancreatic exocrine secretion regulation, 458–459
- Pancreatic hormone and fuel metabolism, 529–530
- Pancreatic insufficiency, 458
- Pancreatic lipase, 458
- Pancreatic secretion
  - CCK and, 458–459
  - digestion and, 457–459
  - secretin and, 458
- Papillary muscle, 232–233
- Para-aminohippuric acid (PAH), 401–402
- Paracrine, 92
- Paracrine cell, 451
- Paradoxical sleep, 131
- Paradoxical sleep center, 132
- Paraplegia, 214
- Parasympathetic dominance
  - defined, 180
  - times of, 183
- Parasympathetic innervation and arterioles, 274
- Parasympathetic nervous system
  - defined, 108, 179
  - digestive regulation and, 442
  - effects on blood pressure, 291
  - features, 186
  - function, 180
  - salivary secretion and, 444
  - structures innervated by, 182
- Parasympathetic preganglionic fiber, 180
- Parasympathetic stimulation, effect on heart, 248
- Parasympathetic tone, 180
- Parathyroid gland, 494, 500, 537
- Parathyroid hormone (PTH)
  - hypersecretion, 540
  - hyposecretion, 540–541
  - plasma calcium and, 537, 538–539
  - plasma phosphate and, 538–539
  - vitamin D and plasma calcium, 540
- Paraventricular nucleus (PVN), 483
- Parietal cell, 450, 451
- Parietal lobe, 115–117
- Parietal-temporal-occipital association cortex
  - diagram, 117
  - overview, 121
- Parkinson's disease (PD) and basal nuclei, 123
- Partial pressure (gas)
  - abnormalities in arterial, 371–372
  - consequences of abnormalities in arterial, 372–373
  - defined, 362
  - percent hemoglobin saturation and, 366
  - respiration and, 362–363
  - ventilation and, 375
- Partial pressure gradient, 362–365
- Parturition
  - defined, 546
  - process diagram, 583
  - requirements, 582
  - stages, 585
  - triggers, 582, 584
- Passive current flow and graded potential, 73, 74
- Passive diffusion and plasma membrane permeation, 50
- Pasteur, Louis, 325
- Patellar tendon reflex
  - diagram, 217
  - process, 215–216
- Pathogen, 309
- Pathophysiology, 15
- Penis, 546
- Penis vasocongestion, 559–560
- Pepsin and digestion, 452
- Pepsinogen
  - digestion and, 451, 452
  - gastric gland and, 450
- Peptic ulcer, 455–456

- Peptide, 94
- Peptide bond, A–14
- Peptide hormone
  - defined, 495
  - processing, 94
  - properties, 95
- Peptide YY<sub>3-36</sub> and food intake, 484
- Percent hemoglobin saturation
  - acid and, 369
  - BPG and, 369
  - carbon dioxide and, 368–369
  - defined, 366
  - temperature and, 369
- Perception, 145
- Perforin and immunity, 326
- Perineal region, 546
- Peripheral chemoreceptor
  - blood gas and, 375
  - chemical factor influences, 375
- Peripheral nervous system (PNS)
  - afferent division, 108
  - contributions to homeostasis, 178
  - defined, 108, 140
  - efferent division, 108
- Peripheral resistance and mean arterial pressure, 273
- Peristalsis
  - defined, 446, 447
  - digestive regulation and, 441
- Peristaltic wave
  - digestion and, 464–465
  - swallowing and, 446
- Peritubular capillary, 383
- Permeable, defined, 50
- Permissiveness (hormonal)
  - cortisol and, 519
  - defined, 498
- Pernicious anemia cause, 301
- Peroxisome, 25
- pH designation
  - hydrogen ions and, 427–428, 430
  - logarithmic nature, A–30
  - values of common solutions, 429
- Phagocyte
  - inflammation and, 316
  - interactions, 331
- Phagocytosis
  - characteristics, 63
  - enhancing, 322
  - process, 24, 26
- Pharyngoesophageal sphincter, 445–446
- Pharynx
  - defined, 163, 346
  - function, 443
  - overview, 445–447
- Phasic receptor
  - defined, 143
  - diagram, 144
- Phenotypic sex, 549
- Phosphate
  - kidney function and, 397
  - metabolic control, 538–539
  - as urinary buffer, 433
- Phosphate buffer system
  - function, A–31
  - hydrogen ions and, 431
- Phosphate imbalance and renal failure, 411
- Phospholipid
  - defined, A–13
  - molecular structure, 44
  - structure, 43
- Phosphorus (P), A–4
- Photopigment
  - See also* Photoreceptor
  - description, 152
  - structure, 156
- Photoreceptor
  - See also* Cones; Rods
  - defined, 141
  - diagram, 155
  - structure, 152
- Phototransduction, 156
- Physiology, 1
- Pineal gland
  - function, 494, 499
  - location, 116
  - overview, 510–512
- Pinna
  - See also* External ear
  - function, 163, 172
  - major components functions, 172
  - structure, 161
- Pinocytosis
  - characteristics, 63
  - diagram, 26
  - process, 24
- Pitch
  - defined, 162
  - discrimination, 165
- Pituitary dwarfism, 510
- Pituitary gland
  - See also* Anterior pituitary gland; Posterior pituitary gland
  - function, 494, 499
  - overview, 501–504
- Placenta
  - defined, 546, 578
  - delivery, 585
  - formation, 579
  - functions, 500, 580
  - hormone secretion and pregnancy, 580–581
- Placental clock, 584
- Placental hormone secretion rate, 581
- Placental villi, 579–580
- Placentation, 579
- Plaque (cellular), 48
- Plasma
  - components, 297–298
  - defined, 5, 418
  - inadequate volume, 422
  - ionic composition, 419
  - overview, 297–299
- Plasma calcium, regulating, 536–539
- Plasma cell
  - diagram, 321
  - function, 320
- Plasma clearance, 401–402
- Plasma concentration
  - endocrine system and, 536
  - hormonal, 496–498
- Plasma glucose concentration and kidney
  - function, 396
- Plasma membrane
  - See also* Membrane
  - current loss, 74
  - defined, 2, 18, 19
  - diagram, 44
  - diffusion of, 51
  - dividing ECF and ICF, 418–419
  - functions, 42, 45
  - membrane potential changes and, 72
  - overview, 20, 43
  - permeability and action potential, 76, 77
  - protein receptors in, 79, 86, 141
  - proteins in, 42
  - transport, 50
  - trilaminar structure, 43
- Plasma membrane carbohydrate
  - cells and, 44
  - as self-identity markers, 47
- Plasma membrane protein
  - functions, 45, 47
  - plasma membrane and, 44
- Plasma membrane transport
  - assisted, 55–61
  - carrier-mediated, 56–58
  - pathway summaries, 63
  - unassisted, 50–55
- Plasma membrane-bound enzyme and cells, 47
- Plasma phosphate, 536, 538–539
- Plasma protein
  - function, 298–299
  - loss in renal failure, 411
- Plasma water, 297
- Plasma-colloid osmotic pressure
  - bulk flow and, 279
  - defined, 387, 388
- Plasmin, 308
- Plasminogen, 308
- Platelet, 304
- Platelet plug and hemostasis, 305–306
- Platelet-activating factor (PAF), 253
- Pleural cavity, 349
- Pleural sac, 349
- Pleurisy, 349
- Plexus, 439
- Pluripotent stem cell, 300
- Pneumatic theory, circulatory system and, 265
- Pneumotoxic center and respiratory control, 374
- Pneumothorax
  - defined, 351
  - diagram, 352
- Podocyte, 387
- Point mutation, A–27
- Polar molecule, A–6–A–7
- Polarization and membrane potential, 71
- Poliovirus, 186
- Polycythemia, 302
- Polydipsia, 532
- Polymer, A–10
- Polymorphonuclear granulocyte, 310
- Polynucleotide
  - defined, A–18
  - diagram, A–19, A–20
- Polypeptide and DNA, A–18
- Polyphagia, 532
- Polyribosome
  - diagram, A–26
  - mRNA and, A–24
- Polysaccharide
  - defined, A–12
  - digestion and, 438
- Polyspermy, block to, 576
- Polysynaptic reflex, 135
- Polyuria, 532
- Pons, 116
- Pore, capillary, 277
- Positive feedback
  - defined, 14
  - Na<sup>+</sup> channels and, 76
  - ovulation and, 571
  - parturition and, 584
- Postabsorptive state (metabolic)
  - glucagon and, 535
  - process, 528–529
- Posterior parietal cortex
  - diagram, 117
  - overview, 119
- Posterior pituitary gland, 501–502
- Postganglionic fiber, 179
- Postganglionic nerve terminal and smooth muscle
  - innervation, 224
- Posthepatic jaundice, 463

- Postsynaptic neuron  
 defined, 85  
 spatial summation and, 88  
 temporal summation and, 88
- Postsynaptic neuronal integration, 89
- Postsynaptic potentials, 87
- Postural hypotension, 292
- Potassium (K) characteristics, A-4
- Potassium ion secretion  
 aldosterone and, 398-400  
 controlling, 399  
 mechanism, 398-399
- Potassium level and hydrogen, 428
- Potassium movement and membrane potential, 65
- Potassium retention and renal failure, 411
- Power stroke and muscle contraction, 199
- PR segment, 242
- Preantral follicle, 567
- Pre-Bötzinger complex, 374
- Precipitation, 321
- Precocious pseudopuberty, 522
- Prefrontal association cortex  
 diagram, 117  
 overview, 121
- Prefrontal cortex and working memory, 128
- Preganglionic fiber, 179
- Pregnancy  
 defined, 546  
 effects on the body, 582  
 fetal and maternal relationships, 579  
 placental hormone secretion and, 580-582
- Prehepatic jaundice, 463
- Prehypertension, 292
- Premature ventricular contraction (PVC), 236
- Premotor cortex  
 diagram, 117  
 overview, 119
- Preovulatory follicle, 567
- Preprohormone processing, 95
- Presbyopia, 152
- Pressure gradient  
 blood flow and, 263  
 defined, 262  
 respiration and, 349-351  
 respiratory gas exchange and, 362
- Pressure reservoir, arteries as, 264, 266, 267
- Presynaptic neuron, 85
- Primary active transport  
 characteristics, 63  
 process, 58-59
- Primary auditory cortex, 117
- Primary hypertension, 290
- Primary motor cortex, 117
- Primary olfactory cortex, 175
- Primary polycythemia, 302
- Primary visual cortex, 117
- Procarboxypeptidase and digestion, 458
- Product of chemical reaction, A-7
- Progestational phase (menstrual cycle), 574
- Progesterone  
 actions, 587  
 defined, 545  
 effects on the uterus, 573  
 lactation and, 586  
 ovarian cycle and, 572  
 pregnancy and, 580-582
- Progesterone secretion and ovarian cycle, 567, 569
- Programmed cell suicide, 88-89
- Prolactin (PRL)  
 function, 502-504  
 lactation and, 586  
 milk secretion and, 586-587
- Prolactin-inhibiting hormone (PIH)  
 function, 504  
 milk secretion and, 587
- Prolactin-releasing hormone (PRH) and milk secretion, 587
- Proliferative phase (menstrual cycle), 574
- Pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC), 502, 504
- Prophase  
 meiotic, A-27  
 mitotic, A-26-A-27
- Proprioception, 115
- Propulsive movement and digestion, 437
- Prostacyclin, 558
- Prostaglandin, 491, 558-559
- Prostate, 557
- Prostate gland, 546, 558
- Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 557-558
- Protein  
 composition, A-13-A-14  
 defined, A-13  
 digestion and, 438  
 digestive process, 455, 466, 469  
 glucagon and, 535  
 insulin and, 531  
 metabolism and diabetes, 533-534  
 primary structure, A-14  
 quaternary structure, A-16  
 secondary structure, A-16  
 structure levels, A-14-A-16  
 tertiary structure, A-16  
 testosterone and, 553
- Protein absorption and digestion, 469
- Protein buffer system and hydrogen ions, 430
- Protein digestion, 455
- Protein kinase A and cAMP second-messenger pathway, 97
- Protein structure  
 levels, A-15
- Protein synthesis, A-22, A-24
- Protein transcription control, A-24, A-26
- Protein translation and ribosomal assembly, A-25
- Proteolytic enzyme, 458
- Prothrombin and blood clotting, 306
- Proton, A-3
- Proton-pump inhibitor and peptic ulcers, 456
- Proto-oncogene, A-29
- Proximal tubule  
 defined, 384  
 transport across, 400
- Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and cystic fibrosis, 46
- Pseudopod  
 cell movement and, 38  
 defined, 24
- Psychoactive drugs and emotions, 125
- Puberty  
 comparison of male and female, 574  
 GnRH activity and, 556-557  
 primary follicles at, 564  
 testosterone and, 551
- Pulmonary artery, 232
- Pulmonary capillary and gas exchange, 363-364
- Pulmonary circulation  
 defined, 229  
 heart and, 230  
 organization, 264
- Pulmonary stretch receptor, 374
- Pulmonary surfactant, 357
- Pulmonary valve, 233
- Pulmonary vein, 232
- Pulmonary ventilation, 360
- Pulse pressure, 267
- Pupil, 160
- Pupil (eye), 148
- Purkinje fiber, 235
- Pyloric gland area (PGA), 450
- Pyloric sphincter, 447
- Pyramidal cell, 214
- Pyramidal motor system, 214
- Pyruvate and glycolysis, 210
- QRS complex, 241
- Quadriplegia, 214
- Quality (sound), 163
- Radiation and body heat exchange, 487, 488
- Rapture of the deep, 373
- Reabsorption of extracellular fluid, 279-280
- Reactant, A-7
- Reactive hypoglycemia, 534-535
- Readiness potential and motor cortex, 119
- Receptive relaxation, 447-448
- Receptor  
*See also* Sensory receptor  
 G-protein-coupled, 93-94  
 malfunctioning and disease, 99  
 plasma membrane and, 47  
 regulating, 99  
 skeletal muscle control and, 215  
 stimulus-sensitive sensory, 141
- Receptor activation and digestive regulation, 442-443
- Receptor editing, 331
- Receptor potential  
 defined, 141  
 initiating action potentials in excitable tissues, 223
- Receptor-channel  
 defined, 86  
 extracellular chemical messengers and, 93
- Receptor-mediated endocytosis  
 characteristics, 63  
 diagram, 26  
 process, 24
- Reciprocal innervation and withdrawal reflex, 135
- Rectum, 472
- Red blood cell (RBC), 299-300
- Red bone marrow, 300
- Red muscle fiber, 211
- Reduced hemoglobin, 366
- Reflex, 133-136
- Reflex arc components, 134
- Refraction  
 defined, 149  
 diagram, 149  
 lens, 150  
 process, 149-150
- Refractory period  
 action potential and, 81-82  
 cardiac muscle and, 240
- Regulatory T cell  
 active suppression, 332  
 function, 326
- Relative refractory period and action potential, 82
- Relaxation  
 heart cycle and, 244  
 muscular, 204
- Relaxin, 582
- Releasing hormone, 504
- REM sleep, 131
- Remembering process, 127
- Renal ammonia secretion regulation, 432-433
- Renal anemia, 301
- Renal artery, 382
- Renal bicarbonate excretion, 433
- Renal cortex, 382
- Renal failure consequences, 410, 411
- Renal hydrogen ion excretion, 432
- Renal medulla  
 defined, 382  
 vertical osmotic gradient, 403
- Renal pelvis, 382
- Renal process, 384-386
- Renal pyramid, 382
- Renal threshold, 396
- Renal vein, 382
- Renin and sodium reabsorption, 393

- Renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system (RAAS)
  - functions, 393–394
  - salt reabsorption and, 421
  - sodium reabsorption and, 392–393
- Repolarization and membrane potential, 72
- Reproduction
  - fertilization, 576–577
  - physical requirements, 545–546
  - zygote implantation, 576–578
- Reproductive cell
  - components, A–18–A–19
  - spermatogenesis and, A–18–A–19
- Reproductive functions, 546
- Reproductive organs, 546
- Reproductive physiology
  - female, 563–588
  - male, 551–561
- Reproductive system
  - components, 6, 545–546
  - components of male, 558
  - contributions to homeostasis, 10, 12
  - contributions to life, 544
  - cycling in female, 563–564
  - diagram of female, 548
  - diagram of male, 547
  - effect of testosterone before birth, 551
  - steroids and, 213
  - uniqueness, 545–551
- Reproductive tract
  - components of male, 557
  - defined, 545, 546
  - endocrine disrupters and, 562
- Resident tissue macrophage and inflammation, 313
- Residual volume (RV), 358
- Resistance
  - arterioles and, 269
  - blood flow rate and, 262, 271
  - blood vessel radius and, 263
  - defined, 74
- Resolution (sexual response cycle), 561
- Respiration
  - alveolar air and, 362–363
  - chemical factor influences, 375
  - controlling, 373–378
  - defined, 344, 345
  - mechanics of, 349–362
- Respiratory acidosis
  - compensations, A–35
  - defined, 433
  - diagram, A–36–A–37
  - ratio, A–34
- Respiratory activity and venous return, 287
- Respiratory airway, 346
- Respiratory alkalosis
  - compensations, A–35
  - defined, 433
  - diagram, A–36–A–37
  - ratio, A–34
- Respiratory arrest, 371, 377
- Respiratory compliance and lungs, 357
- Respiratory control center
  - blood gas and, 376
  - function, 374
  - peripheral chemoreceptors and, 376
- Respiratory dysfunction, 359, 360
- Respiratory muscle
  - activity during ventilation, 354, 355
  - anatomy, 353
  - overview, 351–353
- Respiratory pump and venous return, 287
- Respiratory rate, 360
- Respiratory rhythm, generating, 374
- Respiratory state characteristics, 371–373
- Respiratory system
  - anatomy, 346–347
  - components, 6
  - contributions to homeostasis, 10, 12, 344
  - defenses of, 339
  - hydrogen ion regulation and, A–32, 431–432
  - nonrespiratory functions, 345–346
- Rest and digest response, 183
- Restak, Richard, 512
- Resting membrane potential
  - balance of leaks and pumping, 66
  - defined, 62, 71
- Reticular activating system (RAS), 130
- Reticular formation and brain stem, 130
- Retina
  - diagram, 154
  - focus and, 151
  - function, 146, 160
  - light stimulus response, 156
  - structure, 152
- Retinal, 156
- Retrograde amnesia, 127
- Reversible shock, 293
- Rh blood group system, 303–304
- Rh factor, 303–304
- Rheumatoid arthritis
  - defined, 322
  - glucocorticoids and, 519–520
- Rhodopsin, 156
- Rib and respiration, 349
- Ribonucleic acid (RNA)
  - defined, 20
  - structure, A–16
- Ribosomal assembly and protein translation, A–25
- Ribosomal protein synthesis and cytosol, 34
- Ribosomal RNA (rRNA)
  - defined, 20
  - protein synthesis and, A–22
- Ribosome
  - defined, 20
  - DNA translation and, A–23–A–24
  - rough ER and, 21
- Rickets, 541
- Rigor mortis, 203–204
- RNA
  - defined, 20
  - structure, A–16
- Rod (retinal)
  - See also* Photoreceptor
  - function, 146, 157, 160
  - structure, 152
  - vision properties, 157
- Rough ER
  - diagram, 22
  - overview, 21
- Round window (ear)
  - description, 165
  - function, 172
- Saccule, 170–171, 172
- Saliva, 444–445
- Salivary amylase, 444
- Salivary center, 444
- Salivary reflex, 444
- Salt balance
  - daily requirements, 420
  - ECF volume and, 419–420
  - kidneys and, 416
- Saltatory conduction and action potential, 83
- Salts (chemical), A–11
- Salty taste perception, 173
- Sarcomere, 196
- Sarcoplasmic reticulum
  - defined, 22
  - diagram, 201
  - function, 200
- Satiety, 482
- Satiety center and food intake, 484
- Satiety signal, 482
- Saturated fatty acid, A–12
- Scar tissue and inflammation, 316
- Schwann cell and action potential, 83
- Sclera
  - defined, 146
  - function, 160
- Scrotum
  - function, 551
  - location, 546
- Sebaceous gland, 338
- Second messenger, 94
- Second polar body, 564
- Secondary active transport
  - characteristics, 63
  - process, 60, 395
- Secondary follicle
  - defined, 567
  - diagram, 569
- Secondary hypertension, 290
- Secondary polycythemia, 302
- Secondary spermatocyte, 554
- Second-messenger pathway
  - amplification by, 98
  - extracellular chemical messengers and, 93
  - hydrophilic hormone effects and, 96–97
- Secretin
  - bile secretion and, 462
  - functions, 474
  - gastric motility and, 448
  - pancreatic secretion and, 458
- Secretion
  - defined, 4
  - digestive, 438
- Secretory phase (menstrual cycle), 574
- Secretory vesicle
  - defined, 23
  - Golgi complex and, 23
  - nutrient storage and cytosol, 34, 35
  - transporting, 37
- Segmentation
  - digestive regulation and, 441
  - small intestine motility and, 463–464
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI), 88
- Self-antigen
  - defined, 325, 329
  - immune system tolerance and, 332
- Self-excitabile smooth muscles, 222
- Semen
  - defined, 546
  - makeup, 557
  - volume, 561
- Semicircular canal
  - equilibrium and, 168
  - function, 172
- Semilunar valve, 233
- Seminal vesicle
  - defined, 546
  - function, 557, 558
  - location, 558
- Seminiferous tubule, 551
- Seminiferous tubule fluid, 555
- Senile dementia, 128
- Senile plaque, 128
- Sensitization period (allergic), 335
- Sensor in negative feedback, 11
- Sensorineural deafness, 168
- Sensory afferent, 143–144
- Sensory homunculus
  - description, 115
  - diagram, 118
- Sensory information, 144
- Sensory receptor
  - afferent neuron, 109
  - digestive regulation and, 442–443
  - permeability and graded potential, 142
  - potential and action potential, 142

- Sensory receptor (*Continued*)  
 potential magnitude, 143  
 reflex arc and, 134  
 stimulation adaptation, 143  
 types, 141–143  
 uses, 142
- Sensory transduction, 141
- Septicemic shock, 309
- Septum, 230
- Serosa in digestive tract wall, 439
- Sertoli cell  
 FSH and, 556  
 sperm and, 555  
 spermatogenesis and, 553
- Serum, 307–308
- Set point in negative feedback, 11
- Sex act, 559–561
- Sex chromosome, 549
- Sex determination, 549–550
- Sex gland, accessory, 545–546
- Sex hormone  
 function, 518  
 secretion, 520–522
- Sex-determining region of the Y chromosome (SRY), 549
- Sexual characteristics, secondary, 546, 552–553
- Sexual differentiation, 549–551
- Sexual intercourse, 559
- Sexual libido and testosterone, 551–552
- Sexual response cycle  
 comparison of male and female, 561–562  
 phases of male, 559
- Shivering and body temperature, 489
- Shock, circulatory, 292–293
- Short-term memory  
 defined, 126  
 long-term memory and, 126–127  
 molecular mechanisms, 127
- Sickle cell disease, 301–302
- Sight. *See* Vision
- Signal molecule, 92
- Signal transduction, 93–94
- Signal transduction pathway, 98
- Sildenafil, 560–561
- Simple diffusion  
*See also* Diffusion  
 characteristics, 63  
 membrane transport and, 50  
 process, 50
- Simple lipid, A–12–A–13
- Simple salivary reflex, 444
- Single-unit smooth muscle  
 characteristics, 218–219  
 contraction gradation, 223  
 properties, 222–223
- Sinoatrial (SA) node, 235
- Sinusoid and liver blood flow, 459
- Sinusoid, liver, 460
- Sister chromatid, A–26
- Skeletal muscle  
 action potential initiation, 223  
 Ca<sup>2+</sup> and movement, 199  
 calcium-induced contraction, 222  
 characteristics, 218–219  
 components, 198  
 counteracting gravity, 285–286  
 defined, 194  
 fiber activity, 204  
 fibers, 195–196  
 heat production and, 489  
 levels of organization, 197  
 mechanics, 204–210  
 metabolism, 210–211  
 molecular basis of contraction, 198–204  
 motor neurons and, 185, 189  
 structure, 194–198  
 whole-muscle tension determinants, 214
- Skeletal muscle pump and venous return, 285–286
- Skeletal system  
*See also* Bone  
 components, 6  
 contributions to homeostasis, 10, 13
- Skin  
 anatomy, 338  
 components, 337–338  
 contributions to homeostasis, 296  
 hormonal function, 500  
 immunity and, 337–339
- Skull as CNS protection, 112
- Sleep  
 behavior patterns during, 131  
 defined, 130  
 EEG and, 122  
 EEG patterns, 131  
 function, 132  
 obesity and, 485  
 types, 131
- Sleep apnea, 377
- Sleep–wake cycle  
 defined, 130  
 neural systems controlling, 132
- Slow pain pathway, 146
- Slow-reactive substance of anaphylaxis (SRS-A), 335
- Slow-wave potential  
 digestive regulation and, 441  
 initiating action potentials in excitable tissues, 223  
 smooth muscles and, 222–223
- Slow-wave sleep, 131
- Slow-wave sleep center, 132
- Small intestine  
 absorptive surface, 467  
 digestive enzymes and, 465  
 hormonal function, 500  
 motility, 463–465  
 mucosa modifications, 466–467  
 role in absorption, 466–471  
 secretion, 465  
 volumes absorbed, 471
- Smell  
*See also* Olfactory  
 process, 173–175
- Smooth ER  
 diagram, 22  
 overview, 21
- Smooth muscle  
*See also specific types*  
 action potential initiation, 223  
 arteriolar, 272–273  
 calcium-induced contraction, 222  
 characteristics, 218–219  
 contraction speed, 225  
 defined, 194  
 external influences, 224  
 filament arrangement diagram, 221  
 overview, 217–225  
 properties, 217, 220  
 tension when stretched, 224–225  
 tone, 224
- Sodium (Na), A–4
- Sodium and glucose cotransporter (SGLT), 60
- Sodium imbalance and renal failure, 411
- Soft tissue growth and growth hormone, 507
- Solute  
 capillary exchange and, 278  
 defined, 50, A–9  
 water concentration and, 52
- Solution  
 concentration, 52  
 defined, 50
- Solution (chemical), A–9
- Solvent, A–9  
 defined, 50
- Somatic, 546
- Somatic cell  
 components, A–18–A–19  
 defined, 546
- Somatic mutation, A–28–A–29
- Somatic nervous system  
 defined, 108, 178  
 features, 187  
 overview, 185–186
- Somatic sensation, 144
- Somatosensory cortex  
 diagram, 117  
 function, 115, 116
- Somatotopic maps, 118
- Somatosensory pathway, 144
- Somatosensory processing, 115–116
- Somatostatin  
 digestion and, 451, 453, 530  
 growth hormone and, 504, 509
- Somatotrope, 502
- Somatotropin, 502
- Somesthetic sensation, 115
- Somesthetic sensory neuron, 144–145
- Sound transduction, 165, 167
- Sound wave  
 defined, 161–162  
 transmission, 165–166
- Sour taste perception, 173
- Spasmodic torticollis and botulinum toxin, 192
- Spastic paralysis, 214
- Spatial summation  
 diagram, 89  
 postsynaptic neuron threshold and, 88
- Special senses, 144
- Speech impediment, 120
- Sperm  
 endocrine disrupters and, 562  
 fertilization and, 576  
 Sertoli cells and, 555  
 transport to the oviduct, 575–576
- Spermatid, 554
- Spermatocyte  
 defined, 553  
 secondary, 554
- Spermatogenesis  
 compared to oogenesis, 564–566  
 defined, 546  
 diagram, 554  
 FSH and, 556  
 process, 553–555  
 site, 552  
 testosterone and, 556
- Spermatogonia  
*See also* Germ cell (reproductive)  
 defined, 553
- Spermatozoa, 545
- Spermatozoon, 554–555
- Spermiogenesis, 554
- Sphincter, 206  
*See also specializations*
- Sphincter of Oddi, 460
- Sphygmomanometer, 267–268
- Spike, membrane potential changes and, 75
- Spinal cord  
 cross-section, 135  
 diagram, 133  
 location, 117, 132  
 overview, 132–136  
 reflexes and, 133  
 regions, 134  
 white matter, 132

- Spinal nerve
  - afferent fibers and, 133
  - defined, 132
  - efferent fibers and, 133
  - regions, 134
- Spinal reflex, 135–136
- Spinocerebellum, 128–129
- Spirogram, 358
- Spirometer, 358
- Spleen and red blood cells, 300
- ST segment, 243
- Stapes, 163
  - function, 172
- Starch, A–12
- Steatorrhea, 458
- Stem cell
  - discussion, 7–8
  - gastric mucosa and, 450, 468
- Stenotic valve, 246
- Sternum
  - defined, 229
  - respiration and, 349
- Steroid
  - defined, A–13
  - discussion, 213
  - ring system, A–13
- Steroid hormone
  - See also* Lipophilic hormone
  - adrenal glands and, 518
  - defined, 94
  - function, 495
  - processing, 95
  - properties, 95
  - transport, 96
- Steroidal compound, A–14
- Stimulation, frequency and tension, 207
- Stimulus
  - coding, 144
  - defined, 141
  - functions of strength, 143
  - sensory receptors and, 142
- Stomach
  - anatomy, 447
  - functions, 447
  - hormonal function, 500
  - overview, 447–456
  - vomiting and, 449–450
- Stress
  - cortisol and, 519
  - cortisol secretion and, 520
  - integrated response, 523–525
  - mechanical and bone deposition, 537–538
  - overview, 523–525
  - thyroid hormone and, 516
- Stressor
  - chronic psychosocial, 525
  - effects on the body, 523
- Stretch reflex
  - overview, 135
  - process, 215–216
- Stroke, 113
- Stroke volume (SV)
  - controls, 249, 250
  - defined, 244
  - summary of factors affecting, 250–251
- Subcutaneous fat, 482
- Subcutaneous tissue, 338
- Submucosa, 439
- Submucosal plexus
  - digestive regulation and, 441
  - in digestive tract wall, 439
- Substance P and pain processing, 146
- Subsynaptic membrane, 86
- Suckling
  - lactation stimulation and, 586
  - reflexes, 588
- Sucrase, 465
- Sucrose, 438
- Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 377
- Suffocation, 371
- Sulfur (S), A–4
- Summation and postsynaptic neuron threshold, 88
- Supplementary motor area
  - diagram, 117
  - overview, 119
- Suppressor T cell, 326
- Suprachiasmatic nucleus, 510–511
- Surface epithelial cell and gastric mucosa, 450
- Suspension (solution), A–10
- Suspensory ligament, 151, 160
- Swallowing, 445
- Swallowing center, 445
- Sweat, 488
- Sweat gland, 338
- Sweating and body heat exchange, 488
- Sweet taste perception, 173
- Sympathetic collateral ganglia, 179
- Sympathetic dominance
  - defined, 180
  - times of, 183
- Sympathetic ganglion chain, 179
- Sympathetic nervous system
  - defined, 108, 179
  - digestive regulation and, 442
  - effects on blood pressure, 291
  - features, 186
  - function, 180
  - salivary secretion and, 444
  - stress and, 524
  - structures innervated by, 182
- Sympathetic postganglionic fiber, 180
- Sympathetic stimulation
  - effect on heart, 248, 250
  - effect on stroke volume, 250, 251
  - heart failure and, 251
  - venous return and, 285
- Sympathetic tone, 180
- Sympathetic vasoconstriction
  - blood pressure and, 273
  - overriding, 274
- Sympathomimetic effect of thyroid hormone, 515
- Symport
  - carrier-mediated transport and, 60
  - characteristics, 63
  - diagram, 61
- Synapse
  - compared to neuromuscular junctions, 191
  - defined, 85
  - diseases and, 90
  - drugs and, 90
  - excitatory, 86
  - function, 86
  - inhibitory, 87
  - structure, 86
- Synaptic cleft, 85
- Synaptic input, 85
- Synaptic knob, 85
- Synaptic vesicle, 85
- Syndrome X, 532
- Synergism (hormonal), 498
- Systemic capillary and gas exchange, 364–365
- Systemic circulation
  - defined, 229
  - heart and, 230
  - organization, 264
- Systemic homeostatic control, 11
- Systole, 244
- Systolic murmur, 247
- Systolic pressure, 267
- T cell. *See specializations*; T lymphocyte
- T lymphocyte
  - adaptive immunity and, 319
  - antigens and, 328–329
  - cancer and, 332–334
  - characteristics, 334
  - defined, 311
  - origins, 320
  - target binding, 325
  - types, 326
- T tubule. *See* Transverse tubule
- T wave, 241
- Tachycardia, 243
- Target cell
  - defined, 495
  - responsiveness, 498
- Target-gland hormone, 505
  - function, 506
- Tastant, 173
- Taste, 171, 173
- Taste bud
  - location, 443
  - structure, 171
- Taste pore, 171
- Taste receptor cell, 171
- Tay-Sachs disease, 25
- T-cell receptor (TCR), 325
  - diagram, 321
  - function, 320
- Tectorial membrane
  - defined, 165
  - function, 172
- Teeth, 443
- Telophase
  - meiotic, A–27
  - mitotic, A–26, A–27
- Temperature balance importance, 487
- Temperature comparison, A–2
- Temperature conversions, A–2
- Temperature, effect on percent hemoglobin saturation, 369
- Temperature regulation, 486–492
- Temporal lobe, 117
- Temporal summation
  - diagram, 89
  - postsynaptic neuron threshold and, 88
- Tendon, 204
- Tension
  - defined, 205
  - in stretched smooth muscles, 224–225
- Terminal button, 186
- Terminal ganglia, 180
- Tertiary follicle, 567
- Testicular feminization syndrome, 498, 550
- Testicular function, feedback control of, 556
- Testis
  - anatomy, 552
  - defined, 545
  - function, 551, 558
  - location, 546, 558
- Testis-determining factor (TDF), 549
- Testosterone
  - defined, 545
  - effects, 551–553
  - estrogen and, 553
  - LH and, 556
  - muscle fibers and, 212
  - sexual differentiation and, 549
- Tetanic contraction, 208
- Tetanus (physiologic)
  - cardiac muscle and, 240
  - twitch summation and, 207–208



- Tetanus toxin and synaptic transmission, 91
- Tetrad, A-27
- Tetraiodothyronine ( $T_4$ )  
conversion into  $T_3$ , 515  
defined, 513  
synthesis, 514
- Thalamus  
diagram, 122  
function, 113  
location, 116, 123  
motor control and, 123  
sight and, 159
- The China Syndrome*, 512
- Thecal cell proliferation, 567
- Thermal energy, 479
- Thermal gradient, 487
- Thermally gated channel and ion movement, 72
- Thermoreceptor, 142  
defined, 489
- Thirst, 425-426
- Thirst center, 425
- Thoracic cavity  
defined, 229  
overview, 349
- Thoracic vertebrae and respiration, 349
- Thorax, 349
- Three Mile Island, 512
- Threshold potential and membrane potential changes, 75
- Thrombin, 306
- Thrombocytopenia purpura, 309
- Thromboembolism  
atherosclerosis and, 254-255  
cause, 308-309
- Thrombopoietin and blood production, 304
- Thromboxane, 558
- Thrombus, 308
- Thymine (T), A-18
- Thymosin, 319
- Thymus  
adaptive immunity and, 319  
function, 500
- Thyroglobulin (Tg), 513
- Thyroglobulin molecule, 513
- Thyroid gland  
anatomy, 513  
function, 494, 499  
functional abnormalities, 516  
overview, 513-517
- Thyroid hormone  
*See also* Lipophilic hormone  
defined, 94  
effects on the body, 515  
function, 495  
properties, 95  
secretion, 514, 515  
secretion regulation, 516  
storage, 514  
synthesis, 513-514  
transport, 96
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)  
function, 502-504  
thyroid hormone and, 515-516
- Thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI) and Graves' disease, 516, 517
- Thyrotrope, 502
- Thyrotropin, 502
- Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH)  
function, 504  
thyroid hormone and, 515
- Thyroxine  
defined, 513  
synthesis, 514
- Tidal volume (TV)  
anatomic dead space and, 360-361  
defined, 358
- Tight junction  
cells and, 48  
diagram, 49
- Timbre, 163
- Timbre discrimination, 167
- Tissue  
*See also specific types*  
hemoglobin gas exchange and, 368-369  
types, 3, 4
- Tissue engineering, 7
- Tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) and blood clotting, 308
- Tissue repair and inflammation, 316
- Tissue thromboplastin, 307
- Tissue-specific stem cells, 7
- Titin of skeletal muscle, 196
- Tolerance and immune system, 331
- Toll-like receptor (TLR) and immune system, 313-319
- Tone, defined, 162
- Tongue, 443
- Tonic LH secretion, suppressing, 571
- Tonic receptor  
defined, 143  
diagram, 144
- Tonicity  
defined, 54  
osmotic water movement and, 56
- Total lung capacity (TLC), 359
- Total peripheral resistance  
factors affecting, 275  
mean arterial pressure and, 273
- Toxic Release Inventory, 563
- TP interval, 243
- Trachea, 346
- Tract, white matter, 132-133
- Transducer, 93
- Transepithelial transport  
tubular reabsorption and, 390-391  
tubular secretion and, 398-400
- Transfer RNA (tRNA)  
anticodons and, A-24  
defined, 20  
protein synthesis and, A-22
- Transfusion reaction, 303
- Transmural pressure gradient and respiration, 350-351
- Transplant rejection, 331
- Transport maximum ( $T_m$ ), 56, 57
- Transport molecule, 46
- Transport vesicle, 22
- Transporter recruitment, 530
- Transverse tubule  
diagram, 201  
function, 200
- Tricarboxylic acid cycle. *See* Citric acid cycle
- Tricuspid valve, 232
- Triglyceride  
defined, A-12-A-13  
digestion and, 438
- Tri-iodothyronine ( $T_3$ )  
activating, 515  
defined, 513  
synthesis, 514
- Triplet code, A-22-A-23
- tRNA, A-26
- Trophoblast, 578
- Tropic hormone, 496
- Tropomyosin, 197-198
- Troponin, 197-198
- Trypsin, 458
- Trypsin inhibitor, 458
- Trypsinogen, 458
- Tubular maximum  
for glucose, 396  
kidney function and, 395
- Tubular reabsorption  
process, 385, 390-398  
types, 391
- Tubular secretion  
process, 385, 398-400  
regulating hydrogen ion, 432
- Tubulin, 38
- Tumor, 332-333
- Tumor suppressor gene, A-29
- Twitch  
defined, 206  
summation, 207-208
- Two-point threshold-of-discrimination test., 145
- Tympanic membrane, 163, 172
- Type 1 diabetes mellitus  
defined, 532  
treatment, 534
- Type 2 diabetes mellitus  
defined, 532  
treatment, 534
- Tyrosine and thyroid, 513
- Ulcer. *See* Peptic ulcer
- Ultrafiltration, 279-280
- Umami taste, 173
- Umbilical artery, 580
- Umbilical cord, 580
- Umbilical vein, 580
- Umbilicus, 585
- Universal blood donor, 303
- Universal blood recipient, 303
- Unsaturated fatty acid, A-12
- Uracil, A-20
- Urea reabsorption, 397-398
- Uremic toxicity and renal failure, 411
- Ureter, 382
- Urethra  
defined, 382, 546  
function, 557
- Urethral sphincter, 411
- Uric acid and kidney function, 398
- Urinary bladder, 382
- Urinary incontinence, 413
- Urinary system  
components, 6, 382  
contributions to homeostasis, 10, 12, 380  
diagram, 383  
water absorption, 405-406
- Urine  
bladder and, 410-413  
concentrations in renal failure, 411  
salt output, 420-421  
water loss and, 425
- Urine excretion  
concentrations, 409  
overview, 400-413  
process, 385
- Urogenital system defenses, 339
- Uterine cycle. *See* Menstrual cycle
- Uterine tubes, 546
- Uterus  
defined, 546  
hormonal changes and, 573-574  
hormonal levels and, 569-570  
involution, 585-586  
pregnancy and, 582
- Utricle, 170-171, 172
- Uvula, 443
- Vaccination, 324-325
- Vagina, 546

- Vagus nerve
  - bile secretion and, 462
  - digestive control and, 442
  - heart control and, 247
  - overview, 130
- Valve. *See specific types*
- Variable, controlled, 11
- Varicose vein, 287
- Varicosity, 180
- Vas deferens
  - function, 558
  - location, 546, 557
- Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), 272
- Vascular spasm
  - defined, 253
  - hemostasis and, 304–305
- Vascular tone, 270
- Vascular tree, 264
- Vasectomy, 557
- Vasoactive paracrine, 272
- Vasoconstriction, 270
- Vasodilation, 313
  - function, 270
- Vasopressin
  - dehydration and, 423
  - functions, 501
  - kidney function and, 405–409
  - secretion triggers, 425–426
  - urinal water output and, 425
- Vein
  - contributions to homeostasis, 260
  - defined, 230
  - features, 266
  - function, 283–284
  - structure, 283
- Velocity
  - blood flow and, 276–277
  - muscle movement and, 206
- Venae cavae, 232
- Venous capacity, 284
- Venous pressure and gravity, 285–286
- Venous return, 284–287
- Venous valve, 287
- Ventilation
  - acid–base balance and, 377
  - blood gas and, 377
  - defined, 345
  - magnitude adjustment, 374–375
  - main regulator, 376
  - pressures important in, 349–350
- Ventral respiratory group (VRG), 374
- Ventricle (brain), 111
- Ventricle (heart), 230
- Ventricular diastole, 244
- Ventricular ejection, 244
- Ventricular excitation, 238
- Ventricular filling, 246
- Ventricular repolarization, 244
- Ventricular systole, 244
- Venule, 264
- Vertebrae, 229
- Vertebral column
  - CNS protection, 112
  - spinal cord and, 133
- Vertical osmotic gradient
  - countercurrent multiplication and, 404–405
  - defined, 403
- Vesicle, 22
- Vesicle transport
  - characteristics, 63
  - large particle, 60, 62
  - process, 35, 37
- Vestibular apparatus
  - diagram, 169
  - function, 168–170, 172
  - location, 161, 172
- Vestibular nerve, 170
- Vestibular nuclei, 171
- Vestibulocerebellum, 128
- Viagra, 560–561
- Villus in small intestine, 466–468
- Virulence, 309
- Virus
  - AIDS, 328
  - defenses against invasion of, 328
  - immune system and, 309
  - interferon and, 317, 318
- Visceral afferent, 143–144
- Visceral fat, 482
- Visceral smooth muscle, 222
- Viscosity, 263
- Vision
  - color perception, 157
  - cortical process hierarchy, 160–161
  - process, 146–161
- Visual field, 158
- Visual input, functions other than sight, 161
- Visual pathway
  - diagram, 156, 159
  - interruption, 159
  - retinal, 154
- Vital capacity (VC), 358
- Vitamin absorption in small intestine, 471
- Vitamin D
  - deficiency, 541
  - function, 539–540
  - PTH and plasma calcium, 540
- Vitreous humor, 147, 160
- Vocal fold
  - defined, 346–347
  - swallowing and, 445
- Voice box
  - defined, 346–347
  - swallowing and, 445
- Voltage-gated channel
  - action potential and, 75
  - diagram, 76
  - ion movement and, 72
- Volume English–metric conversions, A–2
- Volume measures and English equivalents, A–1
- Volume metric–English conversions, A–2
- Vomiting, 449–450
- Vomiting center, 450
- Vulva, 546
- Water
  - absorption in small intestine, 468
  - body, 418
  - concentration and solute, 52
- Water balance
  - daily requirements, 424
  - ECF hypertonicity and, 423
  - hypotonicity and, 424
  - kidneys and, 416, 426
  - nonphysiologic influences, 426
  - regulated factors, 425
  - sources, 424–425
  - vasopressin control, 424
- Water reabsorption
  - kidney function and, 397, 405–410
  - as response to water deficit, 408–409
  - as response to water excess, 409–410
  - water balance and, 426
- Water-soluble substance and plasma membrane
  - permeation, 50
- Wavelength, 148
- Weight, A–3
- Weight English–metric conversions, A–2
- Weight metric–English conversions, A–2
- Wernicke’s area
  - diagram, 117
  - location, 120
- White blood cell (WBC)
  - See also* Leukocyte count, 311
  - defined, 296
- White matter
  - description, 115
  - diagram, 122
  - spinal cord tracts, 132
- White muscle fiber, 211
- Withdrawal reflex, 135–136
- Working memory, 126
- X chromosome, 549
- Xerostomia, 444
- Y chromosome., 549
- Yellow bone marrow, 300
- Z line of skeletal muscle, 196
- Zona fasciculata, 518
- Zona glomerulosa, 518
- Zona pellucida, 567
- Zona reticularis, 518
- ZP3 receptor, 576
- Zygote, 576

























# Chapter 1

# Study Card

## Introduction to Physiology (p. 1)

- Physiology is the study of body functions.
- Physiologists explain body function in terms of the mechanisms of action involving cause-and-effect sequences of physical and chemical processes.
- Physiology and anatomy are closely interrelated because body functions highly depend on the structure of the body parts that carry them out.

## Levels of Organization in the Body (pp. 1–5)

- The human body is a complex combination of specific atoms and molecules.
- These nonliving chemicals are organized in a precise way to form cells, the smallest entities capable of carrying out life processes. Cells are the body's structural and functional living building blocks. (Review Figure 1-1.)
- The basic functions performed by each cell for its own survival include (1) obtaining O<sub>2</sub> and nutrients, (2) performing energy-generating chemical reactions, (3) eliminating wastes, (4) synthesizing proteins and other cell components, (5) controlling movement of materials between the cell and its environment, (6) moving materials throughout the cell, (7) responding to the environment, and (8) reproducing.
- In addition to its basic functions, each cell in a multicellular organism performs a specialized function.
- Cells of similar structure and specialized function combine to form the four primary tissues of the body: muscle, nervous, epithelial, and connective. (Review Figure 1-2.)
- Glands are derived from epithelial tissue and specialized for secretion. Exocrine glands secrete through ducts to the body surface or into a cavity that communicates with the outside; endocrine glands secrete hormones into the blood. (Review Figure 1-3.)
- Organs are combinations of two or more types of tissues that act together to perform one or more functions. An example is the stomach. (Review Figure 1-2.)

- Body systems are collections of organs that perform related functions and interact to accomplish a common activity essential for survival of the whole body. An example is the digestive system. (Review Figure 1-4.)
- Body systems combine to form the organism, or whole body.

## Concept of Homeostasis (pp. 5–10)

- The fluid inside the cells of the body is intracellular fluid (ICF); the fluid outside the cells is extracellular fluid (ECF).
- Because most body cells are not in direct contact with the external environment, cell survival depends on maintaining a

relatively stable internal fluid environment with which the cells directly make life-sustaining exchanges.

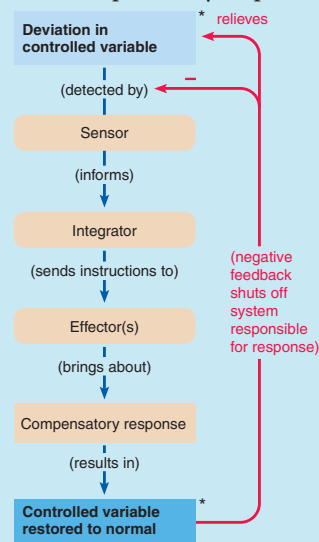
- The ECF serves as the body's internal environment. It consists of the plasma and the interstitial fluid. (Review Figure 1-5.)
- Homeostasis is the maintenance of a dynamic steady state in the internal environment.
- The factors of the internal environment that must be homeostatically maintained are its (1) concentration of nutrients; (2) concentration of oxygen and carbon dioxide; (3) concentration of waste products; (4) pH; (5) concentrations of water, salt, and other electrolytes; (6) volume and pressure; and (7) temperature. (Review Figure 1-7.)
- The functions performed by the 11 body systems are directed toward maintaining homeostasis. These functions ultimately depend on the specialized activities of the cells that make up the system. Thus, homeostasis is essential for each cell's survival, and each cell contributes to homeostasis. (Review Figures 1-6 and 1-7.)

## Homeostatic Control Systems (pp. 11–15)

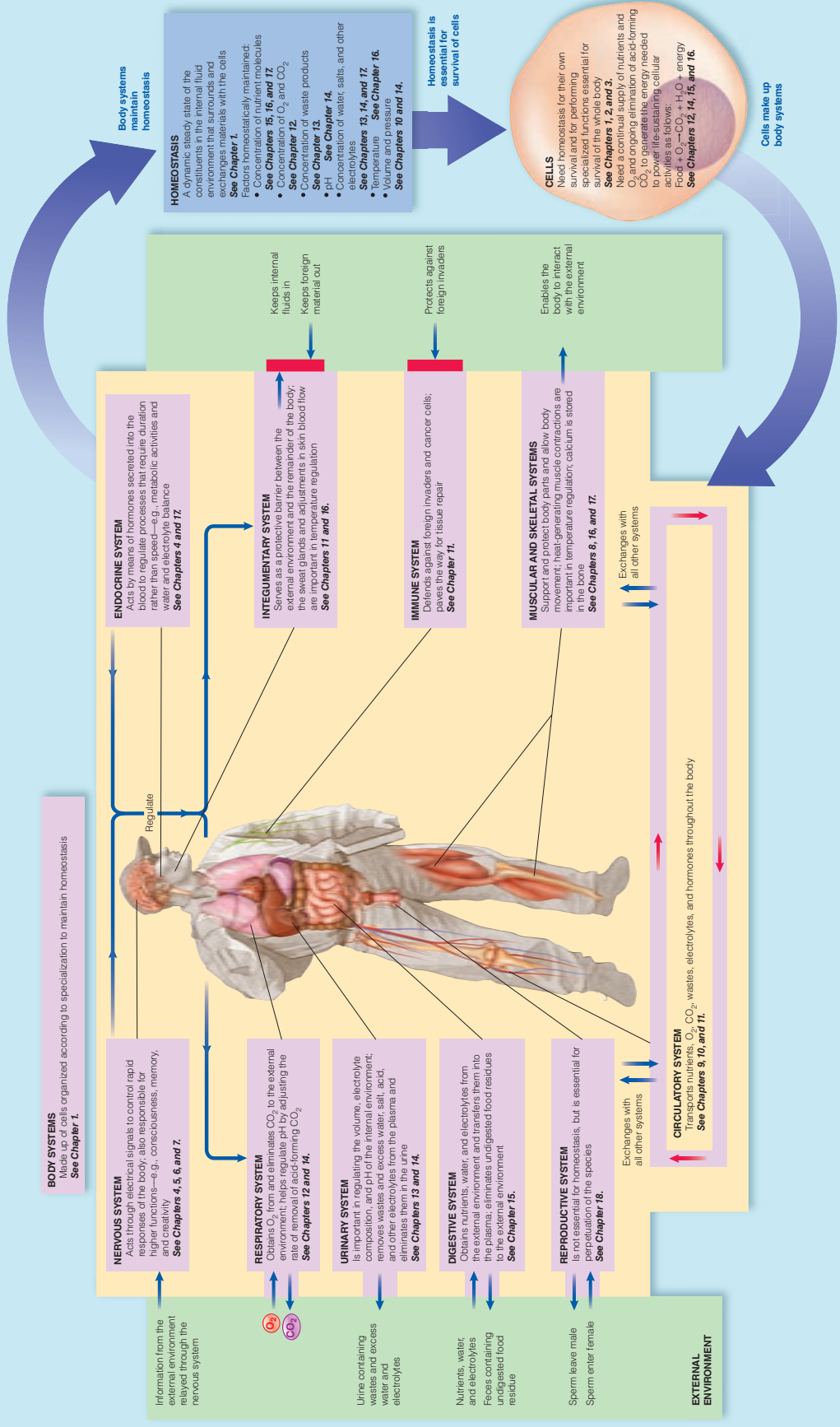
- A homeostatic control system is a network of body components working together to maintain a controlled variable in the internal environment relatively constant near an optimal set point despite changes in the variable.
- Homeostatic control systems can be classified as (1) intrinsic (local) controls, which are inherent compensatory responses of an organ to a change, and (2) extrinsic (systemic) controls, which are responses of an organ triggered by factors external to the organ, namely, by the nervous and endocrine systems.

- Both intrinsic and extrinsic control systems generally operate on the principle of negative feedback: A change in a controlled variable triggers a response that drives the variable in the opposite direction of the initial change, thus opposing the change. (Review Figure 1-8.)

- In positive feedback, a change in a controlled variable triggers a response that drives the variable in the same direction as the initial change, thus amplifying the change. Positive feedback is uncommon in the body but is important in several instances, such as during childbirth.



(a) Components of a negative-feedback control system



**BODY SYSTEMS**  
Made up of cells organized according to specialization to maintain homeostasis  
See Chapter 1.

**NERVOUS SYSTEM**  
Acts through electrical signals to control rapid responses of the body; also responsible for higher functions—e.g., consciousness, memory.  
See Chapters 4, 5, 6, and 7.

**RESPIRATORY SYSTEM**  
O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> exchange; regulates CO<sub>2</sub> to the external environment; helps regulate pH by adjusting the rate of removal of acid-forming CO<sub>2</sub>.  
See Chapters 12 and 14.

**URINARY SYSTEM**  
Is important in regulating the volume, electrolyte composition, and pH of the internal environment; removes wastes and excess water, salt, acid, and other electrolytes from the plasma and eliminates them in the urine.  
See Chapters 13 and 14.

**DIGESTIVE SYSTEM**  
Obtains nutrients, water, and electrolytes from the external environment and transfers them into the plasma; eliminates undigested food residues to the external environment.  
See Chapter 15.

**REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM**  
Is not essential for homeostasis, but is essential for perpetuation of the species.  
See Chapter 16.

**ENDOCRINE SYSTEM**  
Acts by means of hormones secreted into the blood to regulate processes that require duration rather than speed—e.g., metabolic activities and nerve and electrolyte balance.  
See Chapters 4 and 17.

**INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM**  
Serves as a protective barrier between the external environment and the remainder of the body; the sweat glands and adjustments in skin blood flow are important in temperature regulation.  
See Chapters 11 and 16.

**IMMUNE SYSTEM**  
Defends against foreign invaders and cancer cells; paves the way for tissue repair.  
See Chapter 11.

**MUSCULAR AND SKELETAL SYSTEMS**  
Support and protect body parts and allow body movement; heat-generating muscle contractions are important in temperature regulation; calcium is stored in the bone.  
See Chapters 6, 16, and 17.

**HOMEOSTASIS**  
A dynamic steady state of the constituents in the internal fluid environment that surrounds and exchanges materials with the cells.  
See Chapter 1.  
Factors homeostatically maintained:  
• Temperature of body tissues  
• Concentration of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub>  
• Concentration of waste products  
• pH  
• See Chapter 14.  
• Concentration of water, salts, and other electrolytes  
• See Chapters 13, 14, and 17.  
• Volume and pressure.  
• See Chapter 16.  
See Chapters 10 and 14.

Homeostasis is essential for survival of cells

**CELLS**  
Need homeostasis for their own survival. Specialized functions essential for survival of the whole body.  
See Chapters 1, 2, and 3.  
Need a continual supply of nutrients and O<sub>2</sub>, and ongoing elimination of acid-forming CO<sub>2</sub>, to generate the energy needed to power life-sustaining cellular activities as follows:  
• O<sub>2</sub> + CO<sub>2</sub> → energy  
See Chapters 12, 14, 15, and 16.

Cells make up body systems

**EXTERNAL ENVIRONMENT**  
Information from the external environment relayed through the nervous system  
O<sub>2</sub>  
CO<sub>2</sub>  
Urine containing wastes and excess water and electrolytes  
Nutrients, water, and electrolytes  
Feces containing undigested food residue  
Sperm leave male  
Sperm enter female

**CIRCULATORY SYSTEM**  
Transports nutrients, O<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>, wastes, electrolytes, and hormones throughout the body.  
See Chapters 9, 10, and 11.

Exchanges with all other systems

Exchanges with all other systems

Enables the body to interact with the external environment

Protects against foreign invaders

Keeps internal fluids in

Keeps foreign material out

Body systems maintain homeostasis

# Chapter 2

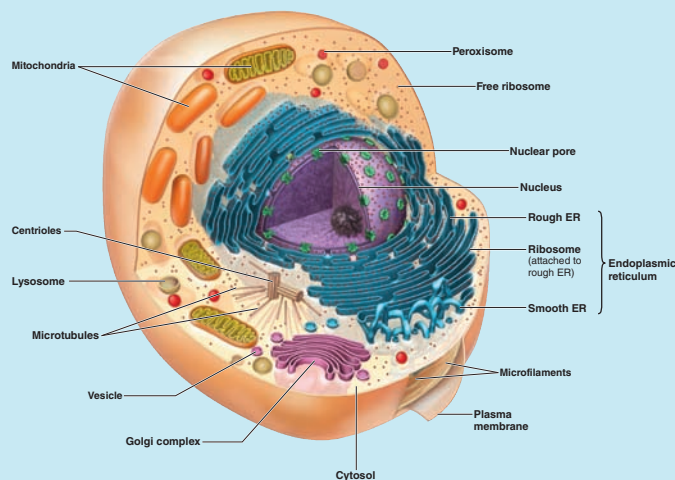
# Study Card

## Observations of Cells (p. 19)

- The complex organization and interaction of the chemicals within a cell confer the unique characteristics of life. The cell is the smallest unit capable of carrying out life processes.
- Cells are the living building blocks of the body. The structure and function of a multicellular organism ultimately depend on the structural and functional capabilities of its cells. (Review Table 2-1, p. 36.)
- Cells are too small for the unaided eye to see.
- Using early microscopes, investigators learned that all plant and animal tissues consist of individual cells.
- Scientists now know that a cell is a complex, highly organized, compartmentalized structure.

## An Overview of Cell Structure (pp. 19–21)

- Cells have three major subdivisions: the plasma membrane, the nucleus, and the cytoplasm. (Review Figure 2-1.)
- The plasma membrane encloses the cell and separates the intracellular fluid (ICF) and extracellular fluid (ECF).
- The nucleus contains deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), the cell's genetic material.
- Three types of ribonucleic acid (RNA) play a role in the protein synthesis coded by DNA: messenger RNA, ribosomal RNA, and transfer RNA.
- The cytoplasm consists of cytosol, a complex gel-like mass laced with organelles and a cytoskeleton.
- Organelles are highly organized structures that serve a specific function. They are bound by a membrane that separates the organelle's contents from the surrounding cytosol. There are five major organelles: the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), Golgi complex, lysosomes, peroxisomes, and mitochondria. (Review Figure 2-1 and Table 2-1, p. 36.)



## Endoplasmic Reticulum and Segregated Synthesis (pp. 21–22)

- The ER is a single, complex membranous network that encloses a fluid-filled lumen.
- The primary function of the ER is to synthesize proteins and lipids that are either (1) secreted to the exterior of the cell, such as enzymes and hormones, or (2) used to produce new cell components, particularly plasma membrane.
- The two types of ER are rough ER (flattened interconnected sacs studded with ribosomes) and smooth ER (interconnected tubules with no ribosomes). (Review Figure 2-2.)
- The rough ER ribosomes synthesize proteins, which are released into the ER lumen, where they are separated from the cytosol. Also entering the lumen are lipids produced within the membranous walls of the ER.
- Synthesized products move from the rough ER to the smooth ER, where they are packaged and discharged as transport vesicles. Transport vesicles are formed as a portion of the smooth ER “buds off.” (Review Figure 2-3.)

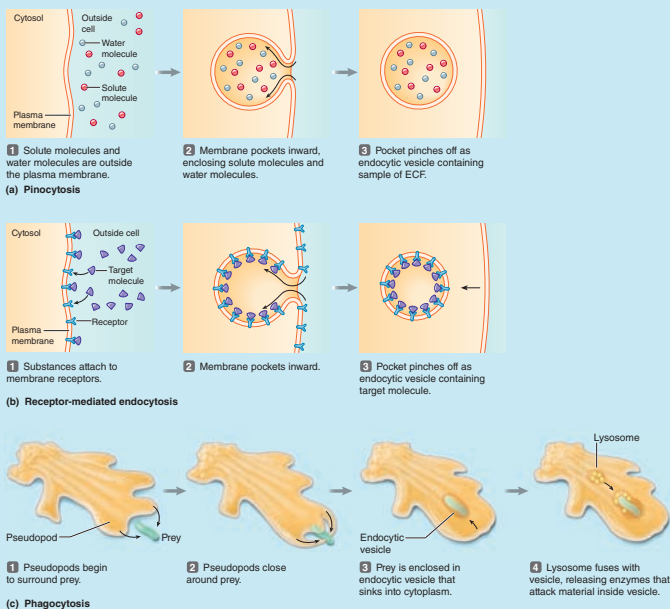
## Golgi Complex and Exocytosis (pp. 22–24)

- Transport vesicles move to and fuse with the Golgi complex, which consists of a stack of separate, flattened, membrane-enclosed sacs. (Review Figures 2-3 and 2-4.)
- The Golgi complex serves a twofold function: (1) to modify into finished products the newly synthesized molecules delivered to it in crude form from the ER, and (2) to sort, package, and direct molecular traffic to appropriate intracellular and extracellular destinations.
- The Golgi complex of secretory cells packages proteins to be exported from the cell in secretory vesicles that are released by exocytosis on appropriate stimulation. (Review Figures 2-3 and 2-5a.)

## Lysosomes and Endocytosis (pp. 24–25)

- Lysosomes are membrane-enclosed sacs that contain powerful hydrolytic (digestive) enzymes. (Review Figure 2-6.)
- Serving as the intracellular “digestive system,” lysosomes destroy foreign materials such as bacteria that have been internalized by the cell and demolish worn-out cell parts to make way for replacement parts.
- Extracellular material is brought into the cell by endocytosis for attack by lysosomal enzymes. (Review Figure 2-5b.) The three forms of endocytosis are pinocytosis (nonselective uptake of ECF; “cell drinking”), receptor-mediated endocytosis (selective import of a specific large molecule), and phagocytosis (engulfment of a large multimolecular particle; “cell eating”). (Review Figure 2-7.)



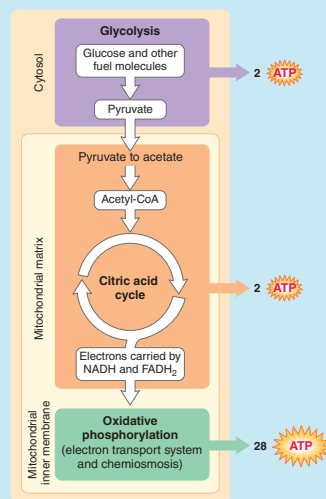


### Peroxisomes and Detoxification (pp. 25–26)

- Peroxisomes are small membrane-enclosed sacs containing powerful oxidative enzymes. (Review Figure 2-6.)
- They carry out particular oxidative reactions that detoxify various wastes and toxic foreign compounds that have entered the cell. During these detoxification reactions, peroxisomes generate potent hydrogen peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ ), which they decompose into harmless water and oxygen.

### Mitochondria and ATP Production (pp. 26–33)

- The rod-shaped mitochondria are enclosed by two membranes, a smooth outer membrane and an inner membrane that forms a series of shelves, the cristae, which project into an interior gel-filled cavity, the matrix. (Review Figure 2-8.)
- Mitochondria are the energy organelles of the cell. They efficiently convert the energy in food molecules to the usable energy stored in ATP molecules. Cells use ATP as an energy source for synthesis of new chemical compounds, for membrane transport, and for mechanical work.
- *Cellular respiration* refers collectively to the intracellular reactions in which energy-rich molecules are broken down to form ATP, using oxygen ( $O_2$ ) and producing carbon dioxide ( $CO_2$ ) in the process. Cellular respiration includes the sequential dismantling of nutrient molecules and subsequent ATP production in three stages: (1) glycolysis in the cytosol, (2) the citric acid cycle in the mitochondrial matrix, and (3) oxidative phosphorylation at the mitochondrial inner membrane. (Review Figure 2-9.)



■ *Oxidative phosphorylation* includes the electron transport system and chemiosmosis by ATP synthase. The electron transport system extracts high-energy electrons from hydrogens released during nutrient breakdown during glycolysis and the citric acid cycle and transfers them to successively lower energy levels. The free energy released during this process is used to create a hydrogen ion ( $H^+$ ) gradient across the mitochondrial inner membrane. The flow of  $H^+$  down this gradient activates ATP synthase, an enzyme that synthesizes ATP in a process called chemiosmosis. (Review Figures 2-10 through 2-13.)

■ A cell is more efficient at converting food energy into ATP when  $O_2$  is available. Without  $O_2$  (an anaerobic condition), a cell can produce only 2 molecules of ATP for every glucose molecule processed by glycolysis. With  $O_2$  (an aerobic condition), the mitochondrial processes can yield another 30 molecules of ATP for every glucose molecule processed (2 from the citric acid cycle and 28 from oxidative phosphorylation). (Review Figures 2-13 and 2-15.)

### Cytosol: Cell Gel (pp. 33–35)

- The cytosol contains the enzymes involved in intermediary metabolism and the ribosomal machinery essential for synthesis of these enzymes, as well as other cytosolic proteins.
- Many cells store unused nutrients within the cytosol in the form of glycogen granules or fat droplets. These nonpermanent masses of stored material are called inclusions. (Review Figure 2-16.)
- Also present in the cytosol are various secretory, transport, and endocytic vesicles.

### Cytoskeleton: Cell “Bone and Muscle” (pp. 35–39)

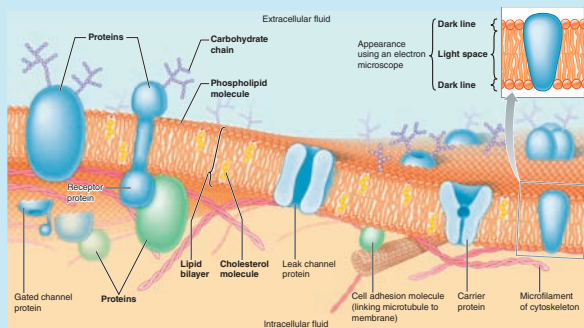
- The cytoskeleton, which extends throughout the cytosol, serves as the “bone and muscle” of the cell. (Review Table 2-1, p. 36.)
- The three types of cytoskeletal elements—microtubules, microfilaments, and intermediate filaments—each consist of different proteins and perform various roles. (Review Figure 2-17.)
- Microtubules, made of tubulin, maintain asymmetric cell shapes, serve as highways for intracellular transport by molecular motors, are the main component of cilia and flagella, and make up the mitotic spindle. (Review Figures 2-18 and 2-19.)
- Microfilaments, made of actin in most cells, are important in various cellular contractile systems, including amoeboid movement and muscle contraction. They also serve as mechanical stiffeners for microvilli. (Review Figures 2-20 and 2-21.)
- Intermediate filaments are irregular, threadlike proteins that help cells resist mechanical stress. Different proteins make up intermediate filaments in various cell types. Intermediate filaments are especially abundant in skin cells, where they are composed of keratin.

# Chapter 3

## Study Card

### Membrane Structure and Functions (pp. 43–47)

- All cells are bounded by a plasma membrane, a thin lipid bilayer that is interspersed with proteins and has carbohydrates attached on the outer surface.
- The appearance of the plasma membrane in an electron microscope as a trilaminar structure (two dark lines separated by a light interspace) is produced by the arrangement of its molecules. The phospholipids orient themselves to form a bilayer with a hydrophobic interior (light interspace) sandwiched between hydrophilic outer and inner surfaces (dark lines). (Review Figures 3-1 through 3-3.)
- The lipid bilayer forms the structural boundary of the cell, serving as a barrier for water-soluble substances and being responsible for the fluid nature of the membrane. Cholesterol molecules tucked between the phospholipids contribute to the fluidity and stability of the membrane.
- According to the fluid mosaic model of membrane structure, the lipid bilayer is embedded with proteins. (Review Figure 3-3.) Membrane proteins, which vary in type and distribution among cells, serve as (1) channels for passage of small ions across the membrane, (2) carriers for transport of specific substances into or out of the cell, (3) docking marker acceptors where secretory vesicles dock and release their contents, (4) membrane-bound enzymes that govern specific chemical reactions, (5) receptors for detecting and responding to chemical messengers that alter cell function, and (6) cell adhesion molecules that help hold cells together and are a structural link between the plasma membrane and the intracellular cytoskeleton.
- Membrane carbohydrates on the outer surface of the cell serve as self-identity markers. (Review Figure 3-3.) They are important in recognition of “self” in cell-to-cell interactions such as tissue formation and tissue growth.



### Cell-to-Cell Adhesions (pp. 47–50)

- The extracellular matrix (ECM) serves as a biological “glue” between the cells of a tissue. The ECM consists of a watery, gel-like substance interspersed with three major types of protein

fibers: collagen (provides tensile strength), elastin (permits stretch and recoil), and fibronectin (promotes cell adhesion).

- Many cells are further joined by specialized cell junctions, of which there are three types: desmosomes, tight junctions, and gap junctions.
- Desmosomes serve as adhering junctions to hold cells together mechanically and are especially important in tissues subject to a great deal of stretching. (Review Figure 3-4.)
- Tight junctions actually fuse cells together, preventing the passage of materials between cells and thereby permitting only regulated passage of materials through the cells. These impermeable junctions are found in the epithelial sheets that separate compartments with very different chemical compositions. (Review Figure 3-5.)
- Gap junctions are communicating junctions between two adjacent, but not touching, cells. They form small tunnels that permit exchange of ions and small molecules between the cells. Such movement of ions plays a key role in the spread of electrical activity to synchronize contraction in heart and smooth muscle. (Review Figure 3-6.)

### Overview of Membrane Transport (p. 50)

- Materials can pass between the extracellular fluid (ECF) and the intracellular fluid (ICF) by unassisted and assisted means.
- Transport mechanisms may also be passive (the particle moves across the membrane without the cell expending energy) or active (the cell expends energy to move the particle across the membrane). (Review Table 3-2, p. 63.)

### Unassisted Membrane Transport (pp. 50–55)

- Nonpolar (lipid-soluble) molecules of any size cross the membrane unassisted by dissolving in and passively moving through the lipid bilayer down concentration gradients. (Review Figures 3-7 and 3-8.) Small ions can traverse the membrane unassisted by passively moving down electrochemical gradients through open protein channels specific for the ion. (Review Figure 3-3.)
- In osmosis, water moves passively down its own concentration gradient across a selectively permeable membrane to an area of higher concentration of nonpenetrating solutes. Penetrating solutes do not have an osmotic effect. (Review Figures 3-9 through 3-12.)
- The *osmolality* of a solution is a measure of its total number of solute particles, both penetrating and nonpenetrating, both molecules and ions, per liter. The *osmotic pressure* of a solution is the pressure that must be applied to the solution to completely stop osmosis. The *tonicity* of a solution refers to the effect the solution has on cell volume and depends on the solu-

tion's relative concentration of nonpenetrating solutes compared to the concentration of nonpenetrating solutes in the cell it surrounds. (Review Figure 3-13.)

### Assisted Membrane Transport (pp. 55–62)

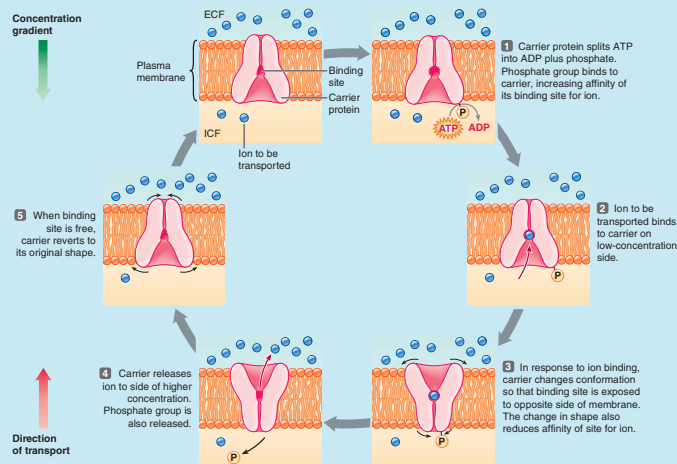
■ In carrier-mediated transport, small polar molecules and selected ions are transported across the membrane by specific membrane carrier proteins. Carriers open to one side of the membrane, where a passenger binds to a binding site specific for it, and then change shape so that the binding site is exposed to the opposite side of the membrane, where the passenger is released. Carrier-mediated transport may be passive, and move the particle down its concentration gradient (*facilitated diffusion*), or active, and move the particle against its concentration gradient (*active transport*). Carriers exhibit a transport maximum ( $T_m$ ) when saturated. (Review Figures 3-14 through 3-16.)

■ There are two forms of active transport: primary active transport and secondary active transport. *Primary active transport* requires the direct use of ATP to drive the pump. (Review Figure 3-16.) One of the most important examples of primary active transport is the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump, which concentrates  $\text{Na}^+$  in the ECF and  $\text{K}^+$  in the ICF. It pumps three  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cell for every two  $\text{K}^+$  it pumps in. *Secondary active transport* is driven by a  $\text{Na}^+$  concentration gradient established by a primary active-transport system. There are two types of secondary active transport: symport (or cotransport) and antiport (or countertransport or exchange). In *symport*, both the cotransported solute and the driving ion ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) are moved in the same direction (both moving into the cell), with the cotransported solute moving uphill and the driving ion moving downhill. (Review Figure 3-17.) In *antiport*, the coupled solute and the driving ion are moved in opposite directions (the solute moving out of and  $\text{Na}^+$  moving into the cell), with the solute moving uphill and the driving ion moving downhill.

■ Large polar molecules and multimolecular particles can leave or enter the cell by being wrapped in a piece of membrane to form vesicles that can be internalized (endocytosis) or externalized (exocytosis). (Review Figures 2-5 and 2-7.)

■ Cells are differentially selective in what enters or leaves because they possess varying numbers and kinds of channels, carriers, and mechanisms for vesicular transport.

■ Large polar molecules (too large for channels and not lipid soluble) for which there are no special transport mechanisms are unable to cross the membrane.

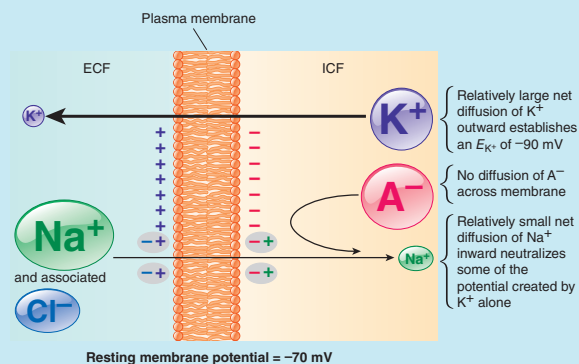


### Membrane Potential (pp. 62–67)

■ All cells have a membrane potential, which is a separation of opposite charges across the plasma membrane. (Review Figure 3-18.)

■ The  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump makes a small direct contribution to membrane potential because it transports more  $\text{Na}^+$  out than  $\text{K}^+$  in. However, the primary role of the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump is to actively maintain a greater concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$  outside the cell and a greater concentration of  $\text{K}^+$  inside the cell. These concentration gradients tend to passively move  $\text{K}^+$  out of the cell and  $\text{Na}^+$  into the cell. (Review Table 3-3 and Figures 3-19 and 3-20.)

■ Because the resting membrane is 25 to 30 times more permeable to  $\text{K}^+$  than to  $\text{Na}^+$ , substantially more  $\text{K}^+$  leaves the cell than  $\text{Na}^+$  enters, resulting in an excess of positive charges outside the cell. This leaves an unbalanced excess of negative charges, in the form of large protein anions ( $\text{A}^-$ ), trapped inside the cell. (Review Table 3-3 and Figure 3-21.)



■ When the resting membrane potential of  $-70 \text{ mV}$  is achieved, no further net movement of  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{Na}^+$  takes place, because any further leaking of these ions down their concentration gradients is quickly reversed by the  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump.

# Chapter 4

## Study Card

### Introduction to Neural Communication (pp. 71–72)

■ Nerve and muscle cells are excitable tissues because they can rapidly alter their membrane permeabilities and undergo transient membrane potential changes when excited. These rapid changes in potential serve as electrical signals.

■ Compared to resting potential, a membrane becomes depolarized when the magnitude of its negative potential is reduced (becomes less negative) and hyperpolarized when the magnitude of its negative potential is increased (becomes more negative). (Review Figure 4-1.)

■ Changes in potential are brought about by triggering events that alter membrane permeability, in turn leading to changes in ion movement across the membrane.

■ The two kinds of potential change are (1) graded potentials, the short-distance signals, and (2) action potentials, the long-distance signals. (Review Table 4-1, p. 81.)

### Graded Potentials (pp. 72–74)

■ A graded potential, usually a depolarization, occurs in a small, specialized region of an excitable cell membrane. The site undergoing a potential change is designated an active area. (Review Figure 4-2.)

■ The magnitude of a graded potential varies directly with the magnitude of the triggering event.

■ Graded potentials spread decrementally by local current flow between the active area and the adjacent inactive areas and die out over a short distance. (Review Figures 4-2 and 4-3.)

### Action Potentials (pp. 74–85)

■ During an action potential, depolarization of the membrane to threshold potential triggers sequential changes in permeability caused by conformational changes in voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  channels. (Review Figures 4-4 through 4-7.)

■ These permeability changes bring about a brief reversal of membrane potential, with  $\text{Na}^+$  influx causing the rising phase (from -70 to +30 mV) followed by  $\text{K}^+$  efflux causing the falling phase (from peak back to resting). (Review Figure 4-7.)

■ Before an action potential returns to resting, it regenerates an identical new action potential in the area next to it by means of current flow that brings the previously inactive area to threshold. This self-perpetuating cycle continues until the action potential spreads undiminished throughout the cell membrane.

■ There are two types of action potential propagation: (1) contiguous conduction in unmyelinated fibers, in which the action potential spreads along every portion of the membrane, and (2) the more rapid, saltatory conduction in myelinated fibers, in which the impulse jumps from one node of Ranvier to

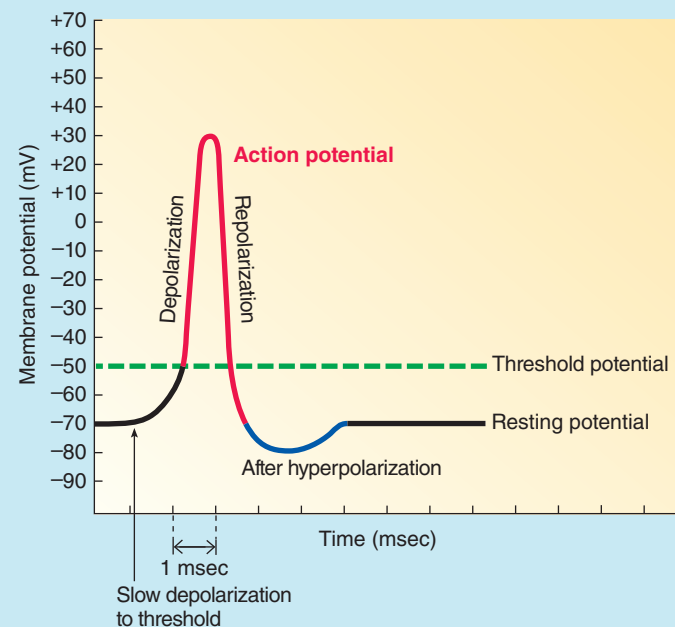
the next over sections of the fiber covered with insulating myelin. (Review Figures 4-9 and 4-12.)

■ The  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  pump gradually restores the ions that moved during propagation of the action potential to their original location, thus maintaining the concentration gradients.

■ It is impossible to restimulate the portion of the membrane where the impulse has just passed until it has recovered from its refractory period, ensuring the one-way propagation of action potentials. (Review Figures 4-10 and 4-11.)

■ Either action potentials occur maximally in response to stimulation, or they do not occur (all-or-none law).

■ Variable strengths of stimuli are coded by varying the frequency of action potentials, not their magnitude, in an activated nerve fiber.



### Synapses and Neuronal Integration (pp. 85–91)

■ One neuron directly interacts with another neuron primarily through a synapse. (Review Figures 4-13 and 4-14.)

■ Most neurons have four functional parts: (Review Figure 4-8.)

1. The dendrite and cell body region (the input zone) is the postsynaptic component that binds with and responds to neurotransmitters released from other neurons.

2. The axon hillock (the trigger zone) is where action potentials are initiated because it has an abundance of voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^+$  channels and thus reaches threshold first in response to an excitatory graded potential change.

3. The axon, or nerve fiber (the conducting zone), conducts action potentials in undiminished fashion from the axon hillock to the axon terminals.

4. The axon terminal (the output zone) serves as the presynaptic component, releasing a neurotransmitter that influences other postsynaptic cells in response to action potential propagation down the axon.

■ Released neurotransmitter combines with receptor-channels on the postsynaptic neuron. (Review Figure 4-14.) (1) If nonspecific cation channels that permit passage of both  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  are opened, the resultant ionic fluxes cause an EPSP, a small depolarization that brings the postsynaptic cell closer to threshold. (2) If either  $\text{K}^+$  or  $\text{Cl}^-$  channels are opened, the likelihood that the postsynaptic neuron will reach threshold is diminished when an inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP), a small hyperpolarization, is produced. (Review Figure 4-15.)

■ If the dominant activity is in its excitatory inputs, the postsynaptic cell is likely to be brought to threshold and have an action potential. This can be accomplished by (1) temporal summation (EPSPs from a single, repetitively firing, presynaptic input occurring so close together in time that they add together) or (2) spatial summation (adding of EPSPs occurring simultaneously from several presynaptic inputs). (Review Figure 4-16.) If inhibitory inputs dominate, the postsynaptic potential is brought farther than usual from threshold. If excitatory and inhibitory activity to the postsynaptic neuron is balanced, the membrane remains close to resting.

■ Despite the range of neurotransmitters, each synapse always releases the same neurotransmitter to produce a given response when combined with a particular receptor. (Review Table 4-2.)

■ Synaptic pathways between neurons are incredibly complex due to convergence of neuronal input and divergence of its output. Usually, many presynaptic inputs converge on a single neuron and jointly control its level of excitability. This same neuron diverges to synapse with and influence the excitability of many other cells. (Review Figure 4-17.)

### Intercellular Communication and Signal Transduction (pp. 91–94)

■ Intercellular communication is accomplished directly via (1) gap junctions or (2) transient direct linkup of cells' complementary surface markers. (Review Figure 4-18.)

■ More commonly, cells communicate indirectly with one another to carry out various coordinated activities by dispatching extracellular chemical messengers, which act on particular target cells to bring about the desired response. The four types of extracellular chemical messengers differ in their source and in the distance and means by which they get to their site of action: (1) paracrines (local chemical messengers), (2) neurotransmitters (short-range chemical messengers released by neurons), (3) hormones (long-range chemical messengers secreted into the blood by endocrine glands), and (4) neurohormones (long-range chemical messengers secreted into the blood by neurosecretory neurons). (Review Figure 4-18.)

■ Transfer of the signal carried by the extracellular messenger into the cell for execution is known as signal transduction.

■ An extracellular chemical messenger that cannot gain entry to the cell, such as a protein hormone (the first messenger), triggers the desired cellular response by binding to the target cell membrane and either (1) opening receptor-channels or (2) ac-

tivating an intracellular second-messenger pathway via G-protein-coupled receptors. (Review Figures 4-14 and 4-20.)

### Introduction to Hormonal Communication (pp. 94–100)

■ Hormones are secreted by endocrine glands into the blood, which transports them to specific target sites where they control a particular function by altering protein activity within the target cells.

■ Hormones are grouped into two categories based on their solubility differences: (1) hydrophilic (water-soluble) hormones, which include peptides (most hormones) and catecholamines (secreted by the adrenal medulla), and (2) lipophilic (lipid-soluble) hormones, which include steroid hormones (the sex hormones and those secreted by the adrenal cortex) and thyroid hormone. (Review Table 4-3.)

■ Hydrophilic peptide hormones are synthesized and packaged for export by the endoplasmic reticulum–Golgi complex, stored in secretory vesicles, and released by exocytosis on appropriate stimulation. They dissolve freely in the blood for transport to their target cells.

■ At their target cells, hydrophilic hormones bind with surface membrane receptors, triggering a chain of intracellular events by means of a second-messenger pathway that ultimately alters pre-existing cell proteins, usually enzymes, leading to the target cell's response to the hormone. (Review Figure 4-20.) Through this cascade of reactions, the initial signal is greatly amplified.

■ Steroids are synthesized by modifications of stored cholesterol through enzymes specific for each steroidogenic tissue. Steroids are not stored in the endocrine cells. Being lipophilic, they diffuse out through the lipid membrane barrier as soon as they are synthesized. Control of steroids is directed at their synthesis.

■ Lipophilic steroids and thyroid hormone are both transported in the blood largely bound to carrier plasma proteins, with only free, unbound hormone being biologically active.

■ Lipophilic hormones readily cross the lipid membrane barriers of their target cells and bind with receptors inside the cell. Once the hormone binds with the receptor, the hormone receptor complex binds with DNA and activates a gene, which leads to the synthesis of new enzymatic or structural intracellular proteins that carry out the hormone's effect on the target cell. (Review Figure 4-21.)

### Comparison of the Nervous and Endocrine Systems (pp. 100–102)

■ The nervous and endocrine systems are the two main regulatory systems of the body. (Review Table 4-4.) The nervous system is anatomically “wired” to its target organs, whereas the “wireless” endocrine system secretes blood-borne hormones that reach distant target organs.

■ Specificity of neural action depends on the anatomic proximity of the neurotransmitter-releasing neuronal terminal to its target organ. Specificity of endocrine action depends on specialization of target cell receptors for a specific circulating hormone.

■ In general, the nervous system coordinates rapid responses, whereas the endocrine system regulates activities that require duration rather than speed.

# Chapter 5

# Study Card

## Organization and Cells of the Nervous System (pp. 107–111)

■ The nervous system consists of the central nervous system (CNS), which includes the brain and spinal cord, and the peripheral nervous system (PNS), which includes the nerve fibers carrying information to (afferent division) and from (efferent division) the CNS. (Review Figure 5-1.)

■ Three functional classes of neurons—afferent neurons, efferent neurons, and interneurons—compose the excitable cells of the nervous system. (Review Figure 5-2.) (1) Afferent neurons inform the CNS about conditions in both the external and the internal environment. (2) Efferent neurons carry instructions from the CNS to effector organs, namely, muscles and glands. (3) Interneurons are responsible for integrating afferent information and formulating an efferent response, as well as for all higher mental functions associated with the “mind.”

■ Glial cells are nonexcitable cells in the CNS that physically, metabolically, and functionally support the neurons. The four types of glial cells are astrocytes (which serve as the main “glue” of the CNS and chemically communicate with and assist neurons), oligodendrocytes (which form myelin in the CNS), microglia (which are immune defense cells in the CNS), and ependymal cells (which line the internal cavities of the CNS, form cerebrospinal fluid, or CSF, and serve as neural stem cells). (Review Figures 5-3 and 5-4.)

## Protection and Nourishment of the Brain (pp. 111–112)

■ The brain is provided with several protective devices, which is important because neurons cannot divide to replace damaged cells. (1) The brain is wrapped in three layers of protective membranes—the meninges—and is further surrounded by a hard, bony covering. (2) CSF flows within and around the brain to cushion it against physical jarring. (3) The blood–brain barrier protects the brain against chemical injury by limiting access of blood-borne substances to the brain.

■ The brain depends on a constant blood supply for delivery of O<sub>2</sub> and glucose because it cannot generate ATP in the absence of either of these substances.

## Overview of the Central Nervous System (pp. 112–114)

■ The parts of the brain from the lowest, most primitive level to the highest, most sophisticated level are the brain stem, cerebellum, hypothalamus, thalamus, basal nuclei, and cerebral cortex. (Review Table 5-1 and Figure 5-6.)

## Cerebral Cortex (pp. 114–122)

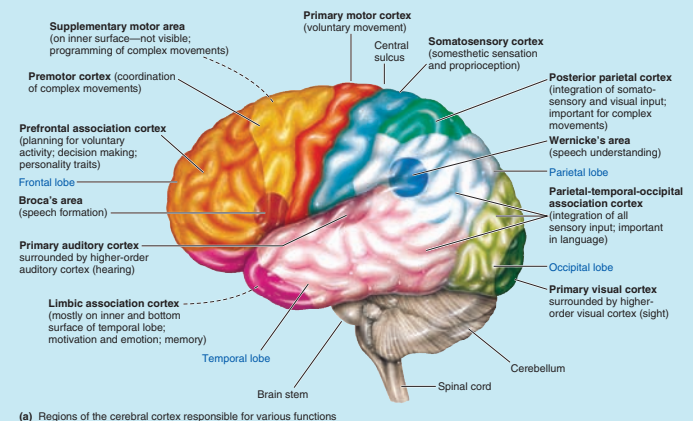
■ The cerebral cortex is the outer shell of gray matter that caps an underlying core of white matter. The cortex itself consists

primarily of neuronal cell bodies, dendrites, and glial cells. The white matter consists of bundles of nerve fibers that interconnect various areas. (Review Figure 5-12, p. 122.)

■ Ultimate responsibility for many discrete functions is localized in particular regions of the cortex as follows: (1) the occipital lobes house the visual cortex, (2) the auditory cortex is in the temporal lobes, (3) the parietal lobes are responsible for reception and perceptual processing of somatosensory (somesthetic and proprioceptive) input, and (4) voluntary motor movement is set into motion by the motor areas in the frontal lobes. (Review Figures 5-7 through 5-9.)

■ Language ability depends on the integrated activity of two primary language areas—Broca’s area and Wernicke’s area—typically located only in the left cerebral hemisphere. (Review Figures 5-8 and 5-10.)

■ The association areas are regions of the cortex not specifically assigned to processing sensory input or commanding motor output or language ability. These areas provide an integrative link between diverse sensory information and purposeful action; they also play a key role in higher brain functions such as memory and decision making. The association areas include the prefrontal association cortex, the parietal–temporal–occipital association cortex, and the limbic association cortex. (Review Figure 5-8.)



## Basal Nuclei, Thalamus, and Hypothalamus (pp. 122–124)

■ The subcortical brain structures include the basal nuclei, thalamus, and hypothalamus. (Review Figures 5-12 and 5-13 and Table 5-1, p. 114.)

■ The basal nuclei inhibit muscle tone; coordinate slow, sustained postural contractions; and suppress useless patterns of movement.

■ The thalamus is a relay station for preliminary processing of sensory input. It also accomplishes a crude awareness of sensation and some degree of consciousness.

■ The hypothalamus regulates body temperature, thirst, urine output, and food intake; extensively controls the autonomic nervous system and endocrine system; and is part of the limbic system.

### Emotion, Behavior, and Motivation (pp. 124–125)

■ The limbic system, which includes portions of the hypothalamus and other structures that encircle the brain stem, plays an important role in emotion, basic behavioral patterns, motivation, and learning. (Review Figure 5-14.)

■ *Emotion* refers to subjective feelings and moods and the physical responses associated with these feelings.

■ Basic behavioral patterns triggered by the limbic system are aimed at survival (such as attack) and perpetuation of the species (such as mating behavior). Higher cortical centers can reinforce, modify, or suppress these basic behaviors.

■ *Motivation* is the ability to direct behavior toward specific goals.

### Learning and Memory (pp. 126–128)

■ *Learning* refers to acquiring knowledge or skills as a result of experience, instruction, or both. *Memory* is storage of acquired knowledge for later recall and use.

■ There are two types of memory: (1) a short-term memory with limited capacity and brief retention, coded by modification of activity at preexisting synapses, and (2) a long-term memory with large storage capacity and enduring retention, involving relatively permanent structural or functional changes, such as the formation of new synapses between existing neurons. Enhanced protein synthesis underlies these long-term changes. (Review Table 5-2.)

■ The hippocampus plays a key role in consolidation, the transfer of short-term memory to long-term memory.

■ The hippocampus and associated structures are especially important in declarative, or “what,” memories of specific objects, facts, and events. The cerebellum and associated structures are especially important in procedural, or “how to,” memories of motor skills gained through repetitive training.

■ The prefrontal association cortex is the site of working memory, which temporarily holds currently relevant data—both new information and knowledge retrieved from memory stores—and manipulates and relates them to accomplish the higher-reasoning processes of the brain.

### Cerebellum (pp. 128–129)

■ The cerebellum, attached at the back of the brain stem beneath the cortex, consists of three functionally distinct parts. (Review Figure 5-15.)

■ The *vestibulocerebellum* helps maintain balance and controls eye movements. The *spinocerebellum* enhances muscle tone and helps coordinate voluntary movement, especially fast, phasic motor activities. The *cerebrocerebellum* plays a role in initiating voluntary movement and in storing procedural memories.

### Brain Stem (pp. 130–132)

■ The brain stem is an important link between the spinal cord and the higher brain levels.

■ The brain stem is the origin of the cranial nerves. It also contains centers that control cardiovascular, respiratory, and digestive function; regulates postural muscle reflexes; controls the overall degree of cortical alertness via the reticular activating system; and plays a key role in the sleep–wake cycle. (Review Figure 5-16.)

■ *Consciousness* is the subjective awareness of the external world and self. The states of consciousness, in decreasing order of arousal level, are (1) maximum alertness, (2) wakefulness, (3) several types of sleep, and (4) coma.

■ Sleep is an active process, not just the absence of wakefulness. While sleeping, a person cyclically alternates between slow-wave sleep and paradoxical (REM) sleep. (Review Table 5-3.) Slow-wave sleep is characterized by slow waves on the EEG and little change in behavior pattern from the waking state except for not being consciously aware of the external world. Paradoxical, or REM, sleep is characterized by an EEG pattern similar to that of an alert, awake individual; rapid eye movements, dreaming, and abrupt changes in behavior pattern occur. (Review Figure 5-17.)

■ The leading theories of why we need sleep are for (1) restoration and recovery and (2) memory consolidation.

### Spinal Cord (pp. 132–136)

■ Extending from the brain stem, the spinal cord descends through a canal formed by surrounding protective vertebrae. (Review Figures 5-18 and 5-19.)

■ The spinal cord has two functions. (1) It is the neuronal link between the brain and the PNS. All communication up and down the spinal cord is located in ascending and descending tracts in the cord's outer white matter. (2) It is the integrating center for spinal reflexes, including some basic protective and postural reflexes and those involved with the emptying of the pelvic organs. (Review Figures 5-20 and 5-21.)

■ The basic reflex arc includes a receptor, an afferent pathway, an integrating center, an efferent pathway, and an effector. (Review Figure 5-21.)

■ The centrally located gray matter of the spinal cord contains the interneurons interposed between the afferent input (which comes in through the dorsal root) and the efferent output (which leaves through the ventral root), as well as the cell bodies of efferent neurons. (Review Figure 5-20.)

■ A *nerve* is a bundle of peripheral neuronal axons, both afferent and efferent, wrapped in connective tissue and following the same pathway. Spinal nerves supply specific body regions and are attached to the spinal cord in paired fashion throughout its length. (Review Figures 5-18, 5-19 and 5-20.)

■ The 31 pairs of spinal nerves and the 12 pairs of cranial nerves that arise from the brain stem constitute the PNS. (Review Figure 5-19.)

# Chapter 6

## Study Card

### Receptor Physiology (pp. 141–145)

- The afferent division of the PNS carries information about the internal and external environment to the CNS.
- Sensory receptors are specialized peripheral endings of afferent neurons. (Review Figure 6-1.) Each type of receptor (photoreceptor, mechanoreceptor, thermoreceptor, osmoreceptor, chemoreceptor, or nociceptor) responds to its adequate stimulus (a change in the energy form, or modality, to which it is responsive), translating the energy form of the stimulus into electrical signals.
- A stimulus typically brings about a graded, depolarizing receptor potential by opening nonspecific cation channels, which leads to net  $\text{Na}^+$  entry. Receptor potentials, if of sufficient magnitude, ultimately generate action potentials in the afferent fiber next to the receptor. These action potentials self-propagate along the afferent fiber to the CNS. (Review Figure 6-1.) The strength of the stimulus determines the magnitude of the receptor potential, which in turn determines the frequency of action potentials generated. (Review Figure 6-2 and Table 6-1.)
- The magnitude of the receptor potential is also influenced by the extent of receptor adaptation, which is a reduction in receptor potential despite sustained stimulation. (1) Tonic receptors adapt slowly or do not adapt and thus provide continuous information about the stimuli they monitor. (2) Phasic receptors adapt rapidly and often exhibit off responses, thereby providing information about changes in the energy form they monitor. (Review Figure 6-3.)
- Visceral afferent information remains mostly subconscious. Sensory afferent information reaches the level of conscious awareness, including (1) somatic sensation (somesthetic sensation and proprioception) and (2) special senses.
- Discrete labeled-line pathways lead from the receptors to the CNS so that information about the type and location of stimuli can be deciphered by the CNS. (Review Table 6-1.)
- The term *receptive field* refers to the area surrounding a receptor within which the receptor can detect stimuli. The acuity, or discriminative ability, of a body region varies inversely with the size of its receptive fields. (Review Figure 6-4.)
- Perception is the conscious interpretation of the external world that the brain creates from sensory input. What the brain perceives from its input is an abstraction and not reality. The only stimuli that can be detected are those for which receptors are present. Also, as sensory signals ascend through progressively more complex processing, some of the information may be suppressed, whereas other parts of it may be enhanced.

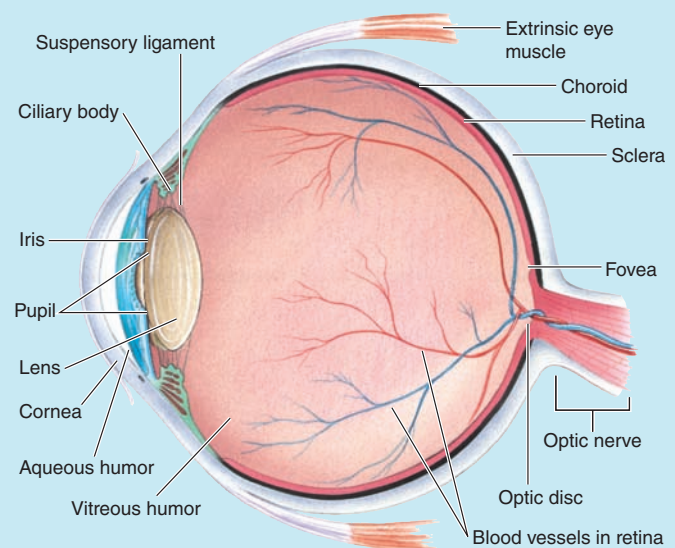
### Pain (pp. 145–146)

- Painful experiences are elicited by nociceptors responding to noxious mechanical, thermal, or chemical stimuli and consist of two components: the perception of pain coupled with emotional and behavioral responses to it.

- Pain signals are transmitted over two afferent pathways: a fast pathway that carries sharp, prickling pain signals and a slow pathway that carries dull, aching, persistent pain signals.
- Afferent pain fibers terminate in the spinal cord on ascending pathways that transmit the signal to the brain for processing. Descending pathways from the brain sometimes use endogenous opiates to suppress the release of substance P, a pain-signaling neurotransmitter from the afferent pain-fiber terminal. Thus, these descending pathways can block further transmission of the pain signal and serve as a built-in analgesic system.

### Eye: Vision (pp. 146–161)

- Light is a form of electromagnetic radiation, with visible light being only a small band in the total electromagnetic spectrum. (Review Figures 6-7 and 6-20, p. 157.)
- The eye houses the light-sensitive photoreceptors essential for vision—the rods and cones found in its retinal layer. (Review Figures 6-5, 6-15, and 6-18 and Table 6-3, p. 160.)
- The iris controls the size of the pupil to adjust the amount of light permitted to enter the eye.
- The cornea and lens are the primary refractive structures that bend incoming light rays to focus the image on the retina. The cornea contributes most to the total refractive ability of the eye. The strength of the lens can be adjusted through action of the ciliary muscle to accommodate for differences in near and far vision. (Review Figures 6-8 through 6-14.)



(b) Internal sagittal view

- Rods and cones have three parts: a photopigment-containing outer segment, a metabolically specialized inner segment, and a neurotransmitter-secreting synaptic terminal. (Review Figures 6-15, 6-18, and 6-19.)



■ Rods and cones secrete neurotransmitter in the dark. They are activated when their photopigments differentially absorb various wavelengths of light. Photopigments consist of opsin, a membrane protein, and retinal, a vitamin A derivative. The photopigment in rods is rhodopsin. During phototransduction, light absorption by retinal causes a biochemical change in the photopigment that, through a series of steps, brings about a hyperpolarizing receptor potential in the outer segment that leads to decreased neurotransmitter release from the synaptic terminal. Further retinal processing by bipolar and ganglion cells eventually converts this light-induced signal into a change in the rate of action potential propagation in the visual pathway leaving the retina. (Review Figures 6-18 and 6-19.)

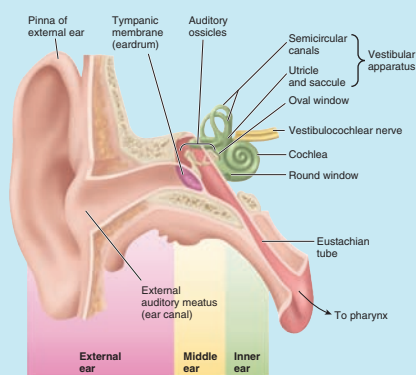
■ Cones display high acuity but can be used only for day vision because of their low sensitivity to light. Different ratios of stimulation of three cone types by variable wavelengths of light lead to color vision. (Review Figure 6-20 and Table 6-2.)

■ Rods provide only indistinct vision in shades of gray, but because they are very sensitive to light, they can be used for night vision. (Review Table 6-2.)

■ The visual message is transmitted via a complex crossed and uncrossed pathway to the visual cortex in the occipital lobe of the brain for perceptual processing. (Review Figure 6-22.)

### Ear: Hearing and Equilibrium (pp. 161–171)

■ The ear performs two unrelated functions: (1) hearing, which involves the external ear, middle ear, and cochlea of the inner ear, and (2) sense of equilibrium, which involves the vestibular apparatus of the inner ear. The ear receptor cells located in the inner ear—the hair cells in the cochlea and vestibular apparatus—are mechanoreceptors. (Review Table 6-5, p. 172, and Figure 6-23.)



■ Hearing depends on the ear's ability to convert airborne sound waves into mechanical deformations of auditory hair cells, thereby initiating neural signals. Sound waves consist of high-pressure regions of compression alternating with low-pressure regions of rarefaction of air molecules. The pitch (tone) of a sound is determined by the frequency of its waves, the loudness (intensity) by the amplitude of the waves, and the timbre (quality) by its characteristic overtones. (Review Figures 6-24 and 6-25 and Table 6-4.)

■ Sound waves are funneled through the ear canal to the tympanic membrane, which vibrates in sync with the waves. Middle ear bones bridging the gap between the tympanic membrane and the inner ear amplify the tympanic movements and transmit them to the oval window, whose movement sets up traveling waves in the cochlear fluid. (Review Figures 6-26 and 6-27.)

■ These waves, which are at the same frequency as the original sound waves, set the basilar membrane in motion. Various regions of this membrane selectively vibrate more vigorously in response to different frequencies of sound. The narrow, stiff end of the basilar membrane near the oval window vibrates best with high-frequency pitches, and the wide, flexible end near the helicotrema vibrates best with low-frequency pitches. (Review Figure 6-27.)

■ On top of the basilar membrane are the receptive hair cells of the organ of Corti, whose hairs are bent as the basilar membrane is deflected up and down in relation to the overhanging stationary tectorial membrane, which the hairs contact. (Review Figures 6-26 and 6-28.)

■ Pitch discrimination depends on which region of the basilar membrane naturally vibrates maximally with a given frequency. Loudness discrimination depends on the amplitude of the vibrations. Hair bending in the region of maximal basilar membrane vibration is transduced into neural signals that are transmitted to the auditory cortex in the temporal lobe of the brain for sound perception. (Review Figure 6-29.)

■ The vestibular apparatus in the inner ear consists of (1) the semicircular canals, which detect rotational acceleration or deceleration in any direction, and (2) the utricle and the saccule, which collectively detect changes in the rate of linear movement in any direction and provide information important for determining head position in relation to gravity. Neural signals are generated in response to the mechanical deformation of vestibular hair cells by specific movement of fluid and related structures within these vestibular sense organs. (Review Figures 6-31 and 6-32.)

### Chemical Senses: Taste and Smell (pp. 171–175)

■ Taste and smell are chemical senses. In both cases, attachment of specific dissolved molecules to binding sites on the receptor membrane causes receptor potentials that, in turn, set up neural impulses signaling the presence of the chemical.

■ Taste receptors are housed in taste buds on the tongue; olfactory receptors are located in the olfactory mucosa in the upper part of the nasal cavity. (Review Figures 6-33 and 6-34.)

■ Both sensory pathways include two routes: one to the limbic system for emotional and behavioral processing and one to the cortex for conscious perception and fine discrimination.

■ Taste and olfactory receptors are continuously renewed, unlike visual and hearing receptors, which are irreplaceable.

■ The five primary tastes are salty, sour, sweet, bitter, and umami (a meaty, “amino acid” taste). Taste discrimination beyond the primary tastes depends on the patterns of stimulation of the taste buds, each of which responds in varying degrees to the different primary tastes.

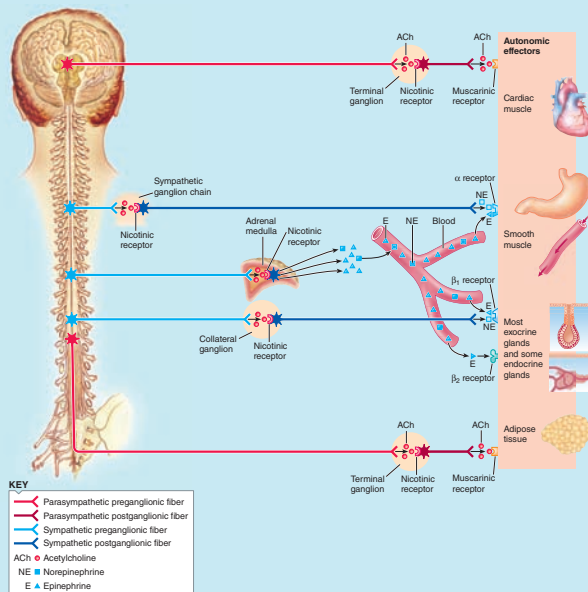
■ There are 1000 types of olfactory receptors, each of which responds to only one discrete component of an odor, an odorant. The afferent signals arising from the olfactory receptors are sorted according to scent component by the glomeruli within the olfactory bulb. Odor discrimination depends on the patterns of activation of the glomeruli. (Review Figure 6-35.)

# Chapter 7

# Study Card

## Autonomic Nervous System (pp. 179–185)

- The CNS controls muscles and glands by transmitting signals to these effector organs through the efferent division of the PNS.
- There are two types of efferent output: the autonomic nervous system, which is under involuntary control and supplies cardiac and smooth muscle—as well as most exocrine and some endocrine glands—and the somatic nervous system, which is subject to voluntary control and supplies skeletal muscle. (Review Tables 7-4, p. 187, and 7-5, p. 188.)
- The autonomic nervous system consists of two subdivisions—the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems. (Review Figures 7-2 and 7-3 and Tables 7-1 and 7-3.)
- An autonomic nerve pathway consists of a two-neuron chain. The preganglionic fiber originates in the CNS and synapses with the cell body of the postganglionic fiber in a ganglion outside the CNS. The postganglionic fiber ends on the effector organ. (Review Figures 7-1 through 7-3 and Table 7-3.)



- All preganglionic fibers and parasympathetic postganglionic fibers release acetylcholine (ACh). Sympathetic postganglionic fibers release norepinephrine. (Review Figure 7-2 and Table 7-3.)
- Postganglionic fibers have numerous swellings, or varicosities, that simultaneously release neurotransmitter over a large area of the innervated organ. (Review Figures 7-1 and 8-26, p. 224.)

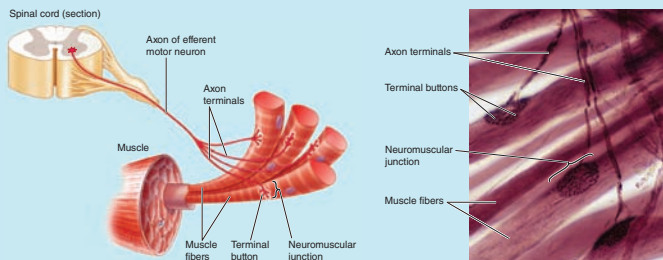
- The adrenal medulla, an endocrine gland, is a modified sympathetic ganglion that secretes the hormones epinephrine and to a lesser extent norepinephrine into the blood in response to stimulation by the sympathetic preganglionic fiber that innervates it. (Review Figure 7-2.)
- The same neurotransmitter elicits different responses in different tissues. Thus, the response depends on specialization of the tissue cells, not on the properties of the messenger. (Review Table 7-2.)
- Tissues innervated by the autonomic nervous system possess one or more of several receptor types for the postganglionic chemical messengers (and for the related adrenomedullary hormone epinephrine). Cholinergic receptors include nicotinic and muscarinic receptors; adrenergic receptors include  $\alpha_1$ ,  $\alpha_2$ ,  $\beta_1$ , and  $\beta_2$  receptors. (Review Figure 7-2 and Tables 7-2 and 7-3.)
- A given autonomic fiber either excites or inhibits activity in the organ it innervates. (Review Tables 7-1 and 7-2.)
- Most visceral organs are innervated by both sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers, which in general produce opposite effects in a particular organ. Dual innervation of organs by both branches of the autonomic nervous system permits precise control over an organ's activity. (Review Figure 7-3 and Table 7-1.)
- The sympathetic system dominates in emergency or stressful (“fight-or-flight”) situations and promotes responses that prepare the body for strenuous physical activity. The parasympathetic system dominates in quiet, relaxed (“rest-and-digest”) situations and promotes body-maintenance activities such as digestion. (Review Tables 7-1 and 7-3.)
- Visceral afferent input is used by the CNS to direct appropriate autonomic output to maintain homeostasis. Autonomic activities are controlled by multiple areas of the CNS, including the spinal cord, medulla, hypothalamus, and prefrontal association cortex.

▲ Table 7-2 Properties of Autonomic Receptor Types

Receptor Type	Neurotransmitter Affinity	Effector(s) with This Receptor Type	Effect on Effector
<b>Nicotinic</b>	ACh from autonomic preganglionic fibers	All autonomic postganglionic cell bodies and the adrenal medulla	Excitatory
	ACh from motor neurons	Motor end plates of skeletal muscle fibers	Excitatory
<b>Muscarinic</b>	ACh from parasympathetic postganglionic fibers	Cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and most exocrine and some endocrine glands	Excitatory or inhibitory, depending on the effector
$\alpha_1$	Greater affinity for norepinephrine (from sympathetic postganglionic fibers) than for epinephrine (from the adrenal medulla)	Most sympathetic target tissues	Excitatory
$\alpha_2$	Greater affinity for norepinephrine than for epinephrine	Digestive organs	Inhibitory
$\beta_1$	Equal affinity for norepinephrine and for epinephrine	Heart	Excitatory
$\beta_2$	Affinity for epinephrine only	Smooth muscles of arterioles and bronchioles	Inhibitory

## Somatic Nervous System (pp. 185–186)

- The somatic nervous system consists of the axons of motor neurons, which originate in the spinal cord or brain stem and end on skeletal muscle. (Review Figure 7-4 and Table 7-4.)
- ACh, the neurotransmitter released from a motor neuron, stimulates muscle contraction.
- Motor neurons are the common pathway by which various regions of the CNS exert control over skeletal muscle activity. The areas of the CNS that influence skeletal muscle activity by acting through the motor neurons are the spinal cord, motor regions of the cortex, basal nuclei, cerebellum, and brain stem.

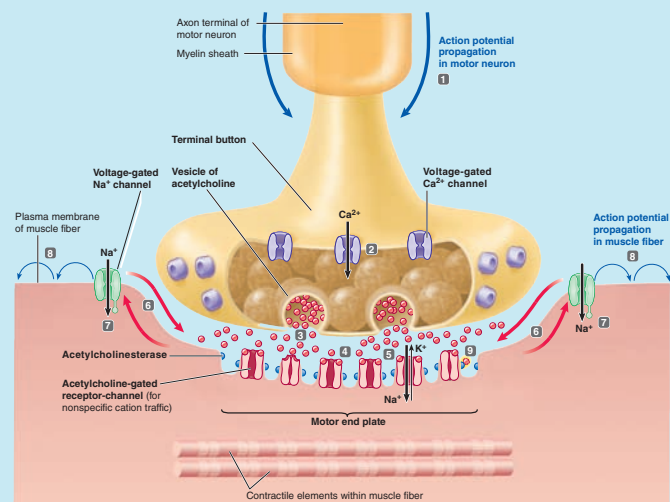


▲ Table 7-4 Comparison of the Autonomic Nervous System and the Somatic Nervous System

Feature	Autonomic Nervous System	Somatic Nervous System
Site of Origin	Brain or spinal cord	Spinal cord for most; those supplying muscles in the head originate in the brain
Number of Neurons from Origin in CNS to Effector Organ	Two-neuron chain (preganglionic and postganglionic)	Single neuron (motor neuron)
Organs Innervated	Cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and glands	Skeletal muscle
Type of Innervation	Most effector organs dually innervated by the two antagonistic branches of this system (sympathetic and parasympathetic)	Effector organs innervated only by motor neurons
Neurotransmitter at Effector Organs	May be ACh (parasympathetic terminals) or norepinephrine (sympathetic terminals)	Only ACh
Effects on Effector Organs	Stimulation or inhibition (antagonistic actions of two branches)	Stimulation only (inhibition is possible only centrally through inhibitory postsynaptic potentials on dendrites and the cell body of the motor neuron)
Type of Control	Involuntary control	Voluntary control, although much activity is subconsciously coordinated
Higher Centers Involved in Control	Spinal cord, medulla, hypothalamus, and prefrontal association cortex	Spinal cord, motor cortex, basal nuclei, cerebellum, and brain stem

## Neuromuscular Junction (pp. 186–191)

- When a motor neuron reaches a muscle, it branches into axon terminals. Each axon terminal forms a neuromuscular junction with a single muscle cell (fiber). The axon terminal splits into multiple fine branches, each of which ends in an enlarged terminal button. (Review Figure 7-4 and Table 7-6.)
- The specialized region of the muscle cell membrane underlying the axon terminal complex is called the motor end plate. Because these structures do not make direct contact, signals are passed between a terminal button and a muscle fiber by chemical means. (Review Figure 7-5.)
- An action potential in the axon terminal causes the release of ACh from its storage vesicles in the terminal button. The released ACh diffuses across the space separating the nerve and muscle cells and binds to special receptor-channels on the underlying motor end plate. This binding triggers the opening of these nonspecific cation channels. The subsequent ion movements depolarize the motor end plate, producing the end-plate potential (EPP). (Review Figure 7-5.)
- Local current flow between the depolarized end plate and the adjacent muscle cell membrane brings these adjacent areas to threshold, initiating an action potential that is propagated throughout the muscle fiber. This muscle action potential triggers muscle contraction. (Review Figure 7-5.)
- Membrane-bound acetylcholinesterase (AChE) in the motor end plate inactivates ACh, ending the EPP and, subsequently, the action potential and resultant contraction. (Review Figure 7-5.)



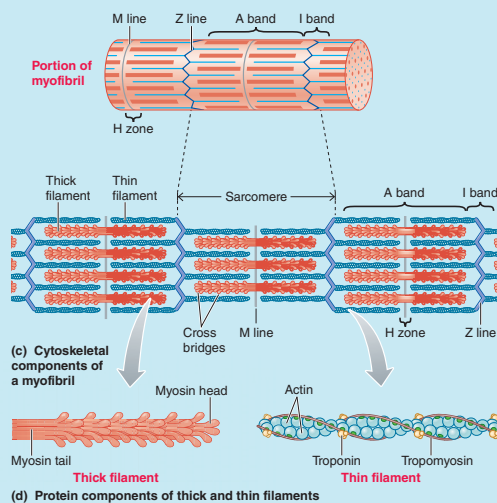
- 1 An action potential in a motor neuron is propagated to the axon terminal (terminal button).
- 2 This local action potential triggers the opening of voltage-gated  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  channels and the subsequent entry of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  into the terminal button.
- 3  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  triggers the release of acetylcholine (ACh) by exocytosis from a portion of the vesicles.
- 4 ACh diffuses across the space separating the nerve and muscle cells and binds with receptor-channels specific for it on the motor end plate of the muscle cell membrane.
- 5 This binding brings about the opening of these nonspecific cation channels, leading to a relatively large movement of  $\text{Na}^{+}$  into the muscle cell compared to a smaller movement of  $\text{K}^{+}$  outward.
- 6 The result is an end-plate potential. Local current flow occurs between the depolarized end plate and the adjacent membrane.
- 7 This local current flow opens voltage-gated  $\text{Na}^{+}$  channels in the adjacent membrane.
- 8 The resultant  $\text{Na}^{+}$  entry reduces the potential to threshold, initiating an action potential, which is propagated throughout the muscle fiber.
- 9 ACh is subsequently destroyed by acetylcholinesterase, an enzyme located on the motor end-plate membrane, terminating the muscle cell's response.

# Chapter 8

# Study Card

## Structure of Skeletal Muscle (pp. 195–198)

- Muscles, contraction specialists, can develop tension, shorten, produce movement, and accomplish work.
- The three types of muscle are categorized in two ways according to common characteristics: (1) Skeletal muscle and cardiac muscle are striated, whereas smooth muscle is unstriated. (2) Skeletal muscle is voluntary, whereas cardiac muscle and smooth muscle are involuntary. (Review Figure 8-1 and Table 8-3, pp. 218–219.)
- Skeletal muscles are made up of bundles of long, cylindrical muscle cells called muscle fibers, wrapped in connective tissue.
- Muscle fibers are packed with myofibrils, each myofibril consisting of alternating, slightly overlapping stacked sets of thick and thin filaments. This arrangement leads to a skeletal muscle fiber's striated microscopic appearance, which consists of alternating dark A bands and light I bands. A sarcomere, the area between two Z lines, is the functional unit of skeletal muscle. (Review Figures 8-2 and 8-3.)
- Thick filaments consist of the protein myosin. Cross bridges made up of the myosin molecules' globular heads project from each thick filament toward the surrounding thin filaments. (Review Figures 8-2 and 8-4.)
- Thin filaments consist primarily of the protein actin, which can bind and interact with the myosin cross bridges to bring about contraction. In the resting state, two other proteins, tropomyosin and troponin, lie across the surface of the thin filament to prevent this cross-bridge interaction. (Review Figures 8-2 and 8-5.)



## Molecular Basis of Skeletal Muscle Contraction (pp. 198–204)

- Excitation of a skeletal muscle fiber by its motor neuron brings about contraction through a series of events that results in the thin filaments sliding closer together between the thick filaments. (Review Figure 8-7.)

- This sliding filament mechanism of muscle contraction is switched on by  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release from the lateral sacs of the sarcoplasmic reticulum in response to the spread of a muscle fiber action potential into the central portions of the fiber via the T tubules. (Review Figures 8-9 and 8-10.)
- Released  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  binds to troponin, slightly repositioning tropomyosin to uncover actin's cross-bridge binding sites. (Review Figures 8-6 and 8-10.)
- Binding of actin to a myosin cross bridge triggers cross-bridge stroking, powered by energy stored in the myosin head from prior splitting of ATP by myosin ATPase. During a power stroke, the cross bridge bends toward the thick filament's center, "rowing" in the thin filament to which it is attached. (Review Figures 8-8, 8-10, and 8-11.)
- When a fresh ATP attaches to the cross bridge, myosin and actin detach, the cross bridge returns to its original shape, and the cycle is repeated. Repeated cycles of cross-bridge activity slide the thin filaments inward step by step. (Review Figures 8-8 and 8-11.)
- When the action potential ends, the lateral sacs actively take up the  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , troponin and tropomyosin slip back into their blocking position, and relaxation occurs. (Review Figure 8-10.)
- The entire contractile response lasts about 100 times longer than the action potential. (Review Figure 8-12.)

## Skeletal Muscle Mechanics (pp. 204–210)

- Tension is generated within a muscle by the contractile component (sarcomere shortening brought about by cross-bridge cycling). To move the bone to which the muscle's insertion is attached, this internal tension is transmitted to the bone as the contractile component stretches and tightens the muscle's series-elastic component (intracellular titin, connective tissue, and tendon). (Review Figure 8-13.)
- The two primary types of muscle contraction—*isometric* (constant length) and *isotonic* (constant tension)—depend on the relationship between muscle tension and the load (the weight of an object being lifted). (1) If tension is less than the load, the muscle cannot shorten and lift the object but remains at constant length (an *isometric* contraction). (2) If the tension exceeds the load, the muscle can shorten and lift the object, maintaining constant tension while shortening (*isotonic* contraction).
- The velocity, or speed, of shortening is inversely proportional to the load.
- Gradation of whole-muscle contraction can be accomplished by (1) varying the number of muscle fibers contracting within the muscle and (2) varying the tension developed by each contracting fiber. (Review Table 8-2, p. 214.)
- The number of fibers contracting depends on (1) the size of the muscle (the number of muscle fibers present), (2) the extent of motor unit recruitment (how many motor neurons supplying the muscle are active), and (3) the size of each motor unit (how many muscle fibers are activated simultaneously by a single mo-

tor neuron). A motor unit is a motor neuron plus all of the muscle fibers it innervates. (Review Figure 8-15 and Table 8-2.)

■ Two variable factors that affect fiber tension are (1) frequency of stimulation, which determines the extent of twitch summation, and (2) length of the fiber before the onset of contraction (length–tension relationship). (Review Table 8-2.)

■ Twitch summation is the increase in tension accompanying repetitive stimulation of a muscle fiber. After undergoing an action potential, the muscle cell membrane recovers from its refractory period and can be restimulated while some contractile activity triggered by the first action potential remains so that the twitches induced by the two rapidly successive action potentials sum. If the muscle fiber is stimulated so rapidly that it does not have a chance to start relaxing between stimuli, a smooth, sustained maximal contraction known as tetanus occurs. (Review Figure 8-16.)

■ The tension also depends on the length of the fiber at the onset of contraction. Maximal opportunity for cross-bridge interaction occurs at optimal length ( $l_o$ ) (the resting muscle length) because of optimal overlap of thick and thin filaments, so the greatest tension can develop. Less tension can develop at shorter or longer lengths. (Review Figure 8-17.)

### Skeletal Muscle Metabolism and Fiber Types (pp. 210–214)

■ Three pathways furnish the ATP needed for muscle contraction and relaxation: (1) the transfer of high-energy phosphates from stored creatine phosphate to ADP, providing the first source of ATP at the onset of exercise; (2) oxidative phosphorylation, which efficiently extracts large amounts of ATP from nutrients if enough  $O_2$  is available to support this system; and (3) glycolysis, which can synthesize ATP in the absence of  $O_2$  but uses large amounts of stored glycogen and produces lactate in the process.

■ The three types of skeletal muscle fibers are classified by the pathways they use for ATP synthesis (oxidative or glycolytic) and the rapidity with which they split ATP and subsequently contract (slow twitch or fast twitch): (1) slow-oxidative fibers, (2) fast-oxidative fibers, and (3) fast-glycolytic fibers. (Review Table 8-1.)

### Control of Motor Movement (pp. 214–217)

■ Control of motor movement depends on activity in the three types of presynaptic inputs that converge on the motor neurons supplying various muscles: (1) spinal reflex pathways, which originate with afferent neurons; (2) the corticospinal (pyramidal) motor system, which originates in the primary motor cortex and is concerned with discrete, intricate movements of the hands; and (3) the multineuronal (extrapyramidal) motor system, which originates in the brain stem and is involved with postural adjustments and involuntary movements of the trunk and limbs. The final motor output from the brain stem is influenced by the cerebellum, basal nuclei, and cerebral cortex.

■ Establishment and adjustment of motor commands depend on continuous afferent input, especially feedback about changes in muscle length (monitored by muscle spindles) and muscle tension (monitored by Golgi tendon organs). (Review Figure 8-18.)

■ When a whole muscle is stretched, the stretch of its muscle spindles triggers the stretch reflex, which results in reflex con-

traction of that muscle. This reflex resists any passive changes in muscle length. (Review Figures 8-19 and 8-20.)

### Smooth and Cardiac Muscle (pp. 217–225)

■ Smooth muscle cells are spindle shaped and smaller than skeletal muscle fibers. The thick and thin filaments of smooth muscle are oriented diagonally in a diamond-shaped lattice instead of running longitudinally, so the fibers are not striated. (Review Figures 8-21 and 8-22.)

■ In smooth muscle, cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$ , which enters from the ECF and is also released from sparse intracellular stores, activates cross-bridge cycling by initiating a series of biochemical reactions that result in phosphorylation of the light chains of the myosin cross bridges to enable them to bind with actin. (Review Figures 8-23 and 8-24.)

■ Multiunit smooth muscle is neurogenic, requiring stimulation of individual muscle fibers by its autonomic nerve supply to trigger contraction.

■ Single-unit smooth muscle is myogenic; it can initiate its own contraction without any external influence, as a result of spontaneous depolarization to threshold potential by a few specialized, self-excitatory noncontractile cells within a functional syncytium. The two major types of spontaneous potential changes displayed by self-excitatory cells are (1) pacemaker potentials (spontaneous drift to threshold potential, displayed in most single-unit smooth muscle) and (2) slow-wave potentials (spontaneous alternating depolarizing and hyperpolarizing swings in potential, occurring only in digestive tract smooth muscle). When threshold is reached and an action potential is initiated, this electrical activity spreads by means of gap junctions to the surrounding contractile cells within the functional syncytium, so the entire sheet of smooth muscle becomes excited and contracts as a unit. (Review Figure 8-25 and Table 8-4.)

■ The level of tension in single-unit smooth muscle depends on the level of cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$ . Some single-unit smooth muscle cells have sufficient cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  to maintain a low level of tension known as tone, even in the absence of action potentials.

■ The autonomic nervous system (Review Figure 8-26), as well as hormones and local metabolites, can modify the rate and strength of contractions by altering cytosolic  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration.

■ Smooth muscle does not have a clear-cut length–tension relationship. Unlike skeletal muscle, it can develop tension when considerably stretched.

■ Smooth muscle contractions are slow and energy efficient, enabling this type of muscle to economically sustain long-term contractions without fatigue. This economy, coupled with single-unit smooth muscle's ability to exist at various lengths with little change in tension, makes single-unit smooth muscle ideally suited for its task of forming the walls of hollow organs that can distend.

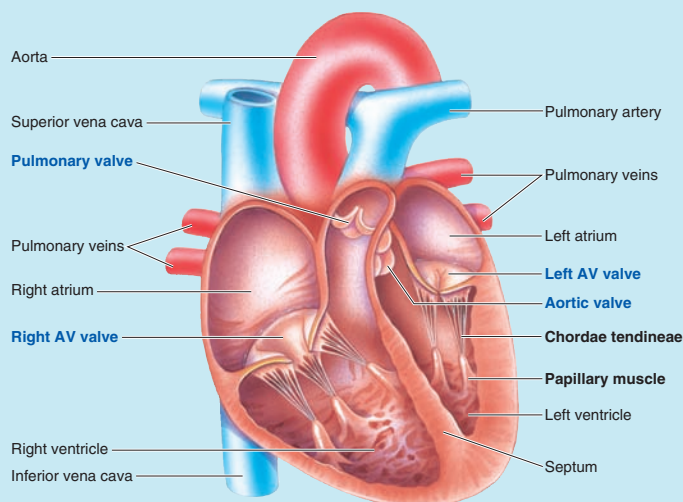
■ Cardiac muscle is found only in the heart. It has highly organized striated fibers, like skeletal muscle. Like single-unit smooth muscle, some specialized, self-excitatory cardiac muscle fibers can generate action potentials, which spread throughout the heart with the aid of gap junctions. (Review Table 8-3.)

# Chapter 9

## Study Card

### Anatomy of the Heart (pp. 229–234)

- The circulatory system is the transport system of the body.
- The three basic components of the circulatory system are the heart (the pump), the blood vessels (the passageways), and the blood (the transport medium).
- The heart is positioned midline in the thoracic cavity at an angle, with its wide base lying toward the right and its pointed apex toward the left.
- The heart is basically a dual pump that provides the driving pressure for blood flow through the pulmonary circulation (between the heart and the lungs) and systemic circulation (between the heart and the other body systems). (Review Figures 9-1 and 9-2.)
- The heart has four chambers: Each half of the heart consists of an atrium, or venous input chamber, and a ventricle, or arterial output chamber. The right atrium receives O<sub>2</sub>-poor blood from the systemic circulation and the right ventricle pumps it into the pulmonary circulation. The left atrium receives O<sub>2</sub>-rich blood from the pulmonary circulation and the left ventricle pumps it into the systemic circulation. (Review Figures 9-1, 9-2, and 9-4.)
- Four heart valves direct blood in the right direction and keep it from flowing in the other direction. The right and left atrioventricular (AV) valves direct blood from the atria to the ventricles during diastole and prevent backflow of blood from the ventricles to the atria during systole. The aortic and pulmonary semilunar valves direct blood from the ventricles to the aorta and pulmonary artery, respectively, during systole and prevent backflow of blood from these major vessels to the ventricles during diastole. (Review Figures 9-3 and 9-4.)
- The branching cardiac muscle fibers are interconnected by intercalated discs, which contain (1) desmosomes that hold the cells together mechanically and (2) gap junctions that permit spread of action potentials between cells joined together as a



(a) Location of the heart valves in a longitudinal section of the heart

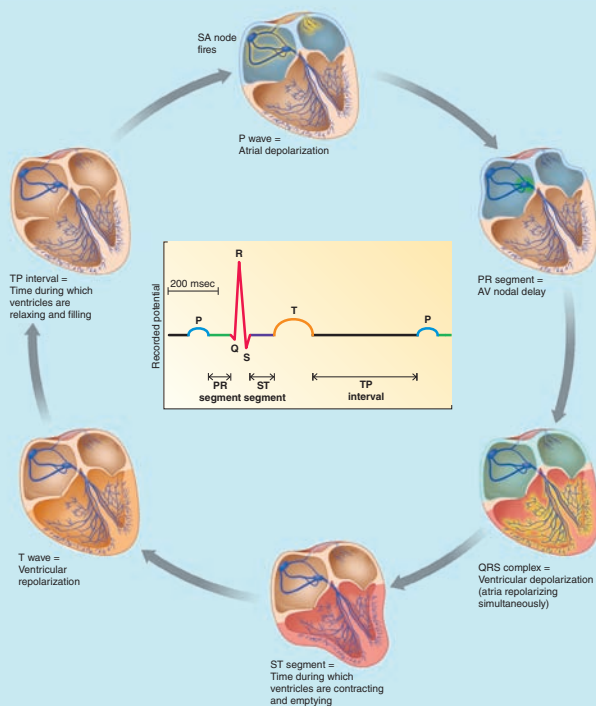
functional syncytium. Because the muscle fibers in each chamber of the heart act as a functional syncytium, each chamber contracts as a coordinated unit to ensure efficient pumping. (Review Figure 9-5.)

### Electrical Activity of the Heart (pp. 234–243)

- The heart is self-excitable, initiating its own rhythmic contractions. Autorhythmic cells are 1% of the cardiac muscle cells; they do not contract but are specialized to initiate and conduct action potentials. The other 99% of cardiac cells are contractile working cells that contract in response to the spread of an action potential initiated by autorhythmic cells.
- Autorhythmic cells display a pacemaker potential, a self-induced, slow depolarization to threshold potential, resulting largely from Na<sup>+</sup> entry on opening of unique funny channels in response to hyperpolarization at the end of the previous action potential. The rising phase of the action potential results from Ca<sup>2+</sup> entry on opening of Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels at threshold. The falling phase results from K<sup>+</sup> exit on opening of K<sup>+</sup> channels at the peak of the action potential. (Review Figure 9-6.)
- The cardiac impulse starts at the SA node, the heart's pacemaker, which has the fastest rate of spontaneous depolarization to threshold. (Review Table 9-1 and Figures 9-7 and 9-8.)
- Once initiated, the action potential spreads throughout the right and left atria, partially facilitated by specialized conduction pathways but mostly by cell-to-cell spread of the impulse through gap junctions. (Review Figure 9-7.)
- The impulse passes from the atria into the ventricles through the AV node, the only point of electrical contact between these chambers. The action potential is delayed briefly at the AV node, ensuring that atrial contraction precedes ventricular contraction to allow complete ventricular filling. (Review Figure 9-7.)
- The impulse then travels rapidly down the interventricular septum via the bundle of His and rapidly disperses throughout the myocardium by means of the Purkinje fibers. The rest of the ventricular cells are activated by cell-to-cell spread of the impulse through gap junctions. (Review Figure 9-7.)
- Thus, the atria contract as a single unit, followed after a brief delay by a synchronized ventricular contraction.
- The action potentials of cardiac contractile cells exhibit a prolonged positive phase, or plateau, accompanied by a prolonged period of contraction, which ensures adequate ejection time. This plateau is primarily the result of activation of slow Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels. (Review Figure 9-9.)
- Ca<sup>2+</sup> entry through the slow Ca<sup>2+</sup> channels in the T tubules triggers a much larger release of Ca<sup>2+</sup> from the sarcoplasmic reticulum within the cardiac contractile cell. This Ca<sup>2+</sup>-induced Ca<sup>2+</sup> release leads to cross-bridge cycling and contraction. (Review Figure 9-10.)
- Because a long refractory period occurs in conjunction with this prolonged plateau phase, summation and tetanus of cardiac

muscle are impossible, ensuring the alternate periods of contraction and relaxation essential for pumping of blood. (Review Figure 9-11.)

■ The spread of electrical activity throughout the heart can be recorded from the body surface. In this electrocardiogram (ECG), the P wave represents atrial depolarization; the QRS complex, ventricular depolarization; and the T wave, ventricular repolarization. (Review Figures 9-12 through 9-14.)



### Mechanical Events of the Cardiac Cycle (pp. 243–247)

■ The cardiac cycle consists of three important events (Review Figure 9-15):

1. The generation of electrical activity as the heart autorhythmically depolarizes and repolarizes (Review Figure 9-13.)
2. Mechanical activity consisting of alternate periods of systole (contraction and emptying) and diastole (relaxation and filling), which are initiated by the rhythmic electrical cycle.
3. Directional flow of blood through the heart chambers, guided by valve opening and closing induced by pressure changes generated by mechanical activity.

■ The atrial pressure curve remains low throughout the entire cardiac cycle, with only minor fluctuations (normally varying between 0 and 8 mm Hg). The aortic pressure curve remains high the entire time, with moderate fluctuations (normally varying between a systolic pressure of 120 mm Hg and a diastolic pressure of 80 mm Hg). The ventricular pressure curve fluctuates dramatically, because ventricular pressure must be below the low atrial pressure during diastole to allow the AV valve to open for filling and, to force the aortic valve open to allow emptying, it must be above the high aortic pressure during systole. Therefore, ventricular pressure normally varies

from 0 mm Hg during diastole to slightly more than 120 mm Hg during systole. During the periods of isovolumetric ventricular contraction and relaxation, ventricular pressure is above the low atrial pressure and below the high aortic pressure, so all valves are closed and no blood enters or leaves the ventricles. (Review Figure 9-15.)

■ The end-diastolic volume (EDV) is the volume of blood in the ventricle when filling is complete at the end of diastole. The end-systolic volume (ESV) is the volume of blood remaining in the ventricle when ejection is complete at the end of systole. The stroke volume (SV) is the volume of blood pumped out by each ventricle each beat. (Review Figure 9-15.)

■ Valve closing gives rise to two normal heart sounds. The first heart sound is caused by closing of the AV valves and signals the onset of ventricular systole. The second heart sound results from closing of the aortic and pulmonary valves at the onset of diastole. (Review Figure 9-15.)

■ Defective valve function produces turbulent blood flow, which is audible as a heart murmur. Abnormal valves may be either stenotic and not opening completely or insufficient and not closing completely. (Review Figure 9-16 and Table 9-2.)

### Cardiac Output and Its Control (pp. 247–252)

■ Cardiac output (CO), the volume of blood ejected by each ventricle each minute, is determined by heart rate times stroke volume. (Review Figure 9-22.)

■ Heart rate is varied by altering the balance of parasympathetic and sympathetic influence on the SA node. Parasympathetic stimulation slows the heart rate, and sympathetic stimulation speeds it up. (Review Figure 9-17.)

■ Stroke volume depends on (1) the extent of ventricular filling, with an increased end-diastolic volume resulting in a larger stroke volume by means of the length–tension relationship (Frank–Starling law of the heart, a form of intrinsic control), and (2) the extent of sympathetic stimulation, with increased sympathetic stimulation resulting in increased contractility of the heart, that is, increased strength of contraction and increased stroke volume at a given end-diastolic volume (extrinsic control). (Review Figures 9-18 through 9-21.)

### Nourishing the Heart Muscle (pp. 252–257)

■ Cardiac muscle is supplied with oxygen and nutrients by blood delivered to it by the coronary circulation, not by blood within the heart chambers.

■ Most coronary blood flow occurs during diastole, because during systole the contracting heart muscle compresses the coronary vessels.

■ Coronary blood flow is normally varied to keep pace with cardiac oxygen needs.

■ Coronary blood flow may be compromised by atherosclerotic plaques, which can lead to ischemic heart disease ranging in severity from mild chest pain on exertion to fatal heart attacks. (Review Figures 9-24 through 9-26 and Table 9-3.)

# Chapter 10

## Study Card

### Patterns and Physics of Blood Flow (pp. 261–264)

■ Materials can be exchanged among various parts of the body and with the external environment by means of the blood vessel network that transports blood to and from all organs. (Review Figure 10-1.)

■ Organs that replenish nutrient supplies and remove metabolic wastes from the blood receive a greater percentage of the cardiac output than is warranted by their metabolic needs. These “reconditioning” organs can better tolerate reductions in blood supply than can organs that receive blood solely for meeting their own metabolic needs. The reconditioning organs are the digestive organs, kidneys, and skin.

■ The brain is especially vulnerable to reductions in its blood supply. Therefore, maintaining adequate flow to this vulnerable organ is a high priority in circulatory function.

■ The flow rate of blood through a vessel (in volume per unit of time) is directly proportional to the pressure gradient and inversely proportional to the resistance. The higher pressure at the beginning of a vessel is established by the pressure imparted to the blood by cardiac contraction. The lower pressure at the end is the result of frictional losses as flowing blood rubs against the vessel wall. (Review Figure 10-2.)

■ Resistance, the hindrance to blood flow through a vessel, is influenced most by the vessel’s radius. Resistance is inversely proportional to the fourth power of the radius, so small changes in radius profoundly influence flow. As the radius increases, resistance decreases and flow increases, and vice versa. (Review Figure 10-3.)

■ Blood flows in a closed loop between the heart and the organs. The arteries transport blood from the heart throughout the body. The arterioles regulate the amount of blood that flows through each organ. The capillaries are the actual site where materials are exchanged between blood and surrounding tissue cells. The veins return blood from the tissue level back to the heart. (Review Figure 10-4 and Table 10-1.)

### Arteries (pp. 264–269)

■ Arteries are large-radius, low-resistance passageways from the heart to the organs.

■ Arteries also serve as a pressure reservoir. Because of their elasticity, owing to their abundant elastin fibers, arteries expand to accommodate the extra volume of blood pumped into them by cardiac contraction and then recoil to continue driving the blood forward when the heart is relaxing. (Review Table 10-1 and Figure 10-5.)

■ Systolic pressure (average 120 mm Hg) is the peak pressure exerted by the ejected blood against the vessel walls during cardiac systole. Diastolic pressure (average 80 mm Hg) is the

minimum pressure in the arteries when blood is draining off into the vessels downstream during cardiac diastole. When blood pressure is 120/80, pulse pressure (the difference between systolic and diastolic pressures) is 40 mm Hg. (Review Figures 10-6 and 10-7.)

■ The average driving pressure throughout the cardiac cycle is the mean arterial pressure, which can be estimated using the following formula: mean arterial pressure = diastolic pressure + 1/3 pulse pressure. (Review Figure 10-8.)

### Arterioles (pp. 269–274)

■ Arterioles are the major resistance vessels. Their high resistance produces a large drop in mean pressure between the arteries and the capillaries. This decline enhances blood flow by contributing to the pressure differential between the heart and the organs. (Review Figure 10-8.)

■ Arterioles have a thick layer of circular smooth muscle, variable contraction of which alters arteriolar caliber and resistance. (Review Table 10-1.) Tone, a baseline of contractile activity, is maintained in arterioles at all times. Arteriolar vasodilation (expansion of arteriolar caliber above tonic level) decreases resistance and increases blood flow through the vessel, whereas vasoconstriction (narrowing of the vessel) increases resistance and decreases flow. (Review Figure 10-9.)

■ Arteriolar caliber is subject to two types of control mechanisms: local (intrinsic) controls and extrinsic controls.

■ Local controls primarily involve local chemical changes associated with changes in the level of metabolic activity in an organ, such as local changes in O<sub>2</sub>, which cause the release of vasoactive paracrines from the endothelial cells in the vicinity. Examples include vasodilating nitric oxide and vasoconstricting endothelin. These vasoactive mediators act on the underlying arteriolar smooth muscle to bring about an appropriate change in the caliber of the arterioles supplying the organ. By adjusting the resistance to blood flow, the local control mechanism adjusts blood flow to the organ to match the momentary metabolic needs of the organ. (Review Figures 10-9 through 10-11 and Table 10-2.)

■ Arteriolar caliber can be adjusted independently in different organs by local control factors. Such adjustments are important in variably distributing cardiac output.

■ Other local influences include (1) histamine release, which is important in inflammatory and allergic reactions; (2) myogenic response to stretch, which resists changes in the distending force exerted across the vessel wall by blood-pressure driven changes in blood flow; and (3) local application of heat or cold, which is important therapeutically.

■ Extrinsic control is accomplished primarily by sympathetic and to a lesser extent by hormonal influence over arteriolar



smooth muscle. Extrinsic controls are important in maintaining mean arterial pressure. Arterioles are richly supplied with sympathetic nerve fibers, whose increased activity produces generalized vasoconstriction and a subsequent increase in total peripheral resistance, thus increasing mean arterial pressure. Decreased sympathetic activity produces generalized arteriolar vasodilation, which lowers mean arterial pressure. These extrinsically controlled adjustments of arteriolar caliber help maintain the appropriate pressure head for driving blood forward to the tissues. Most arterioles are not supplied by parasympathetic nerves. (Review Figure 10-11.)

■ Hormones that extrinsically influence arteriolar radius are epinephrine, vasopressin, and angiotensin II, all of which cause generalized arteriolar vasoconstriction.

### Capillaries (pp. 274–283)

■ The thin-walled, small-radius, extensively branched capillaries are ideally suited to serve as sites of exchange between blood and surrounding tissue cells. Anatomically, the surface area for exchange is maximized and diffusion distance is minimized in the capillaries. Furthermore, because of their large total cross-sectional area, the velocity of blood flow through capillaries (in distance per unit of time) is relatively slow, providing adequate time for exchanges to take place. (Review Figures 10-12 through 10-14 and Table 10-1, p. 266.)

■ Two types of passive exchanges—diffusion and bulk flow—take place across capillary walls.

■ Individual solutes are exchanged primarily by diffusion down concentration gradients. Lipid-soluble substances pass directly through the single layer of endothelial cells lining a capillary, whereas water-soluble substances pass through water-filled pores between the endothelial cells. Plasma proteins generally do not escape. (Review Figures 10-15 and 10-16.)

■ Imbalances in physical pressures acting across capillary walls are responsible for bulk flow of fluid through the pores. (1) Fluid is forced out of the first portion of the capillary (ultrafiltration), where outward pressures (mainly capillary blood pressure) exceed inward pressures (mainly plasma-colloid osmotic pressure). (2) Fluid is returned to the capillary along its last half, when outward pressures fall below inward pressures. The reason for the shift in balance down the capillary's length is the continuous decline in capillary blood pressure while the plasma-colloid osmotic pressure remains constant. Bulk flow is responsible for the distribution of ECF between plasma and interstitial fluid. (Review Figures 10-8, 10-17, and 10-18.)

■ Normally, slightly more fluid is filtered than is reabsorbed. The extra fluid, any leaked proteins, and bacteria in the tissue are picked up by the lymphatic system. Bacteria are destroyed as lymph passes through lymph nodes on the way to being returned to the venous system. (Review Figures 10-17, 10-19, and 10-20.)

### Veins (pp. 283–287)

■ Veins are large-radius, low-resistance passageways through which blood returns from the organs to the heart. In addition, the thin-walled, highly distensible veins, as capacitance vessels,

can passively stretch to store a larger volume of blood and therefore act as a blood reservoir. The capacity of veins to hold blood can change markedly with little change in venous pressure. At rest, the veins contain more than 60% of the total blood volume. (Review Table 10-1 and Figure 10-22.)

■ The primary force that produces venous flow is the pressure gradient between the veins and the atrium (that is, what remains of the driving pressure imparted to the blood by cardiac contraction). (Review Figures 10-8 and 10-23.)

■ Venous return is enhanced by sympathetically induced venous vasoconstriction and by external compression of the veins from contraction of surrounding skeletal muscles, both of which drive blood out of the veins. These actions help counter the effects of gravity on the venous system. (Review Figures 10-23 through 10-26.)

■ One-way venous valves ensure that blood is driven toward the heart and kept from flowing back toward the tissues. (Review Figure 10-27.)

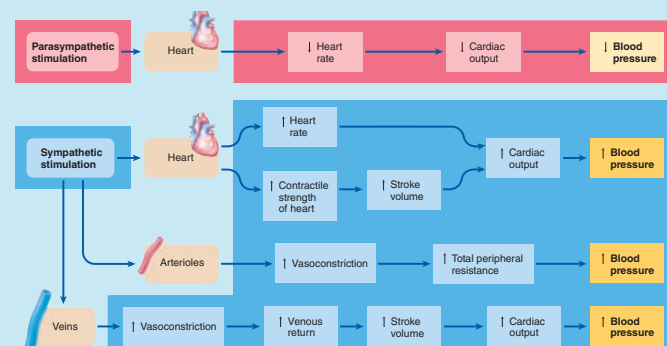
■ Venous return is also enhanced by the respiratory pump. Respiratory activity produces a less-than-atmospheric pressure in the chest cavity, thus establishing an external pressure gradient that encourages flow from the lower veins that are exposed to atmospheric pressure to the chest veins that empty into the heart. (Review Figures 10-23 and 10-28.)

### Blood Pressure (pp. 287–293)

■ Regulation of mean arterial pressure depends on control of its two main determinants, cardiac output and total peripheral resistance. (Review Figure 10-29.) Control of cardiac output, in turn, depends on regulation of heart rate and stroke volume (review Figure 9-22, p. 251), whereas total peripheral resistance is determined primarily by the degree of arteriolar vasoconstriction (review Figure 10-11).

■ Short-term regulation of blood pressure is accomplished mainly by the baroreceptor reflex. Carotid sinus and aortic arch baroreceptors continuously monitor mean arterial pressure. When they detect a deviation from normal, they signal the medullary cardiovascular center, which responds by adjusting autonomic output to the heart and blood vessels to restore the blood pressure to normal. (Review Figures 10-30 through 10-33.)

■ Long-term control of blood pressure involves maintaining proper plasma volume through the kidneys' control of salt and water balance. (Review Figure 10-29.)



# Chapter 11

## Study Card

### Plasma (pp. 297–299)

■ Blood consists of three types of cellular elements—erythrocytes (red blood cells), leukocytes (white blood cells), and platelets (thrombocytes)—suspended in the liquid plasma. (Review Figure 11-1 and Table 11-1.)

■ The 5.5-liter volume of blood in an adult male consists of 45% erythrocytes, less than 1% leukocytes and platelets, and 55% plasma. The percentage of whole-blood volume occupied by erythrocytes is the hematocrit. (Review Figure 11-1.)

■ Plasma is a complex liquid consisting of 90% water that is a transport medium for substances being carried in the blood. All plasma constituents are freely diffusible across the capillary walls except the plasma proteins, which perform various important functions. (Review Table 11-1.)

### Erythrocytes (pp. 299–304)

■ Erythrocytes are specialized for their primary function of O<sub>2</sub> transport in the blood. Their biconcave shape maximizes the surface area available for diffusion of O<sub>2</sub> into cells of this volume. They do not contain a nucleus or organelles but instead are packed full of hemoglobin, an iron-containing molecule carry four O<sub>2</sub> molecules. (Review Figures 11-1 and 11-2.)

■ Unable to replace cell components, erythrocytes are destined to a short life span of about 120 days. Undifferentiated pluripotent stem cells in the red bone marrow give rise to all cellular elements of the blood. Erythrocyte production (erythropoiesis) by the marrow normally keeps pace with the rate of erythrocyte loss, keeping the red cell count constant. Erythropoiesis is stimulated by erythropoietin, a hormone secreted by the kidneys on reduced O<sub>2</sub> delivery. (Review Figures 11-3 and 11-13.)

### Platelets and Hemostasis (pp. 304–309)

■ Platelets, cell fragments derived from large megakaryocytes in the bone marrow, play a role in hemostasis, the arrest of bleeding from an injured vessel. The three main steps in hemostasis are (1) vascular spasm, (2) platelet plugging, and (3) clot formation. (Review Figures 11-6, 11-7, 11-11, and 11-13.)

■ Most factors necessary for clotting are always present in the plasma in inactive precursor form. When a vessel is damaged, exposed collagen initiates a cascade of reactions involving successive activation of these clotting factors, ultimately converting fibrinogen into fibrin via the intrinsic clotting pathway. Blood that has escaped into the tissues clots on exposure to tissue thromboplastin, which sets the extrinsic clotting pathway into motion. Fibrin, an insoluble threadlike molecule, is laid down as the meshwork of the clot; the meshwork in turn entangles blood cellular elements to complete clot formation. (Review Figures 11-8 and 11-9.)

■ Clots form quickly. When no longer needed, they are slowly dissolved by plasmin, a fibrinolytic factor also activated by exposed collagen. (Review Figure 11-10.)

### Leukocytes (pp. 309–313)

■ Leukocytes are the defense corps of the body. They attack foreign invaders (bacteria and viruses), destroy cancer cells that arise in the body, and clean up cellular debris. Leukocytes, as well as certain plasma proteins, make up the immune system.

■ Each type of leukocytes has a different task: (1) Neutrophils, the phagocytic specialists, engulf bacteria and debris. (2) Eosinophils attack parasitic worms and play a role in allergic responses. (3) Basophils release histamine, which is also important in allergic responses, and heparin, which helps clear fat particles from the blood. (4) Monocytes, on leaving the blood, set up residence in the tissues and greatly enlarge to become macrophages, large tissue phagocytes. (5) Lymphocytes provide immune defense against bacteria, viruses, and other targets for which they are specifically programmed. Microscopically, neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils are polymorphonuclear granulocytes; monocytes and lymphocytes are mononuclear agranulocytes. (Review Figure 11-11 and Table 11-1.)

■ Leukocytes are present in the blood only while in transit from their site of production and storage to their site of action. At any given time, most leukocytes are out in the tissues on surveillance or performing actual combat missions.

### Innate Immunity (pp. 313–319)

■ Immunity, the body's ability to resist or eliminate potentially harmful foreign invaders and newly arisen mutant cells, includes both innate and adaptive immune responses. Innate immune responses are nonspecific responses that nonselectively defend against foreign material even on initial exposure to it. Innate immune responses include inflammation, interferon, natural killer cells, and the complement system. Adaptive immune responses are specific responses that selectively target particular invaders for which the body has been specially prepared after a prior exposure.

■ Inflammation is a nonspecific response to foreign invasion or tissue damage mediated largely by the professional phagocytes (neutrophils and monocytes turned macrophages). These cells destroy foreign and damaged cells both by phagocytosis and by release of lethal chemicals. Phagocytes secrete a variety of cytokines (any chemical other than antibodies that are secreted by leukocytes) that also augment inflammation, induce systemic manifestations such as fever, and enhance adaptive immune responses. Histamine-induced vasodilation and increased permeability of local capillaries at the site permit delivery of more phagocytes and also produce the observable local

manifestations of inflammation—swelling, redness, heat, and pain. (Review Figures 11-14 and 11-15.)

■ Interferon is nonspecifically released by virus-infected cells and transiently inhibits viral multiplication in other cells to which it binds. (Review Figure 11-16.)

■ Natural killer (NK) cells nonspecifically lyse and destroy virus-infected and cancer cells on first exposure to them. (Review Figure 11-22.)

■ On being activated by microbes or by antibodies produced against the microbes, the complement system directly destroys the foreign invaders by forming a hole-punching membrane attack complex that causes osmotic rupture of the victim cell. Activated complement components also act as chemotaxins (that attract phagocytes) and opsonins (that link microbes to phagocytes). (Review Figures 11-17 and 11-22.)

### **Adaptive Immunity: General Concepts (pp. 319–320)**

■ Lymphocytes, the effector cells of adaptive immunity, can distinguish among millions of foreign molecules because each is uniquely equipped with surface membrane receptors that can bind with only one specific complex foreign molecule, or antigen.

■ The two classes of adaptive immune responses are antibody-mediated immunity accomplished by plasma cells derived from B lymphocytes (B cells) and cell-mediated immunity accomplished by T lymphocytes (T cells). B cells develop from lymphocytes that originally matured within the bone marrow. T-cells come from lymphocytes that migrated from the bone marrow to the thymus to complete their maturation. New B and T cells arise from lymphocyte colonies in lymphoid tissues. (Review Figures 11-12 and 11-18 and Table 11-5, p. 334.)

### **B Lymphocytes: Antibody-Mediated Immunity (pp. 320–325)**

■ Each B cell recognizes a specific free extracellular antigen, such as that found on the surface of bacteria. After being activated by binding of its receptor (a B-cell receptor, or BCR) with its specific antigen, a B cell rapidly proliferates, producing a clone of its own kind that can specifically wage battle against the invader. Most lymphocytes in the expanded B-cell clone become antibody-secreting plasma cells that participate in the primary response against the invader. Some new lymphocytes do not participate in the attack but become memory cells that lie in wait, ready to launch a swifter and more forceful secondary response should the same foreigner ever invade the body again. (Review Figures 11-19, 11-20, 11-23, and 11-24.)

■ Antibodies (immunoglobulins) are Y-shaped molecules. The antigen-binding sites on the tips of each arm of the antibody determine with what specific antigen the antibody can bind. Properties of the antibody's tail portion determine what the antibody does once it binds with an antigen. (Review Figure 11-21.)

■ Antibodies do not directly destroy antigenic material; they intensify lethal innate immune responses already called into play by the foreign invasion. Antibodies act as opsonins to enhance phagocytosis, activate the complement system, and stimulate NK cells. (Review Figure 11-22 and Table 11-4, p. 331.)

### **T Lymphocytes: Cell-Mediated Immunity (pp. 325–334)**

■ T cells accomplish cell-mediated immunity by being in direct contact with their targets and by releasing cytokines.

■ There are three types of T cells: (1) Cytotoxic T cells destroy virally invaded and cancer cells by releasing perforin molecules that form a lethal hole-punching complex that inserts into the membrane of the victim cell or by releasing granzymes that trigger the victim cell to undergo apoptosis. (2) Helper T cells bind with other immune cells and release cytokines that augment the activity of these other cells. (3) Regulatory T cells secrete cytokines that suppress other immune cells, “putting the brakes” on immune responses in a check-and-balance fashion. (Review Figures 11-25, 11-26, and 11-30 and Table 11-3.)

■ Like B cells, T cells bear receptors (T-cell receptors, or TCRs) that are antigen specific (review Figure 11-19), undergo clonal selection, exert primary and secondary responses, and form memory pools for long-lasting immunity against targets to which they have already been exposed. T cells have a dual binding requirement of foreign antigens in association with self-antigens on the surface of one of the body's own cells. The self-antigens are class I or class II MHC molecules, which are unique for each individual. (Review Figures 11-29 and 11-30.)

■ Helper T cells can recognize and bind with an antigen only when it has been processed and presented to them by antigen-presenting cells (APCs), such as macrophages and dendritic cells. (Review Figures 11-28 and 11-30.)

■ In the process of immune surveillance, natural killer cells, cytotoxic T cells, and macrophages and the interferon they collectively secrete normally eradicate newly arisen cancer cells before they have a chance to spread. (Review Figure 11-32.)

### **Immune Diseases (pp. 334–337)**

■ Immune diseases are of two types: immunodeficiency diseases (insufficient immune responses) or inappropriate immune attacks (excessive or mistargeted immune responses).

■ Inappropriate attacks include autoimmune diseases, immune complex diseases, and allergies (hypersensitivities), of which there are two types: B-cell mediated immediate hypersensitivities and T-cell mediated delayed hypersensitivities. (Review Figure 11-33 and Table 11-6.)

### **External Defenses (pp. 337–340)**

■ Body surfaces exposed to the outside environment—both the skin and the linings of internal cavities that communicate with the outside—not only serve as mechanical barriers to deter would-be pathogenic invaders but also play an active role in thwarting entry of bacteria and other unwanted materials.

■ The skin consists of an outer, keratinized epidermis and an inner, connective tissue dermis. The epidermis contains four cell types: pigment-producing melanocytes, keratin-producing keratinocytes, antigen-presenting Langerhans cells, and immune-suppressive Granstein cells. (Review Figure 11-34.)

# Chapter 12

## Study Card

### Respiratory Anatomy (pp. 345–349)

- *Cellular respiration* refers to the intracellular metabolic reactions that use O<sub>2</sub> and produce CO<sub>2</sub> during energy-yielding oxidation of nutrients. *External respiration* refers to the transfer of O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> between the external environment and the tissue cells. The respiratory and circulatory systems together accomplish external respiration. (Review Figure 12-1.)
- The respiratory system exchanges air between the atmosphere and the lungs. The airways conduct air from the atmosphere to the alveoli, across which O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> are exchanged between air in these air sacs and blood in the surrounding pulmonary capillaries. The extremely thin alveolar walls are formed by Type I alveolar cells. Type II alveolar cells secrete pulmonary surfactant. (Review Figures 12-2 and 12-4.)
- The lungs are in the thoracic cavity, a closed compartment of the thorax (chest), the volume of which can be changed by contractile activity of surrounding respiratory muscles.
- Each lung is surrounded by a double-walled, closed sac, the pleural sac. (Review Figure 12-5.)

### Respiratory Mechanics (pp. 349–362)

- Ventilation, or breathing, is the process of cyclically moving air in and out of the lungs so that old alveolar air that has given up O<sub>2</sub> and picked up CO<sub>2</sub> can be exchanged for fresh air.
- Ventilation is accomplished by alternately shifting the direction of the pressure gradient for airflow between the atmosphere and the alveoli through the cyclic expansion and recoil of the lungs. When intra-alveolar pressure decreases as a result of lung expansion during inspiration, air flows into the lungs from the higher atmospheric pressure. When intra-alveolar pressure increases as a result of lung recoil during expiration, air flows out of the lungs toward the lower atmospheric pressure. The larger the gradient between the alveoli and the atmosphere in either direction, the larger the airflow rate, because air flows until intra-alveolar pressure equilibrates with atmospheric pressure. (Review Figures 12-6, 12-7, 12-10, 12-13, and 12-14.)
- Alternate contraction and relaxation of the inspiratory muscles (primarily the diaphragm and to a lesser extent the external intercostal muscles) indirectly produce periodic inflation and deflation of the lungs by cyclically expanding and compressing the thoracic cavity, with the lungs passively following its movements. (Review Figures 12-11 and 12-12.)
- The lungs follow the movements of the thoracic cavity because the transmural pressure gradient across the lung wall (with the subatmospheric intrapleural pressure being less than the intra-alveolar pressure) stretches the lungs to fill the larger thoracic cavity. (Review Figures 12-8 and 12-14.)
- Because energy is required for contracting the inspiratory muscles, inspiration is an active process, but expiration is passive during quiet breathing because it is accomplished by elastic

recoil of the lungs on relaxing inspiratory muscles, at no energy expense. (Review Figure 12-12a through 12-12c.)

- For more forceful active expiration, contraction of the expiratory muscles (primarily the abdominal muscles and to a lesser extent the internal intercostal muscles) further decreases the size of the thoracic cavity and lungs, which further increases the pressure gradient between the alveoli and atmosphere. (Review Figures 12-11 and 12-12d.)
- For more forceful inspiration, the accessory inspiratory muscles in the neck contract to make the thoracic cavity and lungs even larger and drop the intra-alveolar pressure even further than during quiet breathing, thus accomplishing a greater inspiration before equilibration is reached.
- Besides being directly proportional to the pressure gradient, airflow rate is inversely proportional to airway resistance. Because airway resistance, which depends on the caliber of the conducting airways, is normally very low, airflow rate usually depends primarily on the pressure gradient between the alveoli and the atmosphere. Airway resistance is abnormally increased with obstructive lung disease.
- The lungs can stretch to varying degrees during inspiration and then recoil to their preinspiratory size during expiration because of their elastic behavior. *Pulmonary compliance* refers to the distensibility of the lungs—how much they stretch in response to a given change in the transmural pressure gradient. *Elastic recoil* refers to the snapping back of the lungs to their resting position during expiration.
- Pulmonary elastic behavior depends on the elastic connective tissue within the lungs and on alveolar surface tension–pulmonary surfactant interaction. Alveolar surface tension, which is the result of attractive forces between the surface water molecules lining each alveolus, tends to resist the alveolus being stretched on inflation (decreases compliance) and tends to return it back to a smaller surface area during deflation (increases lung rebound). (Review Table 12-1.)
- If the alveoli were lined by water alone, the surface tension would be so great that the lungs would be poorly compliant and would tend to collapse. Pulmonary surfactant intersperses between the water molecules and lowers alveolar surface tension, thereby increasing compliance and counteracting the tendency for alveoli to collapse. (Review Table 12-1.)
- The lungs can be filled to about 5700 ml on maximal inspiration or emptied to about 1200 ml on maximal expiration in an adult male (lower values in females). Normally, the lungs operate “half full.” Lung volume typically varies from about 2200 ml to 2700 ml as an average tidal volume of 500 ml of air is moved in and out with each breath. (Review Figure 12-15.)
- The amount of air moved in and out of the lungs in 1 minute is the pulmonary ventilation. Pulmonary ventilation = tidal volume × respiratory rate.

■ Not all the air moved in and out is available for gas exchange with the blood, because part occupies the conducting airways (*anatomic dead space*). Alveolar ventilation, the volume of air exchanged between the atmosphere and the alveoli in 1 minute, is a measure of the air actually available for gas exchange with the blood. Alveolar ventilation = (tidal volume – dead space volume) × respiratory rate. (Review Figure 12-17 and Table 12-2.)

### Gas Exchange (pp. 362–365)

■ Oxygen and CO<sub>2</sub> move across body membranes by passive diffusion down partial pressure gradients. The partial pressure of a gas in air is that portion of the total atmospheric pressure contributed by this individual gas, which in turn is directly proportional to the percentage of this gas in the air. The partial pressure of a gas in blood depends on the amount of this gas dissolved in the blood. (Review Figure 12-18.)

■ Net diffusion of O<sub>2</sub> occurs first between alveoli and blood and then between blood and tissues, as a result of O<sub>2</sub> partial pressure gradients created by the cells' continuous use of O<sub>2</sub> and ongoing replenishment of fresh alveolar O<sub>2</sub> provided by ventilation. Net diffusion of CO<sub>2</sub> occurs in the reverse direction, first between tissues and blood and then between blood and alveoli, as a result of CO<sub>2</sub> partial pressure gradients created by the cells' continuous production of CO<sub>2</sub> and ongoing removal of alveolar CO<sub>2</sub> through ventilation. (Review Figure 12-19.)

■ Other factors that influence the rate of gas exchange include surface area and thickness of the membrane across which the gas is diffusing (Fick's law of diffusion).

### Gas Transport (pp. 365–372)

■ Because O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> are not very soluble in blood, they must be transported primarily by mechanisms other than simply being physically dissolved. (Review Table 12-3.)

■ Only 1.5% of the O<sub>2</sub> is physically dissolved in the blood, with 98.5% chemically bound to hemoglobin (Hb).

■ The primary factor that determines the extent to which Hb and O<sub>2</sub> are combined (the % Hb saturation) is the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> of the blood, depicted by an S-shaped curve known as the O<sub>2</sub>–Hb dissociation curve. In the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> range of the pulmonary capillaries (the plateau portion of the curve), Hb is still almost fully saturated even if the blood P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> falls as much as 40%. This provides a margin of safety by ensuring near-normal O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the tissues despite a substantial reduction in arterial P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>. In the P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> range in the systemic capillaries (the steep portion of the curve), Hb unloading increases greatly in response to a small local decline in blood P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> associated with increased cellular metabolism. In this way, more O<sub>2</sub> is provided to match the increased tissue needs. (Review Figure 12-21.)

■ Increased P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, increased acid, and increased temperature at the tissue level shift the O<sub>2</sub>–Hb curve to the right, facilitating the unloading of O<sub>2</sub> from Hb for tissue use. (Review Figure 12-23.)

■ Hemoglobin facilitates a large net transfer of O<sub>2</sub> between alveoli and blood and between blood and tissue cells by acting

as a storage depot to keep P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (that is, dissolved O<sub>2</sub> concentration) low, despite a considerable increase in the total O<sub>2</sub> content of the blood. (Review Figure 12-22.)

■ Carbon dioxide picked up at the systemic capillaries is transported in the blood by three methods: (1) 10% is physically dissolved, (2) 30% is bound to Hb, and (3) 60% takes the form of bicarbonate (HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>). The erythrocyte enzyme carbonic anhydrase catalyzes conversion of CO<sub>2</sub> to HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> according to the reaction CO<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O ⇌ H<sup>+</sup> + HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>. These reactions are all reversed in the lungs as CO<sub>2</sub> is eliminated to the alveoli. (Review Table 12-3 and Figure 12-24.)

### Control of Respiration (pp. 373–377)

■ Ventilation involves two aspects, both subject to neural control: (1) rhythmic cycling between inspiration and expiration and (2) regulation of ventilation magnitude, which depends on control of respiratory rate and depth of tidal volume.

■ Respiratory rhythm is established by the pre-Bötzinger complex, which displays pacemaker activity and drives the inspiratory neurons in the dorsal respiratory group (DRG) of the medullary respiratory control center. When these neurons fire, impulses ultimately reach the inspiratory muscles to bring about inspiration during quiet breathing (Review Figure 12-25.)

■ When the inspiratory neurons stop firing, the inspiratory muscles relax and passive expiration takes place. For active expiration, the expiratory muscles are activated by expiratory neurons in the ventral respiratory group (VRG) of the medullary respiratory control center. Inspiratory neurons in the VRG can also be called into play for more vigorous inspirations.

■ This basic rhythm is smoothed out by the apneustic and pneumotaxic centers located in the pons. The apneustic center prolongs inspiration; the more powerful pneumotaxic center limits inspiration. (Review Figure 12-25.)

■ Three chemical factors play a role in determining the magnitude of ventilation: P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>, and H<sup>+</sup> concentration of the arterial blood. (Review Table 12-5.)

■ The dominant factor in the ongoing regulation of ventilation is arterial P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>, an increase of which is the most potent chemical stimulus for increasing ventilation. Changes in arterial P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> alter ventilation by bringing about corresponding changes in the brain-ECF H<sup>+</sup> concentration, to which the central chemoreceptors are very sensitive. (Review Figure 12-27.)

■ The peripheral chemoreceptors are responsive to an increase in arterial H<sup>+</sup> concentration, which likewise reflexly brings about increased ventilation. The resulting adjustment in arterial H<sup>+</sup>-generating CO<sub>2</sub> is important in maintaining the acid–base balance of the body. (Review Figure 12-26.)

■ The peripheral chemoreceptors also reflexly increase ventilation in response to a marked reduction in arterial P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> (60 mm Hg), serving as an emergency mechanism to increase respiration when arterial P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> levels fall below the safety range provided by the plateau portion of the O<sub>2</sub>–Hb curve.

■ Respiration activity can also be voluntarily modified.

# Chapter 13

## Study Card

### Kidneys: Anatomy, Functions, and Basic Processes (pp. 381–386)

■ Each of the pair of kidneys consists of an outer renal cortex and inner renal medulla. The kidneys form urine. They eliminate unwanted plasma constituents in the urine while conserving materials of value to the body. Urine from each kidney is collected in the renal pelvis and then transmitted from both kidneys through the pair of ureters to the single urinary bladder, where urine is stored until emptied through the urethra to the outside. (Review Figure 13-1.)

■ The urine-forming functional unit of the kidneys, the nephron, is composed of interrelated vascular and tubular components. The vascular component consists of two capillary networks in series, the first being the glomerulus, a tuft of capillaries that filters large volumes of protein-free plasma into the tubular component. Blood enters the glomerulus through the afferent arteriole and leaves through the efferent arteriole, which breaks up into the second capillary network, the peritubular capillaries. The peritubular capillaries, which wrap around the tubules, nourish the renal tissue and participate in exchanges between the tubular fluid and the plasma. (Review Figures 13-2 and 13-3.)

■ The tubular component begins with Bowman's capsule, which cups around the glomerulus to catch the filtrate, and then continues a specific tortuous course through the proximal tubule, loop of Henle, distal tubule, and collecting duct to ultimately empty into the renal pelvis. (Review Figure 13-2.) As the filtrate passes through various regions of the tubule, cells lining the tubules modify it, returning to the plasma only those materials necessary for maintaining proper ECF composition and volume. What is left behind in the tubules is excreted as urine.

■ The kidneys perform three basic processes: (1) glomerular filtration, the nondiscriminating movement of protein-free plasma from the blood into the tubules; (2) tubular reabsorption, the selective transfer of specific constituents in the filtrate back into the blood of the peritubular capillaries; and (3) tubular secretion, the highly specific movement of selected substances from peritubular capillary blood into the tubular fluid. Everything filtered or secreted but not reabsorbed is excreted as urine. (Review Figure 13-4.)

### Glomerular Filtration (pp. 386–390)

■ Glomerular filtrate is produced when part of the plasma flowing through each glomerulus is passively forced under pressure through the sievelike glomerular membrane into the underlying Bowman's capsule. The net filtration pressure results from a high glomerular capillary blood pressure that favors filtration, outweighing the combined opposing forces of plasma-colloid osmotic pressure and Bowman's capsule hydrostatic pressure. (Review Figures 13-5 and 13-6 and Table 13-1.)

■ On average, 20% to 25% of the cardiac output is delivered to the kidneys to be acted on by renal regulatory and excretory processes. Of the plasma flowing through the kidneys, normally 20% is filtered through the glomeruli, for an average glomerular filtration rate (GFR) of 125 ml/min.

■ The GFR can be deliberately altered by changing the glomerular capillary blood pressure via sympathetic influence on the afferent arterioles as part of the baroreceptor reflex response that compensates for changes in arterial blood pressure. When blood pressure falls too low, sympathetically induced afferent arteriolar vasoconstriction lowers glomerular blood pressure and GFR. When blood pressure rises too high, reduced sympathetic activity causes afferent arteriolar vasodilation, leading to a rise in GFR. As the GFR is altered, the amount of fluid lost in urine changes correspondingly, adjusting plasma volume as needed to help restore blood pressure to normal over the long term. (Review Figures 13-7 and 13-8.)

### Tubular Reabsorption (pp. 390–398)

■ After the filtrate is formed, the tubules handle each filtered substance discretely, so even though the initial glomerular filtrate is identical to plasma (with the exception of plasma proteins), the concentrations of different constituents are variously altered as the filtered fluid flows through the tubular system. (Review Table 13-2, p. 400.)

■ The reabsorptive capacity of the tubular system is tremendous. More than 99% of the filtered plasma is returned to the blood through reabsorption. On average, 124 ml out of the 125 ml filtered per minute are reabsorbed.

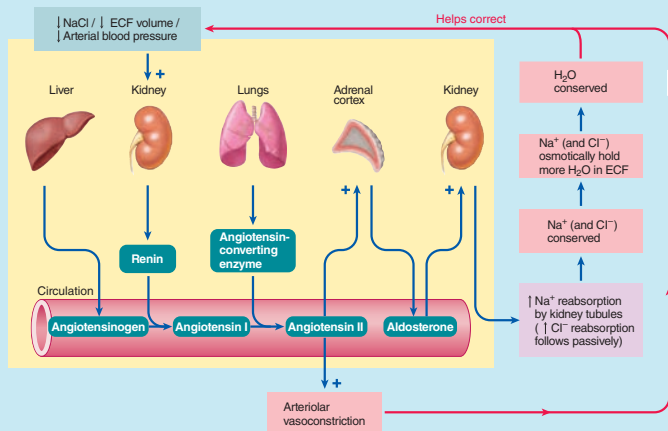
■ Tubular reabsorption involves transepithelial transport from the tubular lumen into the peritubular capillary plasma. This process may be active (requiring energy) or passive (using no energy). (Review Figure 13-9.)

■ The pivotal event to which most reabsorptive processes are linked is the active reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$ , driven by the energy-dependent  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump in the basolateral membrane of the tubular cells. The transport of  $\text{Na}^+$  out of the cells into the lateral spaces between adjacent cells by this carrier induces the net reabsorption of  $\text{Na}^+$  from the tubular lumen to the peritubular capillary plasma. (Review Figure 13-10.)

■ Most  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption takes place early and constantly in the nephron without regulation, but in the distal and collecting tubules, the reabsorption of a small percentage of the filtered  $\text{Na}^+$  is variable and controlled, primarily by the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS).

■ Because  $\text{Na}^+$  and its attendant anion,  $\text{Cl}^-$ , are the major osmotically active ions in the ECF, the ECF volume is determined by the  $\text{Na}^+$  load in the body. (The  $\text{Na}^+$  load is the total amount of  $\text{Na}^+$ , not the concentration of  $\text{Na}^+$ , in the body fluids.) In

turn, the plasma volume, which reflects the total ECF volume, is important in the long-term determination of arterial blood pressure. Whenever the  $\text{Na}^+$  load, ECF volume, and arterial blood pressure are below normal, the juxtaglomerular apparatus secretes renin, an enzymatic hormone that triggers a series of events ultimately leading to increased aldosterone secretion by the adrenal cortex. Aldosterone increases  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption from the distal portions of the tubule, thus correcting for the original reduction in  $\text{Na}^+$ , ECF volume, and blood pressure. (Review Figures 13-11 and 13-12.)



■ By contrast,  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption is inhibited by atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP), a hormone released from the cardiac atria in response to expansion of the ECF volume and a subsequent increase in blood pressure.

■ In addition to driving  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption, the energy used by the  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  pump is ultimately responsible for the reabsorption of organic nutrients (glucose or amino acids) from the proximal tubule by secondary active transport. (Review Figure 3-17, p. 61.)

■ Other electrolytes actively reabsorbed by the tubules, such as  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  and  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , have their own independently functioning carrier systems within the proximal tubule.

■ Because the electrolyte and nutrient carriers can become saturated, each exhibits a maximal carrier-limited transport capacity ( $T_m$ ). Once the filtered load of an actively reabsorbed substance exceeds the  $T_m$ , reabsorption proceeds at a constant maximal rate, and any additional filtered quantity of the substance is excreted in the urine. (Review Figure 13-13.)

■ Active  $\text{Na}^+$  reabsorption also drives the passive reabsorption of  $\text{Cl}^-$  (via an electrical gradient),  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (by osmosis), and urea (down a urea concentration gradient created as a result of extensive osmotic-driven  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption). Of the  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  filtered, 65% is osmotically reabsorbed without regulation from the proximal tubule. Reabsorption of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  increases the concentration of other substances remaining in the tubular fluid, most of which are filtered waste products. The small urea molecules are the only waste products that can passively permeate the tubular membranes, so urea is the only waste product partially (50%) reabsorbed as a result of being concentrated. (Review Figure 13-14.)

■ The other waste products, which are not reabsorbed, remain in the urine in highly concentrated form.

### Tubular Secretion (pp. 398–400)

■ Tubular secretion involves transepithelial transport from the peritubular capillary plasma into the tubular lumen. Via

tubular secretion, the kidney tubules can selectively add some substances to the quantity already filtered. Secretion of substances hastens their excretion in the urine.

■ The most important secretory systems are for (1)  $\text{H}^+$ , which helps regulate acid–base balance; (2)  $\text{K}^+$ , which keeps the plasma  $\text{K}^+$  concentration at the level needed to maintain normal membrane excitability in the heart, other muscles, and nerves; and (3) organic ions, which helps eliminate foreign organic compounds from the body more efficiently. Hydrogen ion is secreted in the proximal, distal, and collecting tubules. Potassium ion is secreted only in the distal and collecting tubules under control of aldosterone. Organic ions are secreted only in the proximal tubule. (Review Figures 13-15 and 13-16 and Table 13-2.)

### Urine Excretion and Plasma Clearance (pp. 400–413)

■ Of the 125 ml/min of glomerular filtrate formed, normally only 1 ml/min remains in the tubules to be excreted as urine. Only wastes and excess electrolytes not wanted by the body are left behind, dissolved in a given volume of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  to be eliminated in the urine.

■ Because the excreted material is removed or “cleared” from the plasma, the term *plasma clearance* refers to the volume of plasma cleared of a particular substance each minute by renal activity. (Review Figure 13-17.)

■ The kidneys can excrete urine of varying volumes and concentrations to either conserve or eliminate  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , depending on whether the body has a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  deficit or excess, respectively. The kidneys can produce urine ranging from 0.3 ml/min at 1200 mOsm to 25 ml/min at 100 mOsm by reabsorbing variable amounts of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  from the distal portions of the nephron.

■ This variable reabsorption is made possible by a vertical osmotic gradient in the medullary interstitial fluid, established by the long loops of Henle via countercurrent multiplication. (Review Figures 13-18 through 13-20.) This vertical osmotic gradient, to which the hypotonic (100 mOsm) tubular fluid is exposed as it passes through the distal portions of the nephron, establishes a passive driving force for progressive reabsorption of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  from the tubular fluid, but the actual extent of  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption depends on the amount of vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone) secreted. (Review Figure 13-22.)

■ Vasopressin increases the permeability of the distal and collecting tubules to  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; they are impermeable to  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in its absence. (Review Figure 13-21.) Vasopressin secretion increases in response to a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  deficit, increasing  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption. Its secretion is inhibited in response to a  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  excess, reducing  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption. Thus, vasopressin-controlled  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  reabsorption helps correct any fluid imbalances.

■ Once formed, urine is propelled by peristaltic contractions through the ureters from the kidneys to the urinary bladder for temporary storage.

■ The bladder can accommodate 250 to 400 ml of urine before stretch receptors within its wall initiate the micturition reflex. This reflex causes involuntary emptying of the bladder by simultaneous bladder contraction and opening of both the internal and the external urethral sphincters. Micturition can be transiently prevented by voluntarily tightening the external sphincter. (Review Figure 13-23.)

# Chapter 14

## Study Card

### Balance Concept (pp. 417–418)

■ The internal pool of a substance is the quantity of that substance in the ECF. The inputs to the pool are by way of ingestion or metabolic production of the substance. The outputs from the pool are by way of excretion or metabolic consumption of the substance. (Review Figure 14-1.)

■ Input must equal output to maintain a stable balance of the substance.

### Fluid Balance (pp. 418–426)

■ On average, body fluids compose 60% of total body weight. Two thirds of the body H<sub>2</sub>O is in the ICF. The remaining third, in the ECF, is distributed between plasma (20% of ECF) and interstitial fluid (80% of ECF). (Review Table 14-1.)

■ Because all plasma constituents are freely exchanged across the capillary walls, the plasma and interstitial fluid are nearly identical in composition, except for the lack of plasma proteins in the interstitial fluid. In contrast, the ECF and the ICF have markedly different compositions, because the plasma membrane barriers are highly selective as to what materials are transported into or out of the cells. (Review Figure 14-2.)

■ The essential components of fluid balance are control of ECF volume by maintaining salt balance and control of ECF osmolarity by maintaining water balance. (Review Tables 14-2 through 14-4.)

■ Because of the osmotic holding power of Na<sup>+</sup>, the major ECF cation, a change in the body's total Na content, or load, causes a corresponding change in ECF volume, including plasma volume, which alters arterial blood pressure in the same direction. Appropriately, in the long run, Na<sup>+</sup>-regulating mechanisms compensate for changes in ECF volume and arterial blood pressure. (Review Table 14-4.)

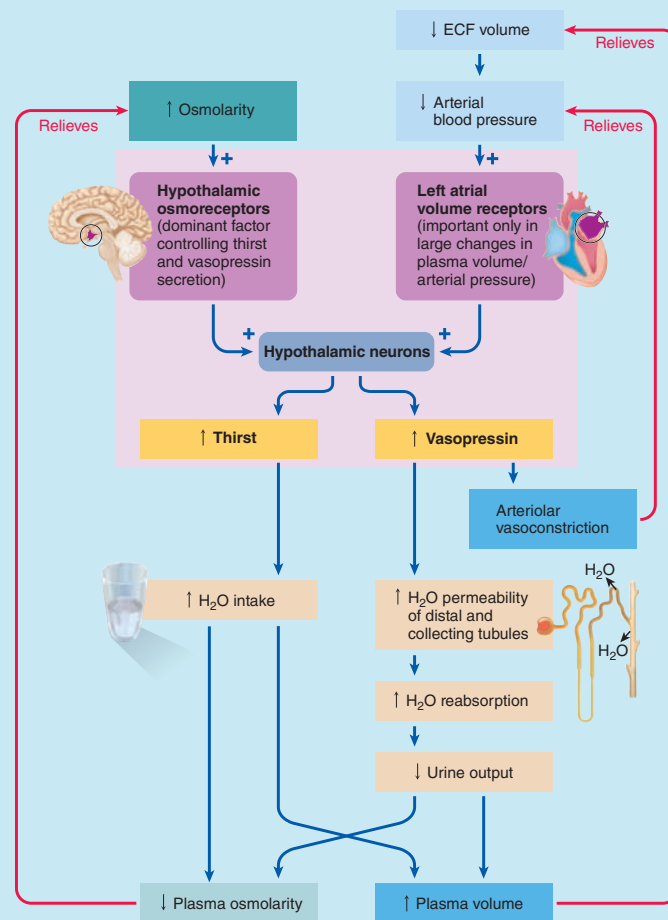
■ Salt intake is poorly controlled by the human body, but control of salt output in the urine is closely regulated to maintain salt balance. Blood pressure–regulating mechanisms (the baroreceptor reflex) can vary the GFR, and thus the amount of Na<sup>+</sup> filtered, by adjusting the radius of the afferent arterioles supplying the glomeruli. Blood pressure–regulating mechanisms (the renin–angiotensin–aldosterone system; RAAS) can also vary aldosterone secretion to adjust Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption by the renal tubules. Varying Na<sup>+</sup> filtration and Na<sup>+</sup> reabsorption can adjust how much Na<sup>+</sup> is excreted in the urine to regulate plasma volume and thus arterial blood pressure in the long term. (Review Figure 14-3.)

■ ECF osmolarity must be closely regulated to prevent osmotic shifts of H<sub>2</sub>O between the ECF and the ICF, because cell swelling or shrinking is harmful, especially to brain neurons. Excess free H<sub>2</sub>O in the ECF dilutes ECF solutes; the resulting ECF hypotonicity drives H<sub>2</sub>O into the cells. An ECF free H<sub>2</sub>O

deficit, by contrast, concentrates ECF solutes, so H<sub>2</sub>O leaves the cells to enter the hypertonic ECF. (Review Table 14-4.)

■ To prevent these harmful fluxes, changes in ECF osmolarity are primarily detected and corrected by the systems that maintain free H<sub>2</sub>O balance (H<sub>2</sub>O without accompanying solute). Free H<sub>2</sub>O balance is regulated largely by vasopressin and, to a lesser degree, by thirst. Both of these factors are governed primarily by hypothalamic osmoreceptors, which monitor ECF osmolarity, and to a lesser extent by left atrial volume receptors, which monitor vascular “fullness.” The amount of vasopressin secreted determines the extent of free H<sub>2</sub>O reabsorption by the distal and collecting tubules of the nephrons, thereby determining the volume of urinary output. (Review Figure 14-4.)

■ Simultaneously, intensity of thirst controls volume of fluid intake. However, because the volume of fluid drunk is often not directly correlated with the intensity of thirst, control of urinary output by vasopressin is the most important regulatory mechanism for maintaining H<sub>2</sub>O balance.





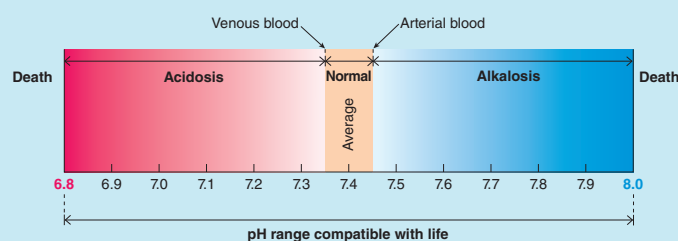
## Acid–Base Balance (pp. 426–434)

■ Acids liberate free hydrogen ions ( $H^+$ ) into solution; bases bind with and remove free  $H^+$  from solution. (Review Figure 14-5.)

■ Acid–base balance refers to regulation of  $H^+$  concentration, designated by  $[H^+]$ , in the body fluids. To precisely maintain  $[H^+]$ , input of  $H^+$  by metabolic production of acids within the body must continually be matched with  $H^+$  output by urinary excretion of  $H^+$  and by respiratory removal of  $H^+$ -generating  $CO_2$ . Furthermore, between the time of this generation and its elimination,  $H^+$  must be buffered within the body to prevent marked fluctuations in  $[H^+]$ .

■ Hydrogen ion concentration is often expressed in terms of pH, which is the logarithm of  $1/[H^+]$ .

■ The normal pH of the plasma is 7.4, slightly alkaline compared to neutral  $H_2O$ , which has a pH of 7.0. A pH lower than normal ( $[H^+]$  higher than normal) indicates a state of acidosis. A pH higher than normal ( $[H^+]$  lower than normal) characterizes a state of alkalosis. (Review Figure 14-6.)



(b) In the body

■ Fluctuations in  $[H^+]$  have profound effects, most notably (1) changes in neuromuscular excitability, with acidosis depressing excitability, especially in the CNS, and alkalosis producing overexcitability of both the PNS and the CNS; (2) disruption of normal metabolic reactions by altering the structure and function of all enzymes; and (3) alterations in plasma  $[K^+]$  (which affect cardiac function) brought about by  $H^+$ -induced changes in the rate of  $K^+$  elimination by the kidneys.

■ The primary challenge in controlling acid–base balance is maintaining normal plasma alkalinity despite continual addition of  $H^+$  to the plasma from ongoing metabolic activity. The major source of  $H^+$  is from  $CO_2$ -generated  $H^+$ .

■ The three lines of defense for resisting changes in  $[H^+]$  are (1) the chemical buffer systems, (2) respiratory control of pH, and (3) renal control of pH.

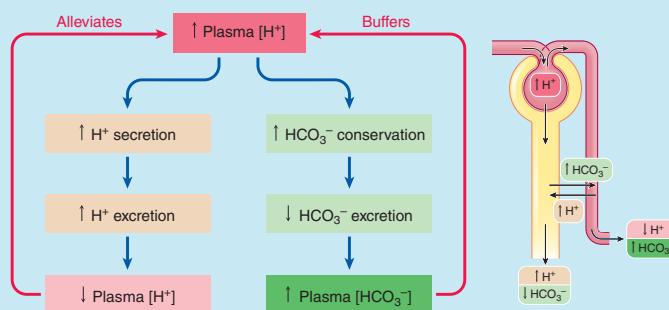
■ Chemical buffer systems each consist of a pair of chemicals involved in a reversible reaction, one that can liberate  $H^+$  and the other that can bind  $H^+$ . By acting according to the law of mass action, a buffer pair acts immediately to minimize any changes in pH. The four chemical buffers are (1)  $H_2CO_3:HCO_3^-$  (primary ECF buffer against noncarbonic acid changes), (2) proteins (primary ICF buffer), (3) hemoglobin (primary buffer against carbonic acid changes), and (4) phosphate (primary urinary buffer). (Review Figure 14-8.)

■ The respiratory system normally eliminates metabolically produced  $CO_2$  so that  $CO_2$ -generated  $H^+$  does not accumulate in the body fluids.

■ When chemical buffers alone have been unable to immediately minimize a pH change, the respiratory system responds within a few minutes by altering its rate of  $CO_2$  removal. An increase in  $[H^+]$  from sources other than  $CO_2$  stimulates respiration so that more  $H^+$ -forming  $CO_2$  is blown off, compensating for acidosis by reducing generation of  $CO_2$ -associated  $H^+$ . Conversely, a fall in  $[H^+]$  depresses respiratory activity so that  $CO_2$  and thus  $H^+$  generated from this source can accumulate in the body fluids to compensate for alkalosis. (Review Table 14-5.)

■ The kidneys are the most powerful line of defense. They require hours to days to compensate for a deviation in body-fluid pH. Not only can they eliminate the normal amount of  $H^+$  produced from non- $CO_2$  sources, but they can also alter their rate of  $H^+$  removal in response to changes in both non- $CO_2$ - and  $CO_2$ -generated acids. In contrast, the lungs can adjust only  $H^+$  generated from  $CO_2$ . Furthermore, the kidneys can regulate  $[HCO_3^-]$  in body fluids.

■ The kidneys compensate for acidosis by secreting the excess  $H^+$  in the urine while adding new  $HCO_3^-$  to the plasma to expand the  $HCO_3^-$  buffer pool. During alkalosis, the kidneys conserve  $H^+$  by reducing its secretion in urine. They also eliminate  $HCO_3^-$ , which is in excess because less  $HCO_3^-$  than usual is tied up buffering  $H^+$  when  $H^+$  is in short supply. (Review Figure 14-9 and Table 14-6.)



■ Secreted  $H^+$  must be buffered in the tubular fluid to prevent the concentration gradient for  $H^+$  from becoming so great that it blocks further  $H^+$  secretion. Normally,  $H^+$  is buffered by the urinary phosphate buffer pair, which is abundant in the tubular fluid because excess dietary phosphate spills into the urine to be excreted from the body.

■ In acidosis, when all the phosphate buffer is already used up in buffering the extra secreted  $H^+$ , the kidneys secrete  $NH_3$  into the tubular fluid to serve as a buffer so that  $H^+$  secretion can continue.

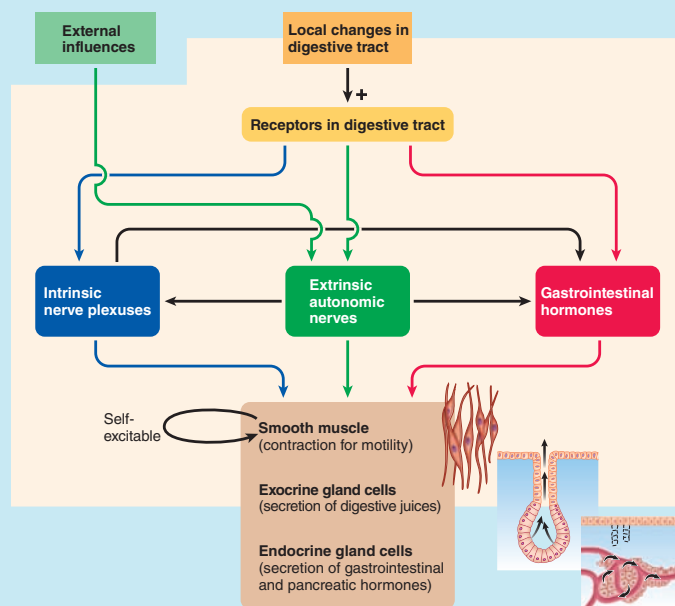
■ The four types of acid–base imbalances are respiratory acidosis, respiratory alkalosis, metabolic acidosis, and metabolic alkalosis. Respiratory acid–base disorders stem from deviations from normal  $[CO_2]$ , whereas metabolic (nonrespiratory) acid–base imbalances include all deviations in pH other than those caused by abnormal  $[CO_2]$ .

# Chapter 15

## Study Card

### General Aspects of Digestion (pp. 437–443)

- The four basic digestive processes are motility, secretion, digestion, and absorption.
- The three classes of energy-rich nutrients are digested by hydrolysis into absorbable units as follows: (1) Dietary carbohydrates in the form of the polysaccharides starch and glycogen are digested into monosaccharides, mostly glucose. (Review Figure 15-1.) (2) Dietary proteins are digested into amino acids. (3) Dietary fats (triglycerides) are digested into monoglycerides and free fatty acids.
- The digestive system consists of the digestive tract and accessory digestive organs (salivary glands, exocrine pancreas, and biliary system). (Review Table 15-1.)
- The lumen of the digestive tract (a tube that runs from the mouth to the anus) is continuous with the external environment, so its contents are technically outside the body; this arrangement permits digestion of food without self-digestion occurring in the process.
- The digestive tract wall has four layers: (from innermost outward) the mucosa, submucosa, muscularis externa, and serosa. The mucosa contains exocrine gland cells that secrete digestive juices into the lumen, endocrine gland cells that secrete gastrointestinal hormones into the blood, and epithelial cells specialized for absorbing digested nutrients. (Review Figure 15-2.)
- Digestive activities are carefully regulated by synergistic autonomous, neural (both intrinsic and extrinsic), and hormonal mechanisms to ensure that ingested food is maximally made available to the body. The submucosal plexus and myenteric plexus constitute the intrinsic plexuses (enteric nervous system). Extrinsic control is by the parasympathetic system, which enhances digestive activity, and the sympathetic system, which slows digestive activity. (Review Figure 15-3.)



### Mouth (pp. 443–445)

- **Motility:** Food enters the digestive system through the mouth, where it is chewed and mixed with saliva.
- **Secretion and digestion:** The salivary enzyme, amylase, begins to digest polysaccharides into the disaccharide maltose, a process that continues in the stomach after swallowing. Salivary secretion is controlled by a salivary center in the medulla, mediated by autonomic nerves to the salivary glands. (Review Figures 15-1 and 15-4.)
- **Absorption:** No food is absorbed from the mouth.

### Pharynx and Esophagus (pp. 445–447)

- **Motility:** The tongue propels the bolus of food to the rear of the throat, which initiates the swallowing reflex. The swallowing center in the medulla coordinates a complex group of activities that result in closure of the respiratory passages and propulsion of food through the pharynx and esophagus into the stomach. (Review Figures 15-5 and 15-6.)
- **Secretion, digestion, and absorption:** The esophageal secretion, mucus, is protective. No nutrient digestion or absorption occurs here.

### Stomach (pp. 447–456)

- **Motility:** Gastric motility includes filling, storage, mixing, and emptying. Gastric filling is facilitated by receptive relaxation of the stomach. Gastric storage takes place in the body of the stomach, where peristaltic contractions of the thin muscle walls are too weak to mix the contents. Gastric mixing in the thick-musled antrum results from vigorous peristaltic contractions. (Review Figures 15-7 and 15-8.)
- Fat, acid, hypertonicity, and distension in the duodenum delay gastric emptying until the duodenum is ready to process more chyme. These factors inhibit antral peristaltic activity and thus slow gastric emptying via the enterogastric reflex and the enterogastrones, secretin and cholecystikinin (CCK), which are secreted by the duodenal mucosa. (Review Figure 15-8 and Table 15-4, p. 454)
- **Secretion:** Gastric secretions into the stomach lumen include (1) HCl (from the parietal cells), which activates pepsinogen; (2) pepsinogen (from the chief cells), which, once activated, initiates protein digestion; (3) mucus (from the mucous cells), which provides a protective coating; and (4) intrinsic factor (from the parietal cells), which is needed for vitamin B<sub>12</sub> absorption. (Review Table 15-2 and Figures 15-9 and 15-10.)
- The stomach also secretes the hormone gastrin, which plays a dominant role in stimulating gastric secretion, and the paracrines histamine and somatostatin, which stimulate and inhibit gastric secretion, respectively. (Review Table 15-2.)
- Gastric secretion is increased before and during a meal via excitatory vagal and intrinsic nerve responses, along with the

stimulatory actions of gastrin and histamine. After the meal empties, gastric secretion is reduced by withdrawal of stimulatory factors, release of inhibitory somatostatin, and inhibitory actions of the enterogastric reflex and enterogastrones. (Review Tables 15-3 and 15-4.)

■ **Digestion and absorption:** Carbohydrate digestion continues by swallowed salivary amylase in the body of the stomach. Protein digestion is initiated by pepsin in the antrum of the stomach, where vigorous peristaltic contractions mix the food with gastric secretions, converting it to a thick liquid mixture known as chyme. (Review Table 15-5, p. 466.) No nutrients are absorbed from the stomach.

### Pancreatic and Biliary Secretions (pp. 457–463)

■ Pancreatic exocrine secretions and bile from the liver both enter the duodenal lumen.

■ Pancreatic secretions include (1) potent digestive enzymes from the acinar cells, which digest all three categories of foodstuff, and (2) an aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution from the duct cells, which neutralizes the acidic contents emptied into the duodenum from the stomach. Secretin stimulates the pancreatic duct cells, and CCK stimulates the acinar cells. (Review Figures 15-11 and 15-12.)

■ The pancreatic digestive enzymes include (1) the proteolytic enzymes trypsinogen, chymotrypsinogen, and procarboxypeptidase, which are secreted in inactive form and are activated in the duodenal lumen on exposure to enterokinase and activated trypsin; (2) pancreatic amylase, which continues carbohydrate digestion; and (3) lipase, which accomplishes fat digestion. (Review Table 15-5.)

■ The liver, the body's largest and most important metabolic organ, performs many varied functions. Its contribution to digestion is the secretion of bile, which contains bile salts. Bile salts aid fat digestion through their detergent action (forming a lipid emulsion that increases the surface area of fat exposed to attack by pancreatic lipase) and facilitate fat absorption by forming water-soluble micelles that carry the water-insoluble products of fat digestion to their absorption site. (Review Figures 15-14 through 15-17 and 15-23, p. 470)

■ Between meals, bile is stored and concentrated in the gallbladder, which is stimulated by CCK to contract and empty into the duodenum during meal digestion. After participating in fat digestion and absorption, bile salts are reabsorbed and returned via the hepatic portal system to the liver, where they are resecreted and act as a potent choleric to stimulate secretion of more bile. (Review Figures 15-13 and 15-15.)

■ Bile also contains bilirubin, a derivative of degraded hemoglobin, which is the major excretory product in the feces.

### Small Intestine (pp. 463–471)

■ **Motility:** Segmentation, the small intestine's primary motility during digestion of a meal, thoroughly mixes the chyme with digestive juices to facilitate digestion; it also exposes the products of digestion to the absorptive surfaces. (Review Figure 15-18.) Between meals, the migrating motility complex sweeps the lumen clean.

■ **Secretion:** The juice secreted by the small intestine does not contain any digestive enzymes. The enzymes synthesized by the

small intestine act within the brush-border membrane of the epithelial cells.

■ **Digestion:** The small intestine is the main site for digestion and absorption. Carbohydrate and protein digestion continues in the small-intestine lumen by the pancreatic enzymes and is completed by the small-intestine brush-border enzymes (disaccharidases and aminopeptidases, respectively). Fat is digested entirely in the small-intestine lumen, by pancreatic lipase. (Review Table 15-5.)

■ **Absorption:** The small-intestine lining is remarkably adapted to its digestive and absorptive function. Its folds bear a rich array of fingerlike projections, the villi, which have a multitude of even smaller hairlike protrusions, the microvilli (brush border). Together, these surface modifications tremendously increase the area available to house the membrane-bound enzymes and to accomplish absorption. (Review Figures 15-20 through 15-22.) This lining is replaced about every 3 days to ensure it is optimally healthy despite harsh lumen conditions.

■ The energy-dependent process of  $\text{Na}^+$  absorption provides the driving force for  $\text{Cl}^-$ , water, glucose, and amino acid absorption. All of these absorbed products enter the blood.

■ Because they are not soluble in water, the products of fat digestion must undergo a series of transformations that enable them to be passively absorbed, eventually entering the lymph. (Review Figure 15-23.)

■ The small intestine absorbs almost everything presented to it, from ingested food to digestive secretions to sloughed epithelial cells. In contrast to the almost complete, unregulated absorption of ingested nutrients, water, and most electrolytes, the amount of iron and calcium absorbed is variable and subject to control. Only a small amount of fluid and indigestible food residue passes on to the large intestine. (Review Table 15-6.)

### Large Intestine (pp. 472–474)

■ **Motility:** The colon (review Figure 15-24) concentrates and stores undigested food residues (fiber; that is, plant cellulose) and bilirubin until they can be eliminated in the feces. Haustral contractions slowly shuffle the colonic contents back and forth to mix and facilitate absorption of most of the remaining fluid. Mass movements several times a day, usually after meals, propel the feces long distances. Movement of feces into the rectum triggers the defecation reflex.

■ **Secretion, digestion, and absorption:** The alkaline mucus secretion is protective. No secretion of digestive enzymes or absorption of nutrients takes place in the colon. Absorption of some of the remaining salt and water converts the colonic contents into feces.

### Overview of the Gastrointestinal Hormones (p. 474)

■ The three major gastrointestinal hormones are gastrin from the stomach mucosa and secretin and cholecystokinin from the duodenal mucosa. Gastrin is released primarily in response to protein in the stomach, and its effects promote digestion of protein. Secretin is released primarily in response to acid in the duodenum, and its effects neutralize the acid. Cholecystokinin is released primarily in response to fat in the duodenum, and its effects optimize conditions for digesting fat.

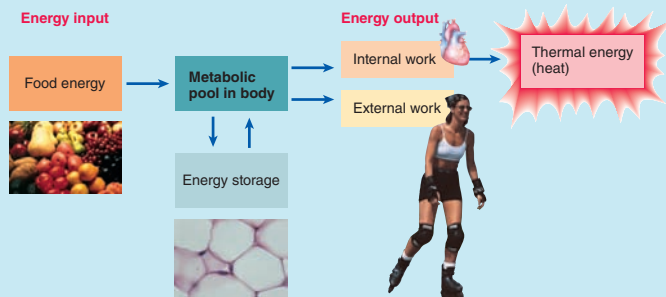
# Chapter 16

# Study Card

## Energy Balance (pp. 479–486)

Energy input to the body in the form of food energy must equal energy output, because energy cannot be created or destroyed. Energy output or expenditure includes (1) external work, performed by skeletal muscles to move an external object or move the body through the external environment, and (2) internal work, which consists of all energy-dependent activities that do not accomplish external work, including active transport, smooth and cardiac muscle contraction, glandular secretion, and protein synthesis. (Review Figure 16-1.)

Only about 25% of the chemical energy in food is harnessed to do biological work. The rest is immediately converted to heat. Furthermore, all the energy expended to accomplish internal work is eventually converted into heat, and 75% of the energy expended by working skeletal muscles is lost as heat. Therefore, most of the energy in food ultimately appears as body heat.



The metabolic rate (energy expenditure per unit of time) is measured in kilocalories of heat produced per hour.

The basal metabolic rate (BMR) is a measure of the body's minimal waking rate of internal energy expenditure.

For a neutral energy balance, the energy in ingested food must equal energy expended in performing external work and transformed into heat. If more energy is consumed than is expended, the extra energy is stored in the body, primarily as adipose tissue, so body weight increases. By contrast, if more energy is expended than is available in the food, body energy stores are used to support energy expenditure, so body weight decreases.

Usually, body weight remains fairly constant over a prolonged period (except during growth) because food intake is adjusted to match energy expenditure long term. Food intake is controlled primarily by the hypothalamus by means of complex regulatory mechanisms in which hunger and satiety are important components. Feeding or appetite signals give rise to the sensation of hunger and promote eating, whereas satiety signals lead to the sensation of fullness and suppress eating. (Review Table 16-2.)

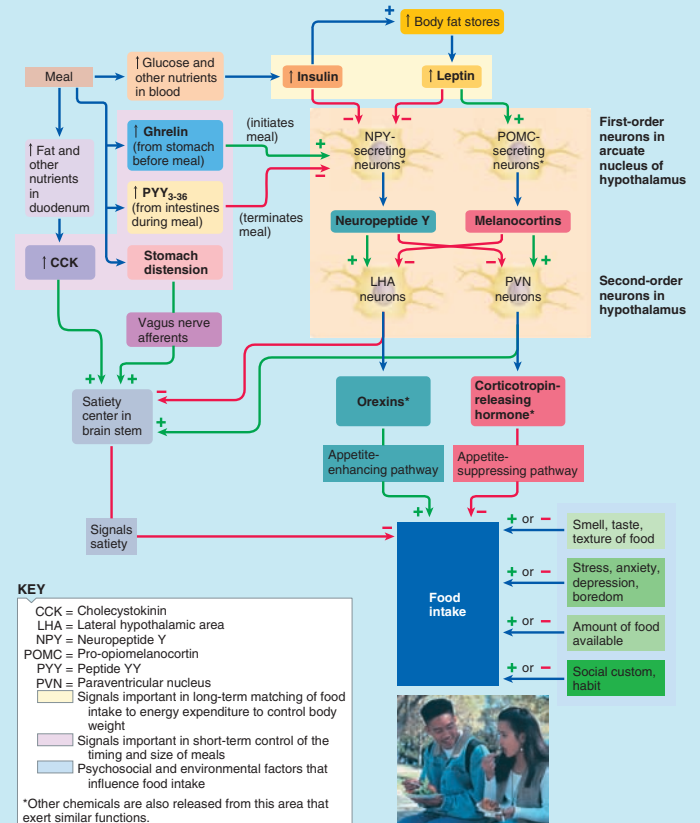
The arcuate nucleus of the hypothalamus plays a key role in energy homeostasis through the two clusters of appetite-regulating neurons it contains: neurons that secrete neuropeptide Y (NPY), which increases appetite and food intake, and neurons that secrete melanocortins, which suppress appetite and food intake. (Review Figure 16-2.)

Adipocytes in fat stores secrete the hormone leptin, which reduces appetite and decreases food consumption by inhibiting the NPY-secreting neurons and stimulating the melanocortin-secreting neurons. This mechanism is important in the long-term matching of energy intake with energy output, thus maintaining body weight. (Review Figure 16-2.)

Insulin released by the endocrine pancreas in response to increased glucose and other nutrients in the blood also inhibits the NPY-secreting neurons and contributes to long-term control of energy balance and body weight.

NPY and melanocortins bring about their effects by acting on the lateral hypothalamic area (LHA) and paraventricular nucleus (PVN) to alter the release of chemical messengers from these areas. The LHA secretes orexins, which are potent stimulators of food intake, whereas the PVN releases neuropeptides such as corticotropin-releasing hormone, which decrease food intake. (Review Figure 16-2.)

Short-term control of the timing and size of meals is mediated primarily by the actions of two peptides secreted by the



digestive tract. (1) Ghrelin, a mealtime initiator, is secreted by the stomach before a meal and signals hunger. Its secretion drops when food is consumed. Ghrelin stimulates appetite and promotes feeding behavior by stimulating the NPY-secreting neurons. (2) Peptide YY<sub>3-36</sub> (PYY<sub>3-36</sub>), a mealtime terminator, is secreted by the small and large intestines during a meal and signals satiety. Its secretion is lowest before a meal. PYY<sub>3-36</sub> inhibits the NPY-secreting neurons. (Review Figure 16-2.)

■ The satiety center in the brain stem also plays a key role in short-term control of meals. The satiety center receives input from the higher hypothalamic areas concerned with control of energy balance and food intake, as well as input from the digestive tract and elsewhere. Satiety signals acting through the satiety center to inhibit further food intake include stomach distension and increased cholecystikinin (CCK), a hormone released from the duodenum in response to the presence of nutrients, especially fat, in the digestive tract lumen. (Review Figure 16-2.)

■ Psychosocial and environmental factors can also influence food intake beyond the internal signals that govern feeding behavior. (Review Figure 16-2.)

### Temperature Regulation (pp. 486–492)

■ The body can be thought of as a heat-generating core (internal organs, central nervous system, and skeletal muscles) surrounded by a shell of variable insulating capacity (the skin).

■ The skin exchanges heat energy with the external environment, with the direction and amount of heat transfer depending on the environmental temperature and the momentary insulating capacity of the shell. The four physical means by which heat is exchanged are (1) radiation (net movement of heat energy via electromagnetic waves), (2) conduction (exchange of heat en-

ergy by direct contact), (3) convection (transfer of heat energy by means of air currents), and (4) evaporation (extraction of heat energy from the body by the heat-requiring conversion of liquid H<sub>2</sub>O to H<sub>2</sub>O vapor). Because heat energy moves from warmer to cooler objects, radiation, conduction, and convection can be channels for either heat loss or heat gain, depending on whether surrounding objects are cooler or warmer, respectively, than the body surface. Normally, they are avenues for heat loss, along with evaporation resulting from sweating. (Review Figure 16-4.)

■ To prevent serious cell malfunction, the core temperature must be held constant at about 100°F (equivalent to an average oral temperature of 98.2°F) by continuously balancing heat gain and heat loss despite changes in environmental temperature and variation in internal heat production. (Review Figure 16-3.)

■ This thermoregulatory balance is controlled by the hypothalamus. The hypothalamus is apprised of the skin temperature by peripheral thermoreceptors and of the core temperature by central thermoreceptors, which are located in the hypothalamus itself, as well as in abdominal organs and elsewhere.

■ The primary means of heat gain is heat production by metabolic activity, mostly skeletal muscle contraction.

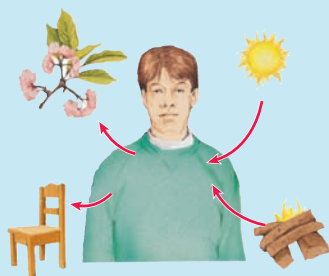
■ Heat loss is adjusted by sweating and by controlling to the greatest extent possible the temperature gradient between the skin and the surrounding environment. The latter is accomplished by regulating the diameter of the skin's arterioles. (1) Skin vasoconstriction reduces the flow of warmed blood through the skin so that skin temperature falls. The layer of cool skin between the core and the environment increases the insulating barrier between the warm core and the external air. (2) Skin vasodilation brings more warmed blood through the skin so that skin temperature approaches the core temperature, thus reducing the insulative capacity of the skin.

■ On exposure to cool surroundings, the core temperature starts to fall as heat loss increases, because the skin-to-air temperature gradient is larger than normal. The posterior hypothalamus responds to reduce the heat loss by inducing skin vasoconstriction while simultaneously increasing heat production through heat-generating shivering. (Review Table 16-3.)

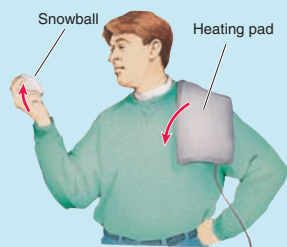
■ Conversely, in response to a rise in core temperature (resulting either from excessive internal heat production accompanying exercise or from excessive heat gain on exposure to a hot environment), the anterior hypothalamus triggers heat-loss mechanisms, such as skin vasodilation and sweating, while simultaneously decreasing heat production, such as by reducing muscle tone. (Review Table 16-3.)

■ In both cold and heat responses, voluntary behavioral actions help maintain thermal homeostasis.

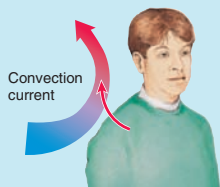
■ A fever occurs when endogenous pyrogen released from macrophages in response to infection raises the hypothalamic set point. An elevated core temperature develops as the hypothalamus initiates cold-response mechanisms to raise the core temperature to the new set point. (Review Figure 16-5.)



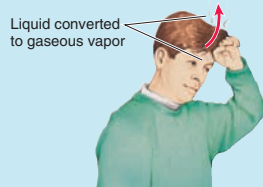
(a) **Radiation**—the transfer of heat energy from a warmer object to a cooler object in the form of electromagnetic waves ("heat waves"), which travel through space.



(b) **Conduction**—the transfer of heat from a warmer to a cooler object that is in direct contact with the warmer one. The heat is transferred through the movement of thermal energy from molecule to adjacent molecule.



(c) **Convection**—the transfer of heat energy by air currents. Cool air warmed by the body through conduction rises and is replaced by more cool air. This process is enhanced by the forced movement of air across the body surface.



(d) **Evaporation**—conversion of a liquid such as sweat into a gaseous vapor, a process that requires heat (the heat of vaporization), which is absorbed from the skin.

# Chapter 17

## Study Card

### General Principles of Endocrinology (pp. 495–500)

■ The endocrine system is important in regulating organic metabolism, H<sub>2</sub>O and electrolyte balance, growth, and reproduction and in stress adaptation. Some hormones are tropic, meaning their function is to stimulate and maintain other endocrine glands. (Review Figure 17-1 and Table 17-1.)

■ The effective plasma concentration of each hormone is normally controlled by regulated changes in the rate of hormone secretion via (1) neural input, which increases hormone secretion in response to a specific need and governs diurnal variations in secretion, and (2) input from another hormone, which involves either stimulatory input from a tropic hormone or inhibitory input from a target-cell hormone in negative-feedback fashion. (Review Figures 17-2 and 17-6.)

### Hypothalamus and Pituitary (pp. 501–506)

■ The pituitary gland consists of two distinct lobes, the posterior pituitary and the anterior pituitary. (Review Figure 17-3.)

■ The posterior pituitary is a neural extension of the hypothalamus. Neuronal cell bodies in the hypothalamus synthesize two small peptide hormones, vasopressin and oxytocin, which pass down the axon to be stored in nerve terminals within the posterior pituitary, from which they are released into the blood on stimulation by the hypothalamus. (Review Figure 17-4.)

■ The anterior pituitary secretes six different peptide hormones that it produces itself: thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), luteinizing hormone (LH), growth hormone (GH), and prolactin (PRL). (Review Figure 17-5.)

■ The anterior pituitary releases its hormones into the blood at the bidding of hypophysiotropic releasing and inhibiting hormones carried from the hypothalamus to the anterior pituitary through the hypothalamic–hypophyseal portal system. Both the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary are inhibited in negative-feedback fashion by the product of the target endocrine gland. (Review Table 17-2 and Figures 17-6 and 17-7.)

### Endocrine Control of Growth (pp. 506–510)

■ GH promotes growth indirectly by stimulating liver production of insulin-like growth factor (IGF), which acts directly on soft tissues and bone to cause growth by stimulating protein synthesis, cell division, and lengthening and thickening of bones. Unrelated to growth, GH also conserves carbohydrates and mobilizes fat stores by its direct actions on skeletal muscle and adipose tissue (Review Figures 17-8 and 17-9.)

■ GH secretion by the anterior pituitary is regulated by two hypothalamic hormones, growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH) and growth hormone–inhibiting hormone (somatostatin). GH and IGF both inhibit GHRH and stimulate soma-

tostatin. The primary signals for increased GH secretion (exercise, stress, and low blood glucose) are related to metabolic needs rather than growth. (Review Figure 17-9.)

### Pineal Gland and Circadian Rhythms (pp. 510–512)

■ The suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN) is the body’s master biological clock. Cyclic variations in the concentration of SCN clock proteins drive the body’s circadian (daily) rhythms.

■ Each day, the body’s circadian rhythms must be entrained or adjusted to keep pace with environmental cues so that the internal rhythms are synchronized with the external light–dark cycle. Special light receptors in the eyes send input to the SCN. Acting through the SCN, the pineal gland’s secretion of the hormone melatonin rhythmically decreases in the light and increases in the dark. Melatonin, in turn, synchronizes the body’s natural circadian rhythms, such as diurnal (day–night) variations in hormone secretion and body temperature, with external cues such as the light–dark cycle.

### Thyroid Gland (pp. 513–517)

■ The thyroid gland contains two types of endocrine secretory cells: (1) follicular cells, which produce the iodide-containing hormones, thyroxine or tetraiodothyronine (T<sub>4</sub>) and tri-iodothyronine (T<sub>3</sub>), collectively known as thyroid hormone, and (2) C cells, which synthesize a Ca<sup>2+</sup>-regulating hormone, calcitonin. (Review Figure 17-12.)

■ Most steps of thyroid hormone synthesis take place on large thyroglobulin molecules within the colloid, an “inland” extracellular site within the interior of the spherical thyroid follicles. (Review Figure 17-13.)

■ Thyroid hormone is the primary determinant of the overall basal metabolic rate of the body. By accelerating metabolic rate, it increases heat production. It also enhances the actions of the sympathetic catecholamines and is essential for normal growth and for development and function of the nervous system.

■ Thyroid hormone secretion is regulated by a negative-feedback loop among hypothalamic TRH, anterior pituitary TSH, and thyroid gland T<sub>3</sub> and T<sub>4</sub>. Cold exposure in newborn infants is the only input for increasing thyroid hormone secretion. (Review Figure 17-14.)

### Adrenal Glands (pp. 517–523)

■ Each adrenal gland (of the pair) consists of two separate endocrine organs—an outer, steroid-secreting adrenal cortex and an inner, catecholamine-secreting adrenal medulla. (Review Figure 17-18.)

■ The adrenal cortex produces three categories of steroid hormones: mineralocorticoids (aldosterone), glucocorticoids (cor-

tisol), and adrenal sex hormones (primarily the weak androgen, dehydroepiandrosterone). (Review Figure 17-18.)

■ Aldosterone regulates  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{K}^+$  balance and is important for blood pressure homeostasis, which is achieved secondarily by the osmotic effect of  $\text{Na}^+$  in maintaining the plasma volume, a lifesaving effect. Aldosterone is controlled by the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) and by a direct effect of  $\text{K}^+$  on the adrenal cortex. (Review Figure 13-16, p. 400.)

■ Cortisol helps regulate fuel metabolism and is important in stress adaptation. It increases blood glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids and spares glucose for use by the glucose-dependent brain. The mobilized organic molecules are available for use as needed for energy or repair. Cortisol secretion is regulated by a negative-feedback loop involving hypothalamic CRH and pituitary ACTH. Stress is the most potent stimulus for cortisol secretion. (Review Figures 17-2, 17-6, 17-19, and 17-22.)

■ The adrenal medulla consists of modified sympathetic post-ganglionic neurons that secrete epinephrine into the blood in response to sympathetic stimulation. Epinephrine reinforces the sympathetic system in mounting fight-or-flight responses and in maintaining arterial blood pressure. It also increases blood glucose and blood fatty acids. (Review Figures 7-2, p. 181 and 17-22.)

### Integrated Stress Response (pp. 523–525)

■ Stress is the body's generalized nonspecific response to any factor that threatens to overwhelm the ability to maintain homeostasis. A stressor is any noxious stimulus that elicits the stress response. (Review Figure 17-21.)

■ The stress response includes (1) increased sympathetic and epinephrine activity (prepares the body for fight-or-flight), (2) activation of the CRH-ACTH-cortisol axis (mobilizes metabolic resources), and (3) increased activity of RAAS and vasopressin (maintains blood volume and blood pressure), all coordinated by the hypothalamus. (Review Figure 17-22.)

### Endocrine Pancreas and Control of Fuel Metabolism (pp. 525–536)

■ Intermediary or fuel metabolism is, collectively, the synthesis (anabolism), breakdown (catabolism), and transformations of the three classes of energy-rich organic nutrients—carbohydrates, fats, and proteins—within the body. Glucose and fatty acids derived from carbohydrates and fats, respectively, are primarily used as metabolic fuels; amino acids derived from proteins are primarily used for synthesis of structural and enzymatic proteins. (Review Tables 17-3 and 17-4 and Figure 17-23.)

■ During the *absorptive state* following a meal, excess absorbed nutrients not immediately needed for energy production or protein synthesis are stored to a limited extent as glycogen in the liver and muscle but mostly as triglycerides in adipose tissue. During the *postabsorptive state* between meals when no new nutrients are entering the blood, the glycogen and triglyceride stores are catabolized to release nutrient molecules into the blood. If necessary, body proteins are degraded to release amino acids for conversion into glucose (gluconeogenesis). The blood glucose concentration must be maintained above a critical level because the brain depends on blood-delivered glucose as its energy source. Tissues not dependent on glucose switch to fatty

acids as their metabolic fuel, sparing glucose for the brain. (Review Table 17-5.)

■ The shifts in metabolic pathways between the absorptive and the postabsorptive states are controlled by hormones, most importantly insulin. Insulin is secreted by the  $\beta$  cells of the islets of Langerhans in the endocrine pancreas. Insulin is an anabolic hormone; it promotes the cellular uptake of glucose, fatty acids, and amino acids and enhances their conversion into glycogen, triglycerides, and proteins, respectively. In so doing, it lowers the blood concentrations of these small organic molecules. Insulin secretion is increased during the absorptive state, primarily by a direct effect of elevated blood glucose on the  $\beta$  cells. (Review Figures 17-24 through 17-27.)

■ Glucagon, secreted by the pancreatic  $\alpha$  cells, mobilizes the energy-rich molecules from their stores during the postabsorptive state. It is secreted in response to a direct effect of a fall in blood glucose on the  $\alpha$  cells. (Review Figures 17-24 and 17-27.)

### Parathyroid Glands and Control of Calcium Metabolism (pp. 536–541)

■ Changes in the concentration of free, diffusible (biologically active) plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  produce profound and life-threatening effects on neuromuscular excitability. Hypercalcemia reduces excitability, whereas hypocalcemia causes overexcitability of nerves and muscles. If the overexcitability is severe enough, fatal spastic contractions of respiratory muscles can occur.

■ Control of plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  depends on hormonally regulated exchanges between the ECF and three compartments—bone, kidneys, and intestine—by three hormones: parathyroid hormone (PTH), calcitonin, and vitamin D.

■ Bone consists of an organic extracellular matrix, the osteoid, which is hardened by via  $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$  crystals. Bone constantly undergoes remodeling via bone-dissolving osteoclasts and bone-building osteoblasts. Entombed osteocytes are “retired” osteoblasts that have deposited bone around themselves.

■ PTH, whose secretion is directly increased by a fall in plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , acts directly on bone and the kidneys and indirectly on the intestine to raise plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . In so doing, it is essential for life by preventing the fatal consequences of hypocalcemia. PTH promotes  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  movement from the bone fluid into the plasma in the short term and promotes localized dissolution of bone in the long term. (Review Figure 17-29.)

■ Dissolution of  $\text{Ca}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2$  bone crystals releases  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$ , as well as  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ , into the plasma. PTH acts on the kidneys to conserve  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and eliminate  $\text{PO}_3^-$  during urine formation, which is important because a rise in plasma  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  would force the reposition of some of the plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  back into the bone.

■ PTH facilitates activation of vitamin D (from the diet or made in the skin on sun exposure), which in turn stimulates  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  and  $\text{PO}_4^{3-}$  absorption from the intestine. Vitamin D must be activated first by the liver and then by the kidneys (the site of PTH regulation of vitamin D activation) before it can exert its effect. (Review Figure 17-27.)

■ Calcitonin, a hormone produced by the thyroid C cells, is secreted in the rare instances when plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  is too high and acts on bone and kidneys to lower plasma  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$ . (Review Figure 17-29.)

# Chapter 18

## Study Card

### Uniqueness of the Reproductive System (pp. 545–551)

- Both sexes produce gametes (reproductive cells), sperm in males and ova (eggs) in females, each of which bears one member of each of the 23 pairs of chromosomes present in human cells. Union of a sperm and an ovum at fertilization results in the beginning of a new individual with 23 complete pairs of chromosomes, half from each parent.
- The reproductive system is anatomically and functionally distinct in males and females. Males produce sperm and deliver them into the female. Females produce ova, accept sperm delivery, and provide a suitable environment for supporting development of a fertilized ovum until the new individual can survive on its own in the external world.
- In both sexes, the reproductive system consists of (1) a pair of gonads, testes in males and ovaries in females, which are the primary reproductive organs that produce the gametes and secrete sex hormones; (2) a reproductive tract composed of a system of ducts that transport, house, or do both for the gametes after they are produced; and (3) accessory sex glands that provide supportive secretions for the gametes. The external genitalia are the externally visible parts of the reproductive system. (Review Figures 18-1 and 18-2.) Secondary sexual characteristics are the distinguishing features between males and females not directly related to reproduction.
- *Sex determination* is a genetic phenomenon dependent on the combination of sex chromosomes at the time of fertilization: An XY combination is a genetic male, and an XX combination is a genetic female. *Sexual differentiation* refers to the embryonic development of the gonads, reproductive tract, and external genitalia along male or female lines, which gives rise to the apparent anatomic sex of the individual. In the presence of masculinizing factors, a male reproductive system develops; in their absence, a female system develops. (Review Figure 18-3.)

### Male Reproductive Physiology (pp. 551–559)

- The testes are located in the scrotum. The cooler temperature in the scrotum than in the abdominal cavity is essential for spermatogenesis (sperm production), which occurs in the testes' highly coiled seminiferous tubules. Leydig cells in the interstitial spaces between these tubules secrete the male sex hormone testosterone into the blood. (Review Figures 18-4 and 18-5.)
- Testosterone is secreted before birth to masculinize the developing reproductive system; then its secretion ceases until puberty, at which time it begins again and continues throughout life. Testosterone is responsible for maturation and maintenance of the entire male reproductive tract, for development of secondary sexual characteristics, and for stimulating libido. (Review Table 18-1.)
- The testes are regulated by the anterior pituitary gonadotropic hormones, luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimu-

lating hormone (FSH), which are under control of hypothalamic gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH). (Review Figure 18-7.)

- Testosterone secretion is regulated by LH stimulation of the Leydig cells, and in negative-feedback fashion, testosterone inhibits LH secretion. (Review Figure 18-7.)
- Spermatogenesis requires both testosterone and FSH. Testosterone stimulates the mitotic and meiotic divisions required to transform the undifferentiated diploid germ cells, the spermatogonia, into undifferentiated haploid spermatids. FSH stimulates the remodeling of spermatids into highly specialized motile spermatozoa. (Review Figures 18-4, 18-5, and 18-7.)
- A spermatozoon consists only of a DNA-packed head bearing an enzyme-filled acrosome at its tip for penetrating the ovum, a midpiece containing the mitochondria for energy production, and a whiplike motile tail. (Review Figure 18-6.)
- Also present in the seminiferous tubules are Sertoli cells, which protect, nurse, and enhance the germ cells throughout their development. Sertoli cells also secrete inhibin, a hormone that inhibits FSH secretion, completing the negative-feedback loop. (Review Figures 18-4b, 18-4d, and 18-7.)
- The still-immature sperm are flushed out of the seminiferous tubules into the epididymis by fluid secreted by the Sertoli cells. The epididymis and ductus deferens store and concentrate the sperm and increase their motility and fertility prior to ejaculation. During ejaculation, the sperm are mixed with secretions released by the accessory glands. (Review Figure 18-4 and Table 18-2.)
- The *seminal vesicles* supply fructose for energy and prostaglandins, which promote smooth muscle motility in both the male and the female reproductive tracts to enhance sperm transport. The seminal vesicles also contribute the bulk of the semen. The *prostate gland* contributes an alkaline fluid to neutralize the acidic vaginal secretions. The *bulbourethral glands* release lubricating mucus. (Review Table 18-2.)

### Sexual Intercourse between Males and Females (pp. 559–563)

- The male sex act consists of erection and ejaculation, which are part of a broader systemic sexual response cycle. (Review Table 18-4.)
- Erection is a hardening of the normally flaccid penis that enables it to penetrate the female vagina. Erection is accomplished by marked vasocongestion of the penis brought about by reflexly induced vasodilation of the arterioles supplying the penile erectile tissue. (Review Figure 18-8.)
- When sexual excitation reaches a critical peak, ejaculation occurs. It consists of two stages: (1) emission, the emptying of semen (sperm and accessory sex gland secretions) into the urethra, and (2) expulsion of semen from the penis. The latter is accompanied by a set of characteristic systemic responses and intense pleasure referred to as orgasm. (Review Table 18-4.)



■ Females experience a sexual response cycle similar to that of males, with both having excitation, plateau, orgasmic, and resolution phases. Like the penis, the highly vascular clitoris undergoes erection (but not ejaculation). During sexual response, the outer portion of the vagina constricts to grip the penis, and the inner part expands to create space for sperm deposition.

### Female Reproductive Physiology (pp. 563–588)

■ In the nonpregnant state, female reproductive function is controlled by a complex, cyclic, negative-feedback control system among the hypothalamus (GnRH), the anterior pituitary (FSH and LH), and the ovaries (estrogen, progesterone, and inhibin). During pregnancy, placental hormones become the main controlling factors.

■ The ovaries perform the dual and interrelated functions of oogenesis (producing ova) and secretion of estrogen and progesterone. (Review Table 18-5, p. 587.) Two related ovarian endocrine units sequentially accomplish these functions: the follicle and the corpus luteum.

■ The same steps in chromosome replication and division take place in oogenesis as in spermatogenesis, but the timing and end result are markedly different. Spermatogenesis is accomplished within 2 months, but the similar steps in oogenesis take anywhere from 12 to 50 years to complete cyclically from the onset of puberty until menopause. A female is born with a limited, nonrenewable supply of germ cells, whereas postpubertal males can produce several hundred million sperm each day. Each primary oocyte yields only one cytoplasm-rich ovum along with three doomed cytoplasm-poor polar bodies that disintegrate, whereas each primary spermatocyte yields four equally viable spermatozoa. (Review Figures 18-9, 18-10, and Figure 18-5, p. 554.)

■ Oogenesis and estrogen secretion take place within an ovarian follicle during the first half of each reproductive cycle (the follicular phase) under the influence of FSH, LH, and estrogen. (Review Figures 18-11 through 18-14.)

■ At approximately midcycle, the maturing follicle releases a single ovum (ovulation). Ovulation is triggered by an LH surge brought about by the high level of estrogen produced by the mature follicle. (Review Figures 18-11, 18-13, and 18-15.)

■ LH converts the empty follicle into a corpus luteum (CL), which produces progesterone and estrogen during the last half of the cycle (the luteal phase). This endocrine unit prepares the uterus for implantation if the released ovum is fertilized. (Review Figures 18-11, 18-13, and 18-16.)

■ If fertilization and implantation do not occur, the CL degenerates, withdrawing hormonal support for the highly developed uterine lining. This causes the lining to disintegrate and slough, producing menstrual flow. Simultaneously, a new follicular phase is initiated. (Review Figures 18-11 and 18-13.)

■ Menstruation ceases and the uterine lining (endometrium) repairs itself under the influence of rising estrogen levels from the newly maturing follicle. (Review Figure 18-13.)

■ If fertilization does take place, it occurs in the oviduct as the released egg and sperm deposited in the vagina are both transported to this site. (Review Figures 18-17 through 18-19.)

■ The fertilized ovum begins to divide mitotically. Within a week, it grows and differentiates into a blastocyst capable of implantation. (Review Figure 18-20.)

■ Meanwhile, the endometrium has become richly vascularized and stocked with stored glycogen under the influence of luteal-phase progesterone. (Review Figure 18-13.) Into this especially prepared lining, the blastocyst implants by means of enzymes released by the trophoblast, which forms the blastocyst's outer layer. These enzymes digest the nutrient-rich endometrial tissue, accomplishing the dual function of carving a hole in the endometrium for implantation of the blastocyst while simultaneously releasing nutrients from the endometrial cells for use by the developing embryo. (Review Figure 18-21.)

■ After implantation, an interlocking combination of fetal and maternal tissues, the placenta, develops. The placenta is the organ of exchange between maternal and fetal blood and acts as a transient, complex endocrine organ that secretes a number of hormones essential for pregnancy. Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), estrogen, and progesterone are the most important of these hormones. hCG maintains the CL of pregnancy, which secretes estrogen and progesterone during the first trimester of gestation until the placenta takes over this function in the last two trimesters. High levels of estrogen and progesterone are essential for maintaining a normal pregnancy. (Review Figures 18-22 and 18-24 and Table 18-5.)

■ At parturition, rhythmic contractions of increasing strength, duration, and frequency accomplish the three stages of labor: dilation of the cervix, birth of the baby, and delivery of the placenta (afterbirth). (Review Figure 18-26.)

■ Parturition is initiated by a complex interplay of multiple maternal and fetal factors. Once the contractions are initiated at the onset of labor, a positive-feedback cycle is established that progressively increases their force. As contractions push the fetus against the cervix, secretion of oxytocin, a powerful uterine muscle stimulant, is reflexly increased. The extra oxytocin causes stronger contractions, giving rise to even more oxytocin release, and so on. This positive-feedback cycle progressively intensifies until cervical dilation and delivery are complete. (Review Figure 18-25.)

■ During gestation, the breasts are specially prepared for lactation. The elevated levels of placental estrogen and progesterone, respectively, promote development of the ducts and alveoli in the mammary glands. (Review Figure 18-27.)

■ Prolactin stimulates the synthesis of enzymes essential for milk production by the alveolar epithelial cells. However, the high gestational level of estrogen and progesterone prevents prolactin from promoting milk production. Withdrawal of the placental steroids at parturition initiates lactation.

■ Lactation is sustained by suckling, which triggers the release of oxytocin and prolactin. Oxytocin causes milk ejection (let-down) by stimulating the myoepithelial cells surrounding the alveoli to squeeze the secreted milk out through the ducts. Prolactin stimulates secretion of more milk to replace the milk the baby nurses. (Review Figures 18-27 and 18-28.)

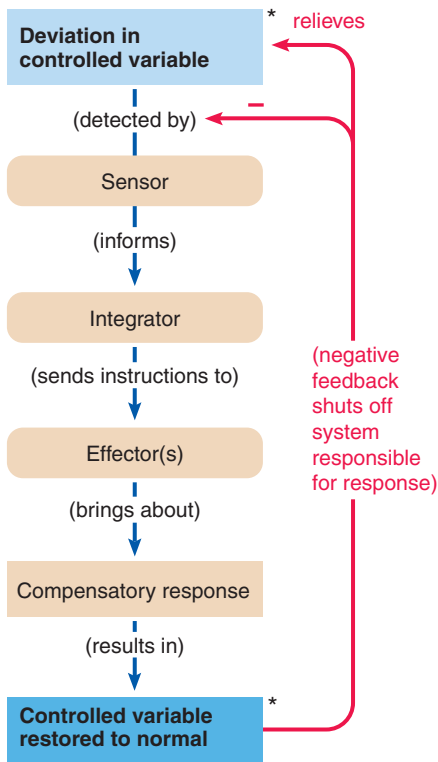


## Anatomical Terms Used to Indicate Direction and Orientation

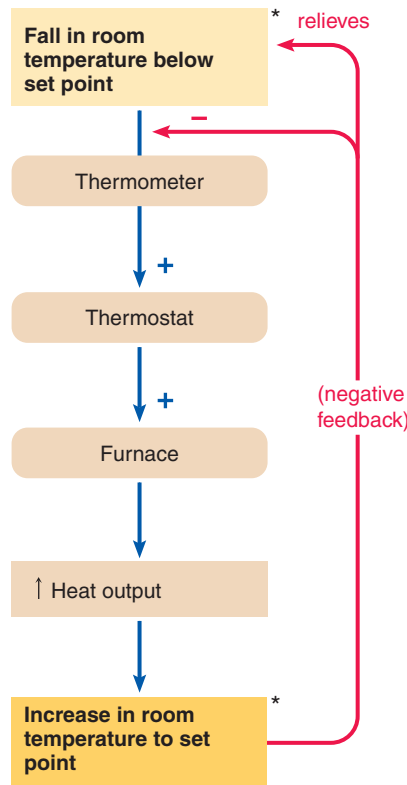
<i>anterior</i>	situated in front of or in the front part of
<i>posterior</i>	situated behind or toward the rear
<i>ventral</i>	toward the belly or front surface of the body; synonymous with anterior
<i>dorsal</i>	toward the back surface of the body; synonymous with posterior
<i>medial</i>	denoting a position nearer the midline of the body or a body structure
<i>lateral</i>	denoting a position toward the side or farther from the midline of the body or a body structure
<i>superior</i>	toward the head
<i>inferior</i>	away from the head
<i>proximal</i>	closer to a reference point
<i>distal</i>	farther from a reference point
<i>sagittal section</i>	a vertical plane that divides the body or a body structure into right and left sides
<i>longitudinal section</i>	a plane that lies parallel to the length of the body or a body structure
<i>cross section</i>	a plane that runs perpendicular to the length of the body or a body structure
<i>frontal or coronal section</i>	a plane parallel to and facing the front part of the body

## Word Derivatives Commonly Used in Physiology

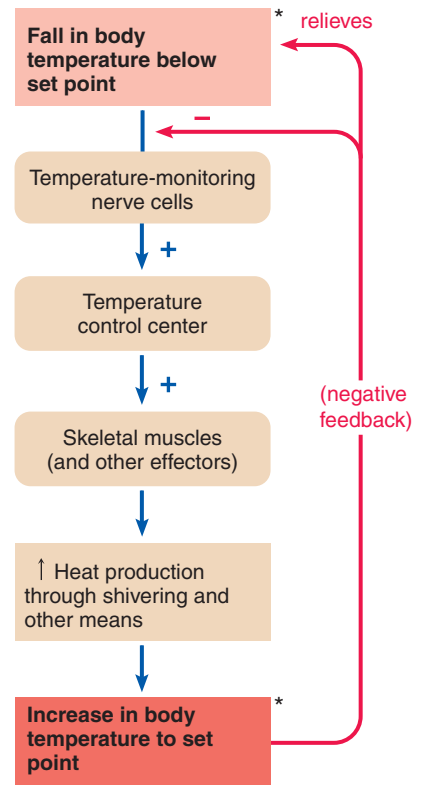
<i>a; an-</i>	absence or lack	<i>epi-</i>	above; over	<i>osteo-</i>	bone
<i>ad-; af-</i>	toward	<i>erythro-</i>	red	<i>oto-</i>	ear
<i>adeno-</i>	glandular	<i>gastr-</i>	stomach	<i>para-</i>	near
<i>angi-</i>	vessel	<i>-gen; -genic</i>	produce	<i>pariet-</i>	wall
<i>anti-</i>	against	<i>gluc-; glyc-</i>	sweet	<i>peri-</i>	around
<i>archi-</i>	old	<i>hemi-</i>	half	<i>phago-</i>	eat
<i>-ase</i>	splitter	<i>hemo-</i>	blood	<i>-pod</i>	footlike
<i>auto-</i>	self	<i>hepat-</i>	liver	<i>-poiesis</i>	formation
<i>bi-</i>	two; double	<i>homeo-</i>	sameness	<i>poly-</i>	many
<i>-blast</i>	former	<i>hyper-</i>	above; excess	<i>post-</i>	behind; after
<i>brady-</i>	slow	<i>hypo-</i>	below; deficient	<i>pre-</i>	ahead of; before
<i>cardi-</i>	heart	<i>inter-</i>	between	<i>pro-</i>	before
<i>cephal-</i>	head	<i>intra-</i>	within	<i>pseudo-</i>	false
<i>cerebr-</i>	brain	<i>kal-</i>	potassium	<i>pulmon-</i>	lung
<i>chondr-</i>	cartilage	<i>leuko-</i>	white	<i>rect-</i>	straight
<i>-cide</i>	kill; destroy	<i>lip-</i>	fat	<i>ren-</i>	kidney
<i>contra-</i>	against	<i>macro-</i>	large	<i>reticul-</i>	network
<i>cost-</i>	rib	<i>mamm-</i>	breast	<i>retro-</i>	backward
<i>crani-</i>	skull	<i>mening-</i>	membrane	<i>sacchar-</i>	sugar
<i>-crine</i>	secretion	<i>micro-</i>	small	<i>sarc-</i>	muscle
<i>crypt-</i>	hidden	<i>mono-</i>	single	<i>semi-</i>	half
<i>cutan-</i>	skin	<i>multi-</i>	many	<i>-some</i>	body
<i>-cyte</i>	cell	<i>myo-</i>	muscle	<i>sub-</i>	under
<i>de-</i>	lack of	<i>natr-</i>	sodium	<i>supra-</i>	upon; above
<i>di-</i>	two; double	<i>neo-</i>	new	<i>tachy-</i>	rapid
<i>dys-</i>	difficult; faulty	<i>nephr-</i>	kidney	<i>therm-</i>	temperature
<i>ecto-; exo-; extra-</i>	outside; away from	<i>neuro-</i>	nerve	<i>-tion</i>	act or process of
<i>ef-</i>	away from	<i>oculo-</i>	eye	<i>trans-</i>	across
<i>-elle</i>	tiny; miniature	<i>-oid</i>	resembling	<i>tri-</i>	three
<i>-emia</i>	blood	<i>ophthalmo-</i>	eye	<i>vaso-</i>	vessel
<i>encephalo-</i>	brain	<i>oral-</i>	mouth	<i>-uria</i>	urine
<i>endo-</i>	within; inside				



(a) Components of a negative-feedback control system



(b) Negative-feedback control of room temperature



(c) Negative-feedback control of body temperature

**KEY**

**Flow diagrams throughout the text**

- +** = Stimulates or activates
- = Inhibits or shuts off
- = Physical entity, such as body structure or a chemical
- = Actions
- |** = Compensatory pathway
- |** (red) = Turning off of compensatory pathway (negative feedback)
- \*** Note that lighter and darker shades of the same color are used to denote, respectively, a decrease or an increase in a controlled variable.